HP LaserJet MFP E82540, E82550, E82560

Service Manual

Copyright and License

© Copyright 2017 HP Development Company, L.P.

Reproduction, adaptation, or translation without prior written permission is prohibited, except as allowed under the copyright laws.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice.

The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Edition 1, 04/2017

Trademark Credits

Adobe®, Acrobat®, and PostScript® are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Microsoft®, Windows®, Windows® XP, and Windows Vista® are U.S. registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

ENERGY STAR and the ENERGY STAR mark are registered U.S. marks.

Conventions used in this guide

TIP: Tips provide helpful hints or shortcuts.

NOTE: Notes provide important information to explain a concept or to complete a task.

CAUTION: Cautions indicate procedures that you should follow to avoid losing data or damaging the product.

WARNING! Warnings alert you to specific procedures that you should follow to avoid personal injury, catastrophic loss of data, or extensive damage to the product.

Table of contents

1 Precautions 1
Safety warning 2
Caution for safety 3
Toxic material 3
Electric shock and fire safety precautions 3
Handling precautions 5
Removal and Replacement precautions 5
Disregarding this warning may cause bodily injury 5
ESD precautions 7

2 Product specifications and description 9
Product overview 10
Specifications 11
General specifications 11
Print specifications 13
Scan specifications 16
Copy specifications 17
Supplies 19
Maintenance parts 20
Paper handling specifications 22
Network and software specifications 28
Network interface 28
Software and solutions 29
Options 31
Optional configurations 31
Options list 32
Option specifications 33
Machine external view 37
Front view 37
Rear view 38
Inner view 39
Feeding system 40

Feeding system overview 40
Main components and functions 41
Rollers 41
Sensor, motor, and solenoid 43
Cassette 45
Pickup unit 46
Registration unit 46
MP feeder assembly 47
Fuser unit 49
Fuser unit overview 49
Fuser unit drive 50
Fuser unit temperature control 50
Loop control 51
Image creation 53
Printing process overview 53
Imaging unit 53
Drum unit overview 53
Drum drive 54
Developer unit 55
Toner cartridge 56
Paper transfer belt unit 57
Paper transfer belt unit overview 57
Transfer belt drive 58
Cleaning blade 59
Laser scanner assembly 61
Laser scanner assembly overview 61
Laser scanning optical path 62
Laser synchronizing detectors 62
Drive system 64
Pickup and cassette lift drive 64
Feed drive 65
Registration drive 66
Fuser release/output drive 67
Drive motors 67
Main drive unit motors 69
Toner supply drive 70
Toner reservoir drive 70
Flatbed Scanner System 71
Flatbed scanner system overview 71
Scanning system components 73
Caution for moving the scanner 79

Flow Automatic Document Feeder (Flow ADF) dn/z bundles (GX) 81
Flow ADF overview 81
Sensors 82
Ultra Sonic Multi-feed (USM) 83
Flow ADF drive system 83
Flow ADF document lifting drive system 84
Flow ADF Scan-In Roller Release Drive System 84
Flow ADF specification 85
Flow ADF Registration 85
Flow ADF Scanning Position 86
Mixed Size Original (MSO) 86
Dual sensor cleaning method 87
Flow ADF z bundles (GX) 88
Hardware configuration 89
Main controller 92
Main controller for previous model 92
Main controller 96
Master system operation key (MSOK) 99
Low voltage power supply (LVPS) PCA (Type 5) 100
Low voltage power supply (LVPS) PCA (Type 3) 102
Low voltage power supply (LVPS) PCA (Type 4) 104
Fuser drive assembly 105
High voltage power supply (HVPS) board 106
Eraser PCA 108
Fuser PCA 109
Waste Sensor PCA 109
Paper Size sensor PCA 110
Flow ADF PCA 110
Scan joint PCA 111
CCDM PCA 112
WLED IF PCA 113
WLED PCA 113
Dual cassette feeder (DCF) 114
High capacity input tray (HCI) 118
Side high capacity input tray (sHCI) 122

3 Removal and replacement 127
For additional service and support 133
Service approach 133
Precautions when replacing parts 133
Precautions when assembling and disassembling 133

Precautions when handling PCA 134
Releasing plastic latches 134
Before performing service 135
After performing service 135
Post-service test 135
Print-quality test 135
Copy-quality test 135
Fax-quality test 135
Parts removal order 136
Maintenance 137
Machine cleaning for maintenance 137
Cleaning the paper dust stick 137
Cleaning the scan glass 139
Cleaning the flow ADF white bar and CISCleaning the flow document feeder white bar and CIS 140
Removal and replacement procedures 142
Accessories 142
Removal and replacement: Trusted platform module 143
Introduction 143
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 144
Step 2: Remove the hard-disk drive 144
Step 3: Remove the trusted platform module (TPM) 145
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 145
Install accessory: HP Foreign interface harness (FIH) solution 147
Introduction 147
Step 1: Unpack the FIH accessory 148
Step 2: Install the FIH accessory 148
NFC Kit Installation 149
Introduction 149
Step 1: Unpack the NFC kit 151
Step 2: Install the NFC kit 151
Replacement of maintenance parts 156
Toner collection unit (TCU) 157
Introduction 157
Step 1: Remove the TCU 158
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 158
Imaging drum unit 159
Introduction 159
Step 1: Remove the imaging drum unit 160
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 160
Developer unit 162

Introduction 162
Step 1: Remove the developer unit 163
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 165
Fuser unit 166
Introduction 166
Step 1: Remove the fuser unit 167
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 167
Paper transfer belt (PTB) 169
Introduction 169
Step 1: Remove the PTB 170
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 172
Trays 2–x pick, feed, and separation rollers 174
Introduction 174
Step 1: Remove the Trays 2–x pick, feed, and separation rollers 175
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 177
Multipurpose (MP) tray pickup/reverse/feed roller 178
Introduction 178
Step 1: Remove the MP pickup/reverse/feed roller 179
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 181
Flow ADF pickup roller assembly 183
Introduction 183
Step 1: Remove the flow ADF pickup roller assembly 184
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 187
Flow ADF separation roller assembly 188
Introduction 188
Step 1: Remove the flow ADF separation roller assembly 189
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 191
Formatter cover 192
Introduction 192
Before performing service 192
Required tools 192
After performing service 192
Post service test 193
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 193
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 193
Accelerator board 195
Introduction 195
Before performing service 195
Required tools 195
After performing service 195
Post service test 196

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 196
Step 2: Remove the accelerator board 196
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 197
Island of data (IOD) 198
Introduction 198
Before performing service 198
Required tools 198
After performing service 198
Post service test 199
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 199
Step 2: Remove the island of data (IOD) 199
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 200
Formatter hard disk drive (HDD) 201
Introduction 201
Before performing service 201
Required tools 201
After performing service 201
Post service test 202
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 202
Step 2: Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD) 202
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 203
Formatter 204
Introduction 204
Before performing service 204
Required tools 204
After performing service 204
Post service test 205
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 205
Step 2: Remove the accelerator board 205
Step 3: Remove the hard-disk drive 206
Step 4: Remove the formatter PCA 206
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 207
Control panel 208
Introduction 208
Before performing service 208
Required tools 208
After performing service 208
Post service test 209
Step 1: Remove the control-panel bezel 209
Step 2: Remove the control-panel 209
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 210

Keyboard (z bundles) 212
Introduction 212
Before performing service 212
Required tools 212
After performing service 212
Post service test 213
Step 1: Remove the control-panel bezel 213
Step 2: Remove the control-panel 213
Step 3: Remove the keyboard 214
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 215
Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU) 217
Introduction 217
Before performing service 217
Required tools 217
After performing service 217
Post service test 218
Step 1: Remove the IPTU 218
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 218
Replacing the main SVC part 220
Front top inner cover 221
Introduction 221
Before performing service 221
Required tools 221
After performing service 221
Post service test 222
Step 1: Remove the front top inner cover 222
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 222
Front power cover 223
Introduction 223
Before performing service 223
Required tools 223
After performing service 223
Post service test 224
Step 1: Remove the front top inner cover 224
Step 2: Remove the front power cover 224
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 225
Front power switch 226
Introduction 226
Before performing service 226
Required tools 226
After performing service 226

Post service test 227
Step 1: Remove the front top inner cover 227
Step 2: Remove the front power cover 227
Step 3: Remove the front power switch 228
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 229
Output bin 231
Introduction 231
Before performing service 231
Required tools 231
After performing service 231
Post service test 232
Step 1: Remove the front top inner cover 232
Step 2: Remove the output bin 232
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 232
Top right cover 234
Introduction 234
Before performing service 234
Required tools 234
After performing service 234
Post service test 235
Step 1: Remove the front top inner cover 235
Step 2: Remove the front power cover 235
Step 3: Remove the top right cover 236
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 237
Left cover 238
Introduction 238
Before performing service 238
Required tools 238
After performing service 238
Post service test 239
Step 1: Remove the left cover 239
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 239
Lower rear cover 241
Introduction 241
Before performing service 241
Required tools 241
After performing service 241
Post service test 242
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 242
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 242
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 243

Upper rear cover 244
Introduction 244
Before performing service 244
Required tools 244
After performing service 244
Post service test 245
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 245
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 245
Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover 246
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 246
Left rear corner cover 248
Introduction 248
Before performing service 248
Required tools 248
After performing service 248
Post service test 249
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 249
Step 2: Remove the left rear corner cover 249
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 250
Right rear cover 251
Introduction 251
Before performing service 251
Required tools 251
After performing service 251
Post service test 252
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 252
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 252
Right door 254
Introduction 254
Before performing service 254
Required tools 254
After performing service 254
Post service test 255
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 255
Step 2: Remove the right door 255
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 257
Paper dust brush 259
Introduction 259
Before performing service 259
Required tools 259
After performing service 259

Post service test 260
Step 1: Remove the toner collection unit 260
Step 2: Remove the paper dust brush 260
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 260
Front cover 262
Introduction 262
Before performing service 262
Required tools 262
After performing service 262
Post service test 262
Step 1: Remove the front cover 263
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 263
Inner front cover 265
Introduction 265
Before performing service 265
Required tools 265
After performing service 266
Post service test 266
Step 1: Remove the front cover 266
Step 2: Remove the front top inner cover 266
Step 3: Remove the front power cover 267
Step 4: Remove the output bin 268
Step 5: Remove the toner collection unit 268
Step 6: Remove the paper dust brush 269
Step 7: Remove the inner front cover 269
Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly 271
Front cover open sensor 272
Introduction 272
Before performing service 272
Required tools 272
After performing service 273
Post service test 273
Step 1: Remove the front cover 273
Step 2: Remove the front top inner cover 273
Step 3: Remove the front power cover 274
Step 4: Remove the output bin 275
Step 5: Remove the paper dust brush 275
Step 6: Remove the inner front cover 276
Step 7: Remove the front cover open sensor 278
Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly 278
Low voltage power supply (LVPS) cover 279

Introduction 279
Before performing service 279
Required tools 279
After performing service 279
Post service test 280
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 280
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 280
Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover 281
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 281
Laser scanner assembly 283
Introduction 283
Before performing service 283
Required tools 283
After performing service 283
Post service test 284
Step 1: Remove the left cover 284
Step 2: Remove the laser scanner assembly 284
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 285
Developer fan 287
Introduction 287
Before performing service 287
Required tools 287
After performing service 288
Post service test 288
Step 1: Remove the toner collection unit 288
Step 2: Remove the imaging drum 288
Step 3: Remove the developer unit 289
Step 4: Remove the left cover 292
Step 5: Remove the formatter cover 293
Step 6: Remove the lower rear cover 293
Step 7: Remove the developer fan 293
Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly 298
High voltage power supply (HVPS) board 299
Introduction 299
Before performing service 299
Required tools 299
After performing service 299
Post service test 300
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 300
Step 2: Remove the left cover 300
Step 3: Remove the HVPS 301

Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 302
Main board 303
Introduction 303
Before performing service 303
Required tools 303
After performing service 304
Post service test 304
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 304
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 304
Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover 305
Step 4: Remove the left rear corner cover 305
Step 5: Remove the formatter and cage 306
Step 6: Remove the main board 307
Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly 310
Toner supply motor 311
Introduction 311
Before performing service 311
Required tools 311
After performing service 312
Post service test 312
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 312
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 312
Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover 313
Step 4: Remove the left rear corner cover 313
Step 5: Remove the formatter and cage 314
Step 6: Remove the main board and cage 315
Step 7: Remove the toner supply motor 317
Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly 318
CRUM connector 319
Introduction 319
Before performing service 319
Required tools 319
After performing service 320
Post service test 320
Step 1: Remove the front cover 320
Step 2: Remove the front top inner cover 320
Step 3: Remove the front power cover 321
Step 4: Remove the output bin 322
Step 5: Remove the toner collection unit 322
Step 6: Remove the paper dust brush 323
Step 7: Remove the inner front cover 323

Step 8: Remove the left cover 325
Step 9: Remove the CRUM connector 326
Step 10: Unpack the replacement assembly 327
Low voltage power supply (LVPS) fans 328
Introduction 328
Before performing service 328
Required tools 328
After performing service 328
Post service test 329
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 329
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 329
Step 3: Remove the LVPS fans 330
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 331
Low voltage power supply (LVPS) board 1 332
Introduction 332
Before performing service 332
Required tools 332
After performing service 332
Post service test 333
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 333
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 333
Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover 334
Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 1 334
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 335
Low voltage power supply (LVPS) board 2 336
Introduction 336
Before performing service 336
Required tools 336
After performing service 336
Post service test 337
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 337
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 337
Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover 338
Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 2 338
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 339
Low voltage power supply (LVPS) board 3 340
Introduction 340
Before performing service 340
Required tools 340
After performing service 340
Post service test 341

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 341
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 341
Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover 342
Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 3 342
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 343
Fuser drive board 345
Introduction 345
Before performing service 345
Required tools 345
After performing service 345
Post service test 346
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 346
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 346
Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover 347
Step 4: Remove the fuser drive board 347
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 348
Fuser fan 349
Introduction 349
Before performing service 349
Required tools 349
After performing service 349
Post service test 350
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 350
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 350
Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover 351
Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 3 and cage 351
Step 5: Remove the fuser fan 353
Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly 354
Main drive unit 356
Introduction 356
Before performing service 356
Required tools 356
After performing service 356
Post service test 357
Step 1: Remove the imaging drum 357
Step 2: Remove the developer unit 358
Step 3: Remove the formatter cover 360
Step 4: Remove the lower rear cover 361
Step 5: Remove the main drive unit 361
Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly 363
Inductor unit 364

Introduction 364
Before performing service 364
Required tools 364
After performing service 364
Post service test 365
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 365
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 365
Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover 366
Step 4: Remove the fuser drive and low-voltage power supply (LVPS) boards and cage 366
Step 5: Remove the inductor unit 367
Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly 367
Auto closing unit 369
Introduction 369
Before performing service 369
Required tools 369
After performing service 369
Post service test 370
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 370
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 370
Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover 371
Step 4: Remove the fuser drive and low-voltage power supply (LVPS) boards and cage 371
Step 5: Remove the auto closing unit 372
Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly 373
Fuser/output drive unit 374
Introduction 374
Before performing service 374
Required tools 374
After performing service 375
Post service test 375
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 375
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 375
Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover 376
Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 3 and cage 376
Step 5: Remove the fuser fan 378
Step 6: Remove the fuser/output drive unit 380
Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly 380
Right door open sensor 382
Introduction 382
Before performing service 382

Required tools 382
After performing service 383
Post service test 383
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 383
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 383
Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover 384
Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 3 and cage 384
Step 5: Remove the fuser fan 386
Step 6: Remove the fuser/output drive unit 388
Step 7: Remove the right door open sensor 388
Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly 389
Right door open switch 390
Introduction 390
Before performing service 390
Required tools 390
After performing service 390
Post service test 391
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 391
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 391
Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover 392
Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 3 and cage 392
Step 5: Remove the fuser fan 394
Step 6: Remove the fuser/output drive unit 396
Step 7: Remove the right door open sensor 396
Step 8: Remove the right door open switch 397
Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly 397
Pickup drive unit 1 399
Introduction 399
Before performing service 399
Required tools 399
After performing service 399
Post service test 400
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 400
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 400
Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover 401
Step 4: Remove the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage 401
Step 5: Remove the pickup drive unit 1 402
Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly 402
Pickup drive unit 2 404
Introduction 404
Before performing service 404

Required tools 404
After performing service 404
Post service test 405
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 405
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 405
Step 3: Remove the pickup drive unit 2 406
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 406
Feed/MP drive unit 408
Introduction 408
Before performing service 408
Required tools 408
After performing service 408
Post service test 409
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 409
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 409
Step 3: Remove the right rear cover 410
Step 4: Remove the right door 411
Step 5: Remove the feed/MP drive unit 413
Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly 415
Registration drive assembly 416
Introduction 416
Before performing service 416
Required tools 416
After performing service 416
Post service test 417
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 417
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 417
Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover 418
Step 4: Remove the registration drive assembly 418
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 419
Toner collection unit (TCU) sensors 420
Introduction 420
Before performing service 420
Required tools 421
After performing service 421
Post service test 421
Step 1: Remove the TCU 421
Step 2: Remove the front cover. 421
Step 3: Remove the front top inner cover 422
Step 4: Remove the front power cover 422
Step 5: Remove the output bin 423

Step 6: Remove the paper dust brush 424
Step 7: Remove the inner front cover 424
Step 8: Remove the TCU sensors 426
Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly 426
Reservoir unit 428
Introduction 428
Before performing service 428
Required tools 428
After performing service 429
Post service test 429
Step 1: Remove the developer unit 429
Step 2: Remove the left cover 431
Step 3: Remove the laser scanner assembly 432
Step 4: Remove the front top inner cover 433
Step 5: Remove the output bin 434
Step 6: Remove the paper dust brush 434
Step 7: Remove the inner front cover 435
Step 8: Remove the reservoir unit 436
Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly 438
Auto size sensor 440
Introduction 440
Before performing service 440
Required tools 440
After performing service 440
Post service test 440
Step 1: Remove the auto size sensor 441
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 441
Fuser out sensor (on the right door) 442
Introduction 442
Before performing service 442
Required tools 442
After performing service 442
Post service test 443
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 443
Step 2: Remove the right door 444
Step 3: Remove the fuser out sensor 445
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 447
Feed 2 sensor (on the right door) 448
Introduction 448
Before performing service 448
Required tools 448

After performing service 448
Post service test 449
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 449
Step 2: Remove the right door 450
Step 3: Remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper 451
Step 4: Remove the feed 2 sensor 454
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 454
Multi-purpose (MP) unit (on the right door) 455
Introduction 455
Before performing service 455
Required tools 455
After performing service 455
Post service test 456
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 456
Step 2: Remove the right door 457
Step 3: Remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper 458
Step 4: Remove the MP unit 460
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 464
Multi-purpose (MP) empty sensor 466
Introduction 466
Before performing service 466
Required tools 466
After performing service 466
Post service test 467
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 467
Step 2: Remove the right door 468
Step 3: Remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper 470
Step 4: Remove the MP unit 472
Step 5: Remove the MP empty sensor 476
Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly 476
Multi-purpose (MP) paper length sensor 478
Introduction 478
Before performing service 478
Required tools 478
After performing service 478
Post service test 479
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 479
Step 2: Remove the right door 480
Step 3: Remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper 482
Step 4: Remove the MP unit 484
Step 5: Remove the MP paper length sensor 488

Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly 489
Multi-purpose (MP) solenoid 490
Introduction 490
Before performing service 490
Required tools 490
After performing service 490
Post service test 491
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 491
Step 2: Remove the right door 492
Step 3: Remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper 494
Step 4: Remove the MP unit 496
Step 5: Remove the MP solenoid 500
Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly 501
Output unit 503
Introduction 503
Before performing service 503
Required tools 503
After performing service 504
Post service test 504
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 504
Step 2: Remove the right door 505
Step 3: Remove the front top inner cover 507
Step 4: Remove the front power cover 507
Step 5: Remove the top right cover 508
Step 6: Remove the fuser unit 509
Step 7: Remove the output unit 510
Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly 511
Return sensor (on the output unit) 512
Introduction 512
Before performing service 512
Required tools 512
After performing service 513
Post service test 513
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 513
Step 2: Remove the right door 514
Step 3: Remove the front top inner cover 516
Step 4: Remove the front power cover 516
Step 5: Remove the top right cover 517
Step 6: Remove the fuser unit 518
Step 7: Remove the output unit 519
Step 8: Remove the return sensor 520

Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly 521
Duplex 1 sensor (on the output unit) 522
Introduction 522
Before performing service 522
Required tools 522
After performing service 523
Post service test 523
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 523
Step 2: Remove the right door 524
Step 3: Remove the front top inner cover 526
Step 4: Remove the front power cover 526
Step 5: Remove the top right cover 527
Step 6: Remove the fuser unit 528
Step 7: Remove the output unit 529
Step 8: Remove the duplex 1 sensor 530
Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly 531
Output 1 bin full sensor (on the output unit) 532
Introduction 532
Before performing service 532
Required tools 532
After performing service 533
Post service test 533
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 533
Step 2: Remove the right door 534
Step 3: Remove the front top inner cover 536
Step 4: Remove the front power cover 536
Step 5: Remove the top right cover 537
Step 6: Remove the fuser unit 538
Step 7: Remove the output unit 539
Step 8: Remove the output 1 bin full sensor 540
Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly 542
Output gate solenoid (on the output unit) 544
Introduction 544
Before performing service 544
Required tools 544
After performing service 545
Post service test 545
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 545
Step 2: Remove the right door 546
Step 3: Remove the front top inner cover 548
Step 4: Remove the front power cover 548

Step 5: Remove the top right cover 549
Step 6: Remove the fuser unit 550
Step 7: Remove the output unit 551
Step 8: Remove the output gate solenoid 552
Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly 553
Pickup unit 2 554
Introduction 554
Before performing service 554
Required tools 554
After performing service 554
Post service test 555
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 555
Step 2: Remove the right door 556
Step 3: Remove pickup unit 2 557
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 560
Pickup lifting and empty sensor (pickup unit 2) 561
Introduction 561
Before performing service 561
Required tools 561
After performing service 561
Post service test 562
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 562
Step 2: Remove the right door 563
Step 3: Remove pickup unit 2 565
Step 4: Remove the pickup lifting and empty sensor 567
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 568
Prefeed sensor 2 (pickup unit 2) 569
Introduction 569
Before performing service 569
Required tools 569
After performing service 569
Post service test 570
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 570
Step 2: Remove the right door 571
Step 3: Remove pickup unit 2 572
Step 4: Remove the prefeed sensor 2 575
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 575
Pickup unit 1 577
Introduction 577
Before performing service 577
Required tools 577

After performing service 577
Post service test 578
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 578
Step 2: Remove the right door 579
Step 3: Remove pickup unit 2 580
Step 4: Remove pickup unit 1 583
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 585
Pickup lifting and empty sensor (pickup unit 1) 586
Introduction 586
Before performing service 586
Required tools 586
After performing service 587
Post service test 587
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 587
Step 2: Remove the right door 588
Step 3: Remove pickup unit 2 590
Step 4: Remove pickup unit 1 592
Step 5: Remove the pickup lifting and empty sensor 594
Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly 595
Prefeed sensor 1 (pickup unit 1) 596
Introduction 596
Before performing service 596
Required tools 596
After performing service 596
Post service test 597
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 597
Step 2: Remove the right door 598
Step 3: Remove pickup unit 2 600
Step 4: Remove pickup unit 1 602
Step 5: Remove the prefeed sensor 1 604
Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly 605
Internal hard disk drive (HDD) 607
Introduction 607
Before performing service 607
Required tools 607
After performing service 607
Post service test 608
Step 1: Remove the front top inner cover 608
Step 2: Remove the output bin 608
Step 3: Remove the HDD 609
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 609

Registration assembly 611
Introduction 611
Before performing service 611
Required tools 611
After performing service 611
Post service test 612
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 612
Step 2: Remove the right door 613
Step 3: Remove the paper dust brush 614
Step 4: Remove the registration assembly 615
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 619
Registration sensor assembly 620
Introduction 620
Before performing service 620
Required tools 620
After performing service 620
Post service test 621
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 621
Step 2: Remove the right door 622
Step 3: Remove the paper dust brush 624
Step 4: Remove the registration assembly 624
Step 5: Remove the registration sensor assembly 628
Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly 629
High voltage terminal 631
Introduction 631
Before performing service 631
Required tools 631
After performing service 632
Post service test 632
Step 1: Remove the drum unit 632
Step 2: Remove the formatter cover 633
Step 3: Remove the lower rear cover 633
Step 4: Remove the upper rear cover 634
Step 5: Remove the left rear corner cover 634
Step 6: Remove the formatter and cage 635
Step 7: Remove the main board and cage 636
Step 8: Remove the main drive unit 638
Step 9: Remove the high voltage terminal 640
Step 10: Unpack the replacement assembly 642
Flow ADF 643
Flow ADF whole unit 643

Introduction 643
Before performing service 643
Required tools 643
After performing service 643
Post service test 643
Step 1: Remove the ADF whole unit 644
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 646
Flow ADF jam access cover 647
Introduction 647
Before performing service 647
Required tools 648
After performing service 648
Post service test 648
Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover 649
Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover 649
Step 3: Remove the document feeder jam access cover 650
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 652
Flow ADF input tray 653
Introduction 653
Before performing service 653
Required tools 653
After performing service 653
Post service test 654
Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover 655
Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover 655
Step 3: Remove the dampening unit 656
Step 4: Remove the pickup and feed unit 657
Step 5: Remove the input tray 658
Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly 658
Flow ADF contact image sensor (CIS) 660
Introduction 660
Before performing service 660
Required tools 660
After performing service 660
Post service test 661
Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover 662
Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover 662
Step 3: Remove the document feeder pickup and feed assembly 663
Step 4: Remove the paper path cover 664
Step 5: Remove the CIS assembly 664
Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly 665

Flow ADF front motor 667
Introduction 667
Before performing service 667
Required tools 667
After performing service 667
Post service test 667
Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover 668
Step 2: Remove the front motor 668
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 669
Flow ADF rear motors 671
Introduction 671
Before performing service 671
Required tools 671
After performing service 672
Post service test 672
Step 1: Identify the document feeder motors 673
Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover 674
Step 3: Remove motors 1 and 2 675
Step 4: Remove the pickup and pre-REGI motors 676
Step 5: Remove the exit motor 678
Step 6: Remove the feed motor 679
Step 7: Remove the REGI motor 680
Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly 680
Flow ADF PCA fan 681
Introduction 681
Before performing service 681
Required tools 681
After performing service 681
Post service test 681
Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover 682
Step 2: Remove the document feeder PCA fan 682
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 683
Flow ADF contact image sensor (CIS) fan 684
Introduction 684
Before performing service 684
Required tools 684
After performing service 684
Post service test 684
Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover 685
Step 2: Remove the document feeder CIS fan 685
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 686

Flow ADF ultrasonic sensor with PCA 687
Introduction 687
Before performing service 687
Required tools 687
After performing service 687
Post service test 688
Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover 689
Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover 689
Step 3: Remove the document feeder pickup and feed assembly 690
Step 4: Remove the paper path cover 691
Step 5: Remove the ultrasonic sensor with PCA 691
Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly 693
White backing 693
Introduction 694
Before performing service 694
Required tools 694
After performing service 694
Post service test 694
Step 1: Remove the white backing 694
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 695
Scanner unit (image scanner unit) 696
Scanner whole unit 696
Introduction 696
Before performing service 696
Required tools 696
After performing service 696
Post service test 697
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 697
Step 2: Remove the upper rear cover 697
Step 3: Remove the flow ADF whole unit 698
Step 4: Remove the control panel bezel 701
Step 5: Remove the control panel 701
Step 6: Remove the keyboard (z bundles) 702
Step 7: Remove the scanner whole unit 703
Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly 707
Scan glass 708
Introduction 708
Before performing service 708
Required tools 708
After performing service 708
Post service test 708

Step 1: Remove the scan glass 708
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 709
LED lamp module 710
Introduction 710
Before performing service 710
Required tools 710
After performing service 710
Post service test 711
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 711
Step 2: Remove the upper rear cover 711
Step 3: Remove the flow ADF whole unit 712
Step 4: Remove the scanner glass 714
Step 5: Remove the LED lamp module 716
Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly 717
Scanner imaging unit 718
Introduction 718
Before performing service 718
Required tools 718
After performing service 718
Post service test 718
Step 1: Remove the scanner glass 719
Step 2: Remove the scanner imaging unit 719
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 720
Scan joint board 722
Introduction 722
Before performing service 722
Required tools 722
After performing service 722
Post service test 722
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 723
Step 2: Remove the upper rear cover 723
Step 3: Remove the document feeder whole unit 723
Step 4: Remove the scan joint board 726
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 729
APS sensor 730
Introduction 730
Before performing service 730
Required tools 730
After performing service 730
Post service test 730
Step 1: Remove the document feeder whole unit 731

Step 2: Remove the scanner glass 733
Step 3: Remove the APS sensor 734
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 735
Dual cassette feeder (DCF) 737
Dual cassette feeder (DCF) right door 738
Introduction 738
Before performing service 738
Required tools 738
After performing service 738
Post service test 738
Step 1: Remove the printer right rear cover 738
Step 2: Remove the printer right door 739
Step 3: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) right door 741
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 743
Dual cassette feeder (DCF) motor 744
Introduction 744
Before performing service 744
Required tools 744
After performing service 744
Post service test 744
Step 1: Remove the DCF rear cover 744
Step 2: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) motor 745
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 746
Dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup motor 748
Introduction 748
Before performing service 748
Required tools 748
After performing service 748
Post service test 748
Step 1: Remove the DCF rear cover 748
Step 2: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup motor 749
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 749
Dual cassette feeder (DCF) PCA 750
Introduction 750
Before performing service 750
Required tools 750
After performing service 750
Post service test 750
Step 1: Remove the DCF rear cover 750
Step 2: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) PCA 751
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 751

Dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup units 753
Introduction 753
Before performing service 753
Required tools 753
After performing service 753
Post service test 753
Step 1: Remove the printer right rear cover 754
Step 2: Remove the printer right door 754
Step 3: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) right door 756
Step 4: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup units 758
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 760
Bottom high-capacity input (HCI) tray 761
Bottom HCI tray feed motor 762
Introduction 762
Before performing service 762
Required tools 762
After performing service 762
Post service test 762
Step 1: Remove the bottom HCI rear cover 762
Step 2: Remove the bottom HCI tray feed motor 763
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 764
Bottom HCI tray pickup motor 765
Introduction 765
Before performing service 765
Required tools 765
After performing service 765
Post service test 765
Step 1: Remove the bottom HCI rear cover 765
Step 2: Remove the bottom HCI tray pickup motor 766
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 766
Bottom HCI tray PCA 768
Introduction 768
Before performing service 768
Required tools 768
After performing service 768
Post service test 768
Step 1: Remove the bottom HCI rear cover 768
Step 2: Remove the bottom HCI tray PCA 769
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 769
Bottom HCI tray lift-up motor 771
Introduction 771

Before performing service 771
Required tools 771
After performing service 771
Post service test 771
Step 1: Remove the bottom HCI rear cover 771
Step 2: Remove the bottom HCI tray lift-up motor 772
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 772
Bottom HCI tray shaft motor 773
Introduction 773
Before performing service 773
Required tools 773
After performing service 773
Post service test 773
Step 1: Remove the bottom HCI rear cover 773
Step 2: Remove the bottom HCI tray shaft motor 774
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 774
Side high capacity input (sHCI) 775
Side HCI rear cover 776
Introduction 776
Before performing service 776
Required tools 776
After performing service 776
Post service test 776
Step 1: Remove the side HCI rear cover 776
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 777
Side HCI feed motor 778
Introduction 778
Before performing service 778
Required tools 778
After performing service 778
Post service test 778
Step 1: Remove the side HCI right cover 779
Step 2: Remove the side HCI cable cover 779
Step 3: Remove the side HCI rear cover 779
Step 4: Remove the side HCI feed motor 780
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 780
Side HCI pickup motor 782
Introduction 782
Before performing service 782
Required tools 782
After performing service 782

Post service test 782
Step 1: Remove the side HCI right cover 783
Step 2: Remove the side HCI cable cover 783
Step 3: Remove the side HCI rear cover 783
Step 4: Remove the side HCI pickup motor 784
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 784
Side HCI PCA 785
Introduction 785
Before performing service 785
Required tools 785
After performing service 785
Post service test 785
Step 1: Remove the side HCI right cover 786
Step 2: Remove the side HCI cable cover 786
Step 3: Remove the side HCI rear cover 786
Step 4: Remove the side HCI PCA 787
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 787
Side HCI lift-up motor 788
Introduction 788
Before performing service 788
Required tools 788
After performing service 788
Post service test 788
Step 1: Remove the side HCI right cover 789
Step 2: Remove the side HCI cable cover 789
Step 3: Remove the side HCI rear cover 789
Step 4: Remove the side HCI lift-up motor 790
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 790

4 Parts and diagrams 791
For additional service and support information 792
Order parts, accessories, and supplies 793
Ordering 793
Orderable parts 793
Related documentation and software 793
How to use the parts list and diagrams 793
Main parts 794
Main assembly 1 794
Main assembly 2 796
Output 798
First cassette 800

Second cassette 802
Main frame assembly 804
Main frame registration 806
Drive system 808
Main frame pickup 1 and 2 810
Main frame pickup 812
Cover 814
Right door 816
MP tray 818
Right door guide 820
Right door output and takeaway 822
PTB transfer 824
Flow ADF 826
Flow ADF open cover 828
Flow ADF pickup roller assembly 830
Flow ADF stacker 832
Flow ADF main 834
Flow ADF image scanner 836
Flow ADF image scanner, lower 838
Reservoir 840
Dual cassette feeder (DCF) 842
DCF main 842
DCF frame 844
DCF rear frame 846
Opt feed drive 848
DCF second pickup 850
High capacity input tray (HCI) 852
HCI main 852
HCI drive 854
HCI cassette 856
HCI frame 858
HCI main pickup 860
High capacity input tray side unit (sHCI) 862
sHCI main 1 862
sHCI main 3 864
sHCI main 5 866
sHCI main 6 868
Pickup cover unit 870
sHCI frame 872
Finishers 874
Booklet finisher 874

Mainline finisher 1 876
Mainline finisher 2 878
Mainline finisher 3 880
Mainline finisher 4 882
Mainline finisher 5 884
Mainline finisher 6 886
Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output 888
Low output, hb motor, and top guide 890
SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide 892
Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor 894
Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam 896
FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade 898
Fold roller, main blade, and top frame 900
Three fold blade 902
Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide 904
Entrance guide, mid jam, and main output 906
Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor 908
Front alignment (tamper) 910
Rear alignment (tamper) 912
Shield 914
PCB bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle 916
Finisher sub booklet 918
IPTU (bridge) 920
Inner finisher 922
Sub-inner finisher 922
Finisher sub 1 924
Finisher sub 7 926
Finisher sub 8 928
Alphabetical parts list 930
Numerical parts list 951

5 Problem solving 973
Troubleshooting process 974
Determine the problem source 974
Power subsystem 974
Power-on checks 974
Control panel checks 978
Control panel diagnostic flowcharts 978
Individual component diagnostics 983
Tools for troubleshooting: LED diagnostics 983
Tools for troubleshooting: Engine diagnostics 985

Tools for troubleshooting 987
Tools for troubleshooting 988
Problem-solving checklist 988
Step 1: Check that the printer power is on 988
Step 2: Check the control panel for error messages 988
Step 3: Test print functionality 988
Step 4: Test copy functionality 989
Step 5: Test the fax sending functionality 989
Step 6: Test the fax receiving functionality 989
Step 7: Try sending a print job from a computer 989
Step 8: Test the Plug and Print USB Drive printing functionality 989
Factors that affect printer performance 989
Print menu map 991
Print current settings pages 991
Print event log 991
Pre-boot menu options 993
Remote Admin 1002
Required software and network connection 1002
Connect a remote connection 1004
Disconnect a remote connection 1008
Control panel menus 1010
Reports menu 1010
Settings menu 1013
Copy menu (MFP only) 1057
Scan menu (MFP only) 1062
Fax menu (fax models only) 1071
Print menu 1075
Supplies menu 1076
Trays menu 1077
Troubleshooting menu 1078
Maintenance menu 1080
Backup/Restore menu 1080
Calibration/Cleaning menu 1080
USB Firmware Upgrade menu 1082
Clear paper jams 1083
Clearing original document jams 1083
Clearing paper jams 1087
Service mode (tech mode) 1096
Entering service mode 1096
Service mode menu tree 1097
Information 1101

General 1101
Supply status 1101
Software version 1101
Print reports 1102
Maintenance counts 1102
Part replacement count 1102
Diagnostics 1103
Engine diagnostics 1103
Fax diagnostics 1113
Scanner diagnostics 1118
Adjustment 1122
Image management 1128
Print test patterns 1128
Service functions 1129
Main memory clear 1129
Debug log 1129
Capture log 1129
Transfer assembly control mode 1130
Envelope rotate 1130
Print quality troubleshooting guide 1132
Image quality problems and solutions 1132
Vertical black lines 1135
Vertical light or white lines 1136
Horizontal periodic black lines, dots 1137
Horizontal periodic light/dark lines, dots 1138
Blurred image 1139
Foggy image 1140
Light image 1141
Uneven pitch and jitter image 1141
Skewed image 1143
Poor fusing performance 1143
Stain on the paper back side 1144
Setting standard tone 1145
Other errors 1148
Image system problem 1148
Fuser problem 1151
Scanner and Flow ADF problems 1153
Drive unit problem 1156
Feeding system problem 1156
Laser scanner assembly problem 1158
Electrical circuit problem 1158

Adjusting the Flow ADF skew 1164

6 Diagrams 1169
Connection Diagram (FUSER/EXIT/DUPLEX/TONER) 1170
Connection Diagram (Scanner) 1171
Connection Diagram (Laser Scanner Assembly/OPE/USB) 1172
Connection Diagram (Side/MP/Feed/Registration/Pickup) 1173
Connection Diagram (OPC/WTB/CST Lock) 1174
Connection Diagram (HVPS/LVPS/FDB) 1175

7 3,250-sheet Stapling Finisher/2,250-sheet Booklet Finisher 1177
Precautions 1178
Caution for safety 1178
Electric shock and fire safety precautions 1178
Handling precautions 1179
Removal and replacement precautions 1180
Disregarding this warning may cause bodily injury 1180
ESD precautions 1181
Product specification and description 1182
Finisher system 1182
Finisher sectional view 1182
Sensor location 1182
Roller location 1183
Jam removal guide 1185
Paper path 1186
Electrical parts layout 1187
Finisher and booklet module 1187
IPTU 1191
Punch unit 1191
Each unit functions 1192
PCA connection information 1193
Finisher PCA 1193
Switch PCA 1194
Booklet maker PCA 1194
Service approach 1195
Precautions when replacing parts 1195
Precautions when assembling and disassembling 1195
Precautions when handling PCA 1195
Releasing plastic latches 1196
Before performing service 1196
After performing service 1197

Post-service test 1197
Print-quality test 1197
Order parts, accessories, and supplies 1197
Ordering 1197
Orderable parts 1197
Removal and replacement procedures (stapler/stacker and booklet finishers) 1198
Top output bin 1200
Introduction 1200
Before performing service 1200
Required tools 1200
After performing service 1200
Post service test 1201
Step 1: Remove the top output bin 1201
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 1201
Right top cover 1202
Introduction 1202
Before performing service 1202
Required tools 1202
After performing service 1202
Post service test 1203
Step 1: Remove the right top cover 1203
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 1203
Top cover 1205
Introduction 1205
Before performing service 1205
Required tools 1205
After performing service 1205
Post service test 1206
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1206
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1206
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 1208
Front door 1209
Introduction 1209
Before performing service 1209
Required tools 1209
After performing service 1209
Post service test 1210
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1210
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1210
Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher) 1212
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 1214

Rear cover 1216
Introduction 1216
Before performing service 1216
Required tools 1216
After performing service 1216
Post service test 1217
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1217
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1217
Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher) 1219
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 1220
Front cover 1221
Introduction 1221
Before performing service 1221
Required tools 1221
After performing service 1221
Post service test 1222
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1222
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1222
Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher) 1224
Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher) 1226
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 1228
Front lower cover 1229
Introduction 1229
Before performing service 1229
Required tools 1229
After performing service 1230
Post service test 1230
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1230
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1230
Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher) 1232
Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher) 1234
Step 5: Remove the front lower cover (finisher) 1236
Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly 1236
Booklet tray 1238
Introduction 1238
Before performing service 1238
Required tools 1238
After performing service 1238
Post service test 1239
Step 1: Remove the booklet tray 1239
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 1240

Caster cover 1241
Introduction 1241
Before performing service 1241
Required tools 1241
After performing service 1241
Post service test 1242
Step 1: Remove the booklet tray (booklet finishers only) 1242
Step 2: Remove the caster cover 1243
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 1244
Lower shield assembly 1245
Introduction 1245
Before performing service 1245
Required tools 1246
After performing service 1246
Post service test 1246
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1246
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1246
Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher) 1248
Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher) 1250
Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher) 1252
Step 6: Remove the booklet tray 1253
Step 7: Remove the caster cover 1254
Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher) 1255
Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly 1257
Upper shield assembly 1258
Introduction 1258
Before performing service 1258
Required tools 1259
After performing service 1259
Post service test 1259
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1259
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1259
Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher) 1261
Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher) 1263
Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher) 1265
Step 6: Remove the booklet tray 1266
Step 7: Remove the caster cover 1267
Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher) 1268
Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher) 1270
Step 10: Unpack the replacement assembly 1272
Controller PCA 1274

Introduction 1274
Before performing service 1274
Required tools 1274
After performing service 1274
Post service test 1275
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1275
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1275
Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher) 1277
Step 4: Remove the controller PCA 1278
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 1279
Stapler unit 1280
Introduction 1280
Before performing service 1280
Required tools 1280
After performing service 1281
Post service test 1281
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1281
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1281
Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher) 1283
Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher) 1285
Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher) 1287
Step 6: Remove the staple unit 1288
Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly 1290
Dummy feed guide 1292
Introduction 1292
Before performing service 1292
Required tools 1292
After performing service 1292
Post service test 1293
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1293
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1293
Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher) 1295
Step 4: Remove the dummy feed guide (finisher) 1296
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 1297
Top jam access cover 1298
Introduction 1298
Before performing service 1298
Required tools 1298
After performing service 1299
Post service test 1299
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1299

Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1299
Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher) 1301
Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher) 1303
Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher) 1305
Step 6: Remove the feed exit motor 1306
Step 7: Remove the top jam access cover 1307
Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly 1307
Top lower feed assembly 1309
Introduction 1309
Before performing service 1309
Required tools 1309
After performing service 1310
Post service test 1310
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1310
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1310
Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher) 1312
Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher) 1314
Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher) 1316
Step 6: Remove the feed exit motor (finisher) 1317
Step 7: Remove the top jam access cover 1318
Step 8: Remove the top lower feed assembly (finisher) 1318
Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly 1321
Ejector unit 1322
Introduction 1322
Before performing service 1322
Required tools 1323
After performing service 1323
Post service test 1323
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1323
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1323
Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher) 1325
Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher) 1327
Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher) 1329
Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher) 1330
Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher) 1331
Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher) 1332
Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher) 1334
Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher) 1336
Step 11: Unpack the replacement assembly 1345
Front tamper unit 1347
Introduction 1347

Before performing service 1347
Required tools 1348
After performing service 1348
Post service test 1348
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1348
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1348
Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher) 1350
Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher) 1352
Step 5: Remove the rear cover 1354
Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher) 1355
Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher) 1356
Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher) 1357
Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher) 1359
Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher) 1361
Step 11: Remove the front tamper unit 1370
Step 12: Unpack the replacement assembly 1371
Rear tamper unit 1372
Introduction 1372
Before performing service 1372
Required tools 1373
After performing service 1373
Post service test 1373
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1373
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1373
Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher) 1375
Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher) 1377
Step 5: Remove the rear cover 1379
Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher) 1380
Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher) 1381
Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher) 1382
Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher) 1384
Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher) 1386
Step 11: Remove the rear tamper unit 1395
Step 12: Unpack the replacement assembly 1396
Feed entrance motor (M1) 1397
Introduction 1397
Before performing service 1397
Required tools 1397
After performing service 1397
Post service test 1398
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1398

Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1398
Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher) 1400
Step 4: Remove the feed entrance motor (M1) 1401
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 1402
Feed exit motor (M2) 1403
Introduction 1403
Before performing service 1403
Required tools 1403
After performing service 1403
Post service test 1404
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1404
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1404
Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher) 1406
Step 4: Remove the feed exit motor (M2) 1407
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 1408
Buffer motor, gear, and sensor (M3) 1409
Introduction 1409
Before performing service 1409
Required tools 1409
After performing service 1409
Post service test 1410
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1410
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1410
Step 3: Remove the front cover (finisher) 1412
Step 4: Remove the buffer motor, gear, and sensor 1413
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 1416
Front tamper motor (M6) 1417
Introduction 1417
Before performing service 1417
Required tools 1418
After performing service 1418
Post service test 1418
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1418
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1419
Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher) 1420
Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher) 1422
Step 5: Remove the rear cover 1424
Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher) 1425
Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher) 1426
Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher) 1427
Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher) 1429

Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher) 1431
Step 11: Remove the front tamper (finisher) 1440
Step 12: Remove the front tamper motor (M7) 1441
Step 13: Unpack the replacement assembly 1442
Rear tamper motor (M7) 1443
Introduction 1443
Before performing service 1443
Required tools 1444
After performing service 1444
Post service test 1444
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1444
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1445
Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher) 1446
Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher) 1448
Step 5: Remove the rear cover 1450
Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher) 1451
Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher) 1452
Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher) 1453
Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher) 1455
Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher) 1457
Step 11: Remove the rear tamper (finisher) 1466
Step 12: Remove the rear tamper motor (M7) 1467
Step 13: Unpack the replacement assembly 1468
SCU motor (M10) 1469
Introduction 1469
Before performing service 1469
Required tools 1470
After performing service 1470
Post service test 1470
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1470
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1470
Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher) 1472
Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher) 1474
Step 5: Remove the rear cover 1476
Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher) 1477
Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher) 1478
Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher) 1479
Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher) 1481
Step 10: Remove the SCU motor (M10) 1483
Step 11: Unpack the replacement assembly 1485
Main tray moving motor (M11) 1487

Introduction 1487
Before performing service 1487
Required tools 1487
After performing service 1487
Post service test 1488
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1488
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1488
Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher) 1490
Step 4: Remove the main tray moving motor (M11) 1491
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 1495
Booklet finisher front cover 1497
Introduction 1497
Before performing service 1497
Required tools 1497
After performing service 1497
Post service test 1498
Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover 1498
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 1498
Booklet finisher 1500
Introduction 1500
Before performing service 1500
Required tools 1500
After performing service 1500
Post service test 1501
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1501
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1501
Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher) 1503
Step 4: Remove the booklet finisher 1504
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 1509
Booklet finisher PCA 1511
Introduction 1511
Before performing service 1511
Required tools 1511
After performing service 1511
Post service test 1512
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1512
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1512
Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher) 1514
Step 4: Remove the booklet finisher 1515
Step 5: Remove the booklet finisher PCA 1520
Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly 1522

Booklet finisher fold stopper unit 1523
Introduction 1523
Before performing service 1523
Required tools 1523
After performing service 1524
Post service test 1524
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1524
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1524
Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher) 1526
Step 4: Remove the booklet finisher front cover 1527
Step 5: Remove the booklet finisher lower right shield 1528
Step 6: Remove the fold stopper unit 1529
Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly 1534
Booklet feed entrance motor (M13) 1535
Introduction 1535
Before performing service 1535
Required tools 1535
After performing service 1535
Post service test 1536
Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover 1536
Step 2: Remove the booklet feed entrance motor (M13) 1536
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 1537
TE presser motor (M14) 1538
Introduction 1538
Before performing service 1538
Required tools 1538
After performing service 1538
Post service test 1539
Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover 1539
Step 2: Remove the TE presser motor (M14) 1539
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 1540
Stopper moving motor (M16) 1541
Introduction 1541
Before performing service 1541
Required tools 1541
After performing service 1541
Post service test 1542
Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover 1542
Step 2: Remove the booklet finisher lower right shield 1542
Step 3: Remove the stopper moving motor (M16) 1544
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 1544

Separate pawl motor (M17) 1546
Introduction 1546
Before performing service 1546
Required tools 1546
After performing service 1546
Post service test 1547
Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover 1547
Step 2: Remove the separate pawl motor (M17) 1547
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 1548
Folding roller motor (M18) 1549
Introduction 1549
Before performing service 1549
Required tools 1549
After performing service 1549
Post service test 1550
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1550
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1550
Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher) 1552
Step 4: Remove the folding roller motor (M18) 1553
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 1554
Blade motor (M19) 1555
Introduction 1555
Before performing service 1555
Required tools 1555
After performing service 1555
Post service test 1556
Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover 1556
Step 2: Remove the booklet finisher lower right shield 1556
Step 3: Remove the blade motor (M19) 1558
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 1558
C fold motor (M20) 1560
Introduction 1560
Before performing service 1560
Required tools 1560
After performing service 1560
Post service test 1561
Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover 1561
Step 2: Remove the C fold motor 1561
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 1566
Problem solving 1567
Control panel message document (CPMD) 1568

Control-panel messages and event log entries 1568
Finisher system diagram 1569

8 Inner finisher 1571
Precautions 1572
Caution for safety 1572
Electric shock and fire safety precautions 1572
Handling precautions 1573
Removal and replacement precautions 1574
Disregarding this warning may cause bodily injury 1574
ESD precautions 1575
Product Specification and Description 1576
Specification 1576
Finisher System 1581
Sectional view 1581
Paper path 1582
Electrical parts layout 1583
Block Diagram 1585
PBA Connection Information 1585
Service approach 1586
Precautions when replacing parts 1586
Precautions when assembling and disassembling 1586
Precautions when handling PCA 1586
Releasing plastic latches 1587
Before performing service 1587
After performing service 1587
Post-service test 1587
Print-quality test 1588
Order parts, accessories, and supplies 1588
Ordering 1588
Orderable parts 1588
Removal and replacment (inner finisher) 1589
Entrance sensor 1590
Introduction 1590
Before performing service 1590
Required tools 1590
After performing service 1590
Post service test 1590
Step 1: Remove the entrance sensor 1591
Entrance motor 1594
Introduction 1594

Before performing service 1594
Required tools 1594
After performing service 1594
Post service test 1594
Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers 1595
Step 2: Remove the entrance motor 1598
Exit sensor 1600
Introduction 1600
Before performing service 1600
Required tools 1600
After performing service 1600
Post service test 1600
Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers 1601
Step 2: Remove the exit sensor 1604
Exit motor 1605
Introduction 1605
Before performing service 1605
Required tools 1605
After performing service 1605
Post service test 1605
Step 1: Remove the exit motor 1606
Sub Paddle Shaft Sub assembly 1608
Introduction 1608
Before performing service 1608
Required tools 1608
After performing service 1608
Post service test 1608
Step 1: Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly 1609
Front Jogger Motor 1612
Introduction 1612
Before performing service 1612
Required tools 1612
After performing service 1612
Post service test 1612
Step 1: Remove the front jogger motor 1613
Front Jogger Home Sensor 1624
Introduction 1624
Before performing service 1624
Required tools 1624
After performing service 1624
Post service test 1624

Step 1: Remove the front jogger home sensor 1625
Rear Jogger Motor 1636
Introduction 1636
Before performing service 1636
Required tools 1636
After performing service 1636
Post service test 1636
Step 1: Remove the rear jogger motor 1637
Rear Jogger Home Sensor 1645
Introduction 1645
Before performing service 1645
Required tools 1645
After performing service 1645
Post service test 1645
Step 1: Remove the rear jogger home sensor 1646
Stapler 1651
Introduction 1651
Before performing service 1651
Required tools 1651
After performing service 1651
Post service test 1651
Step 1: Remove the stapler 1652
Stapler position sensor assembly 1654
Introduction 1654
Before performing service 1654
Required tools 1654
After performing service 1654
Post service test 1654
Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers 1655
Step 2: Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly 1658
Step 3: Remove the staple position sensor assembly 1661
Traverse Motor 1665
Introduction 1665
Before performing service 1665
Required tools 1665
After performing service 1665
Post service test 1665
Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers 1666
Step 2: Remove the traverse motor 1669
Stacker Motor 1670
Introduction 1670

Before performing service 1670
Required tools 1670
After performing service 1670
Post service test 1670
Step 1: Remove the stacker motor 1671
Stacker Encoder Sensor 1677
Introduction 1677
Before performing service 1677
Required tools 1677
After performing service 1677
Post service test 1677
Step 1: Remove the stacker encoder sensor 1678
Stacker Lower Limit Switch 1684
Introduction 1684
Before performing service 1684
Required tools 1684
After performing service 1684
Post service test 1684
Step 1: Remove the stacker lower limit switch 1685
Stack Beam Sensor 1691
Introduction 1691
Before performing service 1691
Required tools 1691
After performing service 1691
Post service test 1691
Step 1: Remove the stack beam sensor 1692
Stack Position Sensor 1696
Introduction 1696
Before performing service 1696
Required tools 1696
After performing service 1696
Post service test 1696
Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers 1697
Step 2: Remove the stack position sensor 1700
Paper Holding Lever Solenoid 1706
Introduction 1706
Before performing service 1706
Required tools 1706
After performing service 1706
Post service test 1706
Step 1: Remove the paper holding lever solenoid 1707

Paper Support Motor 1714
Introduction 1714
Before performing service 1714
Required tools 1714
After performing service 1714
Post service test 1714
Step 1: Remove the stack position sensor 1715
Step 2: Remove the paper support motor 1721
Paper Support Home Sensor 1723
Introduction 1723
Before performing service 1723
Required tools 1723
After performing service 1723
Post service test 1723
Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers 1724
Step 2: Remove the stack position sensor 1727
Step 3: Remove the paper support home sensor 1733
Ejector Motor assembly 1735
Introduction 1735
Before performing service 1735
Required tools 1735
After performing service 1735
Post service test 1735
Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers 1736
Step 2: Remove the stack position sensor 1739
Step 3: Remove the paper ejector motor assembly 1745
Main Paddle Motor 1749
Introduction 1749
Before performing service 1749
Required tools 1749
After performing service 1749
Post service test 1749
Step 1: Remove the main paddle motor 1750
Main Paddle Home Sensor 1751
Introduction 1751
Before performing service 1751
Required tools 1751
After performing service 1751
Post service test 1751
Step 1: Remove the main paddle home sensor 1752
Main Paddle 1753

Introduction 1753
Before performing service 1753
Required tools 1753
After performing service 1753
Post service test 1753
Step 1: Remove the main paddle 1754
Ejector assembly 1755
Introduction 1755
Before performing service 1755
Required tools 1755
After performing service 1755
Post service test 1755
Step 1: Remove the stack position sensor 1756
Step 2: Remove the paper ejector motor assembly 1762
Step 3: Remove the paper ejector assembly 1766
Punch Dust Full Sensor 1767
Introduction 1767
Before performing service 1767
Required tools 1767
After performing service 1767
Post service test 1767
Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers 1768
Step 2: Remove the punch dust full sensor 1771
Door Switch 1772
Introduction 1772
Before performing service 1772
Required tools 1772
After performing service 1772
Post service test 1772
Step 1: Remove the door switch 1773
Top Door Switch 1776
Introduction 1776
Before performing service 1776
Required tools 1776
After performing service 1776
Post service test 1776
Step 1: Remove the top door switch 1777
End Fence Home Sensor 1781
Introduction 1781
Before performing service 1781
Required tools 1781

After performing service 1781
Post service test 1781
Step 1: Remove the end fence home position sensor 1782
Problem solving 1783
Control panel message document (CPMD) 1568
Control-panel messages and event log entries 1784
Block Diagram 1785

Appendix A Appendix: Printer specifications 1787
Printer dimensions 1788
Printer space requirements 1789
Power consumption, electrical specifications, and acoustic emissions 1790
Certificate of Volatility 1791

Glossary 1793

Index 1801

List of tables

Table 2-1 General specifications 11
Table 2-2 Print specifications 13
Table 2-3 Scan specifications 16
Table 2-4 Copy specifications 17
Table 2-5 Supplies 19
Table 2-6 Maintenance table 21
Table 2-7 Paper handling specifications 22
Table 2-8 Network interface 28
Table 2-9 Software and solutions 29
Table 2-10 Options list 32
Table 2-11 Option specifications 33
Table 2-12 Front view 37
Table 2-13 Printer rear view 38
Table 2-14 Inner view 39
Table 2-15 Rollers 41
Table 2-16 Roller period table 42
Table 2-17 Sensor, motor, solenoid 43
Table 2-18 Basic cassette 45
Table 2-19 Paper transfer belt unit 58
Table 2-20 Laser scanner assembly overview 61
Table 2-21 Laser scanning optical path 62
Table 2-22 Pickup and cassette lift drive 64
Table 2-23 Feed drive 65
Table 2-24 Registration drive 66
Table 2-25 Fuser release/output drive 67
Table 2-26 Drive motor 68
Table 2-27 Main drive unit motors 69
Table 2-28 Toner supply drive 70
Table 2-29 Toner reservoir drive 70
Table 2-30 Flow ADF overview 81
Table 2-31 Flow ADF sensors 82
Table 2-32 Connections 95

Table 2-33 Connections 98
Table 2-34 Connection 99
Table 2-35 Connections 100
Table 2-36 Connections 102
Table 2-37 Connections 104
Table 2-38 Connections 106
Table 2-39 HVPS PCA Connections 107
Table 2-40 Connections 109
Table 2-41 Connections 111
Table 2-42 Connections 112
Table 2-43 Connection 112
Table 2-44 Connections 113
Table 2-45 Connections 113
Table 2-46 DCF paper feeding system 114
Table 2-47 DCF electric parts locations, descriptions, and functions 116
Table 2-48 DCF PCA connection 117
Table 2-49 HCI paper feeding system 118
Table 2-50 HCI electric parts locations, descriptions, and functions 120
Table 2-51 HCI PCA connection 121
Table 2-52 sHCI paper feeding system 122
Table 2-53 sHCI electric parts locations, descriptions, and functions 124
Table 2-54 sHCI PCA connection 125
Table 3-1 Document feeder motors 673
Table 4-1 Main assembly 795
Table 4-2 Main assembly 2 797
Table 4-3 Output 799
Table 4-4 First cassette 801
Table 4-5 Second cassette 803
Table 4-6 Main assembly frame 805
Table 4-7 Main frame registration assembly 807
Table 4-8 Drive system 809
Table 4-9 Frame main pickup 1 and 2 811
Table 4-10 Frame main pickup 813
Table 4-11 Cover 815
Table 4-12 Right door 817
Table 4-13 MP tray 819
Table 4-14 Right door guide 821
Table 4-15 Right door output and takeaway 823
Table 4-16 PTB transfer 825
Table 4-17 Flow ADF 827
Table 4-18 Flow ADF open cover 829

Table 4-19 Flow ADF pickup roller assembly 831
Table 4-20 Flow ADF stacker 833
Table 4-21 Flow ADF main 835
Table 4-22 Flow ADF image scanner 837
Table 4-23 Flow ADF image scanner, lower 839
Table 4-24 Reservoir 841
Table 4-25 DCF main 843
Table 4-26 DCF frame 845
Table 4-27 DCF rear frame 847
Table 4-28 Opt feed drive 849
Table 4-29 DCF second pickup 851
Table 4-30 HCI main 853
Table 4-31 HCI drive 855
Table 4-32 HCI cassette 857
Table 4-33 HCI frame 859
Table 4-34 HCI main pickup 861
Table 4-35 sHCI main 1 863
Table 4-36 sHCI main 3 865
Table 4-37 sHCI main 5 867
Table 4-38 sHCI main 6 869
Table 4-39 Pickup cover unit 871
Table 4-40 sHCI frame 873
Table 4-41 Booklet finisher 875
Table 4-42 Mainline finisher 1 877
Table 4-43 Mainline finisher 2 879
Table 4-44 Mainline finisher 3 881
Table 4-45 Mainline finisher 4 883
Table 4-46 Mainline finisher 5 885
Table 4-47 Mainline finisher 6 887
Table 4-48 Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output 889
Table 4-49 Low output, hb motor, and top guide 891
Table 4-50 SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide 893
Table 4-51 Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor 895
Table 4-52 Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam 897
Table 4-53 FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade 899
Table 4-54 Fold roller, main blade, and top frame 901
Table 4-55 Three fold blade 903
Table 4-56 Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide 905
Table 4-57 Entrance guide, mid jam, and main output 907
Table 4-58 Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor 909
Table 4-59 Front alignment (tamper) 911

Table 4-60 Rear alignment (tamper) 913
Table 4-61 Shield 915
Table 4-62 PCB bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle 917
Table 4-63 Finisher sub booklet 919
Table 4-64 IPTU (bridge) 921
Table 4-65 Sub-inner finisher 923
Table 4-66 Finisher sub 1 925
Table 4-67 Finisher sub 7 927
Table 4-68 Finisher sub 8 929
Table 5-8 Reports menu 1010
Table 5-9 Settings menu 1013
Table 5-10 Copy menu (MFP only) 1057
Table 5-11 Scan menu (MFP) 1062
Table 5-12 Fax menu (fax models only) 1071
Table 5-13 Print Options menu 1075
Table 5-14 Supplies menu 1076
Table 5-15 Trays menu 1077
Table 5-16 Troubleshooting 1078
Table 5-17 Backup/Restore menu 1080
Table 5-18 Calibrate/Cleaning menu 1081
Table 5-19 Information 1097
Table 5-20 Maintenance counts 1098
Table 5-21 Diagnostics 1099
Table 5-22 Service functions 1100
Table 5-23 Troubleshooting procedure 1135
Table 5-24 Troubleshooting procedure 1136
Table 5-25 Troubleshooting procedure 1138
Table 5-26 Troubleshooting procedure 1139
Table 5-27 Troubleshooting procedure 1139
Table 5-28 Troubleshooting procedure 1140
Table 5-29 Troubleshooting procedure 1141
Table 5-30 Troubleshooting procedure 1141
Table 5-31 Troubleshooting procedure 1143
Table 5-32 Troubleshooting procedure 1144
Table 5-33 Troubleshooting procedure 1145
Table 7-1 Sensor locations 1182
Table 7-2 Roller location 1183
Table 7-3 Jam removal guide 1185
Table 7-4 Paper path 1186
Table 7-5 Electrical parts layout 1188
Table 7-6 IPTU 1191

Table 7-7 Punch unit 1191
Table 7-8 1192
Table 7-9 Finisher PCA 1193
Table 7-10 Switch PCA 1194
Table 8-1 Paper Size Specification 1576
Table 8-2 Media performance 1579
Table 8-3 Finisher system—sectional view 1581
Table 8-4 Finisher system—paper path 1582
Table 8-5 Finisher system—electrical parts layout 1583
Table 8-6 Finisher system—PBA connection information 1585

List of figures

Figure 2-1 Options 31
Figure 2-2 Printer front view 37
Figure 2-3 Printer rear view 38
Figure 2-4 Inner view 39
Figure 2-5 Rollers 41
Figure 2-6 Sensor, motor, solenoid 43
Figure 2-7 Basic cassette 45
Figure 2-8 Pickup unit 1 46
Figure 2-9 Pickup unit 2 46
Figure 2-10 Registration roller 47
Figure 2-11 MP feeder assembly 47
Figure 2-12 Paper separation 48
Figure 2-13 Fuser unit 49
Figure 2-14 Fuser drive 50
Figure 2-15 Fuser unit temperature control 51
Figure 2-16 Loop control 52
Figure 2-17 Printing process overview 53
Figure 2-18 Drum unit 54
Figure 2-19 Drum drive 54
Figure 2-20 Developer unit 55
Figure 2-21 Developer auger 56
Figure 2-22 Toner cartridge 57
Figure 2-23 Paper transfer belt unit 58
Figure 2-24 Transfer belt drive 59
Figure 2-25 Cleaning blade 60
Figure 2-26 Laser scanner assembly overview 61
Figure 2-27 Laser scanning optical path 62
Figure 2-28 Laser synchronizing detectors 63
Figure 2-29 Pickup and cassette lift drive 64
Figure 2-30 Feed drive 65
Figure 2-31 Registration drive 66
Figure 2-32 Fuser release/output drive 67

Figure 2-33 Drive motor 68
Figure 2-34 Main drive unit motors 69
Figure 2-35 Toner supply drive 70
Figure 2-36 Toner reservoir drive 70
Figure 2-37 Scanner system overview 71
Figure 2-38 Scan process 72
Figure 2-39 Image processing 73
Figure 2-40 Scanning system components 74
Figure 2-41 FR carriage 75
Figure 2-42 HR carriage 76
Figure 2-43 Imaging unit 76
Figure 2-44 Wire driving 77
Figure 2-45 Timing belt 78
Figure 2-46 Shading sheet 79
Figure 2-47 Remove scan locking screw 79
Figure 2-48 Tighten scan locking screw 80
Figure 2-49 Flow ADF overview 81
Figure 2-50 Flow ADF sensors 82
Figure 2-51 Flow ADF Ultra Sonic Multifeed 83
Figure 2-53 Flow ADF document lifting drive system 84
Figure 2-54 Flow ADF Scan-In Roller Release Drive System 84
Figure 2-55 Flow ADF Registration 85
Figure 2-56 Flow ADF Scanning Position 86
Figure 2-57 MSO 1 86
Figure 2-58 MSO 2 87
Figure 2-59 MSO 3 87
Figure 2-60 Dual sensor cleaning method 88
Figure 2-61 Dual sensor cleaning method 88
Figure 2-64 Block diagram 93
Figure 2-65 Clock diagram 94
Figure 2-66 Connection information 95
Figure 2-67 Block diagram 96
Figure 2-68 Clock diagram 97
Figure 2-69 Connection information 98
Figure 2-70 MSOK 99
Figure 2-71 LVPS PCA (Type 5) 100
Figure 2-72 LVPS PCA (Type 3) 102
Figure 2-73 LVPS PCA (Type 4) 104
Figure 2-74 Fuser drive board 106
Figure 2-75 HVPS PCA 107
Figure 2-76 Eraser PCA 109

Figure 2-77 Fuser PCA 109
Figure 2-78 Waste sensor PCA 110
Figure 2-79 Paper size sensor PCA 110
Figure 2-80 Flow ADF PCA 111
Figure 2-81 Scan joint PCA 112
Figure 2-82 CCDM PCA 112
Figure 2-83 WLED IF PCA 113
Figure 2-84 WLED PCA 113
Figure 2-85 Paper feeding system 114
Figure 2-86 Paper path 115
Figure 2-87 Electric parts locations, descriptions, and functions 116
Figure 2-88 PCA connection and DCF 117
Figure 2-89 Paper feeding system 118
Figure 2-90 HCI paper path 119
Figure 2-91 Electric parts locations, descriptions, and functions 120
Figure 2-92 HCI PCA connection 121
Figure 2-93 Paper feeding system 122
Figure 2-94 sHCI paper path 123
Figure 2-95 sHCI electric parts locations, descriptions, and functions 124
Figure 2-96 sHCI PCA connection 125
Figure 3-1 Open the front door 137
Figure 3-2 Remove the TCU 137
Figure 3-3 Remove paper dust stick 138
Figure 3-4 Remove the paper dust 138
Figure 3-5 Install the paper dust stick 138
Figure 3-6 Install the TCU 139
Figure 3-7 Close the front door 139
Figure 3-8 Clean the scanner glass 140
Figure 3-9 Peel back the white backing and release one tab 140
Figure 3-10 Clean flow document feeder white bar 141
Figure 3-11 Remove the formatter cover 144
Figure 3-12 Locate the TPM 145
Figure 3-13 Connect the FIH 148
Figure 3-14 Release the HIP cover 151
Figure 3-15 Remove the HIP cover 151
Figure 3-16 Identify USB connector 152
Figure 3-17 Select USB cable 152
Figure 3-18 Install the USB cable 153
Figure 3-19 Install the white power connector 153
Figure 3-20 Attach the metal ground connector 154
Figure 3-21 Position the NFC accessory in the HIP recess 154

Figure 3-22 Install the NFC accessory 155
Figure 3-23 Remove the TCU 158
Figure 3-24 Loosen one screw 160
Figure 3-25 Remove the drum unit 160
Figure 3-26 Remove three screws and disconnect the small, black cable connector 163
Figure 3-27 Remove the developer unit 163
Figure 3-28 Open the developer unit 164
Figure 3-29 Distribute the developer powder 164
Figure 3-30 Fuser unit screw locations 167
Figure 3-31 Fuser unit removal 167
Figure 3-32 Remove the connector cover 170
Figure 3-33 Disconnect one connector 170
Figure 3-34 Remove one screw and position the lever 171
Figure 3-35 Remove one screw and position the lever 171
Figure 3-36 Remove the PTB assembly 172
Figure 3-37 Remove the two cassettes 175
Figure 3-38 Slide the return guide 175
Figure 3-39 Remove rollers 176
Figure 3-40 Coupler locations 176
Figure 3-41 Remove cover 179
Figure 3-42 Remove cover 180
Figure 3-43 MP tray flag orientation 180
Figure 3-44 Remove the MP pickup/reverse/feed roller 181
Figure 3-45 Remove the pickup roller assembly 184
Figure 3-46 Remove the pickup roller assembly cover 184
Figure 3-47 Remove the pickup roller components 185
Figure 3-48 Remove the pickup roller assembly 186
Figure 3-49 Pickup roller components-disassembled 186
Figure 3-50 Remove the separation roller cover 189
Figure 3-51 Remove one plastic clip 189
Figure 3-52 Remove the separation roller 190
Figure 3-53 Remove the separation roller 190
Figure 3-54 Remove the formatter cover 193
Figure 3-55 Remove the formatter cover 196
Figure 3-56 Remove the formatter cover 199
Figure 3-57 Remove the formatter cover 202
Figure 3-58 Remove the formatter cover 205
Figure 3-59 Remove the document feeder bezel 209
Figure 3-60 Remove the control panel screws and disconnect connectors 210
Figure 3-61 Remove the USB interconnect cable 210
Figure 3-62 Remove the document feeder bezel 213

Figure 3-63 Remove the control panel screws and disconnect connectors 214
Figure 3-64 Remove the USB interconnect cable 214
Figure 3-65 Disconnect one FFC 215
Figure 3-66 Remove the control-panel keyboard 215
Figure 3-67 Remove the IPTU 218
Figure 3-68 Remove the front top inner cover 222
Figure 3-69 Remove the front top inner cover 224
Figure 3-70 Remove two screws and rotate the cover 224
Figure 3-71 Remove the front power cover 225
Figure 3-72 Remove the front top inner cover 227
Figure 3-73 Remove two screws and rotate the cover 228
Figure 3-74 Remove the front power cover 228
Figure 3-75 Remove one screw and the power switch board 229
Figure 3-76 Remove two screws and the power switch button 229
Figure 3-77 Remove the front top inner cover 232
Figure 3-78 Remove the output bin 232
Figure 3-79 Remove the front top inner cover 235
Figure 3-80 Remove two screws and rotate the cover 236
Figure 3-81 Remove the front power cover 236
Figure 3-82 Remove the top right cover 237
Figure 3-83 Left dummy cover 239
Figure 3-84 Remove the left cover 239
Figure 3-85 Remove the formatter cover 242
Figure 3-86 Remove the lower rear cover 242
Figure 3-87 Remove the formatter cover 245
Figure 3-88 Remove the lower rear cover 246
Figure 3-89 Remove the upper rear cover 246
Figure 3-90 Remove the formatter cover 249
Figure 3-91 Remove the left rear corner cover 249
Figure 3-92 Remove four screws 252
Figure 3-93 Remove the right rear cover 252
Figure 3-94 Remove four screws 255
Figure 3-95 Remove the right rear cover 255
Figure 3-96 Disconnect one connector 256
Figure 3-97 Release the right hinge 256
Figure 3-98 Release the left dampener 257
Figure 3-99 Remove the right door 257
Figure 3-100 Remove the TCU 260
Figure 3-101 Remove the paper dust brush 260
Figure 3-102 Remove the front cover 263
Figure 3-103 Remove the front cover 266

Figure 3-104 Remove the front top inner cover 267
Figure 3-105 Remove two screws and rotate the cover 267
Figure 3-106 Remove the front power cover 268
Figure 3-107 Remove the output bin 268
Figure 3-108 Remove the TCU 269
Figure 3-109 Remove the paper dust brush 269
Figure 3-110 Screw locations 270
Figure 3-111 Remove two screw caps and two screws 270
Figure 3-112 Remove the inner front cover 271
Figure 3-113 Remove the front cover 273
Figure 3-114 Remove the front top inner cover 274
Figure 3-115 Remove two screws and rotate the cover 274
Figure 3-116 Remove the front power cover 275
Figure 3-117 Remove the output bin 275
Figure 3-118 Remove the paper dust brush 276
Figure 3-119 Remove seven screws 276
Figure 3-120 Remove the inner cover 277
Figure 3-121 Remove one screw and the cover open sensor 278
Figure 3-122 Remove the formatter cover 280
Figure 3-123 Remove the lower rear cover 281
Figure 3-124 Remove the LVPS cover 281
Figure 3-125 Left dummy cover 284
Figure 3-126 Remove the left cover 284
Figure 3-127 Remove two screws 285
Figure 3-128 Remove the laser scanner assembly 285
Figure 3-129 Remove the TCU 288
Figure 3-130 Loosen one screw 289
Figure 3-131 Remove the drum unit 289
Figure 3-132 Remove three screws and disconnect the small, black cable connector 290
Figure 3-133 Remove the developer unit 290
Figure 3-134 Open the developer unit 291
Figure 3-135 Distribute the developer powder 291
Figure 3-136 Left dummy cover 292
Figure 3-137 Remove the left cover 292
Figure 3-138 Remove the formatter cover 293
Figure 3-139 Remove the lower rear cover 293
Figure 3-140 Remove the fan duct 294
Figure 3-141 Disconnect one connector 294
Figure 3-142 Remove two screws 295
Figure 3-143 Release one tab 295
Figure 3-144 Remove the developer fan shroud 296

Figure 3-145 Release six tabs 296
Figure 3-146 Remove the developer fan 297
Figure 3-147 Install the developer fan 297
Figure 3-148 Remove the formatter cover 300
Figure 3-149 Left dummy cover 301
Figure 3-150 Remove the left cover 301
Figure 3-151 Remove the HVPS board 302
Figure 3-152 Remove the formatter cover 304
Figure 3-153 Remove the lower rear cover 305
Figure 3-154 Remove the upper rear cover 305
Figure 3-155 Remove the left rear corner cover 306
Figure 3-156 Remove one screw 306
Figure 3-157 Disconnect formatter connectors and screws 307
Figure 3-158 Identify the formatter cables 307
Figure 3-159 Disconnect one connector 308
Figure 3-160 Remove the main board 308
Figure 3-161 Position of MSOK board 309
Figure 3-162 Install the MSOK board 309
Figure 3-163 Install the flat cable 310
Figure 3-164 Remove the formatter cover 312
Figure 3-165 Remove the lower rear cover 313
Figure 3-166 Remove the upper rear cover 313
Figure 3-167 Remove the left rear corner cover 314
Figure 3-168 Remove one screw 314
Figure 3-169 Disconnect formatter connectors and screws 315
Figure 3-170 Identify the formatter cables 315
Figure 3-171 Disconnect one connector 316
Figure 3-172 Remove one screw 316
Figure 3-173 Remove five screws 317
Figure 3-174 Install the flat cable 317
Figure 3-175 Remove the toner supply motor 318
Figure 3-176 Remove the front cover 320
Figure 3-177 Remove the front top inner cover 321
Figure 3-178 Remove two screws and rotate the cover 321
Figure 3-179 Remove the front power cover 322
Figure 3-180 Remove the output bin 322
Figure 3-181 Remove the TCU 323
Figure 3-182 Remove the paper dust brush 323
Figure 3-183 Screw locations 324
Figure 3-184 Remove two screw caps and two screws 324
Figure 3-185 Remove the inner front cover 325

Figure 3-186 Left dummy cover 325
Figure 3-187 Remove the left cover 326
Figure 3-188 Disconnect one connector 326
Figure 3-189 Remove the crum connector 327
Figure 3-190 Remove the formatter cover 329
Figure 3-191 Remove the lower rear cover 330
Figure 3-192 Remove the LVPS fans 330
Figure 3-193 Correct installation of LVPS fans 331
Figure 3-194 Remove the formatter cover 333
Figure 3-195 Remove the lower rear cover 334
Figure 3-196 Remove the LVPS cover 334
Figure 3-197 Remove LVPS board 1 335
Figure 3-198 Remove the formatter cover 337
Figure 3-199 Remove the lower rear cover 338
Figure 3-200 Remove the LVPS cover 338
Figure 3-201 LVPS board 2 339
Figure 3-202 Remove the formatter cover 341
Figure 3-203 Remove the lower rear cover 342
Figure 3-204 Remove the upper rear cover 342
Figure 3-205 Remove the shield-LVPS sub upper 343
Figure 3-206 LVPS board 3 343
Figure 3-207 Remove the formatter cover 346
Figure 3-208 Remove the lower rear cover 347
Figure 3-209 Remove the LVPS cover 347
Figure 3-210 Fuser drive board 348
Figure 3-211 Remove the formatter cover 350
Figure 3-212 Remove the lower rear cover 351
Figure 3-213 Remove the upper rear cover 351
Figure 3-214 Disconnect connectors and remove screws 352
Figure 3-215 Disconnect one connector 352
Figure 3-216 LVPS connectors installation 353
Figure 3-217 Release the harness and remove three screws 353
Figure 3-218 Disconnect one connector 353
Figure 3-219 Release five tabs 354
Figure 3-220 Remove the fuser fan 354
Figure 3-221 Loosen one screw 357
Figure 3-222 Remove the drum unit 358
Figure 3-223 Remove three screws and disconnect the small, black cable connector 358
Figure 3-224 Remove the developer unit 359
Figure 3-225 Open the developer unit 359
Figure 3-226 Distribute the developer powder 360

Figure 3-227 Remove the formatter cover 361
Figure 3-228 Remove the lower rear cover 361
Figure 3-229 Disconnect one connector and release two retainers 362
Figure 3-230 Remove the main drive unit 362
Figure 3-231 Rotate the coupler 363
Figure 3-232 Remove the formatter cover 365
Figure 3-233 Remove the lower rear cover 366
Figure 3-234 Remove the LVPS cover 366
Figure 3-235 Remove the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage 367
Figure 3-236 Remove the inductor unit 367
Figure 3-237 Remove the formatter cover 370
Figure 3-238 Remove the lower rear cover 371
Figure 3-239 Remove the LVPS cover 371
Figure 3-240 Remove the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage 372
Figure 3-241 Remove the CST rail cover 372
Figure 3-242 Remove the auto closing unit 373
Figure 3-243 Remove the formatter cover 375
Figure 3-244 Remove the lower rear cover 376
Figure 3-245 Remove the upper rear cover 376
Figure 3-246 Disconnect connectors and remove screws 377
Figure 3-247 Disconnect one connector 377
Figure 3-248 LVPS connectors installation 378
Figure 3-249 Release the cables and remove three screws 378
Figure 3-250 Disconnect one connector 379
Figure 3-251 Release five tabs 379
Figure 3-252 Remove the fuser fan 380
Figure 3-253 Remove the fuser/output drive unit 380
Figure 3-254 Remove the formatter cover 383
Figure 3-255 Remove the lower rear cover 384
Figure 3-256 Remove the upper rear cover 384
Figure 3-257 Disconnect connectors and remove screws 385
Figure 3-258 Disconnect one connector 385
Figure 3-259 LVPS connectors installation 386
Figure 3-260 Release the cables and remove three screws 386
Figure 3-261 Disconnect one connector 387
Figure 3-262 Release five tabs 387
Figure 3-263 Remove the fuser fan 388
Figure 3-264 Remove the fuser/output drive unit 388
Figure 3-265 Remove the side door open sensor 389
Figure 3-266 Remove the formatter cover 391
Figure 3-267 Remove the lower rear cover 392

Figure 3-268 Remove the upper rear cover 392
Figure 3-269 Disconnect connectors and remove screws 393
Figure 3-270 Disconnect one connector 393
Figure 3-271 LVPS connectors installation 394
Figure 3-272 Release the cables and remove three screws 394
Figure 3-273 Disconnect one connector 395
Figure 3-274 Release five tabs 395
Figure 3-275 Remove the fuser fan 396
Figure 3-276 Remove the fuser/output drive unit 396
Figure 3-277 Remove the side door open sensor 397
Figure 3-278 Remove micro-switch 397
Figure 3-279 Remove the formatter cover 400
Figure 3-280 Remove the lower rear cover 401
Figure 3-281 Remove the LVPS cover 401
Figure 3-282 Remove the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage 402
Figure 3-283 Remove pickup drive unit 1 402
Figure 3-284 Remove the formatter cover 405
Figure 3-285 Remove the lower rear cover 406
Figure 3-286 Remove pickup drive unit 2 406
Figure 3-287 Remove the formatter cover 409
Figure 3-288 Remove the lower rear cover 410
Figure 3-289 Remove four screws 410
Figure 3-290 Remove the right rear cover 411
Figure 3-291 Disconnect one connector 411
Figure 3-292 Release the right hinge 412
Figure 3-293 Release the left dampener 412
Figure 3-294 Remove the right door 413
Figure 3-295 Remove one screw 413
Figure 3-296 Remove the cover 414
Figure 3-297 Remove the feed/MP drive unit 414
Figure 3-298 Align the gears with the couplers 415
Figure 3-299 Remove the formatter cover 417
Figure 3-300 Remove the lower rear cover 418
Figure 3-301 Remove the upper rear cover 418
Figure 3-302 Remove the registration drive assembly 419
Figure 3-303 Remove the TCU 421
Figure 3-304 Remove the front cover 422
Figure 3-305 Remove the front top inner cover 422
Figure 3-306 Remove two screws and rotate the cover 423
Figure 3-307 Remove the front power cover 423
Figure 3-308 Remove the output bin 424

Figure 3-309 Remove the paper dust brush 424
Figure 3-310 Screw locations 425
Figure 3-311 Remove two screw caps and two screws 425
Figure 3-312 Remove the inner front cover 426
Figure 3-313 Remove the sensor 426
Figure 3-314 Remove three screws and disconnect the small, black cable connector 429
Figure 3-315 Remove the developer unit 430
Figure 3-316 Open the developer unit 430
Figure 3-317 Distribute the developer powder 431
Figure 3-318 Left dummy cover 432
Figure 3-319 Remove the left cover 432
Figure 3-320 Remove two screws 433
Figure 3-321 Remove the laser scanner assembly 433
Figure 3-322 Remove the front top inner cover 434
Figure 3-323 Remove the output bin 434
Figure 3-324 Remove the paper dust brush 435
Figure 3-325 Screw locations 435
Figure 3-326 Remove two screw caps and two screws 436
Figure 3-327 Remove the inner front cover 436
Figure 3-328 Remove one screw 437
Figure 3-329 Remove the toner guide 437
Figure 3-330 Disconnect one connector and remove one screw 438
Figure 3-331 Remove the reservoir assembly 438
Figure 3-332 Remove screws 441
Figure 3-333 Remove four screws 443
Figure 3-334 Remove the right rear cover 443
Figure 3-335 Disconnect one connector 444
Figure 3-336 Release the right hinge 444
Figure 3-337 Release the left dampener 445
Figure 3-338 Remove the right door 445
Figure 3-339 Remove one screw 446
Figure 3-340 Remove one screw 446
Figure 3-341 Remove one screw 446
Figure 3-342 Disconnect one connector 447
Figure 3-343 Remove four screws 449
Figure 3-344 Remove the right rear cover 449
Figure 3-345 Disconnect one connector 450
Figure 3-346 Release the right hinge 450
Figure 3-347 Release the left dampener 451
Figure 3-348 Remove the right door 451
Figure 3-349 Remove four screws 452

Figure 3-350 Remove three screws and the lower cable cover 452
Figure 3-351 Remove two screws 452
Figure 3-352 Remove two screws 453
Figure 3-353 Remove the feed guide take away lower 453
Figure 3-354 Remove the feed guide take away upper 453
Figure 3-355 Disconnect one connector and remove the feed 2 sensor 454
Figure 3-356 Remove four screws 456
Figure 3-357 Remove the right rear cover 456
Figure 3-358 Disconnect one connector 457
Figure 3-359 Release the right hinge 457
Figure 3-360 Release the left dampener 458
Figure 3-361 Remove the right door 458
Figure 3-362 Remove four screws 459
Figure 3-363 Remove three screws and the lower cable cover 459
Figure 3-364 Remove two screws 459
Figure 3-365 Remove two screws 460
Figure 3-366 Remove the feed guide take away lower 460
Figure 3-367 Remove the feed guide take away upper 460
Figure 3-368 Remove one e-ring and bushing 461
Figure 3-369 Remove one e-ring and bushing 461
Figure 3-370 Remove the shaft 461
Figure 3-371 Remove three screws 462
Figure 3-372 Remove the guide-duplex lower 462
Figure 3-373 Remove one screw 462
Figure 3-374 Remove two screws 463
Figure 3-375 Remove two screws 463
Figure 3-376 Disconnect one connector 463
Figure 3-377 Release the MP Tray linker 464
Figure 3-378 Release the MP unit 464
Figure 3-379 Remove four screws 467
Figure 3-380 Remove the right rear cover 468
Figure 3-381 Disconnect one connector 468
Figure 3-382 Release the right hinge 469
Figure 3-383 Release the left dampener 469
Figure 3-384 Remove the right door 470
Figure 3-385 Remove four screws 470
Figure 3-386 Remove three screws and the lower cable cover 471
Figure 3-387 Remove two screws 471
Figure 3-388 Remove two screws 471
Figure 3-389 Remove the feed guide take away lower 472
Figure 3-390 Remove the feed guide take away upper 472

Figure 3-391 Remove one e-ring and bushing 472
Figure 3-392 Remove one e-ring and bushing 473
Figure 3-393 Remove the shaft 473
Figure 3-394 Remove three screws 473
Figure 3-395 Remove the guide-duplex lower 474
Figure 3-396 Remove one screw 474
Figure 3-397 Remove two screws 474
Figure 3-398 Remove two screws 475
Figure 3-399 Disconnect one connector 475
Figure 3-400 Release the MP Tray linker 475
Figure 3-401 Release the MP unit 476
Figure 3-402 Remove the MP empty sensor 476
Figure 3-403 Remove four screws 479
Figure 3-404 Remove the right rear cover 480
Figure 3-405 Disconnect one connector 480
Figure 3-406 Release the right hinge 481
Figure 3-407 Release the left dampener 481
Figure 3-408 Remove the right door 482
Figure 3-409 Remove four screws 482
Figure 3-410 Remove three screws and the lower cable cover 483
Figure 3-411 Remove two screws 483
Figure 3-412 Remove two screws 483
Figure 3-413 Remove the feed guide take away lower 484
Figure 3-414 Remove the feed guide take away upper 484
Figure 3-415 Remove one e-ring and bushing 484
Figure 3-416 Remove one e-ring and bushing 485
Figure 3-417 Remove the shaft 485
Figure 3-418 Remove three screws 485
Figure 3-419 Remove the guide-duplex lower 486
Figure 3-420 Remove one screw 486
Figure 3-421 Remove two screws 486
Figure 3-422 Remove two screws 487
Figure 3-423 Disconnect one connector 487
Figure 3-424 Release the MP Tray linker 487
Figure 3-425 Release the MP unit 488
Figure 3-426 Remove the MP Tray upper 488
Figure 3-427 Remove the MP paper length sensor 488
Figure 3-428 Remove four screws 491
Figure 3-429 Remove the right rear cover 492
Figure 3-430 Disconnect one connector 492
Figure 3-431 Release the right hinge 493

Figure 3-432 Release the left dampener 493
Figure 3-433 Remove the right door 494
Figure 3-434 Remove four screws 494
Figure 3-435 Remove three screws and the lower cable cover 495
Figure 3-436 Remove two screws 495
Figure 3-437 Remove two screws 495
Figure 3-438 Remove the feed guide take away lower 496
Figure 3-439 Remove the feed guide take away upper 496
Figure 3-440 Remove one e-ring and bushing 496
Figure 3-441 Remove one e-ring and bushing 497
Figure 3-442 Remove the shaft 497
Figure 3-443 Remove three screws 497
Figure 3-444 Remove the guide-duplex lower 498
Figure 3-445 Remove one screw 498
Figure 3-446 Remove two screws 498
Figure 3-447 Remove two screws 499
Figure 3-448 Disconnect one connector 499
Figure 3-449 Release the MP Tray linker 499
Figure 3-450 Release the MP unit 500
Figure 3-451 Remove two screws and three gears 500
Figure 3-452 Remove the bracket-rear 500
Figure 3-453 Remove seven screws 501
Figure 3-454 Remove two screws 501
Figure 3-455 Remove four screws 504
Figure 3-456 Remove the right rear cover 505
Figure 3-457 Disconnect one connector 505
Figure 3-458 Release the right hinge 506
Figure 3-459 Release the left dampener 506
Figure 3-460 Remove the right door 507
Figure 3-461 Remove the front top inner cover 507
Figure 3-462 Remove two screws and rotate the cover 508
Figure 3-463 Remove the front power cover 508
Figure 3-464 Remove the top right cover 509
Figure 3-465 Fuser unit screw locations 509
Figure 3-466 Fuser unit removal 510
Figure 3-467 Disconnect two connectors and remove four screws 510
Figure 3-468 Remove the output unit 511
Figure 3-469 Remove four screws 513
Figure 3-470 Remove the right rear cover 514
Figure 3-471 Disconnect one connector 514
Figure 3-472 Release the right hinge 515

Figure 3-473 Release the left dampener 515
Figure 3-474 Remove the right door 516
Figure 3-475 Remove the front top inner cover 516
Figure 3-476 Remove two screws and rotate the cover 517
Figure 3-477 Remove the front power cover 517
Figure 3-478 Remove the top right cover 518
Figure 3-479 Fuser unit screw locations 518
Figure 3-480 Fuser unit removal 519
Figure 3-481 Disconnect two connectors and remove four screws 519
Figure 3-482 Remove the output unit 520
Figure 3-483 Return sensor 520
Figure 3-484 Remove four screws 523
Figure 3-485 Remove the right rear cover 524
Figure 3-486 Disconnect one connector 524
Figure 3-487 Release the right hinge 525
Figure 3-488 Release the left dampener 525
Figure 3-489 Remove the right door 526
Figure 3-490 Remove the front top inner cover 526
Figure 3-491 Remove two screws and rotate the cover 527
Figure 3-492 Remove the front power cover 527
Figure 3-493 Remove the top right cover 528
Figure 3-494 Fuser unit screw locations 528
Figure 3-495 Fuser unit removal 529
Figure 3-496 Disconnect two connectors and remove four screws 529
Figure 3-497 Remove the output unit 530
Figure 3-498 Remove two screws 530
Figure 3-499 Remove the duplex 1 sensor 531
Figure 3-500 Remove four screws 533
Figure 3-501 Remove the right rear cover 534
Figure 3-502 Disconnect one connector 534
Figure 3-503 Release the right hinge 535
Figure 3-504 Release the left dampener 535
Figure 3-505 Remove the right door 536
Figure 3-506 Remove the front top inner cover 536
Figure 3-507 Remove two screws and rotate the cover 537
Figure 3-508 Remove the front power cover 537
Figure 3-509 Remove the top right cover 538
Figure 3-510 Fuser unit screw locations 538
Figure 3-511 Fuser unit removal 539
Figure 3-512 Disconnect two connectors and remove four screws 539
Figure 3-513 Remove the output unit 540

Figure 3-514 Remove one screw and the guide 540
Figure 3-515 Remove the black adhesive strip 541
Figure 3-516 Release two tabs 541
Figure 3-517 Disconnect one connector 542
Figure 3-518 Remove the output 1 bin full sensor 542
Figure 3-519 Remove four screws 545
Figure 3-520 Remove the right rear cover 546
Figure 3-521 Disconnect one connector 546
Figure 3-522 Release the right hinge 547
Figure 3-523 Release the left dampener 547
Figure 3-524 Remove the right door 548
Figure 3-525 Remove the front top inner cover 548
Figure 3-526 Remove two screws and rotate the cover 549
Figure 3-527 Remove the front power cover 549
Figure 3-528 Remove the top right cover 550
Figure 3-529 Fuser unit screw locations 550
Figure 3-530 Fuser unit removal 551
Figure 3-531 Disconnect two connectors and remove four screws 551
Figure 3-532 Remove the output unit 552
Figure 3-533 On the output unit, disconnect one connector and remove two gears 552
Figure 3-534 Output gate solenoid 553
Figure 3-535 Remove four screws 555
Figure 3-536 Remove the right rear cover 555
Figure 3-537 Disconnect one connector 556
Figure 3-538 Release the right hinge 556
Figure 3-539 Release the left dampener 557
Figure 3-540 Remove the right door 557
Figure 3-541 Remove one screw and the cover 558
Figure 3-542 Remove three screws 558
Figure 3-543 Rotate pickup unit 2 559
Figure 3-544 Disconnect one connector 559
Figure 3-545 Align gear, coupler, and bracket 560
Figure 3-546 Remove four screws 562
Figure 3-547 Remove the right rear cover 563
Figure 3-548 Disconnect one connector 563
Figure 3-549 Release the right hinge 564
Figure 3-550 Release the left dampener 564
Figure 3-551 Remove the right door 565
Figure 3-552 Remove one screw and the cover 565
Figure 3-553 Remove three screws 566
Figure 3-554 Rotate pickup unit 2 566

Figure 3-555 Disconnect one connector 567
Figure 3-556 Align gear, coupler, and bracket 567
Figure 3-557 Remove the sensor 568
Figure 3-558 Remove four screws 570
Figure 3-559 Remove the right rear cover 570
Figure 3-560 Disconnect one connector 571
Figure 3-561 Release the right hinge 571
Figure 3-562 Release the left dampener 572
Figure 3-563 Remove the right door 572
Figure 3-564 Remove one screw and the cover 573
Figure 3-565 Remove three screws 573
Figure 3-566 Rotate pickup unit 2 574
Figure 3-567 Disconnect one connector 574
Figure 3-568 Align gear, coupler, and bracket 575
Figure 3-569 Remove prefeed sensor 2 575
Figure 3-570 Remove four screws 578
Figure 3-571 Remove the right rear cover 578
Figure 3-572 Disconnect one connector 579
Figure 3-573 Release the right hinge 579
Figure 3-574 Release the left dampener 580
Figure 3-575 Remove the right door 580
Figure 3-576 Remove one screw and the cover 581
Figure 3-577 Remove three screws 581
Figure 3-578 Rotate pickup unit 2 582
Figure 3-579 Disconnect one connector 582
Figure 3-580 Align gear, coupler, and bracket 583
Figure 3-581 Remove three screws 583
Figure 3-582 Rotate pickup unit 1 584
Figure 3-583 Disconnect one connector 584
Figure 3-584 Align gear, coupler, and bracket 585
Figure 3-585 Remove four screws 587
Figure 3-586 Remove the right rear cover 588
Figure 3-587 Disconnect one connector 588
Figure 3-588 Release the right hinge 589
Figure 3-589 Release the left dampener 589
Figure 3-590 Remove the right door 590
Figure 3-591 Remove one screw and the cover 590
Figure 3-592 Remove three screws 591
Figure 3-593 Rotate pickup unit 2 591
Figure 3-594 Disconnect one connector 592
Figure 3-595 Align gear, coupler, and bracket 592

Figure 3-596 Remove three screws 593
Figure 3-597 Rotate pickup unit 1 593
Figure 3-598 Disconnect one connector 594
Figure 3-599 Align gear, coupler, and bracket 594
Figure 3-600 Remove the pickup lifting and empty sensor 595
Figure 3-601 Remove four screws 597
Figure 3-602 Remove the right rear cover 598
Figure 3-603 Disconnect one connector 598
Figure 3-604 Release the right hinge 599
Figure 3-605 Release the left dampener 599
Figure 3-606 Remove the right door 600
Figure 3-607 Remove one screw and the cover 600
Figure 3-608 Remove three screws 601
Figure 3-609 Rotate pickup unit 2 601
Figure 3-610 Disconnect one connector 602
Figure 3-611 Align gear, coupler, and bracket 602
Figure 3-612 Remove three screws 603
Figure 3-613 Rotate pickup unit 1 603
Figure 3-614 Disconnect one connector 604
Figure 3-615 Align gear, coupler, and bracket 604
Figure 3-616 Remove five screws and the bracket. 605
Figure 3-617 Remove the sensor 605
Figure 3-618 Remove the front top inner cover 608
Figure 3-619 Remove the output bin 608
Figure 3-620 Remove the HDD cover 609
Figure 3-621 Remove the HDD 609
Figure 3-622 Remove four screws 612
Figure 3-623 Remove the right rear cover 612
Figure 3-624 Disconnect one connector 613
Figure 3-625 Release the right hinge 613
Figure 3-626 Release the left dampener 614
Figure 3-627 Remove the right door 614
Figure 3-628 Remove the paper dust brush 615
Figure 3-629 Remove two screws 615
Figure 3-630 Remove the gear cover 616
Figure 3-631 Disconnect one connector and remove two screws 616
Figure 3-632 Remove the registration assembly 617
Figure 3-633 Install the gear side of the shaft 617
Figure 3-634 Remove the bushing 618
Figure 3-635 Install the bushing 618
Figure 3-636 Install the front of the shaft 619

Figure 3-637 Remove four screws 621
Figure 3-638 Remove the right rear cover 622
Figure 3-639 Disconnect one connector 622
Figure 3-640 Release the right hinge 623
Figure 3-641 Release the left dampener 623
Figure 3-642 Remove the right door 624
Figure 3-643 Remove the paper dust brush 624
Figure 3-644 Remove two screws 625
Figure 3-645 Remove the gear cover 625
Figure 3-646 Disconnect one connector and remove two screws 626
Figure 3-647 Remove the registration assembly 626
Figure 3-648 Install the gear side of the shaft 627
Figure 3-649 Remove the bushing 627
Figure 3-650 Install the bushing 628
Figure 3-651 Install the front of the shaft 628
Figure 3-652 Disconnect one connector 629
Figure 3-653 Remove three screws and the registration sensor assembly 629
Figure 3-654 Loosen one screw 632
Figure 3-655 Remove the drum unit 633
Figure 3-656 Remove the formatter cover 633
Figure 3-657 Remove the lower rear cover 634
Figure 3-658 Remove the upper rear cover 634
Figure 3-659 Remove the left rear corner cover 635
Figure 3-660 Remove one screw 635
Figure 3-661 Disconnect formatter connectors and screws 636
Figure 3-662 Identify the formatter cables 636
Figure 3-663 Disconnect one connector 637
Figure 3-664 Remove one screw 637
Figure 3-665 Remove five screws 638
Figure 3-666 Install the flat cable 638
Figure 3-667 Disconnect one connector and release two retainers 639
Figure 3-668 Remove the main drive unit 639
Figure 3-669 Rotate the coupler 640
Figure 3-670 Disconnect two connectors and release cables 640
Figure 3-671 Remove one ground screw 641
Figure 3-672 Disconnect three connectors 641
Figure 3-673 Remove three screws and the high voltage terminal 642
Figure 3-674 Remove document feeder connector cover 644
Figure 3-675 Remove the cable choke 644
Figure 3-676 Disconnect document feeder harness 645
Figure 3-677 Alignment marks 645

Figure 3-678 Remove screws 646
Figure 3-679 Release the document feeder 646
Figure 3-680 Remove the document feeder front cover top screws 649
Figure 3-681 Remove the document feeder front cover bottom screws 649
Figure 3-682 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws 650
Figure 3-683 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws 650
Figure 3-684 Disconnect one connector 651
Figure 3-685 Remove the jam access cover ground wire 651
Figure 3-686 Remove the jam access cover door arm support 652
Figure 3-687 Remove the document feeder front cover top screws 655
Figure 3-688 Remove the document feeder front cover bottom screws 655
Figure 3-689 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws 656
Figure 3-690 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws 656
Figure 3-691 Remove the document feeder damping unit 657
Figure 3-692 Remove the document feeder pickup roller assembly cover screws 657
Figure 3-693 Remove the document feeder pickup roller assembly 658
Figure 3-694 Disconnect the document feeder PCA connector 658
Figure 3-695 Remove the document feeder front cover top screws 662
Figure 3-696 Remove the document feeder front cover bottom screws 662
Figure 3-697 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws 663
Figure 3-698 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws 663
Figure 3-699 Remove the pickup roller assembly 664
Figure 3-700 Remove the document feeder paper path cover 664
Figure 3-701 Remove the CIS front alignment cover screws 665
Figure 3-702 Disconnect the CIS connector and lift the alignment pin 665
Figure 3-703 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws 668
Figure 3-704 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws 668
Figure 3-705 Remove the document feeder front motor 669
Figure 3-706 Document feeder motors 673
Figure 3-707 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws 674
Figure 3-708 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws 674
Figure 3-709 Remove the motor 675
Figure 3-710 Disconnect one connector 676
Figure 3-711 Pickup motor 677
Figure 3-712 Pre-REGI motor 677
Figure 3-713 Remove the main fan 678
Figure 3-714 Remove the motor 678
Figure 3-715 Disconnect one connector 679
Figure 3-716 Remove the motor 679
Figure 3-717 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws 682
Figure 3-718 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws 682

Figure 3-719 Remove the document feeder PCA fan connector 683
Figure 3-720 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws 685
Figure 3-721 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws 685
Figure 3-722 Remove the document feeder PCA fan 686
Figure 3-723 Remove the document feeder front cover top screws 689
Figure 3-724 Remove the document feeder front cover bottom screws 689
Figure 3-725 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws 690
Figure 3-726 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws 690
Figure 3-727 Remove the pickup roller assembly 691
Figure 3-728 Remove the document feeder paper path cover 691
Figure 3-729 Remove one screw 692
Figure 3-730 Remove the pick/feed cover 692
Figure 3-731 Remove the ultrasonic sensor 693
Figure 3-732 Remove the formatter cover 697
Figure 3-733 Remove the upper rear cover 698
Figure 3-734 Remove document feeder connector cover 698
Figure 3-735 Remove the cable choke 699
Figure 3-736 Disconnect document feeder harness 699
Figure 3-737 Alignment marks 700
Figure 3-738 Remove screws 700
Figure 3-739 Release the document feeder 701
Figure 3-740 Remove the document feeder bezel 701
Figure 3-741 Remove the control panel screws and disconnect connectors 702
Figure 3-742 Remove the USB interconnect cable 702
Figure 3-743 Disconnect one FFC 703
Figure 3-744 Remove the control-panel keyboard 703
Figure 3-745 Remove screw-caps and screws and release scan-front cover 704
Figure 3-746 Release scan-left cover 704
Figure 3-747 Remove scan-right cover 705
Figure 3-748 Disconnect scan cables 705
Figure 3-749 Remove screws 706
Figure 3-750 Remove screws 706
Figure 3-751 Lift up and release image scanner unit 706
Figure 3-752 Remove scan glass 709
Figure 3-753 Remove the formatter cover 711
Figure 3-754 Remove the upper rear cover 711
Figure 3-755 Remove document feeder connector cover 712
Figure 3-756 Remove the cable choke 712
Figure 3-757 Disconnect document feeder harness 713
Figure 3-758 Alignment marks 713
Figure 3-759 Remove screws 714

Figure 3-760 Release the document feeder 714
Figure 3-761 Remove scan glass 715
Figure 3-762 Remove transparent tape 716
Figure 3-763 Disconnect cable 716
Figure 3-764 Remove screws and release LED lamp module 716
Figure 3-765 Remove scan glass 719
Figure 3-766 Remove screws and release imaging unit cover 719
Figure 3-767 Disconnect flat cable 720
Figure 3-768 Remove screws and release scanner imaging unit 720
Figure 3-769 Remove the formatter cover 723
Figure 3-770 Remove the upper rear cover 723
Figure 3-771 Remove document feeder connector cover 724
Figure 3-772 Remove the cable choke 724
Figure 3-773 Disconnect document feeder harness 725
Figure 3-774 Alignment marks 725
Figure 3-775 Remove screws 726
Figure 3-776 Release the document feeder 726
Figure 3-777 Release scan-left cover 727
Figure 3-778 Remove scan-right cover 727
Figure 3-779 Remove three screws 728
Figure 3-780 Remove three screws and the scanner rear cover 728
Figure 3-781 Remove screws and release scan joint board 729
Figure 3-782 Remove document feeder connector cover 731
Figure 3-783 Remove the cable choke 731
Figure 3-784 Disconnect document feeder harness 732
Figure 3-785 Alignment marks 732
Figure 3-786 Remove screws 733
Figure 3-787 Release the document feeder 733
Figure 3-788 Remove scan glass 734
Figure 3-789 Remove joint board cover 734
Figure 3-790 Remove screw 734
Figure 3-791 Disconnect harness 735
Figure 3-792 Remove screws and release APS sensor 735
Figure 3-793 Remove four screws 739
Figure 3-794 Remove the right rear cover 739
Figure 3-795 Disconnect one connector 740
Figure 3-796 Release the right hinge 740
Figure 3-797 Release the left dampener 741
Figure 3-798 Remove the right door 741
Figure 3-799 Remove the lower right cover 742
Figure 3-800 Slide the hinge pin 742

Figure 3-801 Remove the DCF right door 743
Figure 3-802 Remove the DCF rear cover 745
Figure 3-803 Disconnect two connectors and open one retainer 745
Figure 3-804 Remove the feed drive unit 746
Figure 3-805 Remove the feed motor 746
Figure 3-806 Remove the DCF rear cover 749
Figure 3-807 Remove the DCF pickup motor 749
Figure 3-808 Remove the DCF rear cover 751
Figure 3-809 Remove the DCF PCA 751
Figure 3-810 Remove four screws 754
Figure 3-811 Remove the right rear cover 754
Figure 3-812 Disconnect one connector 755
Figure 3-813 Release the right hinge 755
Figure 3-814 Release the left dampener 756
Figure 3-815 Remove the right door 756
Figure 3-816 Remove the lower right cover 757
Figure 3-817 Slide the hinge pin 757
Figure 3-818 Remove the DCF right door 758
Figure 3-819 Remove two screws and the cable cover 758
Figure 3-820 Remove five screws and two brackets 759
Figure 3-821 Disconnect two connectors and remove eight screws 759
Figure 3-822 Remove the pickup units 760
Figure 3-823 Remove the rear cover 763
Figure 3-824 Disconnect two connectors and open the clamp 763
Figure 3-825 Remove the feed drive unit 763
Figure 3-826 Remove the feed motor 764
Figure 3-827 Remove the rear cover 766
Figure 3-828 Remove the bottom HCI tray pickup motor 766
Figure 3-829 Remove the rear cover 769
Figure 3-830 Remove the bottom HCI tray PCA 769
Figure 3-831 Remove the rear cover 772
Figure 3-832 Remove the bottom HCI tray lift-up motor 772
Figure 3-833 Remove the rear cover 774
Figure 3-834 Remove the shaft motor 774
Figure 3-835 Remove the sHCI rear cover 777
Figure 3-836 Right sHCI cover 779
Figure 3-837 Remove the sHCI cable cover 779
Figure 3-838 Remove the sHCI rear cover 779
Figure 3-839 Drive PH 780
Figure 3-840 Feed motor 780
Figure 3-841 Right sHCI cover 783

Figure 3-842 Remove the sHCI cable cover 783
Figure 3-843 Remove the sHCI rear cover 783
Figure 3-844 Pickup motor 784
Figure 3-845 Right sHCI cover 786
Figure 3-846 Remove the sHCI cable cover 786
Figure 3-847 Remove the sHCI rear cover 786
Figure 3-848 sHCI PCA 787
Figure 3-849 Right sHCI cover 789
Figure 3-850 Remove the sHCI cable cover 789
Figure 3-851 Remove the sHCI rear cover 789
Figure 3-852 sHCI lift-up motor 790
Figure 4-1 Main assembly 794
Figure 4-2 Main assembly 2 796
Figure 4-3 Output 798
Figure 4-4 First cassette 800
Figure 4-5 Second cassette 802
Figure 4-6 Main assembly frame 804
Figure 4-7 Main frame registration assembly 806
Figure 4-8 Drive system 808
Figure 4-9 Frame main pickup 1 and 2 810
Figure 4-10 Frame main pickup 812
Figure 4-11 Cover 814
Figure 4-12 Right door 816
Figure 4-13 MP tray 818
Figure 4-14 Right door guide 820
Figure 4-15 Right door output and takeaway 822
Figure 4-16 PTB transfer 824
Figure 4-17 Flow ADF (z models) 826
Figure 4-18 Flow ADF open cover (z models) 828
Figure 4-19 Flow ADF pickup roller assembly 830
Figure 4-20 Flow ADF stacker 832
Figure 4-21 Flow ADF main frame (z models) 834
Figure 4-22 Flow ADF image scanner 836
Figure 4-23 Flow ADF image scanner, lower 838
Figure 4-24 Reservoir 840
Figure 4-25 DCF main 842
Figure 4-26 DCF frame 844
Figure 4-27 DCF rear frame 846
Figure 4-28 Opt feed drive 848
Figure 4-29 DCF second pickup 850
Figure 4-30 HCI main 852

Figure 4-31 HCI drive 854
Figure 4-32 HCI cassette 856
Figure 4-33 HCI frame 858
Figure 4-34 HCI main pickup 860
Figure 4-35 sHCI main 1 862
Figure 4-36 sHCI main 3 864
Figure 4-37 sHCI main 5 866
Figure 4-38 sHCI main 6 868
Figure 4-39 Pickup cover unit 870
Figure 4-40 sHCI frame 872
Figure 4-41 Booklet finisher 874
Figure 4-42 Mainline finisher 1 876
Figure 4-43 Mainline finisher 2 878
Figure 4-44 Mainline finisher 3 880
Figure 4-45 Mainline finisher 4 882
Figure 4-46 Mainline finisher 5 884
Figure 4-47 Mainline finisher 6 886
Figure 4-48 Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output 888
Figure 4-49 Low output, hb motor, and top guide 890
Figure 4-50 SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide 892
Figure 4-51 Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor 894
Figure 4-52 Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam 896
Figure 4-53 FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade 898
Figure 4-54 Fold roller, main blade, and top frame 900
Figure 4-55 Three fold blade 902
Figure 4-56 Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide 904
Figure 4-57 Entrance guide, mid jam, and main output 906
Figure 4-58 Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor 908
Figure 4-59 Front alignment (tamper) 910
Figure 4-60 Rear alignment (tamper) 912
Figure 4-61 Shield 914
Figure 4-62 PCB bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle 916
Figure 4-63 Finisher sub booklet 918
Figure 4-64 IPTU (bridge) 920
Figure 4-65 Sub-inner finisher 922
Figure 4-66 Finisher sub 1 924
Figure 4-67 Finisher sub 7 926
Figure 4-68 Finisher sub 8 928
Figure 5-1 Touchscreen blank, white, or dim (no image) 979
Figure 5-2 Touchscreen has an unresponsive zone 980
Figure 5-3 No control panel sound 981

Figure 5-4 Home button is unresponsive 982
Figure 5-5 Hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning (control panel functional) 983
Figure 5-7 Defeat the toner cartridge door interlock 985
Figure 5-8 Defeat the front door interlock 986
Figure 5-12 Open the Control Panel 1003
Figure 5-13 Turn Windows features on or off 1003
Figure 5-14 Enable the telnet client feature 1004
Figure 5-15 Select the +3:Administrator item 1005
Figure 5-16 Select the +A:Remote Admin item 1005
Figure 5-17 Select the 1:Start Telnet item 1005
Figure 5-18 Telnet connecting message 1005
Figure 5-19 Telnet error message 1006
Figure 5-20 Telnet server function initialized 1006
Figure 5-21 Open a command window 1007
Figure 5-22 Start a telnet session 1007
Figure 5-23 Establish a telnet connection 1007
Figure 5-24 Enter the PIN 1008
Figure 5-25 Remote Admin window 1008
Figure 5-26 Access the administrator menu 1009
Figure 5-27 Access the remote admin menu 1009
Figure 5-28 Terminate the telnet connection 1010
Figure 5-29 Open the Flow ADF cover 1083
Figure 5-30 Remove jam from the Flow ADF 1084
Figure 5-31 Open the Flow ADF cover 1084
Figure 5-32 Remove jam from the Flow ADF 1085
Figure 5-33 Open input tray 1085
Figure 5-34 Remove jam from the Flow ADF 1086
Figure 5-35 Open the Flow ADF 1086
Figure 5-36 Remove jam from the feed area 1087
Figure 5-37 Open right door 1087
Figure 5-38 Remove jam 1088
Figure 5-39 Remove tray 1088
Figure 5-40 Remove jam 1089
Figure 5-41 Open bottom right door 1089
Figure 5-42 Remove jam 1090
Figure 5-43 Remove paper 1090
Figure 5-44 Open right door 1091
Figure 5-45 Remove jam 1091
Figure 5-46 Open right door 1092
Figure 5-47 Remove jam 1092
Figure 5-48 Open right door 1093

Figure 5-49 Remove jam 1093
Figure 5-50 Open right door 1094
Figure 5-51 Remove jam 1094
Figure 5-52 Remove paper 1095
Figure 5-53 Bin full sensor 1095
Figure 5-54 Service tools view 1096
Figure 5-55 Information 1097
Figure 5-56 Maintenance counts 1098
Figure 5-57 Diagnostics 1099
Figure 5-58 Service functions 1100
Figure 5-62 Typical faulty images 1135
Figure 5-63 Typical faulty images 1136
Figure 5-64 Typical faulty images 1137
Figure 5-65 Typical faulty images 1138
Figure 5-66 Typical faulty images 1139
Figure 5-67 Typical faulty images 1140
Figure 5-68 Typical faulty images 1141
Figure 5-69 Typical faulty images 1141
Figure 5-70 Typical faulty images 1143
Figure 5-71 Typical faulty images 1143
Figure 5-72 Typical faulty images 1144
Figure 7-1 Sensor locations 1182
Figure 7-2 Roller location 1183
Figure 7-3 Jam removal guide 1185
Figure 7-4 Paper path 1186
Figure 7-5 Electrical parts layout (1 of 2) 1187
Figure 7-6 Electrical parts layout (2 of 2) 1188
Figure 7-7 IPTU 1191
Figure 7-8 Punch unit 1191
Figure 7-9 1192
Figure 7-10 Finisher PCA 1193
Figure 7-11 Switch PCA 1194
Figure 7-12 Booklet maker PCA 1194
Figure 7-13 Remove the top output bin 1201
Figure 7-14 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1203
Figure 7-15 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1206
Figure 7-16 Remove six screws 1207
Figure 7-17 Remove six screws 1207
Figure 7-18 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1208
Figure 7-19 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1210
Figure 7-20 Remove six screws 1211

Figure 7-21 Remove six screws 1211
Figure 7-22 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1212
Figure 7-23 Lift the top hinge pin 1212
Figure 7-24 Remove the top hinge pin 1213
Figure 7-25 Release the lower hinge pin 1213
Figure 7-26 Remove the lower hinge pin 1214
Figure 7-27 Remove one screw and the front door 1214
Figure 7-28 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1217
Figure 7-29 Remove six screws 1218
Figure 7-30 Remove six screws 1218
Figure 7-31 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1219
Figure 7-32 Remove seven screws 1219
Figure 7-33 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1220
Figure 7-34 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1222
Figure 7-35 Remove six screws 1223
Figure 7-36 Remove six screws 1223
Figure 7-37 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1224
Figure 7-38 Lift the top hinge pin 1224
Figure 7-39 Remove the top hinge pin 1225
Figure 7-40 Release the lower hinge pin 1225
Figure 7-41 Remove the lower hinge pin 1226
Figure 7-42 Remove one screw and the front door 1226
Figure 7-43 Remove the jam-access knob 1227
Figure 7-44 Remove one screw 1227
Figure 7-45 Remove five screws and the front cover 1228
Figure 7-46 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1230
Figure 7-47 Remove six screws 1231
Figure 7-48 Remove six screws 1231
Figure 7-49 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1232
Figure 7-50 Lift the top hinge pin 1232
Figure 7-51 Remove the top hinge pin 1233
Figure 7-52 Release the lower hinge pin 1233
Figure 7-53 Remove the lower hinge pin 1234
Figure 7-54 Remove one screw and the front door 1234
Figure 7-55 Remove the jam-access knob 1235
Figure 7-56 Remove one screw 1235
Figure 7-57 Remove five screws and the front cover 1236
Figure 7-58 Remove three screws and the front lower cover 1236
Figure 7-59 Remove the booklet tray 1239
Figure 7-60 Install the booklet tray 1239
Figure 7-61 Remove the booklet tray 1242

Figure 7-62 Install the booklet tray 1242
Figure 7-63 Remove four screws 1243
Figure 7-64 Remove the caster cover 1243
Figure 7-65 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1246
Figure 7-66 Remove six screws 1247
Figure 7-67 Remove six screws 1247
Figure 7-68 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1248
Figure 7-69 Lift the top hinge pin 1248
Figure 7-70 Remove the top hinge pin 1249
Figure 7-71 Release the lower hinge pin 1249
Figure 7-72 Remove the lower hinge pin 1250
Figure 7-73 Remove one screw and the front door 1250
Figure 7-74 Remove the jam-access knob 1251
Figure 7-75 Remove one screw 1251
Figure 7-76 Remove five screws and the front cover 1252
Figure 7-77 Remove seven screws 1252
Figure 7-78 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1253
Figure 7-79 Remove the booklet tray 1253
Figure 7-80 Install the booklet tray 1254
Figure 7-81 Remove four screws 1254
Figure 7-82 Remove the caster cover 1255
Figure 7-83 Remove four screws 1255
Figure 7-84 Release the lower shield 1256
Figure 7-85 Disconnect two connectors 1256
Figure 7-86 Locate sensors 1257
Figure 7-87 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1259
Figure 7-88 Remove six screws 1260
Figure 7-89 Remove six screws 1260
Figure 7-90 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1261
Figure 7-91 Lift the top hinge pin 1261
Figure 7-92 Remove the top hinge pin 1262
Figure 7-93 Release the lower hinge pin 1262
Figure 7-94 Remove the lower hinge pin 1263
Figure 7-95 Remove one screw and the front door 1263
Figure 7-96 Remove the jam-access knob 1264
Figure 7-97 Remove one screw 1264
Figure 7-98 Remove five screws and the front cover 1265
Figure 7-99 Remove seven screws 1265
Figure 7-100 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1266
Figure 7-101 Remove the booklet tray 1266
Figure 7-102 Install the booklet tray 1267

Figure 7-103 Remove four screws 1267
Figure 7-104 Remove the caster cover 1268
Figure 7-105 Remove four screws 1268
Figure 7-106 Release the lower shield 1269
Figure 7-107 Disconnect two connectors 1269
Figure 7-108 Locate sensors 1270
Figure 7-109 Lower the output tray 1270
Figure 7-110 Remove six screws 1271
Figure 7-111 Release the shield 1271
Figure 7-112 Disconnect one connector 1272
Figure 7-113 Locate sensors 1272
Figure 7-114 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1275
Figure 7-115 Remove six screws 1276
Figure 7-116 Remove six screws 1276
Figure 7-117 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1277
Figure 7-118 Remove seven screws 1277
Figure 7-119 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1278
Figure 7-120 Remove the controller PCA 1278
Figure 7-121 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1281
Figure 7-122 Remove six screws 1282
Figure 7-123 Remove six screws 1282
Figure 7-124 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1283
Figure 7-125 Lift the top hinge pin 1283
Figure 7-126 Remove the top hinge pin 1284
Figure 7-127 Release the lower hinge pin 1284
Figure 7-128 Remove the lower hinge pin 1285
Figure 7-129 Remove one screw and the front door 1285
Figure 7-130 Remove the jam-access knob 1286
Figure 7-131 Remove one screw 1286
Figure 7-132 Remove five screws and the front cover 1287
Figure 7-133 Remove seven screws 1287
Figure 7-134 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1288
Figure 7-135 Move the staple unit to the front 1288
Figure 7-136 Remove the staple cartridge 1289
Figure 7-137 Disconnect three connectors and remove two screws 1289
Figure 7-138 Disconnect one connector and remove two screws 1290
Figure 7-139 Remove the staple unit 1290
Figure 7-140 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1293
Figure 7-141 Remove six screws 1294
Figure 7-142 Remove six screws 1294
Figure 7-143 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1295

Figure 7-144 Remove seven screws 1295
Figure 7-145 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1296
Figure 7-146 Remove two screws and the feed guide 1296
Figure 7-147 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1299
Figure 7-148 Remove six screws 1300
Figure 7-149 Remove six screws 1300
Figure 7-150 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1301
Figure 7-151 Lift the top hinge pin 1301
Figure 7-152 Remove the top hinge pin 1302
Figure 7-153 Release the lower hinge pin 1302
Figure 7-154 Remove the lower hinge pin 1303
Figure 7-155 Remove one screw and the front door 1303
Figure 7-156 Remove the jam-access knob 1304
Figure 7-157 Remove one screw 1304
Figure 7-158 Remove five screws and the front cover 1305
Figure 7-159 Remove seven screws 1305
Figure 7-160 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1306
Figure 7-161 Remove the feed exit motor 1306
Figure 7-162 Remove two screws 1307
Figure 7-163 Remove the top jam access cover 1307
Figure 7-164 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1310
Figure 7-165 Remove six screws 1311
Figure 7-166 Remove six screws 1311
Figure 7-167 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1312
Figure 7-168 Lift the top hinge pin 1312
Figure 7-169 Remove the top hinge pin 1313
Figure 7-170 Release the lower hinge pin 1313
Figure 7-171 Remove the lower hinge pin 1314
Figure 7-172 Remove one screw and the front door 1314
Figure 7-173 Remove the jam-access knob 1315
Figure 7-174 Remove one screw 1315
Figure 7-175 Remove five screws and the front cover 1316
Figure 7-176 Remove seven screws 1316
Figure 7-177 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1317
Figure 7-178 Remove the feed exit motor 1317
Figure 7-179 Remove two screws 1318
Figure 7-180 Remove the top jam access cover 1318
Figure 7-181 Remove two screws 1319
Figure 7-182 Remove three screws and disconnect one connector 1319
Figure 7-183 Remove three screws 1320
Figure 7-184 Remove the feed assembly 1320

Figure 7-185 Locate sensors and connector 1321
Figure 7-186 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1323
Figure 7-187 Remove six screws 1324
Figure 7-188 Remove six screws 1324
Figure 7-189 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1325
Figure 7-190 Lift the top hinge pin 1325
Figure 7-191 Remove the top hinge pin 1326
Figure 7-192 Release the lower hinge pin 1326
Figure 7-193 Remove the lower hinge pin 1327
Figure 7-194 Remove one screw and the front door 1327
Figure 7-195 Remove the jam-access knob 1328
Figure 7-196 Remove one screw 1328
Figure 7-197 Remove five screws and the front cover 1329
Figure 7-198 Remove seven screws 1329
Figure 7-199 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1330
Figure 7-200 Remove the booklet tray 1330
Figure 7-201 Install the booklet tray 1331
Figure 7-202 Remove four screws 1331
Figure 7-203 Remove the caster cover 1332
Figure 7-204 Remove four screws 1332
Figure 7-205 Release the lower shield 1333
Figure 7-206 Disconnect two connectors 1333
Figure 7-207 Locate sensors 1334
Figure 7-208 Lower the output tray 1334
Figure 7-209 Remove six screws 1335
Figure 7-210 Release the shield 1335
Figure 7-211 Disconnect one connector 1336
Figure 7-212 Locate sensors 1336
Figure 7-213 Move the staple unit to the center 1337
Figure 7-214 Disconnect three connectors 1337
Figure 7-215 Remove two screws 1338
Figure 7-216 Remove one screw 1338
Figure 7-217 Rotate the sensor 1339
Figure 7-218 Remove one screw 1339
Figure 7-219 Remove the front tamper shaft 1340
Figure 7-220 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws 1340
Figure 7-221 Remove one screw 1341
Figure 7-222 Remove the rear tamper shaft 1341
Figure 7-223 Disconnect one connector 1342
Figure 7-224 Disconnect one connector 1342
Figure 7-225 Disconnect one connector 1343

Figure 7-226 Remove two screws 1343
Figure 7-227 Lift the edges of the tampers 1344
Figure 7-228 Remove the ejector unit 1344
Figure 7-229 Reinstall the front tamper shaft 1345
Figure 7-230 Reinstall the rear tamper shaft 1345
Figure 7-231 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1348
Figure 7-232 Remove six screws 1349
Figure 7-233 Remove six screws 1349
Figure 7-234 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1350
Figure 7-235 Lift the top hinge pin 1350
Figure 7-236 Remove the top hinge pin 1351
Figure 7-237 Release the lower hinge pin 1351
Figure 7-238 Remove the lower hinge pin 1352
Figure 7-239 Remove one screw and the front door 1352
Figure 7-240 Remove the jam-access knob 1353
Figure 7-241 Remove one screw 1353
Figure 7-242 Remove five screws and the front cover 1354
Figure 7-243 Remove seven screws 1354
Figure 7-244 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1355
Figure 7-245 Remove the booklet tray 1355
Figure 7-246 Install the booklet tray 1356
Figure 7-247 Remove four screws 1356
Figure 7-248 Remove the caster cover 1357
Figure 7-249 Remove four screws 1357
Figure 7-250 Release the lower shield 1358
Figure 7-251 Disconnect two connectors 1358
Figure 7-252 Locate sensors 1359
Figure 7-253 Lower the output tray 1359
Figure 7-254 Remove six screws 1360
Figure 7-255 Release the shield 1360
Figure 7-256 Disconnect one connector 1361
Figure 7-257 Locate sensors 1361
Figure 7-258 Move the staple unit to the center 1362
Figure 7-259 Disconnect three connectors 1362
Figure 7-260 Remove two screws 1363
Figure 7-261 Remove one screw 1363
Figure 7-262 Rotate the sensor 1364
Figure 7-263 Remove one screw 1364
Figure 7-264 Remove the front tamper shaft 1365
Figure 7-265 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws 1365
Figure 7-266 Remove one screw 1366

Figure 7-267 Remove the rear tamper shaft 1366
Figure 7-268 Disconnect one connector 1367
Figure 7-269 Disconnect one connector 1367
Figure 7-270 Disconnect one connector 1368
Figure 7-271 Remove two screws 1368
Figure 7-272 Lift the edges of the tampers 1369
Figure 7-273 Remove the ejector unit 1369
Figure 7-274 Reinstall the front tamper shaft 1370
Figure 7-275 Reinstall the rear tamper shaft 1370
Figure 7-276 Remove the front tamper 1371
Figure 7-277 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1373
Figure 7-278 Remove six screws 1374
Figure 7-279 Remove six screws 1374
Figure 7-280 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1375
Figure 7-281 Lift the top hinge pin 1375
Figure 7-282 Remove the top hinge pin 1376
Figure 7-283 Release the lower hinge pin 1376
Figure 7-284 Remove the lower hinge pin 1377
Figure 7-285 Remove one screw and the front door 1377
Figure 7-286 Remove the jam-access knob 1378
Figure 7-287 Remove one screw 1378
Figure 7-288 Remove five screws and the front cover 1379
Figure 7-289 Remove seven screws 1379
Figure 7-290 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1380
Figure 7-291 Remove the booklet tray 1380
Figure 7-292 Install the booklet tray 1381
Figure 7-293 Remove four screws 1381
Figure 7-294 Remove the caster cover 1382
Figure 7-295 Remove four screws 1382
Figure 7-296 Release the lower shield 1383
Figure 7-297 Disconnect two connectors 1383
Figure 7-298 Locate sensors 1384
Figure 7-299 Lower the output tray 1384
Figure 7-300 Remove six screws 1385
Figure 7-301 Release the shield 1385
Figure 7-302 Disconnect one connector 1386
Figure 7-303 Locate sensors 1386
Figure 7-304 Move the staple unit to the center 1387
Figure 7-305 Disconnect three connectors 1387
Figure 7-306 Remove two screws 1388
Figure 7-307 Remove one screw 1388

Figure 7-308 Rotate the sensor 1389
Figure 7-309 Remove one screw 1389
Figure 7-310 Remove the front tamper shaft 1390
Figure 7-311 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws 1390
Figure 7-312 Remove one screw 1391
Figure 7-313 Remove the rear tamper shaft 1391
Figure 7-314 Disconnect one connector 1392
Figure 7-315 Disconnect one connector 1392
Figure 7-316 Disconnect one connector 1393
Figure 7-317 Remove two screws 1393
Figure 7-318 Lift the edges of the tampers 1394
Figure 7-319 Remove the ejector unit 1394
Figure 7-320 Reinstall the front tamper shaft 1395
Figure 7-321 Reinstall the rear tamper shaft 1395
Figure 7-322 Remove the rear tamper 1396
Figure 7-323 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1398
Figure 7-324 Remove six screws 1399
Figure 7-325 Remove six screws 1399
Figure 7-326 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1400
Figure 7-327 Remove seven screws 1400
Figure 7-328 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1401
Figure 7-329 Remove the feed entrance motor 1401
Figure 7-330 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1404
Figure 7-331 Remove six screws 1405
Figure 7-332 Remove six screws 1405
Figure 7-333 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1406
Figure 7-334 Remove seven screws 1406
Figure 7-335 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1407
Figure 7-336 Remove the feed exit motor 1407
Figure 7-337 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1410
Figure 7-338 Remove six screws 1411
Figure 7-339 Remove six screws 1411
Figure 7-340 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1412
Figure 7-341 Remove the jam-access knob 1412
Figure 7-342 Remove one screw 1413
Figure 7-343 Remove five screws and the front cover 1413
Figure 7-344 Disconnect two connectors and remove two screws 1414
Figure 7-345 Slide the gear off of the shaft 1414
Figure 7-346 Remove the sensor 1415
Figure 7-347 Remove two screws 1415
Figure 7-348 Remove the buffer motor 1416

Figure 7-349 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1418
Figure 7-350 Remove six screws 1419
Figure 7-351 Remove six screws 1419
Figure 7-352 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1420
Figure 7-353 Lift the top hinge pin 1420
Figure 7-354 Remove the top hinge pin 1421
Figure 7-355 Release the lower hinge pin 1421
Figure 7-356 Remove the lower hinge pin 1422
Figure 7-357 Remove one screw and the front door 1422
Figure 7-358 Remove the jam-access knob 1423
Figure 7-359 Remove one screw 1423
Figure 7-360 Remove five screws and the front cover 1424
Figure 7-361 Remove seven screws 1424
Figure 7-362 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1425
Figure 7-363 Remove the booklet tray 1425
Figure 7-364 Install the booklet tray 1426
Figure 7-365 Remove four screws 1426
Figure 7-366 Remove the caster cover 1427
Figure 7-367 Remove four screws 1427
Figure 7-368 Release the lower shield 1428
Figure 7-369 Disconnect two connectors 1428
Figure 7-370 Locate sensors 1429
Figure 7-371 Lower the output tray 1429
Figure 7-372 Remove six screws 1430
Figure 7-373 Release the shield 1430
Figure 7-374 Disconnect one connector 1431
Figure 7-375 Locate sensors 1431
Figure 7-376 Move the staple unit to the center 1432
Figure 7-377 Disconnect three connectors 1432
Figure 7-378 Remove two screws 1433
Figure 7-379 Remove one screw 1433
Figure 7-380 Rotate the sensor 1434
Figure 7-381 Remove one screw 1434
Figure 7-382 Remove the front tamper shaft 1435
Figure 7-383 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws 1435
Figure 7-384 Remove one screw 1436
Figure 7-385 Remove the rear tamper shaft 1436
Figure 7-386 Disconnect one connector 1437
Figure 7-387 Disconnect one connector 1437
Figure 7-388 Disconnect one connector 1438
Figure 7-389 Remove two screws 1438

Figure 7-390 Lift the edges of the tampers 1439
Figure 7-391 Remove the ejector unit 1439
Figure 7-392 Reinstall the front tamper shaft 1440
Figure 7-393 Reinstall the rear tamper shaft 1440
Figure 7-394 Remove the front tamper 1441
Figure 7-395 Remove two screws 1441
Figure 7-396 Release the belt and remove the motor 1442
Figure 7-397 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1444
Figure 7-398 Remove six screws 1445
Figure 7-399 Remove six screws 1445
Figure 7-400 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1446
Figure 7-401 Lift the top hinge pin 1446
Figure 7-402 Remove the top hinge pin 1447
Figure 7-403 Release the lower hinge pin 1447
Figure 7-404 Remove the lower hinge pin 1448
Figure 7-405 Remove one screw and the front door 1448
Figure 7-406 Remove the jam-access knob 1449
Figure 7-407 Remove one screw 1449
Figure 7-408 Remove five screws and the front cover 1450
Figure 7-409 Remove seven screws 1450
Figure 7-410 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1451
Figure 7-411 Remove the booklet tray 1451
Figure 7-412 Install the booklet tray 1452
Figure 7-413 Remove four screws 1452
Figure 7-414 Remove the caster cover 1453
Figure 7-415 Remove four screws 1453
Figure 7-416 Release the lower shield 1454
Figure 7-417 Disconnect two connectors 1454
Figure 7-418 Locate sensors 1455
Figure 7-419 Lower the output tray 1455
Figure 7-420 Remove six screws 1456
Figure 7-421 Release the shield 1456
Figure 7-422 Disconnect one connector 1457
Figure 7-423 Locate sensors 1457
Figure 7-424 Move the staple unit to the center 1458
Figure 7-425 Disconnect three connectors 1458
Figure 7-426 Remove two screws 1459
Figure 7-427 Remove one screw 1459
Figure 7-428 Rotate the sensor 1460
Figure 7-429 Remove one screw 1460
Figure 7-430 Remove the front tamper shaft 1461

Figure 7-431 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws 1461
Figure 7-432 Remove one screw 1462
Figure 7-433 Remove the rear tamper shaft 1462
Figure 7-434 Disconnect one connector 1463
Figure 7-435 Disconnect one connector 1463
Figure 7-436 Disconnect one connector 1464
Figure 7-437 Remove two screws 1464
Figure 7-438 Lift the edges of the tampers 1465
Figure 7-439 Remove the ejector unit 1465
Figure 7-440 Reinstall the front tamper shaft 1466
Figure 7-441 Reinstall the rear tamper shaft 1466
Figure 7-442 Remove the rear tamper 1467
Figure 7-443 Remove two screws 1467
Figure 7-444 Release the belt and remove the motor 1468
Figure 7-445 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1470
Figure 7-446 Remove six screws 1471
Figure 7-447 Remove six screws 1471
Figure 7-448 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1472
Figure 7-449 Lift the top hinge pin 1472
Figure 7-450 Remove the top hinge pin 1473
Figure 7-451 Release the lower hinge pin 1473
Figure 7-452 Remove the lower hinge pin 1474
Figure 7-453 Remove one screw and the front door 1474
Figure 7-454 Remove the jam-access knob 1475
Figure 7-455 Remove one screw 1475
Figure 7-456 Remove five screws and the front cover 1476
Figure 7-457 Remove seven screws 1476
Figure 7-458 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1477
Figure 7-459 Remove the booklet tray 1477
Figure 7-460 Install the booklet tray 1478
Figure 7-461 Remove four screws 1478
Figure 7-462 Remove the caster cover 1479
Figure 7-463 Remove four screws 1479
Figure 7-464 Release the lower shield 1480
Figure 7-465 Disconnect two connectors 1480
Figure 7-466 Locate sensors 1481
Figure 7-467 Lower the output tray 1481
Figure 7-468 Remove six screws 1482
Figure 7-469 Release the shield 1482
Figure 7-470 Disconnect one connector 1483
Figure 7-471 Locate sensors 1483

Figure 7-472 Disconnect one connector 1484
Figure 7-473 Remove two screws 1484
Figure 7-474 Remove two screws and the motor 1485
Figure 7-475 Install the motor and bracket 1485
Figure 7-476 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1488
Figure 7-477 Remove six screws 1489
Figure 7-478 Remove six screws 1489
Figure 7-479 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1490
Figure 7-480 Remove seven screws 1490
Figure 7-481 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1491
Figure 7-482 Lower the output tray 1491
Figure 7-483 Open two retainers 1492
Figure 7-484 Disconnect three connectors 1492
Figure 7-485 Disconnect one connector 1493
Figure 7-486 Remove four screws and the motor assembly 1493
Figure 7-487 Remove the motor assembly 1494
Figure 7-488 Remove the bushing 1494
Figure 7-489 Install the bushing 1495
Figure 7-490 Install the motor assembly 1495
Figure 7-491 Remove five screws and the cover 1498
Figure 7-492 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1501
Figure 7-493 Remove six screws 1502
Figure 7-494 Remove six screws 1502
Figure 7-495 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1503
Figure 7-496 Remove seven screws 1503
Figure 7-497 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1504
Figure 7-498 Slide the booklet finisher away from the finisher 1504
Figure 7-499 Disconnect one connector and remove one screw 1505
Figure 7-500 Release the metal bracket 1505
Figure 7-501 Remove one screw 1506
Figure 7-502 Slide the right rail 1506
Figure 7-503 Remove one screw 1507
Figure 7-504 Remove the booklet finisher 1507
Figure 7-505 Position the hooks 1508
Figure 7-506 Align arrows 1508
Figure 7-507 Align arrows 1509
Figure 7-508 Extend the right rail 1509
Figure 7-509 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1512
Figure 7-510 Remove six screws 1513
Figure 7-511 Remove six screws 1513
Figure 7-512 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1514

Figure 7-513 Remove seven screws 1514
Figure 7-514 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1515
Figure 7-515 Slide the booklet finisher away from the finisher 1515
Figure 7-516 Disconnect one connector and remove one screw 1516
Figure 7-517 Release the metal bracket 1516
Figure 7-518 Remove one screw 1517
Figure 7-519 Slide the right rail 1517
Figure 7-520 Remove one screw 1518
Figure 7-521 Remove the booklet finisher 1518
Figure 7-522 Position the hooks 1519
Figure 7-523 Align arrows 1519
Figure 7-524 Align arrows 1520
Figure 7-525 Extend the right rail 1520
Figure 7-526 Remove two screws 1521
Figure 7-527 Remove one screw and the metal cover 1521
Figure 7-528 Remove four screws and the PCA 1522
Figure 7-529 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1524
Figure 7-530 Remove six screws 1525
Figure 7-531 Remove six screws 1525
Figure 7-532 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1526
Figure 7-533 Remove seven screws 1526
Figure 7-534 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1527
Figure 7-535 Remove five screws and the cover 1527
Figure 7-536 Remove two screws 1528
Figure 7-537 Remove two screws 1528
Figure 7-538 Remove the lower right shield 1529
Figure 7-539 Remove two screws 1529
Figure 7-540 Raise the jam access cover 1530
Figure 7-541 Raise the booklet width guide 1530
Figure 7-542 Disconnect three connectors 1531
Figure 7-543 Remove two screws 1531
Figure 7-544 Release the guide arm 1532
Figure 7-545 Lower the width guide 1532
Figure 7-546 Remove one screw 1533
Figure 7-547 Remove the fold stopper unit 1533
Figure 7-548 Adjust the alignment gauge 1534
Figure 7-549 Remove five screws and the cover 1536
Figure 7-550 Remove the booklet feed entrance motor 1537
Figure 7-551 Remove five screws and the cover 1539
Figure 7-552 Remove the TE presser motor 1540
Figure 7-553 Remove five screws and the cover 1542

Figure 7-554 Remove two screws 1543
Figure 7-555 Remove two screws 1543
Figure 7-556 Remove the lower right shield 1544
Figure 7-557 Remove the stopper moving motor 1544
Figure 7-558 Remove five screws and the cover 1547
Figure 7-559 Remove the separate pawl motor 1548
Figure 7-560 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1550
Figure 7-561 Remove six screws 1551
Figure 7-562 Remove six screws 1551
Figure 7-563 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1552
Figure 7-564 Remove seven screws 1552
Figure 7-565 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1553
Figure 7-566 Remove the folding roller motor 1553
Figure 7-567 Remove five screws and the cover 1556
Figure 7-568 Remove two screws 1557
Figure 7-569 Remove two screws 1557
Figure 7-570 Remove the lower right shield 1558
Figure 7-571 Remove the blade motor 1558
Figure 7-572 Remove five screws and the cover 1561
Figure 7-573 Check arrow alignment 1562
Figure 7-574 Disconnect two connectors 1562
Figure 7-575 Remove four screws 1563
Figure 7-576 Remove one e-clip, gear, and belt 1563
Figure 7-577 Remove the bracket and motor 1564
Figure 7-578 Remove two screws 1564
Figure 7-579 Install one screw 1565
Figure 7-580 Check arrow alignment 1565
Figure 7-581 Align arrows 1566
Figure 7-582 Finisher system diagram 1569
Figure 8-1 Finisher system—sectional view 1581
Figure 8-2 Finisher system—paper path 1582
Figure 8-3 Finisher system—electrical parts layout 1583
Figure 8-4 Finisher system—block diagram 1585
Figure 8-5 Finisher system—PBA connection information 1585
Figure 8-6 Remove the entrance sensor (1 of 7) 1591
Figure 8-7 Remove the entrance sensor (2 of 7) 1591
Figure 8-8 Remove the entrance sensor (3 of 7) 1592
Figure 8-9 Remove the entrance sensor (4 of 7) 1592
Figure 8-10 Remove the entrance sensor (5 of 7) 1593
Figure 8-11 Remove the entrance sensor (6 of 7) 1593
Figure 8-12 Remove the entrance sensor (7 of 7) 1593

Figure 8-13 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7) 1595
Figure 8-14 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7) 1595
Figure 8-15 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7) 1596
Figure 8-16 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7) 1596
Figure 8-17 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7) 1597
Figure 8-18 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7) 1598
Figure 8-19 Remove the entrance motor (6 of 7) 1598
Figure 8-20 Remove the entrance motor (7 of 7) 1599
Figure 8-21 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7) 1601
Figure 8-22 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7) 1601
Figure 8-23 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7) 1602
Figure 8-24 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7) 1602
Figure 8-25 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7) 1603
Figure 8-26 Remove the exit sensor 1604
Figure 8-27 Remove the exit motor (1 of 3) 1606
Figure 8-28 Remove the exit motor (2 of 3) 1606
Figure 8-29 Remove the exit motor (3 of 3) 1607
Figure 8-30 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub-assembly (1 of 6) 1609
Figure 8-31 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub-assembly (2 of 6) 1609
Figure 8-32 Remove the Sub Paddle Shaft Sub assembly (3 of 6) 1610
Figure 8-33 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (4 of 6) 1610
Figure 8-34 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (5 of 6) 1611
Figure 8-35 Remove the front jogger motor (1 of 22) 1613
Figure 8-36 Remove the front jogger motor (2 of 22) 1613
Figure 8-37 Remove the front jogger motor (3 of 22) 1614
Figure 8-38 Remove the front jogger motor (4 of 22) 1614
Figure 8-39 Remove the front jogger motor (5 of 22) 1615
Figure 8-40 Remove the front jogger motor (6 of 22) 1615
Figure 8-41 Remove the front jogger motor (7 of 22) 1616
Figure 8-42 Remove the front jogger motor (8 of 22) 1616
Figure 8-43 Remove the front jogger motor (9 of 22) 1617
Figure 8-44 Remove the front jogger motor (10 of 22) 1617
Figure 8-45 Remove the front jogger motor (11 of 22) 1618
Figure 8-46 Remove the front jogger motor (12 of 22) 1618
Figure 8-47 Remove the front jogger motor (13 of 22) 1619
Figure 8-48 Remove the front jogger motor (14 of 22) 1619
Figure 8-49 Remove the front jogger motor (15 of 22) 1620
Figure 8-50 Remove the front jogger motor (16 of 22) 1620
Figure 8-51 Remove the front jogger motor (17 of 22) 1621
Figure 8-52 Remove the front jogger motor (18 of 22) 1621
Figure 8-53 Remove the front jogger motor (19 of 22) 1622

Figure 8-54 Remove the front jogger motor (20 of 22) 1622
Figure 8-55 Remove the front jogger motor (21 of 22) 1623
Figure 8-56 Remove the front jogger motor (22 of 22) 1623
Figure 8-57 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7) 1625
Figure 8-58 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7) 1625
Figure 8-59 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15) 1626
Figure 8-60 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15) 1626
Figure 8-61 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15) 1627
Figure 8-62 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15) 1627
Figure 8-63 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 15) 1628
Figure 8-64 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 15) 1628
Figure 8-65 Remove the front jogger home sensor (7 of 15) 1629
Figure 8-66 Remove the front jogger home sensor (8 of 15) 1629
Figure 8-67 Remove the front jogger home sensor (9 of 15) 1630
Figure 8-68 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (1 of 6) 1630
Figure 8-69 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (2 of 6) 1631
Figure 8-70 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (3 of 6) 1631
Figure 8-71 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (4 of 6) 1632
Figure 8-72 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (5 of 6) 1632
Figure 8-73 Remove the front jogger home sensor (10 of 15) 1633
Figure 8-74 Remove the front jogger home sensor (11 of 15) 1633
Figure 8-75 Remove the front jogger home sensor (12 of 15) 1634
Figure 8-76 Remove the front jogger home sensor (13 of 15) 1634
Figure 8-77 Remove the front jogger home sensor 1635
Figure 8-78 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7) 1637
Figure 8-79 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7) 1637
Figure 8-80 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15) 1638
Figure 8-81 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15) 1638
Figure 8-82 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15) 1639
Figure 8-83 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15) 1639
Figure 8-84 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 15) 1640
Figure 8-85 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 15) 1640
Figure 8-86 Remove the front jogger home sensor (9 of 15) 1641
Figure 8-87 Remove the rear jogger motor (1 of 3) 1641
Figure 8-88 Remove the rear jogger motor (2 of 3) 1642
Figure 8-89 Remove the rear jogger motor (3 of 3) 1642
Figure 8-90 Remove the rear jogger motor (1 of 3) 1643
Figure 8-91 Remove the rear jogger motor (2 of 3) 1643
Figure 8-92 Remove the rear jogger motor (3 of 3) 1644
Figure 8-93 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 11) 1646
Figure 8-94 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 11) 1646

Figure 8-95 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 11) 1647
Figure 8-96 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 11) 1647
Figure 8-97 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 11) 1648
Figure 8-98 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 11) 1648
Figure 8-99 Remove the front jogger home sensor (8 of 11) 1649
Figure 8-100 Remove the front jogger home sensor (9 of 11) 1649
Figure 8-101 Remove the front jogger home sensor (10 of 11) 1650
Figure 8-102 Remove the rear jogger home sensor (11 of 11) 1650
Figure 8-103 Remove the exit motor (1 of 3) 1652
Figure 8-104 Remove the exit motor (2 of 3) 1652
Figure 8-105 Remove the stapler (1 of 2) 1653
Figure 8-106 Remove the stapler (2 of 2) 1653
Figure 8-107 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7) 1655
Figure 8-108 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7) 1655
Figure 8-109 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7) 1656
Figure 8-110 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7) 1656
Figure 8-111 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7) 1657
Figure 8-112 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub-assembly (1 of 6) 1658
Figure 8-113 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub-assembly (2 of 6) 1658
Figure 8-114 Remove the Sub Paddle Shaft Sub assembly (3 of 6) 1659
Figure 8-115 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (4 of 6) 1659
Figure 8-116 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (5 of 6) 1660
Figure 8-117 Remove the stapler position sensor (1 of 7) 1661
Figure 8-118 Remove the stapler position sensor (2 of 7) 1661
Figure 8-119 Remove the stapler position sensor (3 of 7) 1662
Figure 8-120 Remove the stapler position sensor (4 of 7) 1662
Figure 8-121 Remove the stapler position sensor (5 of 7) 1663
Figure 8-122 Remove the stapler position sensor (6 of 7) 1663
Figure 8-123 Remove the stapler position sensor (7 of 7) 1664
Figure 8-124 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7) 1666
Figure 8-125 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7) 1666
Figure 8-126 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7) 1667
Figure 8-127 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7) 1667
Figure 8-128 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7) 1668
Figure 8-129 Remove the traverse motor (1 of 2) 1669
Figure 8-130 Remove the traverse motor (2 of 2) 1669
Figure 8-131 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7) 1671
Figure 8-132 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7) 1671
Figure 8-133 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15) 1672
Figure 8-134 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15) 1672
Figure 8-135 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15) 1673

Figure 8-136 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15) 1673
Figure 8-137 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 15) 1674
Figure 8-138 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 15) 1674
Figure 8-139 Remove the front jogger home sensor (7 of 15) 1675
Figure 8-140 Remove the front jogger home sensor (8 of 15) 1675
Figure 8-141 Remove the stacker motor 1676
Figure 8-142 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7) 1678
Figure 8-143 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7) 1678
Figure 8-144 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15) 1679
Figure 8-145 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15) 1679
Figure 8-146 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15) 1680
Figure 8-147 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15) 1680
Figure 8-148 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 15) 1681
Figure 8-149 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 15) 1681
Figure 8-150 Remove the front jogger home sensor (7 of 15) 1682
Figure 8-151 Remove the front jogger home sensor (8 of 15) 1682
Figure 8-152 Remove the stacker encoder sensor 1683
Figure 8-153 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7) 1685
Figure 8-154 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7) 1685
Figure 8-155 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15) 1686
Figure 8-156 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15) 1686
Figure 8-157 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15) 1687
Figure 8-158 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15) 1687
Figure 8-159 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 15) 1688
Figure 8-160 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 15) 1688
Figure 8-161 Remove the front jogger home sensor (7 of 15) 1689
Figure 8-162 Remove the front jogger home sensor (8 of 15) 1689
Figure 8-163 Remove the stacker lower limit switch (1 of 2) 1690
Figure 8-164 Remove the stacker lower limit switch (2 of 2) 1690
Figure 8-165 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7) 1692
Figure 8-166 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7) 1692
Figure 8-167 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15) 1693
Figure 8-168 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15) 1693
Figure 8-169 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15) 1694
Figure 8-170 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15) 1694
Figure 8-171 Remove the stack beam sensor 1695
Figure 8-172 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7) 1697
Figure 8-173 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7) 1697
Figure 8-174 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7) 1698
Figure 8-175 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7) 1698
Figure 8-176 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7) 1699

Figure 8-177 Remove the tray 1700
Figure 8-178 Remove the sub-tray 1700
Figure 8-179 Remove the PBA 1701
Figure 8-180 Remove the PBA 1701
Figure 8-181 Remove the sub-stacker plate 1702
Figure 8-182 Remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly 1702
Figure 8-183 Release the motor paddle sub assembly 1703
Figure 8-184 Remove the guide harness front 1703
Figure 8-185 Release the finisher sub-motor tray 1704
Figure 8-186 Remove one screw 1704
Figure 8-187 Release the sensor 1705
Figure 8-188 Remove the sensor 1705
Figure 8-189 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7) 1707
Figure 8-190 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7) 1707
Figure 8-191 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15) 1708
Figure 8-192 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15) 1708
Figure 8-193 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15) 1709
Figure 8-194 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15) 1709
Figure 8-195 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 15) 1710
Figure 8-196 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 15) 1710
Figure 8-197 Remove the front jogger home sensor (7 of 15) 1711
Figure 8-198 Remove the front jogger home sensor (8 of 15) 1711
Figure 8-199 Remove the paper holding lever solenoid (1 of 4) 1712
Figure 8-200 Remove the paper holding lever solenoid (1 of 4) 1712
Figure 8-201 Remove the paper holding lever solenoid (1 of 4) 1713
Figure 8-202 Remove the paper holding lever solenoid (1 of 4) 1713
Figure 8-203 Remove the tray 1715
Figure 8-204 Remove the sub-tray 1715
Figure 8-205 Remove the PBA 1716
Figure 8-206 Remove the PBA 1716
Figure 8-207 Remove the sub-stacker plate 1717
Figure 8-208 Remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly 1717
Figure 8-209 Release the motor paddle sub assembly 1718
Figure 8-210 Remove the guide harness front 1718
Figure 8-211 Release the finisher sub-motor tray 1719
Figure 8-212 Remove one screw 1719
Figure 8-213 Release the sensor 1720
Figure 8-214 Remove the sensor 1720
Figure 8-215 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7) 1724
Figure 8-216 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7) 1724
Figure 8-217 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7) 1725

Figure 8-218 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7) 1725
Figure 8-219 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7) 1726
Figure 8-220 Remove the tray 1727
Figure 8-221 Remove the sub-tray 1727
Figure 8-222 Remove the PBA 1728
Figure 8-223 Remove the PBA 1728
Figure 8-224 Remove the sub-stacker plate 1729
Figure 8-225 Remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly 1729
Figure 8-226 Release the motor paddle sub assembly 1730
Figure 8-227 Remove the guide harness front 1730
Figure 8-228 Release the finisher sub-motor tray 1731
Figure 8-229 Remove one screw 1731
Figure 8-230 Release the sensor 1732
Figure 8-231 Remove the sensor 1732
Figure 8-232 Remove the paper support home sensor (1 of 4) 1733
Figure 8-233 Remove the paper support home sensor (2 of 4) 1733
Figure 8-234 Remove the paper support home sensor (3 of 4) 1734
Figure 8-235 Remove the paper support home sensor (4 of 4) 1734
Figure 8-236 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7) 1736
Figure 8-237 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7) 1736
Figure 8-238 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7) 1737
Figure 8-239 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7) 1737
Figure 8-240 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7) 1738
Figure 8-241 Remove the tray 1739
Figure 8-242 Remove the sub-tray 1739
Figure 8-243 Remove the PBA 1740
Figure 8-244 Remove the PBA 1740
Figure 8-245 Remove the sub-stacker plate 1741
Figure 8-246 Remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly 1741
Figure 8-247 Release the motor paddle sub assembly 1742
Figure 8-248 Remove the guide harness front 1742
Figure 8-249 Release the finisher sub-motor tray 1743
Figure 8-250 Remove one screw 1743
Figure 8-251 Release the sensor 1744
Figure 8-252 Remove the sensor 1744
Figure 8-253 Remove the paper support home sensor (1 of 4) 1745
Figure 8-254 Remove the paper support home sensor (2 of 4) 1745
Figure 8-255 Remove the ejector motor assembly (1 of 6) 1746
Figure 8-256 Remove the ejector motor assembly (2 of 6) 1746
Figure 8-257 Remove two belt-timing gears 1747
Figure 8-258 Remove the belt-timing gear and one screw 1747

Figure 8-259 Disconnect connectors 1748
Figure 8-260 Remove the motor assembly 1748
Figure 8-261 Remove the motor assembly 1750
Figure 8-262 Remove the main paddle motor 1750
Figure 8-263 Remove the bracket-paddle sensor 1752
Figure 8-264 Remove the main paddle home sensor 1752
Figure 8-265 Remove the main paddle 1754
Figure 8-266 Remove the tray 1756
Figure 8-267 Remove the sub-tray 1756
Figure 8-268 Remove the PBA 1757
Figure 8-269 Remove the PBA 1757
Figure 8-270 Remove the sub-stacker plate 1758
Figure 8-271 Remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly 1758
Figure 8-272 Release the motor paddle sub assembly 1759
Figure 8-273 Remove the guide harness front 1759
Figure 8-274 Release the finisher sub-motor tray 1760
Figure 8-275 Remove one screw 1760
Figure 8-276 Release the sensor 1761
Figure 8-277 Remove the sensor 1761
Figure 8-278 Remove the paper support home sensor (1 of 4) 1762
Figure 8-279 Remove the paper support home sensor (2 of 4) 1762
Figure 8-280 Remove the ejector motor assembly (1 of 6) 1763
Figure 8-281 Remove the ejector motor assembly (2 of 6) 1763
Figure 8-282 Remove two belt-timing gears 1764
Figure 8-283 Remove the belt-timing gear and one screw 1764
Figure 8-284 Disconnect connectors 1765
Figure 8-285 Remove the motor assembly 1765
Figure 8-286 Remove two screws 1766
Figure 8-287 Remove the ejector assembly 1766
Figure 8-288 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7) 1768
Figure 8-289 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7) 1768
Figure 8-290 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7) 1769
Figure 8-291 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7) 1769
Figure 8-292 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7) 1770
Figure 8-293 Remove the punch dust full sensor sub-assembly 1771
Figure 8-294 Remove the punch dust full sensor 1771
Figure 8-295 Remove three screws 1773
Figure 8-296 Remove the e-ring 1773
Figure 8-297 Remove the sheet-punch front 1774
Figure 8-298 Remove the punch dummy 1774
Figure 8-299 Remove the bracket-SPT B 1775

Figure 8-300 Remove the door switch 1775
Figure 8-301 Remove the cover-rear 1777
Figure 8-302 Remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile 1777
Figure 8-303 Remove the tray 1778
Figure 8-304 Remove the finisher sub-tray frame 1778
Figure 8-305 Remove the PBA cover 1779
Figure 8-306 Remove four screws 1779
Figure 8-307 Remove one screw 1780
Figure 8-308 Remove the switch assembly 1780
Figure 8-309 Remove the sensor 1780
Figure 8-310 Remove the end fence home sensor 1782

1 Precautions

Please read the precautions listed below and follow them closely in order to prevent accidents or damage to the printer.

- Safety warning
- Caution for safety
- ESD precautions

Safety warning

1. Service should be performed by a factory trained service technician.

   This printer contains high voltages and lasers which are dangerous. This printer should only be serviced by a factory trained service technician.

2. Use HP replacement parts.

   There are no customer serviceable parts inside the printer. Do not make any unauthorized changes or additions to the printer as these could cause the printer to malfunction and create an electric shock or fire hazard.

3. Laser Safety Statement.

   The printer is certified in the U.S. to conform to the requirements of DHHS 21 CFR, chapter 1 Subchapter J for Class I(1) laser products, and elsewhere is certified as a Class I laser product conforming to the requirements of IEC 60825-1. Class I laser products are not considered to be hazardous. The laser system and printer are designed so that there is never human access to laser radiation above a Class I level during normal operation, user maintenance or a prescribed service condition.

   - Wavelength: 800 nm
   - Beam divergence
     - Parallel: 11 degrees
     - Perpendicular: 35 degrees
   - Maximum power of energy output: 12 mW

   ⚠ WARNING! Do not operate or service the printer when the protective cover is removed from the laser/scanner assembly. The reflected laser, although invisible, can cause eye damage.

   Following these safety precautions will reduce the risk of fire, electric shock, and personal injury.

4. Lithium battery not replaceable by user.

Caution for safety

Toxic material

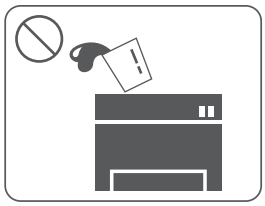
This printer contains toxic materials which could cause illness if ingested.

- Keep the imaging unit and toner cartridge away from children. The toner powder in the imaging unit and the toner cartridge might be harmful. If the toner powder is swallowed, contact a doctor.

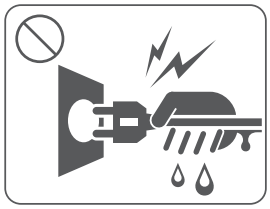
Electric shock and fire safety precautions

Failure to follow these instructions could result in electric shock or cause a fire.

1. Use the correct voltage. Failure to do so could damage the printer and cause fire or electric shock.
2. Use the power cable supplied with the printer. Use of an incorrectly specified cable could cause overheating and fire.
3. Do not overload the power socket. This could lead to overheating of the cables inside the wall and cause fire.
4. Keep water and other liquids, paper clips, pins, and other foreign objects away from the printer. Contact with liquids or these objects might cause electric shock or fire.

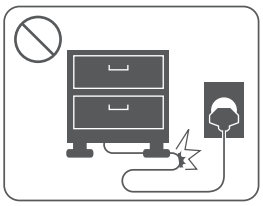


5. Do not touch the plugs on the ends of the power cable with wet hands. When servicing the printer, remove the power plug from the wall socket.



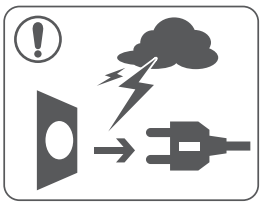
6. Use caution when plugging or unplugging the power cable.

7. Take care of the power cable. Do not allow the power cable to become twisted or sharply bent around corners as this will cause damage. Do not place objects on top of the power cable. Damage to the power cable might cause overheating and fire. Exposed cables might cause electric shock. Replace damaged power cable immediately. Do not reuse or repair a damaged power cable. Certain chemicals can damage the coating on the power cable, weakening the coating or exposing cables which might cause electric shock or fire.

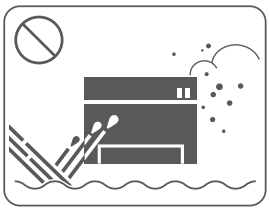


8. Make sure that the power outlet and plugs are not cracked or broken. Repair these defects as soon as possible. Be careful to not cut or damage the power cable or plugs when moving the printer.

9. Use caution during thunder or lightning storms. HP recommends the printer be disconnected from the power source when thunder or lightning is expected. Do not touch the machine or the power cable if it is still connected to the power outlet during these weather conditions.

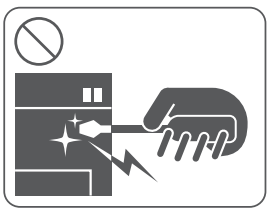


10. Do not place the printer in damp or dusty areas. Install the printer in a clean, well-ventilated location. Do not position the machine near a humidifier or in front of an air conditioner. Moisture and dust build up inside the printer can lead to overheating and cause fire or rust.



11. Do not place the printer in direct sunlight. Direct sunlight can cause the temperature inside the printer to rise causing failure to work properly, and in extreme conditions, might lead to fire.

12. Do not insert metal objects into the printer through the ventilator fan or other parts of the casing. Doing so could lead to the metal object making contact with the high voltage conductor inside the printer, causing electric shock.



13. Wait 5 minutes after unplugging the power cable before replacing the SMPS board to avoid electric shock.

Handling precautions

The following instructions are for the user's personal safety, to avoid injury, and to avoid damage to the printer.

1. Make sure the printer is placed on a level surface capable of supporting the weight of the printer. Failure to do so could cause the printer to tip or fall.
2. The printer contains rollers, gears, and fans. Make sure to not catch fingers, hair, or clothing in any these rotating devices.
3. Do not place any small metal objects, or containers of water, chemicals, or other liquids close to the printer. If spilled, these objects or liquids could get into the printer and cause damage, or cause electric shock or fire.
4. Do not place the printer in damp or dusty areas, near an open window, or close to a humidifier or heater. These conditions can cause damage to the printer.
5. Do place candles or burning cigarettes on the printer. Doing so could cause fire.
6. Make sure that the printer is installed and operated in an area that meets temperature and humidity specifications.
   - The printer cannot be used immediately after being stored at below zero Celsius for long periods of time. Doing so could cause malfunction. Place the printer in an area where it can reach room temperature before operation.

Removal and Replacement precautions

1. Use caution when replacing parts. Always use HP parts. Make sure to note the exact location of parts and cable routing before dismantling any part of the printer. Make sure all parts and cables are replaced correctly. Complete the following procedures before dismantling the printer or replacing any parts.
2. Make sure that the power cable is disconnected before servicing or replacing any electrical parts.
3. Disconnect interface cables and power cables.
4. Use approved replacement parts. Make sure that the part number, printer name, voltage, and current or temperature ratings are correct.
5. Do not excessive force to remove or refit parts, especially when fitting screws into plastic.
6. Make sure not to drop any small parts into the printer.
7. Be careful when handling the OPC drum:
   - The OPC Drum can be permanently damaged if exposed to light. Be careful not to expose the OPC Drum to direct sunlight, fluorescent light, or incandescent room lighting. Exposure for as little as 5 minutes can damage the surface of the photoconductive properties and will result in print quality degradation. Be careful when servicing the printer. Remove the OPC Drum and store it in a black bag or other lightproof container. Be careful when working with the printer if the covers, especially the top cover, are open, as light is admitted to the OPC area and can damage the OPC Drum.
   - Make sure not to scratch the green surface of the OPC Drum Unit. If the green surface of the Drum Cartridge is scratched or touched, the print quality will be compromised.

Disregarding this warning may cause bodily injury

1. Be careful with high temperature parts.

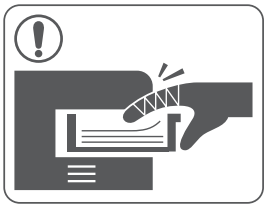
The fuser unit operates at high temperatures. Wait for the fuser unit to cool down before disassembly.

2. Keep fingers, hair, and clothes away from moving parts.

   To avoid injury, do not put fingers, hair, or clothes near moving parts such as the paper feeding entrance, motor, and fan.

3. Use safe lifting and handling techniques to move the printer.

   The printer is heavy. To avoid injury, use the lifting handles located on each side of the printer and lift carefully.



4. Make sure the printer is installed safely.

   Make sure the printer is placed on a level surface that is capable of supporting the weight of the printer. Failure to do so could cause the printer to tip or fall, possibly causing personal injury or damage to the printer.

5. Do not install the printer on a sloping or unstable surface. After installation, make sure that the printer is stable.

ESD precautions

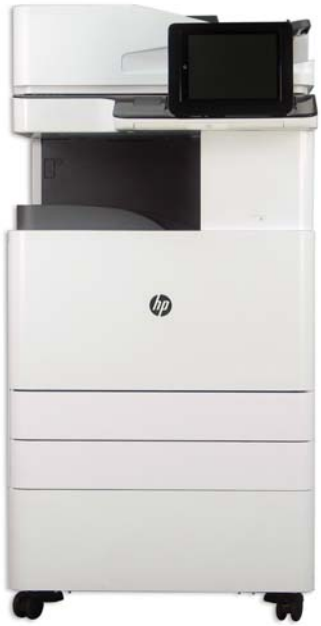
⚠ CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Look for the ESD reminder when removing printer parts. Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground *before* touching an ESD-sensitive assembly.

Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

2 Product specifications and description

- Product overview
- Specifications
- Machine external view
- Feeding system
- Fuser unit
- Image creation
- Laser scanner assembly
- Drive system
- Flatbed Scanner System
- Flow Automatic Document Feeder (Flow ADF) dn/z bundles (GX)
- Hardware configuration
- Dual cassette feeder (DCF)
- High capacity input tray (HCI)
- Side high capacity input tray (sHCI)

Product overview



- **Printing speed**
  - E82540
    - Up to 40 ppm in A4/Letter
    - Up to 21 ppm in A3
  - E82550
    - Up to 50 ppm in A4/Letter
    - Up to 26 ppm in A3
  - E82560
    - Up to 60 ppm in A4/Letter
    - Up to 31 ppm in A3
- **Processor**
  - Quad Core 1.5 GHz
- **Memory**
  - 7 GB (3 GB Formatter + 4 GB)
- **ADF**
  - Flow ADF
- **Control panel**
  - 8 inch touch screen

Specifications

General specifications

Table 2-1 General specifications

Item		Specification
Processor	CPU	1.5 GHz (Quad Core)
User Interface	Operational Panel	8 inch touch screen
	LED	2 (Power/Status)
	Key/Button	1 (Power)
Memory	Total	7 GB (3 GB Formatter + 4 GB)
Storage	Standard	320 GB HDD
Interface	USB (Host)	Yes (Hi-Speed USB 3.0, 2.0)
	USB (Device)	Yes (Hi-Speed USB 3.0, 2.0)
	USB (EDI)	N/A
	Wired LAN	Standard (Ethernet 10/100/1G Base TX)
	Additional Wired LAN Support	Yes (optional)
	Wireless LAN/NFC	• Optional (IEEE 802.11b/g/n + NFC Active Type) • Optional (IEEE 802.11b/g/n/ac + BLE + NFC Active Type)
Warmup Time	From Power off (power on to ready)	23 sec
	From Sleep	12 sec
Power Consumption	Ready	Less than 30 W
	Normal operation	Less than 900 W
	Max/Peak	Less than 1300 W
	Sleep/Low Power Mode	Less than 2.0 W
	TEC (Default Mode)	• E82540: 2.1 kWh • E82550: 2.717 kWh • E82560: 3.1 kWh
Power Requirement	• Input Voltage (Europe): AC 220–240 V (-10%-6%) • Input voltage (USA): AC 110–127 V (-10%-6%) • Input Voltage (Korea): AC 220–240 V (-10%-6%) • Rated Frequency: 50/60 Hz	
Acoustic Noise Level (Sound Power/ Pressure)	Printing Mode	Simplex • E82540, E82550

Table 2-1 General specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
		– Tray 2: Less than 54 dBA – MP Tray/Optional trays: Less than 56 dBA • E82560 – Tray 2: Less than 56 dBA – MP Tray/Optional trays: Less than 58 dBA **Duplex** • E82540, E82550 – Tray 2: Less than 57 dBA – MP Tray/Optional trays: Less than 59 dBA • E82560 – Tray 2: Less than 59 dBA – MP Tray/Optional trays: Less than 61 dBA
	Copying Mode	**Simplex** • E82540 – Tray 2: Less than 58 dBA – MP Tray/Optional trays: Less than 60 dBA • E82550, E82560 – Tray 2: Less than 59 dBA – MP Tray/Optional trays: Less than 61 dBA **Duplex** • E82540 – Tray 2: Less than 60 dBA – MP Tray/Optional trays: Less than 62 dBA • E82550 – Tray 2: Less than 61 dBA – MP Tray/Optional trays: Less than 63 dBA • E82560

Table 2-1 General specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
		– Tray 2: Less than 61 dBA – MP Tray/Optional trays: Less than 64 dBA
	Ready Mode	30 dBA
Dimensions (W x D x H)	Set (without stand)	• 585 x 771.1 x 932.2 mm (23 x 30.3 x 36.7 in)
Weight	Set (with supplies)	• E82540, E82550, E82560: 95.6 kg (210.8 lb)
Recommended Monthly Print Volume	• E87640: 15,000 pages • E82550: 25,000 pages • E82560: 30,000 pages	
Max Monthly Duty Cycle	• E82540: 200,000 pages • E82550: 250,000 pages • E82560: 300,000 pages	

Print specifications

Table 2-2 Print specifications

Item		Specification
Print speed	Simplex	• E82540 – Up to 40 ppm in A4 (40 ppm in Letter) – Up to 21 ppm in A3 (21 ppm in 11x17) • E82550 – Up to 50 ppm in A4 (50 ppm in Letter) – Up to 26 ppm in A3 (26 ppm in 11x17) • E82560 – Up to 60 ppm in A4 (50 ppm in Letter) – Up to 31 ppm in A3 (31 ppm in 11x17)
	Duplex (Simplex to Duplex)	• E82540

Table 2-2 Print specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
		– Up to 40 ipm in A4 (40 ipm in Letter) – Up to 21 ipm in A3 (21 ipm in 11x17) • E82550 – Up to 50 ipm in A4 (50 ipm in Letter) – Up to 26 ipm in A3 (26 ipm in 11x17) • E82560 – Up to 60 ipm in A4 (50 ipm in Letter) – Up to 31 ipm in A3 (31 ipm in 11x17)
FPOT	From Ready	• E82540: as fast as 8.4 s • E82550: as fast as 7.5 s • E82560: as fast as 6.9 s
	From Sleep	• E82540: as fast as 20.4 s • E82550: as fast as 19.5 s • E82560: as fast as 18.9 s
Resolution		1200 x 1200 dpi (Full Speed)
Printer Language		PCL5/PCL6(XL)/PostScript Level 3/PDF v1.7
Font	PCL	95 scalable fonts (including OCR-A/OCR-B)/1 Bitmap
	PostScript 3	136 scalable fonts
Supporting Operating Systems	Windows	• Windows XP (32–bit, 64–bit) • Windows 2003 Server (32–bit, 64–bit) • Windows Vista (32–bit, 64–bit) • Windows 2008 Server (32–bit, 64–bit) • Windows 7 (32–bit, 64–bit) • Windows 2008 Server R2 (64–bit) • Windows 8 (32–bit, 64–bit) • Windows 8.1 (32–bit, 64–bit) • Windows Server 2012 (64–bit) • Windows Server 2012 R2 (64–bit)

Table 2-2 Print specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
	Linux	• Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5, 6 (32–bit, 64–bit) • Fedora 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20 (32–bit, 64–bit) • OpenSuSE 11.2, 11.3, 11.4, 12.1, 12.2, 12.3, 13.1 (32–bit, 64–bit) • Ubuntu 10.04, 11.04, 11.10, 12.04, 12.10, 13.04, 13.10, 14.04 (32–bit, 64–bit) • SuSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10, 11 (32–bit, 64–bit) • Debian 6, 7 (32–bit, 64–bit) • Mint 13, 14, 15, 16 (32–bit, 64–bit)
	Mac OS	Mac OS X 10.6–10.10
Direct Print	PRN/PDF/TIFF/JPEG/XPS	
Print Features	• WSD print • Secure print • Stored print • Booklet • N-up • Cover page • Barcode • Eco • Poster • Glossy • Watermark • Tray priority setting • Auto tray setting • Tray protection • USB print • Secure PDF print • Google Cloud print	

Scan specifications

Table 2-3 Scan specifications

Item			Specification
Scan Speed		Scan to folder speeds (hardware)	DN bundles (black and white, gray scale, and color) • Simplex: 90 ipm @ 300 DPI • Duplex: 180 ipm @ 300 DPI Z bundles (black and white, gray scale, and color) • Simplex: 120 ipm @ 300 DPI • Duplex: 240 ipm @ 300 DPI
Color Mode			Mono/Gray/Color
Compatibility			Network TWAIN/Network SANE
Scan Method			MMT
File Formats			• PDF • Searchable PDF • Compact PDF • PDF Encryption • Digital Signature in PDF • PDF/A • Single-Page PDF • Multi-page PDF • TIFF • Single-Page TIFF • Multi-page TIFF • XPS • Single-Page XPS • Multi-page XPS • JPEG
Resolution	Optical (ADF)		Up to 600 x 600 dpi
	Optical (Image Scanner)		Up to 600 x 600 dpi
	Enhanced (ADF)		Up to 4800 x 4800 dpi
	Enhanced (Image Scanner)		Up to 4800 x 4800 dpi

Table 2-3 Scan specifications (continued)

Item			Specification
Scan Destinations			• Email • FTP • SMB • HDD • USB • WSD • PC • Internet FAX
Multi-destinations			Yes
Communication Protocol			• SMTP (IPv4, IPv6, SSL/TLS) • POP3 (IPv4, IPv6, SSL/TLS) • FTP (IPv4, IPv6) • SMB (IPv4, IPv6) • WSD • T4Net
Scan Size		ADF	• Min. A6 SEF 105 mm x 148 mm (4.13 in x 5.83) • Max. 297 mm x 437 mm (11.7 in x 17.2 in)
		Image Scanner	Max. 297 mm x 437 mm (11.7 in x 17.2 in)
Scan Original Types			Text/Text & Photo/Photo

Copy specifications

Table 2-4 Copy specifications

Item		Specification
Copy Speed	Single Document Multiple Copy (SDMC)	• E82540 – Up to 40 cpm in A4 • E82550 – Up to 50 cpm in A4 • E82560 – Up to 60 cpm in A4
	Multiple Document Multiple Copy (MDMC)	• E82540

Table 2-4 Copy specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
		– Simplex to Simplex: Up to 40 cpm in A4/Letter – Duplex to Simplex: Up to 40 ipm in A4/Letter • E82550 – Simplex to Simplex: Up to 50 cpm in A4/Letter – Duplex to Simplex: Up to 50 ipm in A4/Letter • E82560 – Simplex to Simplex: Up to 60 cpm in A4/Letter – Duplex to Simplex: Up to 60 ipm in A4/Letter
FCOT	From Ready	• E82540: 4.6 s • E82550: 3.7 s • E82560: 3.1 s
Resolution	Flow ADF	• Scan: 600 x 600 dpi • Printing: 600 x 600 dpi
	Image Scanner	• Scan: 600 x 600 dpi • Printing: 600 x 600 dpi
Reduce/Enlarge	Flow ADF	25–400% in 1% increments
	Image Scanner	25–400% in 1% increments
	Preset	25% / 50% A3→A5 / 61% A3→B5 / 64% Ledger→Letter / 70% A3→A4 | B4→B5 | A4→A5 / 77% Ledger→Legal / 78% Legal→Letter / 81% B4→A4 | B5→A5 / 86% A3→B4 | A4→B5 / 104% Executive→Letter / 115% B4→A3 / 121% Legal→Ledger / 122% A4→B4 / 129% Letter→Ledger / 141% A4→A3 | A5→A4 / 150% / 200% A5→A3 / 400%
Darkness Control	11 levels	
Contrast Control	11 levels	
Multi Copy	1–9,999	
Duplex Copy	Built-in	

Table 2-4 Copy specifications (continued)

Item	Specification
Copy Original Type	• Text • Text and Printed Photo • Text and Glossy Photo • Newspaper • Printed Photo • Glossy Photo • Copied Original • Map • Light Original
Copy Features	• ID Copy • N-up • Booklet • Image Repeat • Auto Fit • Book Copy • Poster Copy • Watermark • Image Overlay • Stamp • Covers • Job Build • Preview • Erase Edge • Image Shift • Image Adjustment • Background Adjustment

Supplies

Table 2-5 Supplies

Item		Part number	Average yield	Conditions for yield
Toner Cartridge	Initial NOTE: Only China, Korea		Approx. 30,000 pages	@ A4/Letter LEF, Continuous job, Simplex Mode, 6% Coverage

Table 2-5 Supplies (continued)

Item		Part number	Average yield	Conditions for yield
	Standard	X3A74-67901	Approx. 45,000 pages	@ A4/Letter LEF, Continuous job, Simplex Mode, 6% Coverage
OPC Drum Unit		X3A74-67902	Approx. 450,000 pages	@ A4/Letter LEF, 4 pages/job, Simplex Mode 6% Coverage
TCU		SAM-JC96-11638A	Approx. 300,000 pages	@ A4/Letter LEF, 4 pages/job, Simplex Mode 5% Coverage

NOTE: Depending on the print pattern and job mode used, the lifespan of the consumable can vary.

Maintenance parts

Some of the printer parts have a shorter lifespan than the life of the printer.

HP recommends replacing the following maintenance parts at specific intervals to make sure the printer produces quality copies and to extend the service life of the printer.

Item	Part number	Life	Remark
Development Unit		1,200,000 pages	@ A4/Letter LEF, 4 pages/job, Simplex Mode 6% Coverage
Fuser Unit	SAM-JC91-01194A	360,000 pages	220 V
	SAM-JC91-01195A		110 V
Paper Transfer Belt (PTB)	SAM-JC93-01117A	300,000 pages	
Pickup/Feed/Reverse (Separation) roller (for Tray 2-X)		360,000 pages	
MP Pickup/Feed/Reverse (Separation) Roller		200,000 pages	
Flow ADF pickup roller assembly	SAM-JC97-04650A	200,000 pages	
Flow ADF reverse (separation) roller assembly	SAM-JC97-04661A	100,000 pages	

NOTE:

- Depending on the print patterns and job mode used, the lifespan can differ.
- See Replacing the maintenance part for further instructions.

Maintenance table

- EM: Emergency Maintenance (as needed)
- C: Clean
- R: Replace

NOTE: The total pages at the top of the table represents the lifespan for each maintenance part.

Table 2-6 Maintenance table

Section	Item	EM	45K	50K	100K	200K	300K	360K	450K	1200K
Waste Toner	Waste Toner Container	C					R			
	Around Waste Toner Container	C								
Imaging Unit	Toner Cartridge	C	R							
	Drum Unit	C							R	
	Developer Unit	C								R
	Around Toner Pipe	C								
	Paper Dust Stick		C							
Fuser Unit	Fuser Unit	C						R		
Transfer Unit	Paper Transfer Belt (PTB)	C					R			
Paper Path	Pickup/ Feed/ Reverse (Separation) Roller (for Tray 2-X)*	C						R		
	MP Pickup/ Feed/ Reverse (Separation) roller*	C				R				

Table 2-6 Maintenance table (continued)

Section	Item	EM	45K	50K	100K	200K	300K	360K	450K	1200K
	Registration assembly /Feed/ Duplex Roller	C								
Flow ADF	Flow ADF pickup roller assembly	C				R				
	Flow ADF reverse (separation) roller assembly	C			R					
	White sheet/ White sponge/ Feed roller	C								

* Replace those three parts at the same time.

Paper handling specifications

Table 2-7 Paper handling specifications

Item		Specification
Input Capacity	Standard	1040 sheets
	Multipurpose	100 sheets
	Maximum	6140 sheets NOTE: MP (100) + 2 Tray (1040) + HCI bottom (2000) + sHCI (3000)
Standard Cassette Tray	Capacity	• 520 sheets x 2 (Based on Xerox Premier 80g/m^2) • Envelope: 50 sheets (only Tray 2 support) NOTE: Supported Envelopes: Monarch, DL, C4, C5, C6, No.10, No. 9
	Media Sizes	• Cassette 1: 98 mm x 139.7 mm — 297 mm x 390 mm (3.9 in x 5.5 in — 11.7 in x 15.4 in) • Cassette 2: 148.5 mm x 182 mm — 320 mm x 457 mm (5.8 in x 7.2 in — 12.6 in x 18 in)

Table 2-7 Paper handling specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
	Media Types	• Plain • Thin • Bond • Hole Punched • Pre-Printed • Recycled • Thin Cardstock • Thick Cardstock • Heavy Cardstock • Extra Heavy Cardstock 1 • Letterhead • Thick • Cotton • Colored • Archive • Thin Glossy • Thick Glossy • Heavy Glossy • Heavy Weight • Extra Heavy Weight 1 ,2 ,3 4 • Label • Transparency • Envelope (Cassette 1 Only)

Table 2-7 Paper handling specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
	Media Weight	• Plain Paper: 70-90 g/m² (18.5-24 lb/ Duplex) • Thick Paper: 91-105 g/m² (25-28 lb/ Duplex) • Heavy Weight Paper : 106-176 g/m² (Duplex) • Extra Heavy Weight 1 Paper : 177-220 g/m² • Extra Heavy Weight 2: 221–256 g/m² (Duplex) • Extra Heavy Weight 3: 257–300 g/m² • Thick Cardstock: 164–216 g/m2 (Duplex) • Heavy Cardstock: 217–256 g/m2 (Duplex) • Extra Heavy Cardstock: 257–300 g/m² • Thick Glossy: 164–216 g/m² • Heavy Glossy: 217–256 g/m² • Transparency: 138–146 g/m² • Label: 120–150 g/m² • Envelope: 75–90 g/m² (Only Tray 2 support) • Thick Envelope: 91–120 g/m² (Only Tray 2 support) • Thin Paper: 60-69 g/m² (16-19 lb/ Duplex) • Cotton paper : 75-90 g/m² (Duplex) • Colored : 75-90 g/m² (Duplex) • Pre-Printed : 71-90 g/m² (Duplex) • Recycled : 60-90 g/m² (Duplex) • Bond Paper: 105-120 g/m² (Duplex) • Letterhead : 75-90 g/m² (Duplex) • Hole Punched Paper: 75-90 g/m² (Duplex) • Thin Cardstock : 105-163 g/m² (Duplex) • Thin Glossy : 106-163 g/m² (Duplex)

Table 2-7 Paper handling specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
	Sensing	• H/W Install Detect: Yes • Paper Empty and Low Level Detect: Yes • Paper Type Detect: No • Paper Size Detect: Yes
MP Tray	Capacity	• Plain Paper: 100 sheets at 80 g/m^2 • Envelopes: 10 sheets at 75 g/m^2 NOTE: Supported Envelopes: Monarch, DL, C4, C5, C6, No. 10, No. 9 • Labels: 20 sheets at 120–159 g/m^2 • Thick Paper: 10 sheets at 176 g/m^2
	Media Sizes	98 mm x 139.7 mm — 320 mm x 1200 mm (3.8 in x 5.5 in — 12.6 in x 47.2 in)
	Media Types	• Plain • Thin • Bond • Hole Punched • Pre-Printed • Recycled • Thin Cardstock • Letterhead • Thick • Cotton • Colored • Archive • Thin Glossy • Thick Glossy • Heavy Glossy • Heavy Weight • Extra Heavy Weight 1, 2 ,3 ,4 • Envelope • Transparency • Label

Table 2-7 Paper handling specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
	Media Weight	• 60 to 256 g/m^2: Simplex, Duplex • 257 to 325 g/m^2: Simplex • Envelope: 75–90 g/m^2, Simplex • Label: 120–150 g/m^2, Simplex
	Sensing	Paper Empty Detect: Yes Paper Size Detect: Yes
ADF	Capacity	250 sheets
	Document Size	• Width: 105 mm — 297 mm (5 in — 11.7 in) • Length: 140 mm — 432 mm (5.5in — 17 in)
	Document Weight	• Simplex: 60–163 g/m^2 (11.25–43.24 lb) (Guarantee) 42–60 g/m^2 and 163–220 g/m^2 (Support) • Duplex: 60–163 g/m^2 (13.25–43.25 lb) (Guarantee) 50–60 g/m^2 and 163–220 g/m^2 (Support)
	Auto Detected Size	A3/A4/A5/A6 SEF/B4/B5/Letter/Legal/ Statement/Folio/Executive
Image Scanner	Document Size	• Width: 140 mm — 297 mm (5.5 in — 11.7 in) • Length: 140 mm — 432 mm (5.5 in — 17 in)
Output Capacity	Standard	500 sheets, face down
	Maximum	615 sheets [500 sheets (Standard) + 125 sheets (Job Separator)]
Printing Size	Maximum Size	320 mm x 457 mm (12.6 in x 18 in)
	Minimum Size	98 mm x 139.7 mm (3.8 in x 5.5 in)
Maximum Printing Area	Simplex	Top: 4.2 +/- 1.5 mm / Left: 4.2 +/- 1.5 mm
	Duplex	Top: 4.2 +/- 2 mm / Left: 4.2 +/- 2 mm
Duplex Printing	Support	Built-in
	Media Sizes	139.7 mm x 182 mm — 320 mm x 457 mm (5.5 in x 7.2 in — 12.6 in x 18 in)

Table 2-7 Paper handling specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
	Media Types	• Plain • Thin • Bond • Hole Punched • Pre-Printed • Recycled • Thin Cardstock • Letterhead • Thick • Cotton • Colored • Archive • Thin Glossy • Thick Glossy • Heavy Glossy • Heavy Weight • Extra Heavy Weight 1, 2
	Media weight	16–17 lb (60 to 256 g/m^2)

Network and software specifications

Network interface

Table 2-8 Network interface

Item		Specifications
Network OS		**Windows** • XP (32/64 bit) • 2003 (32/64 bit) • Vista (32/64 bit) • Windows 7 • Windows 8 **Mac** • Mac OS 10.5 –10.8 **Linux** • RedHat 8–9 • Fedora Core 1–4 • Mandrake 9.2–10.1 • SuSE 8.2–9.2 **Novell** • Netware 5.x, 6.x (TCP/IP Only) **Others** • Unix (HP-UX, Solaris, SumOS, SCO)
Network Protocols	TCP/IP	TCP/IPv4, HTTP, SNMPv1/v2c/v3, LDAP, SMTP, SSL/TLS, IPSec, DNS, WINS, SLP, Bonjour, SSDP, DDNS, DHCP/BOOTP, IPv6
	IPX/SPX	No
	Ether Talk	No
	NetBIOS over TCP/IP	Yes
	Others	HTTPS, IPSec, 802.1x
IP Addressing	Static IP	Yes
	Auto IP	Yes
	BOOTP	Yes
	DHCP	Yes
SNMP/MIB Access	MIB-2 (RFC 1213)	Yes
	Host Resource MIB (RFC 2790)	Yes

Table 2-8 Network interface (continued)

Item		Specifications
	Printer MIB (RFC 3805)	Yes
	Finisher MIB (RFC 3806)	Yes
	Private MIB	Yes
	HP Compatibility	Yes — Partially
	SNMP Trap	Yes
Printing Protocols	Windows Printing (SMB)	No
	LPR/LPD	Yes
	IPP	Yes
	Netware I-Print	No
	Netware NDPS	No
	Ether Talk	No
	Port 9100	Yes
Device Discovery	DNS	Yes
	Dynamic DNS	Yes
	Multicast DNS (Bonjoure)	Yes
	WSD (including Print and Scan)	Yes (Print and Scan)
	SLP	Yes
	uPNP (SSDP)	Yes

Software and solutions

Table 2-9 Software and solutions

Item		Specifications
Application	Anyweb Print	N/A
	Easy Printer Manager	Windows/Mac
	Easy Color Manager	Windows/Mac
	Easy Document Creator	Windows
	Net PC Fax	Windows/Mac
	Direct Printing Utility	Windows
	Easy Deployment Manager	Windows
	Easy Eco Driver	Windows
	Universal Printer Driver	Windows
	Universal Scan Driver	Windows
Mobile Printing	Google Cloud Print (GCP)	Yes

Table 2-9 Software and solutions (continued)

Item		Specifications
	Airprint	Yes
Smart App	Smart Workspace	Yes
	Workbook Composer	Yes
	Smart Color Manager	Yes
	Smart Service App	Yes
	Hancom Office	Yes
Solution	Device Management	Fleet Admin Pro (UniThru)
	Output Management	CounThru Enterprise/Pro
	Document Management and Distribution	SmarThru Workflow 3.0
	Security	SecuThur Pro 1.0
	Mobility	SCP 1.0 (14.09)
Security	Authentication (Local)	Yes
	Authentication (Network)	Yes (SMB/Kerberos/LDAP/IPSec/EAP)
	IP Address Filtering	Yes (IPv4 Filtering/IPv6 Filtering/MAC Filtering)
	HDD Overwrite (Standard)	9
	HDD Overwrite (Maximum Overwrites)	Yes
	Secure Print	Yes
	Encrypted Secure Print	Yes
	Encrypted PDF Mode (Encrypted Scanning)	Yes
	IP Sec	Yes
	Smart Card Authentication	Yes

Options

Optional configurations

Figure 2-1 Options

Options list

Table 2-10 Options list

Item	Part numbers	Remark
HP LaserJet Department Cabinet	Y1G168	
HP LaserJet Dual Cassette Department Feeder	Y1F98A	
HP LaserJet 2000 Sheet High Capacity Tray Department	Y1F21A	
HP High Capacity Input Tray Side (sHCI)	Y1F20A	
Fax Kit		
Fax Multiline Kit		
Foreign interface harness (FIH) Kit		
HP LaserJet Job Separator Department	Y1G01A	
HP LaserJet Paper Tray Heaters Department	Y1G22A	For dual cassette feeder (DCF)
HP LaserJet Paper Tray Heaters Accessory Department (110V)	Y1G22A#BGJ	For HCI/sHCI
HP LaserJet Paper Tray Heaters Accessory Department (220V)	Y1G22A#B19	
Wireless/NFC Kit		
Wireless/NFC/BLE Kit		
Additional Network Kit (Dual Network Kit)		
HP LaserJet Inner Finisher	Y1G00A	
HP LaserJet Stapler/Stacker Finisher	Y1G18A	
HP LaserJet Booklet Finisher	Y1G07A	
HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Hole 2/3 Punch	Y1G02A	Two and three hole punch (for America, Asia, and Africa)
HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Hole 2/4 Punch	Y1G03A	Two and four hole punch (for Europe)
HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Swedish Punch	Y1G04A	Swedish four hole punch (for Sweden)
HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/3 Accessory	Y1G10A	Two and three hole punch (for America, Asia, and Africa)
HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/4 Accessory	Y1G11A	Two and four hole punch (for Europe)
HP LaserJet Hole Punch Swedish Accessory	Y1G12A	Swedish four hole punch (for Sweden)
HP LaserJet Inner/Booklet Finisher Staples NOTE: The HP LaserJet Booklet Finisher and HP LaserJet Stapler/Stacker Finisher have two staple slots.	Y1G13A	• Regular staples for the HP LaserJet Inner Finisher • Regular saddle staples for the HP LaserJet Booklet Finisher
HP LaserJet Stapler/Stacker Finisher Staples NOTE: The HP LaserJet Booklet Finisher and HP LaserJet Stapler/Stacker Finisher have two staple slots.	Y1G14A	• Regular staples for HP LaserJet Stapler/Stacker Finisher

Option specifications

Table 2-11 Option specifications

Item		Specification
HP LaserJet Dual Cassette Department Feeder	Part number	Y1F98A
	Capacity	520 x 2 sheets
	Media Sizes	• Cassette 1: 148.5 mm x 210 mm — 297 mm x 432 mm (5.8 in x 8.2 in — 12 in x 18 in) • Cassette 2: 148.5 mm x 210 mm — 297 mm x 432 mm (5.8 in x 8.2 in — 12 in x 18 in)
	Media Types	Plain/Thin/Bond/Hole Punched/Preprinted/Recycled/Thin Cardstock/Letterhead/Thick/Cotton/Colored/Archive/Thin Glossy/Heavy Weight/Extra Heavy Weight
	Media Weight	• Plain Paper: 71–90 g/m^2 (18.5–24 lb/Duplex) • Thick Paper: 91–105 g/m^2 (25–28 lb/Duplex) • Heavy Weight Paper: 106–176 g/m^2 (Duplex) • Heavy Weight Paper 1: 177–216 g/m^2 (Duplex) • Heavy Weight Paper 2: 217–256 g/m^2 (Duplex) • Heavy Weight Paper 3: 257–300 g/m^2 • Thin Paper: 60–69 g/m^2 (16–19 lb/Duplex) • Cotton Paper: 75–90 g/m^2 (Duplex) • Colored: 75–90 g/m^2 (Duplex) • Preprinted: 71–90 g/m^2 (Duplex) • Recycled: 60–90 g/m^2 (Duplex) • Bond Paper: 105–120 g/m^2 (Duplex) • Letterhead: 75–90 g/m^2 (Duplex) • Hole Punched Paper: 75–90 g/m^2 (Duplex) • Thin Cardstock: 105–163 g/m^2 (Duplex) • Thin Glossy: 106–163 g/m^2 (Duplex)

Table 2-11 Option specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
	Sensing	• H/W Install Detect: Yes • Paper Empty and Low Level Detect: Yes • Paper Type Detect: No • Paper Size Detect: Yes
	Dimensions	556 mm x 610 mm x 265 mm (22.3 in x 24 in x 10 in)
	Weight	Net 20 kg, Packing 23.5 kg
HP LaserJet 2000 Sheet High Capacity Tray Department	Part number	Y1G21A
	Capacity	2000 sheets at 20 lb (80 g/m^2)
	Media Sizes	A4, Letter
	Media Types	Plain Paper, Thin Paper, Thick Paper, Punched Paper
	Media Weight	60 to 300 gsm
	Sensing	• H/W Install Detect: Yes • Paper Empty and Low Level Detect: Yes • Paper Type Detect: No • Paper Size Detect: No
HP High Capacity Input Tray Side (sHCI)	Part number	Y1F20A
	Capacity	3000 sheets at 20 lb (80 g/m^2)
	Media Sizes	A4, Letter
	Media Types	Plain Paper, Thin Paper, Thick Paper, Punched Paper
	Media weight	60 to 300 gsm
	Sensing	• H/W Install Detect: Yes • Paper Empty and Low Level Detect: Yes • Paper Type Detect: No • Paper Size Detect: No
HP LaserJet Department Cabinet	Part number	Y1G16A
	Dimensions	585 mm x 670 mm x 257 mm
	Weight (Net)	18 kg
HP LaserJet Job Separator Department	Part number	Y1G01A
	Capacity	125 sheets at (80 g/m^2)
HP LaserJet Inner Finisher	Part number	Y1G00A

Table 2-11 Option specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
	Capacity	500 sheets stacking, internal
	Staple Cartridge Capacity	5000 staples/cartridge
	Stacking	• Top Tray: 50 sheets (A4/LT at 80 gsm) • Finishing Tray: 500 sheets (A4/LT at 80 gsm)
	Stapling	• Maximum Number of Sheets: 50 sheets stapling with 90 g/m^2 sheet • Stapling Positions: Front flat and corner (45), Dual, Rear flat and corner (45)
	Saddle Stapling	N/A
	Offline Stapling	N/A
	Offset at Non-Staple Job	Yes
	Offset at Staple Job	N/A
	Output Stacking	Face Down
HP LaserJet Stapler/Stacker Finisher	Part number	Y1G18A
	Capacity	65 sheets stapling, 3,250 sheets stacking
	Staple Cartridge Capacity	5000 staples/cartridge
	Stacking	• Top Tray: 250 sheets (A4/LT at 80 gsm) • Finishing Tray: 3000 sheets (A4/LT at 80 gsm)
	Stapling	• Maximum Number of Sheets: 65 sheets stapling with 90 g/m^2 sheet • Stapling Positions: 2 Corners (Single , 45 degree), Center (Double)
	Offline Stapling	Yes
	Offset at Non-Staple Job	Yes
	Offset at Staple Job	Yes
	Output Stacking	Face Down
HP LaserJet Booklet Finisher	Part number	Y1G07A
	Capacity	65 sheets stapling, 2000 sheets stacking
	Staple Cartridge Capacity	5000 staples/cartridge
	Stacking	• Top Tray: 250 sheets (A4/LT at 80 gsm) • Finishing Tray: 2000 sheets (A4/LT at 80 gsm)

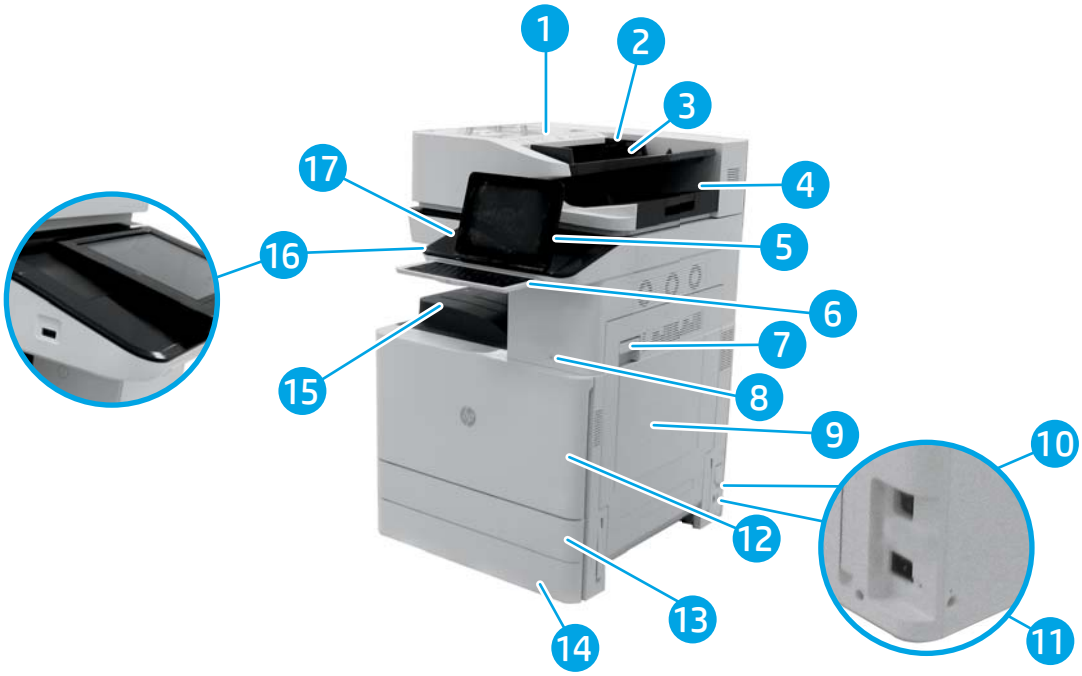
Table 2-11 Option specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
	Stapling	• Maximum Number of Sheets: 65 sheets stapling with 90 g/m² sheet • Stapling Positions: 2 Corners (Single), Center (Double)
	Saddle Stapling	Maximum Number of Sheets: 25 sheets stapling with 80 g/m² sheet
	Offline Stapling	Yes
	Offset at Non-Staple Job	Yes
	Offset at Staple Job	Yes
	Output Stacking	Face Down
1. HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/3 Accessory 2. HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/4 Accessory 3. HP LaserJet Hole Punch Swedish Accessory	Part numbers	1. Y1G10A 2. Y1G11A 3. Y1G12A
	Available Unit	Auto change 2/3 hole or auto change 2/4 hole, Swedish 4
	Paper Wight	52–300 g/m²
1. HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Hole 2/3 Punch 2. P LaserJet Inner Finisher Hole 2/4 Punch 3. HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Swedish Punch	Part numbers	1. Y1G02A 2. Y1G03A 3. Y1G04A
	Available Unit	Auto change 2/3 hole or auto change 2/4 hole, Swedish 4
	Paper Wight	52–256 g/m²

Machine external view

Front view

Figure 2-2 Printer front view

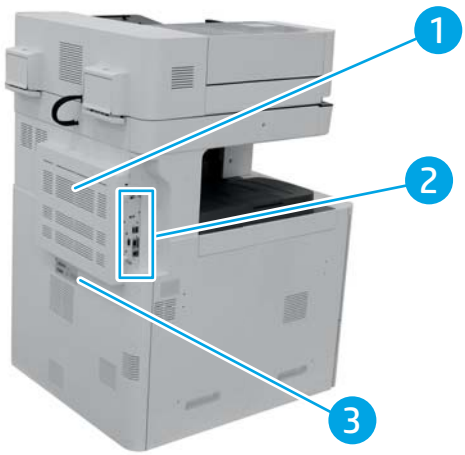


1	Flow ADF cover (access for clearing jams)
2	Flow ADF width guides
3	Flow ADF input tray
4	Flow ADF output tray
5	Control panel with color touchscreen display (tilts up for easier viewing)
6	Physical keyboard. Pull the keyboard straight out to use it. CAUTION: Close keyboard when it is not in use.
7	Right door (access for clearing jams)
8	On/off button
9	Tray 1
10	Power switch
11	Power connection
12	Front door (access to the toner cartridges)

13	Tray 2
14	Tray 3
15	Output bin
16	Easy-access USB port Insert a USB flash drive for printing or scanning without a computer or to update the printer firmware. NOTE: An administrator must enable this port before use.
17	Hardware integration pocket (for connecting accessory and third-party devices)

Rear view

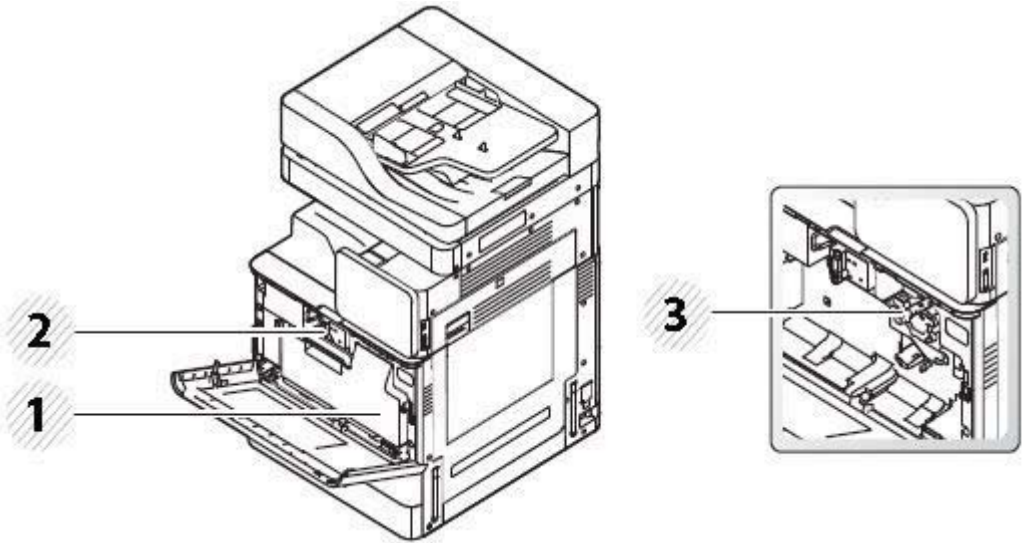
Figure 2-3 Printer rear view



1	Formatter cover
2	Interface ports
3	Serial number and product number label

Inner view

- Figure 2-4 Inner view

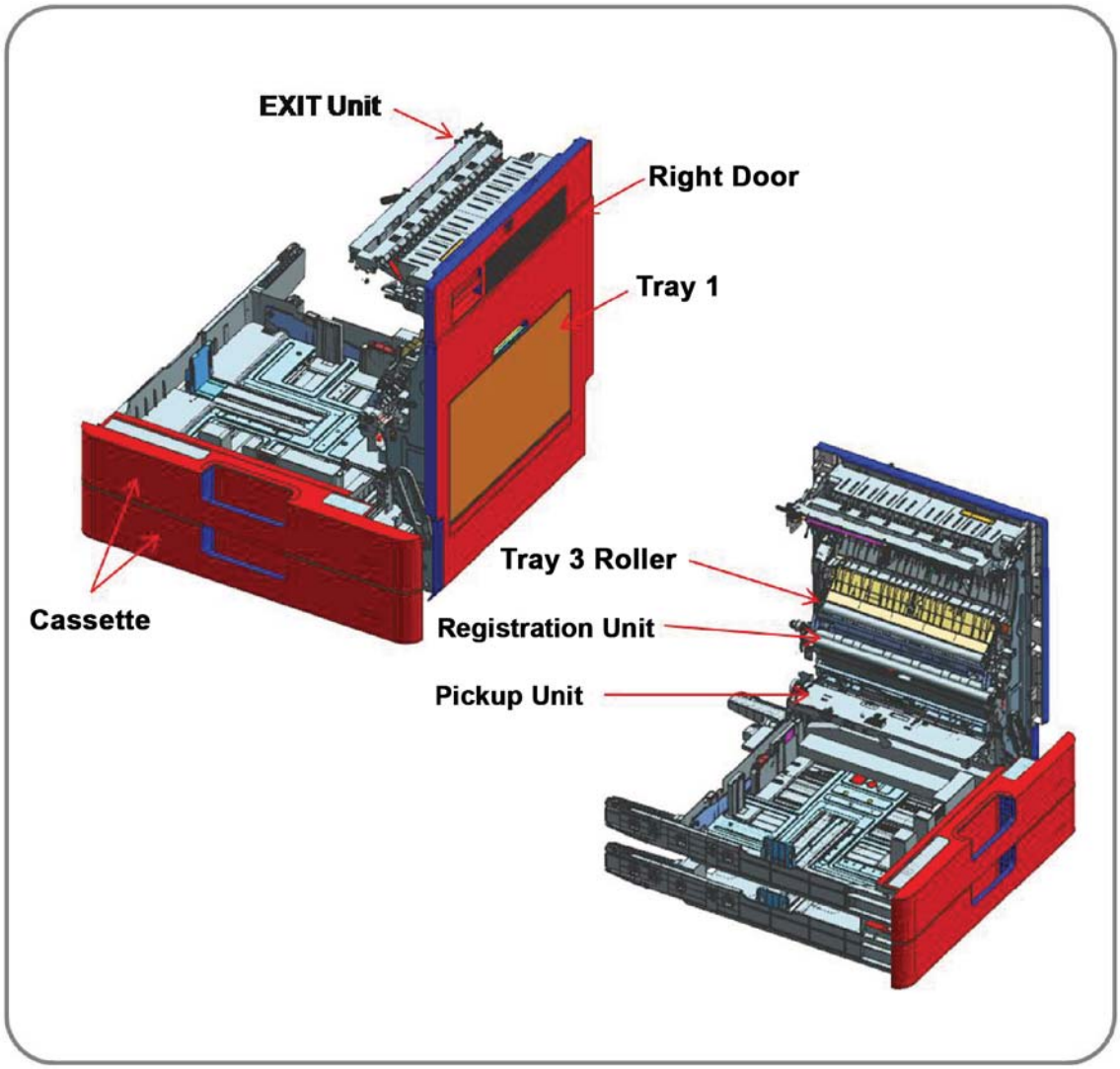


1	TCU
2	Toner Cartridge
3	Imaging units (behind inner cover)

Feeding system

Feeding system overview

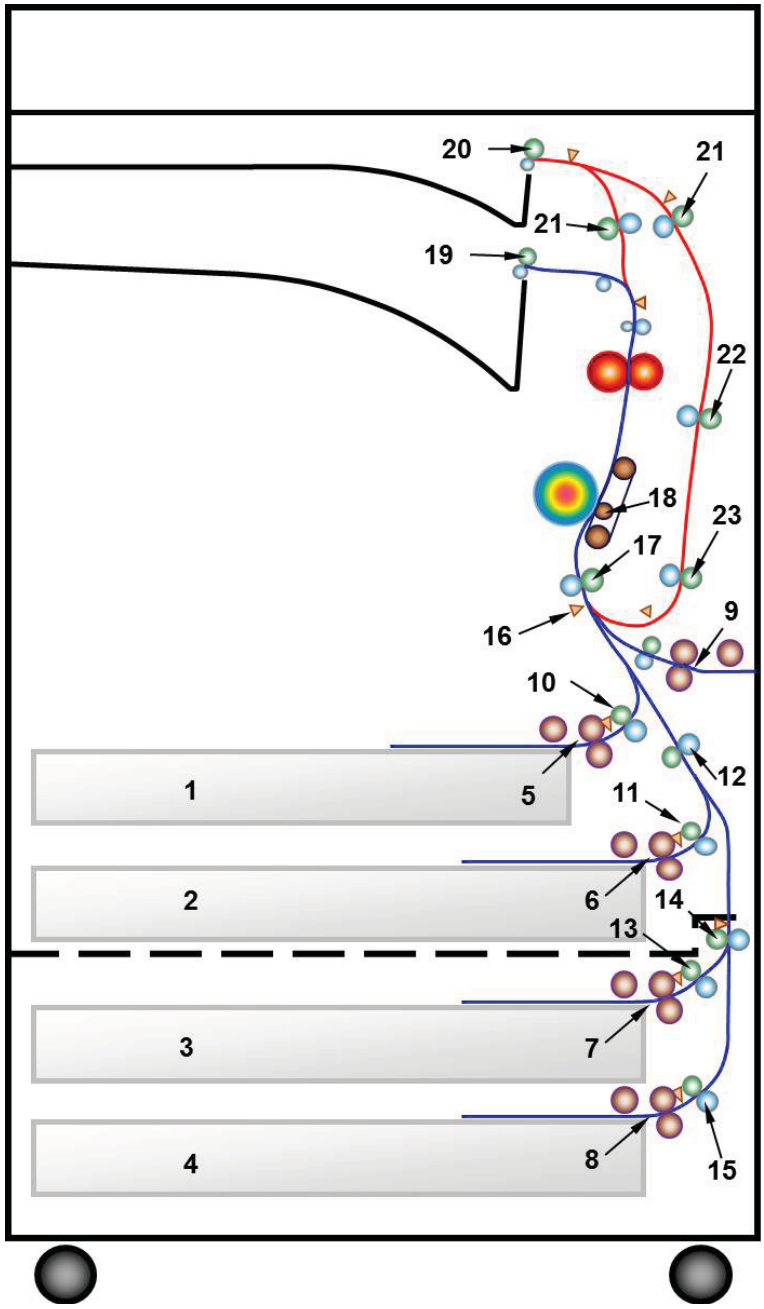
The feeding system picks up paper from the cassette or Tray 1 and moves it to the printing mechanism inside the printer. The feeding system consists of the pickup unit, registration unit, transfer roller assembly, and exit unit.



Main components and functions

Rollers

Figure 2-5 Rollers



1	Tray 2	13	Tray 4 feed roller (optional)
2	Tray 3	14	Tray 4 trans roller (optional)
3	Tray 4 (optional)	15	Tray 5 feed roller (optional)
4	Tray 5 (optional)	16	Registration sensor
5	Tray 2 pickup/reverse/feed rollers	17	Registration roller

6	Tray 3 pickup/reverse/feed rollers	18	PTB unit
7	Tray 4 pickup/reverse/feed rollers (optional)	19	Output roller (1st)
8	Tray 5 pickup/reverse/feed rollers (optional)	20	Output roller (2nd)
9	MP Tray pickup/reverse/feed rollers	21	Output roller (trans)
10	Tray 2 feed roller	22	Duplex 1 roller
11	Tray 3 feed roller	23	Duplex 2 roller
12	Tray 3 trans roller	23	Duplex 3 roller

- Pickup roller (Tray 2, 3, 4, 5, and MP Tray)
  - This roller picks up the paper from the tray.
- Feed roller (Tray 2, 3, 4, 5, and MP Tray)
  - This roller is placed against the reverse roller. It transfers the paper from the pickup roller to the feed roller.
- Reverse roller (Tray 2, 3, 4, 5, and MP Tray)
  - This roller is placed against the feed roller and transfers only one sheet of paper to the feed roller. When two or more sheets of paper are being transferred from the pickup roller, the load of the torque limiter of the reverse roller is heavier than the frictional force between the sheets of paper. As a result, the reverse roller is stopped and the lower sheet of paper is not transferred.
- Feed roller
  - This roller transfers the paper sent from the feed/reverse roller to the registration roller.
- Registration roller
  - This roller aligns the leading edge of the paper and transfers the paper to the transfer roller assembly.

Table 2-16 **Roller period table**

Roller	Periodic
OPC/Drum	188.5 mm
Charge Roller (CR)	37.7 mm
Magnetic roller (MR)	36.9 mm
PTB D/R	65.7 mm
PTB BELT	157.1 mm
Fuser Belt (HR)	110 mm
Fuser Pressure Roller (PR)	114.7 mm

Sensor, motor, and solenoid

Figure 2-6 Sensor, motor, solenoid

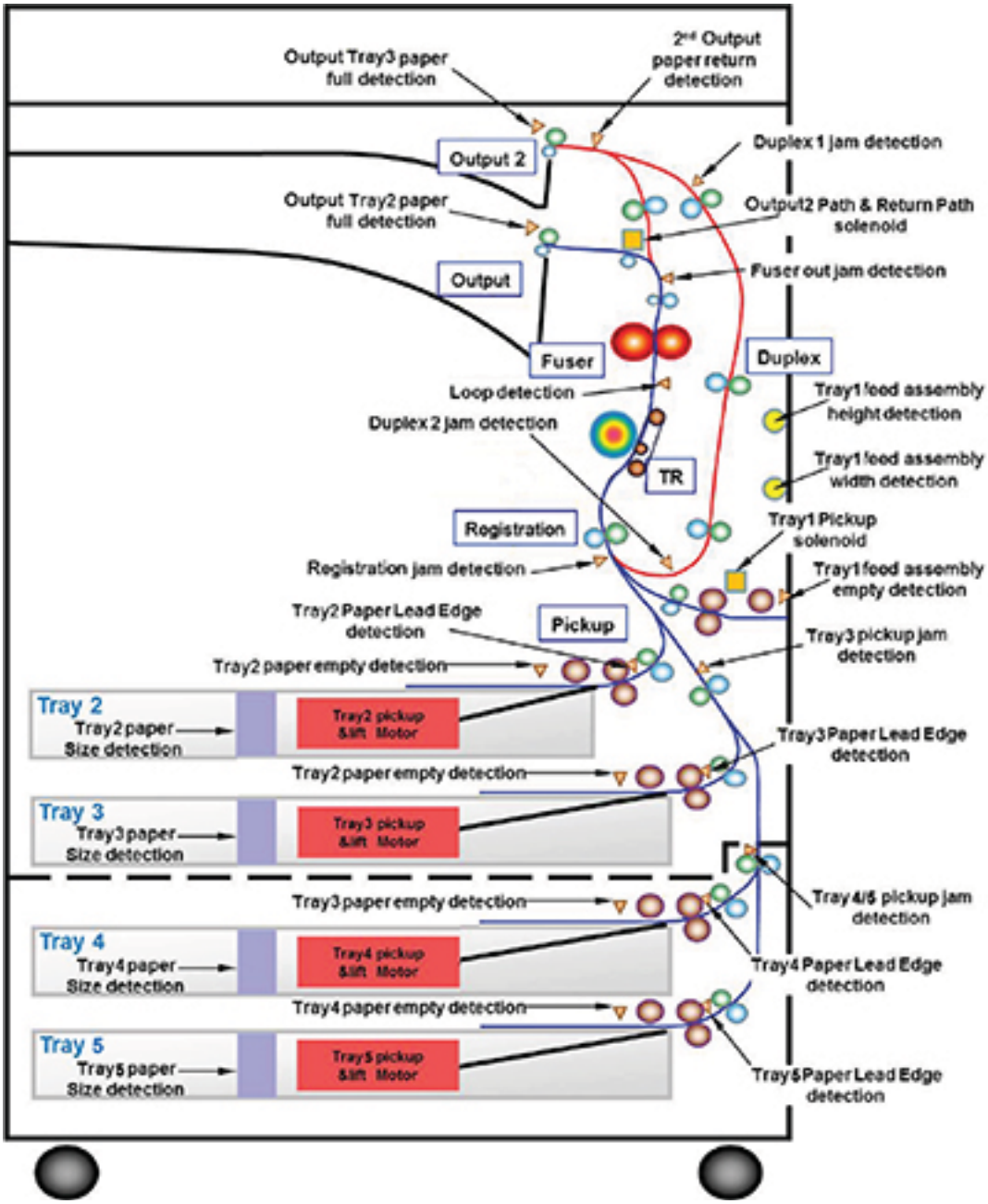


Table 2-17 Sensor, motor, solenoid

Item	Function
Tray 2 paper size detection sensor	Detects Tray 2 paper size
Tray 2 paper empty detection sensor	Detects Tray 2 paper empty
Tray 2 upper limit detection sensor	Detects Tray 2 upper limit
Tray 2 paper Lead Edge detection sensor	Detects Tray 2 paper Lead Edge

Table 2-17 Sensor, motor, solenoid (continued)

Item	Function
Tray 3 paper size detection sensor	Detects Tray 3 paper size
Tray 3 paper empty detection sensor	Detects Tray 3 paper empty
Tray 3 upper limit detection sensor	Detects Tray 3 upper limit
Tray 3 paper Lead Edge detection sensor	Detects Tray 3 paper Lead Edge
Tray 3 paper feed jam detection sensor	Detects Tray 3 paper feed jam
Tray 4 paper size detection (option) sensor	Detects Tray 4 paper size
Tray 4 paper empty detection (option) sensor	Detects Tray 4 paper empty
Tray 4 upper limit detection (option) sensor	Detects Tray 4 upper limit
Tray 4 paper Lead Edge detection (option) sensor	Detects Tray 4 paper Lead Edge
Tray 4/4 paper feed jam detection (option) sensor	Detects Tray 4/4 paper feed jam
Tray 5 paper size detection (option) sensor	Detects Tray 5 paper size detection
Tray 5 paper empty detection (option) sensor	Detects Tray 5 paper empty
Tray 5 upper limit detection (option) sensor	Detects Tray 5 upper limit
Tray 5 paper Lead Edge detection (option) sensor	Detects Tray 5 paper Lead Edge
Paper registration jam detection sensor	Detects Paper registration jam
Paper fuser-out jam detection sensor	Detects Paper fuser-out jam
Output Tray 2 paper full detection sensor	Detects output Tray 2 paper full
Output 2 tray path and Return path solenoid	Changes paper path
Return motor	Controls 2nd output tray and duplex printing
Output Tray 3 paper full detection sensor	Detects output Tray 3 paper full
Output 2 paper return detection sensor	Detects Duplex Return position
1st Duplex motor	Controls duplex printing
2nd Duplex motor	Controls duplex printing
Duplex 1 jam detection sensor	Detects Duplex 1 jam
Duplex 2 jam detection sensor	Detects Duplex 2 jam

Table 2-17 Sensor, motor, solenoid (continued)

Item	Function
MP feed assembly paper empty detection sensor	Detects MP feed assembly: paper empty NOTE: If paper is loaded in the MP Tray, that tray takes priority over trays 2,3,4, or 5.
MP feed assembly	Controls MP feed assembly pickup roller
MP feed assembly paper width detection sensor	Detects MP feed assembly paper width
Tray 2 Pickup and Lift motor	Drives the pickup roller and the knock up plate
Tray 3 Pickup and Lift motor	Drives the pickup roller and the knock up plate
Tray 4 Pickup and Lift motor	Drives the pickup roller and the knock up plate
Tray 5 Pickup and Lift motor	Drives the pickup roller and the knock up plate
Paper Loop Detection sensor	Detects paper loop between transfer Nip and fusing Nip At warm-up, Detects the fuser jam

Cassette

The cassette stores paper. The paper size is set using the guides in each tray.

Figure 2-7 Basic cassette

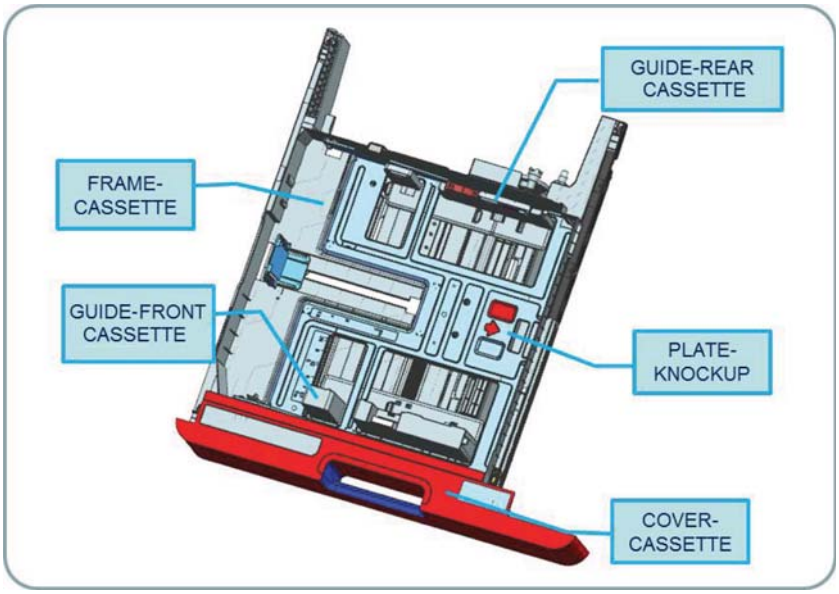


Table 2-18 Basic cassette

Item	Description
1	Structure: Drawer Type
2	Capacity: 520 sheets (80 g/m² paper standard)

Table 2-18 Basic cassette (continued)

Item	Description
3	Paper type • Plain paper: A5, A4, A3, B5, B4, Letter, 11 in x 17 in (Ledger), Statement, Legal • Special Paper: Envelope (Tray 2 Only), Label, Transparency
4	Paper weight • Plain paper: 60–300 g/m²
5	Plate knock up lift type: Lift Motor + Up Limit Sensor

Pickup unit

When paper pickup occurs, the pickup roller moves down in order to come in contact with the surface of the paper. If the cassette is installed, the LEVER-INPUT CST is pushed and the pickup roller moves down. The feed and separation rollers make sure that a single sheet of paper is moved into the paper path, and that the feed roller moves the paper as far as the registration (REGI) roller.

NOTE: The pickup unit 1 and pickup unit 2 are not interchangeable.

Figure 2-8 Pickup unit 1

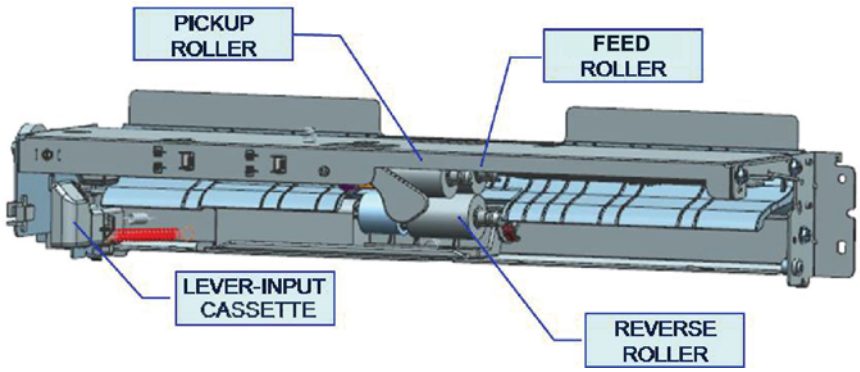
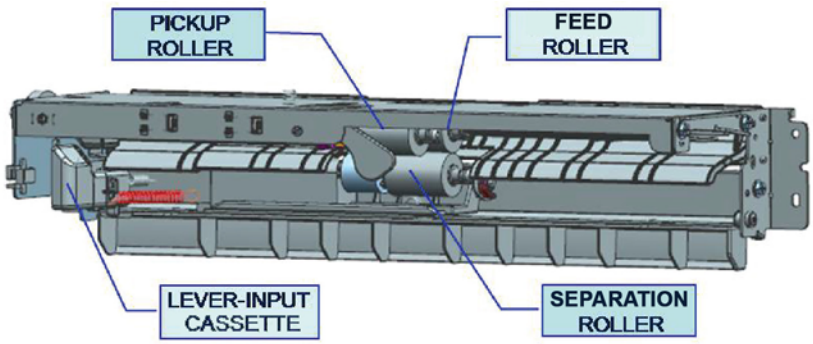


Figure 2-9 Pickup unit 2

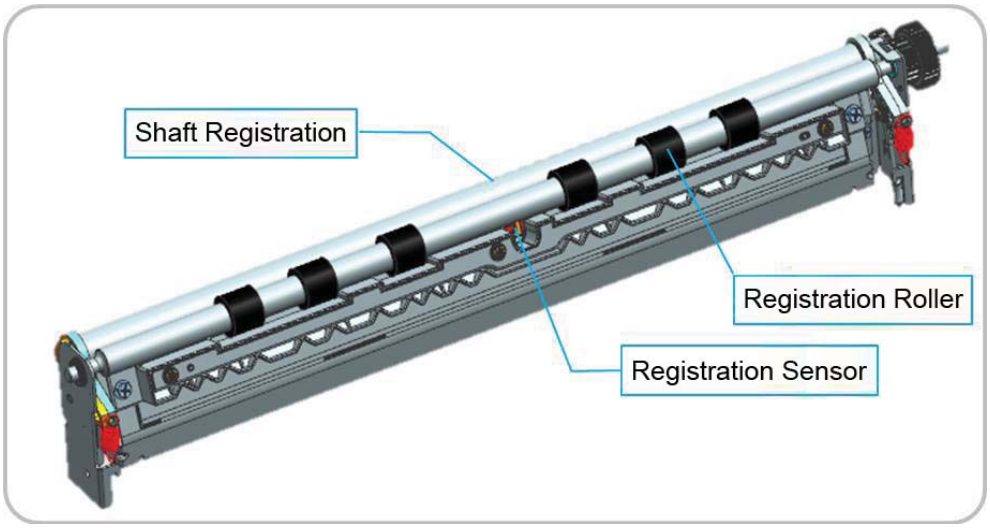


Registration unit

The registration roller is driven by the registration/multipurpose motor. The registration roller clutch is located between the registration/Tray 1 motor and registration roller, or on the transfer belt (for color), and it controls

power to the registration roller in order to match paper and an image on the drum at the predetermined registration point.

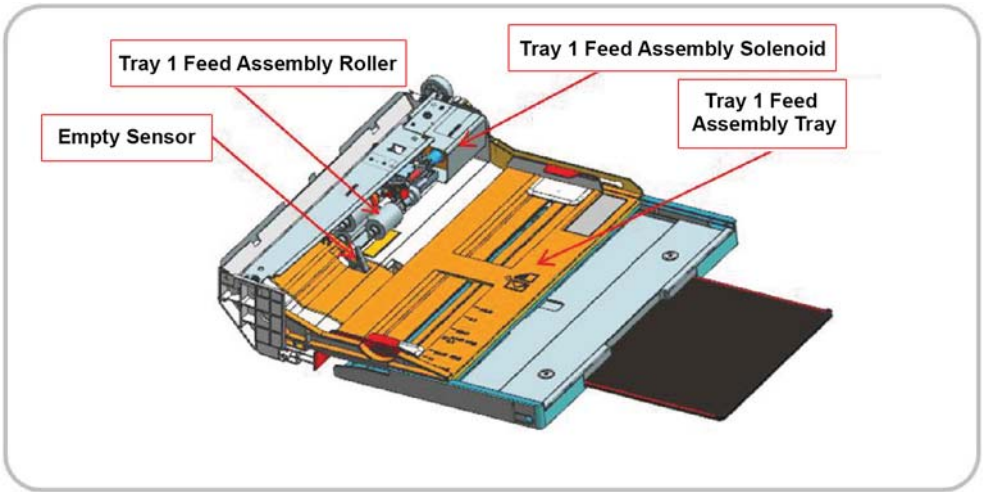
Figure 2-10 Registration roller



MP feeder assembly

The MP feed assembly allows feeding of special media cardstock and custom size paper.

Figure 2-11 MP feeder assembly

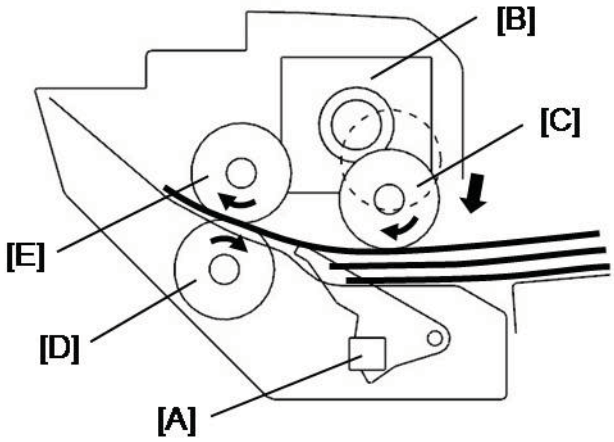


Specification

- Capacity: 100 sheets (80g/m² paper standard)
- Media size: 98 mm x 148 mm – 320 mm x 1200 mm (3.87 in x 5.8 in – 12.6 in x 47.2 in)
- Media weight: Plain paper 60 – 320 g/m²
- Feeding speed: 32 ppm, 40 ppm, 48 ppm Letter/A4 LEF (Long Edge Feeding)

Paper separation

Figure 2-12 Paper separation



When the MP paper detection [A] sensor detects paper and the machine gets a MP printing job, the MP solenoid [B] drops the pickup roller [C] onto the top of the paper stack in the MP Tray.

This machine uses a Feed and Reverse Roller (FRR) system for feeding paper. The friction between the reverse roller [D] and feed roller [E] separates the top sheet of paper from the stack.

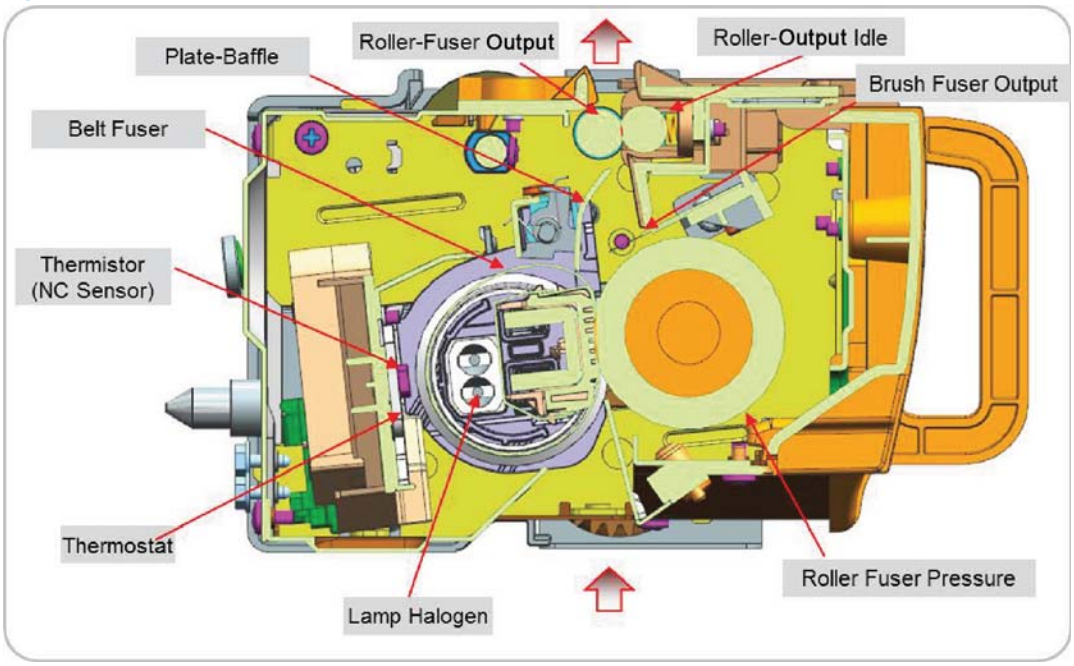
Fuser unit

Fuser unit overview

This section describes the image fusing process used by the printer.

This unit fuses the toner that was transferred by the transfer roller onto the paper, by applying a combination of heat and pressure to complete the fusing process. This printer uses an instant fusing system (NIF type). The fuser unit design for this model has improved. The fuser belt has been changed to require less heat capacity and still fuse the toner properly. Additionally, the life has been improved by incorporating a sub-bush system with a lubricant storage design.

Figure 2-13 Fuser unit



- **Lamp halogen**

  The fuser unit has two halogen lamps. One heats the center of the fusing belt, the other heats the end of axial direction. These halogen lamps are lit alternately to heat the fusing belt. Each lamp has its coil in a different location. The coil of the center heater lamp is in the center, the coils on the side heater lamp are on both sides. The lamps are fixed inside of the fusing belt. When the fusing belt rotates, the lamps do not rotate.

- **Belt fuser**

  The belt fuser gets heat from the halogen lamp and transfers it to the toner and paper. The belt fuser consists of three thin-layers. The thin fusing belt reduces warm up and mode changing time. To prevent the fusing belt from adhering to the toner, the surface of the fuser belt is fluorinated. There is a nip inside the fusing belt. Tension springs are used to keep a constant nip area where the fusing belt contacts the pressure roller.

- **Roller fuser pressure**

  The pressure roller makes sure there is a proper nip width between the pressure roller and fusing belt. It is made up of the soft silicone sponge rubber. The pressure roller is driven by the driving system and drives the fusing belt.

- **Thermistor (NC sensor)**

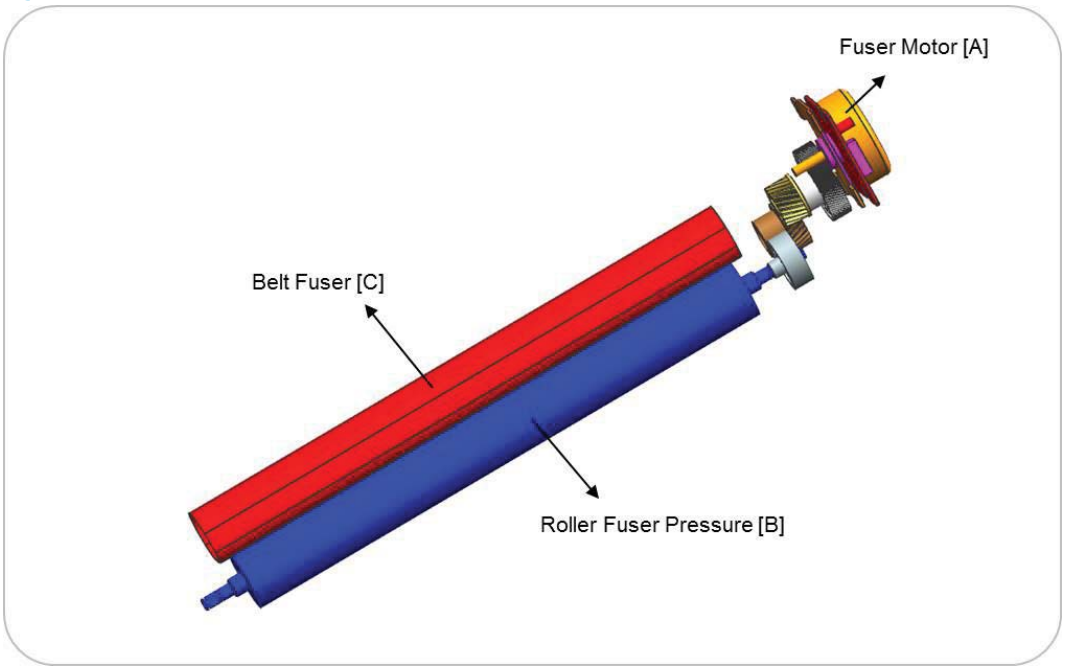
  The temperature of the fusing belt is maintained by NC sensors (non-contact type thermistors) located near the center and the end of the fusing belt.

- **Thermostats**

  The thermostat cuts off the power supply to the halogen lamp by opening the circuit when the fusing belt becomes abnormally hot as a result of a problem, such as a NC sensor malfunction. The thermostat is used to prevent abnormal operation. When a thermostat is triggered, it must be replaced as well as the other damaged parts in the fuser unit.

Fuser unit drive

Figure 2-14 Fuser drive

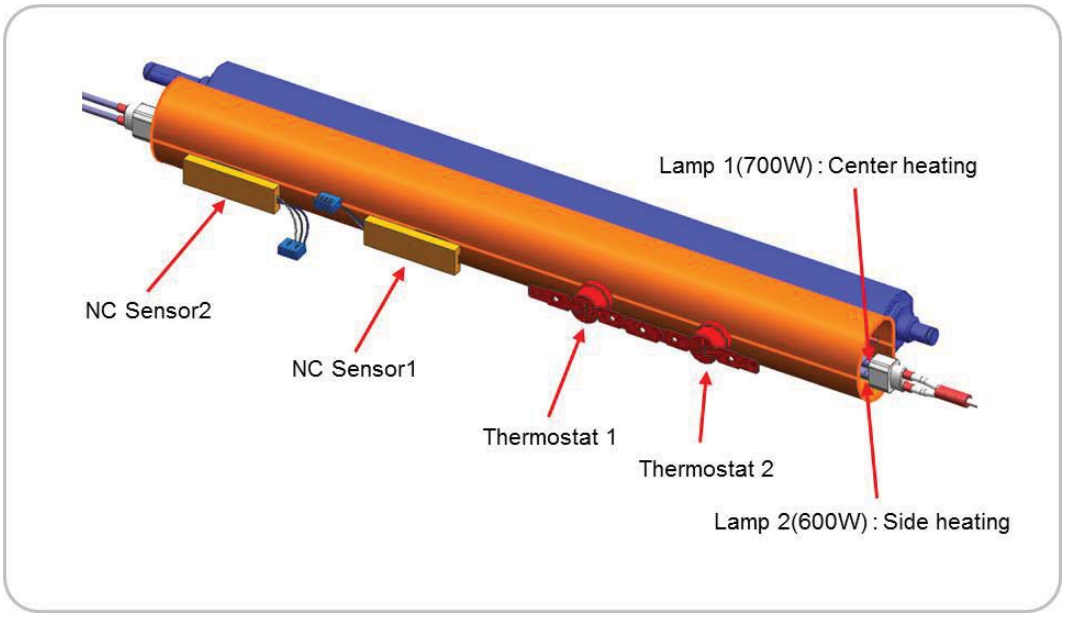


The fuser motor (A) drives the pressure roller (B) through the gear train. The fuser belt is driven by the pressure roller.

Fuser unit temperature control

When the main switch turns on, the CPU turns on the fusing lamp. The lamp stays on until the NC sensors detect the standby temperature. The CPU then raises the temperature up to the printing temperature.

Figure 2-15 Fuser unit temperature control



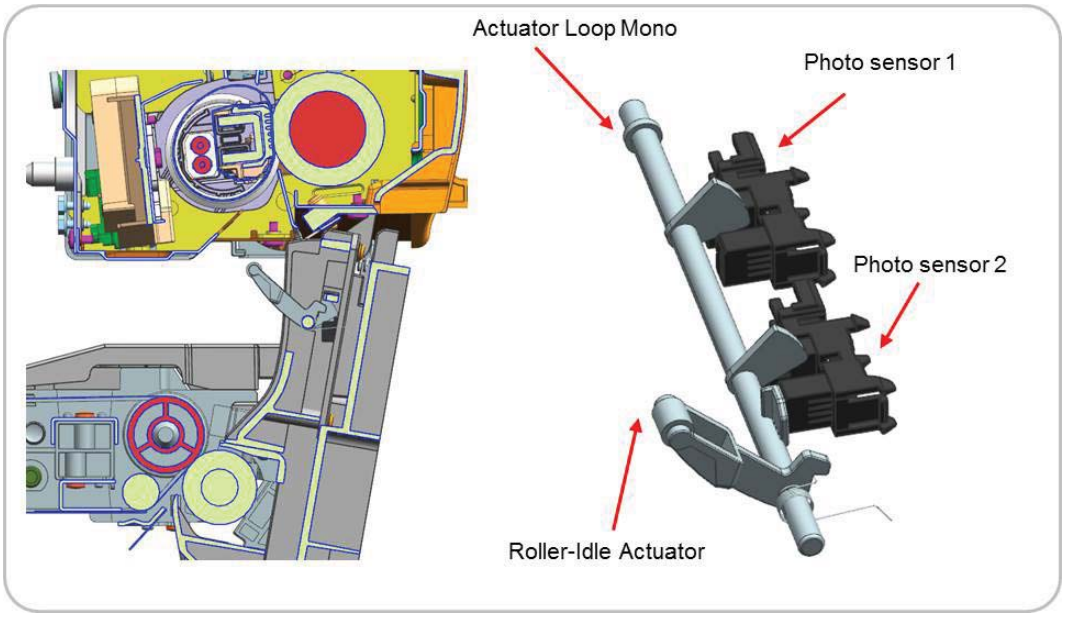
Overheat protection

- The CPU cuts power to the fusing lamp in the following cases:
  - The belt temperature detected by the NC sensors keeps higher than 220°C for 20 seconds.
  - The belt temperature detected by the NC sensors keeps higher than 230°C for 3 seconds.
  - The relay off works when the belt temperature detected by the NC sensors is higher than 230°C.
- The following components are used when thermistor overheat protection fails:
  - Two thermostats get into line with the common ground wire of the fusing lamp.
  - If one of the thermostat temperatures becomes higher than 195°C, it opens and cuts power to the fusing lamp. If the other thermostat temperature becomes higher than 195°C, it also opens and cuts power to the fusing lamp.

Loop control

The tension of the paper between the OPC nip and the fuser nip is known as the paper loop level.

Figure 2-16 Loop control



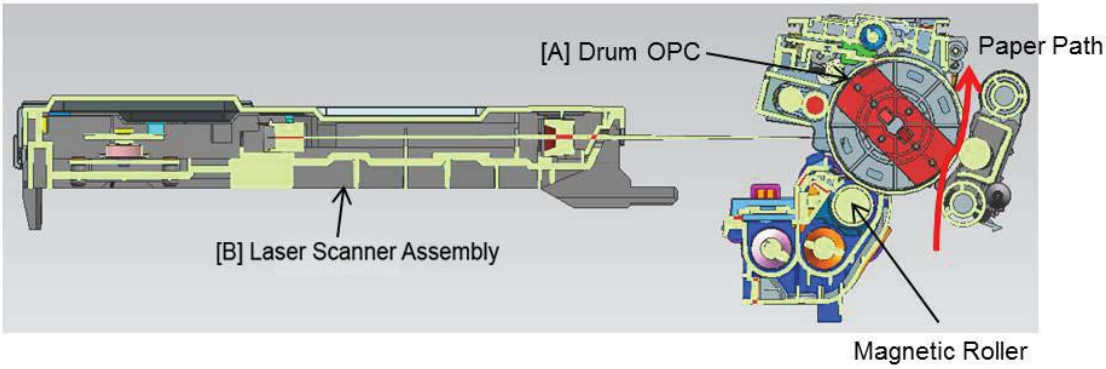
The paper loop level is controlled by monitoring photo sensors 1 and 2. The fuser unit controls the motor speed for the paper loop level.

Image creation

Printing process overview

This machine uses one drum unit, one development unit, and a laser beam for mono printing. The drum unit consists of an OPC drum, charge roller, and a cleaning blade. The development unit consists of a magnetic roller and mixing auger.

Figure 2-17 Printing process overview



The OPC drum (A) is charged with a negative voltage and is exposed to light from the laser scanner assembly (B). The light produced by a laser creates a latent image by discharging on the surface of the OPC drum. The negatively charged toners are attracted to the latent drum image by an electric field. The toners (mono image) on the OPC drum are transferred to the paper by the positive bias.

1. **OPC drum charge**: The charge roller gives the drum a negative charge.
2. **Laser exposure**: Light produced by a laser diode hits the charged OPC through the lens and mirrors.
3. **Development**: The magnetic roller carries negatively charged toner to the latent image on the drum surface.
4. **Transfer**: The Paper Transfer Belt (PTB) transfers the toner from the OPC drum to the paper.
5. **Cleaning the OPC drum**: The cleaning blade removes remaining toner on the drum surface after image transfer to the paper.
6. **Quenching for OPC drum**: Quenching is done by illuminating the whole area of the drum with the laser at the end of every job.

Imaging unit

Drum unit overview

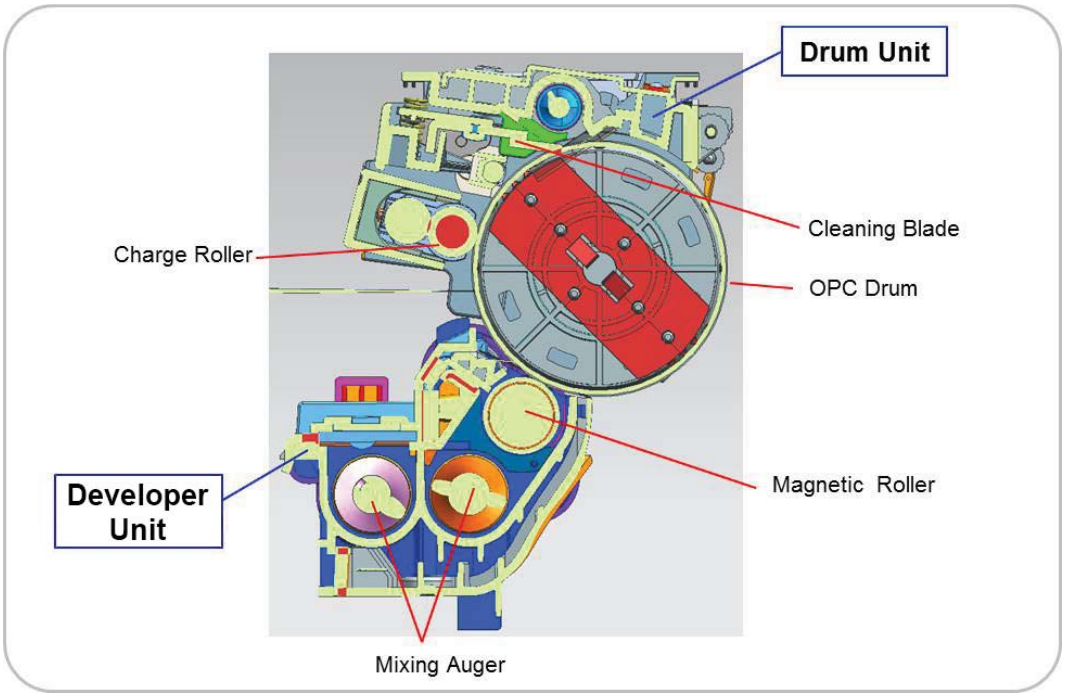
This printer has one drum unit and one development unit.

The diameter of the drum is 60 mm with a circumference of approximately 188.5 mm.

The drum unit has a charge roller to charge the drum surface and a cleaning roller to clean the charge roller.

The e-label is the sub part of the Drum unit and stores the count information and other data. If the Drum unit is replaced, the count information stored by the old drum unit will not be kept.

Figure 2-18 Drum unit

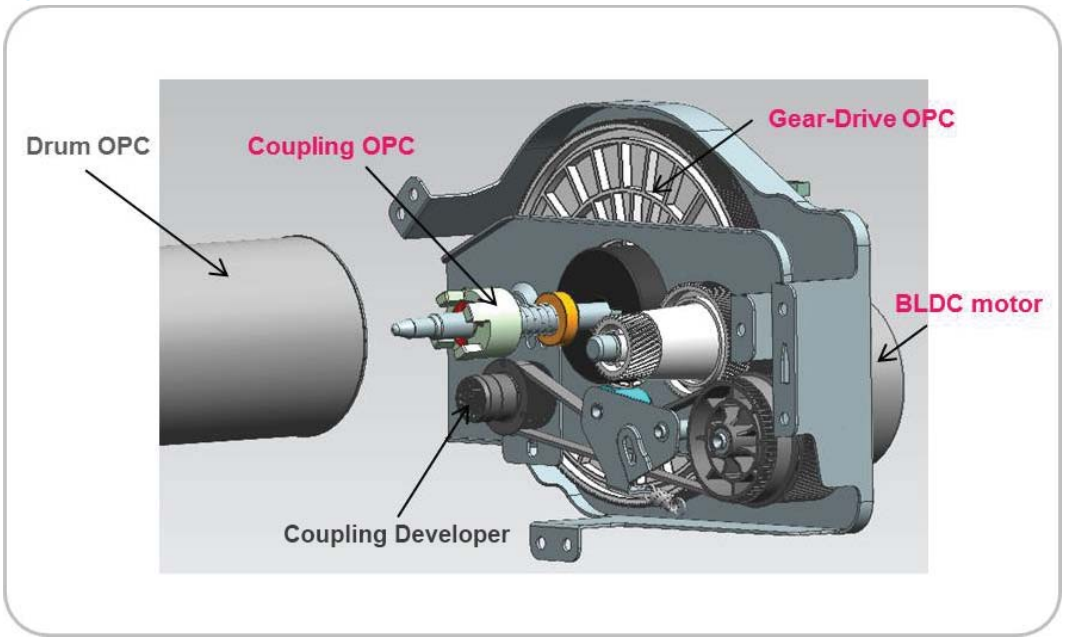


Drum drive

The OPC drum and magnetic roller are driven by one BLDC motor and supplied with power from the coupling.

The drive shaft is directly inserted into the OPC drum to fix the drum unit. This structure provides stable printing quality.

Figure 2-19 Drum drive



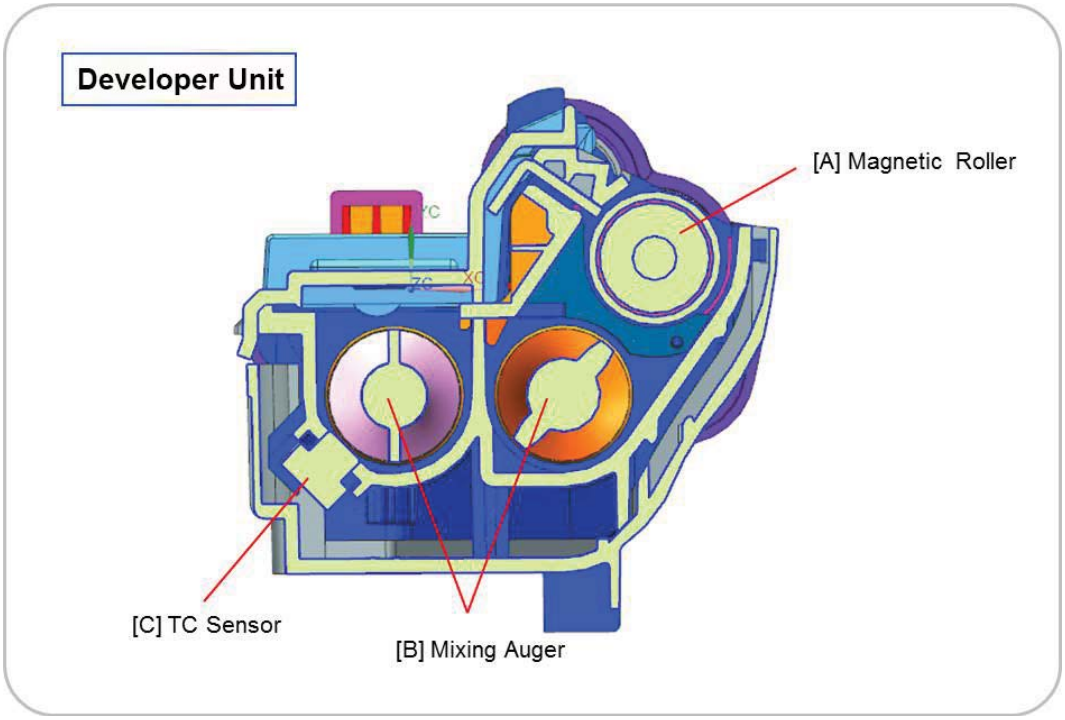
Developer unit

This printer uses a dual-component development system. The development unit contains 340 g of magnetic toner carrier (development powder).

The developer powder is supplied to the magnetic (development) roller [A] by the two mixing augers [B]. The diameter of the magnetic roller is 18 mm.

The development unit has a Toner Carrier (TC) sensor [C]. It is used for controlling the operating range of the toner density.

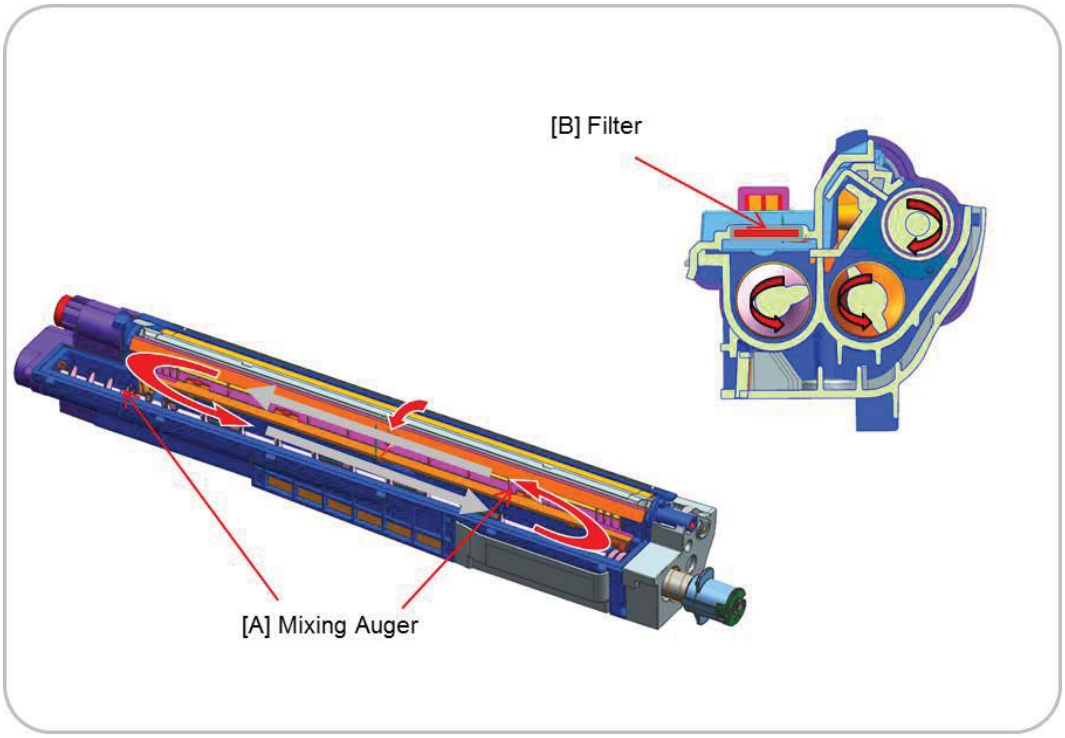
Figure 2-20 Developer unit



Developer agitation

Two mixing augers (A) circulate the developer forward and backward to agitate the developer in order to sufficiently mix the toner and developer.

Figure 2-21 Developer auger



Agitation occurs at the following times:

- During the process control self-checking (warm up)
- During toner supply job
- During development job

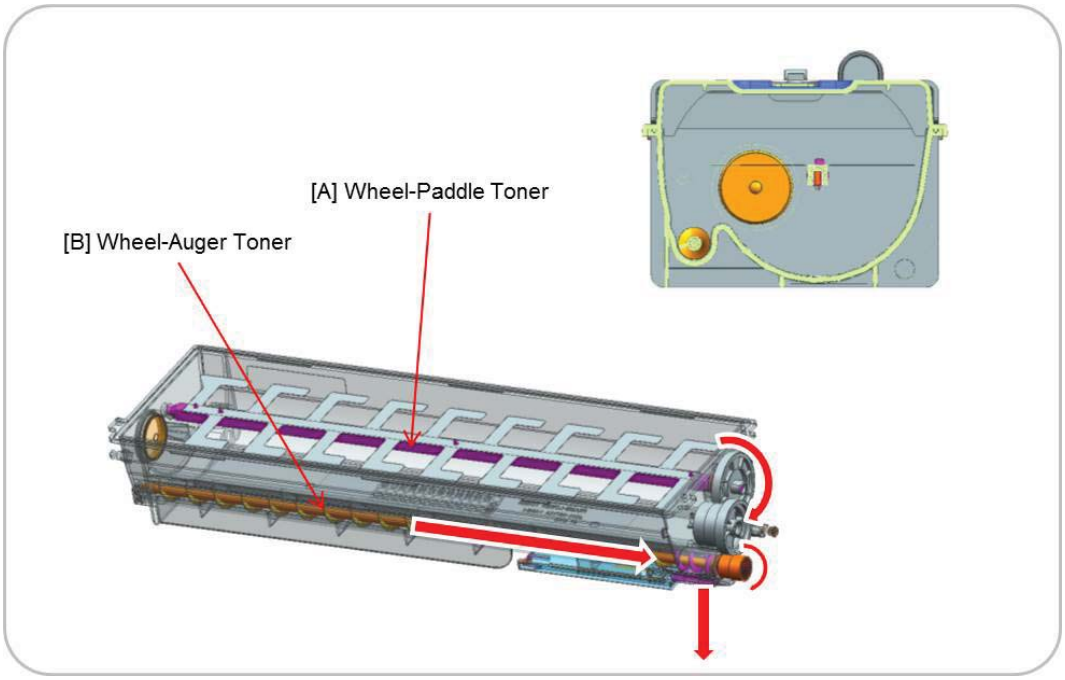
If the developer unit is stored above 45°C (113°F), the toner might harden and will not work properly. If the toner in the development unit has hardened, an installation error occurs.

Toner cartridge

When the toner and carrier in the toner cartridge is mixing:

- The toner cartridge contains 940 g of toner and 90 g of carrier.
- The toner in the cartridge is transferred from Wheel-Paddle Toner [A] to Wheel-Auger Toner [B] and transferred from Wheel-Auger Toner [B] to the Reservoir.
- The toner cartridge has an e-label that stores the count information.
- The toner in toner cartridge when stored at temperatures above 45°C (113°F) might harden.

Figure 2-22 Toner cartridge



Paper transfer belt unit

Paper transfer belt unit overview

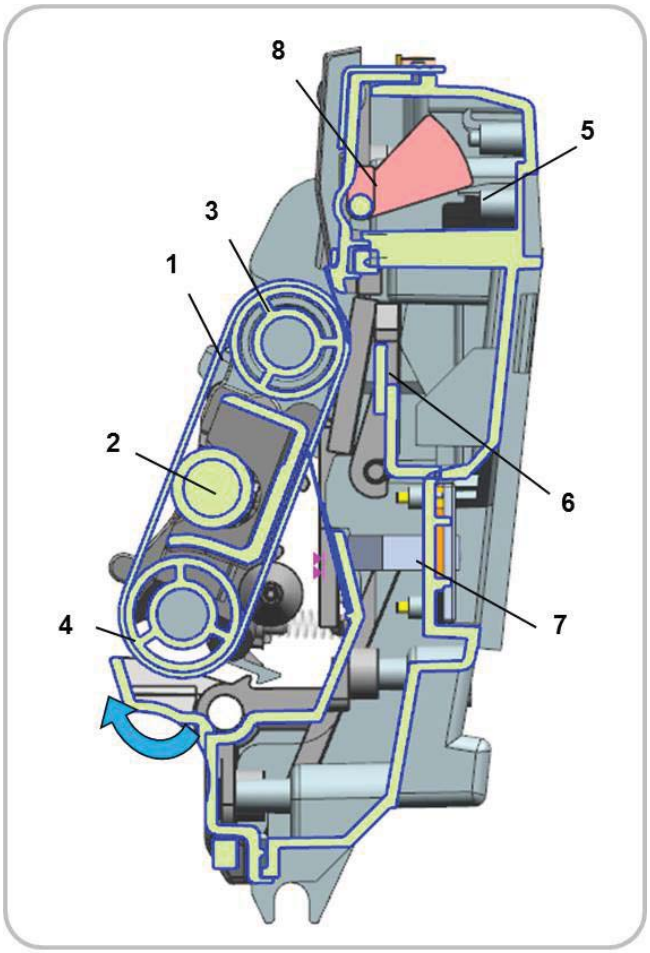
The Paper Transfer Belt (PTB) moves the paper.

The charged toner on the drum is moved to the paper by the transfer roller in PTB unit (1). The rubber belt in PTB unit removes the static of the paper then separates the paper from the drum so the paper can move into the paper path.

This process is done with rotation of the PTB. The rotation is made by the friction between the drive roller (3) and PTB (1). For this process, the drive roller (3) and guide roller (4) provides proper tension to block slip.

There is one actuator (8) and two photo sensors (5). The actuator recognizes the paper path and controls the paper speed for stable image quality.

Figure 2-23 Paper transfer belt unit

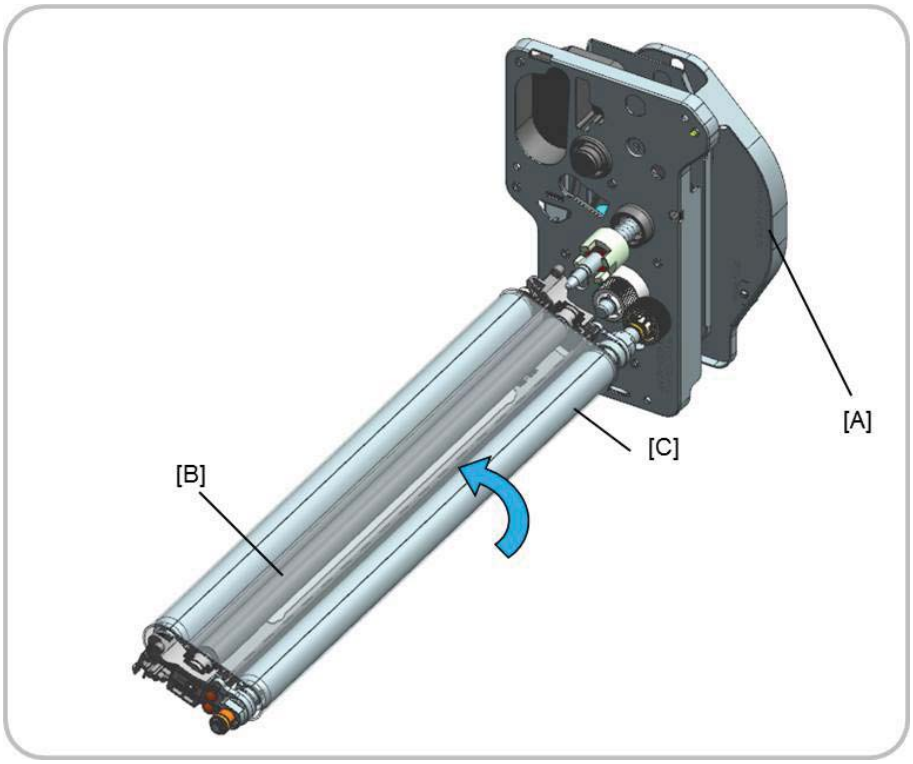


1	Paper Transfer Belt (PTB)
2	Transfer Roller
3	Drive Roller
4	Guide Roller
5	Photo Interrupter
6	Actuator

Transfer belt drive

The drive motor [A] drives the transfer belt [B] by using gears and the PTB drive roller [C].

Figure 2-24 Transfer belt drive



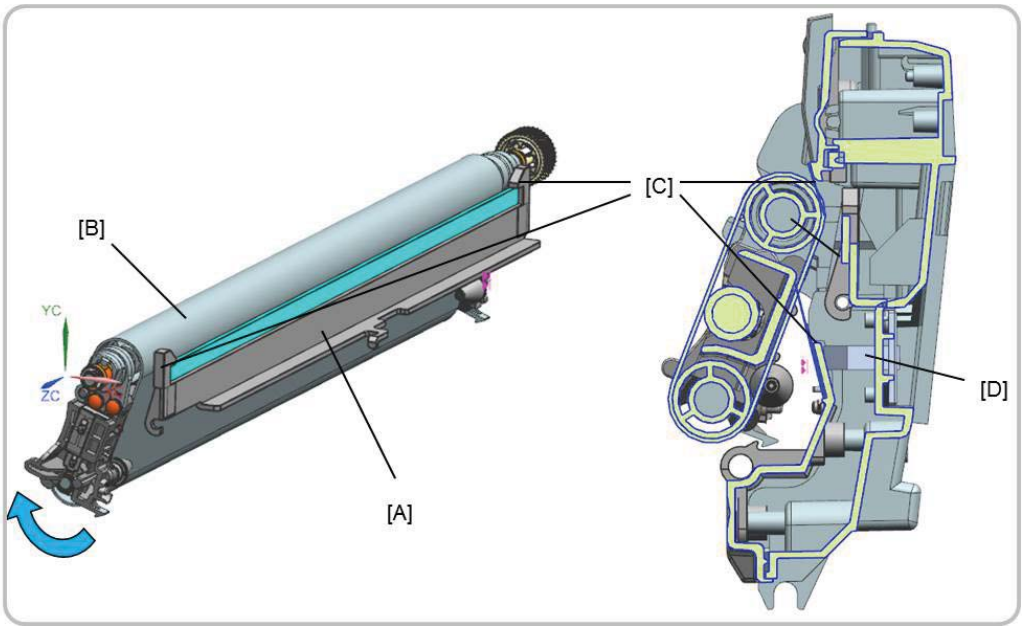
Cleaning blade

The cleaning blade in the PTB unit removes toner (during printing). Belt cleaning is completed while the transfer belt makes one rotation.

The cleaning blade [A] always contacts the transfer belt [B], and removes the used toner from the belt.

The film [C] on the cleaning unit protects against toner contamination. The lens [D] always detects waste toner level. If the light is blocked by waste toner, the machine displays an error message to inform the PTB unit needs replacement.

Figure 2-25 Cleaning blade



Laser scanner assembly

Laser scanner assembly overview

The laser scanner assembly consists of one polygon motor and one laser diodes (LD) unit. The laser scanner assembly forms a latent image on the surface of the OPC drum. For this process, the laser scanner assembly has a collimator lens, cylindrical lens, and an F-Theta lens on an optical path for each color.

The laser scanner assembly has cover glass to protect the glass on the optical path from contamination. The LD PCA interfaces with the printer.

Figure 2-26 Laser scanner assembly overview

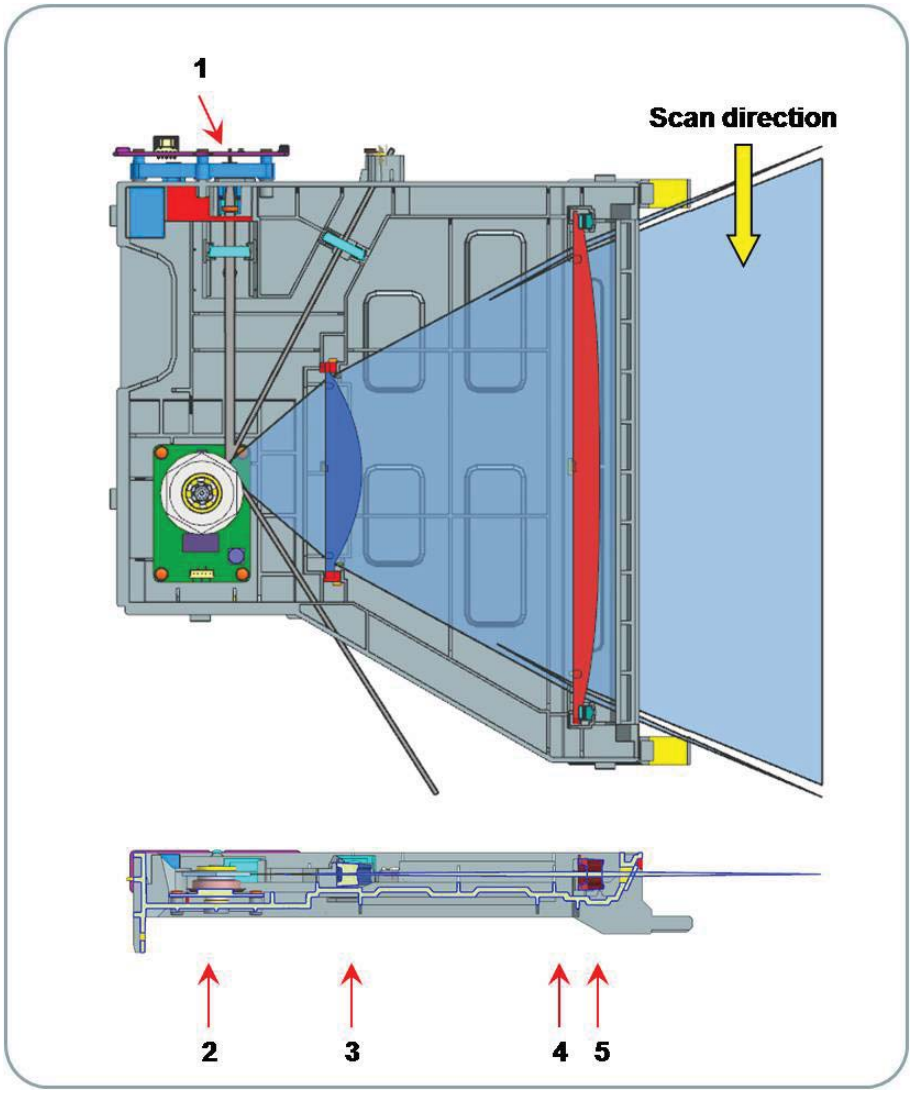


Table 2-20 Laser scanner assembly overview

Item	Description
1	LD PCA
2	P/Mirror Motor
3	F1 Lens

Table 2-20 Laser scanner assembly overview (continued)

Item	Description
4	F2 Lens
5	Cover Glass

Laser scanning optical path

The laser moves from the polygon motor (A) to the OPC drum (D). The F1 lens (B) and F2 lens (C) determine the scanning line and the image position. This setting is adjusted by the manufacturer.

The laser scanner assembly has three types depending on printing speed. The difference between the three models is shown in the following table.

Figure 2-27 Laser scanning optical path

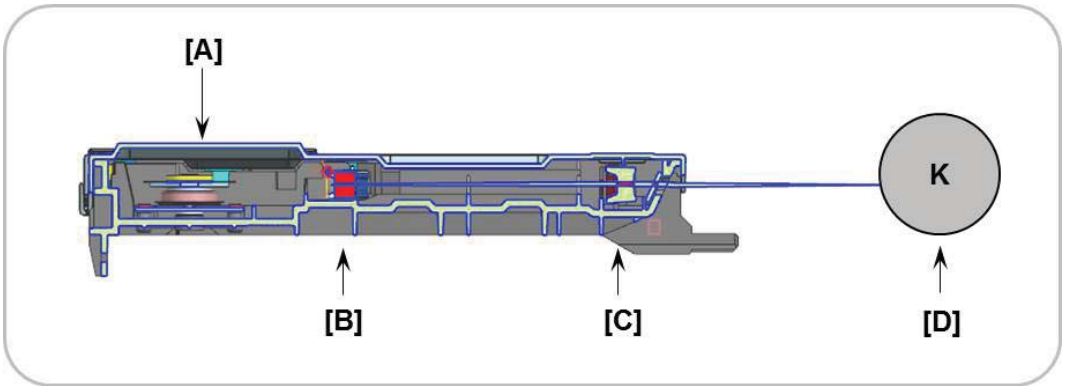


Table 2-21 Laser scanning optical path

Item	Specification	Remark
LD Unit	Laser Diode: Quad Beam Driving IC: Dual LD X2	
P/Motor Speed	• E82540: 22,087 rpm • E82550: 27,520 rpm • E82560: 33,071 rpm	
Speed	• E82540: 187 mm/s • E82550: 233 mm/s • E82560: 280 mm/s	
H/W interface	Interface with printer: 40 pin	FFC

Laser synchronizing detectors

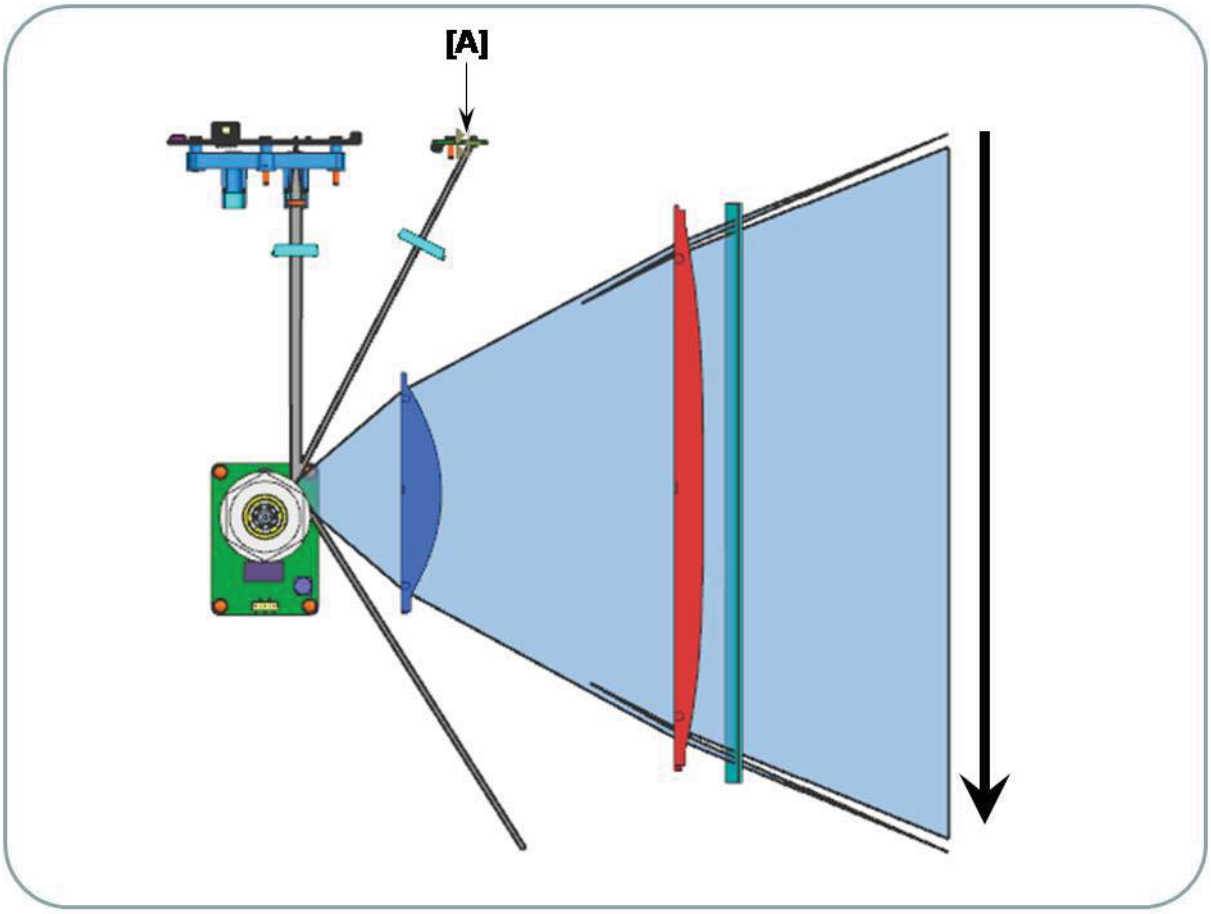
The laser scanner assembly has a beam detector sensor board (PD PCA). The PD PCA (A) detects the scanning start point.

Main Scan Start Detection

The beam is detected by the PD PCA at the scanning start point and creates the horizontal sync signal (Hsync).

The following diagram shows the data scanning direction.

Figure 2-28 Laser synchronizing detectors



Drive system

Pickup and cassette lift drive

Figure 2-29 Pickup and cassette lift drive

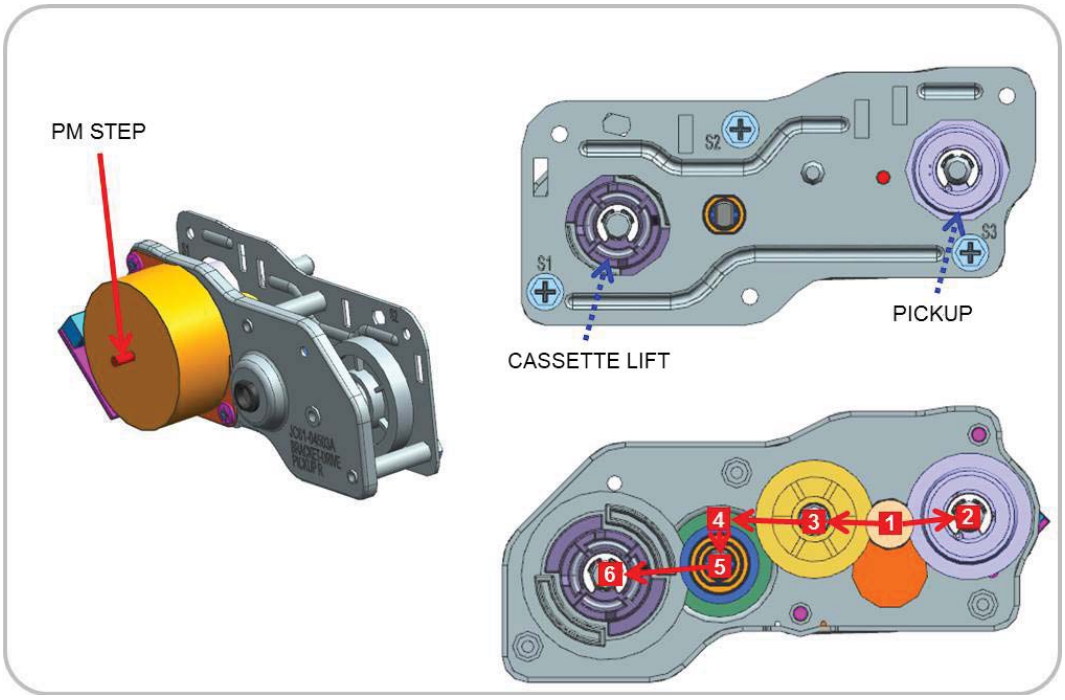


Table 2-22 Pickup and cassette lift drive

Power train	Pickup: normal rotation (pickup input) counter rotation (cassette lift input)
• 1 PM STEP → normal rotation → 2 Gear (pickup driving) • 1 PM STEP → counter rotation → 3 Gear → 4 5 Gear → 6 Gear & Coupler (cassette lift driving)	

Feed drive

Figure 2-30 Feed drive

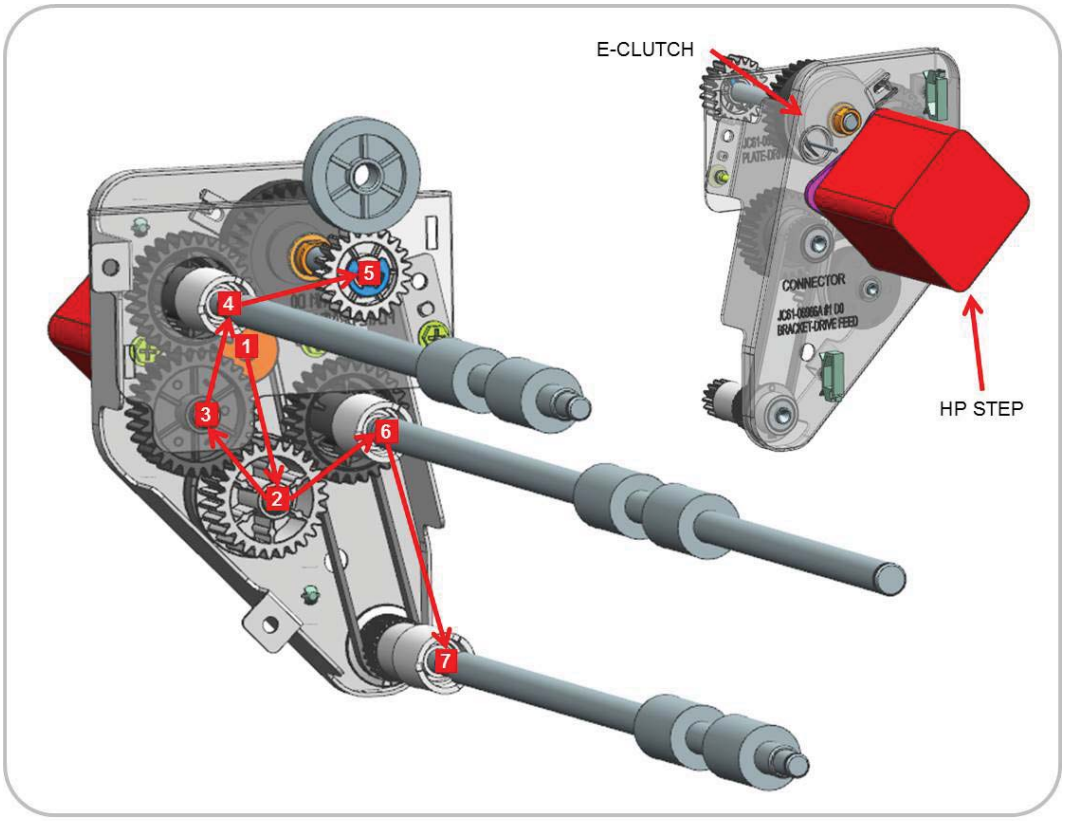


Table 2-23 Feed drive

Power Train	HP STEP → Feed & MP drive
•	1 HP STEP → 2 Pulley & Coupler → 3 Gear → 4 Gear & Coupler (Feed Roller driving) → 5 E-Clutch & Gear (MP driving)
•	1 HP STEP → 2 Pulley & Coupler → 6 Gear & Coupler (Feed Roller driving) → 7 Pulley & Coupler (Feed Roller driving)

Registration drive

Figure 2-31 Registration drive

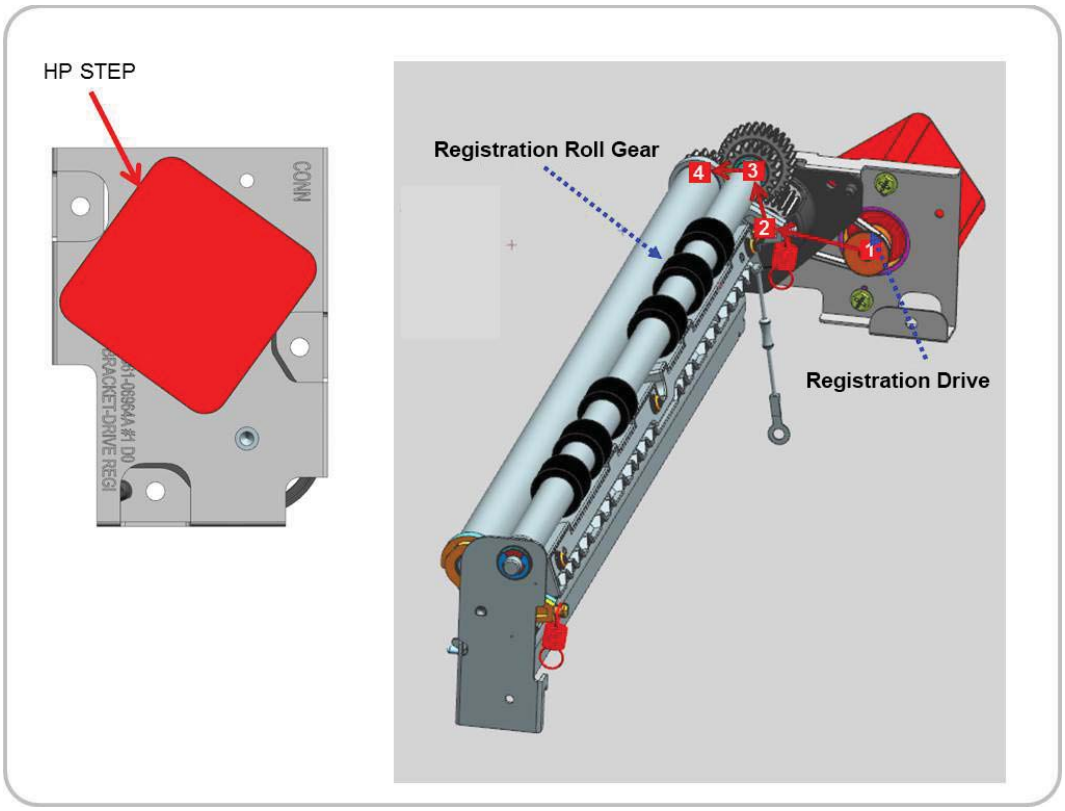


Table 2-24 Registration drive

Power Train	HP STEP → Registration driving
• 1 HP STEP → 2 Gear → 3 Gear (Registration Roller driving)	

Fuser release/output drive

Figure 2-32 Fuser release/output drive

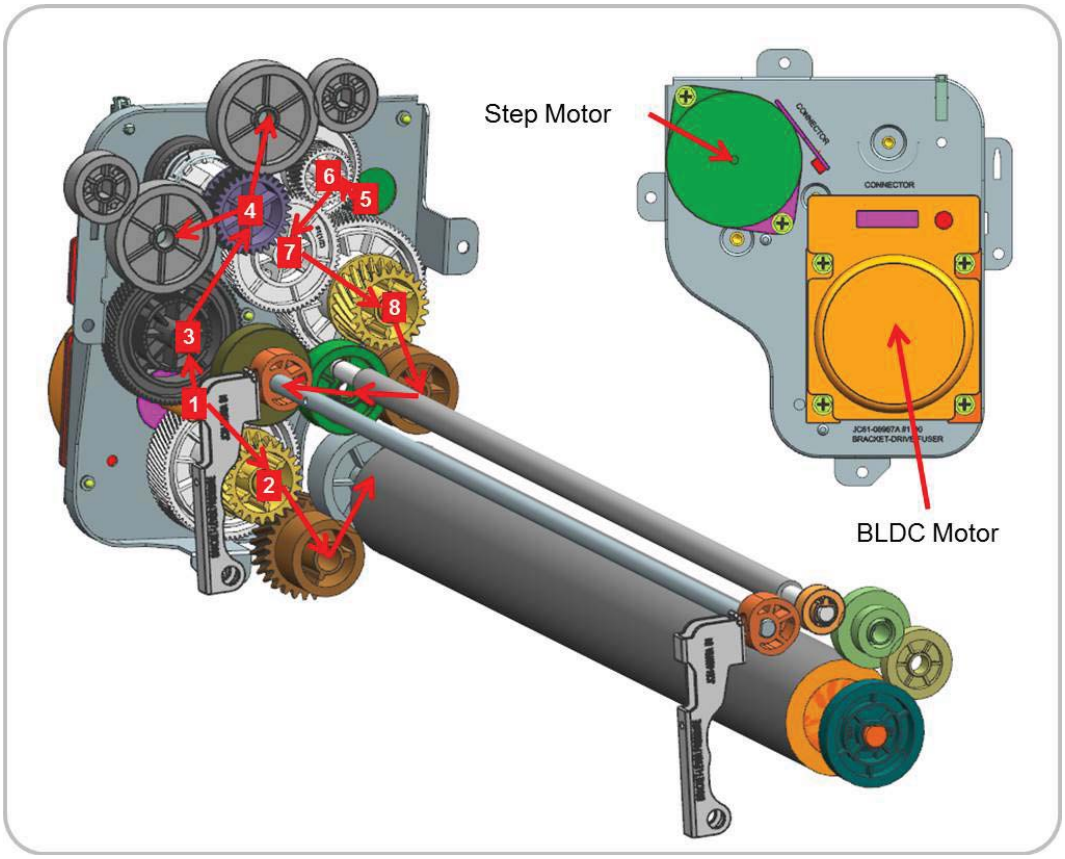


Table 2-25 Fuser release/output drive

Power Train	BLDC → Fuser and output driving PM Step → Fuser release driving
• 1 BLDC → 2 Gear (Fuser P/R driving) • 1 BLDC → 3 Gear & Pulley → 4 Gear (output driving) • 5 PM Step → 6 Gear → 7 Gear → 8 Gear (Fuser Release driving)	

Drive motors

The following diagram shows the location of the printer drive motors.

Figure 2-33 Drive motor

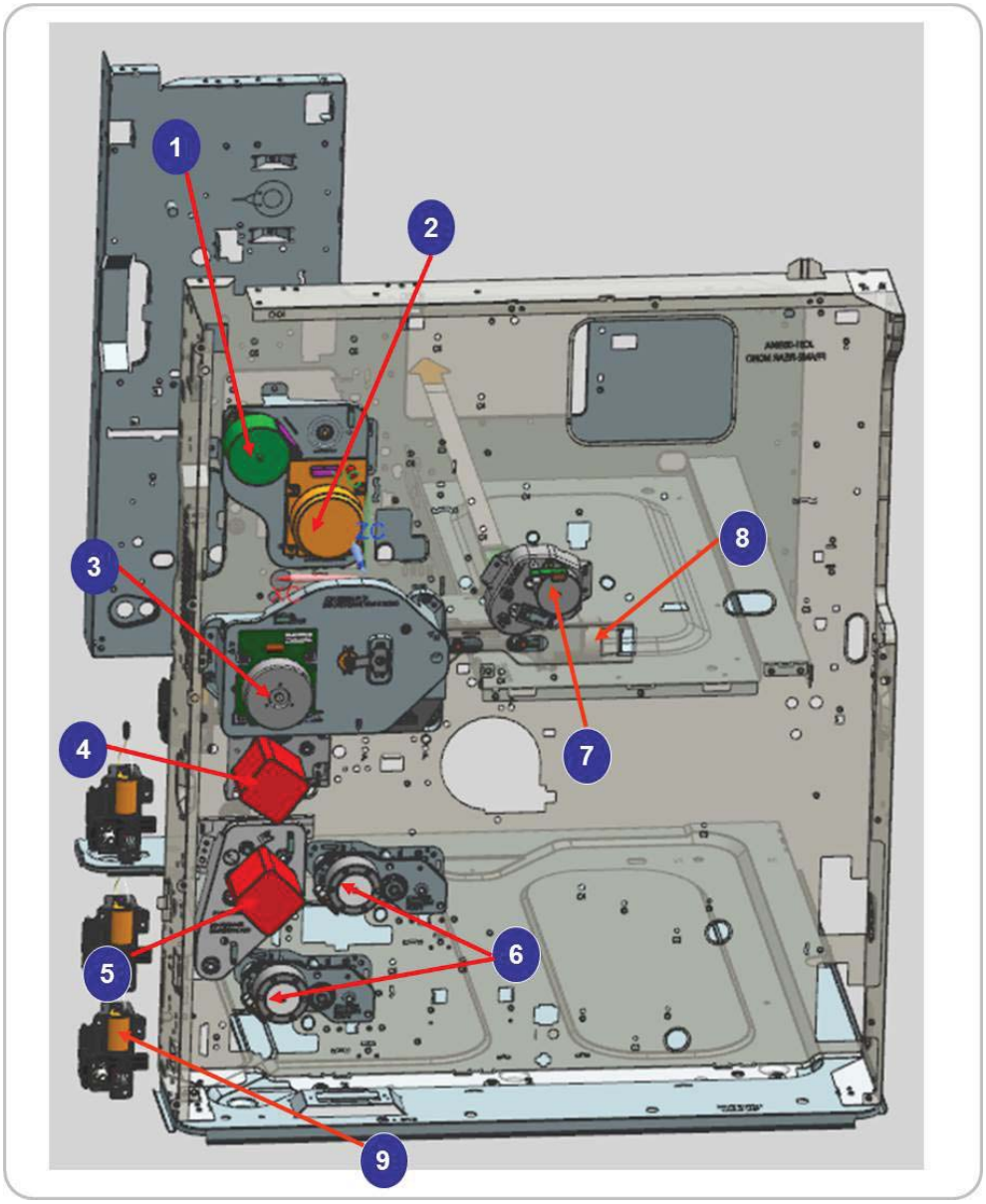


Table 2-26 Drive motor

Number	Motor	Motor type	Qty	Function
1	Fuser Release	PM-STEP	1	Fuser Release driving
2	Fuser and output	BLDC	1	Fuser and output driving
3	Main OPC, Development, and PTB	BLDC	4	OPC and PTB Belt driving
4	Registration assembly	HP-STEP	1	Registration assembly driving
5	Feed/MP	HP-STEP	1	Feed roller 1, 2, 3 driving
		E-CLT	1	Feed/MP driving control

Table 2-26 Drive motor (continued)

Number	Motor	Motor type	Qty	Function
6	Pickup	PM-STEP	2	Pickup roller/Cassette lift driving (Reverse driving at cassette lift driving)
7	Toner Supply	PM-STEP	1	Toner transfer (Toner cartridge → Reservoir)
8	Toner Reservoir	PM-STEP	1	Toner transfer (Reservoir → Development unit)

Main drive unit motors

Figure 2-34 Main drive unit motors

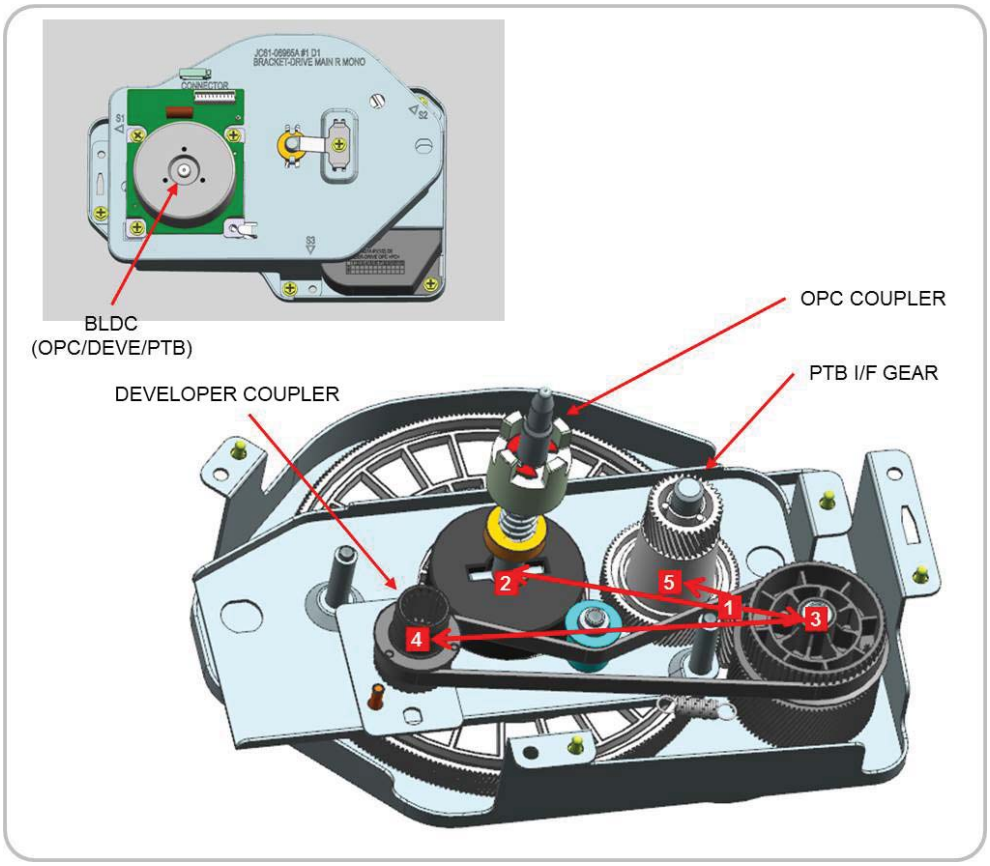


Table 2-27 Main drive unit motors

Power Train	BLDC → OPC, Development and PTB driving
• 1 BLDC → 2 Gear & Coupler (OPC driving) • 1 BLDC → 3 Gear & Pulley → 4 Coupler (Development driving) • 1 BLDC → 5 Gear (PTB driving)	

Toner supply drive

Figure 2-35 Toner supply drive

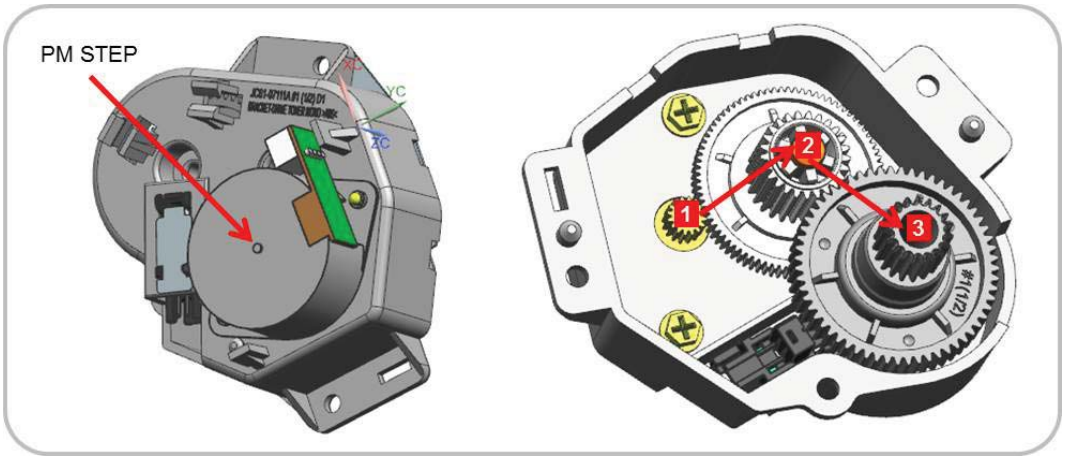


Table 2-28 Toner supply drive

Power Train	PM Step → Toner Supply driving
• 1 PM Step → 2 Gear → 3 Gear (Toner Supply driving)	

Toner reservoir drive

Figure 2-36 Toner reservoir drive

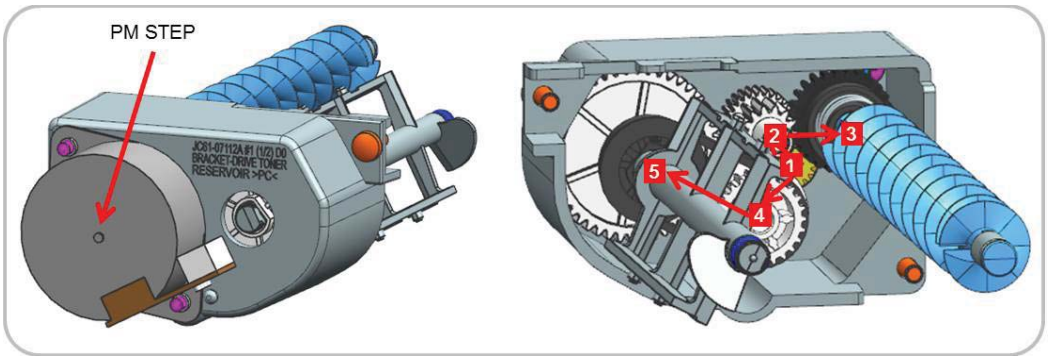


Table 2-29 Toner reservoir drive

Power Train	PM STEP Motor → Toner Reservoir Auger & Paddle driving
• 1 PM STEP Motor → 2 Gear → 4 Gear & Latch → 5 Pulley & Gear (Paddle driving)	
• 1 PM STEP Motor → 2 Gear → 3 Gear & Latch (Auger driving)	

Flatbed Scanner System

Flatbed scanner system overview

The scanner converts a hardcopy original into data. To scan an original, the scanner uses the lens and Charge Coupled Device (CCD). The scanner stores and transfers the converted image to the storage space or transfers the scanned data to the printer engine for copy.

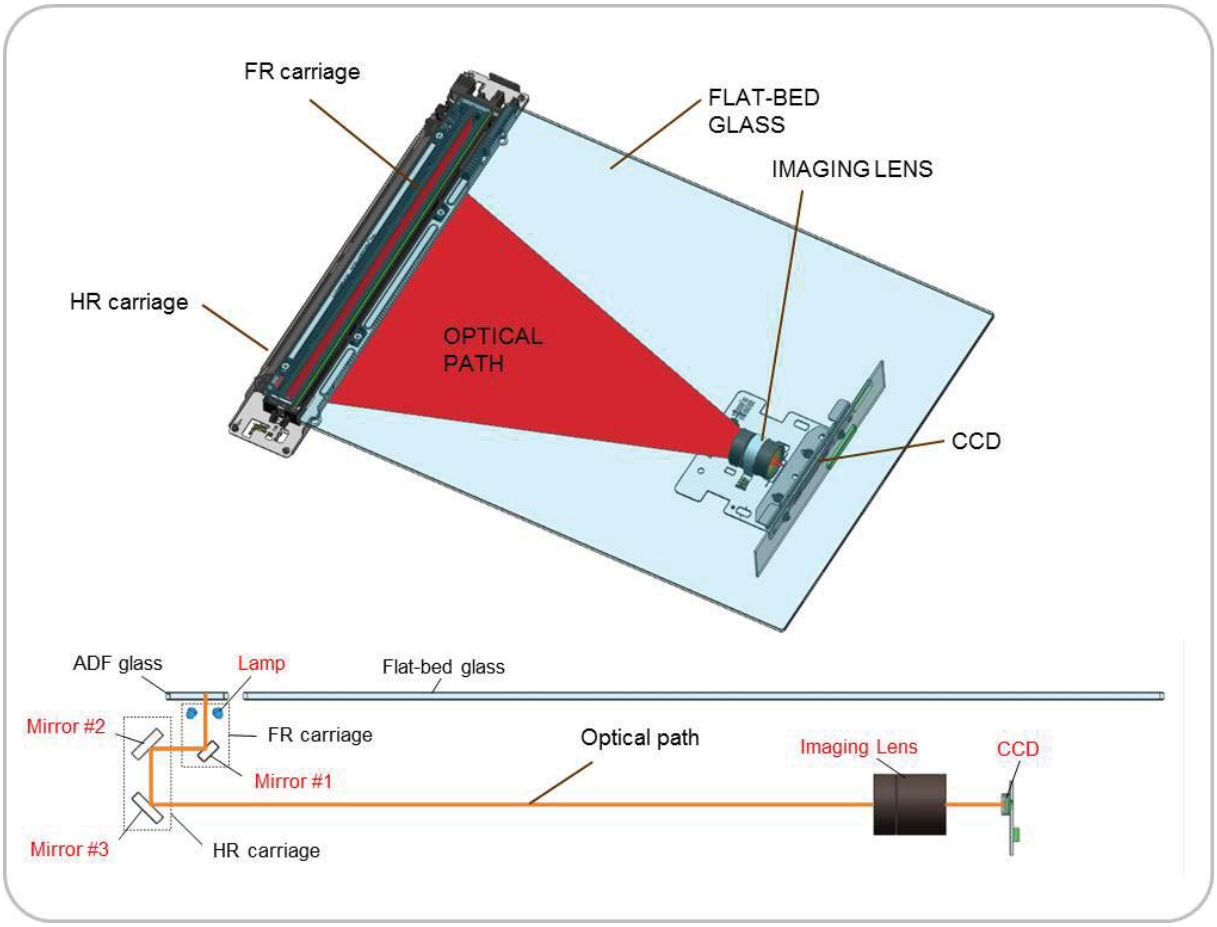
For scan operation, the scanner uses a full rate (FR) carriage and a half rate (HR) carriage that is moved by a wire. It scans the original document on the scanner glass or from the ADF.

The scanner system consists of the three following modules:

- **Full Rate (FR) carriage**: Illuminates the original and reflects the light at a 90 degree angle.
- **Half Rate (HR) carriage**: Transfers the reflected light from the FR carriage to the lens.
- **Imaging module**: Makes an image on the CCD.

The HR carriage moves half the distance at half the speed of the FR carriage. This keeps a regular gap between the original and the imaging lens.

Figure 2-37 Scanner system overview

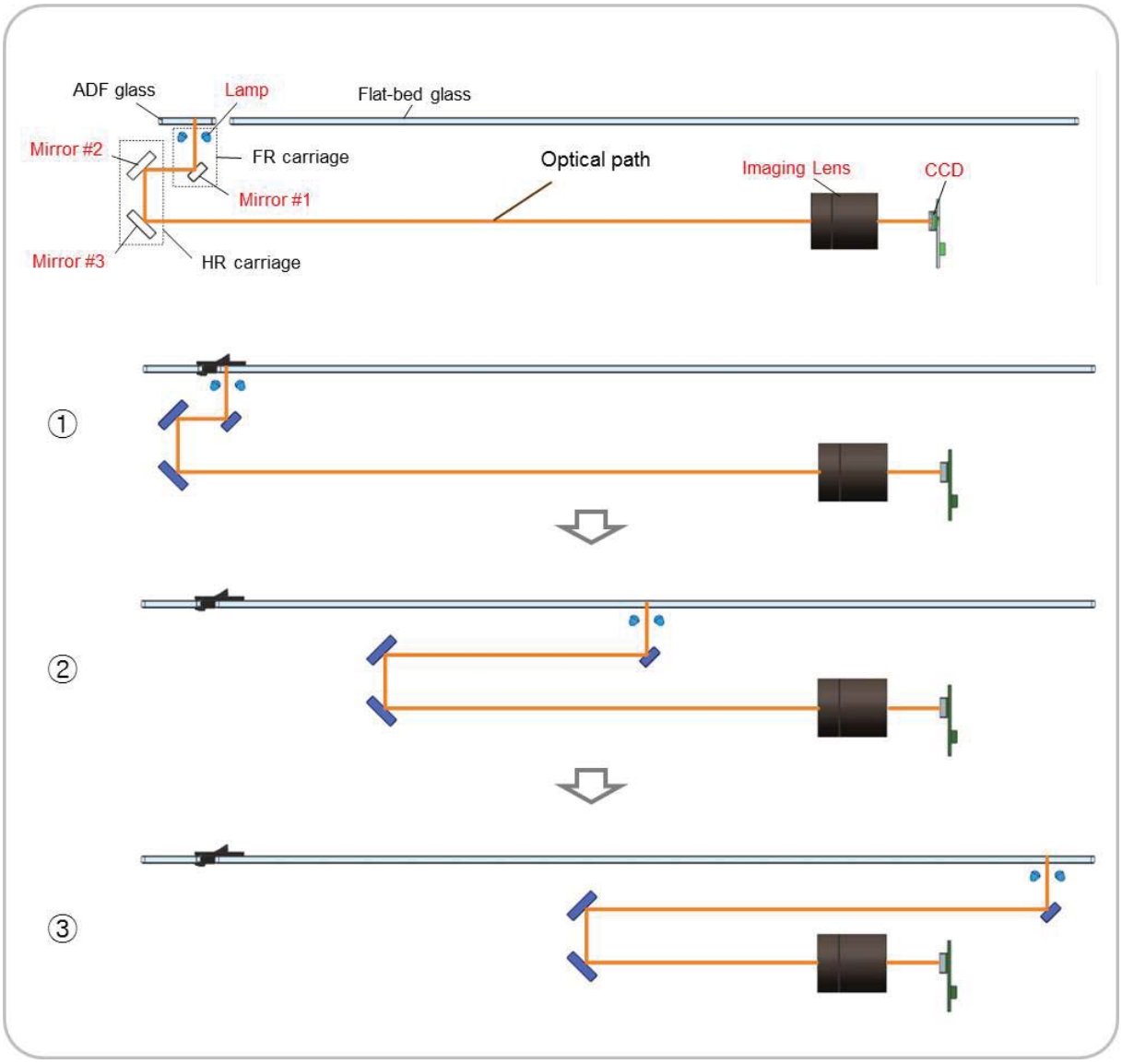


The following describes the scan process:

1. The FR carriage lamp illuminates the original. The reflected light is moved to Mirror #1.
2. The reflected light from Mirror #1 is sent to the imaging lens through Mirror #2 and #3.
3. The light becomes smaller and makes an optical image.
4. The optical image is generated to the electrical signal by the CCD sensor.

To make a stable image, a gap must be maintained between the original and the lens. To maintain this gap, the HR carriage moves half the distance and half the speed of the FR carriage.

Figure 2-38 Scan process



The optical image made by the CCD sensor is changed to an electrical-analog signal.

Each color element signal in the optical image is separated by the CCD sensor into red, green, and blue.

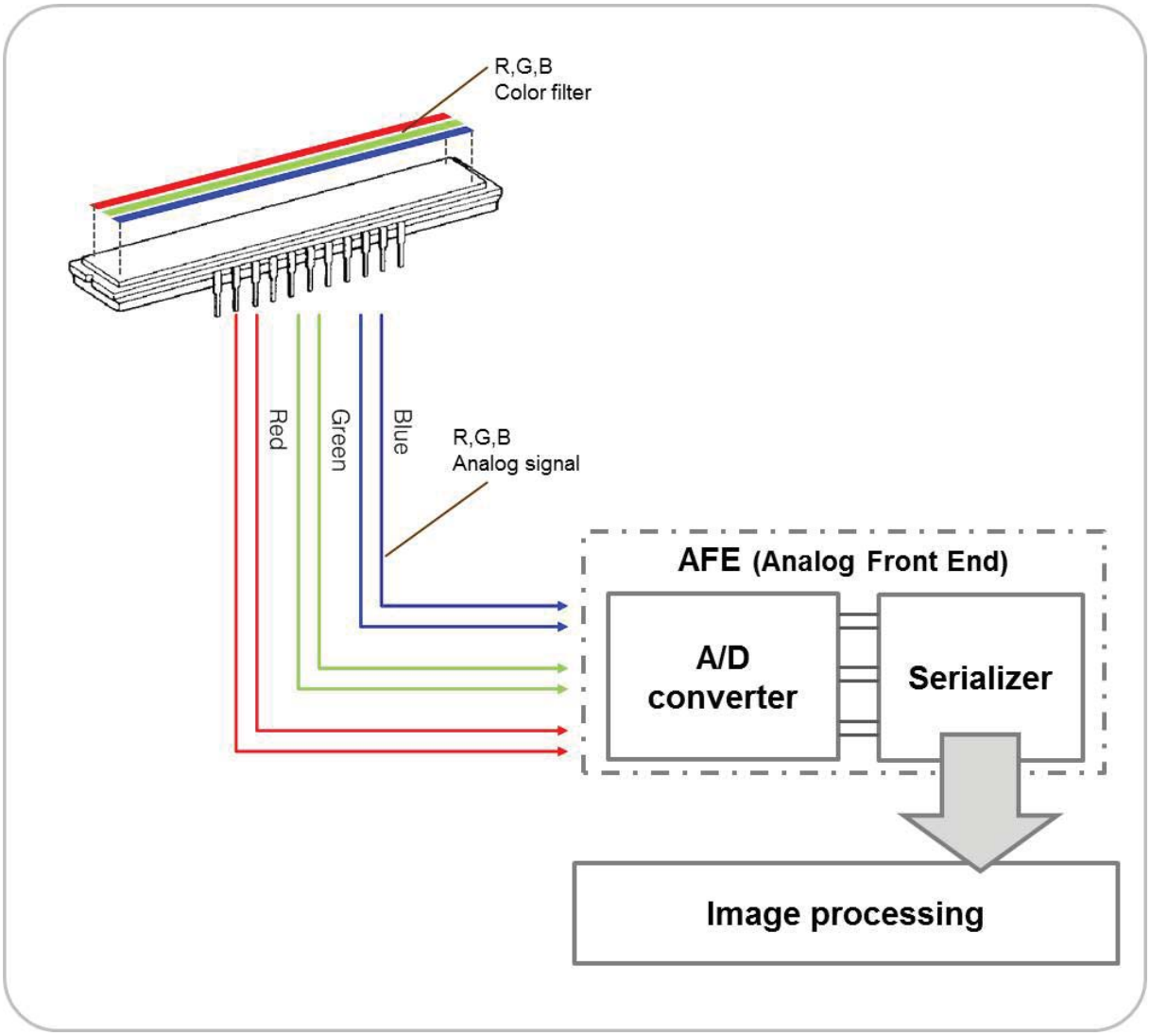
The red CCD sensor extracts the red color from the optical image, the green CCD sensor extracts the green color from the optical image, and the blue CCD sensor extracts the blue color from the optical image.

The analog image signal is changed to a digital image signal by the A/D converter and is transferred to the processor.

The image scan of the main scanning direction is performed by the CCD sensor. The CCD sensor consists of approximately 7500 pixels. The image scan of the sub scanning direction is performed by the FR carriage and HR carriage. The carriage is moved by a wire driven by the scan motor.

Scan resolution is 600 dpi.

Figure 2-39 Image processing



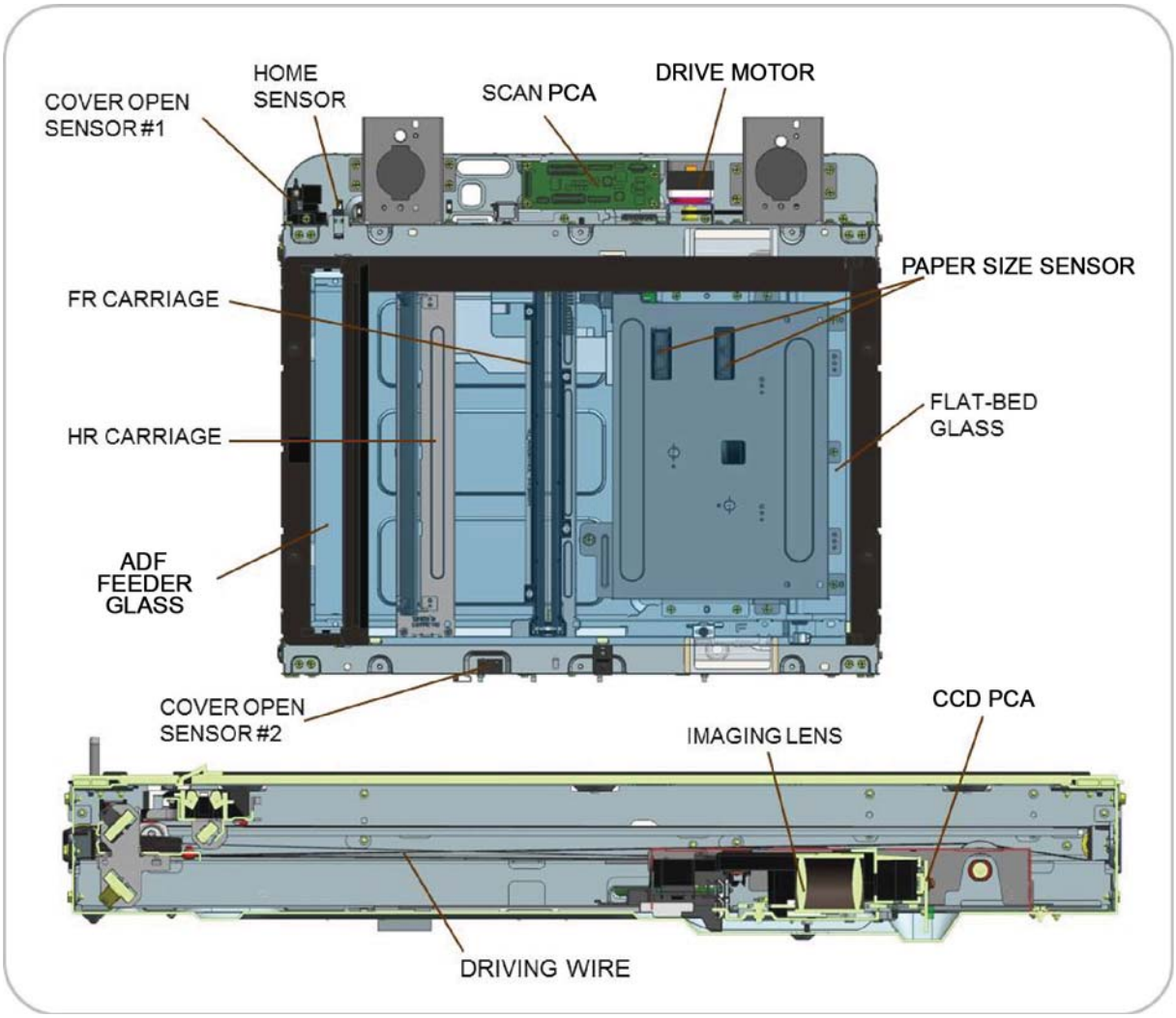
Scanning system components

The following shows the construction and purpose of the scanning system.

To scan the original on the scanner glass, two carriages driven by the motor move at a regular speed. The motor drives the timing belt, pulley, and wire. The wire pulley rolls and releases the wire to move the carriage.

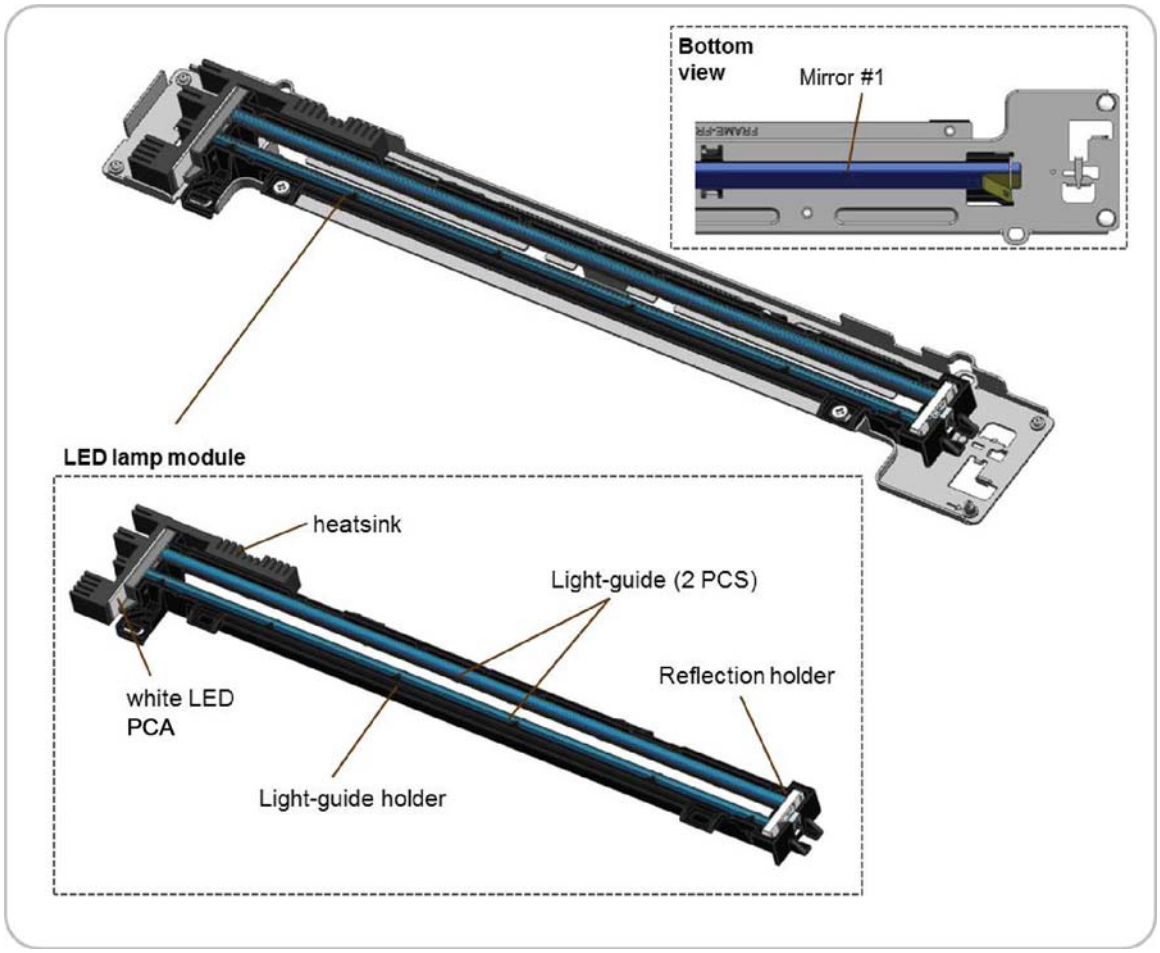
The scanner consists of the scanner glass, FR carriage, HR carriage, imaging unit, and driving unit.

Figure 2-40 Scanning system components



- FR Carriage

Figure 2-41 FR carriage



– LED lamp module

  This module illuminates the original. Two white LEDs are assembled on the side of the module. The original is illuminated by the light-guide. The heat sink is attached to the LED PCB. When the heat sink is broken or expired, an engineer needs to replace it.

  - Light-guide

    The light-guide changes the light from point type to line type. The light-guide is made by transparent resin and controls the amount of light in the scan area uniformly.

  - White LED

    The white LED emits white light. The heat sink attached to the PCA prevents heat deterioration.

  - Reflection holder

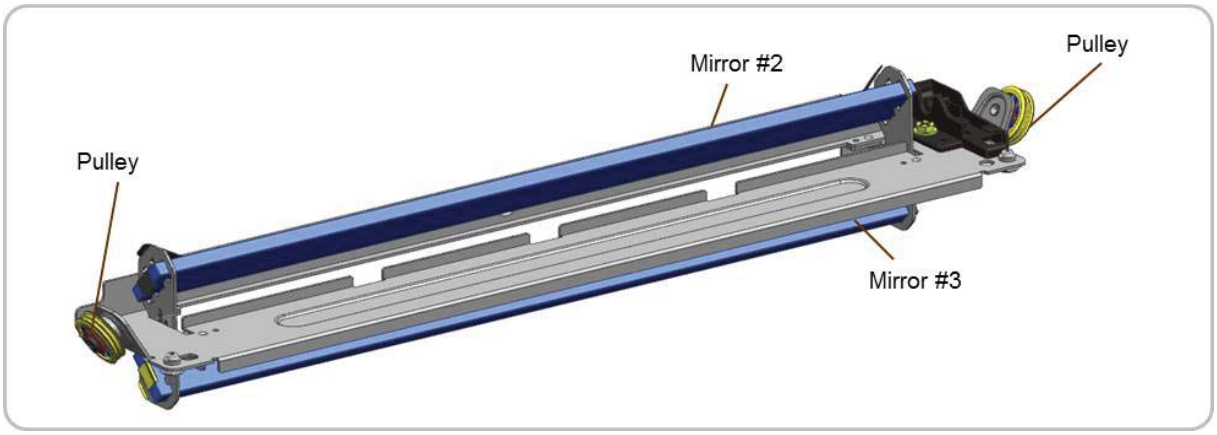
    The reflection holder reflects the light that has passed through the light-guide.

– Mirror #1

  Mirror #1 reflects light at a 90 degree angle.

HR Carriage (mirror unit)

Figure 2-42 HR carriage



- Mirror #2 and #3

  Mirrors #2 and #3 are positioned at a 45 degree angle in order to change the direction of the light. The reflected light from mirror #1 is sent to the imaging lens through mirrors #2 and #3.

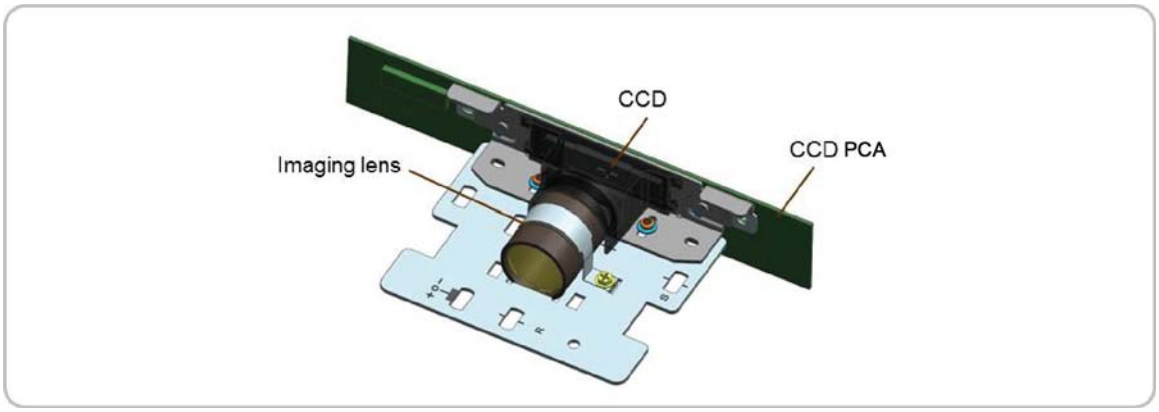
- Pulley

  The pulley is a ball bearing type. The pulley rolls and releases the wire which makes the HR carriage move. The HR carriage moves half the distance at half the speed of the FR carriage.

Imaging unit

The imaging unit changes the optical image to an electrical signal.

Figure 2-43 Imaging unit



- Imaging lens

  The reflected light from the imaging lens is focused on the CCD. The image is reduced to the fixed CCD sensor and pixel size.

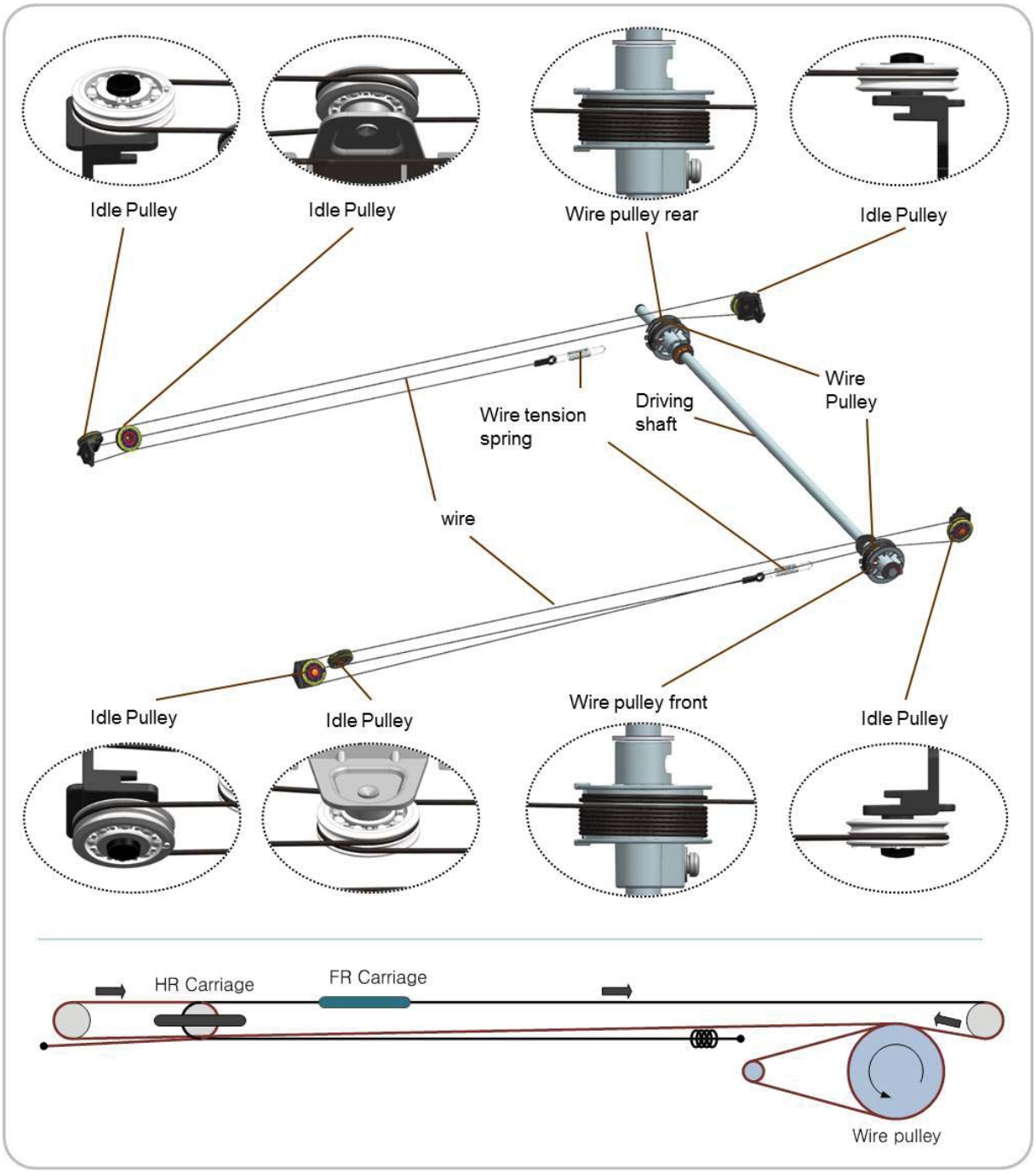
- CCD PCA

  The image made by the imaging lens is changed to an electrical signal by the CCD. The CCD consists of three channel line sensors for image creation. The brightness and darkness of the image depends on the voltage level from the CCD. The output voltage is changed to a digital signal. The digital signal makes the scanned image.

Wire driving

To move the carriages, the wire is assembled in the front and rear of the scanner. The pulley rolls and releases the wire which moves the FR carriage and the HR carriage.

Figure 2-44 Wire driving



Scanner glass (flatbed glass)

The original is placed on the scanner glass for scan or copy jobs. The scanner glass is made of tempered glass and is held in place by the frame to prevent distortion.

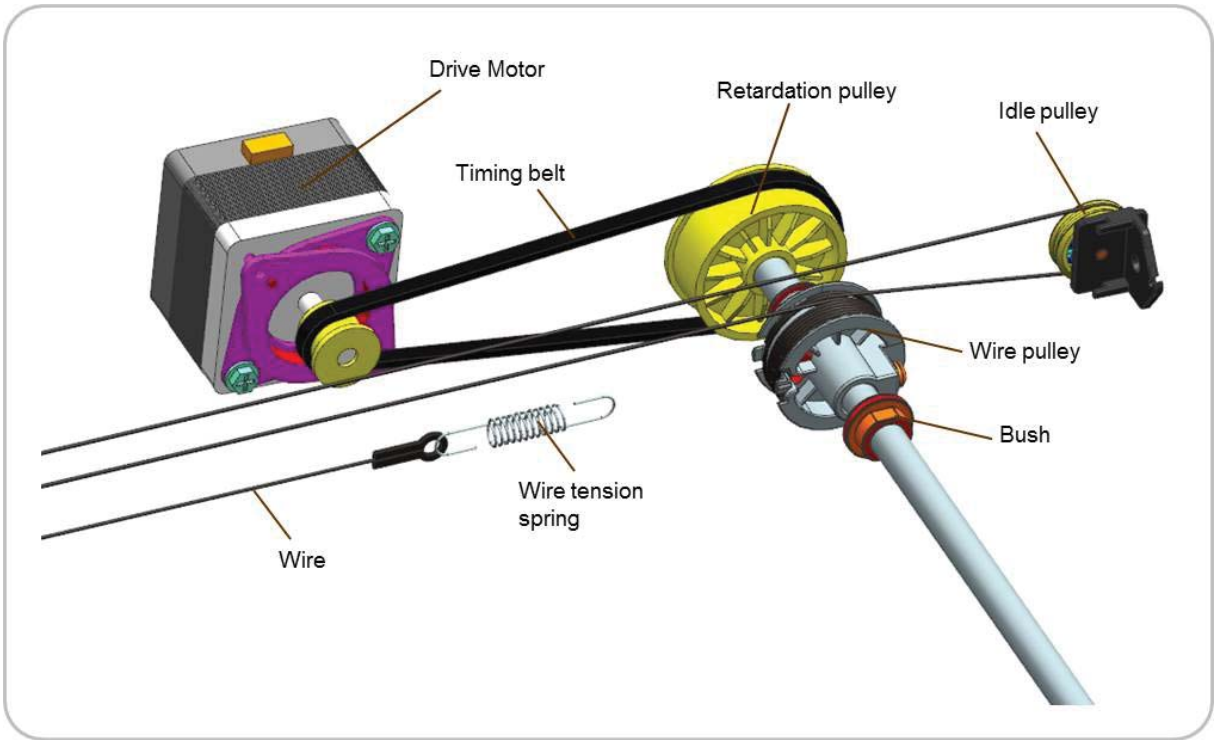
Drive motor

The scanner drive system uses the step motor to move the carriage. The step motor controls the position and maintains constant speed. The motor power is transferred to the wire through the timing belt and pulley.

Timing belt

The timing belt has a regular sawtooth gear and transfers the motor power to the pulley.

Figure 2-45 Timing belt



Paper size sensor

The paper size sensor automatically detects the size of the original on the scanner glass. The paper size sensor uses two sensors. An infrared LED is used to detect the dark original.

Home sensor

The home sensor detects the FR carriage position. The home sensor is a transmission photosensor.

Cover open sensor #1

When the ADF unit opens and closes, a function is triggered which detects whether the paper size sensor is on or off.

Cover open sensor #2

The cover open sensor #2 detects when the ADF unit is closed using magnetic force.

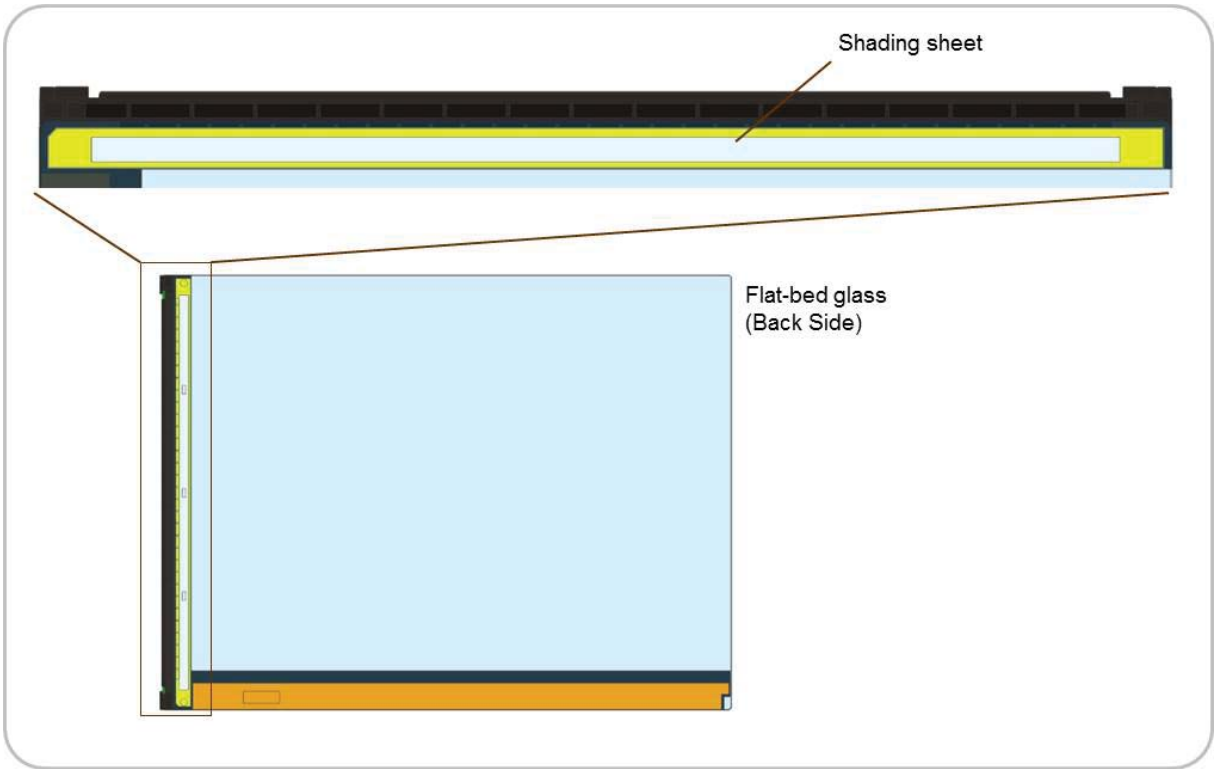
ADF glass

ADF glass scans the original through the ADF unit. The FR carriage reads the original as it passes. If the original is contaminated, a horizontal black or white line might appear.

Shading sheet

The shading sheet detects white color in the base. Before every scan job, the scan module reads the shading sheet to scan the image with the same color and brightness. If the original is contaminated, a vertical image might occur.

Figure 2-46 Shading sheet



Caution for moving the scanner

Lock the FR and HR carriages to prevent damage when shipping or moving the printer.

When installing

After unpacking, before turning on the printer, the scan locking screw must be removed. If the locking screw is not removed scanner failure will occur.

1. When installing the printer, remove the scan locking screw.
2. After removing the screw, assemble the screw cap from the accessory package.

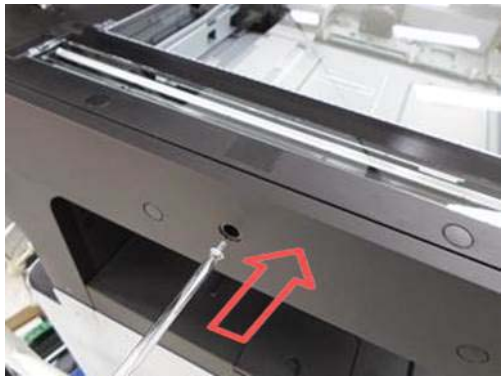
Figure 2-47 Remove scan locking screw

When moving

When moving the printer, tighten the scan locking screw to prevent damage to the carriages.

1. Make sure the FR carriage is located in the home position.
2. Remove the screw cap.
3. Tighten the M3x8 screw to secure the FR carriage.

Figure 2-48 Tighten scan locking screw



Flow Automatic Document Feeder (Flow ADF) dn/z bundles (GX)

Flow ADF overview

Figure 2-49 Flow ADF overview

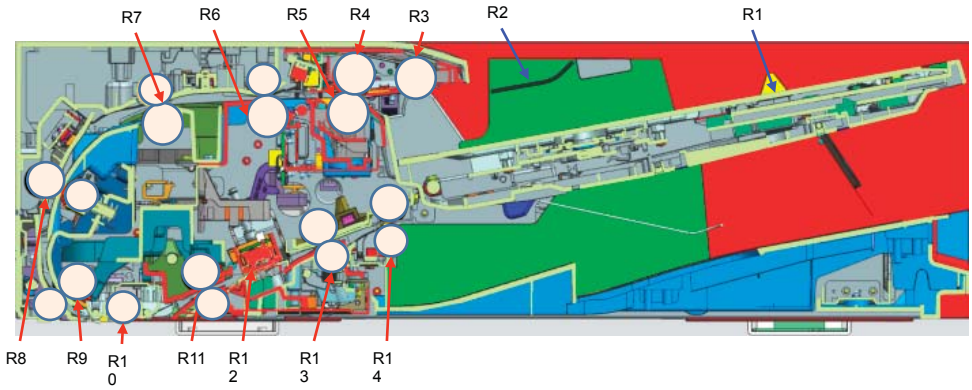


Table 2-30 Flow ADF overview

Part		Function
R1	STACKER ASSY	Original paper input tray
R2	GUIDE-DOCU F&R	Original paper guide (front/rear)
R3	PICKUP ROLLER	Pick up original paper from the input tray
R4	ADF ROLLERr	Original paper feed roller
R5	SEPARATION ROLLER	Original paper separation roller
R6	FEED ROLLER	Original paper transfer roller (A6 size)
R7	PRE REGI ROLLER	Original paper alignment roller (1 round)
R8	REGI ROLLER	Original paper alignment roller (2 round)
R9	SCAN IN ROLLER	Feeds an original paper before scanning
R10	SIMPLEX WHITE-ROLLER	Support of simplex scanning unit
R11	SIMPLEX SCAN OUT ROLLER	Transfer a scanned original paper to the duplex white-roller
R12	D-CIS MODULE	Back side image scan unit
R13	DUPLEX SCAN OUT ROLLER	Transfer a scanned original paper to the exit roller
R14	EXIT ROLLER	Sends an original paper to the exit tray

Sensors

Figure 2-50 Flow ADF sensors

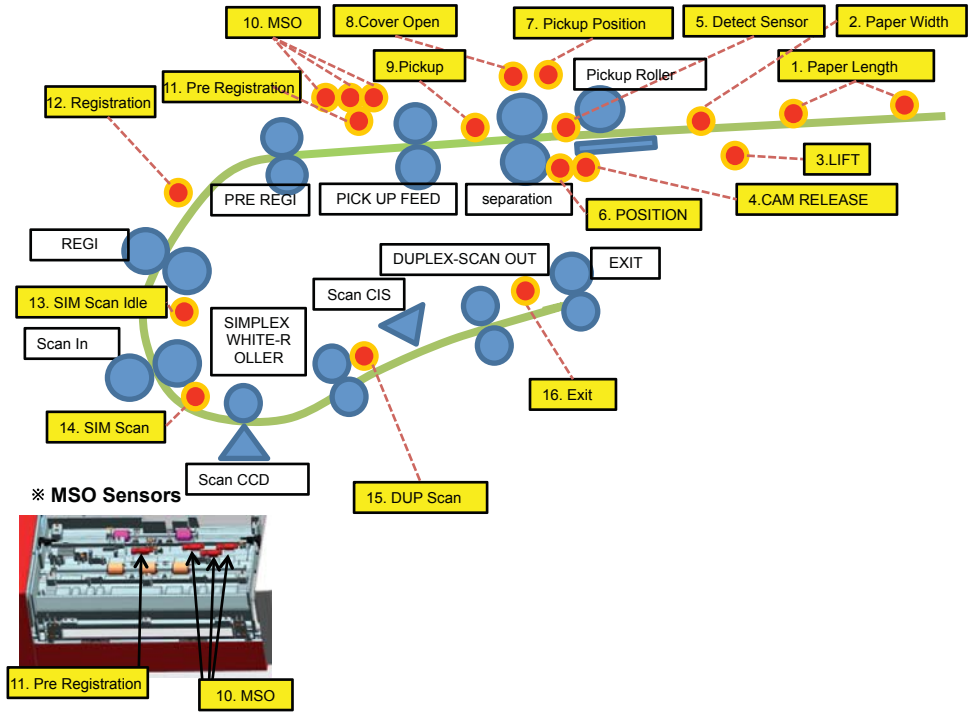
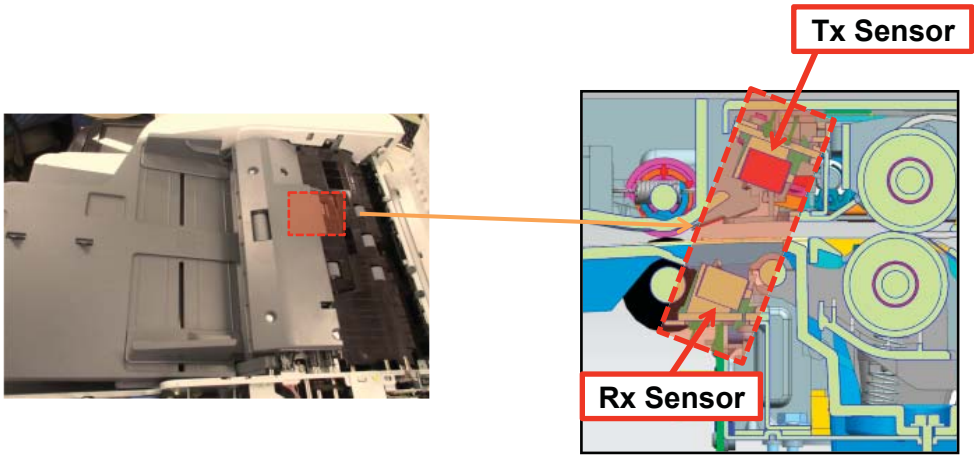


Table 2-31 Flow ADF sensors

Callout	Item	Function
1	Paper Length Sensor	Detects paperlength
2	Paper Width Sensor	Detects paperwidth
3	Stacker Lift Sensor	Detects Stacker Position
4	Cam Release Sensor	Sensing 'Separation Roller' rotation
5	Detect Sensor	Detects if tray is empty
6	Position Sensor	Detects Stacker Position
7	Pickup Position Sensor	Sensing 'Pickup Roller' rotation
8	Cover Open Sensor	Detects if cover is open or closed
9	Pickup Sensor	Detects if there is a jam on the feed path
10	MSO Sensor	Detects mix size
11	Pre-Regi Sensor	Detects if there is a jam on the pre-regi path
12	Regi Sensor	Detects if there is a jam on the Regi path
13	SIM Scan Idle Sensor	Sensing 'Scan In Roller' rotation
14	SIM Scan Sensor	Detects if there is a jam on the Scan In path
15	DUP Scan Sensor	Detects if there is a jam on the Scan Out path
16	Exit Sensor	Paper Exit Sensing

Ultra Sonic Multi-feed (USM)

Figure 2-51 Flow ADF Ultra Sonic Multifeed

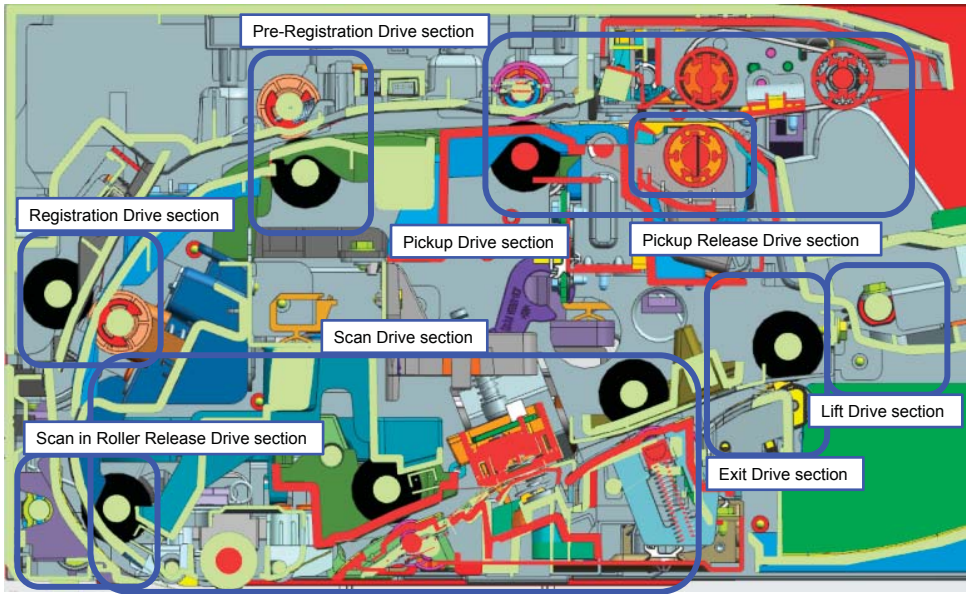


- This sensor detects multi-feeds.
- Component: Ultrasonic Sensor Tx Board, Rx Board , HIC Board (Amp and Filter)
- The Rx Sensor has a different level on each paper status: no paper, one paper, multiple papers.
- Detect the multi-feeding through the level change of Rx Sensor.
- Transmit and receive operation of 300 khz frequency.

Flow ADF drive system

The flow ADF drive system consists of eight motors.

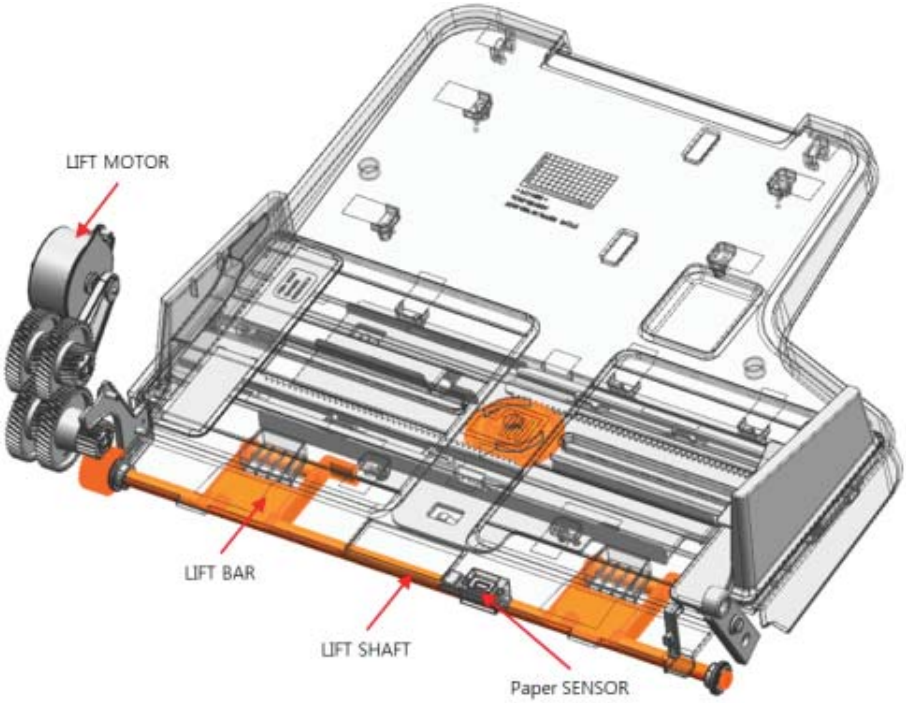
Figure 2-52 Flow ADF drive system



The Flow ADF drive system has eight sections: Pickup Release Drive, Pickup Drive, Pre-Regi Drive, Regi Drive, Scan-in Roller Release Drive, Scan Drive, Exit Drive, and Lift Drive sections.

Flow ADF document lifting drive system

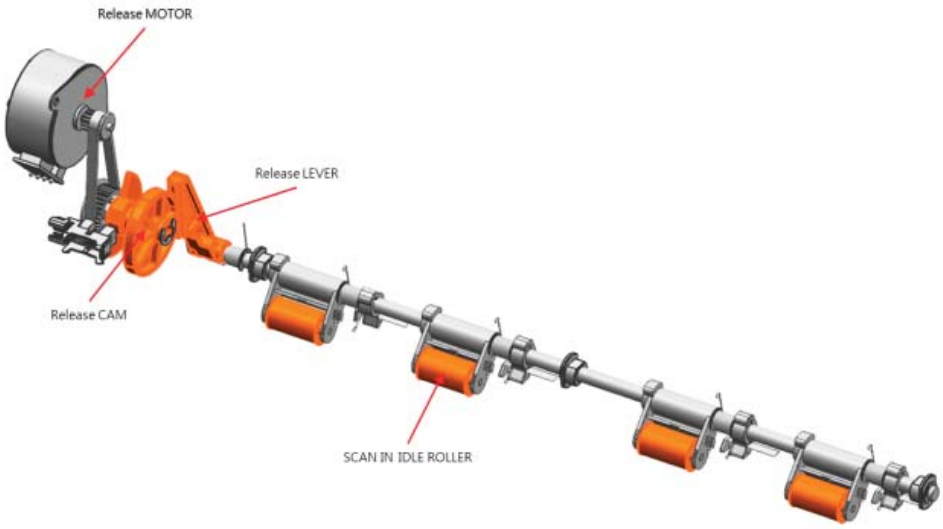
Figure 2-53 Flow ADF document lifting drive system



- Component: LIFT MOTOR, LIFT SHAFT, LIFT BAR, PAPER SENSOR
- LIFT MOTOR Starts > LIFT SHAFT and LIFT BAR lift Tray
- PAPER SENSOR detects paper in the Tray
- Paper contacts PICKUP ROLLER and stops movement
- Document is passed through SCAN OUT SENSOR. Duplex scanning starts.

Flow ADF Scan-In Roller Release Drive System

Figure 2-54 Flow ADF Scan-In Roller Release Drive System



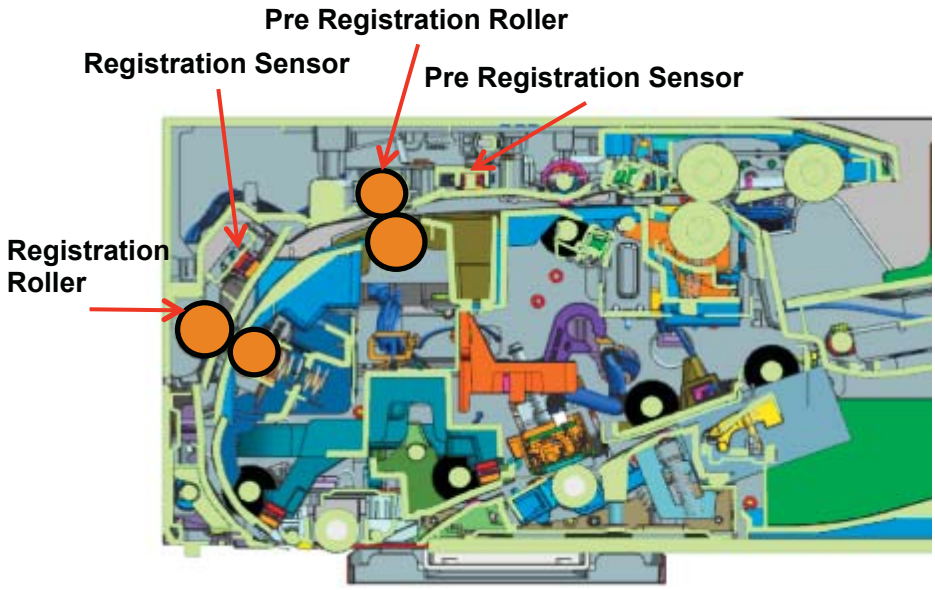
- Holds the rear of the paper using cam motion for improved scan quality
- Component: RELEASE MOTOR, RELEASE CAM, SCAN-IN IDLE ROLLER
- Motor and cam operation repeats for every piece of paper

Flow ADF specification

Capacity	250 pages (stacker lifting)
Scan Speed	120/240 ipm
Pickup	Semi-Retard
Registration	2 times registration
Motor	8 each
Stacker	Lifting
Scanning	White Roller/White Bar
MSO	Support

Flow ADF Registration

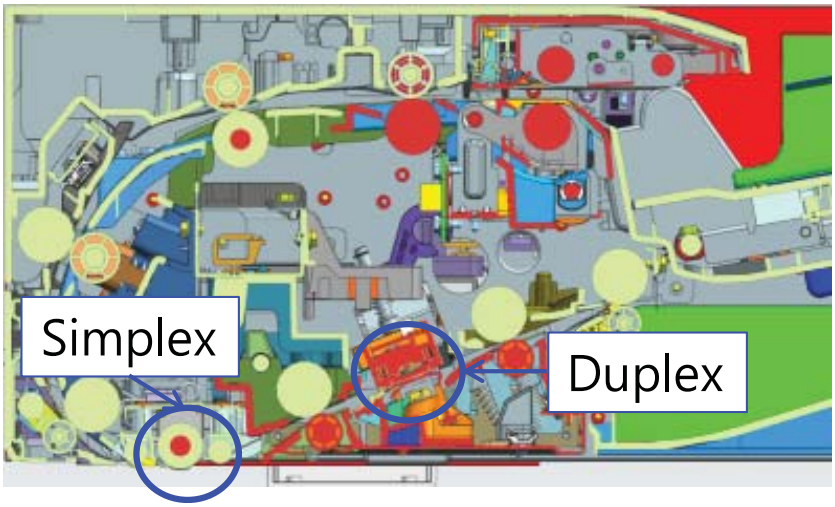
Figure 2-55 Flow ADF Registration



The Flow ADF has two times registration.

Flow ADF Scanning Position

Figure 2-56 Flow ADF Scanning Position



	Type	Simplex	Duplex
Scanning	Z-GX	White Roller	White Bar

Mixed Size Original (MSO)

The MSO detects the size of mixed size papers and sets the alignment of the papers to the rear.

Figure 2-57 MSO 1

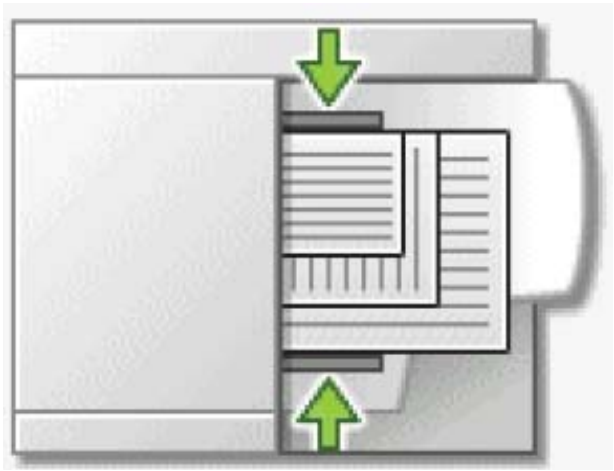
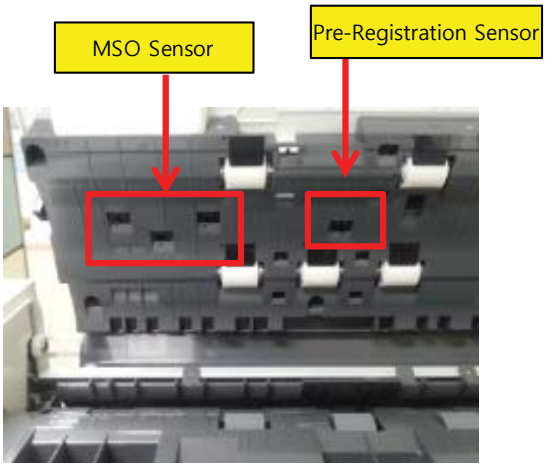


Figure 2-58 MSO 2



MX4
XEROX (DC-IV C7780)
CANON (IR ADV C7270)

Figure 2-59 MSO 3

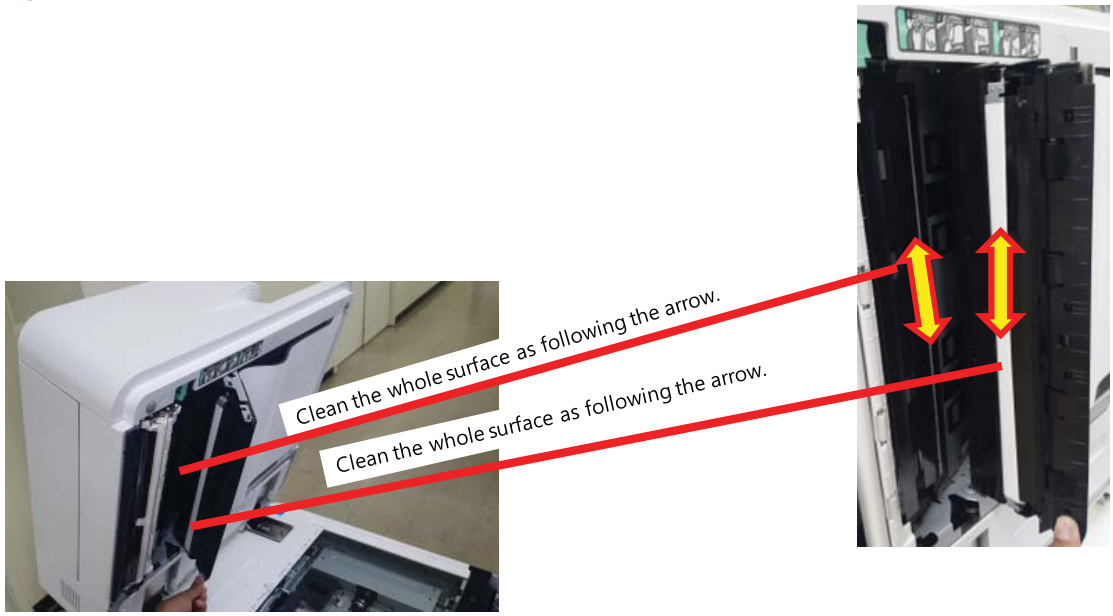
Max Width Length	A3 SEF (297mm)	A4 LEF (297mm)	B4 SEF (257mm)	B5 LEF (257mm)	A4 SEF (210mm)	A5 LEF (210mm)	B5 SEF (182mm)	A5 SEF (148mm)
A3 SEF (420mm)								
A4 LEF (210mm)								
B4 SEF (363mm)								
B5 LEF (182mm)								
A4 SEF (297mm)								
A5 LEF (148mm)								
B5 SEF (257mm)								
A5 SEF (210mm)								

Dual sensor cleaning method

- Component: LEVER GUIDE EXIT F, GUIDE-EXIT UPPER ASSEMBLY.
- Open LEVER GUIDE EXIT F.
- Cleans with a D-CIS GLASS in the direction indicated.
- Cleans the GUIDE EXIT UPPER ASSEMBLY in the direction indicated.

Figure 2-60 Dual sensor cleaning method

Figure 2-61 Dual sensor cleaning method



Flow ADF z bundles (GX)

Model	Engine	Scanner						
		Platen	DN-sGX			Z-GX		
Color	40 ppm	Same at whole model	Scan Speed	USM	Capacity	Scan Speed	USM	Capacity
	50 ppm		90/180 ipm	X	250 sheet	120/240 ipm	0	250 sheet
	60 ppm							
Mono	40 ppm							
	50 ppm							
	60 ppm							

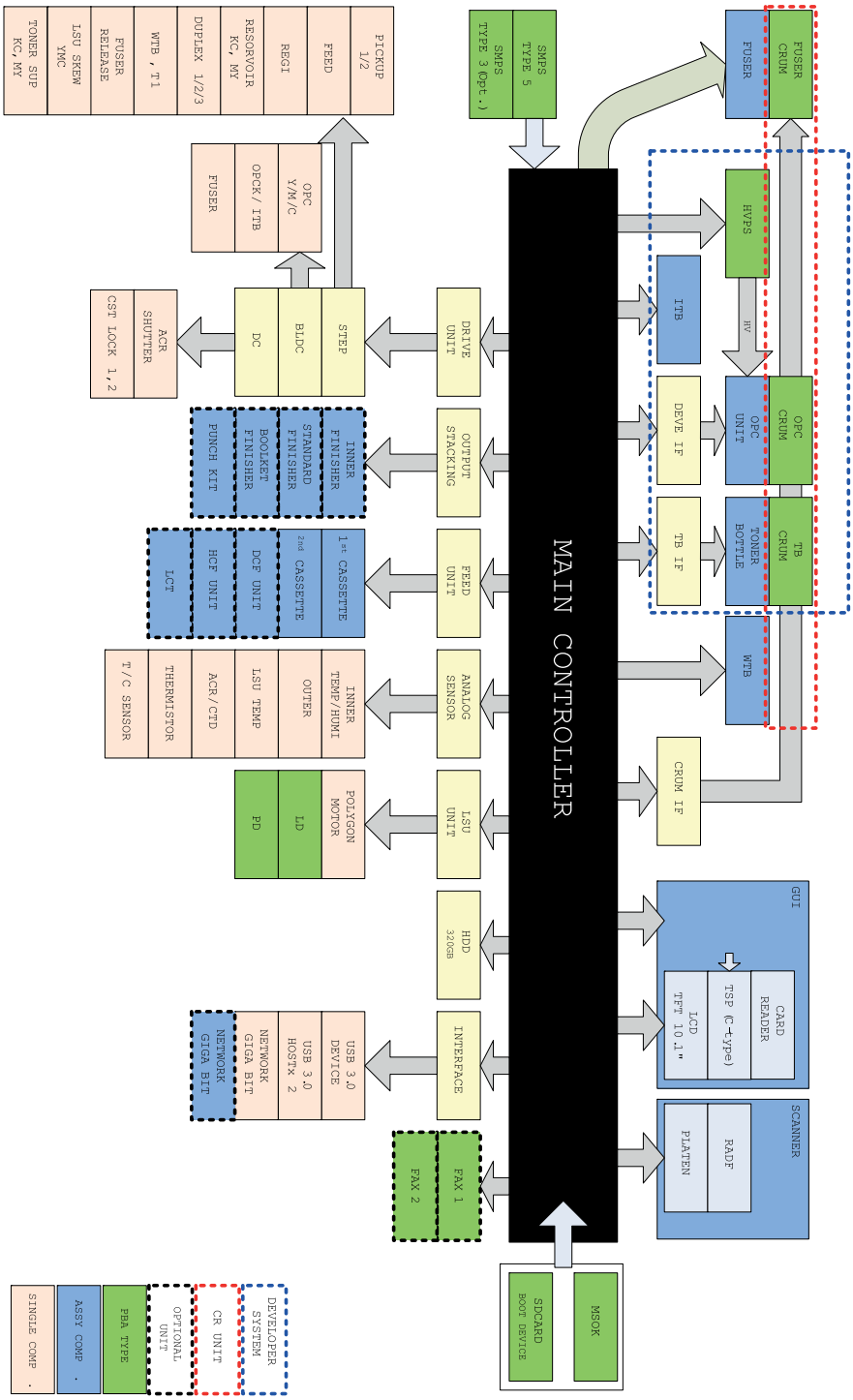
Hardware configuration

The electronic circuit system consists of the following:

- Main controller (main board)
- OPE unit
- ADF (flow ADF/ADF) controller
- HVPS board
- LVPS board
- Fuser drive assembly

Electronic circuit diagram

Figure 2-62 Electronic circuit diagram



The main controller handles the video controller, engine controller, and scan controller.

The main controller receives print data from the host through the network or USB port and receives copy data from the scan controller. The main controller uses this information to generate printable video bitmap data. It controls all modules required to print, including the laser scanner assembly, HVPS, FAN, fuser, and so on.

The main controller communicates with the drive system and other devices through Universal Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter (UART). The main controller communicates with and checks the life of the toner cartridge, drum, and developer units through I2C.

The main controller uses Quad Core CPU 1.5 GHz, DDR3 4 GB memory, Micro SD 4 GB, and a 320 GB SATA HDD to control the engine driving, video signal processing, and user interface.

A MICOM controls power to the fuser lamp and power to the system according to an optimized energy saving algorithm. The MICOM communicates with the OPE controller through the USB 3.0 protocol to display the system information on the control panel.

The OPE unit displays the status of the system using the control panel TFT LCD in response to user actions or the main controller.

The soft power switch in the OPE unit is used to safely shut down the system.

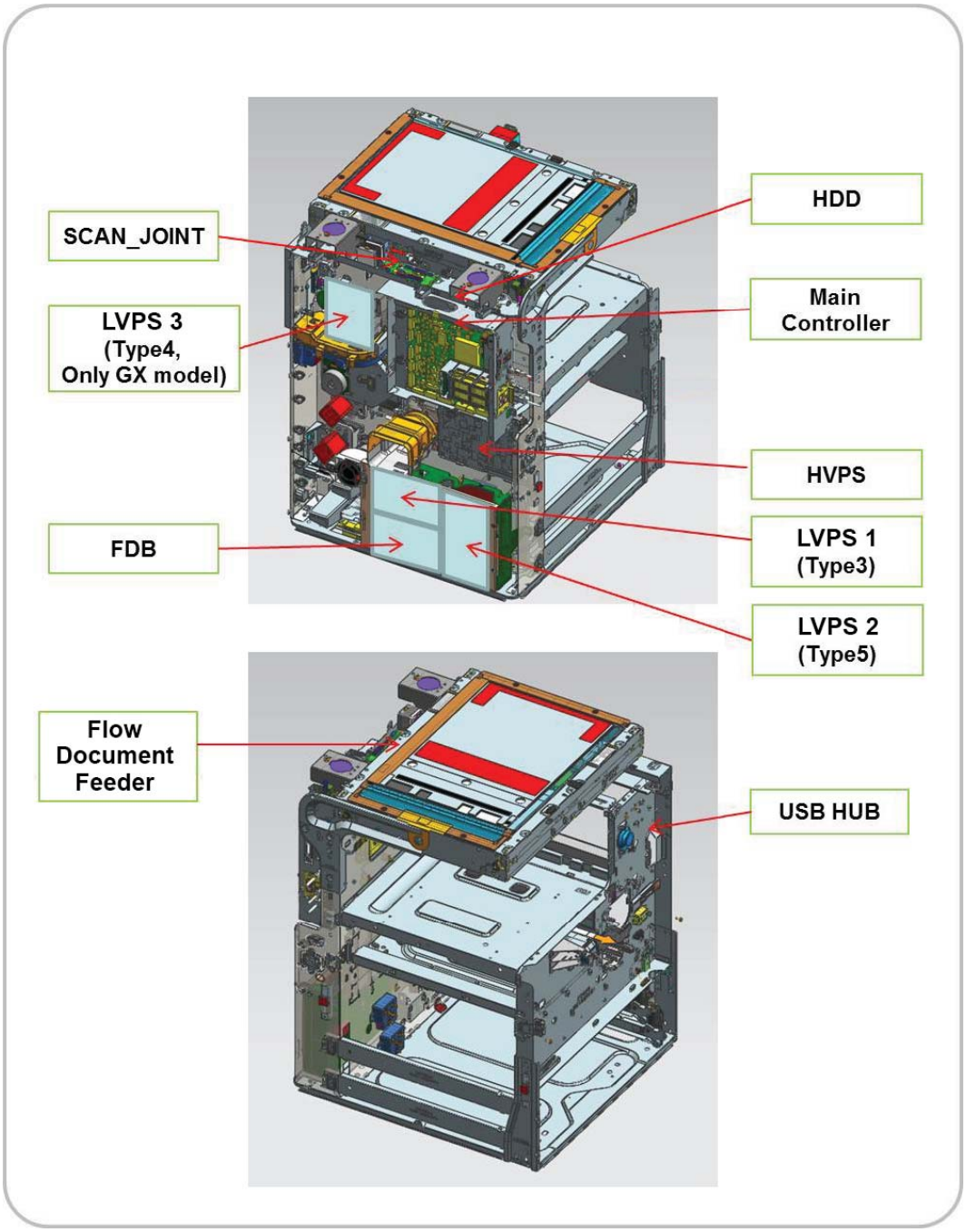
The ADF controller controls some mechanisms required to scan continuously from the ADF. The ADF controller communicates with the main controller to synchronize scan timing.

The HVPS board generates and controls high-voltage channels. The fuser drive assembly controls power to the fuser lamp. The LVPS board generates 5 V and 24 V power for the system.

Circuit board locations

The following diagrams show the locations of the printer circuit boards:

Figure 2-63 Circuit board locations



Main controller

NOTE: The main controller for the previous model is not compatible with the new model (IR/UI). Take care to not use the incompatible Main Controller during replacement.

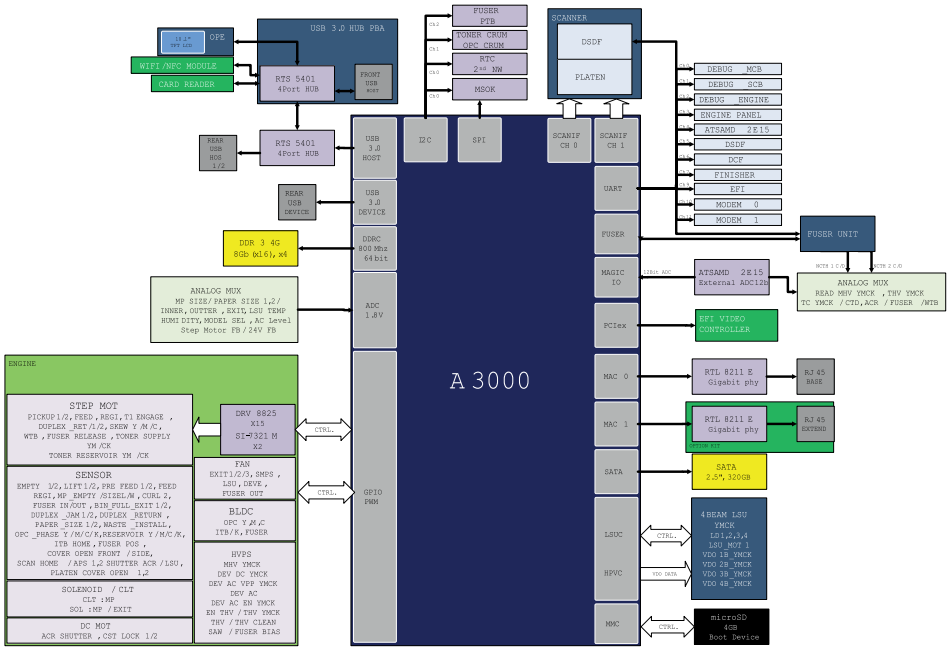
Main controller for previous model

The main controller consists of the main processor (A3000), memory (DDR3 4 GB), Micro SD (4 GB), 1 G Ethernet PHY, USB 3.0 HUB, and Micom (Power/Fuser control). It can control Video/UI/FAX signal interface connection, motor driving IC, engine signal interface connection, and power interface.

The main processor (Quad Core 1.5 GHz CPU) controls video, engine, UI display, and communicates with the various devices. The HDD is connected to the main controller by a SATA cable and connected to the other device (such as ADF, dual cassette feeder (DCF), Finisher, Modem) by UART.

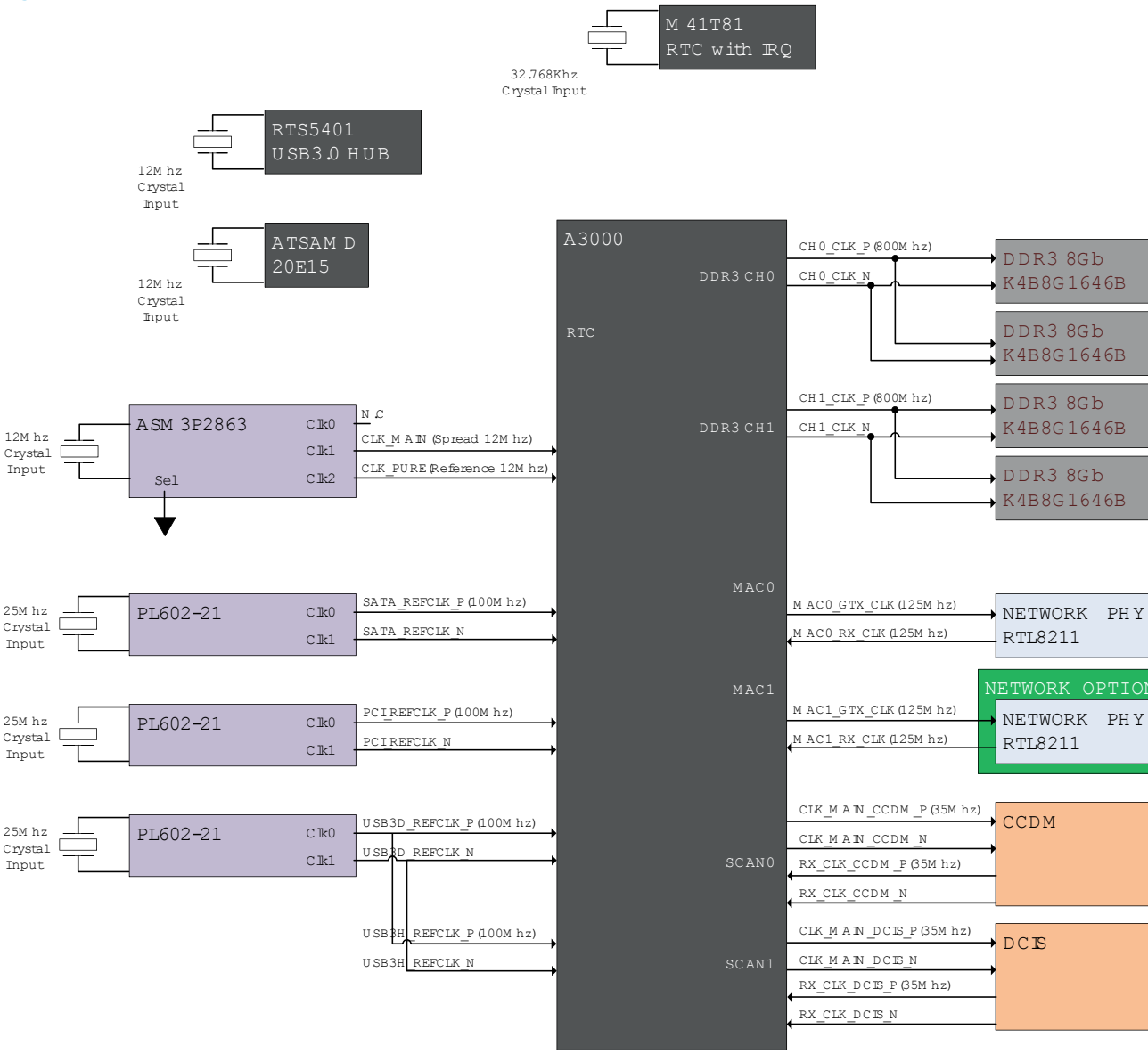
Main controller block diagram

Figure 2-64 Block diagram



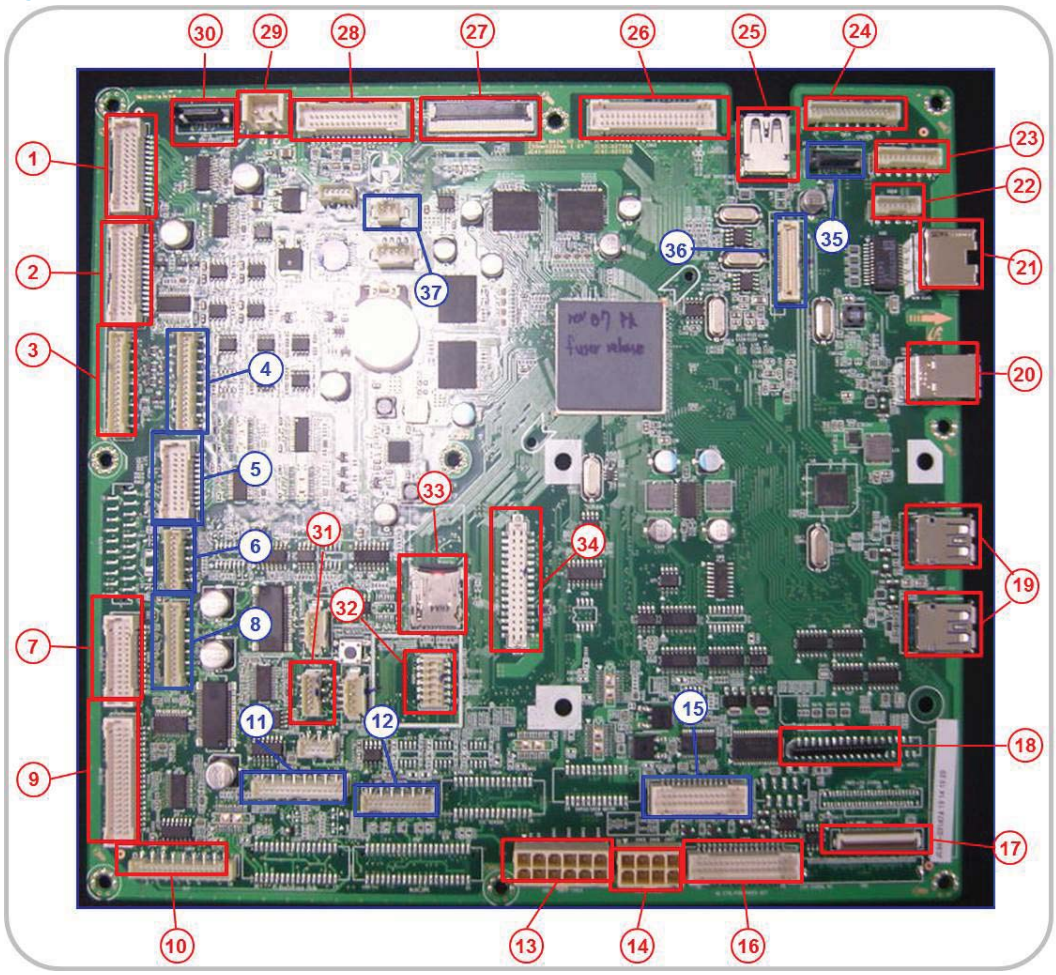
Main controller clock diagram

Figure 2-65 Clock diagram



Main controller connection information

Figure 2-66 Connection information



1	OUTPUT	12	OPC BLDC MONO	23	FIH JOINT	34	FAX JOINT
2	FUSER DRIVE	13	LVPS TYPE5	24	UI IF	35	2ND NETWORK
3	FUSER DRAWER	14	LVPS TYPE3R	25	USB HOST/HUB	36	EFI SIGNAL
4	TB/DEVE/E-Label	15	FRONT IF MONO	26	DCIS	37	CPU FAN
5	TONER SUP/RES	16	Fuser drive assembly IF	27	CCDM		
6	CTD/Registration assembly SENS	17	Laser scanner assembly MONO	28	Flow ADF		
7	PICKUP 1/2	18	HVPS MONO	29	HDD POWER		
8	FEED/Registration assembly MOT	19	USB HOST 1/2	30	HDD SIGNAL		
9	SIDE	20	USB DEVICE	31	SIDE FAN		
10	dual cassette feeder (DCF) IF	21	NETWORK	32	MSOK		
11	FINISHER	22	EFI POWER	33	SD CARD		

Information

- Part Number:
- Part Name: PBA-MAIN

NOTE: This main board is for all models of the HP LaserJet MFP E82540, E82550, E82560.

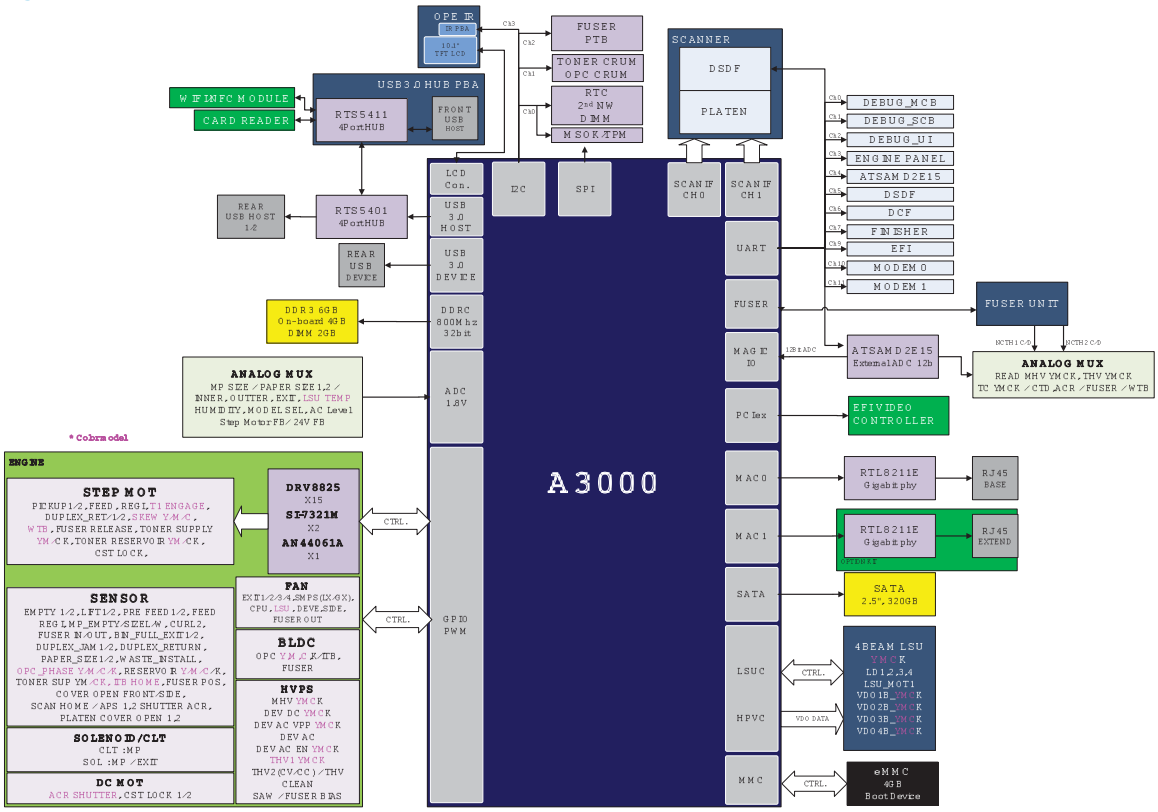
Main controller

The main controller consists of the main processor (A3000), memory (DDR3 6 GB), eMMC (4 GB)1 G Ethernet PHY, USB 3.0 HUB, and Micom (Power/Fuser control). It can control Video/UI/FAX signal interface connection, motor driving IC, engine signal interface connection, and power interface.

The main processor (Quad Core 1.5 GHz CPU) controls video, engine, UI display, and communicates with the various devices. The HDD is connected to the main controller by a SATA cable and connected to the other device (such as ADF, dual cassette feeder (DCF), Finisher, and Modem) by UART.

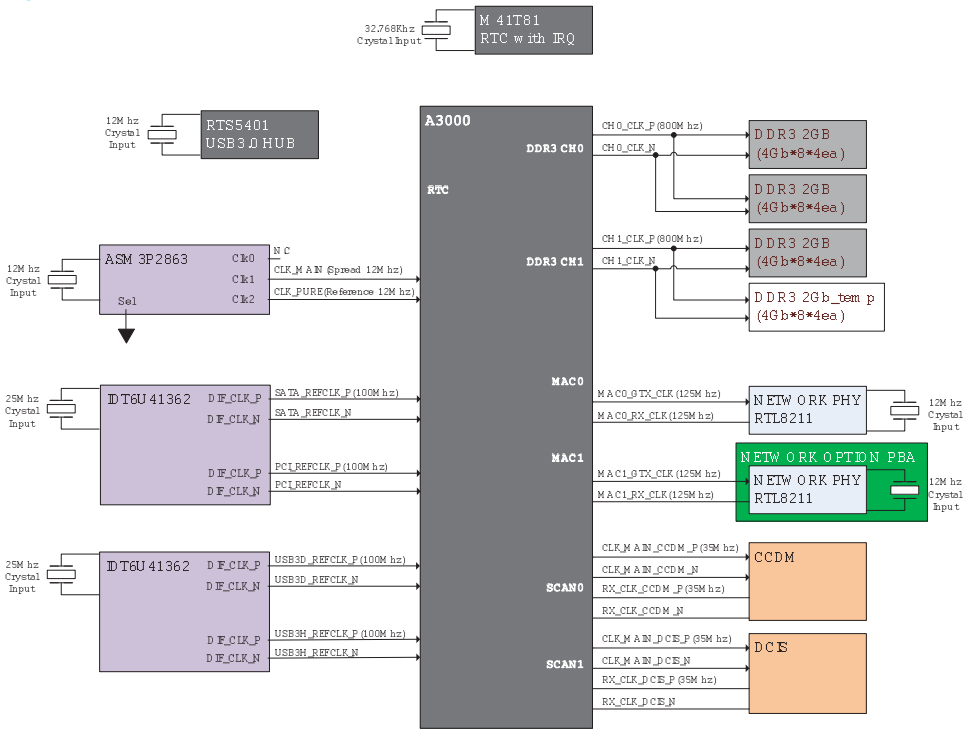
Main controller block diagram

Figure 2-67 Block diagram



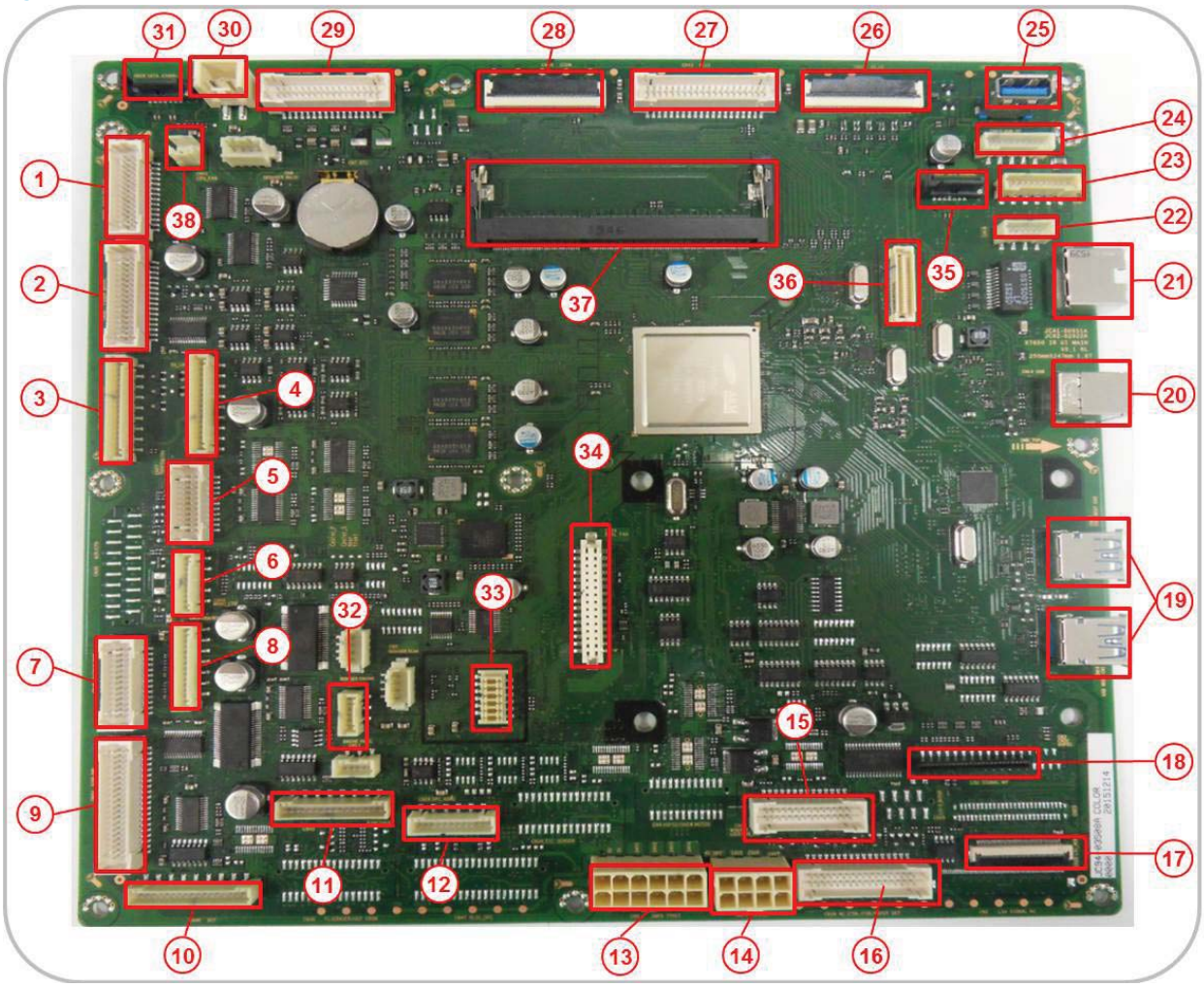
Main controller clock diagram

Figure 2-68 Clock diagram



Main controller connection information

Figure 2-69 Connection information



1	OUTPUT	12	OPC BLDC MONO	23	FIH JOINT	34	FAX JOINT
2	FUSER DRIVE	13	LVPS TYPE5	24	HUB IF	35	2ND NETWORK
3	FUSER DRAWER	14	LVPS TYPE3R	25	USB HOST/HUB	36	EFI SIGNAL
4	TB/DEVE/E-Label	15	FRONT IF MONO	26	UI IF	37	DRR3 DIMM
5	TONER SUP_/RES	16	Fuser drive assembly IF	27	DCIS	38	CPU FAN
6	CTD/Registration assembly SENS	17	Laser scanner assembly MONO	28	CCDM		
7	PICKUP 1/2	18	HVPS MONO	29	Flow ADF		
8	FEED/Registration assembly MOT	19	USB HOST 1/2	30	HDD POWER		
9	SIDE	20	USB DEVICE	31	HDD SIGNAL		
10	dual cassette feeder (DCF) IF	21	NETWORK	32	SIDE FAN		
11	FINISHER	22	EFI POWER	33	MSOK		

Information

- Part Number:
- Part Name: PBA-MAIN

NOTE: This main board is for all HP LaserJet MFP E82540, E82550, E82560 models.

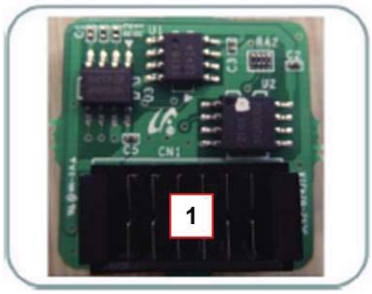
Master system operation key (MSOK)

MSOK PCA is used to store all system information and consists of serial flash memory, an EEPROM, and a X-E-Label. The flash memory (4 MB), EEPROM (256 KB) and X-E-Label are used for all system operations such as system parameter, device status, tech information, and service information.

NOTE: When a main board needs to be exchanged, reinstall the MSOK PCA to the new main board to retain the system information.

IMPORTANT: Do not lose or damage the MSOK chip. It must be installed on the replacement main board in the same orientation as when it was removed in order for the printer to function.

Figure 2-70 MSOK



1	Main PCA I/F connector

Low voltage power supply (LVPS) PCA (Type 5)

NOTE: Some models have three LVPS boards. (Type5 x 1 each, Type4 x 2 each)

The low voltage power supply (LVPS) board supplies electric power to the main board and other boards. The voltage provided includes +5 V, and +24 V from a 110 V/220 V power input. It has safety protection modes for over current and overload.

Figure 2-71 LVPS PCA (Type 5)

1	INPUT_AC
2	OUTPUT_DC +24 V 1/2/3/4 (to Main PCA)
3	24 V on/off
4	OUTPUT_DC +5 V 1/2 (to Main PCA)

Specification

- General input/output voltage
  - AC 110 V (110 V — 127 V)
  - AC 220 V (220 V — 240 V)
  - Input current: 8.0 A (110 V)/5.0 A (220 V)
  - Output power: 275 W
    - DC 5 V: 35 W
    - DC 24 V: 240 W

Information

	110 V	220 V
Part number	SAM-JC44-00249A	SAM-JC44-00250A
Part name	LVPS 110V Type 5H	LVPS 220V Type 5H

Input/output connector

- AC input connector (CN1)

PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	AC_L	AC input
2	AC_N	

- DC output connector (CN2)

PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	+5V1	Power
2	GND	5 V ground
3	+5V2	Power
4	GND	5 V ground

- DC output connector (CN3)

PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	+24V1	Power
2	GND	24 V ground
3	+24V2	Power
4	GND	24 V ground
5	+24V3	Power
6	GND	24 V ground
7	+24V4	Power
8	GND	24 V ground

- Signal Connector (CN4)

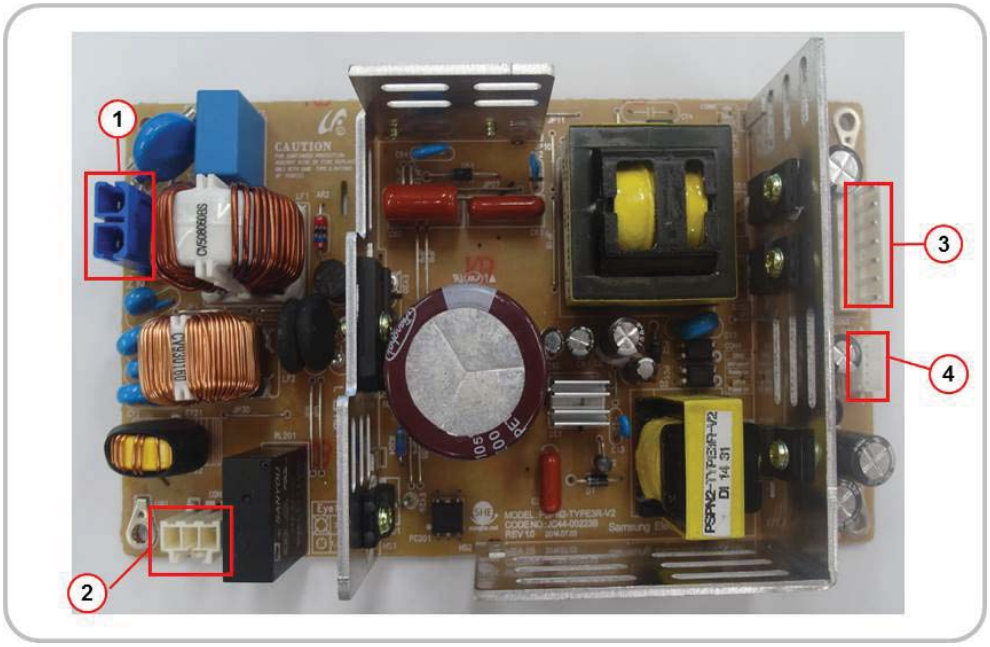
PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	GND	Active Low
2	24 V On/Off	
3	GND	

Low voltage power supply (LVPS) PCA (Type 3)

NOTE: Some models have three LVPS boards. (Type5 x 1 each, Type4 x 1 each, Type3 x 1 each)

The low voltage power supply (LVPS) board supplies electric power to the main board and other boards. The voltage provided includes +5 V, and +24 V from a 110 V/220 V power input. It has safety protection modes for over current and overload.

Figure 2-72 LVPS PCA (Type 3)



1	INPUT_AC Power (CON1)
2	Fuser AC Power (CON2)
3	OUTPUT_DC +24 V 1/2/3 and +5V1 (CON3)
4	Signal_24 V on/off, Relay on, Fuser on (CON4)

Specification

- General input/output voltage
  - AC 110 V (110 V — 127 V)
  - AC 220 V (220 V — 240 V)
  - Input current: 10.0 A (110 V)/8.0 A (220 V)
  - Output power: 164 W
    - DC 5 V: 20 W
    - DC 24 V: 144 W

Information

	110 V	220 V
Part number	SAM-JC44-00222E	SAM-JC44-00223F
Part name	LVPS 110V Type 3	LVPS 220V Type 3

Input/output connector

- AC input connector (CN1)

PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	AC_L	AC input
2	AC_N	

- Fuser AC Power Connector (CN2)

PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	AC_L	AC input for fuser
2	AC_N	

- DC output connector (CN3)

PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	+5V1	DC 5 V
2	GND	Ground
3	+24V1	DC 24 V
4	GND	Ground
5	+24V2	DC 24 V
6	GND	Ground
7	+24V3	DC 24 V

- Signal Connector (CN4)

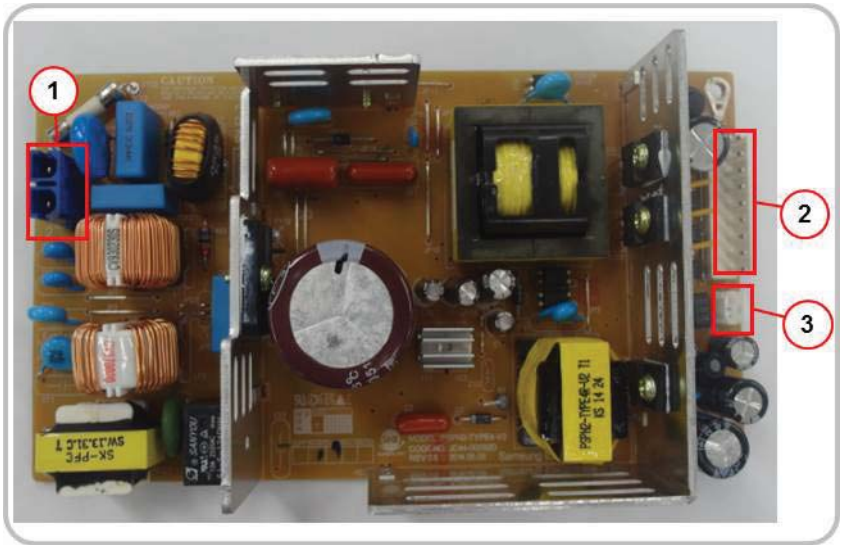
PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	GND	Ground
2	24 V On/Off	Active Low
3	Relay on	Active High
4	24 V	Bias for photo triac, relay
5	Fuser on	Active High

Low voltage power supply (LVPS) PCA (Type 4)

NOTE: Some models have three LVPS boards. (Type5 x 1 each, Type4 x 2 each)

The low voltage power supply (LVPS) board supplies electric power to the main board and other boards. The voltage provided includes +5 V, and +24 V from a 110 V/220 V power input. It has safety protection modes for over current and overload.

Figure 2-73 LVPS PCA (Type 4)



1	INPUT_AC
2	OUTPUT_DC +24 V1/2/3 and DC +5 V 1/2 (to Main PCA)
3	24 V on/off

Specification

- General input/output voltage
  - AC 110 V (110 V — 127 V)
  - AC 220 V (220 V — 240 V)
  - Input current: 6.3 A (110 V)/5 A (220 V)
  - Output power: 205 W
    - DC 5 V: 25 W
    - DC 24 V: 180 W

Information

	110 V	220 V
Part number	SAM-JC44-00091D	SAM-JC44-00092D
Part name	LVPS 110V Type 4	LVPS 220V Type 4

Input/output connector

- AC input connector (CN1)

PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	AC_L	AC input
2	AC_N	

- DC output connector (CN4)

PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	+5V1	Power
2	GND	5 V ground
3	+5V2	Power
4	GND	5 V ground
5	+24V1	Power
6	GND	24 V ground
7	+24V2	Power
8	GND	24 V ground
9	+24V3	Power

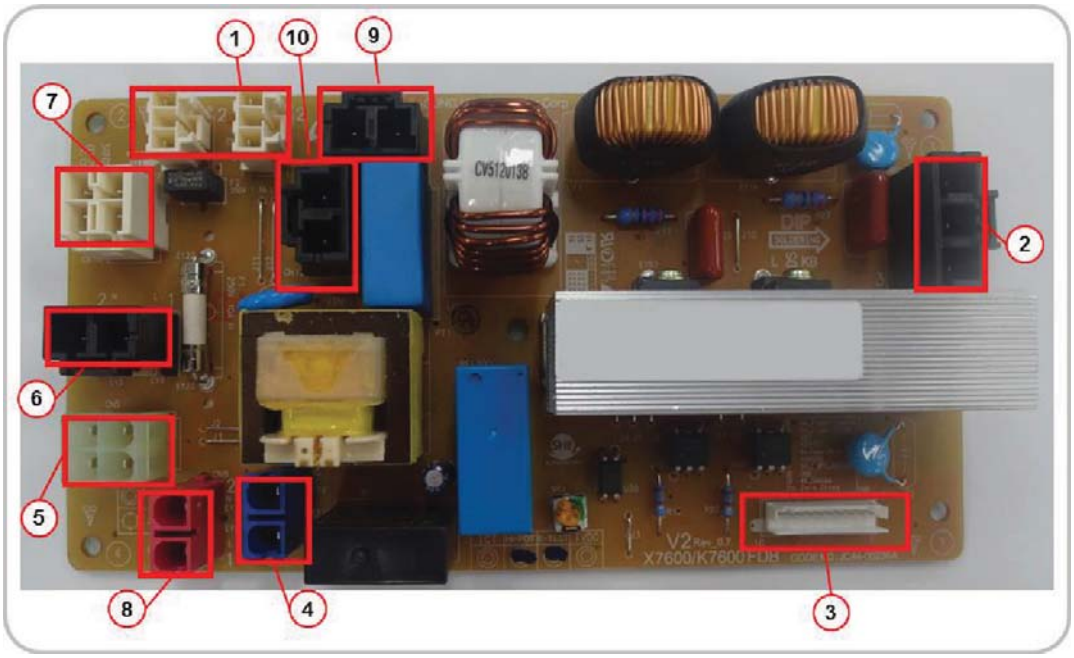
- Signal Connector (CN3)

PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	GND	Active Low
2	24 V On/Off	
3	GND	

Fuser drive assembly

This board supplies voltage to the fuser AC, heater, and main board.

Figure 2-74 Fuser drive board



1	Option Heater
2	Fuser Lamp
3	Fuser drive assembly I/F
4	LVPS (Type 5)
5	Main Switch
6	AC Inlet
7	Option Heater Switch
8	LVPS (Type 4)
9/10	Reactor

Information

	110 V	220 V
Part number	SAM-JC44-00235B	SAM-JC44-00236B
Part name	Fuser Drive Board 110V	Fuser Drive Board 220V

High voltage power supply (HVPS) board

The HVPS generates five high-voltage channels including FUSER, SAW, DEV, AC/DC, THV+/-, and MHV.

Figure 2-75 HVPS PCA

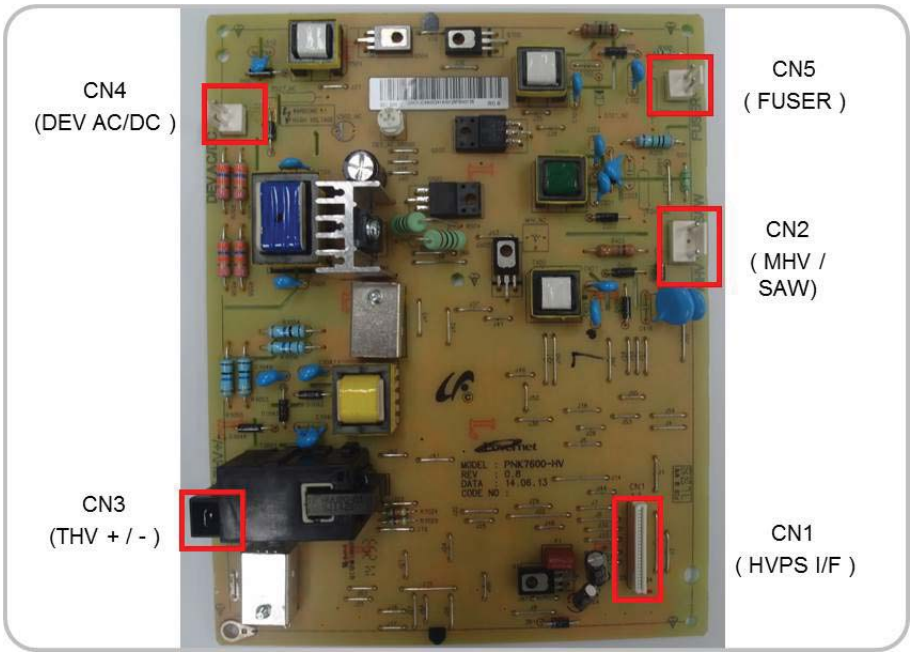


Table 2-39 HVPS PCA Connections

PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	DETECT	
2	24 V	Input voltage
3	24 V	Input voltage
4	ADC_HVPS_24	Signal
5	24 V	Input voltage
6	GND	GND
7	GND	GND
8	3.3 V	Input voltage
9	GND	GND
10	OPEN	
11	READ_THV+_CV	Output voltage
12	PWM_THV+_CV	PWM signal
13	PWM_MHV	PWM signal
14	THV+_CV_SELECT	Input voltage
15	PWM_SAW	PWM signal
16	READ_THV	Output voltage
17	PWM_THV-	PWM signal
18	nEN_DEVE	nEN signal
19	PWM_FUSER_BIAS	PWM signal

Table 2-39 HVPS PCA Connections (continued)

PIN assign	PIN name	Description
20	PWM_DEV_DC	PWM signal
21	PWM_THV+_CC	PWM signal
22	PWM_DEV_Vpp	PWM signal
23	PWM_DEV_AC	PWM signal
24	DETECT	
	Connections	
CN2	MHV/SAW	Output voltage
CN3	THV +/-	Output voltage
CN4	DEV AC/DC	Output voltage
CN5	FUSER	Output voltage

Specification

- Input voltage: DC 24 V, 3.3 V
- Output voltage:
  - MHV: –1387 V
  - DEV DC: –603 V, AC: Vpp 960 V
  - THV+(CC/CV): 25.6 uA/2045 V, THV-: –1295 V
  - SAW: –990 V
  - FUSER: 400 V

Information

- Part number: SAM-JC44-00241A
- Part name: HVPS

Eraser PCA

The eraser PCA has one LED. The LED is used for erasing the negative charges on the surface of the drum after printing.

Figure 2-76 Eraser PCA

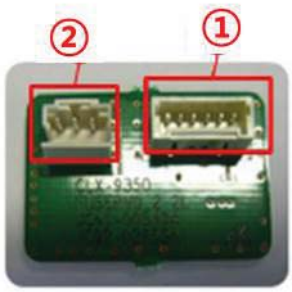
Information

- Part number:
- Part name: PCA-ERASER

Fuser PCA

The Fuser PCA includes a CRU memory for Fuser Unit Life Cycle counting. The Fuser PCA provides a connection interface for the pressure sensor.

Figure 2-77 Fuser PCA



1	Fuser EEPROM, Pressure Sensor I/F
2	Pressure Sensor (Not used)

Information

- Part number:
- Part name: PBA-FUSER

Waste Sensor PCA

The waste sensor PCA detects the waste toner level inside the toner collection unit.

Figure 2-78 Waste sensor PCA

Information

- Part number:
- Part name: WASTE SENSOR RX

Paper Size sensor PCA

The paper size sensor PCA is used for detecting the size of the paper in the tray.

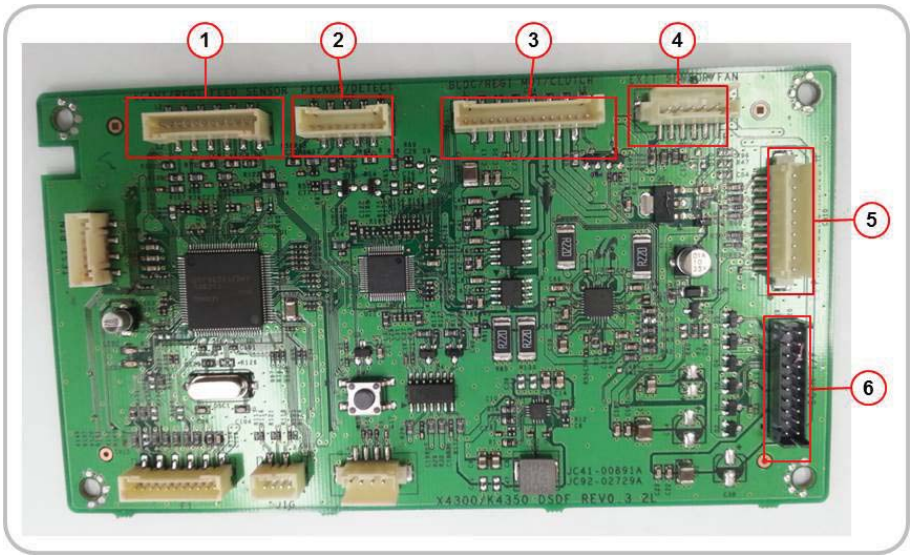
Figure 2-79 Paper size sensor PCA

Flow ADF PCA

The flow ADF-PCA uses the R5F562TAEDFP (100 MHz Main Clock) for controlling the flow ADF unit and interfaces with the main board through UART.

The flow ADF-PCA has three motor driver ICs to control the BLDC/step motor and controls one BLDC motor, two step motors, one clutch, one fan, and 11 sensors.

Figure 2-80 Flow ADF PCA



1	Scan Position 1/2, Registration, Feed Sensor
2	Pickup, Paper Detect, Cover Open Sensor
3	BLDC Motor, Registration Motor, Pickup Clutch
4	Output Sensor, Fan
5	Paper Length 1/2, Width Sensor
6	Scan Joint PCA

Information

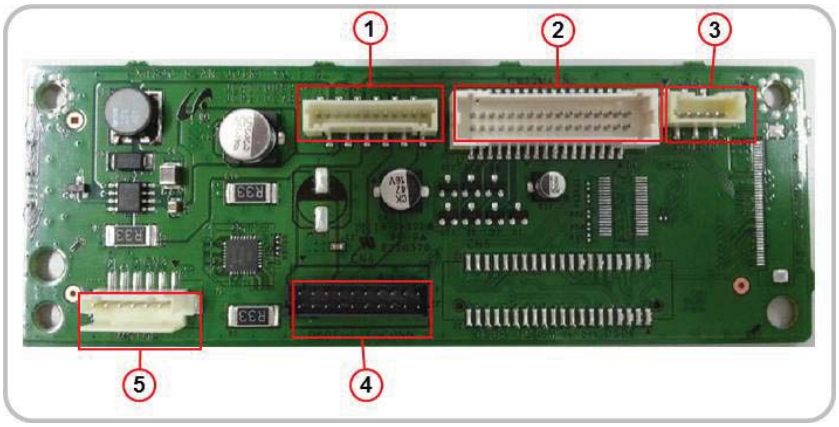
- Part number: SAM-JC92-02964A
- Part name: Flow ADF-PCA
- Part number: SAM-JC92-02964B
- Part name: Flow ADF-PCA (sGX)

Scan joint PCA

The scan joint PCA has a Bipolar Step Motor driving IC and interfaces with the WLED, APS sensor (1, 2), cover open sensor (1, 2), home position sensor, and main board.

The scan joint PCA also functions as the relay board to interface with the ADF I/F and power board.

Figure 2-81 Scan joint PCA



1	WLED IF PCA
2	MAIN PCA
3	Cover Open 2, Home Sensor
4	ADF/flow ADF PCA
5	Image Scanner Motor

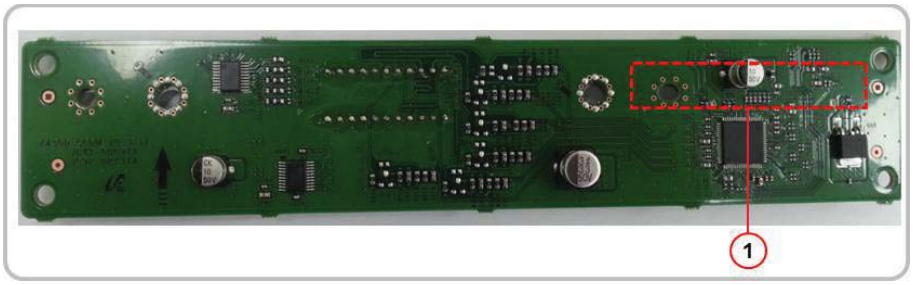
Information

- Part number: SAM-JC92-02781A
- Part name: PCA-SCAN JOINT

CCDM PCA

The CCDM PCA is used in the scanner unit and converts the reflected light from an original document to electrical signals. The reflected light from an original document is converted to three-color analog signals: red, green, and blue. The ADC converts each analog signal to digital. For a high speed data transmission, the digital data signal is converted to a LVDS format with serialization. The CCDM PCA includes the CCD, ADC, Logic IC, and so on.

Figure 2-82 CCDM PCA



1	MAIN PCA

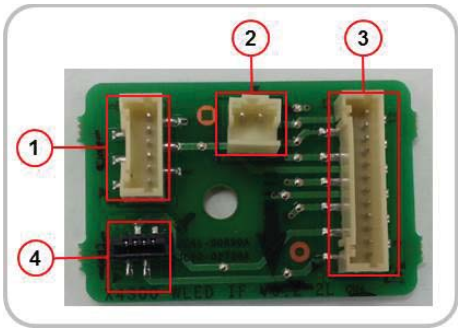
Information

- Part number:
- Part name: PBA-CCDM

WLED IF PCA

The WLED IF PCA interfaces with the WLED and sensors inside the Image Scanner unit.

Figure 2-83 WLED IF PCA



1	APS1, APS2 Sensor
2	Cover Open1 Sensor
3	SCAN JOINT PCA
4	WLED PCA

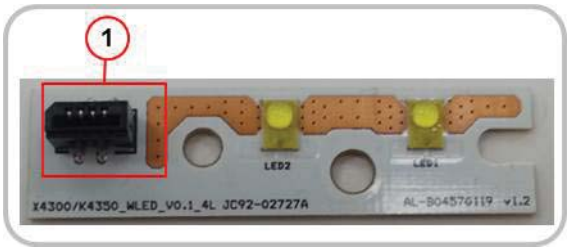
Information

- Part number:
- Part name: PBA-WLED IF

WLED PCA

The WLED PCA consists of two WLEDs used as scanner light.

Figure 2-84 WLED PCA



1	WLED PCA

Information

- Part number:
- Part name: PBA-WLED

Dual cassette feeder (DCF)

Paper feeding system (rollers and functions)

Figure 2-85 Paper feeding system

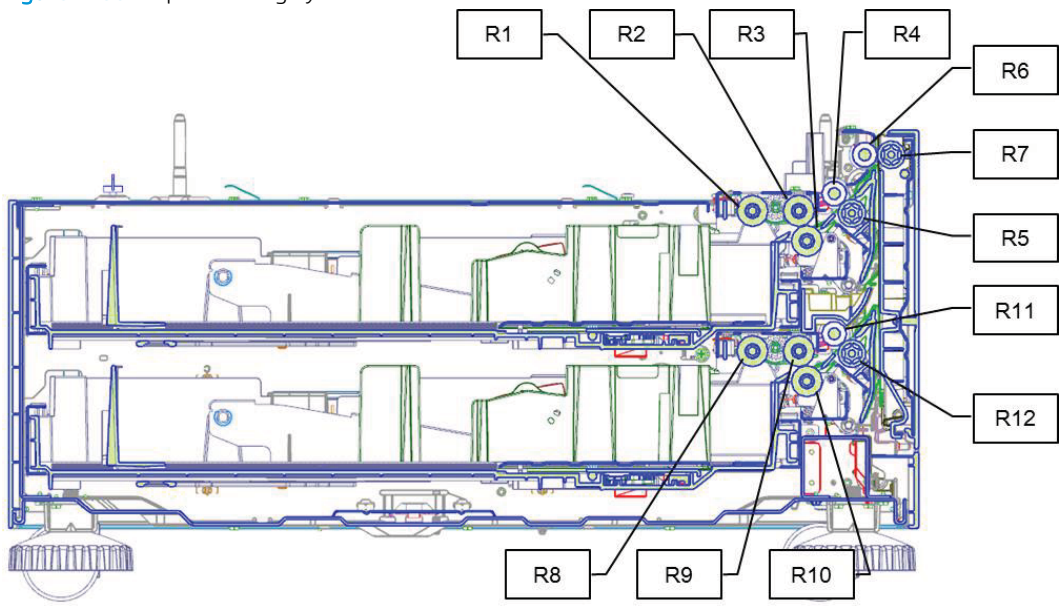


Table 2-46 DCF paper feeding system

Tray number	Roller number	Roller name	Function
4	R1	Pickup roller	Transports paper from the paper stack.
4	R2	Feed roller	Transports one sheet of paper to the prefeed roller.
4	R3	Reverse (separation) roller	Makes sure paper is moved one at a time.
4	R4	Prefeed roller	Transports paper to the feed roller.
4	R5	Idle roller	Makes paper transportation smooth.
4/5	R6	Feed roller	Transports one sheet of paper to the basic machine.
4/5	R7	Idle roller	Makes paper transportation smooth.
5	R8	Pickup roller	Transports paper from the paper stack.
5	R9	Feed roller	Transports one sheet of paper to the prefeed roller.
5	R10	Reverse (separation) roller	Makes sure paper is moved one at a time.
5	R11	Prefeed roller	Transports paper to the feed roller.
5	R12	Idle roller	Makes paper transportation smooth.

Paper path

Figure 2-86 Paper path

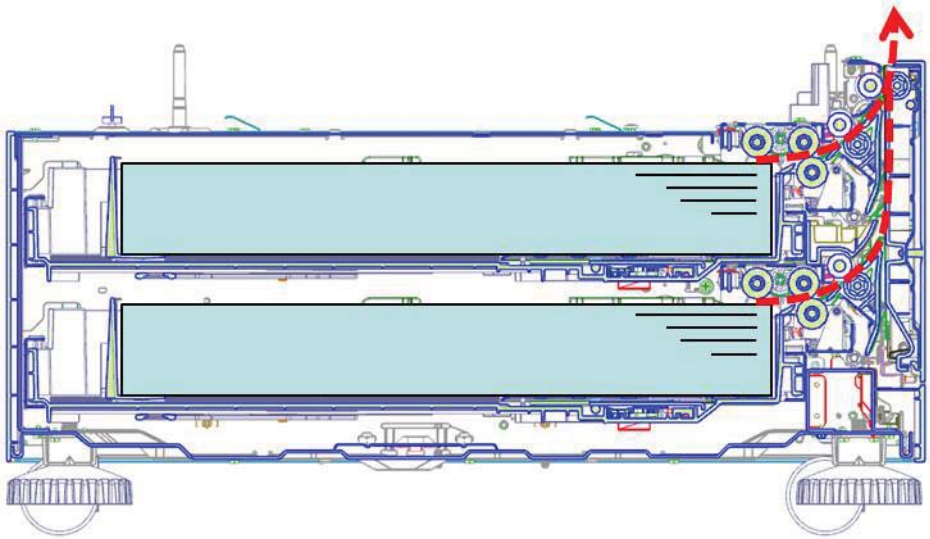


Figure 2-87 Electric parts locations, descriptions, and functions

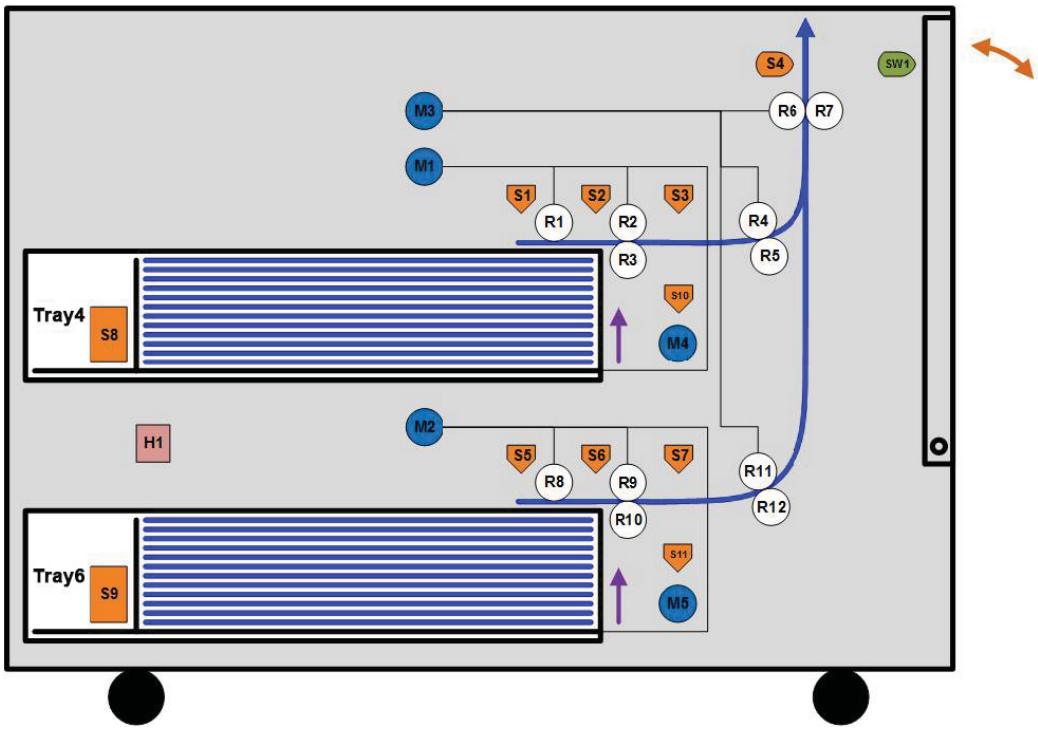


Table 2-47 DCF electric parts locations, descriptions, and functions

Tray number	Callouts	Description	Function
4	S1	Pickup no paper sensor	Detects paper empty in Tray 3.
4	S2	Pickup level sensor	Detects upper limit of lifting-up of Tray 3.
4	S3	Prefeed sensor	Detects paper between R2-R3 and R4-5.
4/5	S4	Path sensor	Detects paper passing through R6-R7.
5	S5	Pickup no paper sensor	Detects paper empty in Tray 4.
5	S6	Pickup level sensor	Detects upper limit of lifting-up of Tray 4.
5	S7	Prefeed sensor	Detects paper between R9-R10 and R11-12.
4	S8	Paper size sensor	Detects tray insertion and paper size in Tray 3.
5	S9	Paper size sensor	Detects tray insertion and paper size in Tray 4.
4/5	SW1	Side door open switch	Detects opening of right cover.
4	M1	Tray 3 pickup motor	
5	M2	Tray 4 pickup motor	
4/5	M3	Tray feed motor	

PCA connection

Figure 2-88 PCA connection and DCF

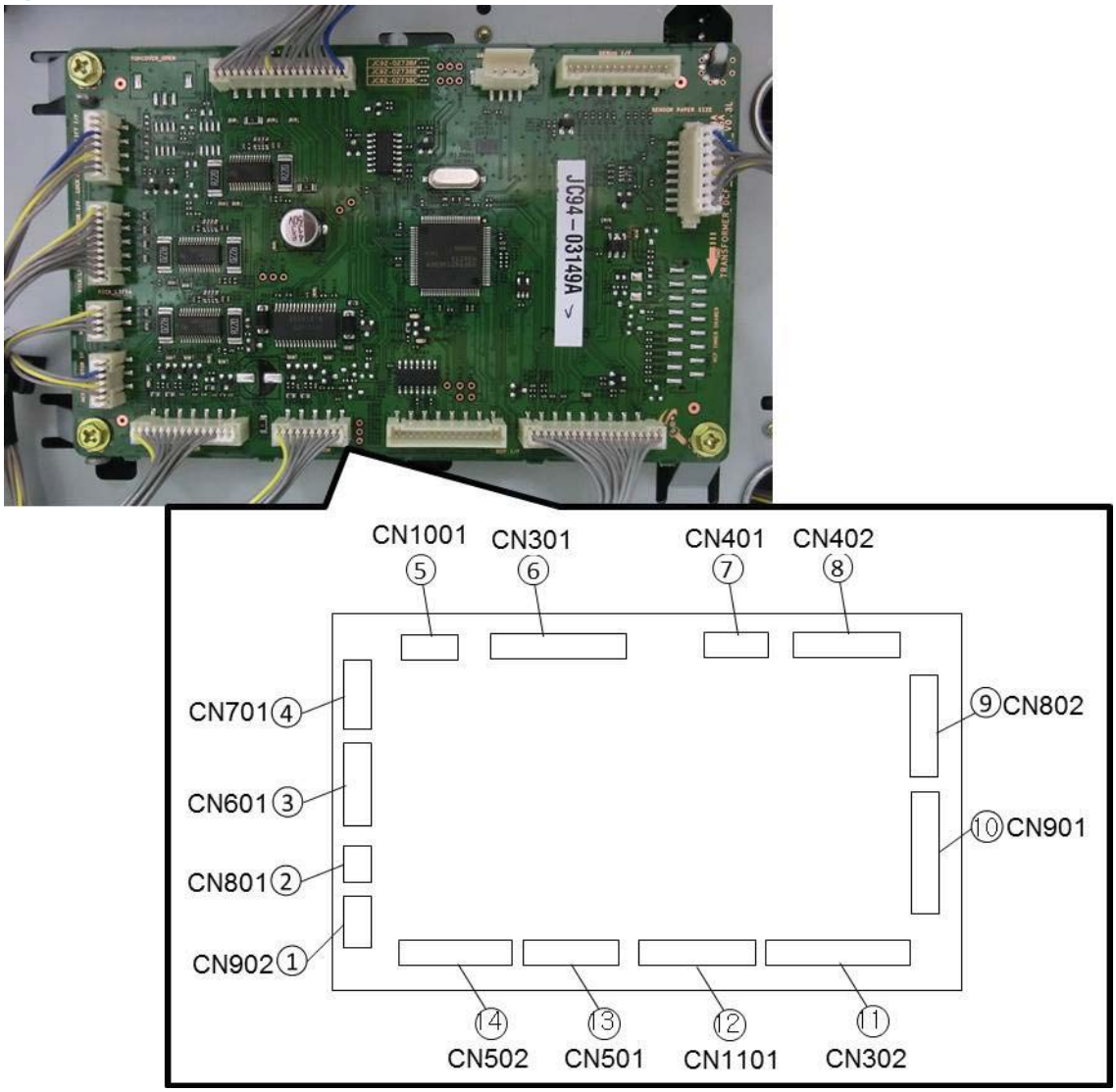


Table 2-48 DCF PCA connection

Connector number	Item number	Connection
CN902	1	DC MOTOR I/F
CN801	2	PICK/LIFT4 MOTOR I/F
CN601	3	PICK/LIFT3 & FEED MOTOR I/F
CN701	4	LOCKMOT/MOT LIFT/LCT HOME I/F
CN1001	5	TOPCOVER/OPEN INTERLOCK
CN301	6	MAIN I/F
CN401	7	UART DEBUG I/F
CN402	8	E1 JTAG DEBUG I/F
CN802	9	SENSOR PAPER SIZE
CN901	10	HCI INNER DRAWER
CN302	11	SUB I/F
CN1101	12	BBP I/F
CN501	13	T4 SENSOR

High capacity input tray (HCI)

Paper feeding system (rollers and functions)

Figure 2-89 Paper feeding system

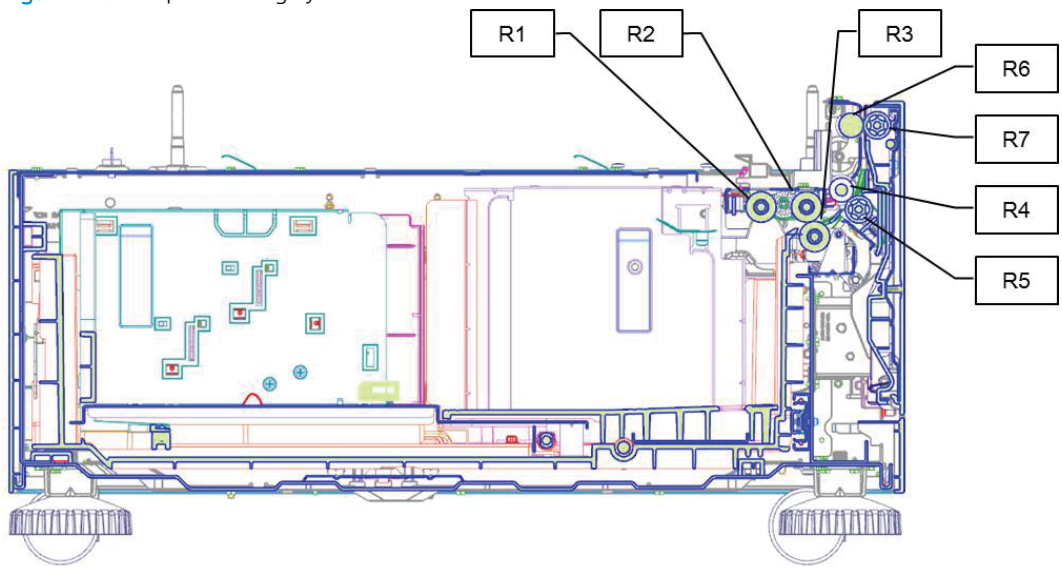


Table 2-49 HCI paper feeding system

Tray number	Roller number	Roller name	Function
4	R1	Pickup roller	Transports paper from the paper stack.
4	R2	Feed roller	Transports one sheet of paper to the prefeed roller.
4	R3	Reverse (separation) roller	Makes sure paper is moved one at a time.
4	R4	Prefeed roller	Transports paper to the feed roller.
4	R5	Idle roller	Makes paper transportation smooth.
4	R6	Feed roller	Transports one sheet of paper to the basic machine.
4	R7	Idle roller	Makes paper transportation smooth.

Paper path

Figure 2-90 HCI paper path

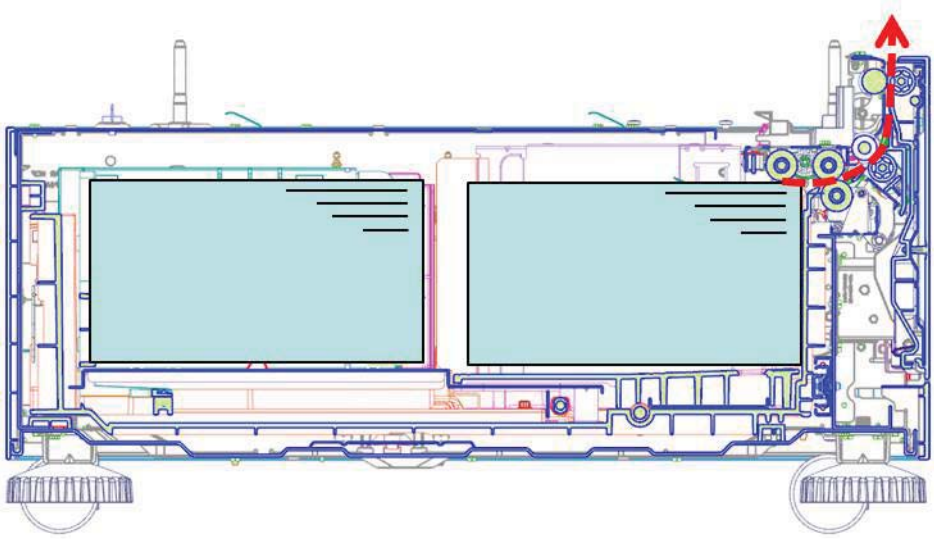


Figure 2-91 Electric parts locations, descriptions, and functions

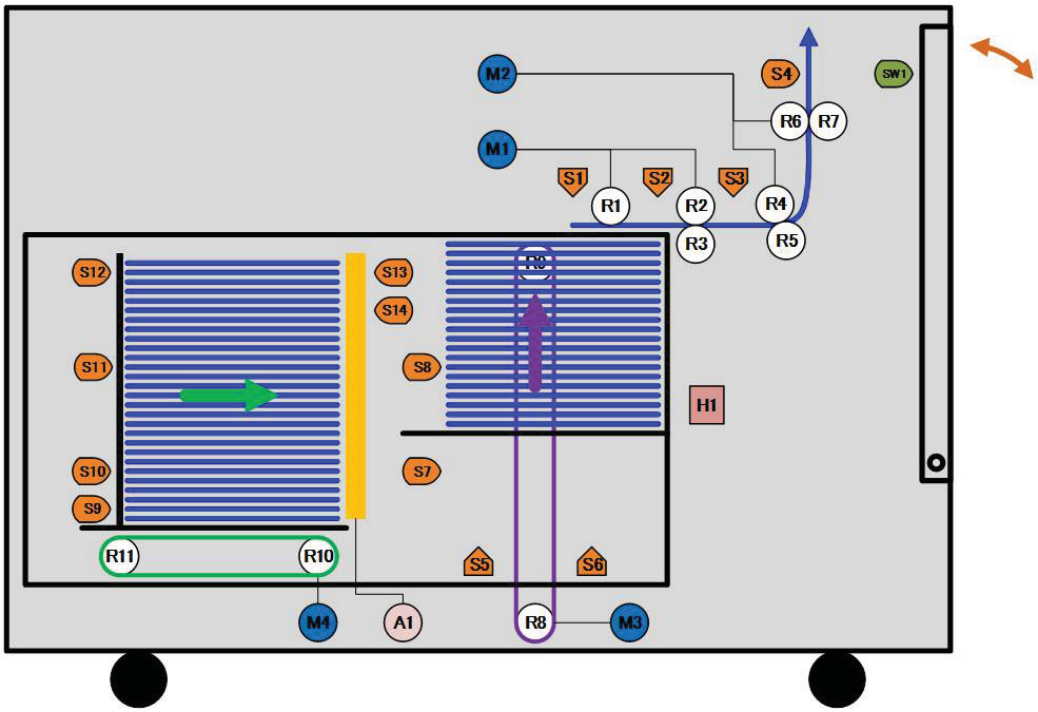


Table 2-50 HCI electric parts locations, descriptions, and functions

Tray number	Callouts	Description	Function
3/4	S1	Pickup no paper sensor	Detects paper empty in main tray.
3/4	S2	Pickup level sensor	Detects upper limit of lifting up of main tray.
3/4	S3	Prefeed sensor	Detects paper between R2-R3 and R4-5.
3/4	S4	Path sensor	Detects paper passing through R6-R7.
3/4	S5	Tray insertion sensor	Detects tray insertion.
3/4	S6	Knockup home sensor	Detects home position of knock-plate.
3/4	S7	Main tray level sensor 1	Detects paper residual paper quantity in main tray.
3/4	S8	Main tray level sensor 2	Detects paper residual paper quantity in main tray.
3/4	S9	Shift tray no paper sensor	Detects paper empty in sub tray.
3/4	S10	Shift tray level sensor 1	Detects paper residual quantity in sub tray.
3/4	S11	Shift tray level sensor 2	Detects paper residual quantity in sub tray.
3/4	S12	Shift plate home sensor	Detects home position of shift plate.
3/4	S13	Shift plate end sensor	Detects end position of shift plate.
3/4	S14	Solenoid home sensor	Detects home position of solenoid.
3/4	SW1	Side door open switch	Detects opening of solenoid.
3	M1	Tray pickup motor	
3	M2	Tray feed motor	
3	M3	Tray lift up motor	
3	M4	Paper shift motor	

PCA connection

Figure 2-92 HCI PCA connection

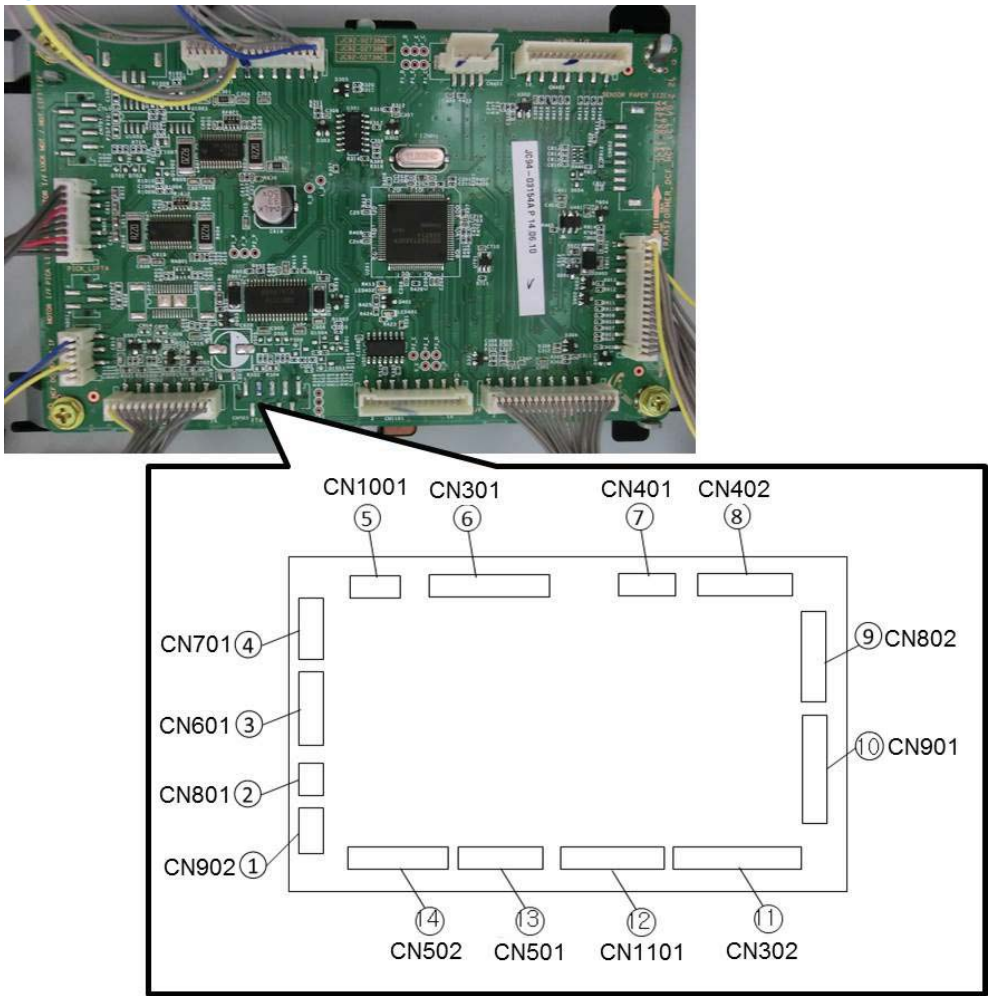


Table 2-51 HCI PCA connection

Connector number	Item number	Connection
CN902	1	DC MOTOR I/F
CN601	3	PICK/LIFT3 & FEED MOTOR I/F
CN301	6	MAIN I/F
CN401	7	UART DEBUG I/F
CN402	8	E1 JTAG DEBUG I/F
CN901	10	HCI INNER DRAWER
CN302	11	SUB I/F
CN1101	12	BBP I/F
CN502	14	T3 SENSOR

Side high capacity input tray (sHCI)

Paper feeding system (rollers and functions)

Figure 2-93 Paper feeding system

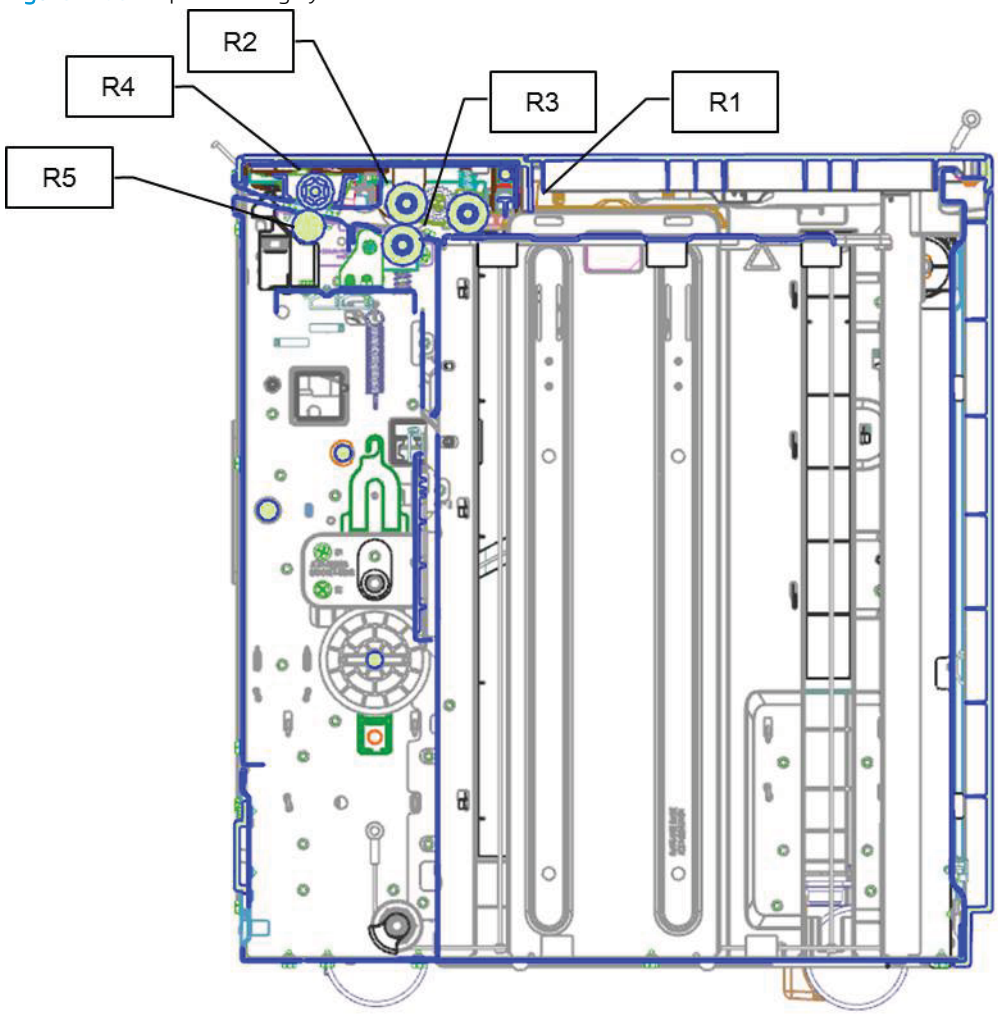


Table 2-52 sHCI paper feeding system

Roller number	Roller name	Function
R1	Pickup roller	Transports paper from the paper stack.
R2	Feed roller	Transports one sheet of paper to the prefeed roller.
R3	Reverse (separation) roller	Makes sure paper is moved one at a time.
R4	Idle roller	Transports paper to the feed roller.
R5	Feed roller	Makes paper transportation smooth.

Paper path

Figure 2-94 sHCI paper path

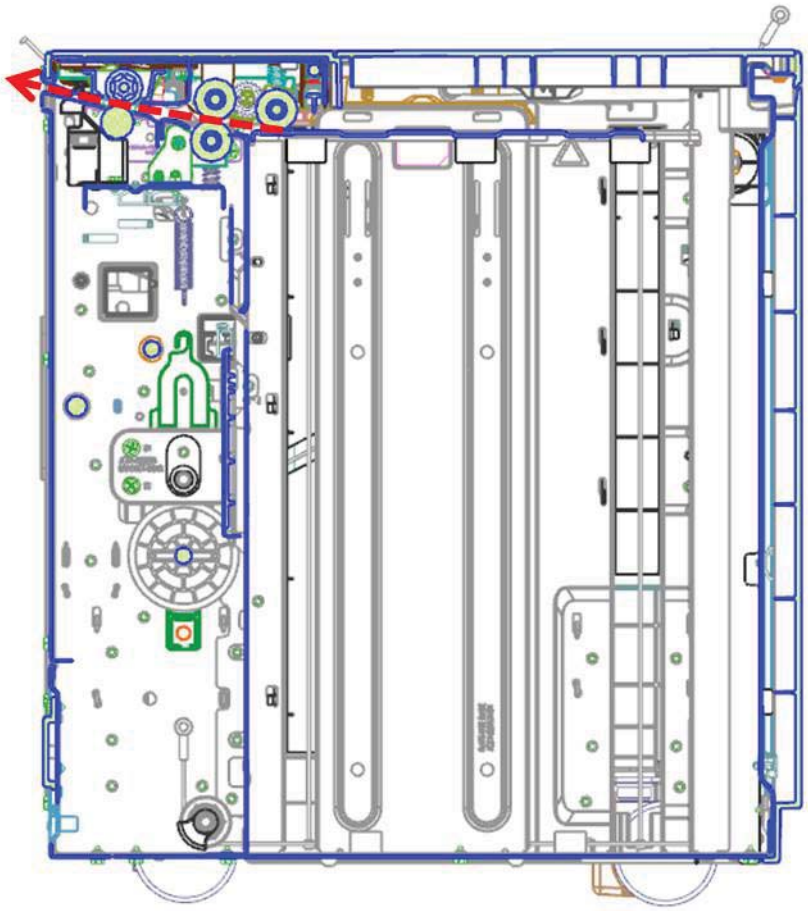


Figure 2-95 sHCI electric parts locations, descriptions, and functions

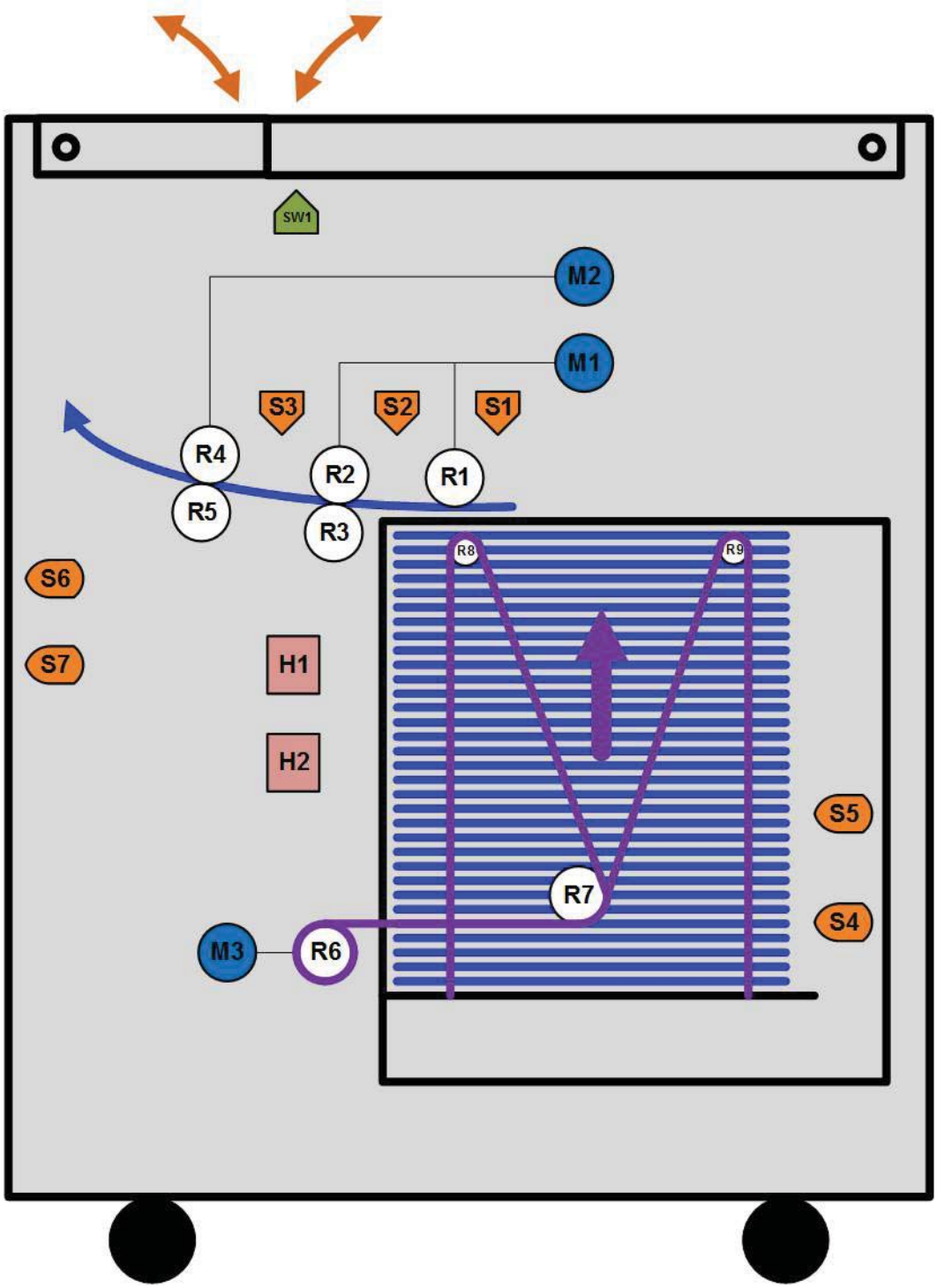


Table 2-53 sHCI electric parts locations, descriptions, and functions

Callouts	Description	Function
S1	Pickup no paper sensor	Detects paper empty in tray.
S2	Pickup level sensor	Detects upper limit of lifting up of main tray.
S3	Prefeed sensor	Detects paper between R2-R3 and R4-5.
S4	Paper level sensor 1	Detects paper residual paper quantity in tray.
S5	Paper level sensor 2	Detects paper residual paper quantity in tray.
S6	Install sensor 1	Detects installation of SL-sHCI501S to the basic

PCA connection

Figure 2-96 sHCI PCA connection

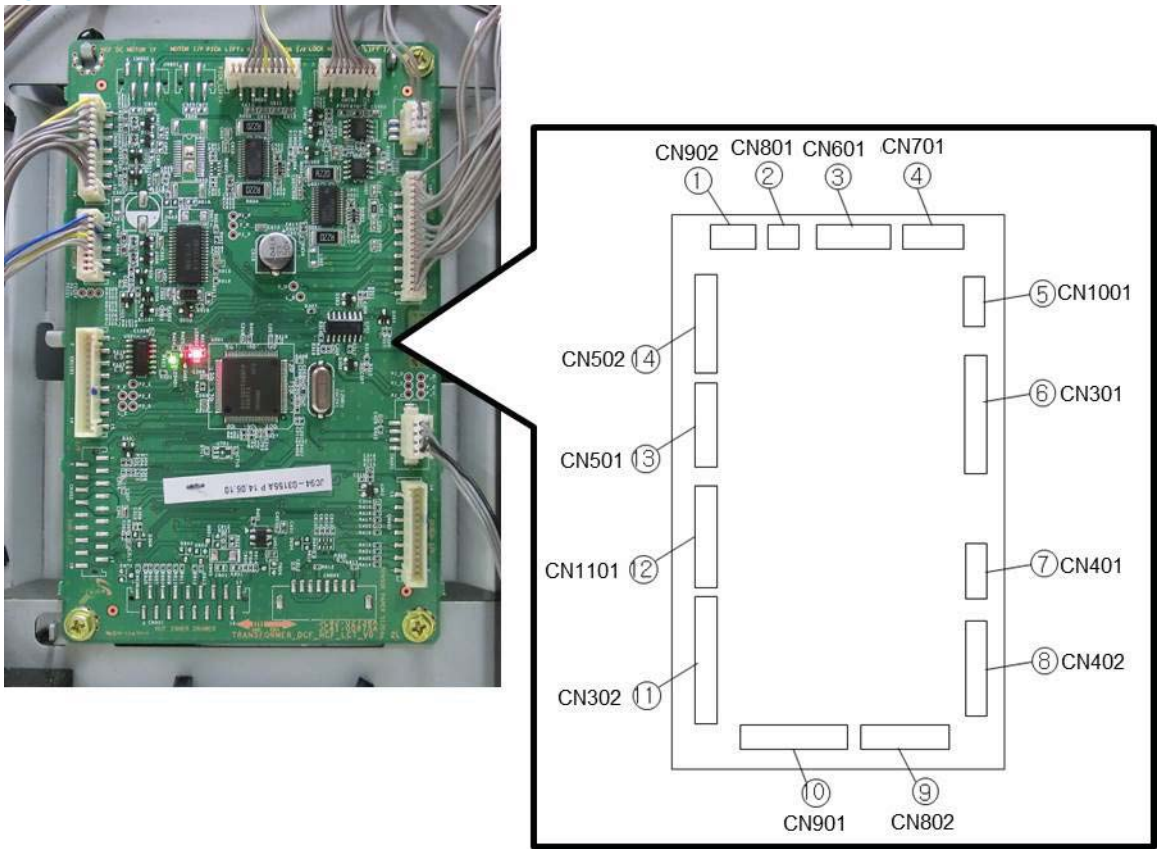


Table 2-54 sHCI PCA connection

Connector number	Item number	Connection
CN601	3	PICK/LIFT3 & FEED MOTOR I/F
CN701	4	LOCKMOT/MOT LIFT/sHCI HOME I/F
CN1001	5	TOPCOVER/OPEN INTERLOCK
CN301	6	MAIN I/F
CN401	7	UART DEBUG I/F
CN402	8	E1 JTAG DEBUG I/F
CN1101	12	BBP I/F
CN501	13	T4 SENSOR
CN502	14	T3 SENSOR

3 Removal and replacement

- For additional service and support
- Service approach
  - Precautions when replacing parts
  - Before performing service
  - After performing service
  - Post-service test
- Maintenance
  - Machine cleaning for maintenance
- Removal and replacement procedures
  - Accessories
  - Replacement of maintenance parts
- Formatter cover
  - Introduction
  - Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
  - Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly
- Accelerator board
  - Introduction
  - Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
  - Step 2: Remove the accelerator board
  - Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly
- Island of data (IOD)
  - Introduction
  - Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
  - Step 2: Remove the island of data (IOD)

  - Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly
- Formatter hard disk drive (HDD)
  - Introduction
  - Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
  - Step 2: Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)
  - Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly
- Formatter
  - Introduction
  - Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
  - Step 2: Remove the accelerator board
  - Step 3: Remove the hard-disk drive
  - Step 4: Remove the formatter PCA
  - Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly
- Control panel
  - Introduction
  - Step 1: Remove the control-panel bezel
  - Step 2: Remove the control-panel
  - Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly
- Keyboard (z bundles)
  - Introduction
  - Step 1: Remove the control-panel bezel
  - Step 2: Remove the control-panel
  - Step 3: Remove the keyboard
  - Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly
- Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU)
  - Introduction
  - Step 1: Remove the IPTU
  - Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly
- Replacing the main SVC part
  - Front top inner cover
  - Front power cover

- Front power switch
- Output bin
- Top right cover
- Left cover
- Lower rear cover
- Upper rear cover
- Left rear corner cover
- Right rear cover
- Right door
- Paper dust brush
- Front cover
- Inner front cover
- Front cover open sensor
- Low voltage power supply (LVPS) cover
- Laser scanner assembly
- Developer fan
- High voltage power supply (HVPS) board
- Main board
- Toner supply motor
- CRUM connector
- Low voltage power supply (LVPS) fans
- Low voltage power supply (LVPS) board 1
- Low voltage power supply (LVPS) board 2
- Low voltage power supply (LVPS) board 3
- Fuser drive board
- Fuser fan
- Main drive unit
- Inductor unit
- Auto closing unit
- Fuser/output drive unit
- Right door open sensor

- Right door open switch
- Pickup drive unit 1
- Pickup drive unit 2
- Feed/MP drive unit
- Registration drive assembly
- Toner collection unit (TCU) sensors
- Reservoir unit
- Auto size sensor
- Fuser out sensor (on the right door)
- Feed 2 sensor (on the right door)
- Multi-purpose (MP) unit (on the right door)
- Multi-purpose (MP) empty sensor
- Multi-purpose (MP) paper length sensor
- Multi-purpose (MP) solenoid
- Output unit
- Return sensor (on the output unit)
- Duplex 1 sensor (on the output unit)
- Output 1 bin full sensor (on the output unit)
- Output gate solenoid (on the output unit)
- Pickup unit 2
- Pickup lifting and empty sensor (pickup unit 2)
- Prefeed sensor 2 (pickup unit 2)
- Pickup unit 1
- Pickup lifting and empty sensor (pickup unit 1)
- Prefeed sensor 1 (pickup unit 1)
- Internal hard disk drive (HDD)
- Registration assembly
- Registration sensor assembly
- High voltage terminal

- Flow ADF
  - Flow ADF whole unit

  - Flow ADF jam access cover
  - Flow ADF input tray
  - Flow ADF contact image sensor (CIS)
  - Flow ADF front motor
  - Flow ADF rear motors
  - Flow ADF PCA fan
  - Flow ADF contact image sensor (CIS) fan
  - Flow ADF ultrasonic sensor with PCA
  - White backing
- Scanner unit (image scanner unit)
  - Scanner whole unit
  - Scan glass
  - LED lamp module
  - Scanner imaging unit
  - Scan joint board
  - APS sensor
- Dual cassette feeder (DCF)
  - Dual cassette feeder (DCF) right door
  - Dual cassette feeder (DCF) motor
  - Dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup motor
  - Dual cassette feeder (DCF) PCA
  - Dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup units
- Bottom high-capacity input (HCI) tray
  - Bottom HCI tray feed motor
  - Bottom HCI tray pickup motor
  - Bottom HCI tray PCA
  - Bottom HCI tray lift-up motor
  - Bottom HCI tray shaft motor
- Side high capacity input (sHCI)
  - Side HCI rear cover
  - Side HCI feed motor

- Side HCI pickup motor
- Side HCI PCA
- Side HCI lift-up motor

For additional service and support

HP service personnel, go to the Service Access Workbench (SAW) at http://sawpro.glb.itcs.hp.com.

Channel partners, go to HP Channel Services Network (CSN) at www.hp.com/partners/csn .

At these locations, find information on the following topics:

- Install and configure
- Printer specifications
- Up-to-date control panel message (CPMD) troubleshooting
- Solutions for printer issues and emerging issues
- Remove and replace part instructions and videos
- Service advisories
- Warranty and regulatory information

Channel partners, access training materials in the HP University and Partner Learning Center at https://content.ext.hp.com/sites/LMS/HPU.page.

To access HP PartSurfer information from any mobile device, go to http://partsurfermobile.hp.com/ or scan the Quick Response (QR) code below.

Service approach

Precautions when replacing parts

Precautions when assembling and disassembling

- Use only HP approved replacement parts. Make sure that the part number, product name, voltage, and current or temperature ratings are correct. Failure to do so might result in damage to the machine, circuit overload, fire, or electric shock.
- Do not make unauthorized changes or additions to the printer. Unauthorized changes might cause the printer to malfunction and create electric shock or fire hazards.
- Use caution when dismantling the unit. Take note of the location of each screw or other part. This printer contains 19 different screws. Using the wrong screw might lead to system failure, short circuit or electric shock.

- Do not disassemble the laser scanner assembly. Once the laser scanner assembly is disassembled, dust might enter the mirror chamber and will seriously degrade print quality. There are no serviceable parts inside the laser scanner assembly.
- Regularly check the condition of the power cable, plug and socket. Bad contacts might lead to overheating and fire. Damaged cables might lead to electric shock or unit malfunction.

Precautions when handling PCA

Static electricity might damage a PCA. Use approved, anti-static precautions when handling or storing a PCA. Service personnel should use grounded ESD straps and/or mats when handling PCAs.

- Precautions when moving and storing a PCA
  - Keep PCA in a conductive case, anti-static bag, or wrapped in aluminum foil.
  - Do not store a PCA where it is exposed to direct sunlight.
- Precautions when replacing a PCA
  - Disconnect power cables before disconnecting other cables.
  - Do not touch any soldered connections, connector terminals, or other electronic parts when handling insulated parts.
- Precautions when checking a PCA
  - Touch a grounded area of the printer chassis to discharge static electric charge before touching a PCA.
  - Do not touch a PCA with bare hands or metal objects. Doing so might create a short circuit or cause electric shock. Use caution when handling a PCA with moving parts such as sensors, motors, or lamps, as they might become very hot.
  - Use caution when fitting and removing screws. Watch for hidden screens. Make sure that the correct screw is used and make sure that when toothed washers are removed, they are refitted in their original positions.
  - Place the product on an ESD workstation or mat, or use an ESD strap (if one is available). If an ESD workstation, mat, or strap is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis *before* touching an ESD-sensitive part.

Releasing plastic latches

Many of the parts are held in place with plastic latches. The latches can break easily; release them carefully. To remove such parts, press the hook end of the latch away from the part to which it is latched.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- Unplug the power cable and interface cable or cables.
- Remove any finishing devices and the side HCI, if they are installed.
- Place the product on an ESD workstation or mat, or use an ESD strap (if one is available). If an ESD workstation, mat, or strap is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis *before* touching an ESD-sensitive part.
- Remove the toner cartridges, if needed.

After performing service

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post-service test

Perform the following tests to verify that the repair or replacement was successful:

Print-quality test

1. Verify that you have completed the necessary reassembly steps.
2. Make sure that the tray contains clean, unmarked paper.
3. Attach the power cord and interface cable or interface cables, and then turn on the product.
4. Print a configuration page.
5. Print a print quality page, and then verify that there are no lines, streaks, banding, or other print quality defects.
6. Send a print job from the host computer, and then verify that the output meets expectations.

Copy-quality test

1. Place the configuration page in the document feeder, print a copy job, and then verify the results.
2. Place the configuration page on the flatbed glass, print a copy job, and then verify the results

Fax-quality test

1. Place the configuration page in the document feeder.
2. Type a valid fax number, and send the fax job.
3. Verify that the send quality and the receive quality meet expectations.

Parts removal order

For procedures and/or steps that require identifying the right, left, or rear side of the printer, face the front of the printer for correct orientation.

Maintenance

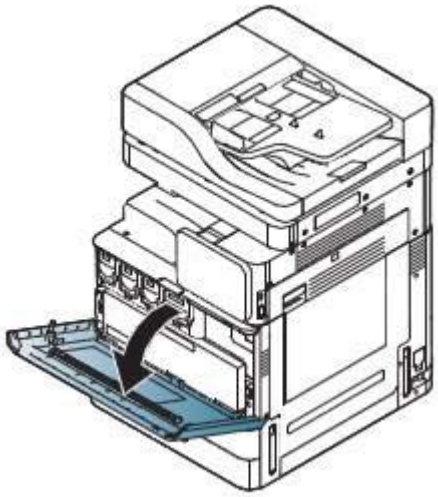
Machine cleaning for maintenance

Cleaning the paper dust stick

The paper dust stick needs to be cleaned after a specified number of pages are printed. A clean the paper dust stick message will appear. This is when the paper dust stick must be cleaned. Use the following procedure to complete this task.

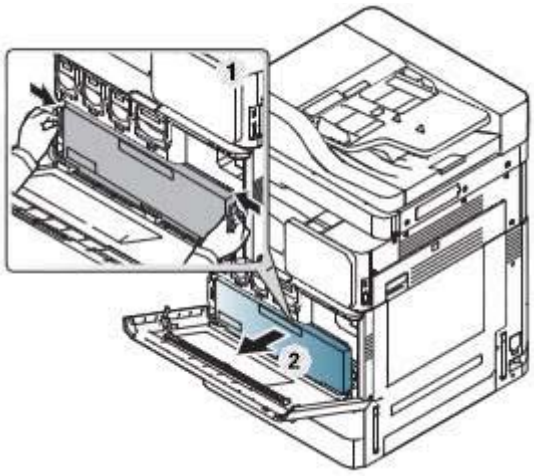
1. Open the front door.

   Figure 3-1 Open the front door

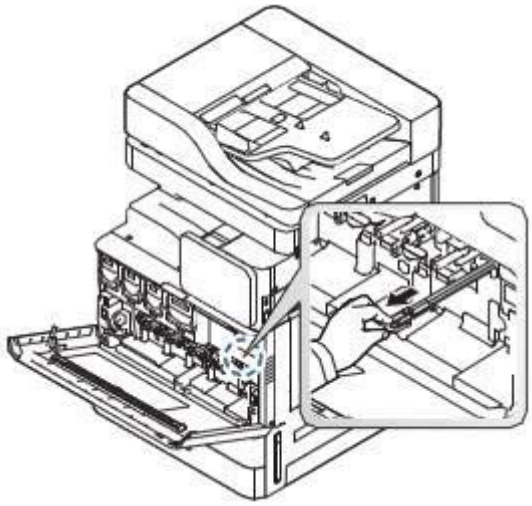
2. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

   Figure 3-2 Remove the TCU

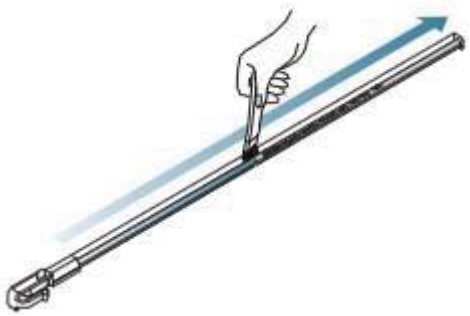
3. Pull out the paper dust stick.

Figure 3-3 Remove paper dust stick



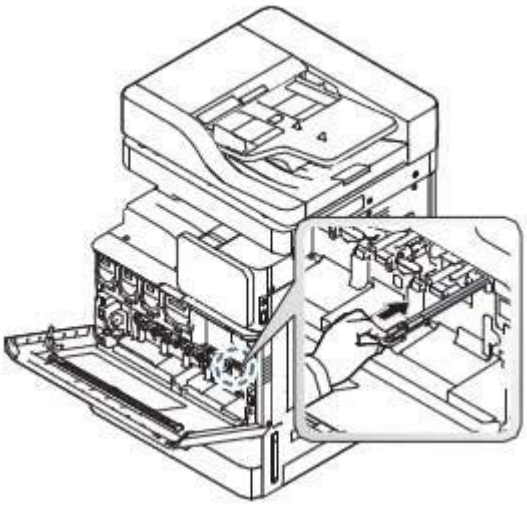
4. Remove the paper dust.

Figure 3-4 Remove the paper dust



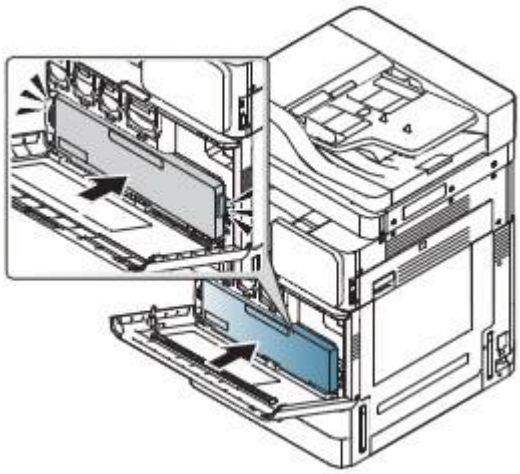
5. Insert the paper dust stick back into the slot.

Figure 3-5 Install the paper dust stick



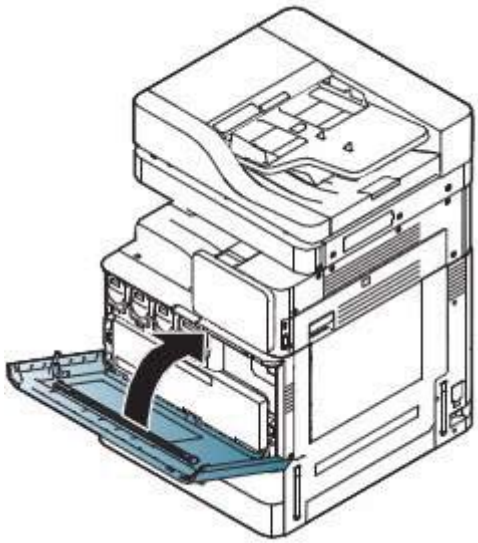
6. Insert the toner collection unit (TCU) until it locks in place on each side.

Figure 3-6 Install the TCU



7. Close the front door. Make sure the cover is securely closed. If the message still appears, repeat Steps 3 and 4.

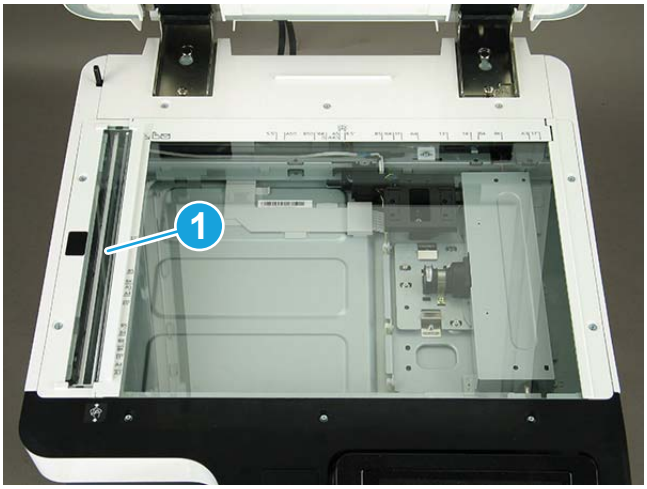
Figure 3-7 Close the front door



Cleaning the scan glass

- Open the flow ADF unit. Clean the scanner glass (callout 1) using a soft, lint-free, clean cloth.

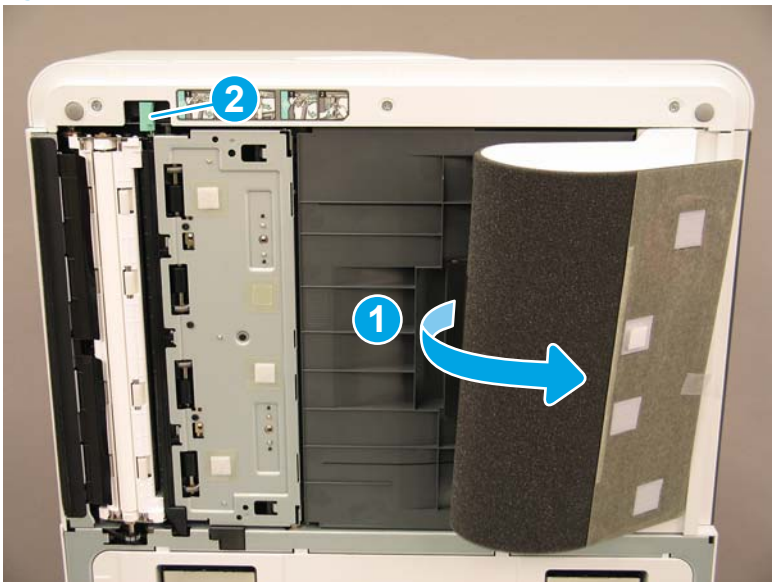
Figure 3-8 Clean the scanner glass



Cleaning the flow ADF white bar and CISCleaning the flow document feeder white bar and CIS

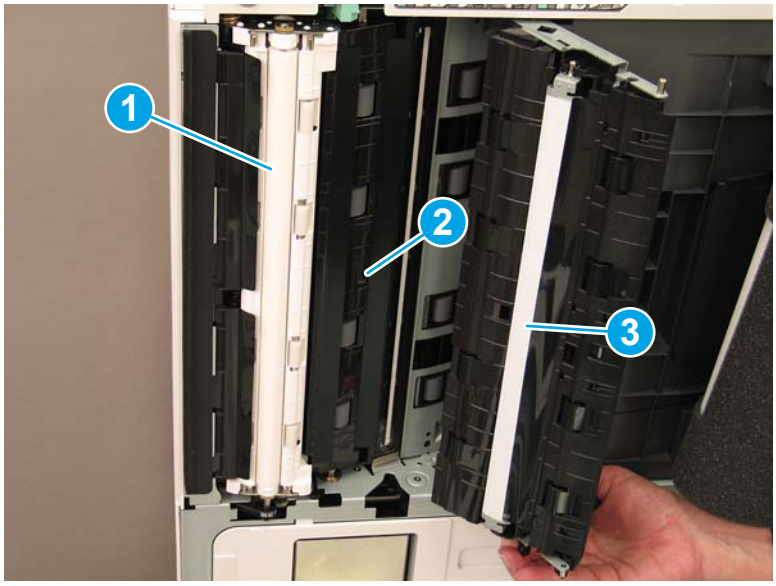
1. Open the ADF unit, peel back the white backing (callout 1), and then release the green tab (callout 2).

Figure 3-9 Peel back the white backing and release one tab



2. Open the access door. Clean the simplex white bar (callout 1), the CIS (callout 2), and the duplex white bar (callout 3) using a soft, lint-free, clean cloth.

Figure 3-10 Clean flow document feeder white bar



Removal and replacement procedures

Accessories

Removal and replacement: Trusted platform module

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the hard-disk drive
- Step 3: Remove the trusted platform module (TPM)
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the trusted platform module (TPM).

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

CAUTION: This part contains components that are electrostatic discharge (ESD) sensitive. To reduce the possibility of ESD damage, always touch the sheet-metal chassis to ground yourself before touching an ESD sensitive part.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to http://h20141.www2.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

TPM kit number	
F5S62-61001	Trusted platform module

Required tools

- No special tools are needed to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

- Make sure that the formatter cover is fully seated, and that the thumbscrews are finger tight after replacing it.
- Connect the printer power cable.

- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

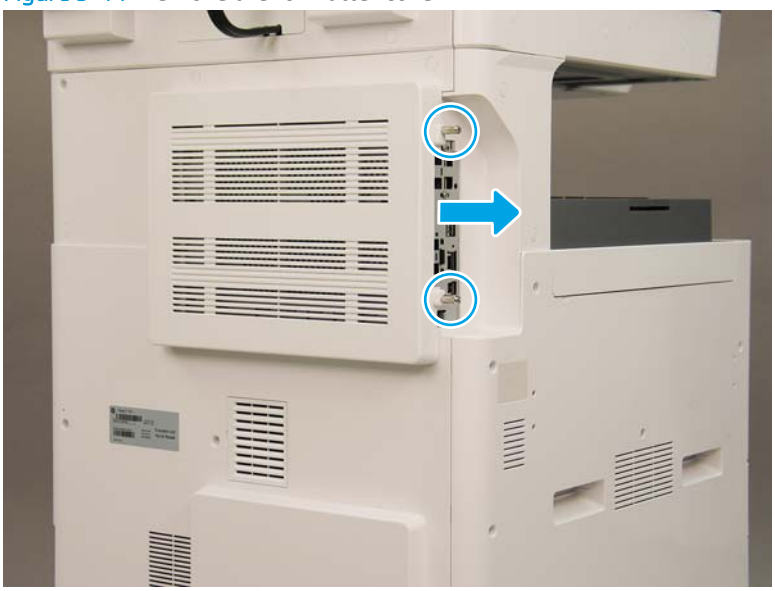
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

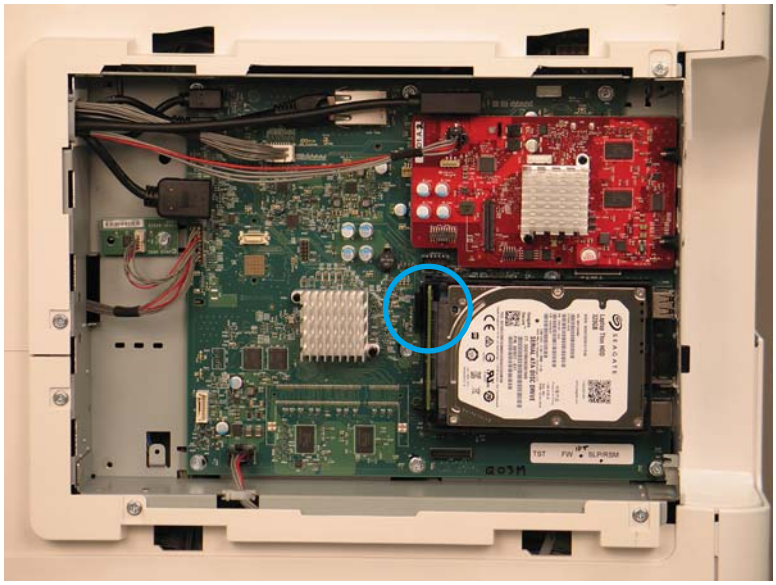
Figure 3-11 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the hard-disk drive

- Release one retainer, and then rotate the HDD away from the formatter to remove it.

IMPORTANT: Do not replace the HDD and the island of data (IOD) at the same time. Replace one component, turn the printer on and off, and then replace the second component.

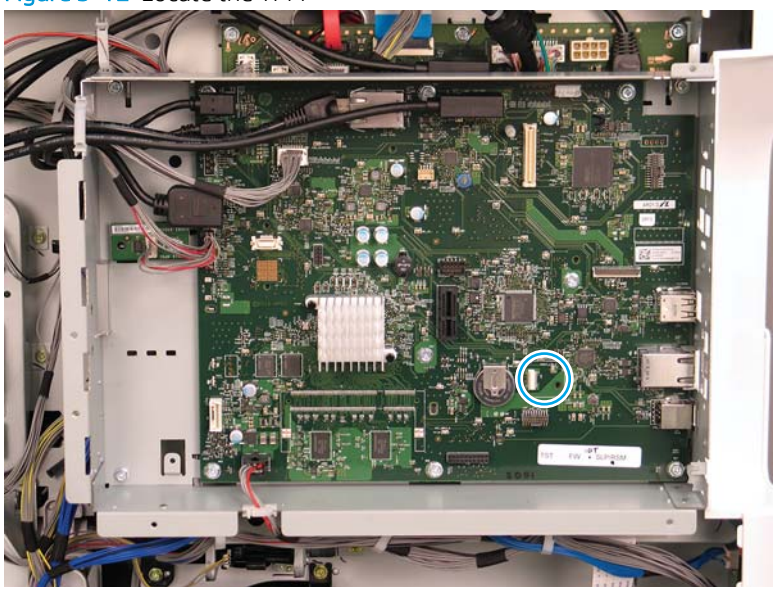


Step 3: Remove the trusted platform module (TPM)

CAUTION: ESD-sensitive part.

1. Locate the TPM component on the formatter.

Figure 3-12 Locate the TPM



2. Gently pull the TPM straight off the formatter to remove it.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Install accessory: HP Foreign interface harness (FIH) solution

- Introduction
- Step 1: Unpack the FIH accessory
- Step 2: Install the FIH accessory

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to install the Foreign Interface Harness (FIH) accessory.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Foreign Interface Harness (FIH) part number	
B5L31-67902	Foreign interface harness

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove this part.

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

Make sure that the printer initializes to a **Ready** state.

Connect a third party solution to the FIH, and then verify it correctly functions.

Step 1: Unpack the FIH accessory

Unpack the accessory from the packaging.

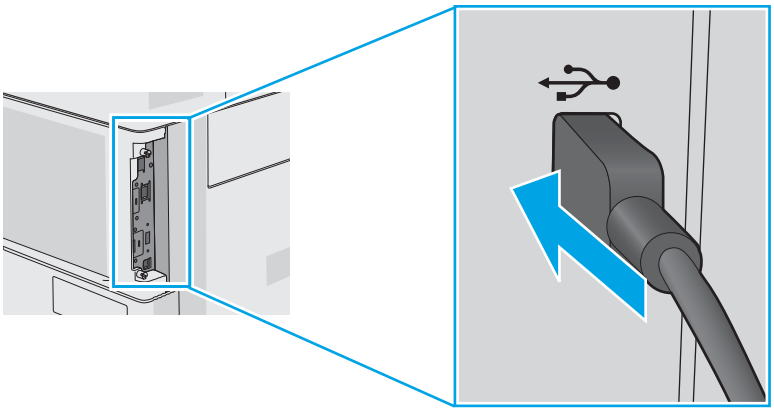
CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

Step 2: Install the FIH accessory

- Locate the USB connector on the printer formatter. Connect the FIH to this connector

Figure 3-13 Connect the FIH



NFC Kit Installation

- Introduction
- Step 1: Unpack the NFC kit
- Step 2: Install the NFC kit

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to install the NFC kit.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

NFC kit part number	
J8030-61001	Jetdirect Wireless Print Server with NFC Kit

Required tools

- Small, flat-blade screwdriver.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

Make sure that the printer initializes to a **Ready** state.

Verify that the light on the NFC accessory illuminates to confirm the installation is correct.

Verify that a wireless network icon appears on the control panel.

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Unpack the NFC kit

Unpack the kit from the packaging.

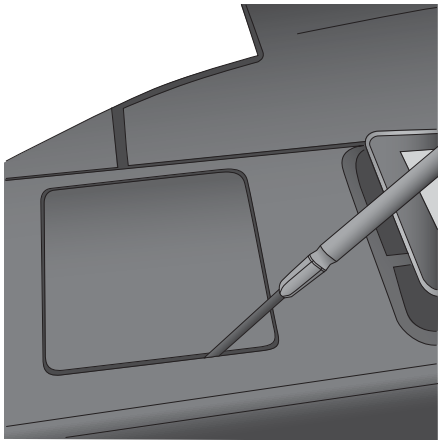
CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the part prior to installation.

Step 2: Install the NFC kit

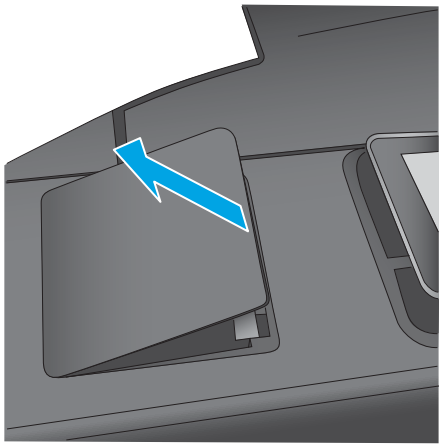
1. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the HIP cover.

   Figure 3-14 Release the HIP cover

2. Remove the HIP cover.

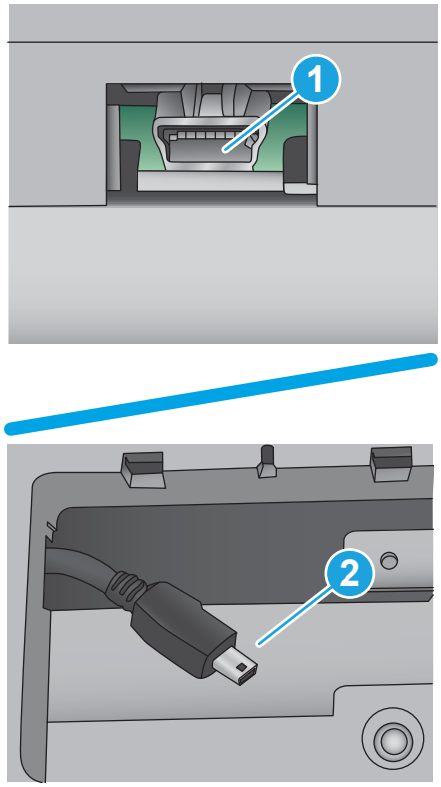
   Figure 3-15 Remove the HIP cover

3. Identify the USB connector in the HIP, and then attach the appropriate USB cable:

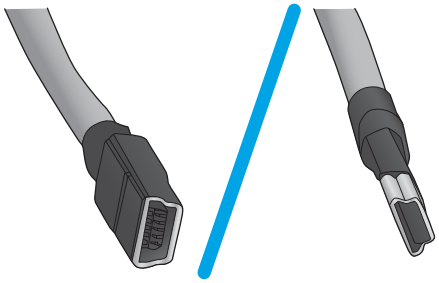
   a. Locate the USB connector that is along one of the short edges. A USB Mini B receptacle (callout 1) is the most common. However, on some models, a USB Mini B plug (callout 2) is used.

Figure 3-16 Identify USB connector



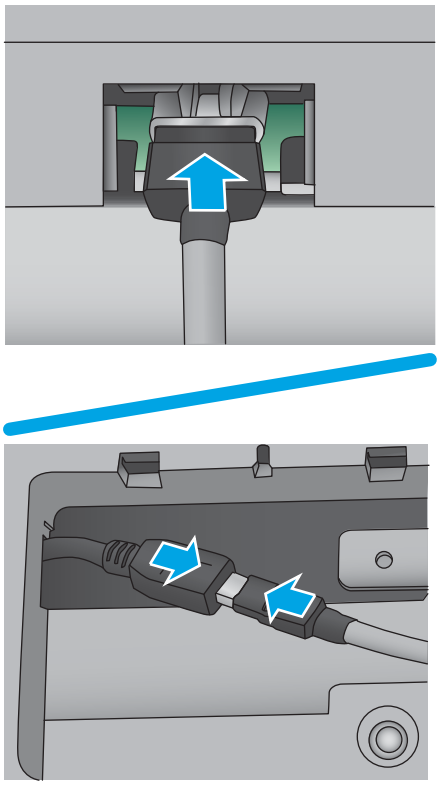
b. Select the appropriate cable from the two that are provided.

Figure 3-17 Select USB cable



c. Install the USB cable in the socket in the HIP. Note that the USB logo on the connector may face down on some models.

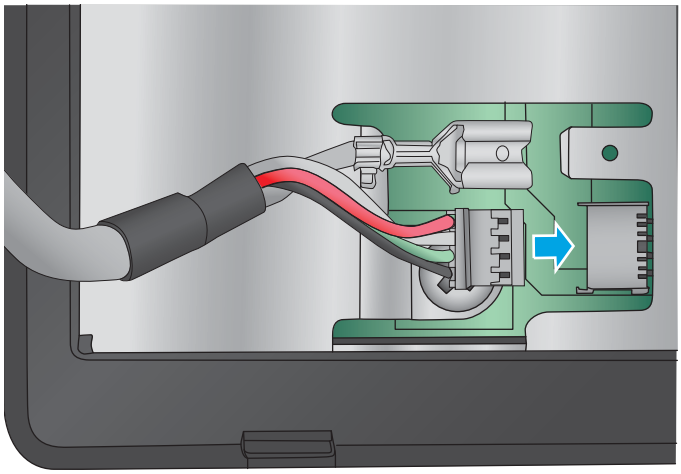
Figure 3-18 Install the USB cable



4. Attach the power and grounding ends of the USB cable:

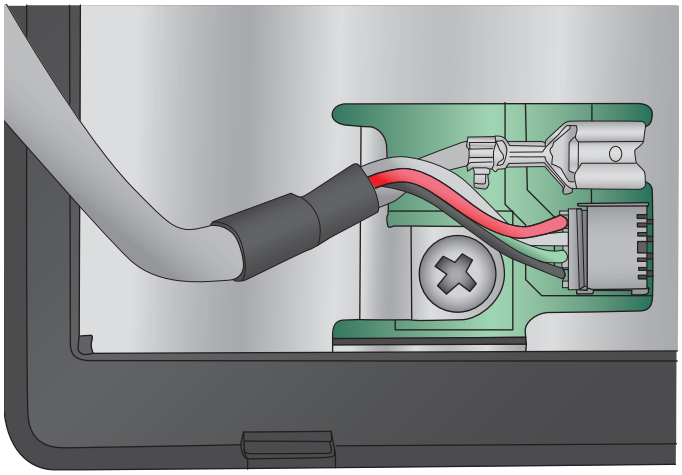
a. Attach the white power connector of the cable into the corresponding receptacle on the NFC accessory.

Figure 3-19 Install the white power connector



b. Attach the metal ground connector of the cable to the grounding tab on the NFC accessory.

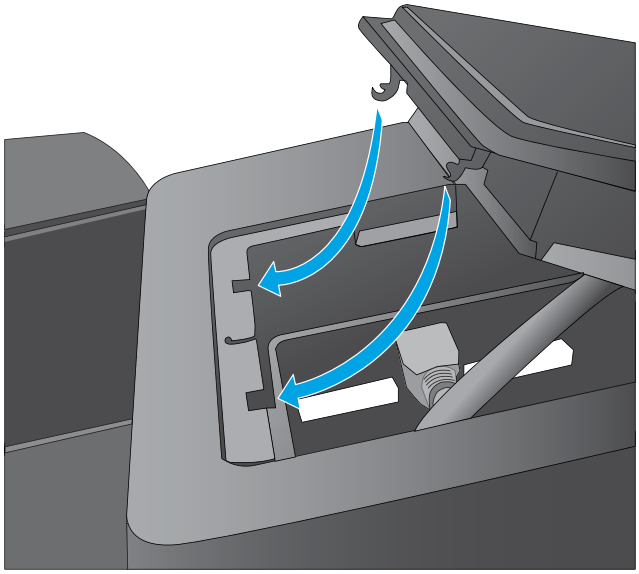
Figure 3-20 Attach the metal ground connector



5. Install the NFC accessory into the HIP recess.

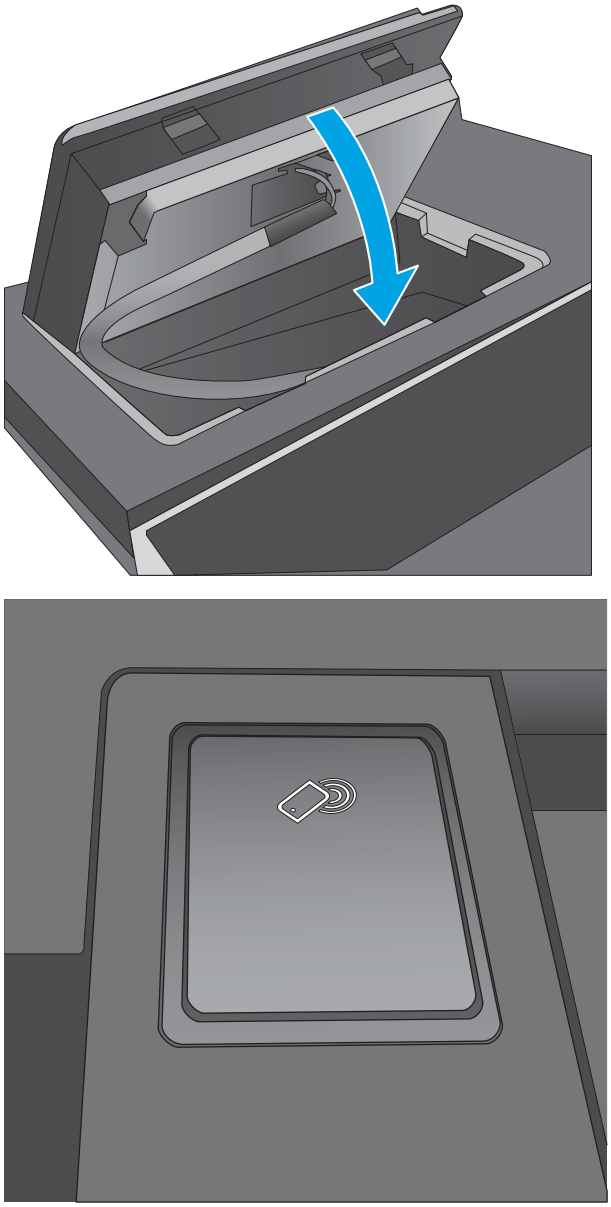
a. Install the hook-shaped clips on the NFC accessory into the HIP recess..

Figure 3-21 Position the NFC accessory in the HIP recess



b. Gently push the NFC accessory onto the rounded clips so that it is held securely in place within the recess.

Figure 3-22 Install the NFC accessory



Replacement of maintenance parts

Toner collection unit (TCU)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the TCU
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the toner collection unit (TCU).

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

TCU part number	
SAM-JC96-11638A	HP Managed LJ Toner Collection Unit

Required tools

- No special tools are needed to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

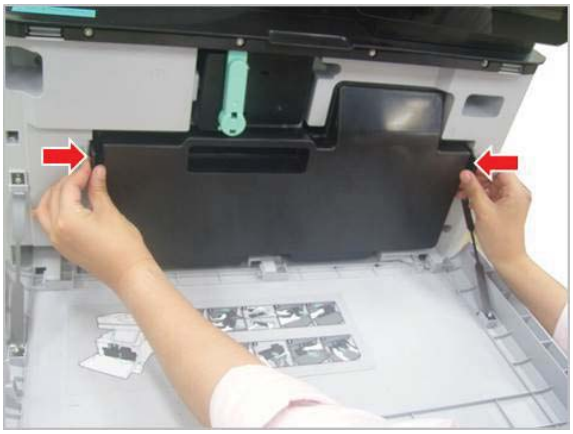
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the TCU

1. Open the front cover.
2. Push both hooks to release the toner collection unit (TCU).

Figure 3-23 Remove the TCU



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Imaging drum unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the imaging drum unit
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the imaging drum unit.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Imaging drum unit part number	
X3A74-67902	HP LaserJet Black Imaging Drum Unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the imaging drum unit

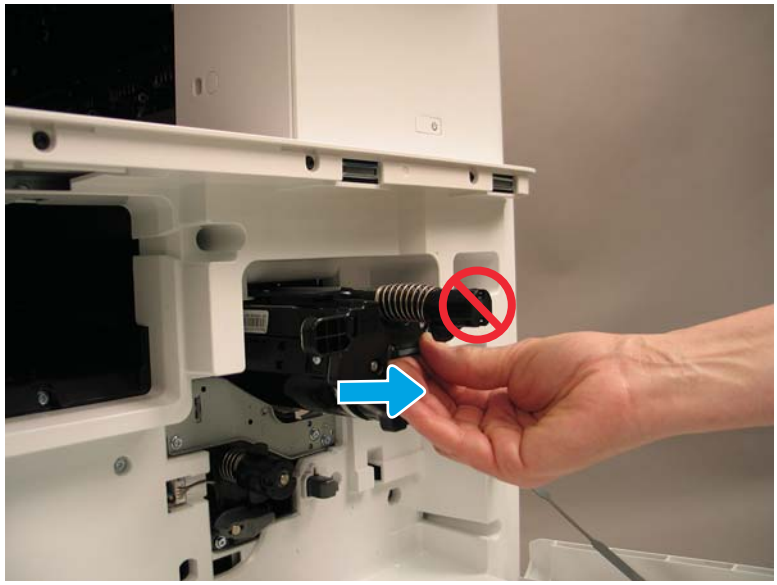
1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).
2. Open the right door.
3. Loosen one screw.

Figure 3-24 Loosen one screw

4. Grip the handle and remove the drum unit.

NOTICE: Do not grip the waste toner connection when removing the drum unit.

Figure 3-25 Remove the drum unit



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Developer unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the developer unit
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the developer unit.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Developer unit part number	
SAM-JC96-11599A	HP LaserJet Black Developer

Required tools

- No special tools are needed to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

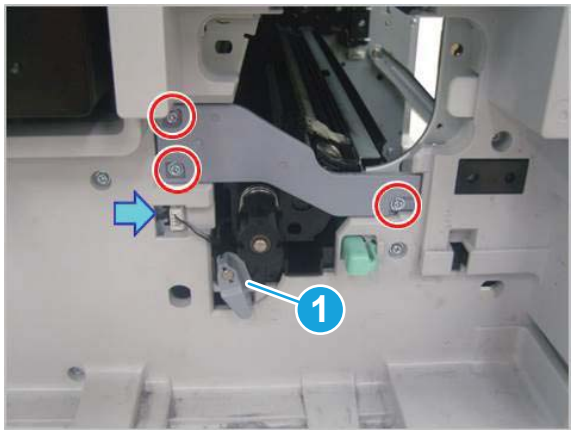
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the developer unit

1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).
2. Remove the imaging drum unit.
3. Move the developer locking lever (callout 1) to the down position. Remove three screws to release the bracket, and then disconnect the small, black cable connector .

Figure 3-26 Remove three screws and disconnect the small, black cable connector

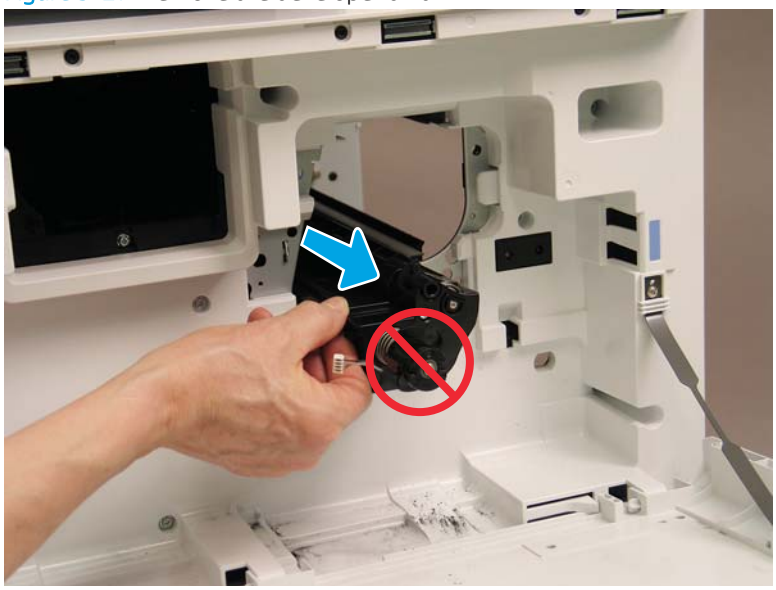


4. Hold the grip point of the developer unit and remove it.

NOTE: Do not grip the waste toner connection when removing the developer unit.

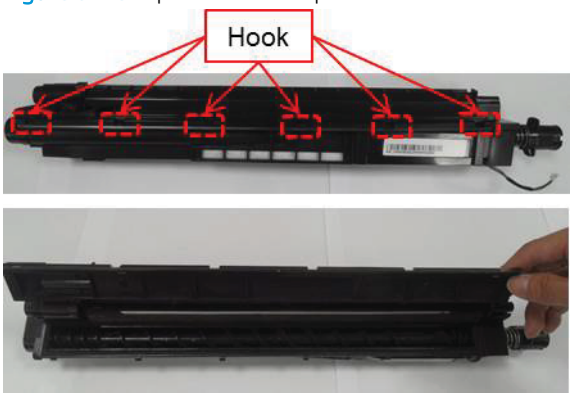
Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling the developer unit, press on the unit just above the waste toner auger, and then slide the unit into the printer.

Figure 3-27 Remove the developer unit



5. Unpack the new developer unit box and check the components. In the box is a developer unit and a silver pack of developer powder.
6. Hold the cover, and then release six hooks. Open the cover.

Figure 3-28 Open the developer unit



NOTE: Before filling the developer, shake the silver pack about three times to prevent the developer powder from scattering.

7. Distribute the developer powder into the developer unit.

NOTE: When filling the developer, intermittently rock and gently shake the developer from side to side to avoid overflow.

Figure 3-29 Distribute the developer powder

8. Reinstall the developer cover.
9. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Developer unit

▲ After the replacement developer unit is installed, follow these instructions to reset the firmware counter:

i. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select the Support Tools menu.

ii. Select the Service menu.

iii. Make sure that Service Access Code is selected in the drop-down menu, and then enter the access code (04082517).

iv. Select the Service Tools menu.

v. Select the Supply Status menu.

vi. Select Field Replacement Unit.

vii. Select Development Unit (Developer) (YMCK).

viii. Select the check box on the right side of the screen for the Black Developer Unit.

ix. Select Reset.

Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Fuser unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the fuser unit
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the fuser unit.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Fuser unit part number	
SAM-JC91-01195A	HP LaserJet 110V Fuser Assembly
SAM-JC91-01194A	HP LaserJet 220V Fuser Assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the fuser unit

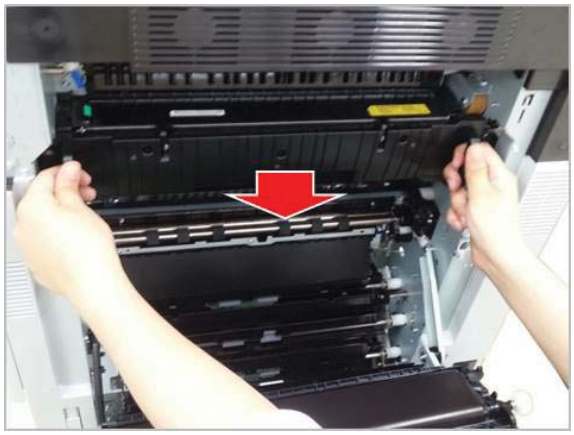
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screws.

Figure 3-30 Fuser unit screw locations

3. Pull out the fuser unit.

⚠ CAUTION: The temperature in the vicinity of the fuser becomes heated. To prevent the potential of getting burned, make sure the fuser unit has cooled before replacing it.

Figure 3-31 Fuser unit removal



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Paper transfer belt (PTB)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the PTB
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the paper transfer belt (PTB).

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

PTB part number	
SAM-JC93-01117A	HP LaserJet Paper Transfer Belt

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

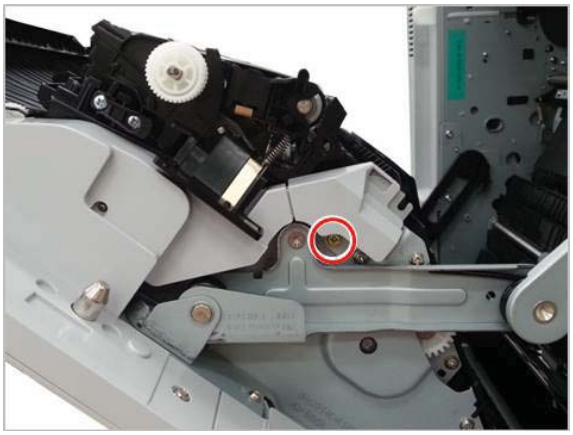
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the PTB

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove one screw and the connector cover.

> **Reinstallation tip:** Before reinstalling the connector cover, roll the wires around the connector to ensure they are all contained under the cover.

Figure 3-32 Remove the connector cover



3. Disconnect the PTB connector.

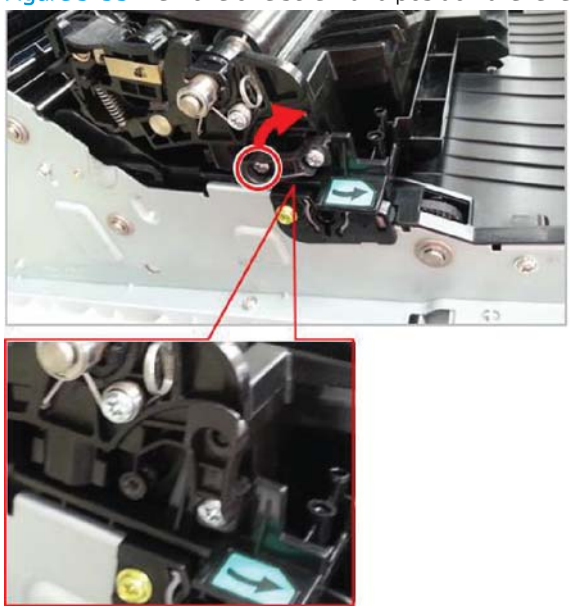
Figure 3-33 Disconnect one connector

4. Remove one screw and position the lever as shown in the figure below.

Figure 3-34 Remove one screw and position the lever

5. Remove one screw and position the lever as shown in the figure below.

Figure 3-35 Remove one screw and position the lever



6. Remove the PTB assembly.

Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling the PTB, slide it all the way to the back of the printer to engage the prongs on the bottom of the PTB.

NOTE: There is one unused connector on the right door under the PTB.

Figure 3-36 Remove the PTB assembly

7. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: PTB assembly

▲ After the replacement PTB is installed, follow these instructions to reset the firmware counter:

i. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select the Support Tools menu.

ii. Select the Service menu.

iii. Make sure that Service Access Code is selected in the drop-down menu, and then enter the access code (04082517).

iv. Select the Service Tools menu.

v. Select the Supply Status menu.

vi. Select Field Replacement Unit.

vii. Select PTB (Paper Transfer Belt).

viii. Select Transfer Belt.

ix. Select Reset.

Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Trays 2–x pick, feed, and separation rollers

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the Trays 2–x pick, feed, and separation rollers
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the Trays 2–x pick, feed, and separation rollers.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Trays 2–x pick, feed, and separation rollers part number	
X3A92-67917	HP LaserJet Trays 2-x Rollers

Required tools

- No special tools are needed to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

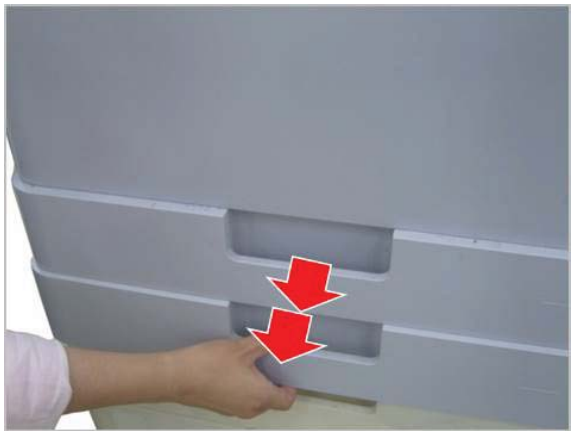
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the Trays 2–x pick, feed, and separation rollers

NOTE: HP recommends that all three rollers are replaced at the same time.

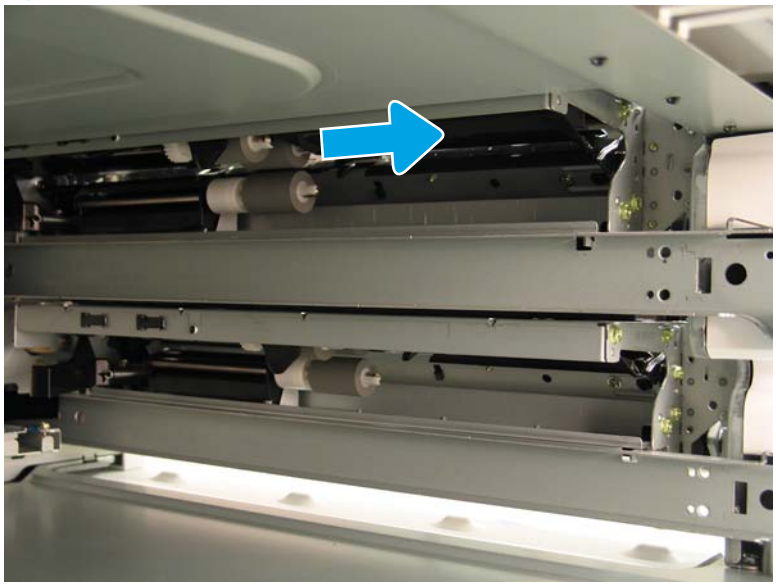
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove the two cassettes.

Figure 3-37 Remove the two cassettes



3. Inside the tray opening, slide the return guide toward the front of the printer until it stops.

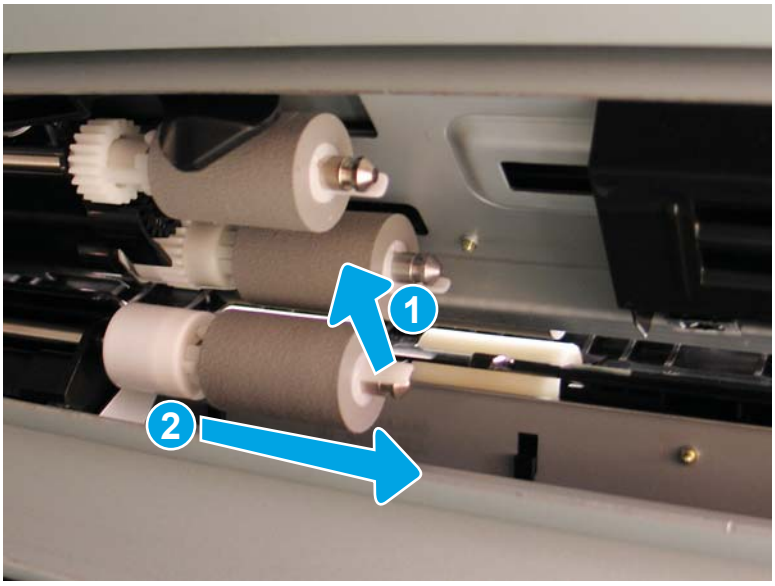
Figure 3-38 Slide the return guide



Reinstallation tip: After installing the new rollers, slide the return guide toward the rear of the printer to prevent paper jams.

4. Release the latch at the end of the rollers (callout 1) by pulling the latch tab away from the shaft, and then slide the pick, feed, and separation rollers off of the shaft (callout 2) to remove them.

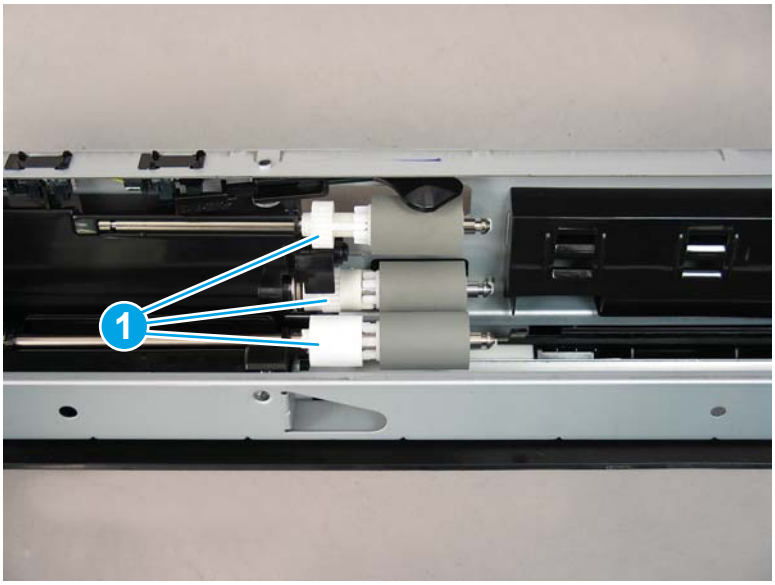
Figure 3-39 Remove rollers



5. When removing the rollers, make sure to leave the white couplers (callout 1) in place. If the couplers become dislodged, reinstall them as shown in the figure below.

NOTE: The figure shows the pickup assembly removed from the printer to more clearly show the positions of the couplers and rollers.

Figure 3-40 Coupler locations



6. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Trays 2–x pick, feed, and separation rollers

▲ After the replacement rollers are installed, follow these instructions to reset the firmware counter:

i. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select the Support Tools menu.

ii. Select the Service menu.

iii. Make sure that Service Access Code is selected in the drop-down menu, and then enter the access code (04087617).

iv. Select the Service Tools menu.

v. Select the Supply Status menu.

vi. Select Field Replacement Unit.

vii. Select Tray X Rollers.

viii. Select the tray number for the rollers just replaced.

ix. Select Reset.

Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Multipurpose (MP) tray pickup/reverse/feed roller

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the MP pickup/reverse/feed roller
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the multipurpose (MP) tray pickup/reverse/feed roller.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Multipurpose (MP) pickup/reverse/feed roller assembly part number	
X3A92-67918	HP LaserJet Tray 1 (MP) Roller

Required tools

- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

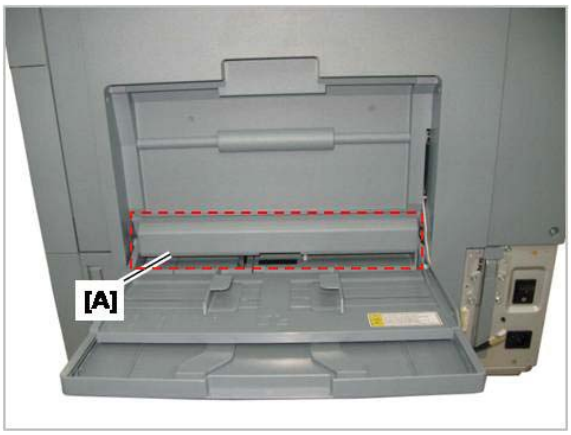
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the MP pickup/reverse/feed roller

1. Open the multipurpose (MP) tray. Use a small flat blade screwdriver to release the tab on the right side of the cover.

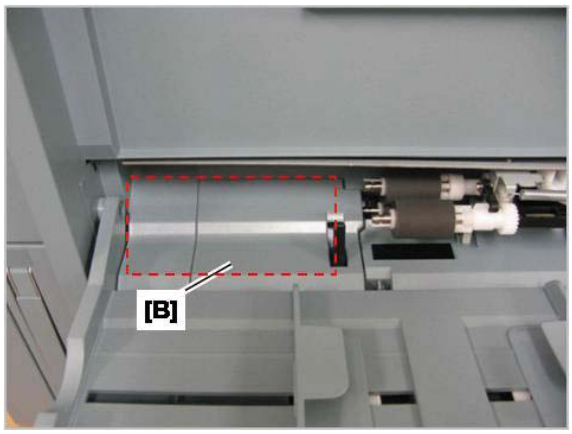
NOTE: The plastic tabs on the edges of the cover might require extra pressure to remove.

Figure 3-41 Remove cover



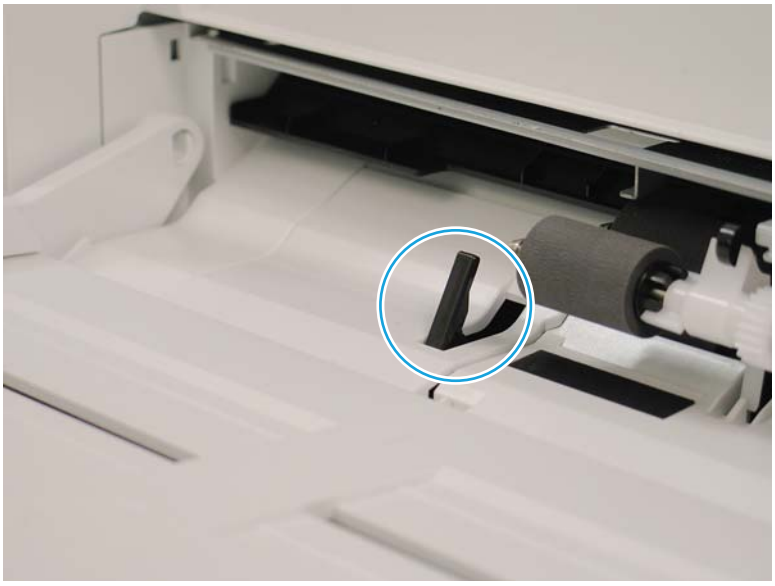
2. Remove the cover shown (B) using a small flat blade screwdriver to release the tab on the right side of the cover.

Figure 3-42 Remove cover



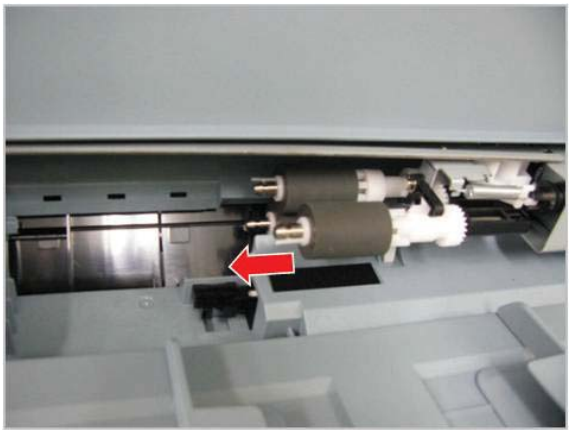
Note the orientation of the flag.

Figure 3-43 MP tray flag orientation



3. Release the small tab and remove the MP pickup/reverse/feed roller. Use caution and remove slowly to avoid loosening the parts behind the rollers. If these parts come loose, they might fall into the printer and will be difficult to retrieve. Note the location of all components.

Figure 3-44 Remove the MP pickup/reverse/feed roller



NOTE: It is recommended to replace all three rollers at the same time.

4. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: MP pickup/reverse/feed roller

- After the replacement rollers are installed, follow these instructions to reset the firmware counter:
  i. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select the Support Tools menu.
  ii. Select the Service menu.
  iii. Make sure that Service Access Code is selected in the drop-down menu, and then enter the service access code.
  iv. Select the Service Tools menu.
  v. Select the Supply Status menu.
  vi. Select Field Replacement Unit.
  vii. Select Tray X Rollers.
  viii. Select Tray 1 Roller Kit.
  ix. Select Reset.

Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Flow ADF pickup roller assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the flow ADF pickup roller assembly
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the flow ADF pickup roller assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Flow ADF pickup roller assembly part number	
X3A83-67917	HP LaserJet Flow ADF Pick and Sep Rollers

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

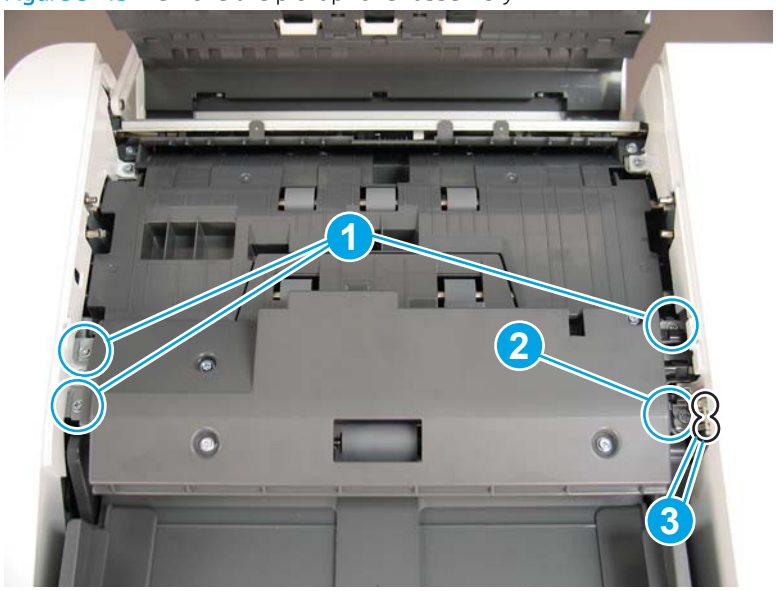
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the flow ADF pickup roller assembly

1. Open the document feeder top cover.
2. Remove the pickup roller assembly:

   ▲ Remove four screws (callout 1), disconnect two connectors (callout 2), and one ground wire (callout 3), and then remove the pickup roller assembly.

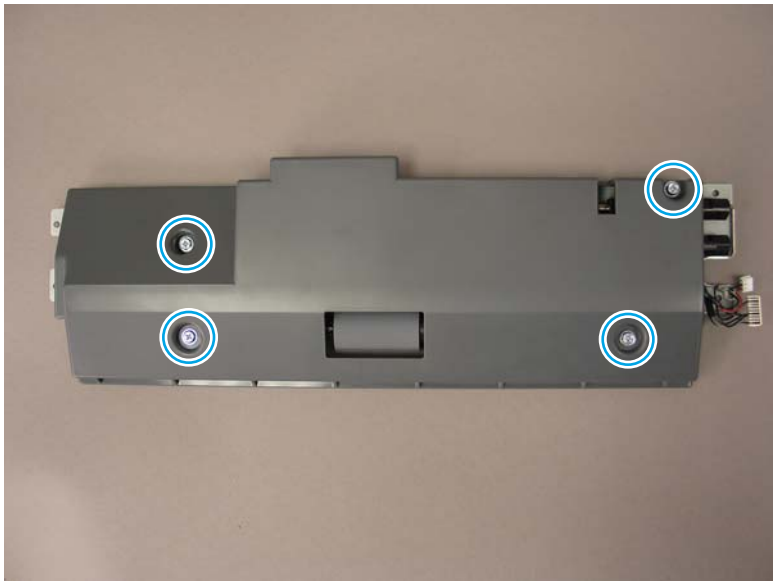
   Figure 3-45 Remove the pickup roller assembly

3. Remove the pickup rollers:

   a. Remove four screws and then remove the cover.

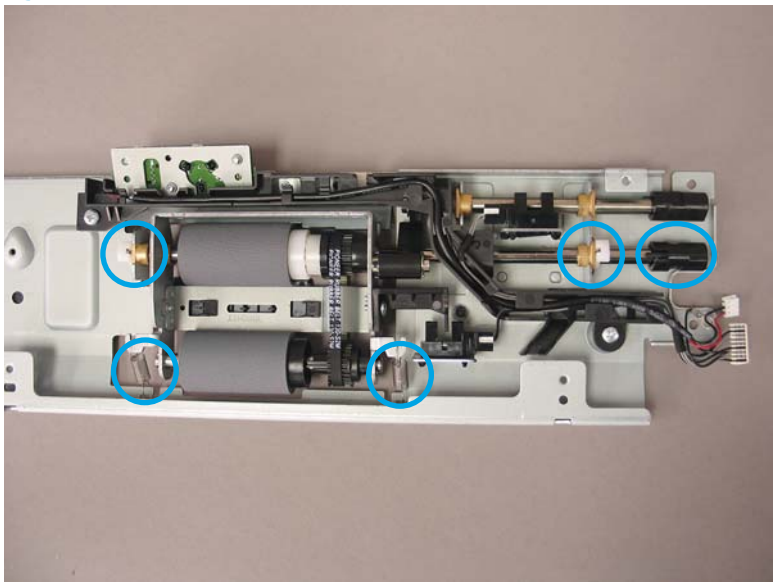
   Figure 3-46 Remove the pickup roller assembly cover

b. Remove two plastic clips and two bushings, disconnect two springs, and then remove the shaft coupler.

NOTE: The shaft is engaged in the coupler.

Figure 3-47 Remove the pickup roller components



c. Slide the roller shaft and then remove the pickup roller assembly.

Figure 3-48 Remove the pickup roller assembly

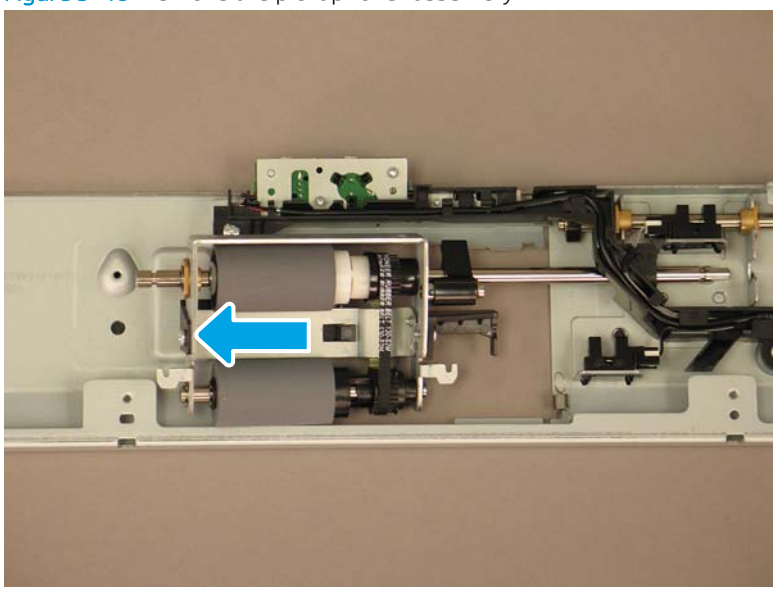
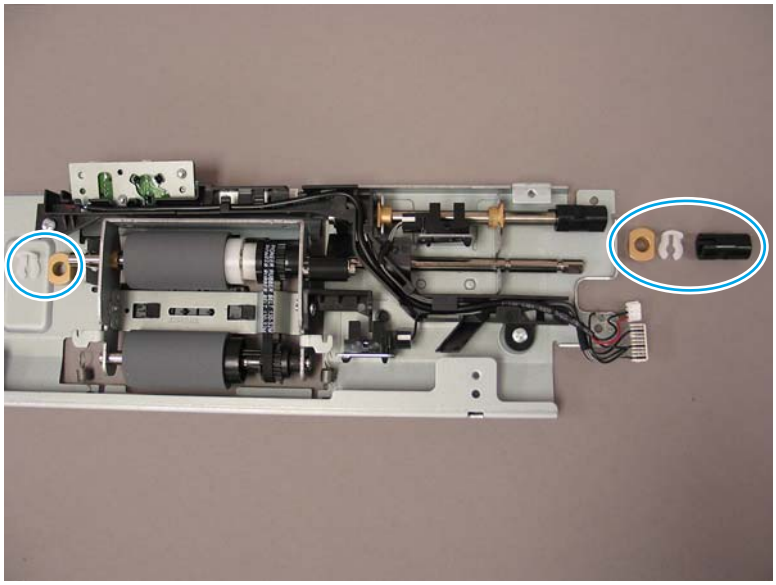


Figure 3-49 Pickup roller components-disassembled



4. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Flow ADF pickup roller

▲ After the replacement roller is installed, follow these instructions to reset the firmware counter:

i. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select the Support Tools menu.

ii. Select the Service menu.

iii. Make sure that Service Access Code is selected in the drop-down menu, and then enter the service access code.

iv. Select the Service Tools menu.

v. Select the Supply Status menu.

vi. Select Field Replacement Unit.

vii. Select ADF Pickup Roller.

viii. Select ADF Pickup Roller.

ix. Select Reset.

Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Flow ADF separation roller assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the flow ADF separation roller assembly
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the Flow ADF separation roller assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Flow ADF separation roller assembly part number	
X3A83-67917	HP LaserJet Flow ADF Pick and Sep Rollers

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

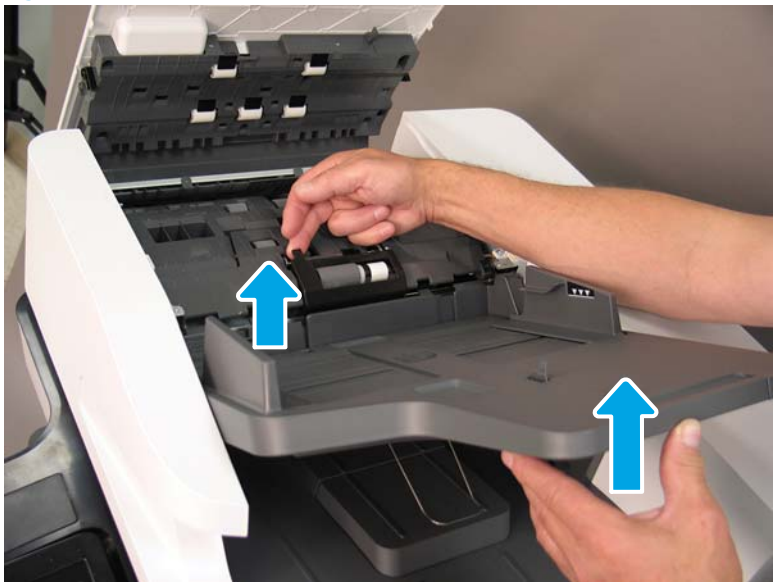
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the flow ADF separation roller assembly

1. Slightly lift the input tray, and then remove the separation roller cover.

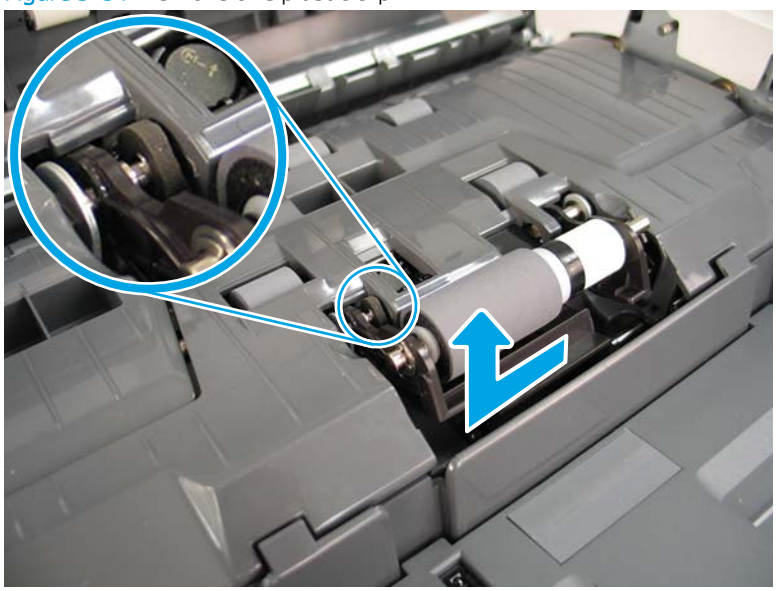
Figure 3-50 Remove the separation roller cover



2. Remove one plastic clip.

NOTE: The shaft is engaged in the coupler.

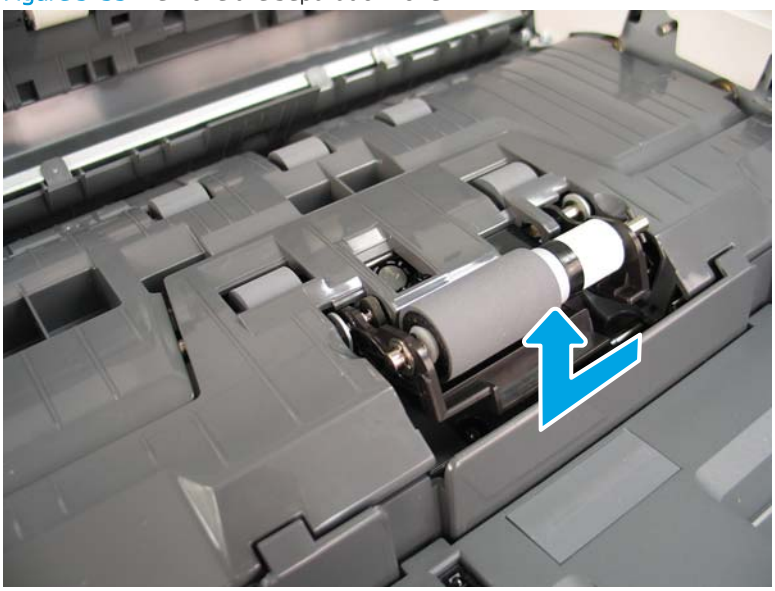
Figure 3-51 Remove one plastic clip



3. Slide the roller assembly to the front, and then pull up to release the claws from the shaft.

Figure 3-52 Remove the separation roller

Figure 3-53 Remove the separation roller



NOTE: Ensure the sponge washer (circled above) is retained during the removal of the roller assembly–it may fall off.

Reinstallation tip: Position the spring and shaft before attaching the claws to the shaft.

4. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Flow ADF separation roller

▲ After the replacement roller is installed, follow these instructions to reset the firmware counter:

i. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select the Support Tools menu.

ii. Select the Service menu.

iii. Make sure that Service Access Code is selected in the drop-down menu, and then enter the service access code.

iv. Select the Service Tools menu.

v. Select the Supply Status menu.

vi. Select Field Replacement Unit.

vii. Select ADF Separation (Reverse) Roller.

viii. Select ADF Separation Roller.

ix. Select Reset.

Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Formatter cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the formatter cover.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Formatter cover part number	
XXXXX	Formatter cover

Required tools

- No special tools are needed to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

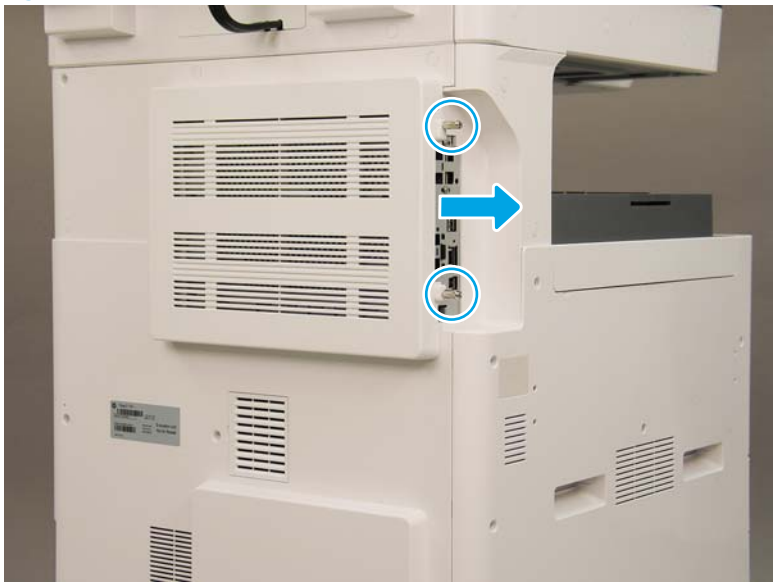
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

▲ Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 3-54 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Accelerator board

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the accelerator board
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the accelerator board.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Accelerator board part number	
X3A62-60001	Accelerator board

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

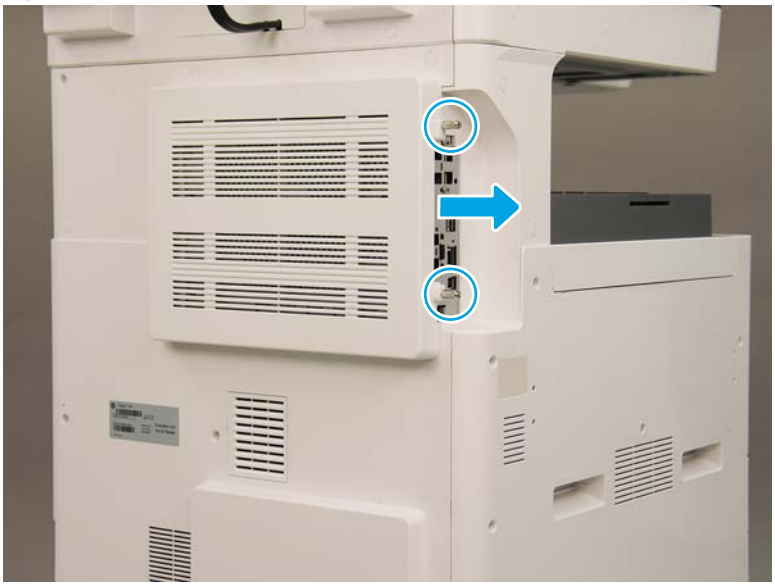
Post service test

Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 3-55 Remove the formatter cover



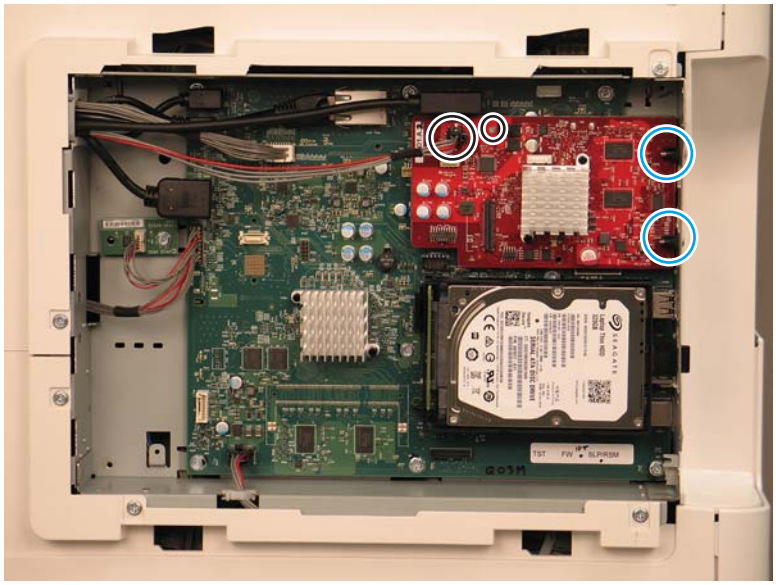
Step 2: Remove the accelerator board

CAUTION: ESD sensitive part.

- Loosen two screws, retained in plastic clips, on the outside of the formatter cage. Disconnect one connector, release the plastic locator pin, and then gently lift the accelerator board away from the formatter by the edges.

NOTE: A connector on the back of the accelerator board holds the board on the formatter.

IMPORTANT: Do not lift the accelerator board by the heat sink.



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Island of data (IOD)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the island of data (IOD)
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the island of data (IOD).

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Island of data (IOD) part number	
X3A92-60002	Island of Data Board

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

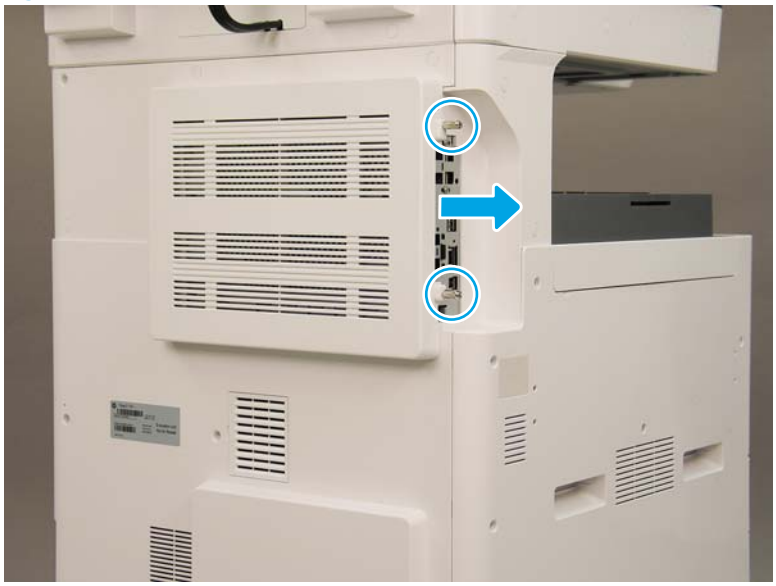
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 3-56 Remove the formatter cover

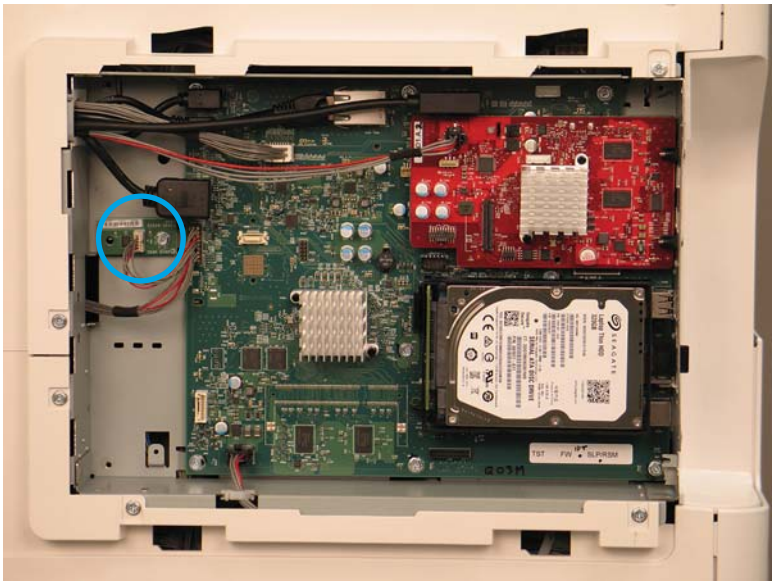


Step 2: Remove the island of data (IOD)

CAUTION: ESD sensitive part.

- Disconnect one connector, remove one screw, and then remove the IOD.

IMPORTANT: Do not replace the HDD and the island of data (IOD) at the same time. Replace one component, turn the printer on and off, and then replace the second component.



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Formatter hard disk drive (HDD)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the hard disk drive (HDD) located on the formatter board.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Formatter HDD part number	
691917-011	Formatter HDD - 320 GB SED

Required tools

- No special tools are needed to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

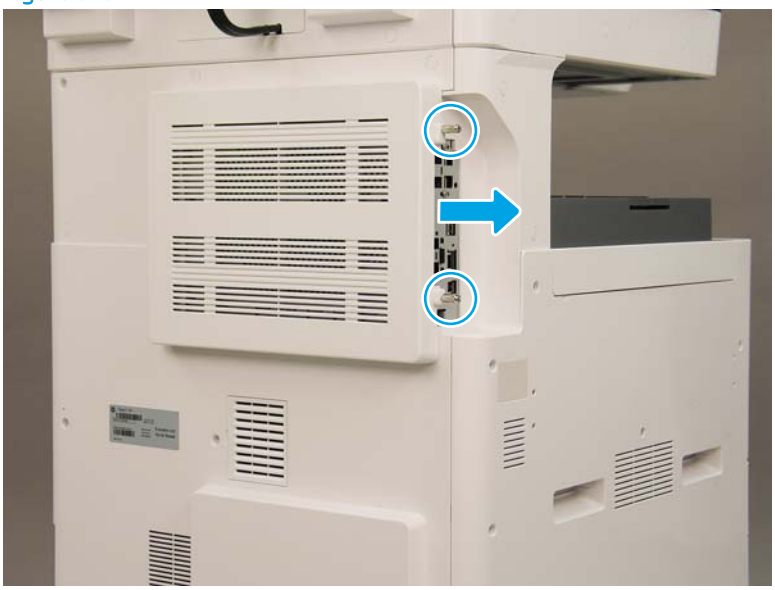
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

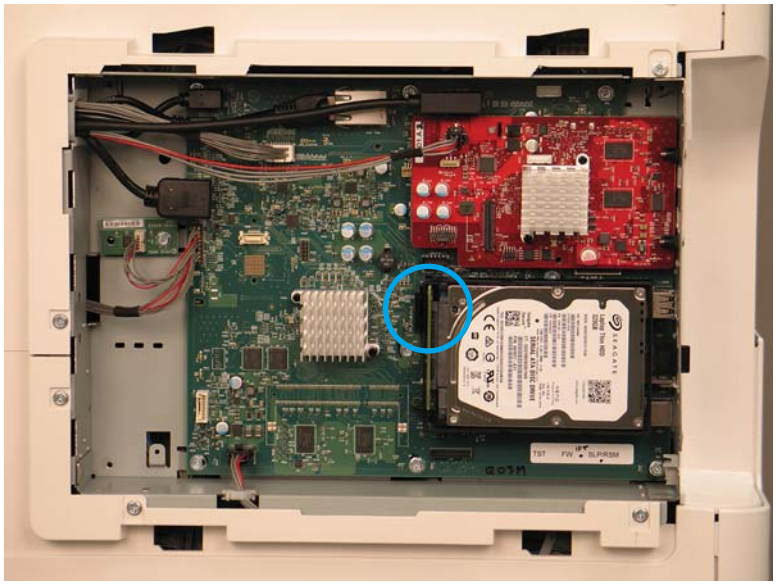
Figure 3-57 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)

- Release one retainer, and then rotate the HDD away from the formatter to remove it.

IMPORTANT: Do not replace the HDD and the island of data (IOD) at the same time. Replace one component, turn the printer on and off, and then replace the second component.



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Formatter

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the accelerator board
- Step 3: Remove the hard-disk drive
- Step 4: Remove the formatter PCA
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the formatter.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Formatter part number	
X3A92-60001	Formatter PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

▲ Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

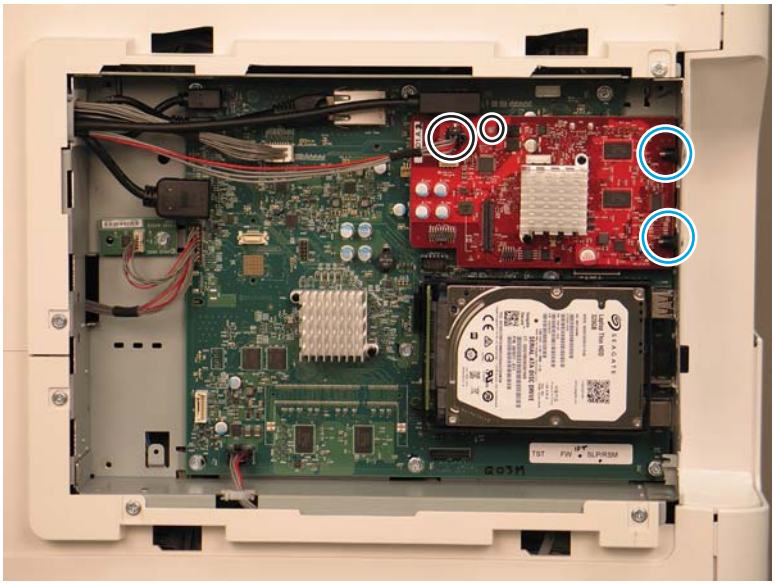
Figure 3-58 Remove the formatter cover

Step 2: Remove the accelerator board

▲ Loosen two screws, retained in plastic clips, on the outside of the formatter cage. Disconnect one connector, release the plastic locator pin, and then gently lift the accelerator board away from the formatter by the edges.

NOTE: A connector on the back of the accelerator board holds the board on the formatter.

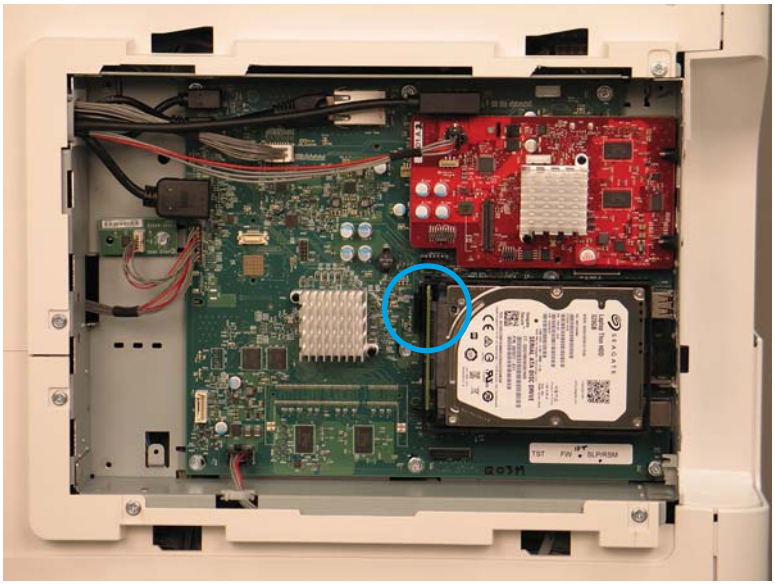
IMPORTANT: Do not lift the accelerator board by the heat sink.



Step 3: Remove the hard-disk drive

- Release one retainer, and then rotate the HDD away from the formatter to remove it.

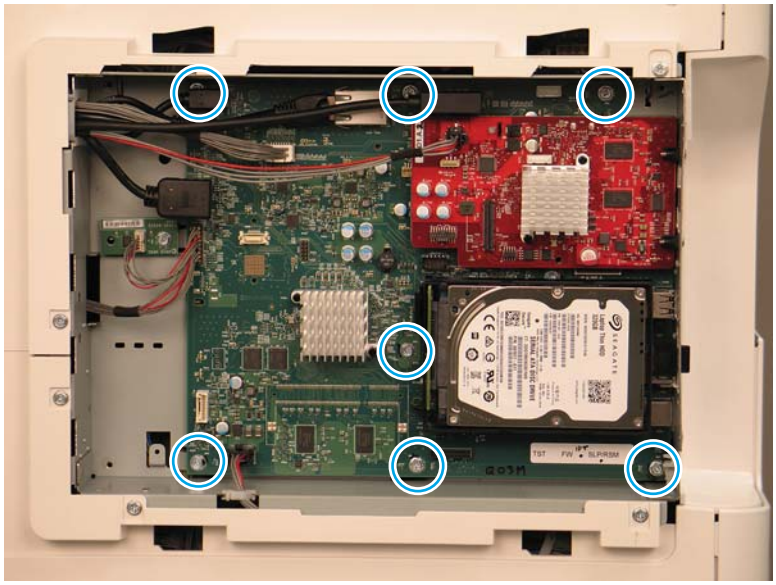
IMPORTANT: Do not replace the HDD and the island of data (IOD) at the same time. Replace one component, turn the printer on and off, and then replace the second component.



Step 4: Remove the formatter PCA

- Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter board, remove seven screws, and then remove the formatter PCA.

IMPORTANT: Do not replace the formatter and the main PCA at the same time. Replace one component, turn the printer on and off, and then replace the second component.



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Control panel

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the control-panel bezel
- Step 2: Remove the control-panel
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the control panel.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Control panel part number	
B5L47-60101	Control panel

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.

- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

Verify that the control panel illuminates and displays information while the printer is initializing. Verify control panel functionality after initialization.

Step 1: Remove the control-panel bezel

1. Open the document feeder, and then remove three screws.

Figure 3-59 Remove the document feeder bezel

2. Place the control panel in the upright position.
3. Gently pry the control-panel bezel from the center screw hole, and then pry from the center of the control-panel bezel to the edges to release.

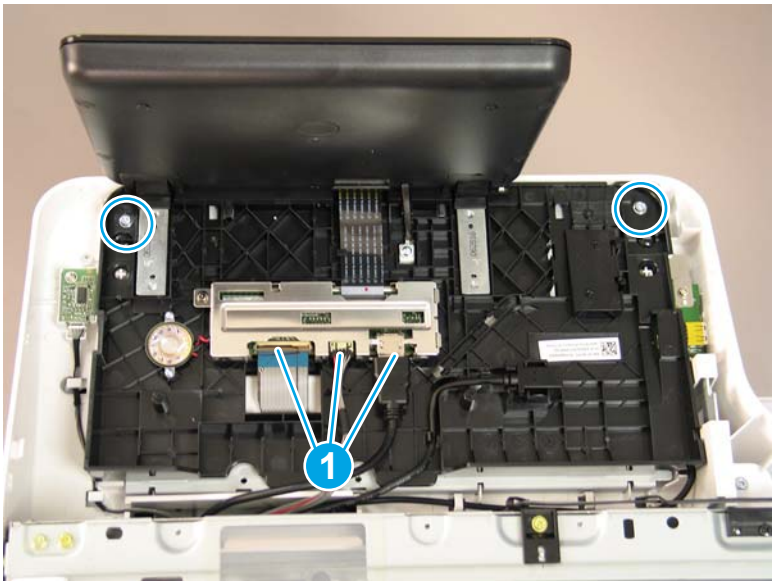
⚠ CAUTION: Do not pry against the scanner glass when removing the control-panel bezel.

Step 2: Remove the control-panel

1. Place the control panel in the upright position.

2. Disconnect one FFC, one connector, and one HDMI connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws on the control-panel frame.

Figure 3-60 Remove the control panel screws and disconnect connectors



3. Remove the USB interconnect cable from its retainer and reroute out of the way.

Figure 3-61 Remove the USB interconnect cable

4. Lift the control panel up from the front to release the tabs at the rear, and then remove the control panel.

Reinstallation tip: Align the four tabs at the rear or control panel, and then snap in the control panel.

Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Keyboard (z bundles)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the control-panel bezel
- Step 2: Remove the control-panel
- Step 3: Remove the keyboard
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the keyboard.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Keyboard part numbers	
B5L47-60102	US English Keyboard Assy
B5L47-60103	UK English Keyboard Assy

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

Type on the keyboard and verify that it is recognized by the control panel.

Step 1: Remove the control-panel bezel

1. Open the document feeder, and then remove three screws.

   Figure 3-62 Remove the document feeder bezel

2. Place the control panel in the upright position.
3. Gently pry the control-panel bezel from the center screw hole, and then pry from the center of the control-panel bezel to the edges to release.

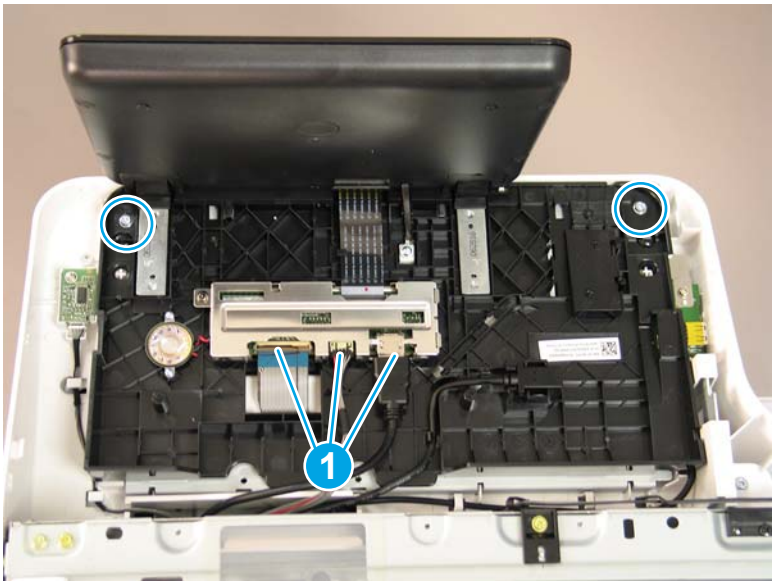
⚠ CAUTION: Do not pry against the scanner glass when removing the control-panel bezel.

Step 2: Remove the control-panel

1. Place the control panel in the upright position.

2. Disconnect one FFC, one connector, and one HDMI connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws on the control-panel frame.

Figure 3-63 Remove the control panel screws and disconnect connectors



3. Remove the USB interconnect cable from its retainer and reroute out of the way.

Figure 3-64 Remove the USB interconnect cable

4. Lift the control panel up from the front to release the tabs at the rear, and then remove the control panel.

Reinstallation tip: Align the four tabs at the rear or control panel, and then snap in the control panel.

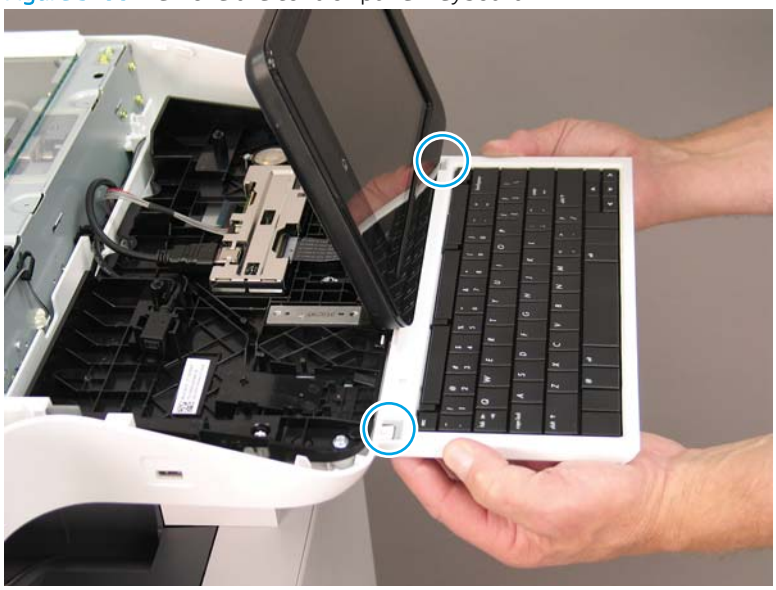
Step 3: Remove the keyboard

1. Disconnect one FFC.

Figure 3-65 Disconnect one FFC

2. Slide the keyboard out, and then depress two latches to remove the keyboard.

Figure 3-66 Remove the control-panel keyboard



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the IPTU
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU).

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

IPTU part number	
JC90-01401A	Finisher sub-bridge unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.

- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

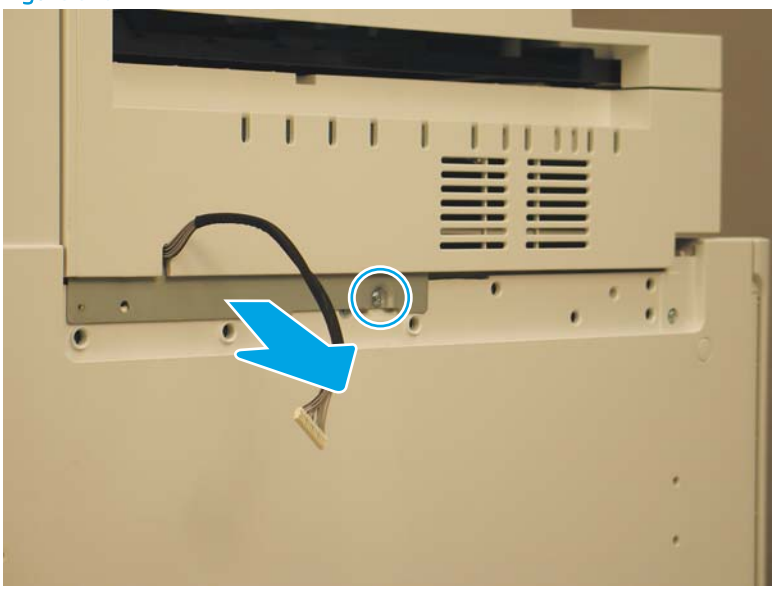
Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Step 1: Remove the IPTU

▲ Remove one screw, and then slightly lift and slide the IPTU away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-67 Remove the IPTU



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Replacing the main SVC part

Front top inner cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the front top inner cover
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front top inner cover.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Front top inner cover part number	
SAM-JC63-05635A	Cover, Middle Left

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

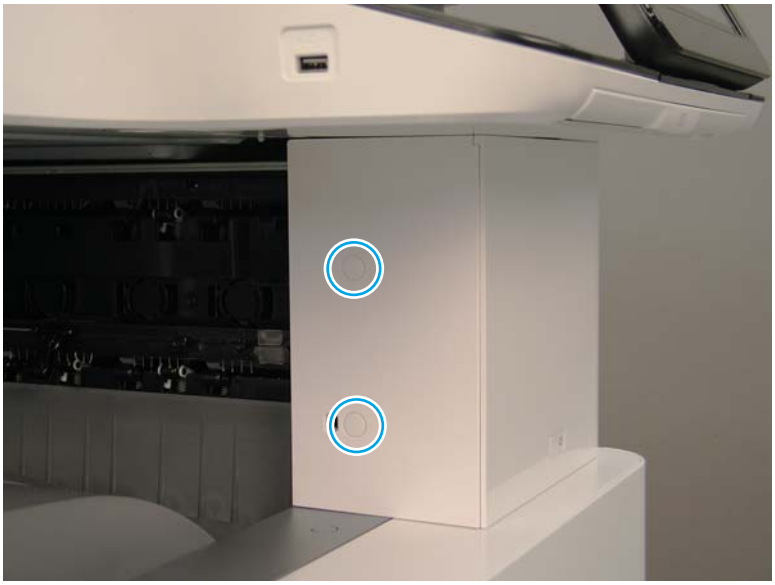
Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

Step 1: Remove the front top inner cover

▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-68 Remove the front top inner cover



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Front power cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the front top inner cover
- Step 2: Remove the front power cover
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front power cover.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Front power cover part number	
SAM-JC63-02105A	Cover, Middle Right

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

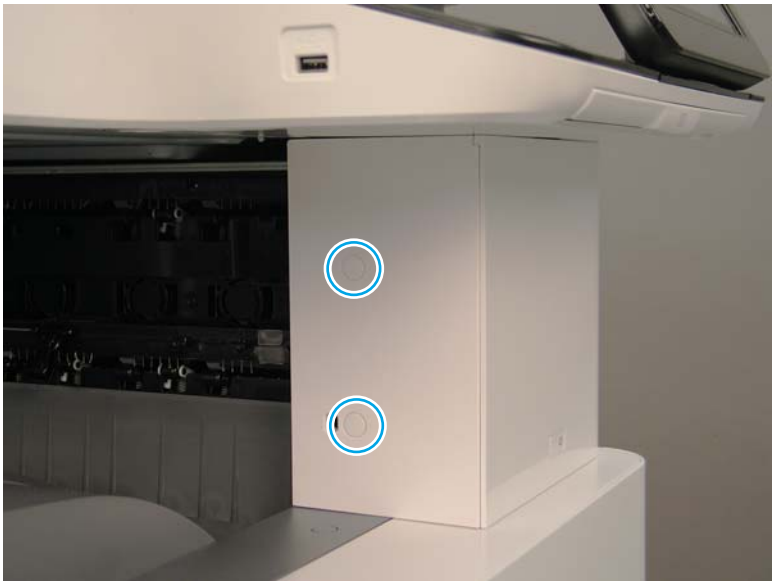
Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

Step 1: Remove the front top inner cover

- Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-69 Remove the front top inner cover



Step 2: Remove the front power cover

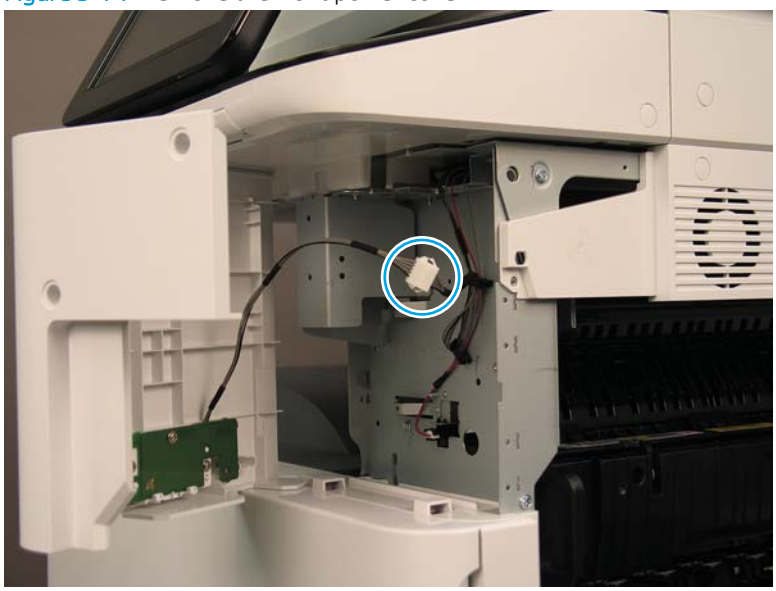
1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 3-70 Remove two screws and rotate the cover

2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-71 Remove the front power cover



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Front power switch

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the front top inner cover
- Step 2: Remove the front power cover
- Step 3: Remove the front power switch
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front power switch.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Front power switch part number
Front power switch

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

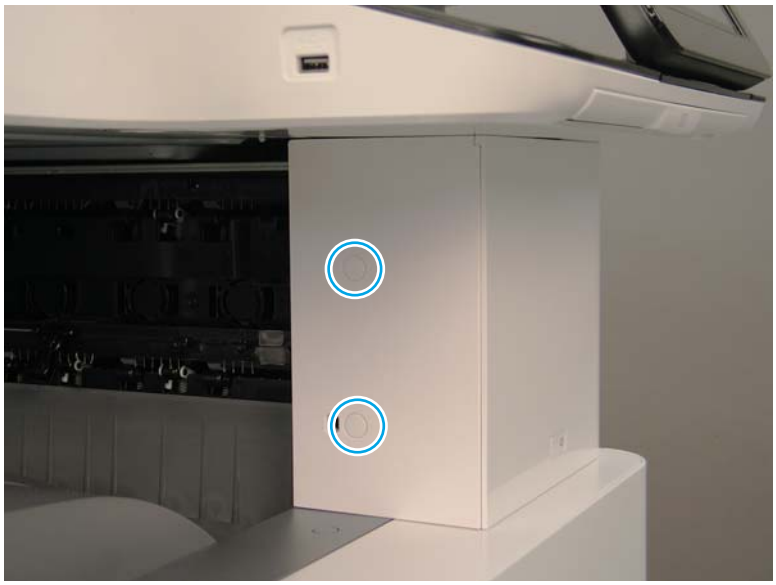
Post service test

Press the power switch and verify that the printer turns on.

Step 1: Remove the front top inner cover

▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-72 Remove the front top inner cover



Step 2: Remove the front power cover

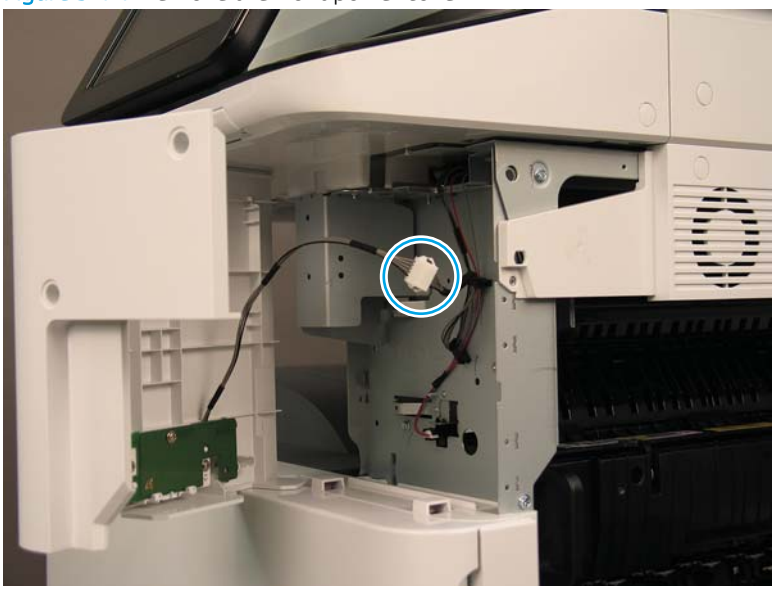
1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 3-73 Remove two screws and rotate the cover

2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

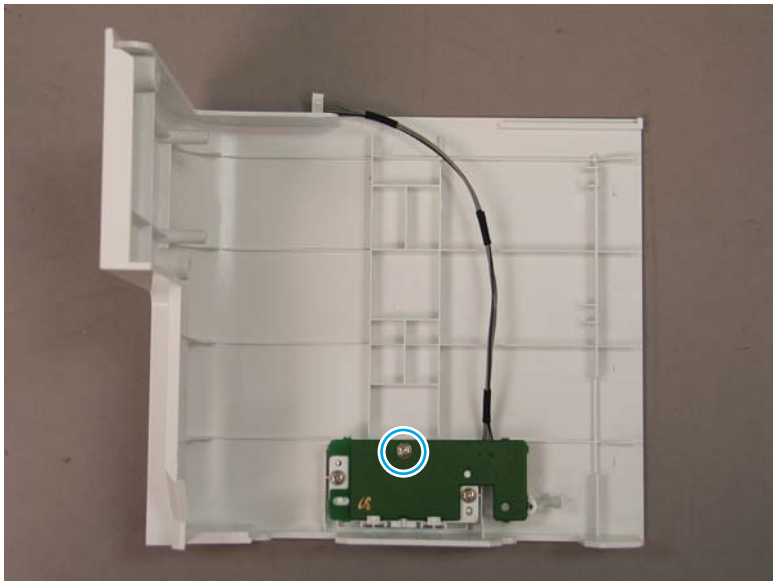
Figure 3-74 Remove the front power cover



Step 3: Remove the front power switch

1. Remove one screw, and then remove the power switch board.

Figure 3-75 Remove one screw and the power switch board



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the power switch button.

Figure 3-76 Remove two screws and the power switch button

Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Output bin

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the front top inner cover
- Step 2: Remove the output bin
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the output bin.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Output bin part number	
SAM-JC95-02101A	Cover, Output Exit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

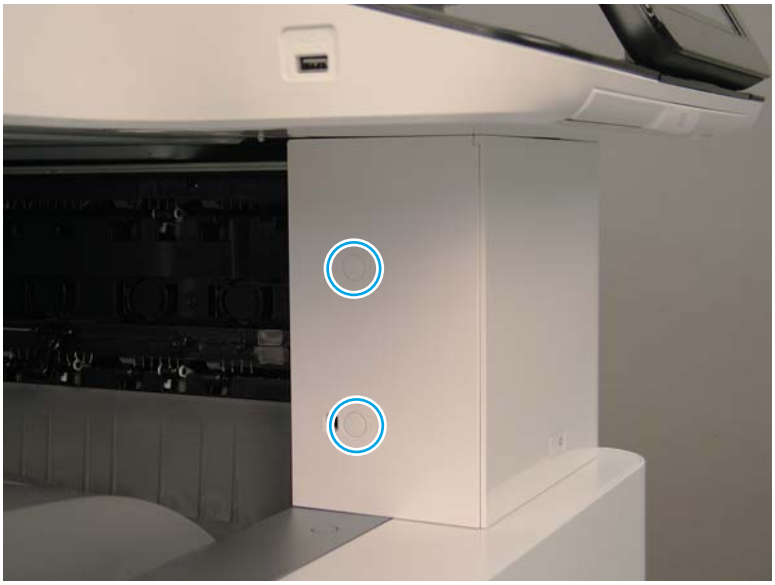
Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

Step 1: Remove the front top inner cover

- Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-77 Remove the front top inner cover



Step 2: Remove the output bin

- Remove two screw-caps and two screws, and then lift the output bin away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-78 Remove the output bin

Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Top right cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the front top inner cover
- Step 2: Remove the front power cover
- Step 3: Remove the top right cover
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the top right cover.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Top right cover part number	
SAM-JC63-04916B	Cover, Right Upper

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

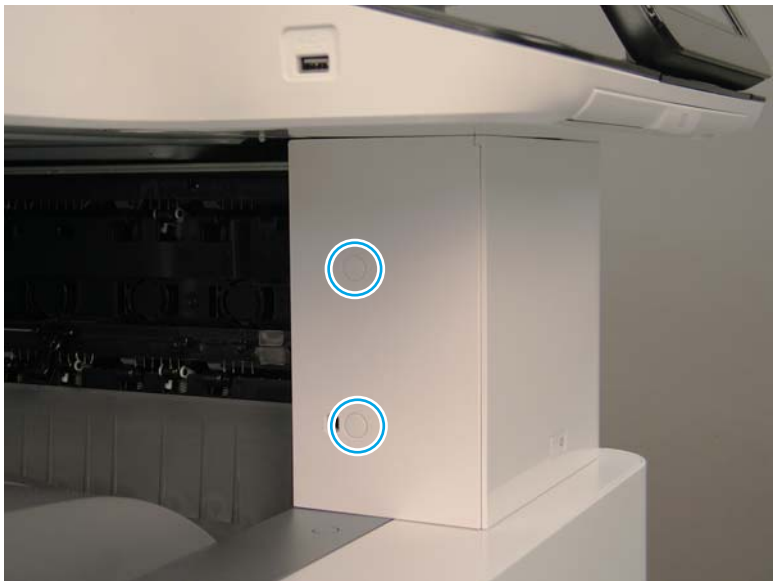
Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

Step 1: Remove the front top inner cover

- Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-79 Remove the front top inner cover



Step 2: Remove the front power cover

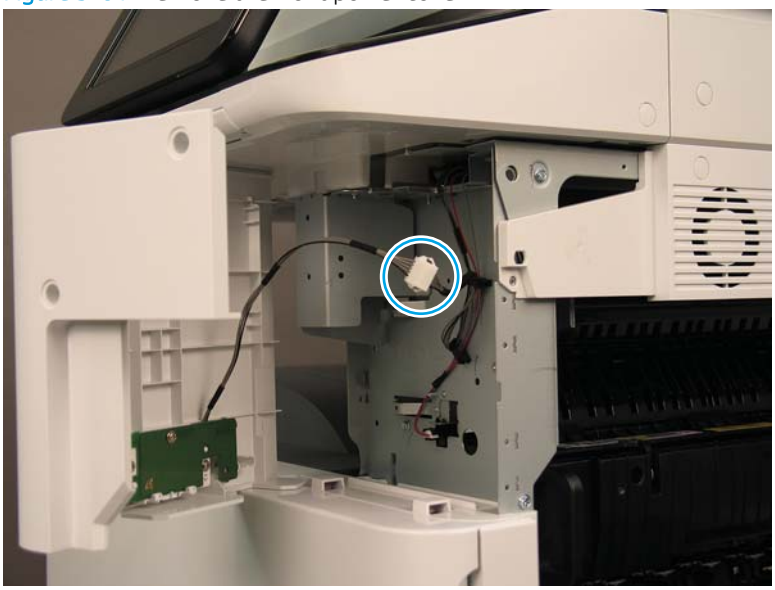
1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 3-80 Remove two screws and rotate the cover

2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

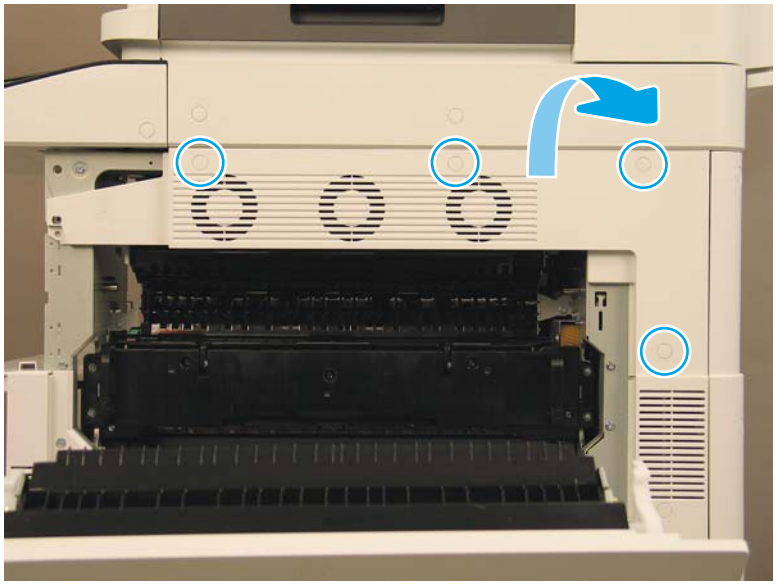
Figure 3-81 Remove the front power cover



Step 3: Remove the top right cover

- Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then rotate the top right cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-82 Remove the top right cover



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Left cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the left cover
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the left cover.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Left cover part number	
SAM-JC95-02100A	Cover, Left

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

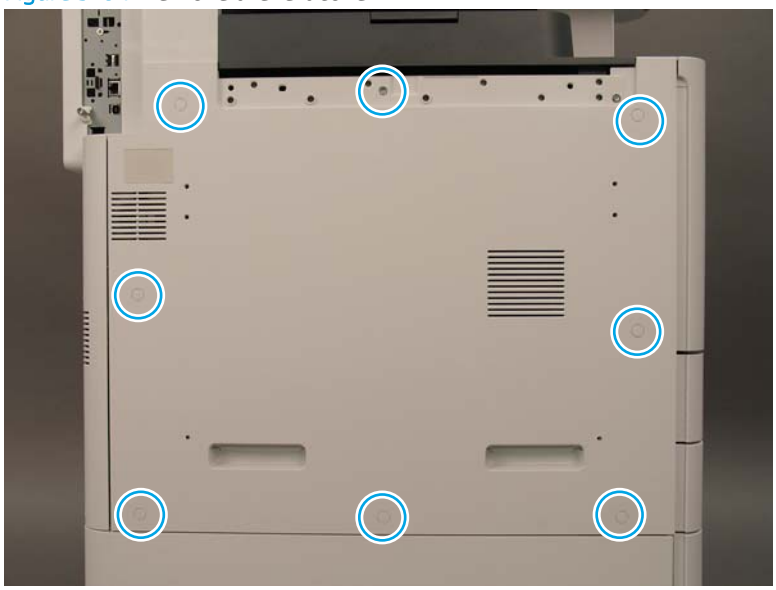
Step 1: Remove the left cover

1. Remove the left-dummy cover.

Figure 3-83 Left dummy cover

2. Remove seven screw-caps and eight screws, and lift the left cover off of the printer.

Figure 3-84 Remove the left cover



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Lower rear cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the lower rear cover.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Lower rear cover part number	
SAM-JC95-02117A	Cover, Lower Rear

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

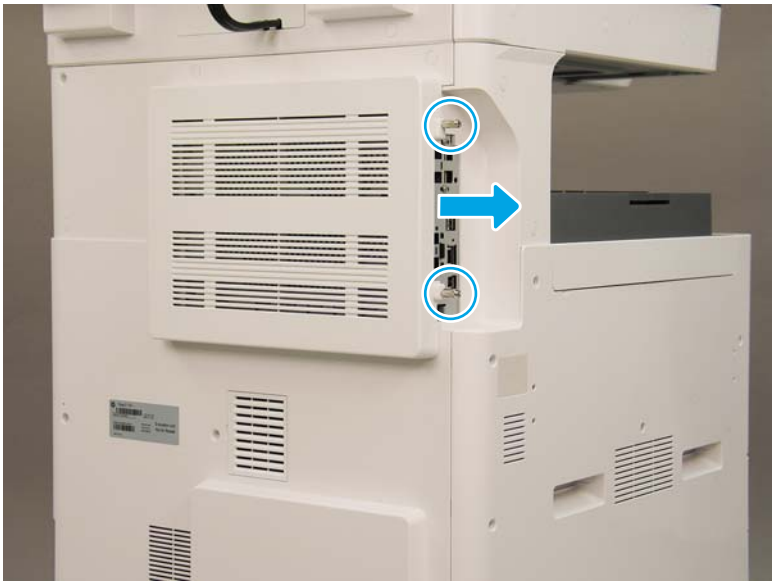
Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

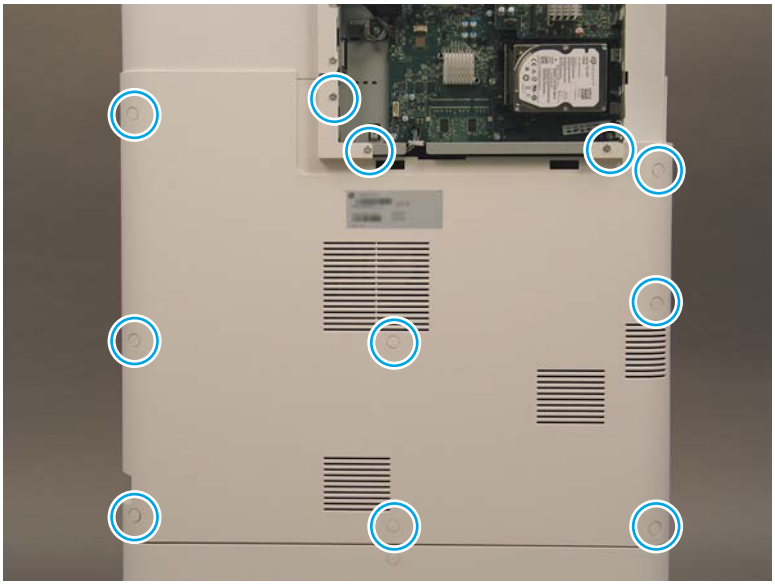
Figure 3-85 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

Figure 3-86 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Upper rear cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the upper rear cover.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Upper rear cover part number	
SAM-JC63-05633A	Cover, Rear Upper

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

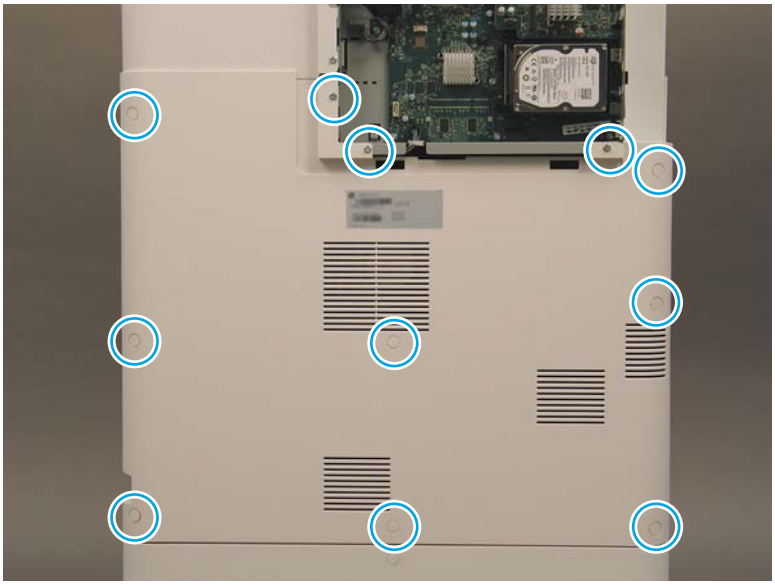
- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 3-87 Remove the formatter cover

Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

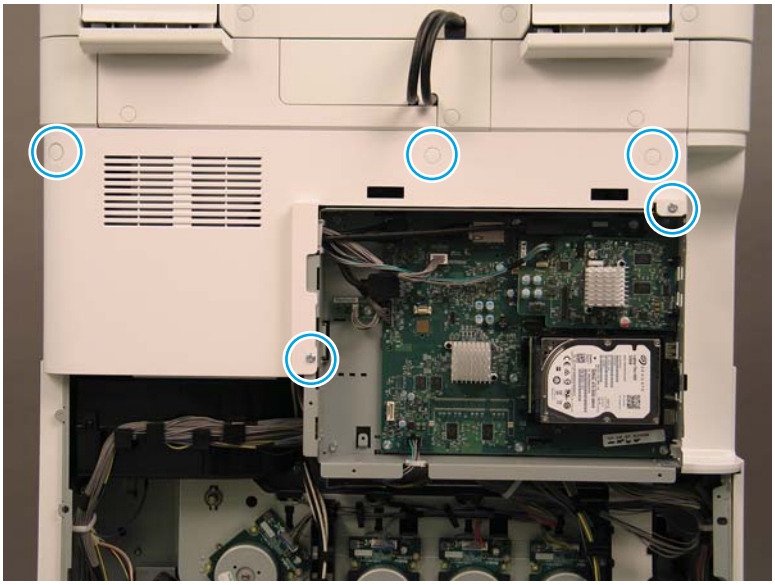
Figure 3-88 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover

▲ Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-89 Remove the upper rear cover



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Left rear corner cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the left rear corner cover
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the left rear corner cover.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Left rear corner cover part number	
SAM-JC63-04837A	Cover, Upper Left

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

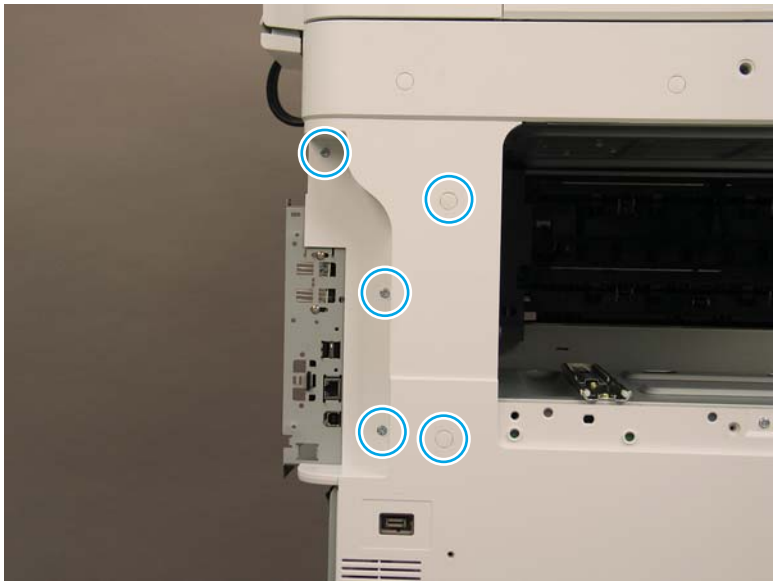
- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 3-90 Remove the formatter cover

Step 2: Remove the left rear corner cover

- Remove two screw caps and five screws. Slide the left rear corner cover up and away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-91 Remove the left rear corner cover



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Right rear cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the right rear cover.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Right rear cover part number	
SAM-JC95-02102A	Cover, Right Rear

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

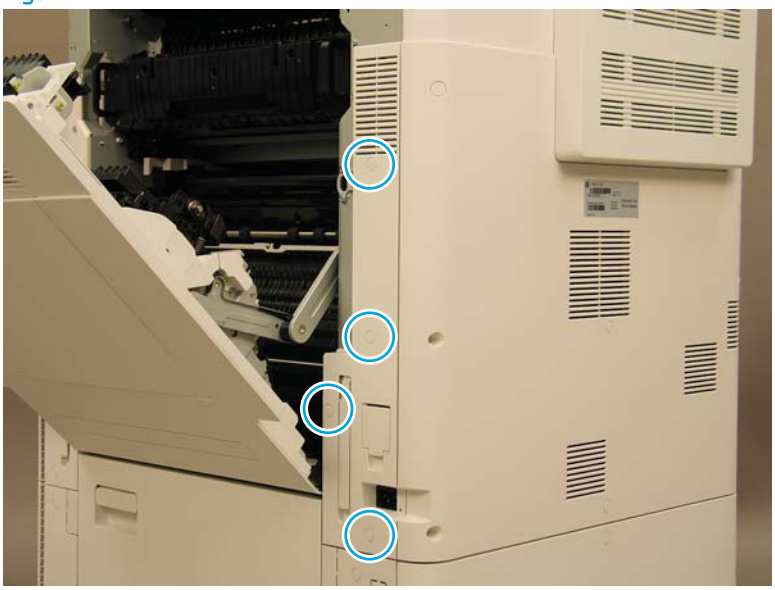
Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

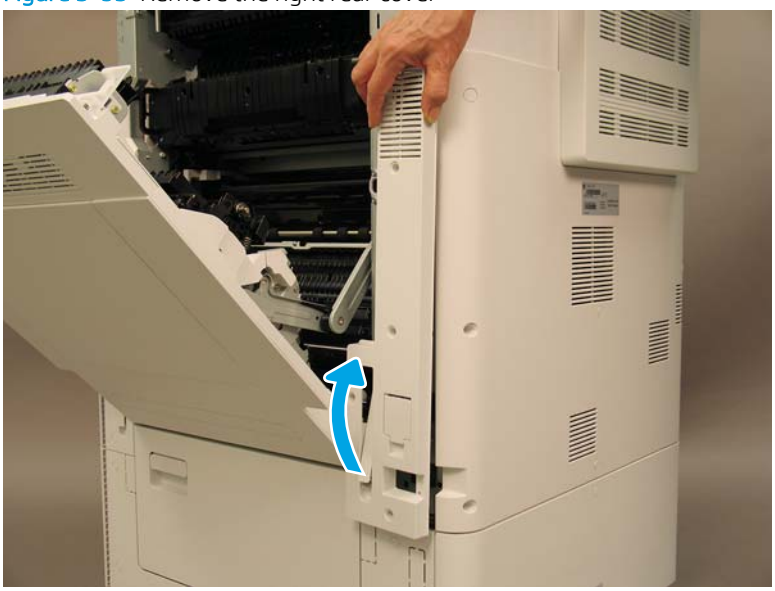
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-92 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

Figure 3-93 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Right door

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the right door.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Right door part number	
SAM-JC95-02091A	Right Door Assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

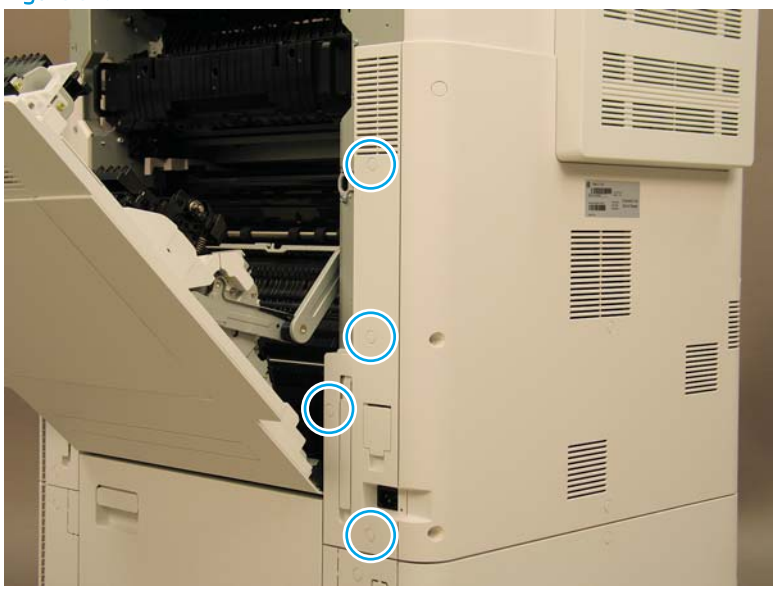
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

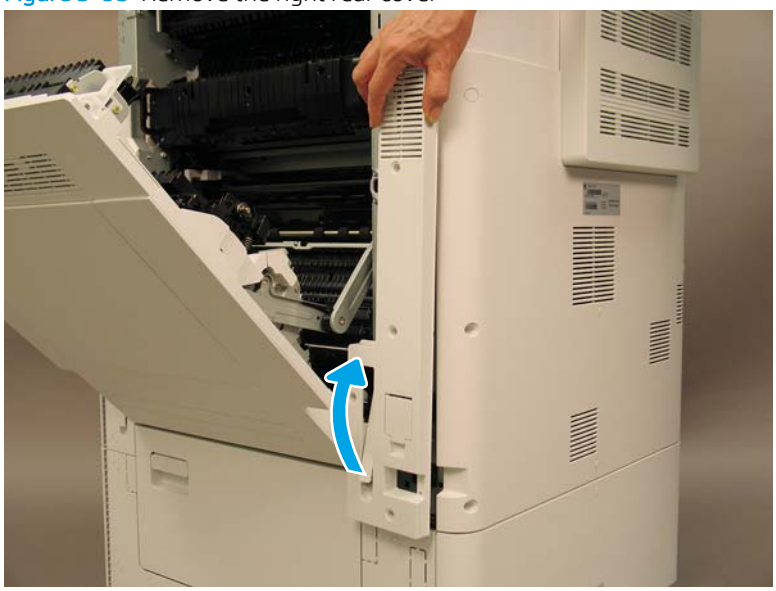
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-94 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

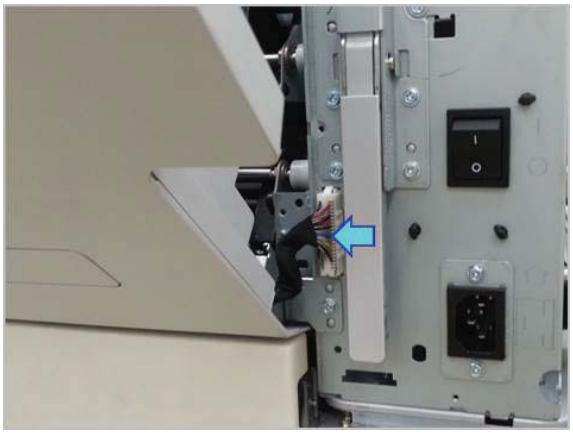
Figure 3-95 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

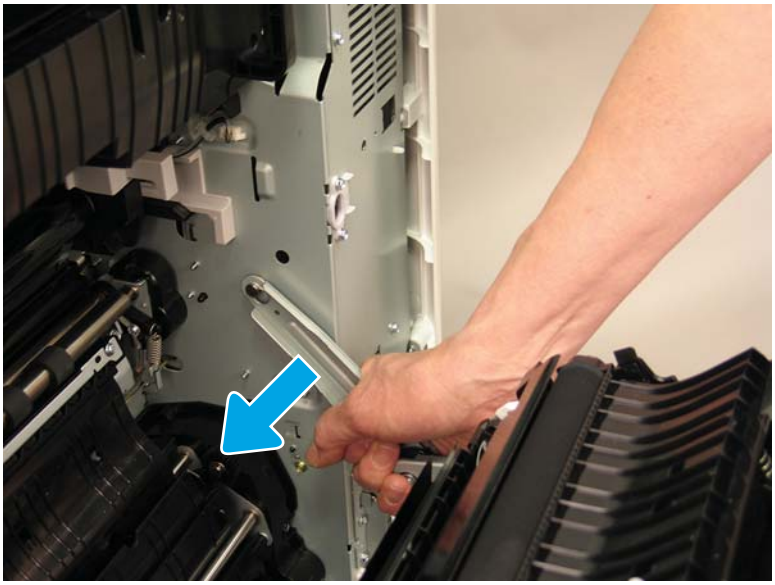
Figure 3-96 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

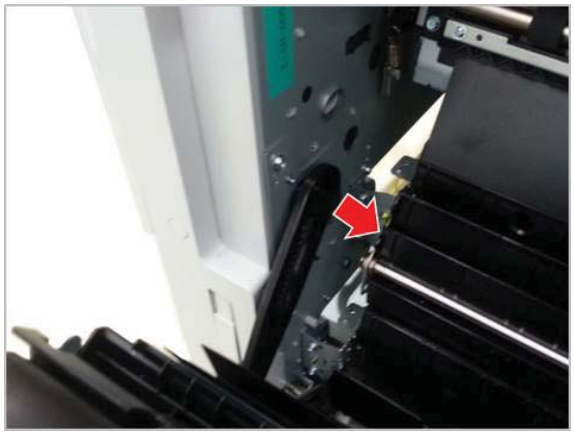
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-97 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

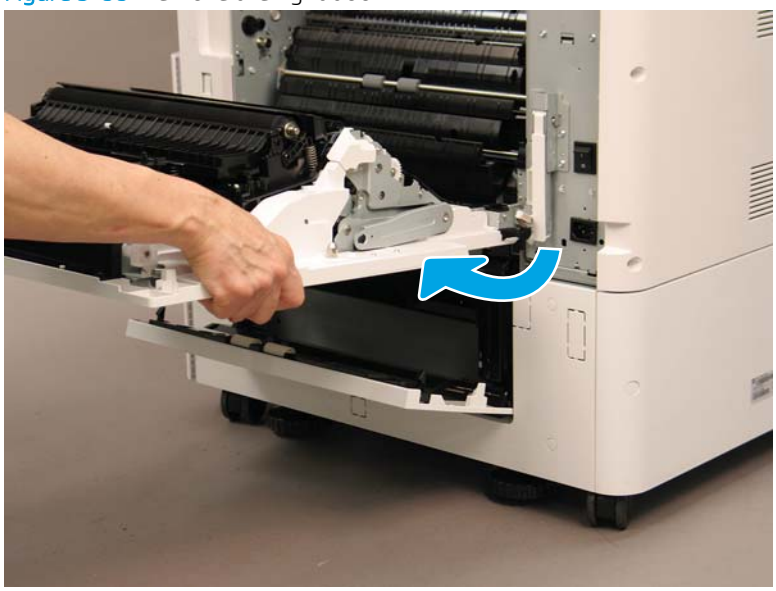
Figure 3-98 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 3-99 Remove the right door



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Paper dust brush

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the toner collection unit
- Step 2: Remove the paper dust brush
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the paper dust brush.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Paper dust brush part number	
SAM-JC93-01026B	Paper Dust Brush

Required tools

- No special tools are needed to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

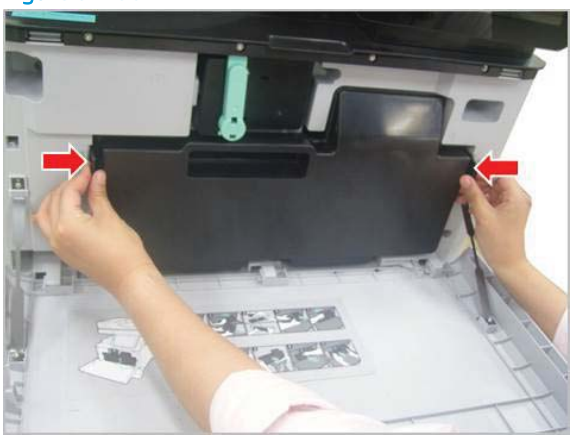
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the toner collection unit

1. Open the front cover.
2. Push both hooks to release the toner collection unit (TCU).

Figure 3-100 Remove the TCU



Step 2: Remove the paper dust brush

▲ Remove the paper dust brush.

Figure 3-101 Remove the paper dust brush

Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Front cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the front cover
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front cover.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Front cover part number	
SAM-JC95-02109A	Cover, front

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

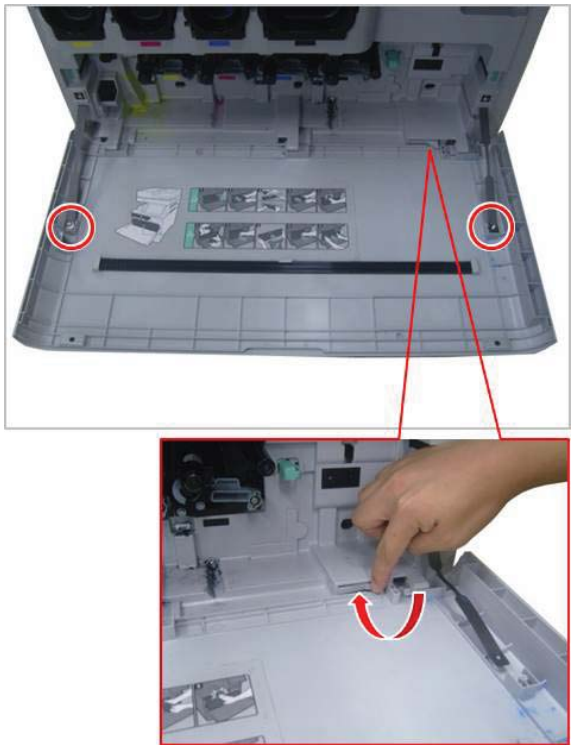
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the front cover

▲ Remove two screws securing the front cover. While pushing the right hook, remove the front cover.

Figure 3-102 Remove the front cover



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Inner front cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the front cover
- Step 2: Remove the front top inner cover
- Step 3: Remove the front power cover
- Step 4: Remove the output bin
- Step 5: Remove the toner collection unit
- Step 6: Remove the paper dust brush
- Step 7: Remove the inner front cover
- Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the inner front cover.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Inner front cover part number	
SAM-JC95-02104A	Cover, Inner Front

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

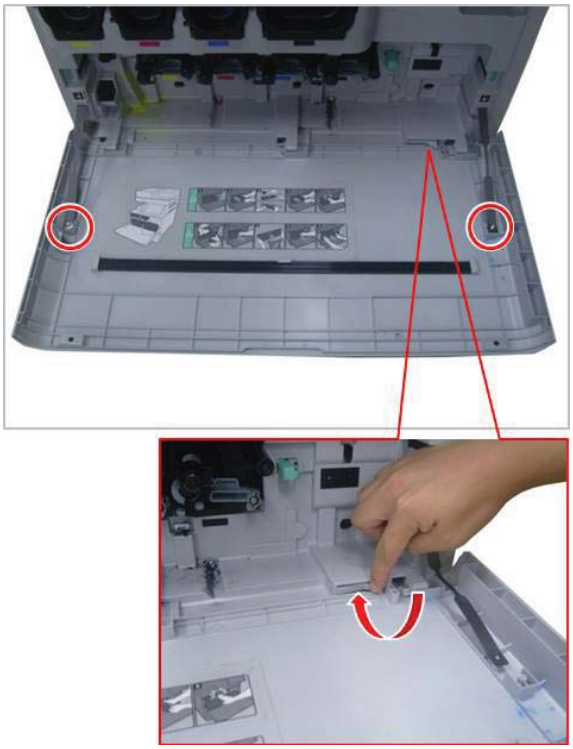
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the front cover

- Remove two screws securing the front cover. While pushing the right hook, remove the front cover.

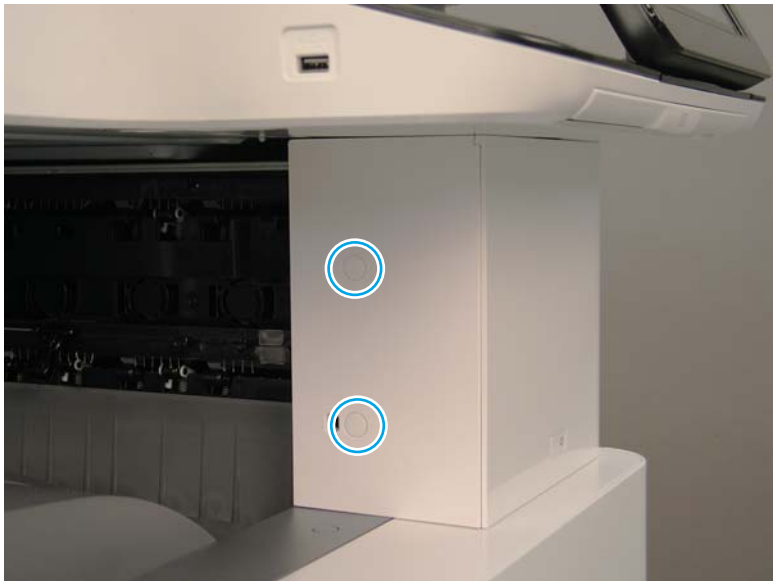
Figure 3-103 Remove the front cover



Step 2: Remove the front top inner cover

- Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-104 Remove the front top inner cover



Step 3: Remove the front power cover

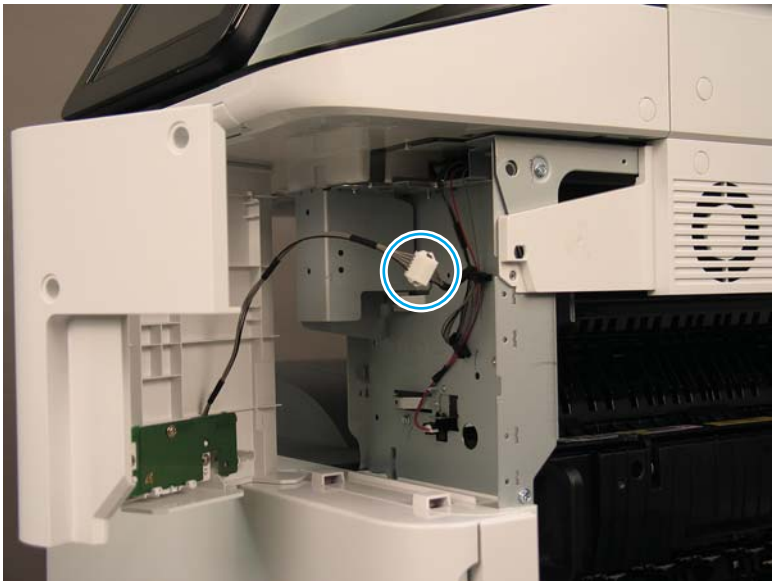
1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 3-105 Remove two screws and rotate the cover

2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-106 Remove the front power cover



Step 4: Remove the output bin

▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws, and then lift the output bin away from the printer to remove it.

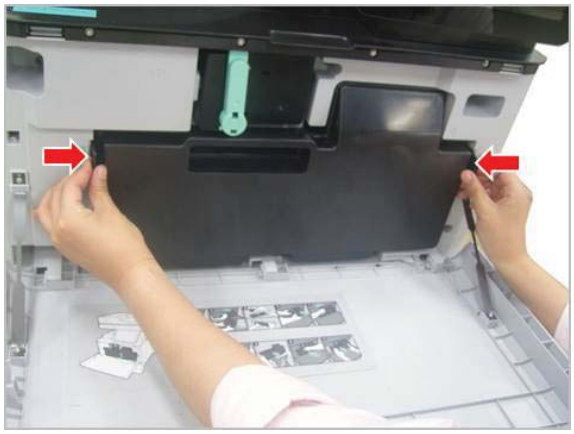
Figure 3-107 Remove the output bin

Step 5: Remove the toner collection unit

1. Open the front cover.

2. Push both hooks to release the toner collection unit (TCU).

Figure 3-108 Remove the TCU



Step 6: Remove the paper dust brush

▲ Remove the paper dust brush.

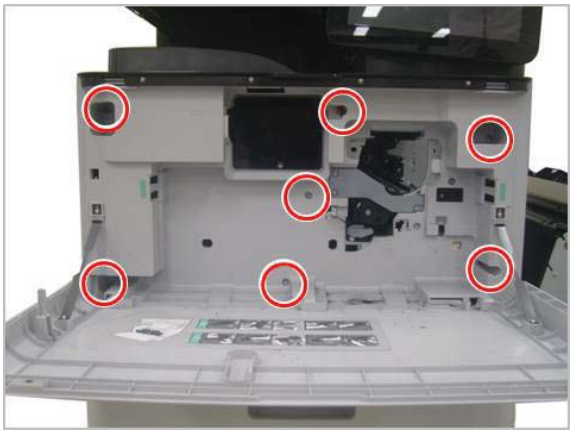
Figure 3-109 Remove the paper dust brush

Step 7: Remove the inner front cover

1. Remove the toner cartridge.
2. Open the right door.

3. Remove seven screws.

Figure 3-110 Screw locations

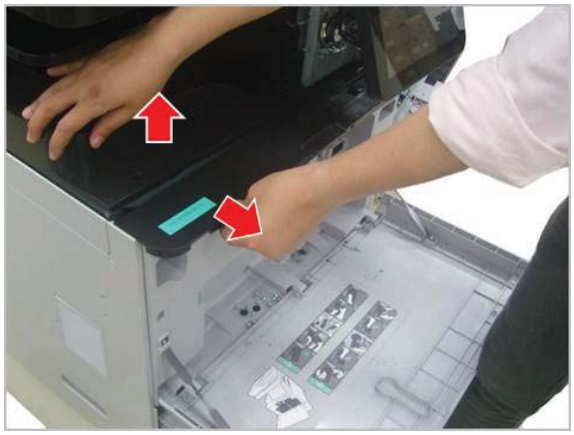


4. Remove two screw caps and two screws on the output bin.

Figure 3-111 Remove two screw caps and two screws

5. Remove the inner front cover while lifting the output bin.

Figure 3-112 Remove the inner front cover



Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Front cover open sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the front cover
- Step 2: Remove the front top inner cover
- Step 3: Remove the front power cover
- Step 4: Remove the output bin
- Step 5: Remove the paper dust brush
- Step 6: Remove the inner front cover
- Step 7: Remove the front cover open sensor
- Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the front cover open sensor.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Front cover open sensor part number	
SAM-JC93-00466A	Front door switch open

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

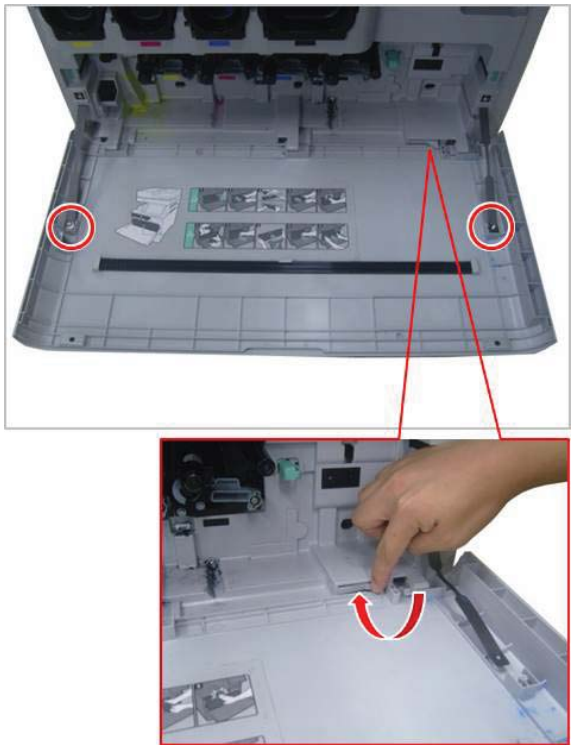
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the front cover

- Remove two screws securing the front cover. While pushing the right hook, remove the front cover.

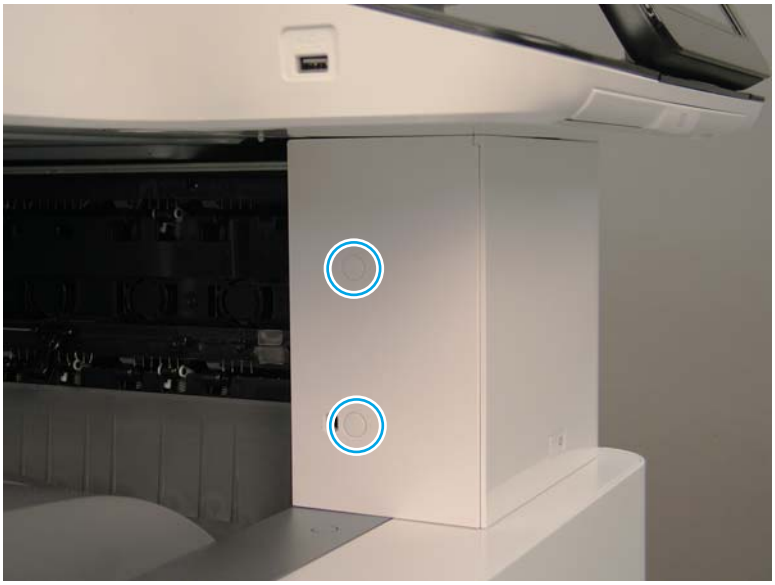
Figure 3-113 Remove the front cover



Step 2: Remove the front top inner cover

- Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-114 Remove the front top inner cover



Step 3: Remove the front power cover

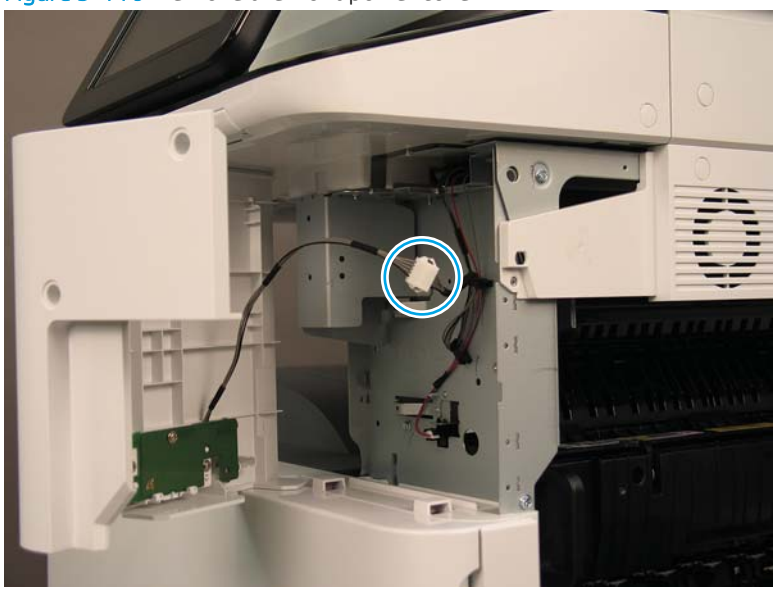
1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 3-115 Remove two screws and rotate the cover

2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-116 Remove the front power cover



Step 4: Remove the output bin

- Remove two screw-caps and two screws, and then lift the output bin away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-117 Remove the output bin

Step 5: Remove the paper dust brush

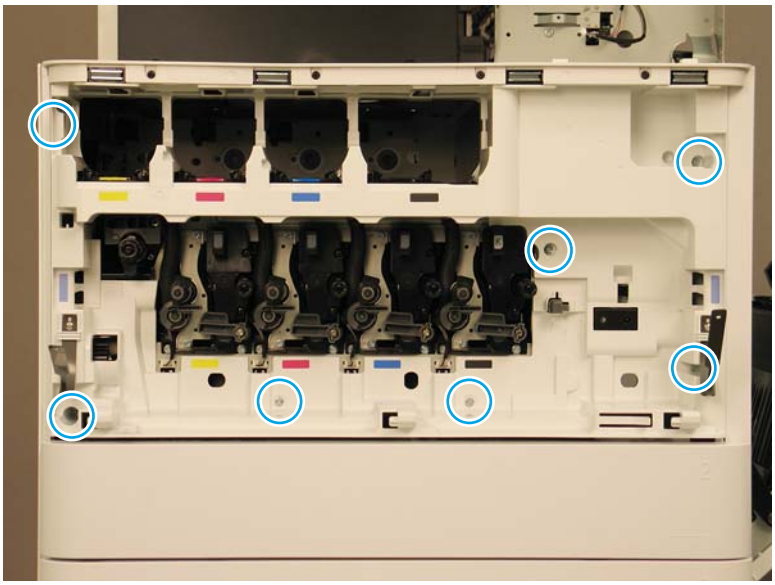
- Remove the paper dust brush.

Figure 3-118 Remove the paper dust brush

Step 6: Remove the inner front cover

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove the all of the toner cartridges.
3. Remove seven screws.

Figure 3-119 Remove seven screws



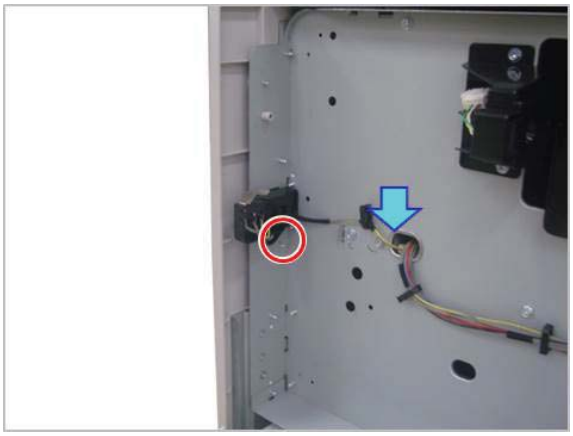
4. Lift the inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-120 Remove the inner cover

Step 7: Remove the front cover open sensor

1. Remove the toner cartridge.
2. Remove one screw, and then remove the front cover open sensor.

Figure 3-121 Remove one screw and the cover open sensor



Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Low voltage power supply (LVPS) cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the low voltage power supply (LVPS) cover.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

LVPS cover part number
LVPS cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

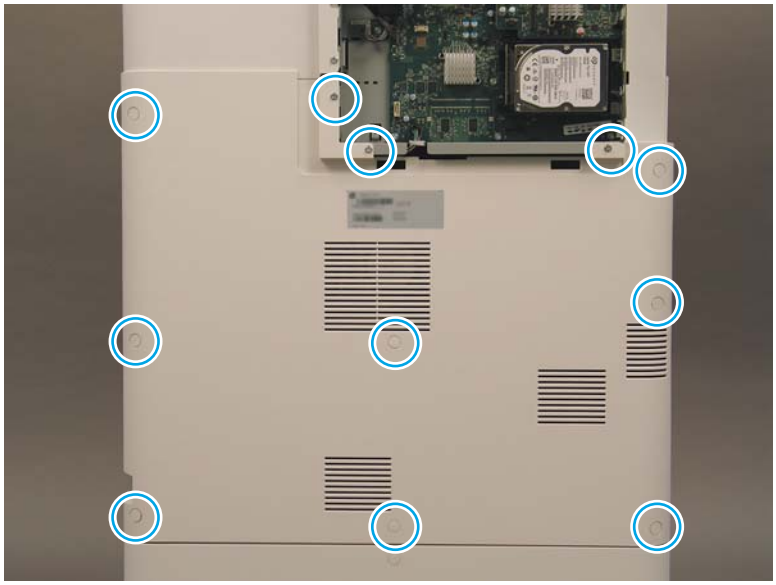
- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 3-122 Remove the formatter cover

Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

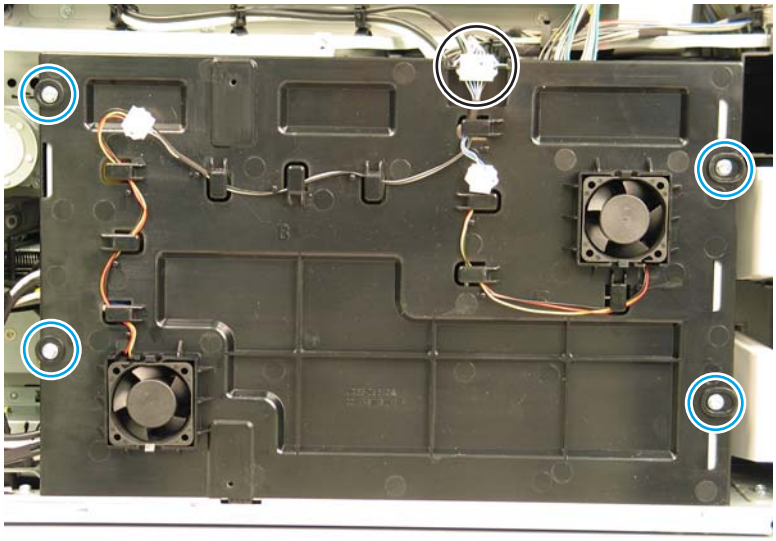
Figure 3-123 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover

▲ Disconnect one connector, and then remove four screws. Slide the LVPS cover to the left, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-124 Remove the LVPS cover



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Laser scanner assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the left cover
- Step 2: Remove the laser scanner assembly
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the laser scanner assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Laser scanner assembly part number	
SAM-JC97-04574A	Laser Scanner Unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

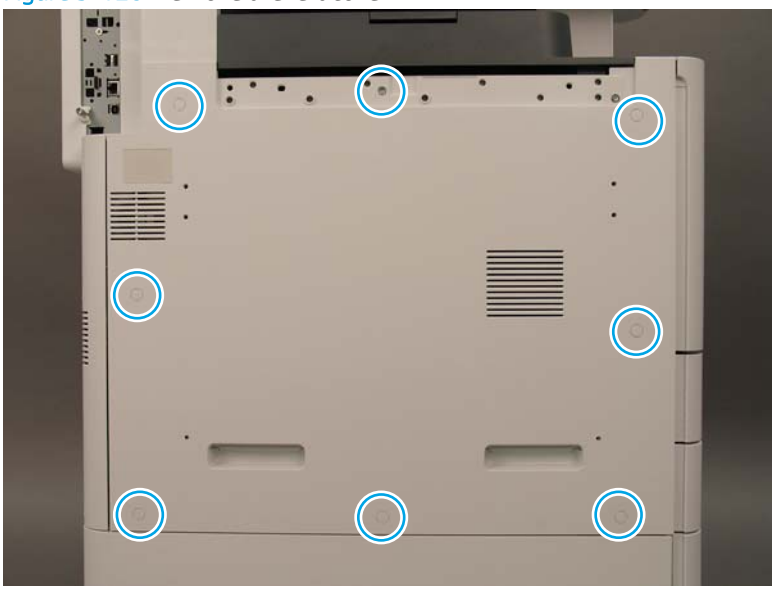
Step 1: Remove the left cover

1. Remove the left-dummy cover.

Figure 3-125 Left dummy cover

2. Remove seven screw-caps and eight screws, and lift the left cover off of the printer.

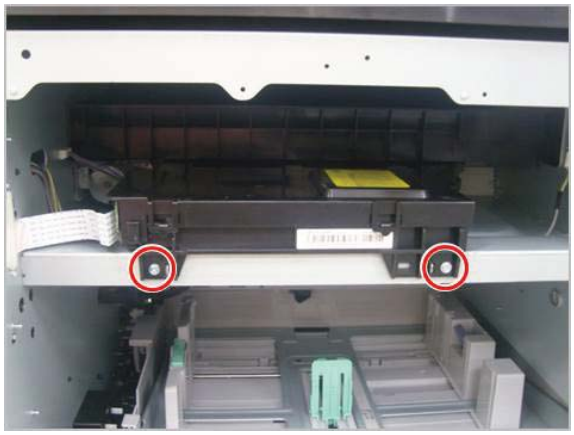
Figure 3-126 Remove the left cover



Step 2: Remove the laser scanner assembly

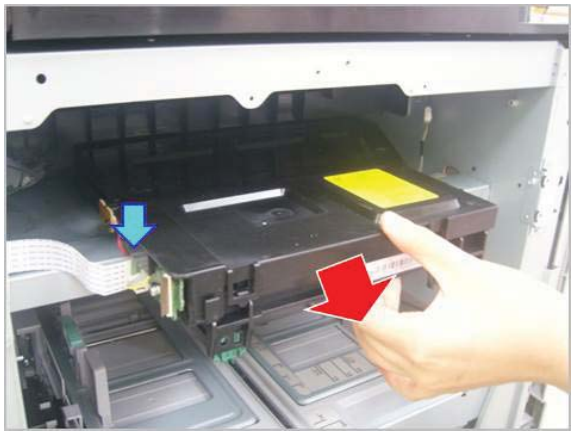
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 3-127 Remove two screws



2. Pull the laser scanner assembly partially out of the printer, disconnect one flat cable, and then remove the laser scanner assembly.

Figure 3-128 Remove the laser scanner assembly



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Developer fan

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the toner collection unit
- Step 2: Remove the imaging drum
- Step 3: Remove the developer unit
- Step 4: Remove the left cover
- Step 5: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 6: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 7: Remove the developer fan
- Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the developer fan.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Developer fan part number
Developer fan

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

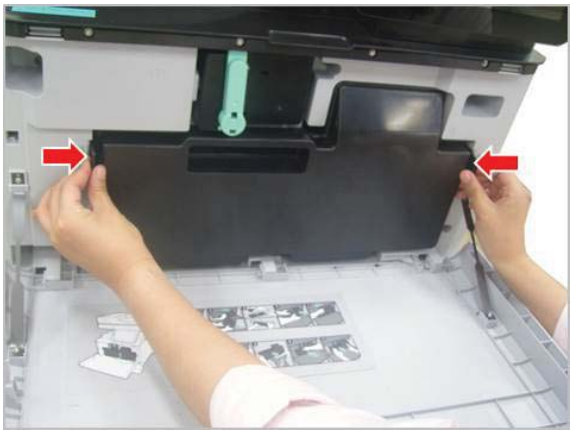
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the toner collection unit

1. Open the front cover.
2. Push both hooks to release the toner collection unit (TCU).

Figure 3-129 Remove the TCU



Step 2: Remove the imaging drum

1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).
2. Open the right door.

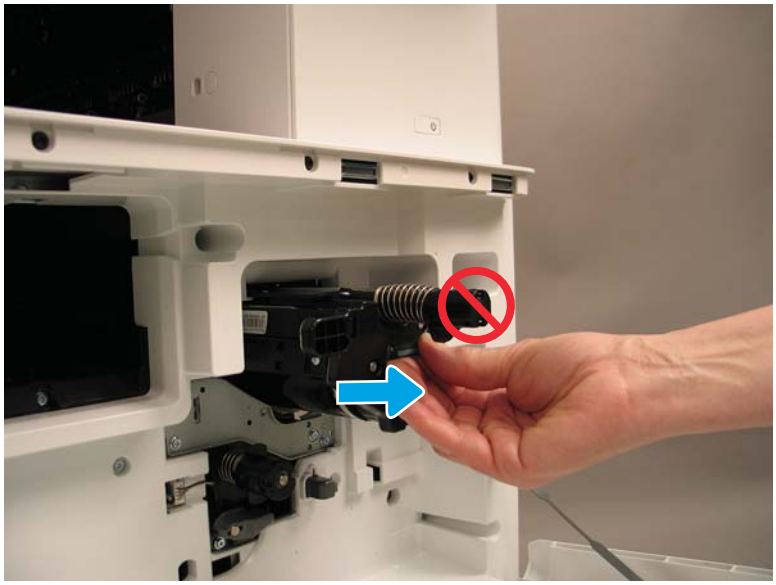
3. Loosen one screw.

Figure 3-130 Loosen one screw

4. Grip the handle and remove the drum unit.

NOTICE: Do not grip the waste toner connection when removing the drum unit.

Figure 3-131 Remove the drum unit

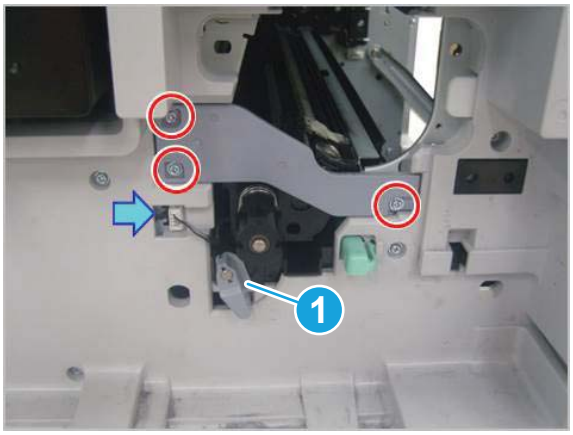


Step 3: Remove the developer unit

1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).
2. Remove the imaging drum unit.

3. Move the developer locking lever (callout 1) to the down position. Remove three screws to release the bracket, and then disconnect the small, black cable connector .

Figure 3-132 Remove three screws and disconnect the small, black cable connector

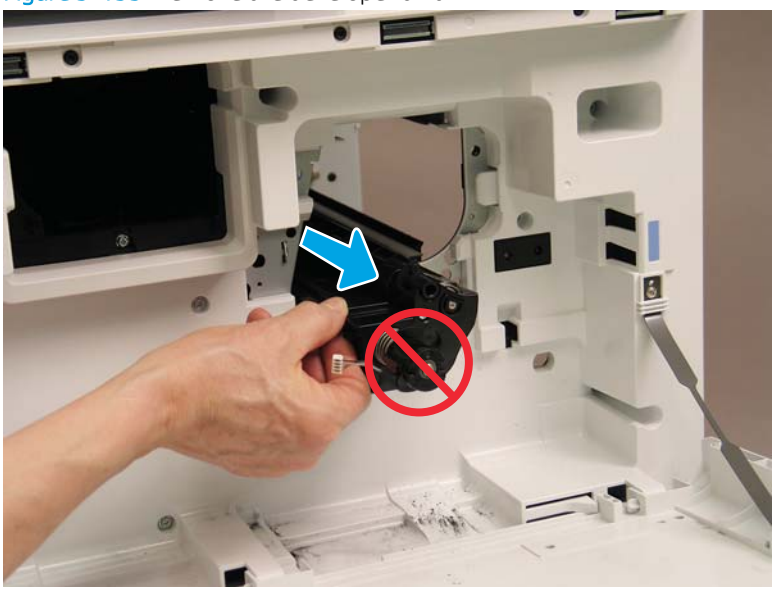


4. Hold the grip point of the developer unit and remove it.

NOTE: Do not grip the waste toner connection when removing the developer unit.

Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling the developer unit, press on the unit just above the waste toner auger, and then slide the unit into the printer.

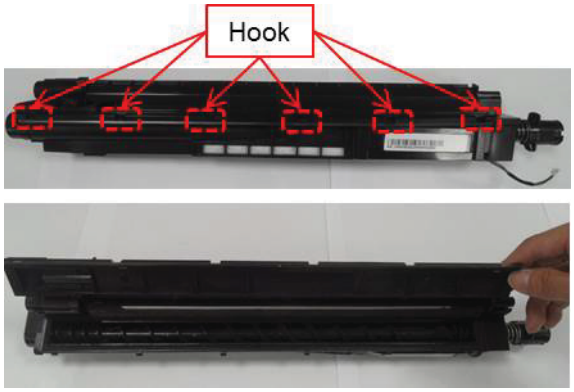
Figure 3-133 Remove the developer unit



5. Unpack the new developer unit box and check the components. In the box is a developer unit and a silver pack of developer powder.

6. Hold the cover, and then release six hooks. Open the cover.

Figure 3-134 Open the developer unit



NOTE: Before filling the developer, shake the silver pack about three times to prevent the developer powder from scattering.

7. Distribute the developer powder into the developer unit.

NOTE: When filling the developer, intermittently rock and gently shake the developer from side to side to avoid overflow.

Figure 3-135 Distribute the developer powder

8. Reinstall the developer cover.
9. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Developer unit

- After the replacement developer unit is installed, follow these instructions to reset the firmware counter:
  i. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select the Support Tools menu.
  ii. Select the Service menu.
  iii. Make sure that Service Access Code is selected in the drop-down menu, and then enter the access code (04082517).
  iv. Select the Service Tools menu.
  v. Select the Supply Status menu.
  vi. Select Field Replacement Unit.

vii. Select Development Unit (Developer) (YMCK).

viii. Select the check box on the right side of the screen for the Black Developer Unit.

ix. Select Reset.

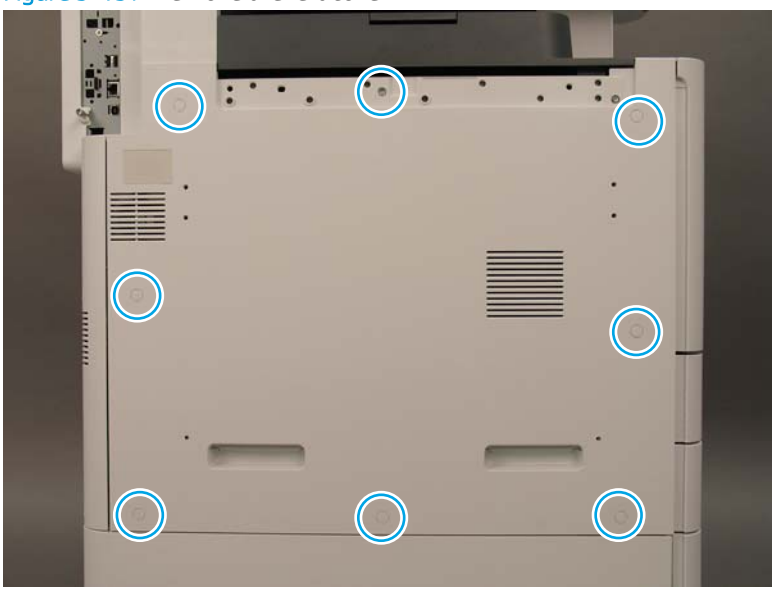
Step 4: Remove the left cover

1. Remove the left-dummy cover.

Figure 3-136 Left dummy cover

2. Remove seven screw-caps and eight screws, and lift the left cover off of the printer.

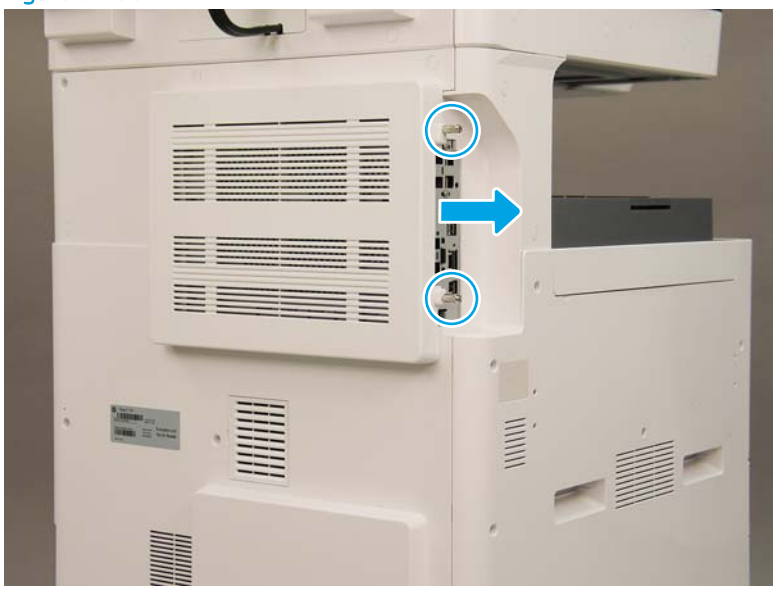
Figure 3-137 Remove the left cover



Step 5: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

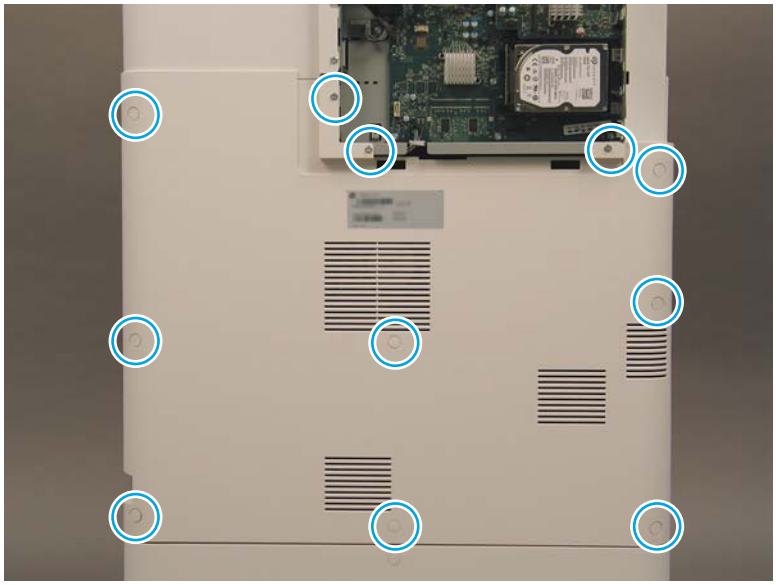
Figure 3-138 Remove the formatter cover



Step 6: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

Figure 3-139 Remove the lower rear cover

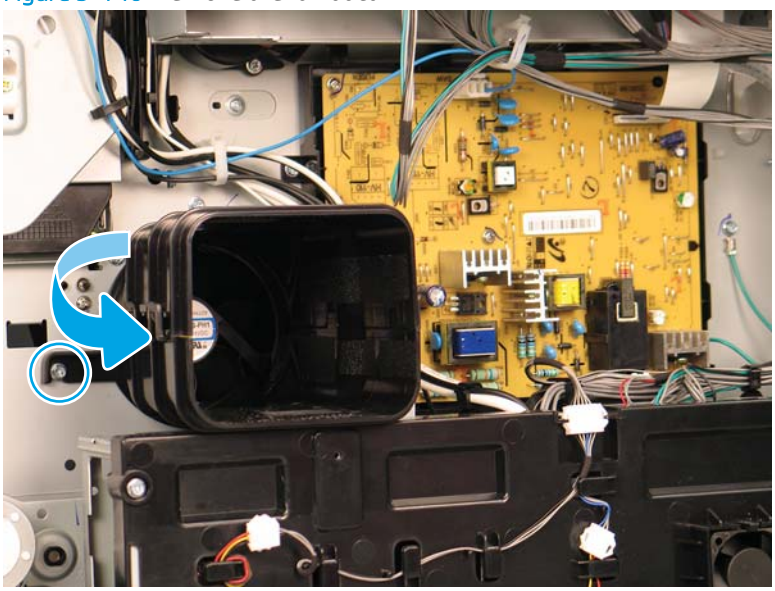


Step 7: Remove the developer fan

1. Open the right door.

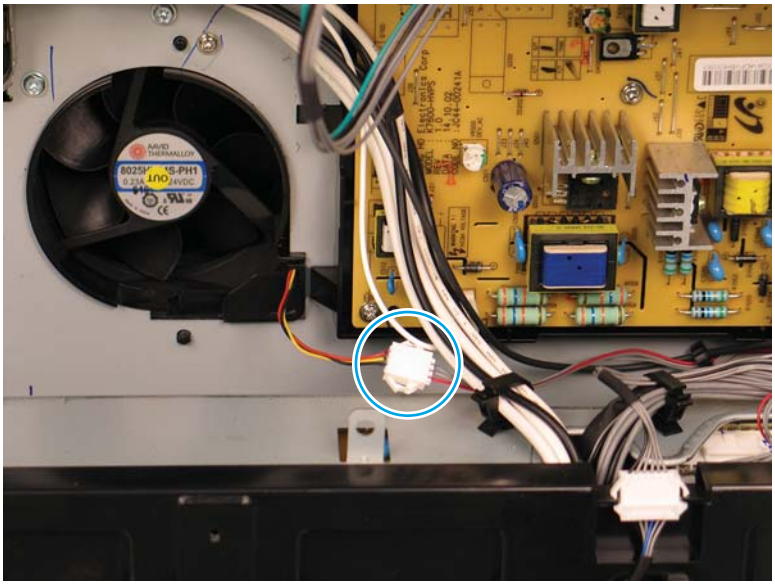
2. Remove one screw, and then rotate the fan duct to the right to remove it.

Figure 3-140 Remove the fan duct



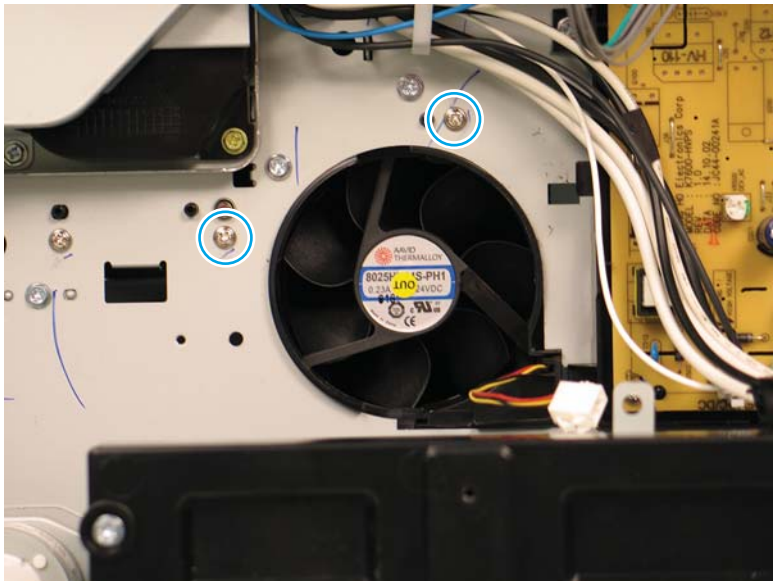
3. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 3-141 Disconnect one connector



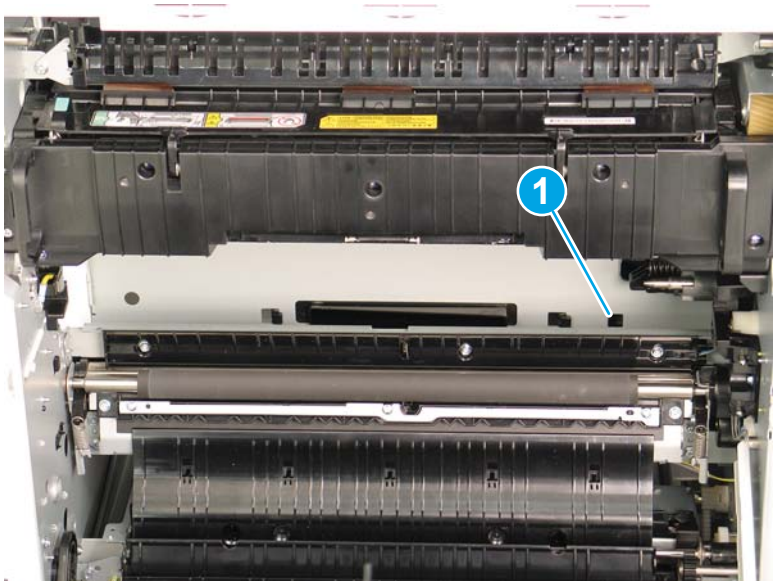
4. Remove two self-tapping screws.

Figure 3-142 Remove two screws



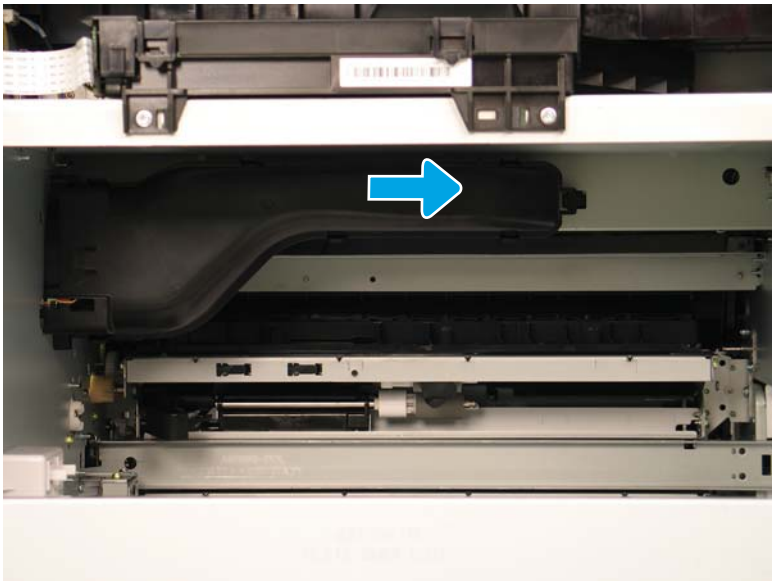
5. Inside the right door, release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 3-143 Release one tab



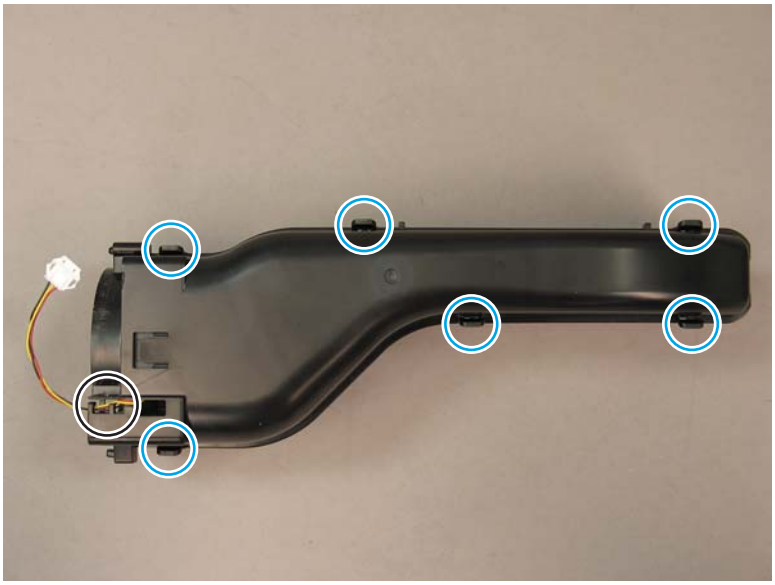
6. Inside the printer, slide the developer fan shroud toward the front of the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-144 Remove the developer fan shroud



7. Release the wire harness from the retainer, and then release six tabs to open the developer fan duct.

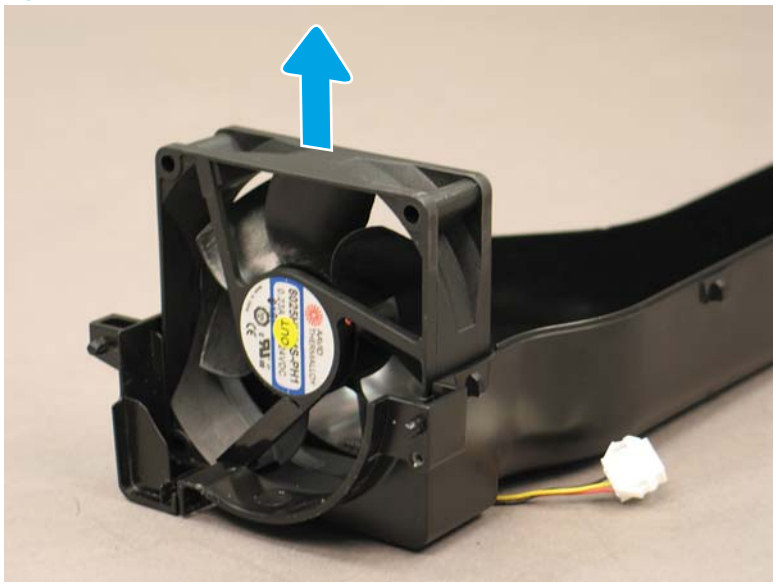
Figure 3-145 Release six tabs



8. Remove the developer fan from the duct.

Reinstallation tip: Note the orientation of the fan in the duct and install it in the same orientation when replacing it.

Figure 3-146 Remove the developer fan



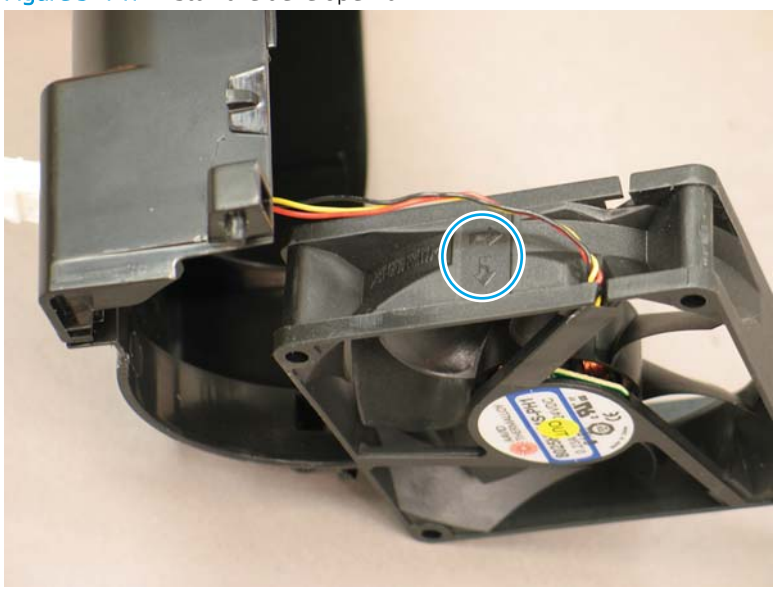
9. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Developer fan

- When reinstalling the developer fan in the fan duct, make sure that the lower embossed arrow on the fan points away from the duct and the upper embossed arrow points to the right.

Figure 3-147 Install the developer fan



NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

High voltage power supply (HVPS) board

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the left cover
- Step 3: Remove the HVPS
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the high voltage power supply (HVPS) board.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

HVPS board part number	
SAM-JC44-00240A	HVPS 24V

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 3-148 Remove the formatter cover

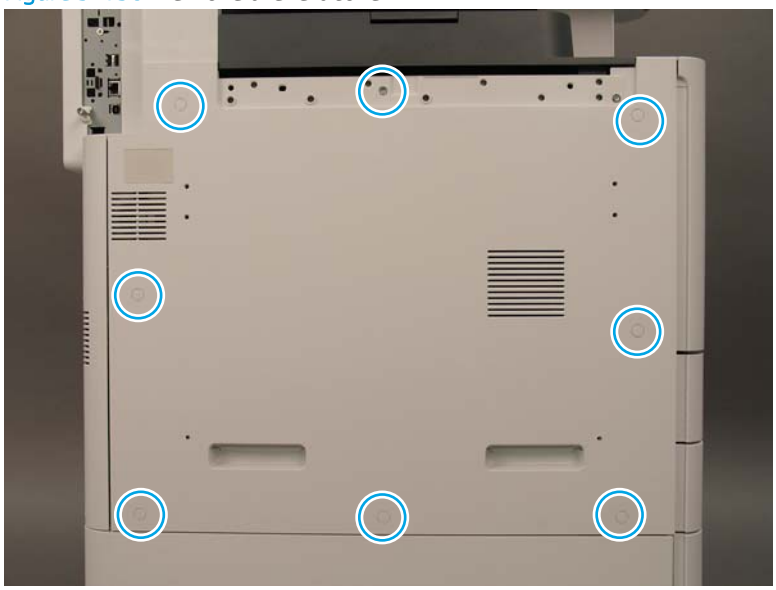
Step 2: Remove the left cover

1. Remove the left-dummy cover.

Figure 3-149 Left dummy cover

2. Remove seven screw-caps and eight screws, and lift the left cover off of the printer.

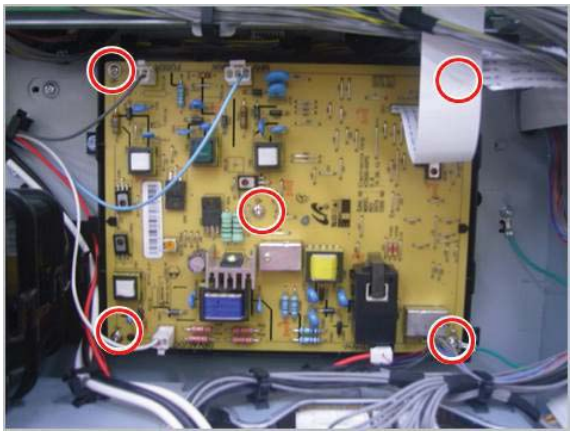
Figure 3-150 Remove the left cover



Step 3: Remove the HVPS

▲ Disconnect all connectors on the HVPS board. Remove five screws, and then remove the HVPS board.

Figure 3-151 Remove the HVPS board



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Main board

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover
- Step 4: Remove the left rear corner cover
- Step 5: Remove the formatter and cage
- Step 6: Remove the main board
- Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the main board.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Main board part number	
SAM-JC92-02922C	PCA Main Board

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

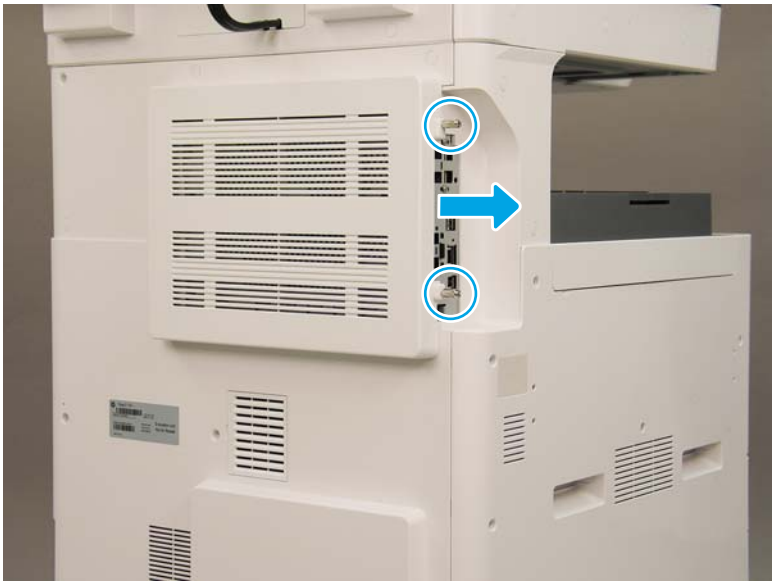
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

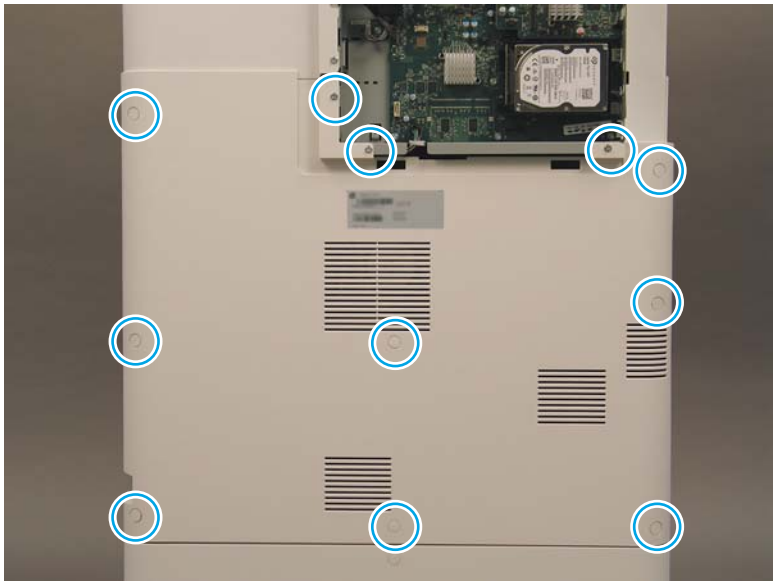
Figure 3-152 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

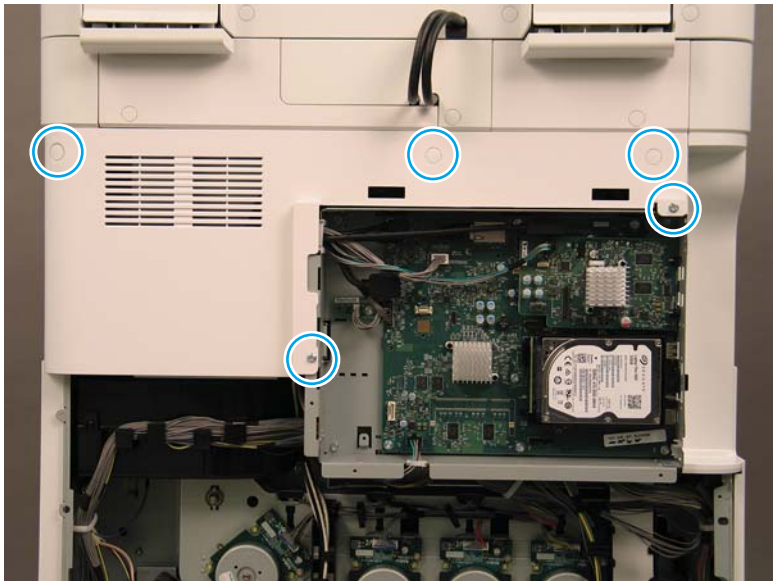
Figure 3-153 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover

▲ Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

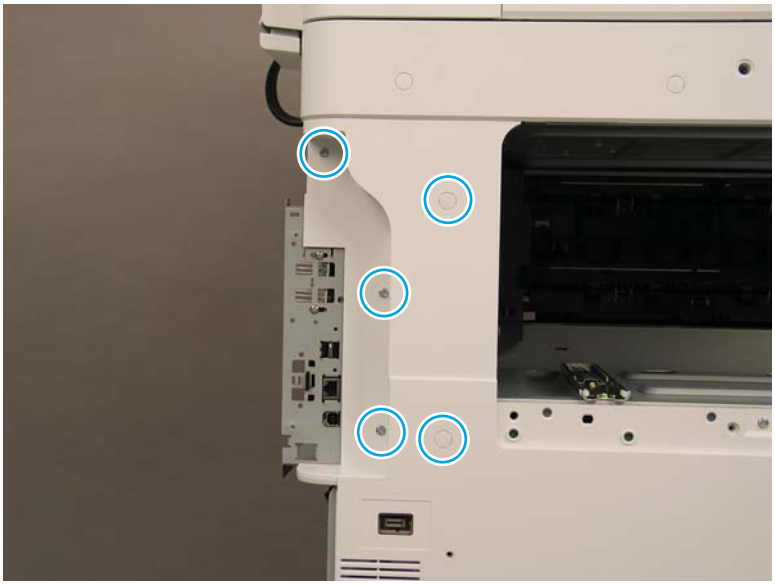
Figure 3-154 Remove the upper rear cover



Step 4: Remove the left rear corner cover

▲ Remove two screw caps and five screws. Slide the left rear corner cover up and away from the printer to remove it.

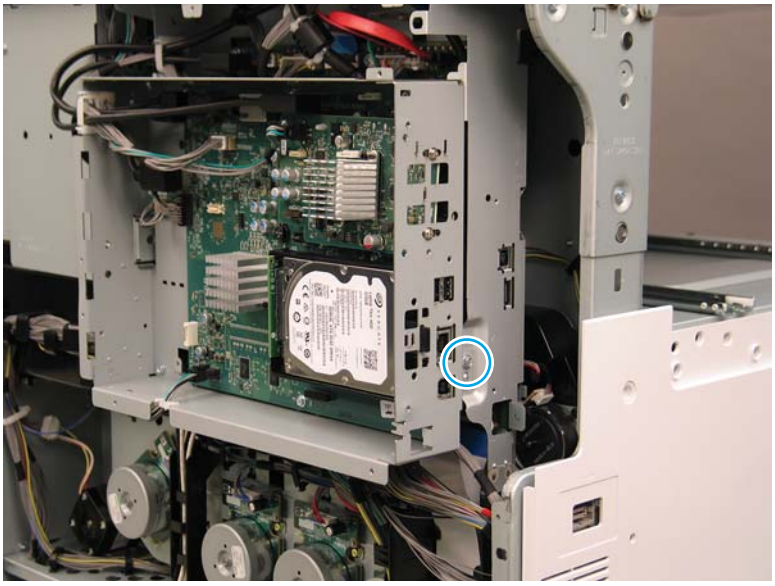
Figure 3-155 Remove the left rear corner cover



Step 5: Remove the formatter and cage

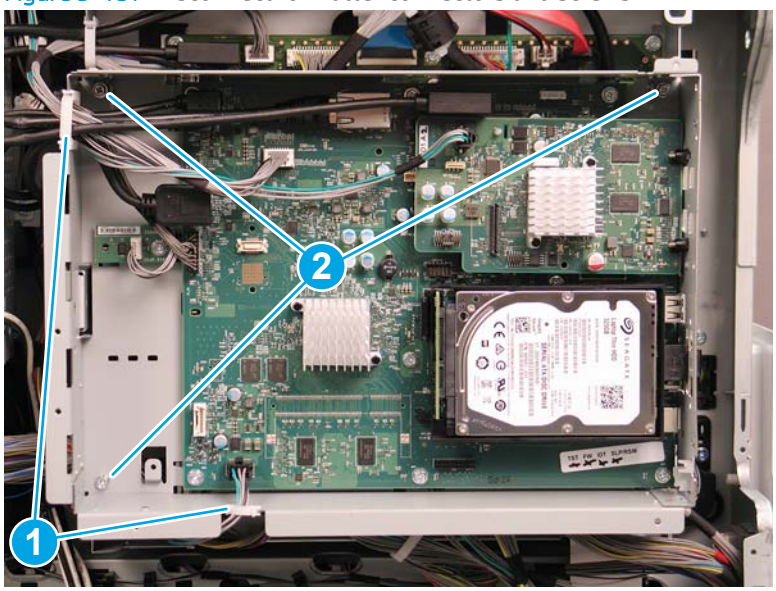
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 3-156 Remove one screw



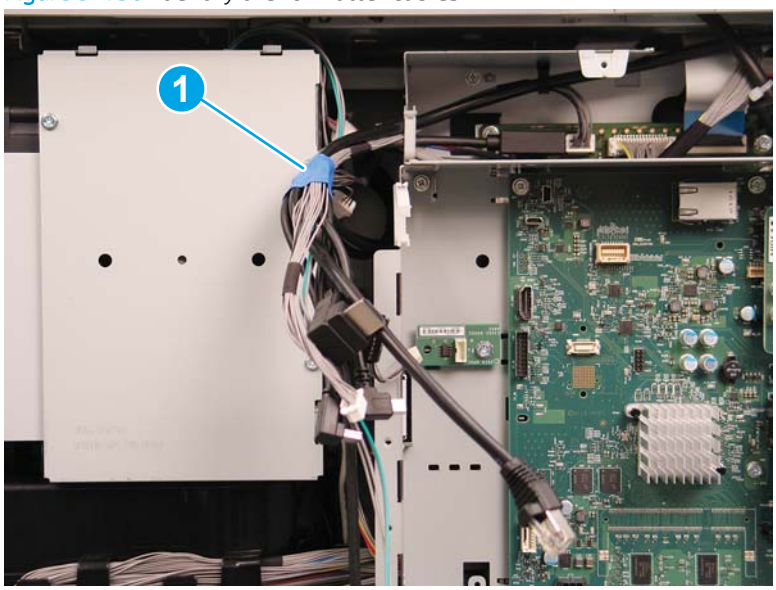
2. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter. Release the cables from two retainers on the sheet metal cage (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 3-157 Disconnect formatter connectors and screws



3. Before removing the formatter cage, place a piece of tape or a wire tie (callout 1) around the cables disconnected from the formatter on the left side. This will identify the cables that will be connected to the formatter during reassembly.

Figure 3-158 Identify the formatter cables



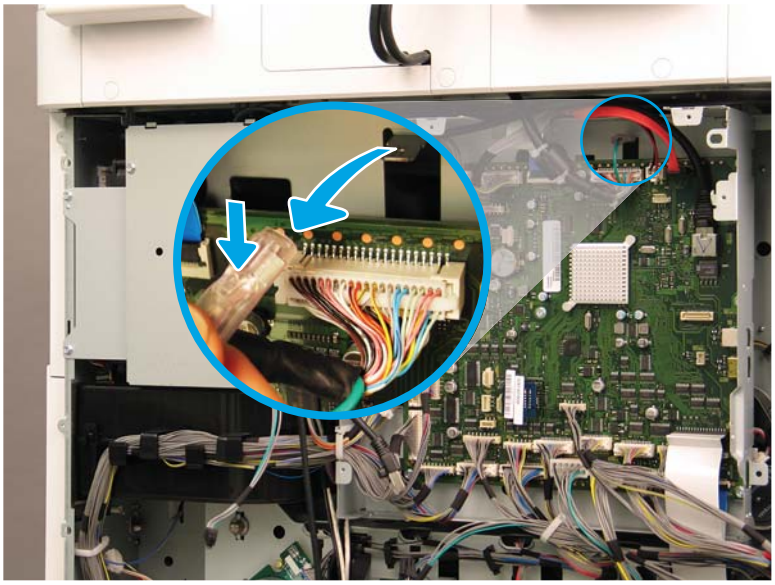
4. Lift the formatter cage up, push it to the right to clear the boss on the right side, and then pull it away from the printer to remove it.

Step 6: Remove the main board

1. One of the connectors that must be released above the main board is a spade connector. Press in on the center part of the cable connector to release the latch, and then pull the cable away from the printer to disconnect it.

IMPORTANT: Press in on the center part of the cable connector to release the latch, and then pull the cable away from the printer to disconnect it. Do not pull on connector without depressing the center latch.

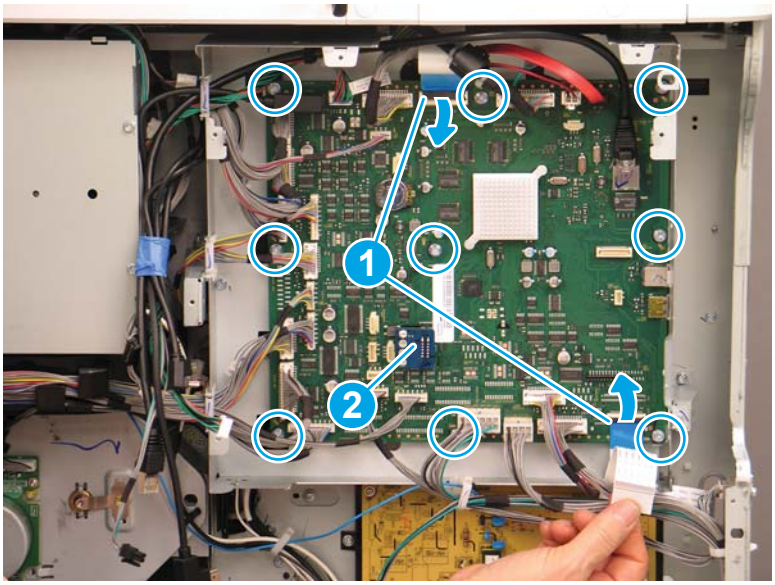
Figure 3-159 Disconnect one connector



2. Disconnect all of the remaining connectors. Two of the flat cable connectors (callout 1) are zero insertion force (ZIF) connectors. Open the latch on the connectors before removing the flat cables. Remove the MSOK board (callout 2) and install it on the replacement main board. Remove nine screws, and then remove the main board.

IMPORTANT: Do not lose or damage the MSOK chip. It must be installed on the replacement main board in the correct orientation in order for the printer to function. The MSOK chip is extremely difficult to replace if it is lost or damaged.

Figure 3-160 Remove the main board

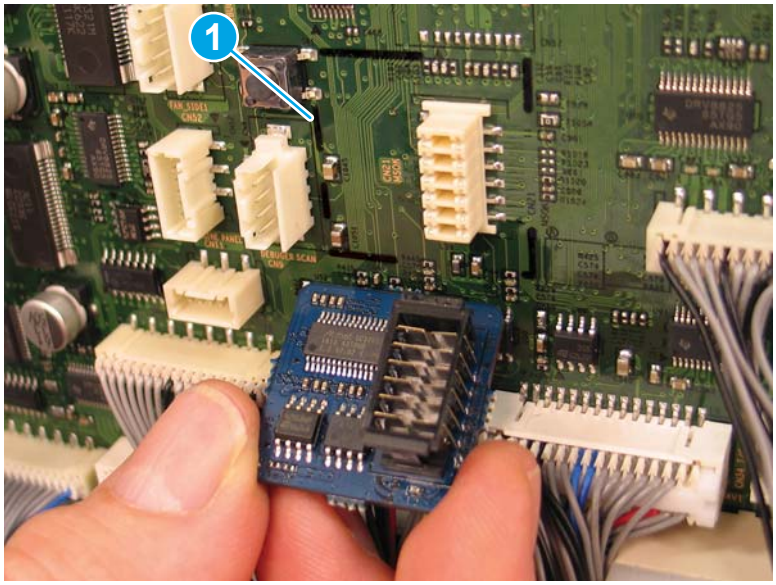


3. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Main board

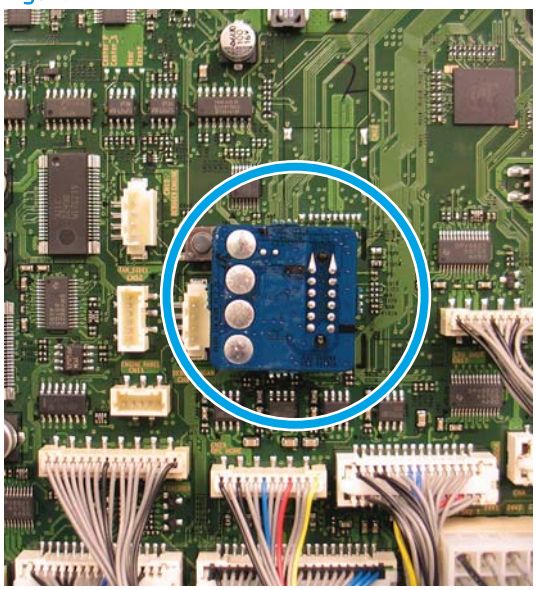
a. When reinstalling the MSOK board, note the dashed outline (callout 1) on the main board. When the MSOK board is installed correctly, it fits within this outline.

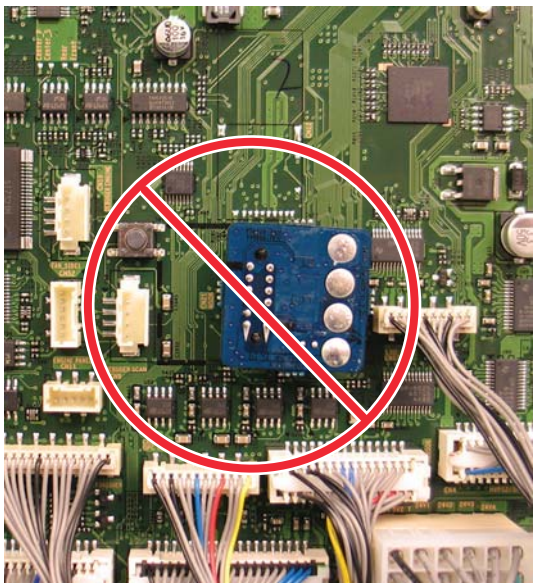
Figure 3-161 Position of MSOK board



b. Make sure that the MSOK board is installed correctly on the replacement main board.

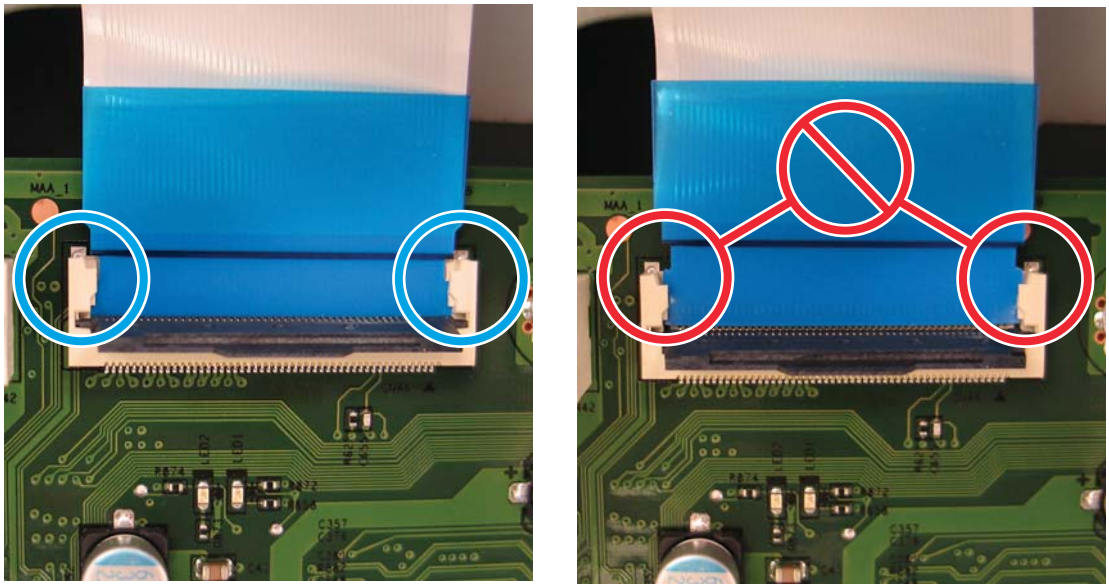
Figure 3-162 Install the MSOK board





c. When reinstalling the top flat cable, make sure that the cable is correctly installed in the ZIF connector before closing the latch to secure the cable.

Figure 3-163 Install the flat cable



NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Toner supply motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover
- Step 4: Remove the left rear corner cover
- Step 5: Remove the formatter and cage
- Step 6: Remove the main board and cage
- Step 7: Remove the toner supply motor
- Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the toner supply motor.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Toner supply drive unit part number	
SAM-JC93-01066B	Drive, Toner

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

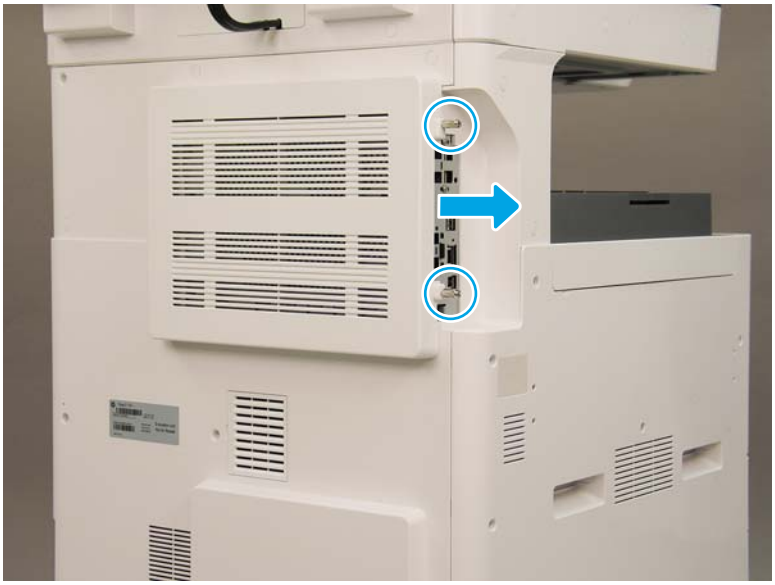
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

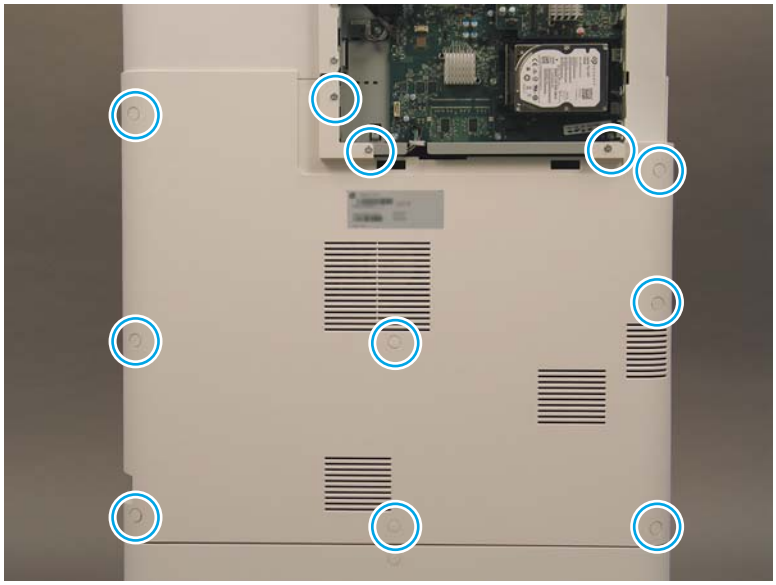
Figure 3-164 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

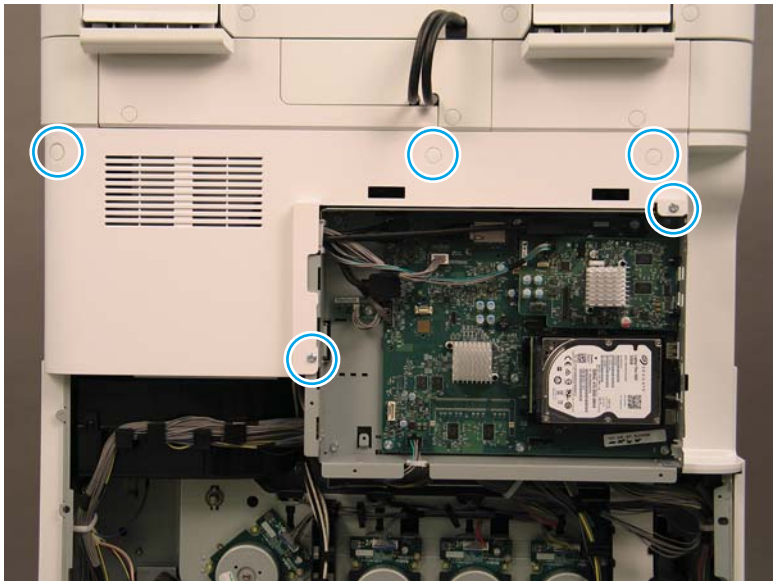
Figure 3-165 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover

- Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

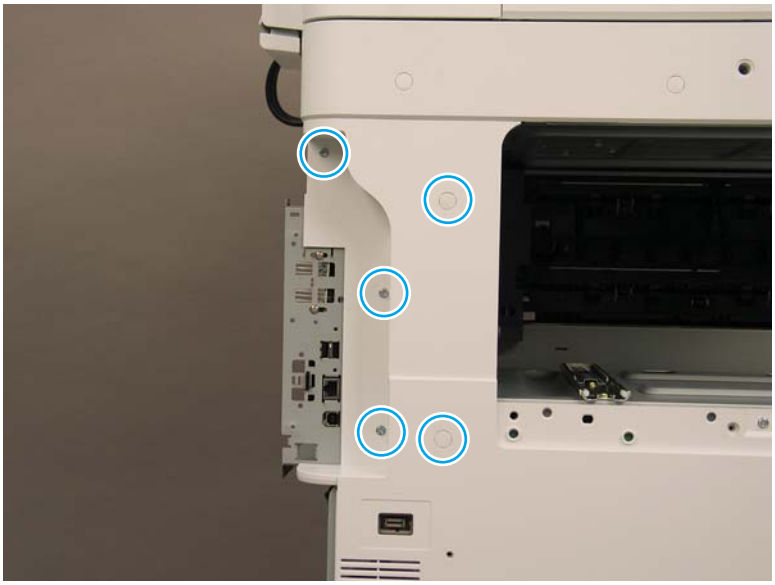
Figure 3-166 Remove the upper rear cover



Step 4: Remove the left rear corner cover

- Remove two screw caps and five screws. Slide the left rear corner cover up and away from the printer to remove it.

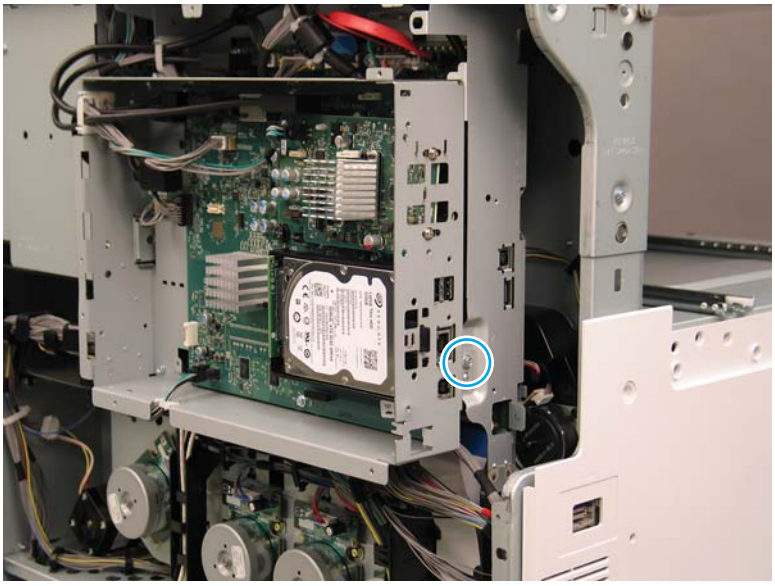
Figure 3-167 Remove the left rear corner cover



Step 5: Remove the formatter and cage

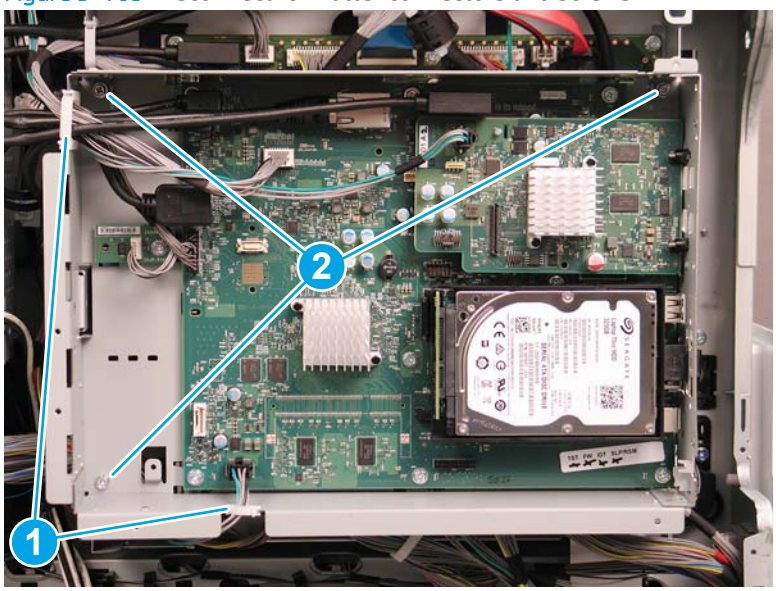
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 3-168 Remove one screw



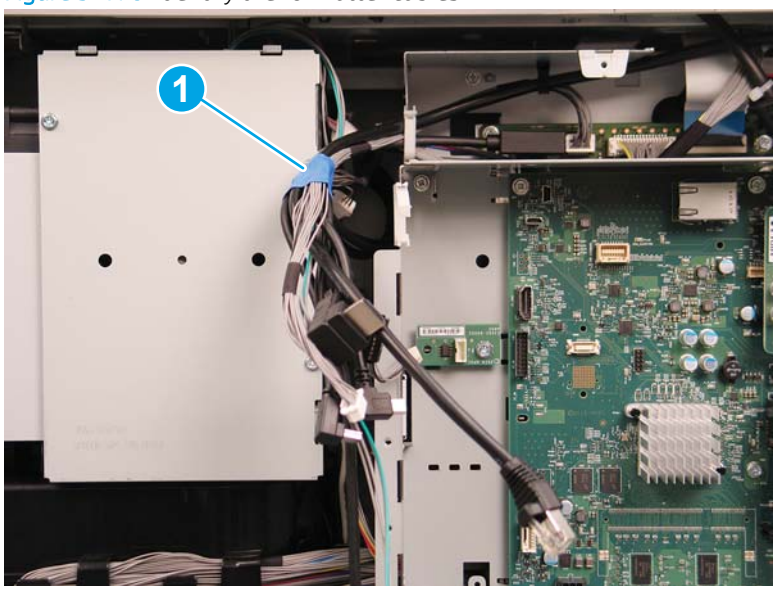
2. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter. Release the cables from two retainers on the sheet metal cage (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 3-169 Disconnect formatter connectors and screws



3. Before removing the formatter cage, place a piece of tape or a wire tie (callout 1) around the cables disconnected from the formatter on the left side. This will identify the cables that will be connected to the formatter during reassembly.

Figure 3-170 Identify the formatter cables



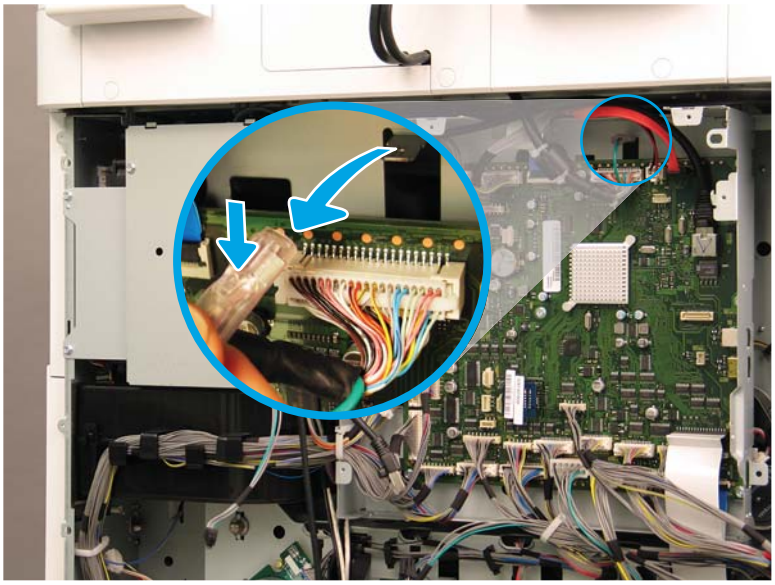
4. Lift the formatter cage up, push it to the right to clear the boss on the right side, and then pull it away from the printer to remove it.

Step 6: Remove the main board and cage

1. One of the connectors that must be released above the main board is a spade connector. Press in on the center part of the cable connector to release the latch, and then pull the cable away from the printer to disconnect it.

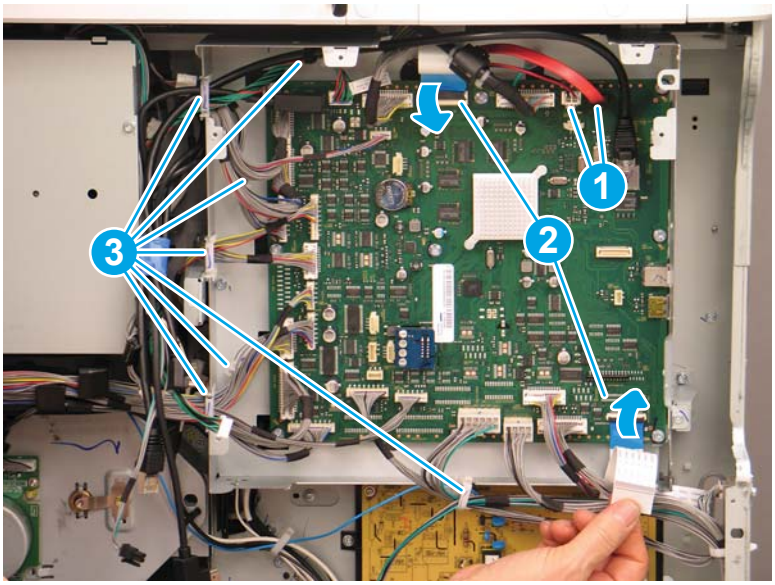
IMPORTANT: Press in on the center part of the cable connector to release the latch, and then pull the cable away from the printer to disconnect it. Do not pull on connector without depressing the center latch.

Figure 3-171 Disconnect one connector



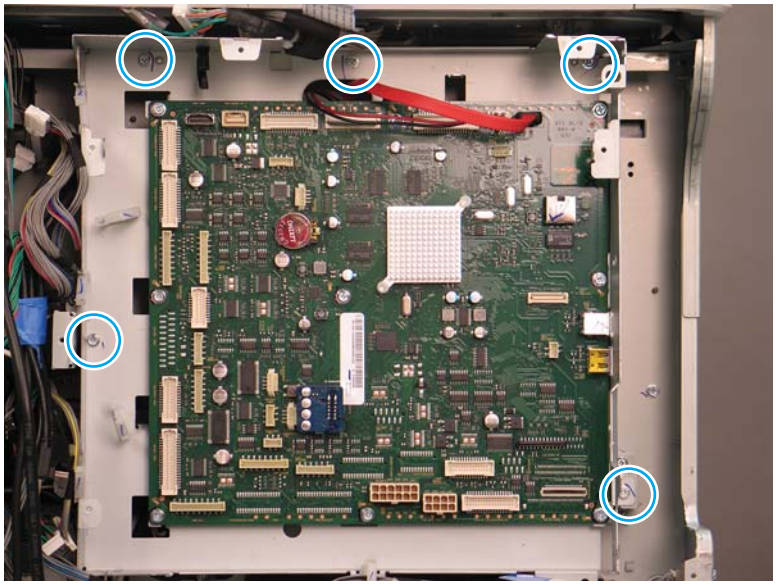
2. Do not disconnect the two hard disk drive (HDD) connectors at the top of the main board (callout 1). Disconnect all of the remaining connectors. Two of the flat cable connectors (callout 2) are zero insertion force (ZIF) connectors. Open the latch on the connectors before removing the flat cables. Release the cables from six retainers (callout 3).

Figure 3-172 Remove one screw



3. Remove five screws.

Figure 3-173 Remove five screws

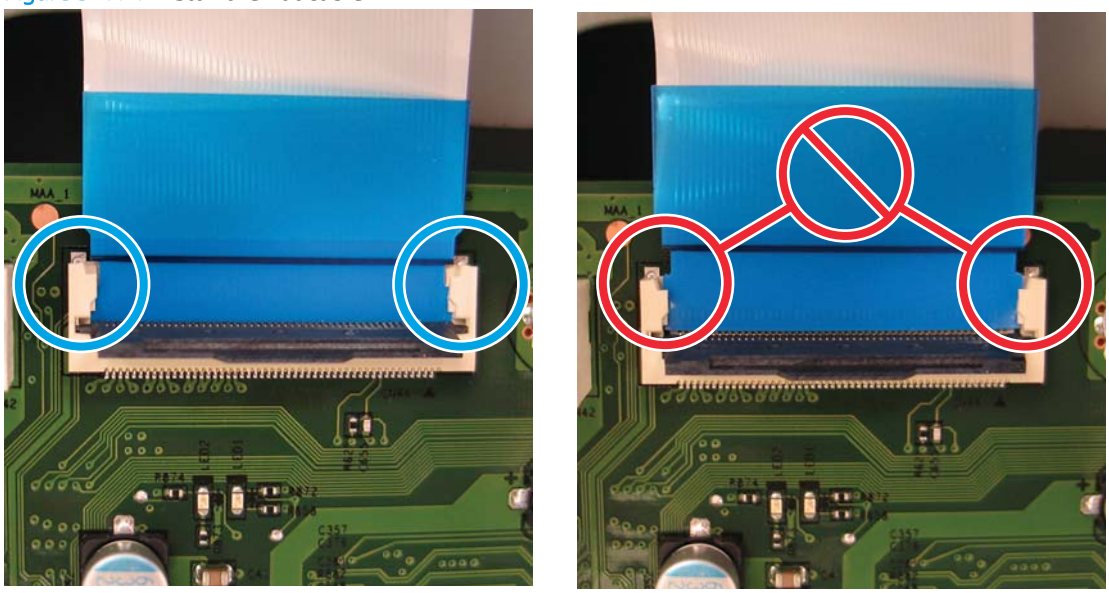


4. Lift the main board cage up, and then rotate the lower edge of the cage away from the printer to remove it.
5. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Main board and cage

- When reinstalling the top flat cable, make sure that the cable is correctly installed in the ZIF connector before closing the latch to secure the cable.

Figure 3-174 Install the flat cable



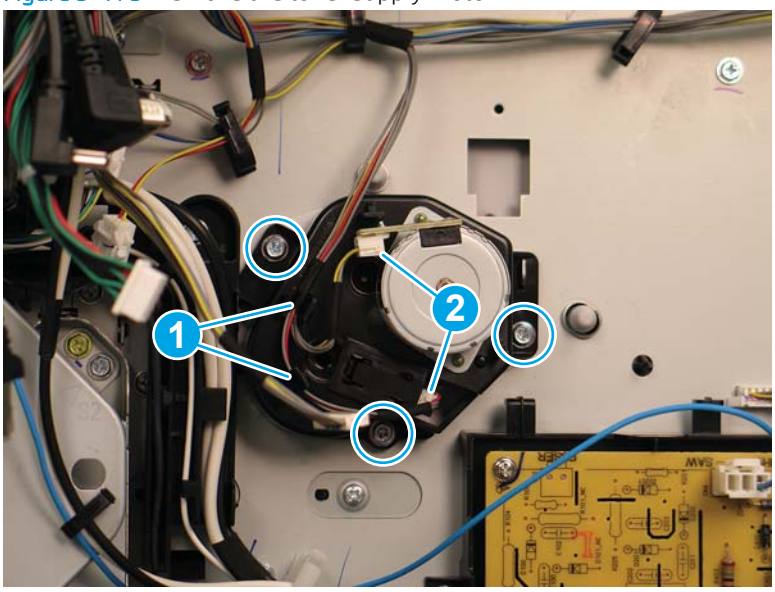
NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 7: Remove the toner supply motor

1. Remove the toner cartridge.

2. Remove the wire harness from the guides (callout 1), and then disconnect two connectors (callout 2). Remove two screws, and then remove the toner supply motor.

Figure 3-175 Remove the toner supply motor



Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

CRUM connector

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the front cover
- Step 2: Remove the front top inner cover
- Step 3: Remove the front power cover
- Step 4: Remove the output bin
- Step 5: Remove the toner collection unit
- Step 6: Remove the paper dust brush
- Step 7: Remove the inner front cover
- Step 8: Remove the left cover
- Step 9: Remove the CRUM connector
- Step 10: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the CRUM connector.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

CRUM connector part number
CRUM connector

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

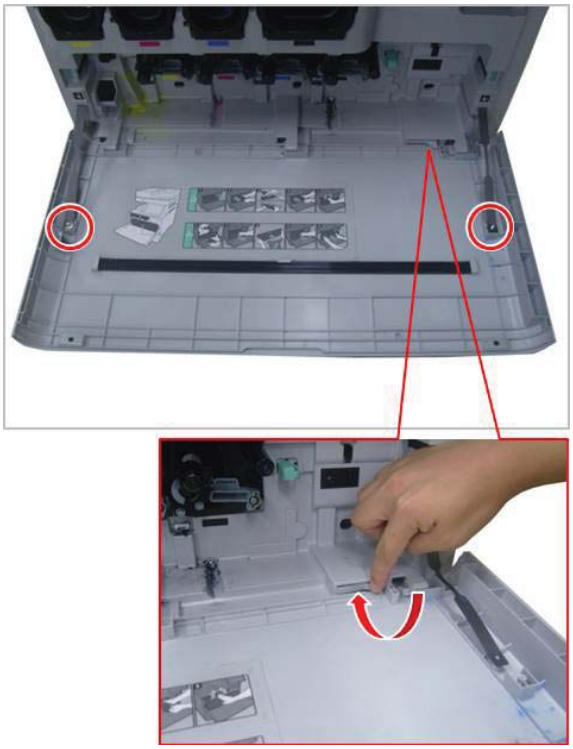
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the front cover

- Remove two screws securing the front cover. While pushing the right hook, remove the front cover.

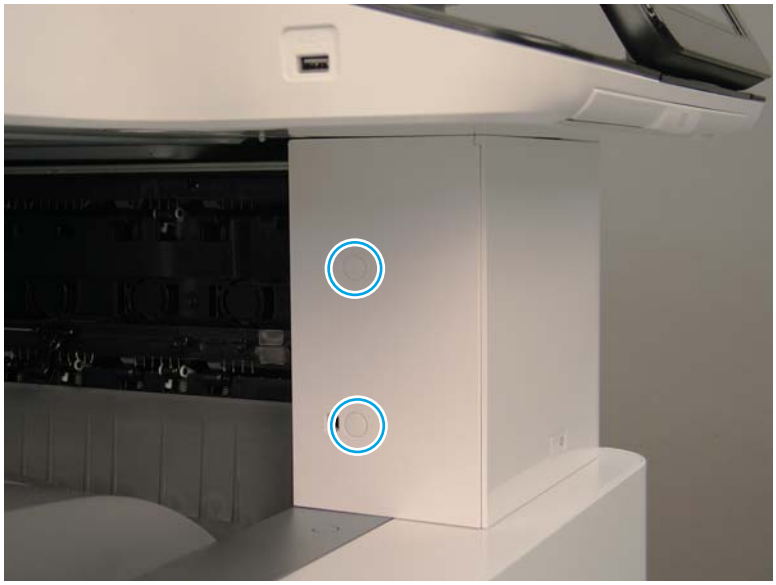
Figure 3-176 Remove the front cover



Step 2: Remove the front top inner cover

- Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-177 Remove the front top inner cover



Step 3: Remove the front power cover

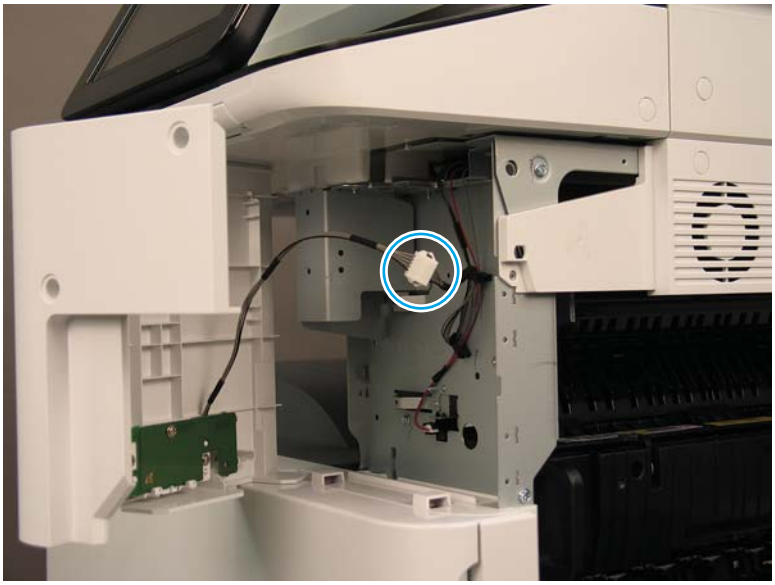
1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 3-178 Remove two screws and rotate the cover

2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-179 Remove the front power cover



Step 4: Remove the output bin

▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws, and then lift the output bin away from the printer to remove it.

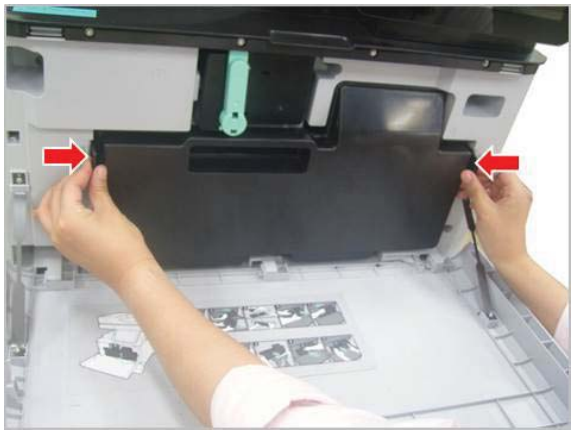
Figure 3-180 Remove the output bin

Step 5: Remove the toner collection unit

1. Open the front cover.

2. Push both hooks to release the toner collection unit (TCU).

Figure 3-181 Remove the TCU



Step 6: Remove the paper dust brush

▲ Remove the paper dust brush.

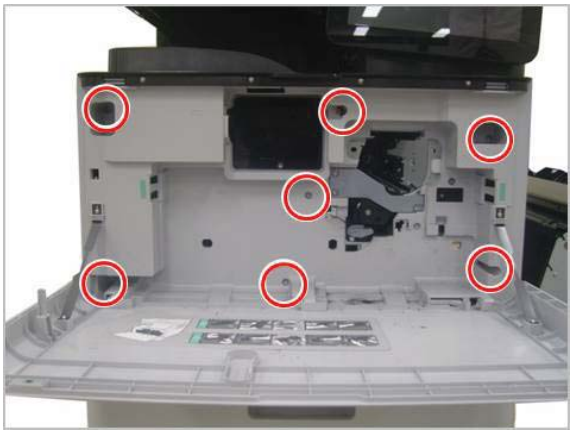
Figure 3-182 Remove the paper dust brush

Step 7: Remove the inner front cover

1. Remove the toner cartridge.
2. Open the right door.

3. Remove seven screws.

Figure 3-183 Screw locations

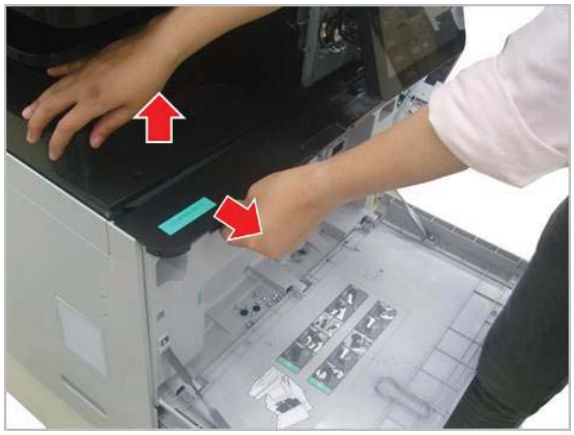


4. Remove two screw caps and two screws on the output bin.

Figure 3-184 Remove two screw caps and two screws

5. Remove the inner front cover while lifting the output bin.

Figure 3-185 Remove the inner front cover



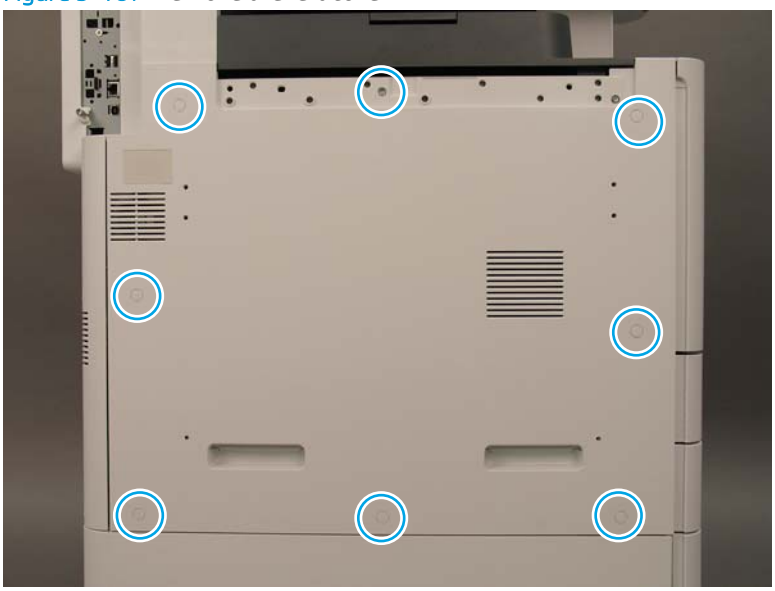
Step 8: Remove the left cover

1. Remove the left-dummy cover.

Figure 3-186 Left dummy cover

2. Remove seven screw-caps and eight screws, and lift the left cover off of the printer.

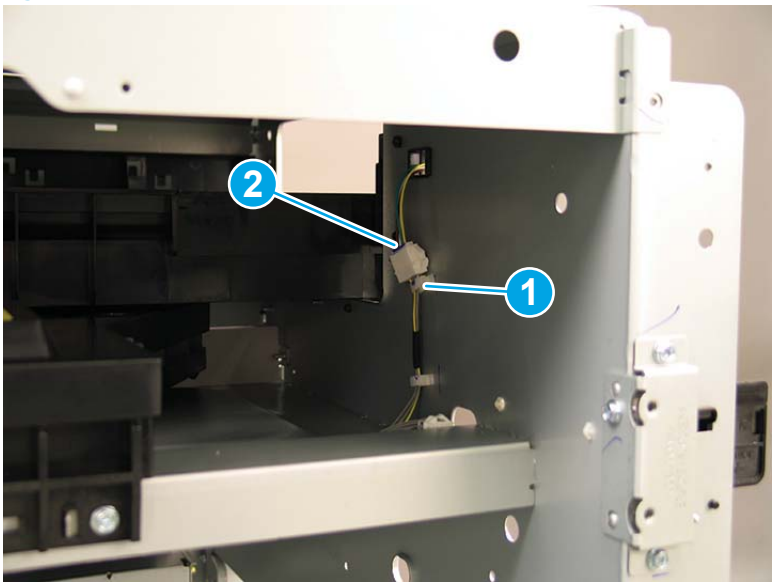
Figure 3-187 Remove the left cover



Step 9: Remove the CRUM connector

1. Inside the left cover, release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2).

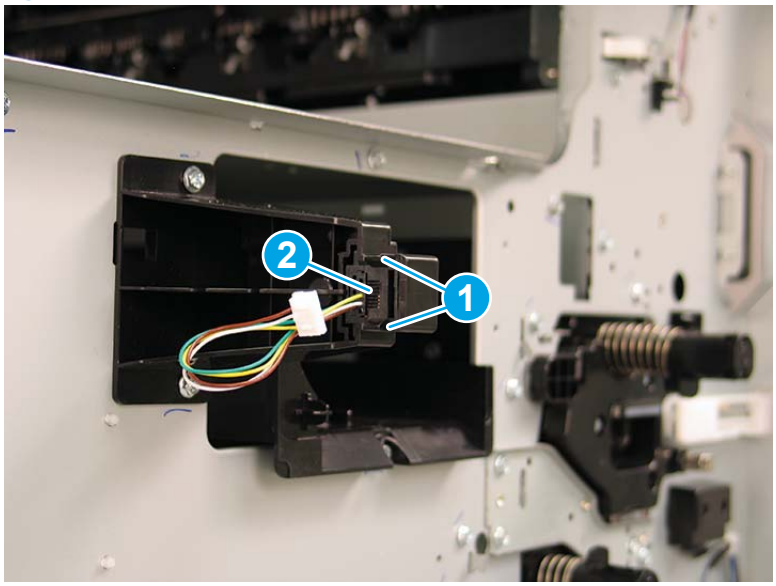
Figure 3-188 Disconnect one connector



2. At the front of the printer, release two tabs (callout 1), and then remove the CRUM connector (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 3-189 Remove the crum connector



Step 10: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Low voltage power supply (LVPS) fans

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the LVPS fans
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the low voltage power supply (LVPS) fans.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Low voltage power supply (LVPS) fans part number
Low voltage power supply (LVPS) fans

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

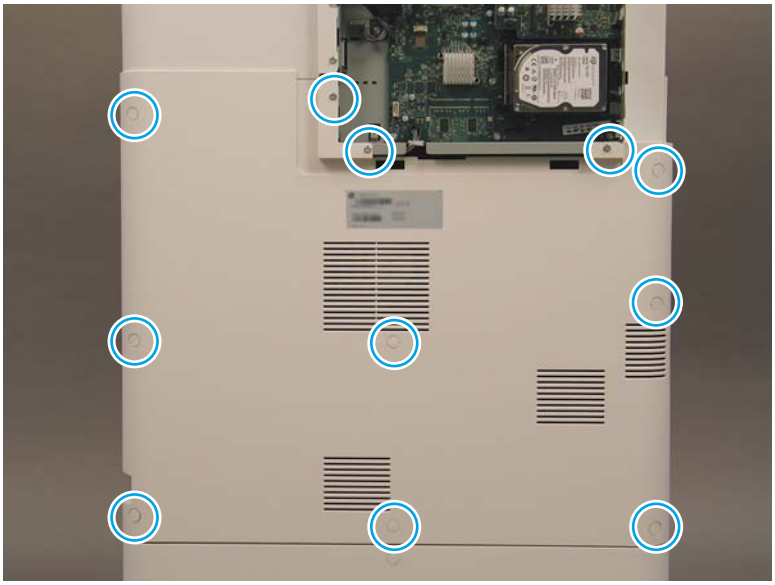
- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 3-190 Remove the formatter cover

Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

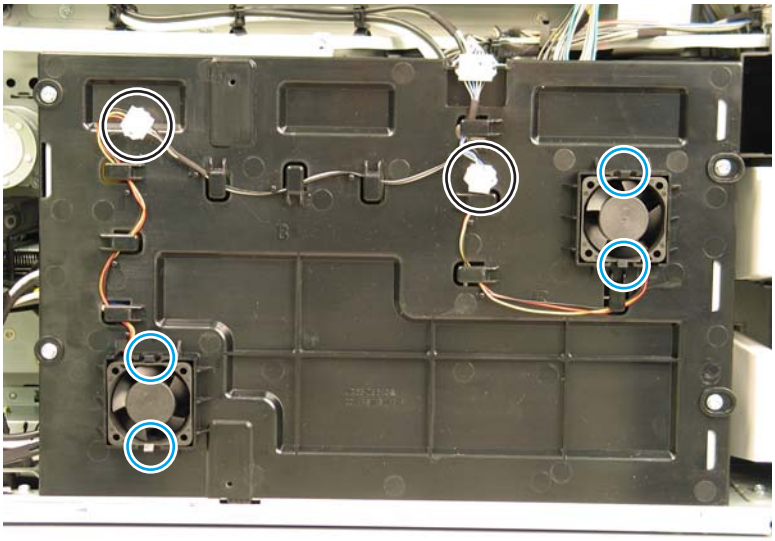
Figure 3-191 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the LVPS fans

1. Disconnect two connectors, release four tabs, and then remove the LVPS fans.

Figure 3-192 Remove the LVPS fans

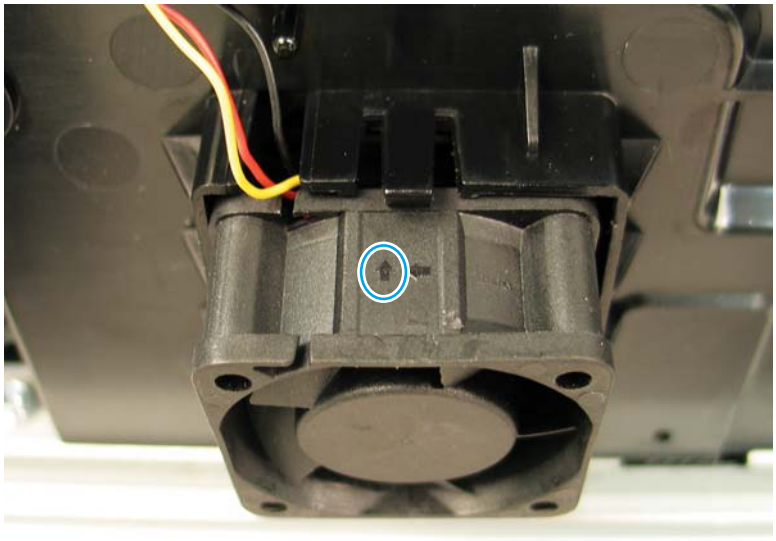


2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: LVPS fans

- When installing the replacement fans, make sure that the embossed arrow on the fans point toward the printer.

Figure 3-193 Correct installation of LVPS fans



NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Low voltage power supply (LVPS) board 1

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover
- Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 1
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the low voltage power supply (LVPS) board 1.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

LVPS board 1 part number	
SAM-JC44-00091D	LVPS 110V Type 4
SAM-JC44-00092D	LVPS 220V Type 4

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

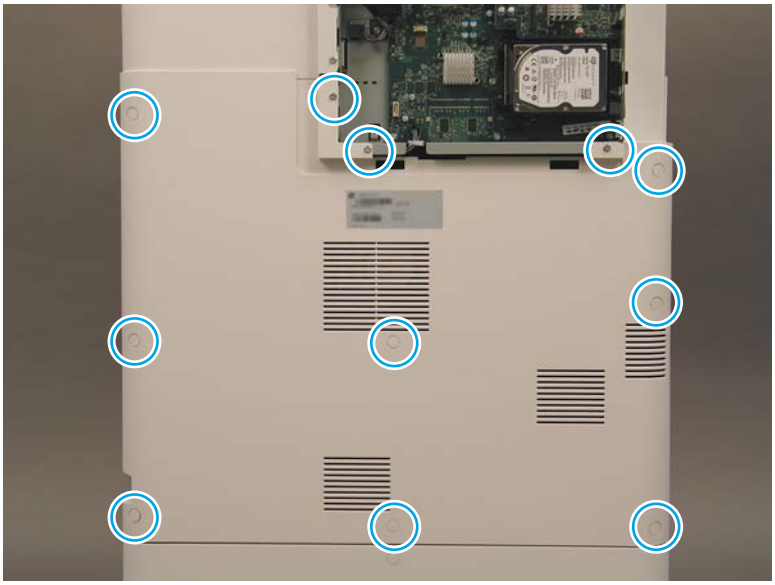
▲ Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 3-194 Remove the formatter cover

Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

▲ Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

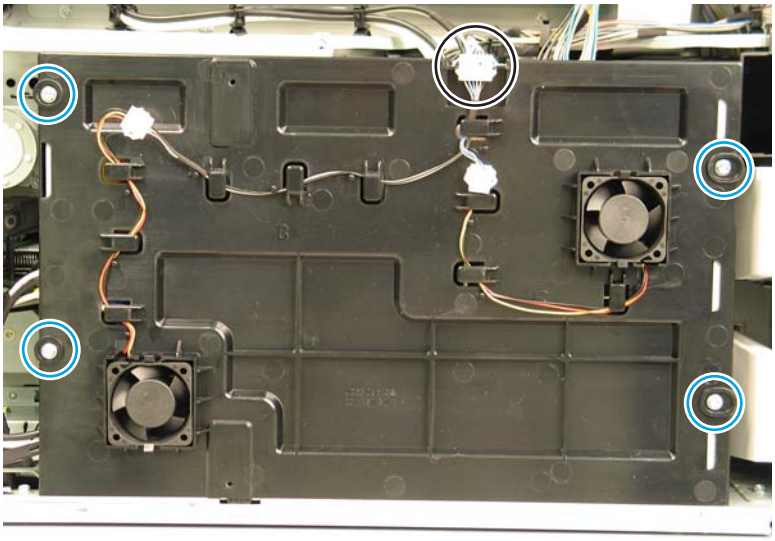
Figure 3-195 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover

▲ Disconnect one connector, and then remove four screws. Slide the LVPS cover to the left, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-196 Remove the LVPS cover



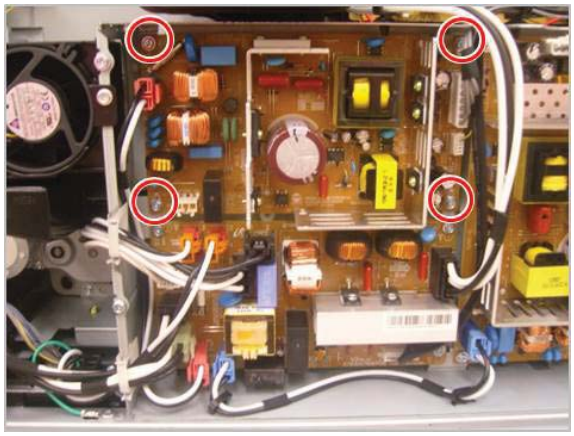
Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 1

⚠ WARNING! Wait five minutes after turning the printer off to allow the capacitors to dissipate any residual energy.

NOTE: Many of the connectors on this board have retainers attached. Be sure to release the retainer before attempting to disconnect the connector.

▲ Disconnect all connectors. Remove four screws, and then remove the LVPS board 1.

Figure 3-197 Remove LVPS board 1



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Low voltage power supply (LVPS) board 2

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover
- Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 2
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the low voltage power supply (LVPS) board 2.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

LVPS board 2 part number	
SAM-JC44-00100D	LVPS board 2

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

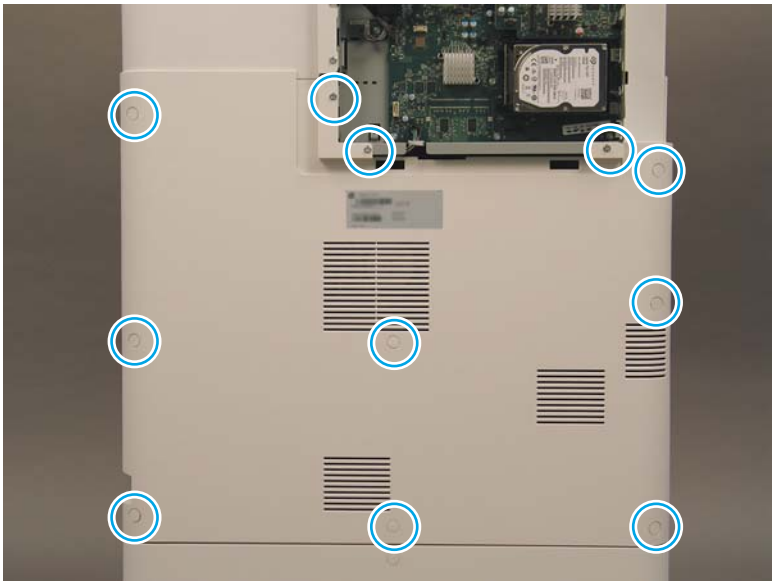
- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 3-198 Remove the formatter cover

Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

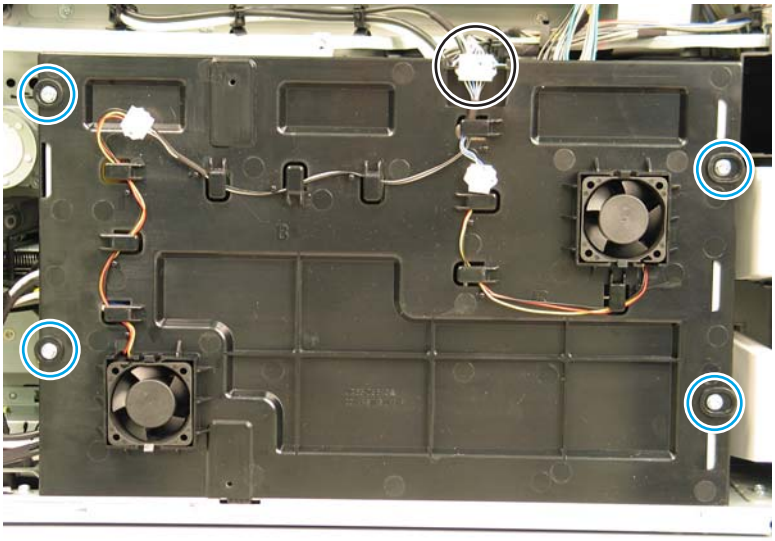
Figure 3-199 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover

▲ Disconnect one connector, and then remove four screws. Slide the LVPS cover to the left, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-200 Remove the LVPS cover



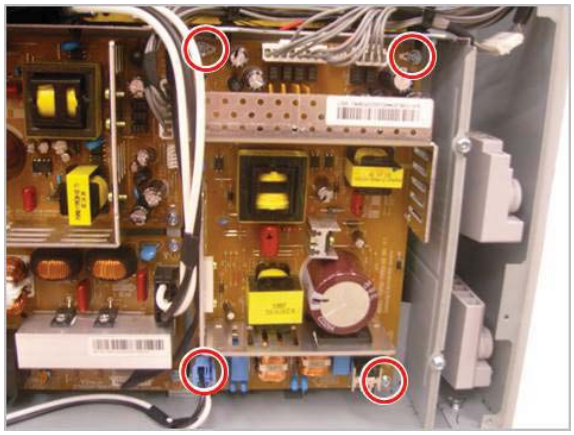
Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 2

⚠ WARNING! Wait five minutes after turning the printer off to allow the capacitors to dissipate any residual energy.

NOTE: Many of the connectors on this board have retainers attached. Be sure to release the retainer before attempting to disconnect the connector.

▲ Disconnect all connectors. Remove four screws, and then remove the LVPS board 2.

Figure 3-201 LVPS board 2



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Low voltage power supply (LVPS) board 3

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover
- Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 3
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the low voltage power supply (LVPS) board 3.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

LVPS board 3 part number	
SAM-JC44-00091D	LVPS 110V Type 4
SAM-JC44-00092D	LVPS 220V Type 4

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

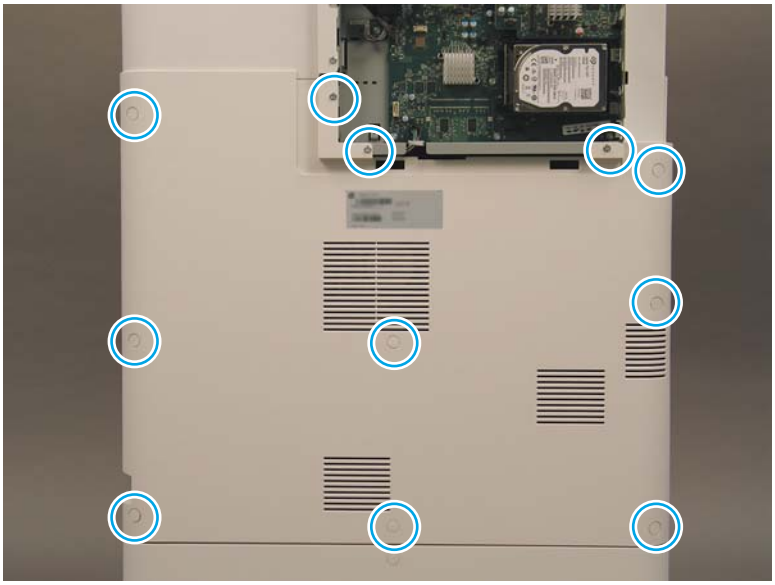
- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 3-202 Remove the formatter cover

Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

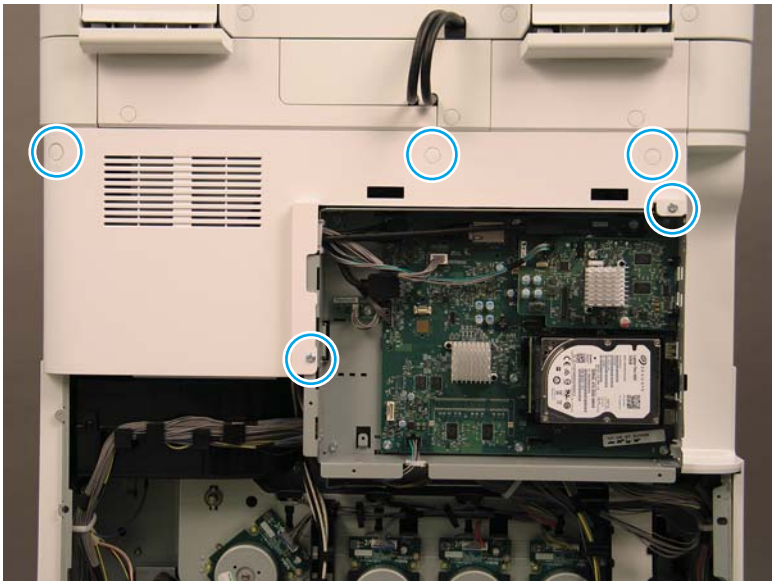
Figure 3-203 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover

▲ Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-204 Remove the upper rear cover



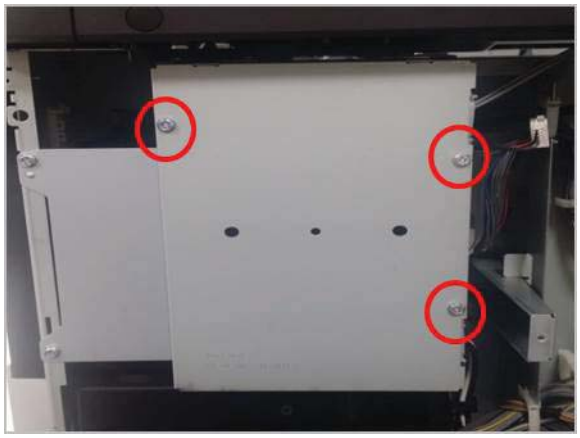
Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 3

⚠ WARNING! Wait five minutes after turning the printer off to allow the capacitors to dissipate any residual energy.

NOTE: Many of the connectors on this board have retainers attached. Be sure to release the retainer before attempting to disconnect the connector.

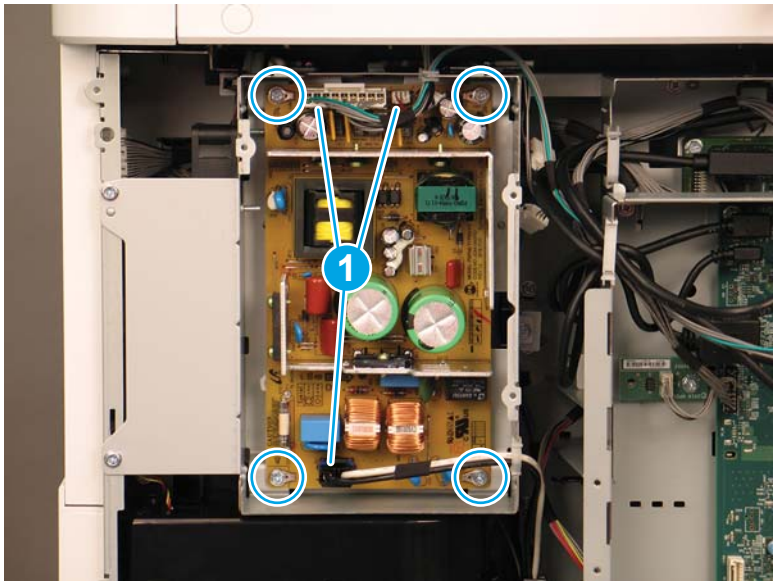
1. Remove three screws, then remove the shield-LVPS sub upper.

Figure 3-205 Remove the shield-LVPS sub upper



2. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), remove four screws, and then remove the LVPS board 3.

Figure 3-206 LVPS board 3



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Fuser drive board

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover
- Step 4: Remove the fuser drive board
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the fuser drive board.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Fuser drive board part number	
SAM-JC44-00235B	Fuser Drive Board 110V
SAM-JC44-00236B	Fuser Drive Board 220V

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

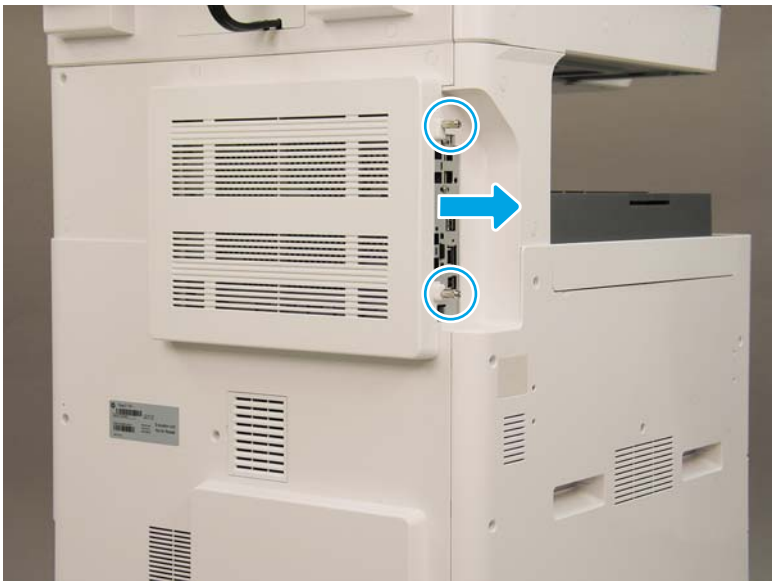
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

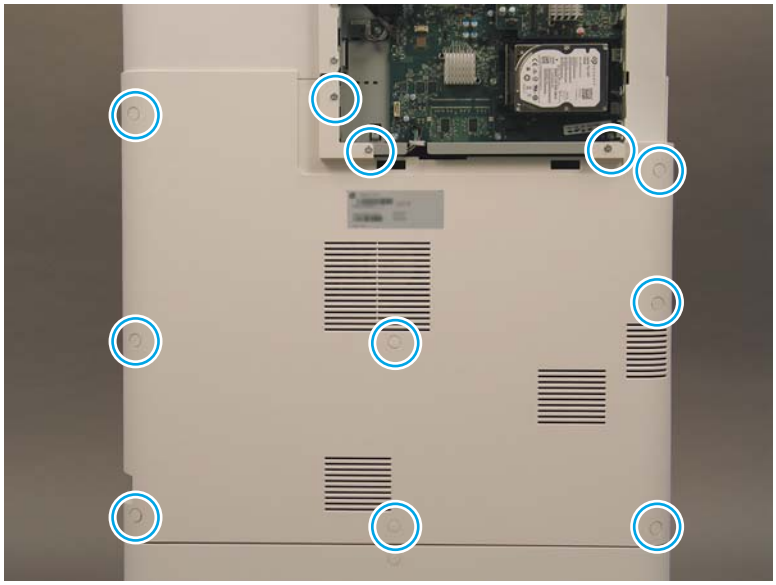
Figure 3-207 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

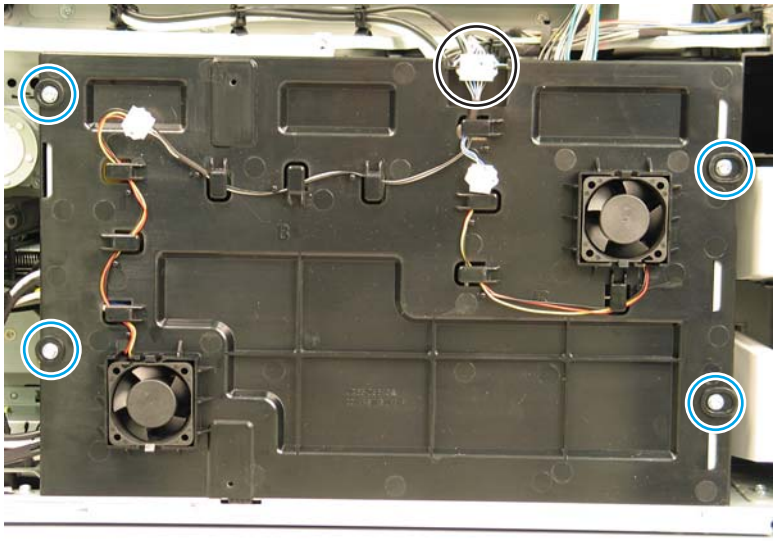
Figure 3-208 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover

▲ Disconnect one connector, and then remove four screws. Slide the LVPS cover to the left, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-209 Remove the LVPS cover



Step 4: Remove the fuser drive board

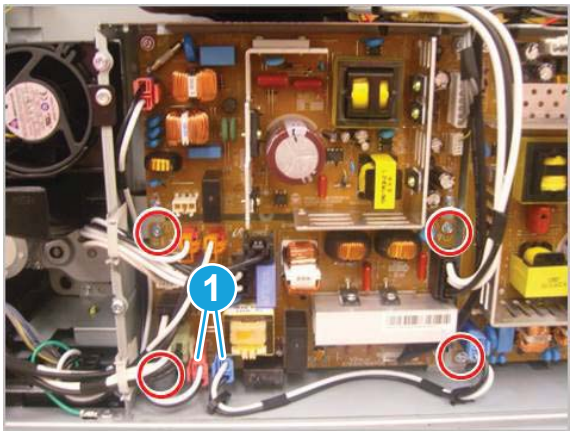
⚠ WARNING! Wait five minutes after turning the printer off to allow the capacitors to dissipate any residual energy.

NOTE: Many of the connectors on this board have retainers attached. Be sure to release the retainer before attempting to disconnect the connector.

▲ Disconnect twelve connectors and release one retainer on the lower left. Remove four screws, and then remove the fuser drive board.

Reinstallation tip: Two of the connectors (callout 1) can be mistakenly switched and connected to the wrong connector on the fuser drive board. If this happens, the printer will not power on. Make sure that the cables are installed in the correct positions.

Figure 3-210 Fuser drive board



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Fuser fan

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover
- Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 3 and cage
- Step 5: Remove the fuser fan
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the fuser fan.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Fuser fan part number	
SAM-JC31-00160C	Fan Type 6

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

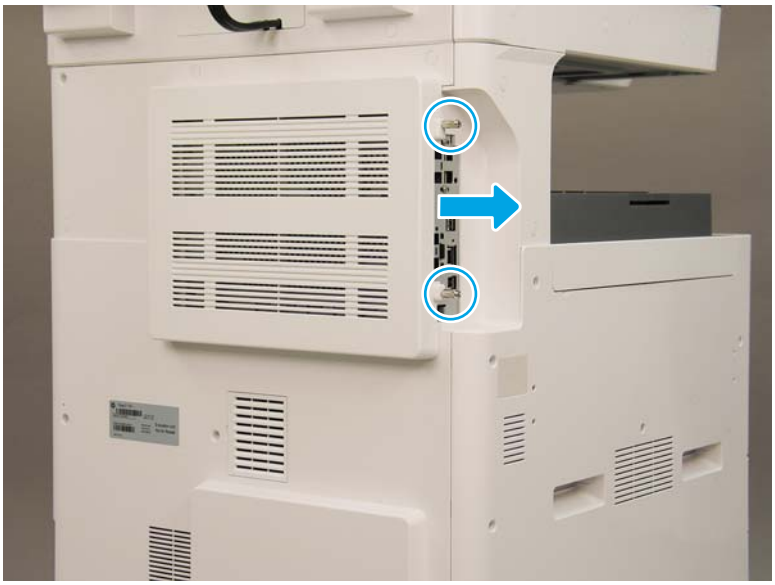
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

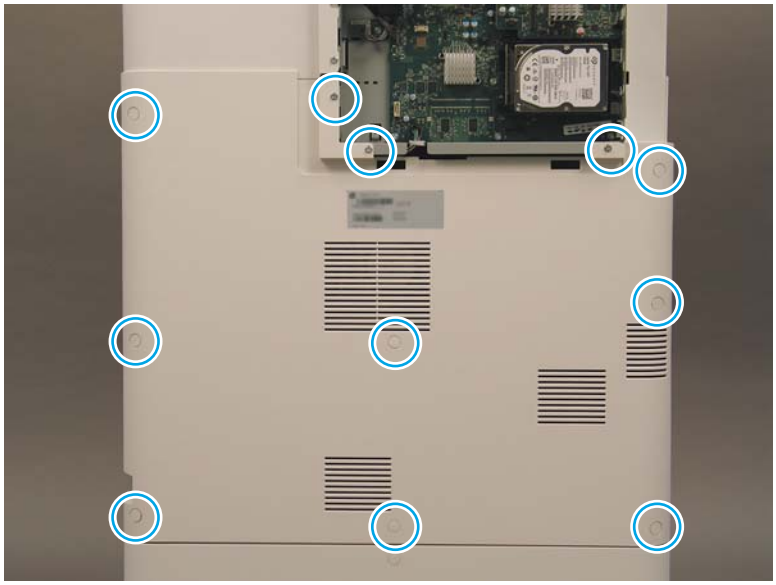
Figure 3-211 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

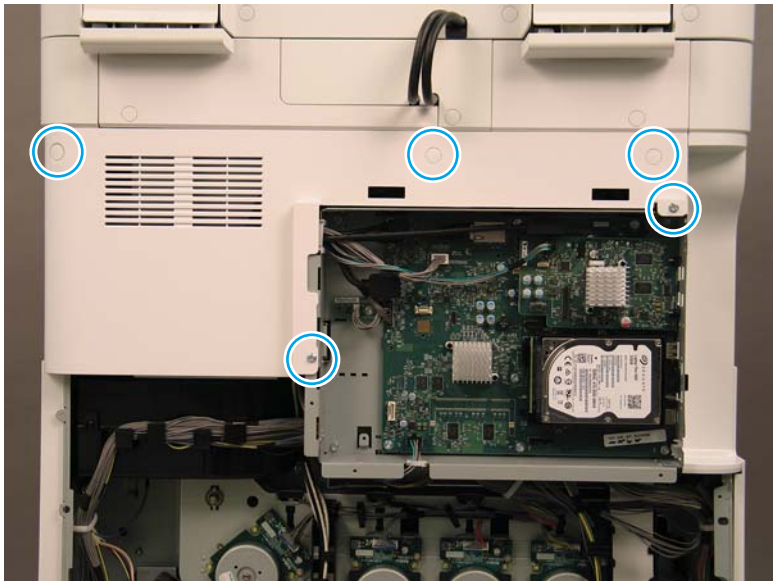
Figure 3-212 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover

▲ Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-213 Remove the upper rear cover

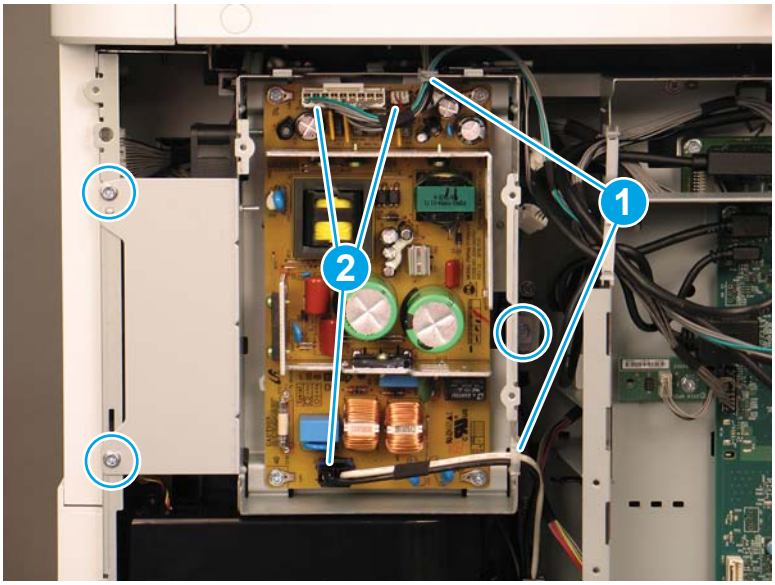


Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 3 and cage

⚠ WARNING! Wait five minutes after turning the printer off to allow the capacitors to dissipate any residual energy.

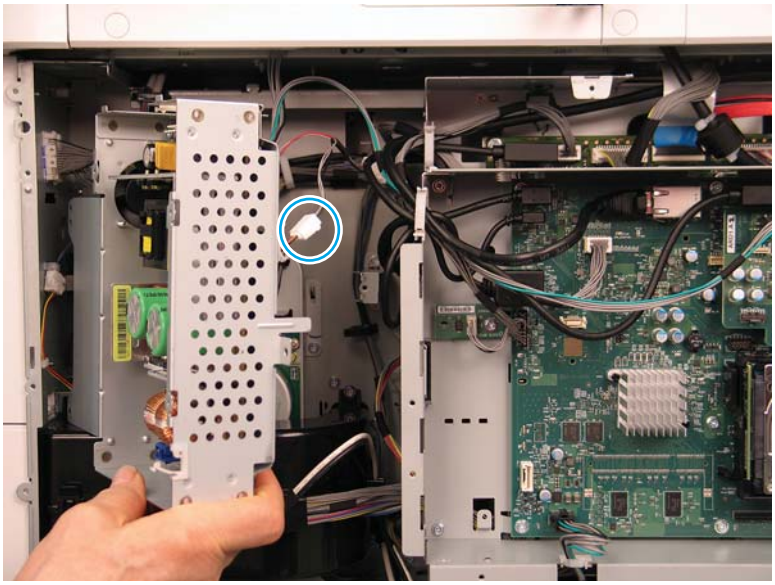
1. Release the cables from two retainers (callout 1), disconnect three connectors (callout 2), and then remove three screws.

Figure 3-214 Disconnect connectors and remove screws



2. Lift the LVPS board and cage slightly away from the printer, and disconnect one connector behind the cage. Remove the LVPS board and cage.

Figure 3-215 Disconnect one connector

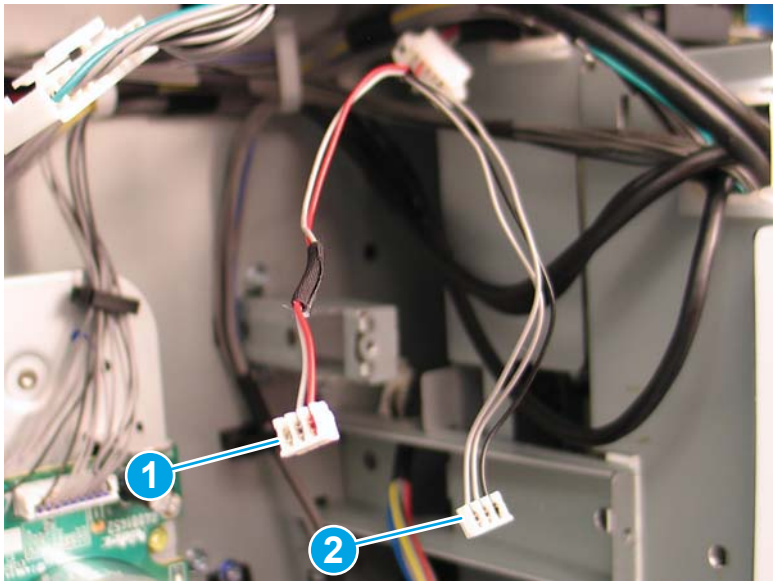


3. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: LVPS board and cage

- Two of the connectors are the same size and might be installed in the incorrect positions. Make sure that the two-wire harness (callout 1) is installed on the LVPS board 3 and the three-wire harness (callout 2) is installed in the fan connector behind the LVPS board 3 cage.

Figure 3-216 LVPS connectors installation

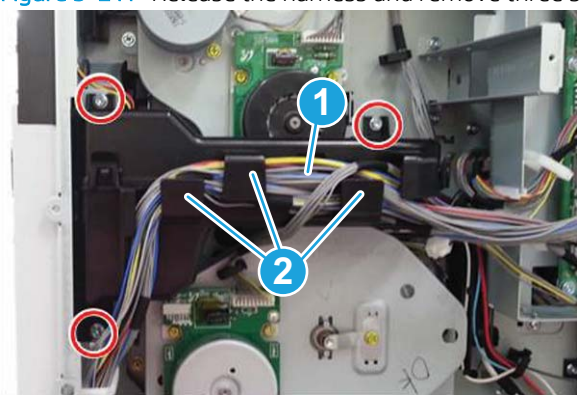


NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 5: Remove the fuser fan

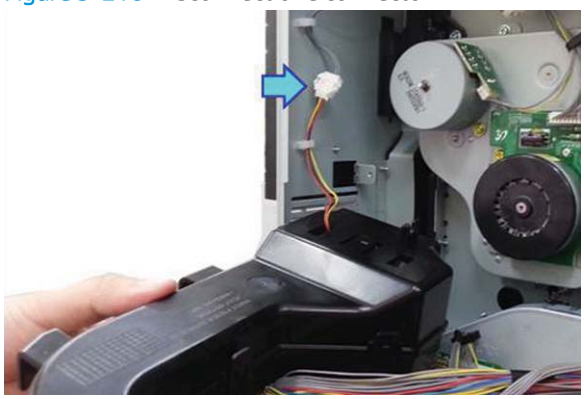
1. Release the cables (callout 1) from the cable guides (callout 2), and then remove three screws.

Figure 3-217 Release the harness and remove three screws



2. Pull the fuser fan housing slightly away from the printer, and then disconnect one connector.

Figure 3-218 Disconnect one connector



3. If you are replacing the fuser fan, release five tabs along the edges of the fan housing. If you are removing the fuser fan housing to access an assembly behind it, skip this step.

Figure 3-219 Release five tabs

4. If you are replacing the fuser fan, separate the fan housing, and then remove the fuser fan. If you are removing the fuser fan housing to access an assembly behind it, skip this step.

Reinstallation tip: Note the orientation of the fan in the housing and install the replacement fan in the same orientation.

Figure 3-220 Remove the fuser fan

Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Main drive unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the imaging drum
- Step 2: Remove the developer unit
- Step 3: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 4: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 5: Remove the main drive unit
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the main drive unit.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Main drive unit part number	
SAM-JC93-01060A	Main Drive Assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the imaging drum

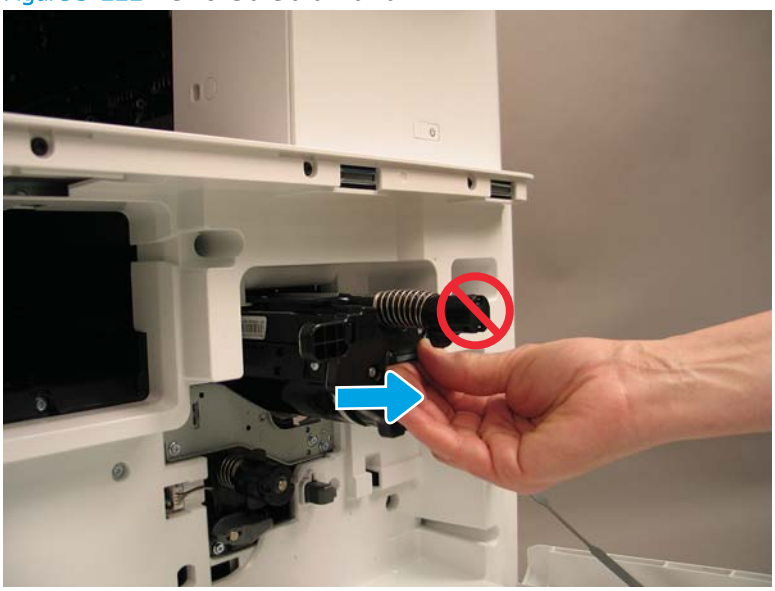
1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).
2. Open the right door.
3. Loosen one screw.

Figure 3-221 Loosen one screw

4. Grip the handle and remove the drum unit.

NOTICE: Do not grip the waste toner connection when removing the drum unit.

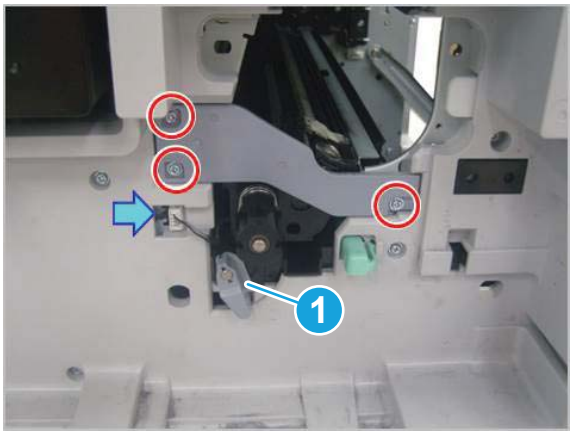
Figure 3-222 Remove the drum unit



Step 2: Remove the developer unit

1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).
2. Remove the imaging drum unit.
3. Move the developer locking lever (callout 1) to the down position. Remove three screws to release the bracket, and then disconnect the small, black cable connector .

Figure 3-223 Remove three screws and disconnect the small, black cable connector

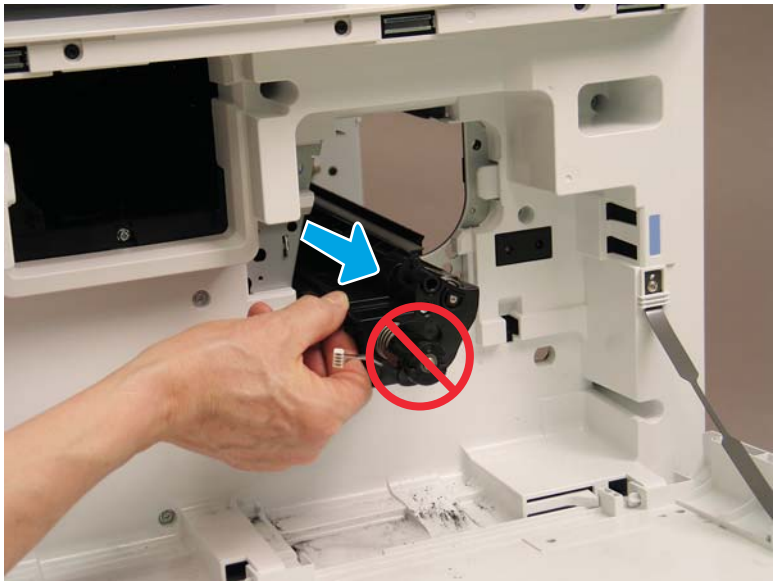


4. Hold the grip point of the developer unit and remove it.

NOTE: Do not grip the waste toner connection when removing the developer unit.

Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling the developer unit, press on the unit just above the waste toner auger, and then slide the unit into the printer.

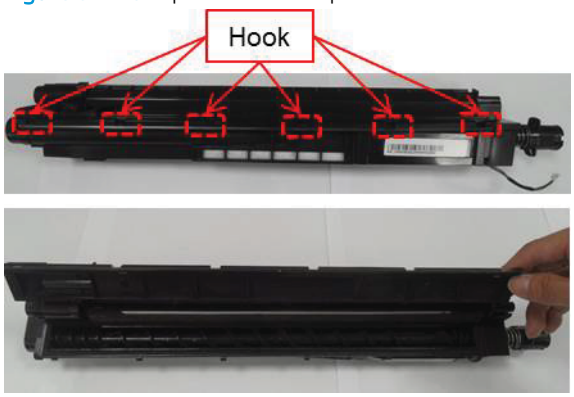
Figure 3-224 Remove the developer unit



5. Unpack the new developer unit box and check the components. In the box is a developer unit and a silver pack of developer powder.

6. Hold the cover, and then release six hooks. Open the cover.

Figure 3-225 Open the developer unit



NOTE: Before filling the developer, shake the silver pack about three times to prevent the developer powder from scattering.

7. Distribute the developer powder into the developer unit.

NOTE: When filling the developer, intermittently rock and gently shake the developer from side to side to avoid overflow.

Figure 3-226 Distribute the developer powder

8. Reinstall the developer cover.
9. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Developer unit

- After the replacement developer unit is installed, follow these instructions to reset the firmware counter:
  i. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select the Support Tools menu.
  ii. Select the Service menu.
  iii. Make sure that Service Access Code is selected in the drop-down menu, and then enter the access code (04082517).
  iv. Select the Service Tools menu.
  v. Select the Supply Status menu.
  vi. Select Field Replacement Unit.
  vii. Select Development Unit (Developer) (YMCK).
  viii. Select the check box on the right side of the screen for the Black Developer Unit.
  ix. Select Reset.

Step 3: Remove the formatter cover

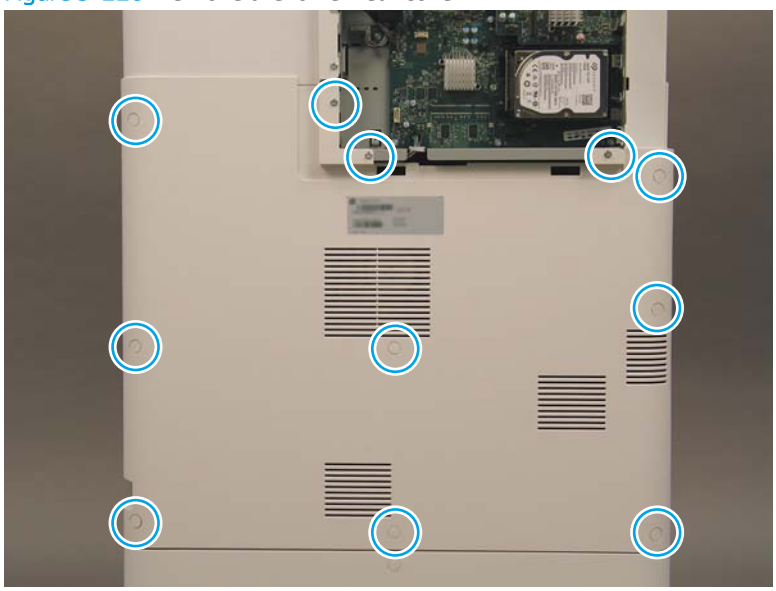
- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 3-227 Remove the formatter cover

Step 4: Remove the lower rear cover

▲ Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

Figure 3-228 Remove the lower rear cover

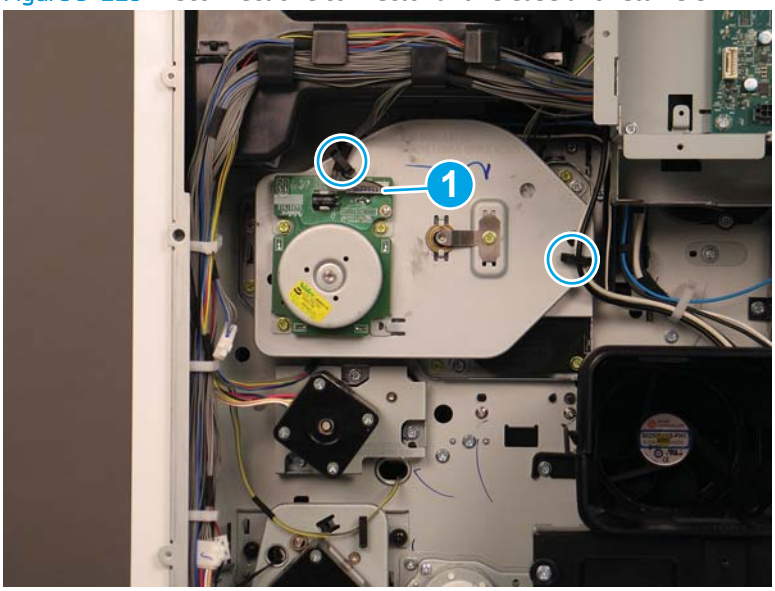


Step 5: Remove the main drive unit

1. Open the right door.

2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release two retainers.

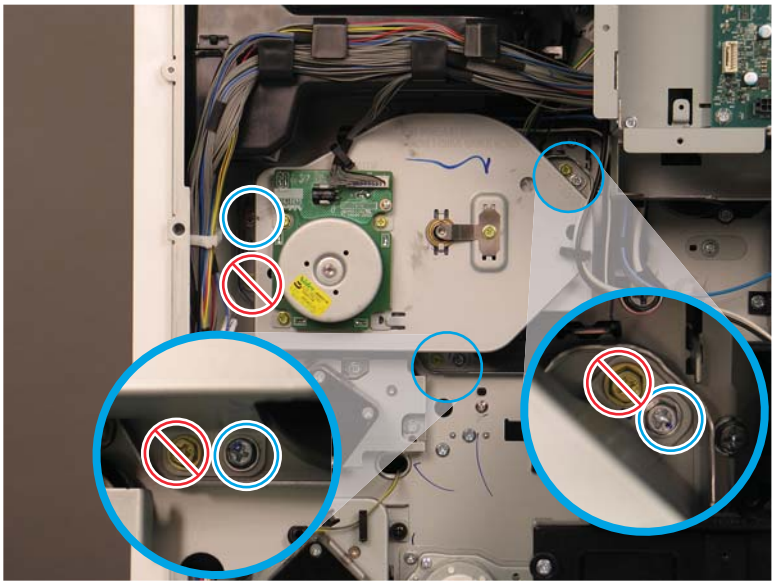
Figure 3-229 Disconnect one connector and release two retainers



3. Remove three screws, and then remove the main drive unit.

NOTE: Remove only those screws marked in blue in the figure below.

Figure 3-230 Remove the main drive unit

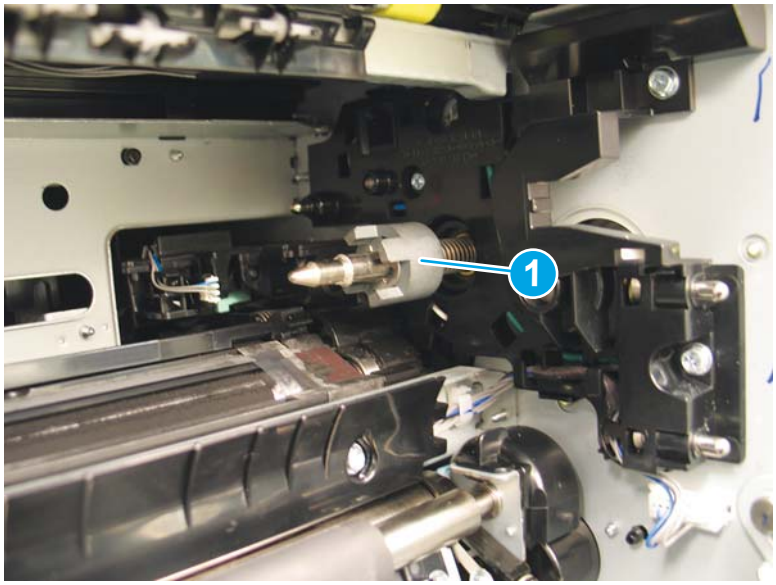


4. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Main drive unit

- If the drum unit doesn't fully install into position after reinstalling the main drive unit, open the right door and rotate the coupler on the drum shaft (callout 1) a few degrees.

Figure 3-231 Rotate the coupler



NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Inductor unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover
- Step 4: Remove the fuser drive and low-voltage power supply (LVPS) boards and cage
- Step 5: Remove the inductor unit
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the inductor unit.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Inductor unit part number
Inductor unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

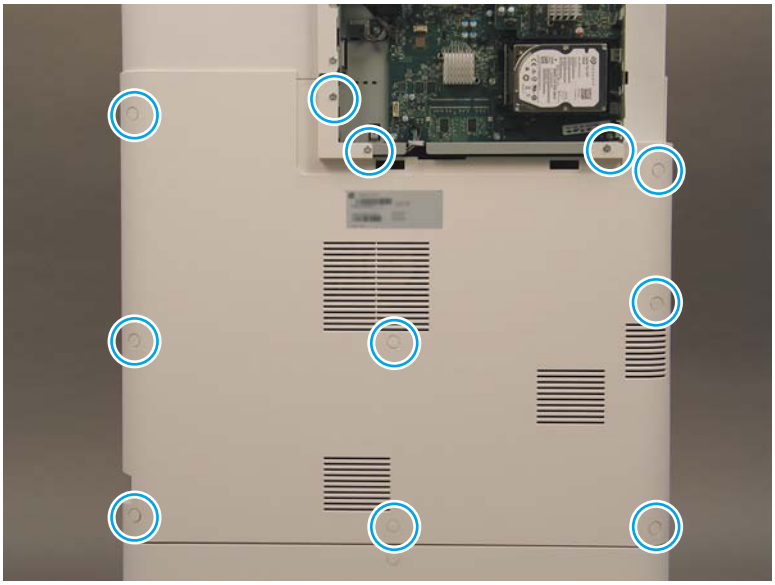
▲ Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 3-232 Remove the formatter cover

Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

▲ Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

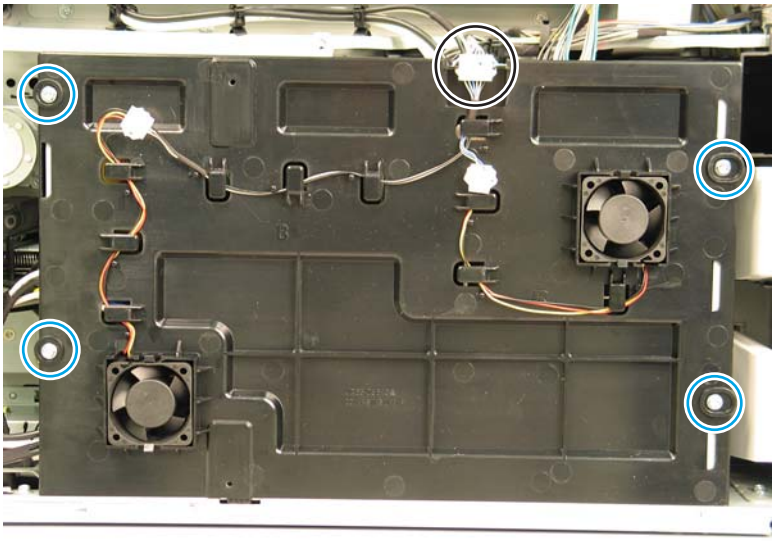
Figure 3-233 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover

- Disconnect one connector, and then remove four screws. Slide the LVPS cover to the left, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-234 Remove the LVPS cover

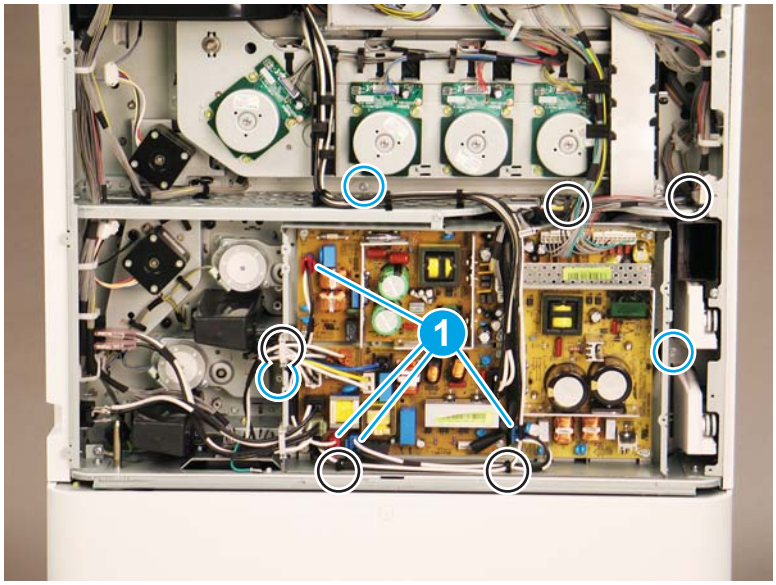


Step 4: Remove the fuser drive and low-voltage power supply (LVPS) boards and cage

⚠ WARNING! Wait five minutes after turning the printer off to allow the capacitors to dissipate any residual energy.

- Before removing the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage, note the location of four connectors (callout 1) that do not have to be disconnected. Disconnect the remaining connectors on the LVPS and fuser drive boards, and then release the cables from five retainers. Remove three screws, and then tilt the top of the cage out to remove it.

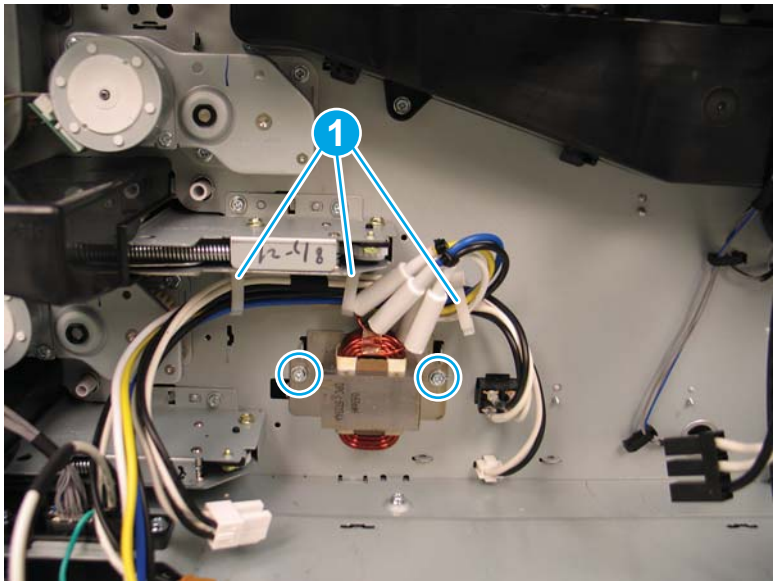
Figure 3-235 Remove the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage



Step 5: Remove the inductor unit

▲ Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), remove two screws, and then remove the inductor unit.

Figure 3-236 Remove the inductor unit



Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Auto closing unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover
- Step 4: Remove the fuser drive and low-voltage power supply (LVPS) boards and cage
- Step 5: Remove the auto closing unit
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the auto closing unit.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Auto closing unit part number
Auto closing unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

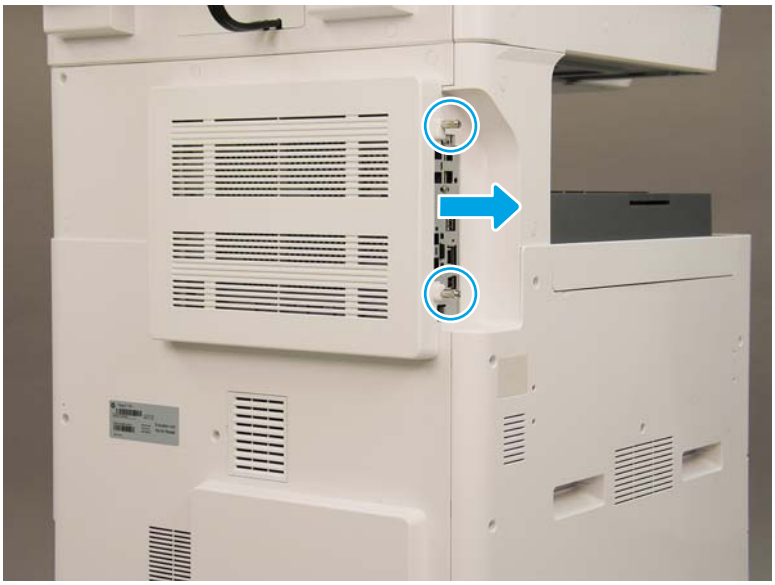
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

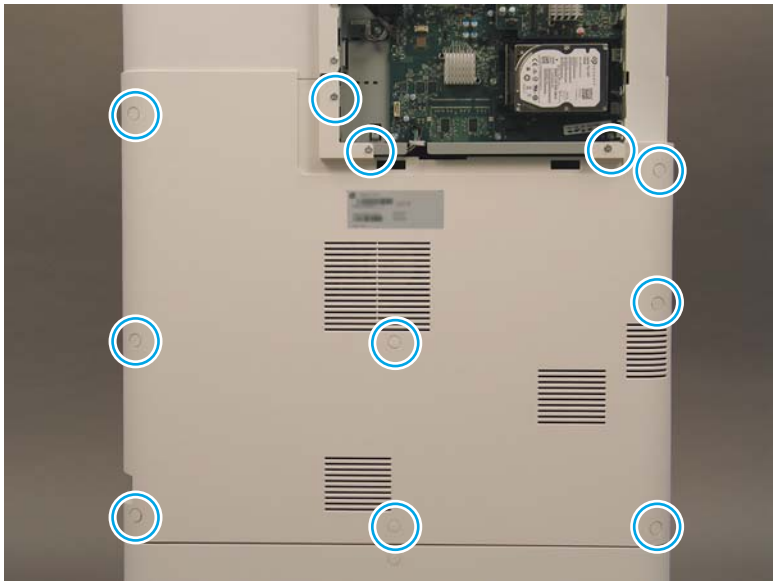
Figure 3-237 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

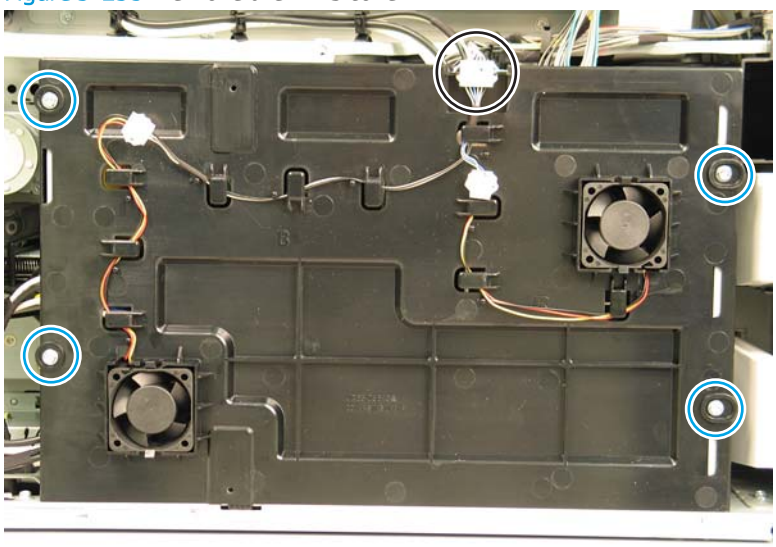
Figure 3-238 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover

- Disconnect one connector, and then remove four screws. Slide the LVPS cover to the left, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-239 Remove the LVPS cover

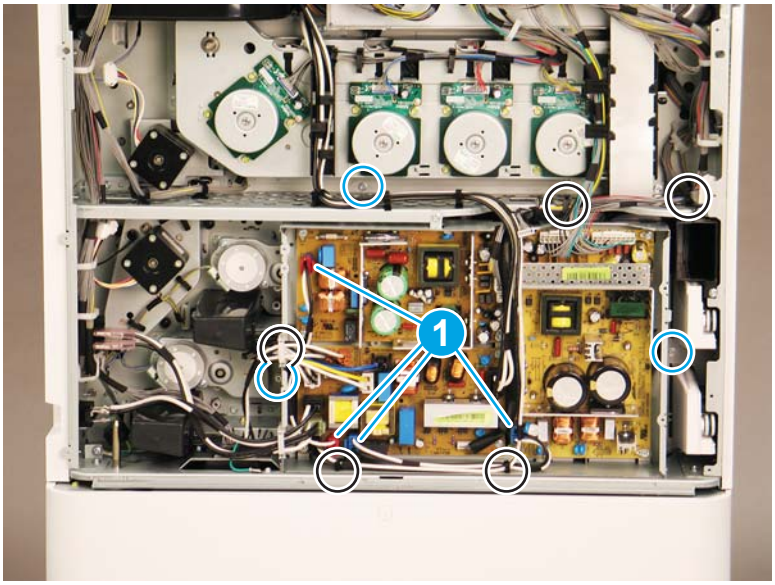


Step 4: Remove the fuser drive and low-voltage power supply (LVPS) boards and cage

⚠ WARNING! Wait five minutes after turning the printer off to allow the capacitors to dissipate any residual energy.

- Before removing the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage, note the location of four connectors (callout 1) that do not have to be disconnected. Disconnect the remaining connectors on the LVPS and fuser drive boards, and then release the cables from five retainers. Remove three screws, and then tilt the top of the cage out to remove it.

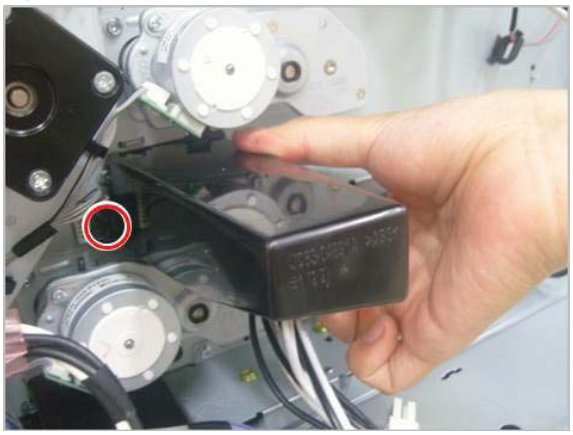
Figure 3-240 Remove the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage



Step 5: Remove the auto closing unit

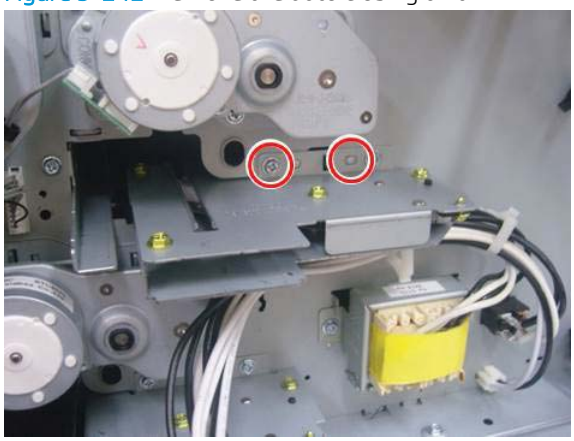
1. Remove Tray 2.
2. Remove one screw, and then remove the cassette rail cover.

Figure 3-241 Remove the CST rail cover



3. Remove two screws, and then remove the auto closing unit.

Figure 3-242 Remove the auto closing unit



Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Fuser/output drive unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover
- Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 3 and cage
- Step 5: Remove the fuser fan
- Step 6: Remove the fuser/output drive unit
- Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the fuser/output drive unit.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Fuser/output drive unit part number	
SAM-JC93-01064A	Drive, Fuser Exit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

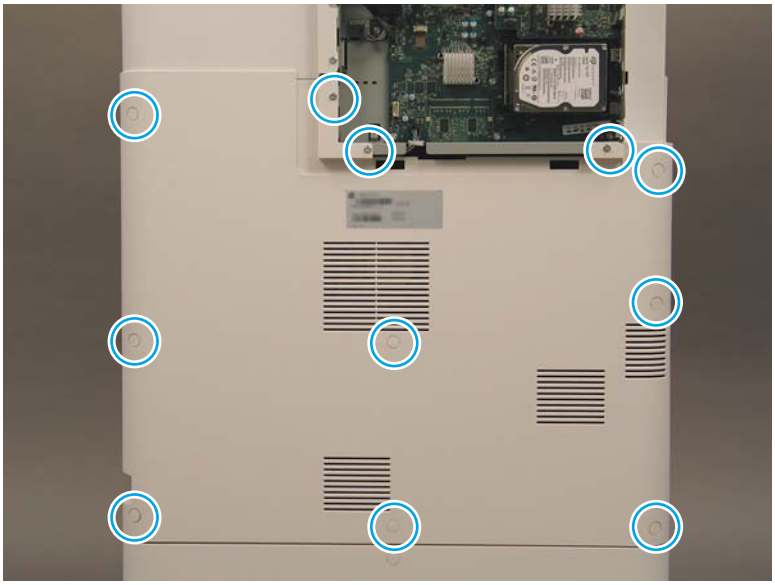
- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 3-243 Remove the formatter cover

Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

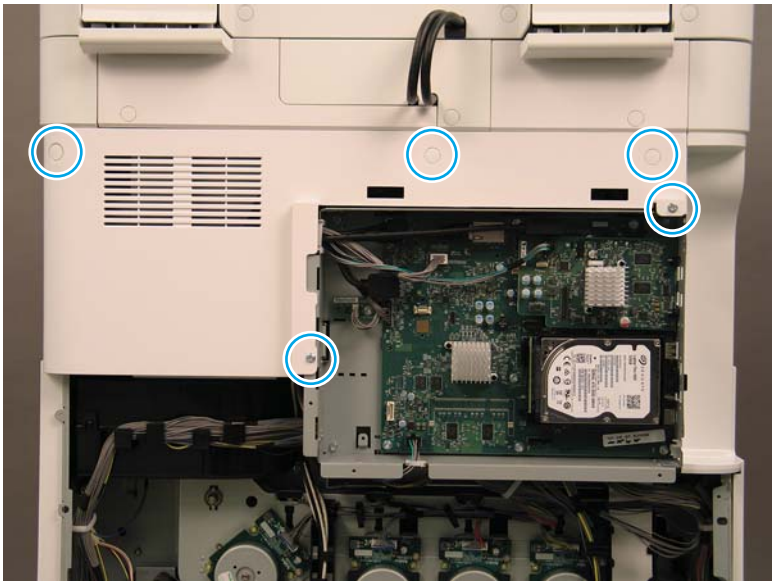
Figure 3-244 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover

▲ Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-245 Remove the upper rear cover

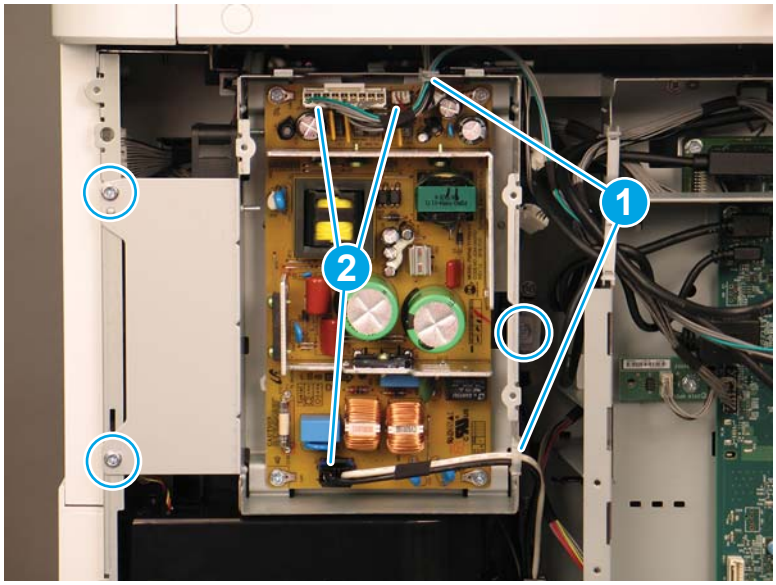


Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 3 and cage

⚠ WARNING! Wait five minutes after turning the printer off to allow the capacitors to dissipate any residual energy.

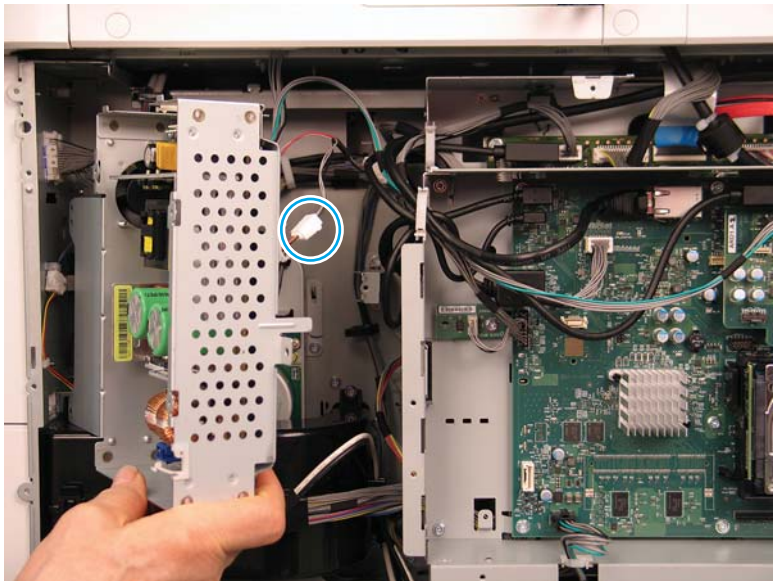
1. Release the cables from two retainers (callout 1), disconnect three connectors (callout 2), and then remove three screws.

Figure 3-246 Disconnect connectors and remove screws



2. Lift the LVPS board and cage slightly away from the printer, and disconnect one connector behind the cage. Remove the LVPS board and cage.

Figure 3-247 Disconnect one connector

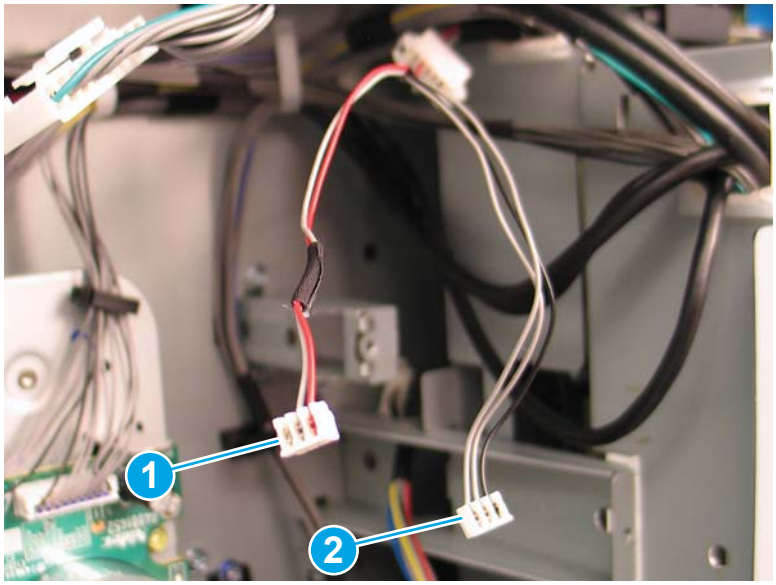


3. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: LVPS board and cage

- Two of the connectors are the same size and might be installed in the incorrect positions. Make sure that the two-wire harness (callout 1) is installed on the LVPS board 3 and the three-wire harness (callout 2) is installed in the fan connector behind the LVPS board 3 cage.

Figure 3-248 LVPS connectors installation

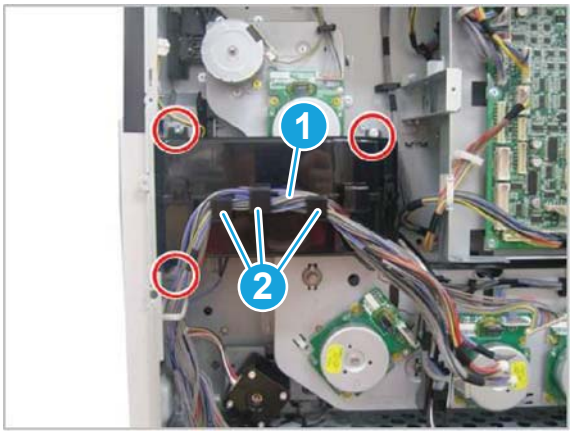


NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 5: Remove the fuser fan

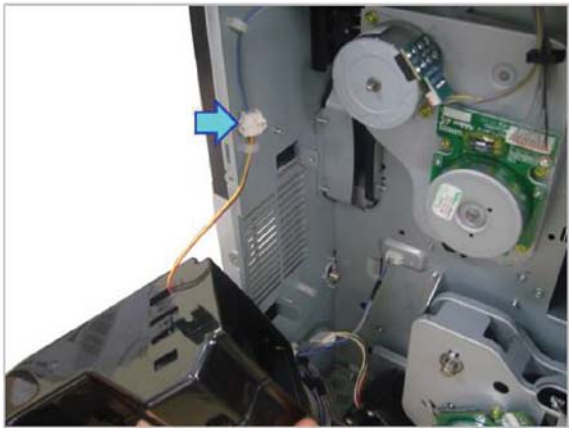
1. Release the cables (callout 1) from the cable guides (callout 2), and then remove three screws.

Figure 3-249 Release the cables and remove three screws



2. Pull the fuser fan housing slightly away from the printer, and then disconnect one connector.

Figure 3-250 Disconnect one connector



3. If you are replacing the fuser fan, release five tabs along the edges of the fan housing. If you are removing the fuser fan housing to access an assembly behind it, skip this step.

Figure 3-251 Release five tabs

4. If you are replacing the fuser fan, separate the fan housing, and then remove the fuser fan. If you are removing the fuser fan housing to access an assembly behind it, skip this step.

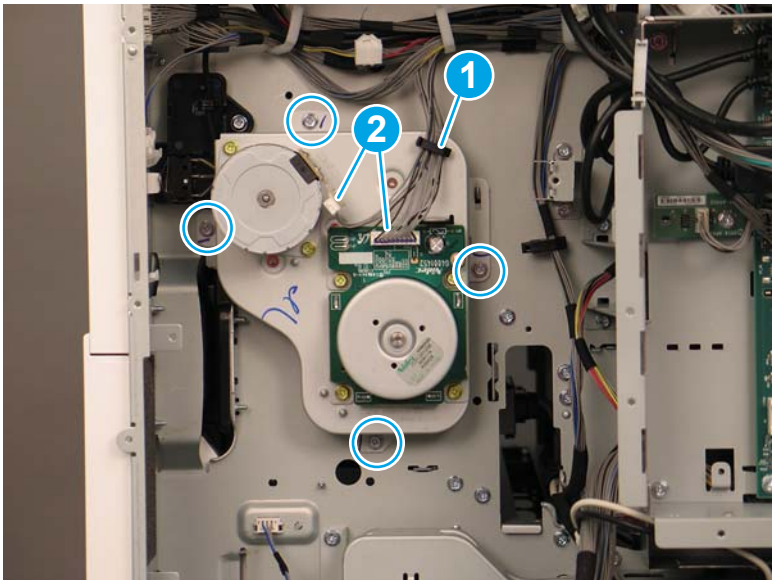
Reinstallation tip: Note the orientation of the fan in the housing and install the replacement fan in the same orientation.

Figure 3-252 Remove the fuser fan

Step 6: Remove the fuser/output drive unit

▲ Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect two connectors (callout 2). Remove four screws, and then remove the fuser/output drive unit.

Figure 3-253 Remove the fuser/output drive unit



Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Right door open sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover
- Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 3 and cage
- Step 5: Remove the fuser fan
- Step 6: Remove the fuser/output drive unit
- Step 7: Remove the right door open sensor
- Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the right door open sensor.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Right door open sensor part number
Right door open sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

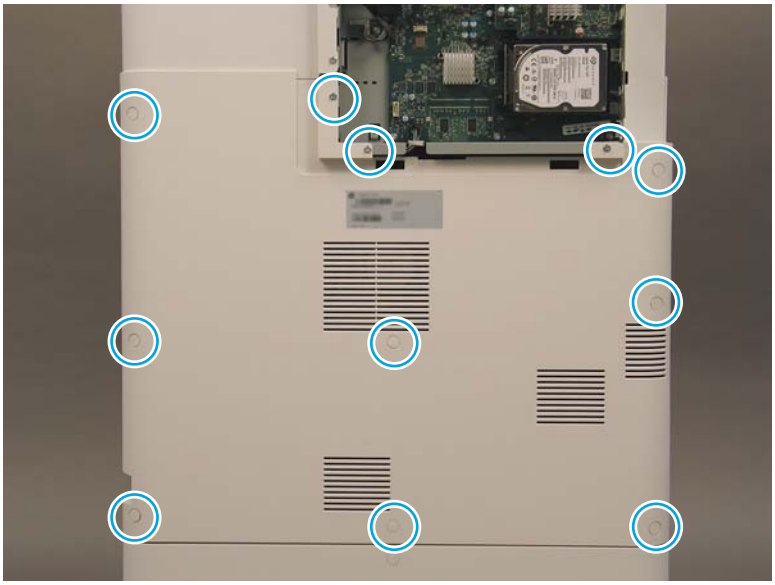
- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 3-254 Remove the formatter cover

Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

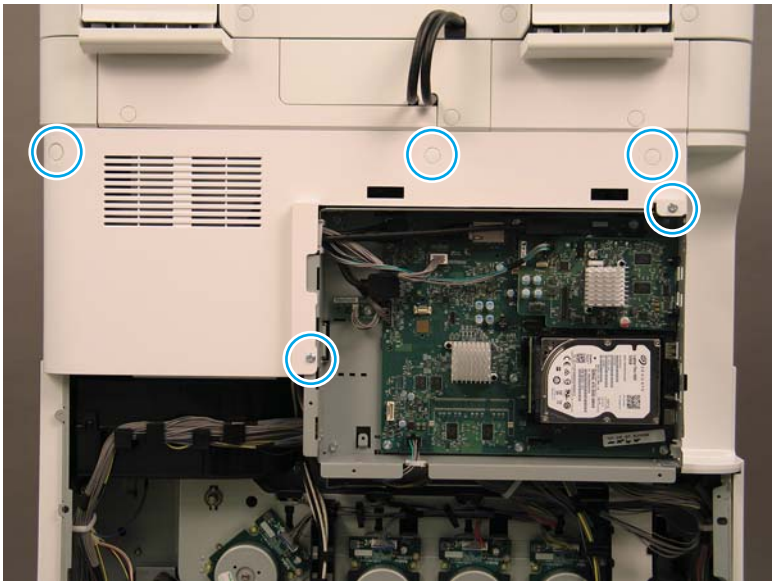
Figure 3-255 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover

▲ Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-256 Remove the upper rear cover

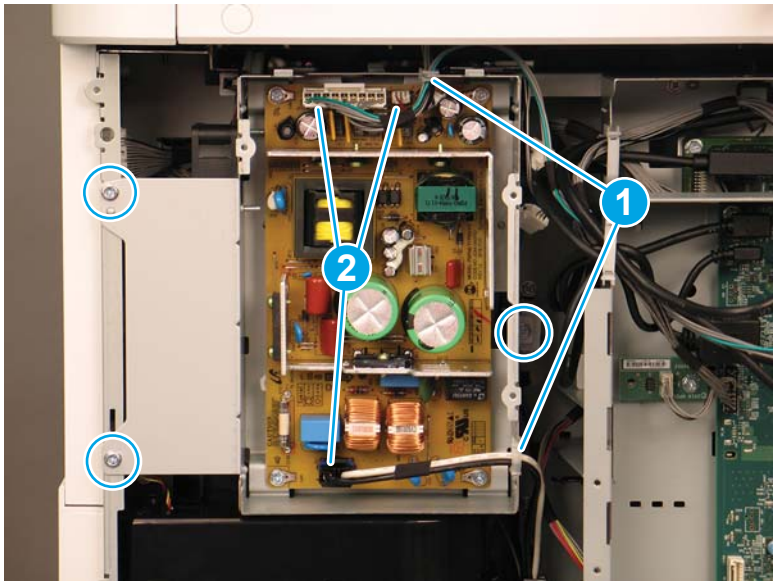


Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 3 and cage

⚠ WARNING! Wait five minutes after turning the printer off to allow the capacitors to dissipate any residual energy.

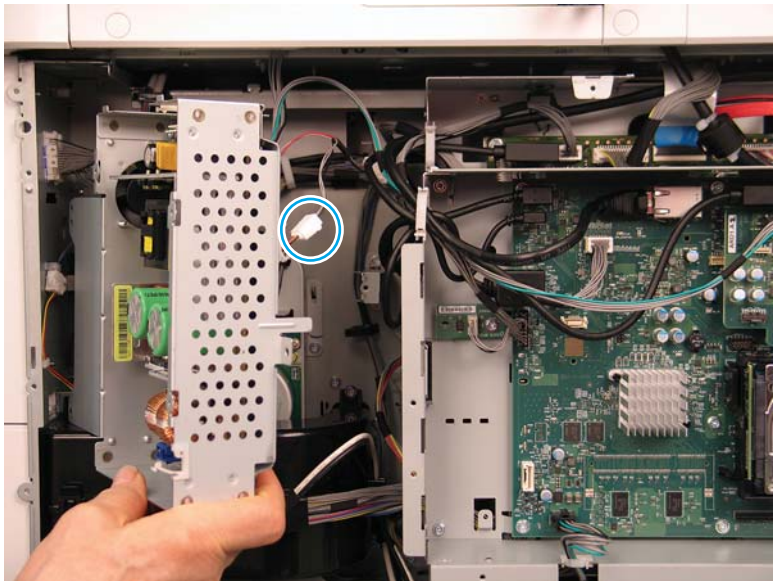
1. Release the cables from two retainers (callout 1), disconnect three connectors (callout 2), and then remove three screws.

Figure 3-257 Disconnect connectors and remove screws



2. Lift the LVPS board and cage slightly away from the printer, and disconnect one connector behind the cage. Remove the LVPS board and cage.

Figure 3-258 Disconnect one connector

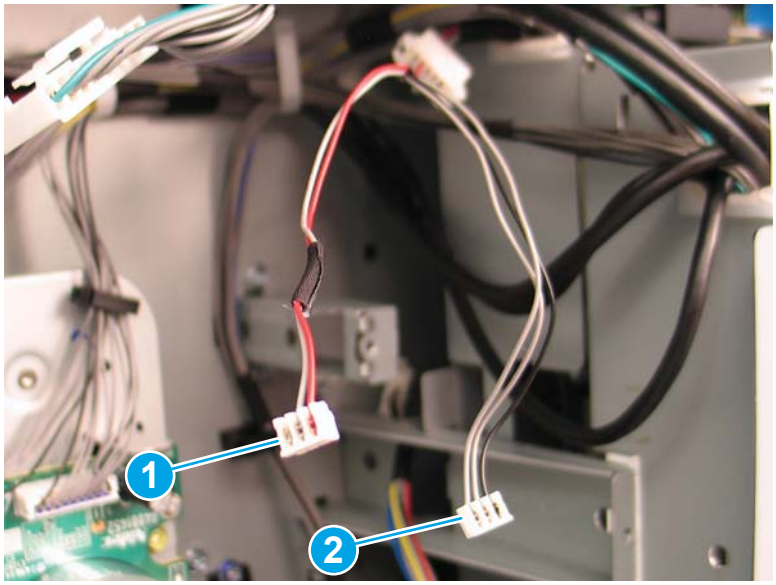


3. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: LVPS board and cage

- Two of the connectors are the same size and might be installed in the incorrect positions. Make sure that the two-wire harness (callout 1) is installed on the LVPS board 3 and the three-wire harness (callout 2) is installed in the fan connector behind the LVPS board 3 cage.

Figure 3-259 LVPS connectors installation

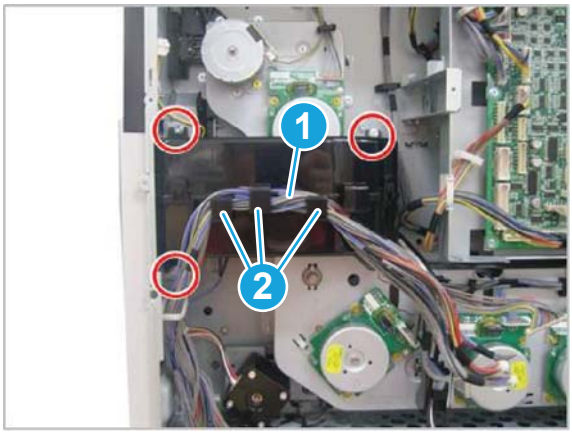


NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 5: Remove the fuser fan

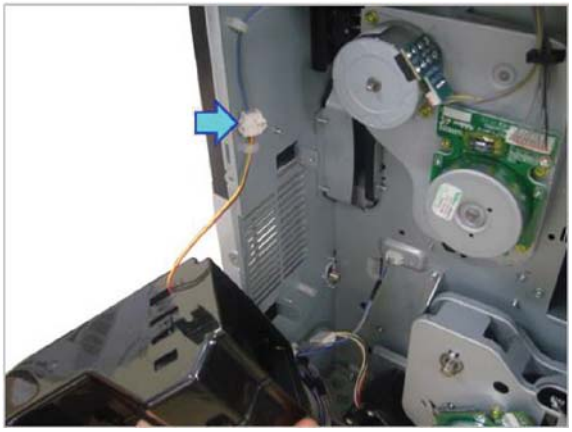
1. Release the cables (callout 1) from the cable guides (callout 2), and then remove three screws.

Figure 3-260 Release the cables and remove three screws



2. Pull the fuser fan housing slightly away from the printer, and then disconnect one connector.

Figure 3-261 Disconnect one connector



3. If you are replacing the fuser fan, release five tabs along the edges of the fan housing. If you are removing the fuser fan housing to access an assembly behind it, skip this step.

Figure 3-262 Release five tabs

4. If you are replacing the fuser fan, separate the fan housing, and then remove the fuser fan. If you are removing the fuser fan housing to access an assembly behind it, skip this step.

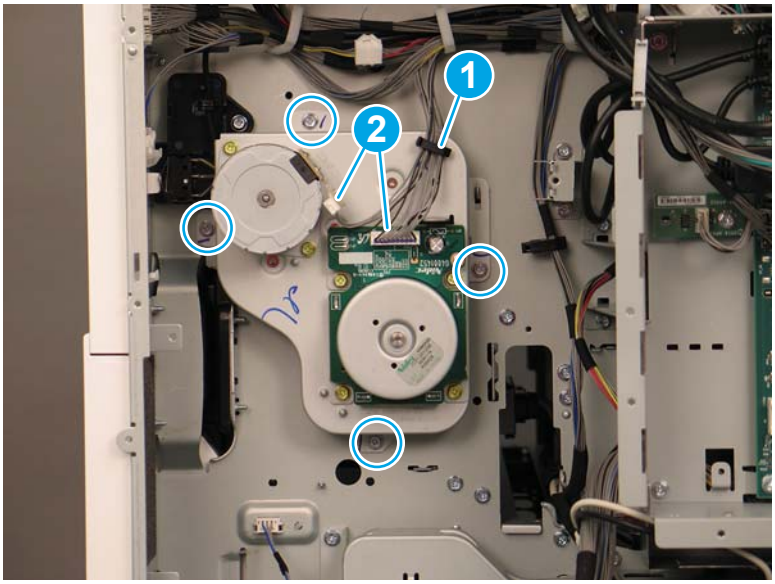
Reinstallation tip: Note the orientation of the fan in the housing and install the replacement fan in the same orientation.

Figure 3-263 Remove the fuser fan

Step 6: Remove the fuser/output drive unit

▲ Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect two connectors (callout 2). Remove four screws, and then remove the fuser/output drive unit.

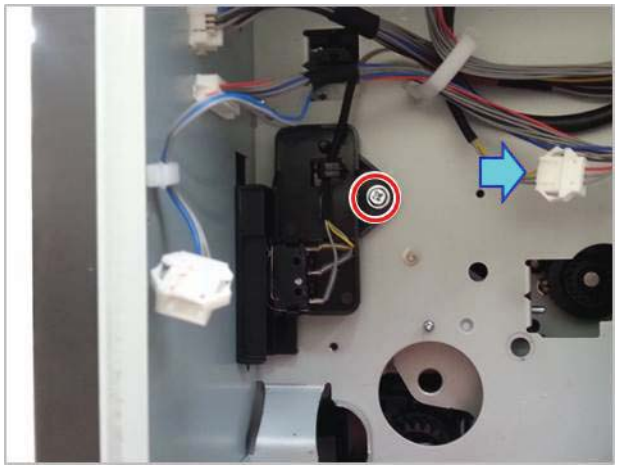
Figure 3-264 Remove the fuser/output drive unit



Step 7: Remove the right door open sensor

▲ Disconnect one connector. Remove one screw, and then remove the right door open sensor.

Figure 3-265 Remove the side door open sensor



Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Right door open switch

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover
- Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 3 and cage
- Step 5: Remove the fuser fan
- Step 6: Remove the fuser/output drive unit
- Step 7: Remove the right door open sensor
- Step 8: Remove the right door open switch
- Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the right door open switch.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Right door open switch part number	
X	Right door open switch

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

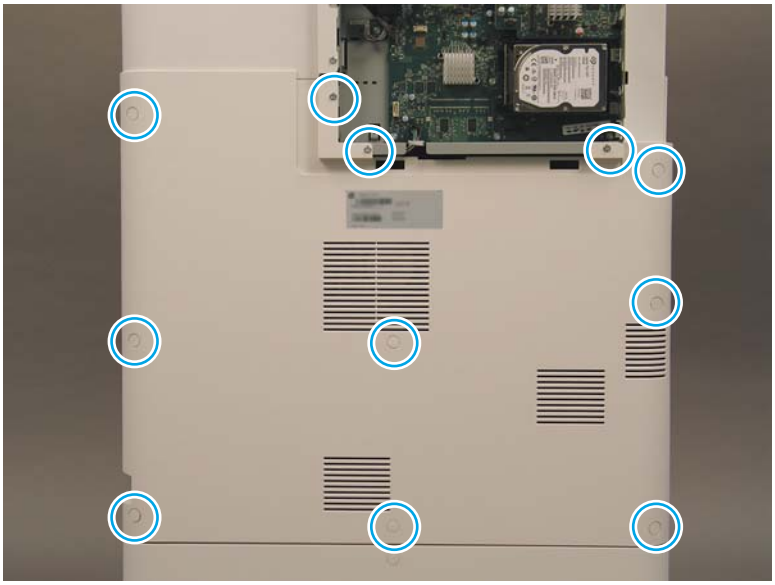
- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 3-266 Remove the formatter cover

Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

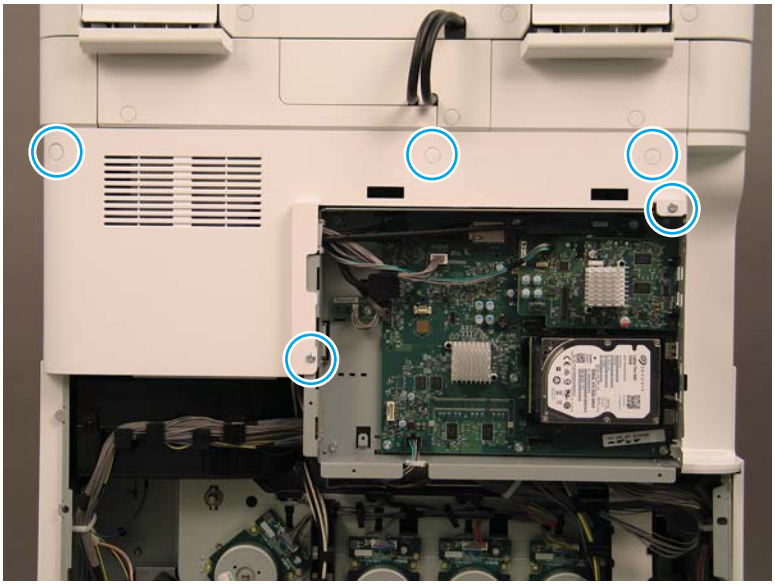
Figure 3-267 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover

▲ Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-268 Remove the upper rear cover

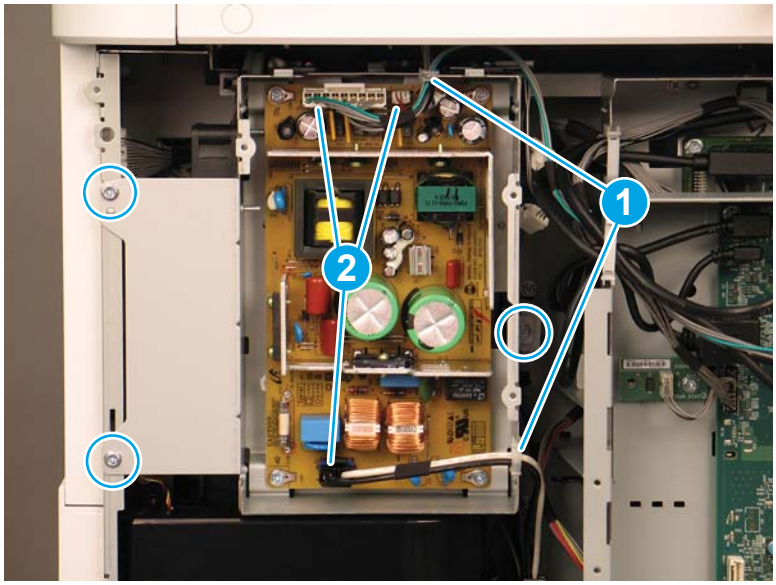


Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 3 and cage

⚠ WARNING! Wait five minutes after turning the printer off to allow the capacitors to dissipate any residual energy.

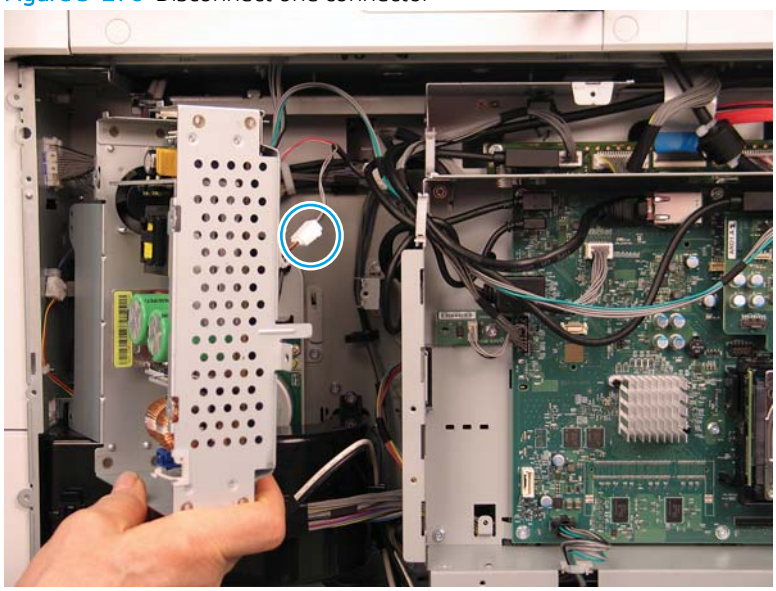
1. Release the cables from two retainers (callout 1), disconnect three connectors (callout 2), and then remove three screws.

Figure 3-269 Disconnect connectors and remove screws



2. Lift the LVPS board and cage slightly away from the printer, and disconnect one connector behind the cage. Remove the LVPS board and cage.

Figure 3-270 Disconnect one connector

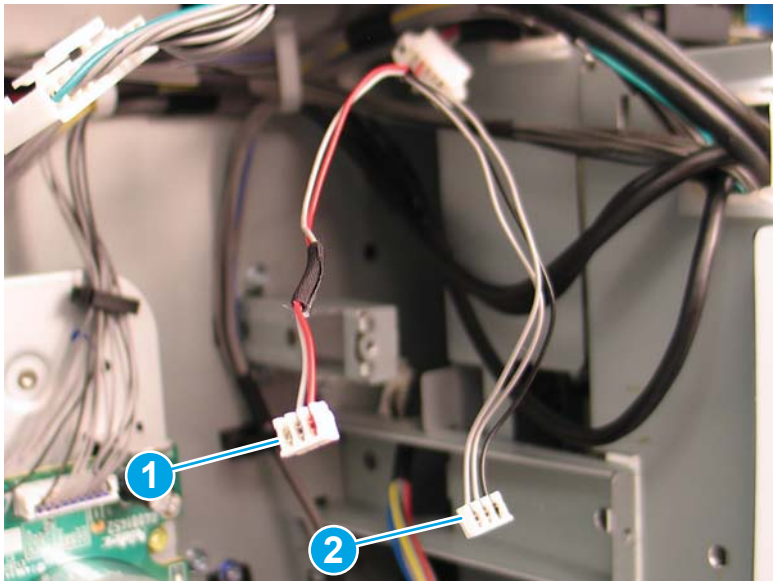


3. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: LVPS board and cage

- Two of the connectors are the same size and might be installed in the incorrect positions. Make sure that the two-wire harness (callout 1) is installed on the LVPS board 3 and the three-wire harness (callout 2) is installed in the fan connector behind the LVPS board 3 cage.

Figure 3-271 LVPS connectors installation

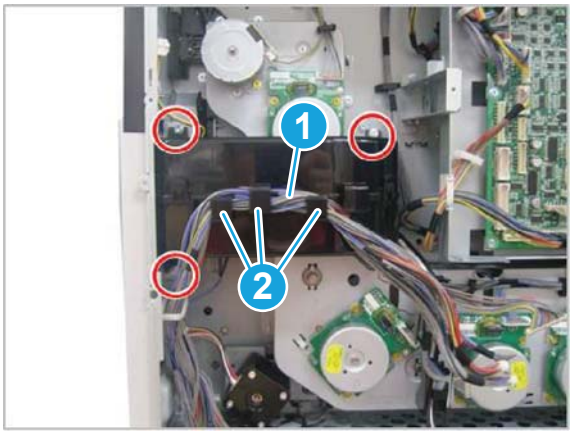


NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 5: Remove the fuser fan

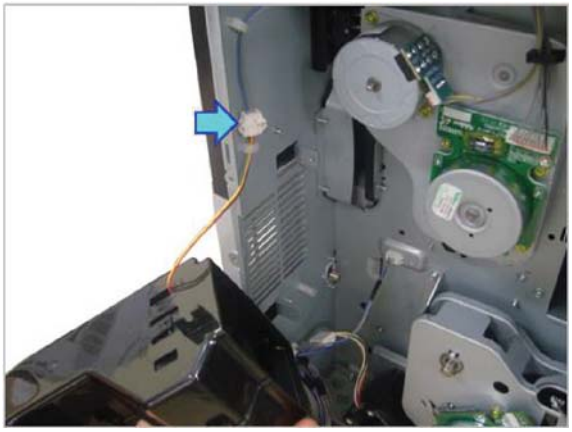
1. Release the cables (callout 1) from the cable guides (callout 2), and then remove three screws.

Figure 3-272 Release the cables and remove three screws



2. Pull the fuser fan housing slightly away from the printer, and then disconnect one connector.

Figure 3-273 Disconnect one connector



3. If you are replacing the fuser fan, release five tabs along the edges of the fan housing. If you are removing the fuser fan housing to access an assembly behind it, skip this step.

Figure 3-274 Release five tabs

4. If you are replacing the fuser fan, separate the fan housing, and then remove the fuser fan. If you are removing the fuser fan housing to access an assembly behind it, skip this step.

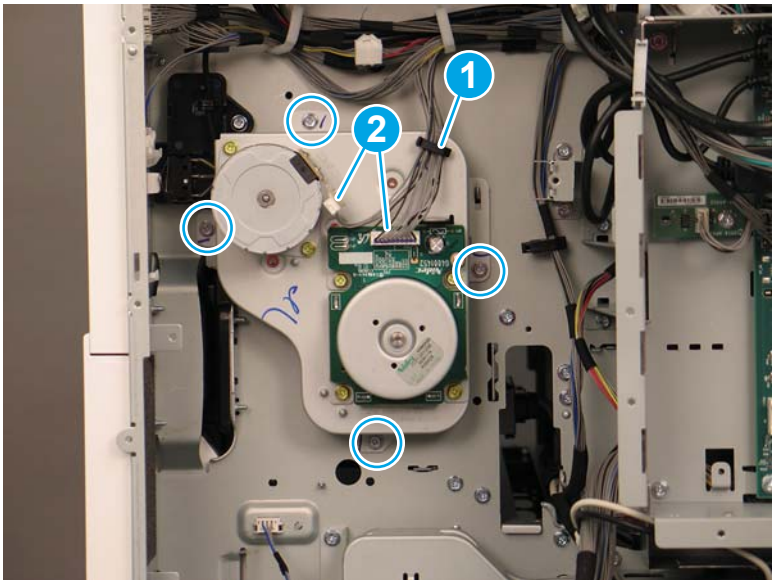
Reinstallation tip: Note the orientation of the fan in the housing and install the replacement fan in the same orientation.

Figure 3-275 Remove the fuser fan

Step 6: Remove the fuser/output drive unit

- Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect two connectors (callout 2). Remove four screws, and then remove the fuser/output drive unit.

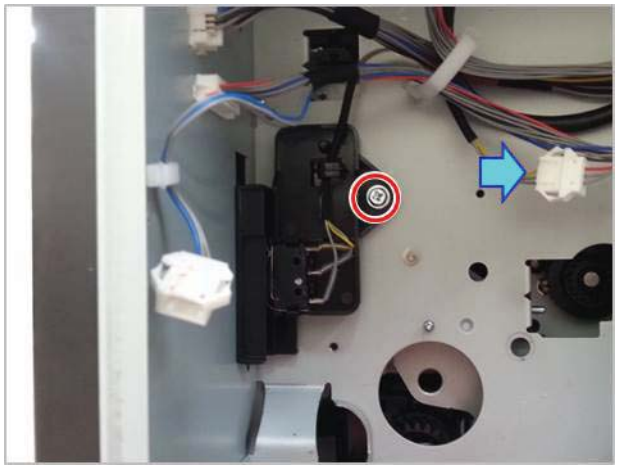
Figure 3-276 Remove the fuser/output drive unit



Step 7: Remove the right door open sensor

- Disconnect one connector. Remove one screw, and then remove the right door open sensor.

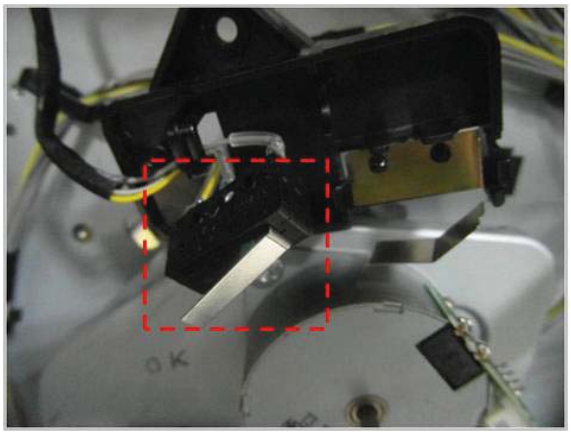
Figure 3-277 Remove the side door open sensor



Step 8: Remove the right door open switch

▲ Remove the micro-switch.

Figure 3-278 Remove micro-switch



Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Pickup drive unit 1

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover
- Step 4: Remove the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage
- Step 5: Remove the pickup drive unit 1
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace pickup drive unit 1.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Pickup drive unit 1 part number	
SAM-JC93-01063A	Drive, Pick up

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

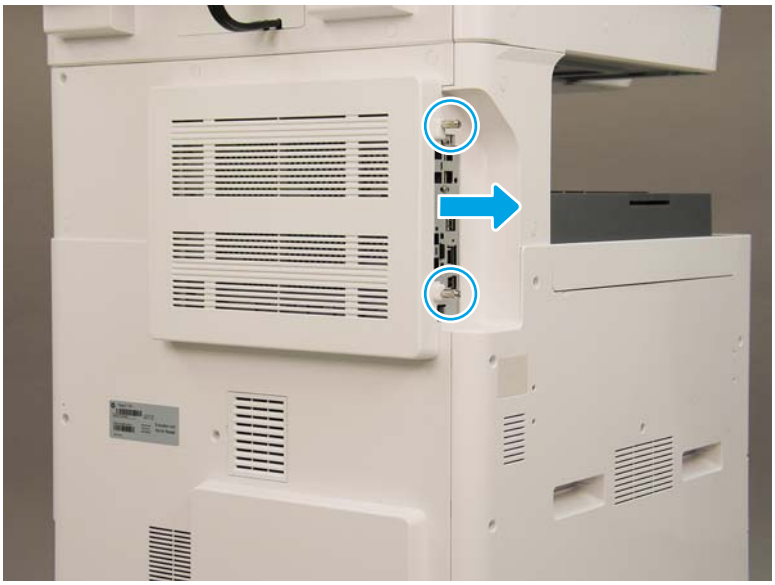
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

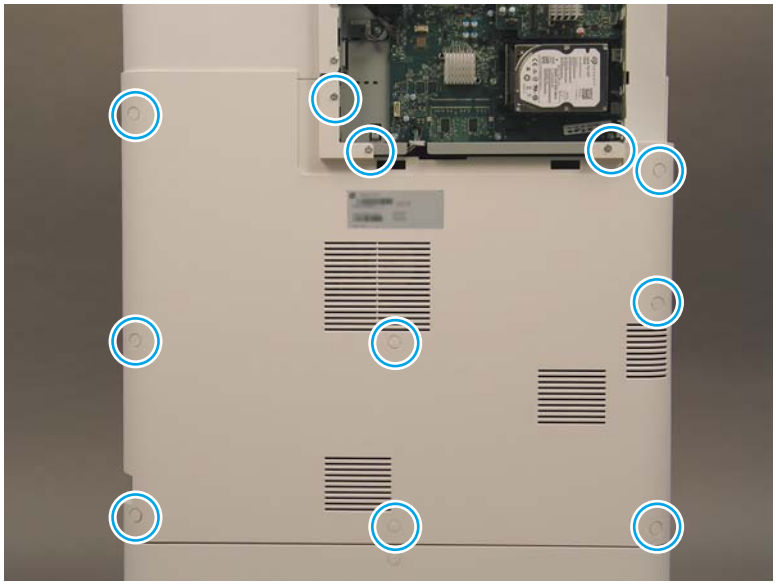
Figure 3-279 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

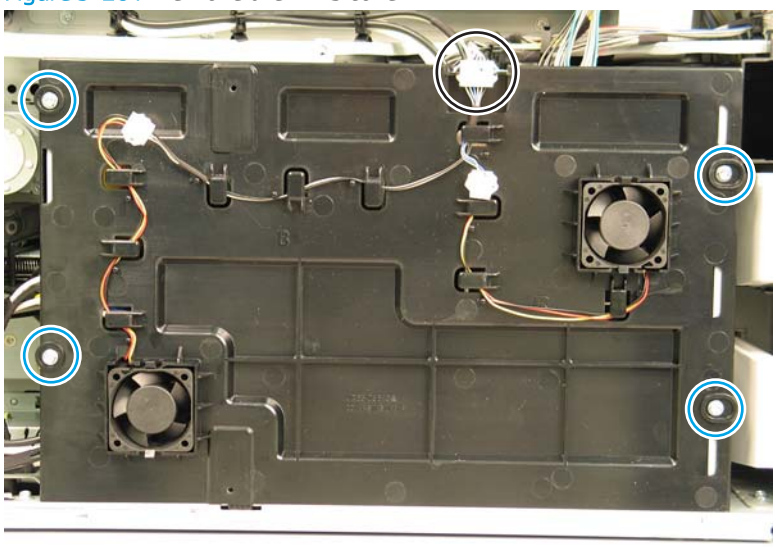
Figure 3-280 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover

- Disconnect one connector, and then remove four screws. Slide the LVPS cover to the left, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-281 Remove the LVPS cover

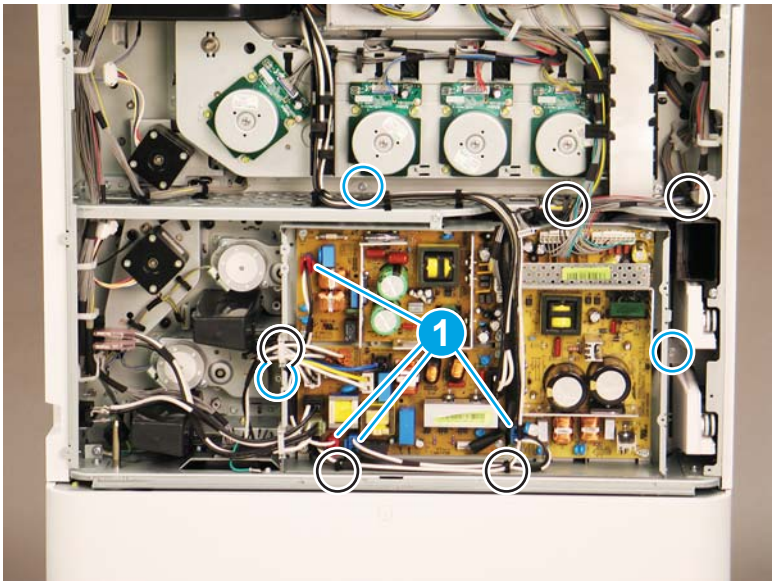


Step 4: Remove the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage

⚠ WARNING! Wait five minutes after turning the printer off to allow the capacitors to dissipate any residual energy.

- Before removing the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage, note the location of four connectors (callout 1) that do not have to be disconnected. Disconnect the remaining connectors on the LVPS and fuser drive boards, and then release the cables from five retainers. Remove three screws, and then tilt the top of the cage out to remove it.

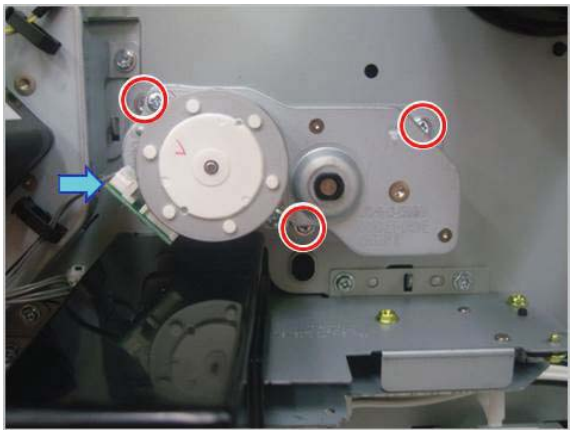
Figure 3-282 Remove the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage



Step 5: Remove the pickup drive unit 1

▲ Disconnect the motor connector. Remove three screws, and then remove the pickup drive unit 1.

Figure 3-283 Remove pickup drive unit 1



Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Pickup drive unit 2

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the pickup drive unit 2
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace pickup drive unit 2.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Pickup drive unit 2 part number	
SAM-JC93-01063A	Drive, Pick up

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

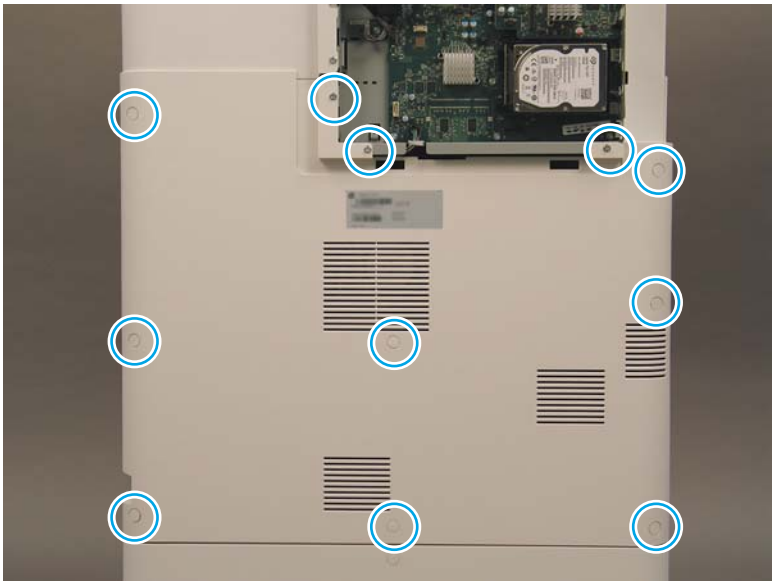
- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 3-284 Remove the formatter cover

Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

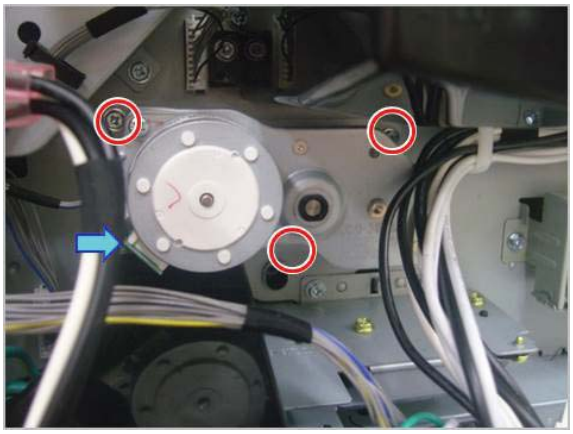
Figure 3-285 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the pickup drive unit 2

▲ Disconnect the motor connector. Remove three screws, and then remove the pickup drive unit 2.

Figure 3-286 Remove pickup drive unit 2



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Feed/MP drive unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 4: Remove the right door
- Step 5: Remove the feed/MP drive unit
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the feed/MP drive unit.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Feed/MP drive unit part number	
SAM-JC93-01062A	Drive, Feed

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

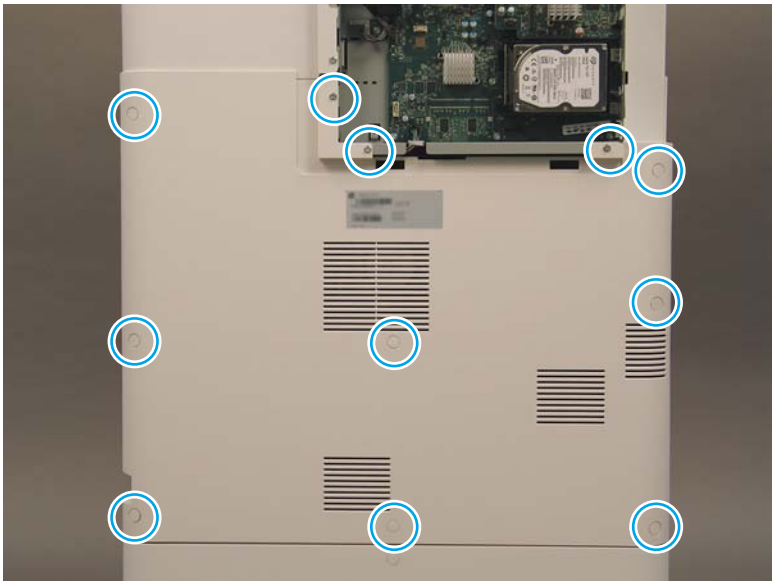
▲ Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 3-287 Remove the formatter cover

Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

▲ Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

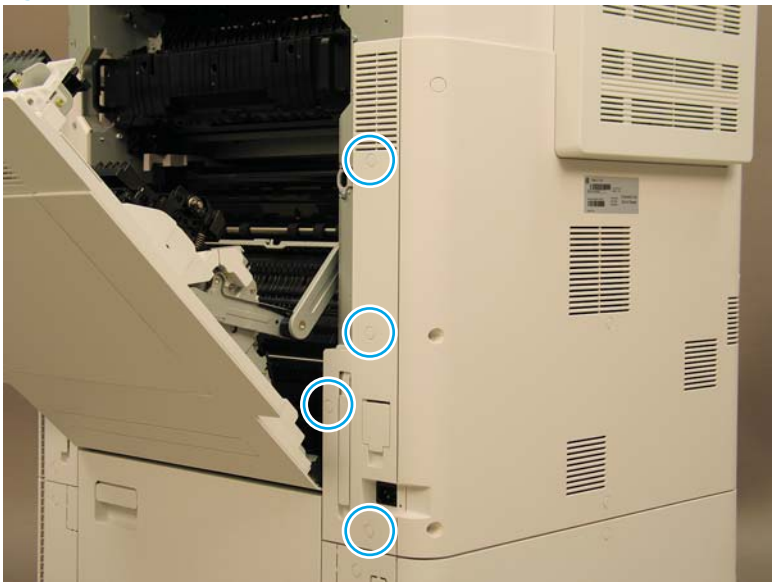
Figure 3-288 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the right rear cover

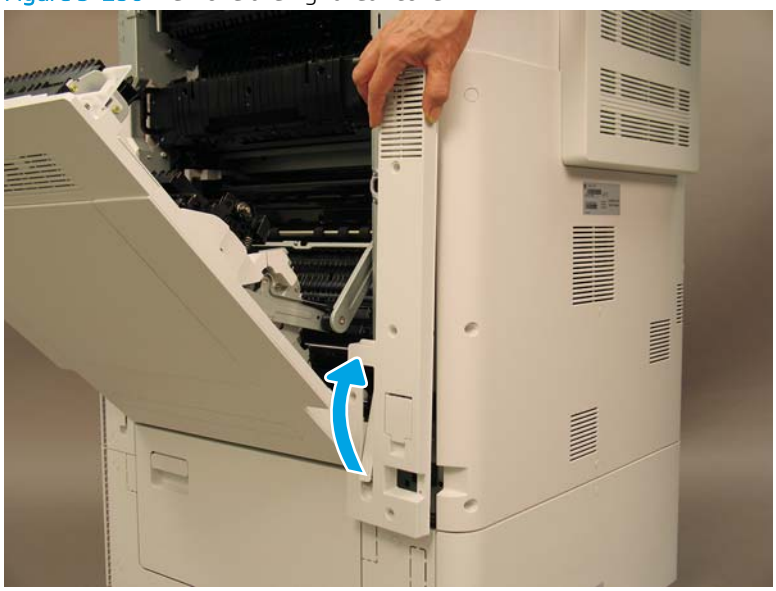
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-289 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

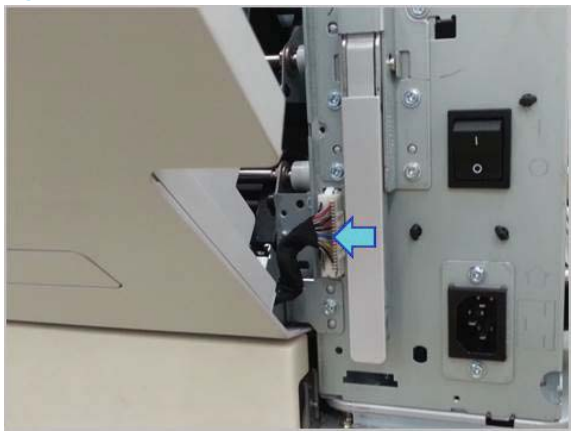
Figure 3-290 Remove the right rear cover



Step 4: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

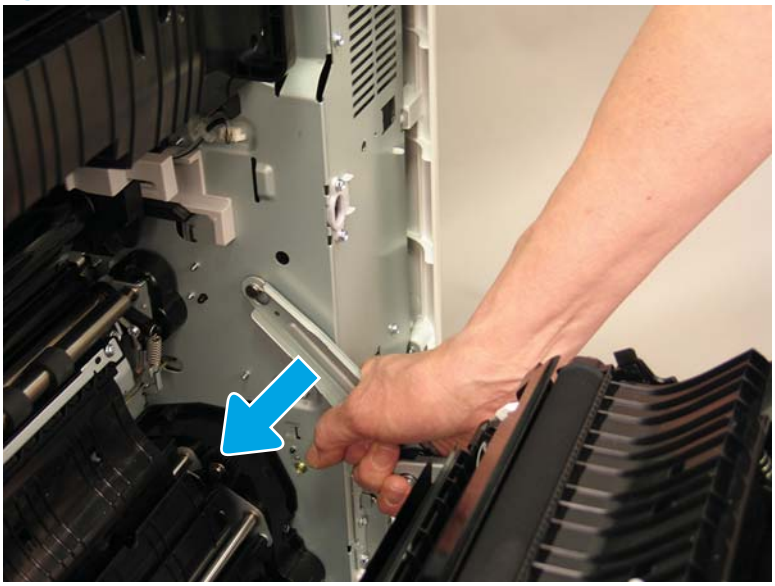
Figure 3-291 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

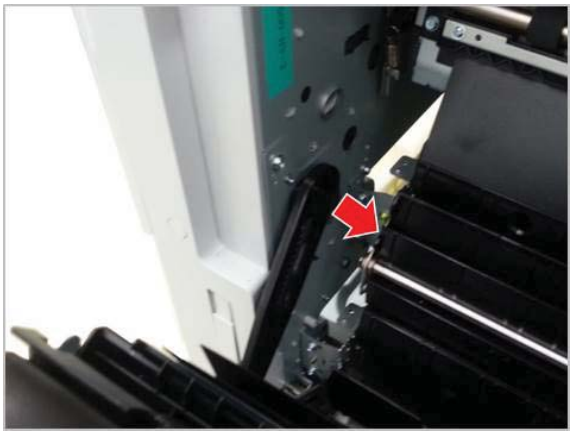
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-292 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

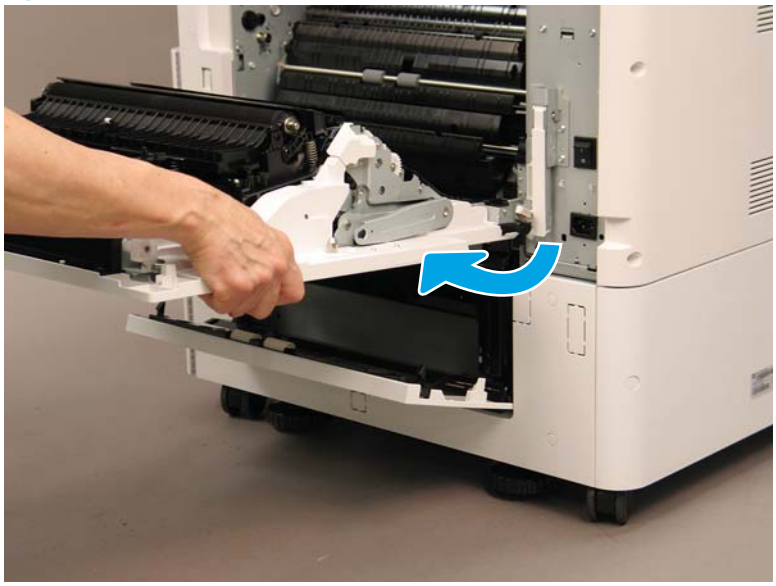
Figure 3-293 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

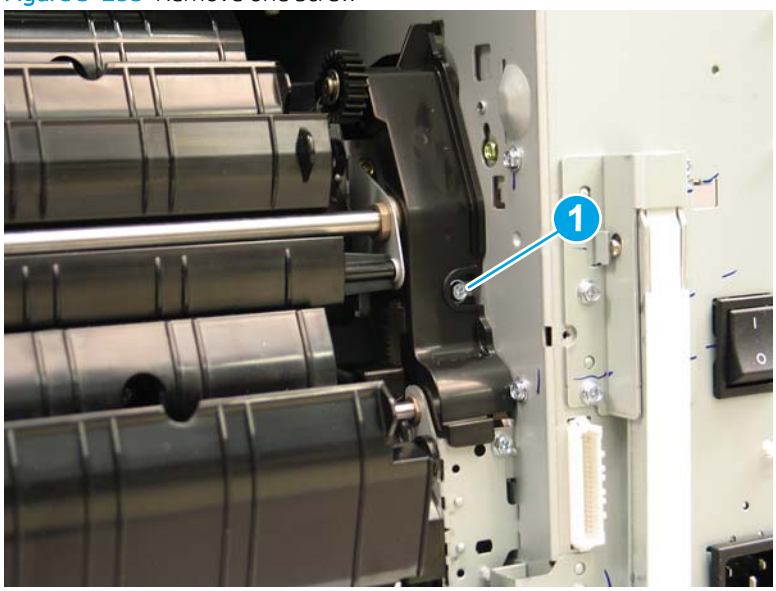
Figure 3-294 Remove the right door



Step 5: Remove the feed/MP drive unit

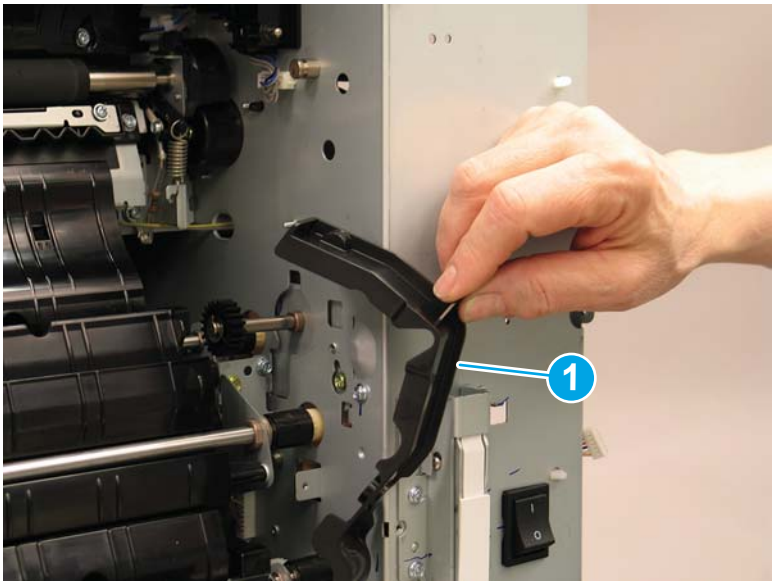
1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 3-295 Remove one screw



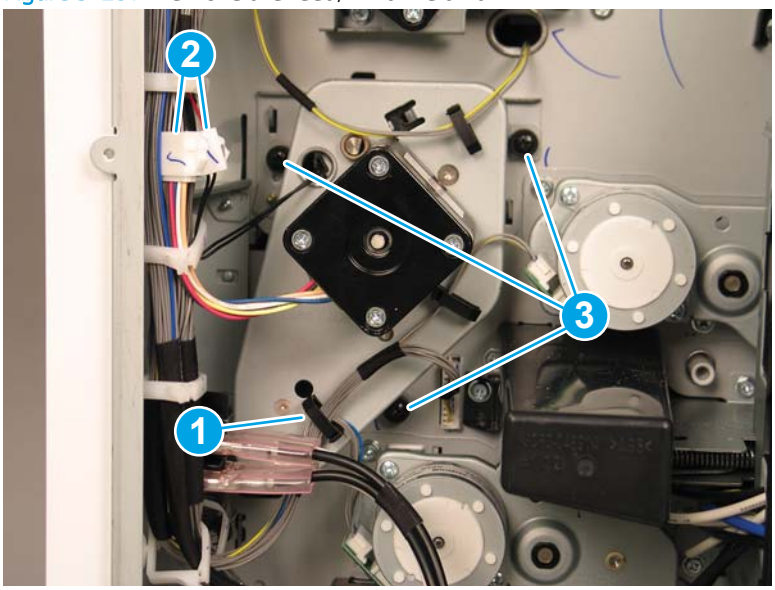
2. Remove the cover (callout 1).

Figure 3-296 Remove the cover



3. At the back of the printer, release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect two connectors (callout 2). Remove three rubberized screws (callout 3), and then remove the feed/MP drive unit.

Figure 3-297 Remove the feed/MP drive unit



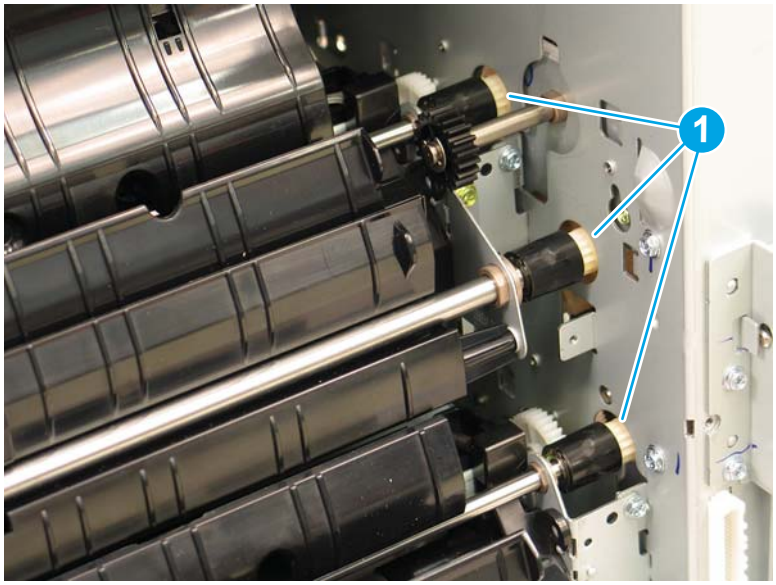
4. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Feed/MP drive unit

- When reinstalling the drive unit, make sure that the gears are aligned with the black couplers (callout 1).

Figure 3-298 Align the gears with the couplers



Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Registration drive assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover
- Step 4: Remove the registration drive assembly
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the registration drive assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Registration drive assembly part number	
SAM-JC93-01061A	Drive, Registration

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

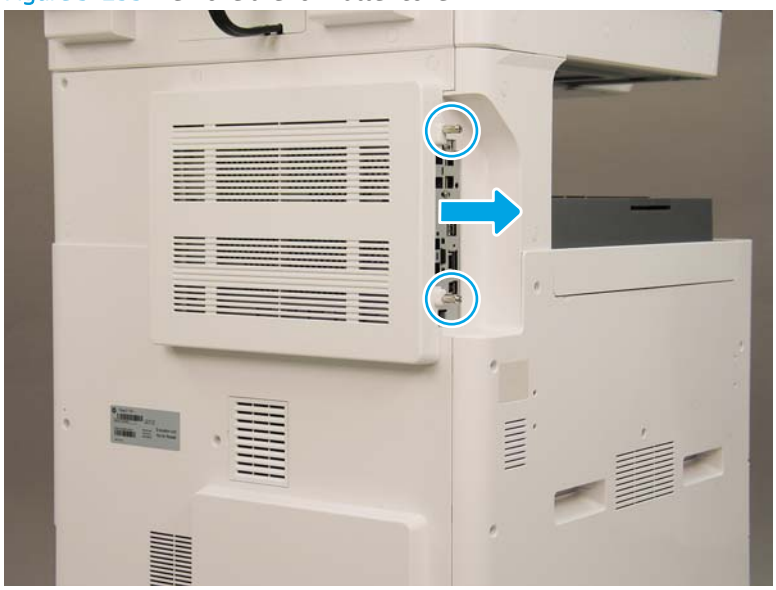
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

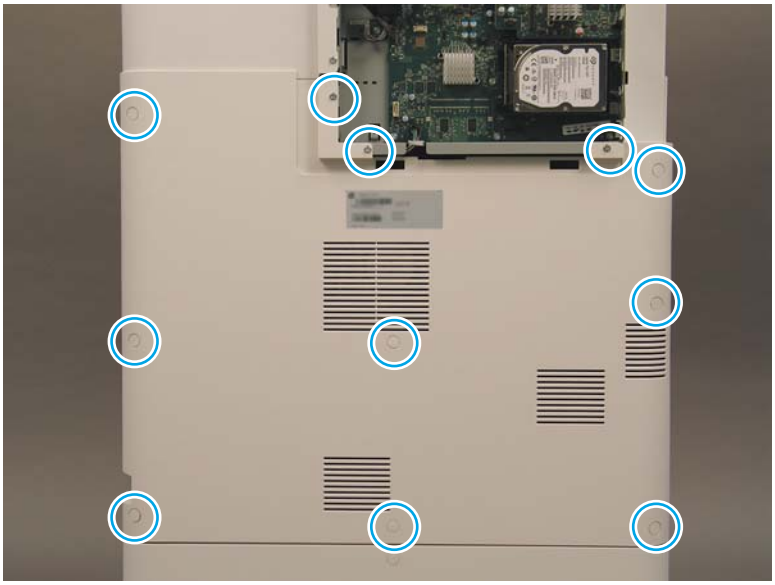
Figure 3-299 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

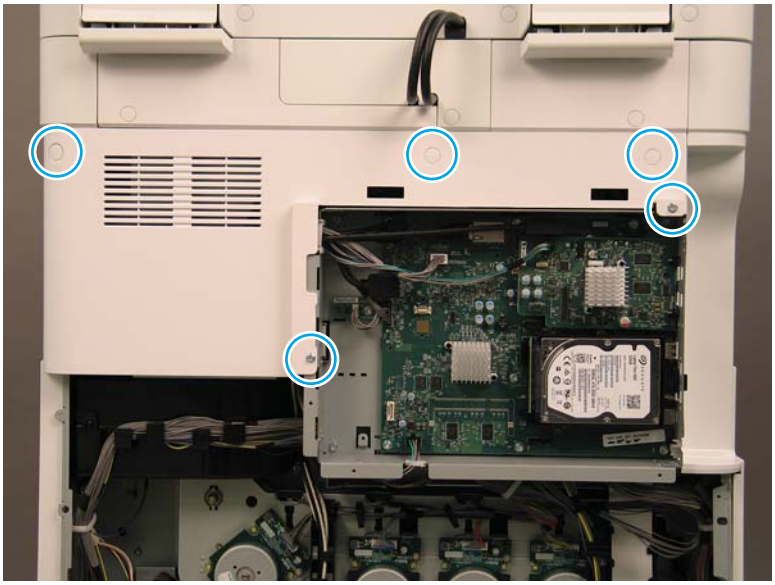
Figure 3-300 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover

- Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

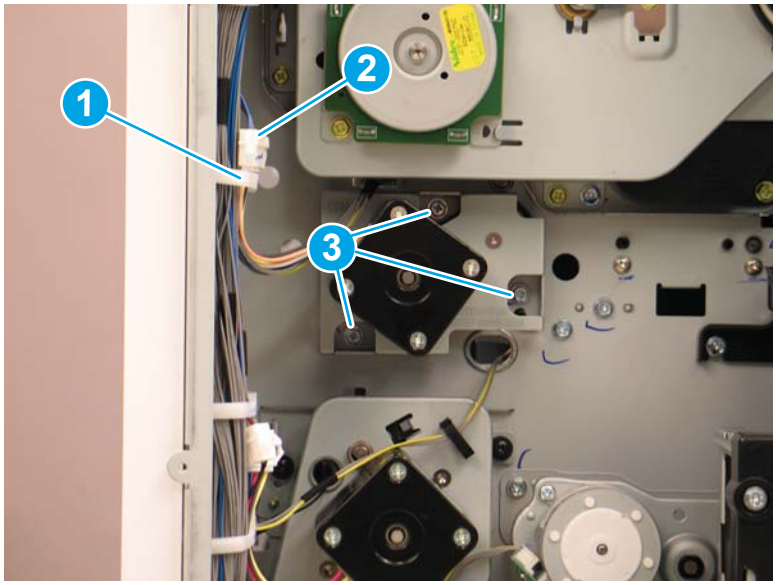
Figure 3-301 Remove the upper rear cover



Step 4: Remove the registration drive assembly

- Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2). Remove three screws (callout 3), and then remove the registration drive assembly.

Figure 3-302 Remove the registration drive assembly



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Toner collection unit (TCU) sensors

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the TCU
- Step 2: Remove the front cover.
- Step 3: Remove the front top inner cover
- Step 4: Remove the front power cover
- Step 5: Remove the output bin
- Step 6: Remove the paper dust brush
- Step 7: Remove the inner front cover
- Step 8: Remove the TCU sensors
- Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the toner collection unit (TCU) sensors.

Click here to view a video of the toner collection unit level sensor procedure.

Click here to view a video of the toner collection unit detect sensor procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

TCU sensor part numbers	
SAM-JC93-00492A	TCU sensor
SAM-0604-001393	Photo Interrupter

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

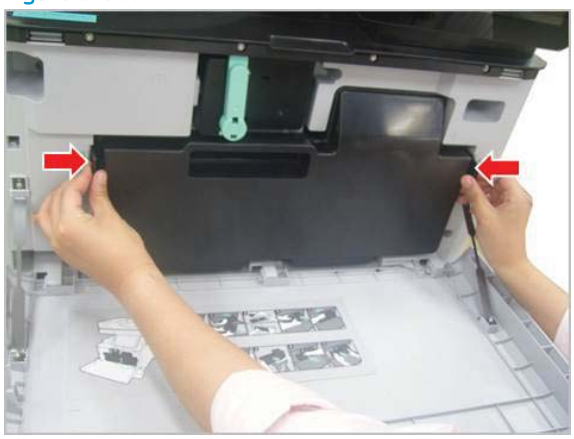
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the TCU

1. Open the front cover.
2. Push both hooks to release the toner collection unit (TCU).

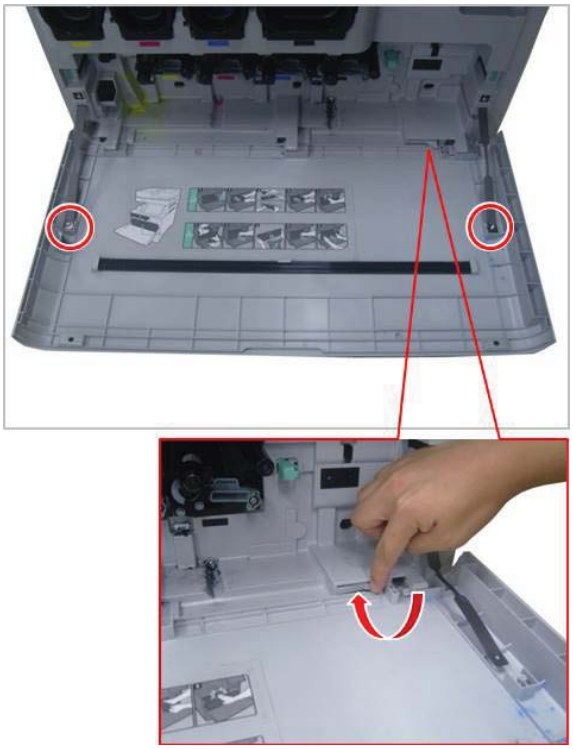
Figure 3-303 Remove the TCU



Step 2: Remove the front cover.

- Remove two screws securing the front cover. While pushing the right hook, remove the front cover.

Figure 3-304 Remove the front cover



Step 3: Remove the front top inner cover

▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-305 Remove the front top inner cover

Step 4: Remove the front power cover

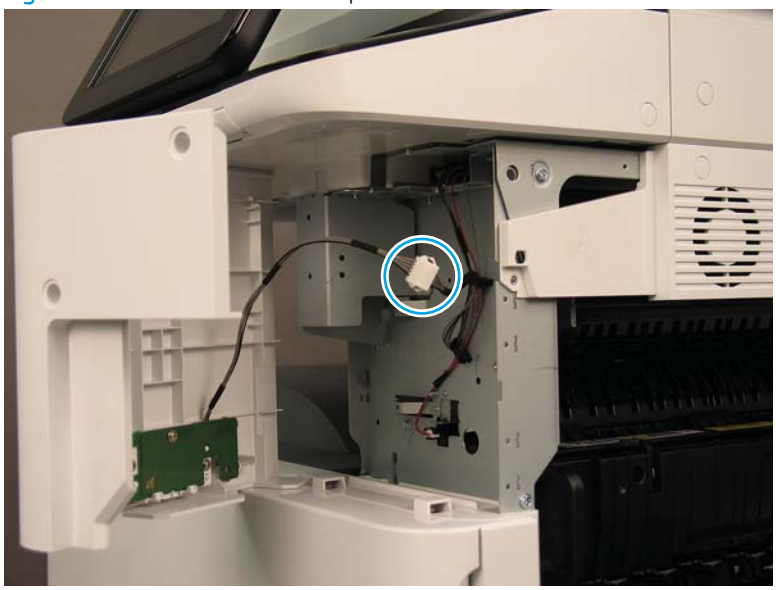
1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 3-306 Remove two screws and rotate the cover

2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-307 Remove the front power cover



Step 5: Remove the output bin

- Remove two screw-caps and two screws, and then lift the output bin away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-308 Remove the output bin

Step 6: Remove the paper dust brush

▲ Remove the paper dust brush.

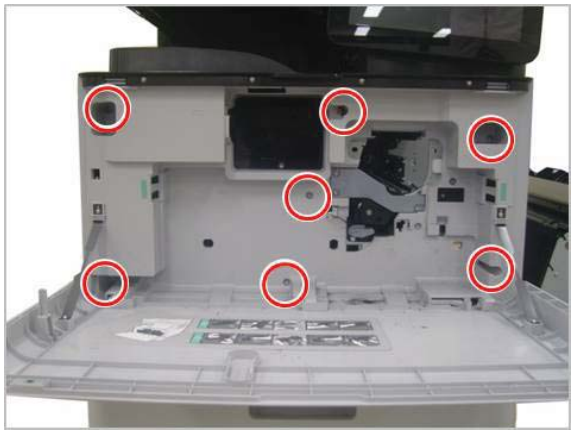
Figure 3-309 Remove the paper dust brush

Step 7: Remove the inner front cover

1. Remove the toner cartridge.
2. Open the right door.

3. Remove seven screws.

Figure 3-310 Screw locations

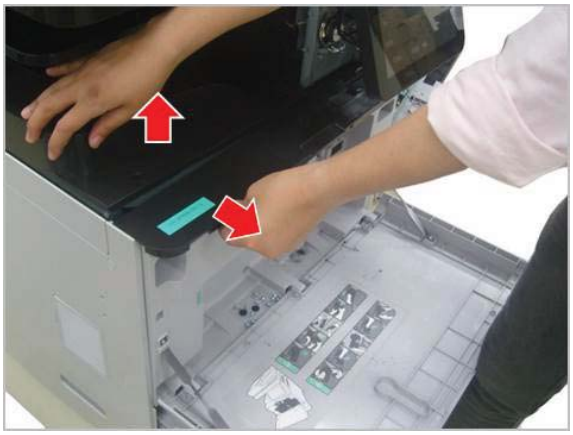


4. Remove two screw caps and two screws on the output bin.

Figure 3-311 Remove two screw caps and two screws

5. Remove the inner front cover while lifting the output bin.

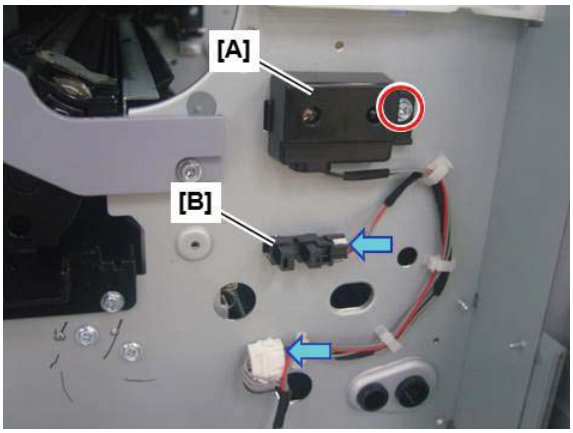
Figure 3-312 Remove the inner front cover



Step 8: Remove the TCU sensors

▲ If removing the toner collection unit level sensor [A], remove one screw, disconnect one connector, and then remove the sensor. If removing the toner collection unit detect sensor [B], disconnect one connector and remove the sensor.

Figure 3-313 Remove the sensor



Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Reservoir unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the developer unit
- Step 2: Remove the left cover
- Step 3: Remove the laser scanner assembly
- Step 4: Remove the front top inner cover
- Step 5: Remove the output bin
- Step 6: Remove the paper dust brush
- Step 7: Remove the inner front cover
- Step 8: Remove the reservoir unit
- Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the reservoir unit.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Reservoir unit part number	
SAM-JC93-01071A	Toner Reservoir

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

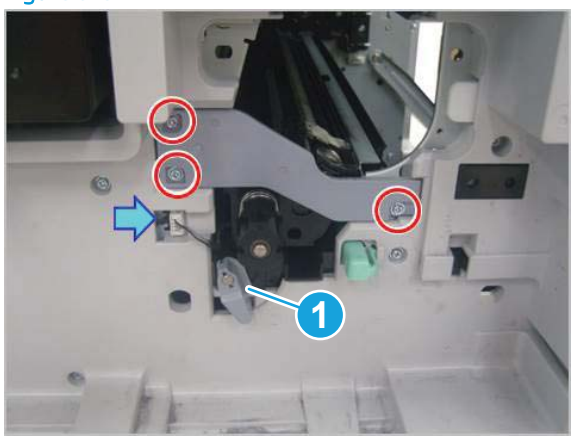
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the developer unit

1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).
2. Remove the imaging drum unit.
3. Move the developer locking lever (callout 1) to the down position. Remove three screws to release the bracket, and then disconnect the small, black cable connector .

Figure 3-314 Remove three screws and disconnect the small, black cable connector

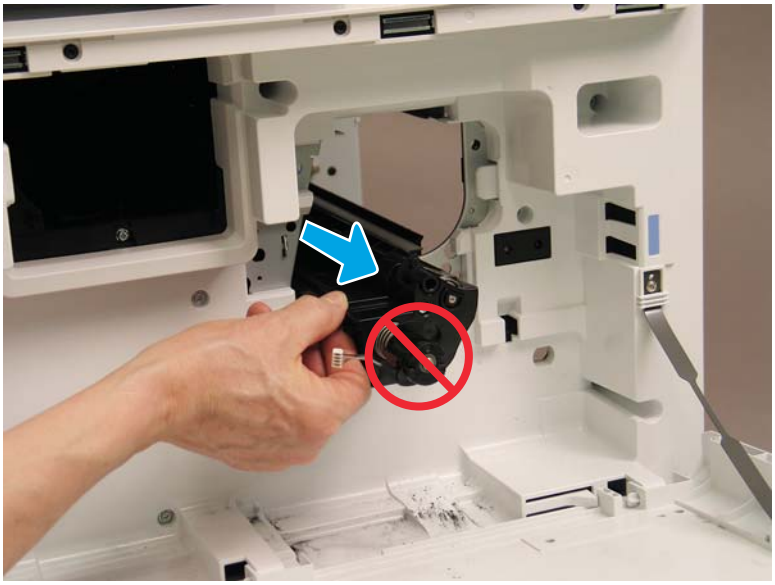


4. Hold the grip point of the developer unit and remove it.

NOTE: Do not grip the waste toner connection when removing the developer unit.

Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling the developer unit, press on the unit just above the waste toner auger, and then slide the unit into the printer.

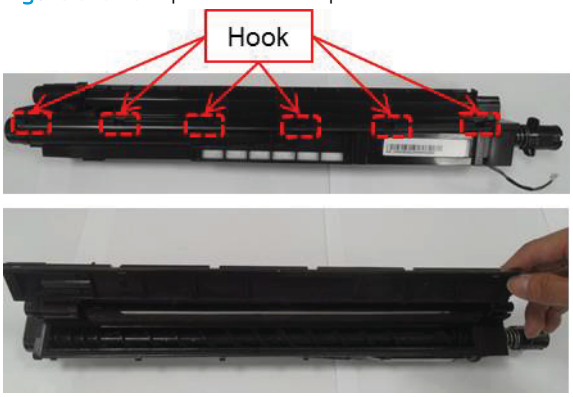
Figure 3-315 Remove the developer unit



5. Unpack the new developer unit box and check the components. In the box is a developer unit and a silver pack of developer powder.

6. Hold the cover, and then release six hooks. Open the cover.

Figure 3-316 Open the developer unit



NOTE: Before filling the developer, shake the silver pack about three times to prevent the developer powder from scattering.

7. Distribute the developer powder into the developer unit.

NOTE: When filling the developer, intermittently rock and gently shake the developer from side to side to avoid overflow.

Figure 3-317 Distribute the developer powder

8. Reinstall the developer cover.
9. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Developer unit

▲ After the replacement developer unit is installed, follow these instructions to reset the firmware counter:

i. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select the Support Tools menu.

ii. Select the Service menu.

iii. Make sure that Service Access Code is selected in the drop-down menu, and then enter the access code (04082517).

iv. Select the Service Tools menu.

v. Select the Supply Status menu.

vi. Select Field Replacement Unit.

vii. Select Development Unit (Developer) (YMCK).

viii. Select the check box on the right side of the screen for the Black Developer Unit.

ix. Select Reset.

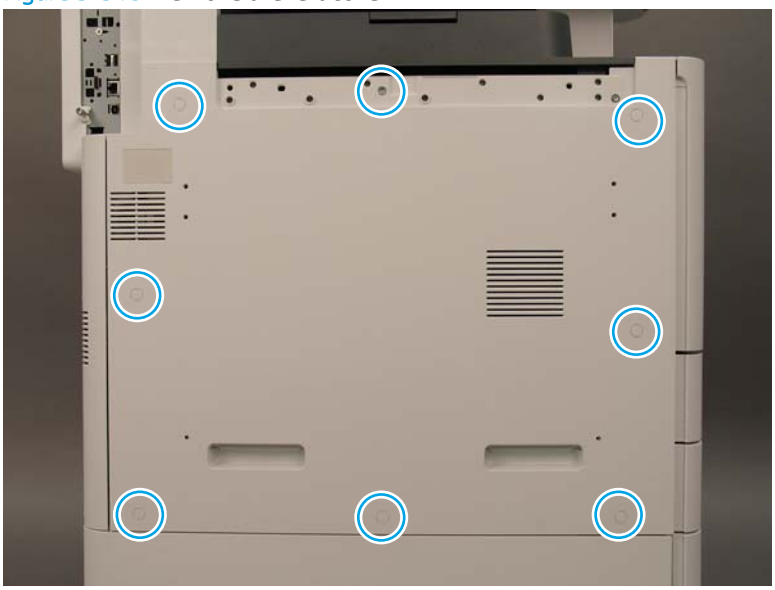
Step 2: Remove the left cover

1. Remove the left-dummy cover.

Figure 3-318 Left dummy cover

2. Remove seven screw-caps and eight screws, and lift the left cover off of the printer.

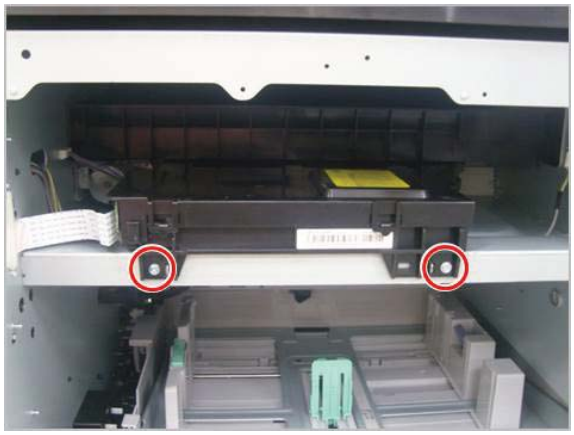
Figure 3-319 Remove the left cover



Step 3: Remove the laser scanner assembly

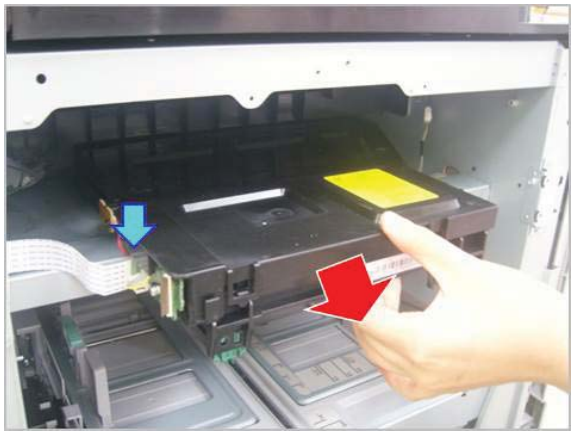
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 3-320 Remove two screws



2. Pull the laser scanner assembly partially out of the printer, disconnect one flat cable, and then remove the laser scanner assembly.

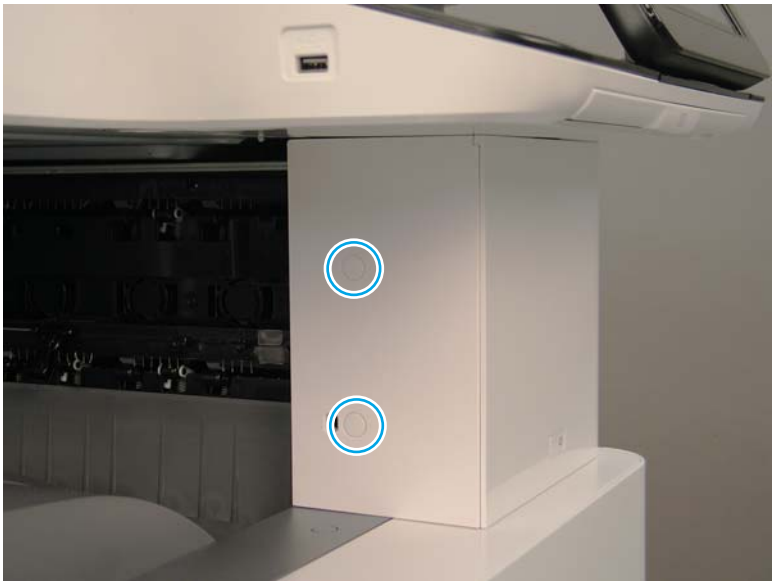
Figure 3-321 Remove the laser scanner assembly



Step 4: Remove the front top inner cover

- Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-322 Remove the front top inner cover



Step 5: Remove the output bin

- Remove two screw-caps and two screws, and then lift the output bin away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-323 Remove the output bin

Step 6: Remove the paper dust brush

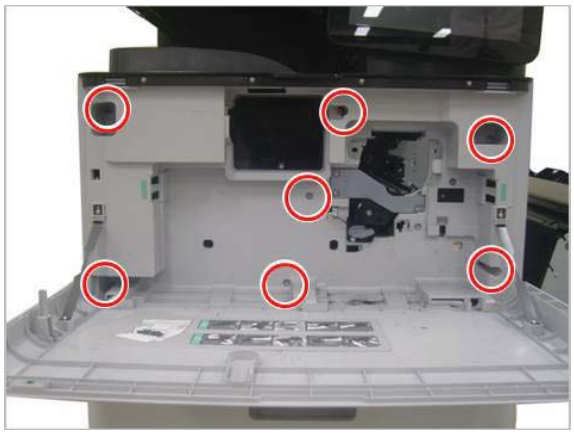
- Remove the paper dust brush.

Figure 3-324 Remove the paper dust brush

Step 7: Remove the inner front cover

1. Remove the toner cartridge.
2. Open the right door.
3. Remove seven screws.

Figure 3-325 Screw locations

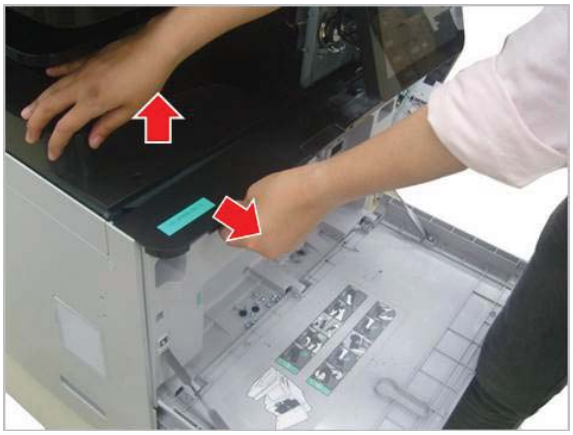


4. Remove two screw caps and two screws on the output bin.

Figure 3-326 Remove two screw caps and two screws

5. Remove the inner front cover while lifting the output bin.

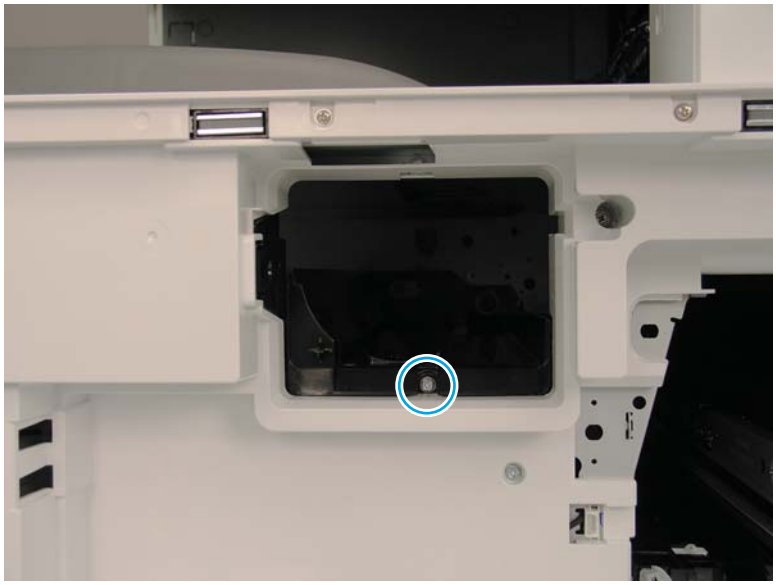
Figure 3-327 Remove the inner front cover



Step 8: Remove the reservoir unit

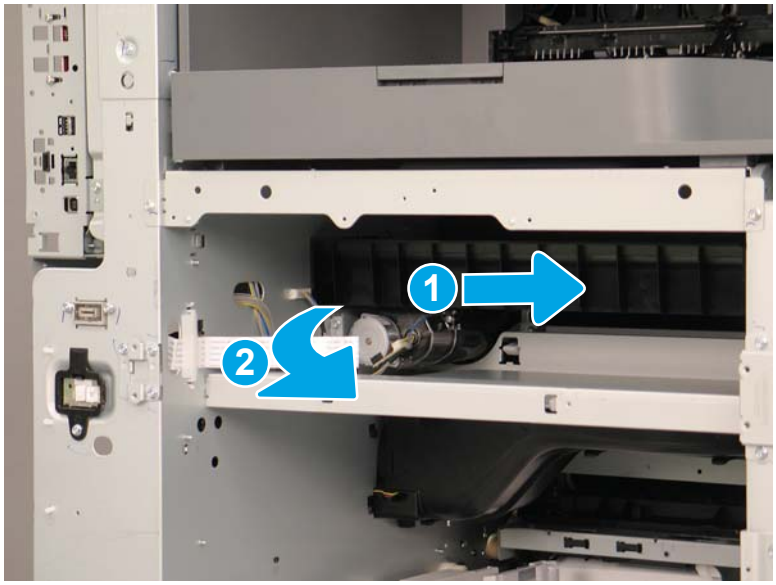
1. At the front of the printer, remove one screw securing the toner guide.

Figure 3-328 Remove one screw



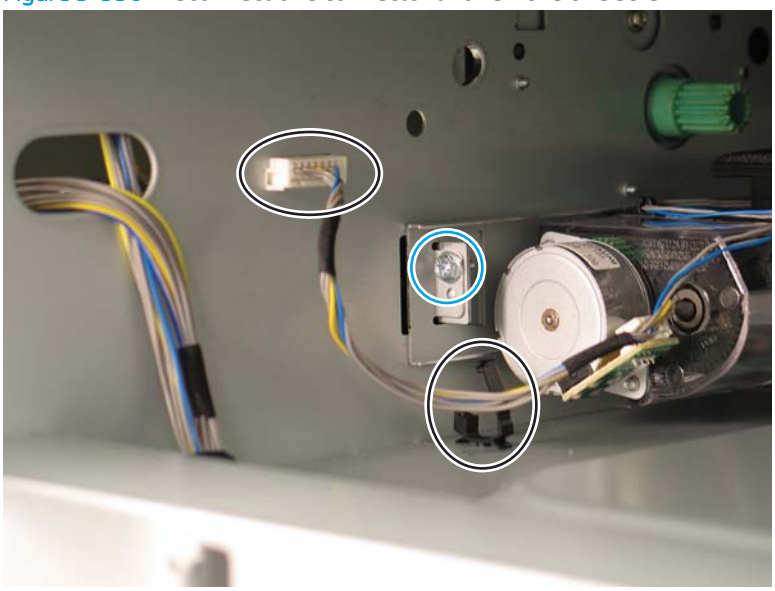
2. Lift the front of the guide up and slide it slightly toward the rear of the printer (callout 1). Rotate the front of the guide toward the left side of the printer, and then remove the guide through the left side opening.

Figure 3-329 Remove the toner guide



3. Disconnect one connector and remove one screw.

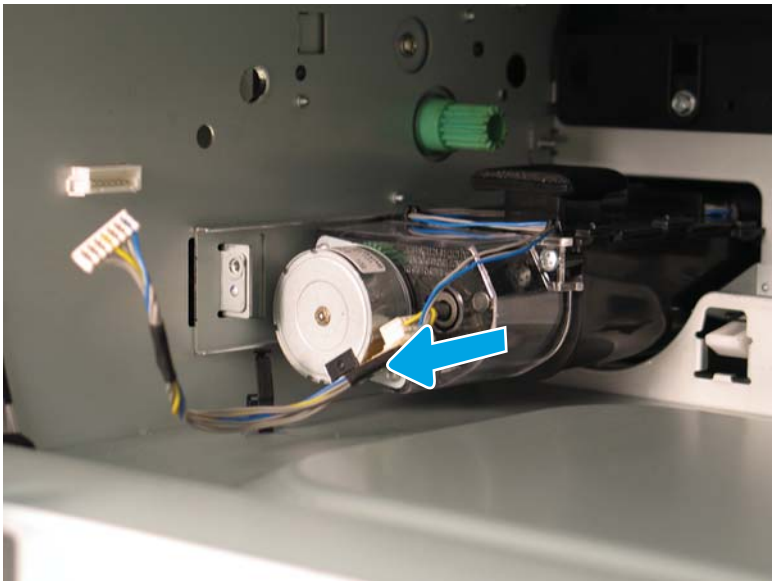
Figure 3-330 Disconnect one connector and remove one screw



4. Remove the reservoir assembly.

Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling the reservoir assembly, install the tab in the back first, and then rotate the assembly toward the sheet metal wall over the screw opening.

Figure 3-331 Remove the reservoir assembly



Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Auto size sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the auto size sensor
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the auto size sensor.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Auto size sensor part number	
SAM-JC92-02622A	Auto size sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

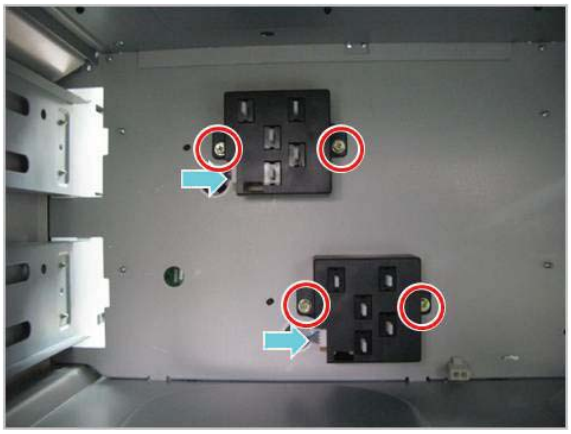
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the auto size sensor

▲ Do the following:

- Remove all trays to access the inside of the printer.
- Disconnect the connector. Remove two screws, and then remove the sensor.

Figure 3-332 Remove screws



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Fuser out sensor (on the right door)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove the fuser out sensor
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the fuser out sensor.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Fuser out sensor part number
Fuser out sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

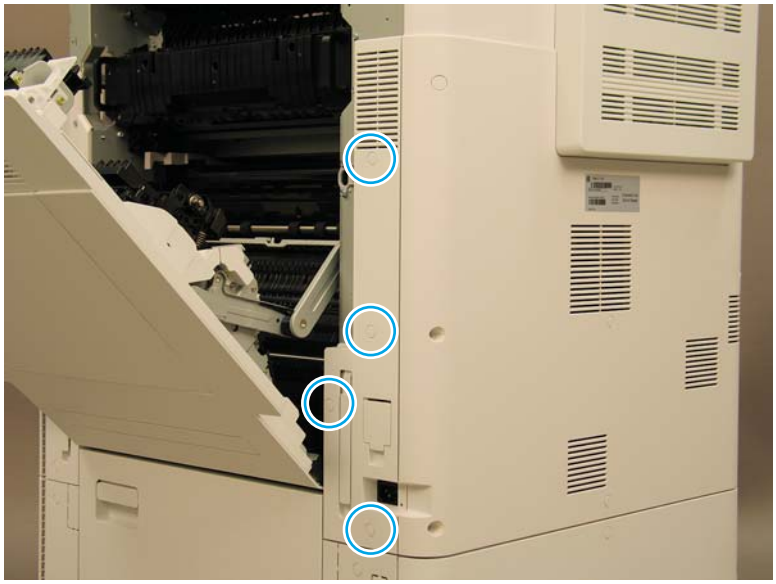
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

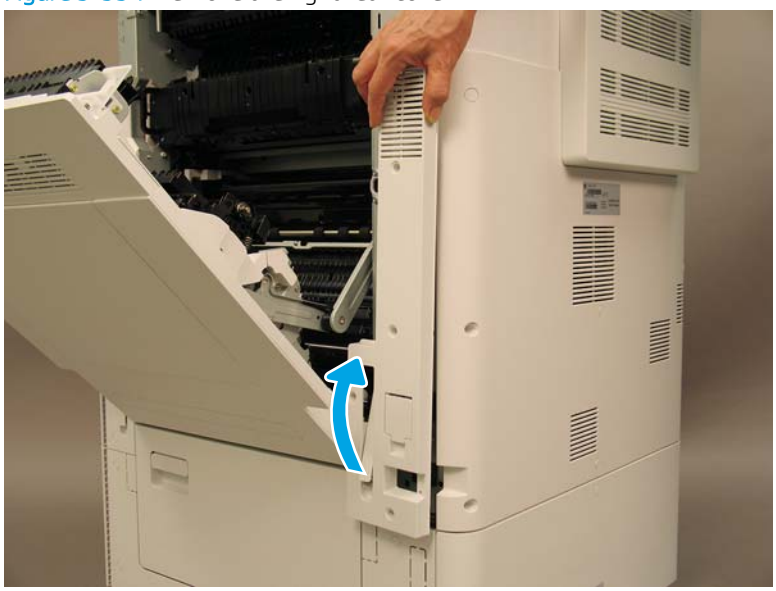
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-333 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

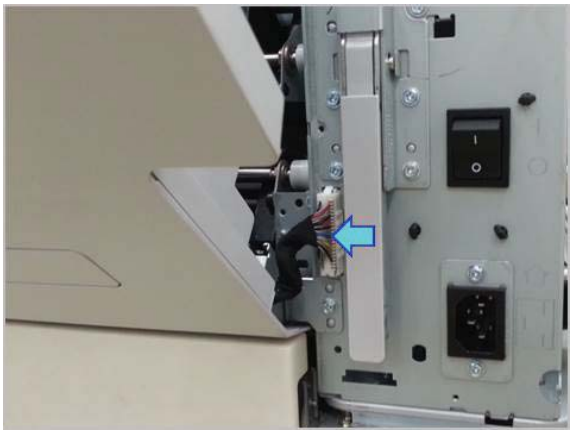
Figure 3-334 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

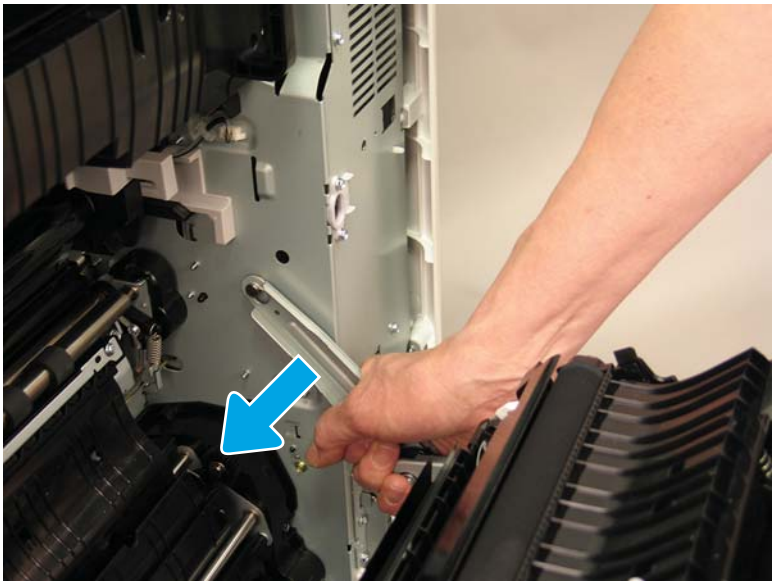
Figure 3-335 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

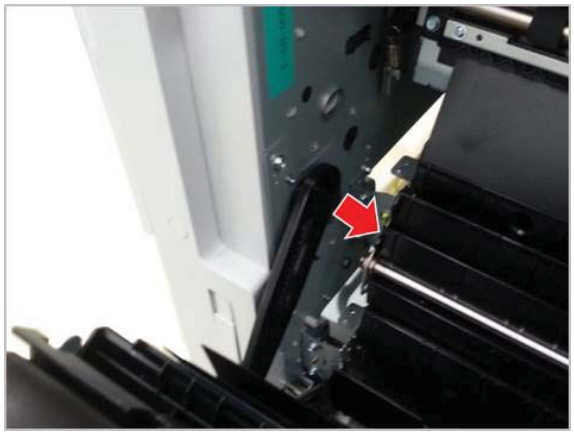
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-336 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

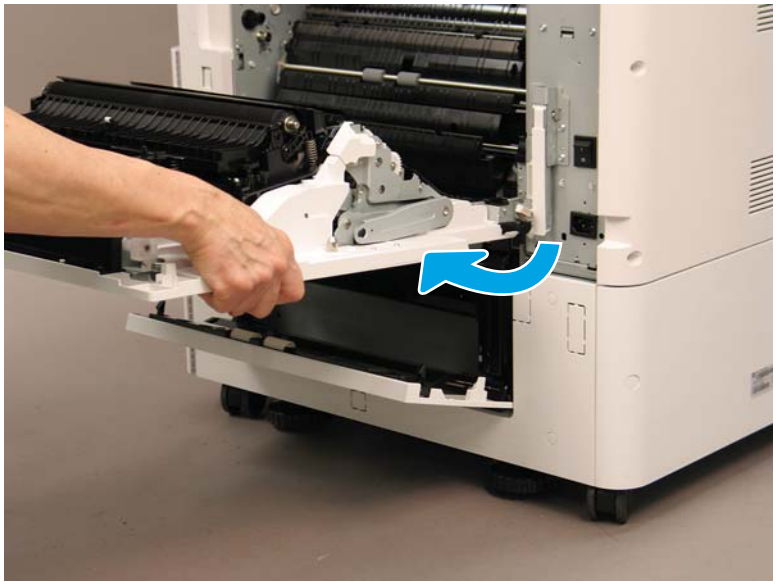
Figure 3-337 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 3-338 Remove the right door

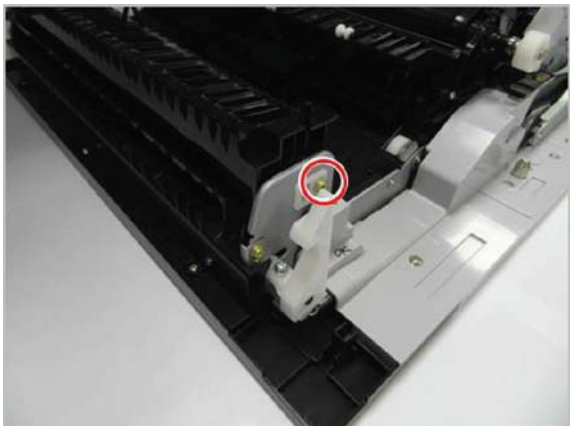


Step 3: Remove the fuser out sensor

1. Remove the right rear cover.
2. Remove the right door.

3. Remove one screw on the back, top corner of the door.

Figure 3-339 Remove one screw



4. Remove one screw on the front, top corner of the door, and then open the cover-side output.

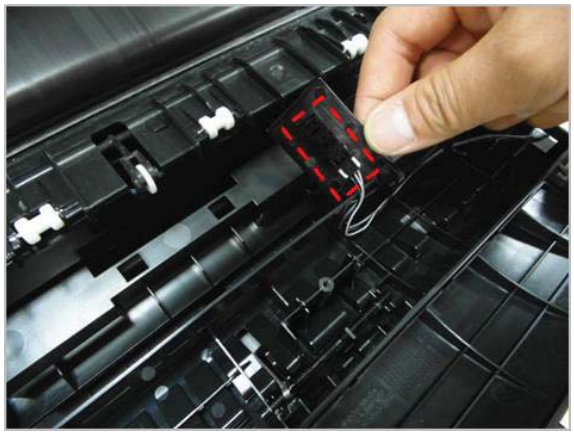
Figure 3-340 Remove one screw

5. Remove one screw, and then rotate the sensor holder up.

Figure 3-341 Remove one screw

6. Disconnect the sensor connector, and then remove the fuser-out sensor from its holder.

Figure 3-342 Disconnect one connector



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Feed 2 sensor (on the right door)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper
- Step 4: Remove the feed 2 sensor
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the feed 2 sensor.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Feed 2 sensor part number
Feed 2 sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

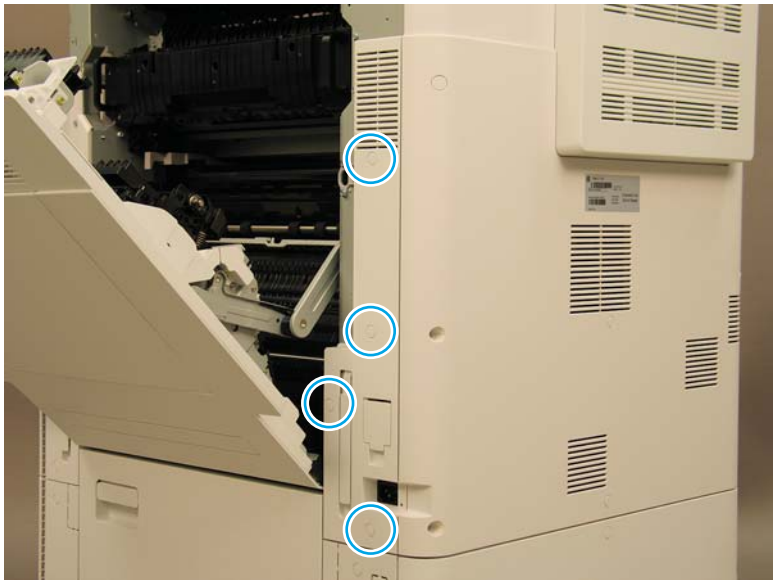
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

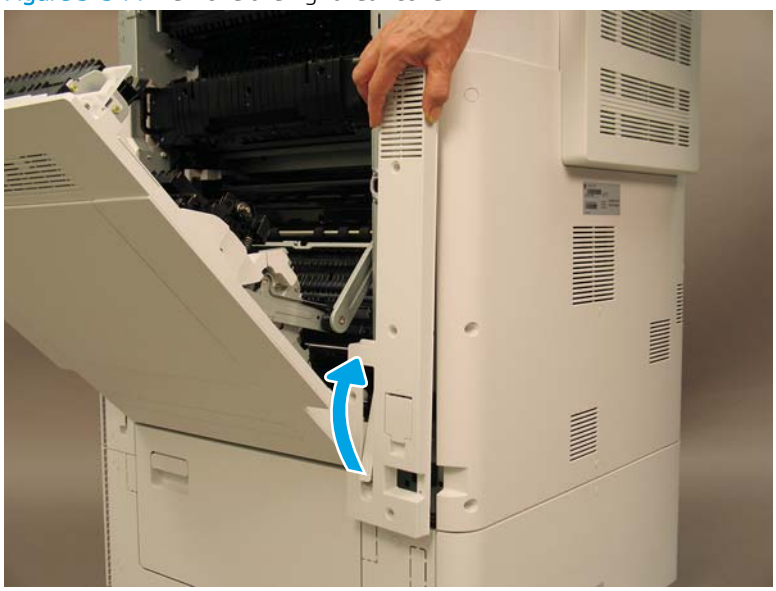
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-343 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

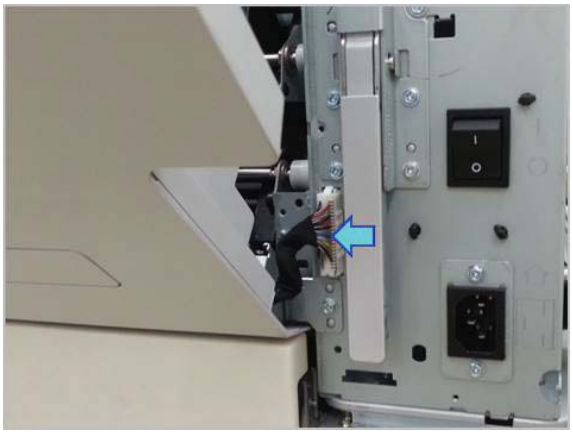
Figure 3-344 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

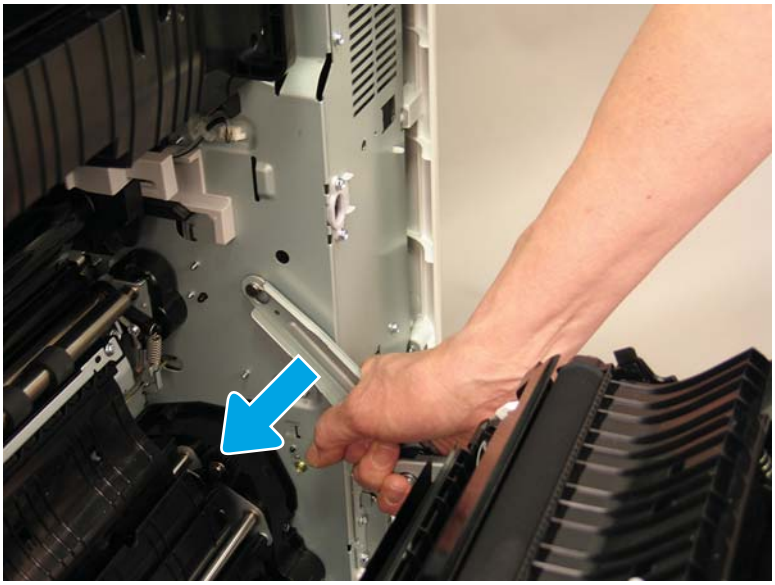
Figure 3-345 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

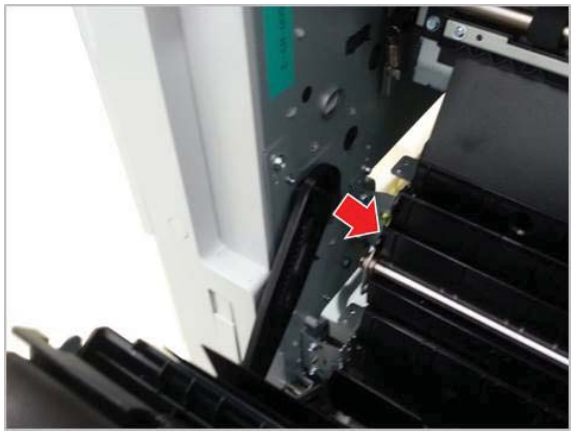
CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-346 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

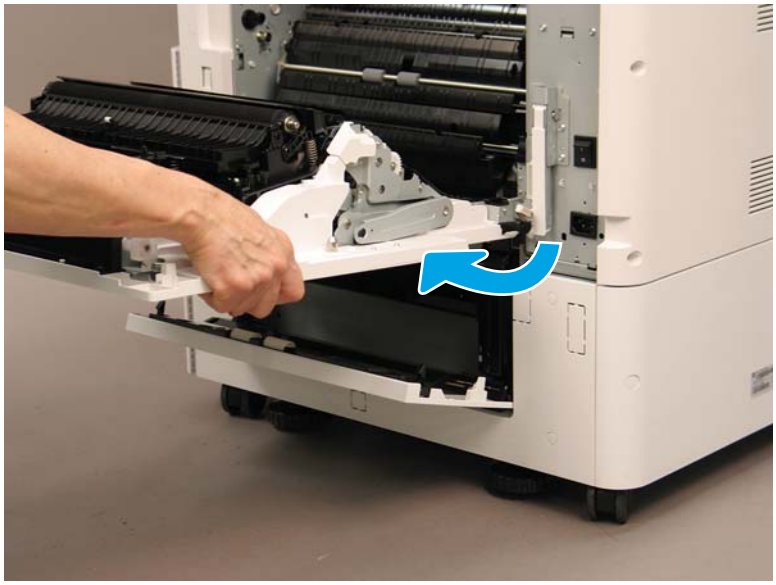
Figure 3-347 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

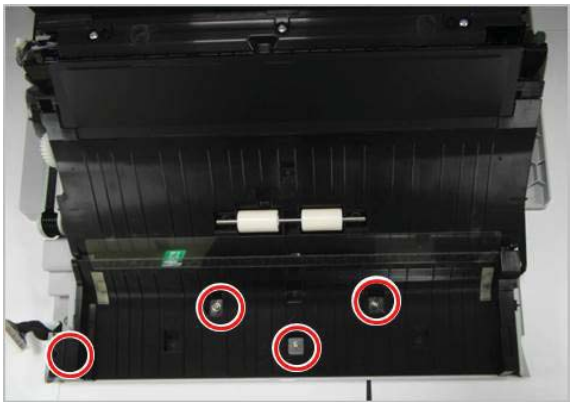
Figure 3-348 Remove the right door



Step 3: Remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper

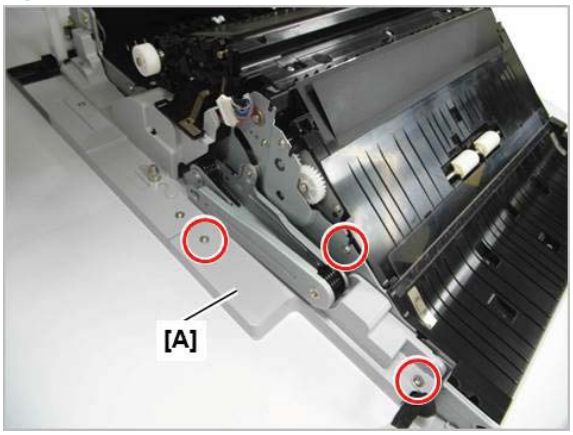
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 3-349 Remove four screws



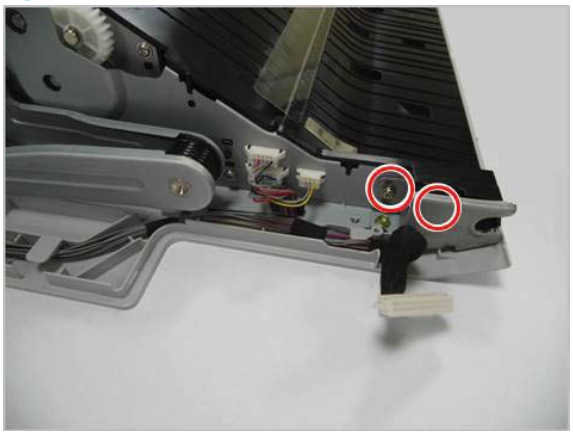
2. Remove three screws, and then remove the lower cable cover [A].

Figure 3-350 Remove three screws and the lower cable cover



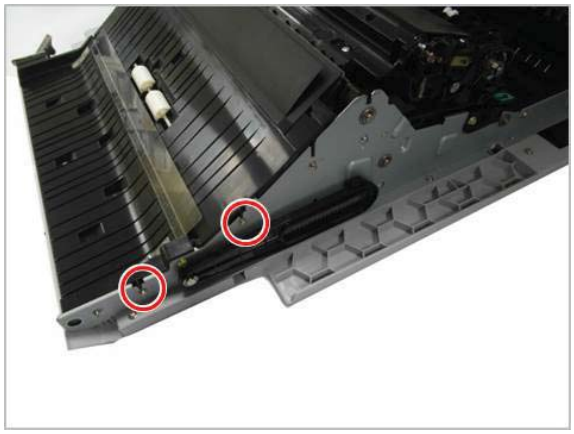
3. Remove two screws.

Figure 3-351 Remove two screws



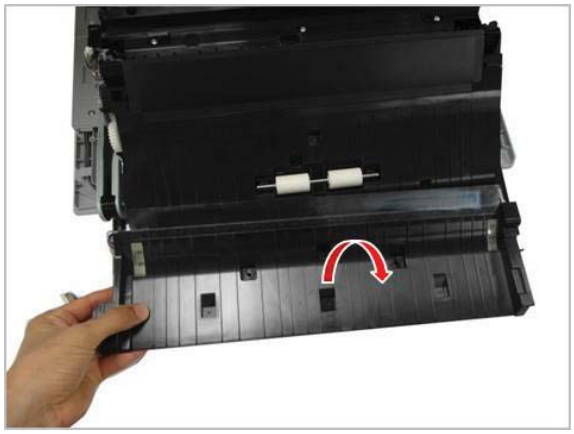
4. Remove two screws.

Figure 3-352 Remove two screws



5. Remove the feed guide take away lower.

Figure 3-353 Remove the feed guide take away lower



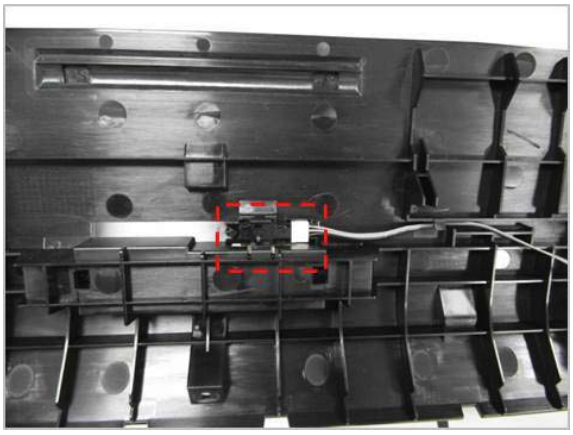
6. Disconnect the sensor connector. Remove one screw, and then remove the feed guide take away upper.

Figure 3-354 Remove the feed guide take away upper

Step 4: Remove the feed 2 sensor

▲ Disconnect the sensor connector, and then remove the feed 2 sensor located on the feed guide take away upper.

Figure 3-355 Disconnect one connector and remove the feed 2 sensor



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: ESD Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Multi-purpose (MP) unit (on the right door)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper
- Step 4: Remove the MP unit
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the multi-purpose (MP) unit on the right door.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

MP unit part number	
SAM-JC90-01352B	Tray 1, Door

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

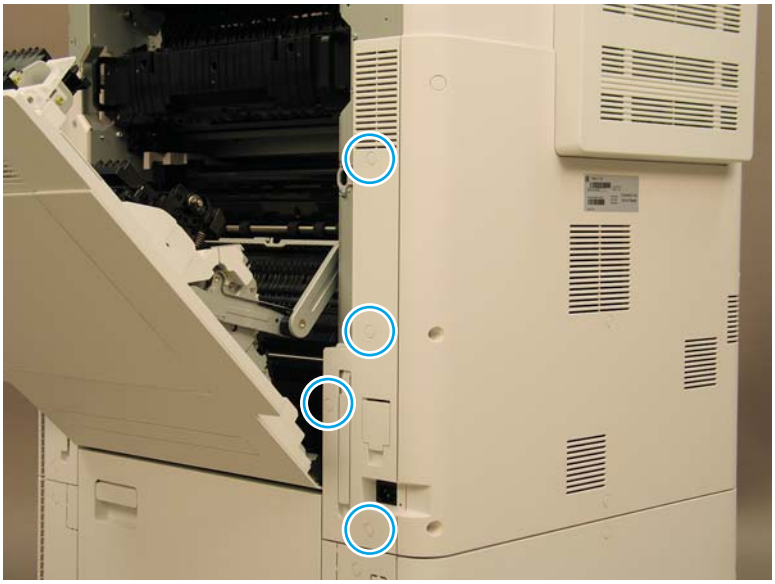
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

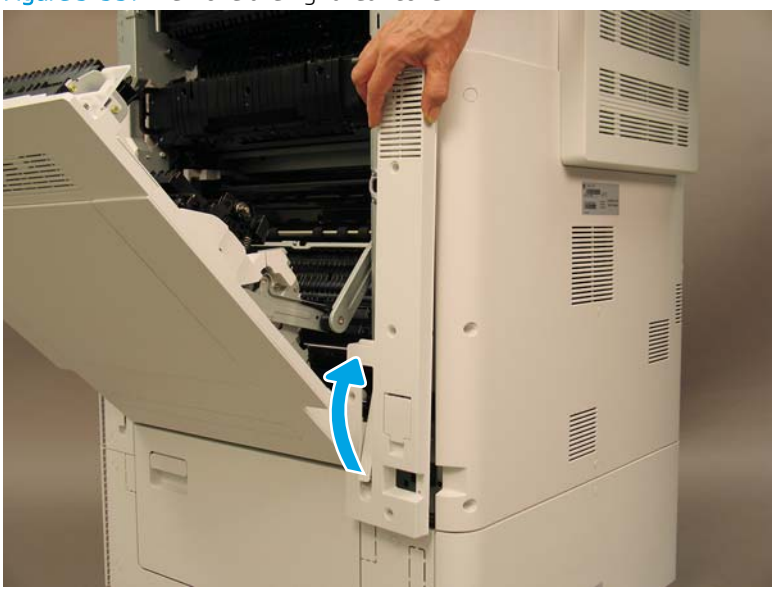
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-356 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

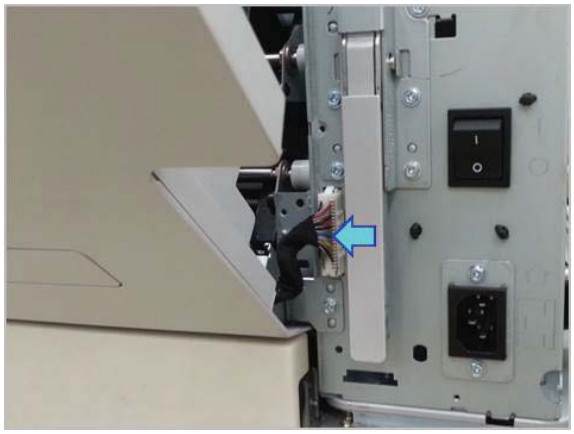
Figure 3-357 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

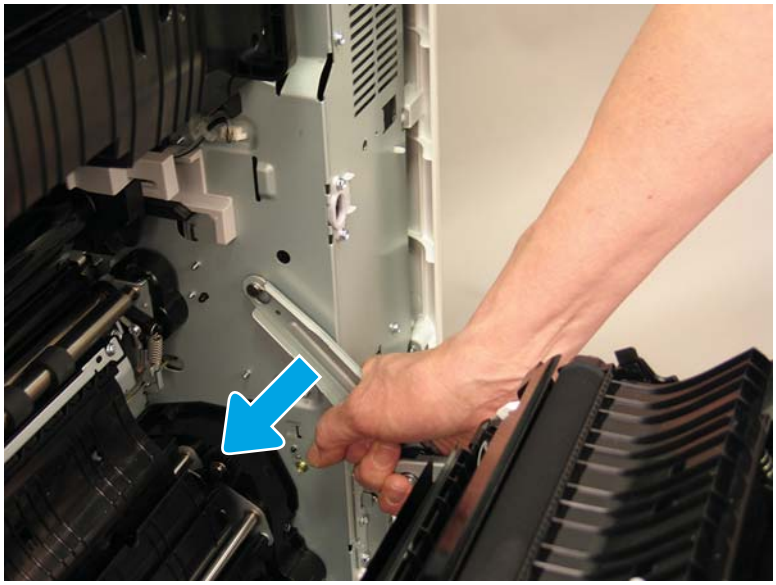
Figure 3-358 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

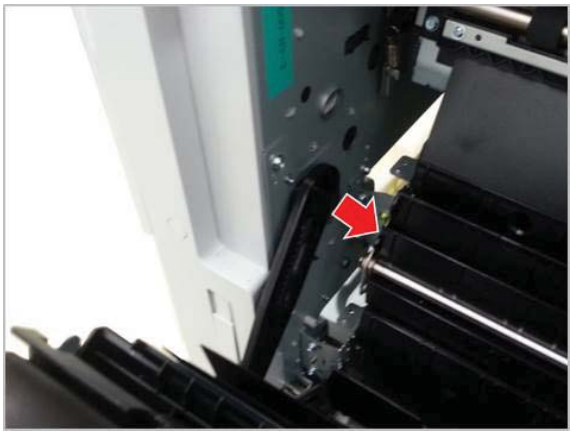
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-359 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

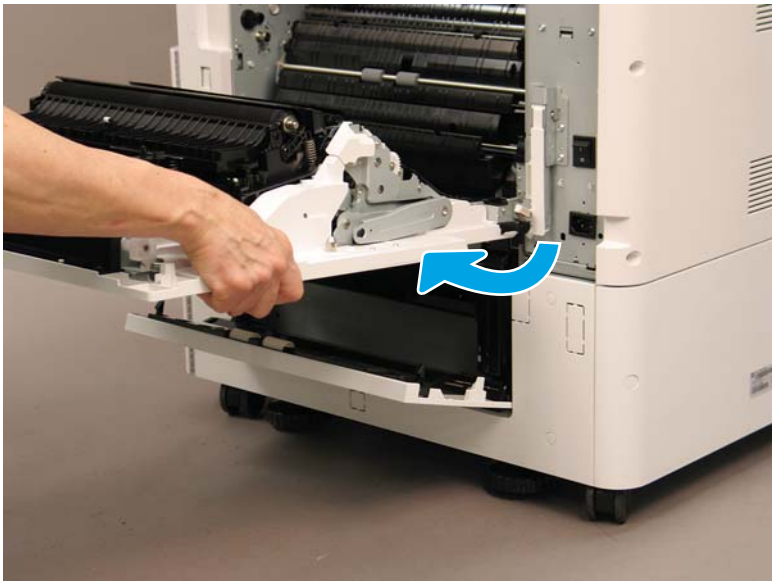
Figure 3-360 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

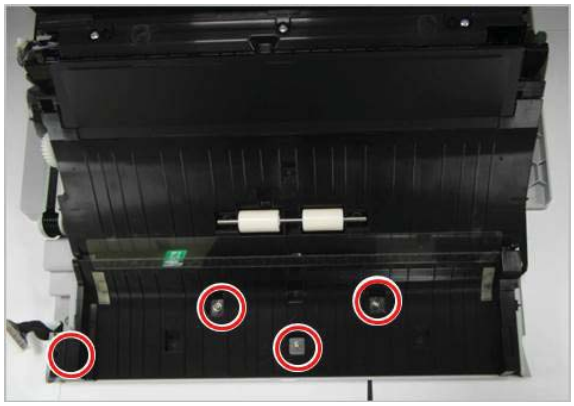
Figure 3-361 Remove the right door



Step 3: Remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper

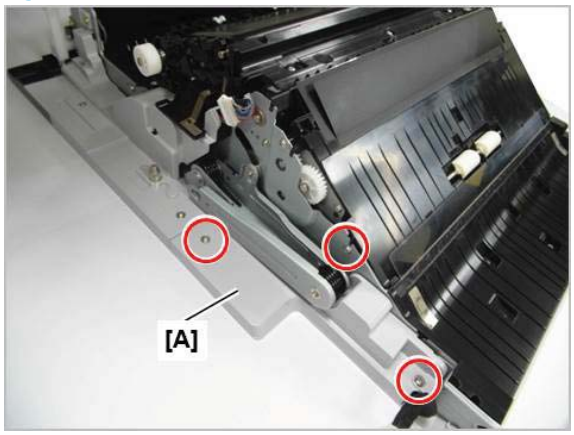
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 3-362 Remove four screws



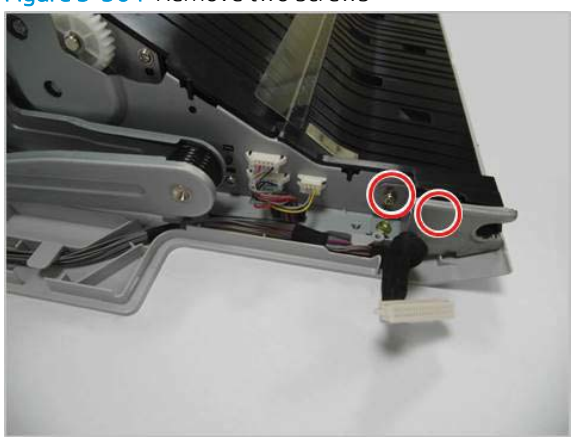
2. Remove three screws, and then remove the lower cable cover [A].

Figure 3-363 Remove three screws and the lower cable cover



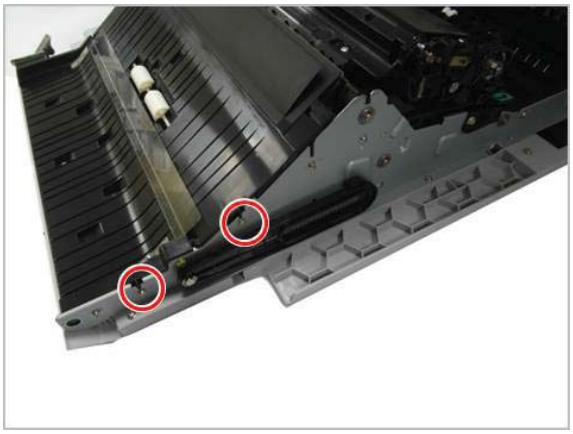
3. Remove two screws.

Figure 3-364 Remove two screws



4. Remove two screws.

Figure 3-365 Remove two screws



5. Remove the feed guide take away lower.

Figure 3-366 Remove the feed guide take away lower

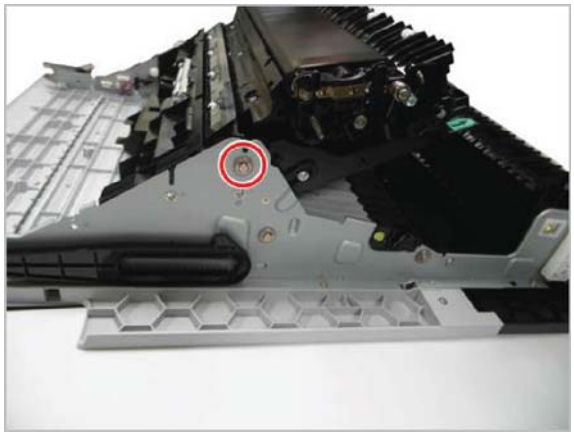
6. Disconnect the sensor connector. Remove one screw, and then remove the feed guide take away upper.

Figure 3-367 Remove the feed guide take away upper

Step 4: Remove the MP unit

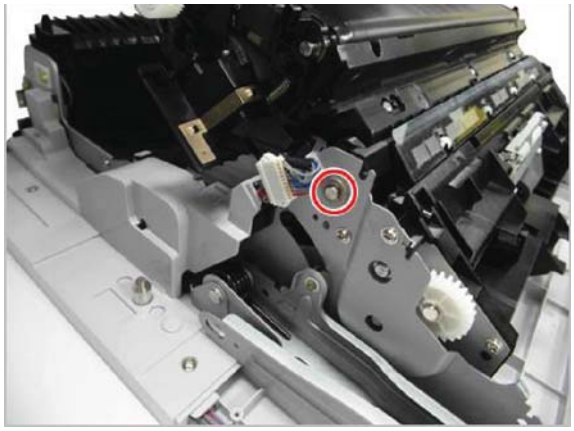
1. Remove one e-ring and bushing.

Figure 3-368 Remove one e-ring and bushing



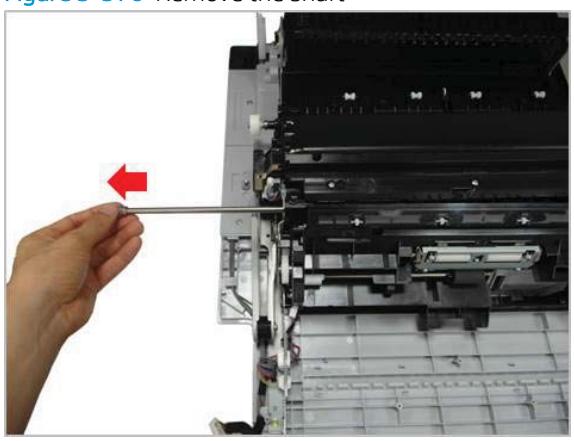
2. Remove one e-ring and bushing.

Figure 3-369 Remove one e-ring and bushing



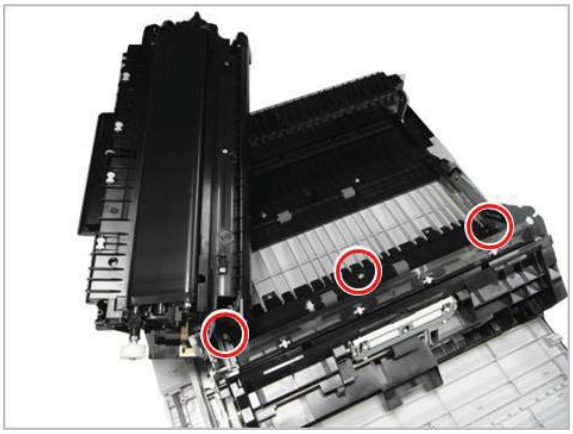
3. Remove the shaft.

Figure 3-370 Remove the shaft



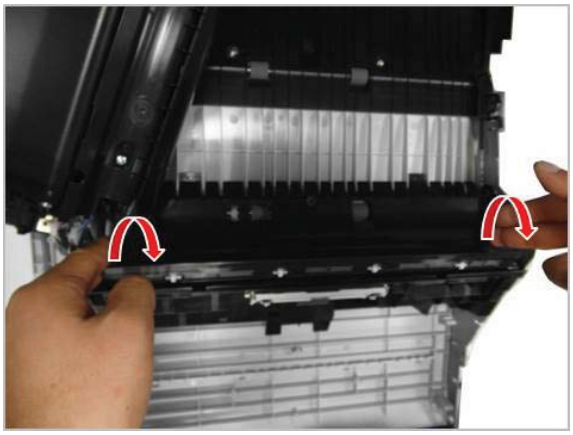
4. Release and position the PTB assembly as shown in the figure, and then remove three screws.

Figure 3-371 Remove three screws



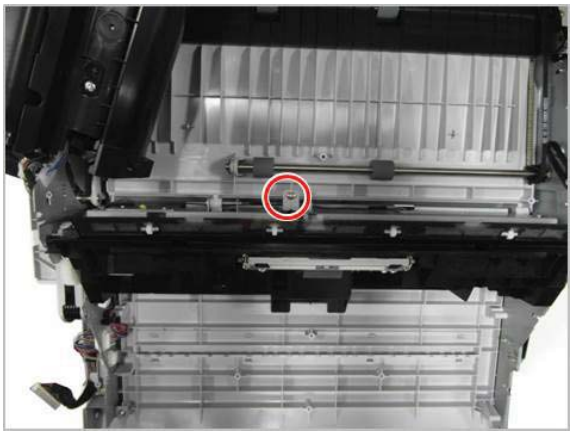
5. Remove the guide-duplex lower.

Figure 3-372 Remove the guide-duplex lower



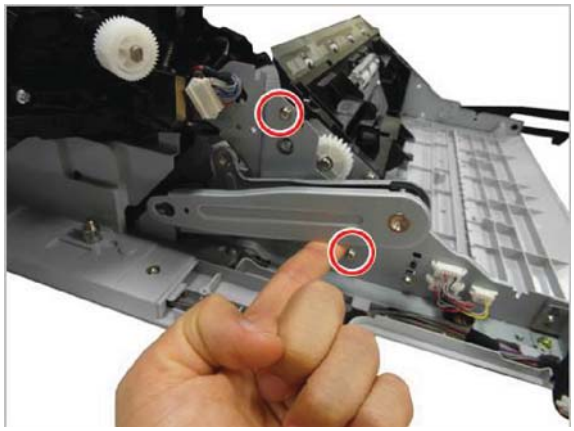
6. Remove one screw.

Figure 3-373 Remove one screw



7. Remove two screws.

Figure 3-374 Remove two screws



8. Remove two screws.

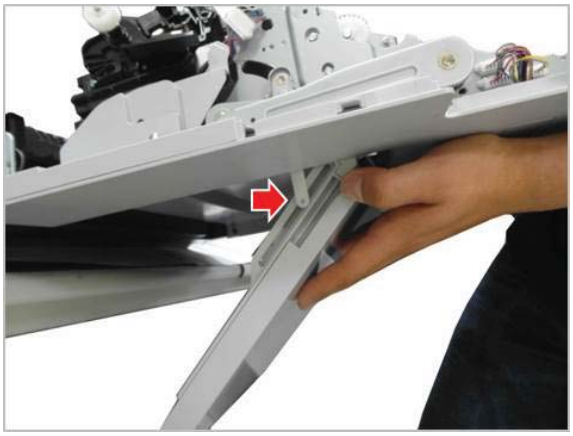
Figure 3-375 Remove two screws

9. Disconnect the sensor connector.

Figure 3-376 Disconnect one connector

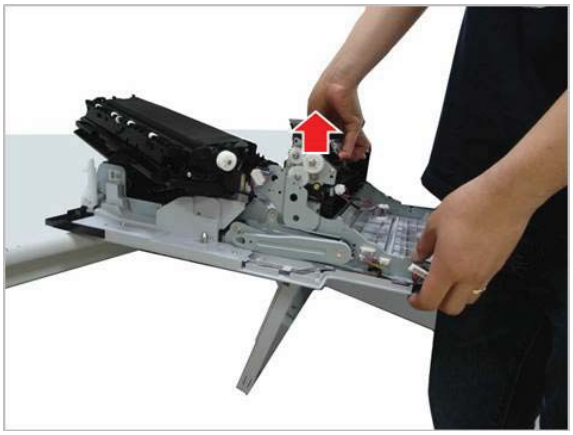
10. Release the MP Tray linker.

Figure 3-377 Release the MP Tray linker



11. Release the MP unit.

Figure 3-378 Release the MP unit



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Multi-purpose (MP) empty sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper
- Step 4: Remove the MP unit
- Step 5: Remove the MP empty sensor
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the multi-purpose (MP) empty sensor.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

MP empty sensor part number	
AM-0604-001393	Photo Interrupter

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

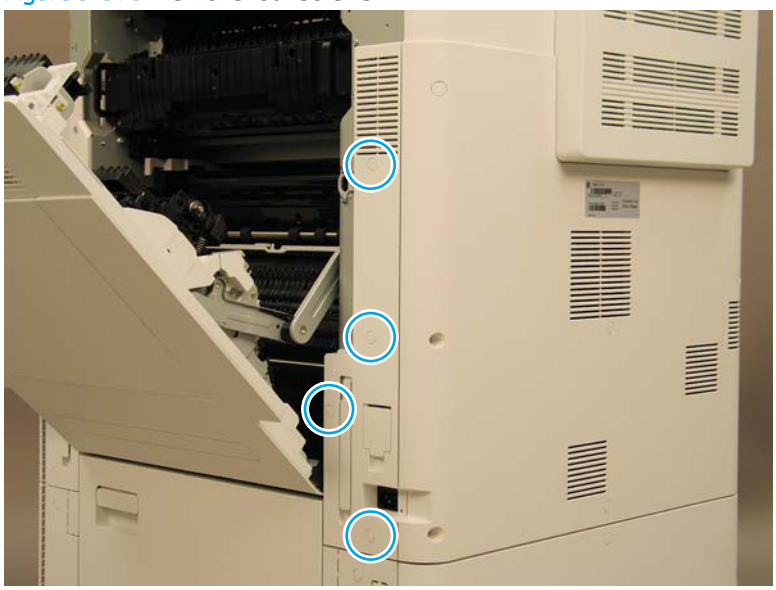
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

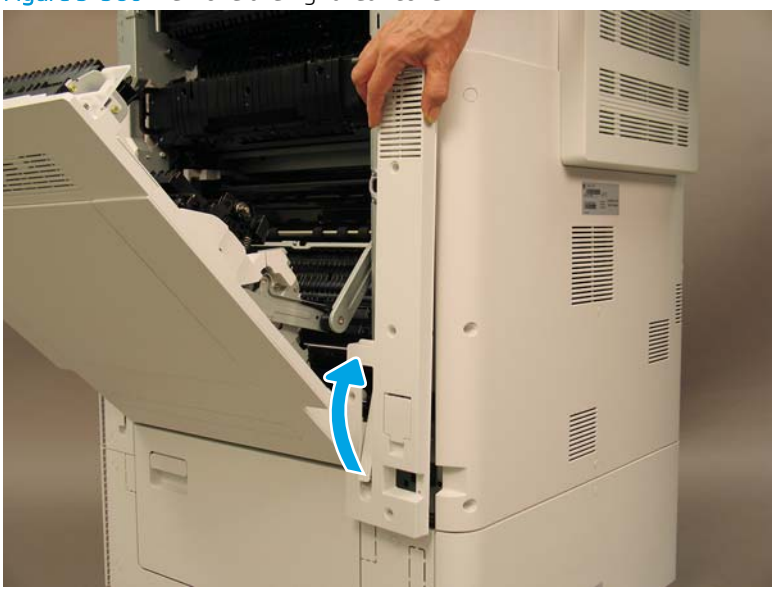
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-379 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

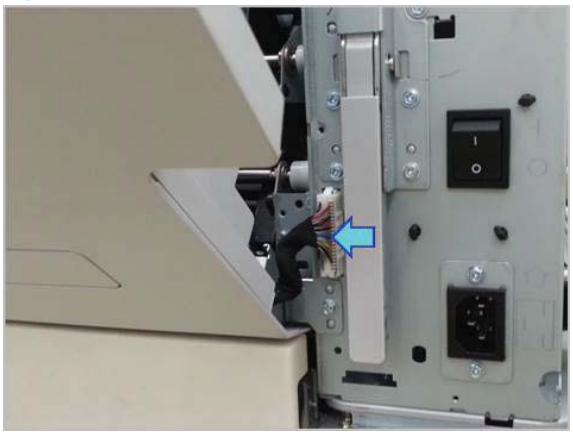
Figure 3-380 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

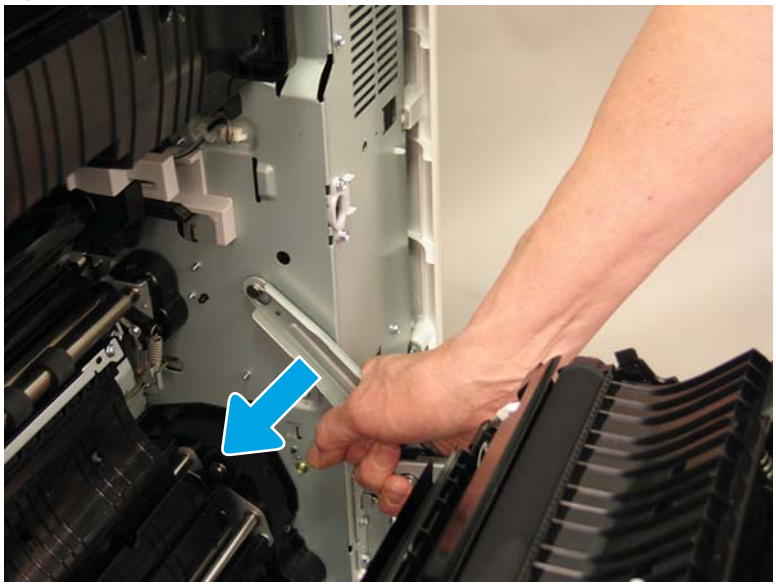
Figure 3-381 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

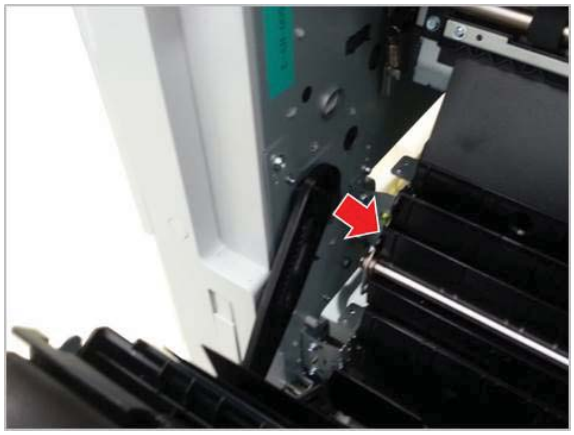
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-382 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

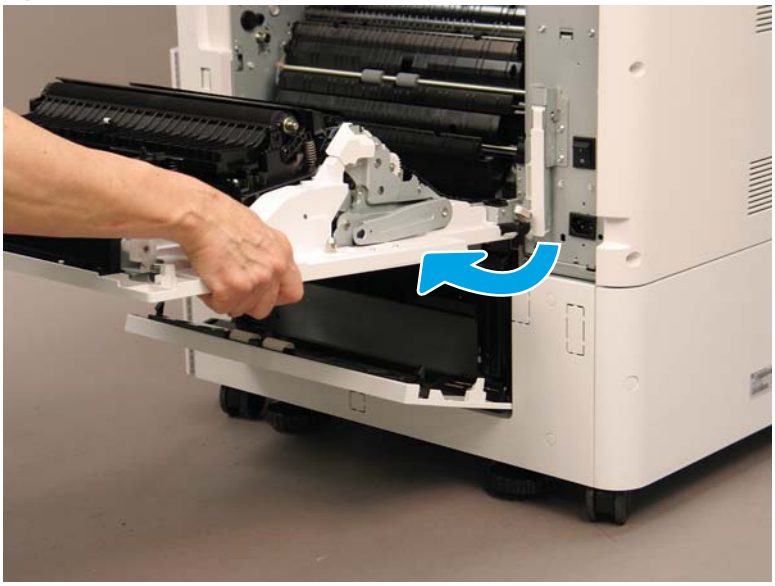
Figure 3-383 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

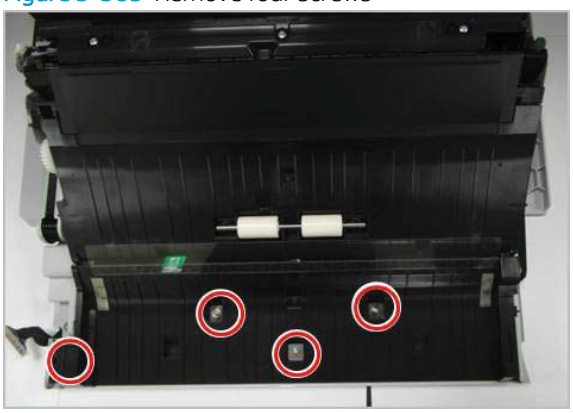
Figure 3-384 Remove the right door



Step 3: Remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper

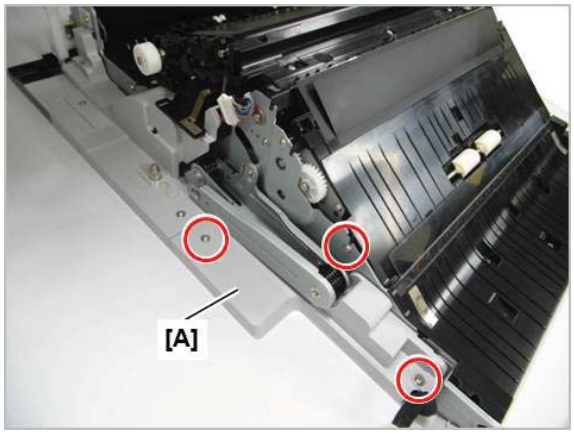
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 3-385 Remove four screws



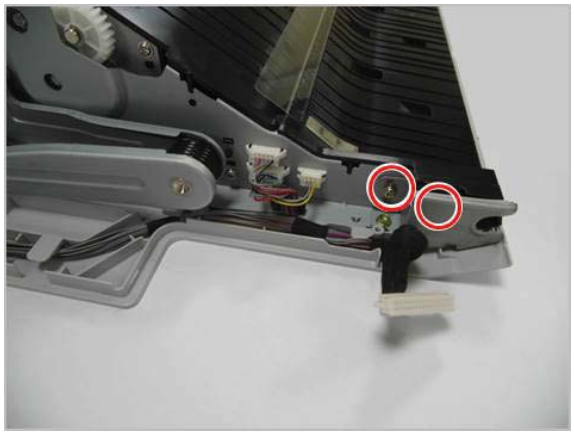
2. Remove three screws, and then remove the lower cable cover [A].

Figure 3-386 Remove three screws and the lower cable cover



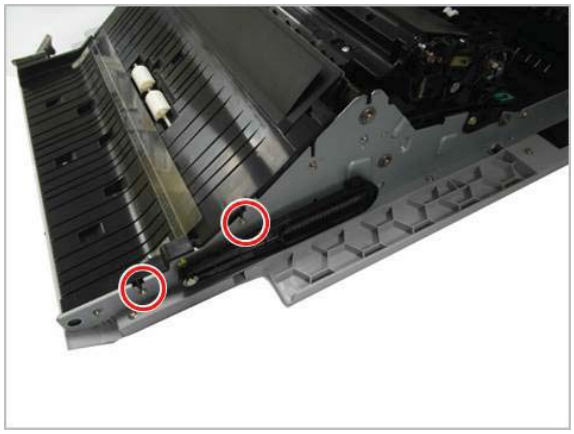
3. Remove two screws.

Figure 3-387 Remove two screws



4. Remove two screws.

Figure 3-388 Remove two screws



5. Remove the feed guide take away lower.

Figure 3-389 Remove the feed guide take away lower

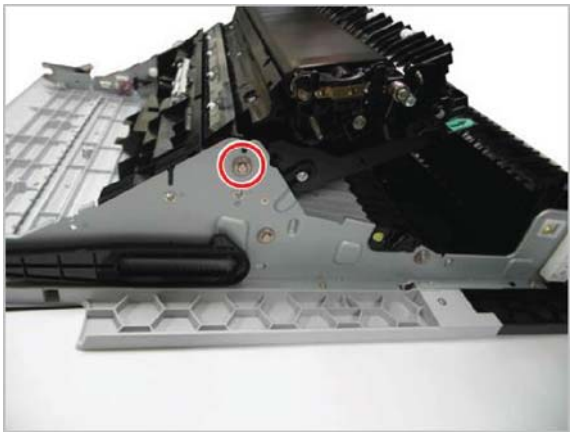
6. Disconnect the sensor connector. Remove one screw, and then remove the feed guide take away upper.

Figure 3-390 Remove the feed guide take away upper

Step 4: Remove the MP unit

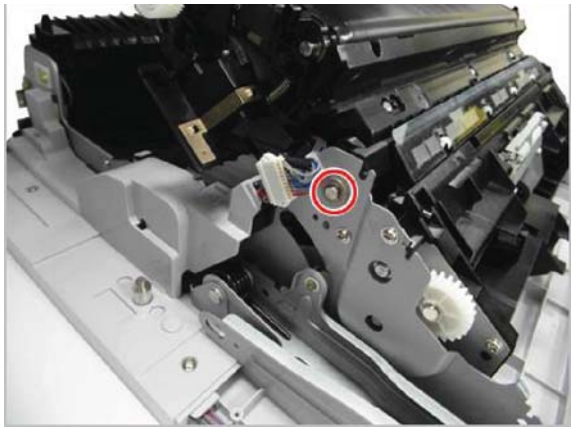
1. Remove one e-ring and bushing.

Figure 3-391 Remove one e-ring and bushing



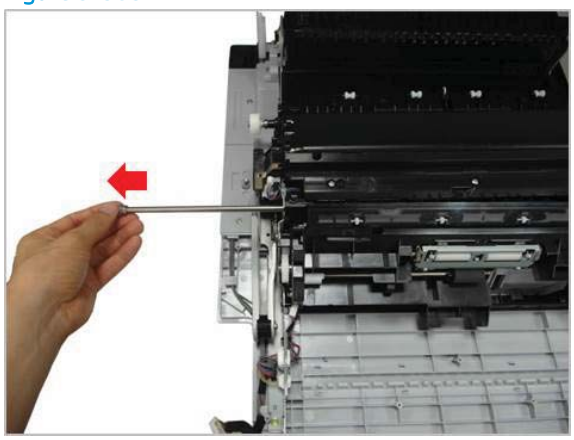
2. Remove one e-ring and bushing.

Figure 3-392 Remove one e-ring and bushing



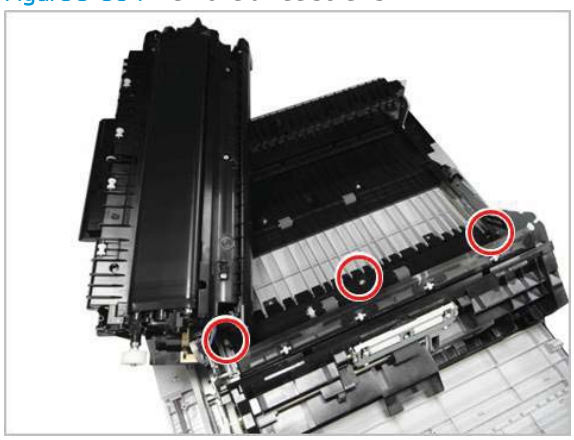
3. Remove the shaft.

Figure 3-393 Remove the shaft



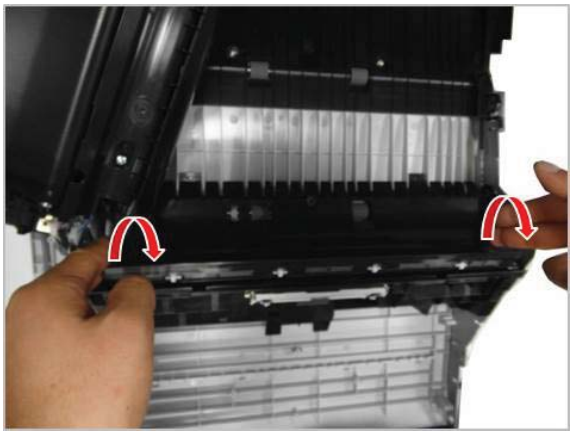
4. Release and position the PTB assembly as shown in the figure, and then remove three screws.

Figure 3-394 Remove three screws



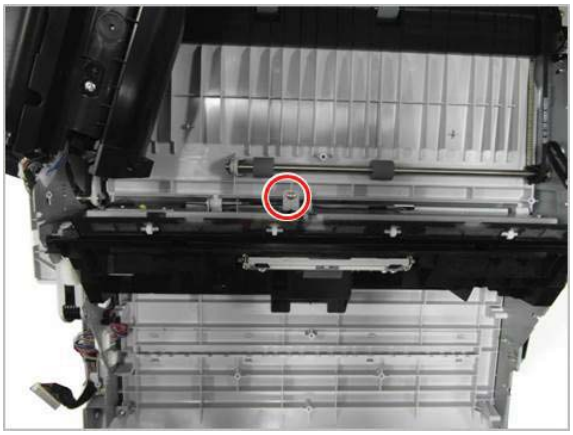
5. Remove the guide-duplex lower.

Figure 3-395 Remove the guide-duplex lower



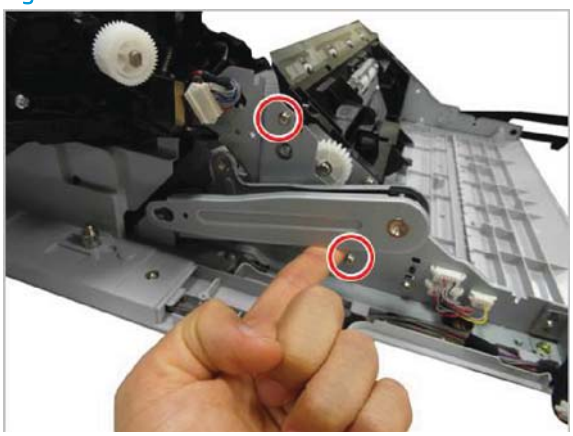
6. Remove one screw.

Figure 3-396 Remove one screw



7. Remove two screws.

Figure 3-397 Remove two screws

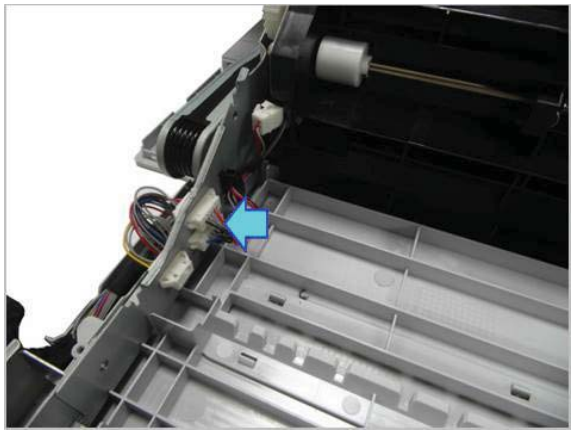


8. Remove two screws.

Figure 3-398 Remove two screws

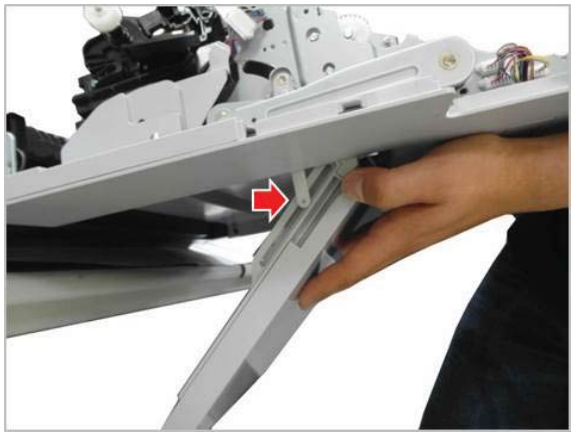
9. Disconnect the sensor connector.

Figure 3-399 Disconnect one connector



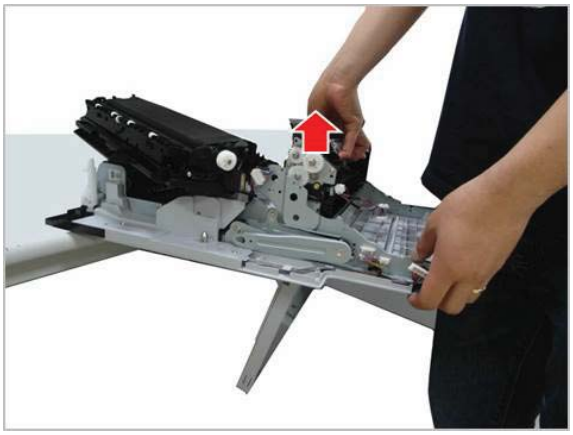
10. Release the MP Tray linker.

Figure 3-400 Release the MP Tray linker



11. Release the MP unit.

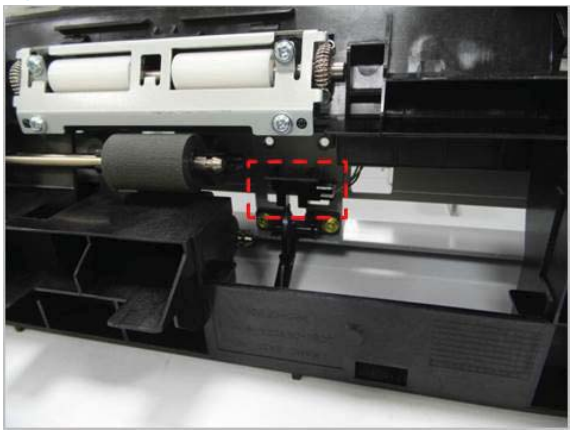
Figure 3-401 Release the MP unit



Step 5: Remove the MP empty sensor

▲ Disconnect the connector, and then remove the MP empty sensor.

Figure 3-402 Remove the MP empty sensor



Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Multi-purpose (MP) paper length sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper
- Step 4: Remove the MP unit
- Step 5: Remove the MP paper length sensor
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the multi-purpose (MP) paper length sensor.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

MP paper length sensor part number
MP paper length sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

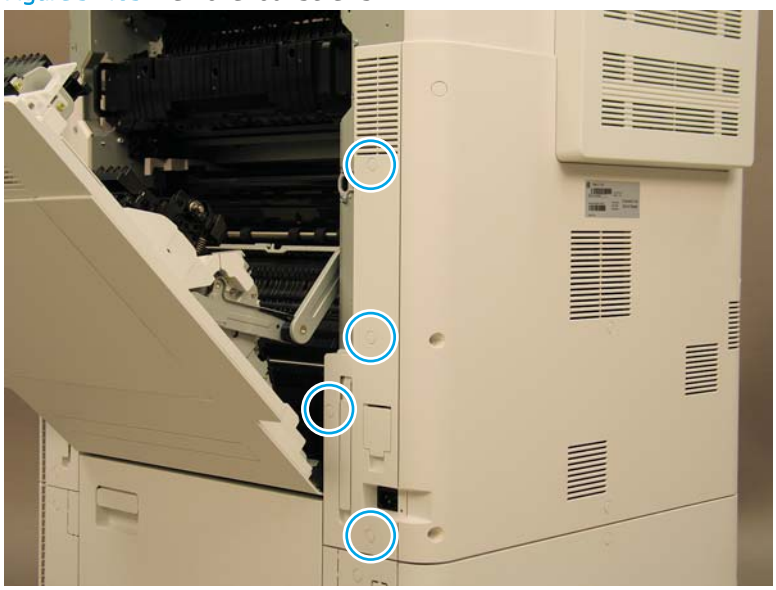
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

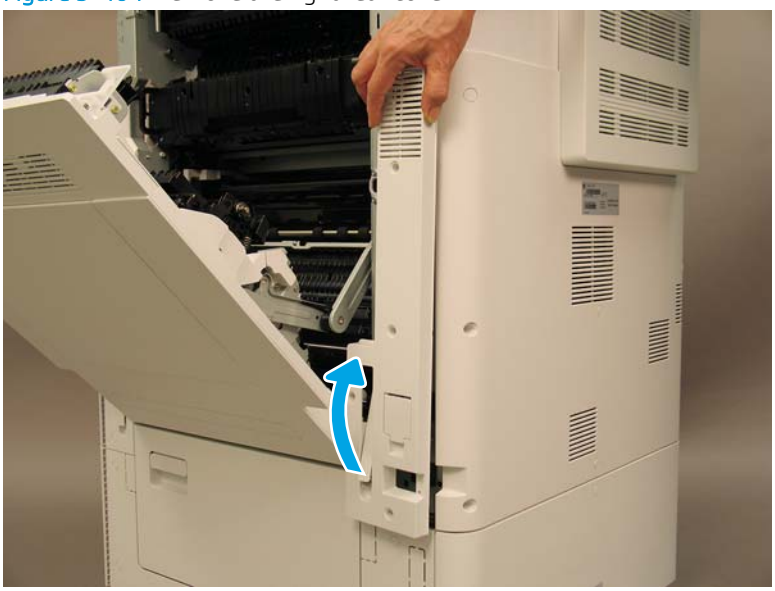
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-403 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

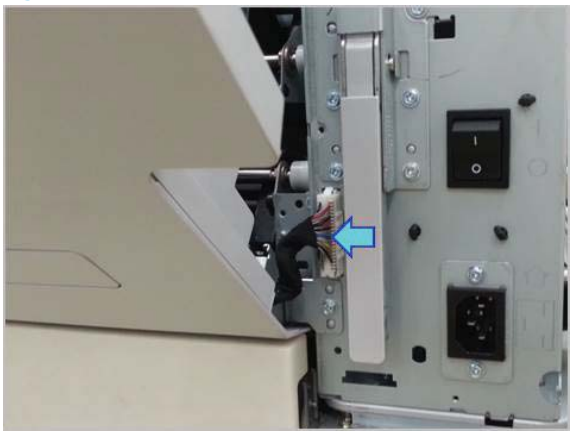
Figure 3-404 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

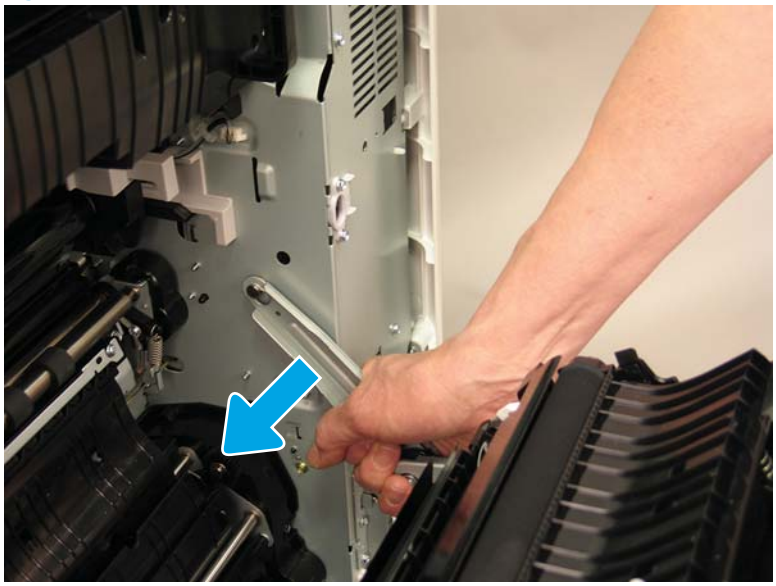
Figure 3-405 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

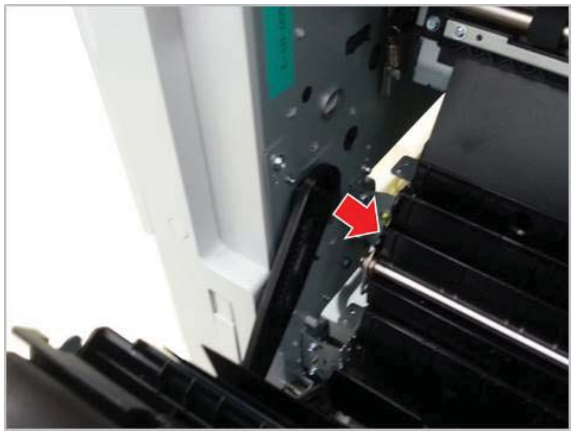
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-406 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

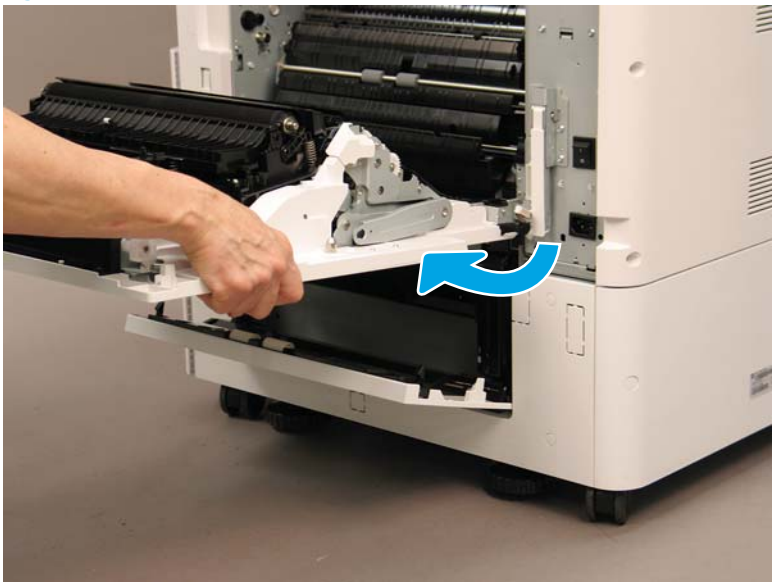
Figure 3-407 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

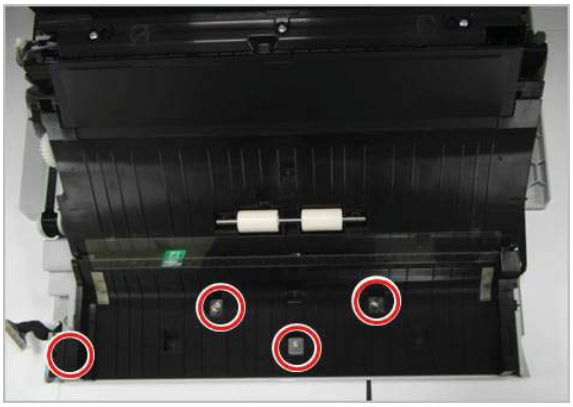
Figure 3-408 Remove the right door



Step 3: Remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper

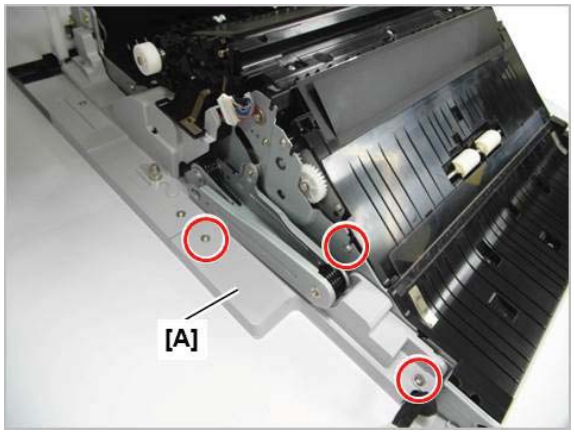
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 3-409 Remove four screws



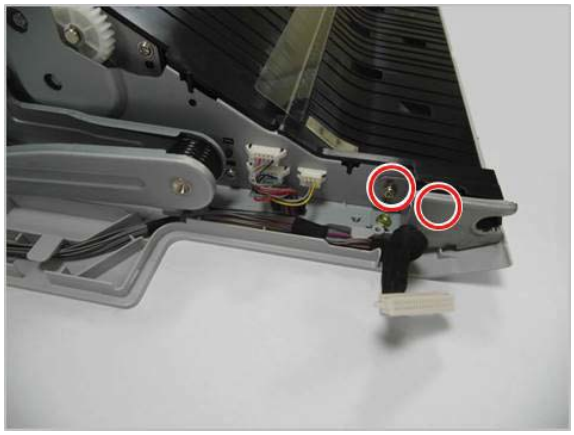
2. Remove three screws, and then remove the lower cable cover [A].

Figure 3-410 Remove three screws and the lower cable cover



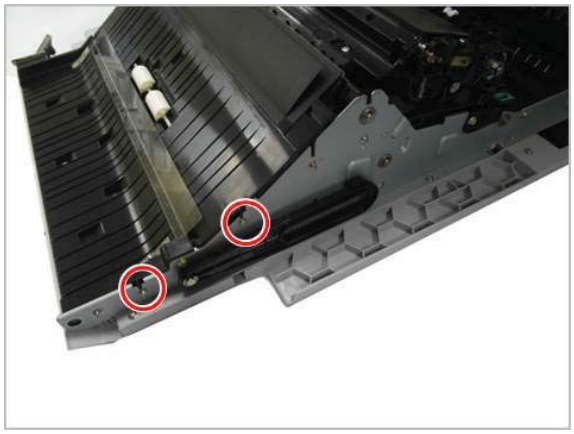
3. Remove two screws.

Figure 3-411 Remove two screws



4. Remove two screws.

Figure 3-412 Remove two screws



5. Remove the feed guide take away lower.

Figure 3-413 Remove the feed guide take away lower

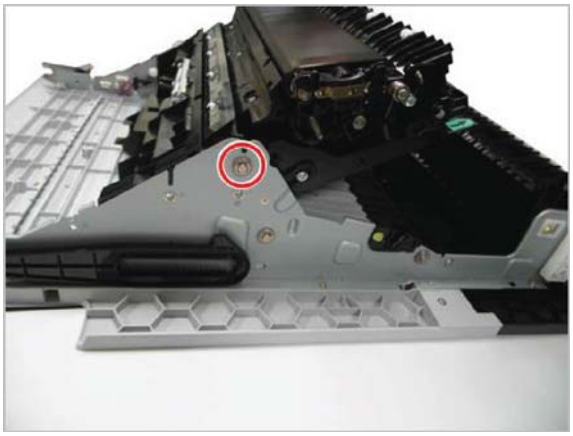
6. Disconnect the sensor connector. Remove one screw, and then remove the feed guide take away upper.

Figure 3-414 Remove the feed guide take away upper

Step 4: Remove the MP unit

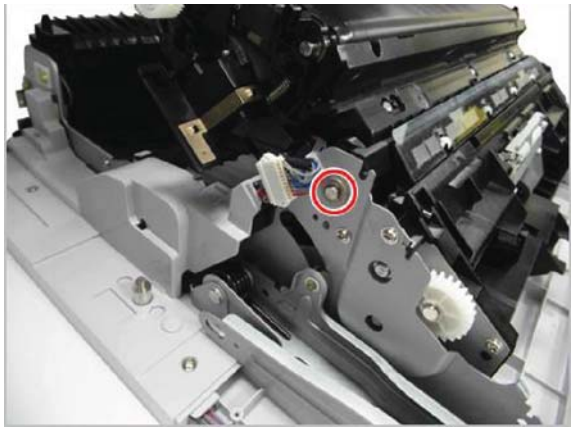
1. Remove one e-ring and bushing.

Figure 3-415 Remove one e-ring and bushing



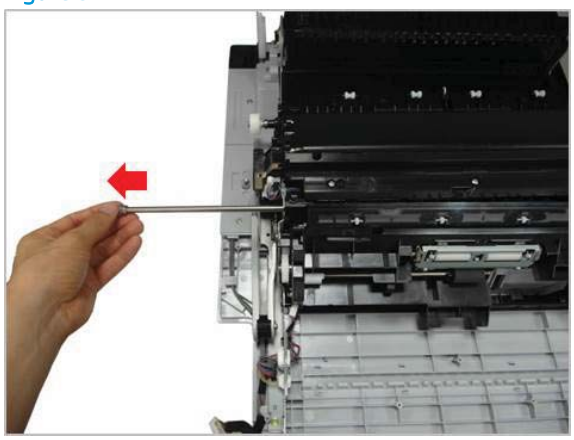
2. Remove one e-ring and bushing.

Figure 3-416 Remove one e-ring and bushing



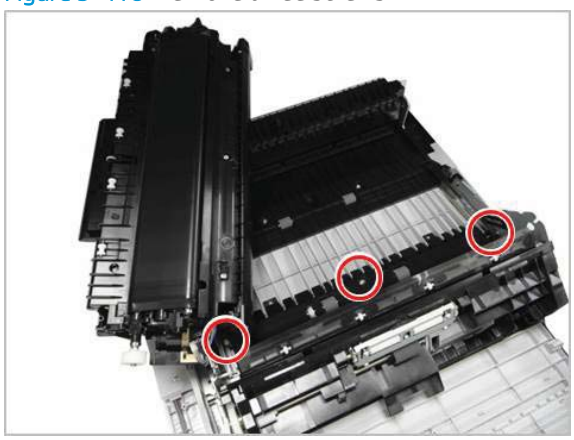
3. Remove the shaft.

Figure 3-417 Remove the shaft



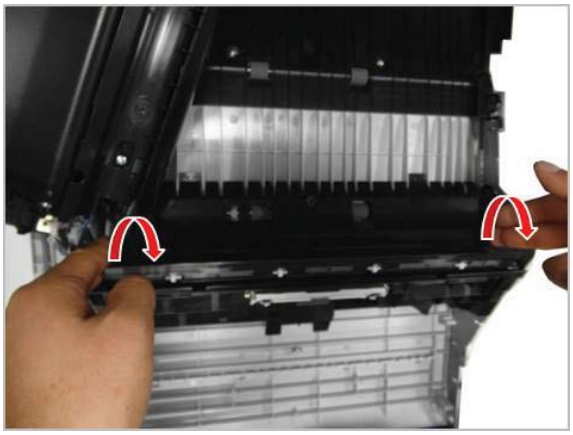
4. Release and position the PTB assembly as shown in the figure, and then remove three screws.

Figure 3-418 Remove three screws



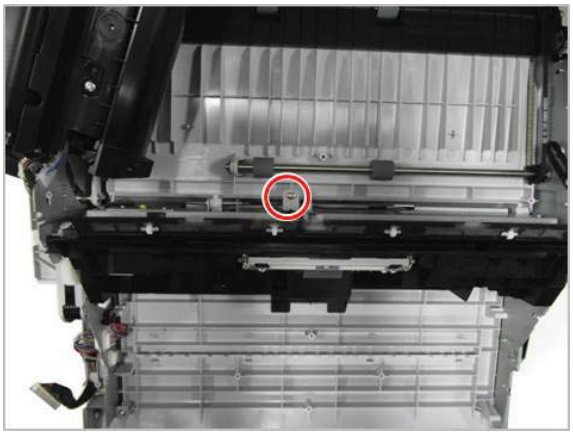
5. Remove the guide-duplex lower.

Figure 3-419 Remove the guide-duplex lower



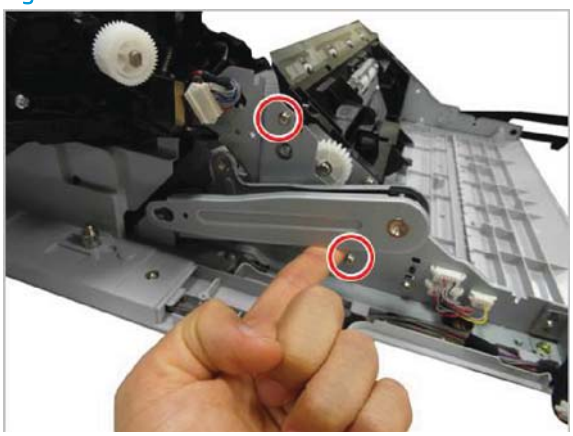
6. Remove one screw.

Figure 3-420 Remove one screw



7. Remove two screws.

Figure 3-421 Remove two screws

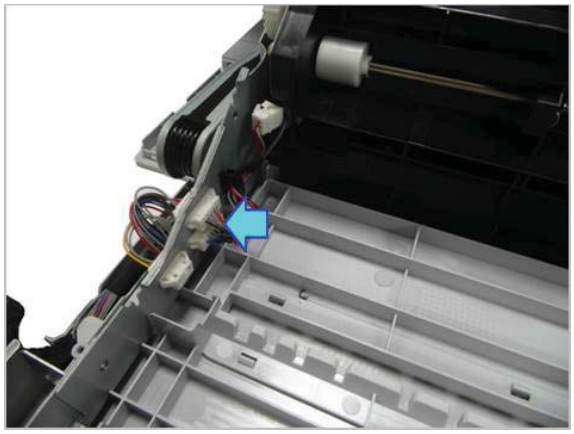


8. Remove two screws.

Figure 3-422 Remove two screws

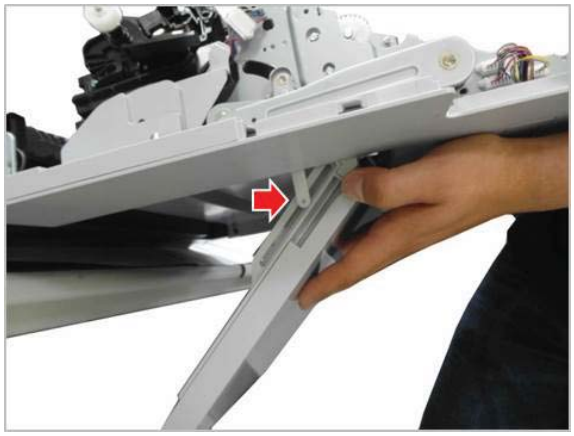
9. Disconnect the sensor connector.

Figure 3-423 Disconnect one connector



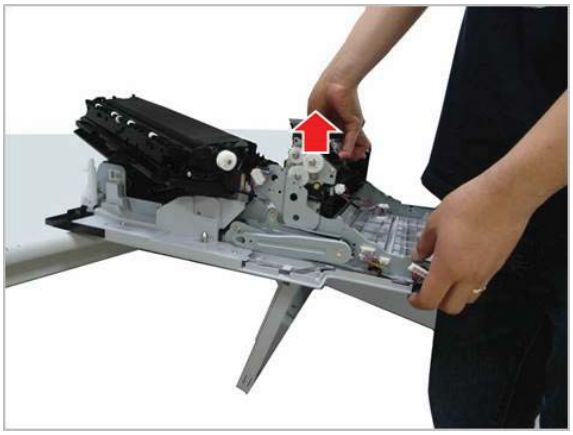
10. Release the MP Tray linker.

Figure 3-424 Release the MP Tray linker



11. Release the MP unit.

Figure 3-425 Release the MP unit



Step 5: Remove the MP paper length sensor

1. Remove the MP Tray upper.

Figure 3-426 Remove the MP Tray upper

2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the MP paper length sensor.

Figure 3-427 Remove the MP paper length sensor

Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Multi-purpose (MP) solenoid

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper
- Step 4: Remove the MP unit
- Step 5: Remove the MP solenoid
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the multi-purpose (MP) solenoid.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

MP solenoid part number	
SAM-JC33-00029B	Solenoid, Tray 1

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

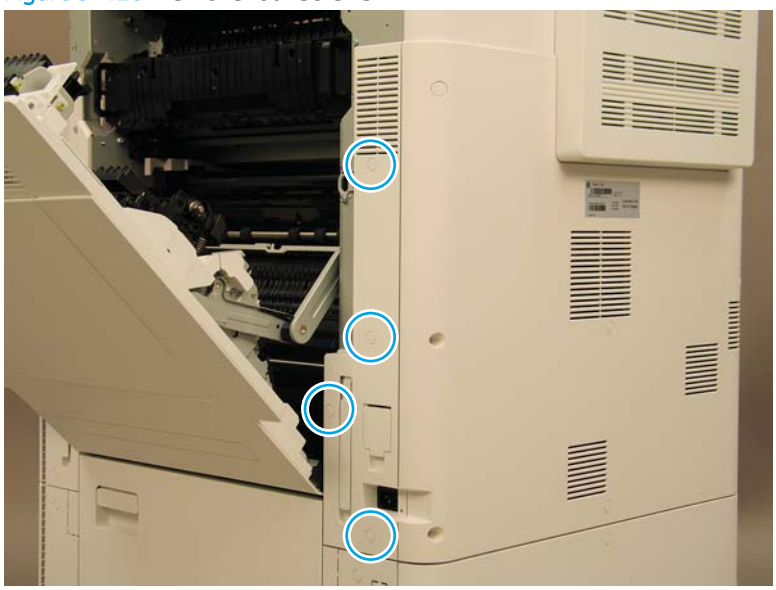
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

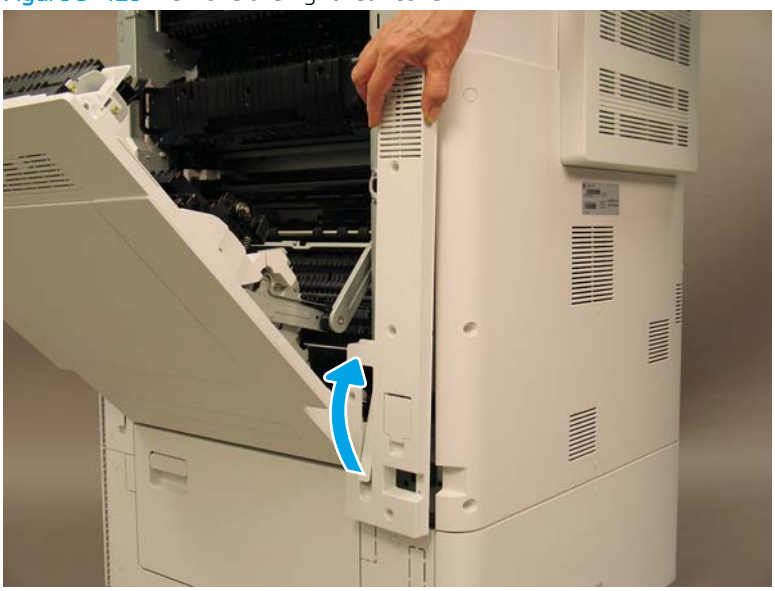
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-428 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

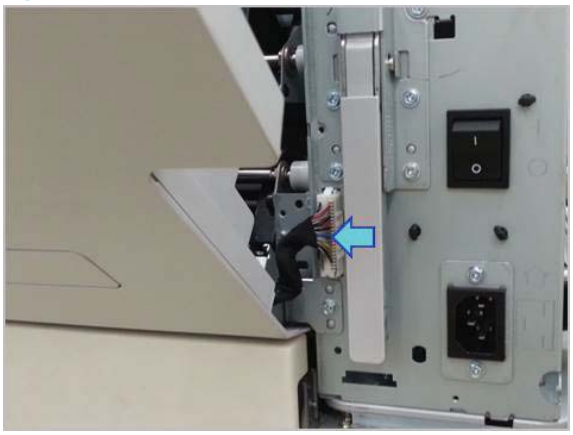
Figure 3-429 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

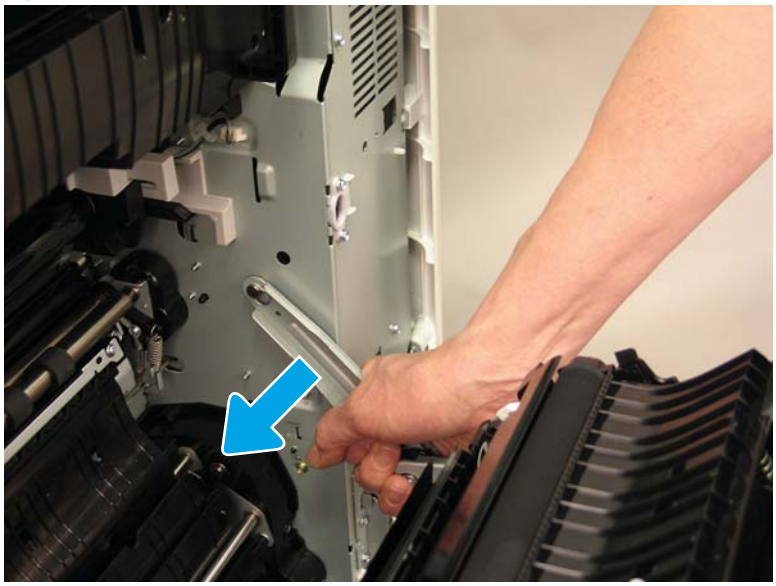
Figure 3-430 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

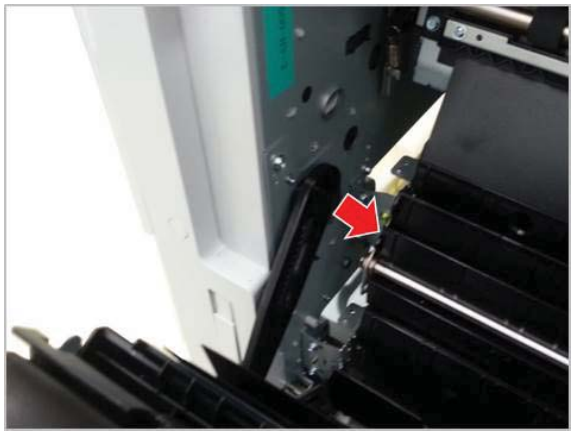
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-431 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

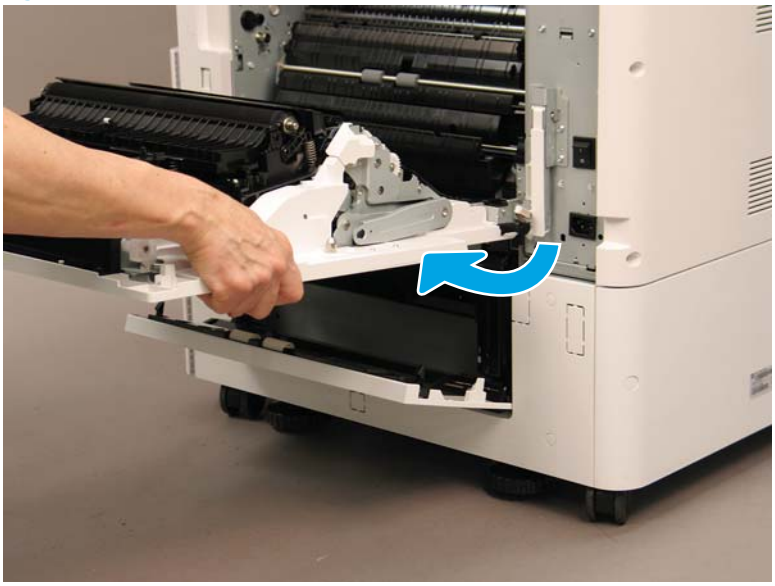
Figure 3-432 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

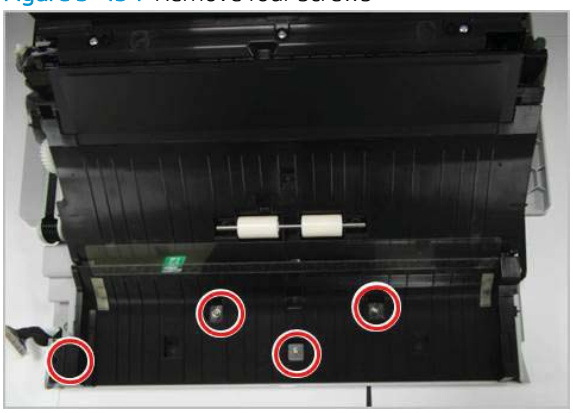
Figure 3-433 Remove the right door



Step 3: Remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper

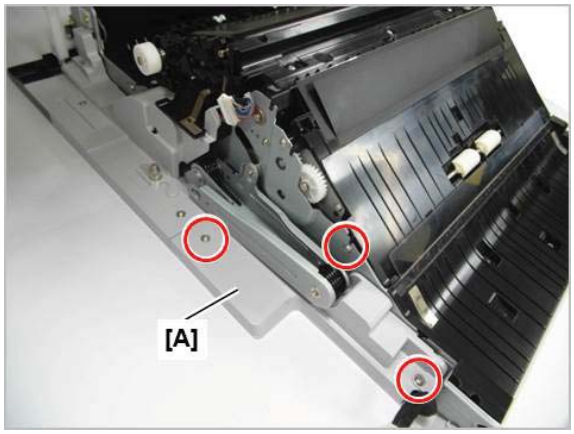
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 3-434 Remove four screws



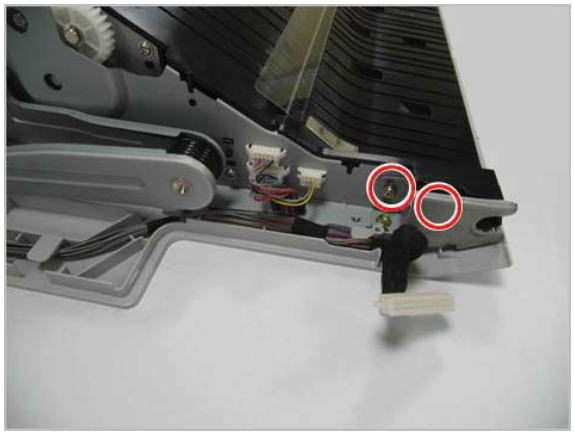
2. Remove three screws, and then remove the lower cable cover [A].

Figure 3-435 Remove three screws and the lower cable cover



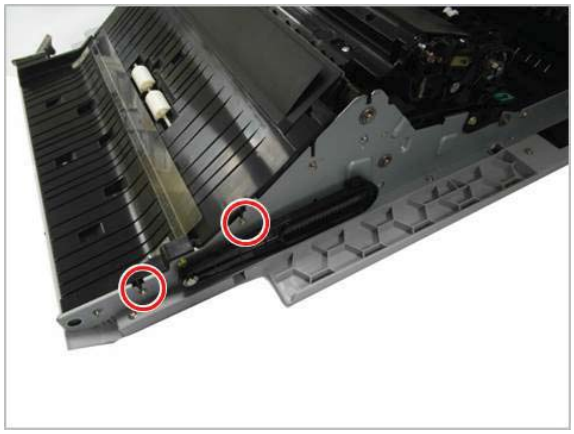
3. Remove two screws.

Figure 3-436 Remove two screws



4. Remove two screws.

Figure 3-437 Remove two screws



5. Remove the feed guide take away lower.

Figure 3-438 Remove the feed guide take away lower

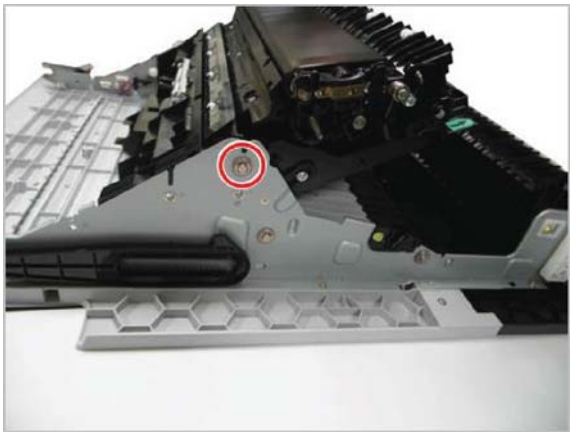
6. Disconnect the sensor connector. Remove one screw, and then remove the feed guide take away upper.

Figure 3-439 Remove the feed guide take away upper

Step 4: Remove the MP unit

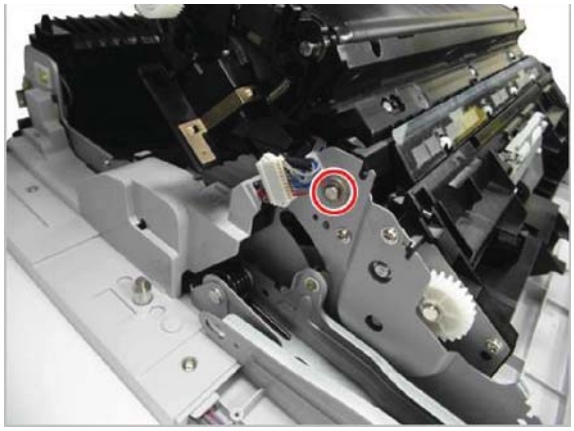
1. Remove one e-ring and bushing.

Figure 3-440 Remove one e-ring and bushing



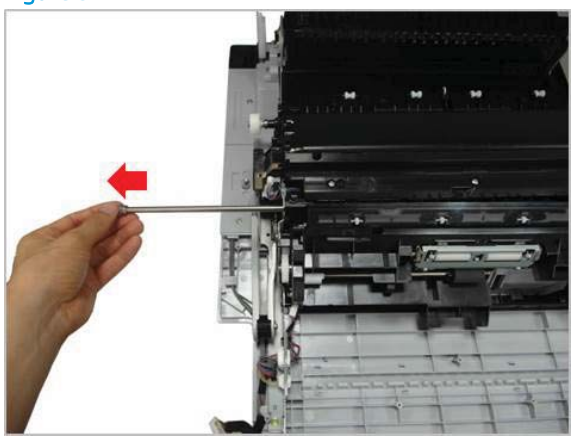
2. Remove one e-ring and bushing.

Figure 3-441 Remove one e-ring and bushing



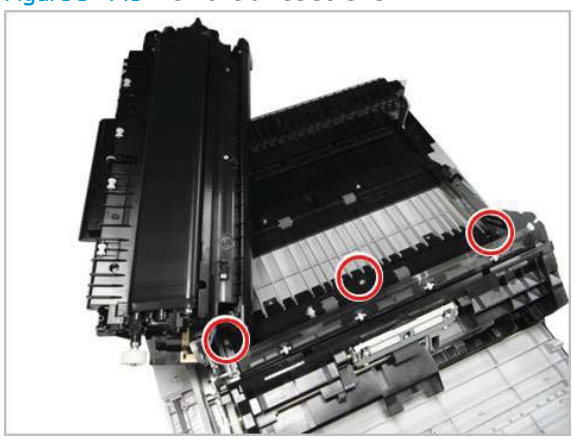
3. Remove the shaft.

Figure 3-442 Remove the shaft



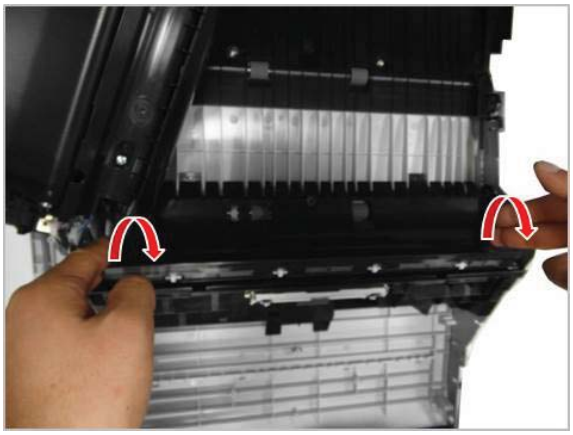
4. Release and position the PTB assembly as shown in the figure, and then remove three screws.

Figure 3-443 Remove three screws



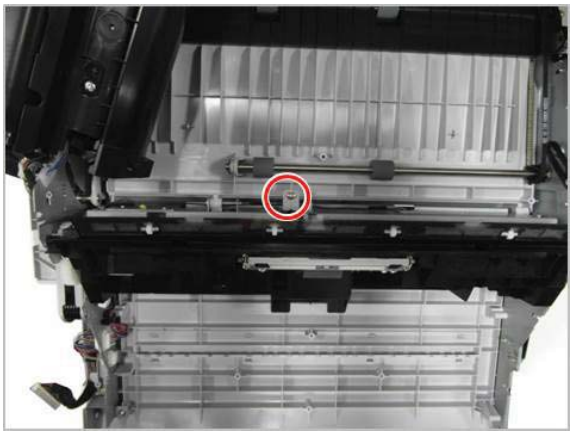
5. Remove the guide-duplex lower.

Figure 3-444 Remove the guide-duplex lower



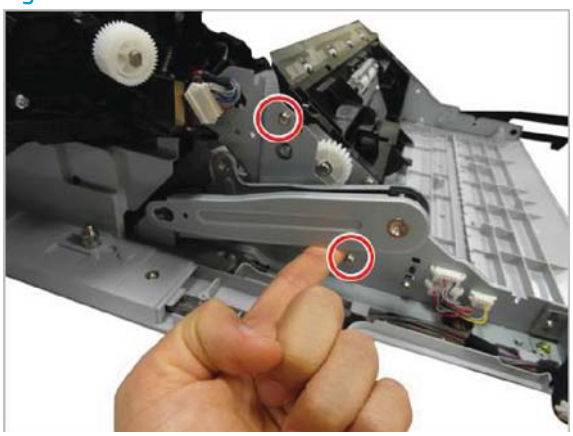
6. Remove one screw.

Figure 3-445 Remove one screw



7. Remove two screws.

Figure 3-446 Remove two screws

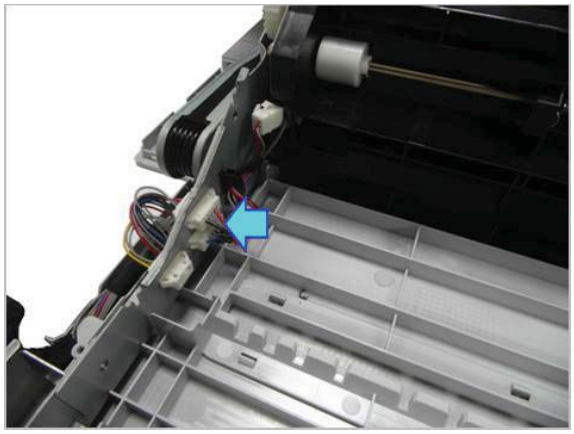


8. Remove two screws.

Figure 3-447 Remove two screws

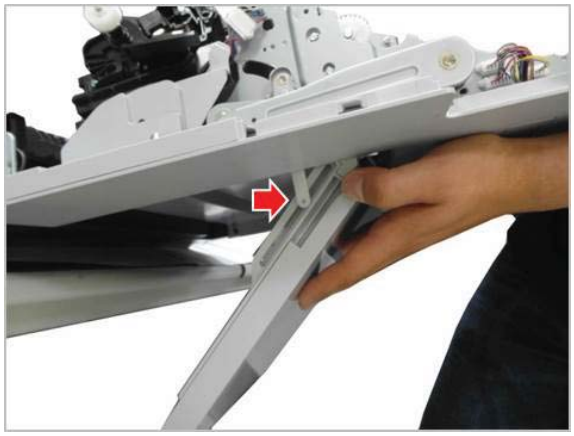
9. Disconnect the sensor connector.

Figure 3-448 Disconnect one connector



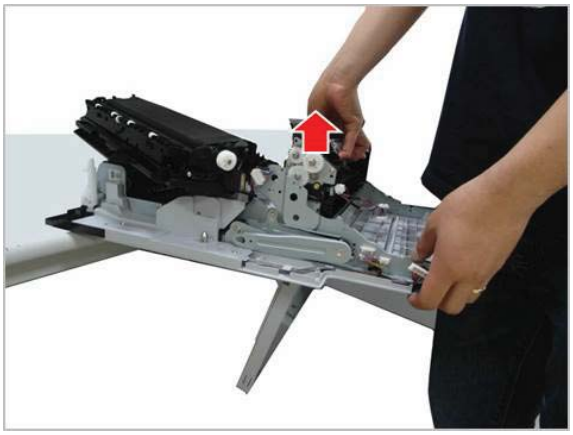
10. Release the MP Tray linker.

Figure 3-449 Release the MP Tray linker



11. Release the MP unit.

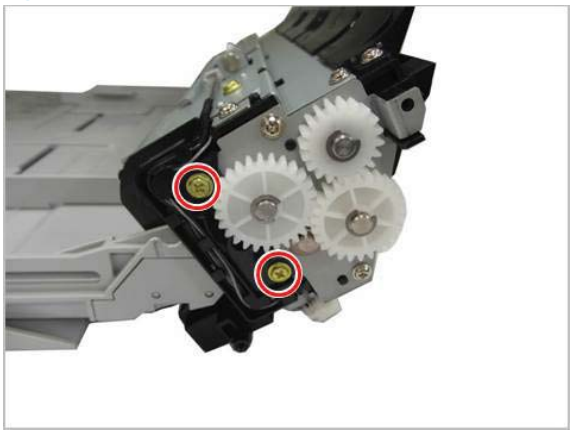
Figure 3-450 Release the MP unit



Step 5: Remove the MP solenoid

1. Remove two screws, remove three gears, and then release the MP Tray.

Figure 3-451 Remove two screws and three gears



2. Remove two screws, three e-rings, and three bushings. Remove the bracket-rear.

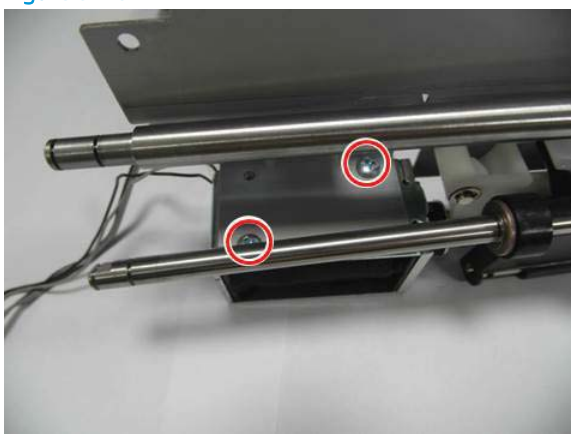
Figure 3-452 Remove the bracket-rear

3. Remove seven screws, and then remove the frame-base.

Figure 3-453 Remove seven screws

4. Remove two screws, and then remove the MP solenoid.

Figure 3-454 Remove two screws



Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Output unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove the front top inner cover
- Step 4: Remove the front power cover
- Step 5: Remove the top right cover
- Step 6: Remove the fuser unit
- Step 7: Remove the output unit
- Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the output unit.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Output unit part number	
SAM-JC90-01369A	Exit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

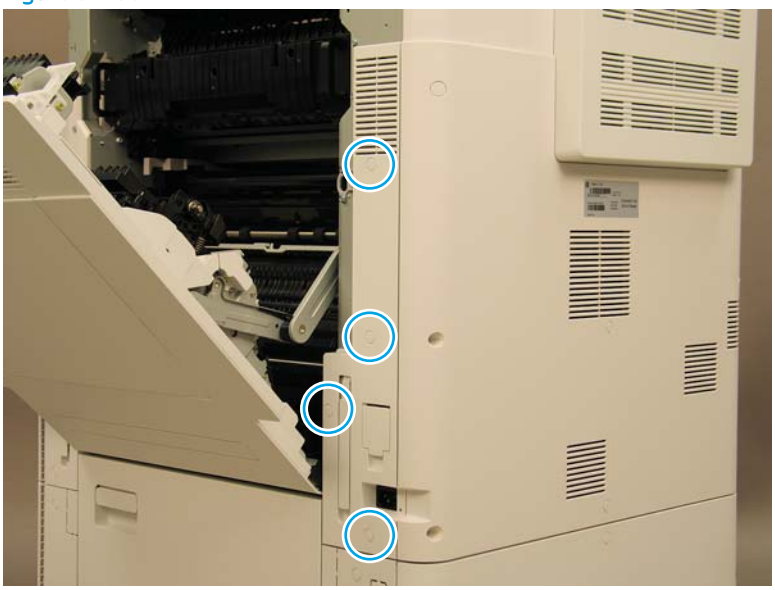
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

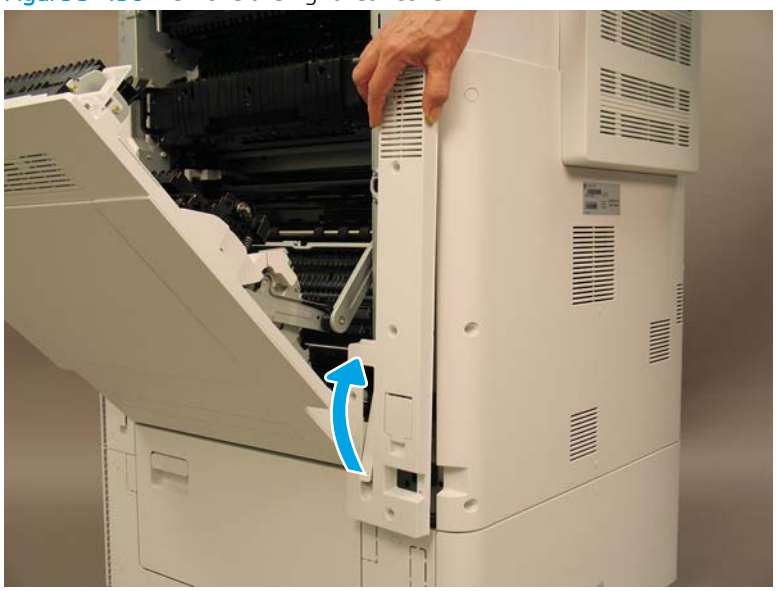
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-455 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

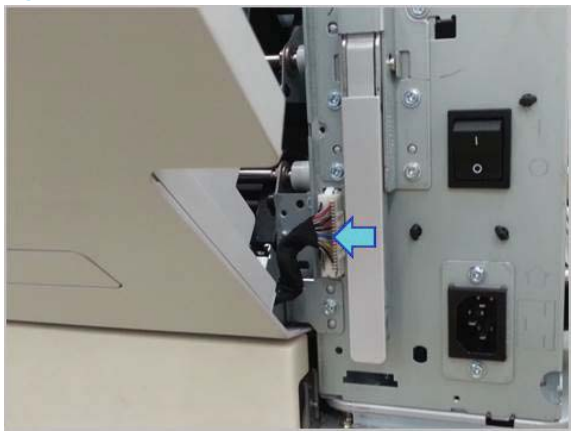
Figure 3-456 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

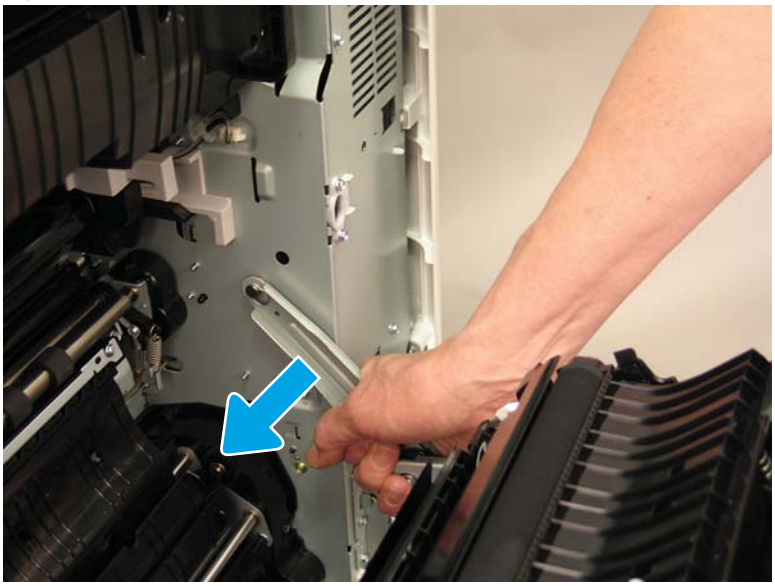
Figure 3-457 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

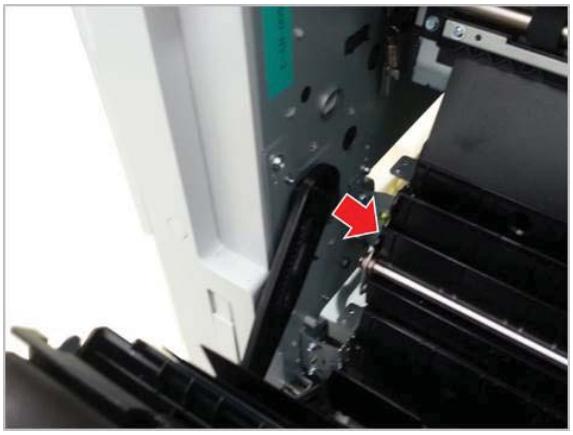
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-458 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

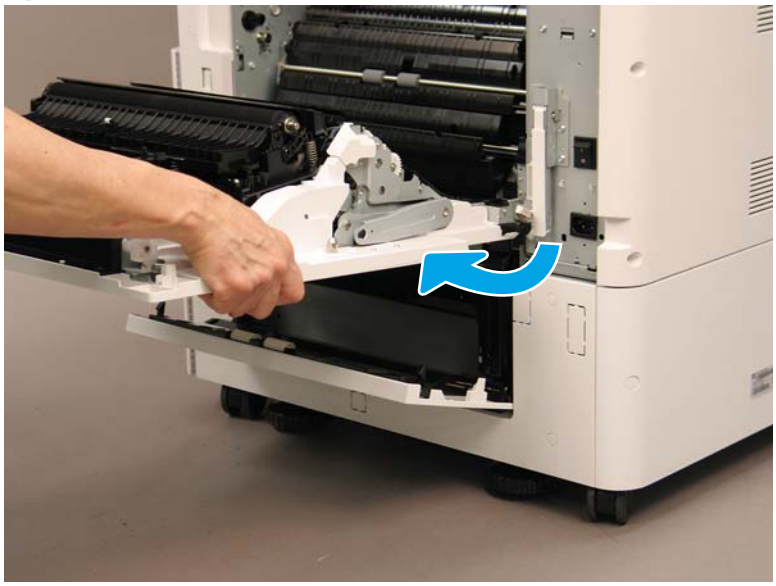
Figure 3-459 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 3-460 Remove the right door



Step 3: Remove the front top inner cover

▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-461 Remove the front top inner cover

Step 4: Remove the front power cover

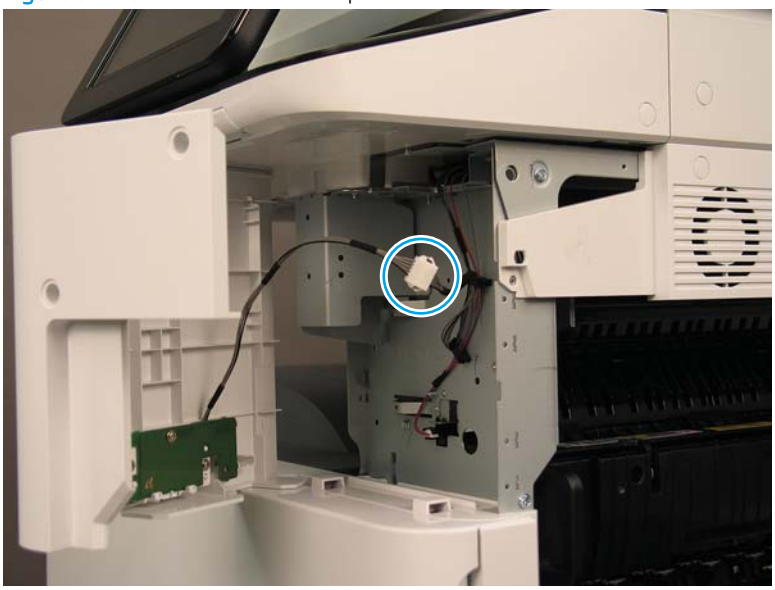
1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 3-462 Remove two screws and rotate the cover

2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

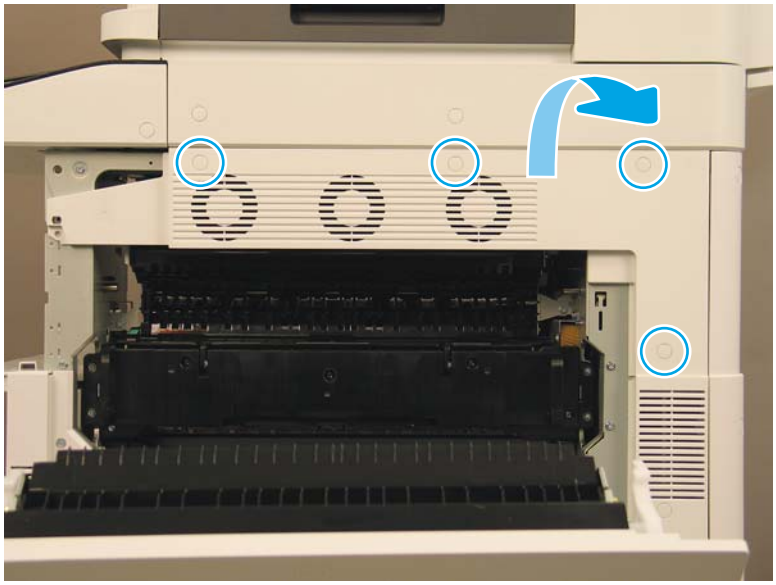
Figure 3-463 Remove the front power cover



Step 5: Remove the top right cover

- Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then rotate the top right cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-464 Remove the top right cover



Step 6: Remove the fuser unit

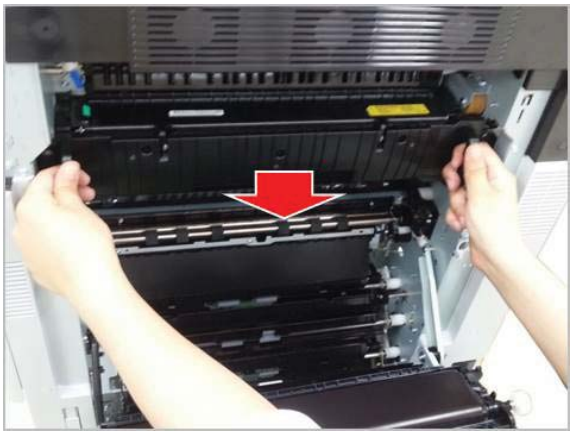
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screws.

Figure 3-465 Fuser unit screw locations

3. Pull out the fuser unit.

⚠ CAUTION: The temperature in the vicinity of the fuser becomes heated. To prevent the potential of getting burned, make sure the fuser unit has cooled before replacing it.

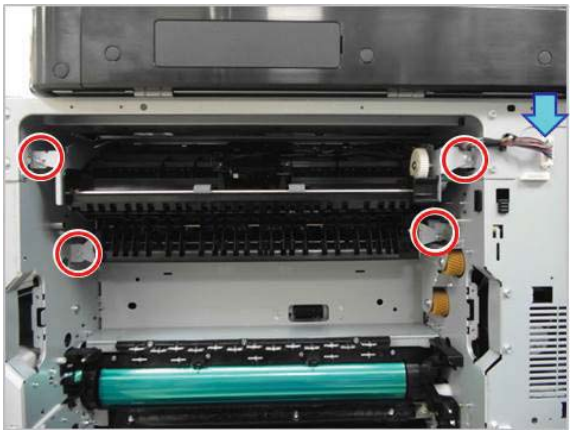
Figure 3-466 Fuser unit removal



Step 7: Remove the output unit

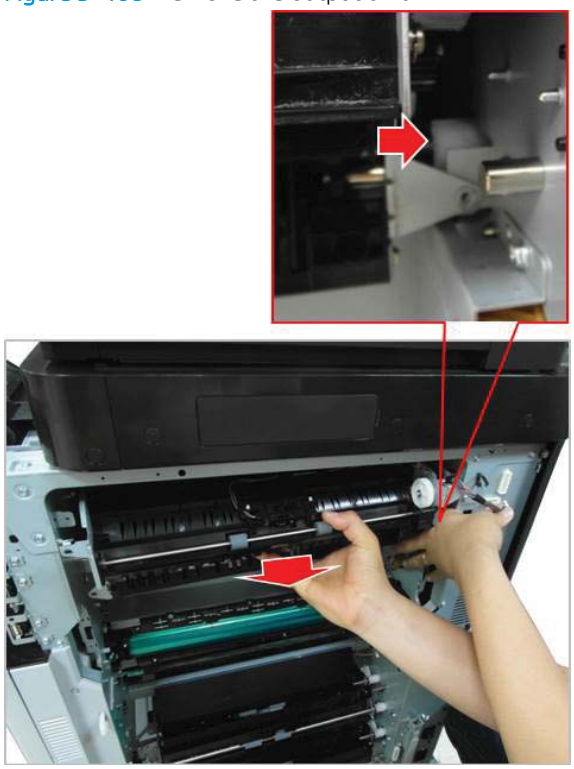
1. Disconnect two connectors, and then remove four screws.

Figure 3-467 Disconnect two connectors and remove four screws



2. Remove the output unit while pushing the coupler to the right.

Figure 3-468 Remove the output unit



Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Return sensor (on the output unit)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove the front top inner cover
- Step 4: Remove the front power cover
- Step 5: Remove the top right cover
- Step 6: Remove the fuser unit
- Step 7: Remove the output unit
- Step 8: Remove the return sensor
- Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the return sensor.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Return sensor part number	
SAM-0604-001393	Photo Interrupter

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

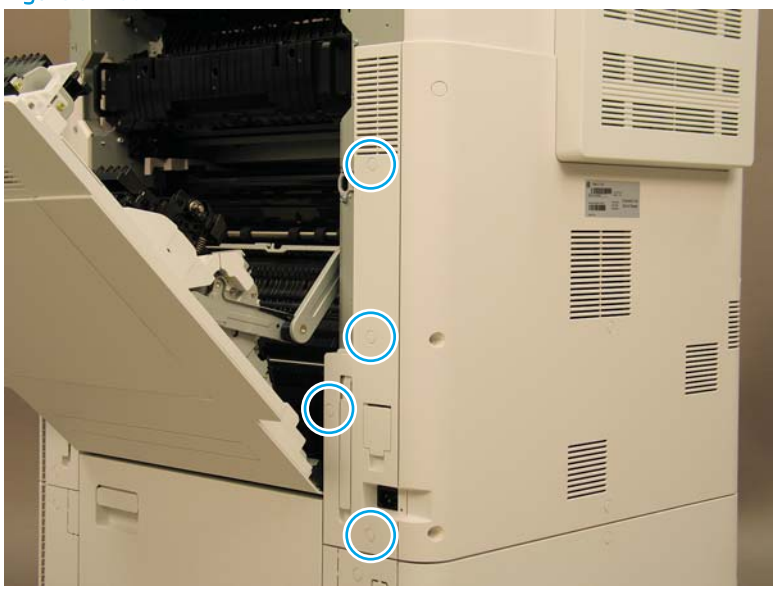
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

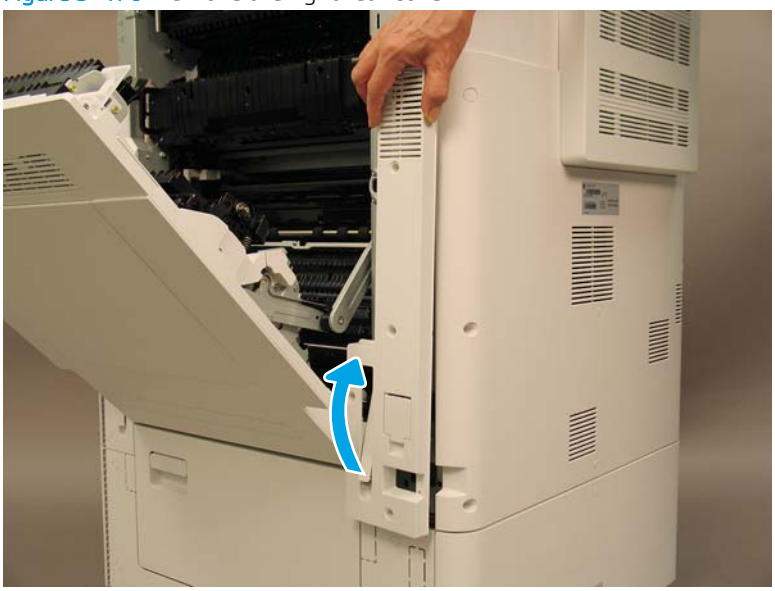
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-469 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

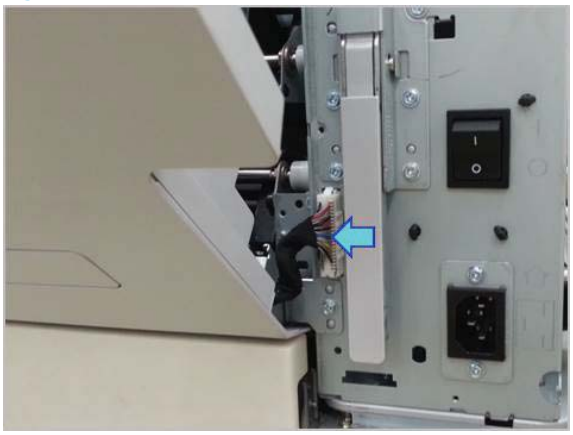
Figure 3-470 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

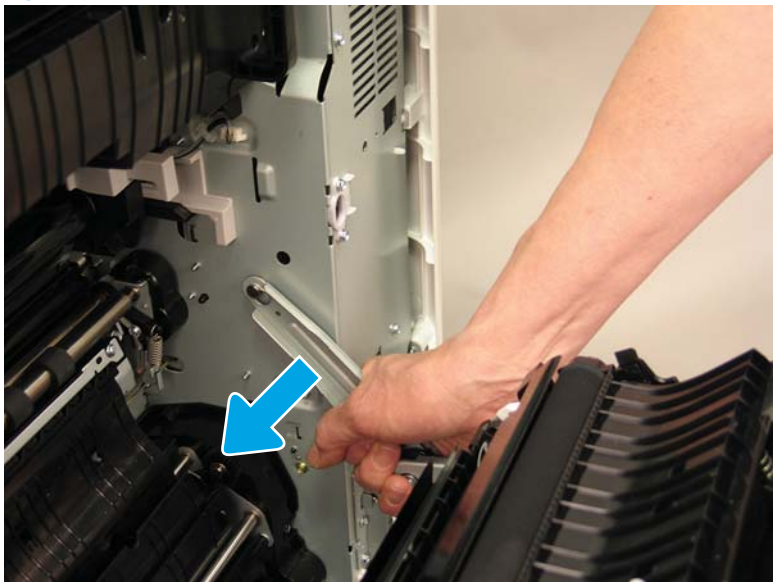
Figure 3-471 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

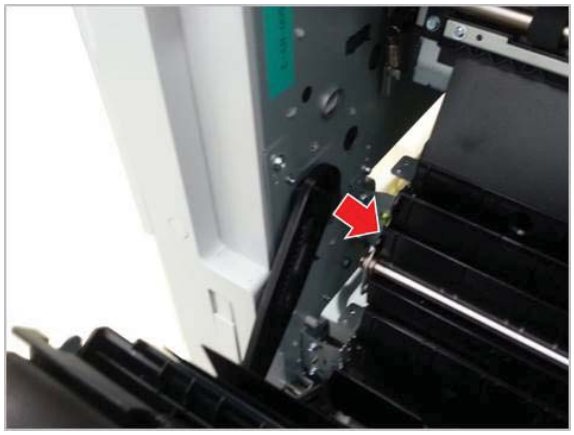
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-472 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

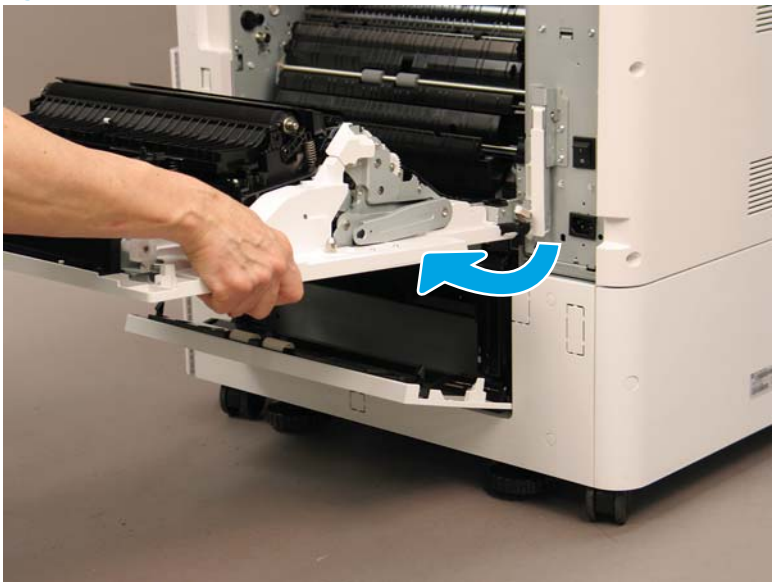
Figure 3-473 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 3-474 Remove the right door



Step 3: Remove the front top inner cover

▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-475 Remove the front top inner cover

Step 4: Remove the front power cover

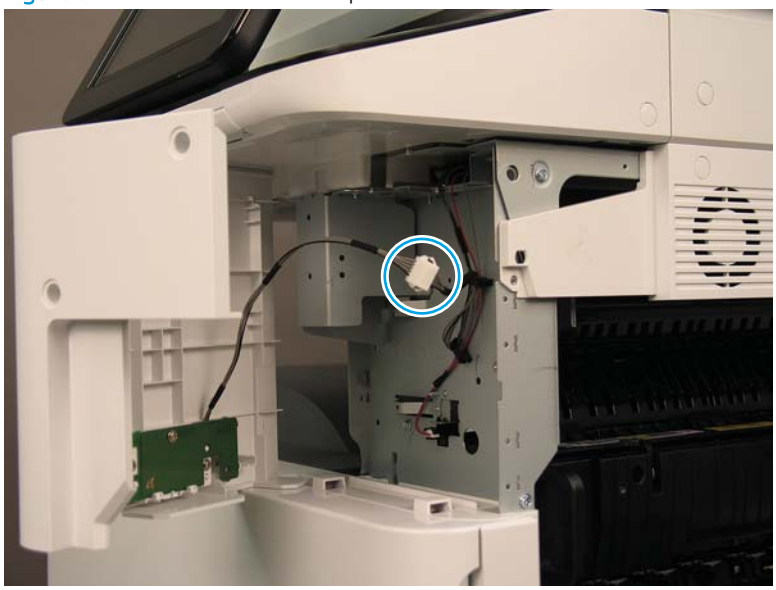
1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 3-476 Remove two screws and rotate the cover

2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

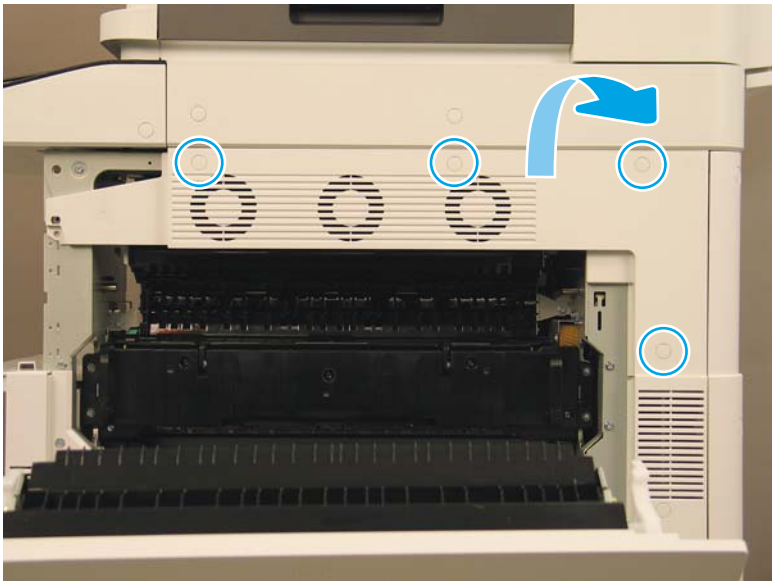
Figure 3-477 Remove the front power cover



Step 5: Remove the top right cover

- Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then rotate the top right cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-478 Remove the top right cover



Step 6: Remove the fuser unit

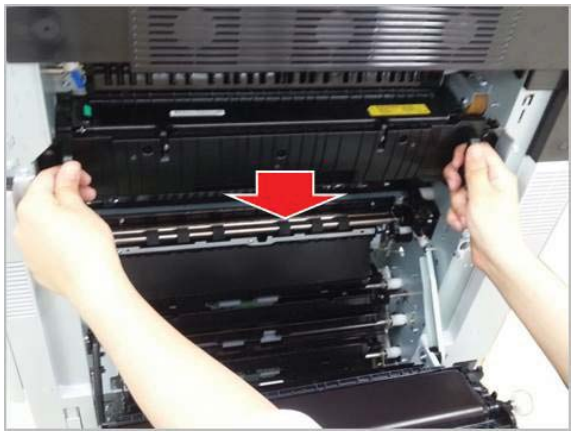
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screws.

Figure 3-479 Fuser unit screw locations

3. Pull out the fuser unit.

⚠ CAUTION: The temperature in the vicinity of the fuser becomes heated. To prevent the potential of getting burned, make sure the fuser unit has cooled before replacing it.

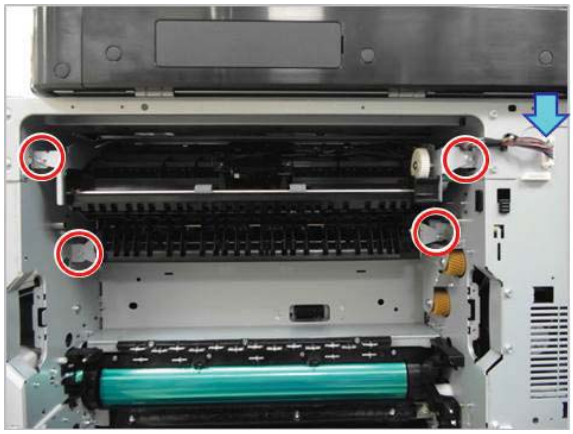
Figure 3-480 Fuser unit removal



Step 7: Remove the output unit

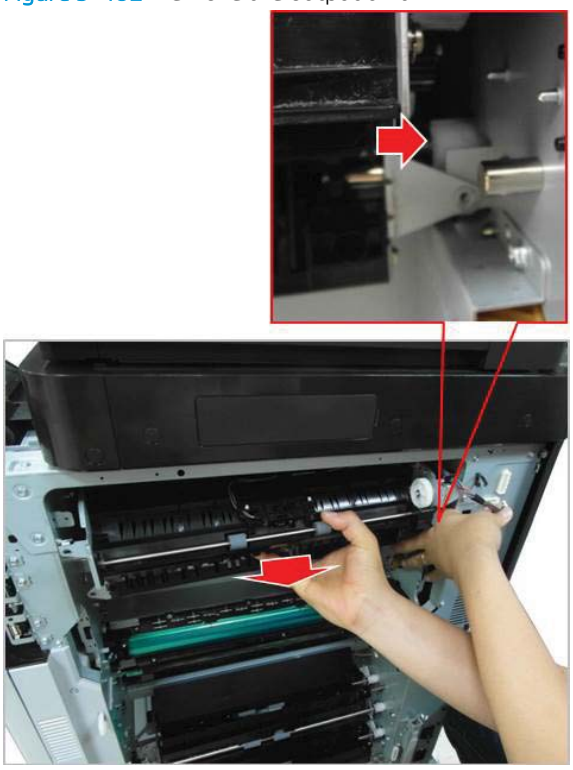
1. Disconnect two connectors, and then remove four screws.

Figure 3-481 Disconnect two connectors and remove four screws



2. Remove the output unit while pushing the coupler to the right.

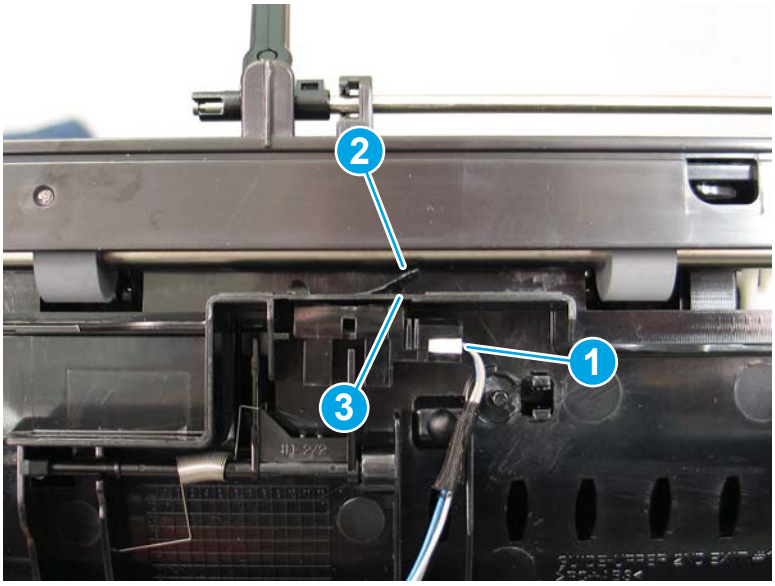
Figure 3-482 Remove the output unit



Step 8: Remove the return sensor

▲ Locate the sensor on the output unit. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then peel the black adhesive strip (callout 2) away from the top of the sensor. Release two small tabs (callout 3), and then remove the sensor.

Figure 3-483 Return sensor



Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Duplex 1 sensor (on the output unit)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove the front top inner cover
- Step 4: Remove the front power cover
- Step 5: Remove the top right cover
- Step 6: Remove the fuser unit
- Step 7: Remove the output unit
- Step 8: Remove the duplex 1 sensor
- Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the duplex 1 sensor.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Duplex 1 sensor part number	
SAM-0604-001393	Photo Interrupter

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

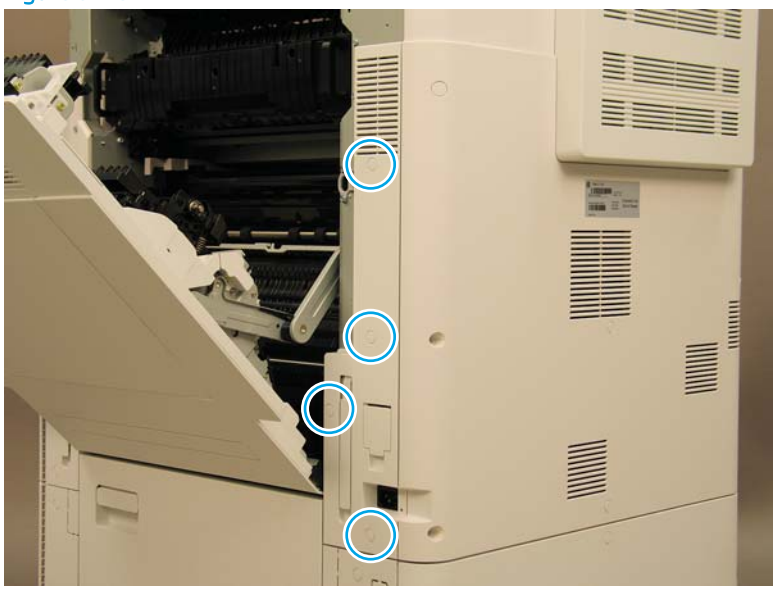
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-484 Remove four screws



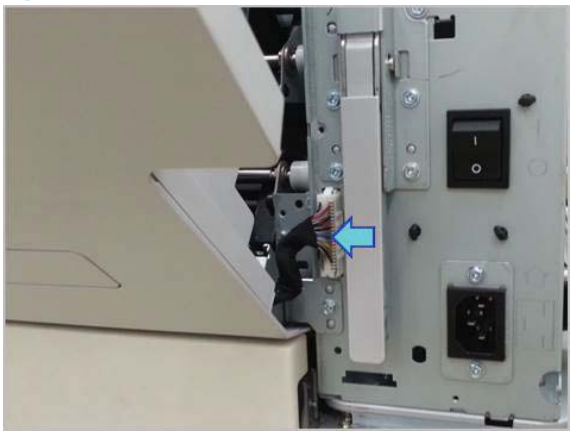
3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

Figure 3-485 Remove the right rear cover

Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

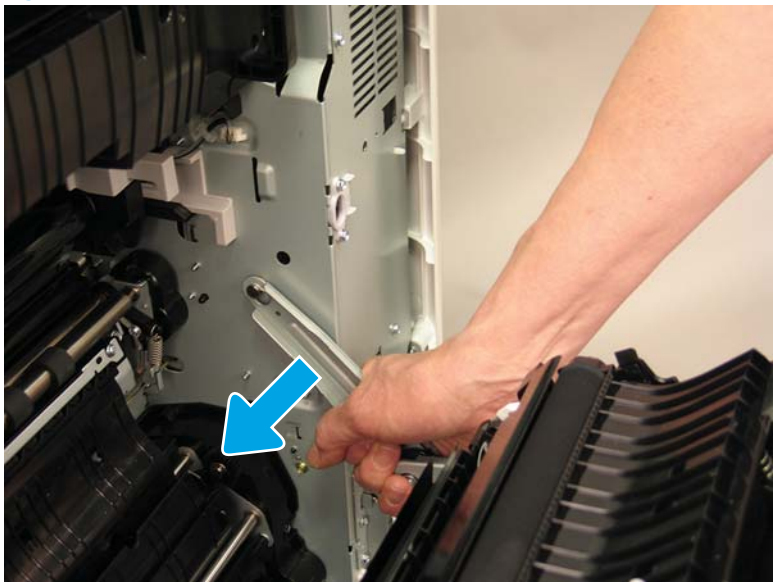
Figure 3-486 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

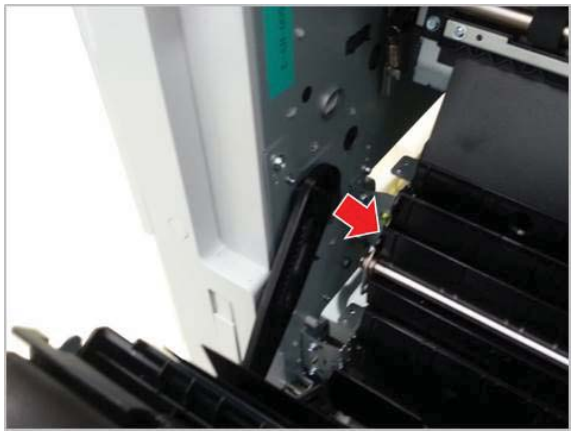
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-487 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

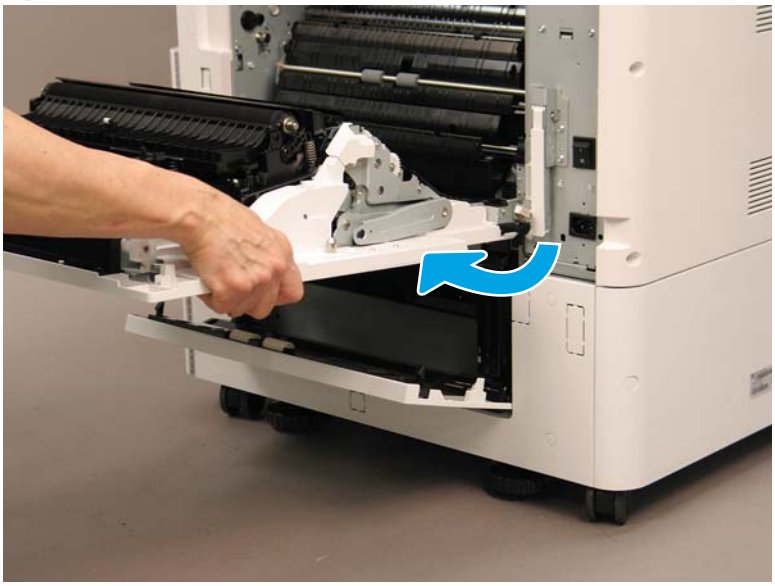
Figure 3-488 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 3-489 Remove the right door



Step 3: Remove the front top inner cover

▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-490 Remove the front top inner cover

Step 4: Remove the front power cover

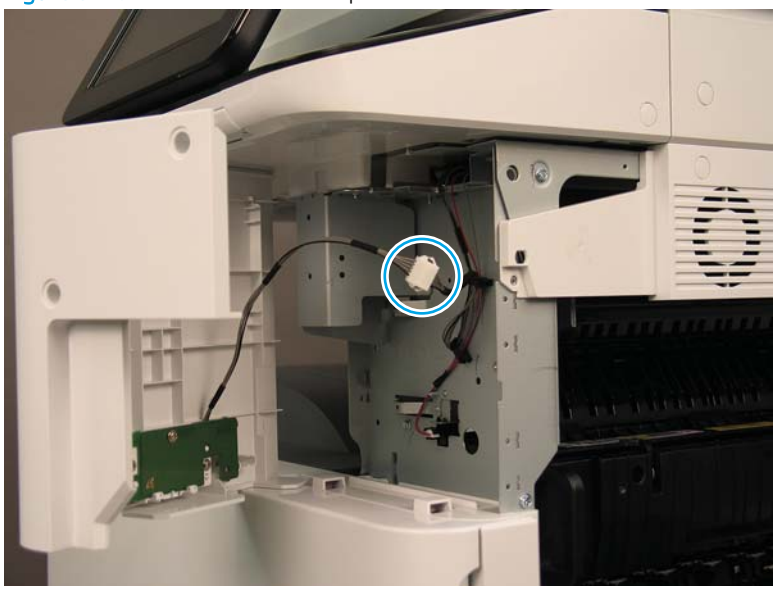
1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 3-491 Remove two screws and rotate the cover

2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

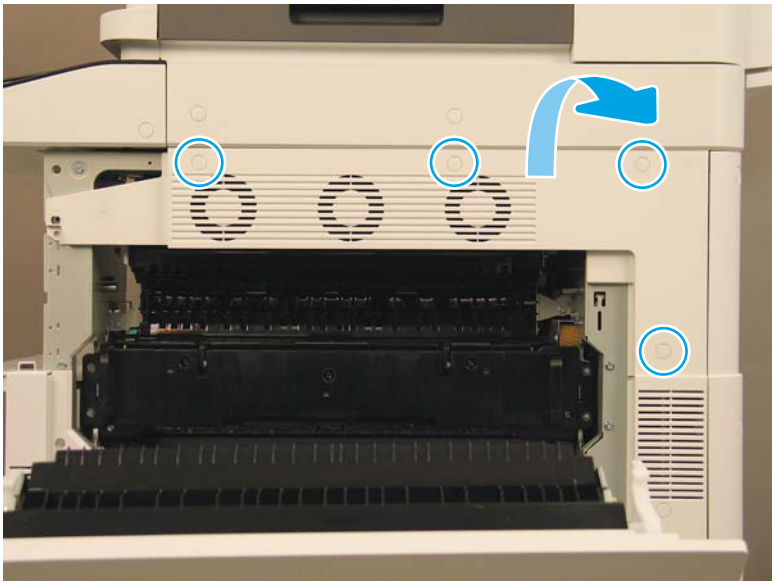
Figure 3-492 Remove the front power cover



Step 5: Remove the top right cover

- Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then rotate the top right cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-493 Remove the top right cover



Step 6: Remove the fuser unit

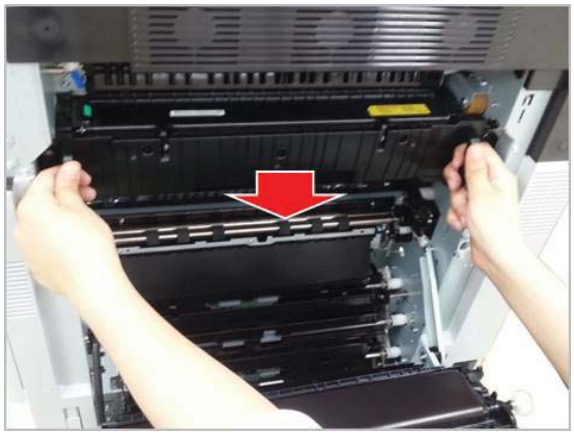
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screws.

Figure 3-494 Fuser unit screw locations

3. Pull out the fuser unit.

⚠ CAUTION: The temperature in the vicinity of the fuser becomes heated. To prevent the potential of getting burned, make sure the fuser unit has cooled before replacing it.

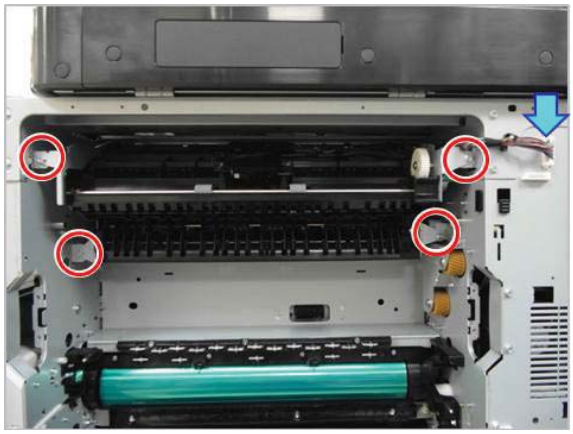
Figure 3-495 Fuser unit removal



Step 7: Remove the output unit

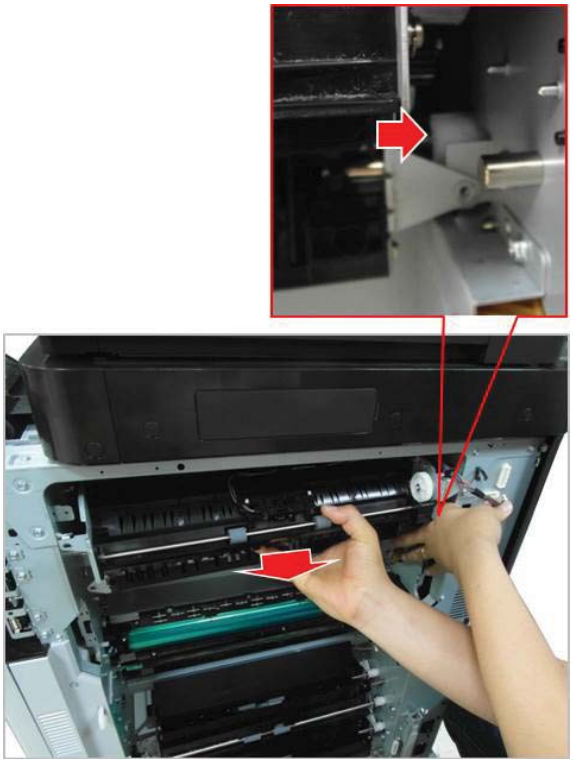
1. Disconnect two connectors, and then remove four screws.

Figure 3-496 Disconnect two connectors and remove four screws



2. Remove the output unit while pushing the coupler to the right.

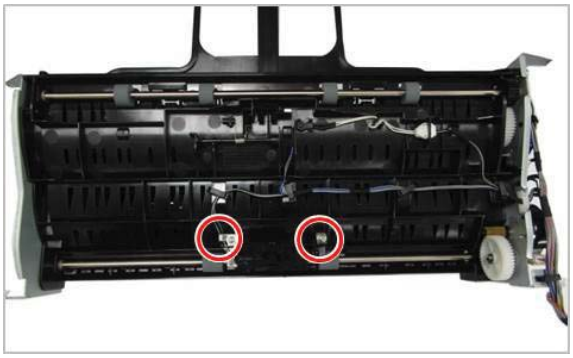
Figure 3-497 Remove the output unit



Step 8: Remove the duplex 1 sensor

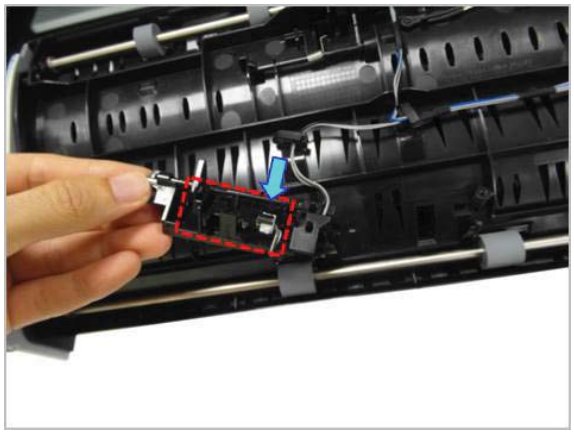
1. Locate the sensor on the output unit. Remove two screws, and then lift the sensor holder up.

Figure 3-498 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect the connector, and then remove the duplex 1 sensor.

Figure 3-499 Remove the duplex 1 sensor



Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Output 1 bin full sensor (on the output unit)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove the front top inner cover
- Step 4: Remove the front power cover
- Step 5: Remove the top right cover
- Step 6: Remove the fuser unit
- Step 7: Remove the output unit
- Step 8: Remove the output 1 bin full sensor
- Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the output 1 bin full sensor.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Output 1 bin full sensor part number	
SAM-0604-001393	Photo Interrupter

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

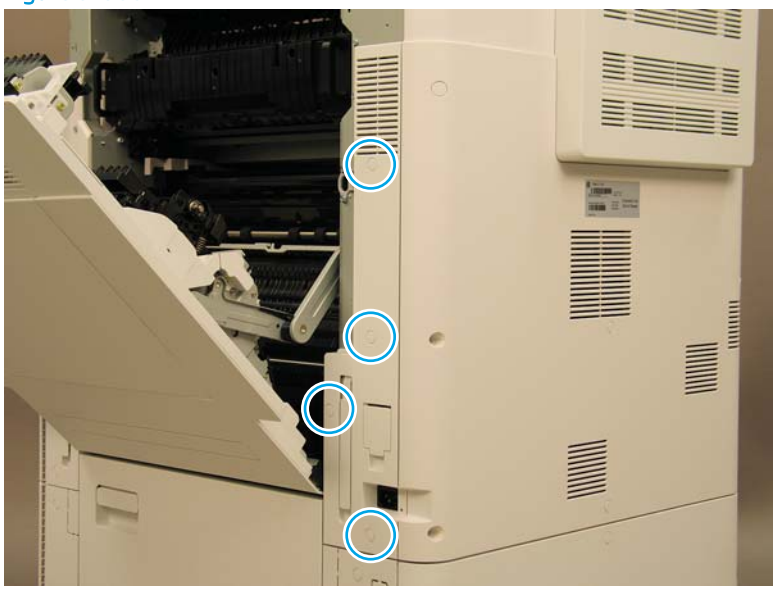
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

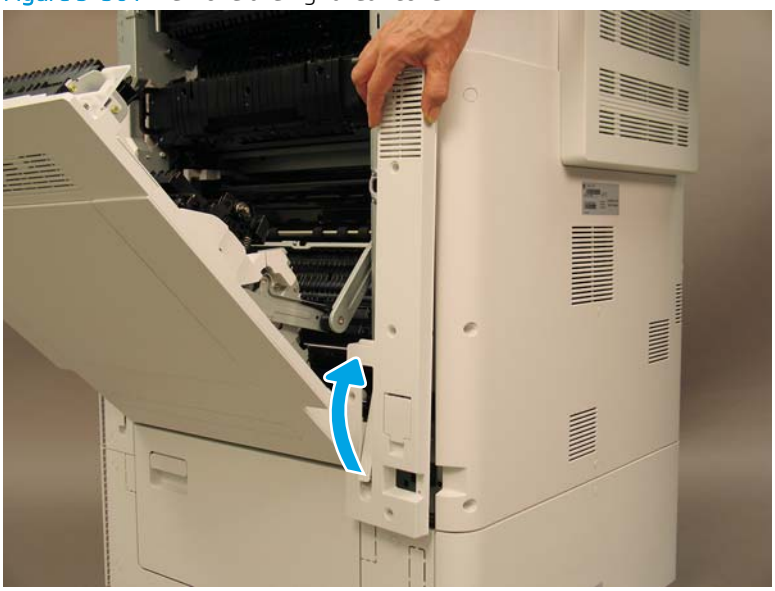
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-500 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

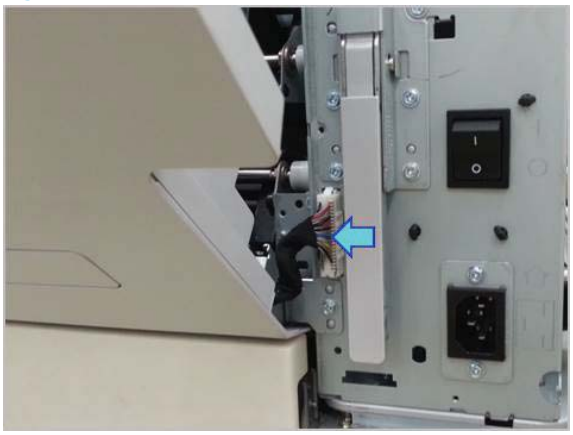
Figure 3-501 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

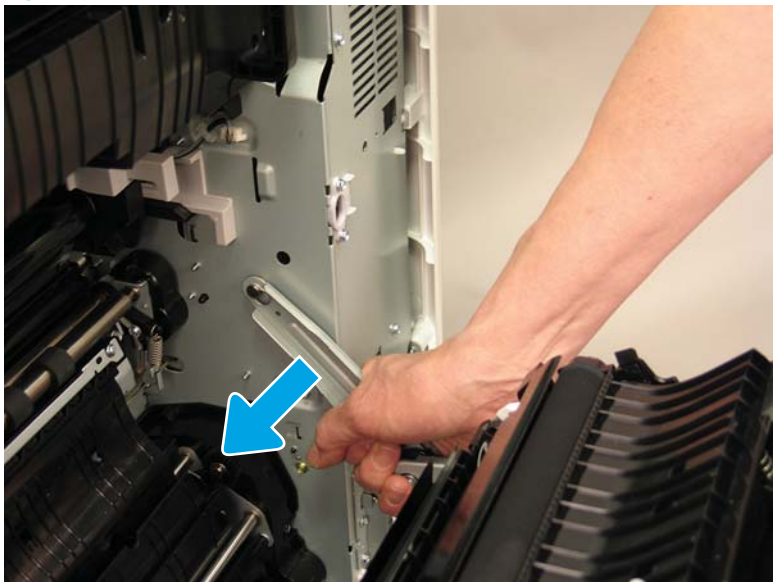
Figure 3-502 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

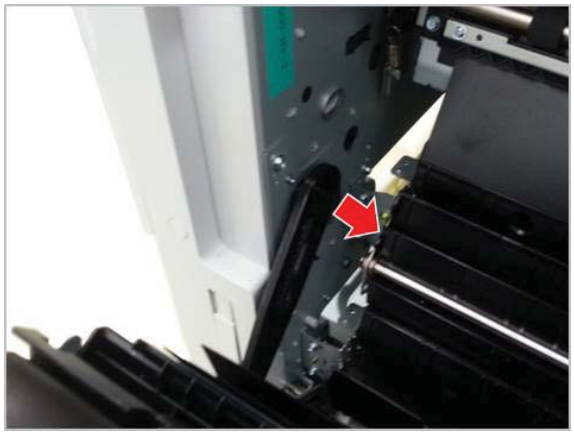
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-503 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

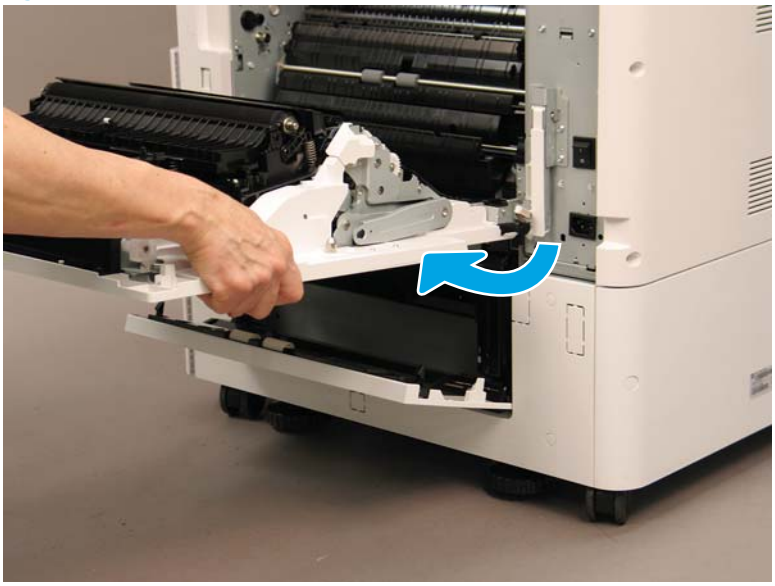
Figure 3-504 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 3-505 Remove the right door



Step 3: Remove the front top inner cover

▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-506 Remove the front top inner cover

Step 4: Remove the front power cover

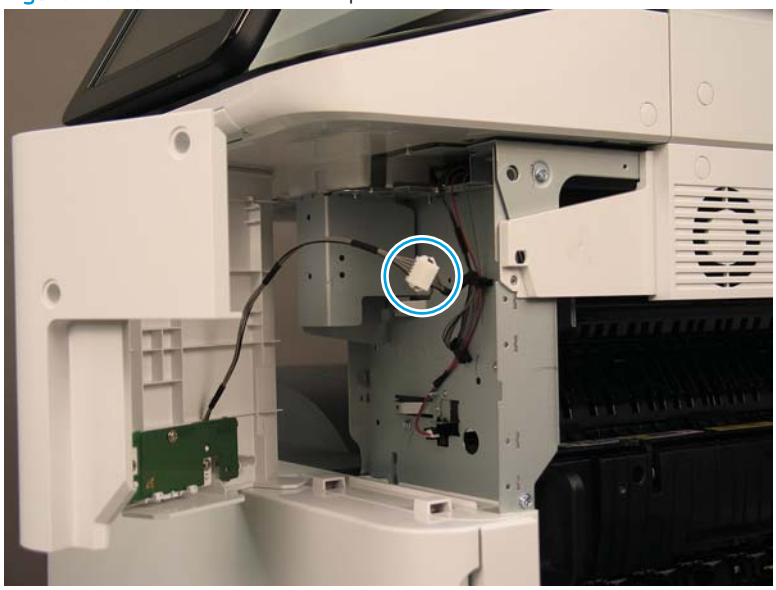
1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 3-507 Remove two screws and rotate the cover

2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

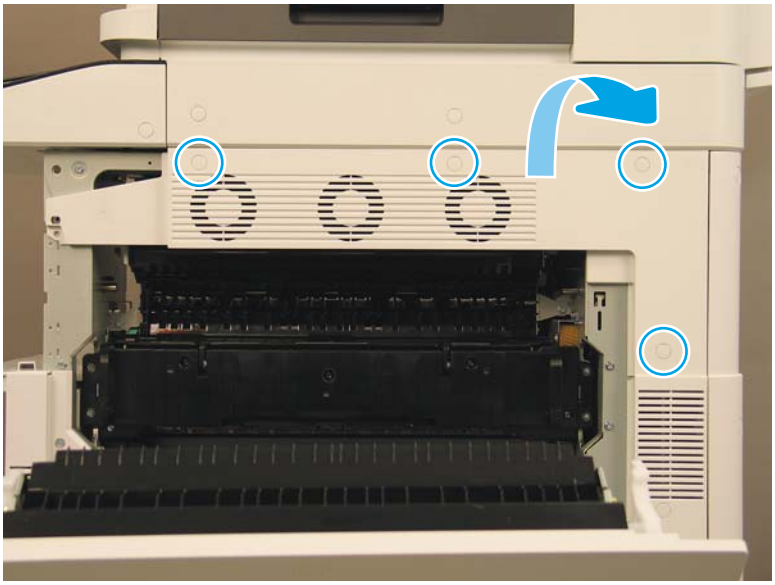
Figure 3-508 Remove the front power cover



Step 5: Remove the top right cover

- Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then rotate the top right cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-509 Remove the top right cover



Step 6: Remove the fuser unit

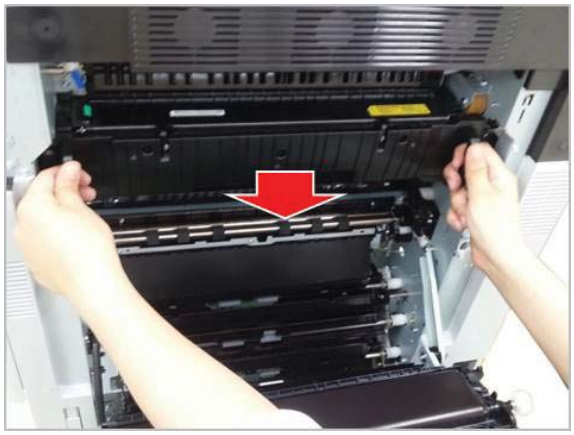
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screws.

Figure 3-510 Fuser unit screw locations

3. Pull out the fuser unit.

⚠ CAUTION: The temperature in the vicinity of the fuser becomes heated. To prevent the potential of getting burned, make sure the fuser unit has cooled before replacing it.

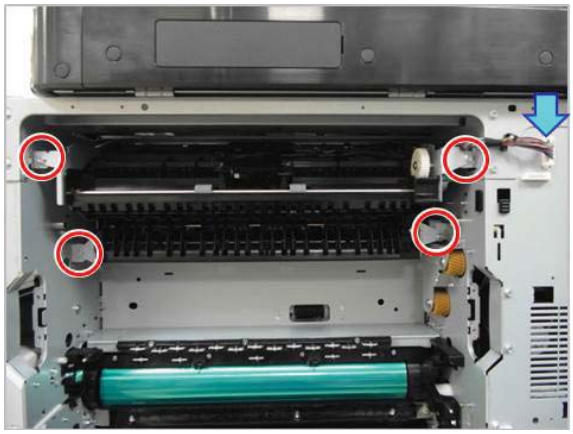
Figure 3-511 Fuser unit removal



Step 7: Remove the output unit

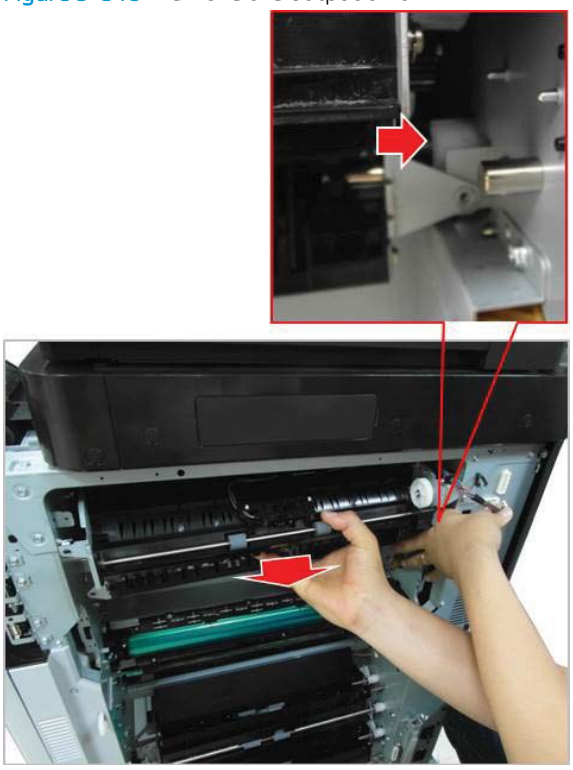
1. Disconnect two connectors, and then remove four screws.

Figure 3-512 Disconnect two connectors and remove four screws



2. Remove the output unit while pushing the coupler to the right.

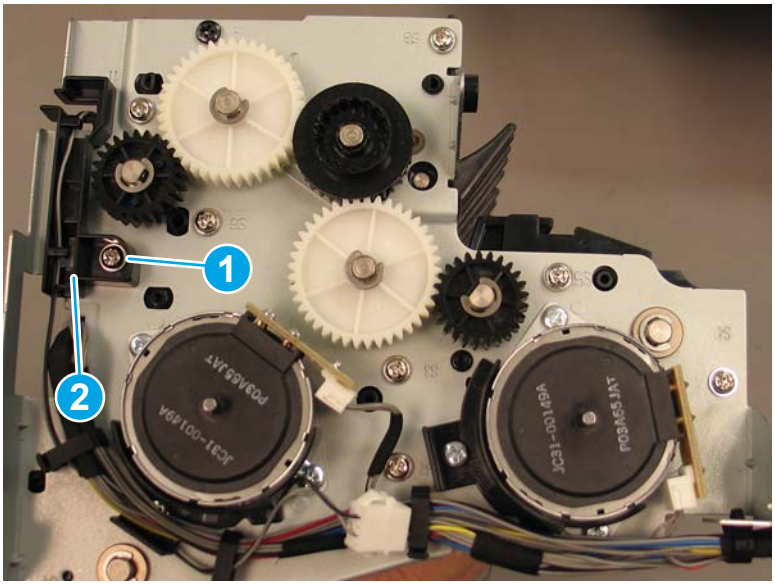
Figure 3-513 Remove the output unit



Step 8: Remove the output 1 bin full sensor

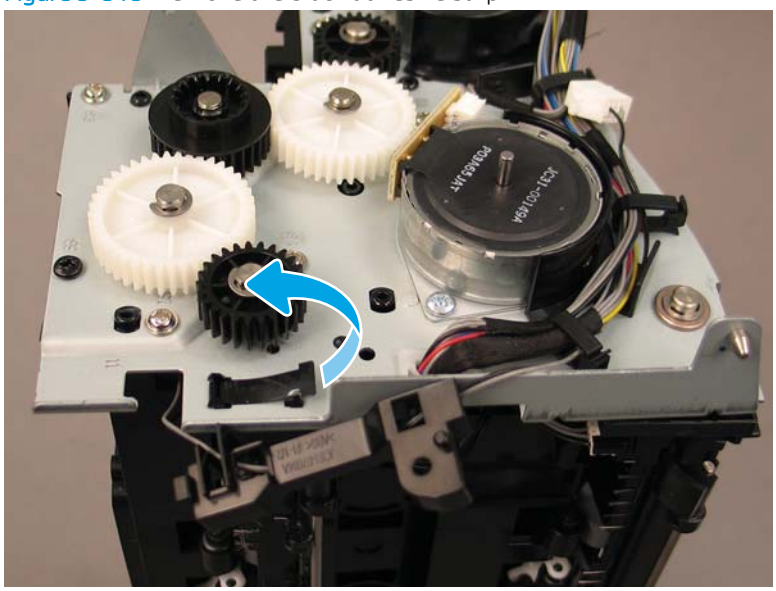
1. On the output unit, remove one self-tapping screw (callout 1), and then remove the guide (callout 2).

Figure 3-514 Remove one screw and the guide



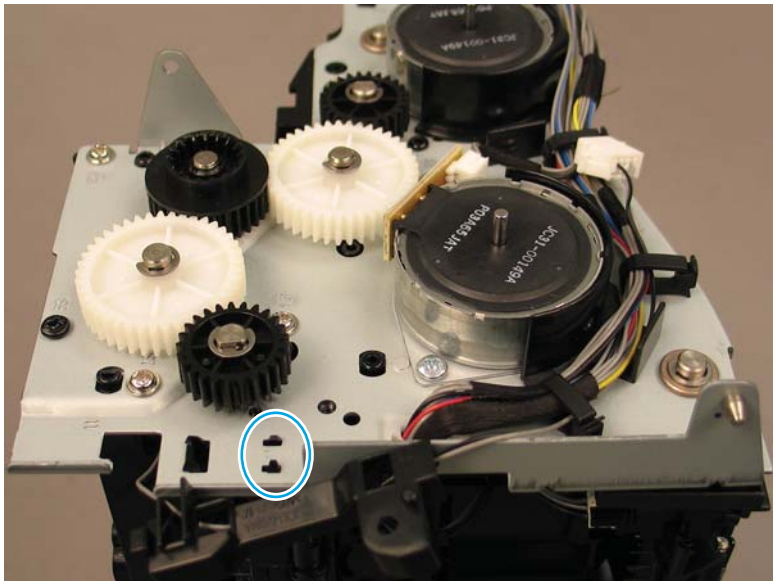
2. Remove the black adhesive strip from the output unit.

Figure 3-515 Remove the black adhesive strip



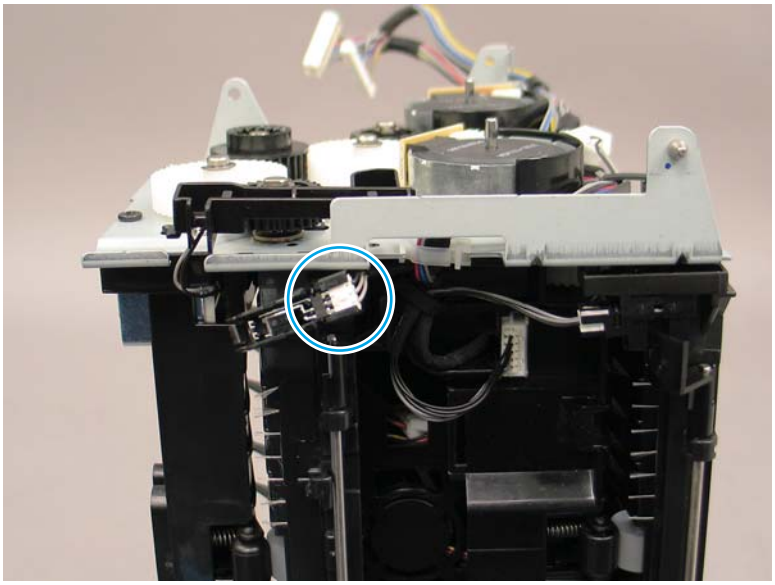
3. Release two tabs, and then unhook the sensor from the sheet metal.

Figure 3-516 Release two tabs



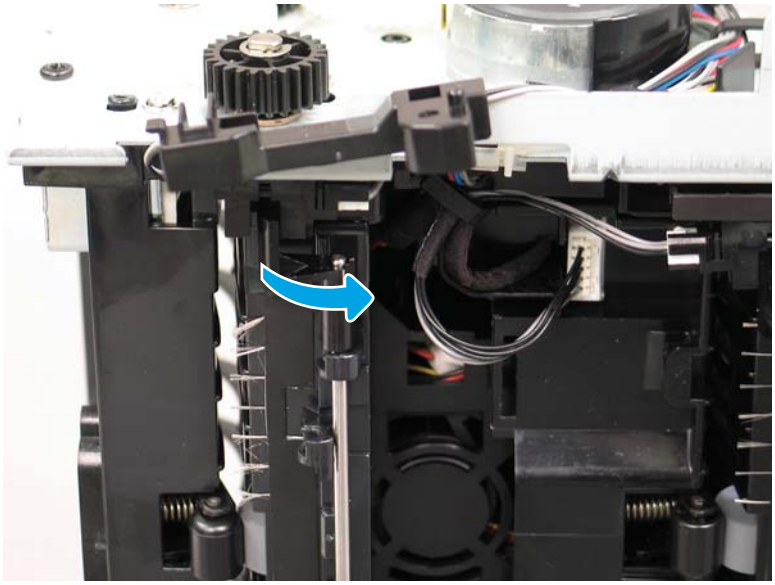
4. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 3-517 Disconnect one connector



5. Rotate the shaft to release the sensor, and then remove the sensor.

Figure 3-518 Remove the output 1 bin full sensor



Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Output gate solenoid (on the output unit)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove the front top inner cover
- Step 4: Remove the front power cover
- Step 5: Remove the top right cover
- Step 6: Remove the fuser unit
- Step 7: Remove the output unit
- Step 8: Remove the output gate solenoid
- Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the output gate solenoid.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Output gate solenoid part number	
SAM-JC33-00031B	Solenoid - Lifting

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

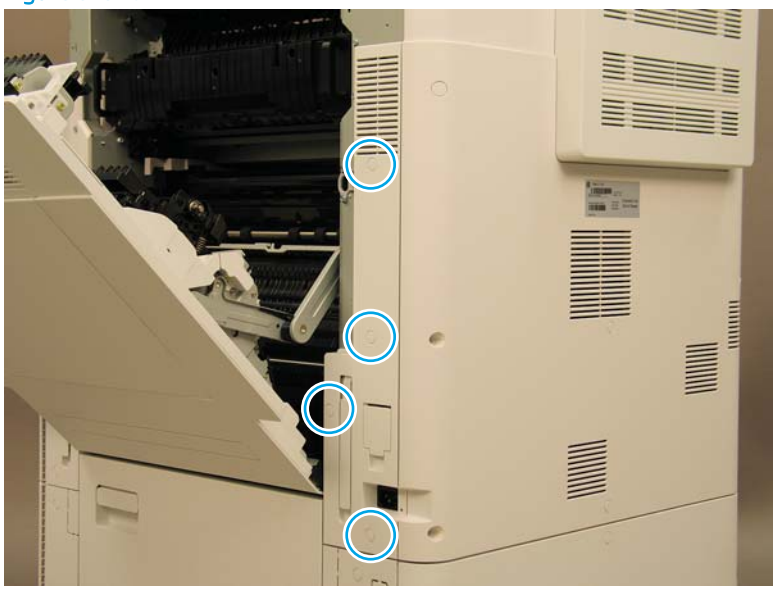
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-519 Remove four screws



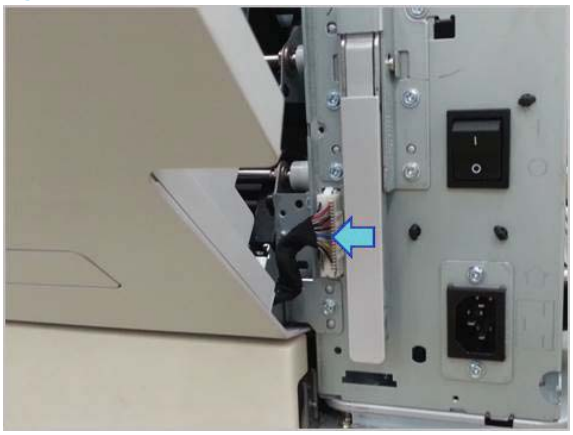
3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

Figure 3-520 Remove the right rear cover

Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

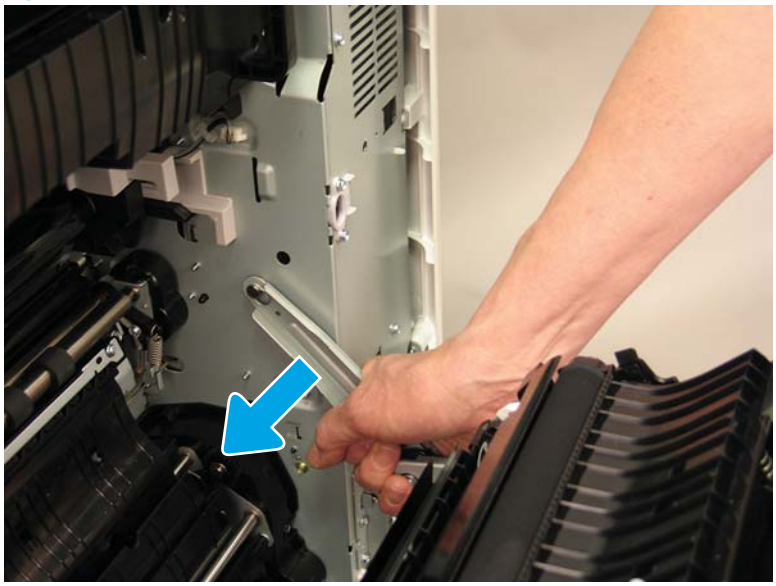
Figure 3-521 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

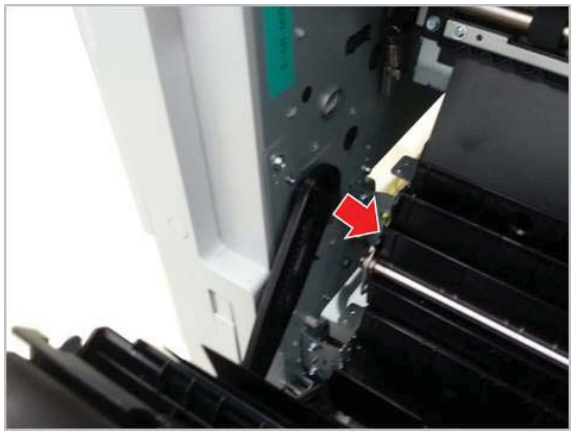
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-522 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

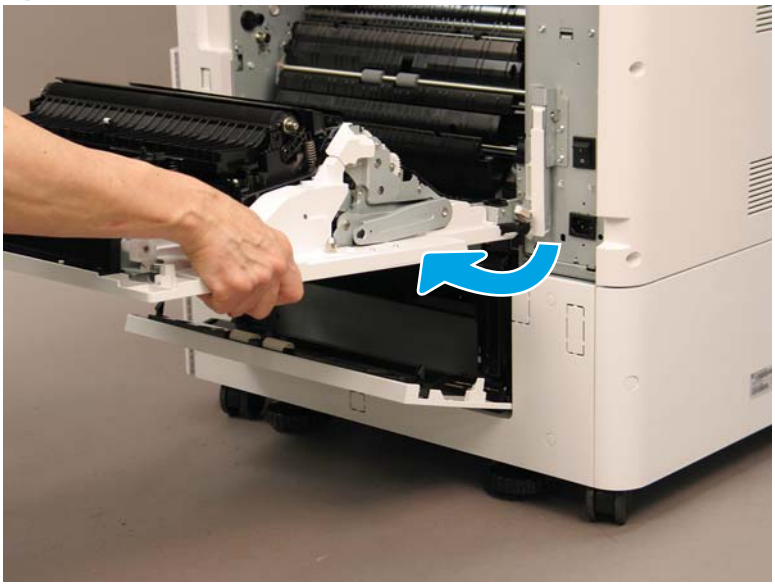
Figure 3-523 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 3-524 Remove the right door



Step 3: Remove the front top inner cover

▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-525 Remove the front top inner cover

Step 4: Remove the front power cover

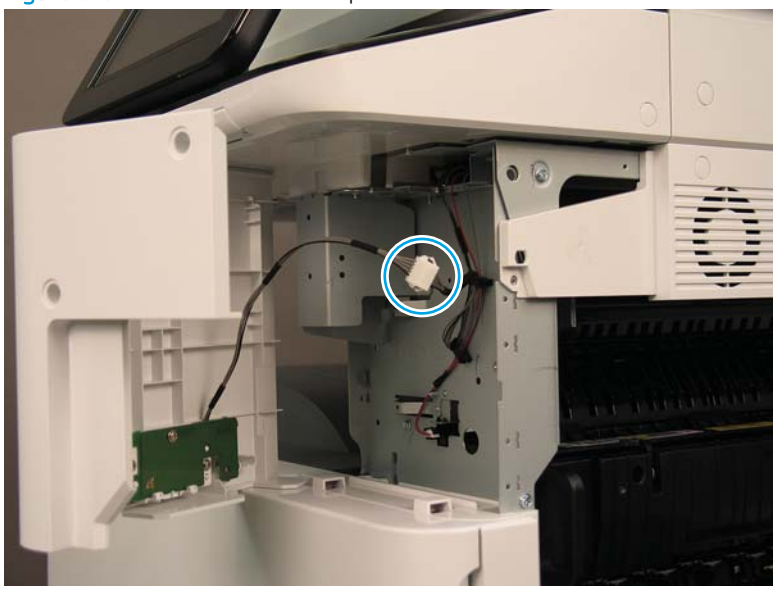
1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 3-526 Remove two screws and rotate the cover

2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

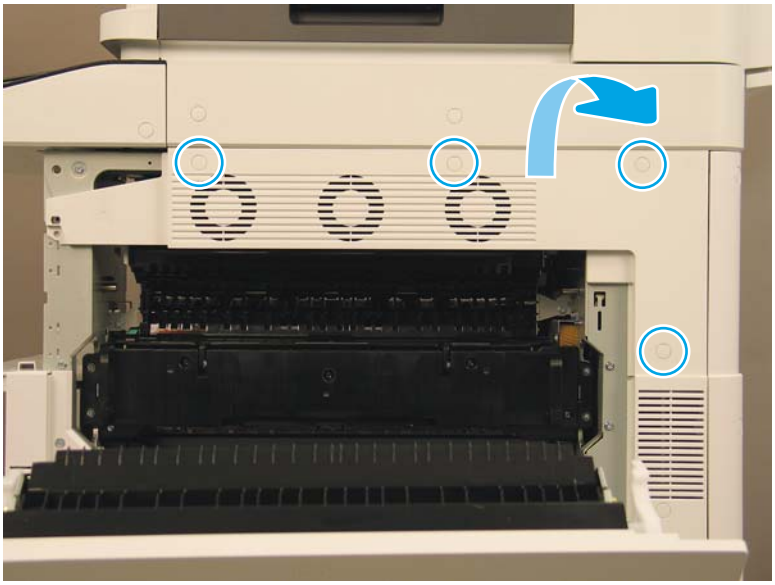
Figure 3-527 Remove the front power cover



Step 5: Remove the top right cover

- Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then rotate the top right cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-528 Remove the top right cover



Step 6: Remove the fuser unit

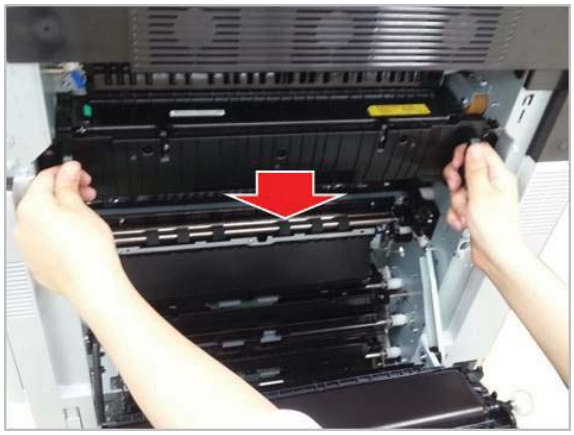
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screws.

Figure 3-529 Fuser unit screw locations

3. Pull out the fuser unit.

⚠ CAUTION: The temperature in the vicinity of the fuser becomes heated. To prevent the potential of getting burned, make sure the fuser unit has cooled before replacing it.

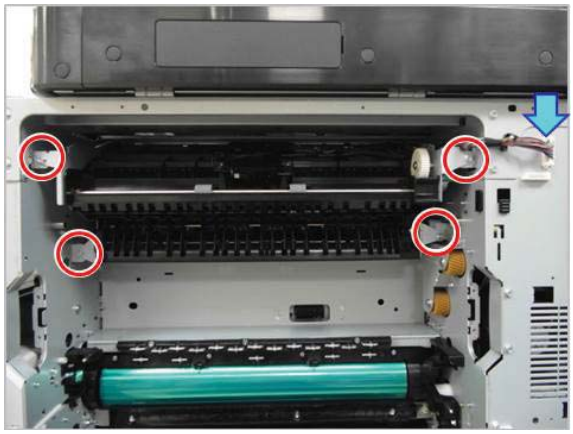
Figure 3-530 Fuser unit removal



Step 7: Remove the output unit

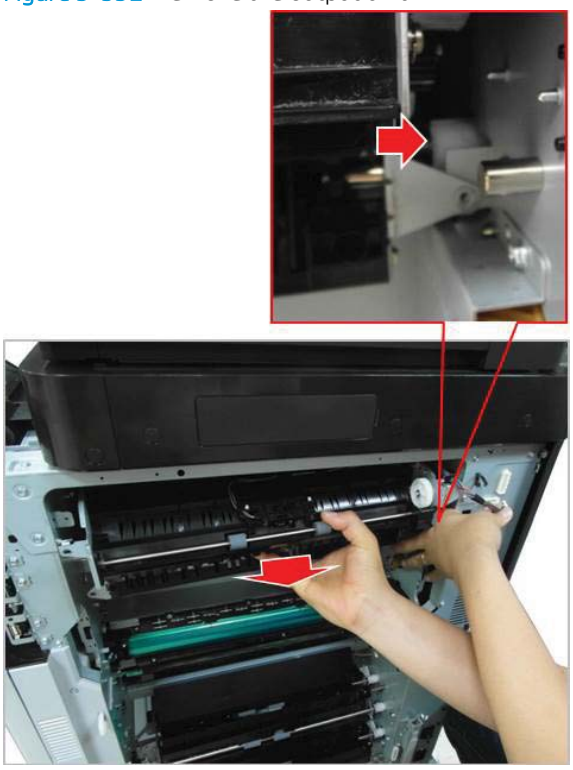
1. Disconnect two connectors, and then remove four screws.

Figure 3-531 Disconnect two connectors and remove four screws



2. Remove the output unit while pushing the coupler to the right.

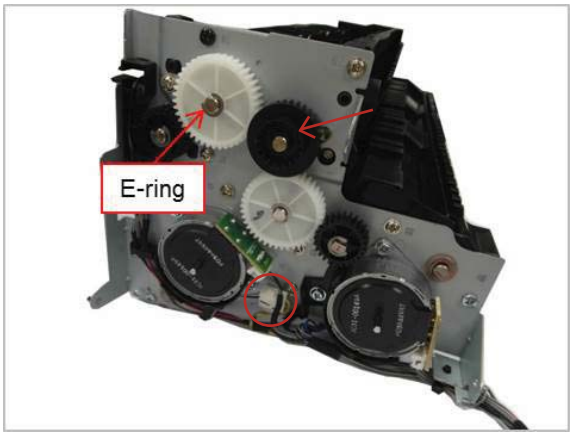
Figure 3-532 Remove the output unit



Step 8: Remove the output gate solenoid

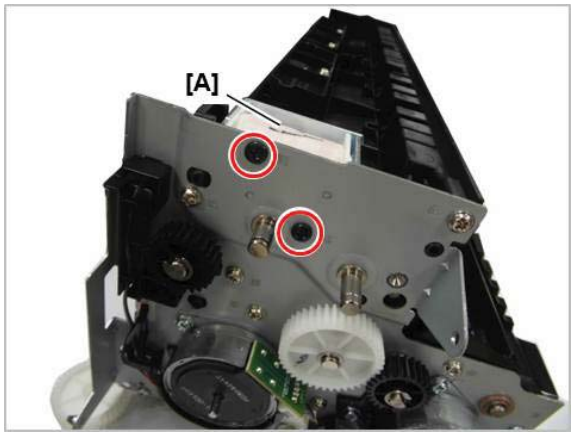
1. Disconnect one connector. Gently pry the black gear from behind to remove it. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the white gear.

Figure 3-533 On the output unit, disconnect one connector and remove two gears



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the output gate solenoid [A].

Figure 3-534 Output gate solenoid



Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Pickup unit 2

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove pickup unit 2
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace pickup unit 2.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Pickup unit 2 part number	
SAM-JC93-01365A	Main Pick Up 2nd

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

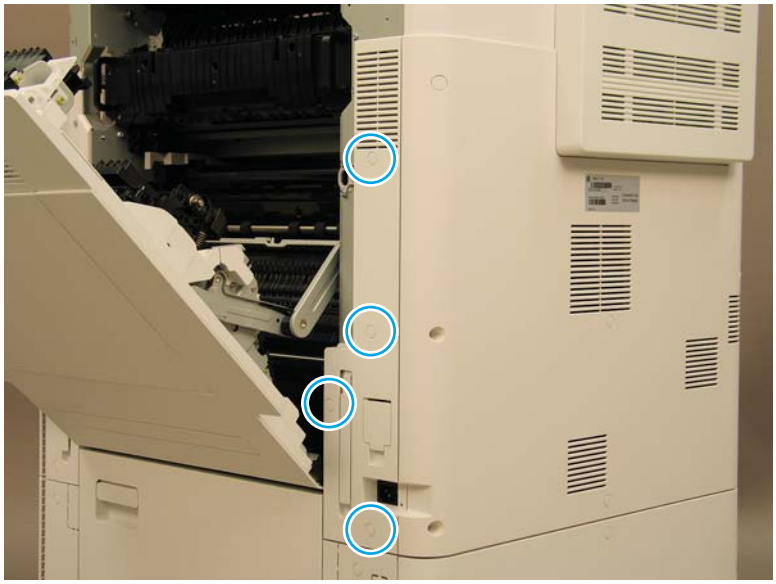
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

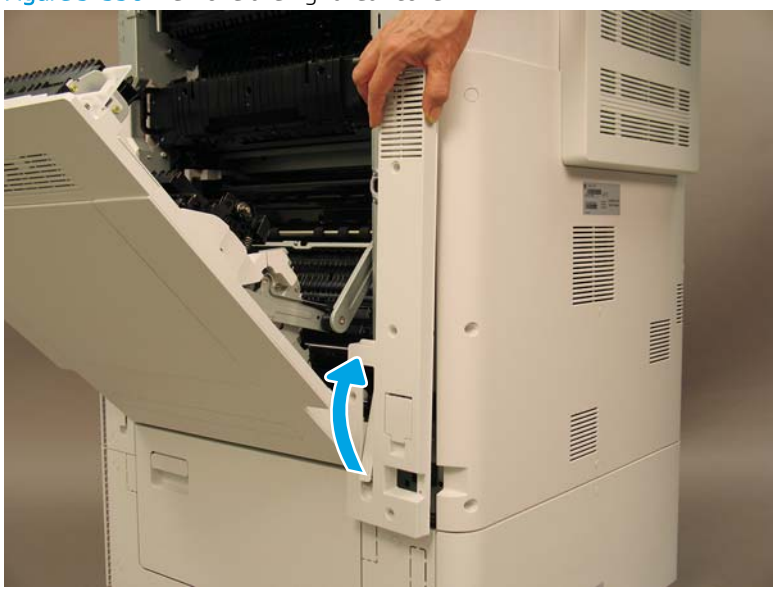
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-535 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

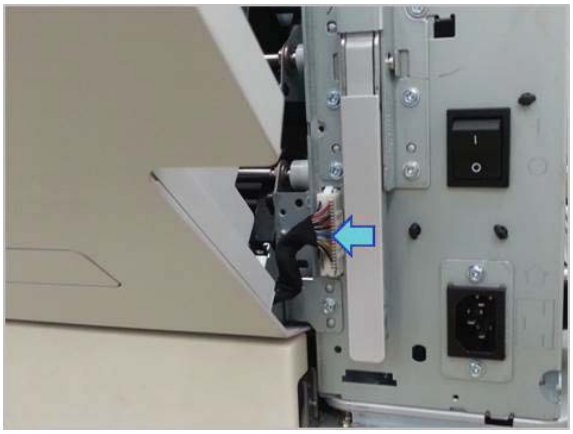
Figure 3-536 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

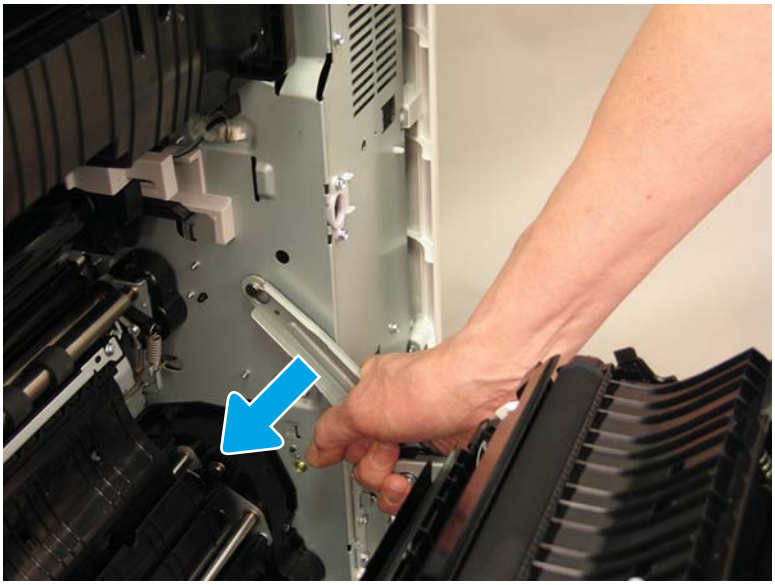
Figure 3-537 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

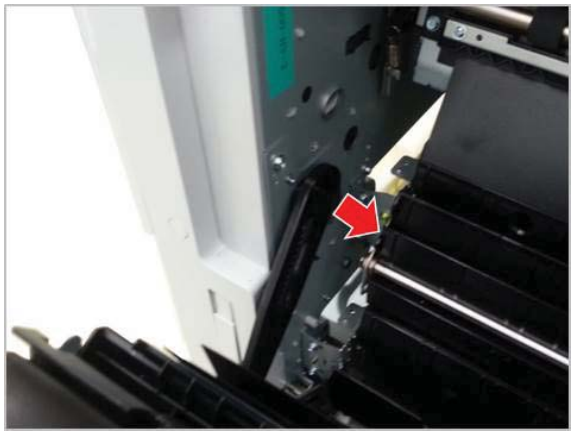
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-538 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

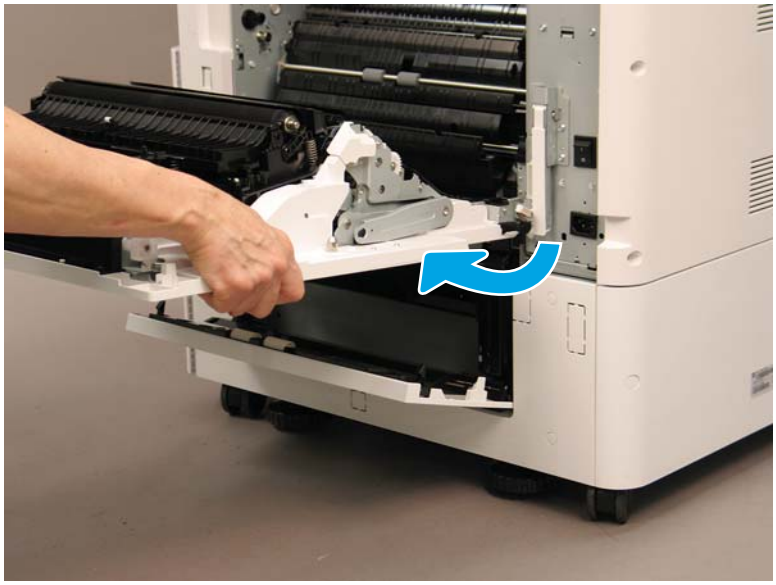
Figure 3-539 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 3-540 Remove the right door

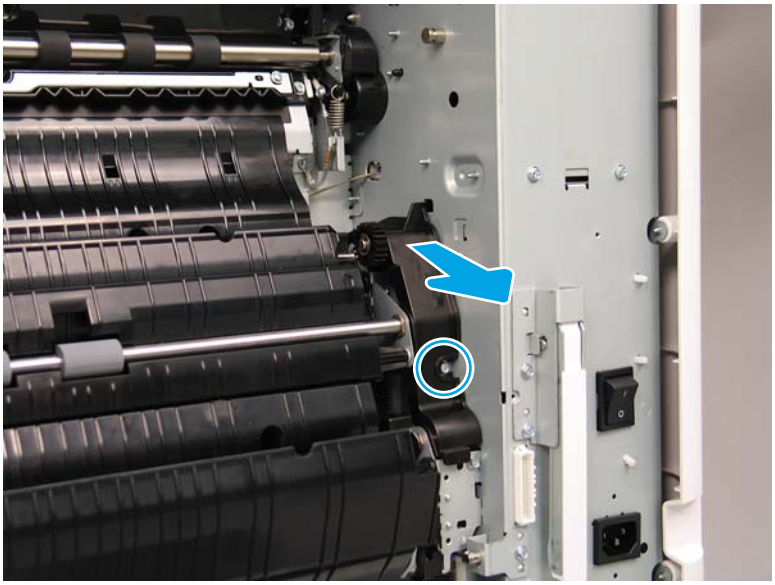


Step 3: Remove pickup unit 2

1. Remove the paper trays.

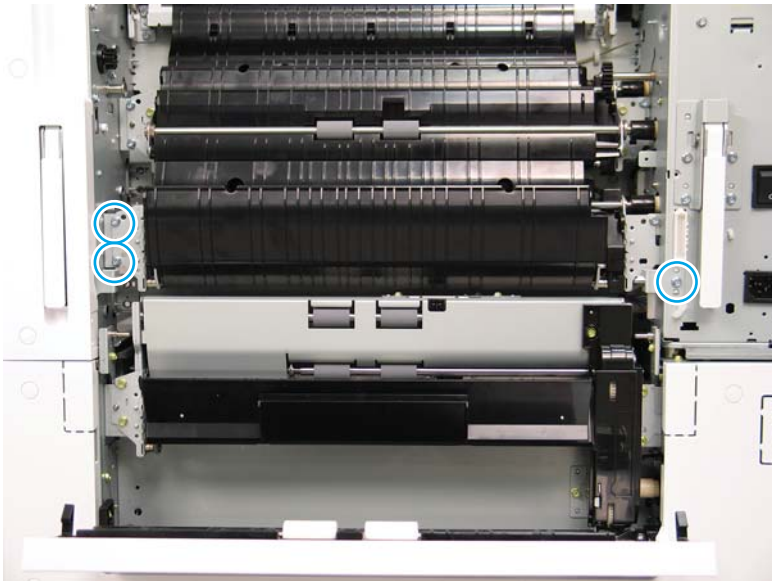
2. Remove one screw, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-541 Remove one screw and the cover



3. Remove three screws.

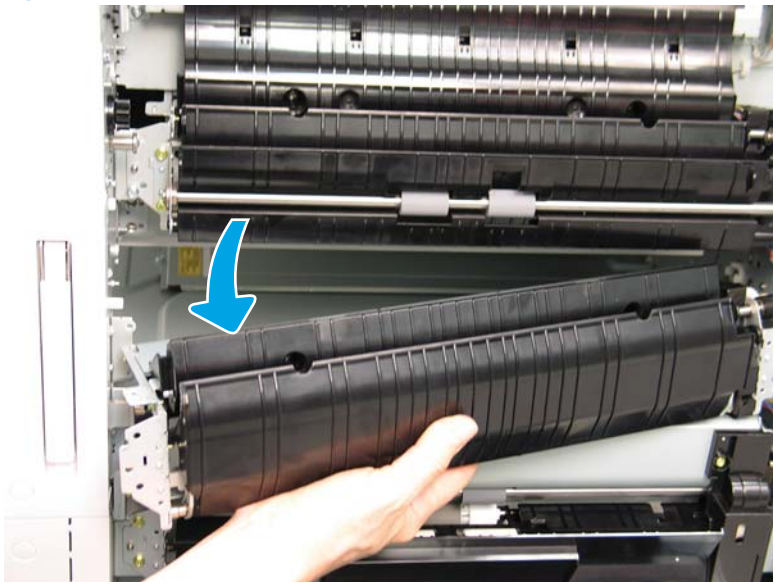
Figure 3-542 Remove three screws



4. Rotate the left side of pickup unit 2 away from the printer.

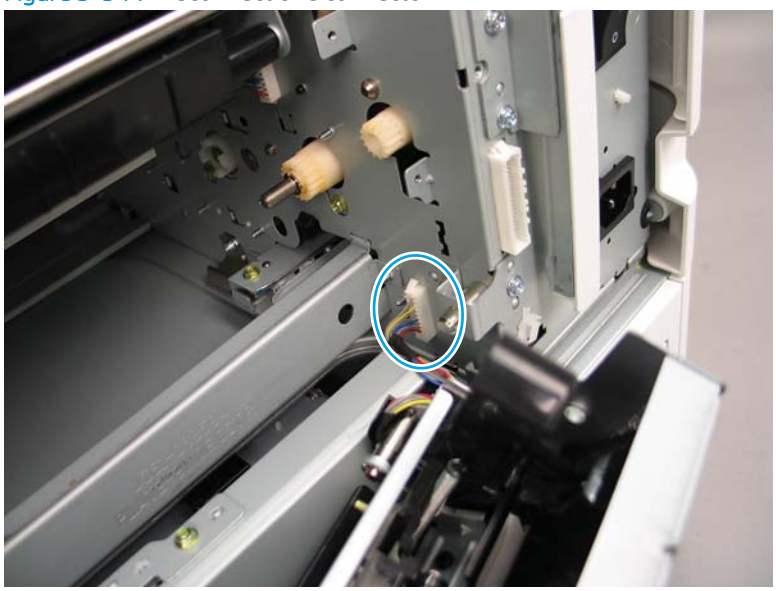
⚠ CAUTION: The pickup unit is still attached to the printer by a connector. Do not remove it completely

Figure 3-543 Rotate pickup unit 2



5. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 3-544 Disconnect one connector

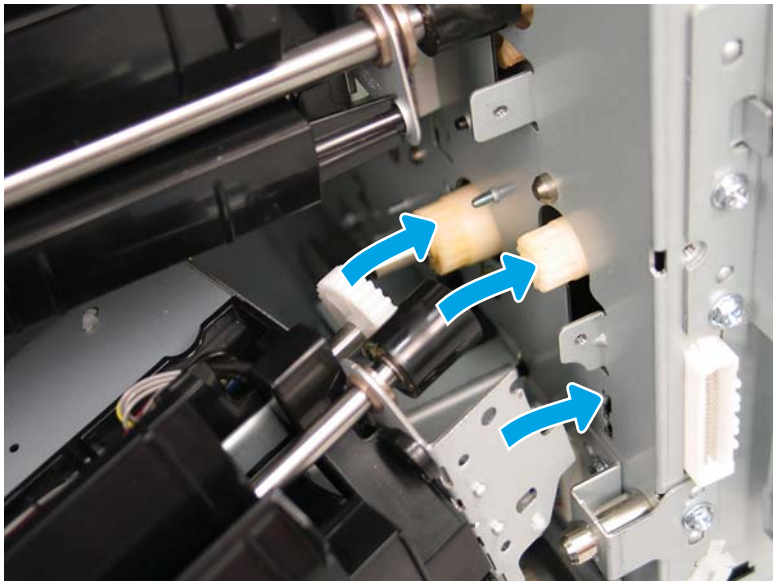


6. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Pickup unit 2

- When reinstalling pickup unit 2, align the gear, coupler, and bracket on the right side.

Figure 3-545 Align gear, coupler, and bracket



NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Pickup lifting and empty sensor (pickup unit 2)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove pickup unit 2
- Step 4: Remove the pickup lifting and empty sensor
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the pickup lifting and empty sensor for pickup unit 2.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Pickup lifting and empty sensor part number	
SAM-0604-001381	Photo Interrupter

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

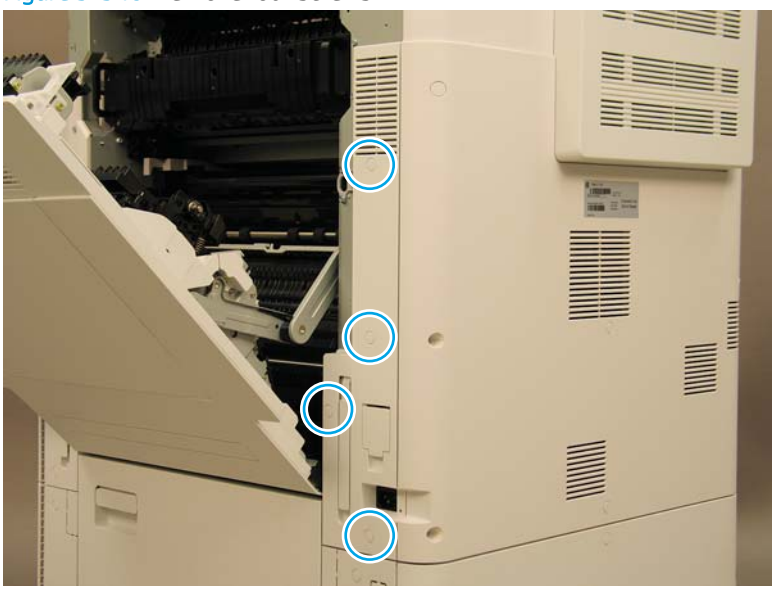
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

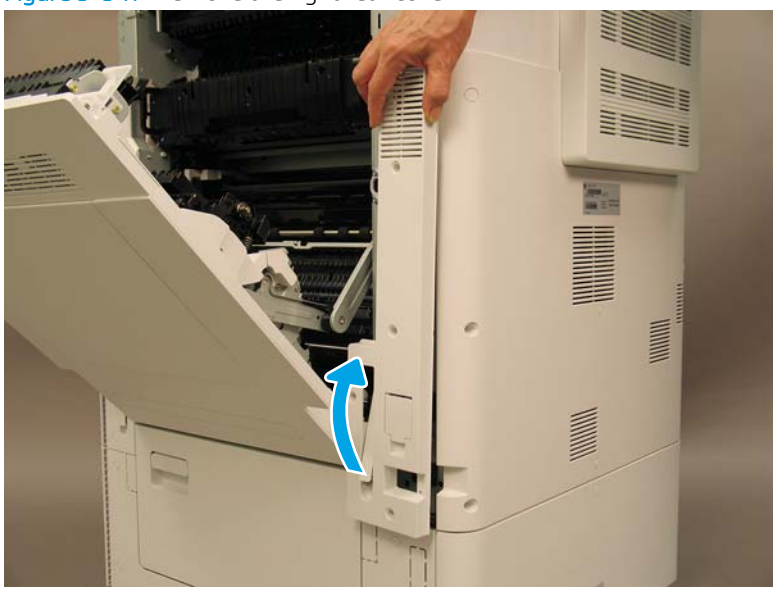
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-546 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

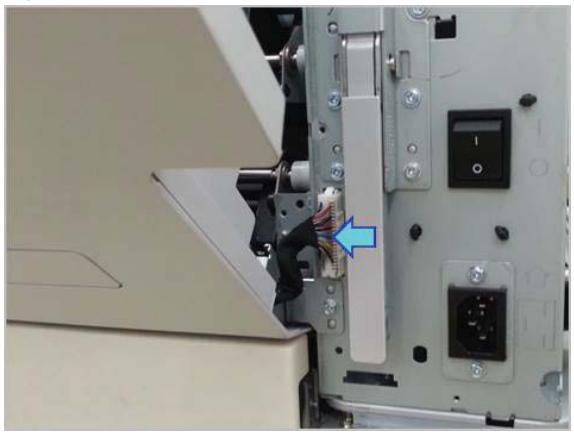
Figure 3-547 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

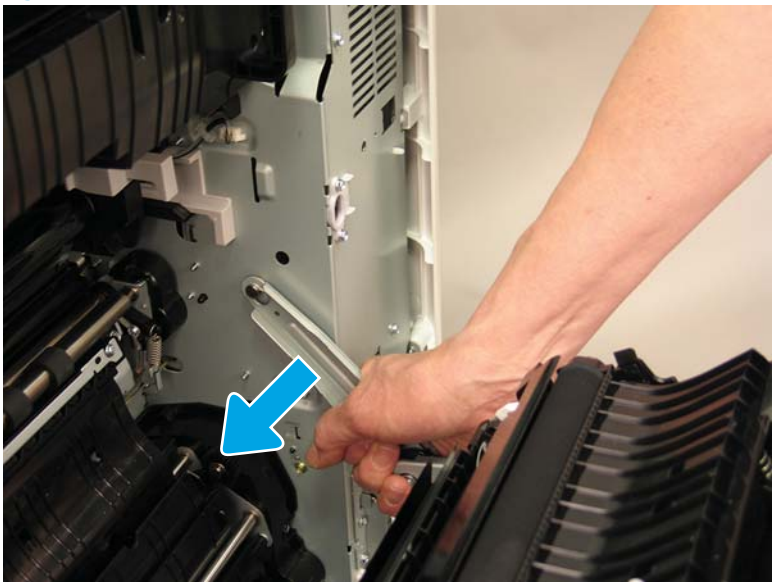
Figure 3-548 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

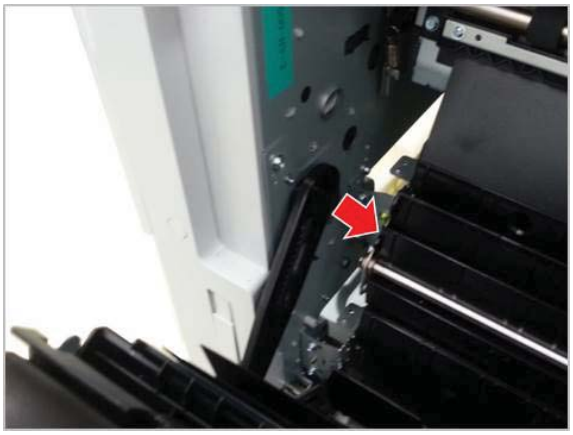
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-549 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

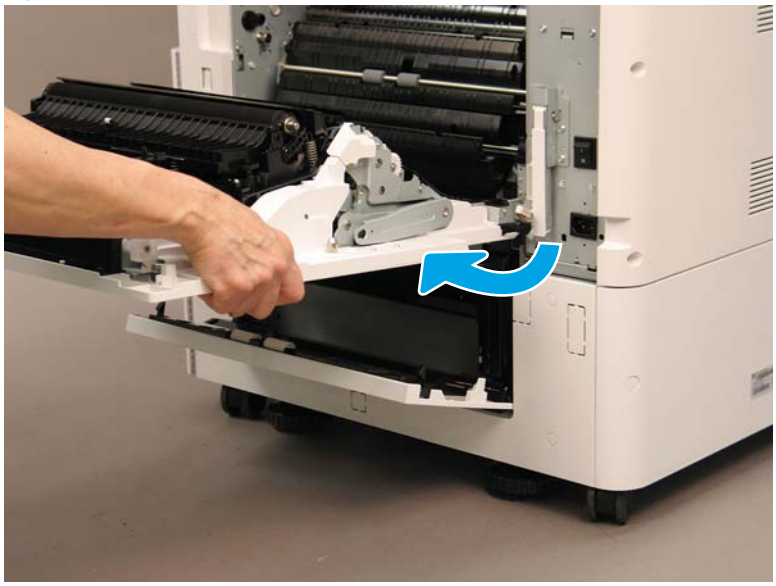
Figure 3-550 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

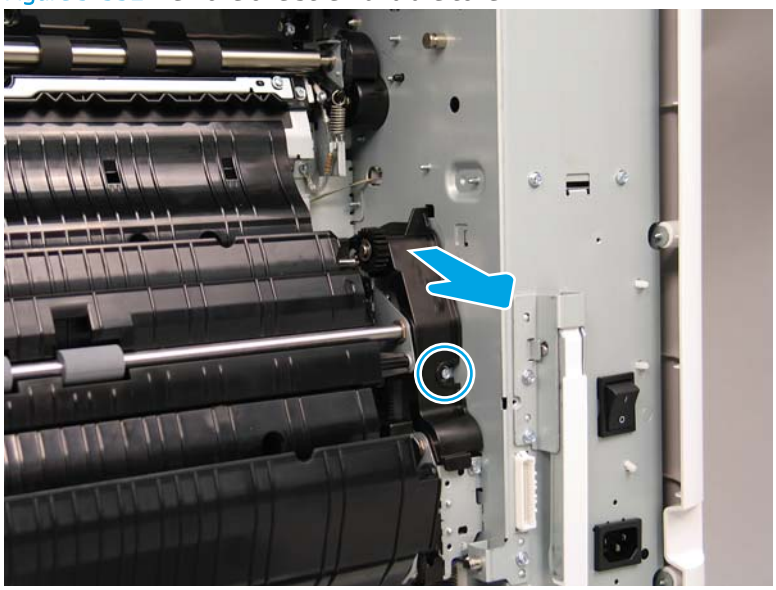
Figure 3-551 Remove the right door



Step 3: Remove pickup unit 2

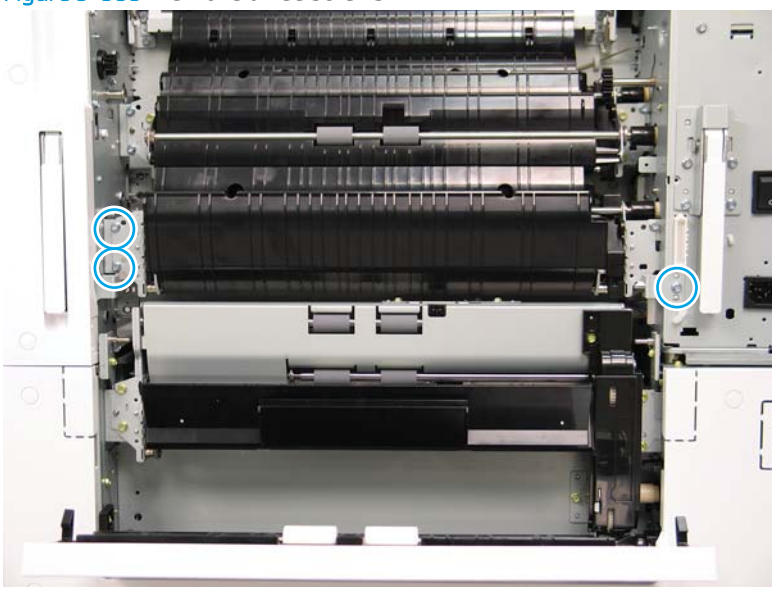
1. Remove the paper trays.
2. Remove one screw, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-552 Remove one screw and the cover



3. Remove three screws.

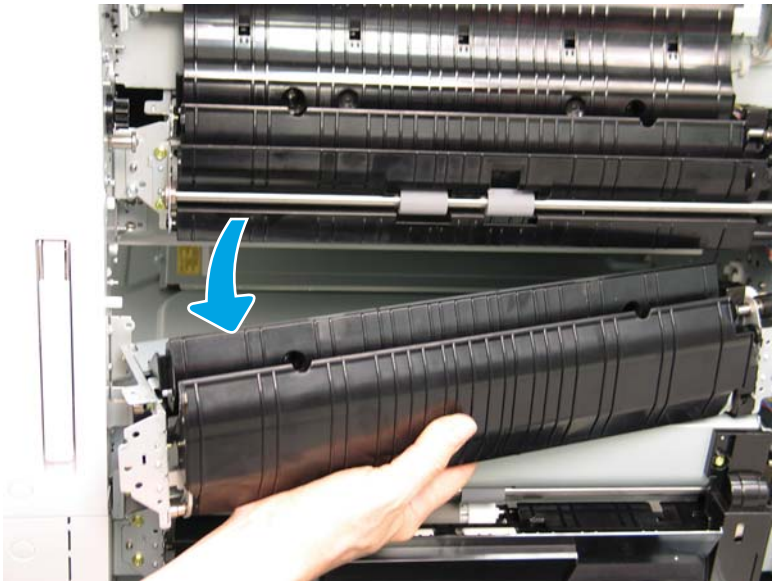
Figure 3-553 Remove three screws



4. Rotate the left side of pickup unit 2 away from the printer.

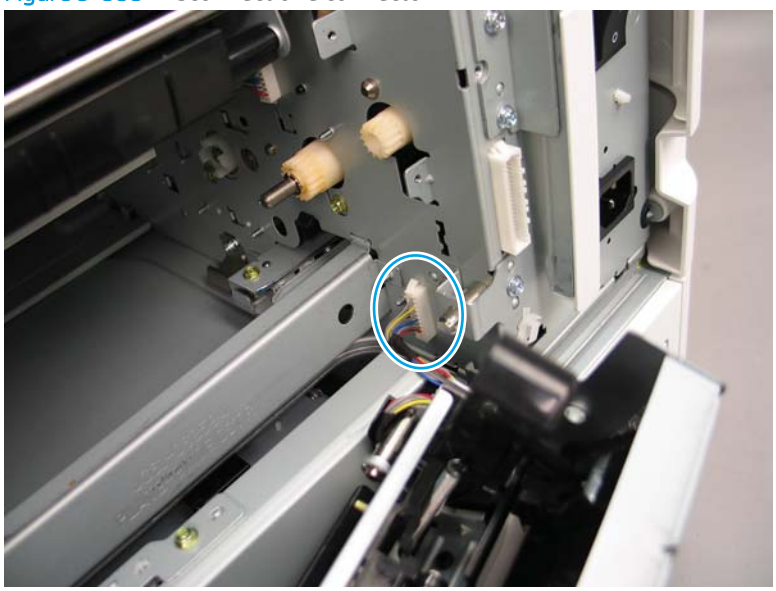
⚠ CAUTION: The pickup unit is still attached to the printer by a connector. Do not remove it completely

Figure 3-554 Rotate pickup unit 2



5. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 3-555 Disconnect one connector

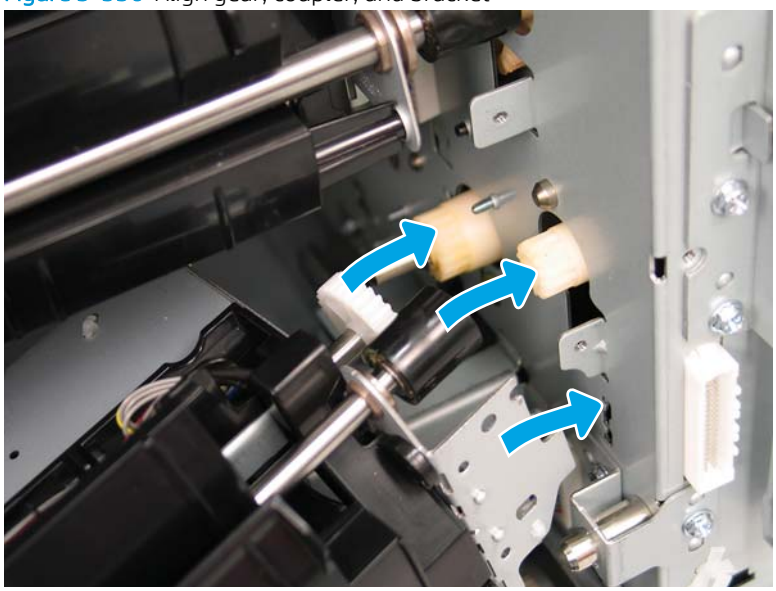


6. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Pickup unit 2

- When reinstalling pickup unit 2, align the gear, coupler, and bracket on the right side.

Figure 3-556 Align gear, coupler, and bracket



NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

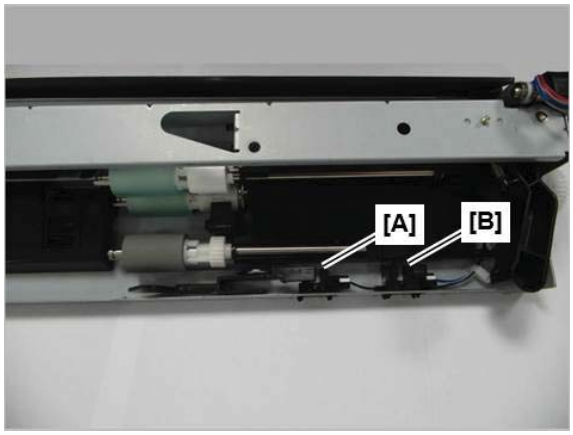
Step 4: Remove the pickup lifting and empty sensor

- Disconnect the corresponding sensor connector, and then remove the sensor.

a. [A]: Empty sensor.

b. [B]: Pickup lifting sensor.

Figure 3-557 Remove the sensor



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Prefeed sensor 2 (pickup unit 2)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove pickup unit 2
- Step 4: Remove the prefeed sensor 2
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the prefeed sensor 2 for pickup unit 2.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Prefeed sensor 2 part number	
SAM-0604-001381	Photo interrupter

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

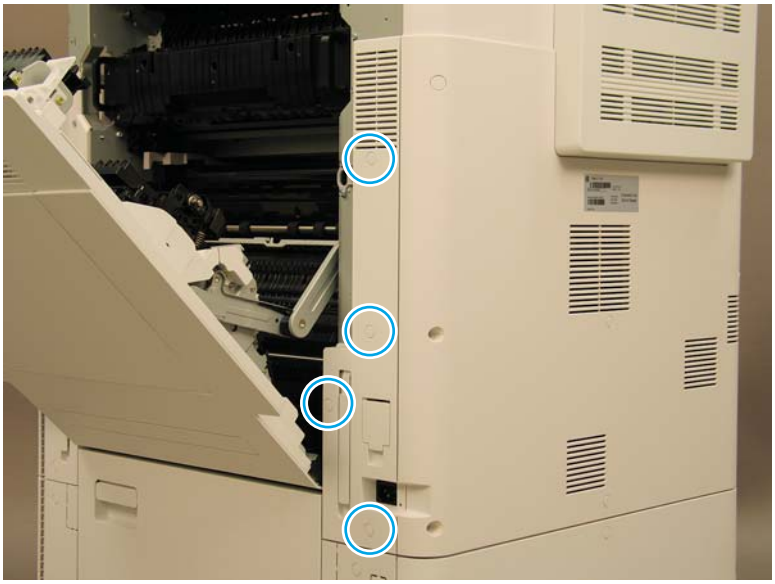
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

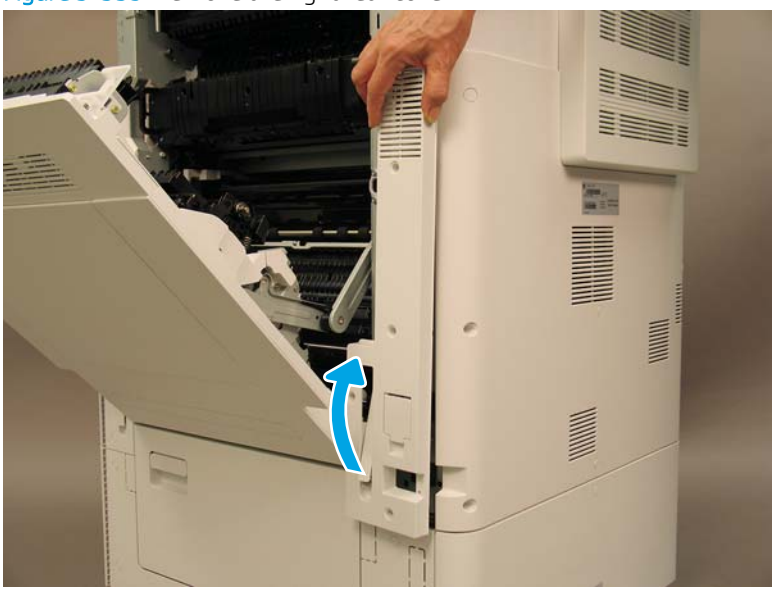
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-558 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

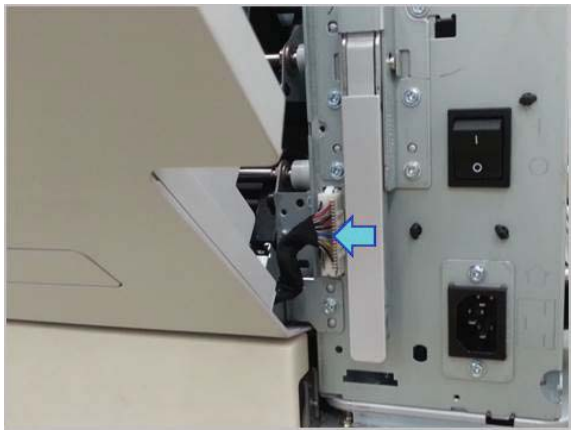
Figure 3-559 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

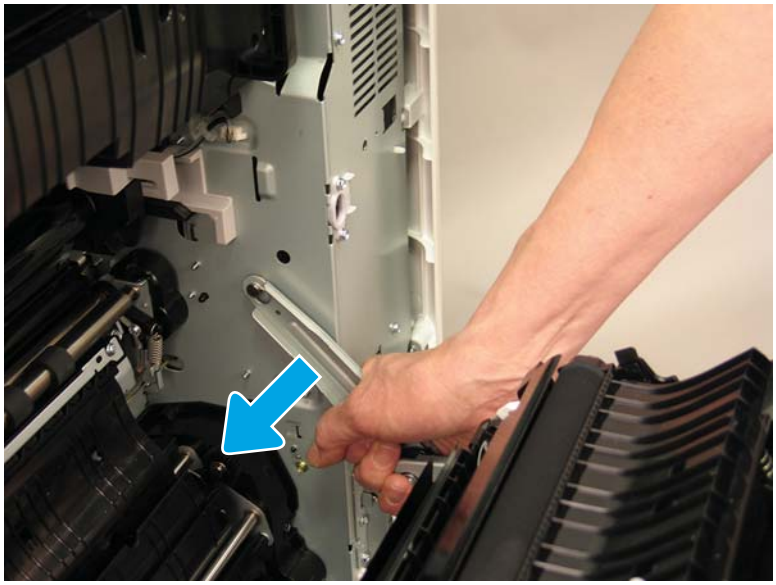
Figure 3-560 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

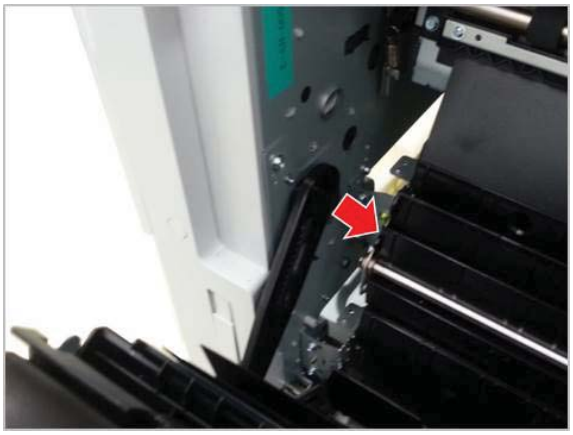
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-561 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

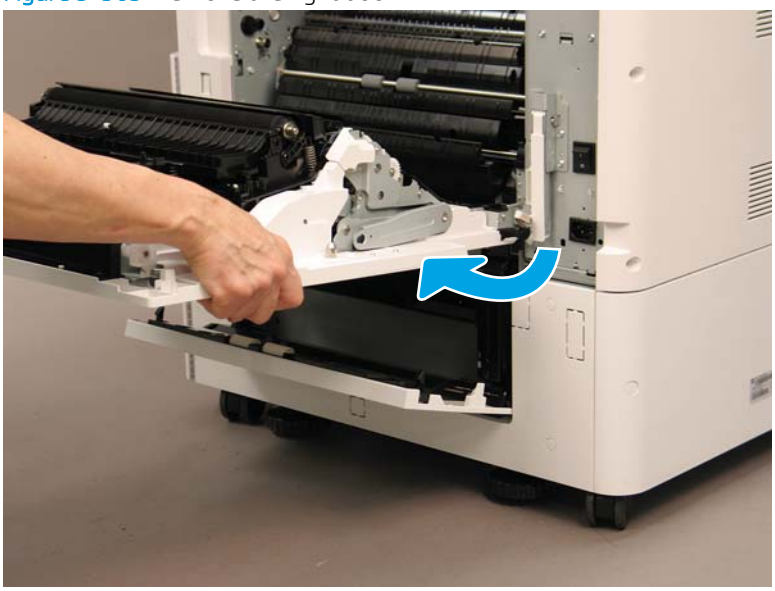
Figure 3-562 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 3-563 Remove the right door

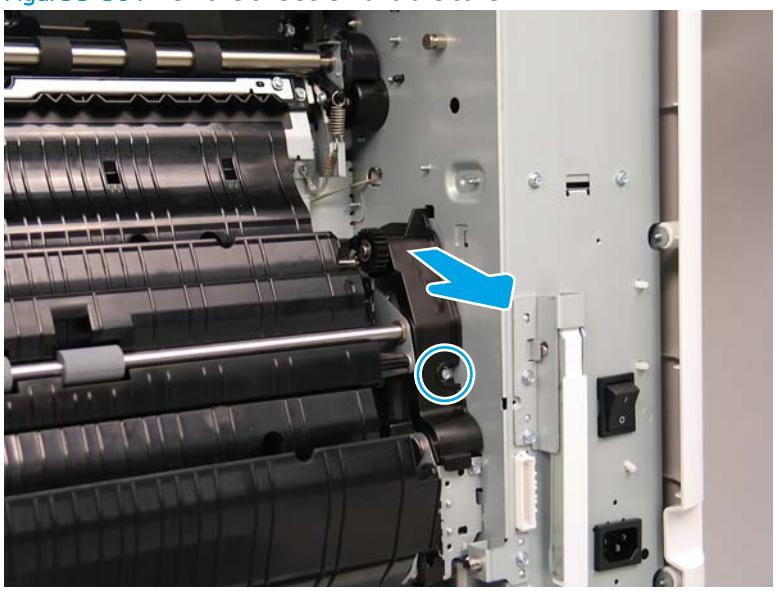


Step 3: Remove pickup unit 2

1. Remove the paper trays.

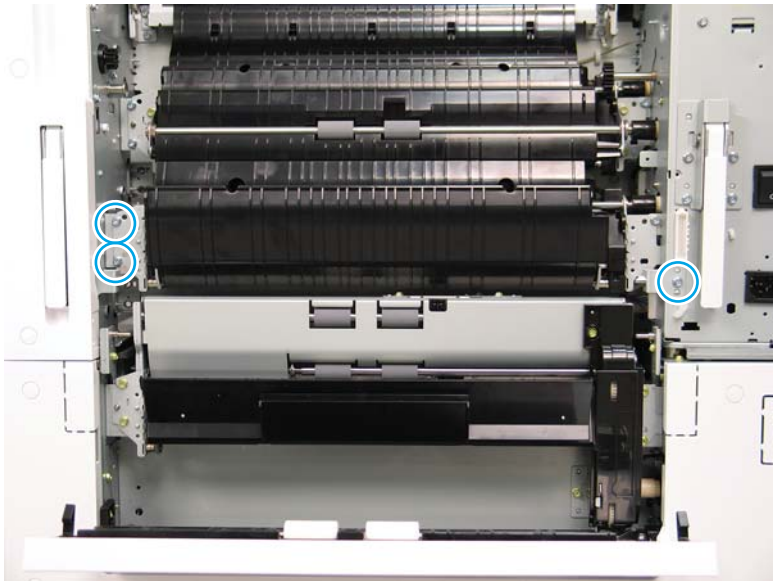
2. Remove one screw, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-564 Remove one screw and the cover



3. Remove three screws.

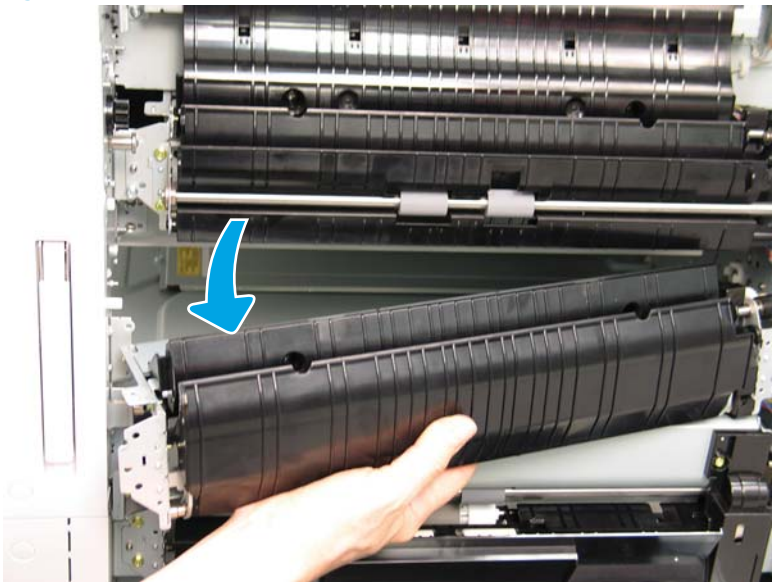
Figure 3-565 Remove three screws



4. Rotate the left side of pickup unit 2 away from the printer.

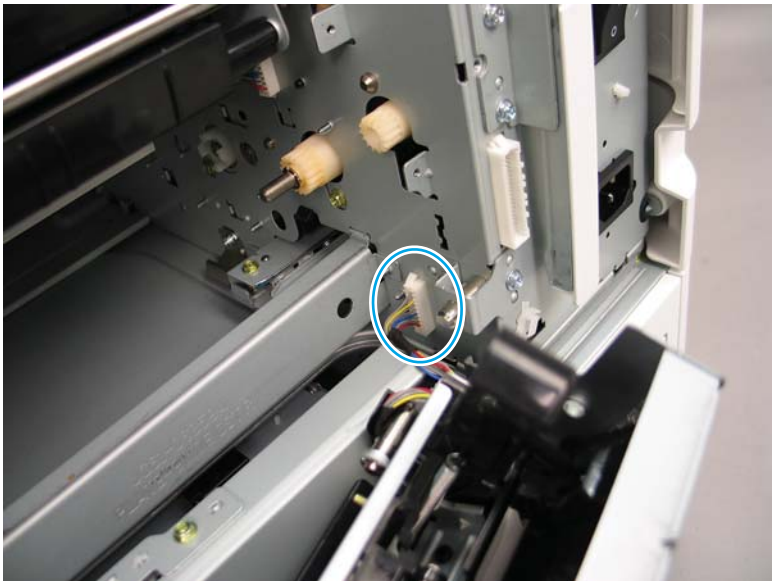
⚠ CAUTION: The pickup unit is still attached to the printer by a connector. Do not remove it completely

Figure 3-566 Rotate pickup unit 2



5. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 3-567 Disconnect one connector

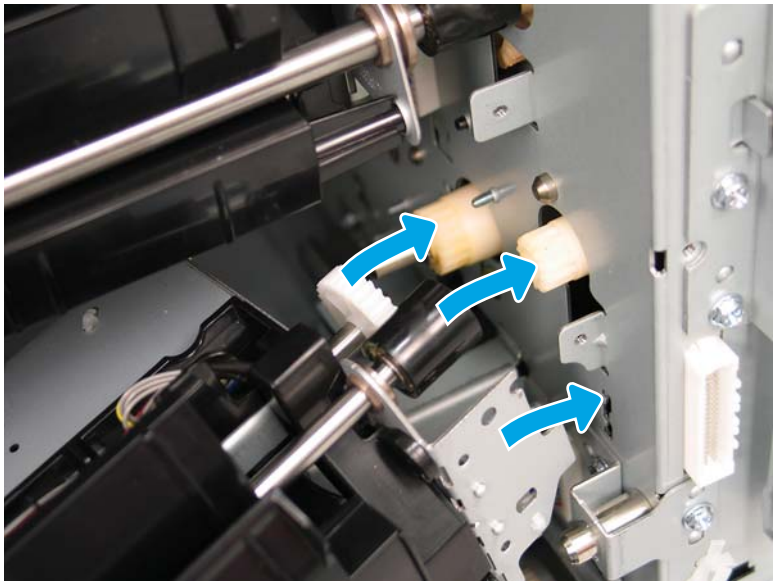


6. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Pickup unit 2

- When reinstalling pickup unit 2, align the gear, coupler, and bracket on the right side.

Figure 3-568 Align gear, coupler, and bracket



NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 4: Remove the prefeed sensor 2

- Open the guide-pickup, and then remove the prefeed sensor 2.

Figure 3-569 Remove prefeed sensor 2

Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Pickup unit 1

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove pickup unit 2
- Step 4: Remove pickup unit 1
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace pickup unit 1.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Pickup unit 1 part number	
SAM-JC93-01364A	Main Pick Up 1st

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

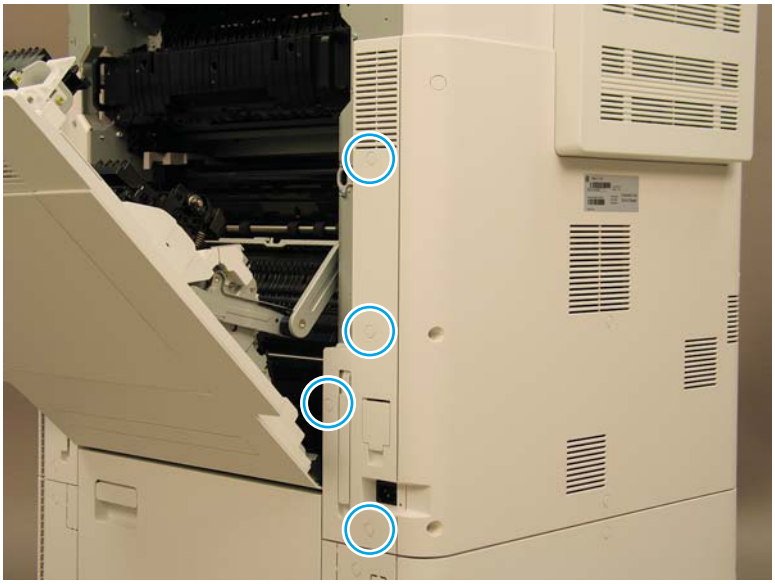
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

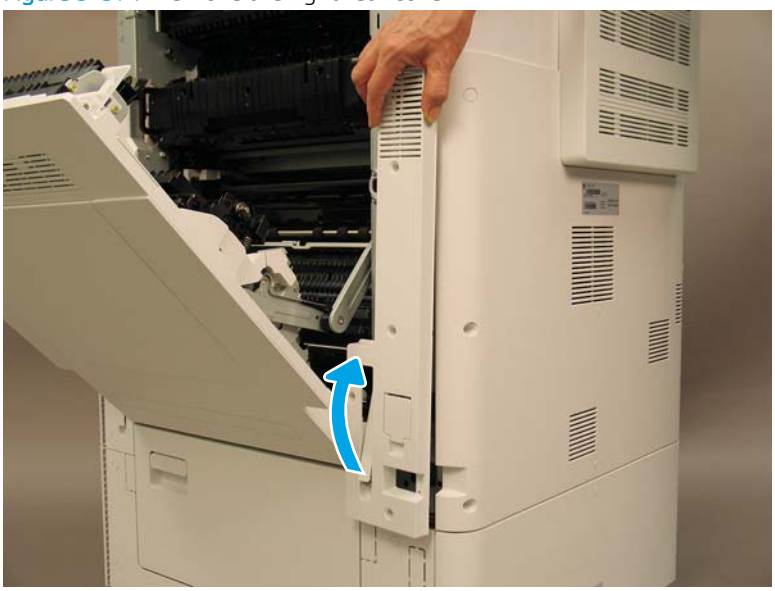
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-570 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

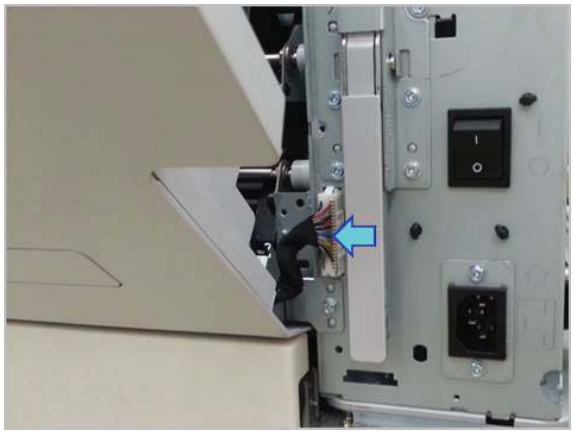
Figure 3-571 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

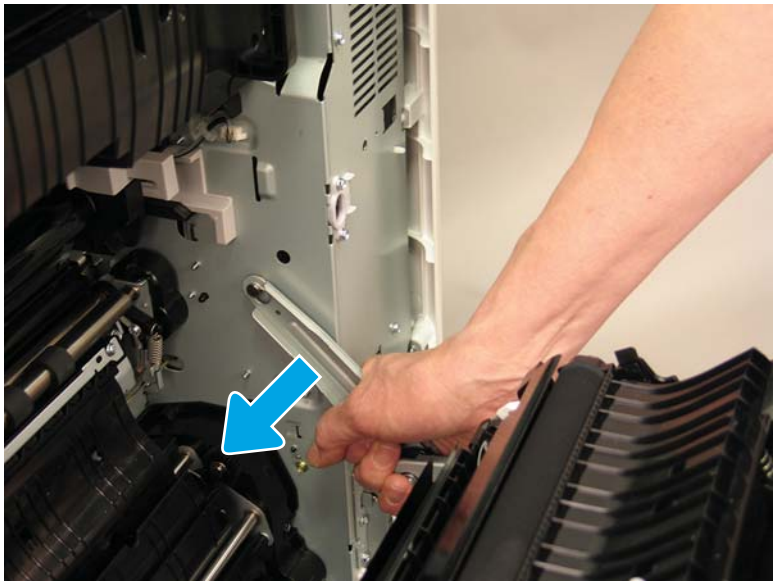
Figure 3-572 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

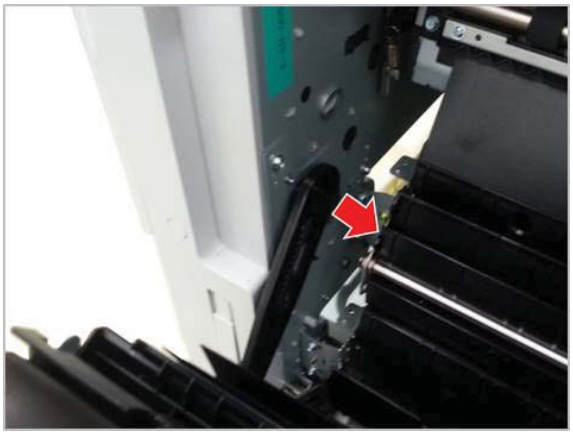
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-573 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

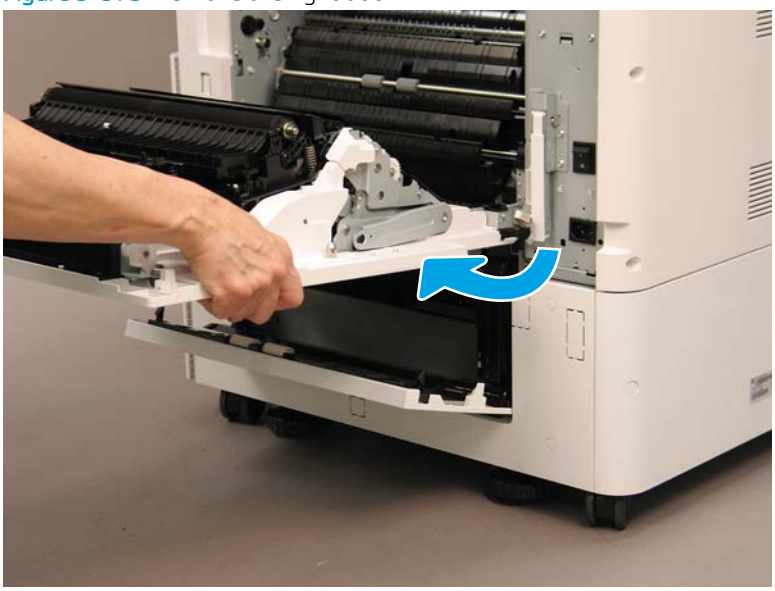
Figure 3-574 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 3-575 Remove the right door

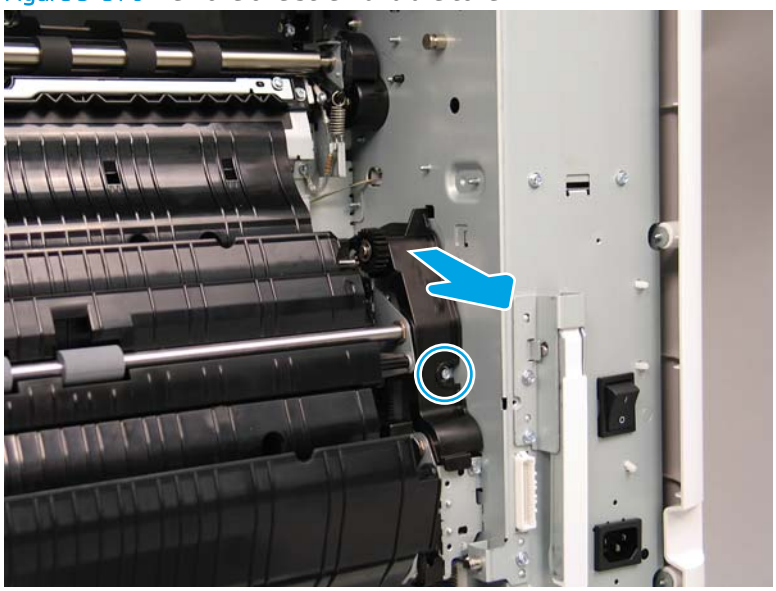


Step 3: Remove pickup unit 2

1. Remove the paper trays.

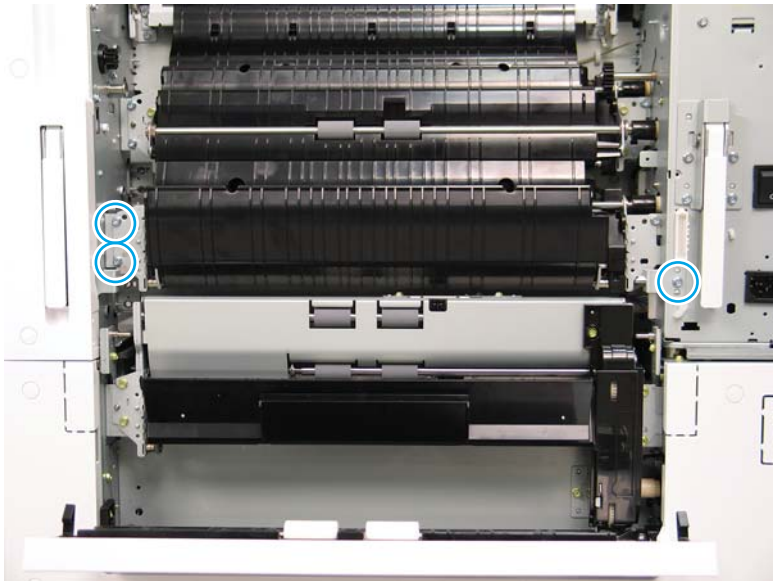
2. Remove one screw, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-576 Remove one screw and the cover



3. Remove three screws.

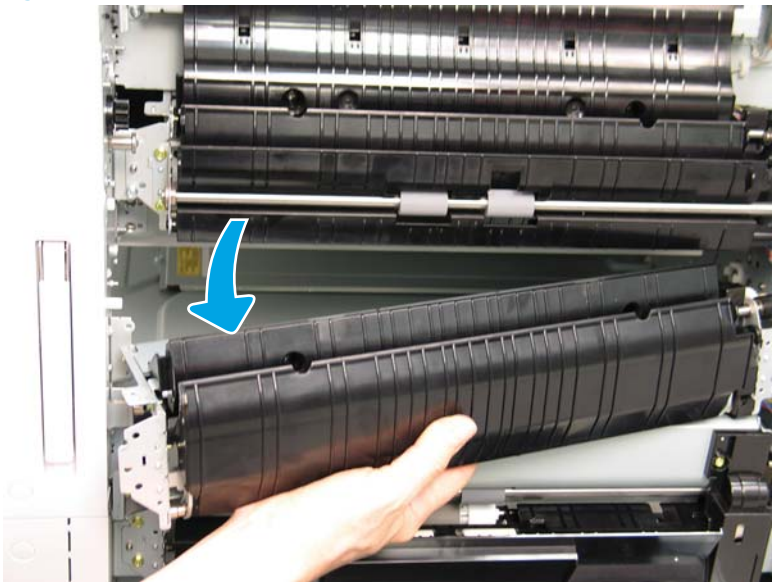
Figure 3-577 Remove three screws



4. Rotate the left side of pickup unit 2 away from the printer.

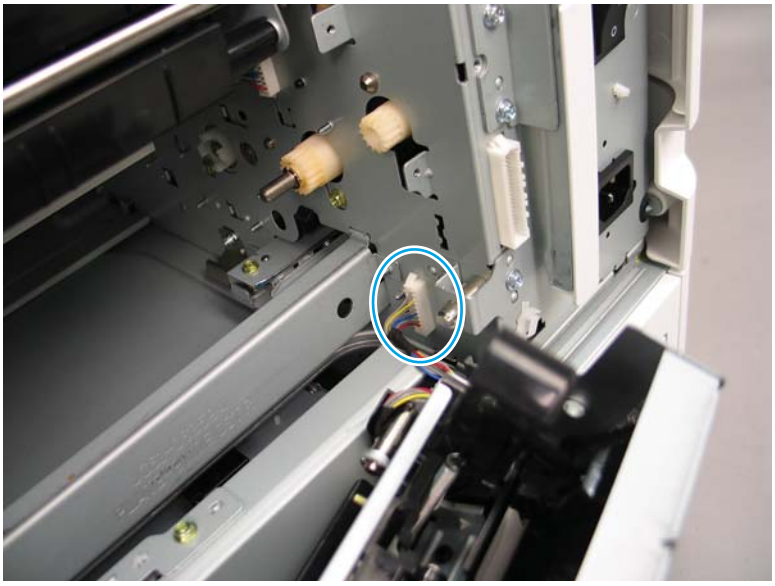
⚠ CAUTION: The pickup unit is still attached to the printer by a connector. Do not remove it completely

Figure 3-578 Rotate pickup unit 2



5. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 3-579 Disconnect one connector

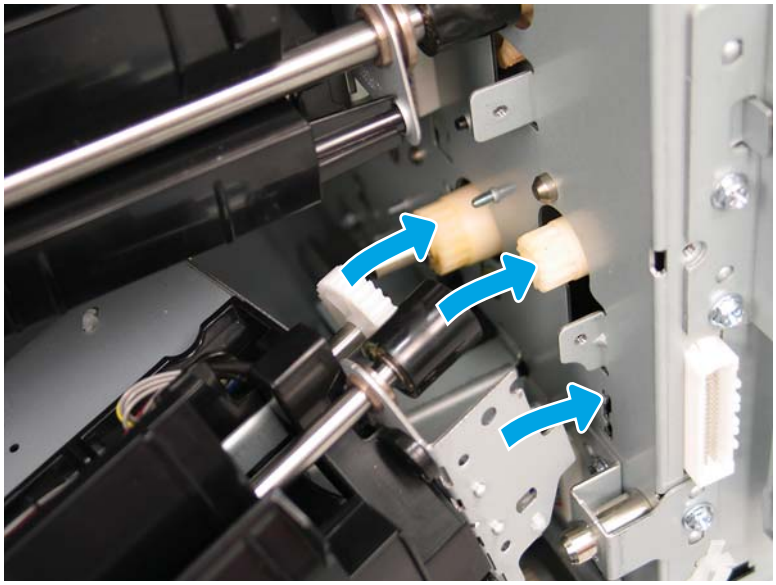


6. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Pickup unit 2

- When reinstalling pickup unit 2, align the gear, coupler, and bracket on the right side.

Figure 3-580 Align gear, coupler, and bracket



NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 4: Remove pickup unit 1

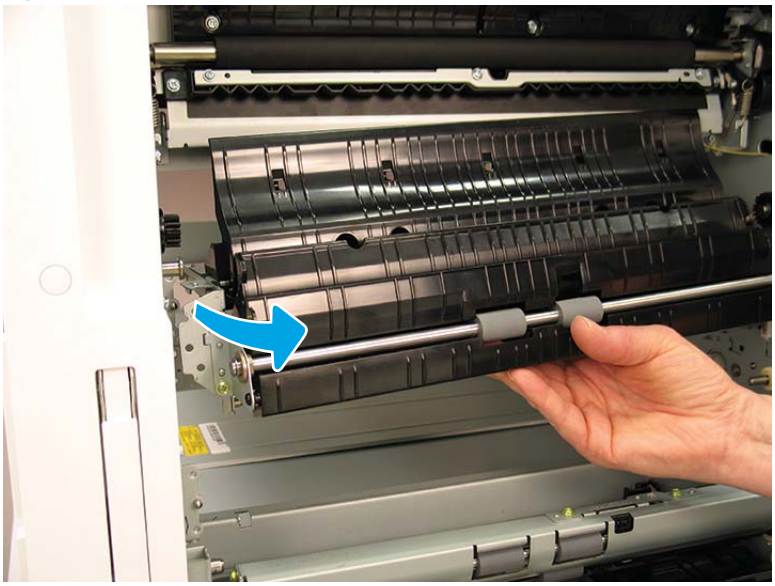
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 3-581 Remove three screws

2. Rotate the left side of pickup unit 1 away from the printer.

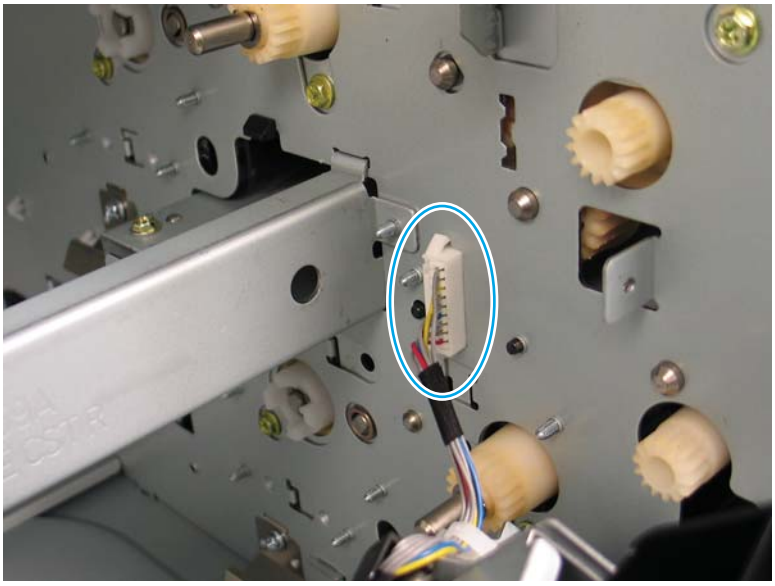
⚠ CAUTION: The pickup unit is still attached to the printer by a connector. Do not remove it completely

Figure 3-582 Rotate pickup unit 1



3. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 3-583 Disconnect one connector

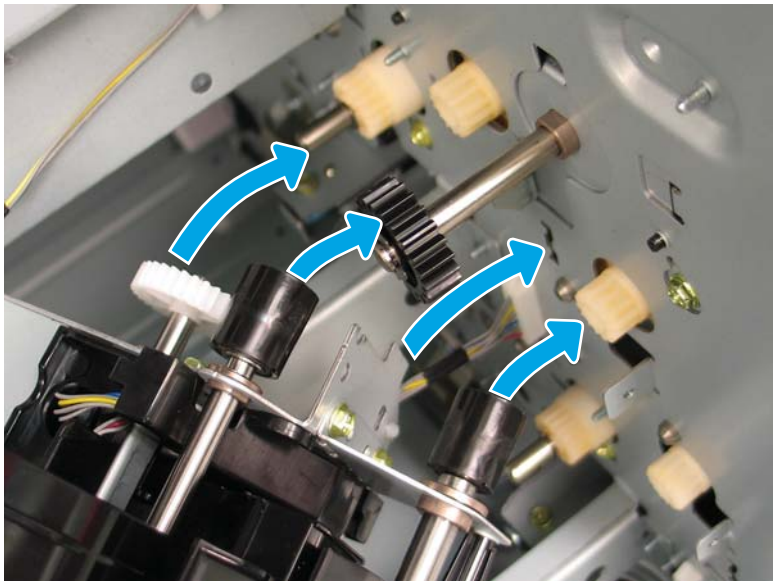


4. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Pickup unit 1

- When reinstalling pickup unit 1, align the gear, couplers, and bracket on the right side.

Figure 3-584 Align gear, coupler, and bracket



NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Pickup lifting and empty sensor (pickup unit 1)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove pickup unit 2
- Step 4: Remove pickup unit 1
- Step 5: Remove the pickup lifting and empty sensor
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the pickup lifting and empty sensor for pickup unit 1.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Pickup lifting and empty sensor part number	
SAM-0604-001490	Photo interrupter

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

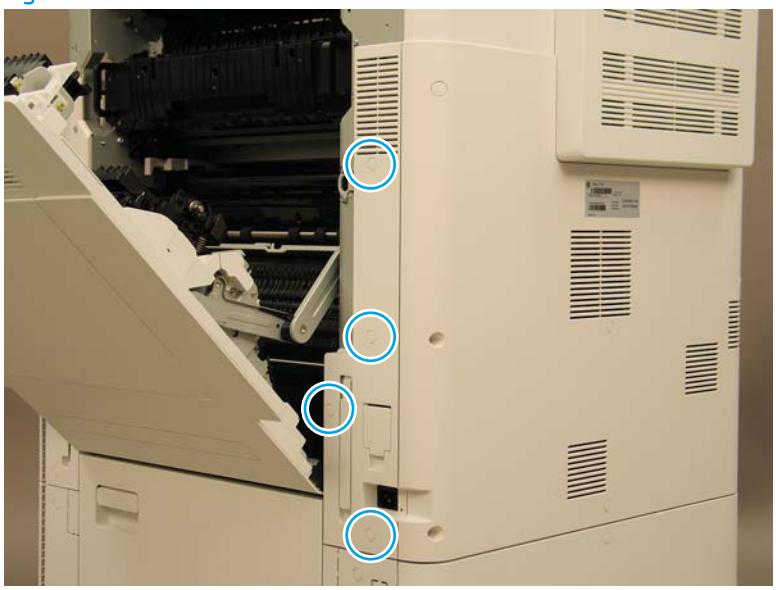
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

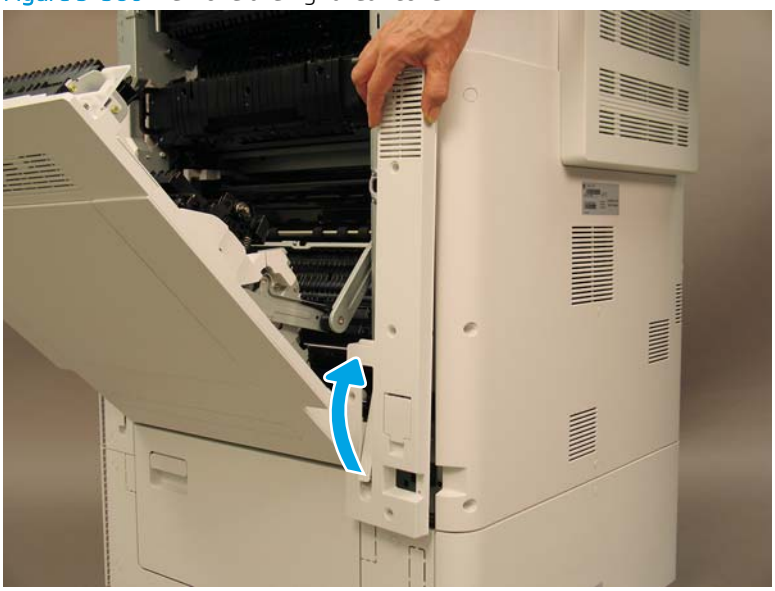
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-585 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

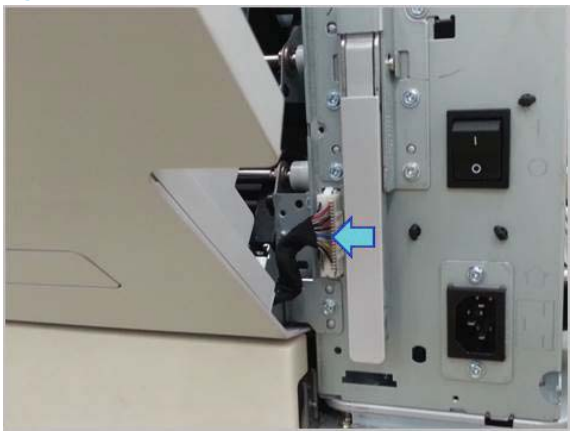
Figure 3-586 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

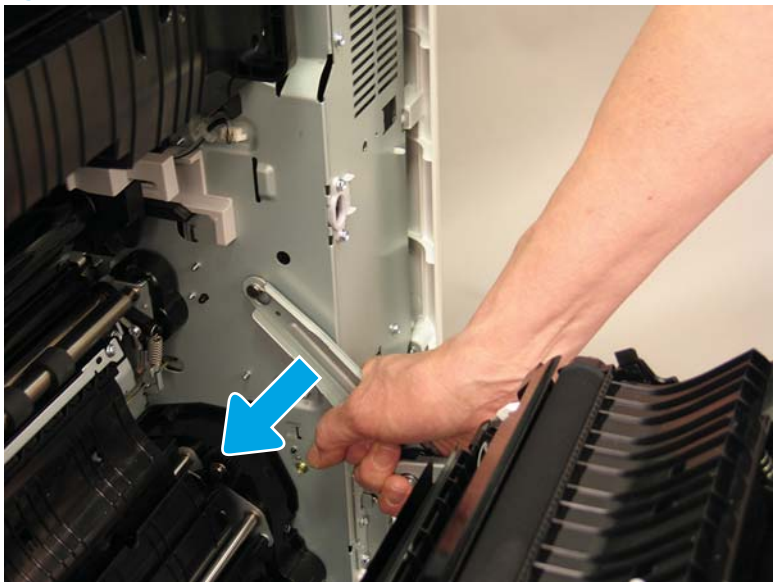
Figure 3-587 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

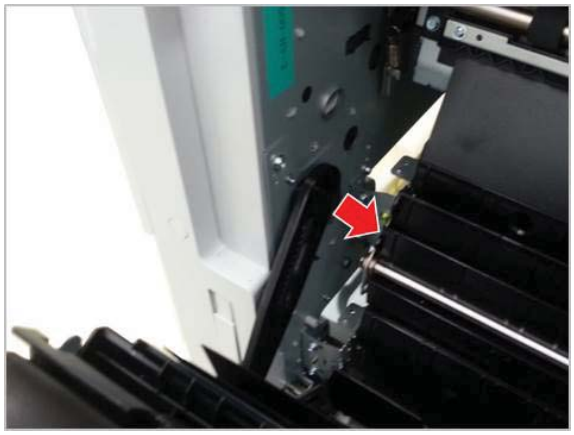
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-588 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

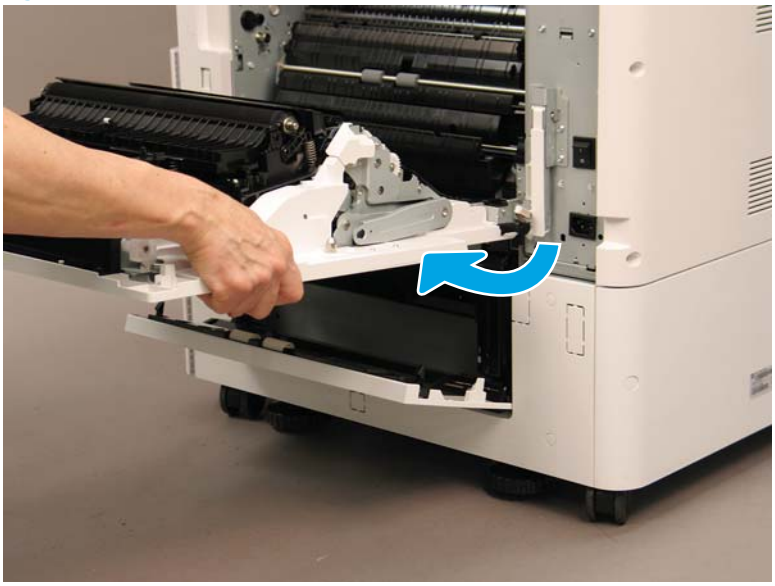
Figure 3-589 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

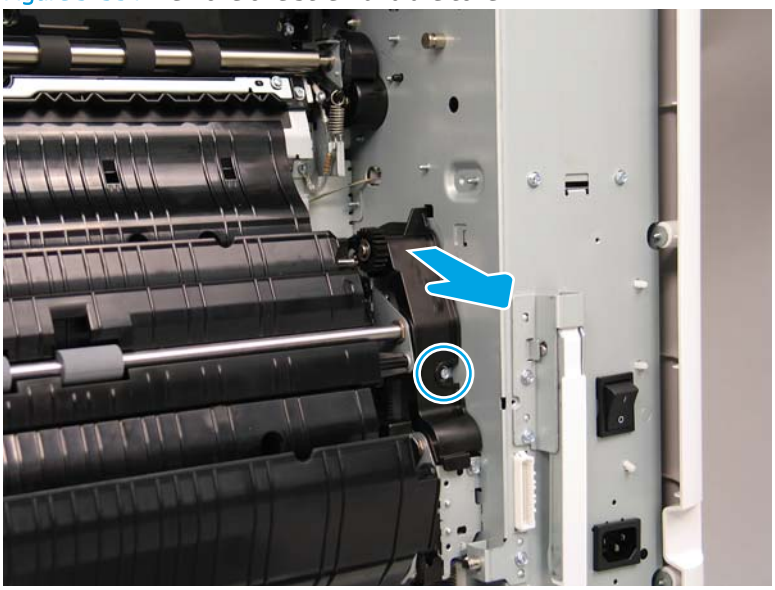
Figure 3-590 Remove the right door



Step 3: Remove pickup unit 2

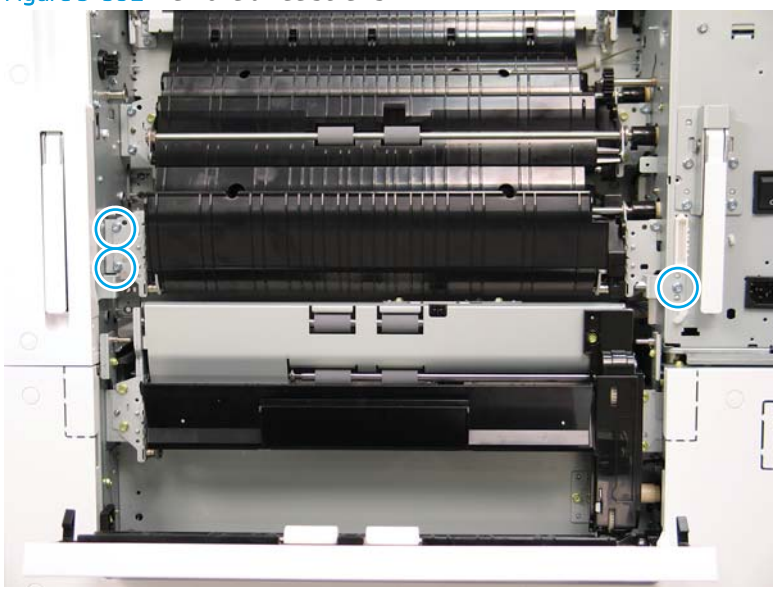
1. Remove the paper trays.
2. Remove one screw, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-591 Remove one screw and the cover



3. Remove three screws.

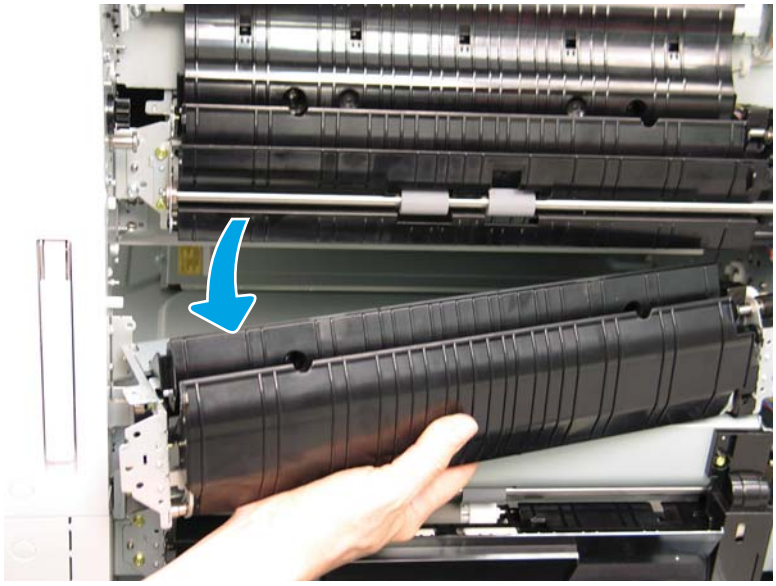
Figure 3-592 Remove three screws



4. Rotate the left side of pickup unit 2 away from the printer.

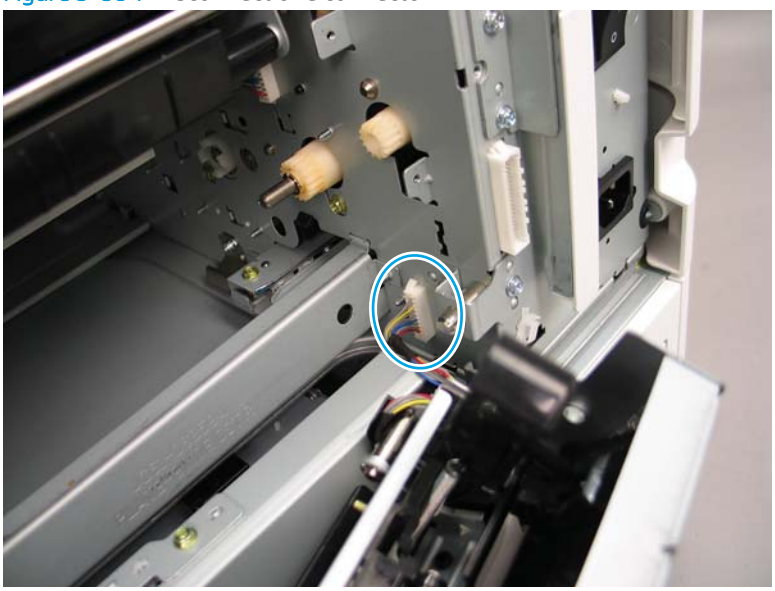
⚠ CAUTION: The pickup unit is still attached to the printer by a connector. Do not remove it completely

Figure 3-593 Rotate pickup unit 2



5. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 3-594 Disconnect one connector

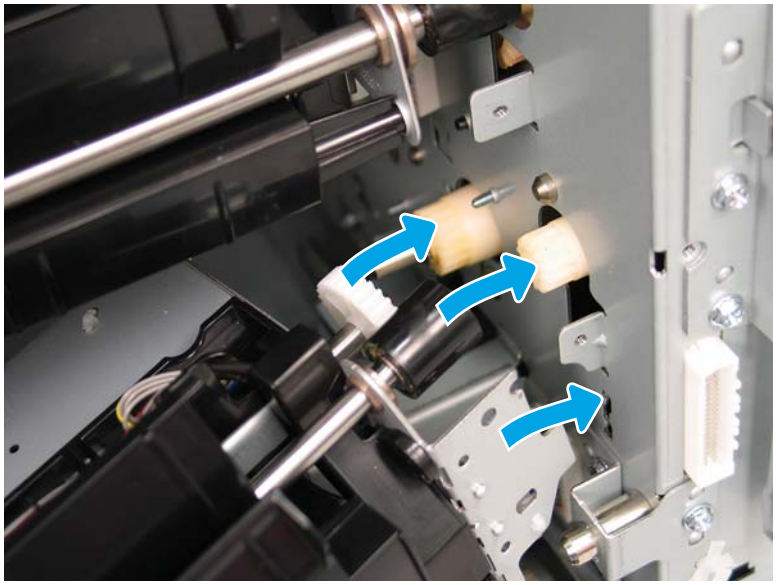


6. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Pickup unit 2

▲ When reinstalling pickup unit 2, align the gear, coupler, and bracket on the right side.

Figure 3-595 Align gear, coupler, and bracket



NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 4: Remove pickup unit 1

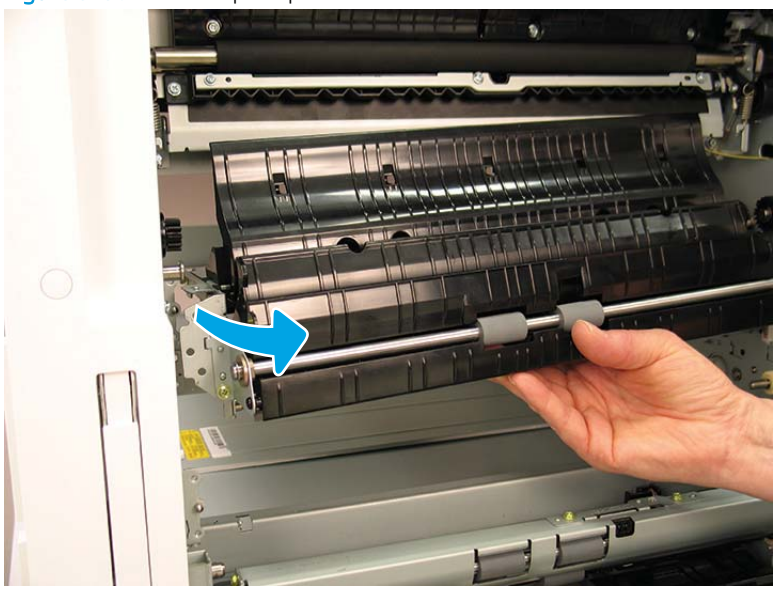
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 3-596 Remove three screws

2. Rotate the left side of pickup unit 1 away from the printer.

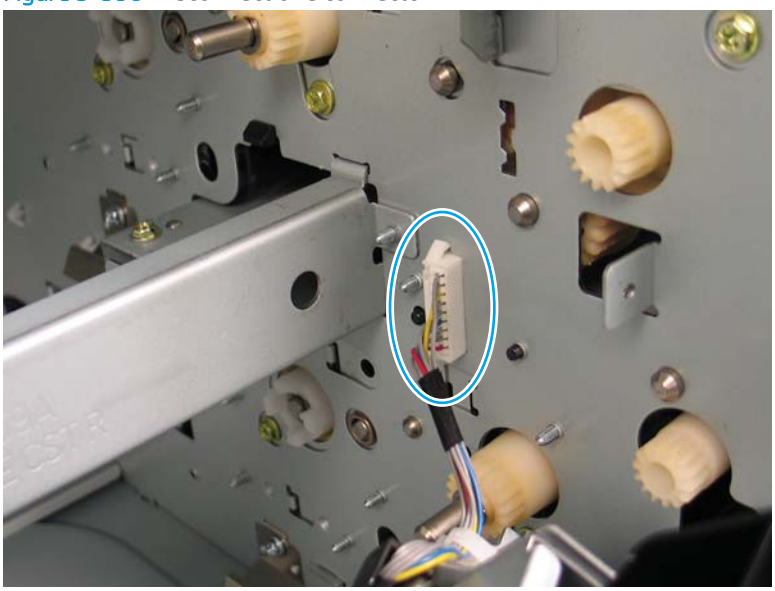
⚠ CAUTION: The pickup unit is still attached to the printer by a connector. Do not remove it completely

Figure 3-597 Rotate pickup unit 1



3. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 3-598 Disconnect one connector

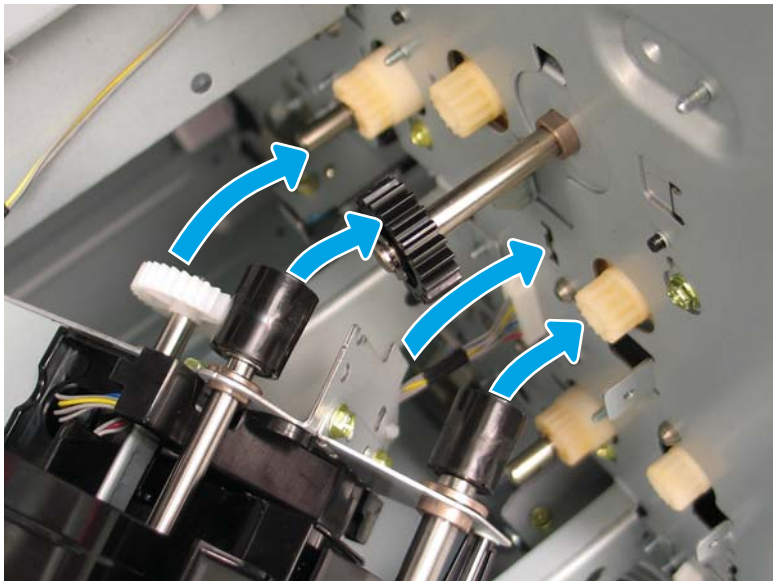


4. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Pickup unit 1

- When reinstalling pickup unit 1, align the gear, couplers, and bracket on the right side.

Figure 3-599 Align gear, coupler, and bracket



NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

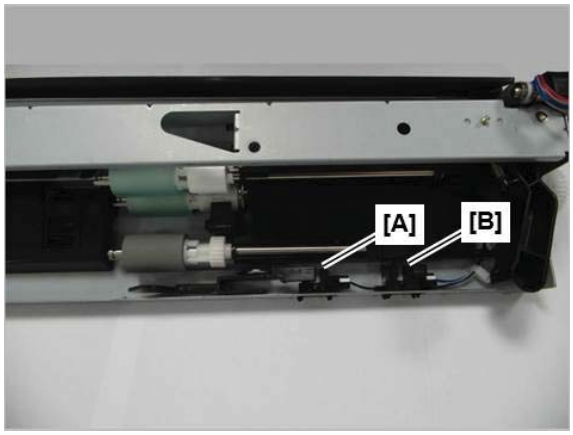
Step 5: Remove the pickup lifting and empty sensor

- Disconnect the corresponding sensor connector, and then remove the sensor.

  a. [A]: Empty sensor.

b. [B]: Pickup lifting sensor.

Figure 3-600 Remove the pickup lifting and empty sensor



Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Prefeed sensor 1 (pickup unit 1)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove pickup unit 2
- Step 4: Remove pickup unit 1
- Step 5: Remove the prefeed sensor 1
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the prefeed sensor 1 for pickup unit 1.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Prefeed sensor 1 part number	
SAM-0604-001490	Photo interrupter

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

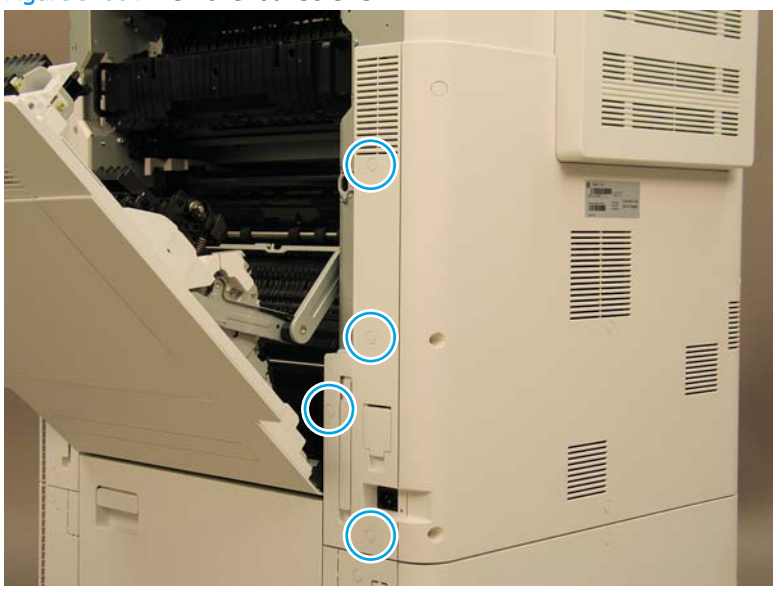
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-601 Remove four screws



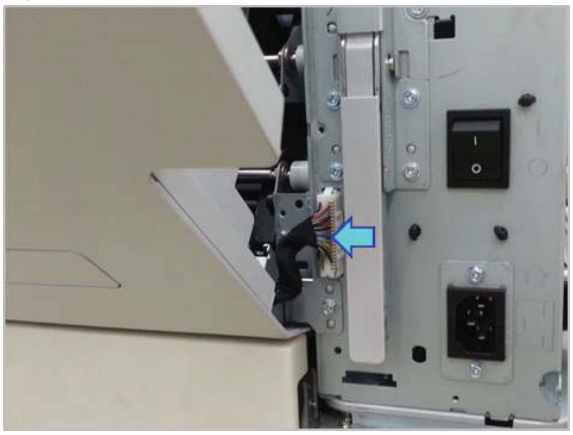
3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

Figure 3-602 Remove the right rear cover

Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

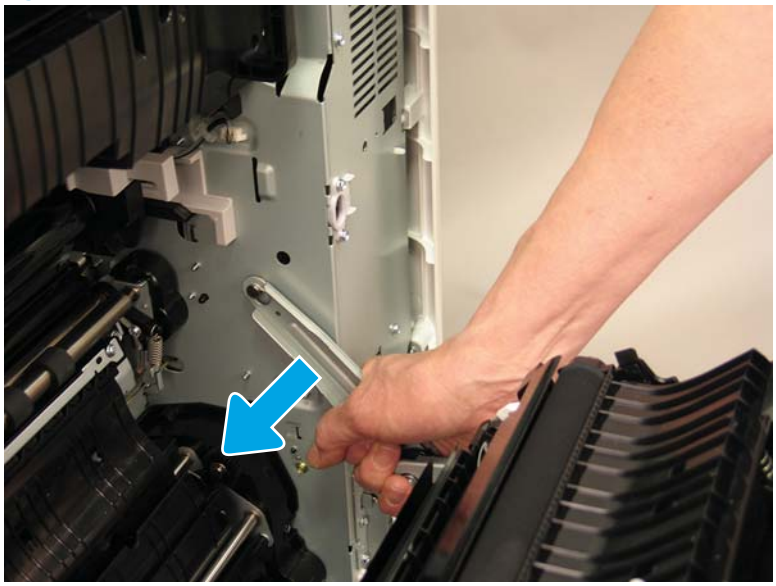
Figure 3-603 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

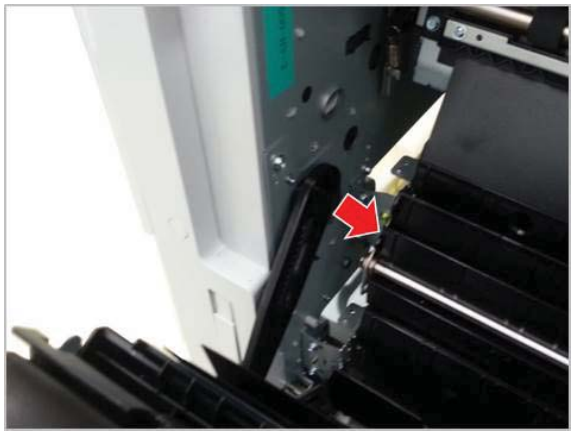
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-604 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

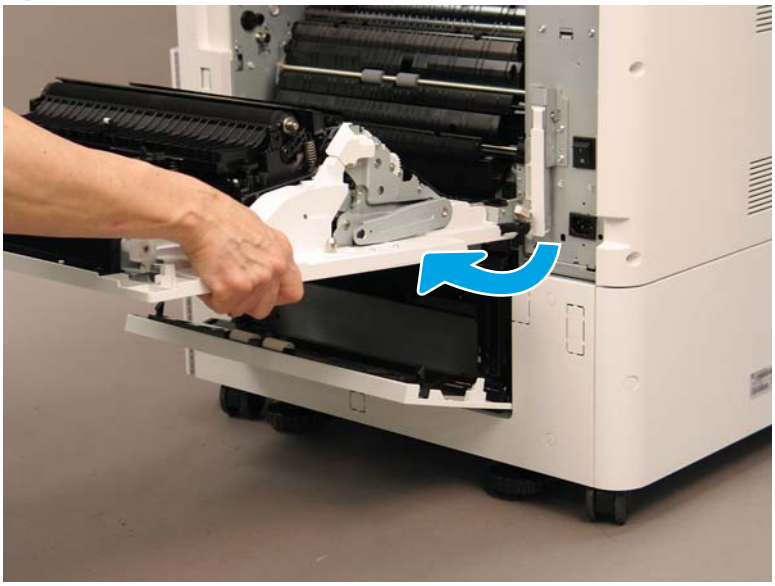
Figure 3-605 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

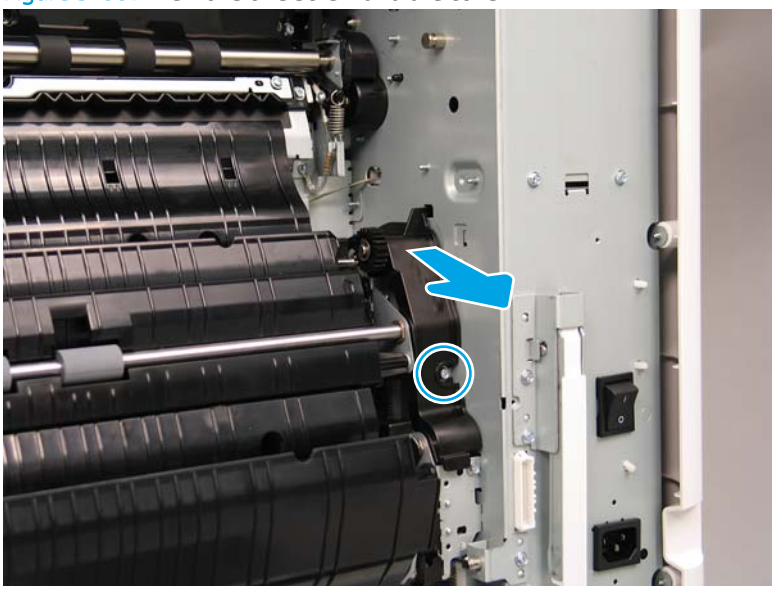
Figure 3-606 Remove the right door



Step 3: Remove pickup unit 2

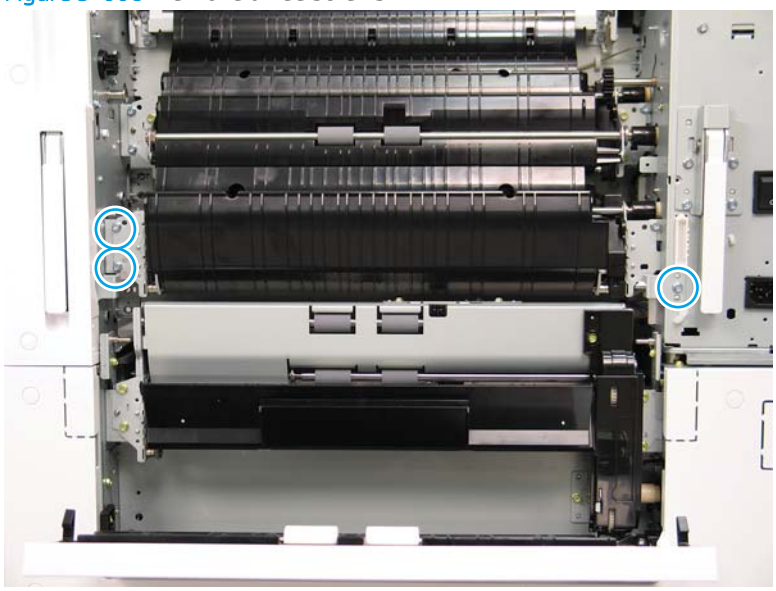
1. Remove the paper trays.
2. Remove one screw, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-607 Remove one screw and the cover



3. Remove three screws.

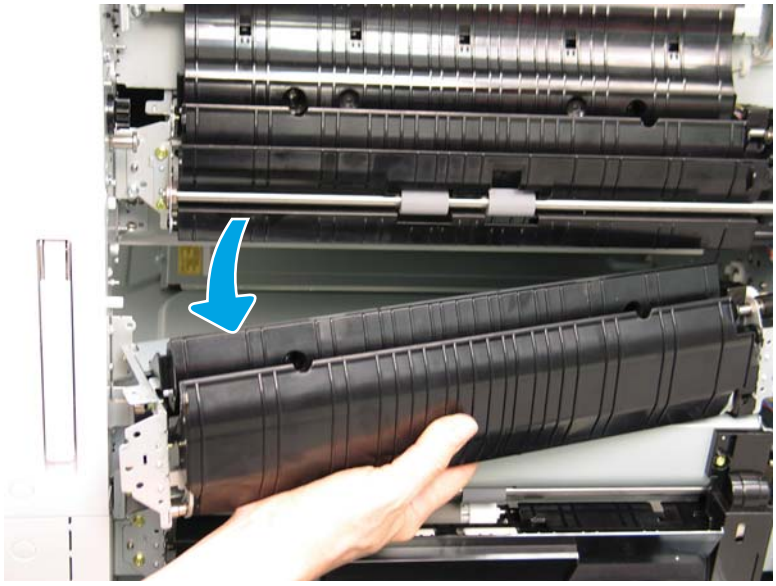
Figure 3-608 Remove three screws



4. Rotate the left side of pickup unit 2 away from the printer.

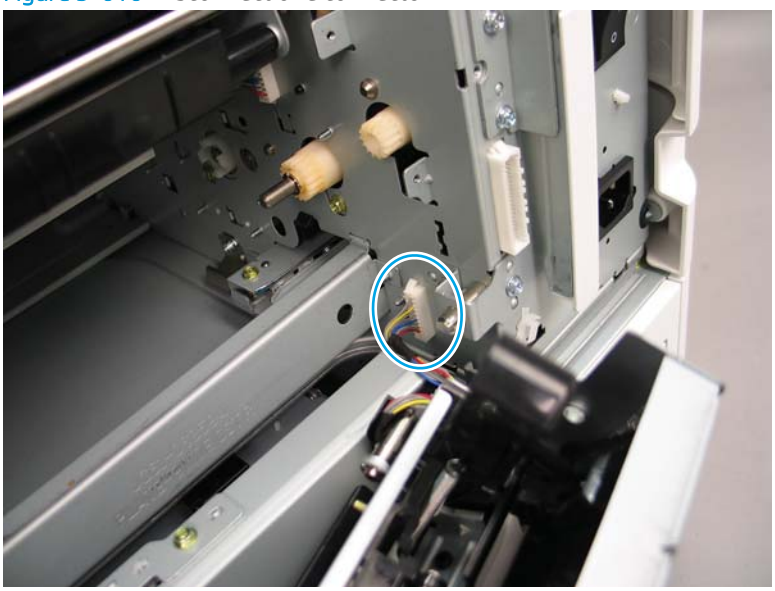
CAUTION: The pickup unit is still attached to the printer by a connector. Do not remove it completely

Figure 3-609 Rotate pickup unit 2



5. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 3-610 Disconnect one connector

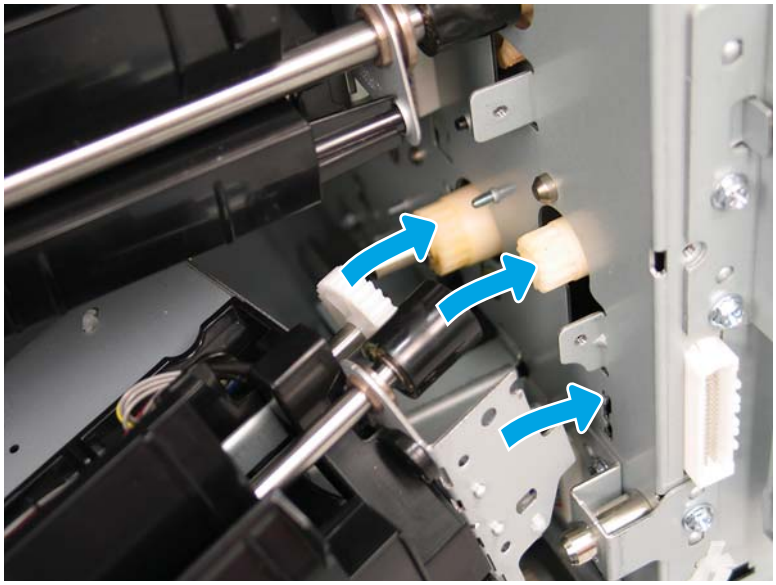


6. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Pickup unit 2

▲ When reinstalling pickup unit 2, align the gear, coupler, and bracket on the right side.

Figure 3-611 Align gear, coupler, and bracket



NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 4: Remove pickup unit 1

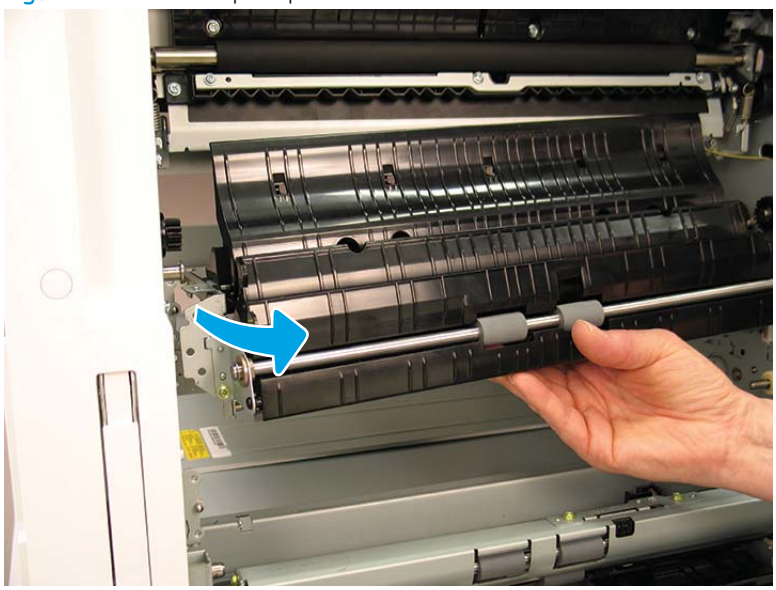
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 3-612 Remove three screws

2. Rotate the left side of pickup unit 1 away from the printer.

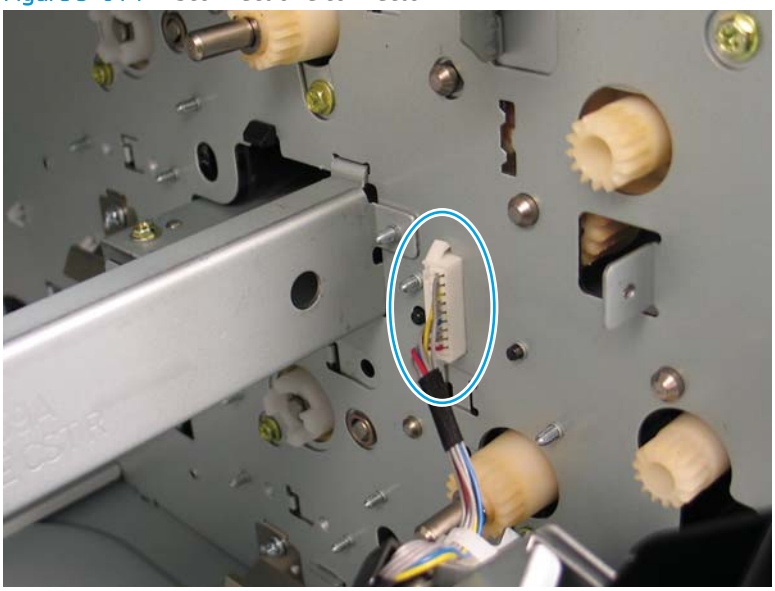
⚠ CAUTION: The pickup unit is still attached to the printer by a connector. Do not remove it completely

Figure 3-613 Rotate pickup unit 1



3. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 3-614 Disconnect one connector

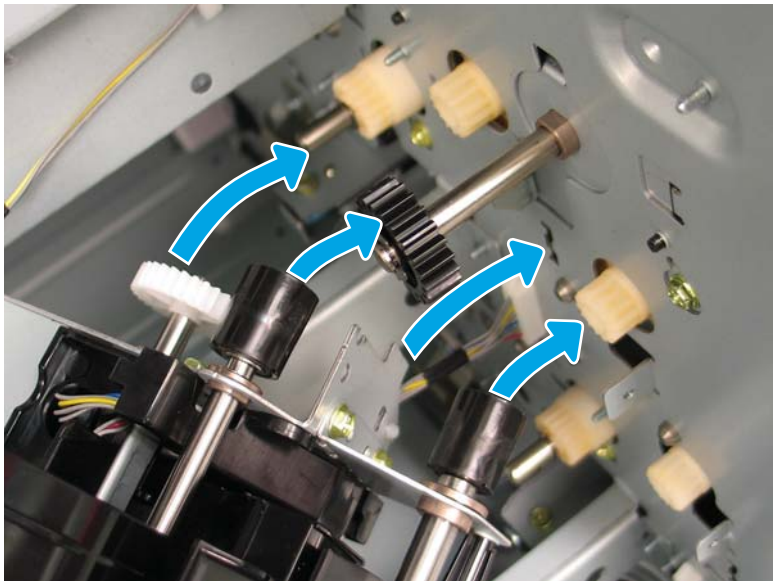


4. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Pickup unit 1

▲ When reinstalling pickup unit 1, align the gear, couplers, and bracket on the right side.

Figure 3-615 Align gear, coupler, and bracket

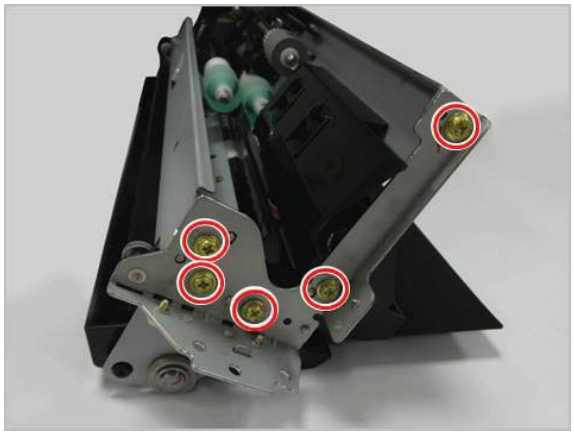


NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 5: Remove the prefeed sensor 1

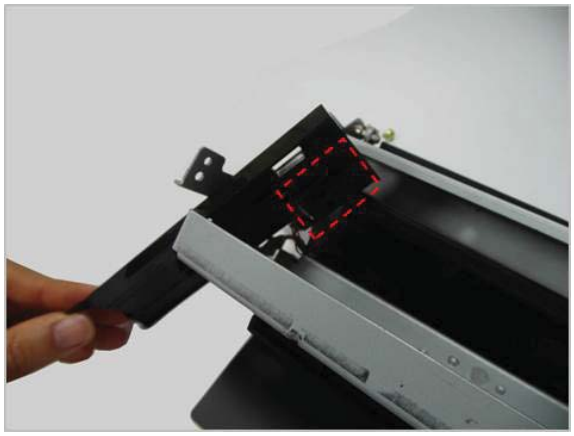
1. Remove five screws, and then remove the bracket.

Figure 3-616 Remove five screws and the bracket.



2. Remove the sensor from its holder.

Figure 3-617 Remove the sensor



Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Internal hard disk drive (HDD)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the front top inner cover
- Step 2: Remove the output bin
- Step 3: Remove the HDD
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures for removing the 320 GB hard-disk drive installed beneath the rear-exit cover.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Internal hard disk drive part number	
691917-011	HDD 320GB

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

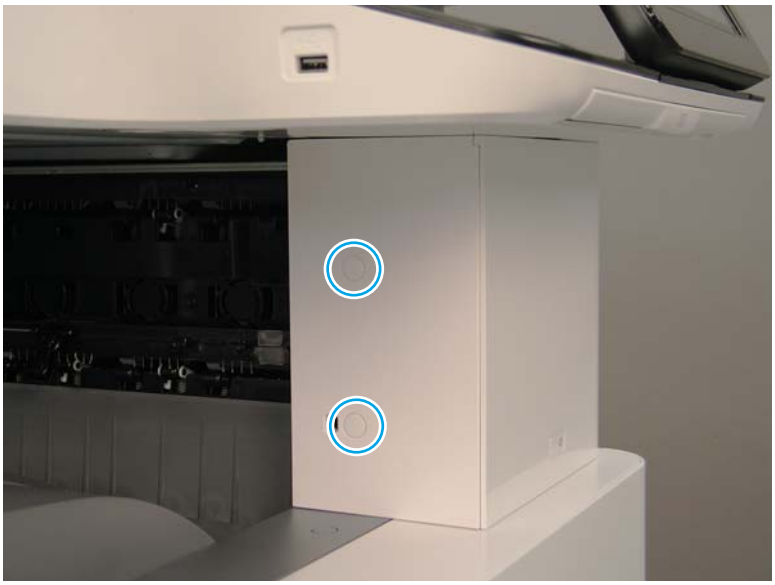
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the front top inner cover

- Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-618 Remove the front top inner cover



Step 2: Remove the output bin

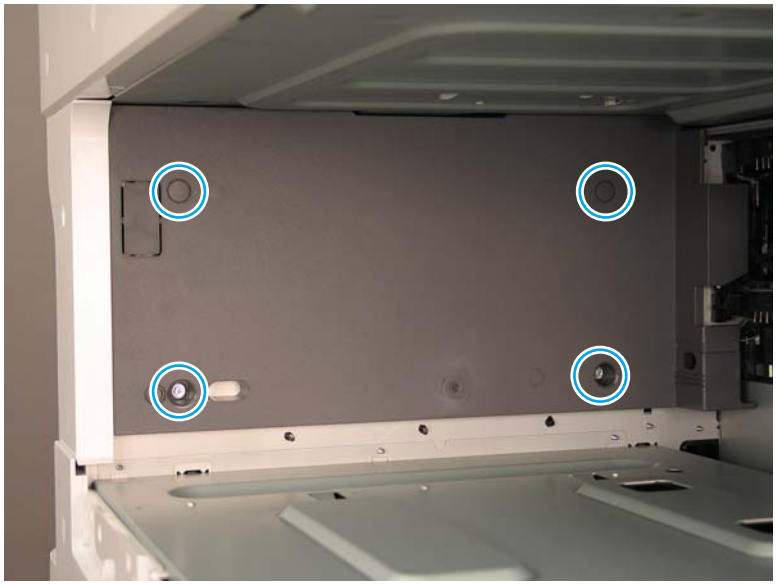
- Remove two screw-caps and two screws, and then lift the output bin away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-619 Remove the output bin

Step 3: Remove the HDD

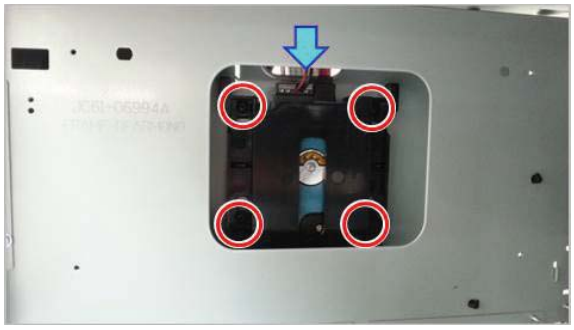
1. Remove four screws, and then release the HDD cover.

   Figure 3-620 Remove the HDD cover

2. Remove four screws, disconnect the HDD cable, and then remove the HDD with its holder.

   Figure 3-621 Remove the HDD

Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Registration assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove the paper dust brush
- Step 4: Remove the registration assembly
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the registration assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Registration assembly part number	
SAM-JC93-01116A	Registration Assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

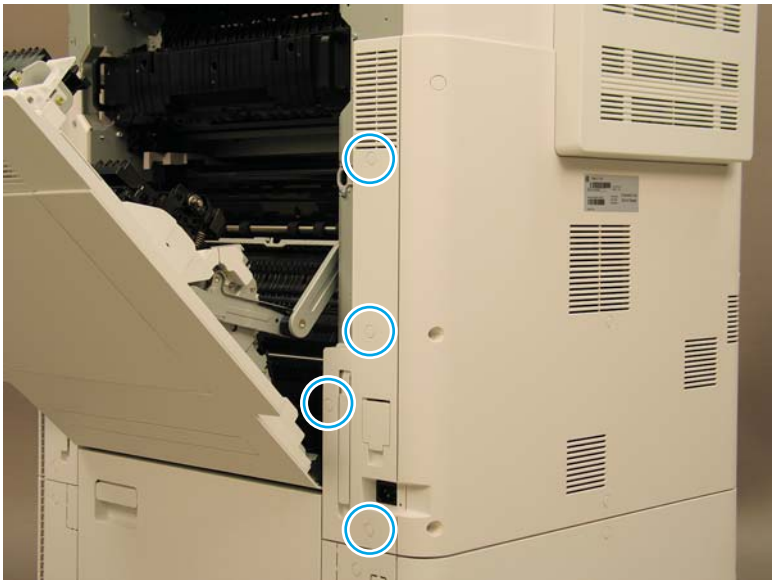
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

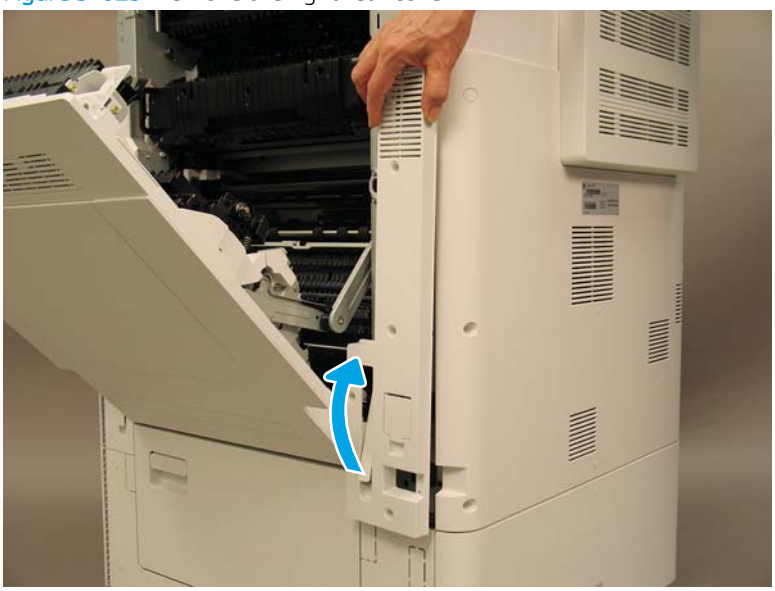
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-622 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

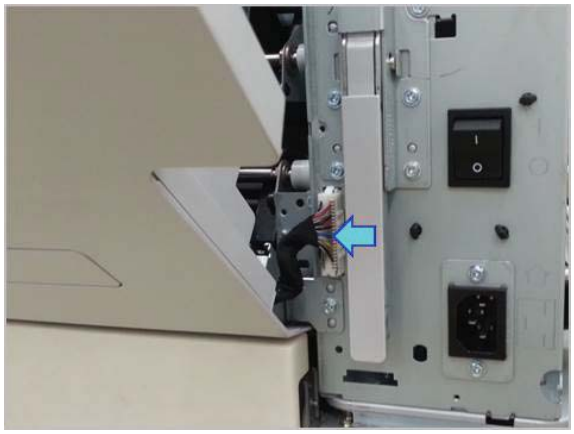
Figure 3-623 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

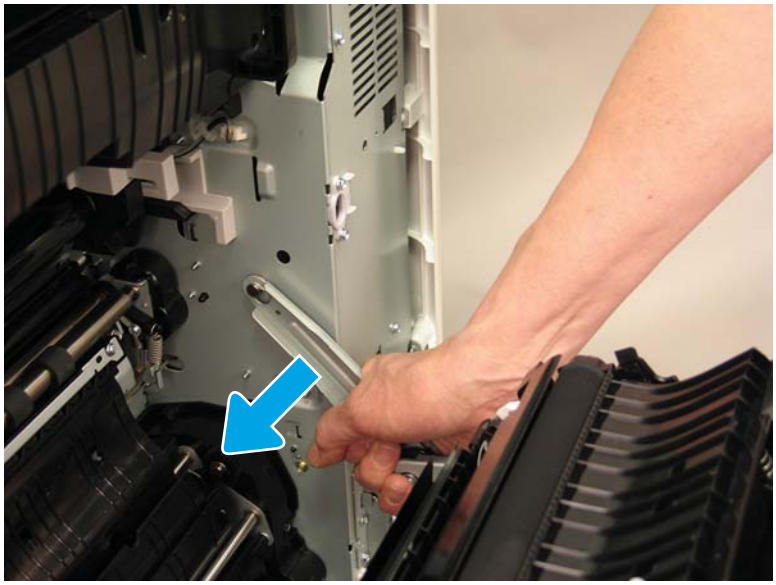
Figure 3-624 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

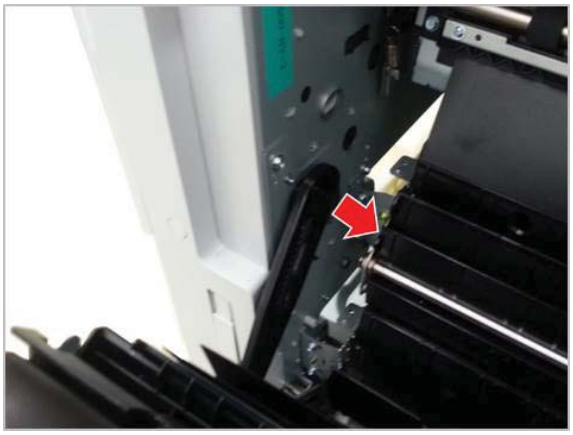
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-625 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

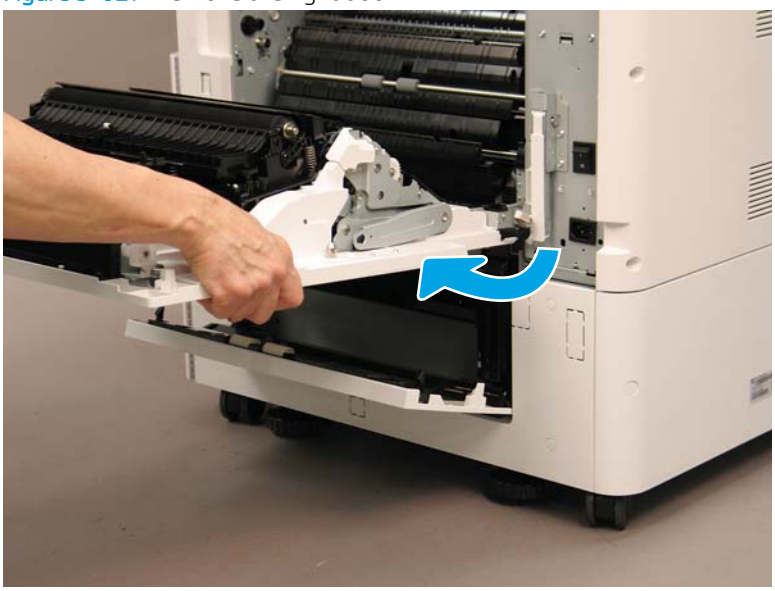
Figure 3-626 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 3-627 Remove the right door



Step 3: Remove the paper dust brush

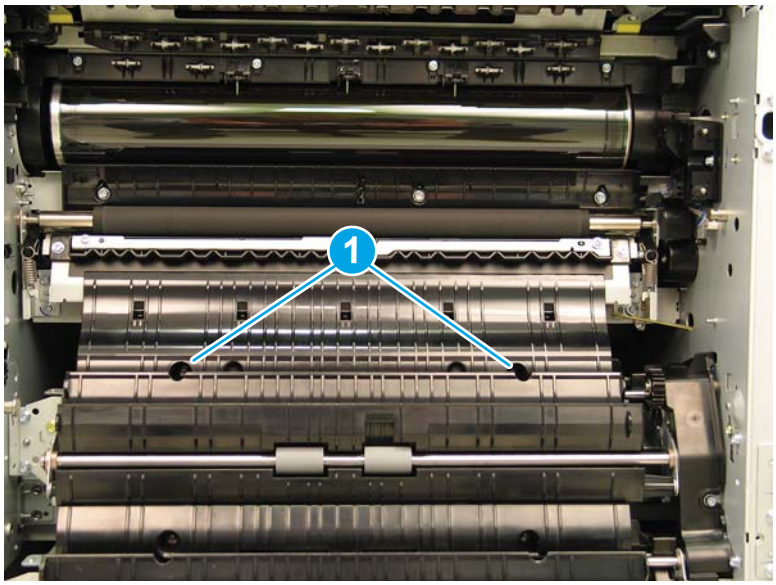
▲ Remove the paper dust brush.

Figure 3-628 Remove the paper dust brush

Step 4: Remove the registration assembly

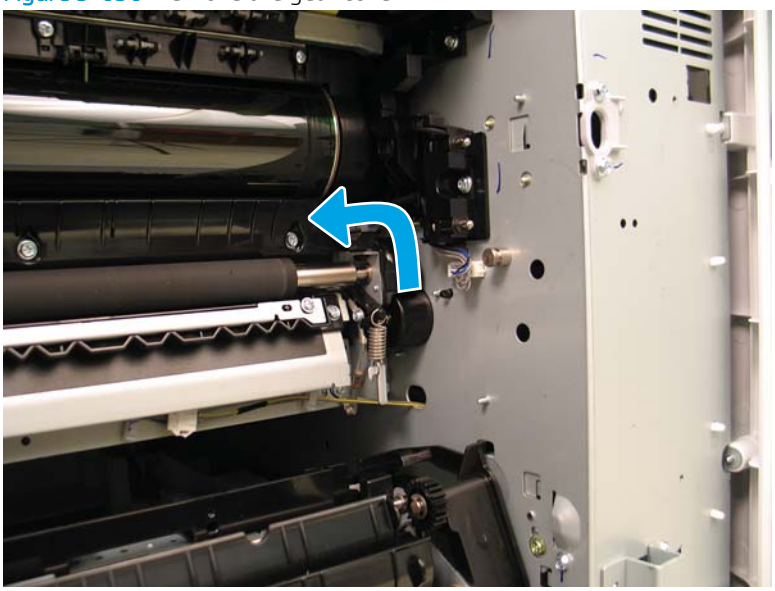
1. Remove two screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-629 Remove two screws



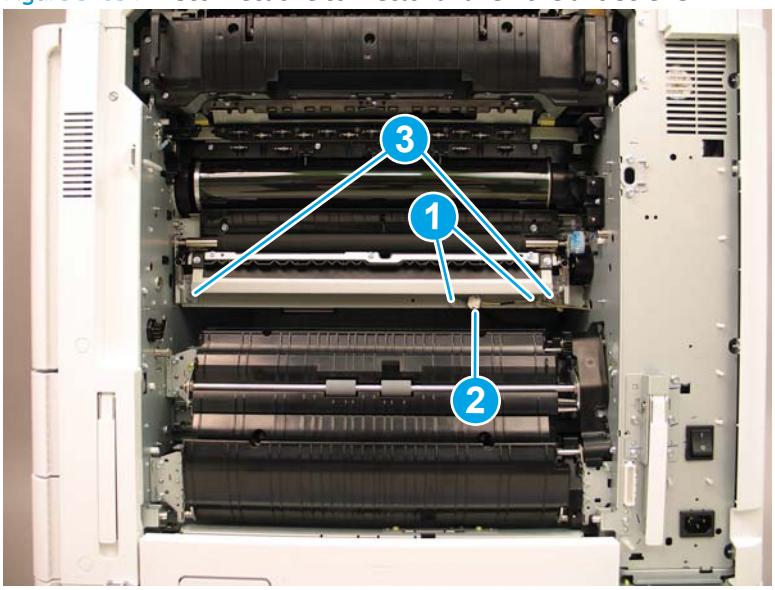
2. Remove the gear cover.

Figure 3-630 Remove the gear cover



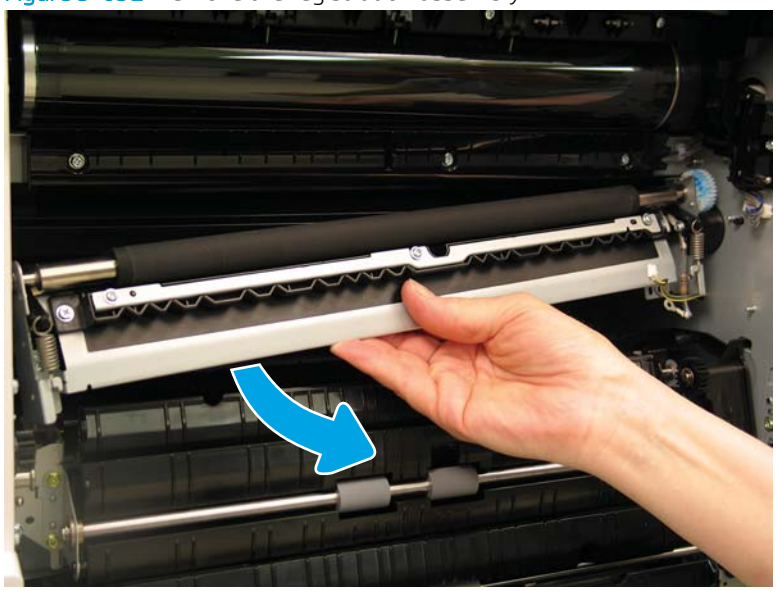
3. Release two retainers (callout 1), disconnect one in-line connector (callout 2), and then remove two screws (callout 3).

Figure 3-631 Disconnect one connector and remove two screws



4. Rotate the left side of the registration assembly away from the printer, and then remove it.

Figure 3-632 Remove the registration assembly

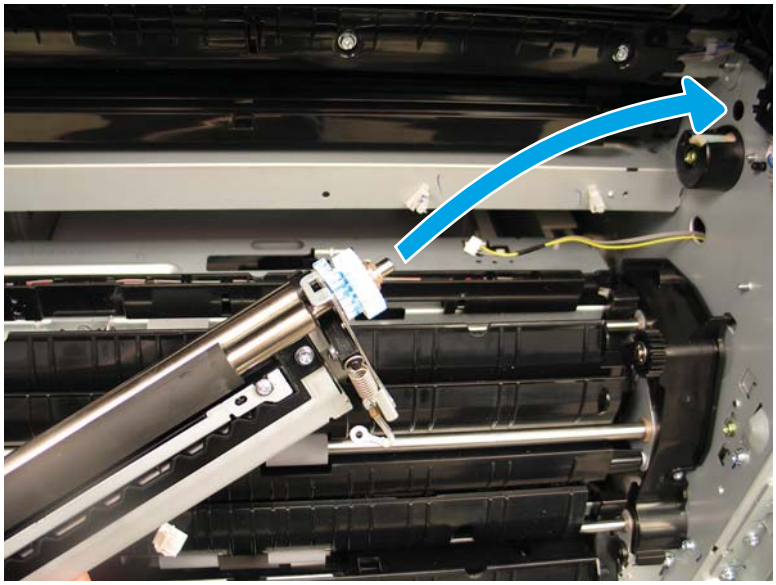


5. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Registration assembly

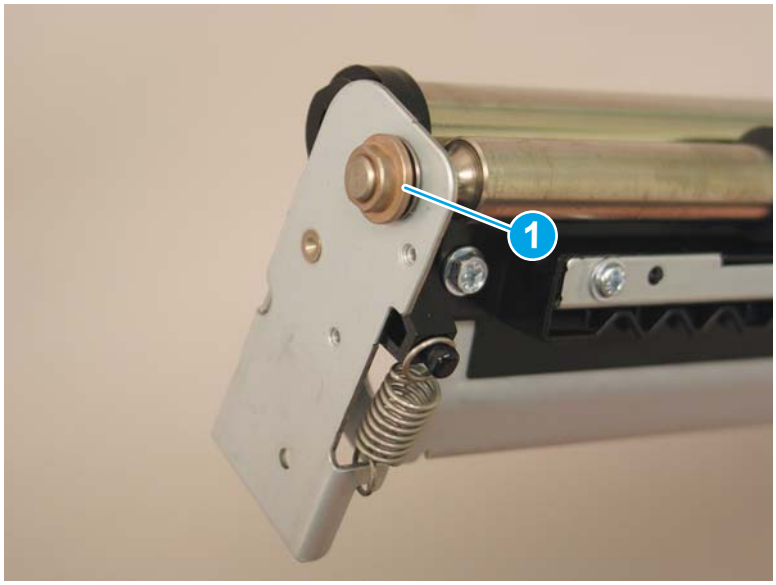
a. Install the back, gear side of the shaft into the opening in the sheet metal first.

Figure 3-633 Install the gear side of the shaft



b. Remove the bushing (callout 1) from the end of the front of the shaft.

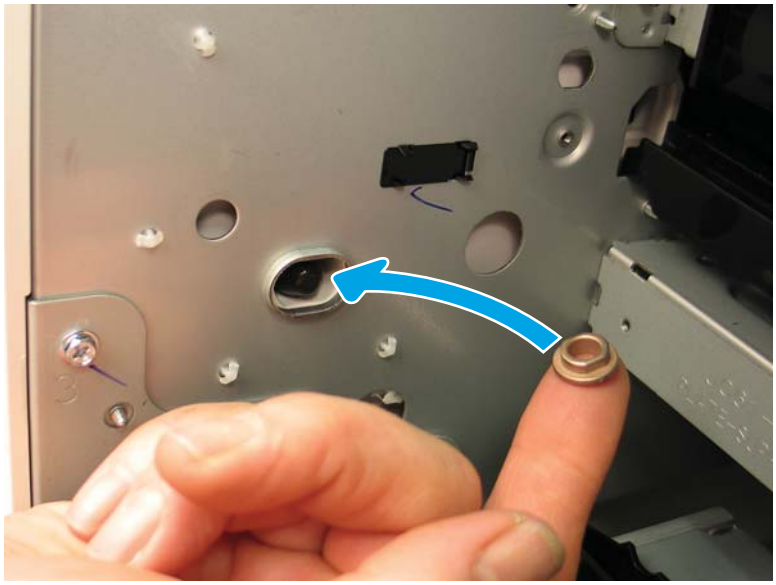
Figure 3-634 Remove the bushing



c. Install the bushing in the opening in the sheet metal.

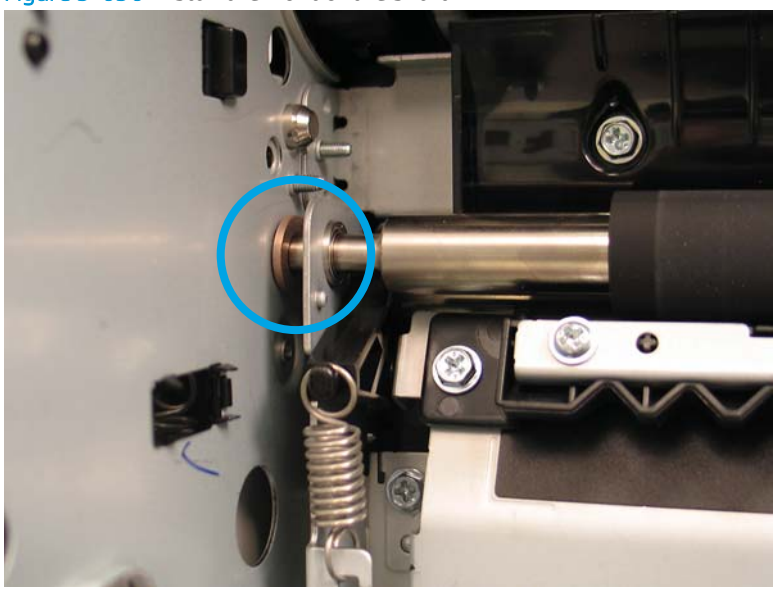
NOTE: The bushing is flat along the top and bottom edges. Install the bushing so the flat edges match the keyed opening in the sheet metal.

Figure 3-635 Install the bushing



d. Install the front of the shaft into the bushing.

Figure 3-636 Install the front of the shaft



NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Registration sensor assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove the paper dust brush
- Step 4: Remove the registration assembly
- Step 5: Remove the registration sensor assembly
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the registration sensor.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Registration sensor part number
Registration sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

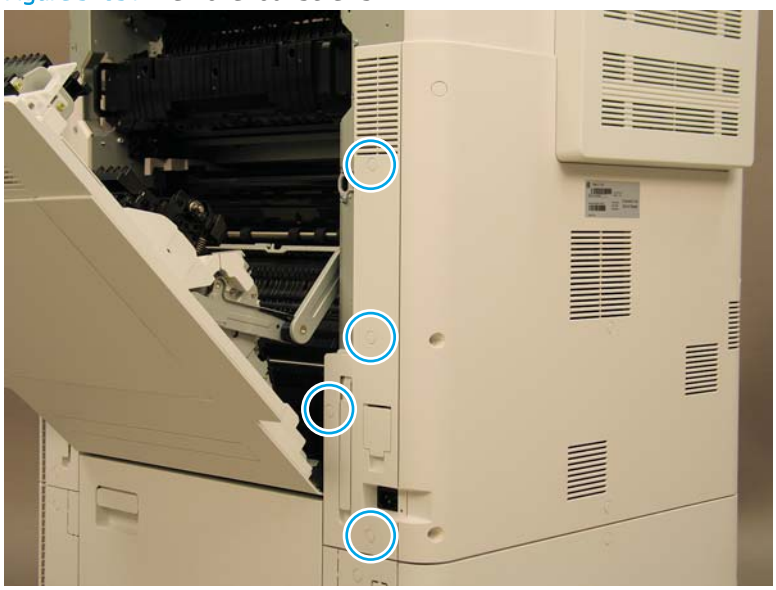
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-637 Remove four screws



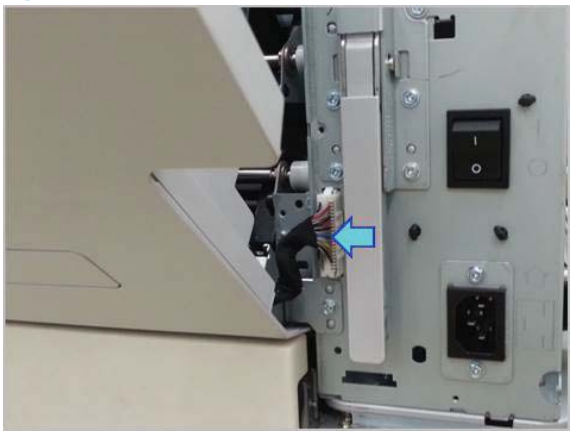
3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

Figure 3-638 Remove the right rear cover

Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

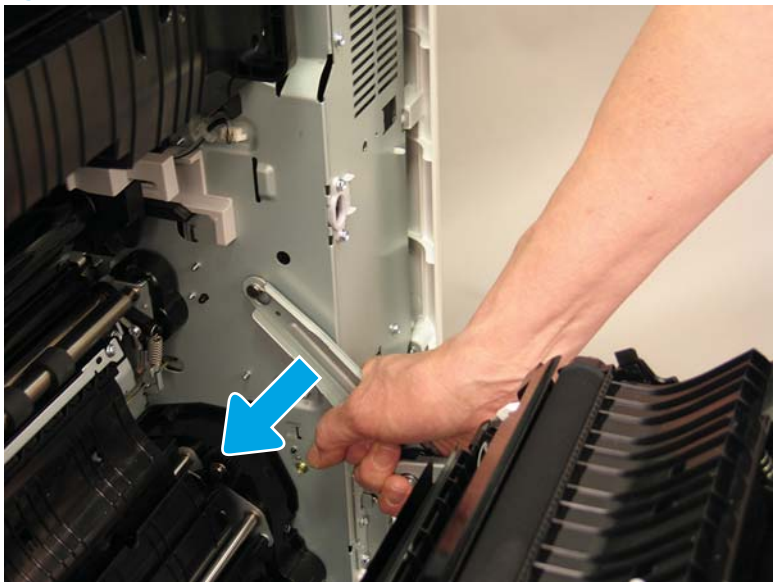
Figure 3-639 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

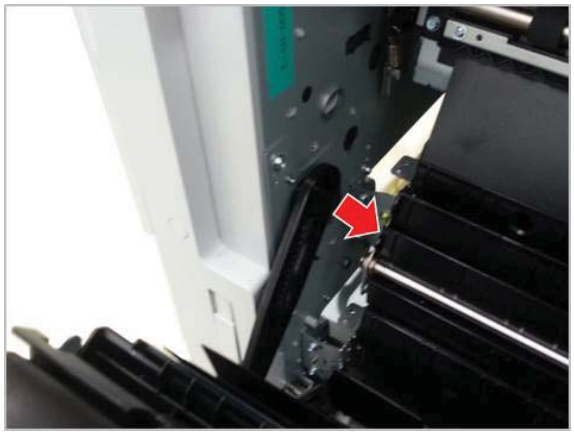
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-640 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

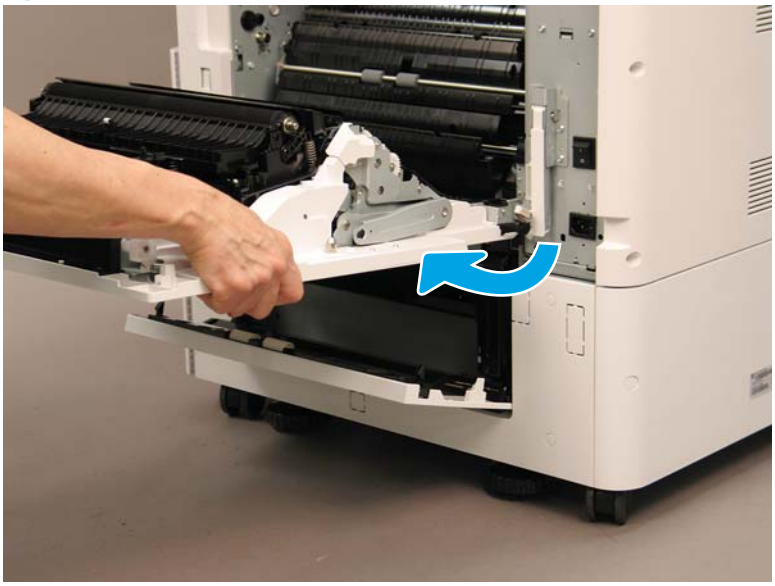
Figure 3-641 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 3-642 Remove the right door



Step 3: Remove the paper dust brush

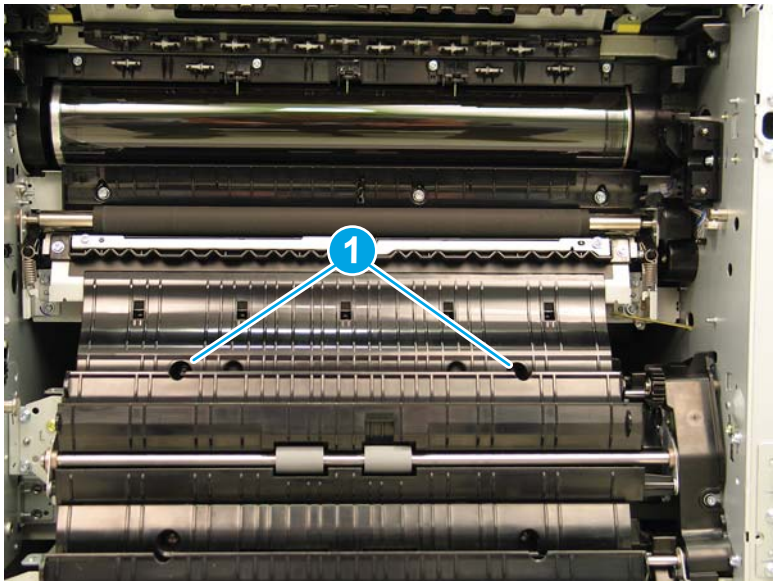
▲ Remove the paper dust brush.

Figure 3-643 Remove the paper dust brush

Step 4: Remove the registration assembly

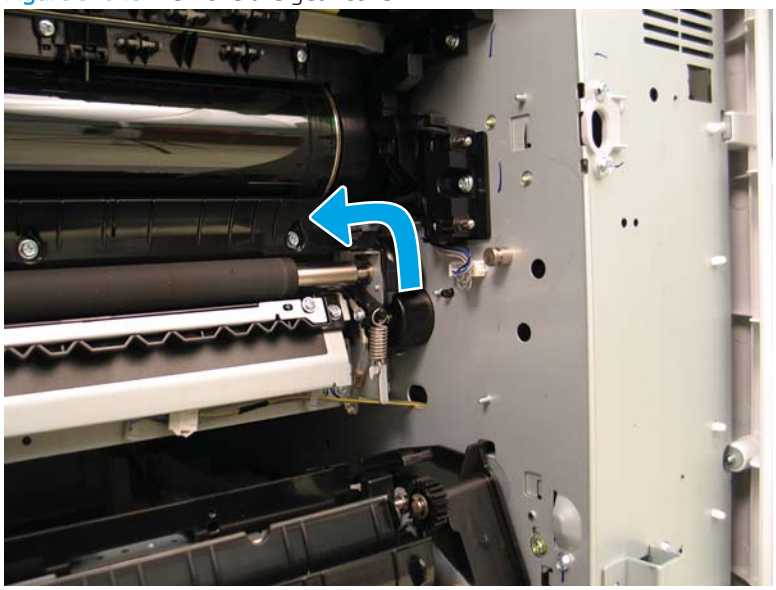
1. Remove two screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-644 Remove two screws



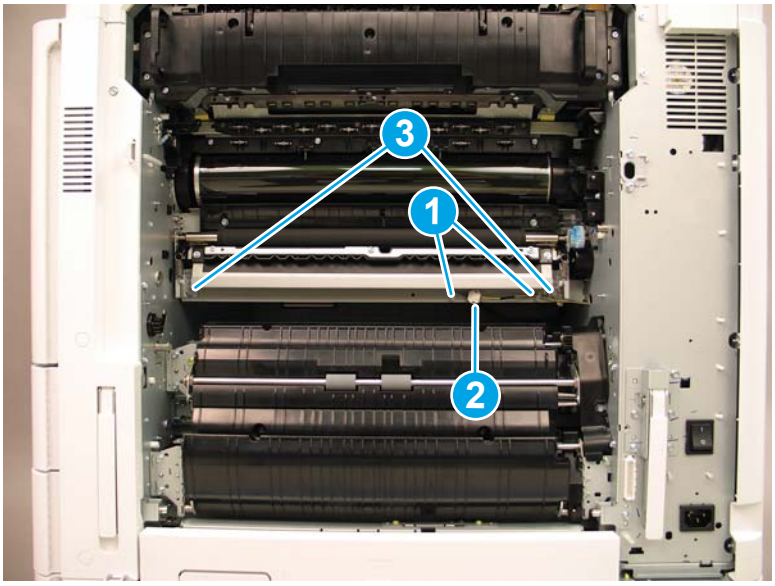
2. Remove the gear cover.

Figure 3-645 Remove the gear cover



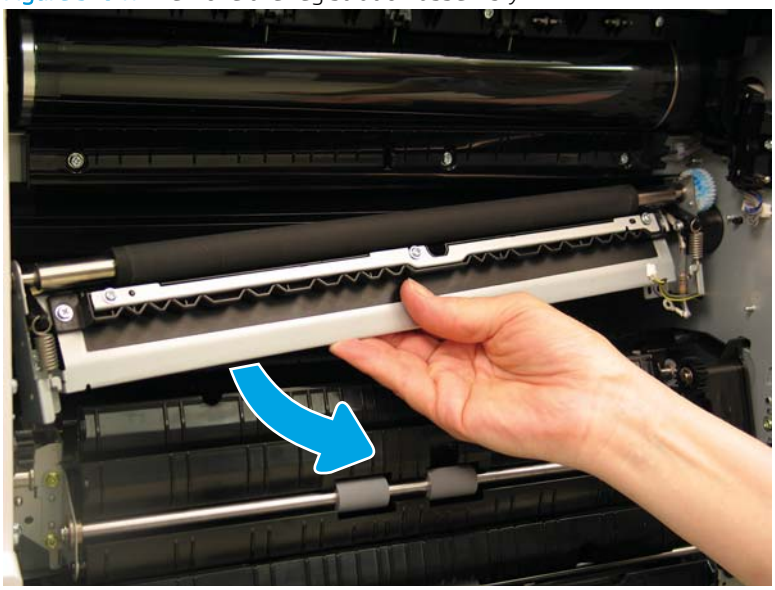
3. Release two retainers (callout 1), disconnect one in-line connector (callout 2), and then remove two screws (callout 3).

Figure 3-646 Disconnect one connector and remove two screws



4. Rotate the left side of the registration assembly away from the printer, and then remove it.

Figure 3-647 Remove the registration assembly

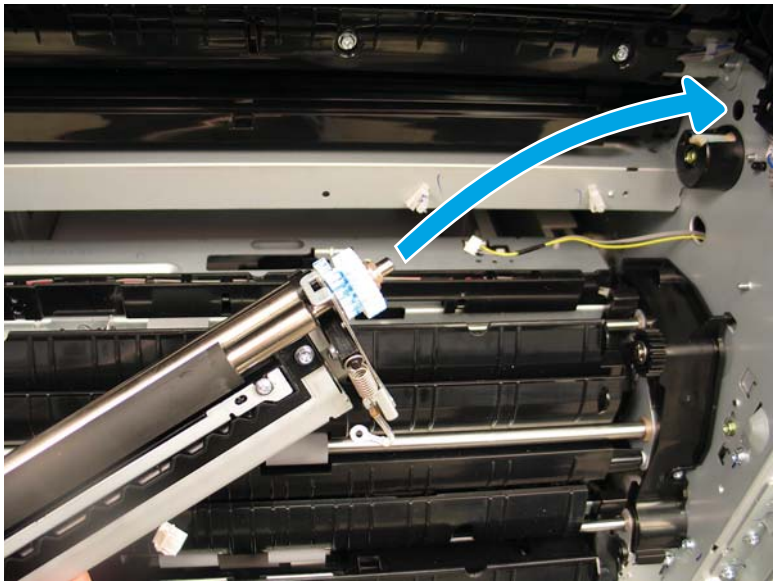


5. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Registration assembly

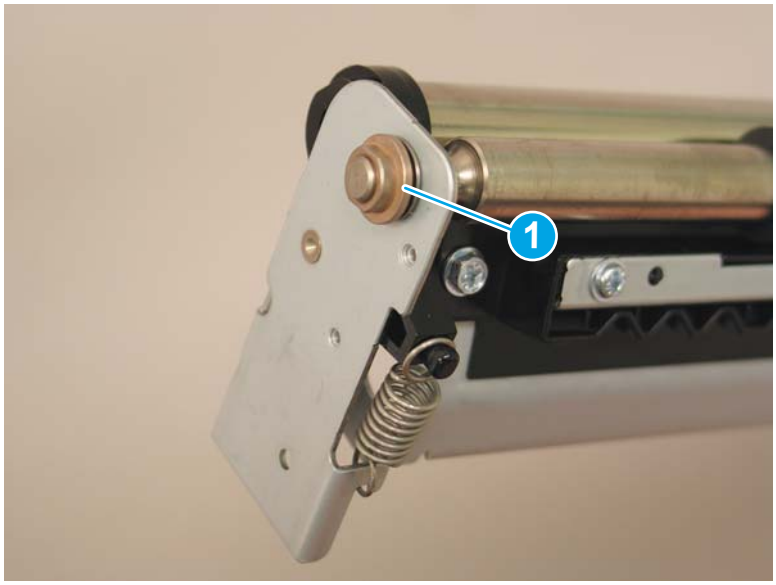
a. Install the back, gear side of the shaft into the opening in the sheet metal first.

Figure 3-648 Install the gear side of the shaft



b. Remove the bushing (callout 1) from the end of the front of the shaft.

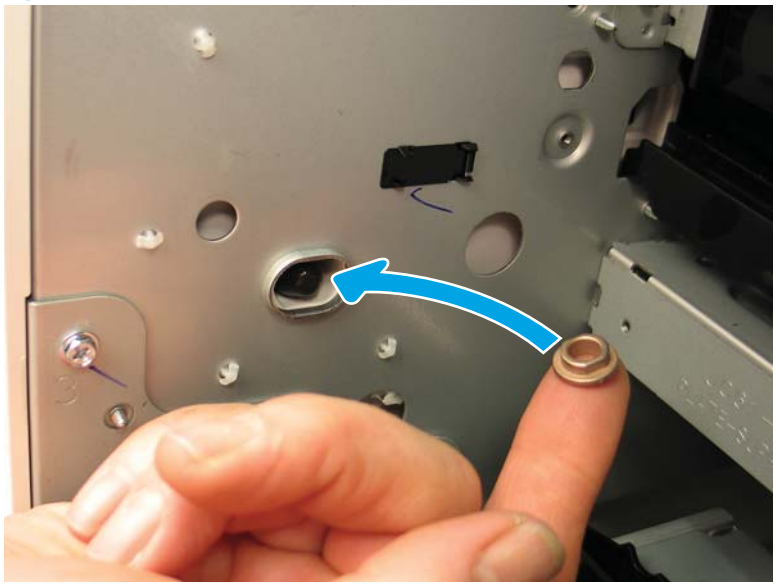
Figure 3-649 Remove the bushing



c. Install the bushing in the opening in the sheet metal.

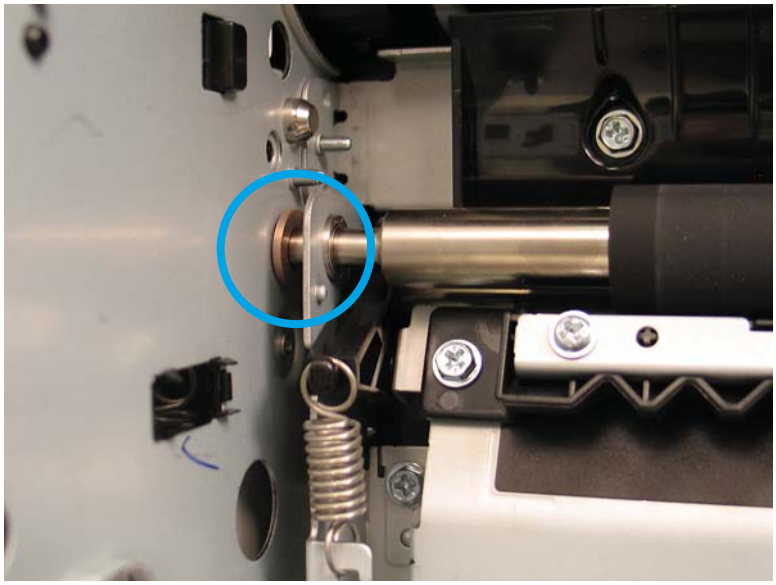
NOTE: The bushing is flat along the top and bottom edges. Install the bushing so the flat edges match the keyed opening in the sheet metal.

Figure 3-650 Install the bushing



d. Install the front of the shaft into the bushing.

Figure 3-651 Install the front of the shaft

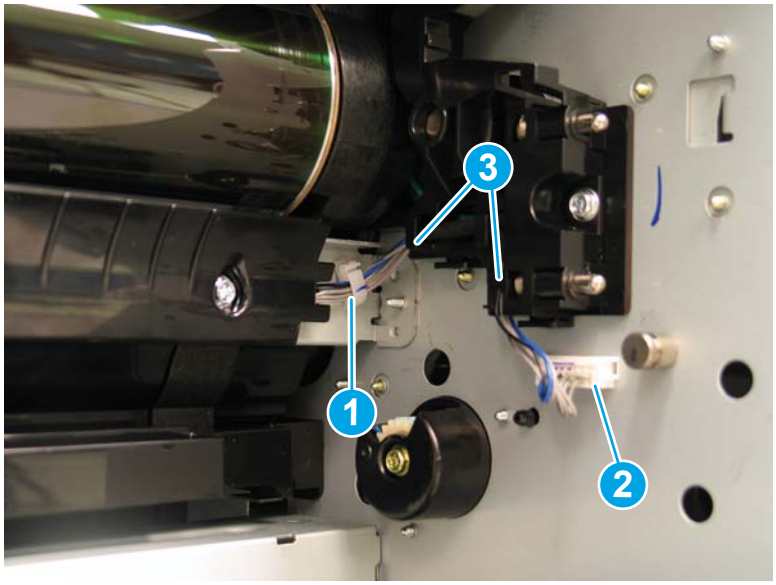


NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 5: Remove the registration sensor assembly

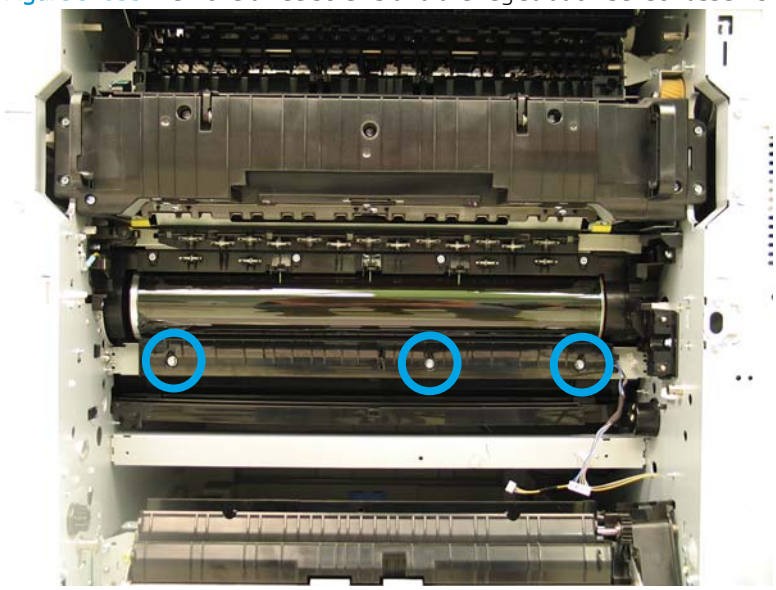
1. Release one retainer (callout 1), disconnect one connector (callout 2), and then release the wire harness from the cable guide (callout 3).

Figure 3-652 Disconnect one connector



2. Remove three self-tapping screws, and then remove the registration sensor assembly.

Figure 3-653 Remove three screws and the registration sensor assembly



Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

High voltage terminal

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the drum unit
- Step 2: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 3: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 4: Remove the upper rear cover
- Step 5: Remove the left rear corner cover
- Step 6: Remove the formatter and cage
- Step 7: Remove the main board and cage
- Step 8: Remove the main drive unit
- Step 9: Remove the high voltage terminal
- Step 10: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the high voltage terminal.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

High voltage terminal part number
High voltage terminal

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the drum unit

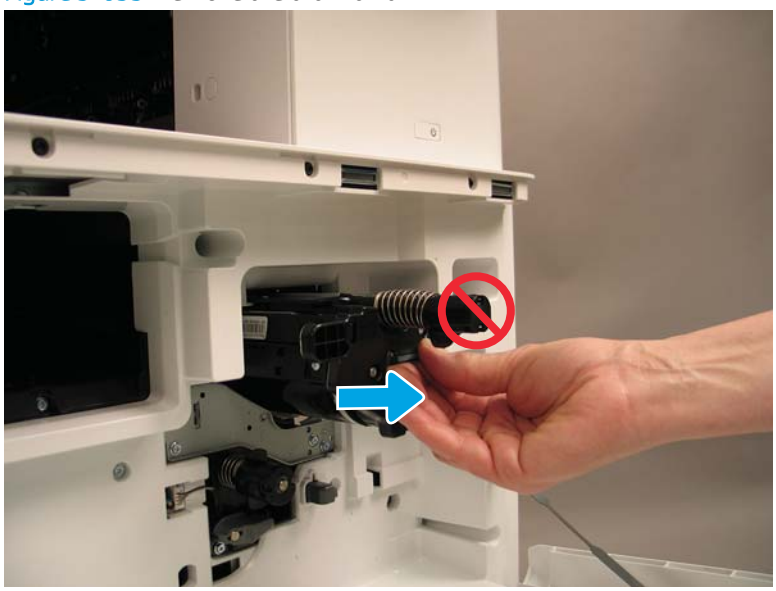
1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).
2. Open the right door.
3. Loosen one screw.

Figure 3-654 Loosen one screw

4. Grip the handle and remove the drum unit.

NOTICE: Do not grip the waste toner connection when removing the drum unit.

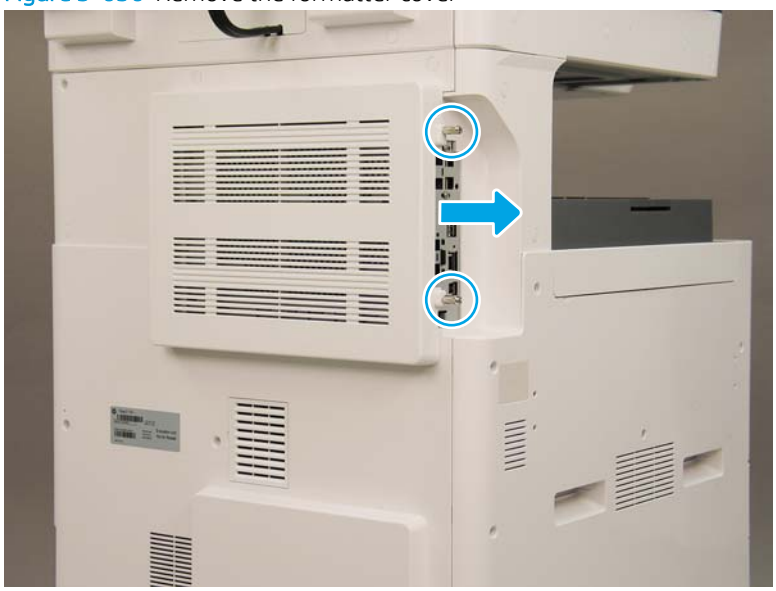
Figure 3-655 Remove the drum unit



Step 2: Remove the formatter cover

▲ Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

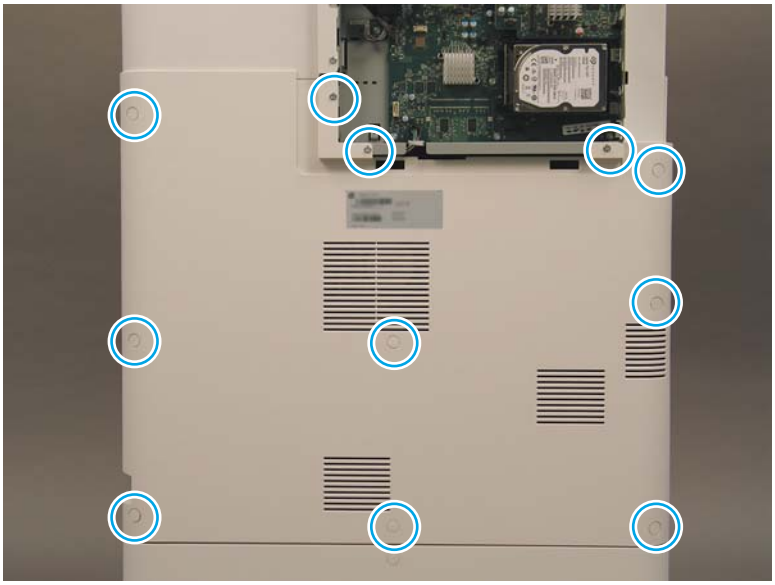
Figure 3-656 Remove the formatter cover



Step 3: Remove the lower rear cover

▲ Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

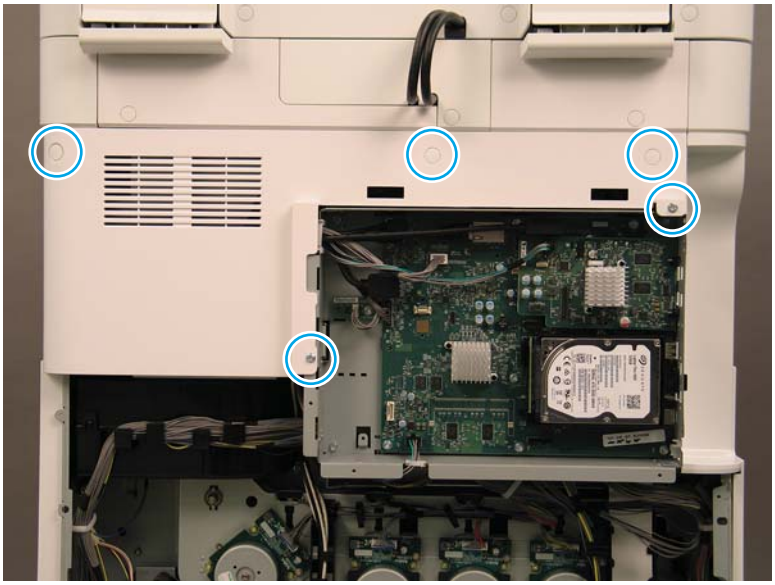
Figure 3-657 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 4: Remove the upper rear cover

- Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

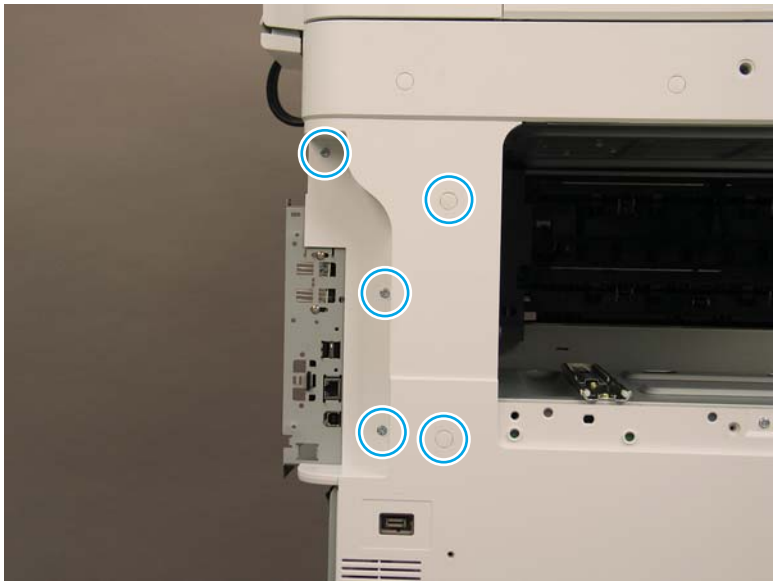
Figure 3-658 Remove the upper rear cover



Step 5: Remove the left rear corner cover

- Remove two screw caps and five screws. Slide the left rear corner cover up and away from the printer to remove it.

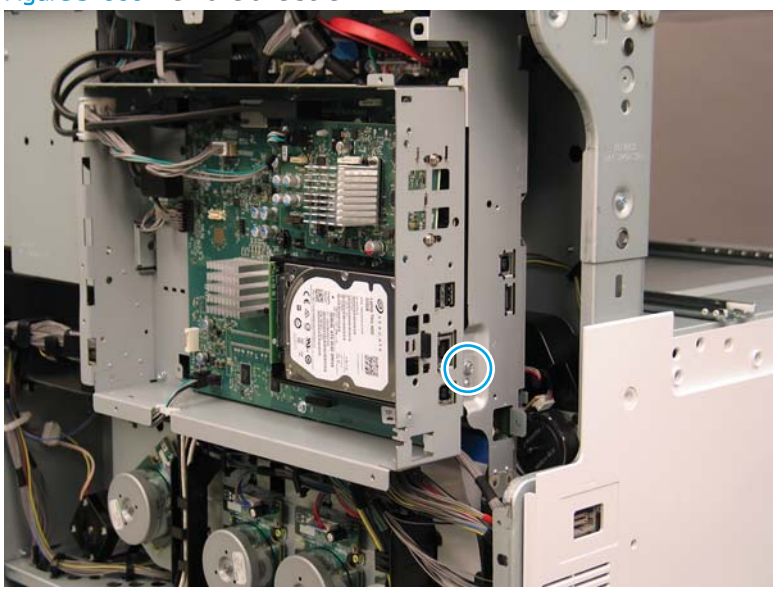
Figure 3-659 Remove the left rear corner cover



Step 6: Remove the formatter and cage

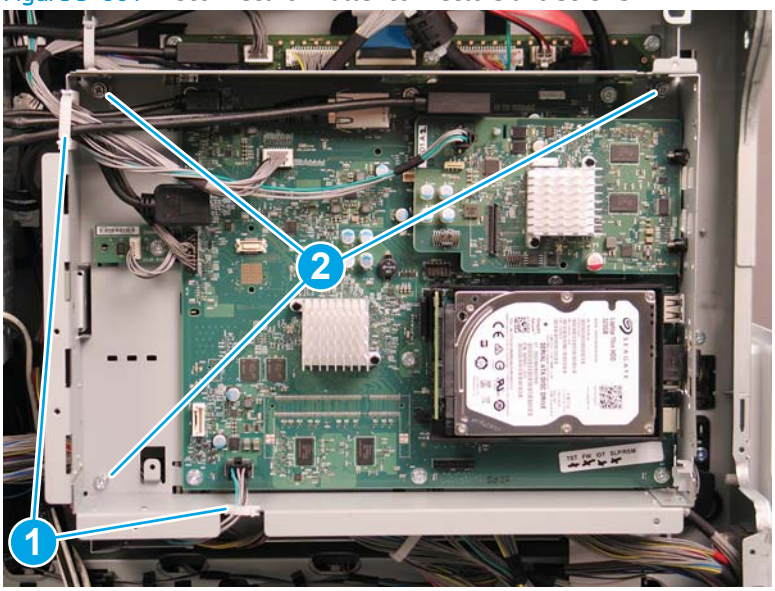
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 3-660 Remove one screw



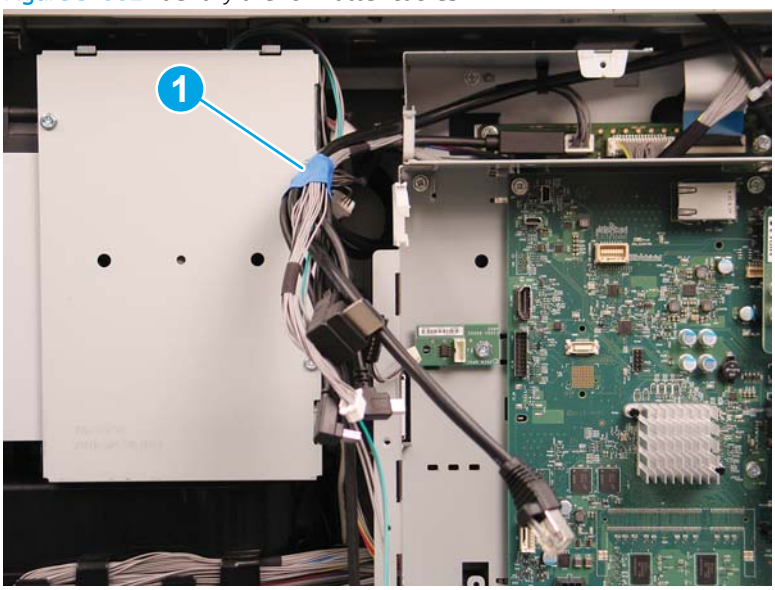
2. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter. Release the cables from two retainers on the sheet metal cage (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 3-661 Disconnect formatter connectors and screws



3. Before removing the formatter cage, place a piece of tape or a wire tie (callout 1) around the cables disconnected from the formatter on the left side. This will identify the cables that will be connected to the formatter during reassembly.

Figure 3-662 Identify the formatter cables



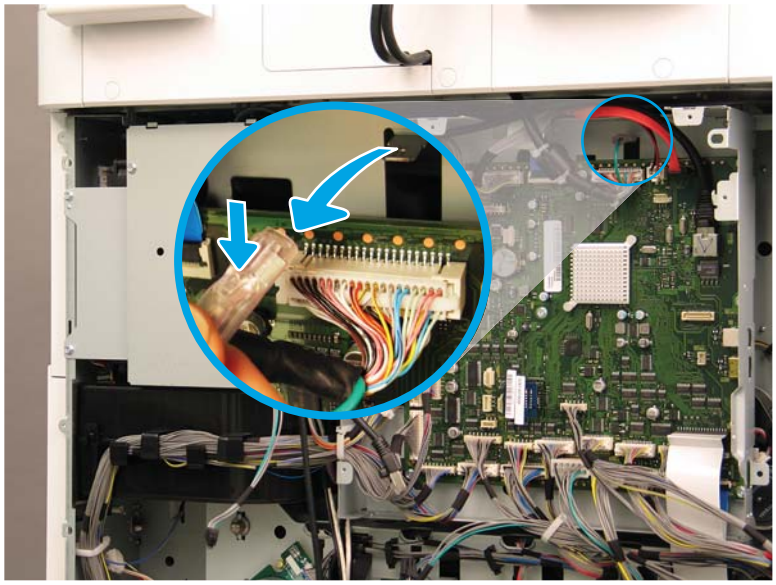
4. Lift the formatter cage up, push it to the right to clear the boss on the right side, and then pull it away from the printer to remove it.

Step 7: Remove the main board and cage

1. One of the connectors that must be released above the main board is a spade connector. Press in on the center part of the cable connector to release the latch, and then pull the cable away from the printer to disconnect it.

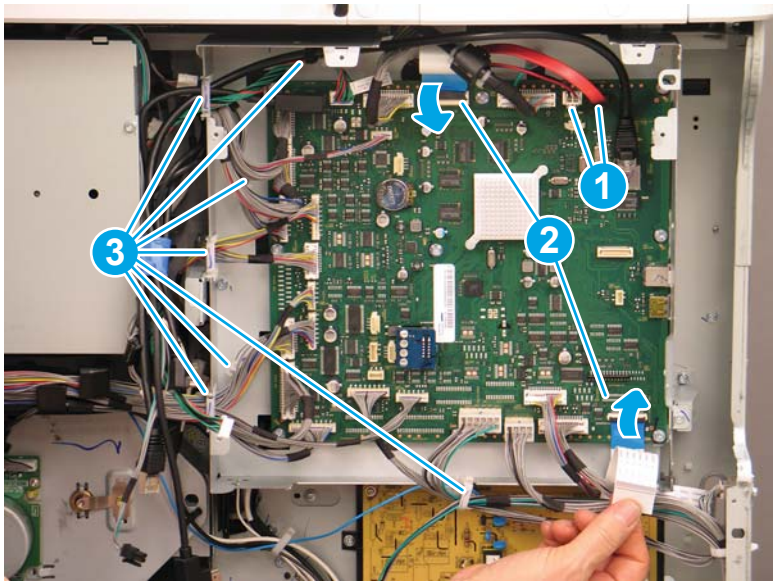
IMPORTANT: Press in on the center part of the cable connector to release the latch, and then pull the cable away from the printer to disconnect it. Do not pull on connector without depressing the center latch.

Figure 3-663 Disconnect one connector



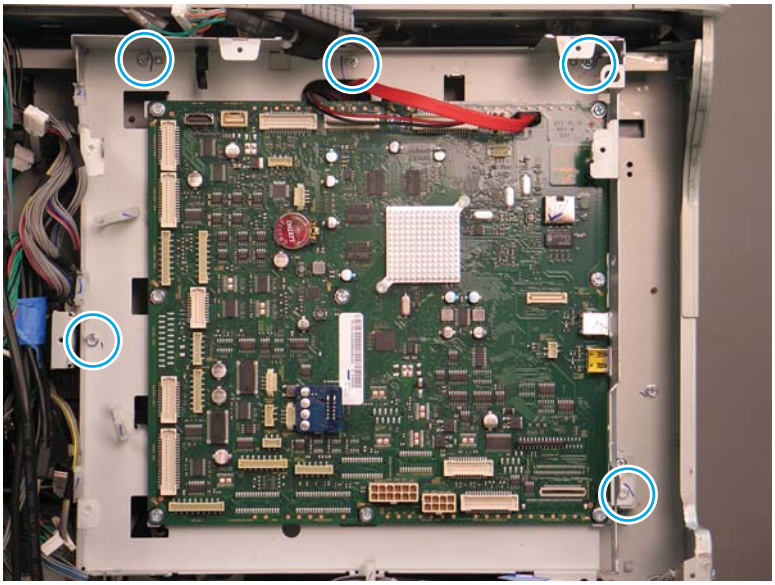
2. Do not disconnect the two hard disk drive (HDD) connectors at the top of the main board (callout 1). Disconnect all of the remaining connectors. Two of the flat cable connectors (callout 2) are zero insertion force (ZIF) connectors. Open the latch on the connectors before removing the flat cables. Release the cables from six retainers (callout 3).

Figure 3-664 Remove one screw



3. Remove five screws.

Figure 3-665 Remove five screws

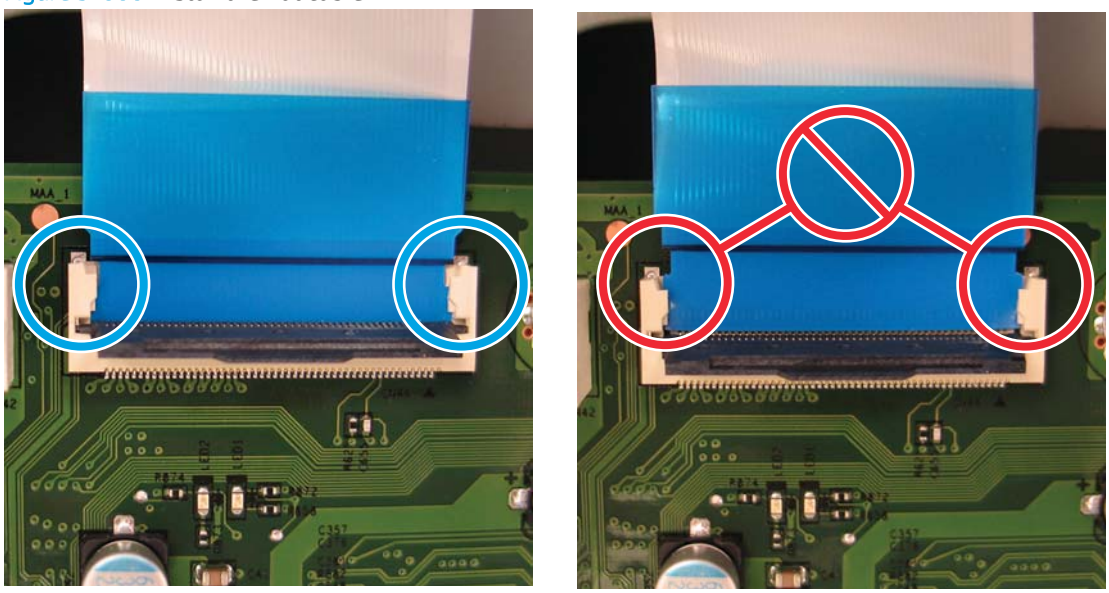


4. Lift the main board cage up, and then rotate the lower edge of the cage away from the printer to remove it.
5. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Main board and cage

▲ When reinstalling the top flat cable, make sure that the cable is correctly installed in the ZIF connector before closing the latch to secure the cable.

Figure 3-666 Install the flat cable



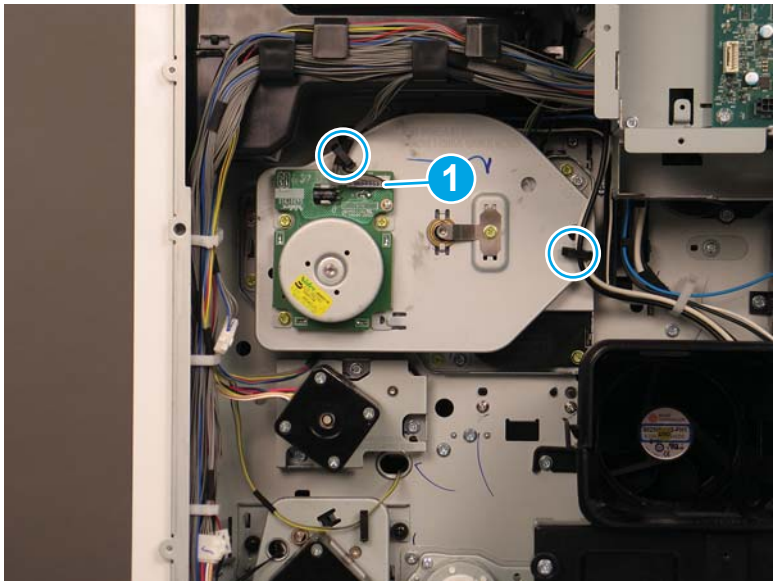
NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 8: Remove the main drive unit

1. Open the right door.

2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release two retainers.

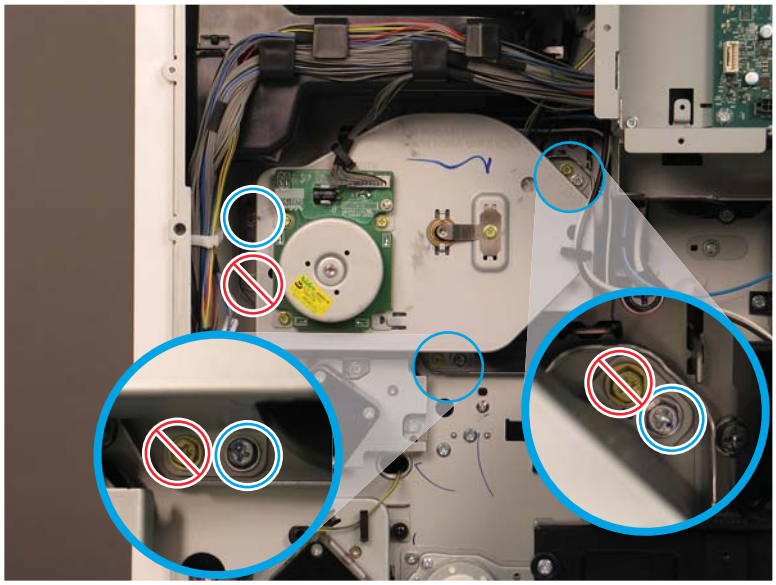
Figure 3-667 Disconnect one connector and release two retainers



3. Remove three screws, and then remove the main drive unit.

NOTE: Remove only those screws marked in blue in the figure below.

Figure 3-668 Remove the main drive unit

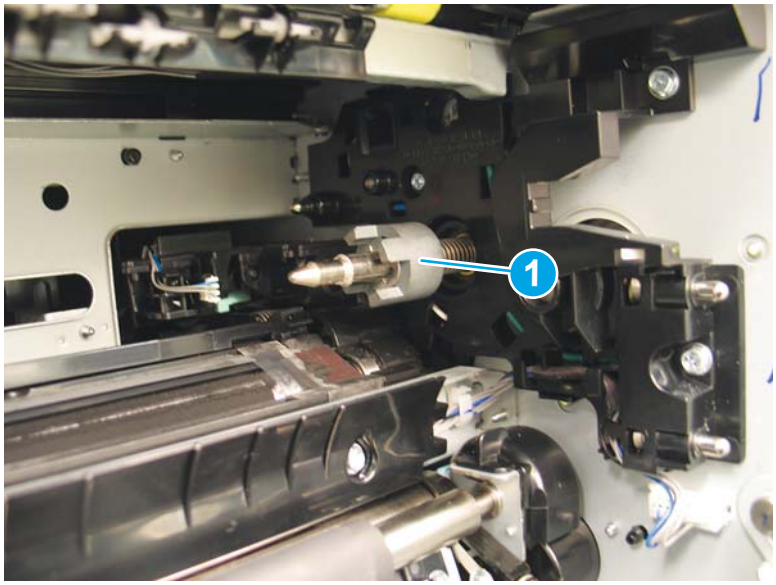


4. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Main drive unit

- If the drum unit doesn't fully install into position after reinstalling the main drive unit, open the right door and rotate the coupler on the drum shaft (callout 1) a few degrees.

Figure 3-669 Rotate the coupler

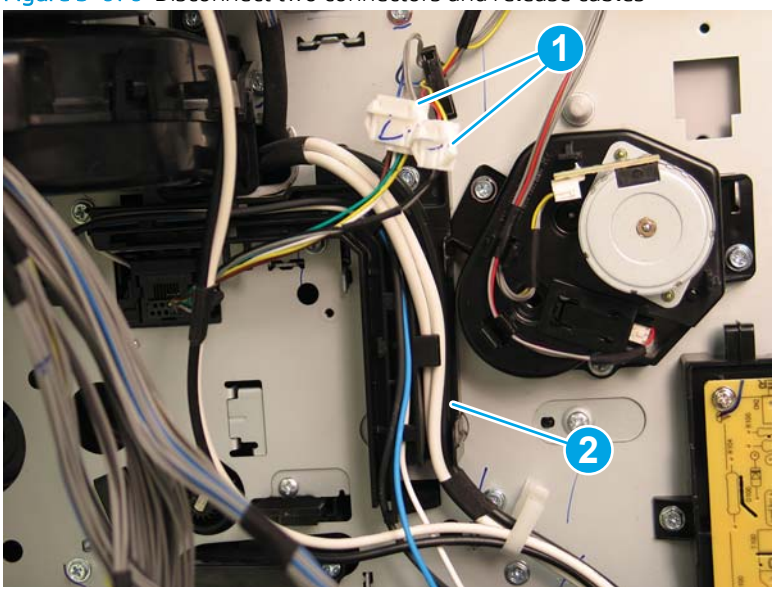


NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 9: Remove the high voltage terminal

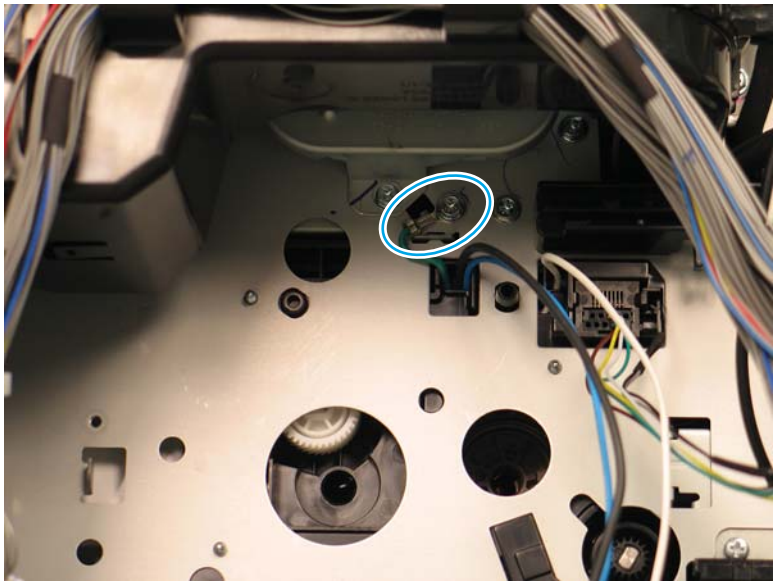
1. Disconnect two in-line connectors (callout 1), and then release the cables (callout 2) from the cable guides.

Figure 3-670 Disconnect two connectors and release cables



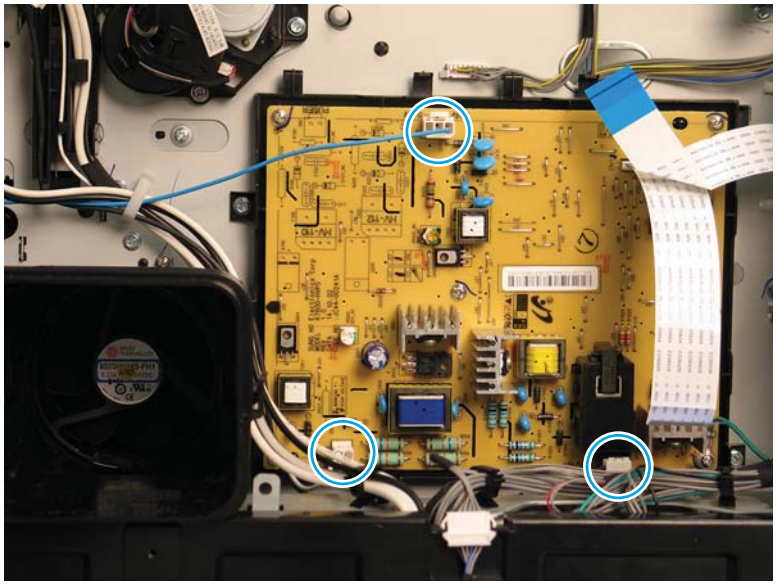
2. Remove one ground screw.

Figure 3-671 Remove one ground screw



3. Disconnect three connectors on the HVPS board.

Figure 3-672 Disconnect three connectors



4. Open the right door. Remove three screws, and then remove the high voltage terminal.

Figure 3-673 Remove three screws and the high voltage terminal

Step 10: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Flow ADF

Flow ADF whole unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the ADF whole unit
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the flow ADF whole unit assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Flow ADF whole unit assembly part number	
SAM-JC97-04868A	Flow ADF

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

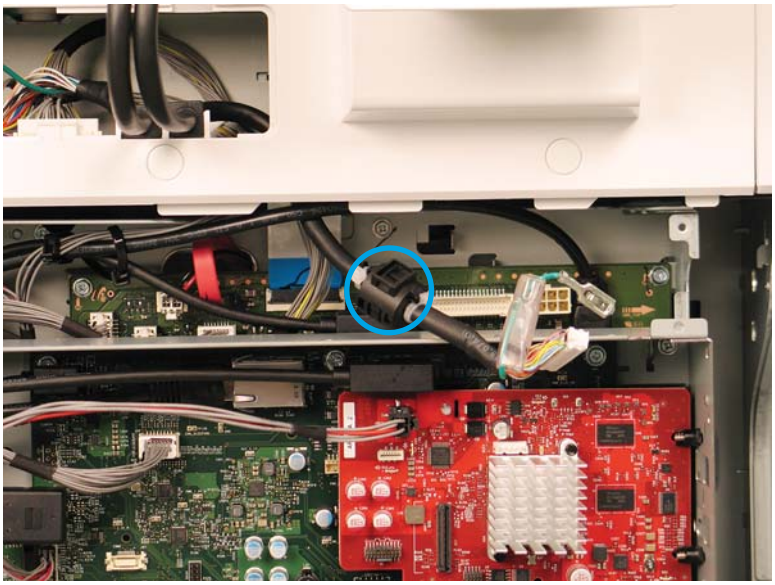
Step 1: Remove the ADF whole unit

1. Open the document feeder cover, and then remove the document feeder connector cover.

Figure 3-674 Remove document feeder connector cover

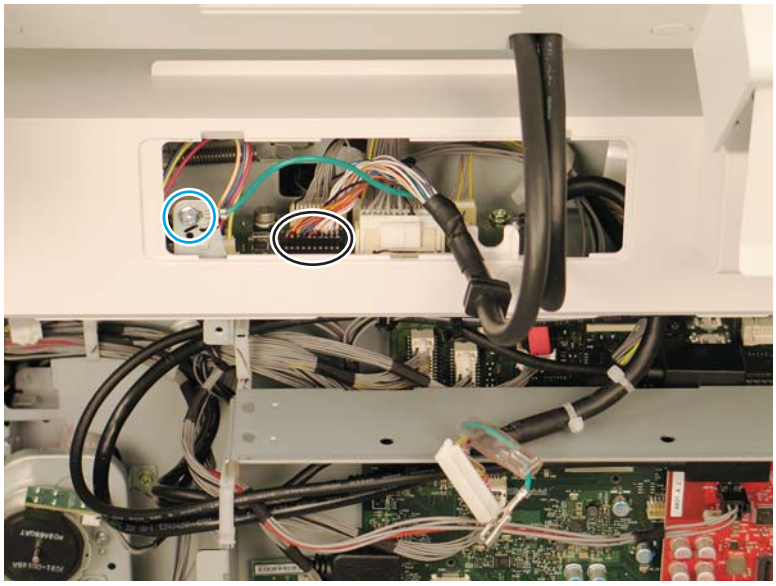
2. Remove the plastic cable choke from the wire harness, and then disconnect the document feeder harness from the main board. Disconnect the insulated ground wire from the chassis.

Figure 3-675 Remove the cable choke



3. Disconnect the document feeder harness from the scan joint board. Remove one connector and one grounding wire.

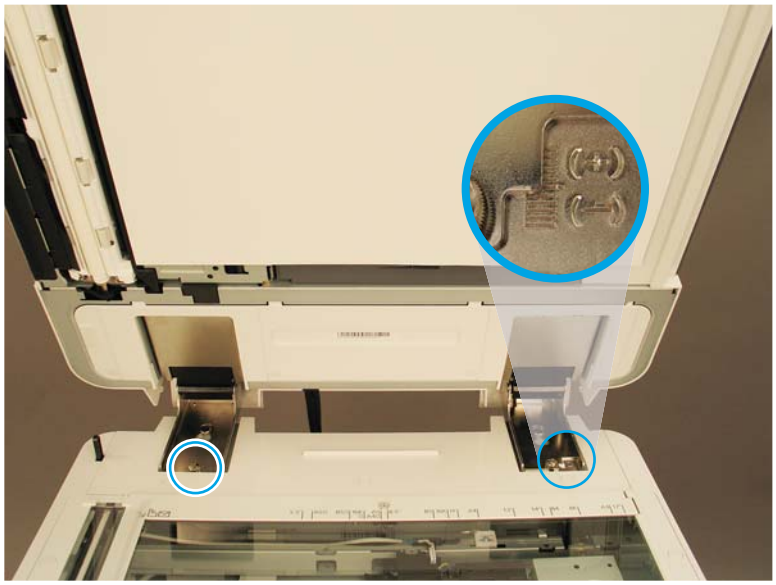
Figure 3-676 Disconnect document feeder harness



4. Release two hinge stops on the back of the document feeder to allow the document feeder to open to a full 90°.

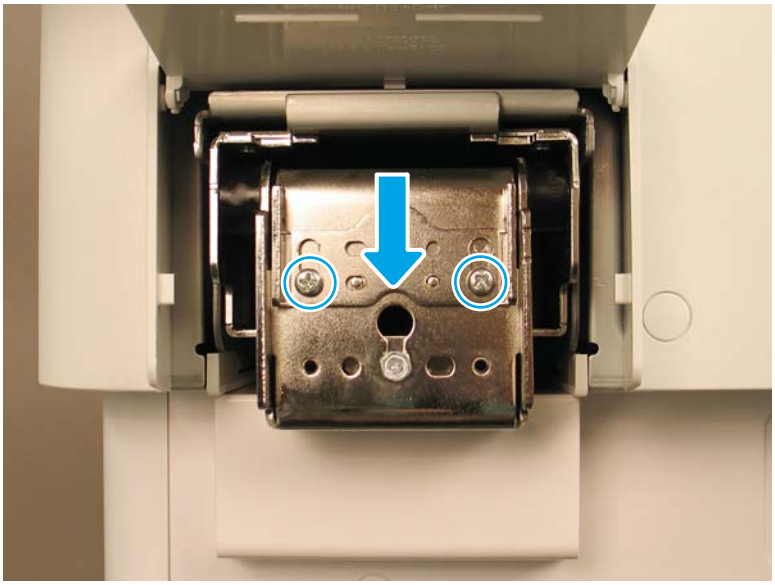
IMPORTANT: Note the alignment marks on the hinge stops. Any new document feeder must be reinstalled with the same alignment.

Figure 3-677 Alignment marks



5. Remove two screws on each hinge stop.

Figure 3-678 Remove screws



6. Pull back and then lift up to release the document feeder unit.

Figure 3-679 Release the document feeder

NOTE: Complete a shading test and a skew alignment after replacing the document feeder unit.

Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Flow ADF jam access cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover
- Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover
- Step 3: Remove the document feeder jam access cover
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the jam access cover assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Jam access cover assembly part number	
SAM-JC97-04869A	Flow ADF - open cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

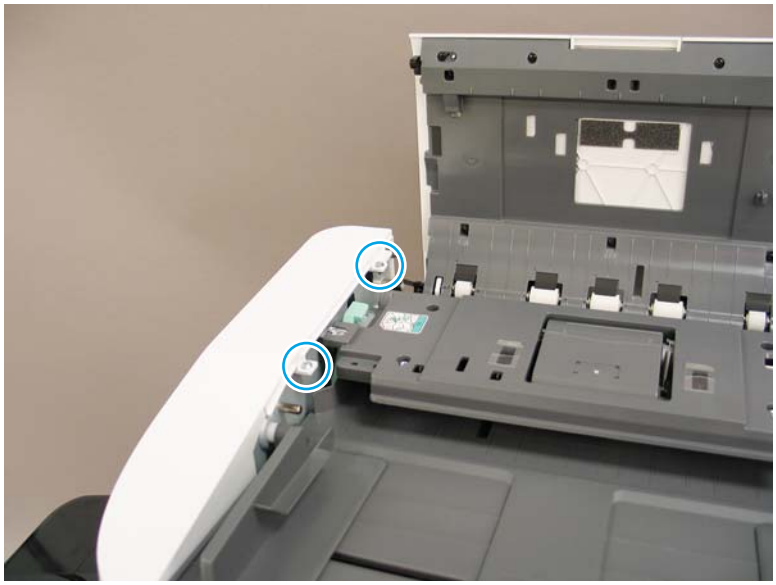
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover

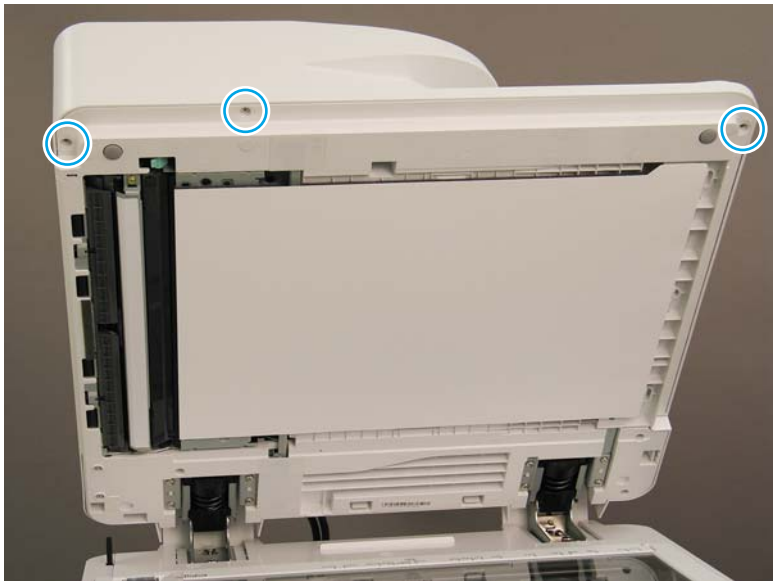
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder front cover.

Figure 3-680 Remove the document feeder front cover top screws



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder front cover, and then remove the document feeder front cover.

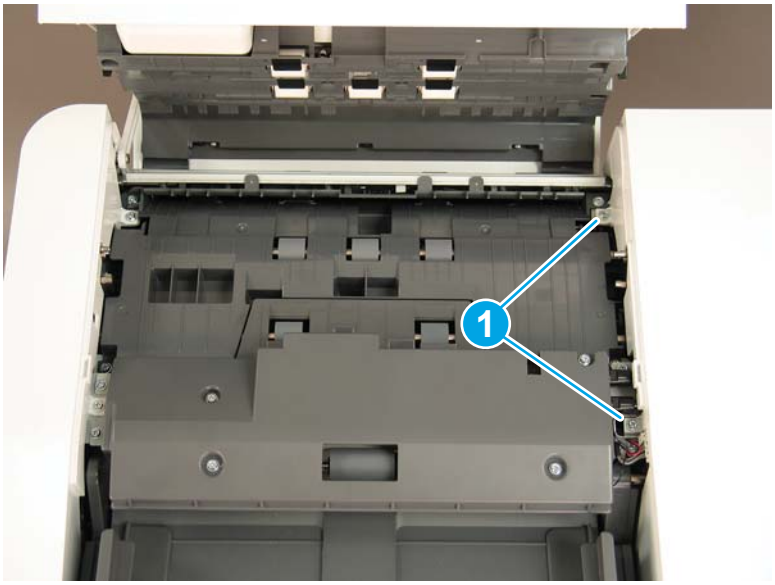
Figure 3-681 Remove the document feeder front cover bottom screws



Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover

1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 3-682 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws



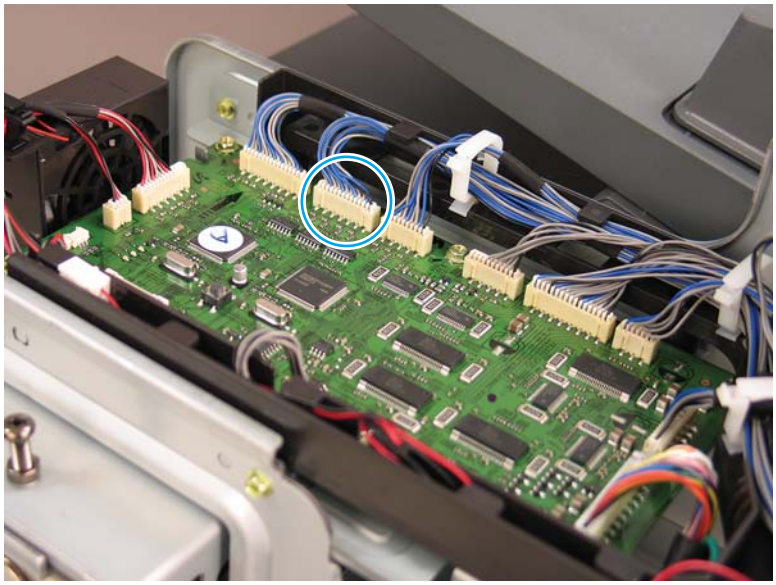
2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover, and then remove the document feeder back cover.

Figure 3-683 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws

Step 3: Remove the document feeder jam access cover

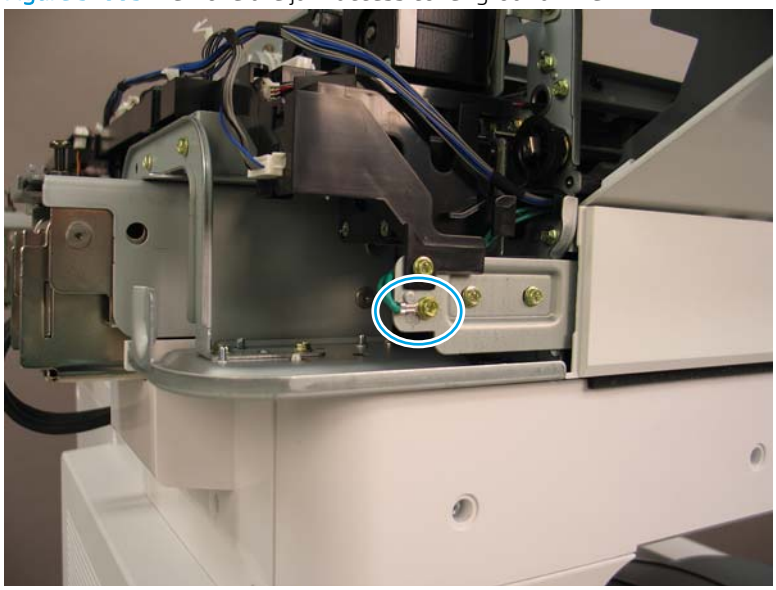
1. Disconnect connector at document feeder PCA and route cable out.

Figure 3-684 Disconnect one connector



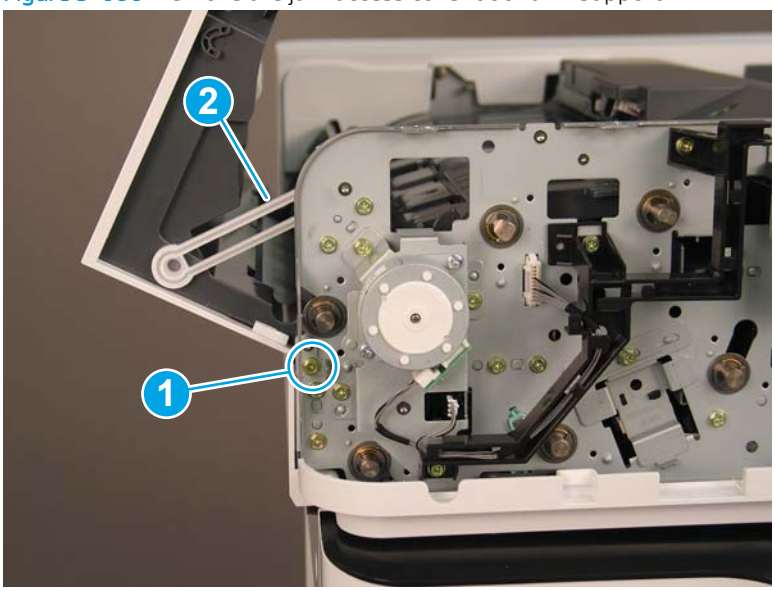
2. Disconnect the ground wire.

Figure 3-685 Remove the jam access cover ground wire



3. Remove one screw (callout 1), remove hinge (pivot) pin, and then remove door arm support (callout 2)

Figure 3-686 Remove the jam access cover door arm support



4. Remove the jam access cover.

Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Flow ADF input tray

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover
- Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover
- Step 3: Remove the dampening unit
- Step 4: Remove the pickup and feed unit
- Step 5: Remove the input tray
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the input tray assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Input tray assembly part number	
SAM-JC97-04658B	Input tray assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

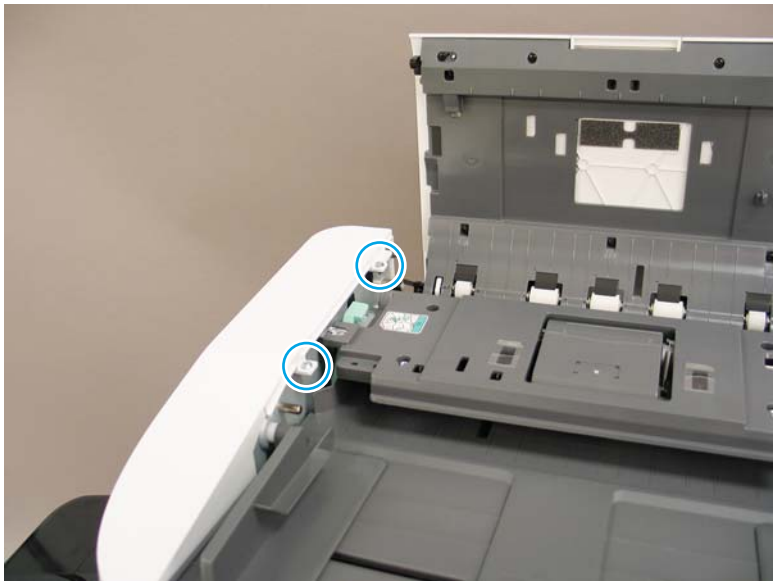
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover

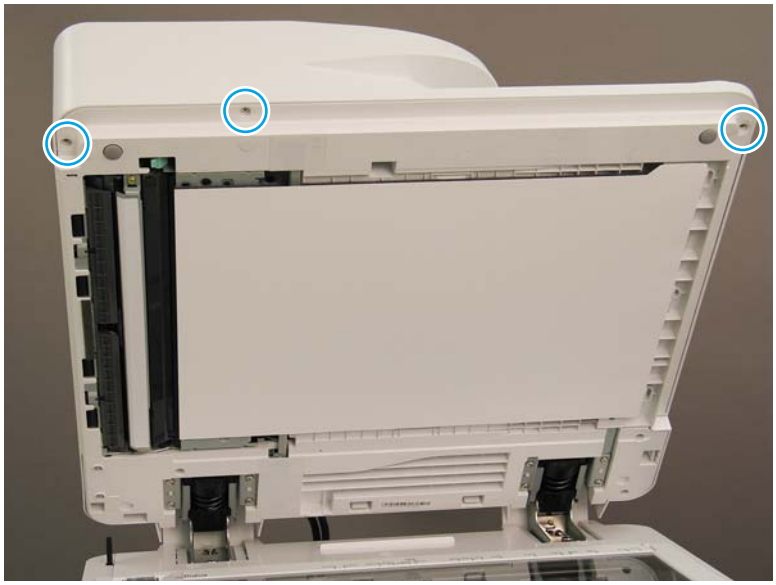
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder front cover.

   Figure 3-687 Remove the document feeder front cover top screws

2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder front cover, and then remove the document feeder front cover.

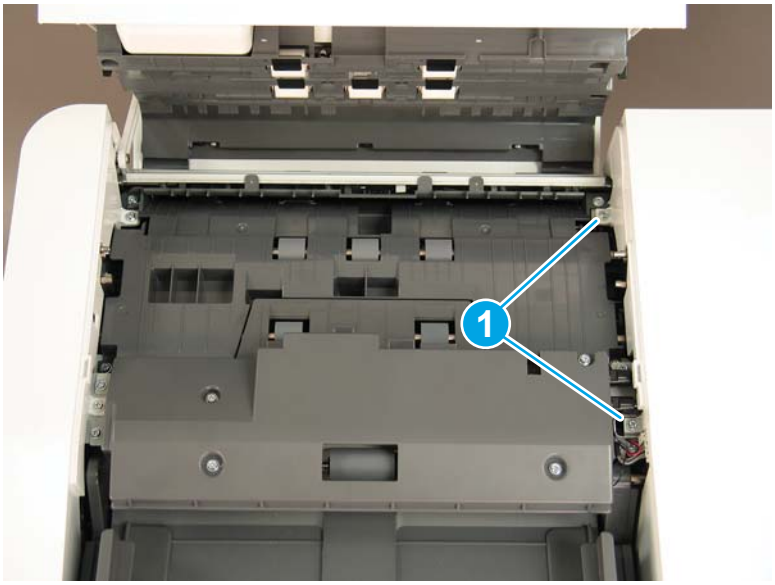
   Figure 3-688 Remove the document feeder front cover bottom screws

Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover

1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 3-689 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws



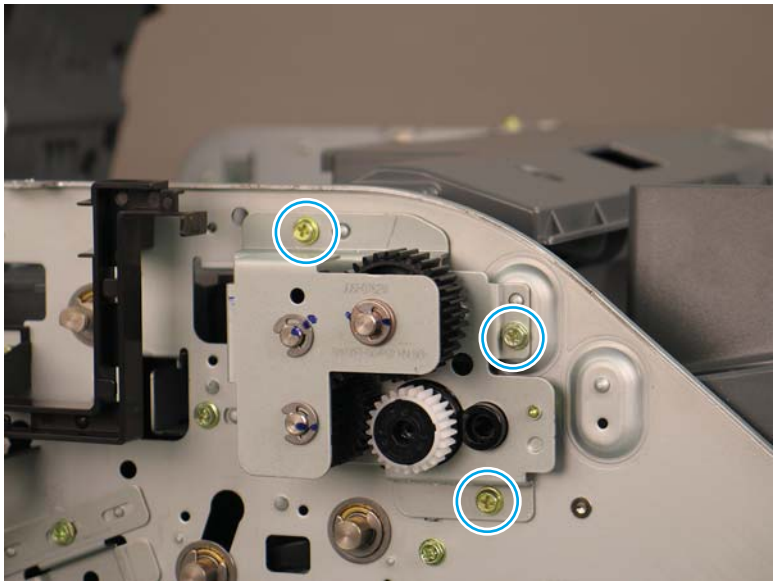
2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover, and then remove the document feeder back cover.

Figure 3-690 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws

Step 3: Remove the dampening unit

▲ Remove three screws, and then remove the damping unit.

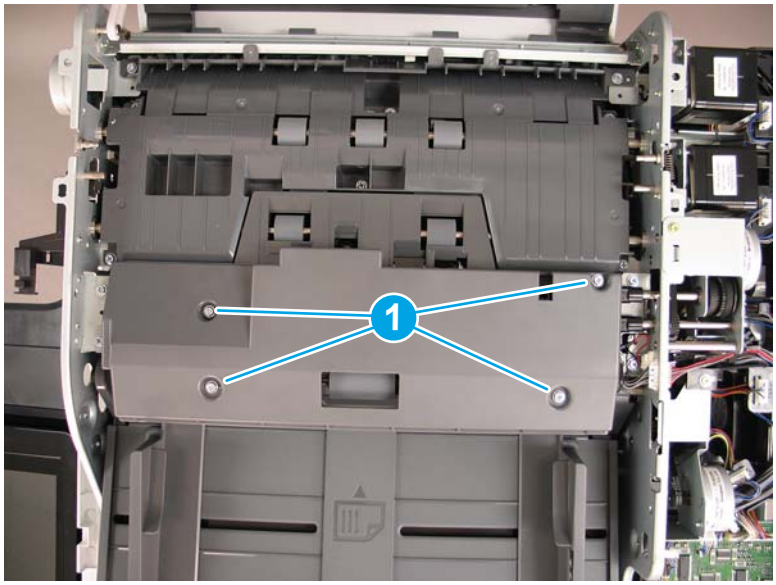
Figure 3-691 Remove the document feeder damping unit



Step 4: Remove the pickup and feed unit

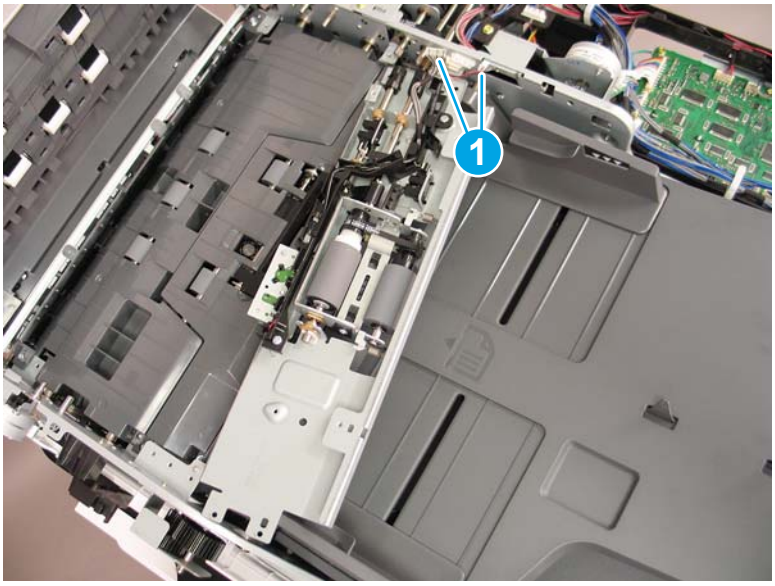
1. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the document feeder pickup roller assembly cover.

Figure 3-692 Remove the document feeder pickup roller assembly cover screws



2. Remove four screws in the sheet-metal roller bracket, rotate the roller assembly over, and then disconnect two connectors (callout 1). Remove the document feeder pickup roller assembly.

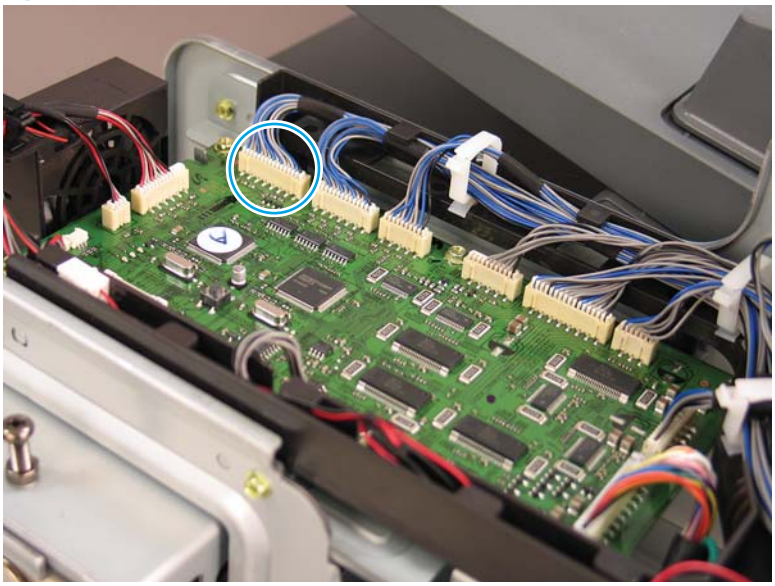
Figure 3-693 Remove the document feeder pickup roller assembly



Step 5: Remove the input tray

1. Disconnect the document feeder PCA connector, and then remove cable from guide.

Figure 3-694 Disconnect the document feeder PCA connector



2. Lift the tray from the front, and pivot the tray outward to remove.

Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Flow ADF contact image sensor (CIS)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover
- Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover
- Step 3: Remove the document feeder pickup and feed assembly
- Step 4: Remove the paper path cover
- Step 5: Remove the CIS assembly
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the CIS assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

CIS assembly part number	
SAM-0609-001558	CIS assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

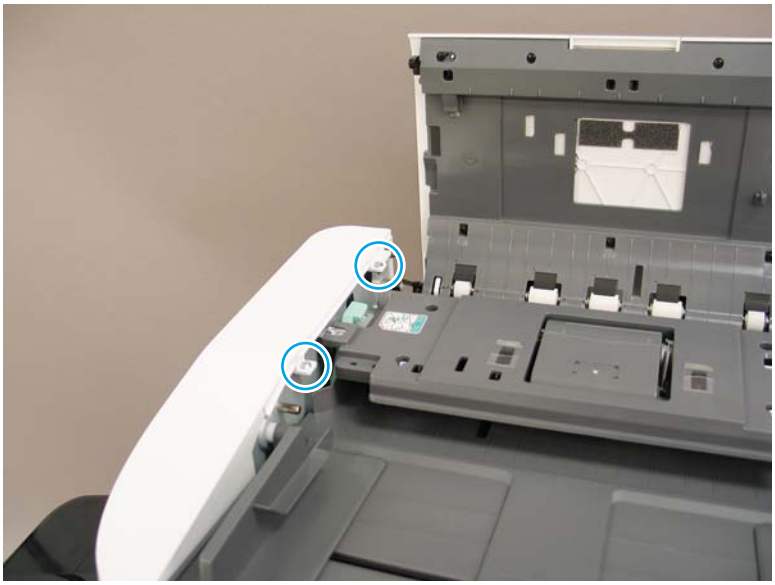
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover

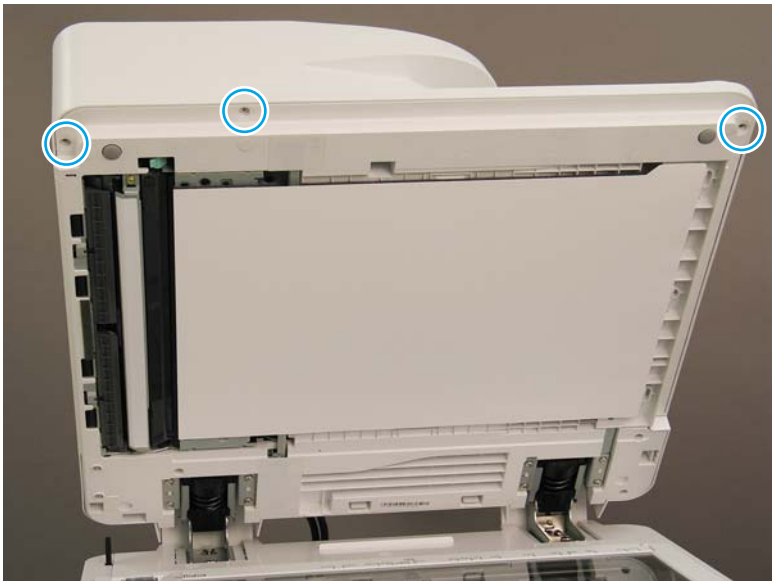
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder front cover.

Figure 3-695 Remove the document feeder front cover top screws



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder front cover, and then remove the document feeder front cover.

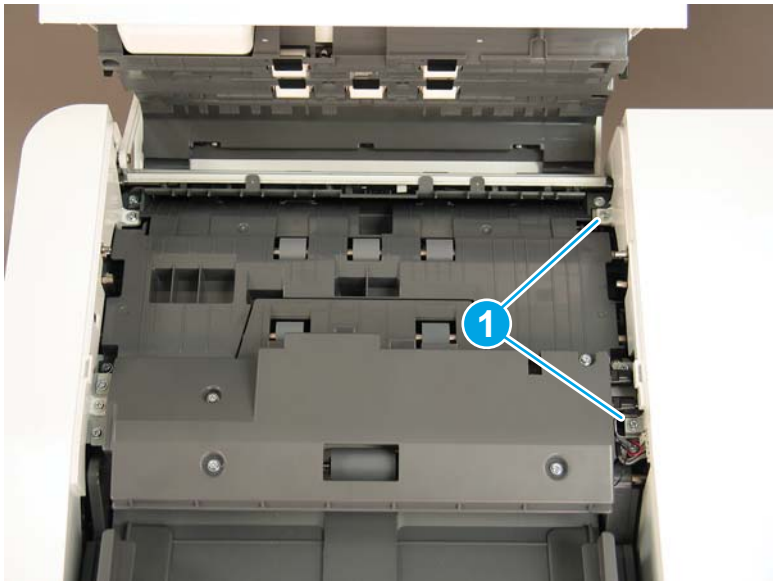
Figure 3-696 Remove the document feeder front cover bottom screws



Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover

1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 3-697 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws



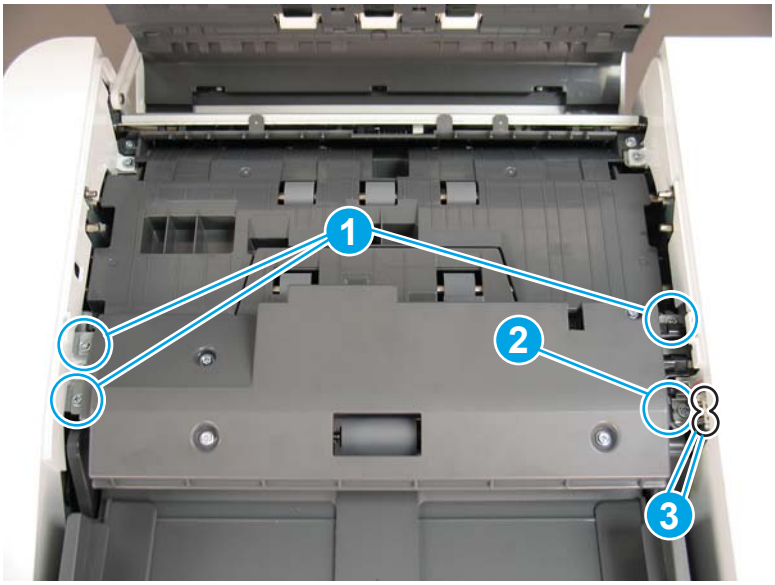
2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover, and then remove the document feeder back cover.

Figure 3-698 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws

Step 3: Remove the document feeder pickup and feed assembly

▲ Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2, including one ground wire), and then remove the pickup roller assembly.

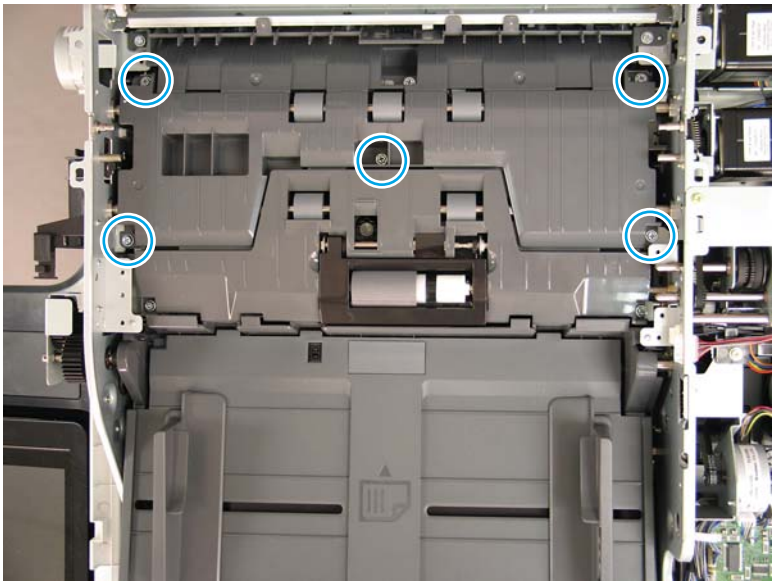
Figure 3-699 Remove the pickup roller assembly



Step 4: Remove the paper path cover

▲ Remove five screws, and then remove the paper path cover.

Figure 3-700 Remove the document feeder paper path cover

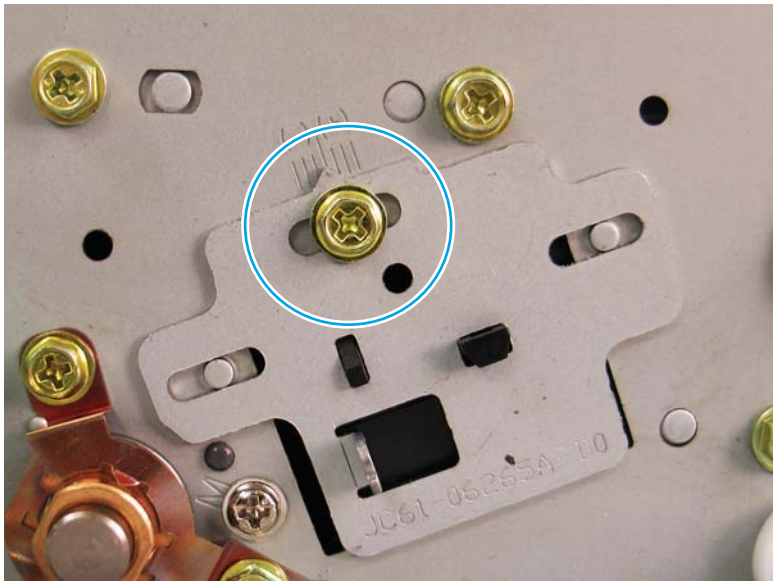


Step 5: Remove the CIS assembly

1. Remove one screw, and then remove the CIS front alignment cover.

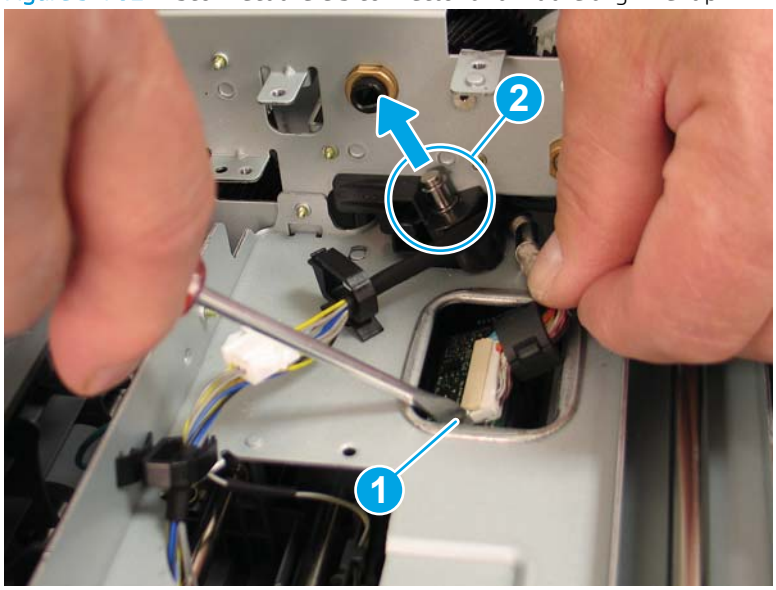
Reinstallation tip: Note the orientation of the CIS front alignment cover for reinstallation; the cover must reinstalled with the same orientation.

Figure 3-701 Remove the CIS front alignment cover screws



2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then lift the alignment pin to release the CIS assembly (callout 2).

Figure 3-702 Disconnect the CIS connector and lift the alignment pin



3. Remove the CIS assembly from the chassis.

Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Flow ADF front motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover
- Step 2: Remove the front motor
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the front motor assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Front motor assembly part number	
SAM-JC31-00177A	Motor, step

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

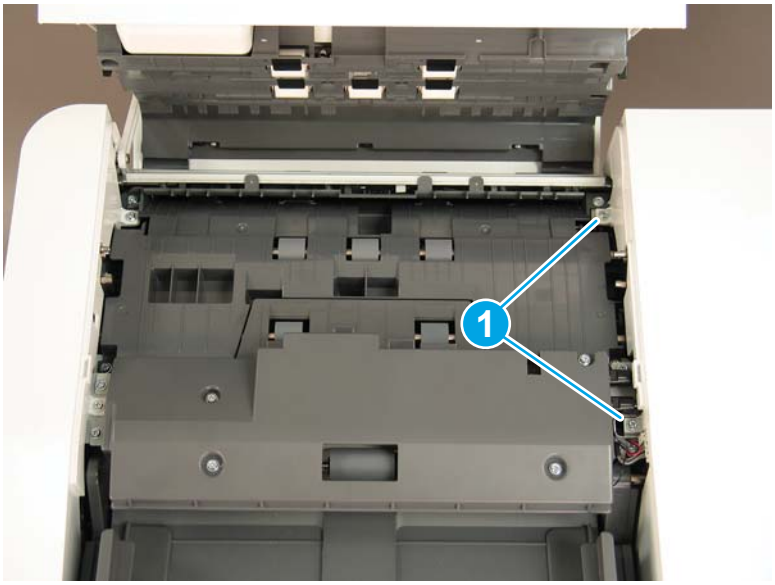
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover

1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 3-703 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws



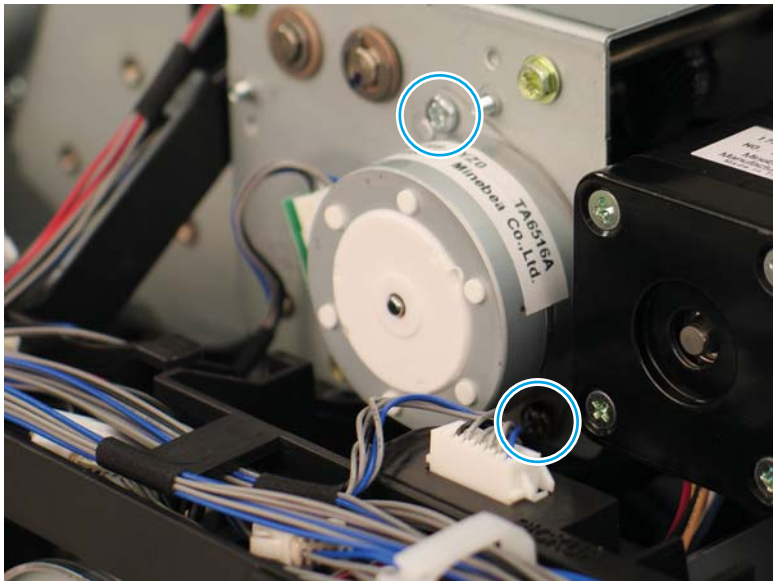
2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover, and then remove the document feeder back cover.

Figure 3-704 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws

Step 2: Remove the front motor

▲ Remove two screws and disconnect one connector, and then remove the motor.

Figure 3-705 Remove the document feeder front motor



Reinstallation tip:

a. Reinstall the motor and lift the gear belt up to engage the motor pulley.

b. Loosely install the motor mount screws.

c. Install the tension spring.

d. Tighten the motor mount screws just enough so that the tension spring (not the motor mount screws) is providing the tension to the belt.

Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Flow ADF rear motors

- Introduction
- Step 1: Identify the document feeder motors
- Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover
- Step 3: Remove motors 1 and 2
- Step 4: Remove the pickup and pre-REGI motors
- Step 5: Remove the exit motor
- Step 6: Remove the feed motor
- Step 7: Remove the REGI motor
- Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the rear motor assemblies.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Rear motors part numbers	
SAM-JC97-04679A	Motor 1 - Flow ADF - drive
SAM-JC97-04681A	Motor 2 - Flow ADF- drive release pick up
SAM-JC97-04680A	Pickup motor
SAM-JC97-04680A	Pre_REGI motor
SAM-JC97-04680A	Exit motor
SAM-JC97-04680A	Feed motor
SAM-JC31-00177A	REGI motor
SAM-JC97-04680A	

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Identify the document feeder motors

▲ Use the figure below to locate the motor.

Figure 3-706 Document feeder motors

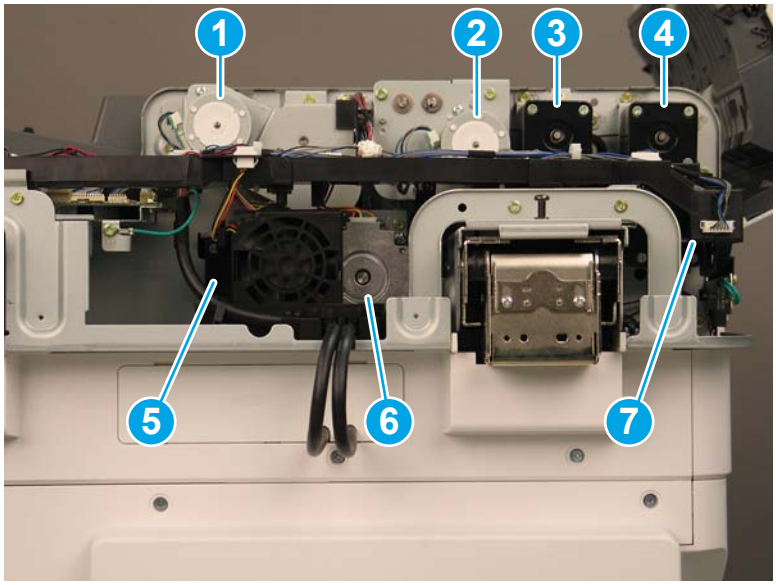


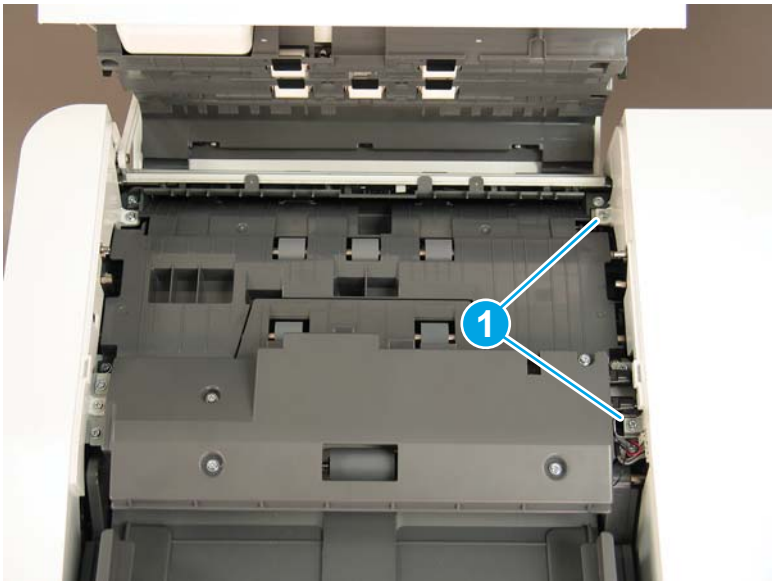
Table 3-1 Document feeder motors

Callout	Description
1	Motor 1
2	Motor 2
3	Pickup motor
4	Pre_REGI motor
5	Exit motor
6	Feed motor
7	REGI motor

Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover

1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 3-707 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover, and then remove the document feeder back cover.

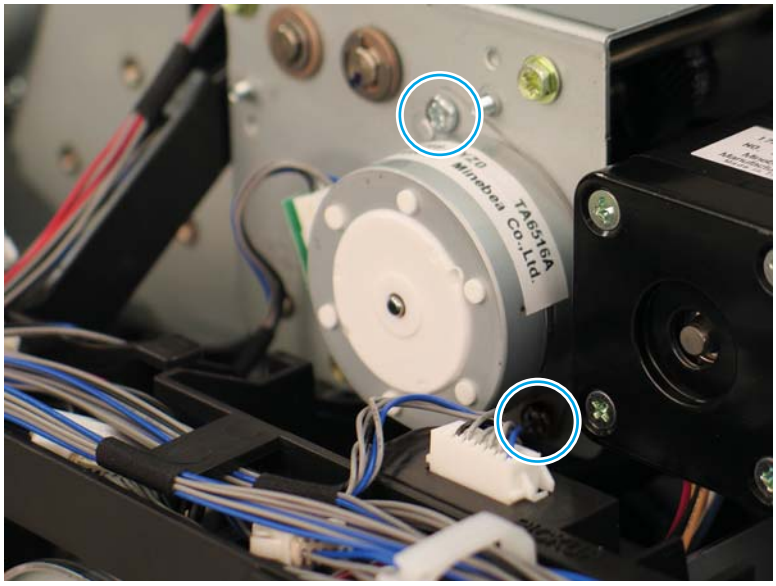
Figure 3-708 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws

Step 3: Remove motors 1 and 2

▲ Remove two screws and one connector, and then remove the motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reinstall the motor and lift the gear belt up to engage the motor pulley.

Figure 3-709 Remove the motor

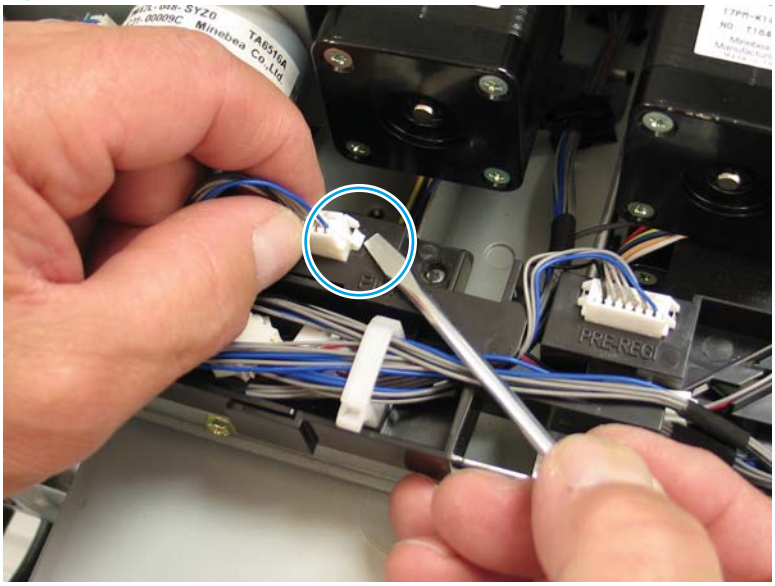


Step 4: Remove the pickup and pre-REGI motors

1. Loosen the cable guide
2. Disconnect one connector from the motor.

TIP: Remove the connector harness from the cable retainer, and then disconnect the connector.

Figure 3-710 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove one spring (callout 1), and then loosen (but do not remove) three screws. Slide the motor off the screws to remove.

Figure 3-711 Pickup motor

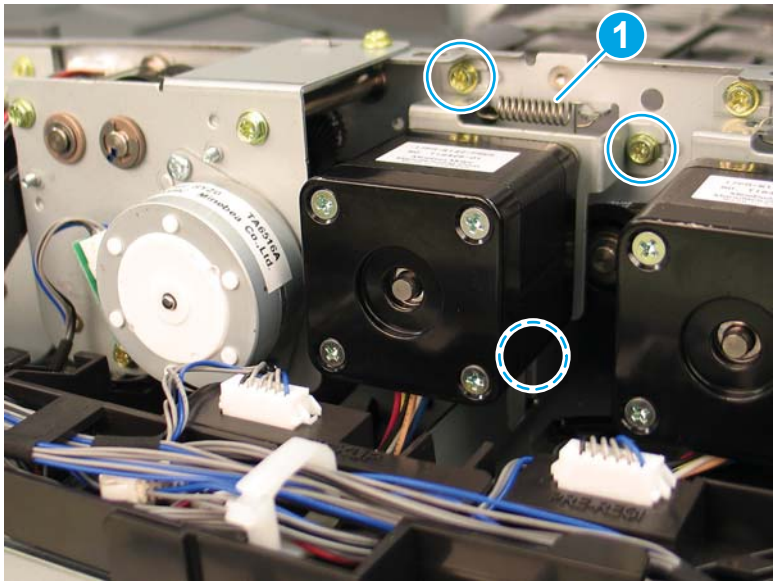
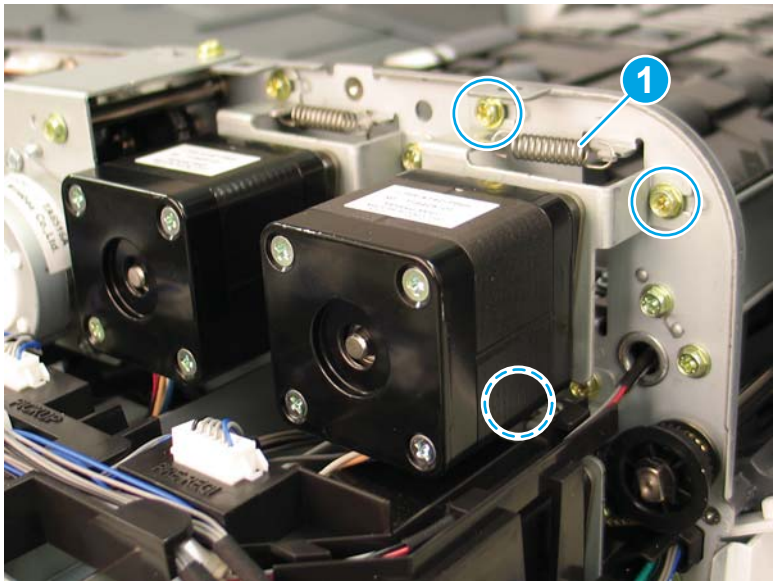


Figure 3-712 Pre-REGI motor



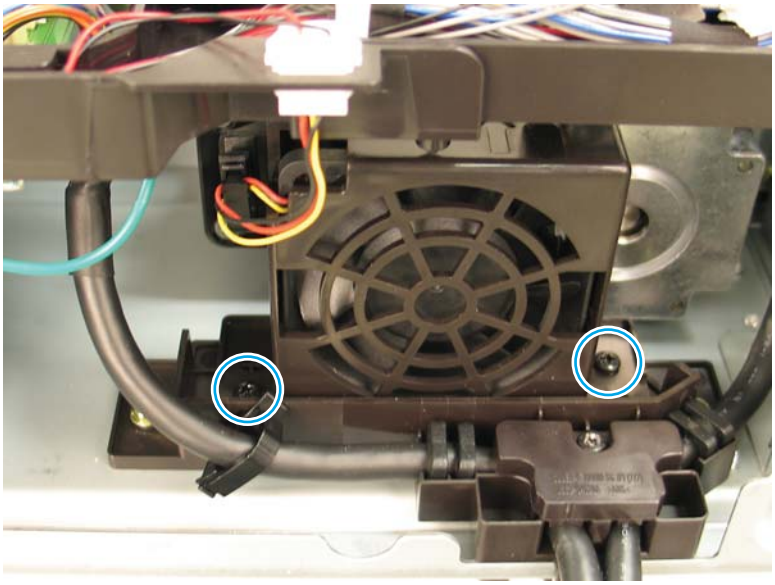
4. To reinstall the motor, do the following:

- Reinstall the motor on the motor mounting screws, and then lift the gear belt up to engage the motor pulley.
- Install the tension spring.
- Tighten the motor mount screws just enough so that the tension spring (not the motor mount screws) is providing the tension to the belt.

Step 5: Remove the exit motor

1. Remove two screws and one connector, and then remove the main fan.

Figure 3-713 Remove the main fan



2. Remove the spring (callout 1), disconnect one connector (callout 2), loosen three screws, and then remove the exit motor.

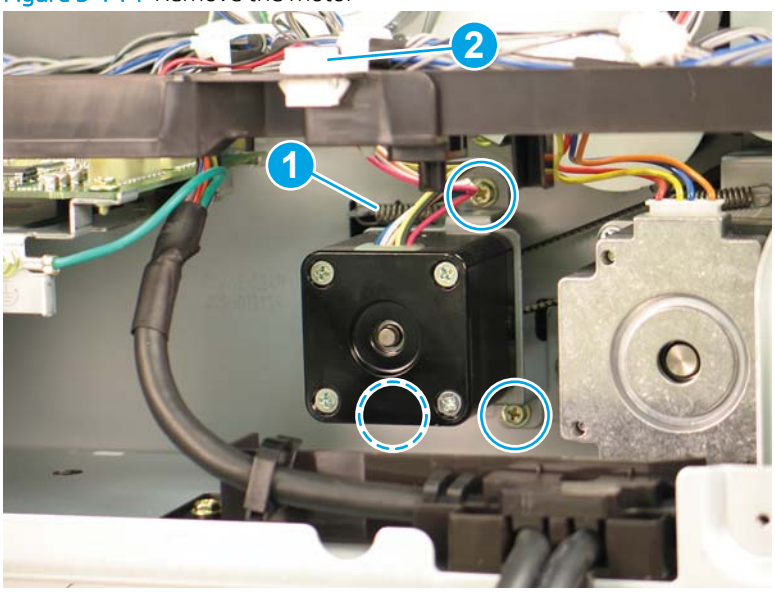
Reinstallation tip:

a. Reinstall the motor and lift the gear belt up to engage the motor pulley.

b. Install the tension spring.

c. Tighten the motor mount screws just enough so that the tension spring (not the motor mount screws) is providing the tension to the belt.

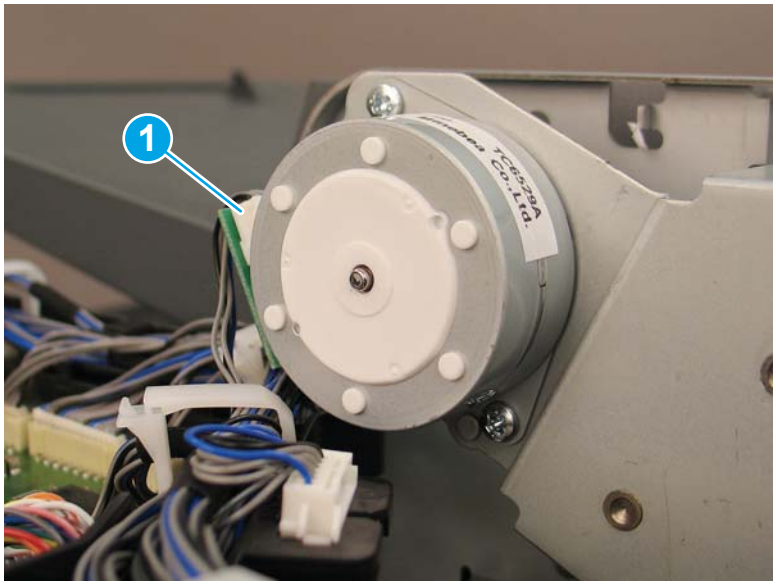
Figure 3-714 Remove the motor



Step 6: Remove the feed motor

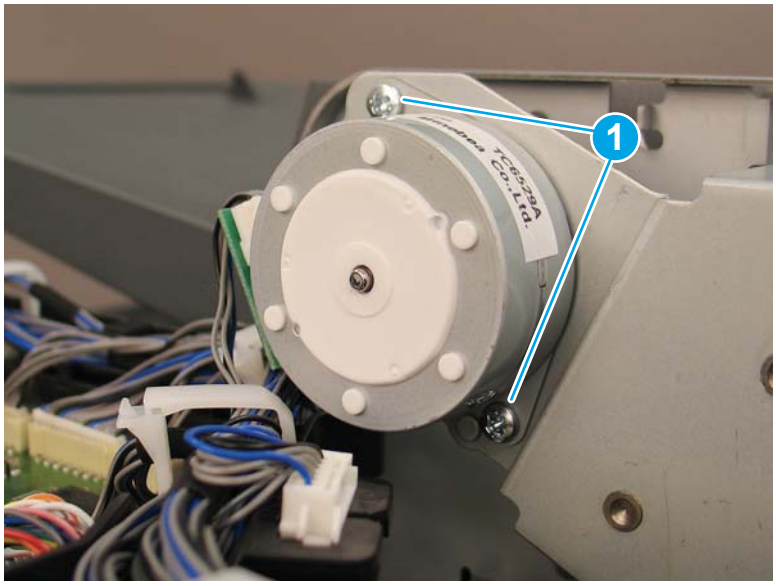
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

   Figure 3-715 Disconnect one connector

2. Remove two screws, and then remove motor.

   Figure 3-716 Remove the motor

Step 7: Remove the REGI motor

1. Remove the rear cover
2. Remove the Pre-REGI motor
3. Disconnect one connector from the motor.

TIP: Remove the connector harness from the cable retainer, and then disconnect the connector.

4. Remove one spring, loosen (do not remove) 3 screws, and then slide the motor off the screws to remove.

Reinstallation tip:

a. Reinstall the motor and lift the gear belt up to engage the motor pulley.

b. Install the tension spring.

c. Tighten the motor mount screws just enough so that the tension spring (not the motor mount screws) is providing the tension to the belt.

Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Flow ADF PCA fan

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover
- Step 2: Remove the document feeder PCA fan
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the document feeder PCA fan assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Document feeder PCA fan assembly part number	
SAM-JC31-00146A	Document feeder PCA fan assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

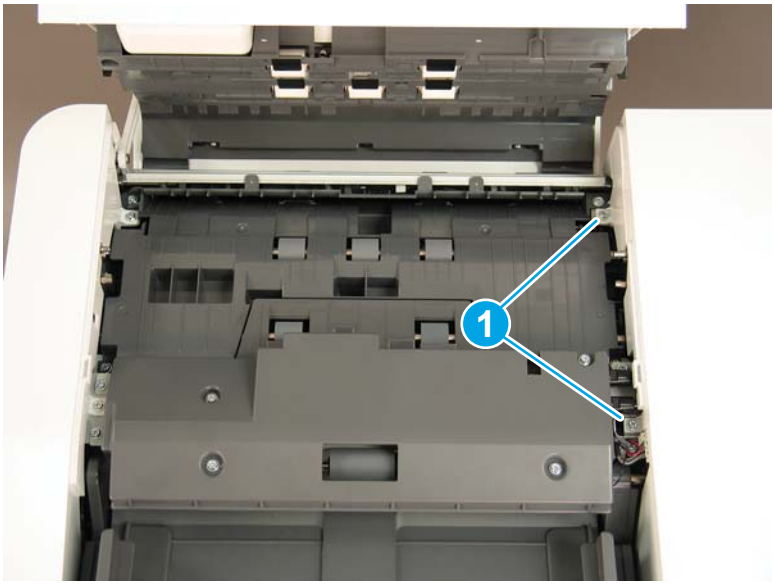
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover

1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 3-717 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws



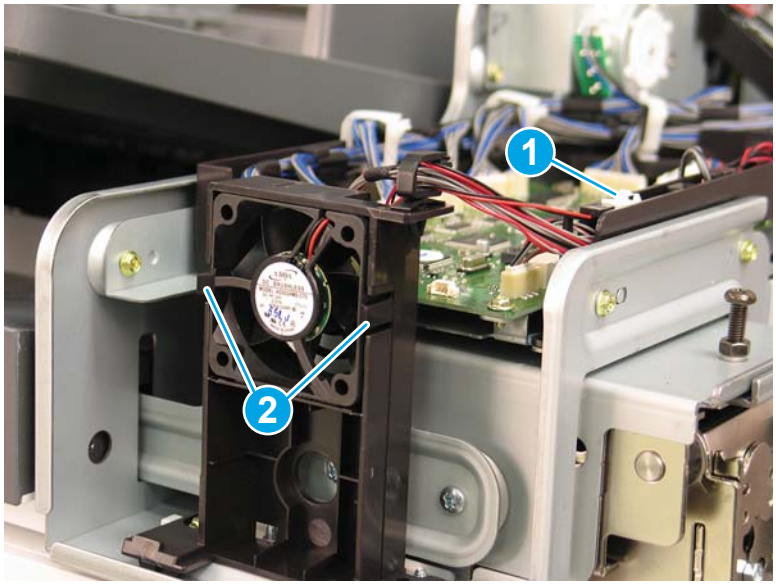
2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover, and then remove the document feeder back cover.

Figure 3-718 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws

Step 2: Remove the document feeder PCA fan

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1) and then release two tabs (callout 2) to remove the fan.

Figure 3-719 Remove the document feeder PCA fan connector



Reinstallation tip: Install the fan with the correct orientation when reinstalling.

Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Flow ADF contact image sensor (CIS) fan

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover
- Step 2: Remove the document feeder CIS fan
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the CIS fan assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

CIS fan part number
CIS fan

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

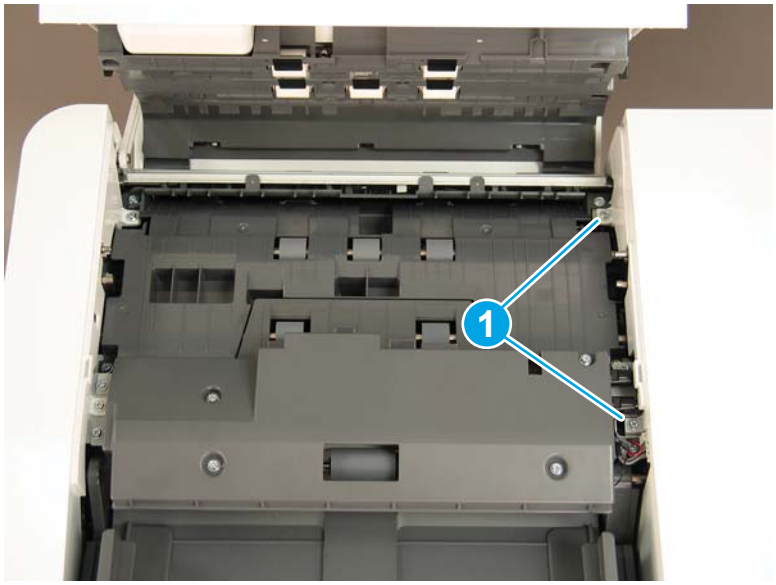
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover

1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

   Figure 3-720 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws

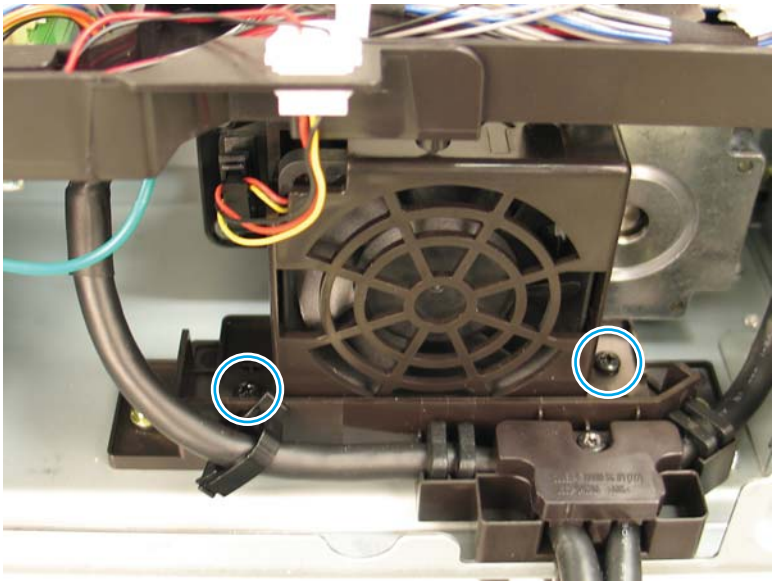
2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover, and then remove the document feeder back cover.

   Figure 3-721 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws

Step 2: Remove the document feeder CIS fan

- Remove one connector, and then remove two mounting screws to remove the fan.

Figure 3-722 Remove the document feeder PCA fan



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Flow ADF ultrasonic sensor with PCA

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover
- Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover
- Step 3: Remove the document feeder pickup and feed assembly
- Step 4: Remove the paper path cover
- Step 5: Remove the ultrasonic sensor with PCA
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the ultrasonic sensor with PCA assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Ultrasonic sensor with PCA assembly part number
Ultrasonic sensor with PCA assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

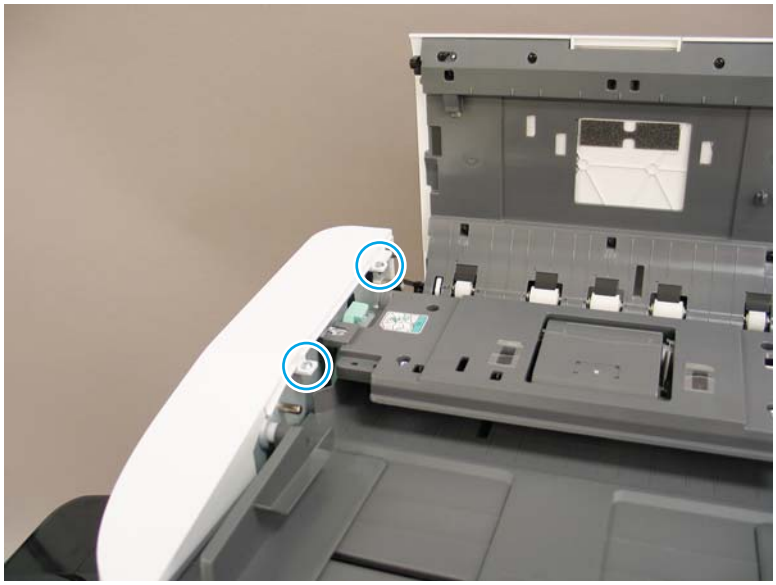
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover

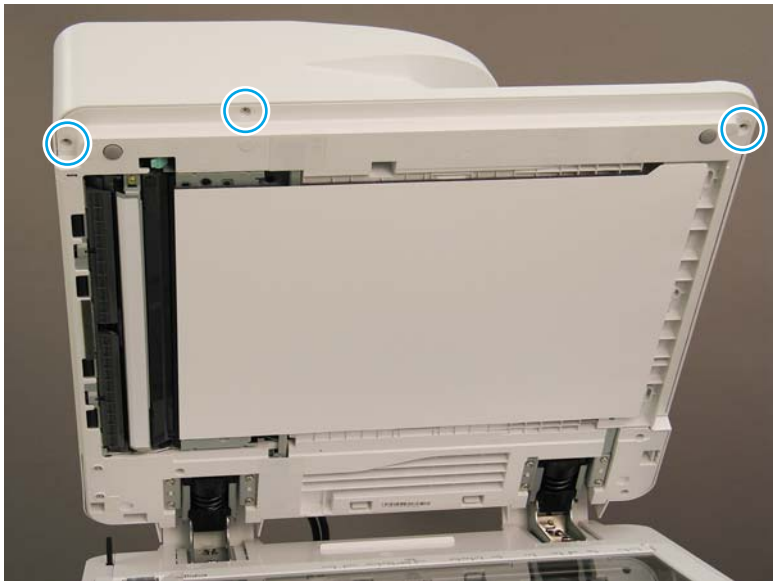
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder front cover.

Figure 3-723 Remove the document feeder front cover top screws



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder front cover, and then remove the document feeder front cover.

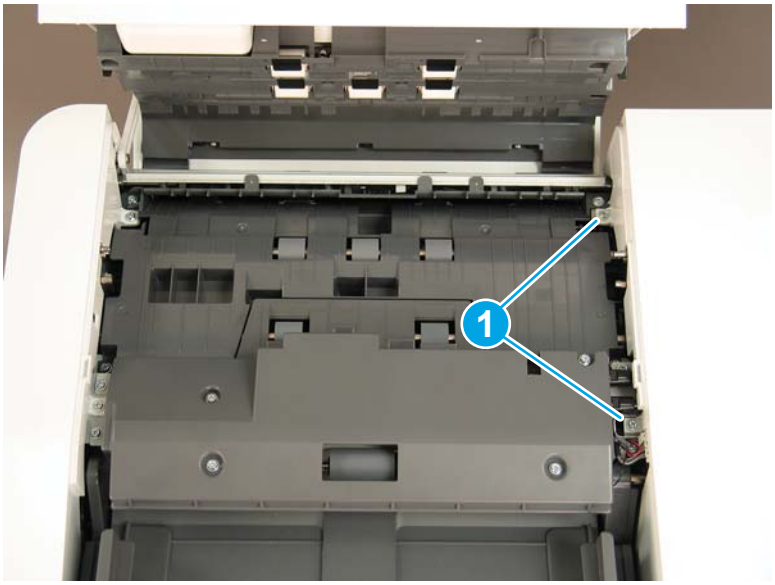
Figure 3-724 Remove the document feeder front cover bottom screws



Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover

1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 3-725 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws



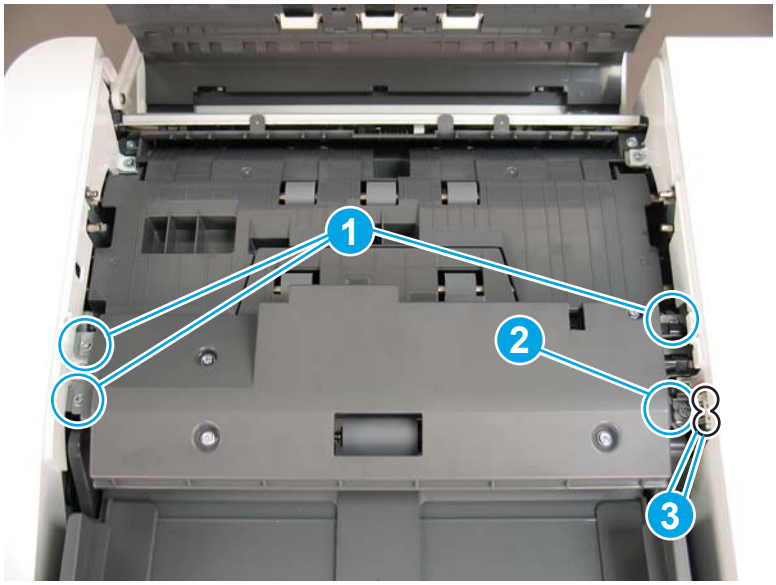
2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover, and then remove the document feeder back cover.

Figure 3-726 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws

Step 3: Remove the document feeder pickup and feed assembly

▲ Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2, including one ground wire), and then remove the pickup roller assembly.

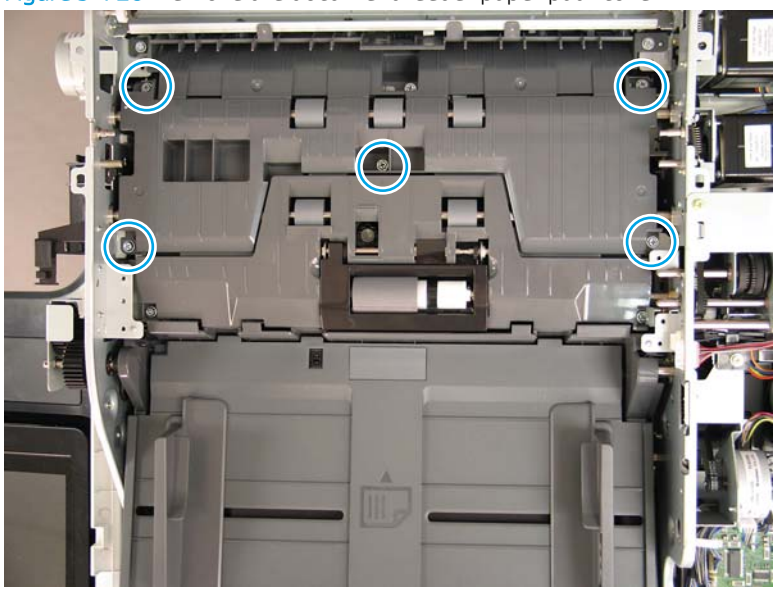
Figure 3-727 Remove the pickup roller assembly



Step 4: Remove the paper path cover

▲ Remove five screws, and then remove the paper path cover.

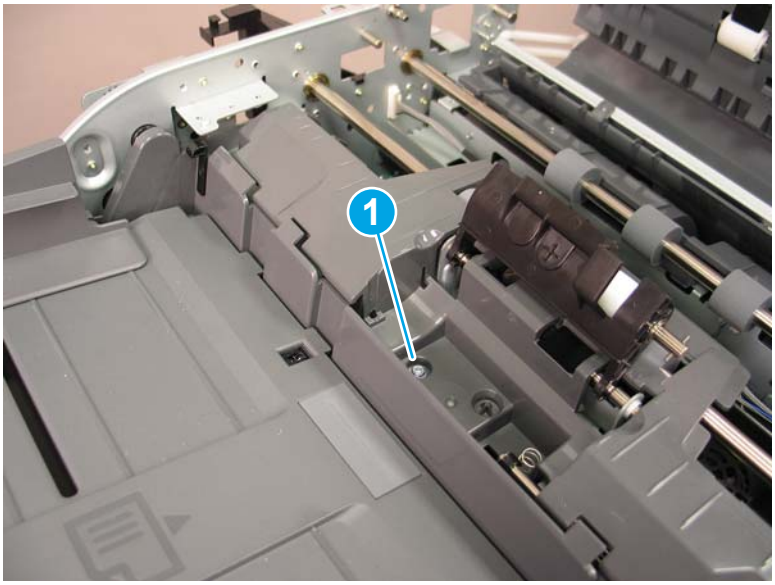
Figure 3-728 Remove the document feeder paper path cover



Step 5: Remove the ultrasonic sensor with PCA

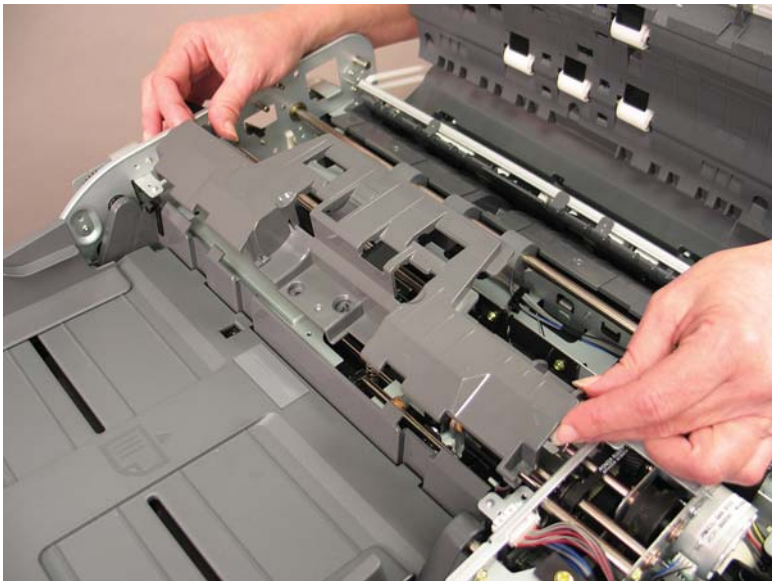
1. Remove the separation roller, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 3-729 Remove one screw



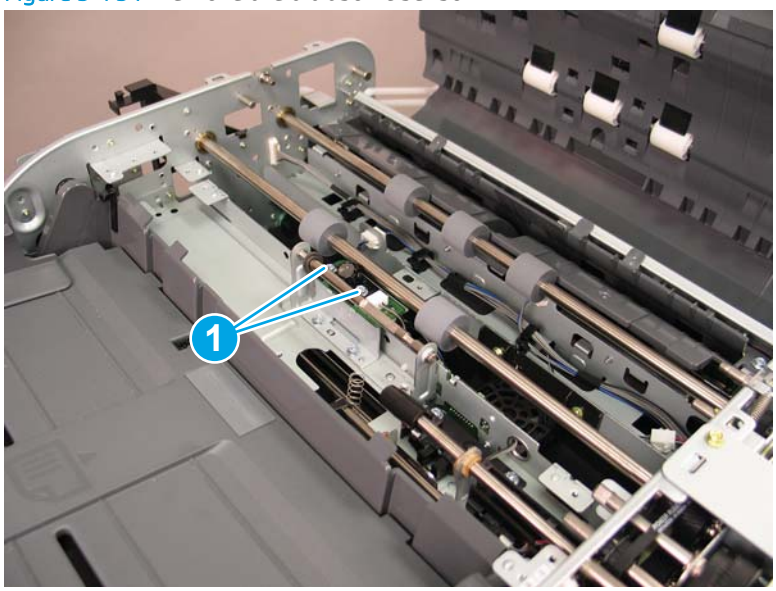
2. Remove the pick/feed cover.

Figure 3-730 Remove the pick/feed cover



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the ultrasonic sensor.

Figure 3-731 Remove the ultrasonic sensor



Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

White backing

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the white backing

- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the ADF white backing.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

White backing part number	
SAM-JC63-05238A	ADF, white foam

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

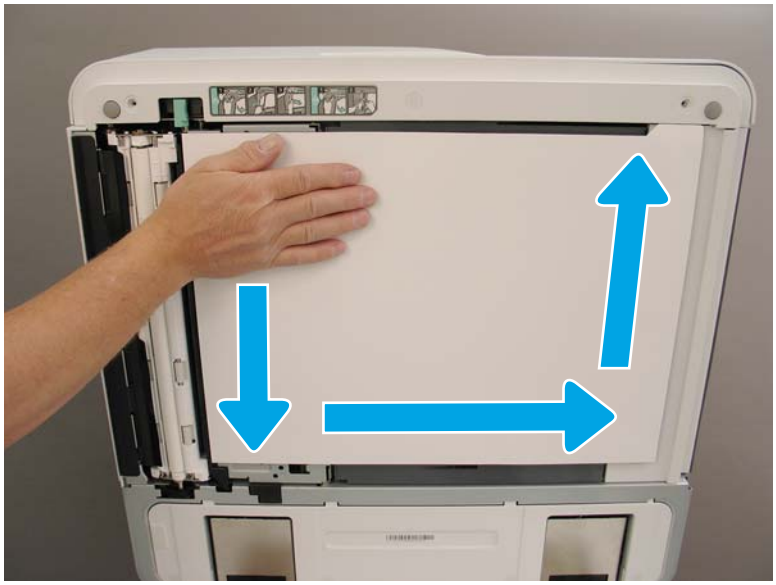
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the white backing

White backing

1. Open the document feeder cover.
2. Peel the white backing away to remove.
3. Position the new white backing on the scanner glass.
4. Replace any damaged or missing velcro tabs by positioning them on the new white backing.

5. Close the document feeder cover to attach the white backing.
6. Open the cover again and smooth the white backing.



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Scanner unit (image scanner unit)

Scanner whole unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the upper rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the flow ADF whole unit
- Step 4: Remove the control panel bezel
- Step 5: Remove the control panel
- Step 6: Remove the keyboard (z bundles)
- Step 7: Remove the scanner whole unit
- Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the scanner whole unit.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Scanner whole unit part number	
SAM-JC97-04520C	Scanner whole unit part number

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.

- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

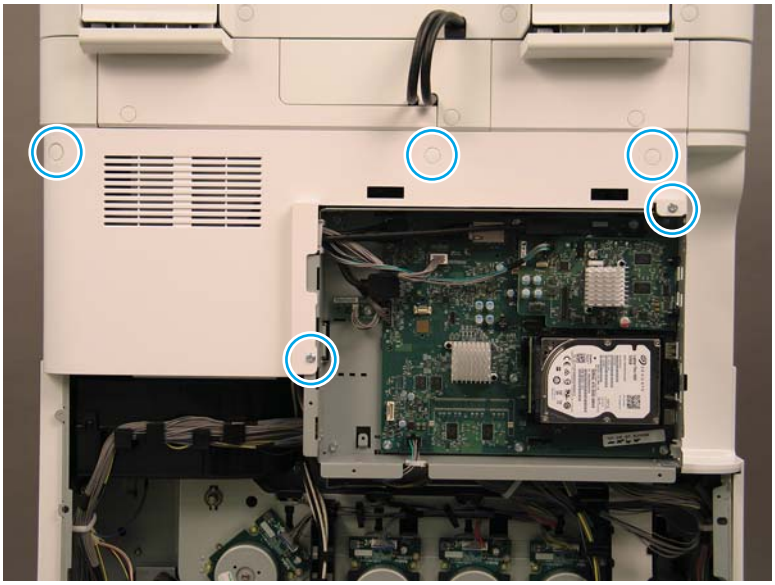
▲ Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 3-732 Remove the formatter cover

Step 2: Remove the upper rear cover

▲ Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-733 Remove the upper rear cover



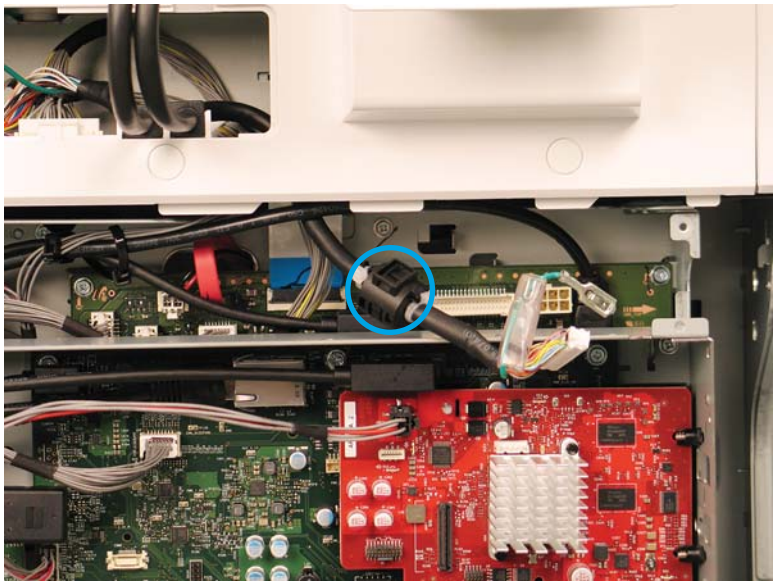
Step 3: Remove the flow ADF whole unit

1. Open the document feeder cover, and then remove the document feeder connector cover.

Figure 3-734 Remove document feeder connector cover

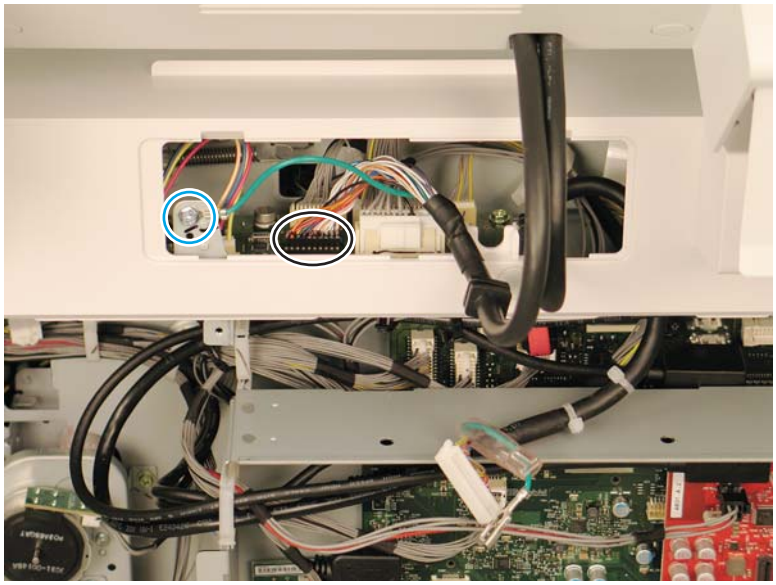
2. Remove the plastic cable choke from the wire harness, and then disconnect the document feeder harness from the main board. Disconnect the insulated ground wire from the chassis.

Figure 3-735 Remove the cable choke



3. Disconnect the document feeder harness from the scan joint board. Remove one connector and one grounding wire.

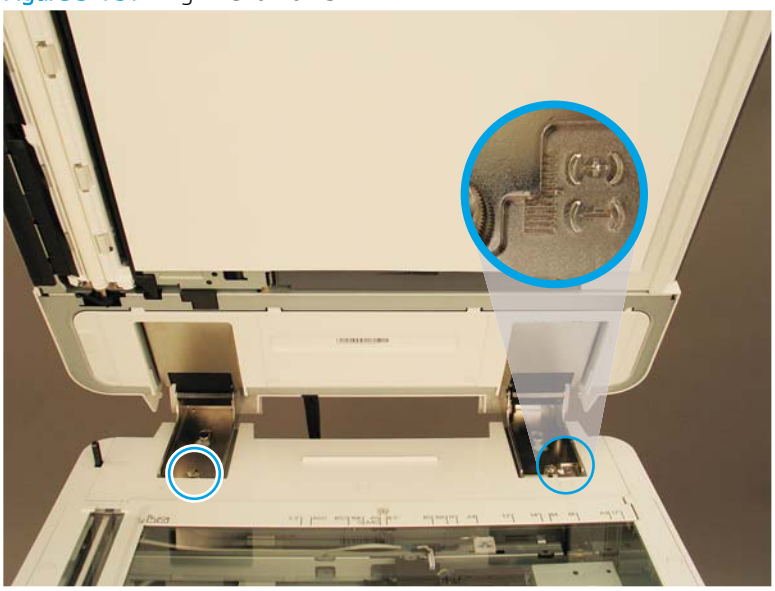
Figure 3-736 Disconnect document feeder harness



4. Release two hinge stops on the back of the document feeder to allow the document feeder to open to a full 90°.

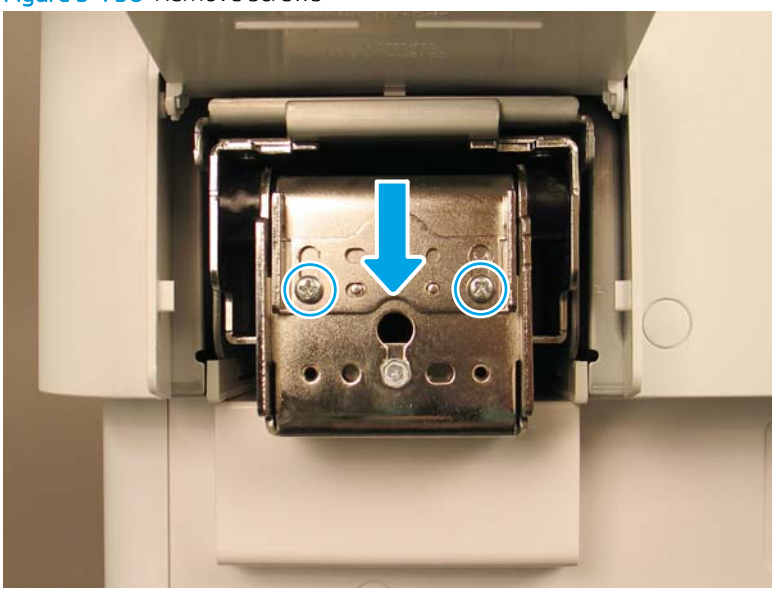
IMPORTANT: Note the alignment marks on the hinge stops. Any new document feeder must be reinstalled with the same alignment.

Figure 3-737 Alignment marks



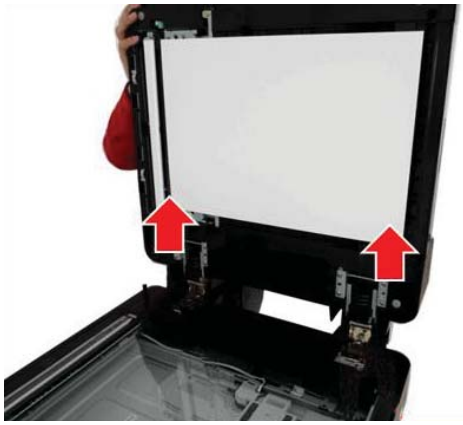
5. Remove two screws on each hinge stop.

Figure 3-738 Remove screws



6. Pull back and then lift up to release the document feeder unit.

Figure 3-739 Release the document feeder



NOTE: Complete a shading test and a skew alignment after replacing the document feeder unit.

Step 4: Remove the control panel bezel

1. Open the document feeder, and then remove three screws.

Figure 3-740 Remove the document feeder bezel

2. Place the control panel in the upright position.
3. Gently pry the control-panel bezel from the center screw hole, and then pry from the center of the control-panel bezel to the edges to release.

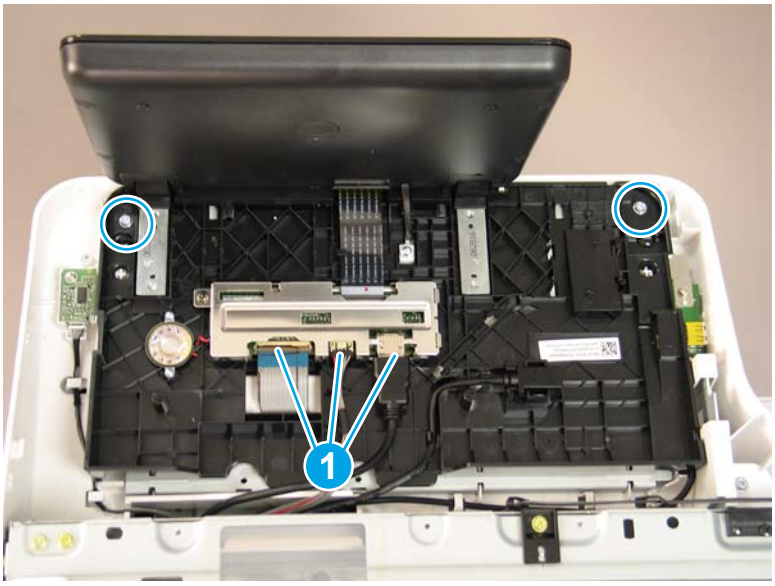
CAUTION: Do not pry against the scanner glass when removing the control-panel bezel.

Step 5: Remove the control panel

1. Place the control panel in the upright position.

2. Disconnect one FFC, one connector, and one HDMI connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws on the control-panel frame.

Figure 3-741 Remove the control panel screws and disconnect connectors



3. Remove the USB interconnect cable from its retainer and reroute out of the way.

Figure 3-742 Remove the USB interconnect cable

4. Lift the control panel up from the front to release the tabs at the rear, and then remove the control panel.

Reinstallation tip: Align the four tabs at the rear or control panel, and then snap in the control panel.

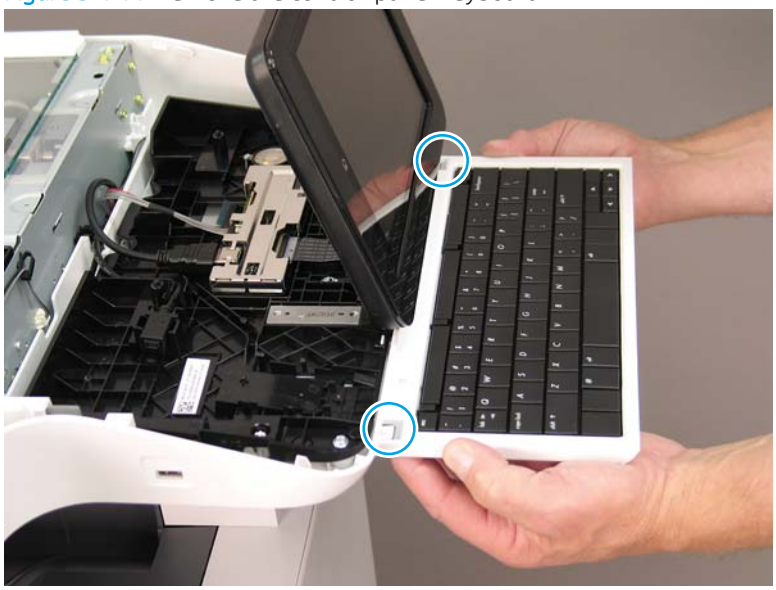
Step 6: Remove the keyboard (z bundles)

1. Disconnect one FFC.

Figure 3-743 Disconnect one FFC

2. Slide the keyboard out, and then depress two latches to remove the keyboard.

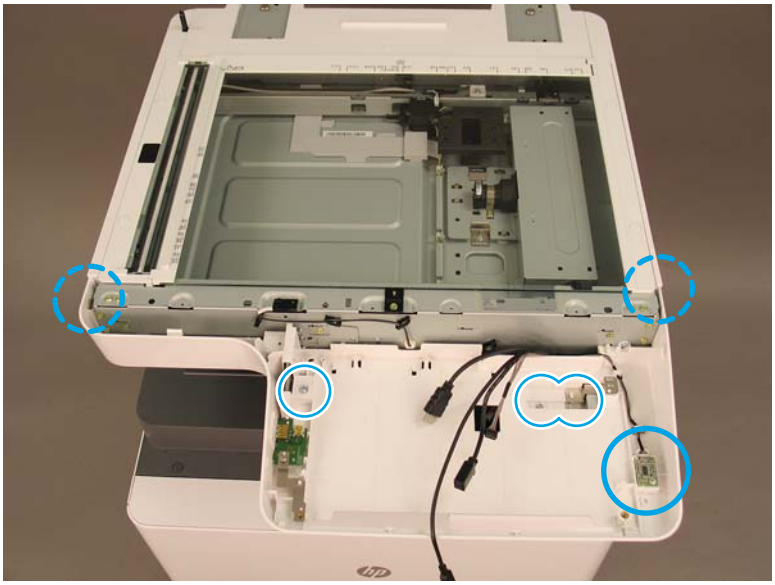
Figure 3-744 Remove the control-panel keyboard



Step 7: Remove the scanner whole unit

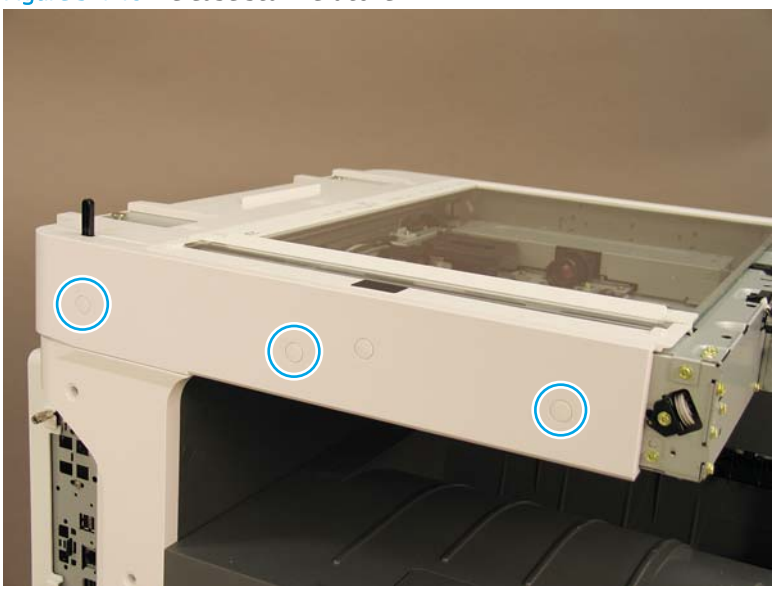
1. Remove six screw-caps and six screws. It might be necessary to use leverage near the left hinge and then pull the cover toward the back.

Figure 3-745 Remove screw-caps and screws and release scan-front cover



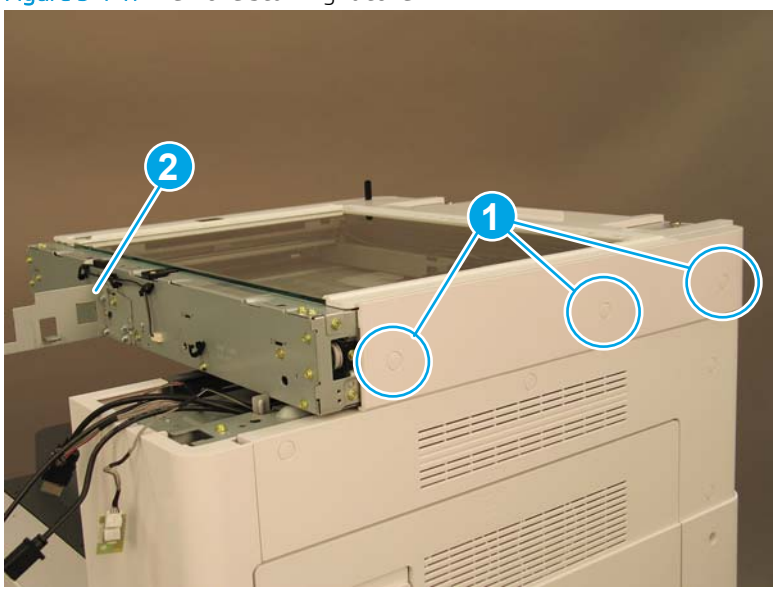
2. Remove three screw-caps and three screws. Release the scan-left cover.

Figure 3-746 Release scan-left cover



3. Remove three screw-caps and three screws (callout 1). Release the scan-right cover.

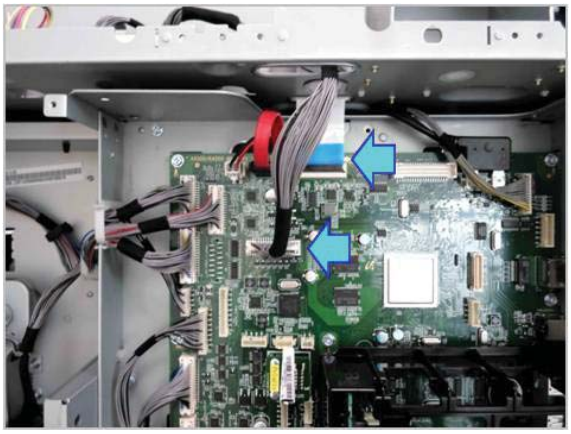
Figure 3-747 Remove scan-right cover



NOTE: At the front of the scanner, remove the bracket (callout 2) and install it on the new scanner whole unit.

4. Disconnect the two scan cables and one FFC at the top of the main board.

Figure 3-748 Disconnect scan cables



5. Remove three screws from the left.

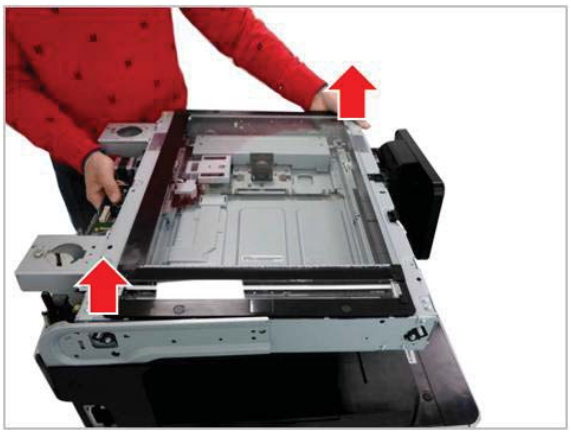
Figure 3-749 Remove screws

6. Remove two screws from the right.

Figure 3-750 Remove screws

7. Lift up and release the image scanner unit.

Figure 3-751 Lift up and release image scanner unit



NOTE: After reassembly, utilize the target to adjust the scanner location as necessary.

Reinstallation tip: Reinstall the scan bed by lowering the left side first and then lower the right. Align the screw holes on the right, and then install the screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reinstall the lower cover and ensure the cables are routed through the opening for the control panel and the bracket is properly aligned in the cover.

Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Scan glass

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the scan glass
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the scanner glass.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Scanner glass part number	
SAM-JC97-04522B	Scanner glass part number

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

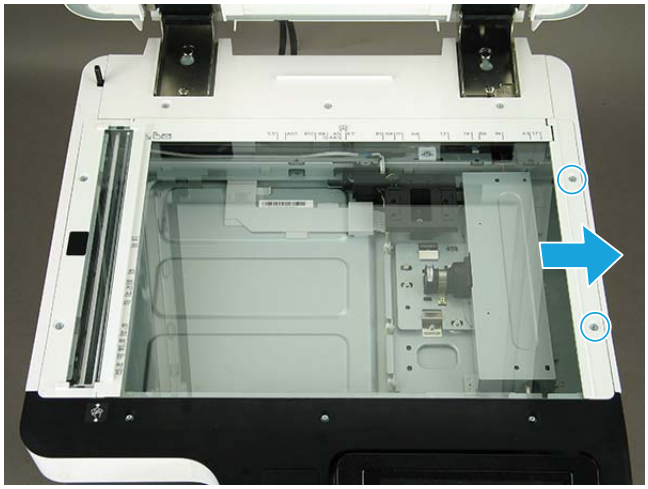
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the scan glass

- Open the document-feeder cover, remove two screws, and then slide the scan glass to the right to remove it.

Figure 3-752 Remove scan glass



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

LED lamp module

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the upper rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the flow ADF whole unit
- Step 4: Remove the scanner glass
- Step 5: Remove the LED lamp module
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the LED lamp module assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

LED lamp module assembly part number	
SAM-JC97-04521A	LED lamp module assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

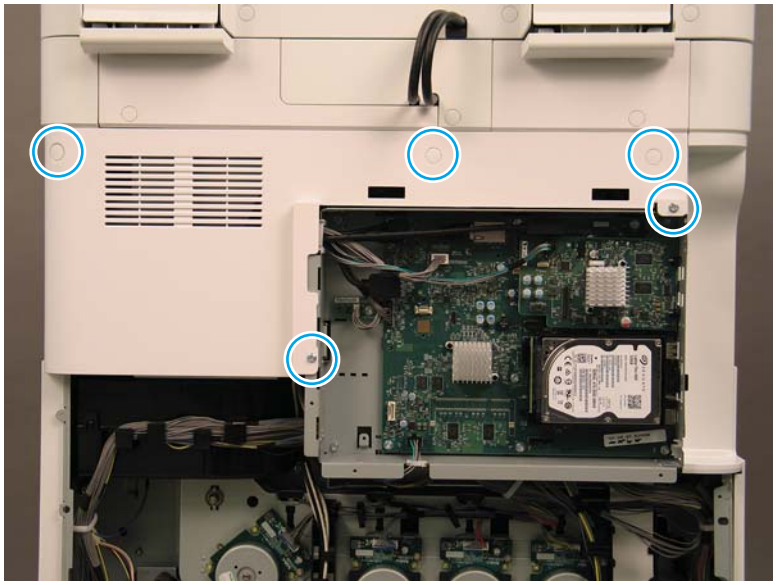
- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 3-753 Remove the formatter cover

Step 2: Remove the upper rear cover

- Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-754 Remove the upper rear cover



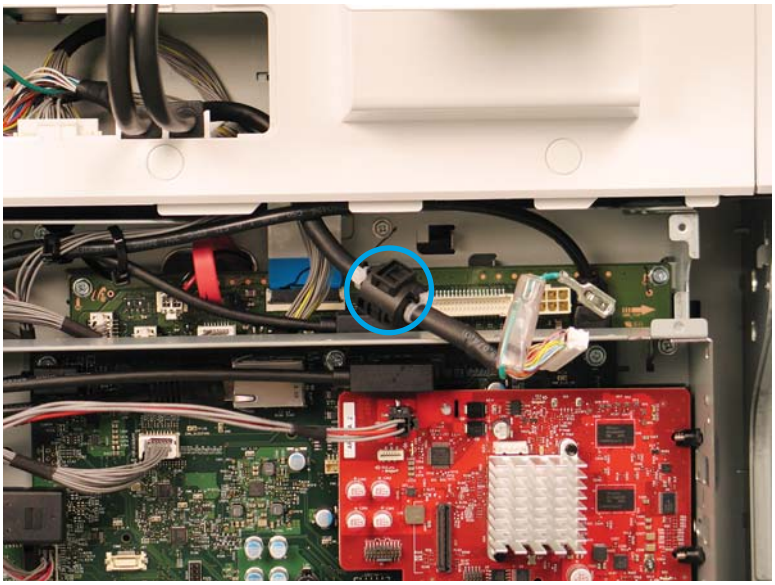
Step 3: Remove the flow ADF whole unit

1. Open the document feeder cover, and then remove the document feeder connector cover.

Figure 3-755 Remove document feeder connector cover

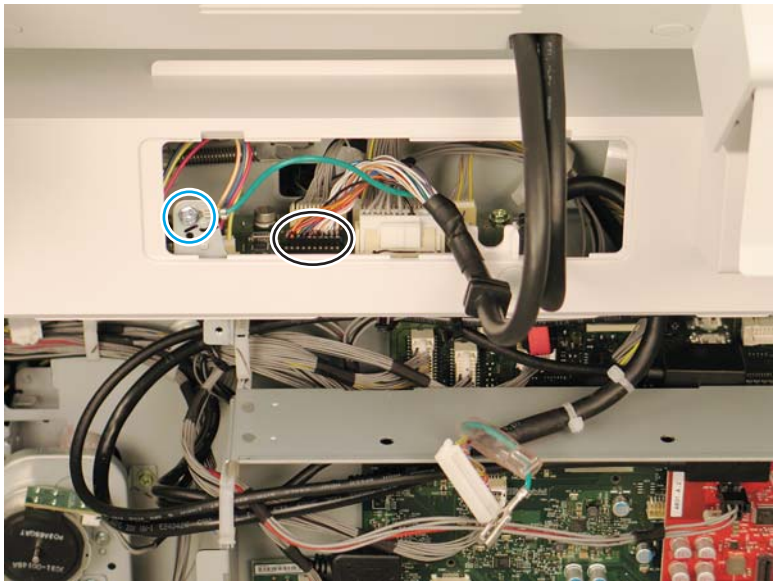
2. Remove the plastic cable choke from the wire harness, and then disconnect the document feeder harness from the main board. Disconnect the insulated ground wire from the chassis.

Figure 3-756 Remove the cable choke



3. Disconnect the document feeder harness from the scan joint board. Remove one connector and one grounding wire.

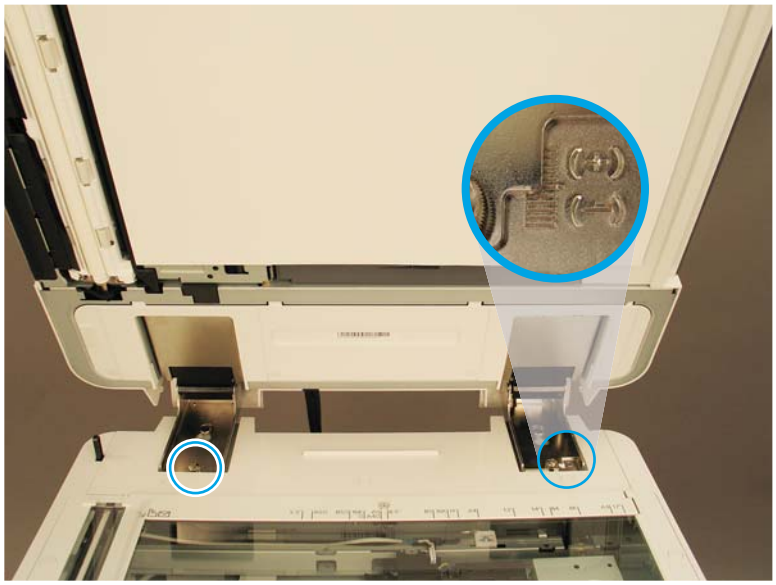
Figure 3-757 Disconnect document feeder harness



4. Release two hinge stops on the back of the document feeder to allow the document feeder to open to a full 90°.

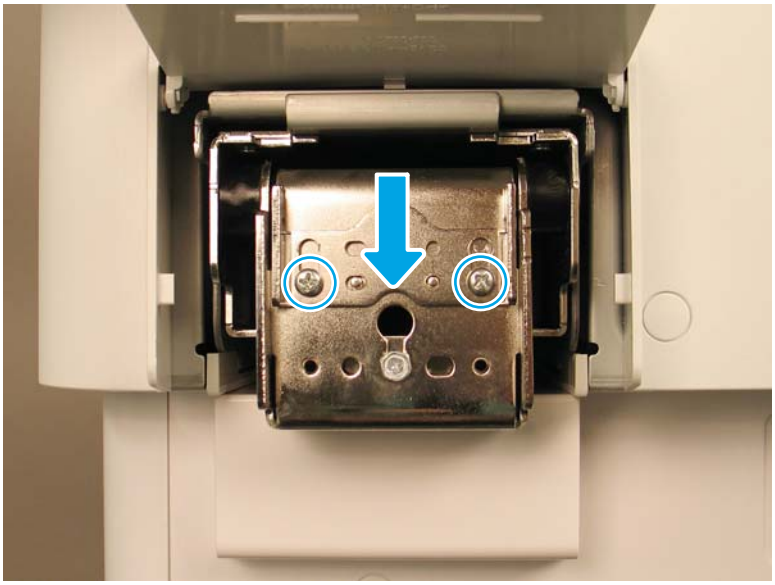
IMPORTANT: Note the alignment marks on the hinge stops. Any new document feeder must be reinstalled with the same alignment.

Figure 3-758 Alignment marks



5. Remove two screws on each hinge stop.

Figure 3-759 Remove screws



6. Pull back and then lift up to release the document feeder unit.

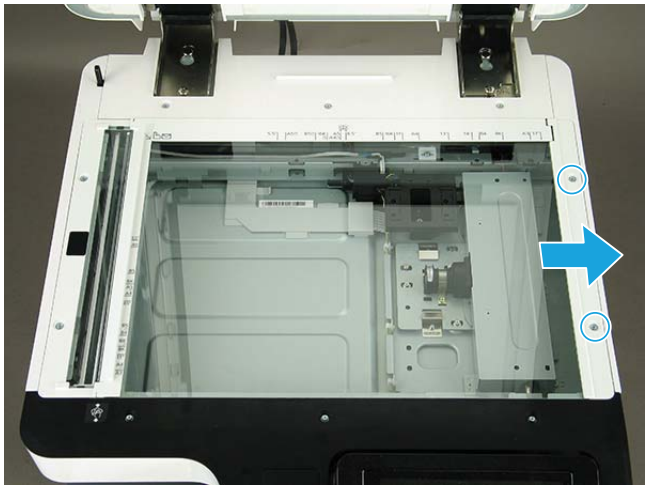
Figure 3-760 Release the document feeder

NOTE: Complete a shading test and a skew alignment after replacing the document feeder unit.

Step 4: Remove the scanner glass

▲ Open the document-feeder cover, remove two screws, and then slide the scan glass to the right to remove it.

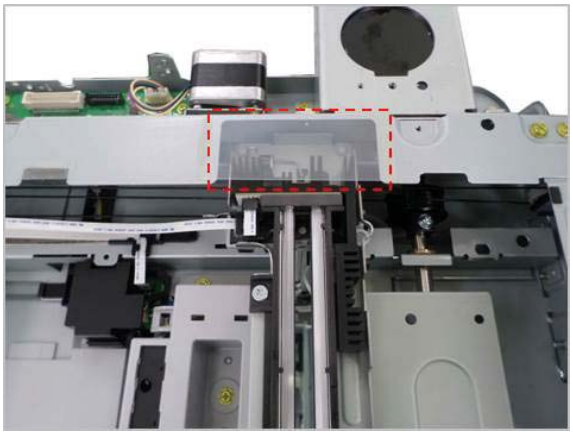
Figure 3-761 Remove scan glass



Step 5: Remove the LED lamp module

1. Remove the transparent tape.

   Figure 3-762 Remove transparent tape

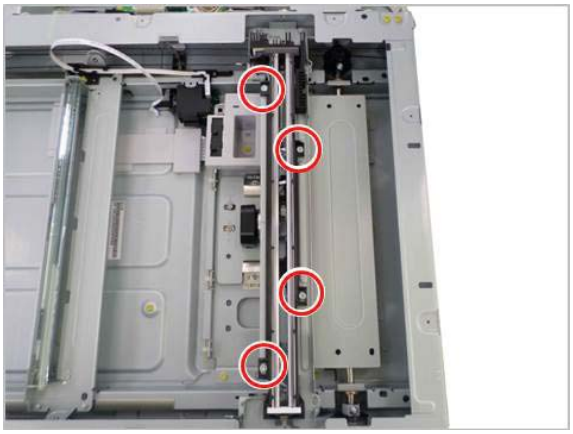
   

2. Disconnect the flat cable.

   Figure 3-763 Disconnect cable

3. Remove four screws. Release the LED lamp module.

   Figure 3-764 Remove screws and release LED lamp module

Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Scanner imaging unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the scanner glass
- Step 2: Remove the scanner imaging unit
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the scanner imaging unit assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Scanner imaging unit assembly part number	
SAM-JC97-04523B	Scanner imaging unit assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

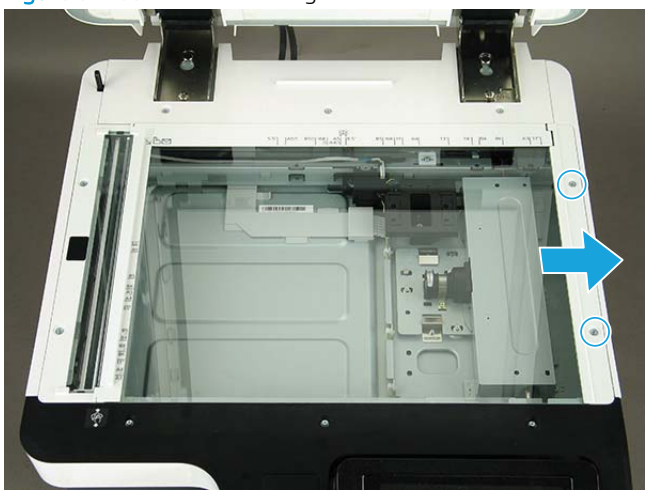
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the scanner glass

- Open the document-feeder cover, remove two screws, and then slide the scan glass to the right to remove it.

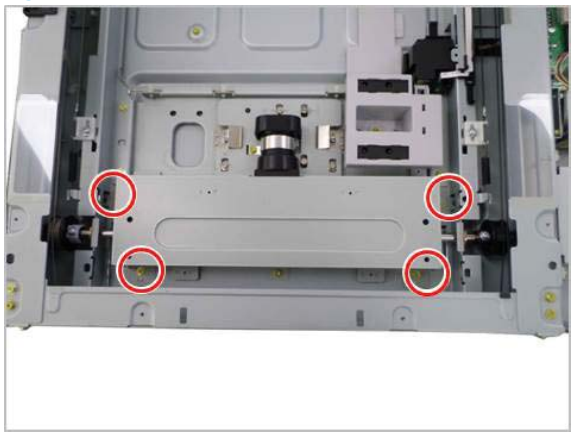
Figure 3-765 Remove scan glass



Step 2: Remove the scanner imaging unit

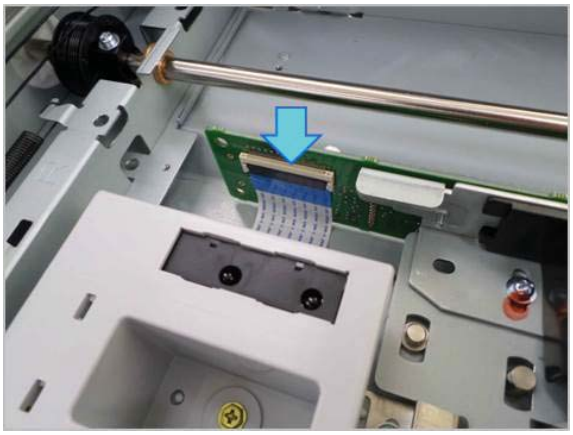
1. Remove four screws, and then release the imaging unit cover.

Figure 3-766 Remove screws and release imaging unit cover



2. Disconnect the flat cable.

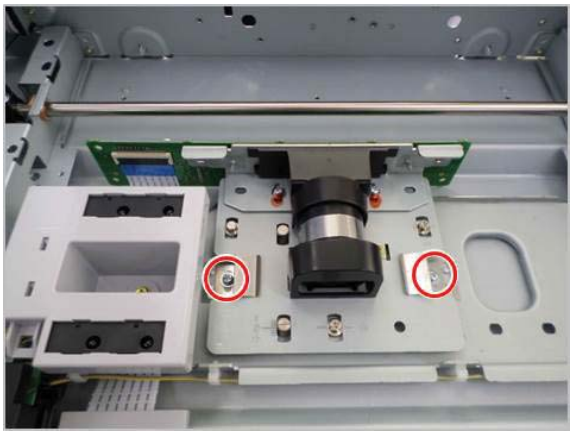
Figure 3-767 Disconnect flat cable



3. Remove two screws and release the scanner imaging unit.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not remove or adjust the other two screws shown as they require factory setting only.

Figure 3-768 Remove screws and release scanner imaging unit



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Scan joint board

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the upper rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the document feeder whole unit
- Step 4: Remove the scan joint board
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Scan joint board assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Scan joint board assembly part number	
SAM-JC92-02964A	Flow ADF PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

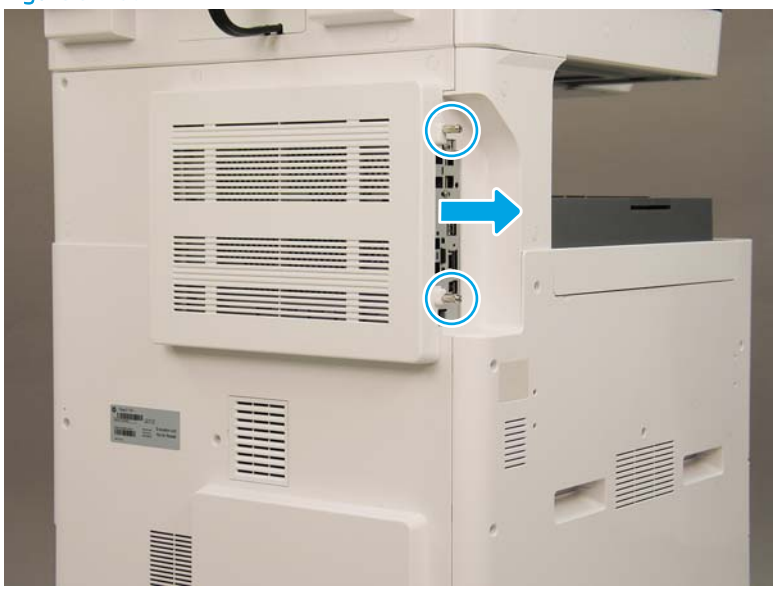
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

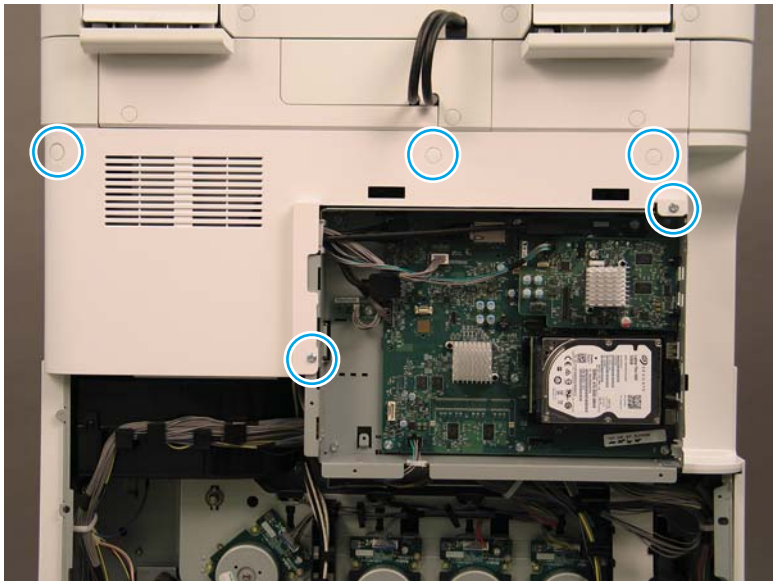
Figure 3-769 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the upper rear cover

- Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-770 Remove the upper rear cover



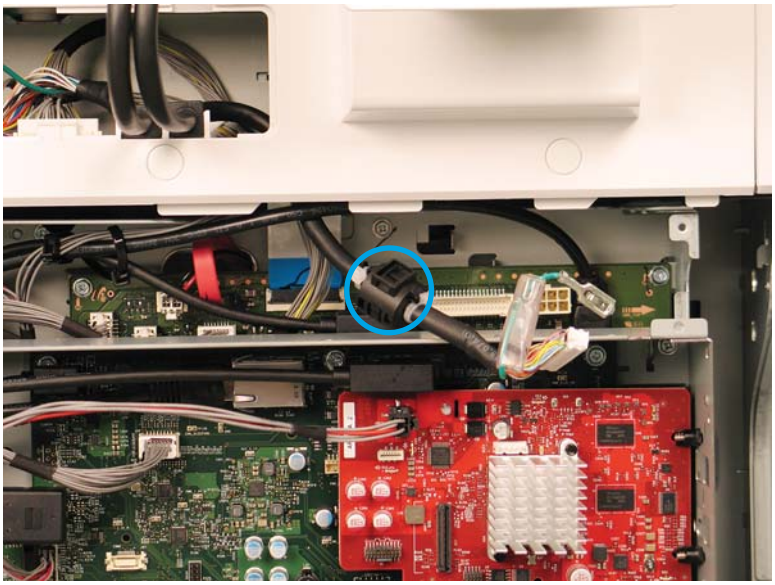
Step 3: Remove the document feeder whole unit

1. Open the document feeder cover, and then remove the document feeder connector cover.

Figure 3-771 Remove document feeder connector cover

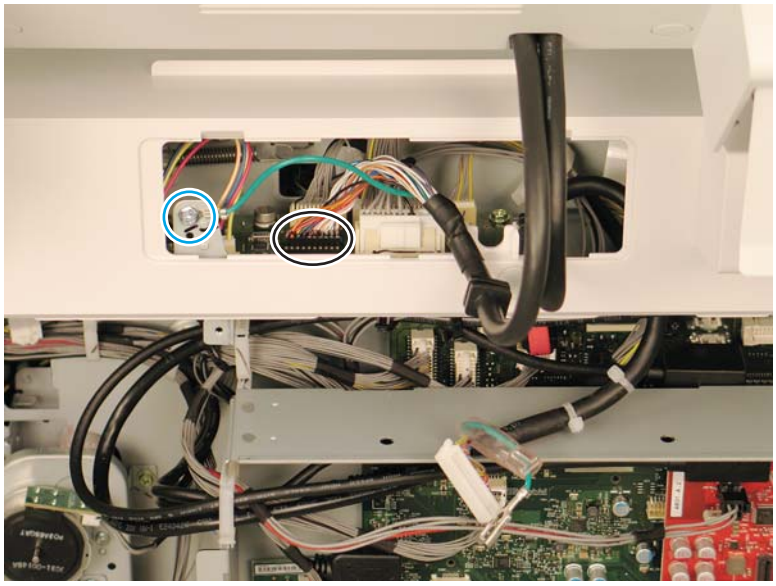
2. Remove the plastic cable choke from the wire harness, and then disconnect the document feeder harness from the main board. Disconnect the insulated ground wire from the chassis.

Figure 3-772 Remove the cable choke



3. Disconnect the document feeder harness from the scan joint board. Remove one connector and one grounding wire.

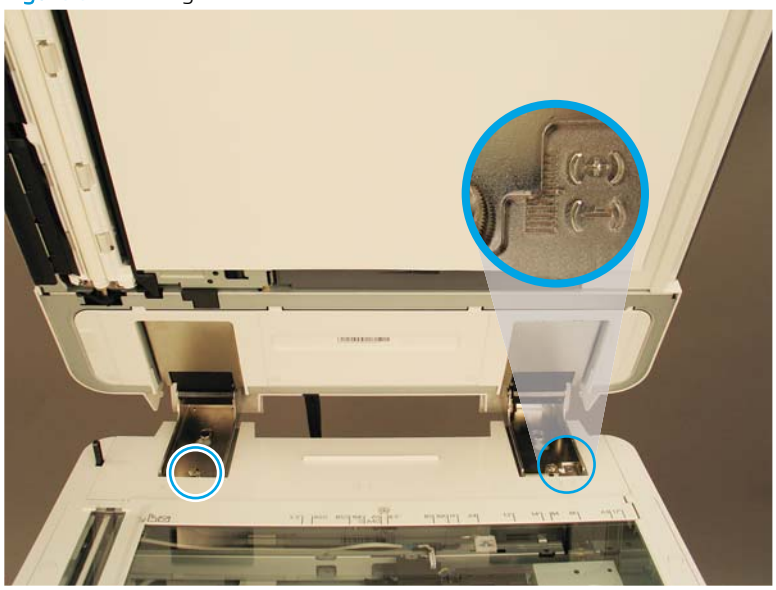
Figure 3-773 Disconnect document feeder harness



4. Release two hinge stops on the back of the document feeder to allow the document feeder to open to a full 90°.

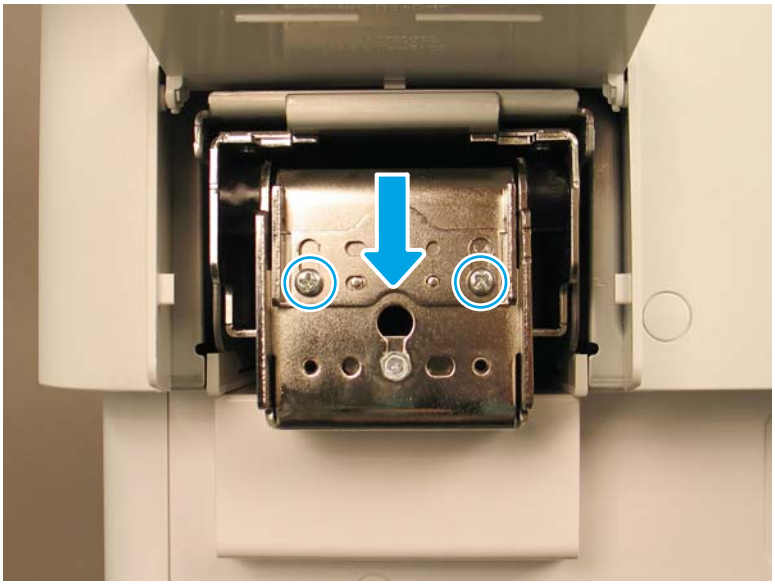
IMPORTANT: Note the alignment marks on the hinge stops. Any new document feeder must be reinstalled with the same alignment.

Figure 3-774 Alignment marks



5. Remove two screws on each hinge stop.

Figure 3-775 Remove screws



6. Pull back and then lift up to release the document feeder unit.

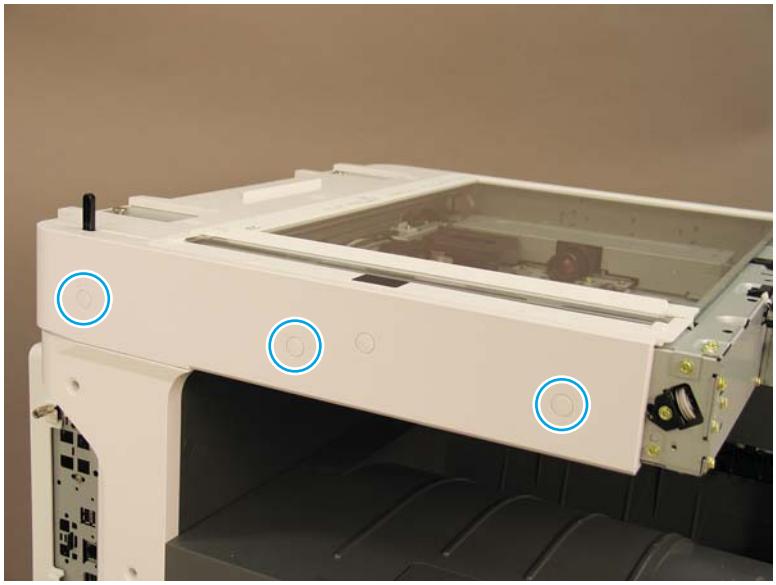
Figure 3-776 Release the document feeder

NOTE: Complete a shading test and a skew alignment after replacing the document feeder unit.

Step 4: Remove the scan joint board

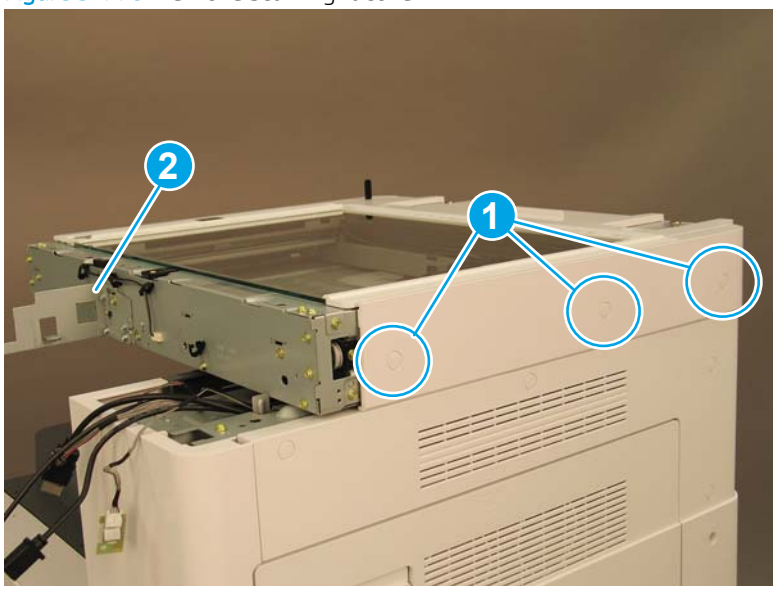
1. Remove three screw-caps and three screws. Release the scan-left cover.

Figure 3-777 Release scan-left cover



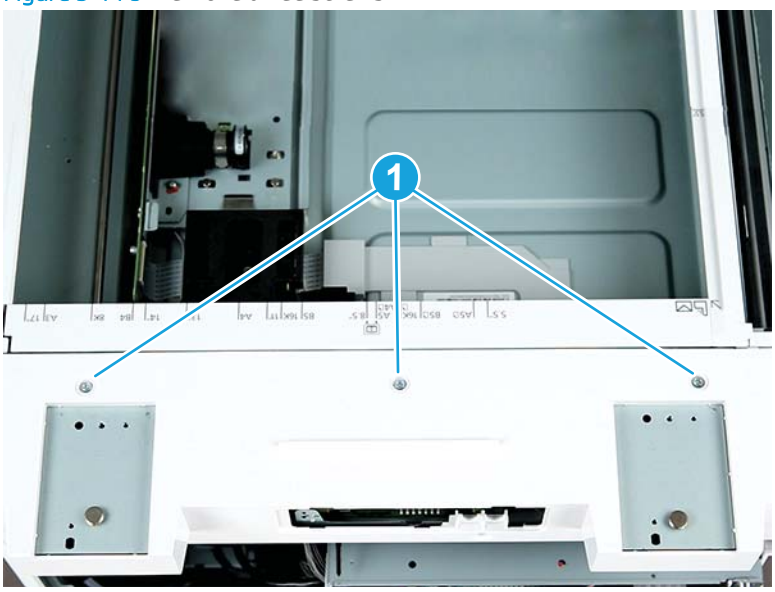
2. Remove three screw-caps and three screws, and then remove the scan-right cover.

Figure 3-778 Remove scan-right cover



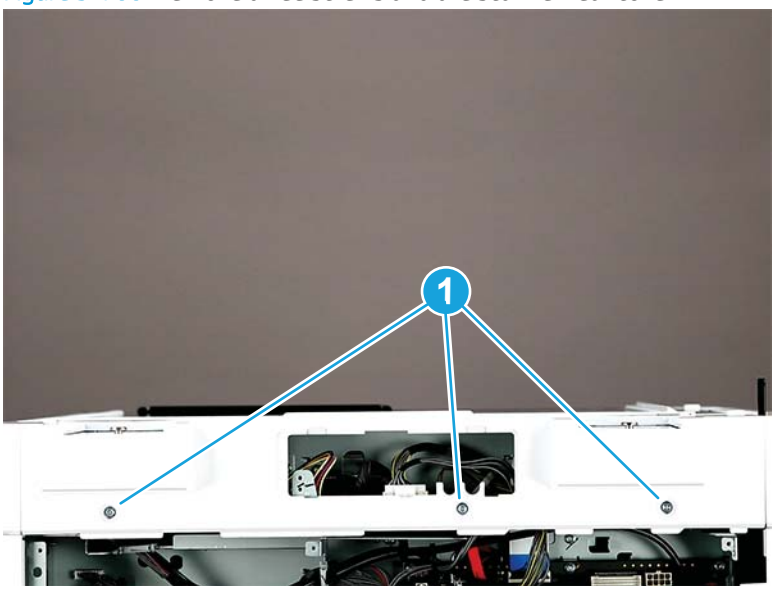
3. At the top of the scanner, remove three screw caps and three screws.

Figure 3-779 Remove three screws



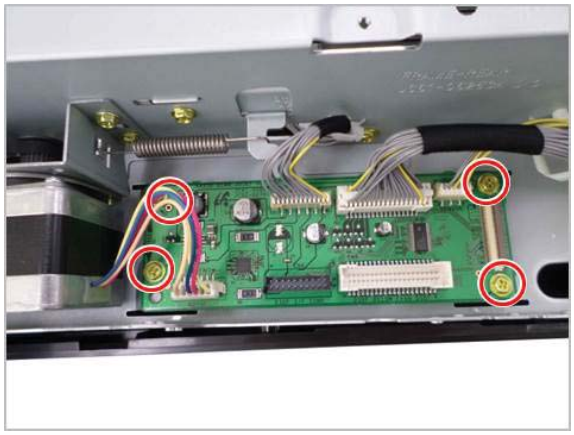
4. At the back of the scanner, remove three screw caps and three screws, and then remove the scan-rear cover.

Figure 3-780 Remove three screws and the scanner rear cover



5. Disconnect all harnesses. Remove four screws, and then release the scan joint board.

Figure 3-781 Remove screws and release scan joint board



NOTE: There are two empty connectors.

Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

APS sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the document feeder whole unit
- Step 2: Remove the scanner glass
- Step 3: Remove the APS sensor
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the APS sensor assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

APS sensor assembly part number	
SAM-JC97-04507A	APS sensor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

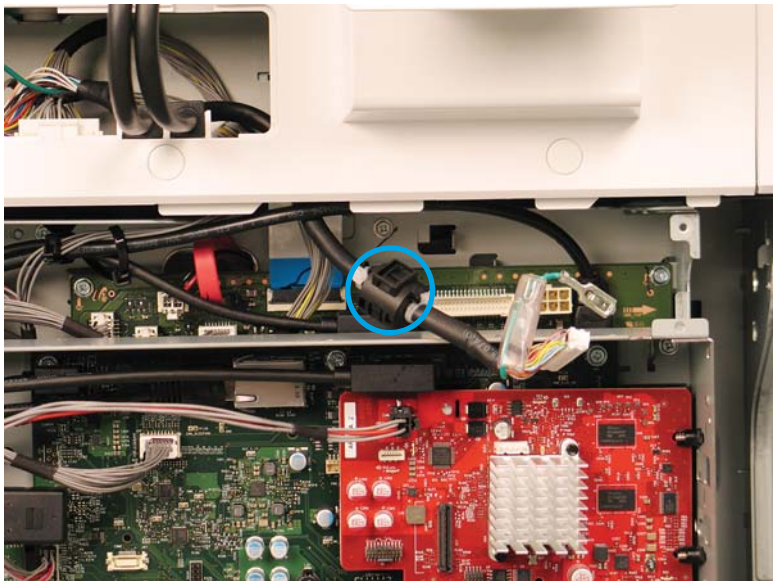
Step 1: Remove the document feeder whole unit

1. Open the document feeder cover, and then remove the document feeder connector cover.

   Figure 3-782 Remove document feeder connector cover

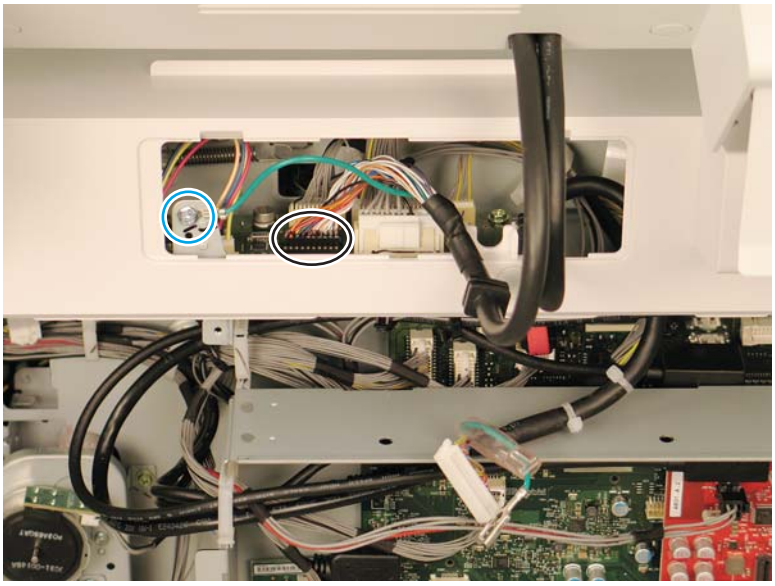
2. Remove the plastic cable choke from the wire harness, and then disconnect the document feeder harness from the main board. Disconnect the insulated ground wire from the chassis.

   Figure 3-783 Remove the cable choke

3. Disconnect the document feeder harness from the scan joint board. Remove one connector and one grounding wire.

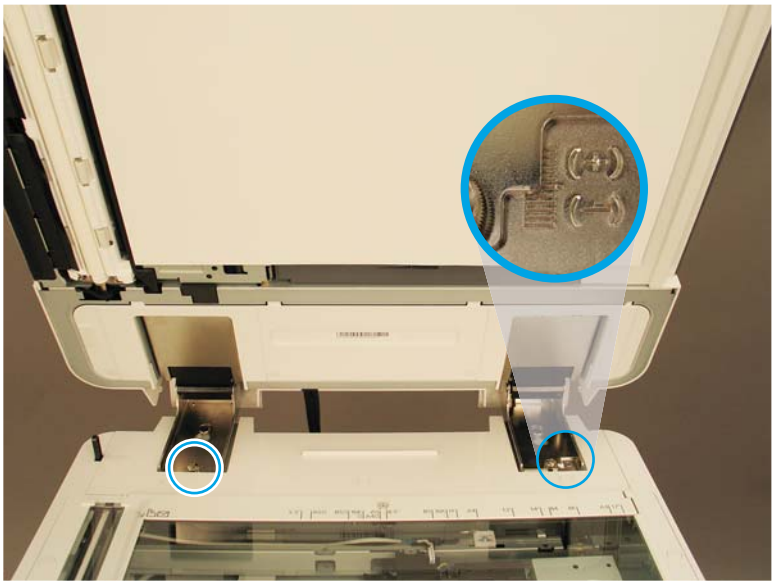
Figure 3-784 Disconnect document feeder harness



4. Release two hinge stops on the back of the document feeder to allow the document feeder to open to a full 90°.

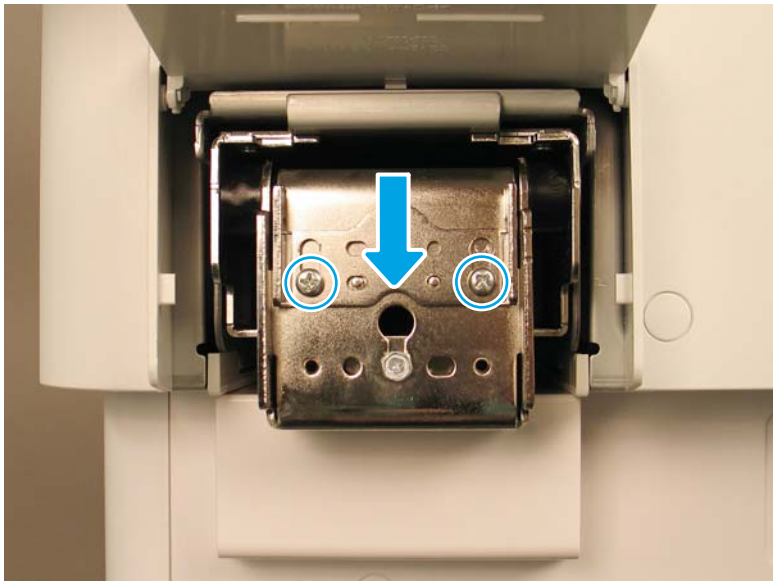
IMPORTANT: Note the alignment marks on the hinge stops. Any new document feeder must be reinstalled with the same alignment.

Figure 3-785 Alignment marks



5. Remove two screws on each hinge stop.

Figure 3-786 Remove screws



6. Pull back and then lift up to release the document feeder unit.

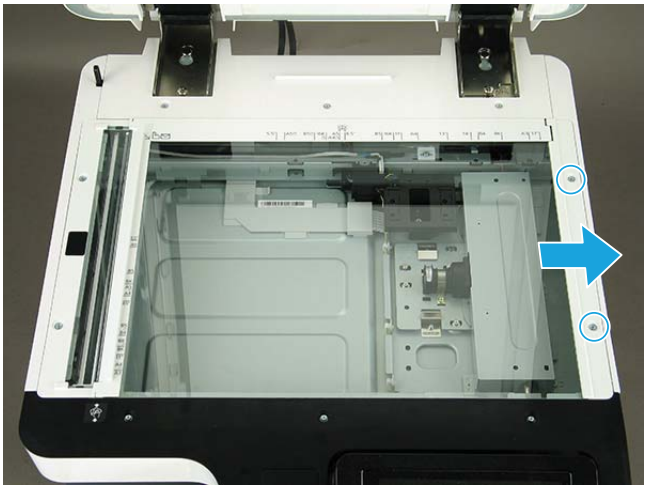
Figure 3-787 Release the document feeder

NOTE: Complete a shading test and a skew alignment after replacing the document feeder unit.

Step 2: Remove the scanner glass

▲ Open the document-feeder cover, remove two screws, and then slide the scan glass to the right to remove it.

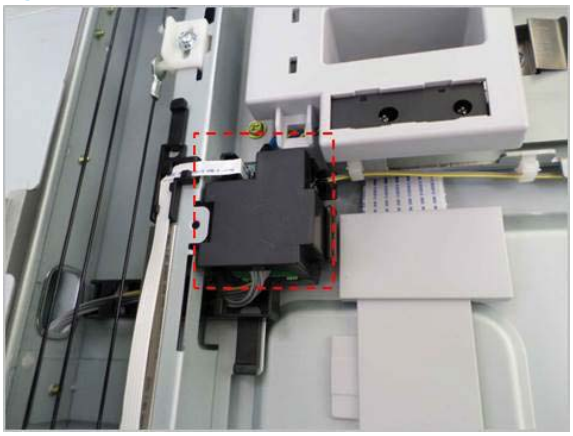
Figure 3-788 Remove scan glass



Step 3: Remove the APS sensor

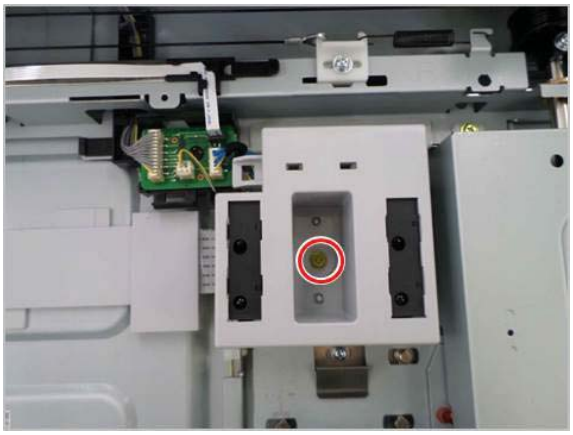
1. Remove the joint board cover.

Figure 3-789 Remove joint board cover



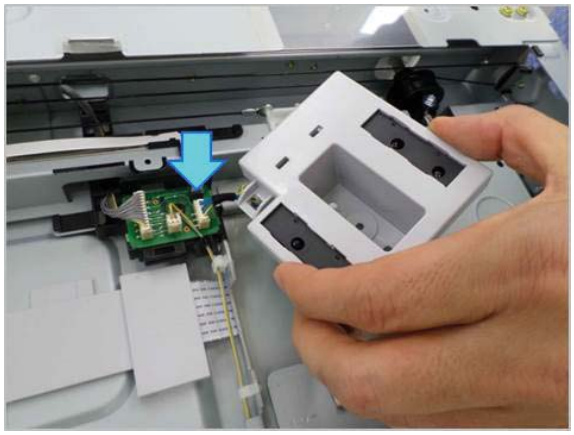
2. Remove one screw.

Figure 3-790 Remove screw



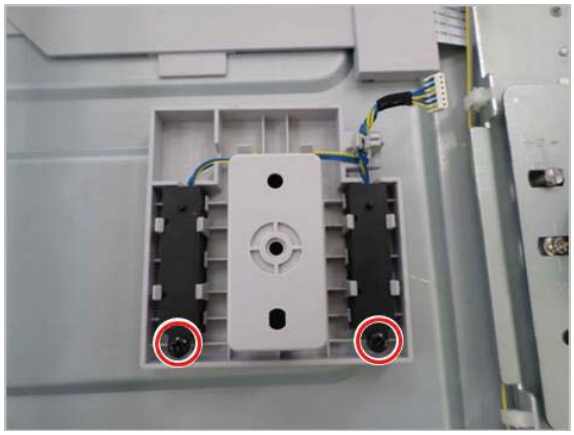
3. Disconnect the harness.

Figure 3-791 Disconnect harness



4. Remove two screws. Release the APS sensor.

Figure 3-792 Remove screws and release APS sensor



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Dual cassette feeder (DCF)

Dual cassette feeder (DCF) right door

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the printer right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the printer right door
- Step 3: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) right door
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the DCF right door.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

DCF right door part number	
SAM-JC90-01387A	DCF right door

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

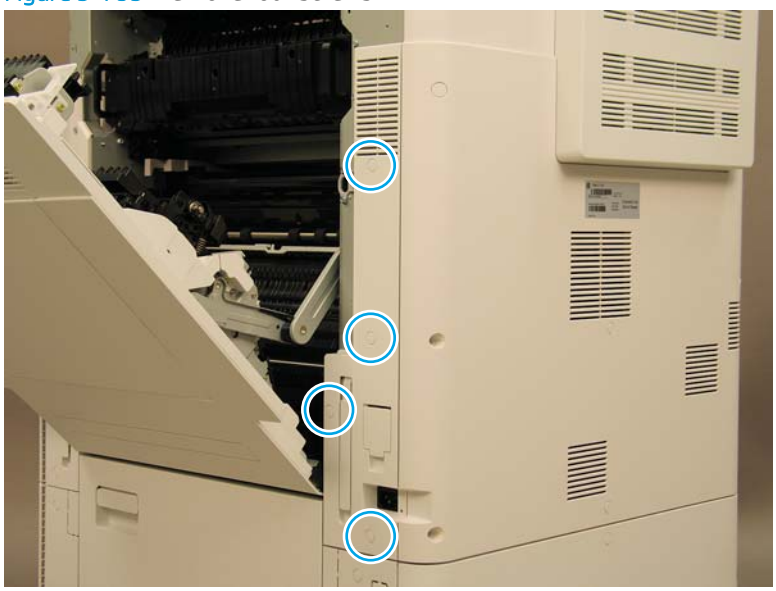
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the printer right rear cover

1. Open the right door.

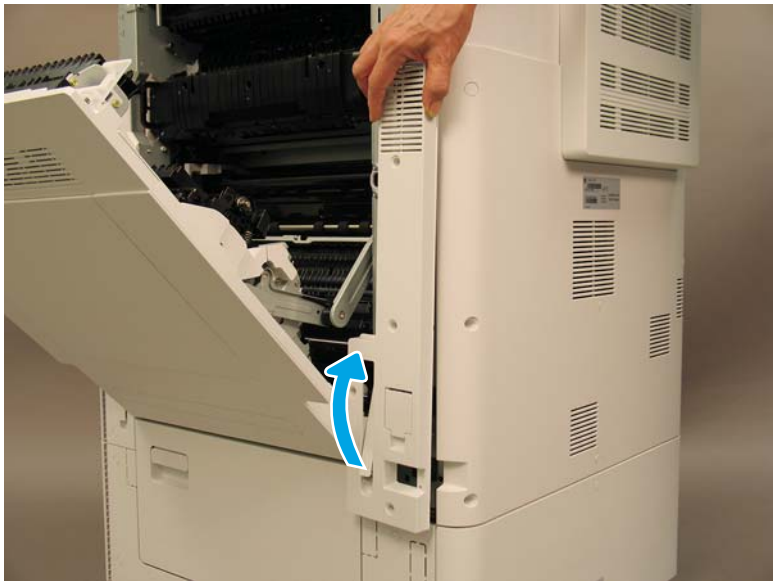
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-793 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

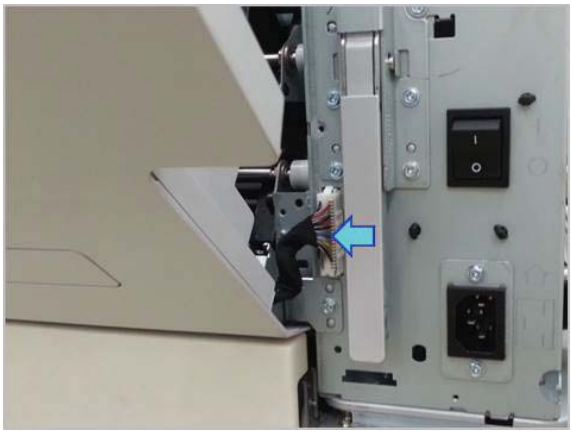
Figure 3-794 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the printer right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

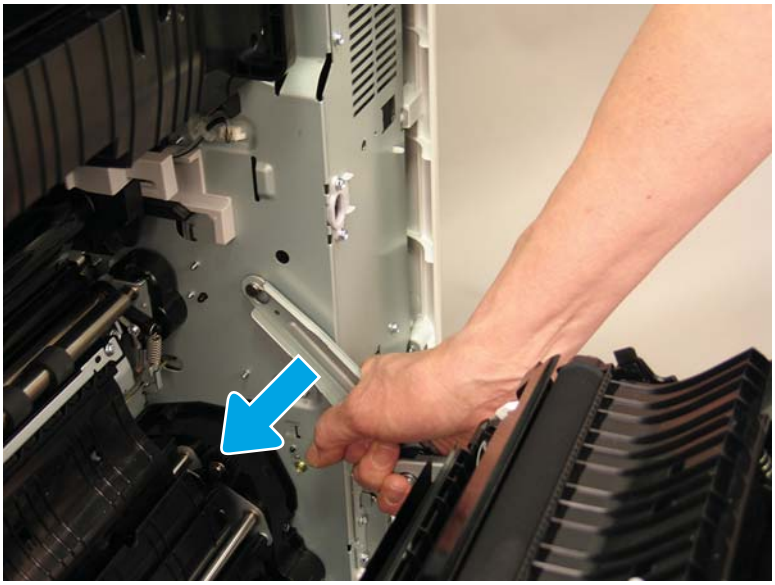
Figure 3-795 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

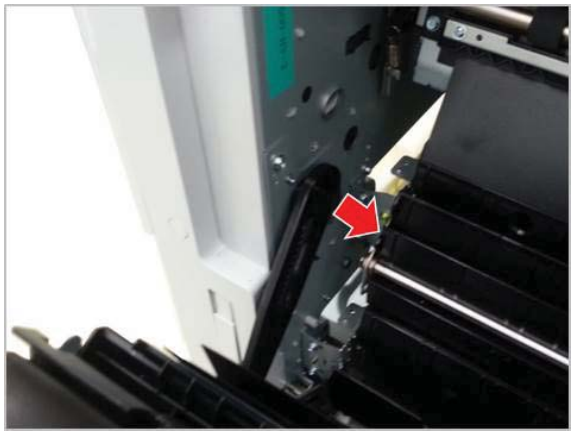
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-796 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

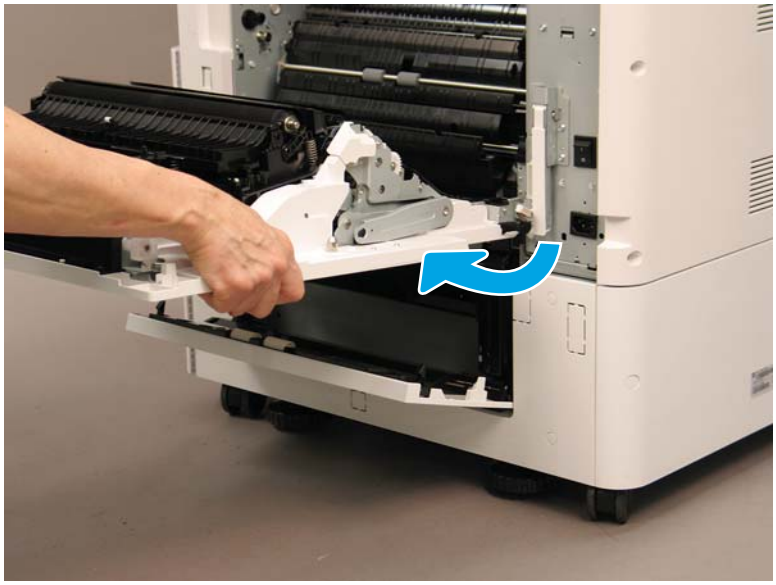
Figure 3-797 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 3-798 Remove the right door



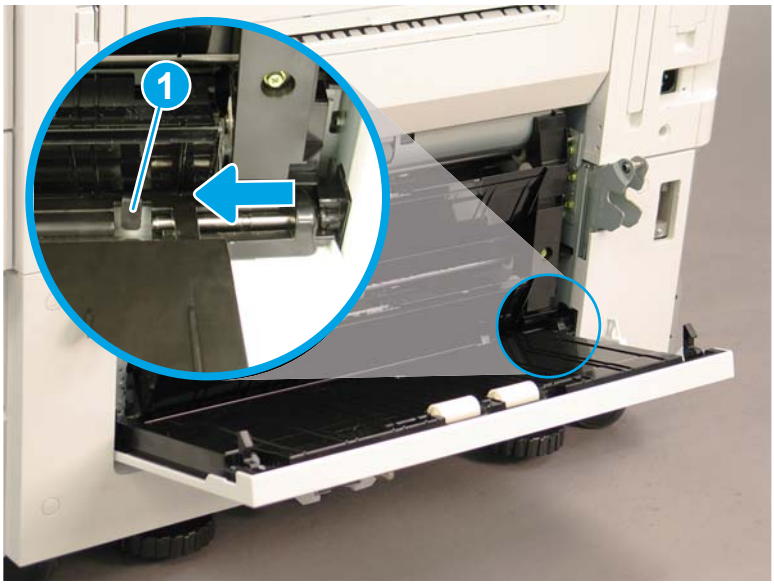
Step 3: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) right door

1. Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the lower right cover.

Figure 3-799 Remove the lower right cover

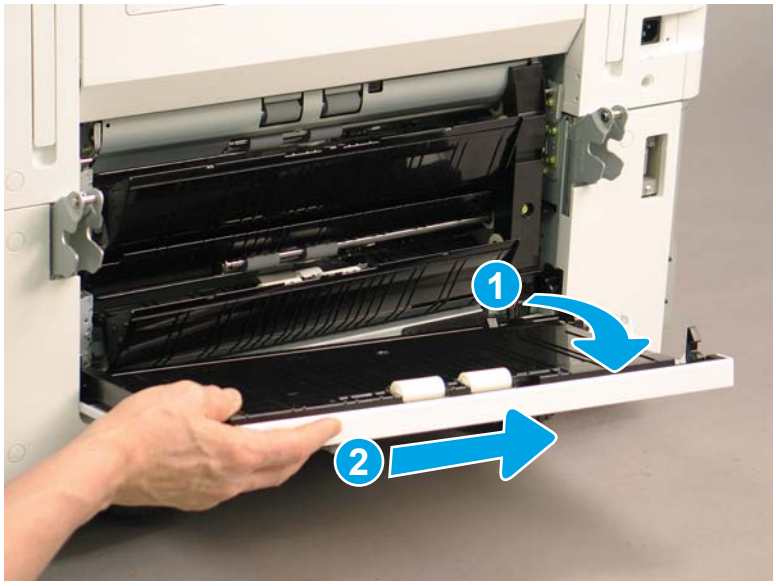
2. Open the DCF right door and slide the hinge pin to the left. Make sure that the pin slides under the tab (callout 1).

Figure 3-800 Slide the hinge pin



3. Rotate the right edge of the door away from the feeder (callout 1), and then slide the door to the right to remove it (callout 2).

Figure 3-801 Remove the DCF right door



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Dual cassette feeder (DCF) motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the DCF rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) motor
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the DCF motor.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

DCF motor part number	
SAM-JC93-01135A	DCF motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the DCF rear cover

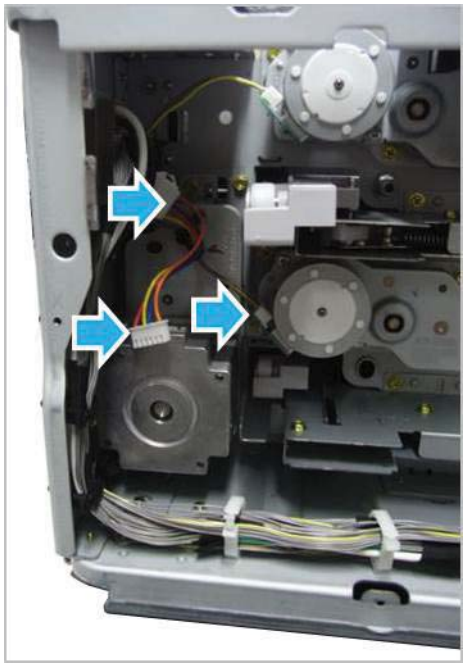
- Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 3-802 Remove the DCF rear cover

Step 2: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) motor

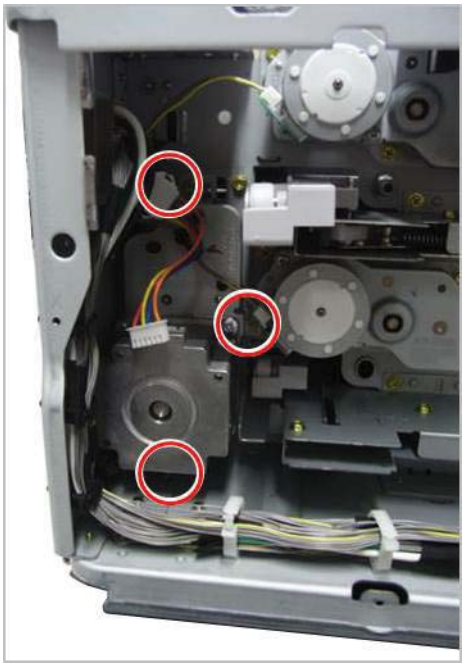
1. Disconnect two connectors, and then open one retainer.

Figure 3-803 Disconnect two connectors and open one retainer



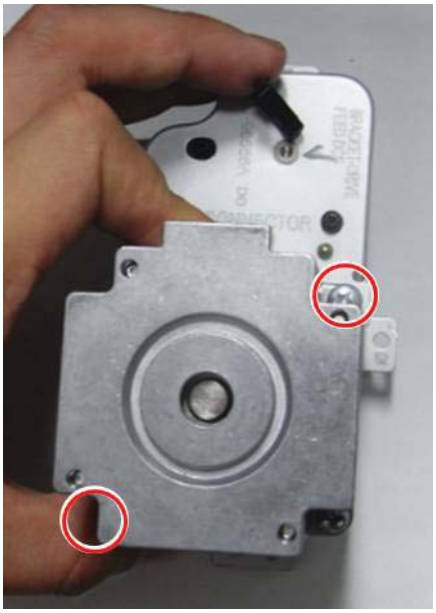
2. Remove three screws, and then remove the feed drive unit.

Figure 3-804 Remove the feed drive unit



3. Remove two screws, and then remove the feed motor.

Figure 3-805 Remove the feed motor



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the DCF rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup motor
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the DCF pickup motor.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

DCF pickup motor part number	
SAM-JC93-01063B	DCF pickup motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the DCF rear cover

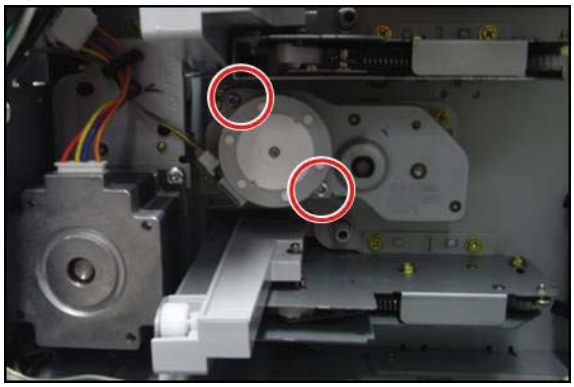
- Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 3-806 Remove the DCF rear cover

Step 2: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup motor

▲ Disconnect the motor connector. Remove two screws, and then remove the DCF pickup motor.

Figure 3-807 Remove the DCF pickup motor



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Dual cassette feeder (DCF) PCA

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the DCF rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) PCA
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the DCF PCA.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

DCF PCA part number	
SAM-JC92-02738A	DCF PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the DCF rear cover

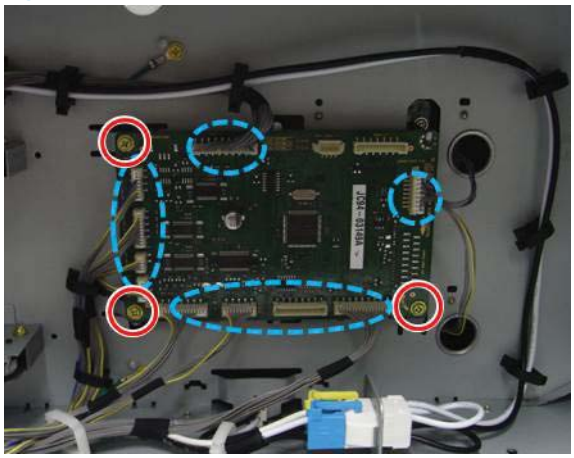
- Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 3-808 Remove the DCF rear cover

Step 2: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) PCA

▲ Disconnect eight connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the DCF PCA.

Figure 3-809 Remove the DCF PCA



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup units

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the printer right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the printer right door
- Step 3: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) right door
- Step 4: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup units
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the DCF pickup units.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

DCF pickup units part numbers	
SAM-JC90-01679A	First pickup assembly
SAM-JC90-01680A	Second pickup assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

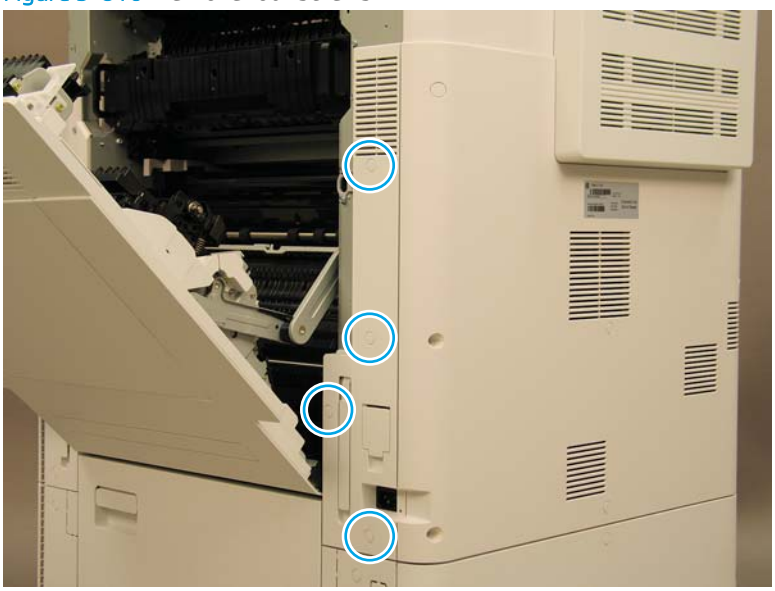
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the printer right rear cover

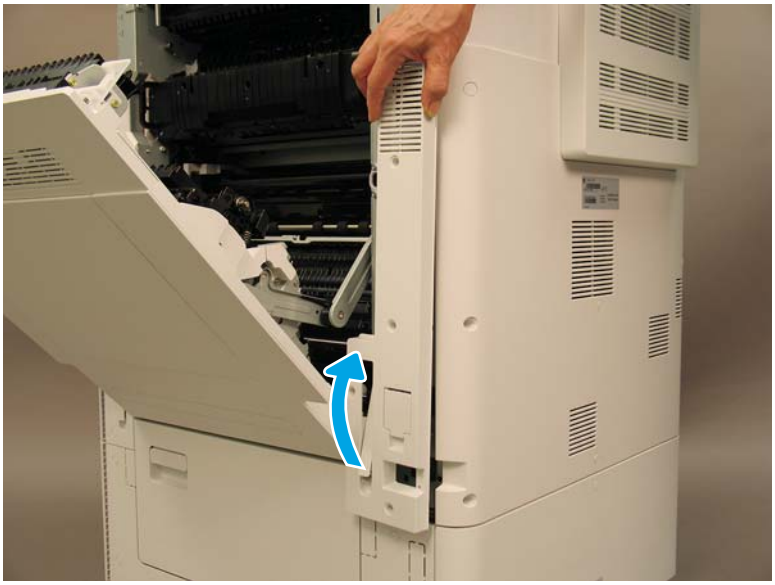
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-810 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

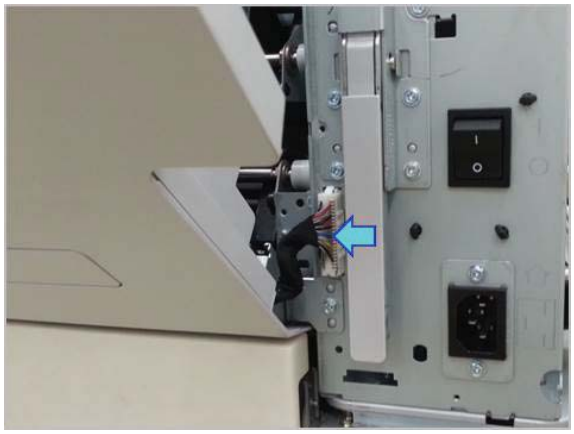
Figure 3-811 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the printer right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

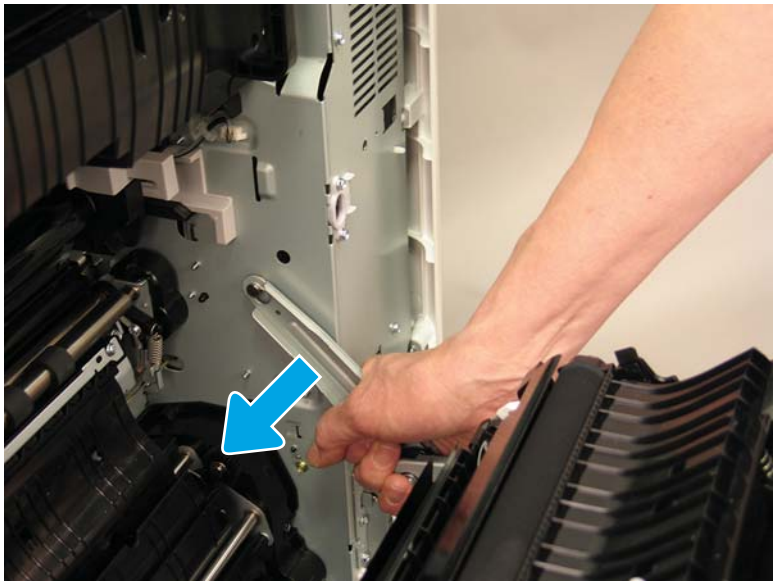
Figure 3-812 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

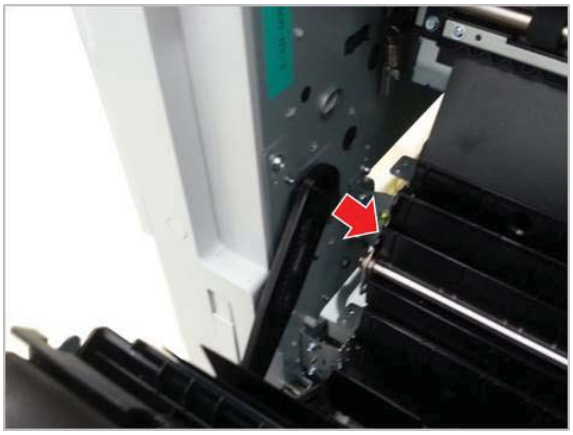
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-813 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

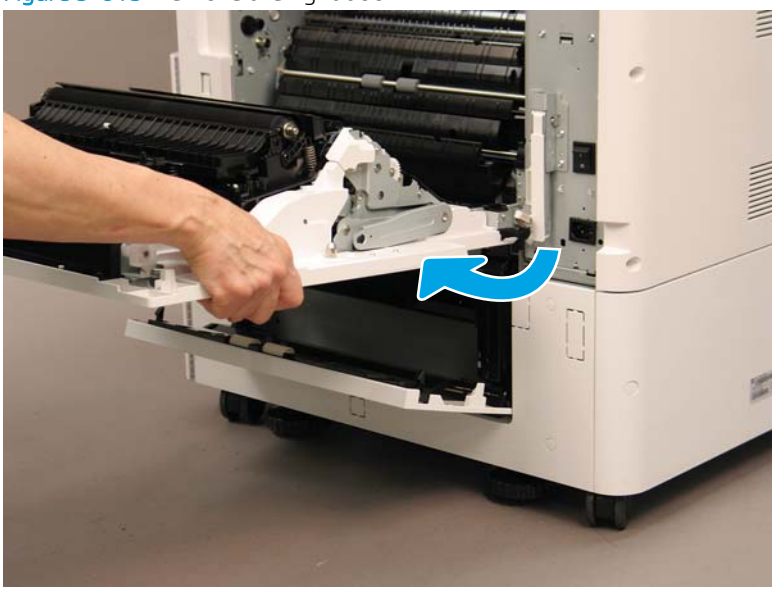
Figure 3-814 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 3-815 Remove the right door



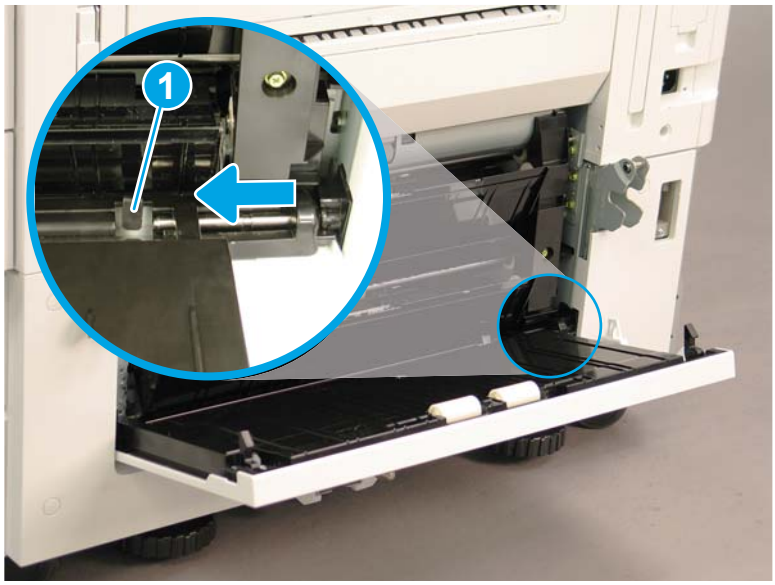
Step 3: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) right door

1. Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the lower right cover.

Figure 3-816 Remove the lower right cover

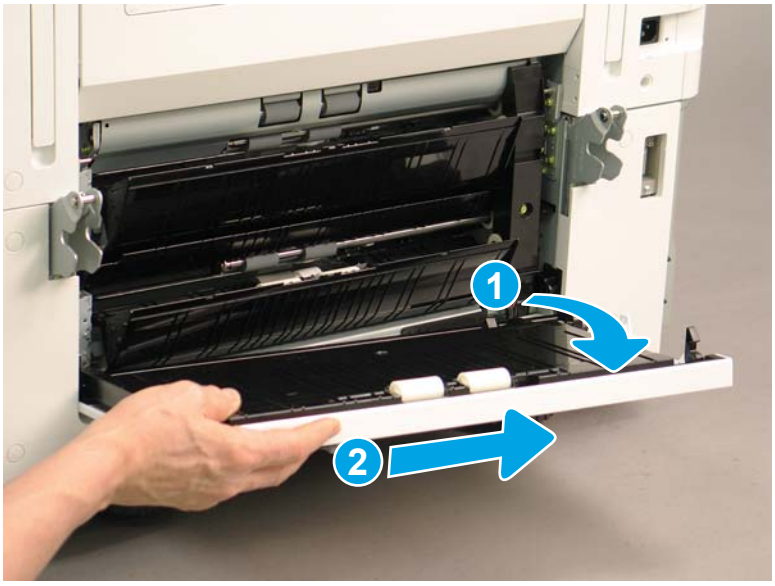
2. Open the DCF right door and slide the hinge pin to the left. Make sure that the pin slides under the tab (callout 1).

Figure 3-817 Slide the hinge pin



3. Rotate the right edge of the door away from the feeder (callout 1), and then slide the door to the right to remove it (callout 2).

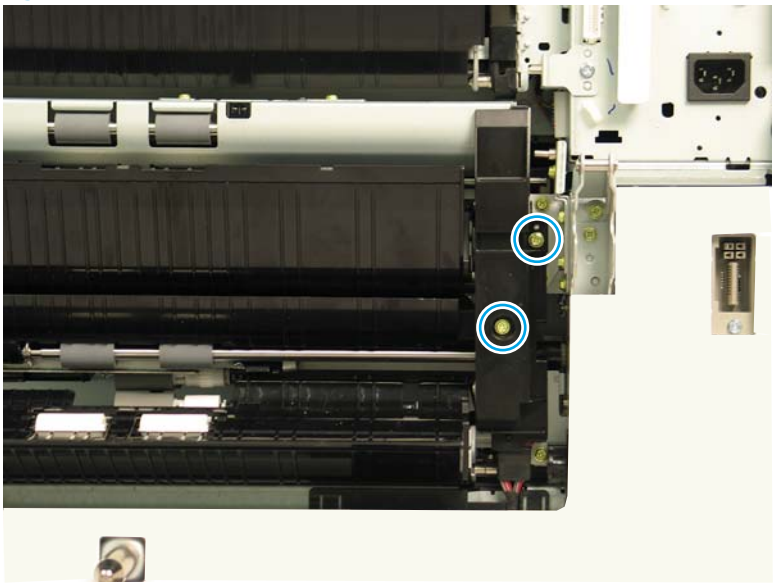
Figure 3-818 Remove the DCF right door



Step 4: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup units

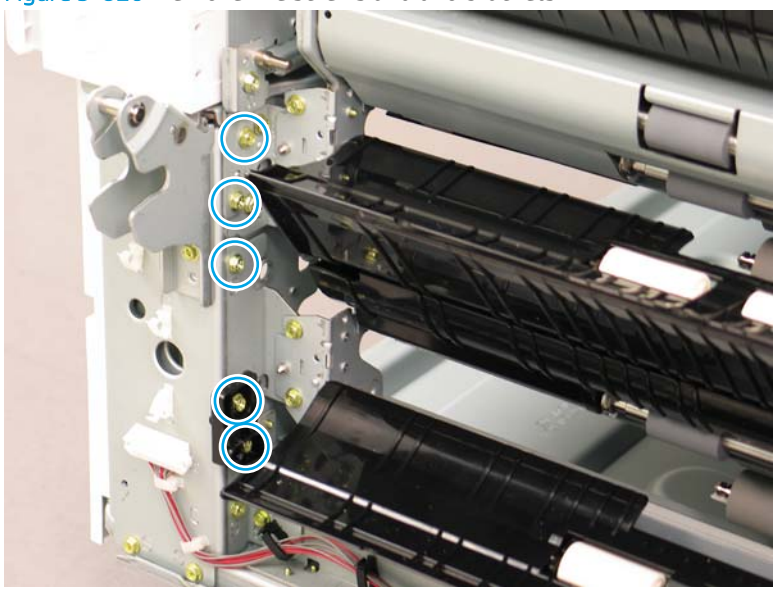
1. Remove two screws, and then remove the cable cover.

Figure 3-819 Remove two screws and the cable cover



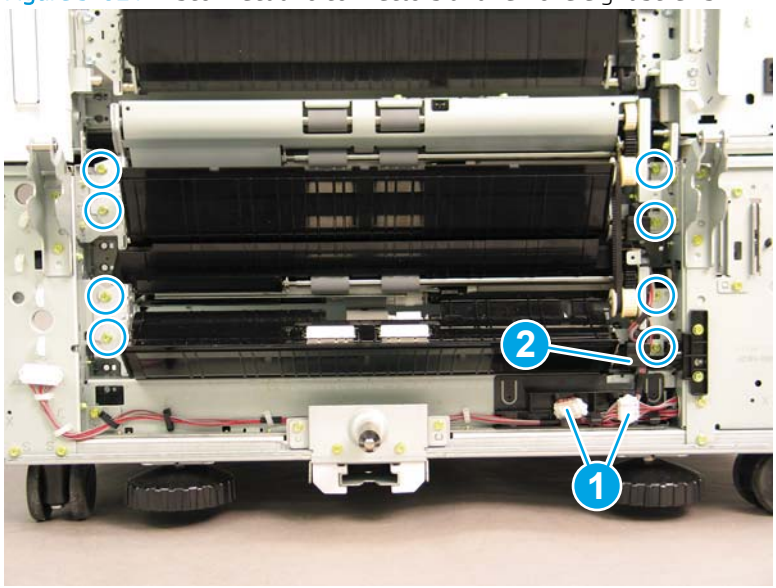
2. Remove five screws, and then remove two brackets.

Figure 3-820 Remove five screws and two brackets



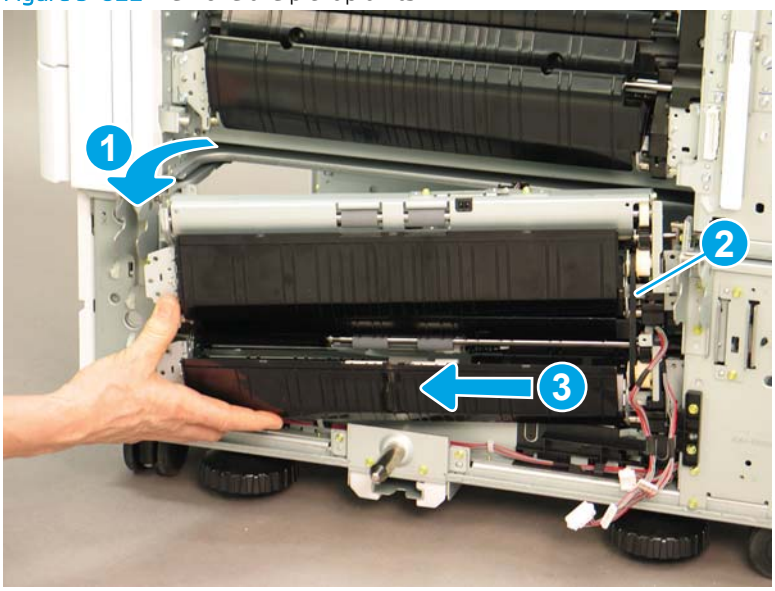
3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the wire harness from the cable guide (callout 2). Remove eight screws (callout 3).

Figure 3-821 Disconnect two connectors and remove eight screws



4. Rotate both pickup units away from the feeder on the left (callout 1). Release the belt (callout 2) that connects the two units. Slide the pickup units to the left (callout 3) to remove them.

Figure 3-822 Remove the pickup units



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Bottom high-capacity input (HCI) tray

Bottom HCI tray feed motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the bottom HCI rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the bottom HCI tray feed motor
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the bottom HCI tray feed motor.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Bottom HCI tray feed motor part number	
SAM-JC31-00177A	Bottom HCI tray feed motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the bottom HCI rear cover

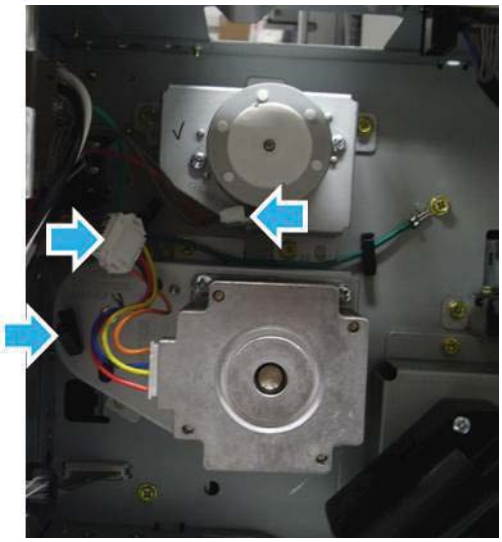
- Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 3-823 Remove the rear cover

Step 2: Remove the bottom HCI tray feed motor

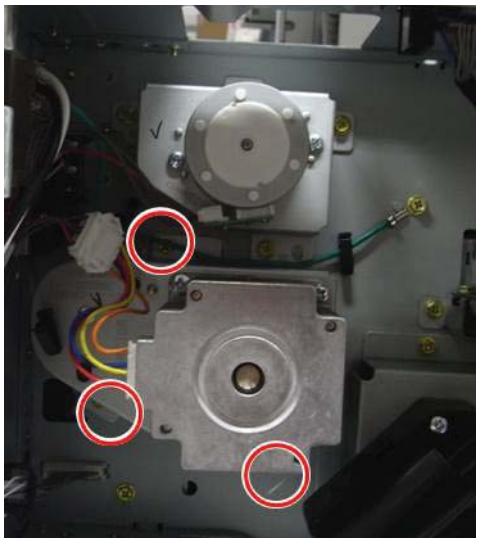
1. Disconnect two motor connectors, and open the harness clamp.

Figure 3-824 Disconnect two connectors and open the clamp



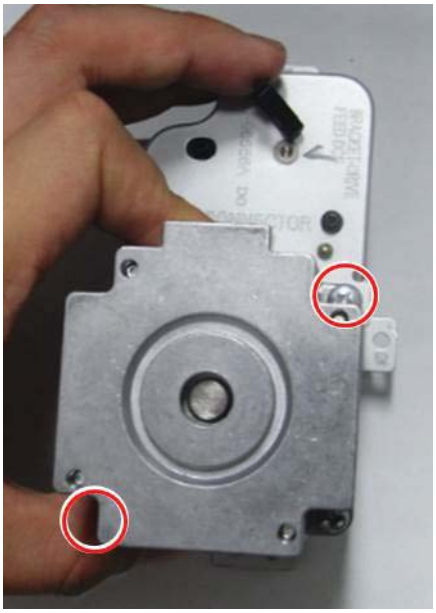
2. Remove three screws, and then remove the feed drive unit.

Figure 3-825 Remove the feed drive unit



3. Remove two screws, and then remove the feed motor.

Figure 3-826 Remove the feed motor



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Bottom HCI tray pickup motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the bottom HCI rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the bottom HCI tray pickup motor
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the bottom HCI tray pickup motor.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Bottom HCI tray pickup motor part number	
SAM-JC93-01083A	Bottom HCI tray pickup motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the bottom HCI rear cover

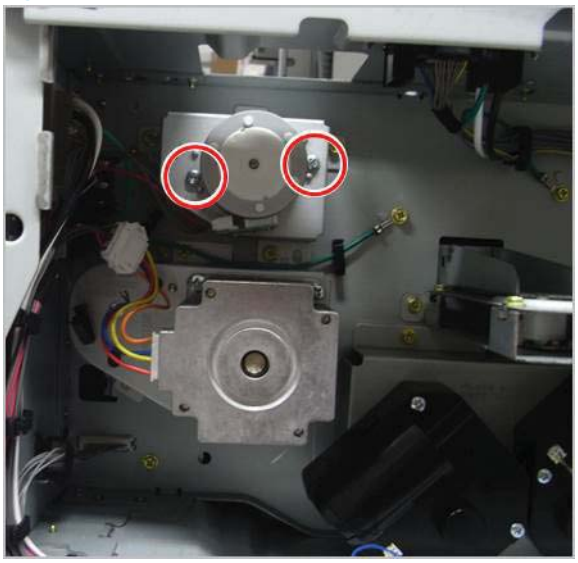
- Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 3-827 Remove the rear cover

Step 2: Remove the bottom HCI tray pickup motor

- Disconnect the motor connector. Remove two screws, and remove the bottom HCI tray pickup motor.

Figure 3-828 Remove the bottom HCI tray pickup motor



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Bottom HCI tray PCA

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the bottom HCI rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the bottom HCI tray PCA
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the bottom HCI tray PCA.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Bottom HCI tray PCA part number	
SAM-JC92-02738B	Bottom HCI tray PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the bottom HCI rear cover

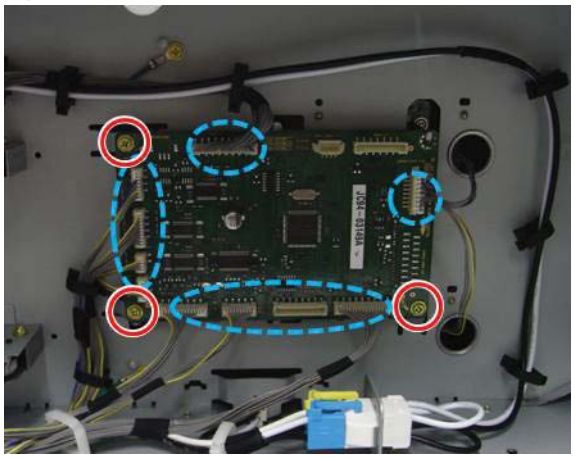
- Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 3-829 Remove the rear cover

Step 2: Remove the bottom HCI tray PCA

▲ Disconnect eight connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the bottom HCI tray PCA.

Figure 3-830 Remove the bottom HCI tray PCA



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Bottom HCI tray lift-up motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the bottom HCI rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the bottom HCI tray lift-up motor
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the bottom HCI tray lift-up motor.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Bottom HCI tray lift-up motor part number	
SAM-JC31-00109A	Bottom HCI tray lift-up motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the bottom HCI rear cover

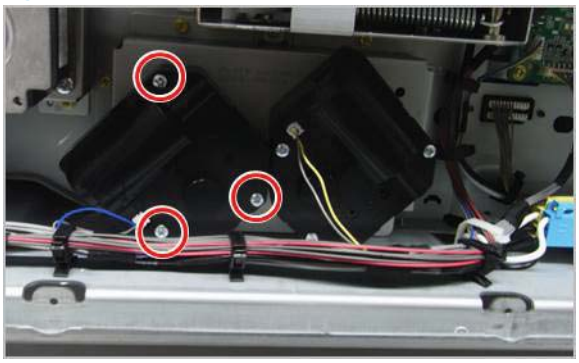
- Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 3-831 Remove the rear cover

Step 2: Remove the bottom HCI tray lift-up motor

▲ Disconnect the connector. Remove three screws, and the remove the bottom HCI tray lift-up motor.

Figure 3-832 Remove the bottom HCI tray lift-up motor



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Bottom HCI tray shaft motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the bottom HCI rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the bottom HCI tray shaft motor
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the bottom HCI tray shaft motor.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Bottom HCI tray shaft motor part number	
SAM-JC31-00125A	Bottom HCI tray shaft motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the bottom HCI rear cover

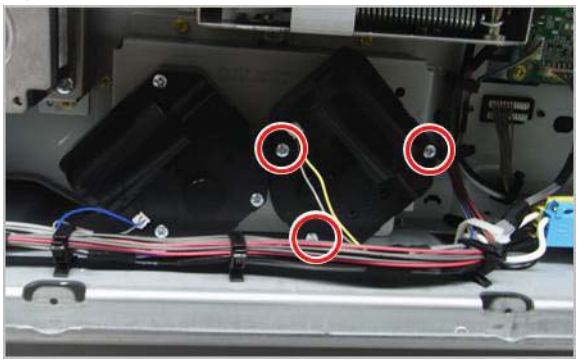
- Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 3-833 Remove the rear cover

Step 2: Remove the bottom HCI tray shaft motor

▲ Disconnect the connector. Remove three screws, and then remove the bottom HCI tray shaft motor.

Figure 3-834 Remove the shaft motor



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Side high capacity input (sHCI)

Side HCI rear cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the side HCI rear cover
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the side HCI rear cover.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Side HCI rear cover part number	
SAM-JC90-01660A	Side HCI rear cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

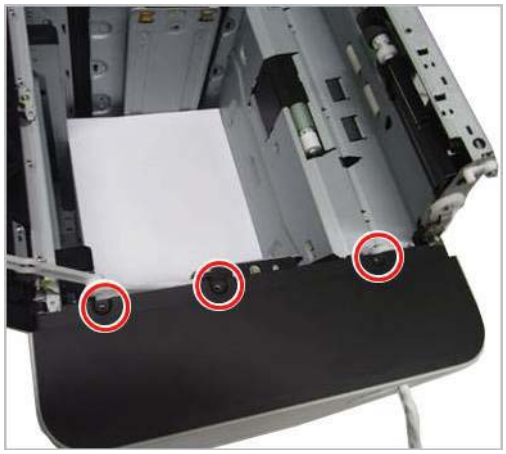
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the side HCI rear cover

- Remove three screws from the top, and then remove the sHCI rear cover.

Figure 3-835 Remove the sHCI rear cover



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Side HCI feed motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the side HCI right cover
- Step 2: Remove the side HCI cable cover
- Step 3: Remove the side HCI rear cover
- Step 4: Remove the side HCI feed motor
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the side HCI feed motor.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Side HCI feed motor part number	
SAM-JC31-00163A	Side HCI feed motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

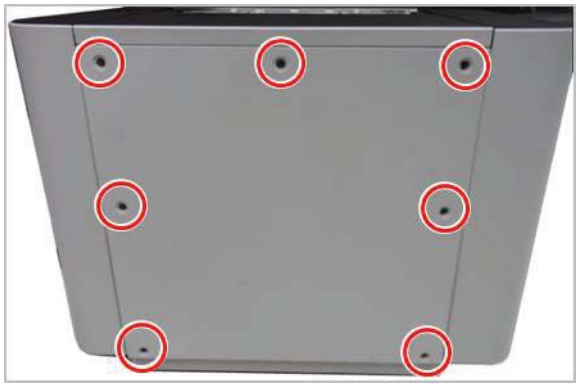
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the side HCI right cover

- Remove seven screw caps and seven screws, and then remove the sHCI right cover.

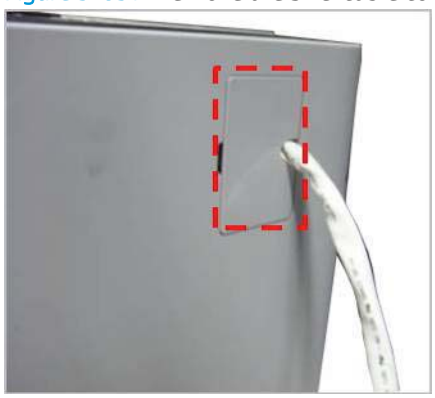
Figure 3-836 Right sHCI cover



Step 2: Remove the side HCI cable cover

- Remove the side HCI cable cover.

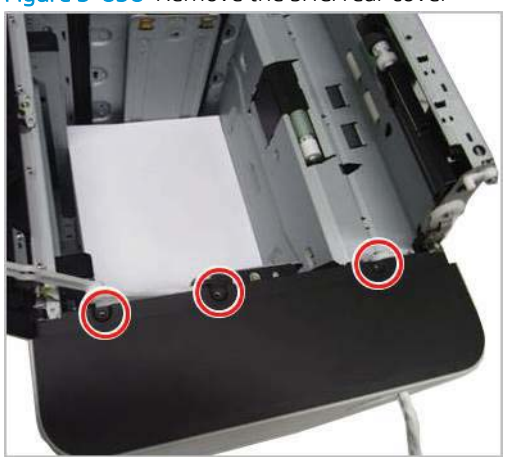
Figure 3-837 Remove the sHCI cable cover



Step 3: Remove the side HCI rear cover

- Remove three screws from the top, and then remove the sHCI rear cover.

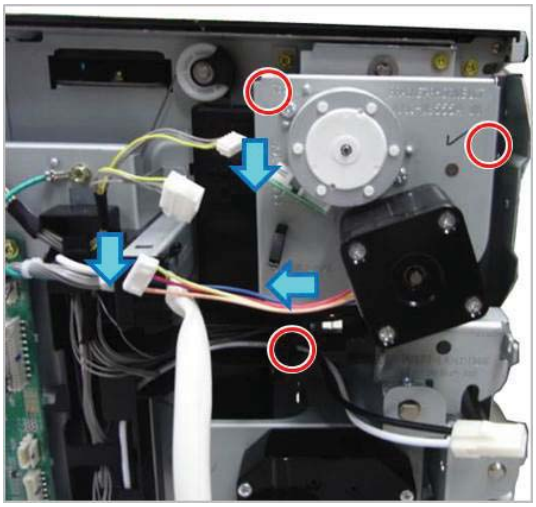
Figure 3-838 Remove the sHCI rear cover



Step 4: Remove the side HCI feed motor

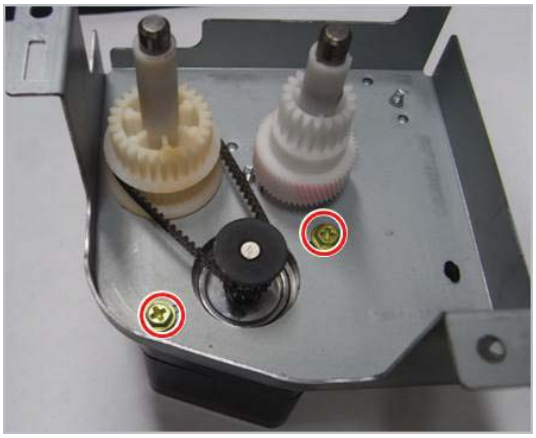
1. Disconnect two connectors. Open the cable clamp. Remove three screws, and then remove the Drive-PH

Figure 3-839 Drive PH



2. Remove two screws, and then replace the feed motor.

Figure 3-840 Feed motor



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Side HCI pickup motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the side HCI right cover
- Step 2: Remove the side HCI cable cover
- Step 3: Remove the side HCI rear cover
- Step 4: Remove the side HCI pickup motor
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the side HCI pickup motor.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Side HCI pickup motor part number	
SAM-JC93-01083A	Side HCI pickup motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

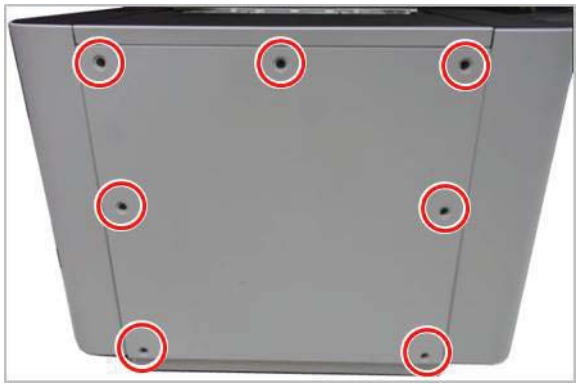
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the side HCI right cover

- Remove seven screw caps and seven screws, and then remove the sHCI right cover.

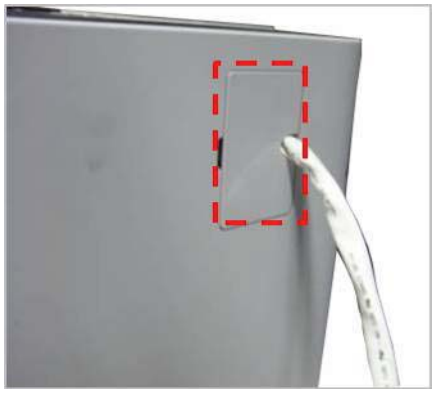
Figure 3-841 Right sHCI cover



Step 2: Remove the side HCI cable cover

- Remove the side HCI cable cover.

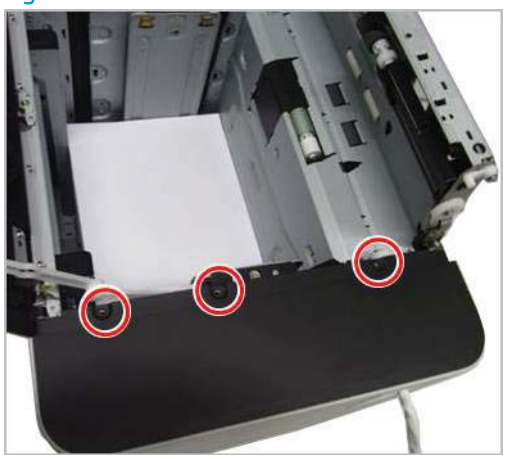
Figure 3-842 Remove the sHCI cable cover



Step 3: Remove the side HCI rear cover

- Remove three screws from the top, and then remove the sHCI rear cover.

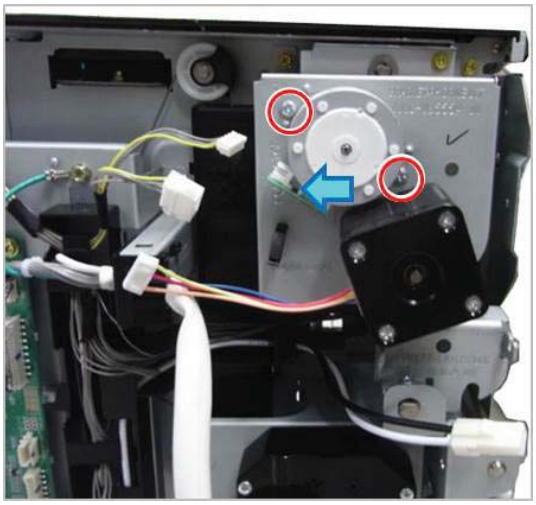
Figure 3-843 Remove the sHCI rear cover



Step 4: Remove the side HCI pickup motor

▲ Disconnect the motor connector. Remove two screws, and then replace the pickup motor.

Figure 3-844 Pickup motor



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Side HCI PCA

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the side HCI right cover
- Step 2: Remove the side HCI cable cover
- Step 3: Remove the side HCI rear cover
- Step 4: Remove the side HCI PCA
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the side HCI PCA.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Side HCI PCA part number
Side HCI PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

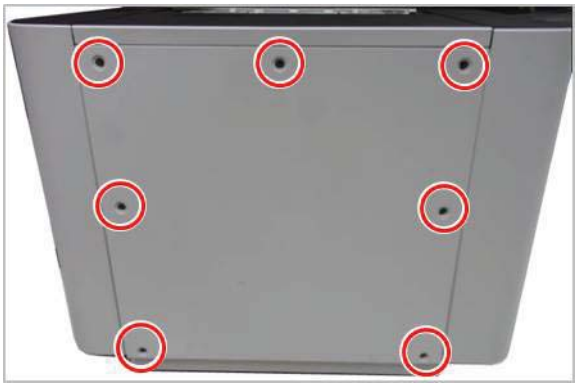
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the side HCI right cover

- Remove seven screw caps and seven screws, and then remove the sHCI right cover.

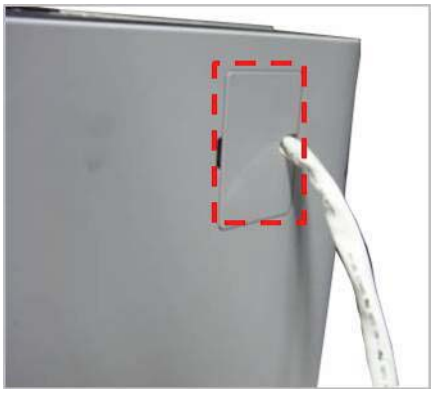
Figure 3-845 Right sHCI cover



Step 2: Remove the side HCI cable cover

- Remove the side HCI cable cover.

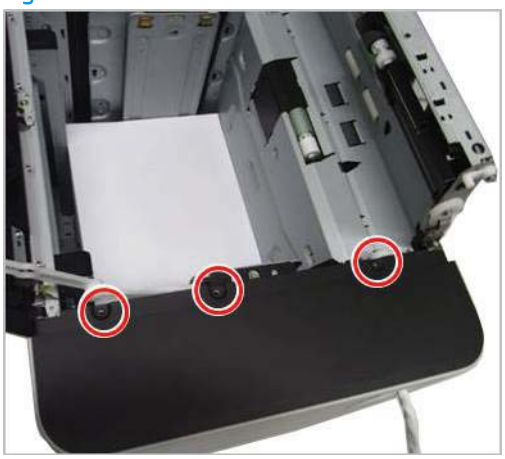
Figure 3-846 Remove the sHCI cable cover



Step 3: Remove the side HCI rear cover

- Remove three screws from the top, and then remove the sHCI rear cover.

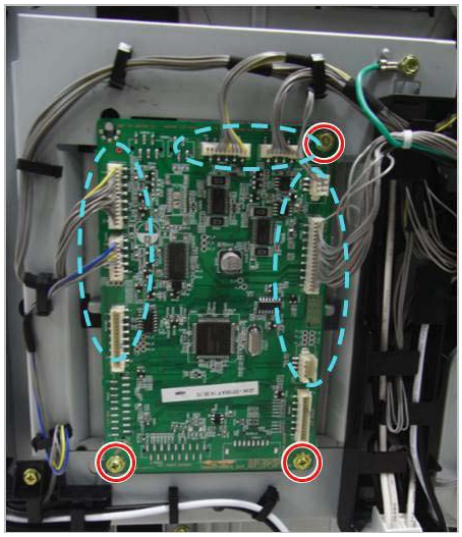
Figure 3-847 Remove the sHCI rear cover



Step 4: Remove the side HCI PCA

▲ Disconnect all connectors. Remove three screws, and replace the sHCI PCA.

Figure 3-848 sHCI PCA



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Side HCI lift-up motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the side HCI right cover
- Step 2: Remove the side HCI cable cover
- Step 3: Remove the side HCI rear cover
- Step 4: Remove the side HCI lift-up motor
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the side HCI lift-up motor.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Side HCI lift-up motor part number	
SAM-JC31-00109A	Side HCI lift-up motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

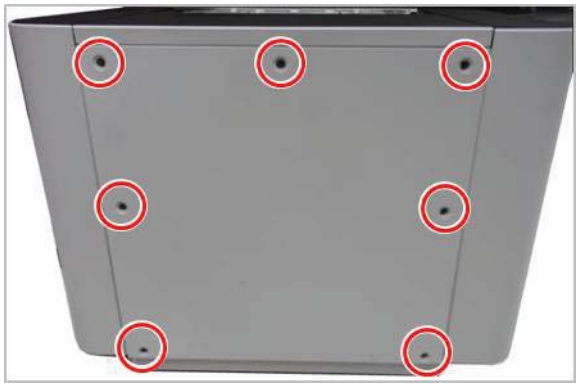
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the side HCI right cover

- Remove seven screw caps and seven screws, and then remove the sHCI right cover.

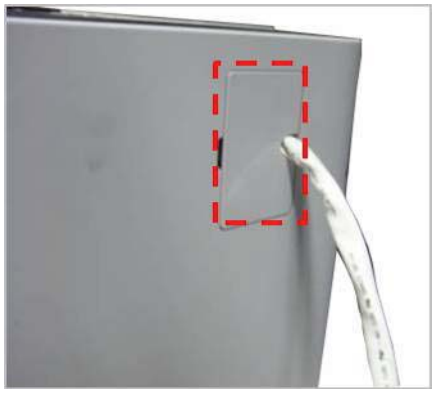
Figure 3-849 Right sHCI cover



Step 2: Remove the side HCI cable cover

- Remove the side HCI cable cover.

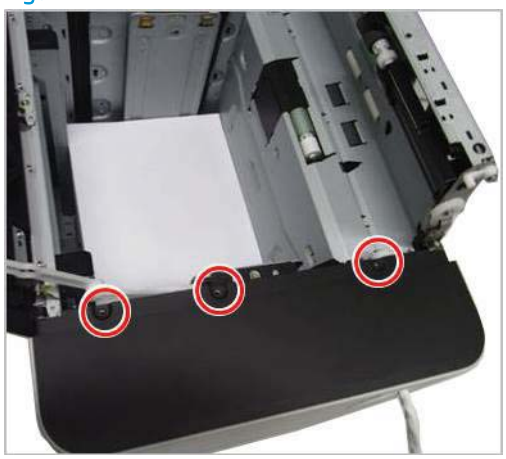
Figure 3-850 Remove the sHCI cable cover



Step 3: Remove the side HCI rear cover

- Remove three screws from the top, and then remove the sHCI rear cover.

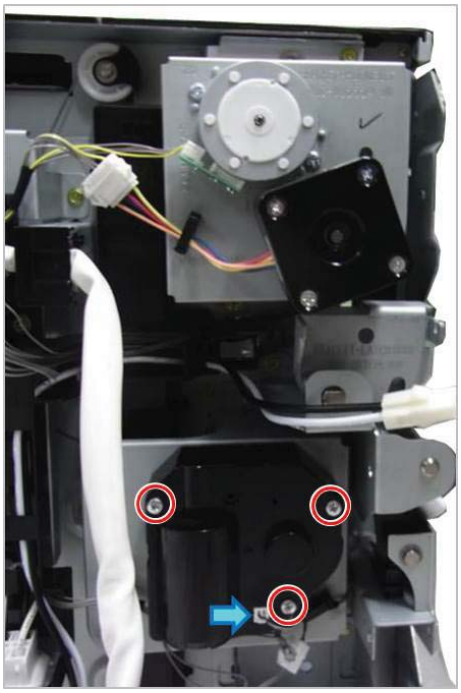
Figure 3-851 Remove the sHCI rear cover



Step 4: Remove the side HCI lift-up motor

▲ Disconnect the motor connector. Remove three screws, and then replace the sHCI lift-up motor.

Figure 3-852 sHCI lift-up motor



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

4 Parts and diagrams

- For additional service and support information
- Order parts, accessories, and supplies
- How to use the parts list and diagrams
- Main parts
- Dual cassette feeder (DCF)
- High capacity input tray (HCI)
- High capacity input tray side unit (sHCI)
- Finishers
- Inner finisher
- Alphabetical parts list
- Numerical parts list

For additional service and support information

HP service personnel, go to the Service Access Work Bench (SAW) at http://h41302.www4.hp.com/km/saw/home.do.

Channel partners, go to HP Channel Services Network (CSN) at https://h30125.www3.hp.com/hpcsn.

- To access HP PartSurfer information from any mobile device, go to http://partsurfermobile.hp.com/ or scan the Quick Response (QR) code below.

- Install and configure
- Printer specifications
- Up-to-date control panel message (CPMD) troubleshooting
- Solutions for printer issues and emerging issues
- Remove and replace part instructions and videos
- Service advisories
- Warranty and regulatory information

Order parts, accessories, and supplies

Ordering

Order supplies and paper	www.hp.com/go/suresupply
Order genuine HP parts or accessories	www.hp.com/buy/parts or partsurfer.hp.com
Order through service or support providers	Contact an HP-authorized service or support provider.
Order using the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)	To access, in a supported Web browser on your computer, enter the printer IP address or host name in the address/URL field. The EWS contains a link to the HP SureSupply Web site, which provides options for purchasing Original HP supplies.

Orderable parts

Not all of the parts shown in the diagrams in this chapter can be ordered. Refer to the table following the diagram or the parts lists at the end of this chapter to determine if a part is orderable.

Related documentation and software

HP service personnel, go to the Service Access Work Bench (SAW) at http://h41302.www4.hp.com/km/saw/home.do.

Channel partners, go to HP Channel Services Network (CSN) at www.hp.com/partners/csn.

How to use the parts list and diagrams

The figures in this chapter show the major subassemblies in the printer and their component parts. A parts list table follows each exploded view assembly diagram. Each table lists the item number, the associated part number, and the description of each part. If a part is not listed in the table, then it is not a field replacement unit (FRU).

NOTE: In this manual, the abbreviation “PCA” stands for “printed circuit-board assembly.” Components described as a PCA might consist of a single circuit board or a circuit board plus other parts, such as cables and sensors.

Main parts

Main assembly 1

Figure 4-1 Main assembly

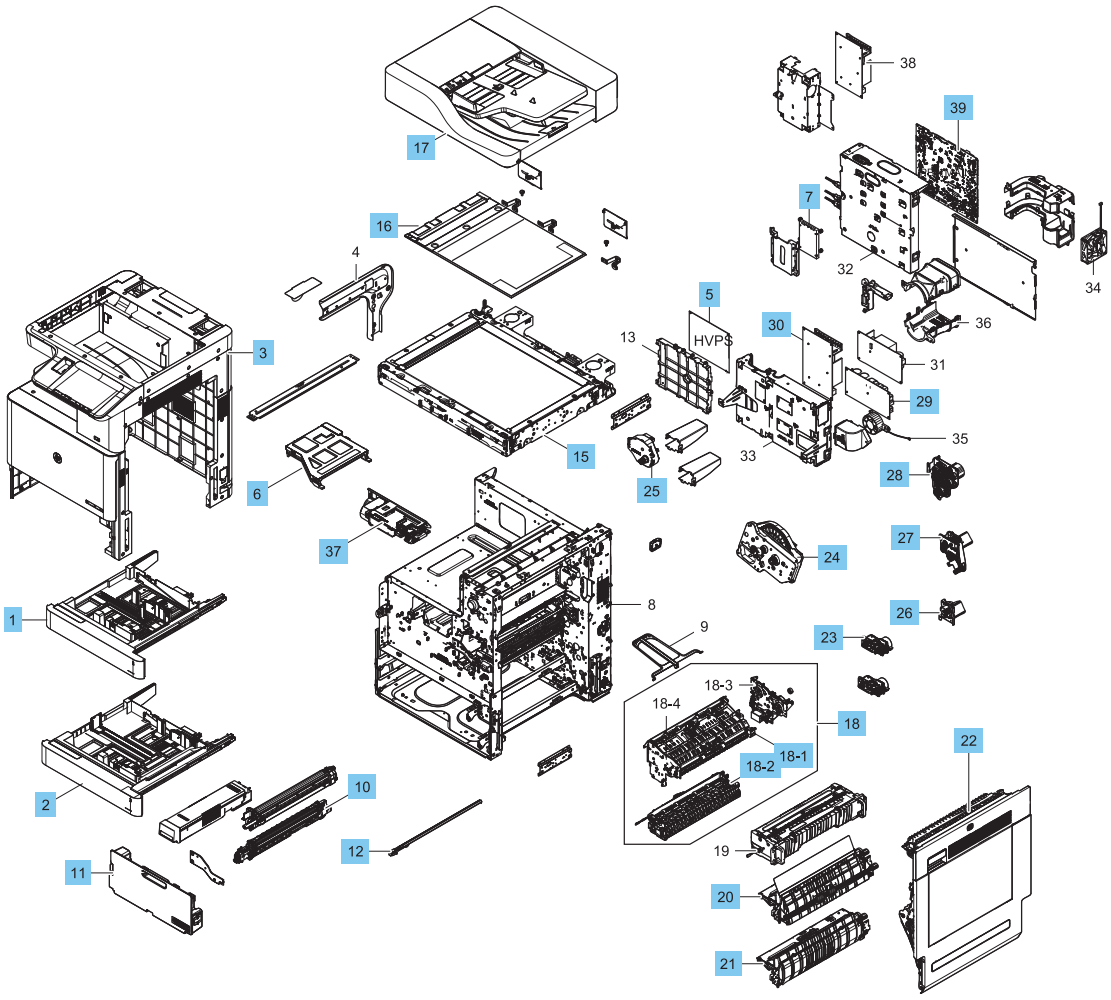


Table 4-1 Main assembly

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Cassette	SAM-JC90-01610A	1
2	Cassette	SAM-JC90-01611A	1
3	Cover	SAM-JC95-02098A	1
5	HVPS	SAM-JC44-00241A	1
6	Laser scanner assembly	SAM-JC97-04574A	1
7	HDD bracket assembly frame	SAM-JC93-01239B	1
7	HDD	SAM-JC59-00036A	1
10	Cartridge, developer unit	SAM-JC96-11599A	1
11	Cartridge, TCU	SAM-JC96-11638A	1
12	Frame holder dust assembly, TF	SAM-JC93-01026B	1
15	Image scanner	SAM-JC97-04520C	1
16	Sponge white sheet	SAM-JC63-05238A	1
17	ADF e-duplex	SAM-JC97-04662A	1
18	Output	SAM-JC90–01369A	1
18-1	Output 2	SAM-JC90-01373A	1
18–2	Output 1	SAM-JC90-01370A	1
19	Fuser 220V	SAM-JC91-01194A	1
19	Fuser assembly 110V	SAM-JC91-01195A	1
20	Frame main pickup 1	SAM-JC93-01096A	1
21	Frame main pickup 2	SAM-JC93-01104A	1
22	Right door mono	SAM-JC95-01987A	1
23	Drive pickup	SAM-JC93-01063A	2
24	Drive main, mono	SAM-JC93-01060A	1
25	Drive, toner mono	SAM-JC93-01066B	1
26	Drive registration assembly	SAM-JC93-01061A	1
27	Drive, feed	SAM-JC93-01062A	1
28	Drive fuser, output	SAM-JC93-01064A	1
29	Fuser drive board 220V	SAM-JC44-00236B	1
29	Fuser drive board 110V	SAM-JC44-00235B	1
30	LVPS (SMPS), V2	SAM-JC44-00100D	1
30	LVPS (SMPS), 220v type 3	SAM-JC44-00223B	1
30	LVPS (SMPS), 110v type 3	SAM-JC44-00222B	1

Main assembly 2

Figure 4-2 Main assembly 2

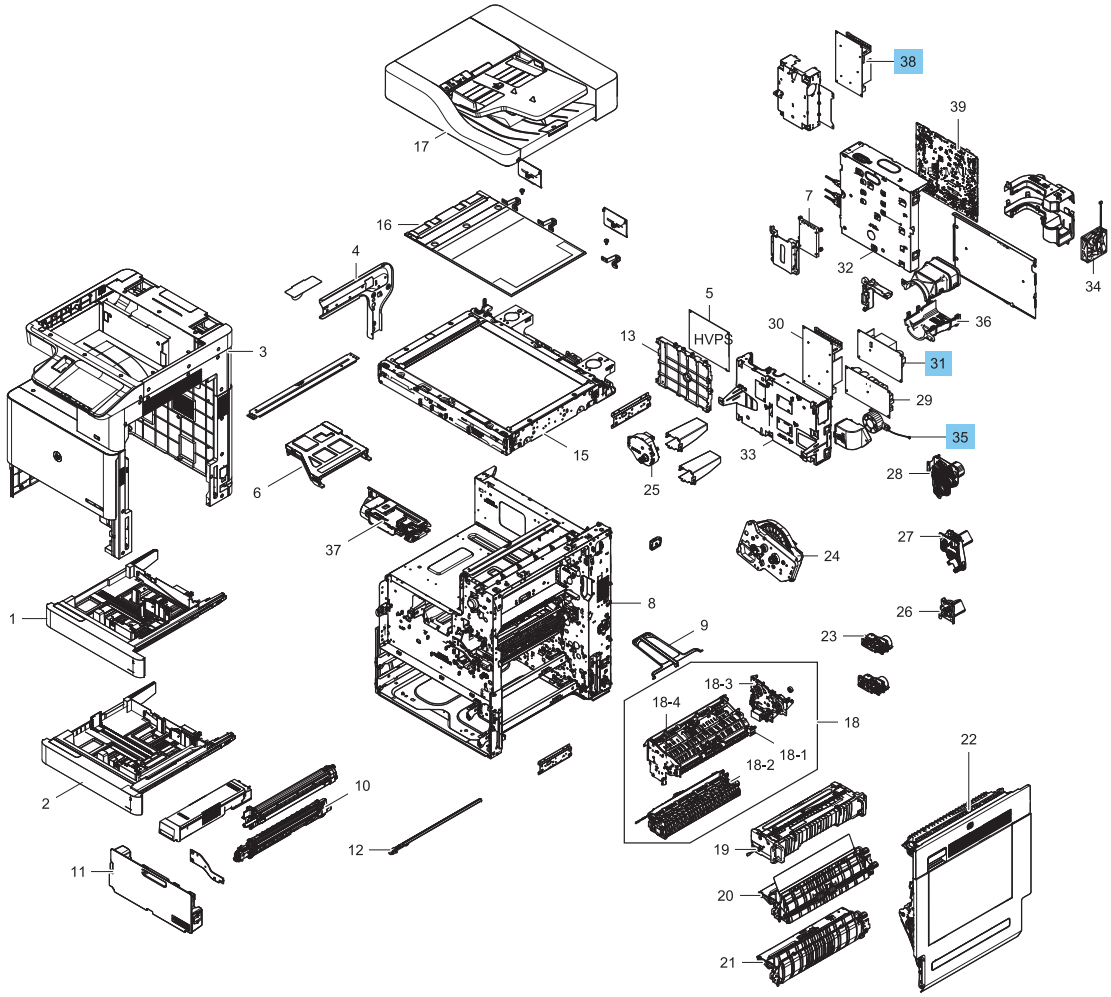


Table 4-2 Main assembly 2

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
31	LVPS (SMPS), 220V type 5H	SAM-JC44-00250A	1
31	LVPS (SMPS), 110V type 5H	SAM-JC44-00249A	1
35	Fan, type 6	SAM-JC31-00160C	1
38	LVPS (SMPS), 110V type 4	SAM-JC44-00091D	1
37	Reservoir	SAM-JC93-01071A	1
43	Tray heaters	SAM-JC93-01181A	1

Output

Figure 4-3 Output

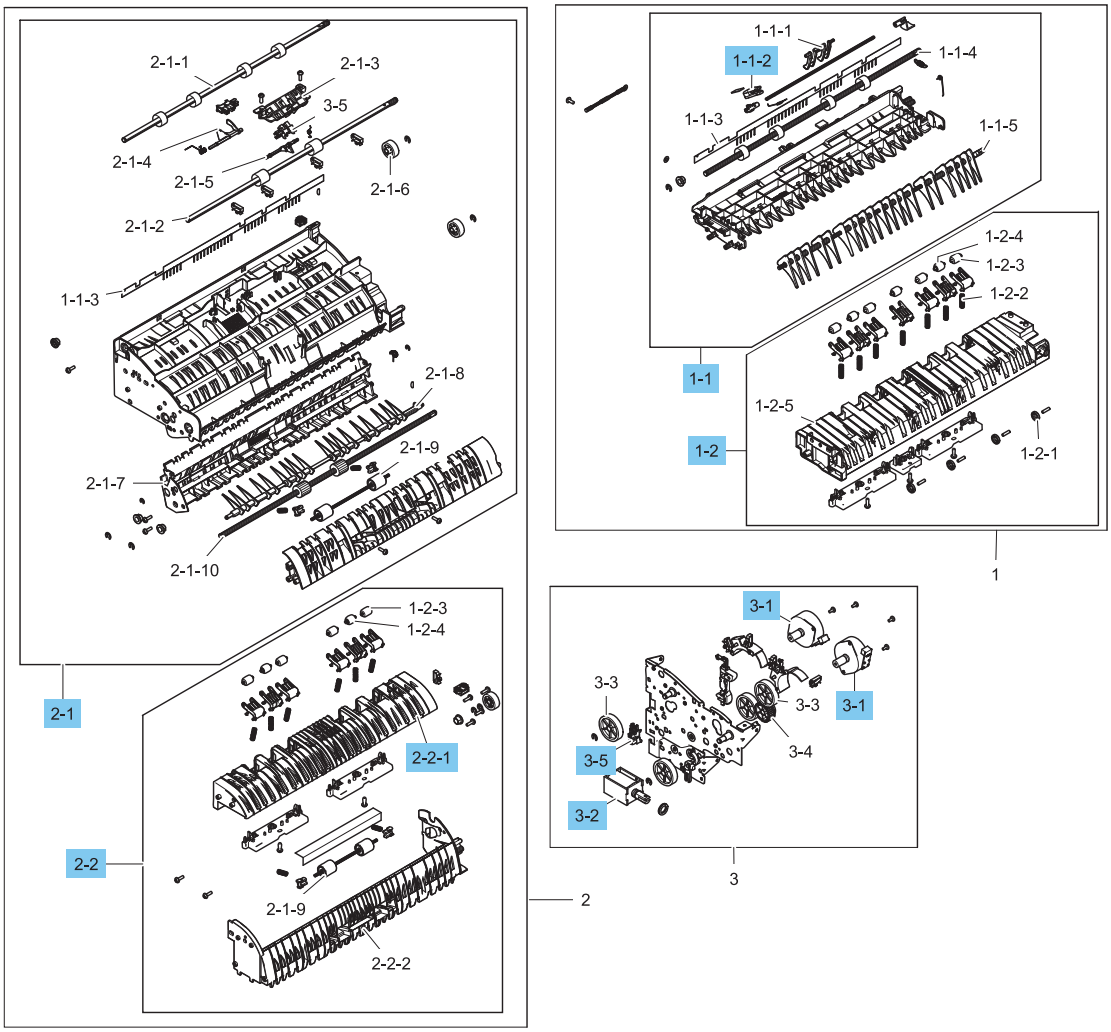


Table 4-3 Output

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1-1	Output, guide upper	SAM-JC90-01371A	1
1-1-2	Actuator, F_D full output	SAM-JC66-04469A	1
1-2	Output, guide lower	SAM-JC90-01372A	1
2-1	Output, upper 2	SAM-JC90-01374A	1
2-1-1	Roller feed, output 2	SAM-JC66-04653A	1
2-2	Output, lower 2	SAM-JC90-01375A	1
3-1	Drive, motor step	SAM-JC93-00802A	2
3-2	Solenoid, lifting	SAM-JC33-00031B	1
3-5	Photo, interrupter	SAM-0604-001393	1

First cassette

Figure 4-4 First cassette

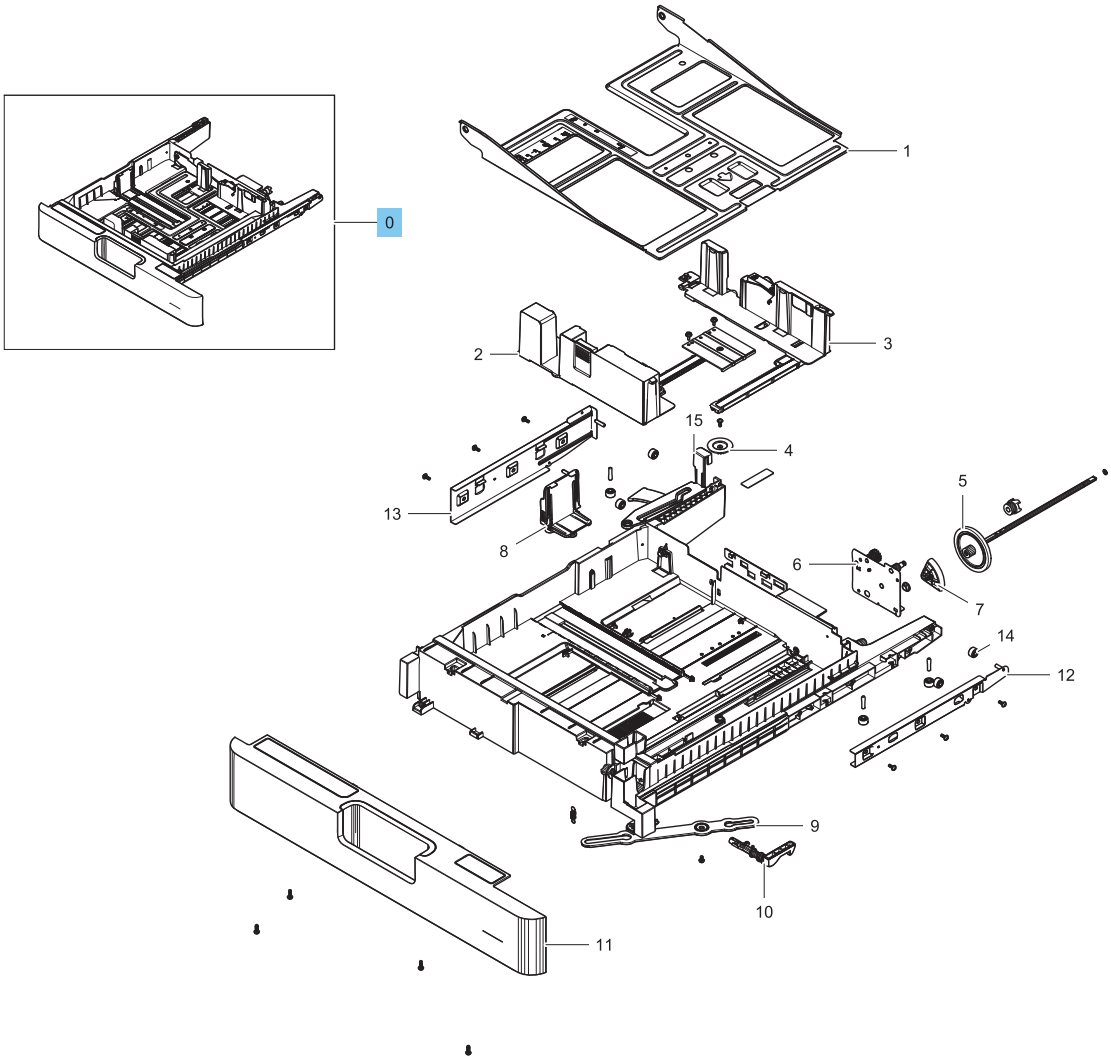


Table 4-4 First cassette

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Cassette	SAM-JC90-01610A	1

Second cassette

Figure 4-5 Second cassette

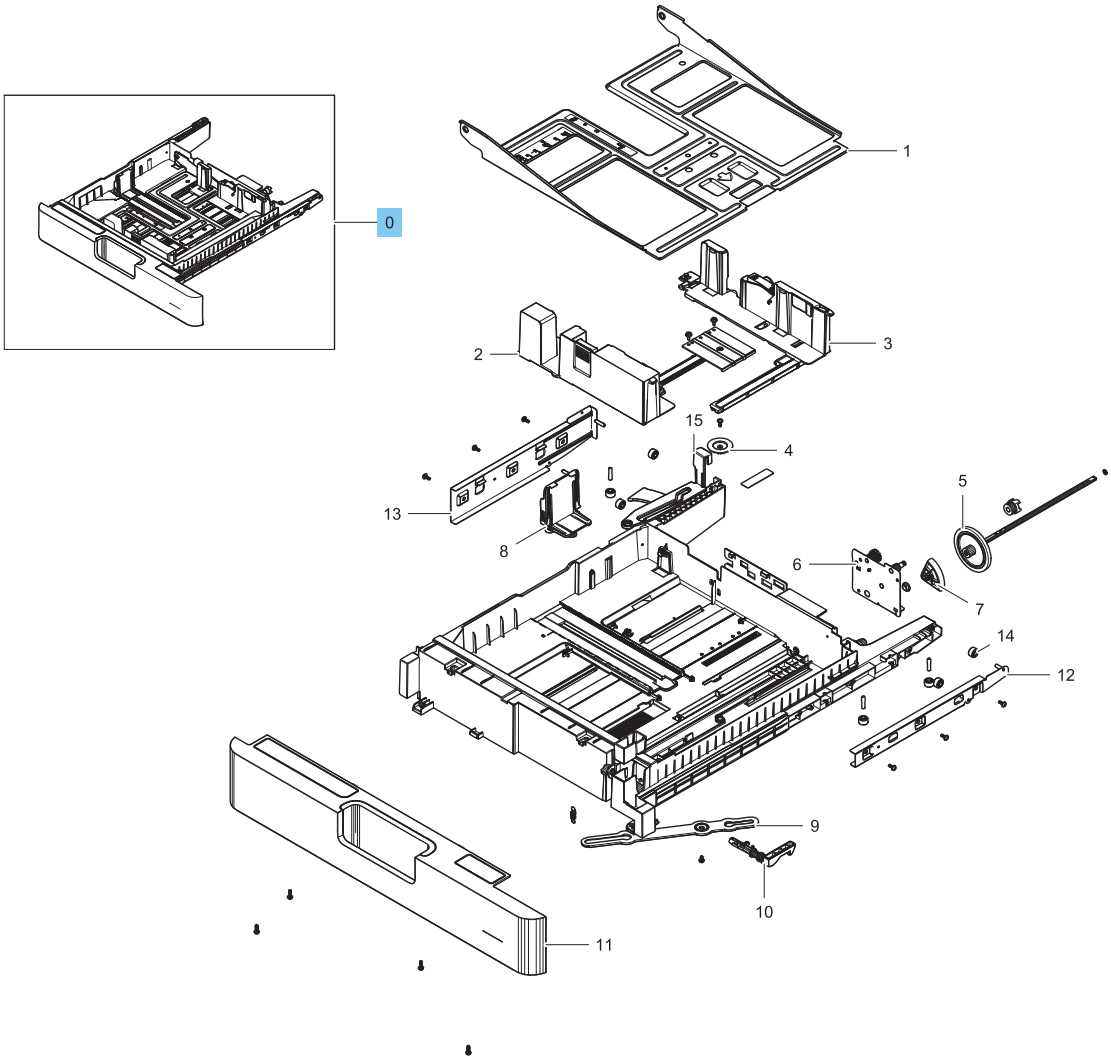


Table 4-5 Second cassette

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Cassette	SAM-JC90-01611A	1

Main frame assembly

Figure 4-6 Main assembly frame

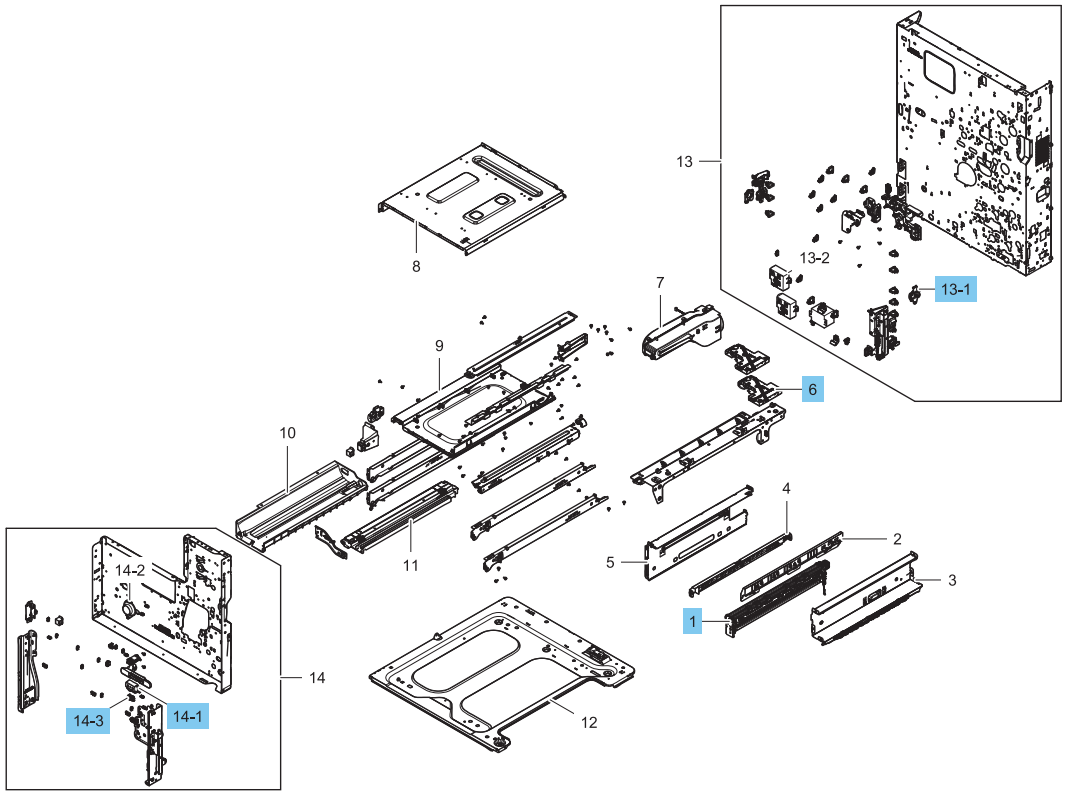


Table 4-6 Main assembly frame

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Main frame registration assebly	SAM-JC93-01116A	1
6	Frame sub, rear bottom	SAM-JC93-01370A	2
13-1	Frame main, humidity sensor	SAM-JC93-00486A	1
14-1	Frame main, TCU sensor	SAM-JC93-00492A	1
14-3	Phone, interrupter	SAM-0604-001393	1
15	Front door switch open	SAM-JC93-00466A	1

Main frame registration

Figure 4-7 Main frame registration assembly

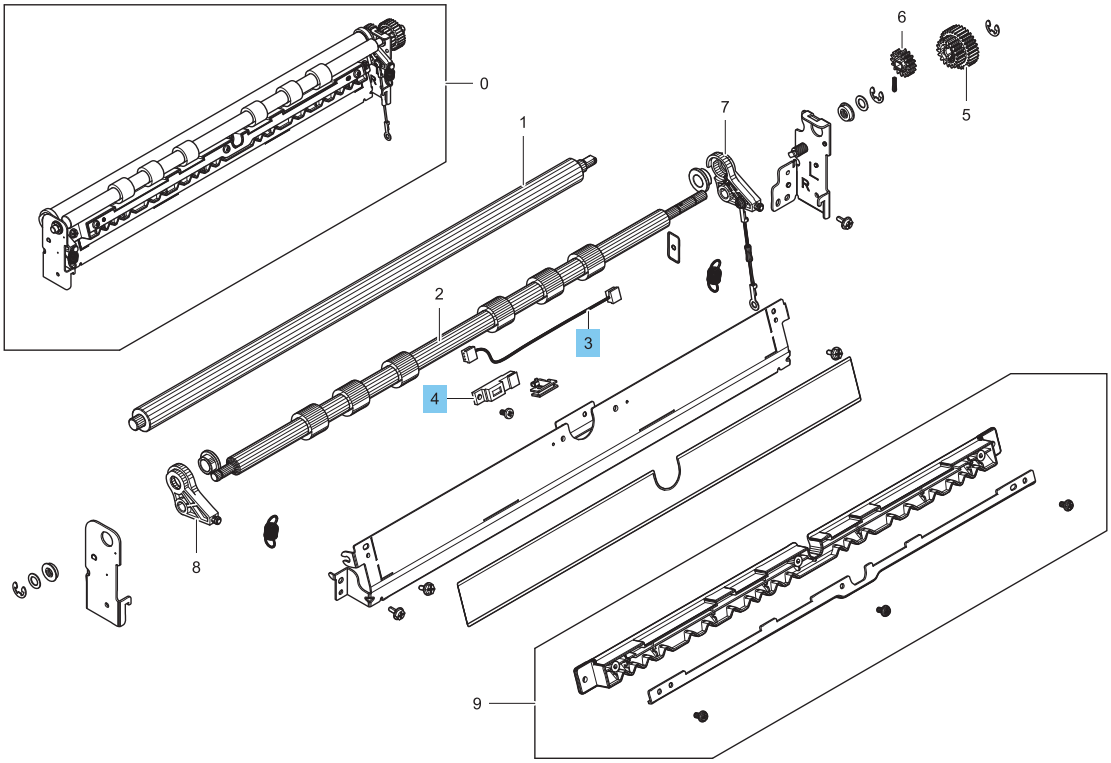


Table 4-7 Main frame registration assembly

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
3	Registration assembly, harness	SAM-JC39-02204A	1
4	Photo, interrupter	SAM-0604-001381	1

Drive system

Figure 4-8 Drive system

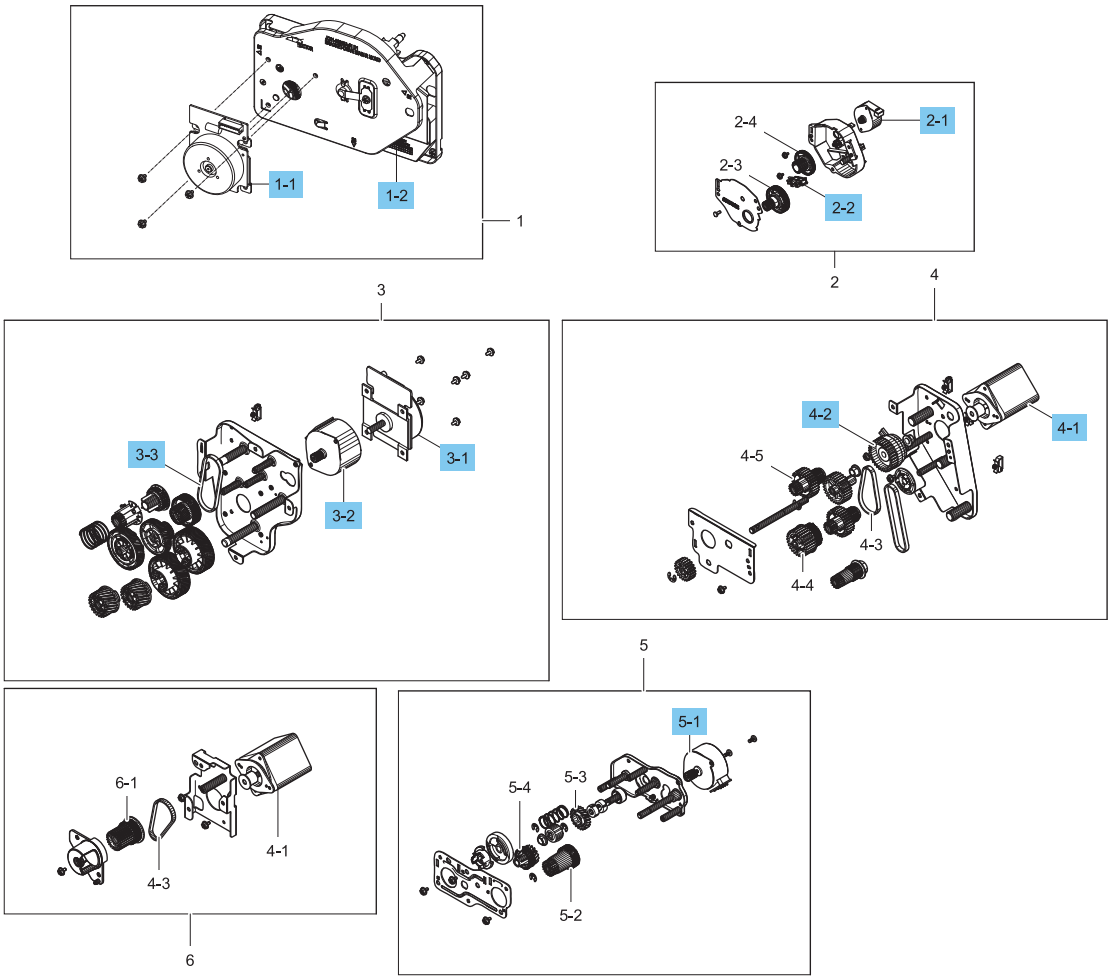


Table 4-8 Drive system

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1-1	BLDC Motor, 38w	SAM-JC31-00075C	1
1-2	Main drive, common mono	SAM-JC93-01049A	1
2-1	Motor circuit, step	SAM-JC31-00110A	1
2-2	Photo, interrupter	SAM-0604-001393	1
3-1	Motor BLDC	SAM-JC31-00123B	1
3-2	Drive, motor step	SAM-JC93-01084A	1
3-3	Belt timing gear	SAM-6602-001581	1
4-1	Motor step 1P	SAM-JC31-00132A	1
4-2	Electric clutch	SAM-JC31-00037A	1
4-3	Belt timing gear	SAM-6602-001730	1
5-1	Drive, motor step	SAM-JC93-01083A	1

Main frame pickup 1 and 2

Figure 4-9 Frame main pickup 1 and 2

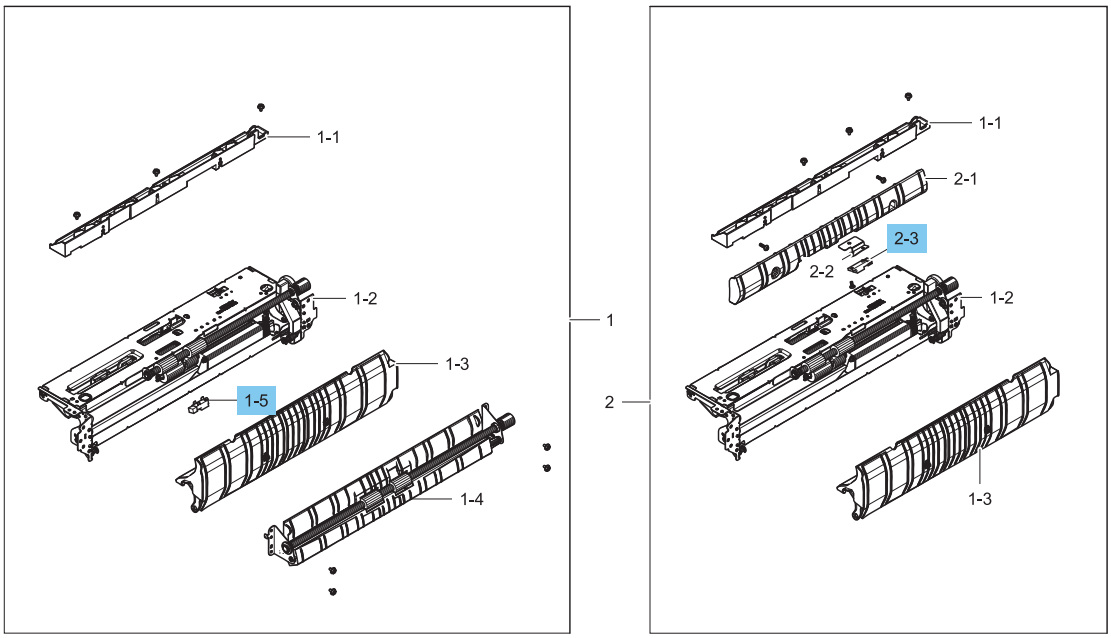


Table 4-9 Frame main pickup 1 and 2

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1-5	Photo, interrupter	SAM-0604-001490	1
2-3	Photo, interrupter	SAM-0604-001381	1

Main frame pickup

Figure 4-10 Frame main pickup

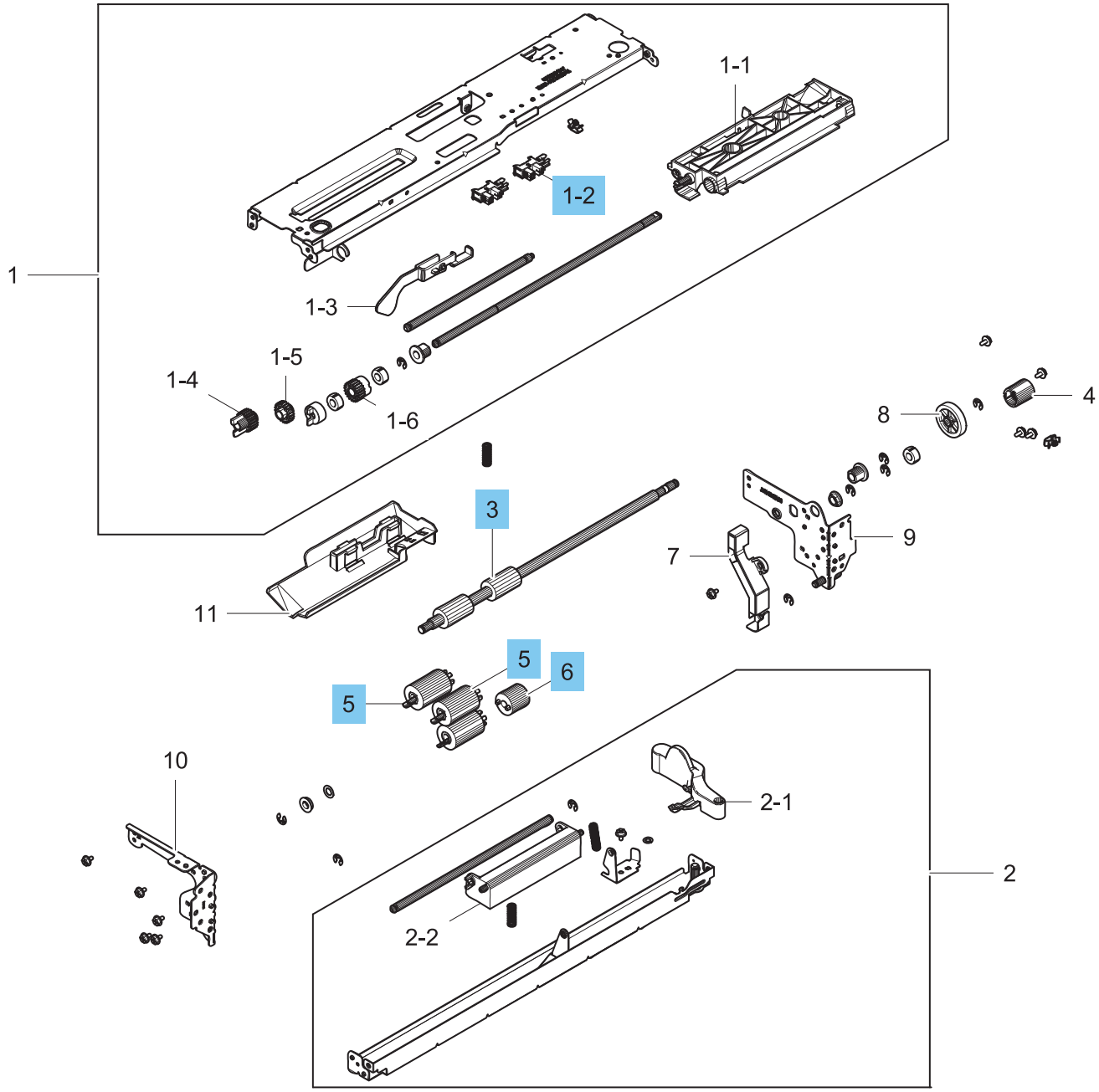


Table 4-10 Frame main pickup

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1-2	Photo, interrupter	SAM-0604-001393	2
3	Roller feed	SAM-JC66-04625A	1
5	Frame main, pickup roller	SAM-JC93-01092A	3
6	Coupler, torque limiter	SAM-JC67-00455A	1

Cover

Figure 4-11 Cover

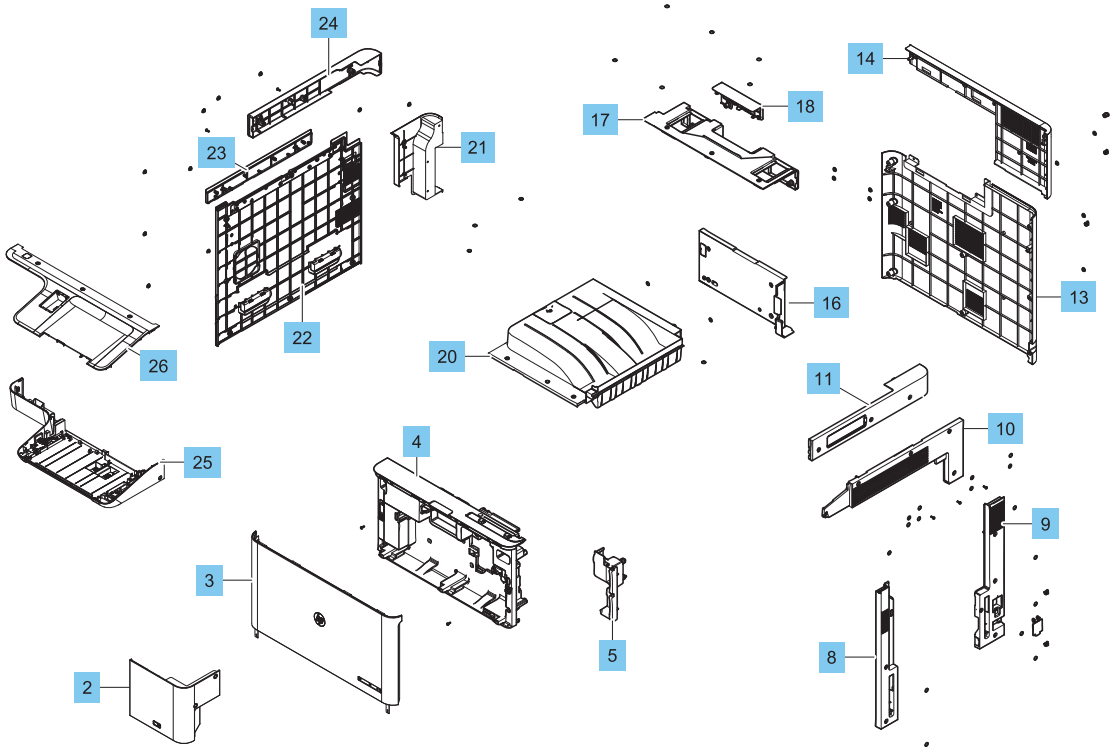


Table 4-11 Cover

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2	Right cover, middle	SAM-JC95-02105A	1
3	Front cover	SAM-JC95-02103A	1
4	Inner cover	SAM-JC95-02104A	1
5	Front cover, lower	SAM-JC63-04861B	1
8	Right cover, front	SAM-JC63-04847B	1
9	Right cover, rear	SAM-JC63-02102A	1
10	Right cover, upper	SAM-JC63-04846B	1
11	Scan cover, right	SAM-JC63-05571A	1
13	Rear cover	SAM-JC95-02117A	1
14	Rear cover, upper	SAM-JC63-05633A	1
16	Output cover, rear	SAM-JC63-04840B	1
17	Scan cover, rear	SAM-JC63-04859C	1
18	Rear cover, dummy	SAM-JC63-04863B	1
20	Output cover	SAM-JC95-02101A	1
21	Left cover, upper	SAM-JC63-05638A	1
22	Left cover	SAM-JC95-02100A	1
23	Left cover, top	SAM-JC63-04862B	1
24	Scan cover, left	SAM-JC63-05587A	1
25	Cover	SAM-JC95-02106A	1
26	Scan cover, front	SAM-JC95-02118A	1

Right door

Figure 4-12 Right door

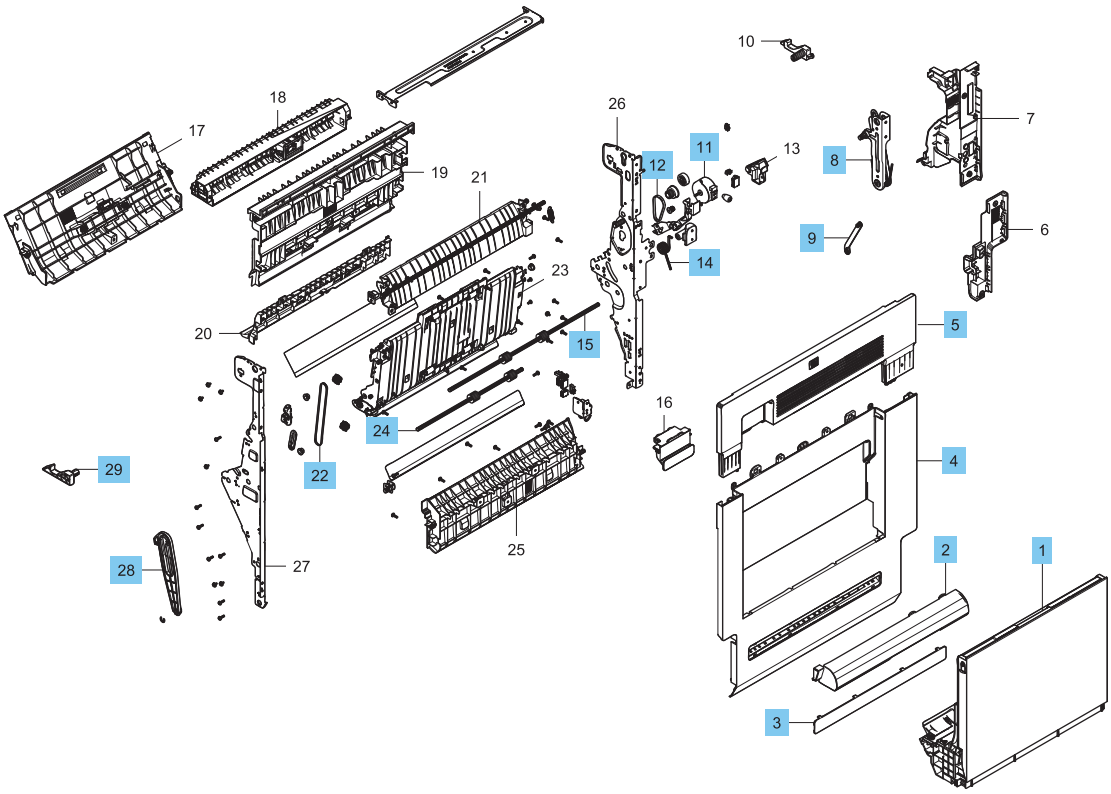


Table 4-12 Right door

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	MP	SAM-JC90-01352B	1
2	Front cover, mp	SAM-JC63-04910B	1
3	Cover, dummy sHCI	SAM-JC63-04918B	1
4	Side cover	SAM-JC63-04920B	1
5	Side cover, upper	SAM-JC63-04916B	1
8	Side cover, link	SAM-JC95-01970A	1
9	Side link	SAM-JC66-04400A	1
11	Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01085A	1
12	Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-001730	3
14	Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07372A	1
15	Roller, feed-duplex 1	SAM-JC66-04628A	1
22	Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-003183	1
24	Roller, feed-duplex 2	SAM-JC66-04629A	1
28	Link lever, d	SAM-JC66-04398A	1
29	Side locker	SAM-JC64-00710A	1

MP tray

Figure 4-13 MP tray

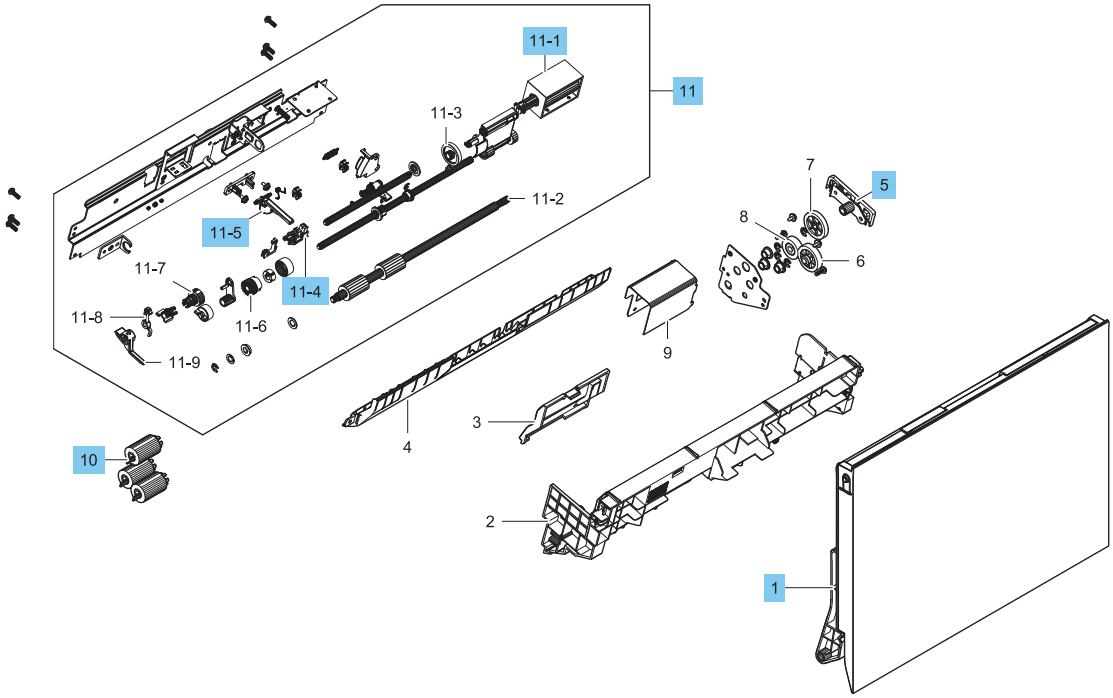


Table 4-13 MP tray

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	MP sub-tray	SAM-JC90-01357B	1
4	MP feed guide	SAM-JC90-01353A	1
10	Pickup roller, main frame	SAM-JC93-00540B	3
11	MP bracket, pickup	SAM-JC90-01355A	1
11-1	MP solenoid	SAM-JC33-00029B	1
11-4	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604–001393	1
11-5	Actuator lever, empty	SAM-JC66-04459A	1

Right door guide

Figure 4-14 Right door guide

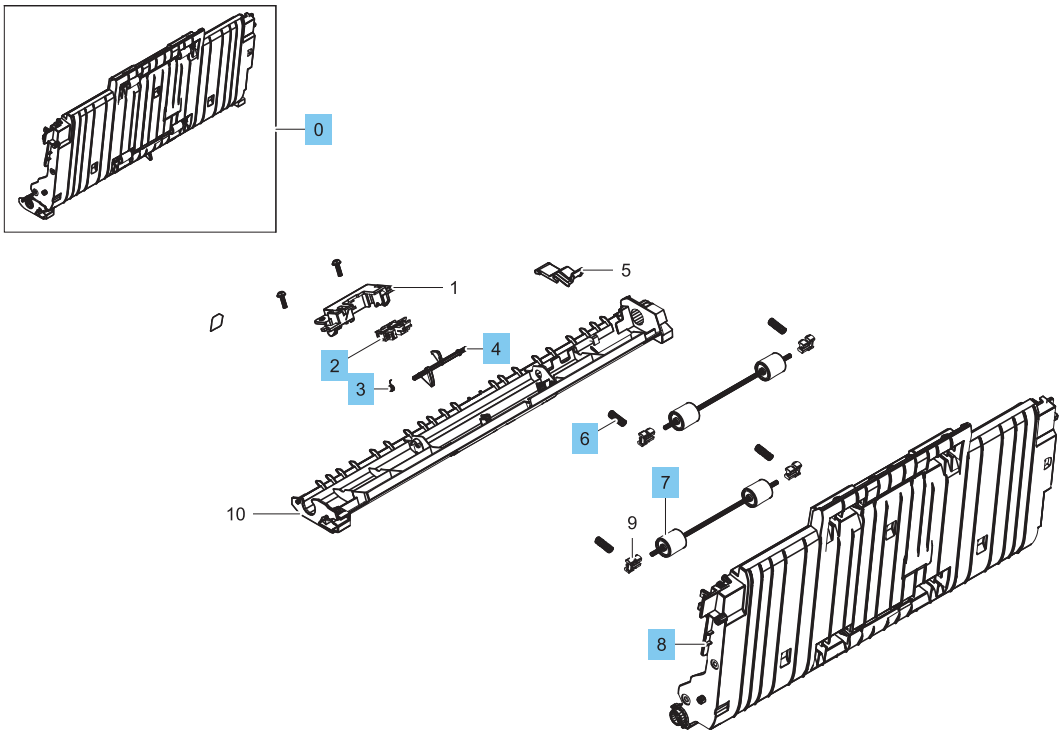


Table 4-14 Right door guide

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Side cover guide	SAM-JC95-01969A	1
2	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001393	1
3	Spring, ts	SAM-6107-001737	1
4	Actuator lever, dup	SAM-JC66-04405A	1
6	Spring, cs	SAM-6107-001731	4
7	Idle roller, rubber	SAM-JC66-02289B	4
8	Feed guide	SAM-JC61-06988A	1

Right door output and takeaway

Figure 4-15 Right door output and takeaway

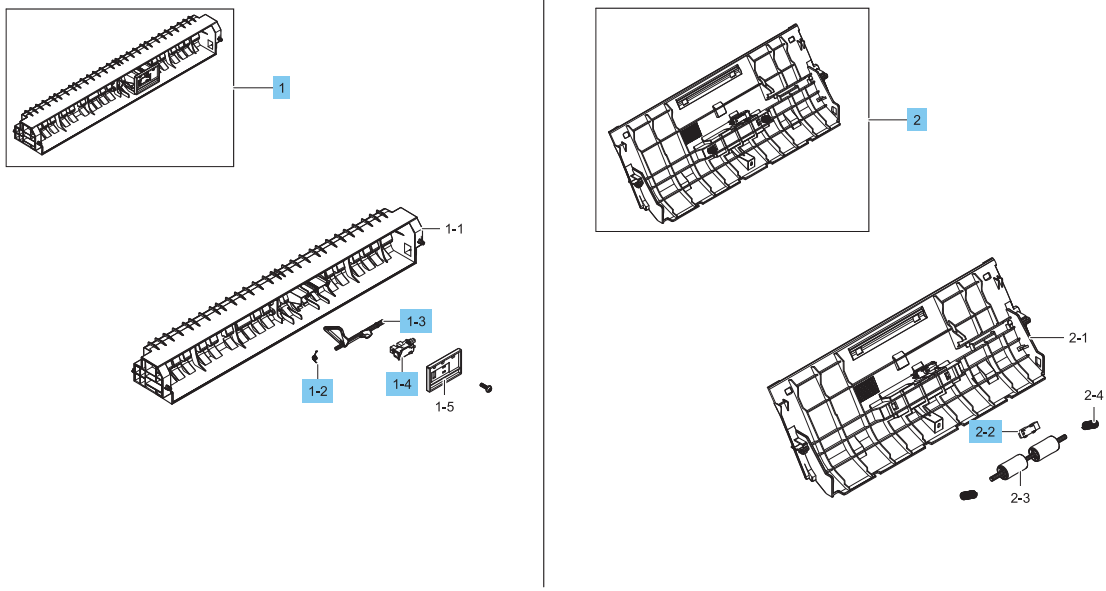


Table 4-15 Right door output and takeaway

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Side cover, output	SAM-JC95-01968A	1
1-2	Spring, ts	SAM-6107-001737	1
1-3	Actuator lever, fuser out	SAM-JC66-04406A	1
1-4	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604–001393	1
2	Side cover, takeaway	SAM-JC95-01972A	1
2-2	Photo interrupter	SAM-0604-001490	1

PTB transfer

Figure 4-16 PTB transfer

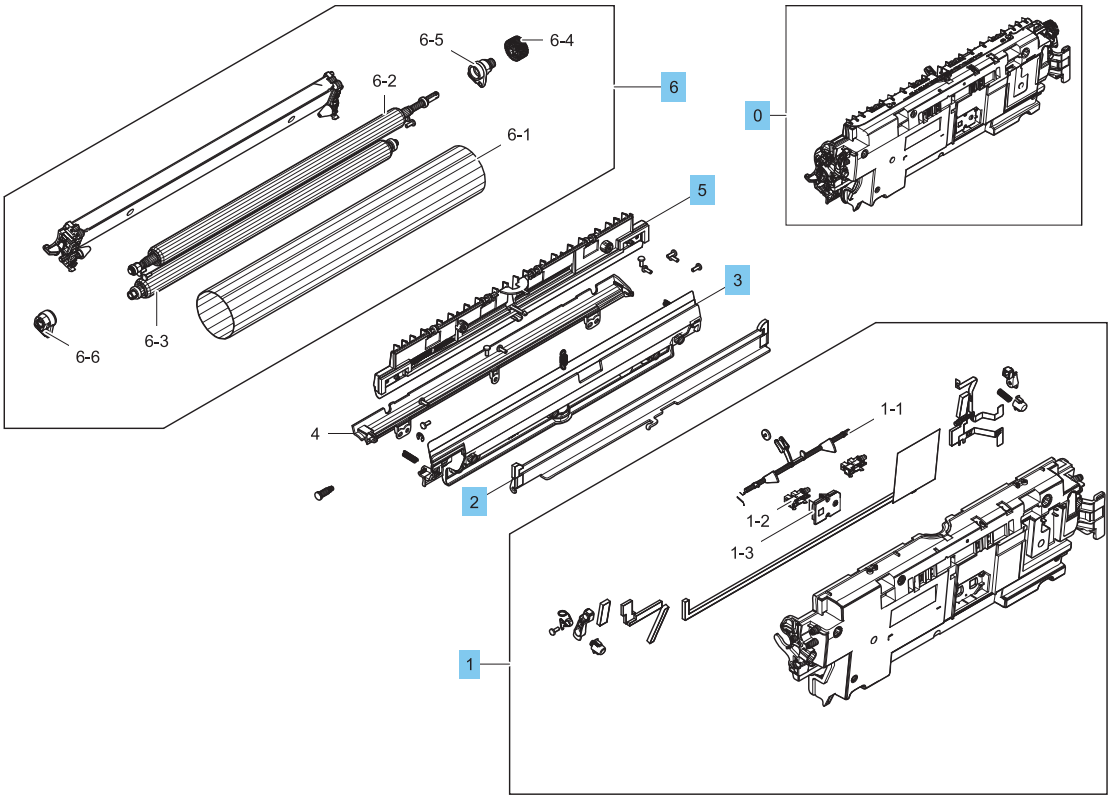


Table 4-16 PTB transfer

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	PTB transfer	SAM-JC93-01117A	1
1	Cartridge sub-cover, rear	SAM-JC96-09859A	1
2	Cartridge sub-cleaning blade	SAM-JC96-09862A	1
3	Cartridge sub-cover, front	SAM-JC96-09861A	1
5	Cartridge sub-guide, upper	SAM-JC96-09860A	1
6	Cartridge sub-belt PTB	SAM-JC96-09863A	1

Flow ADF

Figure 4-17 Flow ADF (z models)

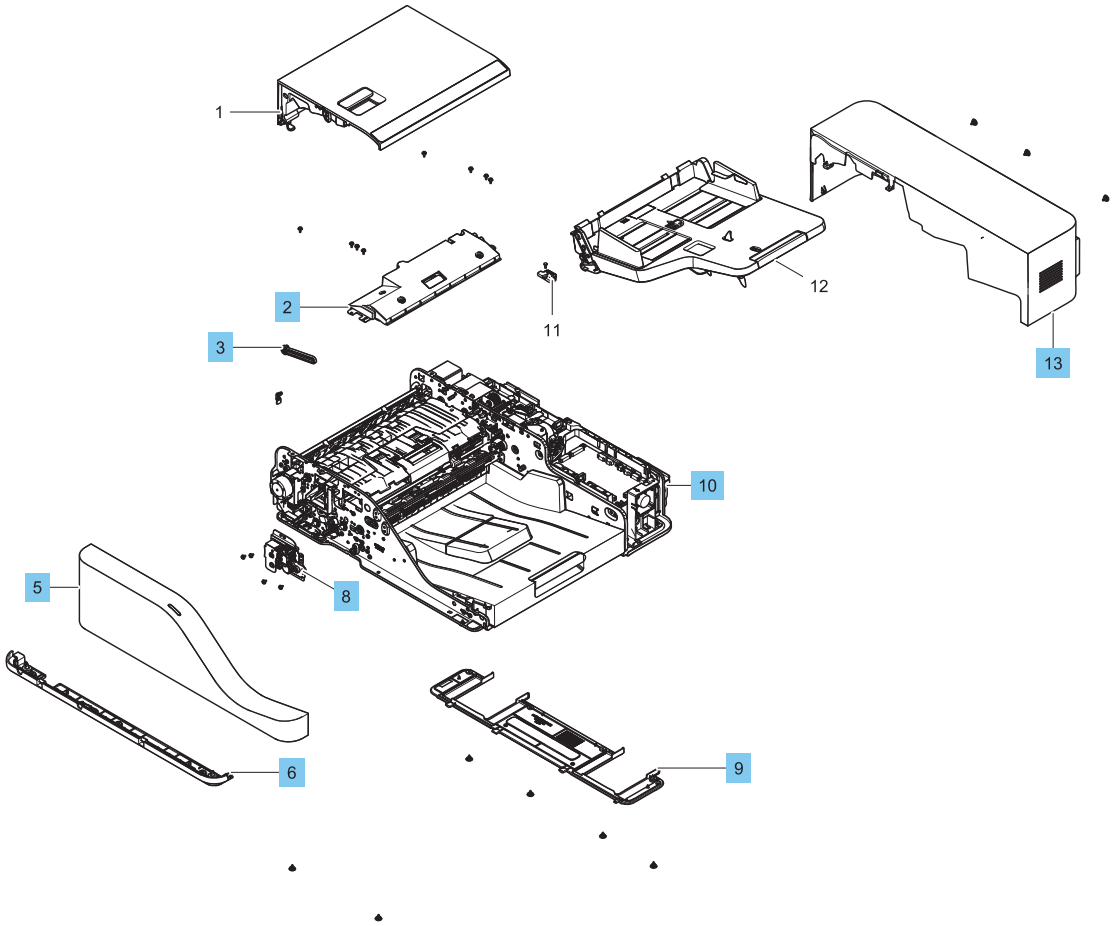


Table 4-17 Flow ADF

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2	Flow ADF pickup, upper	SAM-JC97-04872A	1
2	Flow ADF pickup, upper	SAM-JC97-04646B	1
3	Link cover, open	SAM-JC66-02270A	1
5	Flow ADF, front cover	SAM-JC97-04881A	1
6	Flow ADF, dummy front	SAM-JC97-04879A	1
8	Flow ADF, damper	SAM-JC97-04692A	1
9	Flow ADF, bottom cover	SAM-JC97-04880A	1
10	Flow ADF, main frame	SAM-JC97-04883A	1
10	Flow ADF, main frame sGX (dn models only)	SAM-JC97-04882A	1
13	Rear cover	SAM-JC63-05566A	1

Flow ADF open cover

Figure 4-18 Flow ADF open cover (z models)

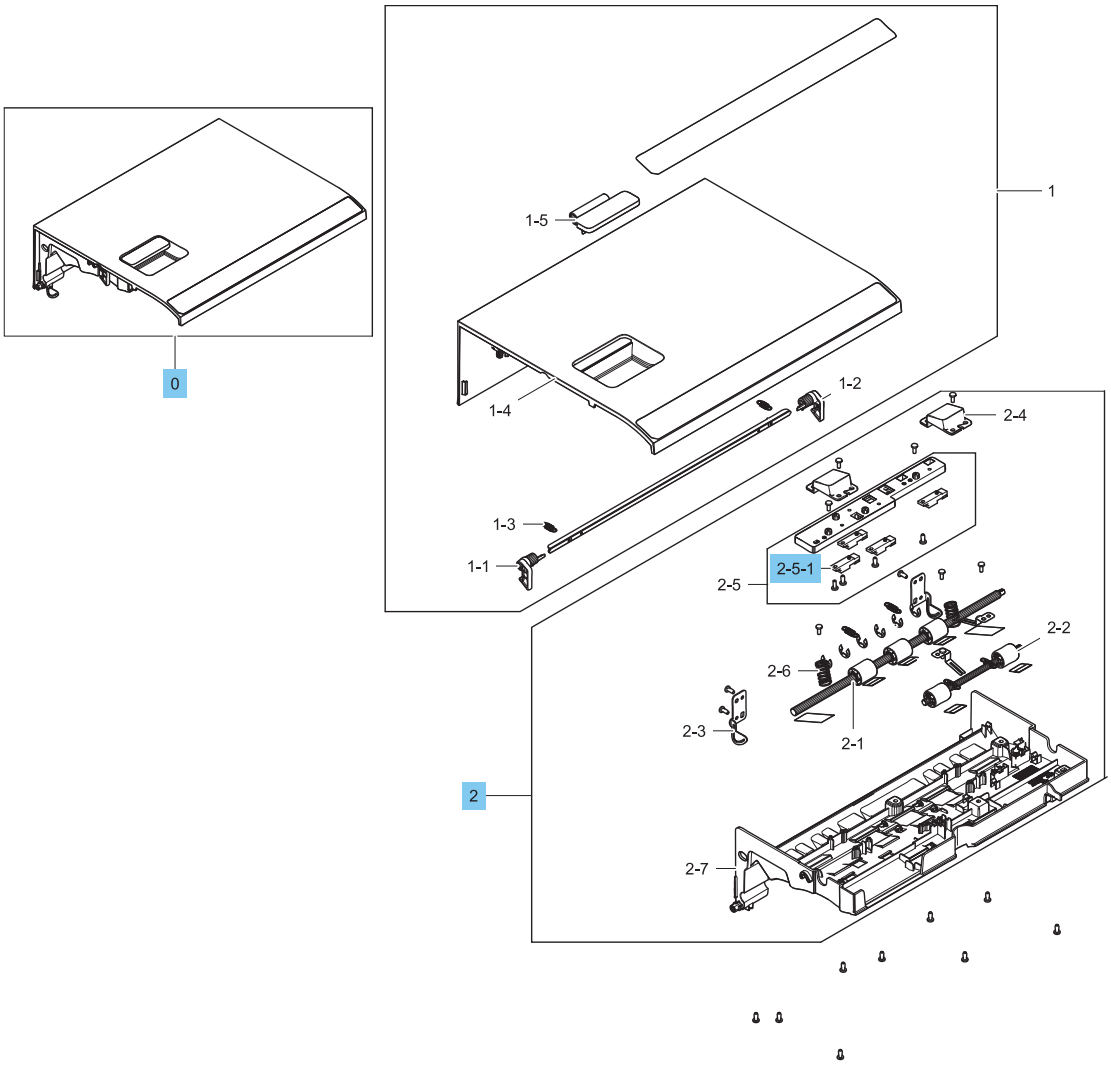


Table 4-18 Flow ADF open cover

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Flow ADF cover, open	SAM-JC97-04869A	1
2	Flow ADF cover, open lower	SAM-JC97-04696B	1
2-5-1	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001502	4

Flow ADF pickup roller assembly

Figure 4-19 Flow ADF pickup roller assembly

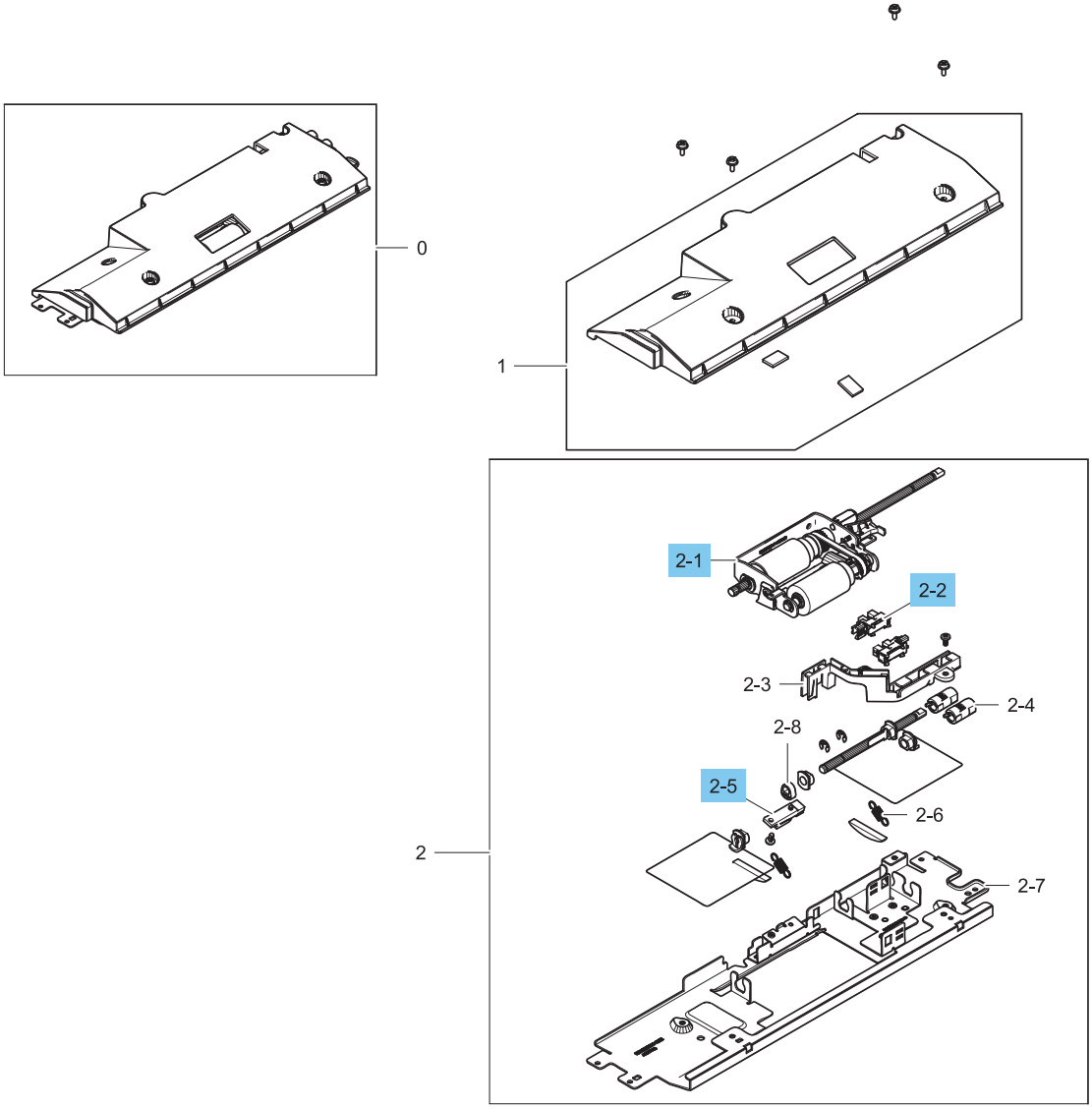


Table 4-19 Flow ADF pickup roller assembly

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2-1	Flow ADF pickup, sub	SAM-JC97-04650A	1
2-2	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604–001393	1
2-5	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001502	1

Flow ADF stacker

Figure 4-20 Flow ADF stacker

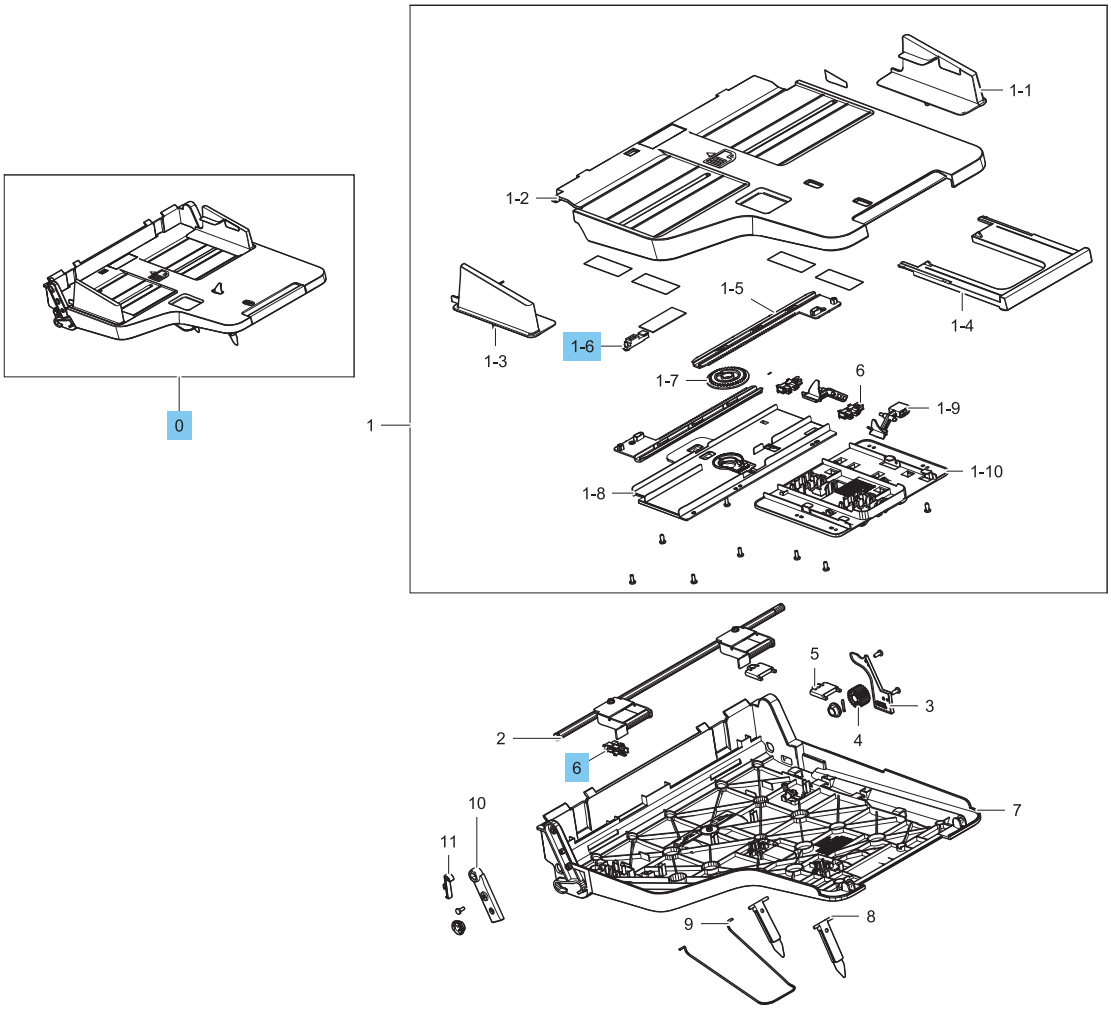


Table 4-20 Flow ADF stacker

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Flow ADF stacker	SAM-JC97-04658B	1
1-6	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604–001490	1
6	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604–001393	1

Flow ADF main

Figure 4-21 Flow ADF main frame (z models)

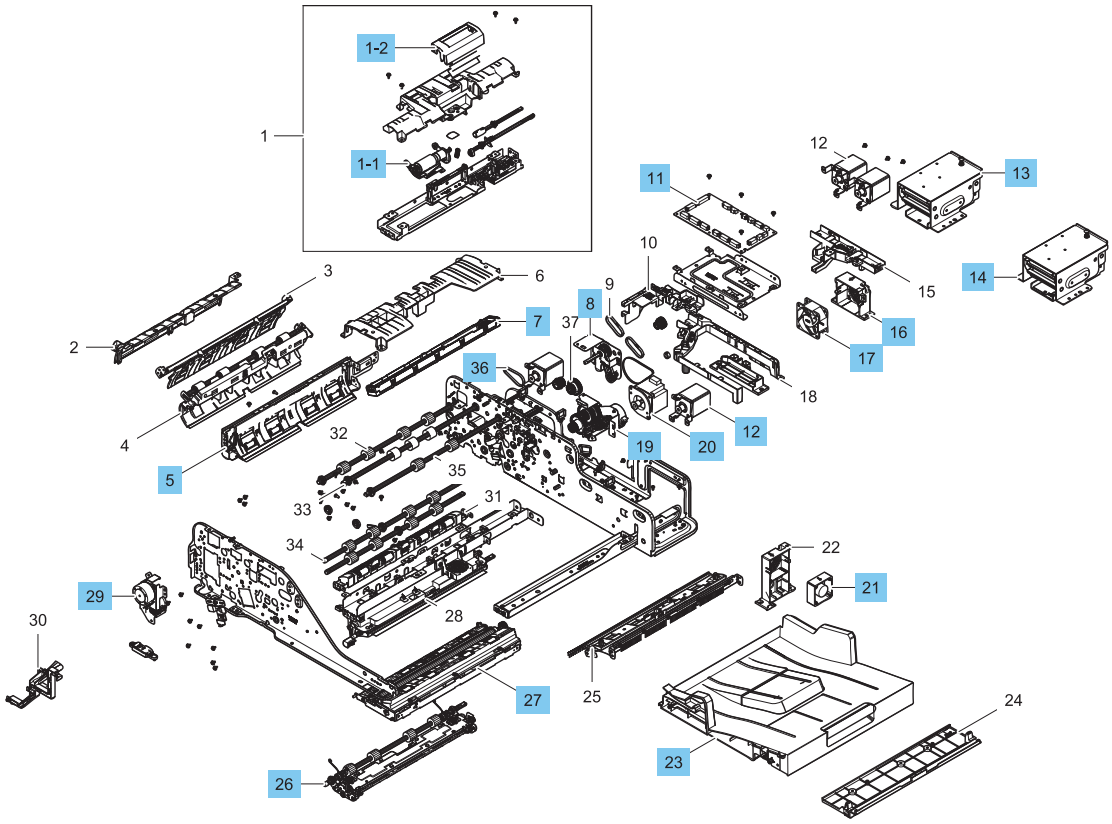


Table 4-21 Flow ADF main

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1-1	Flow ADF, housing separation roller	SAM-JC97-04661A	1
1-2	Flow ADF, separation cover	SAM-JC97-04652A	1
5	Flow ADF, scan in lower	SAM-JC97-04656B	1
7	Contact image sensor	SAM-0609-001558	1
8	Flow ADF, pickup release drive	SAM-JC97-04681A	1
11	Flow ADF, PCA high	SAM-JC92-02964A	1
12	Flow ADF, feed drive motor	SAM-JC97-04680A	4
13	Flow ADF, hinge l	SAM-JC97-04640A	1
14	Flow ADF, hinge r	SAM-JC97-04641A	1
16	Fan motor housing	SAM-JC61-07694A	1
17	Fan, dc	SAM-JC31-00168A	1
19	Flow ADF, lift drive	SAM-JC97-04679A	1
20	Step motor, ip	SAM-JC31-00177A	1
21	Fan	SAM-JC31-00146A	1
23	Flow ADF, exterior	SAM-JC97-04668B	1
26	Flow ADF, white simplex roller	SAM-JC97-04687A	1
27	Flow ADF, scan out	SAM-JC97-04830A	1
29	Flow ADF, release drive scan	SAM-JC97-04682A	1
36	Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-001730	3

Flow ADF image scanner

Figure 4-22 Flow ADF image scanner

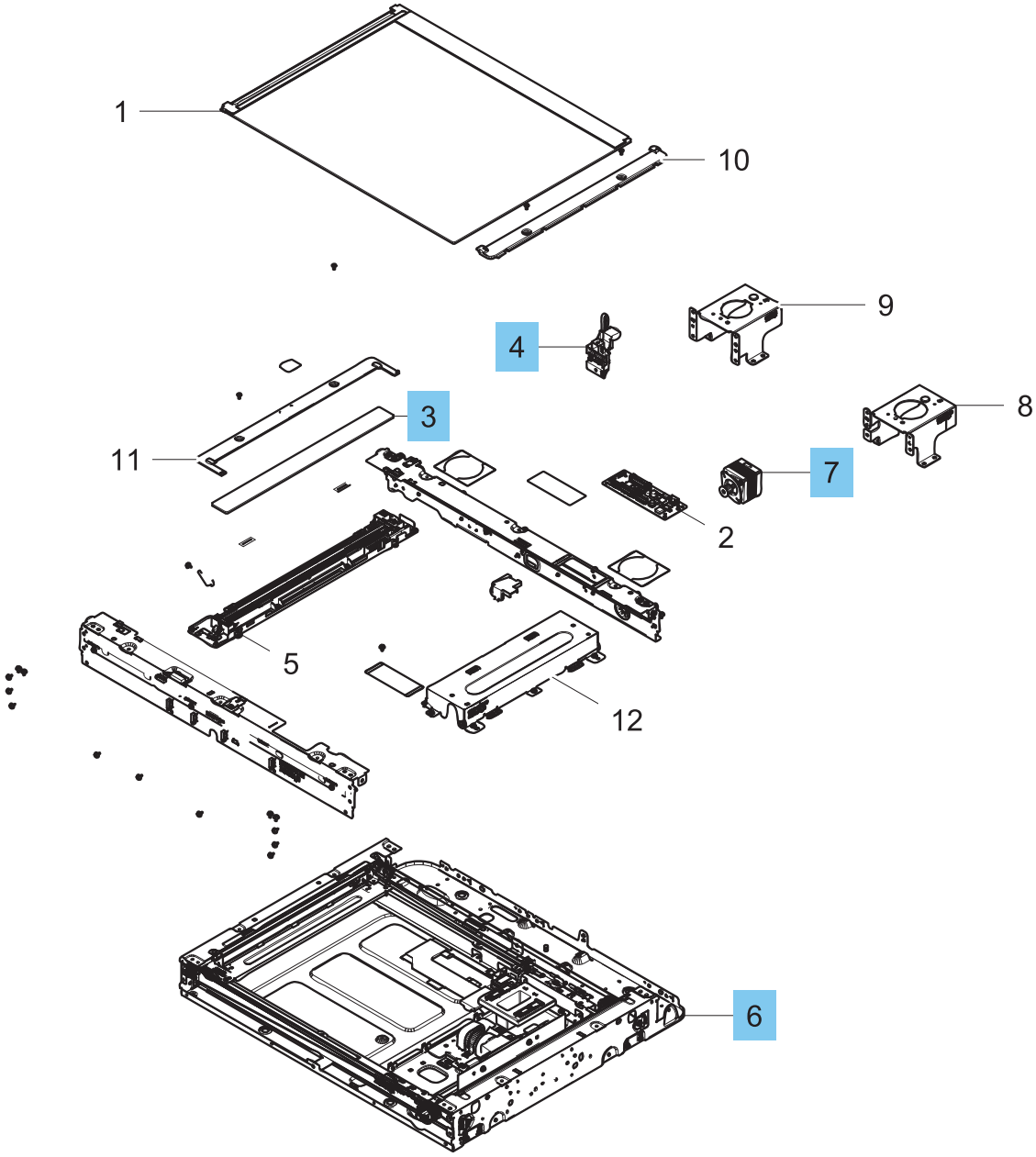


Table 4-22 Flow ADF image scanner

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
3	Tempered scan glass	SAM-JC01-00101A	1
4	Image scanner, open sensor	SAM-JC97-04516A	1
6	Image scanner, lower	SAM-JC97-04515A	1
7	Step motor, ip	SAM-JC31-00158A	1

Flow ADF image scanner, lower

Figure 4-23 Flow ADF image scanner, lower

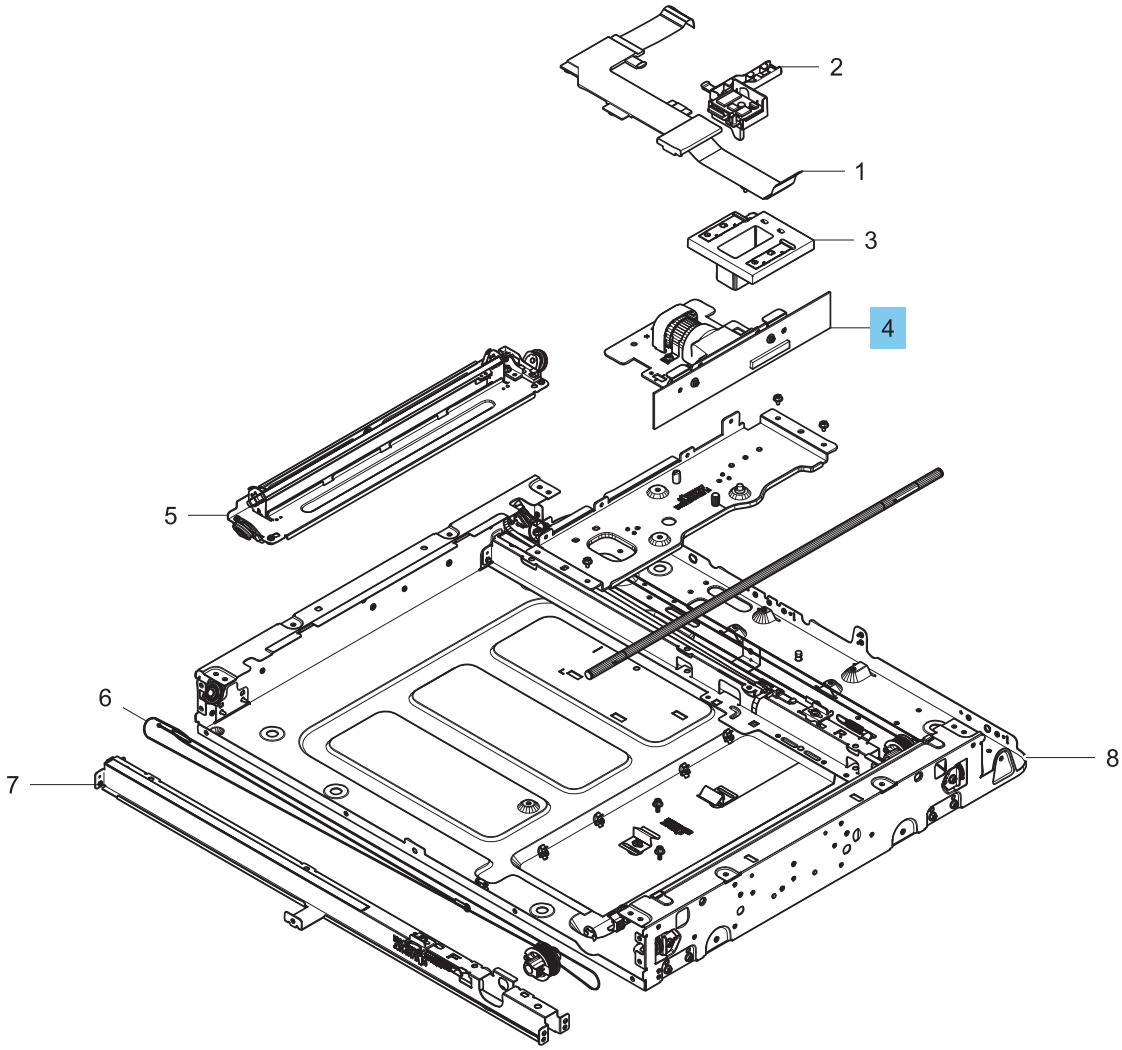


Table 4-23 Flow ADF image scanner, lower

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
4	Image scanner	SAM-JC97-04523B	1

Reservoir

Figure 4-24 Reservoir

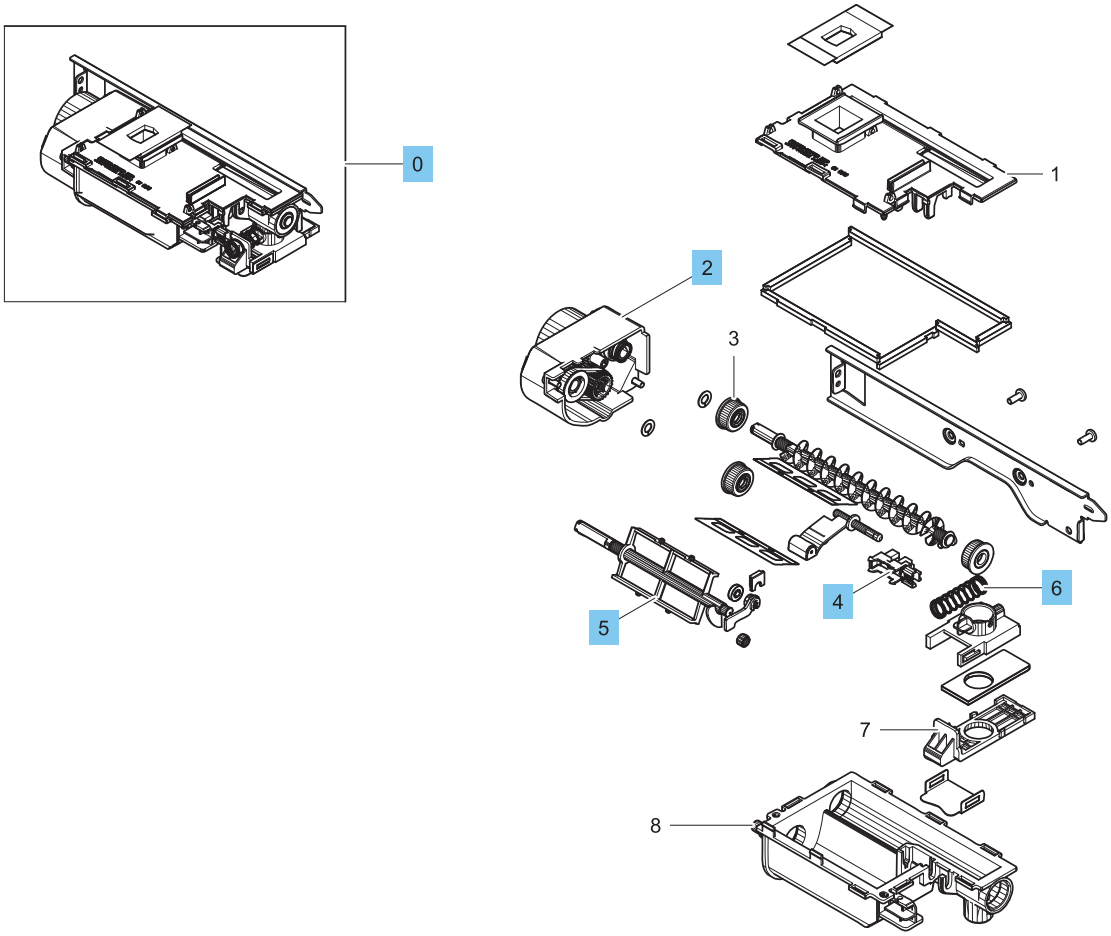


Table 4-24 Reservoir

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Frame reservoir	SAM-JC93-01071A	1
2	Reservoir drive	SAM-JC93-01067A	1
4	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001393	1
5	Agitator paddle, res	SAM-JC66-04311A	1
6	Spring, cs	SAM-6107-002599	1

Dual cassette feeder (DCF)

DCF main

Figure 4-25 DCF main

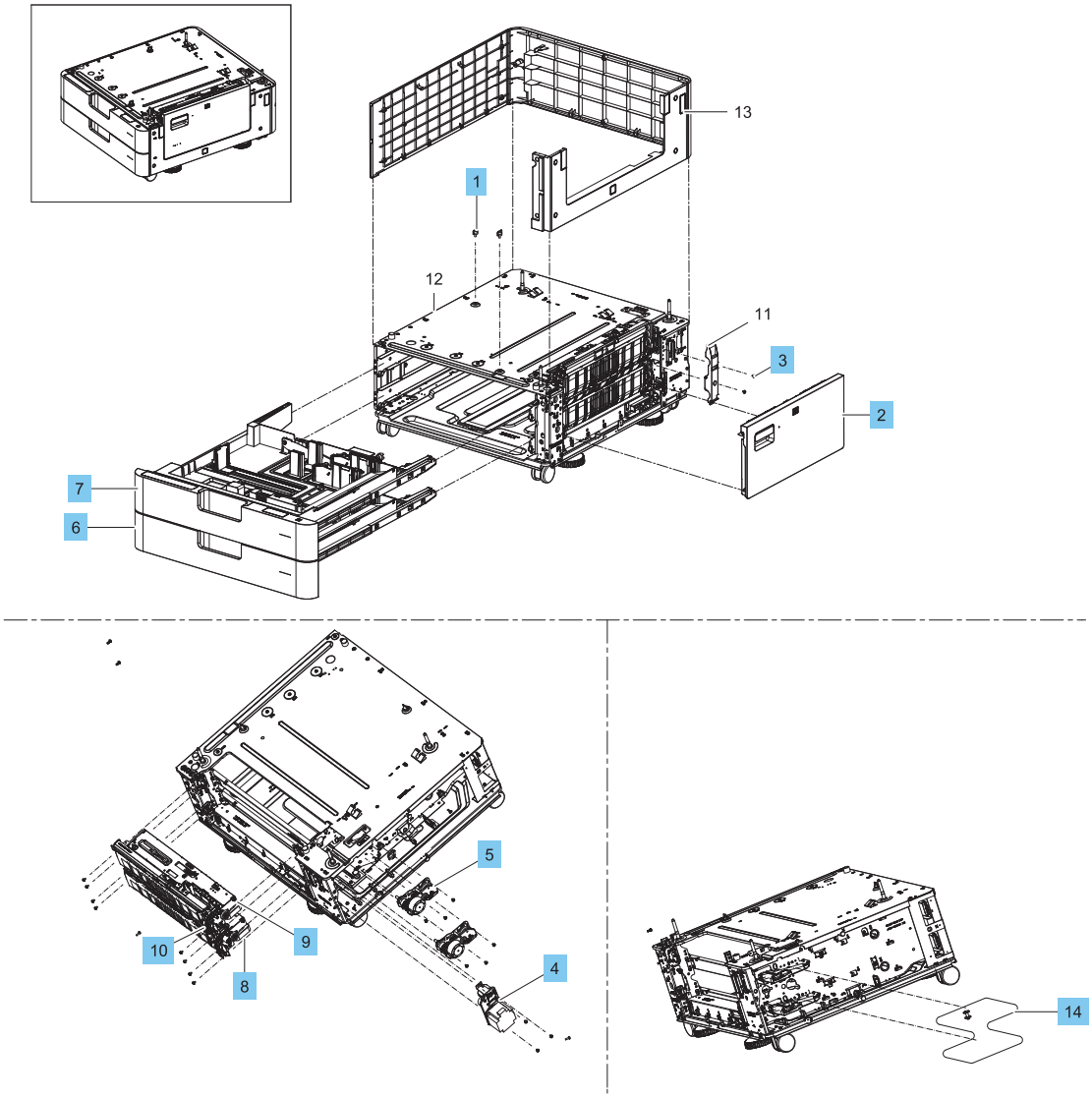


Table 4-25 DCF main

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Machinery, fastener screw	SAM-JC60-00078A	2
2	DCF, sub-takeaway	SAM-JC90-01649A	1
3	Hex screw	6009-001665	19
4	Feed drive opt	SAM-JC93-01135A	1
5	Pickup drive	SAM-JC93-01063B	2
6	Cassette, fifth	SAM-JC90-01652	1
7	Cassette, fourth	SAM-JC90-01654	1
8	DCF second pickup	SAM-JC90-01680	1
9	DCF first pickup	SAM-JC90-01679	1
10	Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-003185	1
14	DCF, sub-auto closing	SAM-JC90-01677	1
1-2-2	Pick rollers[1]	SAM-JC93-0192A	3
1-2-3	Photo-interrupter[1]	SAM-0604-001490	1
1-2-21	Feed roller[1]	SAM-JC66-04607A	1
1-2-13	Clutch one way[1]	SAM-JC66-00977A	1
1-2-24	Feed roller opt[1]	SAM-JC66-04670A	1
1-2-15	Coupler[1]	SAM-JC67-00455A	1

[1] These parts do not appear in the exploded diagram, but are available for the dual cassette feeder.

DCF frame

Figure 4-26 DCF frame

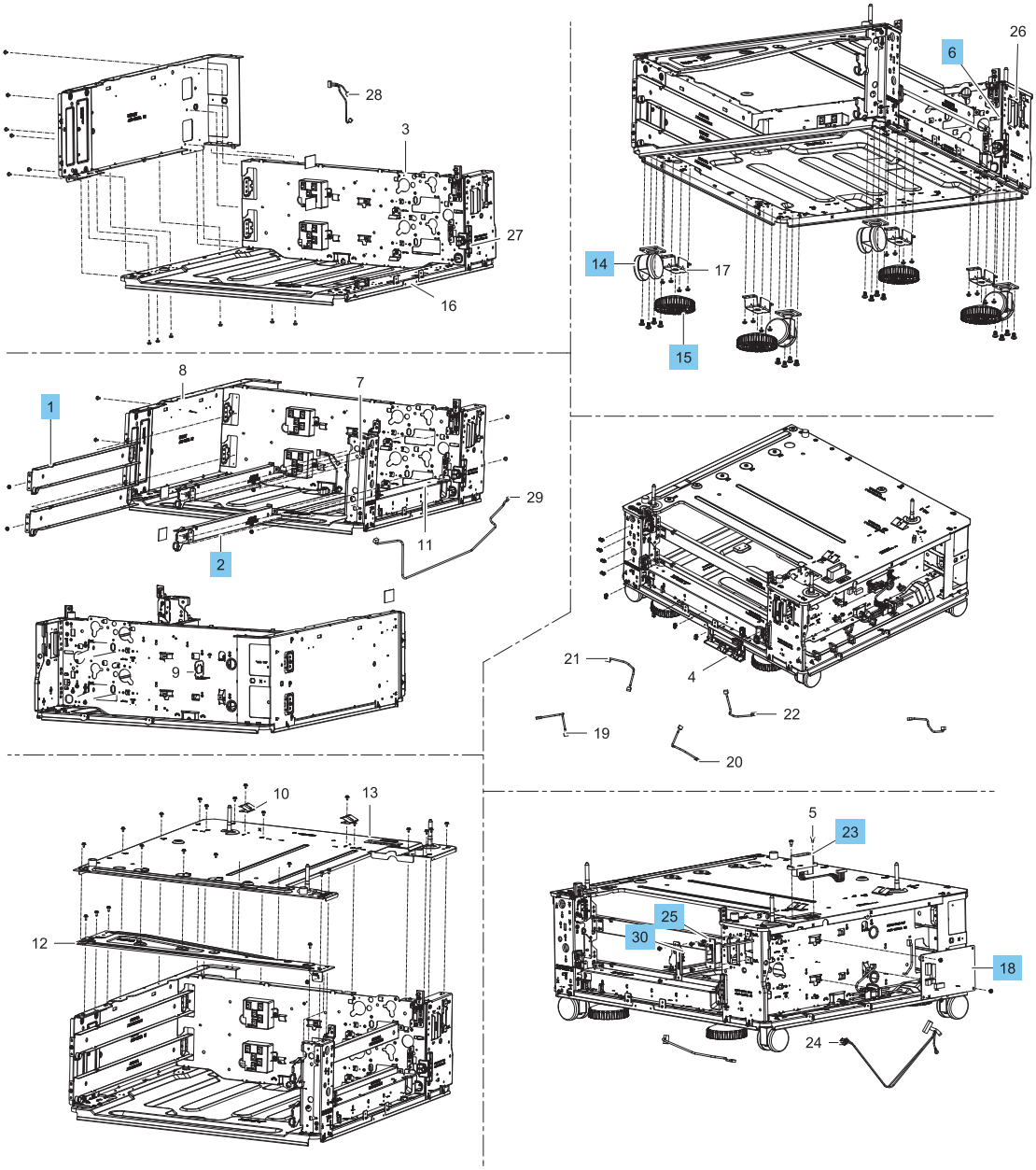


Table 4-26 DCF frame

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Frame, left cst rail assembly	SAM-JC93-01044A	2
2	Frame, right cst rail assembly	SAM-JC93-01045A	2
6	DCF sub-takeaway interlock	SAM-JC90-01385A	1
14	Caster	SAM-6109-001138	4
15	DCF guide adjust	SAM-JC61-04871A	4
18	DCF PCA	SAM-JC92-02738A	1
23	DCF, main harness	SAM-JC39-02276A	1
25	DCF, sub harness	SAM-JC39-02278A	1
30	DCF, t1mot harness	SAM-JC39-02268A	1

DCF rear frame

Figure 4-27 DCF rear frame

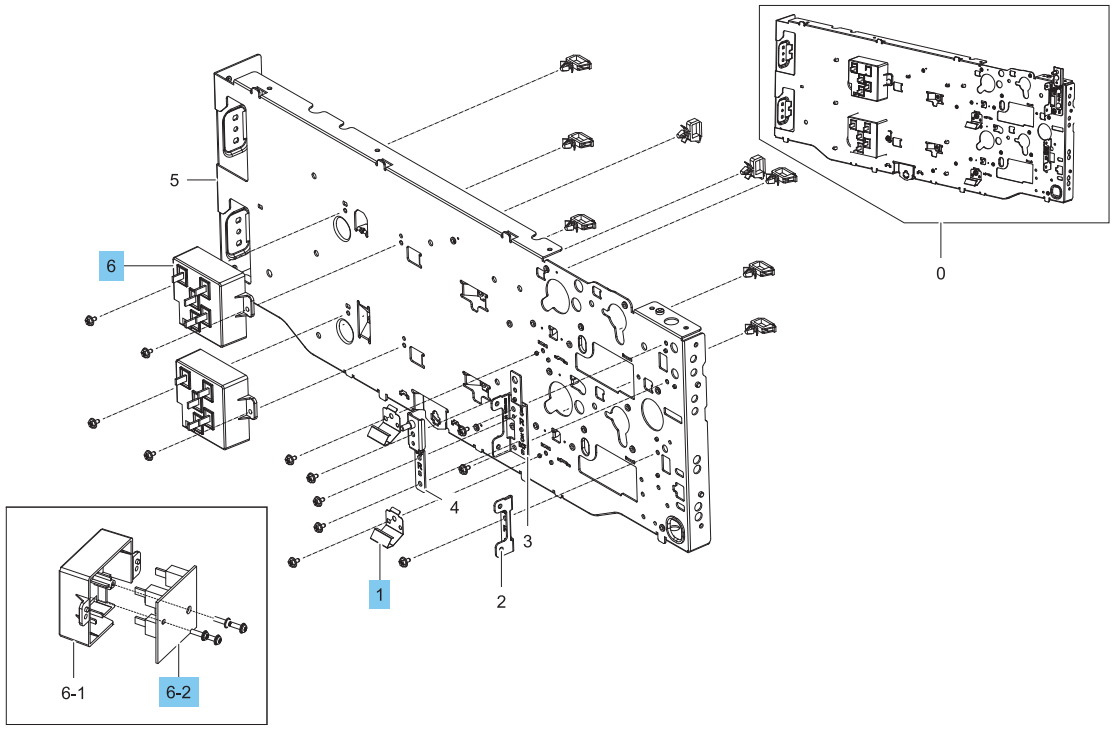


Table 4-27 DCF rear frame

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Ground plate	SAM-JC61-03002A	2
6	Main frame rear auto-size holder	SAM-JC93-00018A	2
6-2	PCA, paper size sensor	SAM-JC92-02622A	2

Opt feed drive

Figure 4-28 Opt feed drive

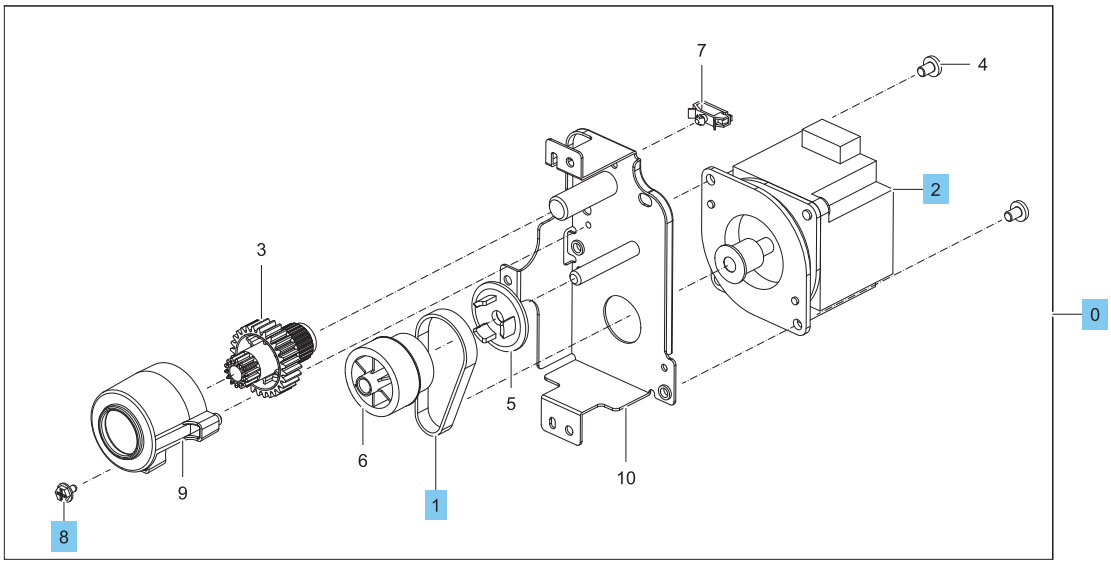


Table 4-28 Opt feed drive

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Opt feed drive	SAM-JC93-01135A	1
1	Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-003670	1
2	Step motor, ip	SAM-JC31-00177A	1
8	Hex screw	6009-001665	1

DCF second pickup

Figure 4-29 DCF second pickup

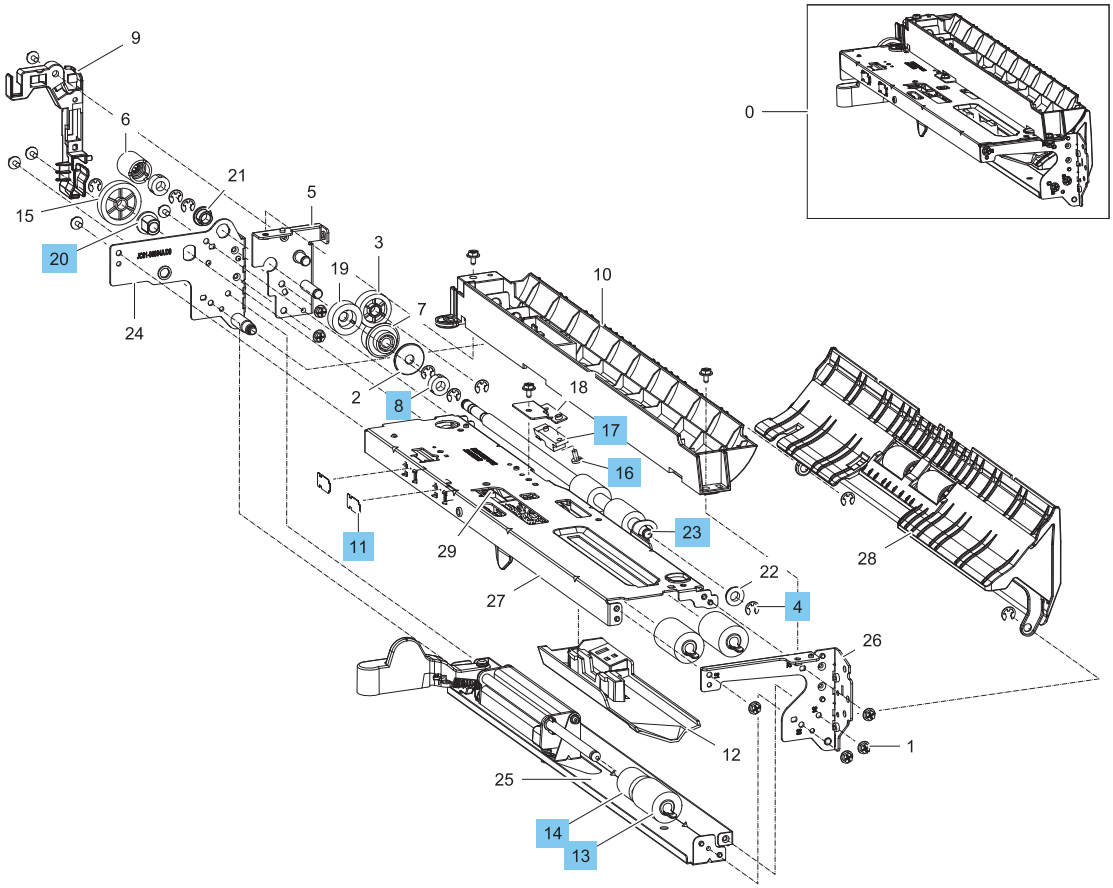


Table 4-29 DCF second pickup

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
4	E-ring	SAM-6044-000125	6
8	Clutch one way	SAM-JC66-00977A	4
11	Sheet sensor	SAM-JC63-03776A	2
13	Frame, main pickup roller	SAM-JC93-01092A	3
14	Coupler, torque limiter	SAM-JC67-00464A	1
16	Screw, tap type	SAM-6003–00269	4
17	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001381	1
20	Bush-6, dl	SAM-JC61-00884A	2
23	Opt feed roller	SAM-JC66-04607A	1

High capacity input tray (HCI)

HCI main

Figure 4-30 HCI main

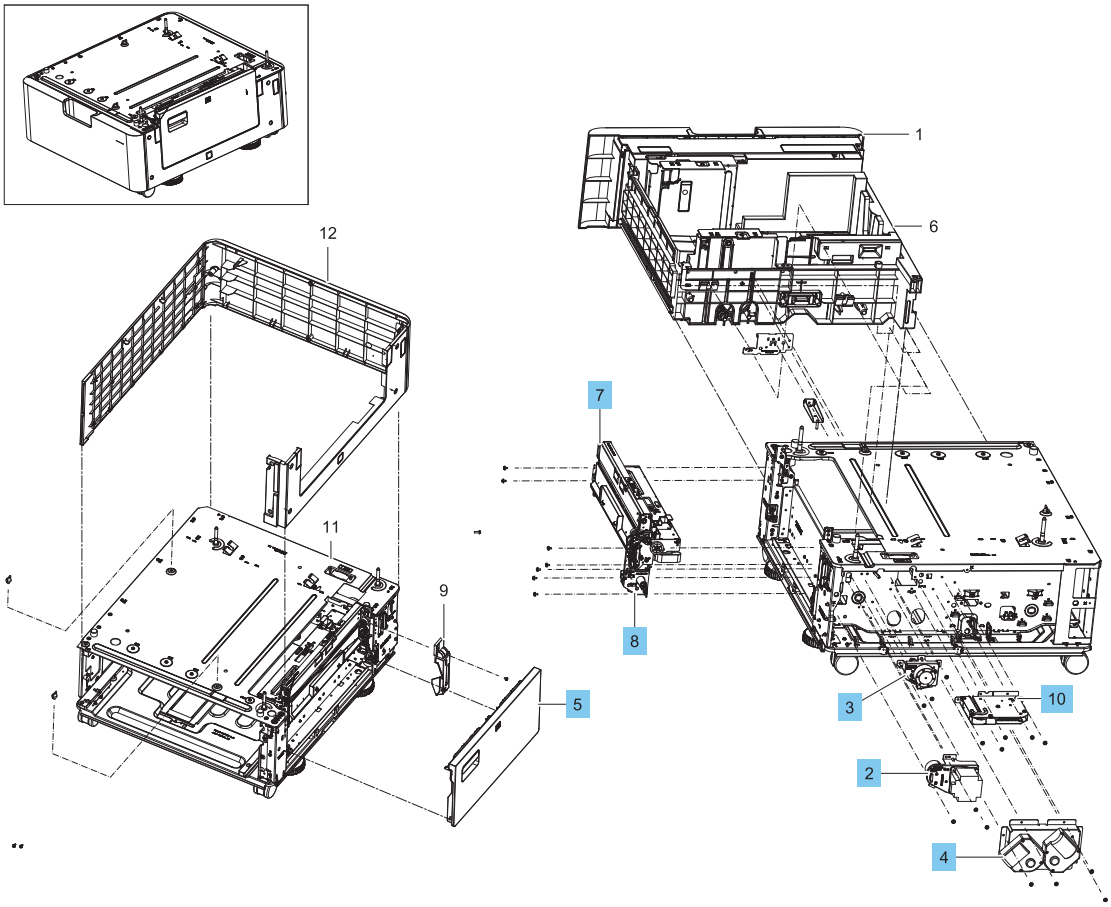


Table 4-30 HCI main

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Tray cover	SAM-JC63-04797B	1
2	Feed drive, HCI	SAM-JC63-04797B	1
3	Pickup drive	SAM-JC90-01115A	1
4	Lift drive, shift	SAM-JC93-01118A	1
5	HCI sub-takeaway	SAM-JC90-01646A	1
6	HCI, cassette	SAM-JC90-01642A	1
7	HCI, main pickup	SAM-JC93-01322B	1
8	Drive takeaway roller	SAM-JC93-01119A	1
10	HCI, sub-auto closer	SAM-JC90-01382A	1

HCI drive

Figure 4-31 HCI drive

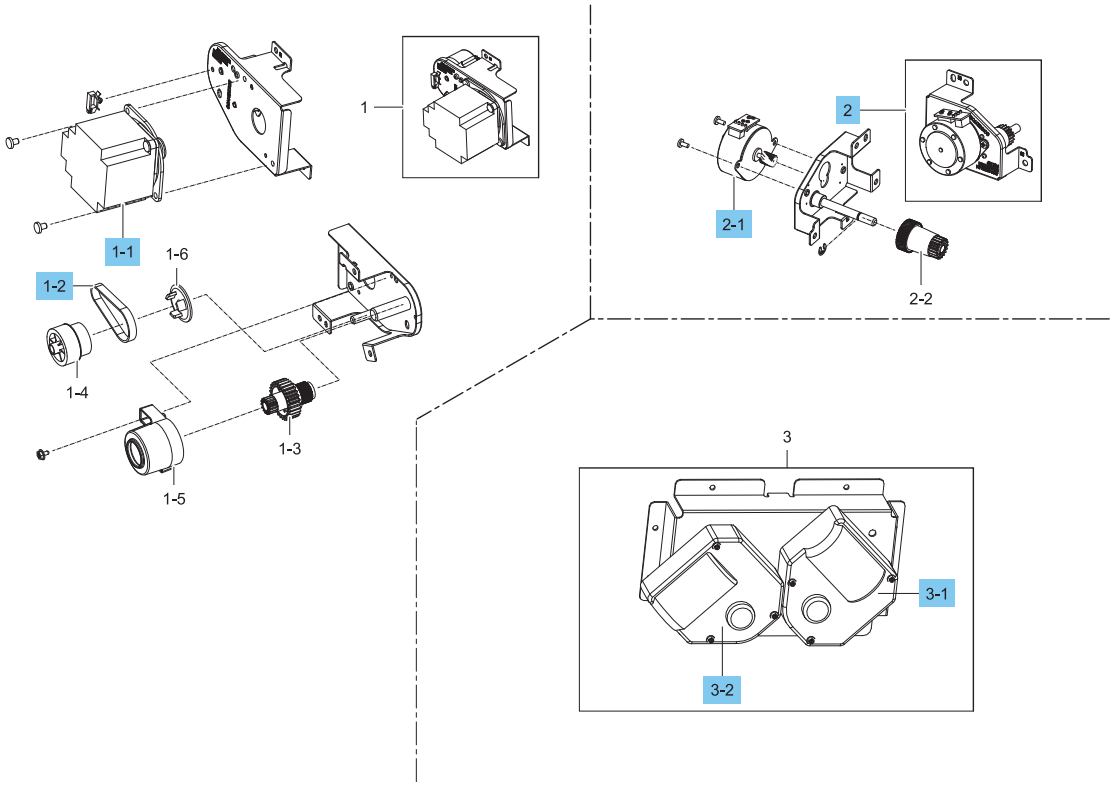


Table 4-31 HCI drive

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1-1	Motor step, ip	SAM-JC31-00177A	1
1-2	Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-003670	1
2	Pickup drive	SAM-JC93-01115A	1
2-1	Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01083A	1
3-1	Motor shift gear	SAM-JC31-00125A	1
3-2	Motor gear	SAM-JC31-00109A	1

HCI cassette

Figure 4-32 HCI cassette

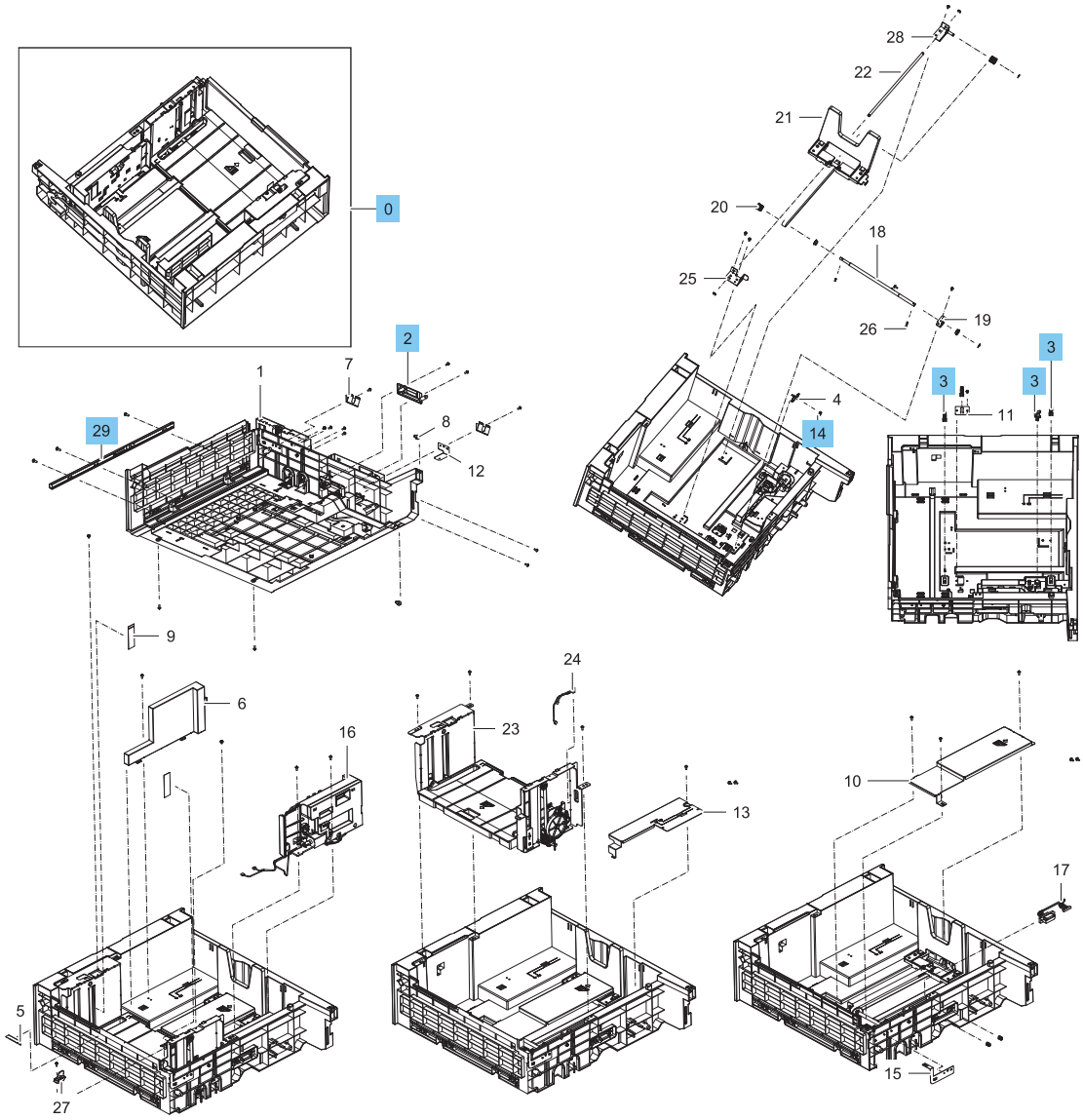


Table 4-32 HCI cassette

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	HCI cassette	SAM-JC90-01642A	1
2	Connector holder, scf	SAM-JC61-01742A	1
3	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001393	4
14	Spring, etc torsion doc (cc2-f)	SAM-JC61-00076A	1
29	Cassette guide rail	SAM-JC61-07471A	1

HCI frame

Figure 4-33 HCI frame

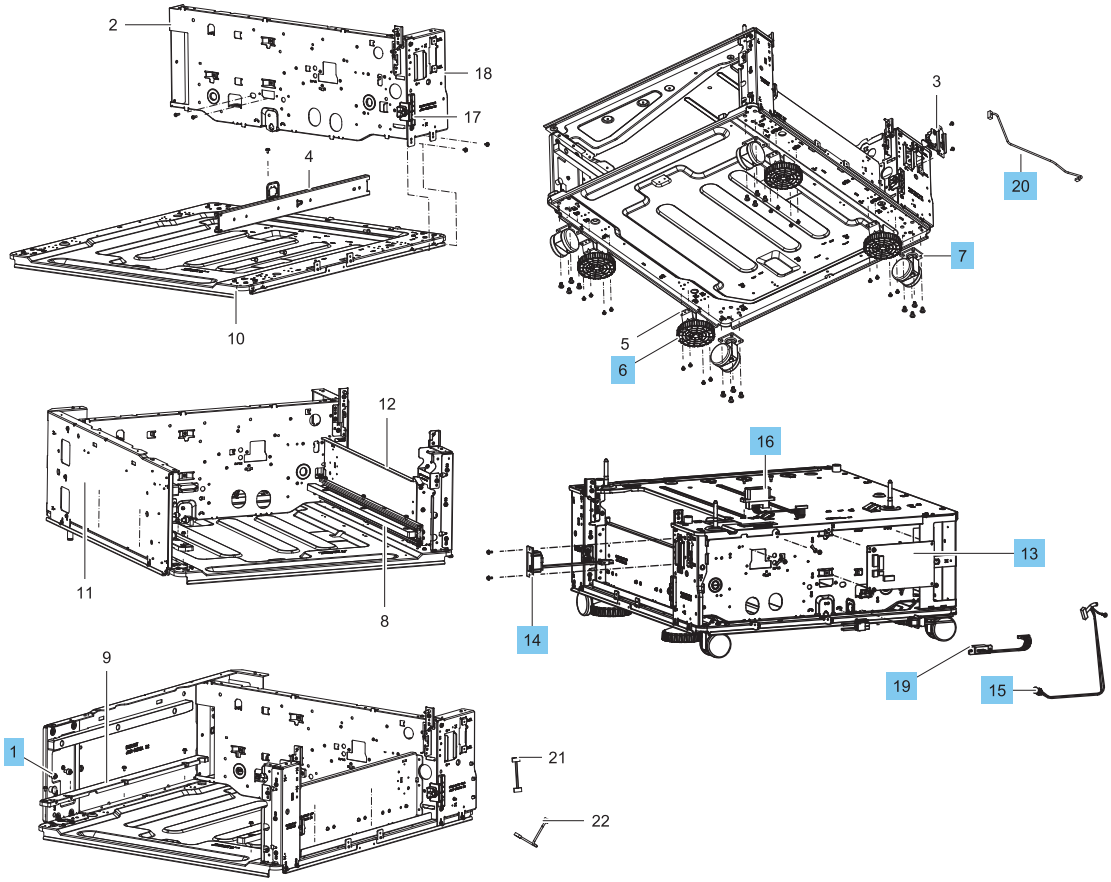


Table 4-33 HCI frame

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Idle roller, cst	SAM-JC61-03331A	2
6	Adjust guide, DCF	SAM-JC61-04871A	4
7	Caster	SAM-6109-001138	4
13	HCI PCA	SAM-JC92-02738B	1
14	Harness, sub if HCI	SAM-JC39-02285A	1
15	Harness, heater HCI	SAM-JC39-02284A	1
16	Harness, main if HCI	SAM-JC39-02283A	1
19	Harness, inner tray HCI	SAM-JC39-02286A	1
20	Harness, mot HCI	SAM-JC39-02279A	1

HCI main pickup

Figure 4-34 HCI main pickup

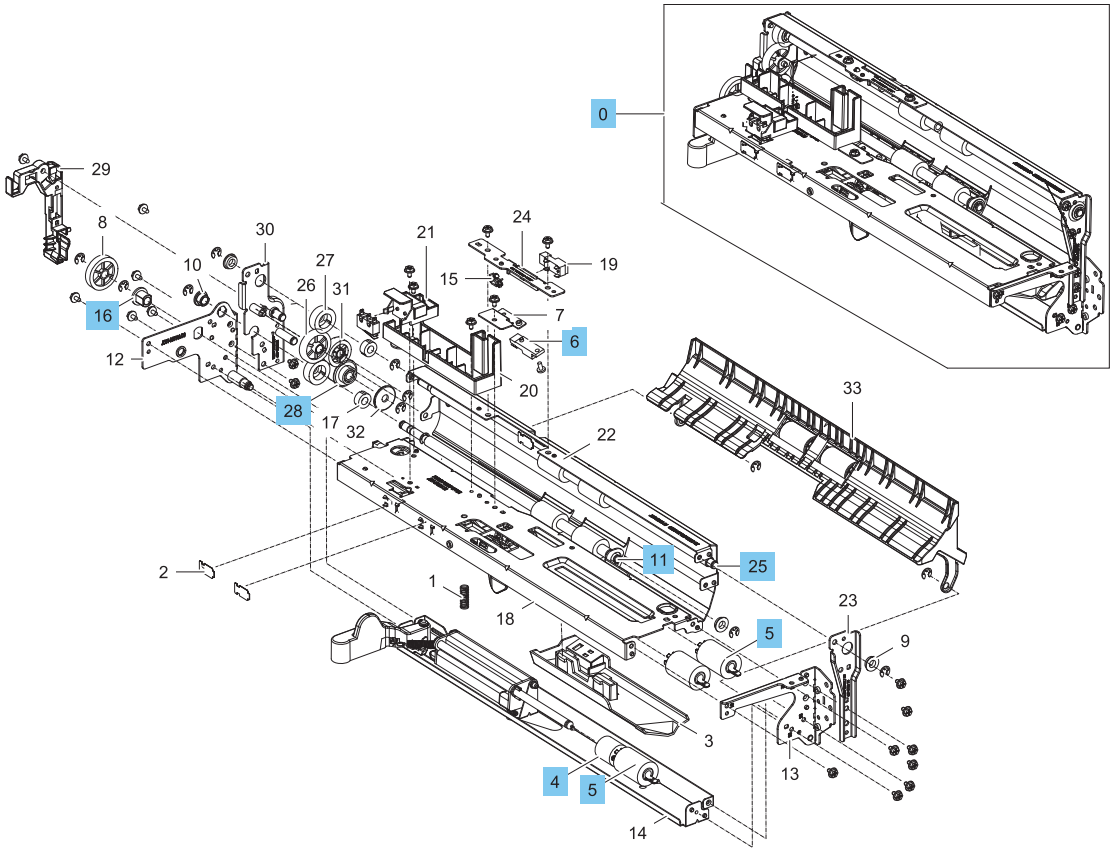


Table 4-34 HCI main pickup

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	HCI main	SAM-JC93-01139A	1
4	Coupler, torque limiter	SAM-JC67-00455A	1
5	Pickup roller	SAM-JC93-01091A	3
6	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001381	1
11	Feed roller	SAM-JC66-04607A	1
16	Bush-6, dl	SAM-JC61-00884A	1
25	Feed roller	SAM-JC66-04670A	1
28	Belt	SAM-JC66-04281A	1

High capacity input tray side unit (sHCI)

sHCI main 1

Figure 4-35 sHCI main 1

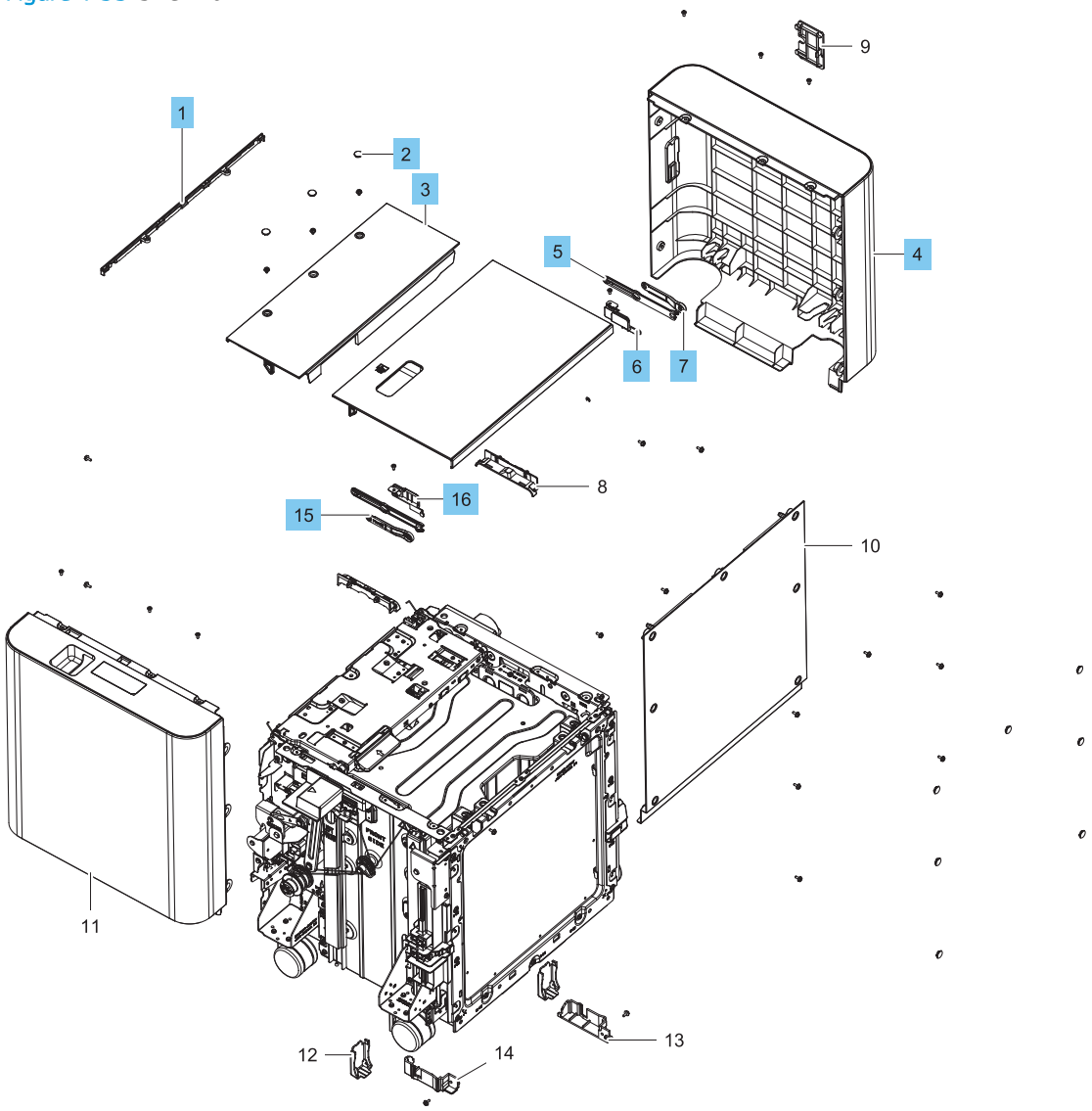


Table 4-35 sHCI main 1

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Left cover	SAM-JC63-04797B	1
2	Screw cap	SAM-JC67-00711A	3
3	Pickup cover	SAM-JC63-04798B	1
4	Rear cover, sHCI	SAM-JC90-01660A	1
5	Link door	SAM-JC66–04279A	2
6	Link holder, hinge r	SAM-JC61-06568A	1
7	Link door, rear 2	SAM-JC66-04277A	1
15	Link door, front 2	SAM-JC66-04278A	1
16	Link holder, hinge f	SAM-JC61-06567A	1

sHCI main 3

Figure 4-36 sHCI main 3

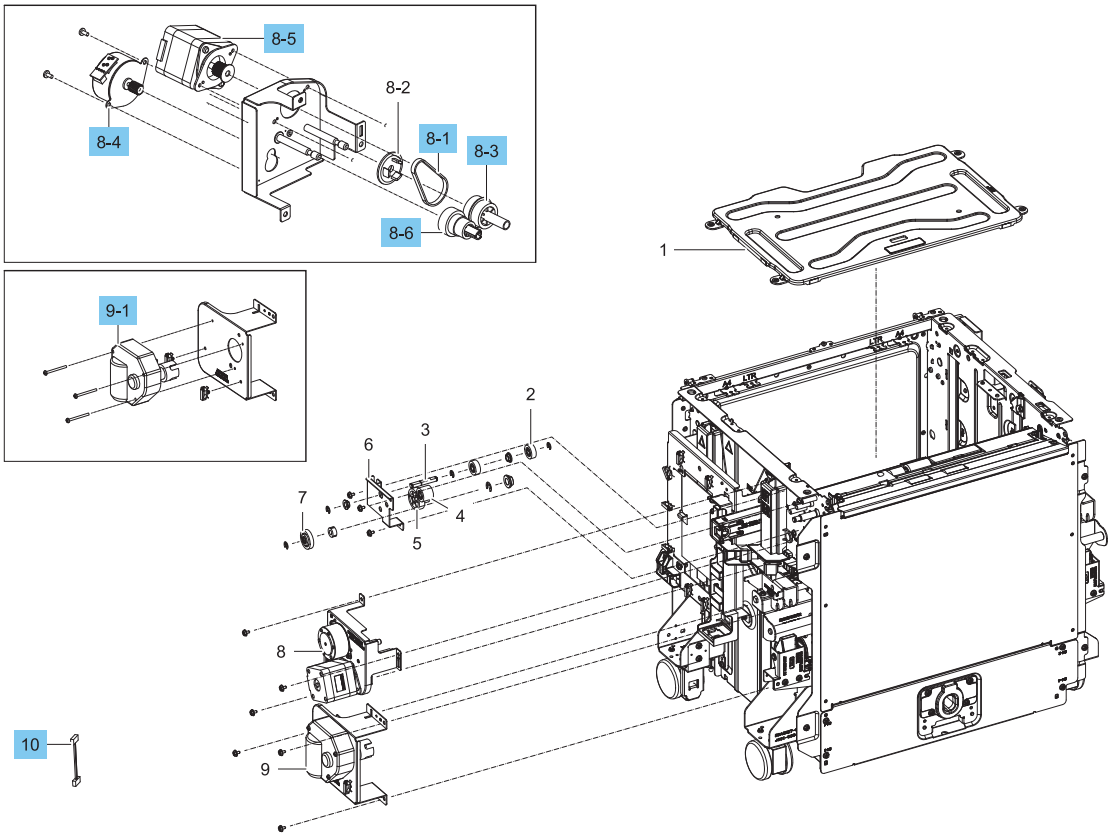


Table 4-36 sHCI main 3

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
8-1	Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-001730	1
8-3	sHCI, feed pulley gear	SAM-JC66-04295A	1
8-4	Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01083A	1
8-5	Step motor, ip	SAM-JC31-00163A	1
8-6	sHCI drive gear	SAM-JC66-04294A	1
9-1	Gear motor	SAM-JC31-00109A	1
10	sHCI, mot harness	SAM-JC39-02287A	1

sHCI main 5

Figure 4-37 sHCI main 5

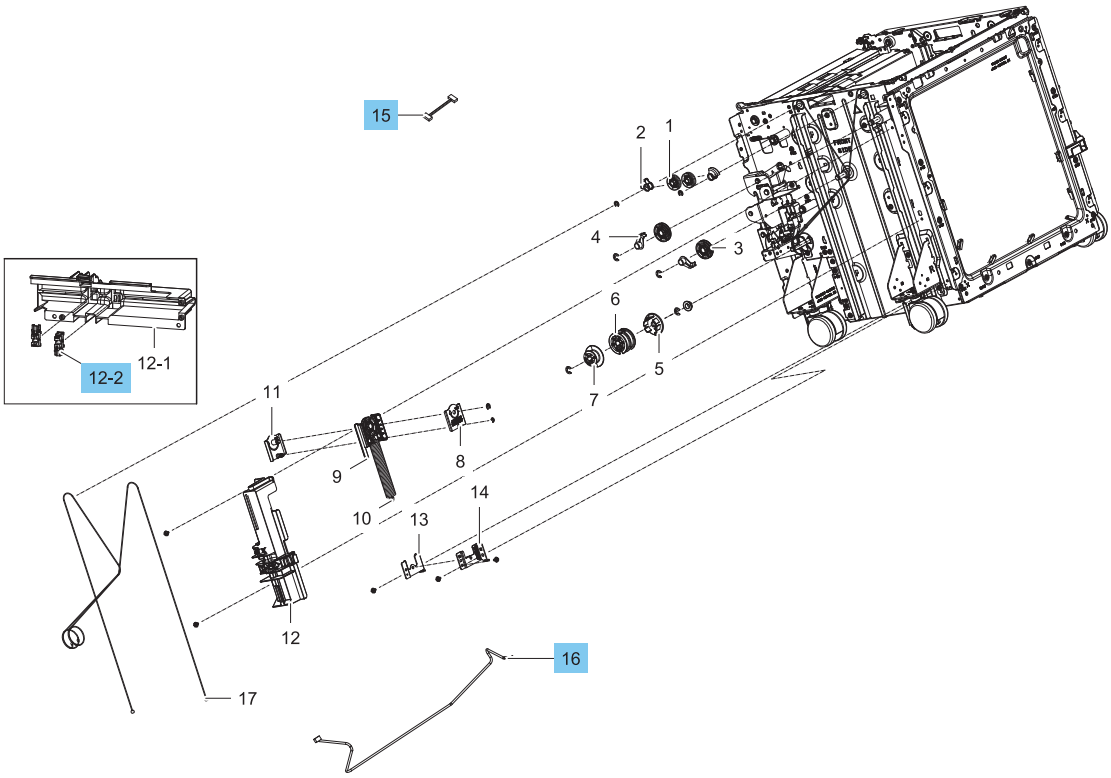


Table 4-37 sHCI main 5

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
9	Actuator	SAM-JC66-04290A	1
12-2	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001393	2
15	sHCI, connect sensor harness	SAM-JC39-02291A	1
16	sHCI, plow harness	SAM-JC39-02288A	1

sHCI main 6

Figure 4-38 sHCI main 6

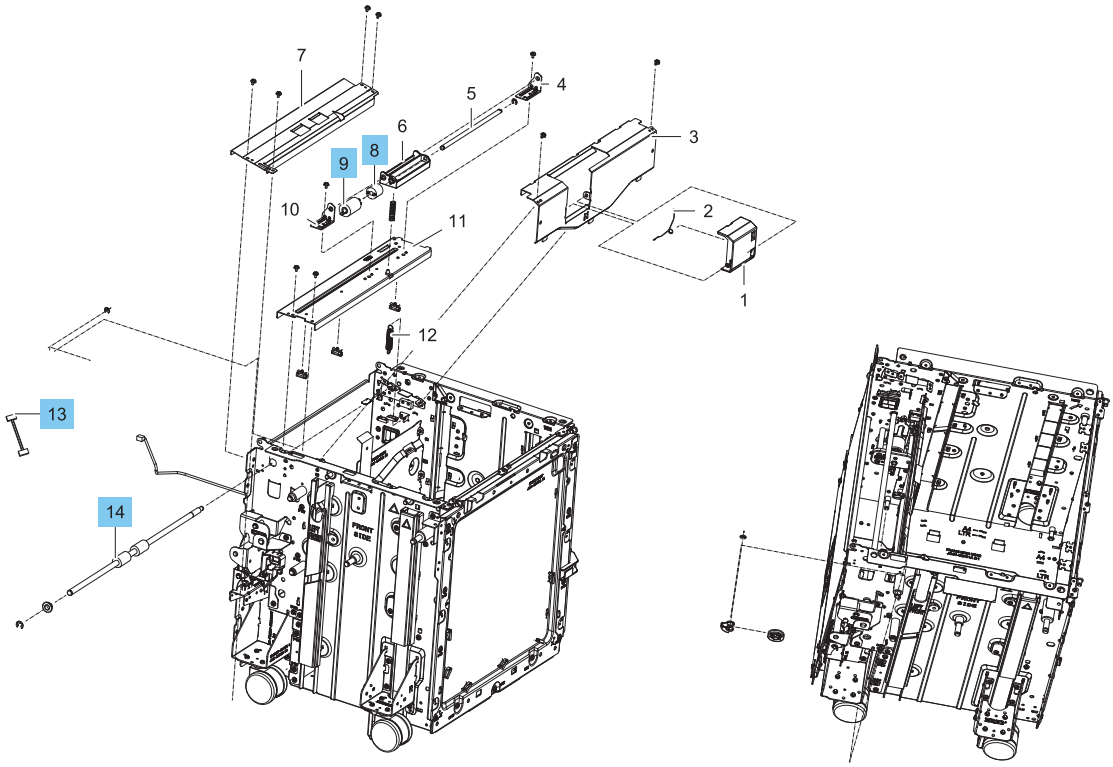


Table 4-38 sHCI main 6

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
8	Coupler, torque limiter	SAM-JC67-00455A	1
9	Frame, main pickup roller	SAM-JC93-01092A	1
13	sHCI, plow harness	SAM-JC39-02288A	1
14	Feed roller	SAM-JC66-04606A	1

Pickup cover unit

Figure 4-39 Pickup cover unit

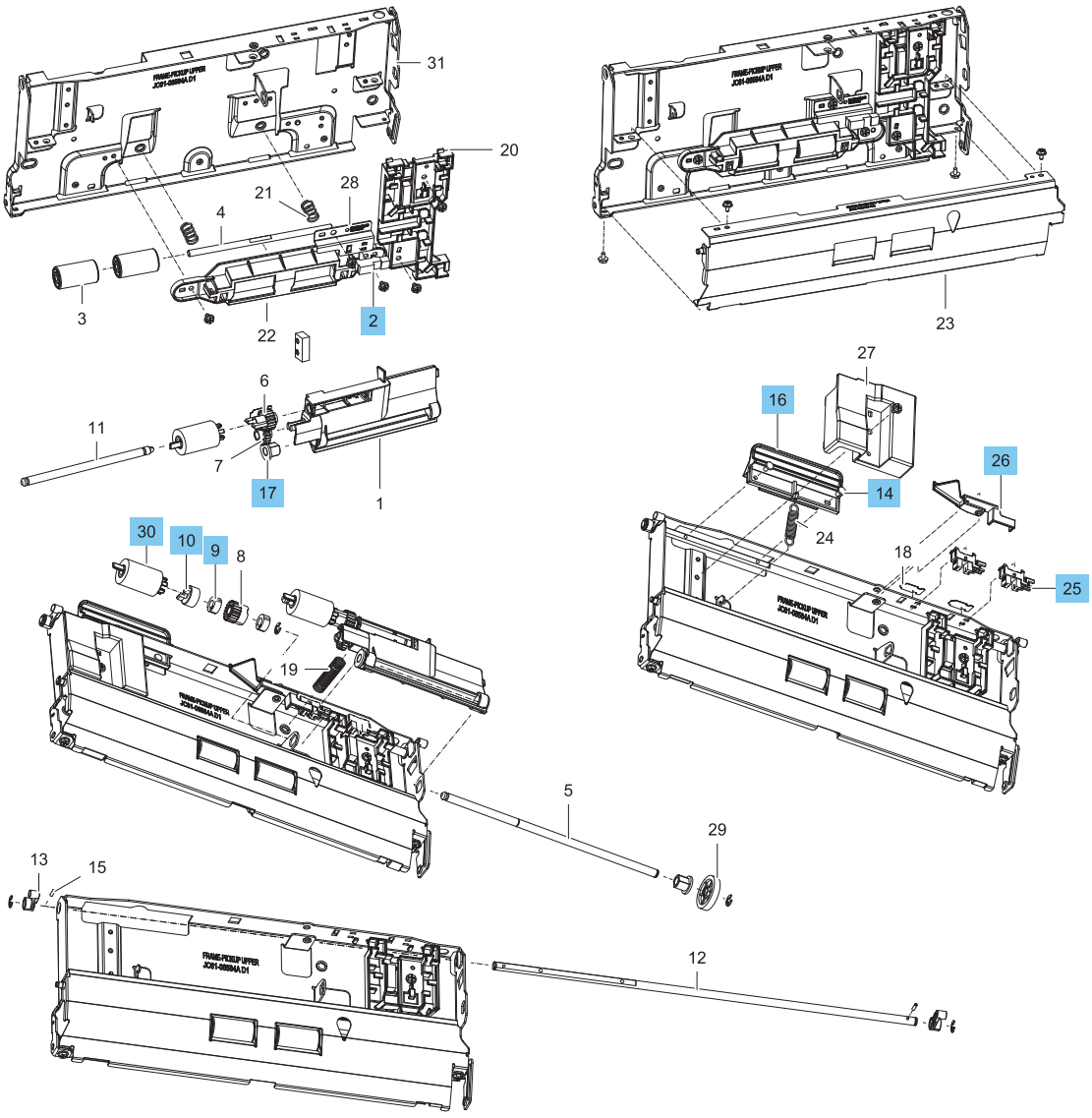


Table 4-39 Pickup cover unit

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001490	1
9	Clutch, one way	SAM-JC66-00977A	2
10	Idle holder, one way	SAM-JC61-01288A	1
14	Machine screw	SAM-6001-002716	2
16	Pickup cover lever	SAM-JC63-04799A	1
17	Bush-6, dl	SAM-JC61-00884A	2
25	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604–001393	2
26	Actuator, empty pickup	SAM-JC66-04276A	1
30	Frame, main pickup roller	SAM-JC93-01092A	2

sHCI frame

Figure 4-40 sHCI frame

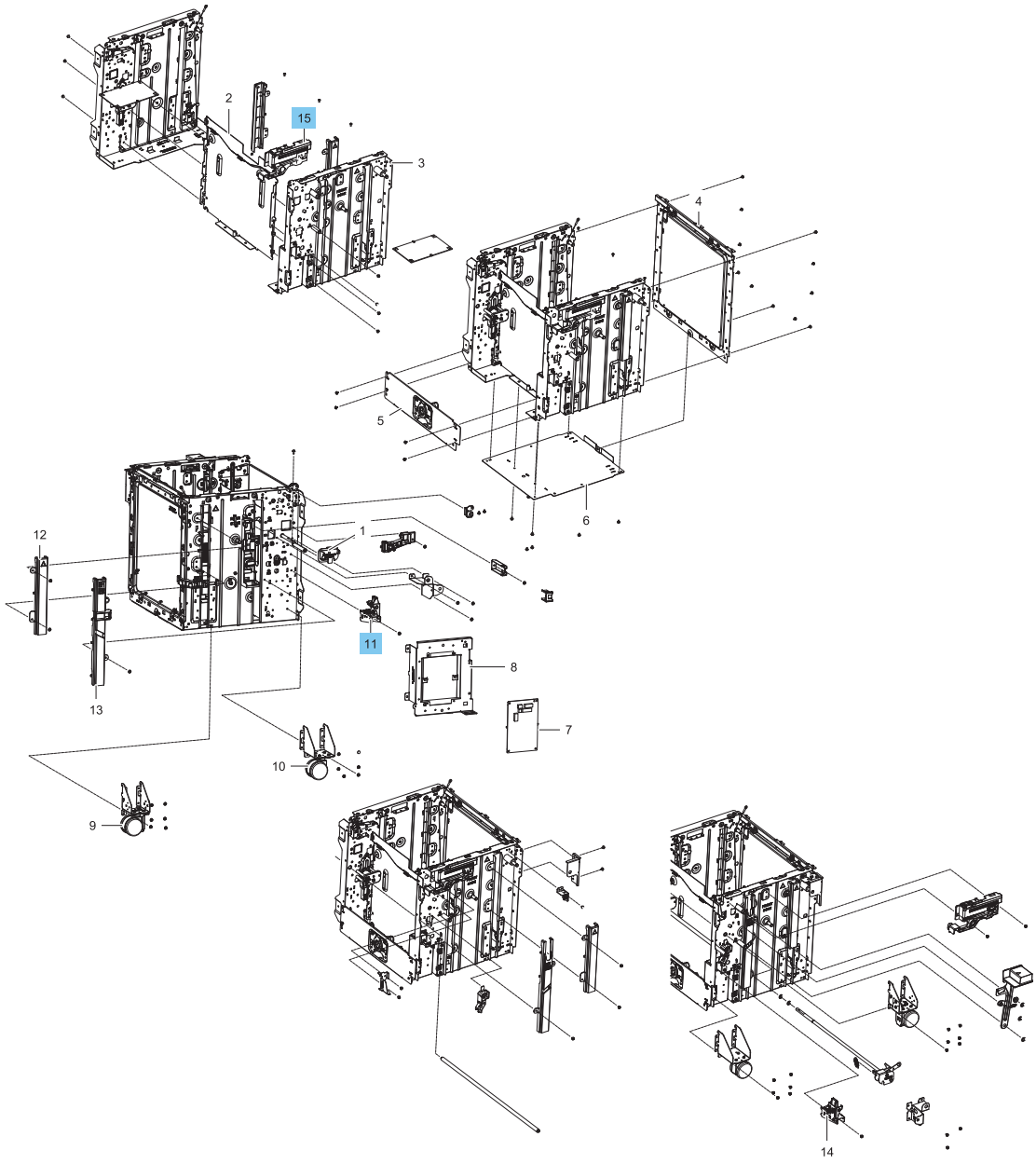


Table 4-40 sHCI frame

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
11	Frame latch, rear sensor assembly	SAM-JC93-01124A	1
15	Frame interlock sHCI assemlby	SAM-JC93-01123A	1

Finishers

Booklet finisher

Figure 4-41 Booklet finisher

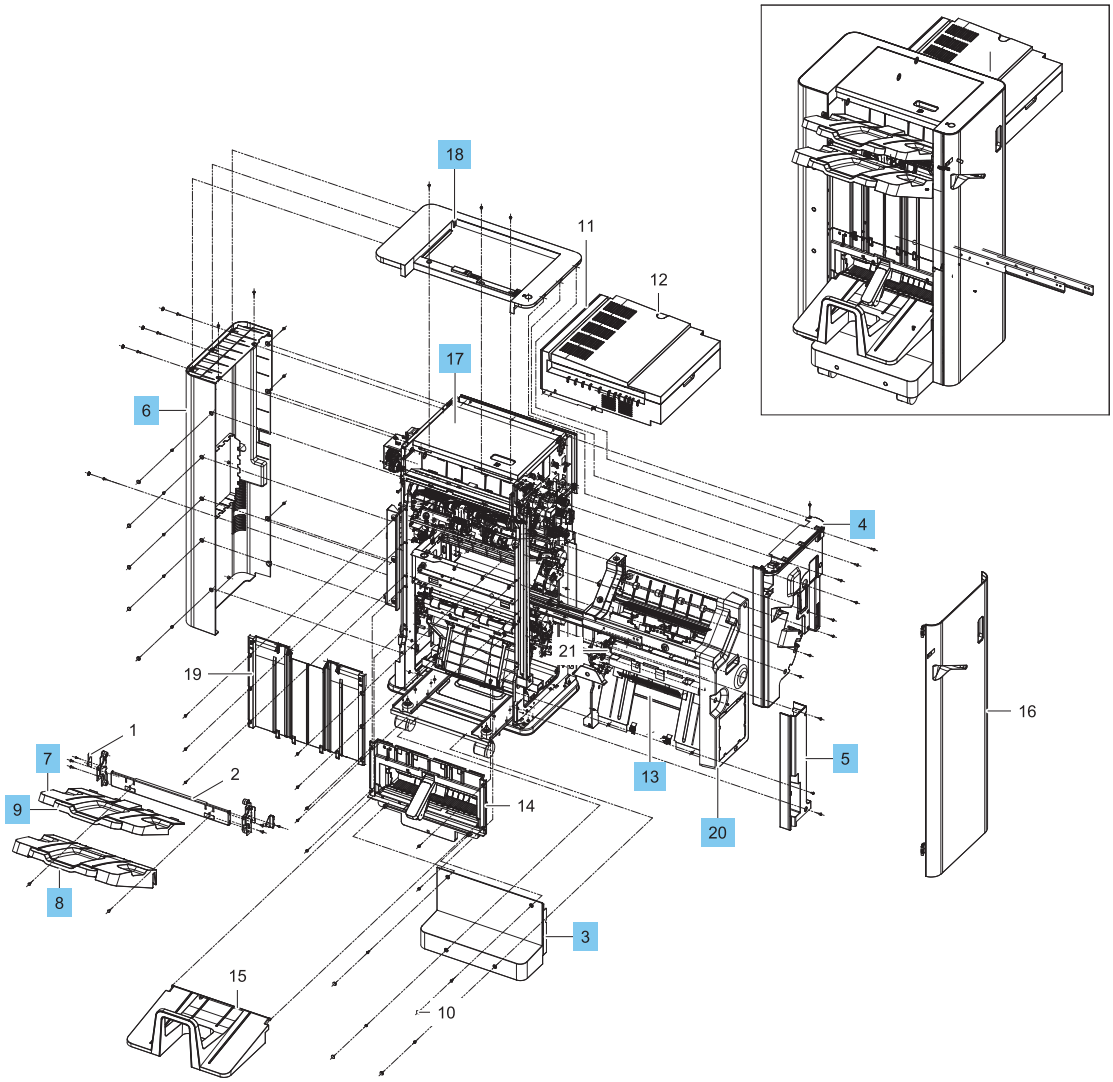


Table 4-41 Booklet finisher

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
3	Caster cover	SAM-JC63-04985B	1
4	Cover, front	SAM-JC63-04986B	1
5	Cover-f, lower	SAM-JC63-04987B	1
6	Cover, rear	SAM-JC63-04988B	1
7	Cover-t, tray 2	SAM-JC63-04996B	1
8	Cover-m, tray	SAM-JC63-05002B	1
9	Cover-s, tray	SAM-JC63-05003B	2
13	Finisher sub-booklet unit	SAM-JC90-01416A	1
17	Finisher sub-top door	SAM-JC90-01445B	1
18	Finisher sub-top cover	SAM-JC90-01446B	1
20	Finisher sub-cover f bm	SAM-JC90-01478A	1

Mainline finisher 1

Figure 4-42 Mainline finisher 1

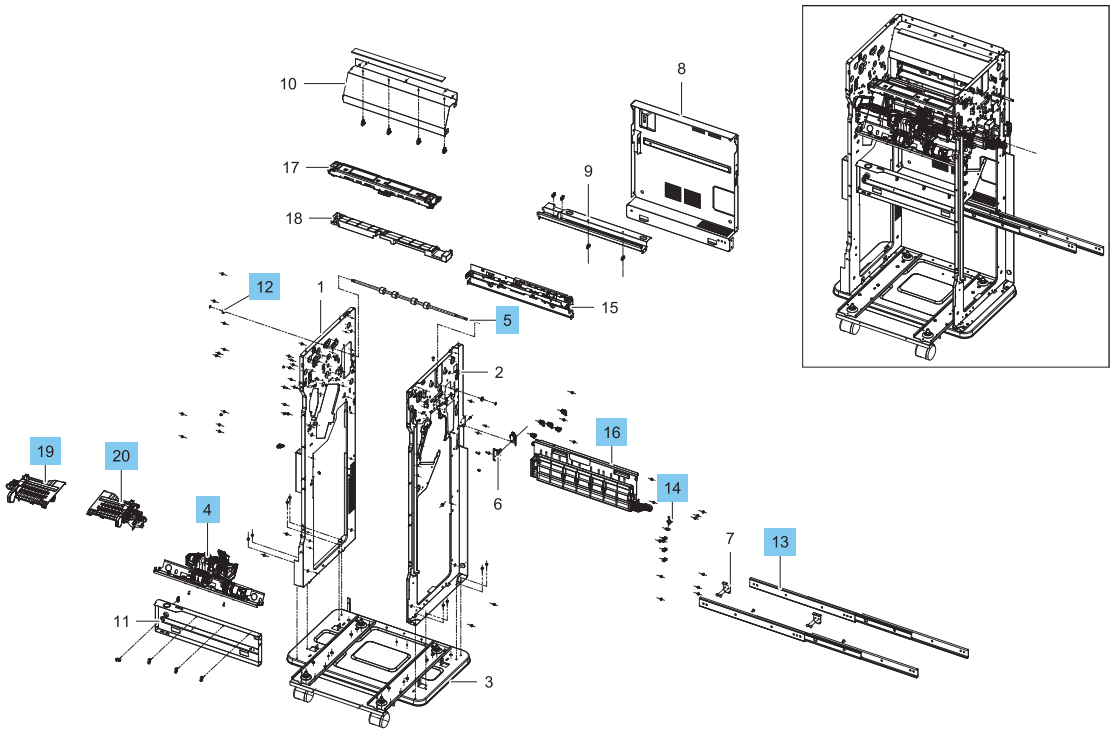


Table 4-42 Mainline finisher 1

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
4	Finisher sub-ejector unit	SAM-JC90-01409A	1
5	Roller, main-feed entrance	SAM-JC66-04722A	1
12	Bearing ball	SAM-6601-001478	6
13	Rail	SAM-6102-003369	2
14	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	1
16	Finisher sub-right jam	SAM-JC90-01457A	1
19	Finisher sub-alignment rear	SAM-JC90-01465A	1
20	Finisher sub-alignment front	SAM-JC90-01464A	1

Mainline finisher 2

Figure 4-43 Mainline finisher 2

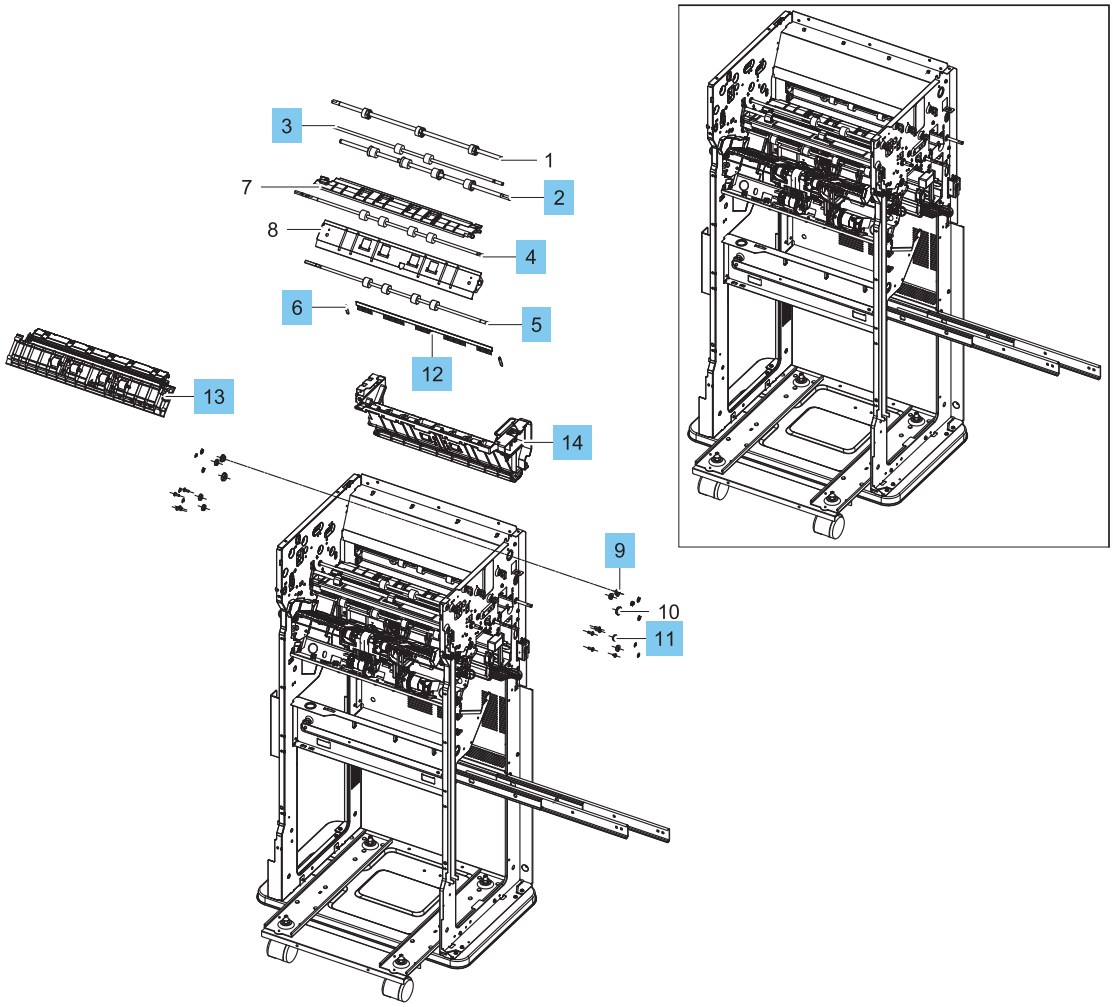


Table 4-43 Mainline finisher 2

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2	Roller, main-feed output	SAM-JC66-04726A	1
3	Roller, top-feed mid output	SAM-JC66-04725A	1
4	Roller, mid-feed output	SAM-JC66-04724A	1
5	Roller, output-feed bm	SAM-JC66-04723A	1
6	Spring, es	SAM-JC61-07414A	2
9	Bush, 8/5	SAM-JC61-00426A	2
11	Bearing ball	SAM-6601-001478	6
12	Main-brush, output	SAM-JC67-00817A	1
13	Finisher sub-trans buff	SAM-JC90-01456A	1
14	Finisher sub-top jam	SAM-JC90-01455A	1

Mainline finisher 3

Figure 4-44 Mainline finisher 3

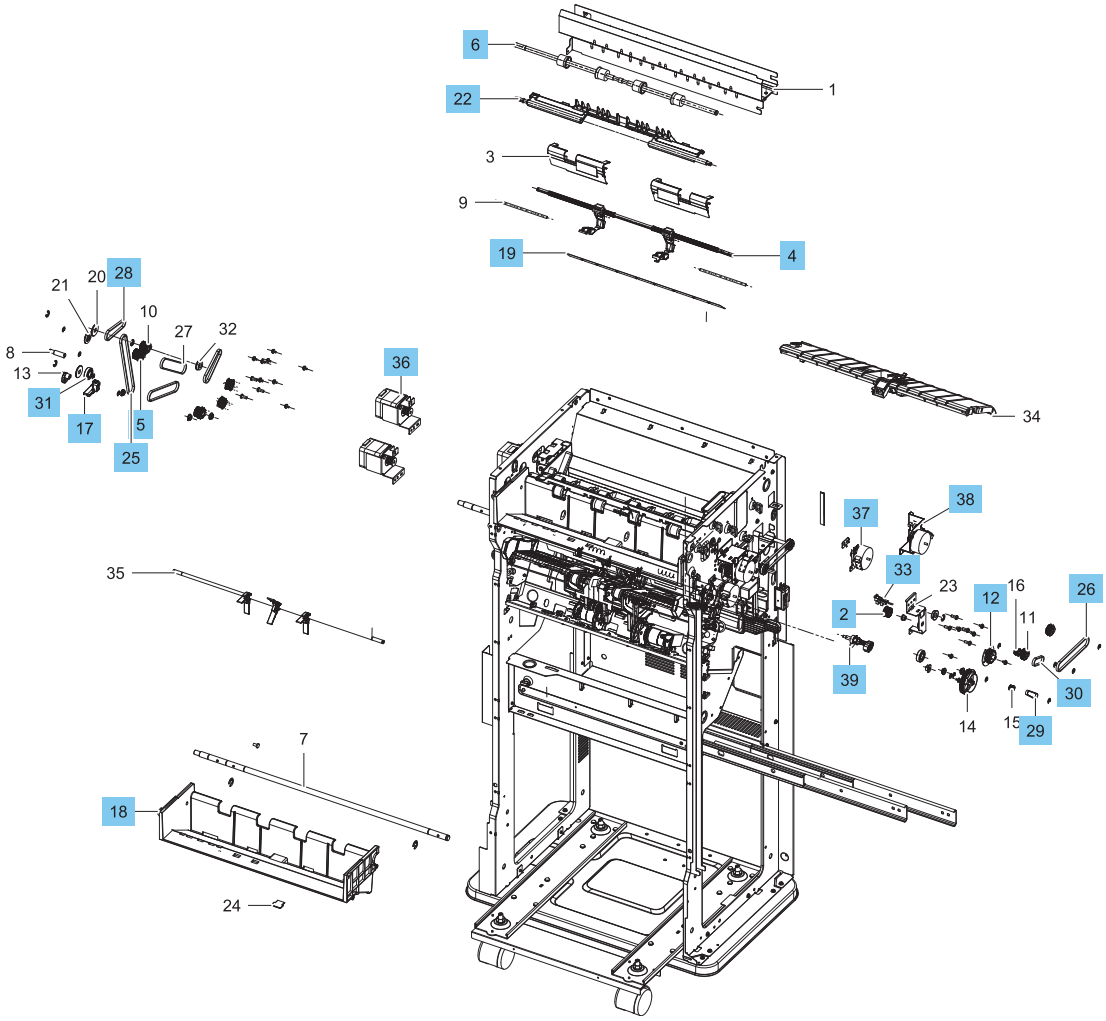


Table 4-44 Mainline finisher 3

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2	Finisher sub-clutch div	SAM-JC90-01474A	1
4	Finisher sub-end stopper	SAM-JC90-01466A	1
5	Finisher sub-clutch drive	SAM-JC90-01404A	1
6	Roller, top-feed output	SAM-JC66-04727A	1
12	Gear, buffer	SAM-JC66-04602A	1
17	Actuator, pusher	SAM-JC66-04526A	1
18	Cover-t, tray	SAM-JC63-04995B	1
19	Top-seal, guide	SAM-JC62-01328A	1
22	Guide, pusher	SAM-JC61-07206A	1
25	Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003649	1
26	Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003647	2
28	Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003645	2
29	Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003640	1
30	Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003639	1
31	Bearing ball	SAM-6601-003062	2
33	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	1
36	Finisher sub-hb mtr	SAM-JC90-01459A	2
37	Finisher sub-ef mtr	SAM-JC90-01467A	1
38	Finisher sub-drv buff	SAM-JC90-01453A	1
39	Finisher sub-div cam	SAM-JC90-01458A	1
43	Solenoid	SAM-JC90-01675A	1
44	Motor	SAM-JC90-01673A	1

Mainline finisher 4

Figure 4-45 Mainline finisher 4

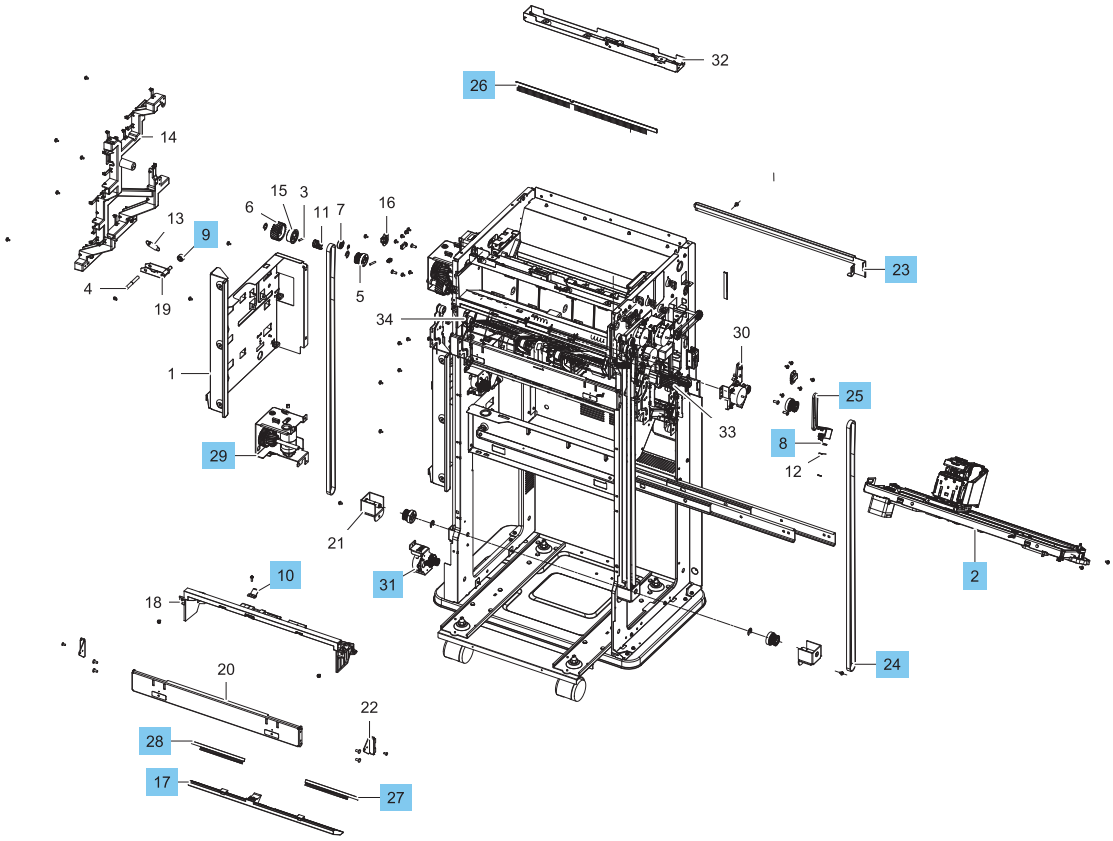


Table 4-45 Mainline finisher 4

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2	Finisher sub-staple unit	SAM-JC90-01412A	1
8	Actuator-o, staple	SAM-JC66-04528A	1
9	Roller, click-feed	SAM-JC66-04523A	1
10	Ground-c, safety	SAM-JC63-04984A	1
17	Safety guide	SAM-JC61-07192A	1
18	Guide, com ceil	SAM-JC61-07189A	1
23	Frame mount	SAM-JC61-06663A	1
24	Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003652	2
25	Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003270	1
26	Top-brush output	SAM-JC67-00818A	1
27	Compiler-brush, ceiling front	SAM-JC67-00820A	1
28	Compiler-brush, ceiling rear	SAM-JC67-00819A	1
29	Finisher sub-stk mtr	SAM-JC90-01415A	1
31	Finisher sub-scu mtr	SAM-JC90-01414A	1

Mainline finisher 5

Figure 4-46 Mainline finisher 5

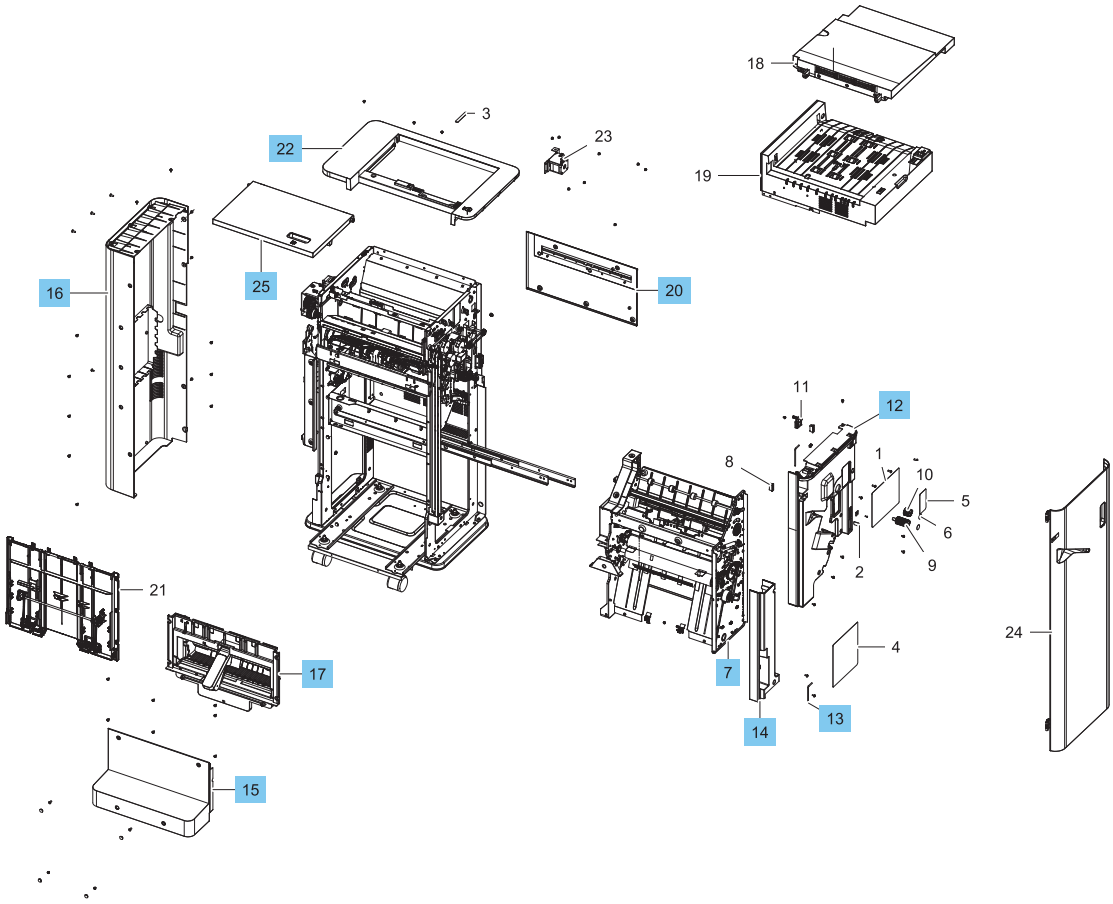


Table 4-46 Mainline finisher 5

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
7	Finisher sub-booklet unit	SAM-JC90-01416A	1
12	Front cover	SAM-JC63-04986B	1
13	Shaft, hinge-door	SAM-JC66-04767A	2
14	Cover-f, lower	SAM-JC63-04987B	1
15	Caster cover	SAM-JC63-04985B	1
16	Rear cover	SAM-JC63-04988B	1
17	Finisher sub-tray bm unit	SAM-JC90-01417B	1
20	Finisher sub-regist guide	SAM-JC90-01448B	1
22	Finisher sub-top cover	SAM-JC90-01446B	1
25	Finisher sub-top door	SAM-JC90-01445B	1

Mainline finisher 6

Figure 4-47 Mainline finisher 6

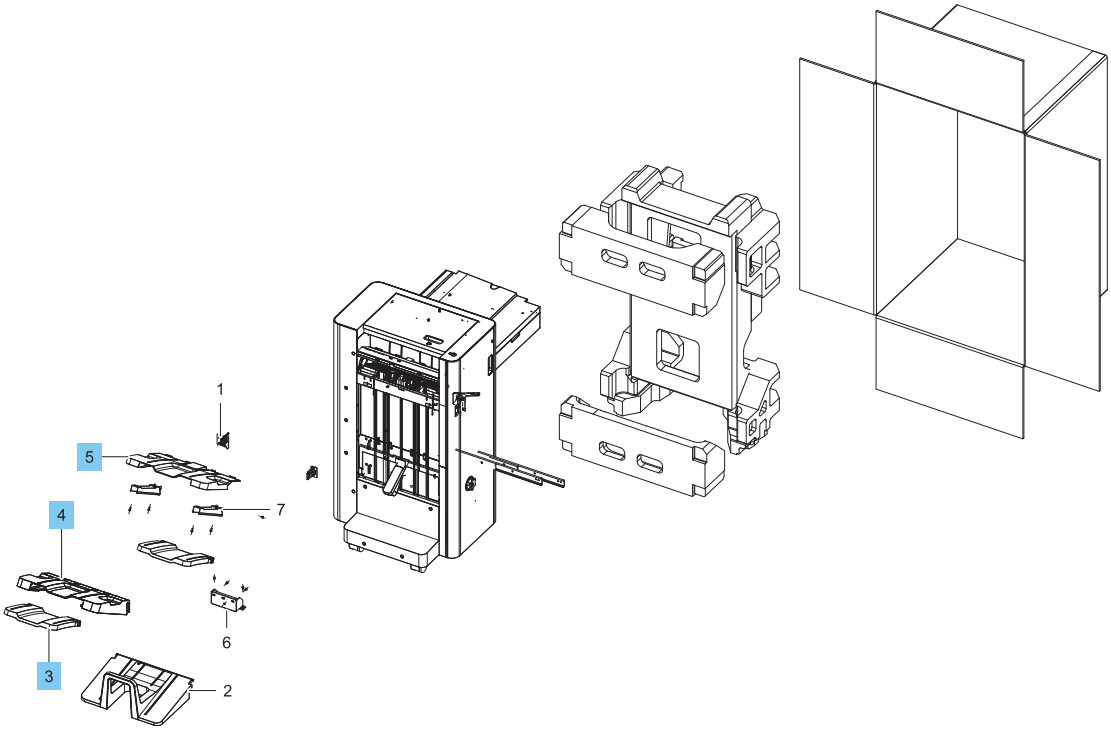


Table 4-47 Mainline finisher 6

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
3	Cover-s, tray	SAM-JC63-05003B	2
4	Cover-m, tray	SAM-JC63-05002B	1
5	Cover-t, tray 2	SAM-JC63-04996B	1

Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output

Figure 4-48 Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output

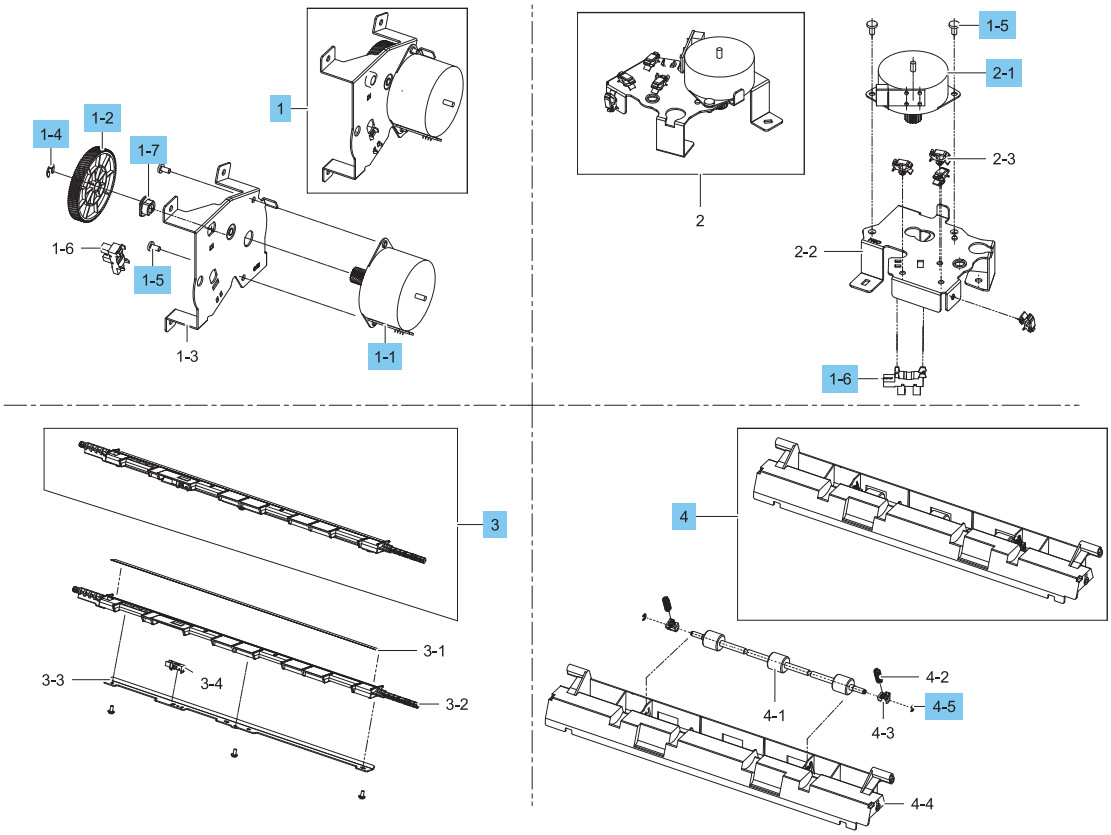


Table 4-48 Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub-3 fold mtr	SAM-JC90-01396A	1
1-1	Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01154A	1
1-2	Gear, double	SAM-JC66-04579A	1
1-4	E-ring	SAM-6044-000125	2
1-5	Screw, machine	SAM-6001-000130	4
1-6	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	1
1-7	Bush-6, d	SAM-JC61-00423A	1
2-1	Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01153A	1
3	Finisher sub-curl pawl	SAM-JC90-01398A	1
4	Finisher sub-3 fold output	SAM-JC90-01399A	1
4-5	C-ring	SAM-6044-000159	1

Low output, hb motor, and top guide

Figure 4-49 Low output, hb motor, and top guide

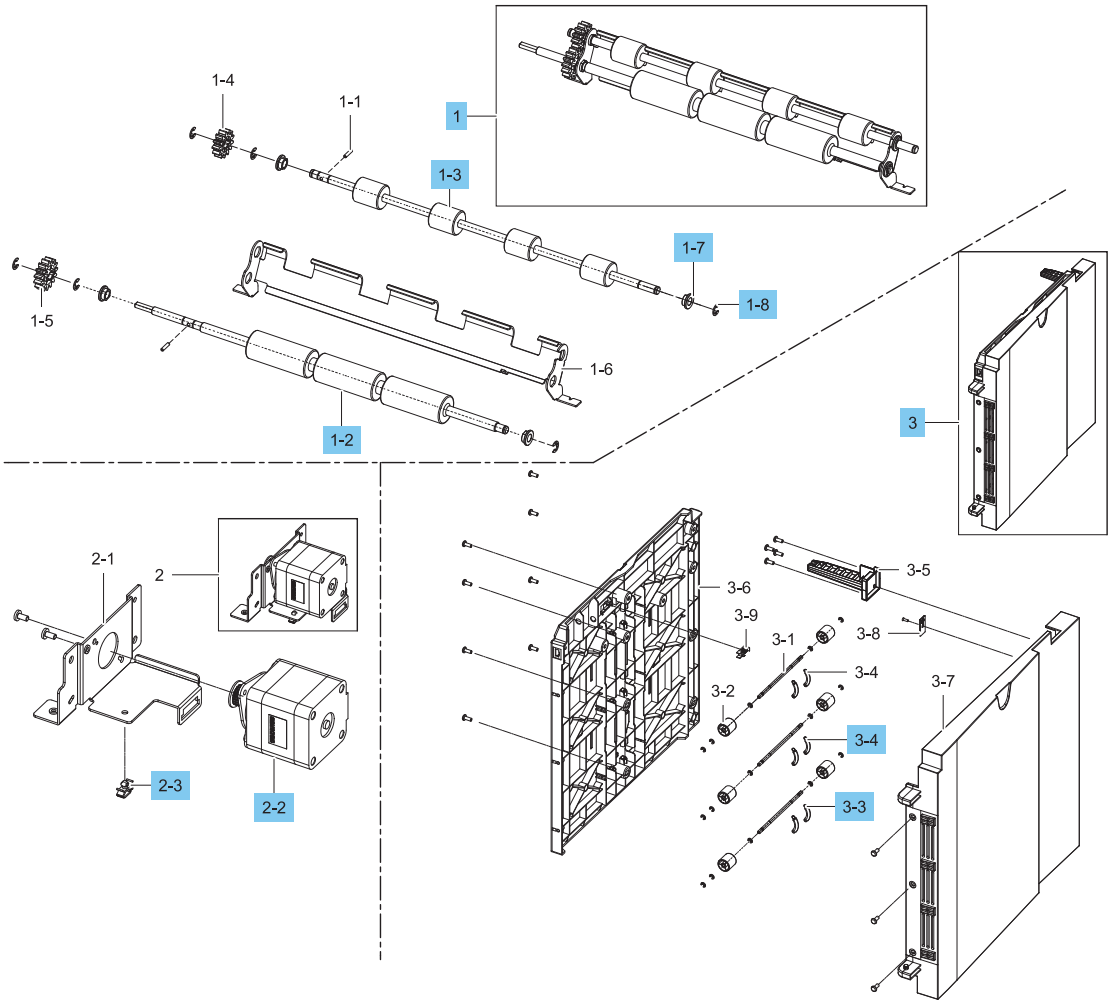


Table 4-49 Low output, hb motor, and top guide

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub-low output	SAM-JC90-01400A	1
1-2	Roller, output-3 fold	SAM-JC66-04744A	1
1-3	Roller, feed-fold output	SAM-JC66-04721A	1
1-7	Bush, 8/5	SAM-JC61-00426A	4
1-8	E-ring	SAM-6044-000129	2
2-2	Motor, step ip	SAM-JC31-00163B	2
2-3	Cable clamp	SAM-6502-001131	1
3	Finisher sub-guide top	SAM-JC90-01406A	1
3-3	Spring, es	SAM-JC61-07431A	2
3-4	Spring, es	SAM-JC61-07430A	4

SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide

Figure 4-50 SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide

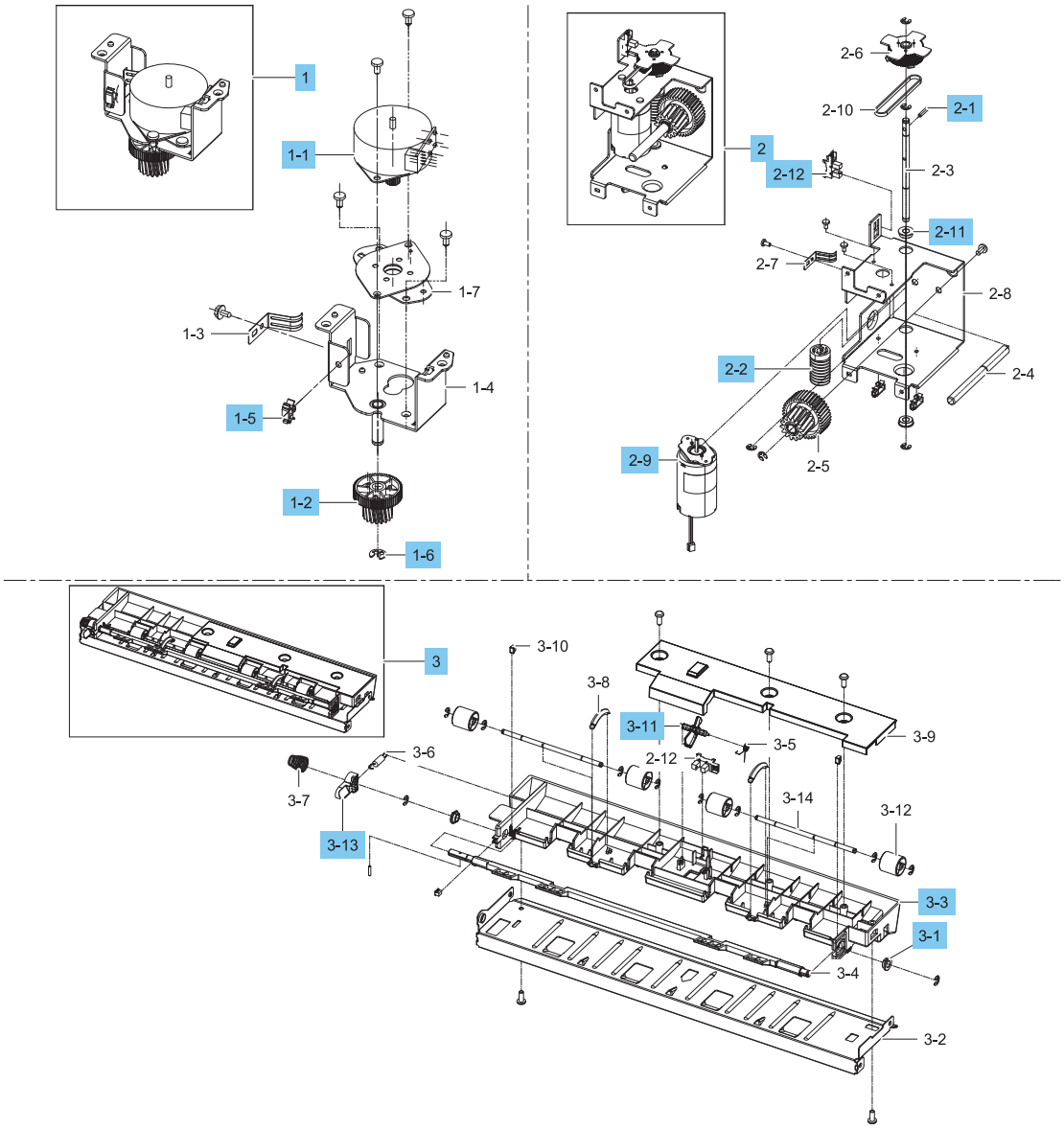


Table 4-50 SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub-scu motor	SAM-JC90-01414A	1
1-1	Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01156A	1
1-2	Gear-db, gear	SAM-JC66-04604A	1
1-5	Cable clamp	SAM-6502-001131	1
1-6	E-ring	SAM-6044–000125	2
2	Finisher sub-stk motor	SAM-JC90-01415A	1
2-1	Cartridge, ICT-PIN	SAM-JC70-40542A	1
2-2	Stacker, CSP-worm	SAM-JC81-07637A	1
2-9	Motor, DC-stacker	SAM-JC31-00178A	1
2-11	Bearing ball	SAM-6601-001478	3
2-12	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	1
3	Finisher sub-entrance guide	SAM-JC90-01424A	1
3-1	Bush, D6/L4	SAM-JC61-02372A	2
3-3	Guide-l, entrance	SAM-JC61-07247A	1
3-11	Actuator, entrance feed	SAM-JC66-04520A	1
3-13	Actuator, te-press1	SAM-JC66-04644A	1

Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor

Figure 4-51 Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor

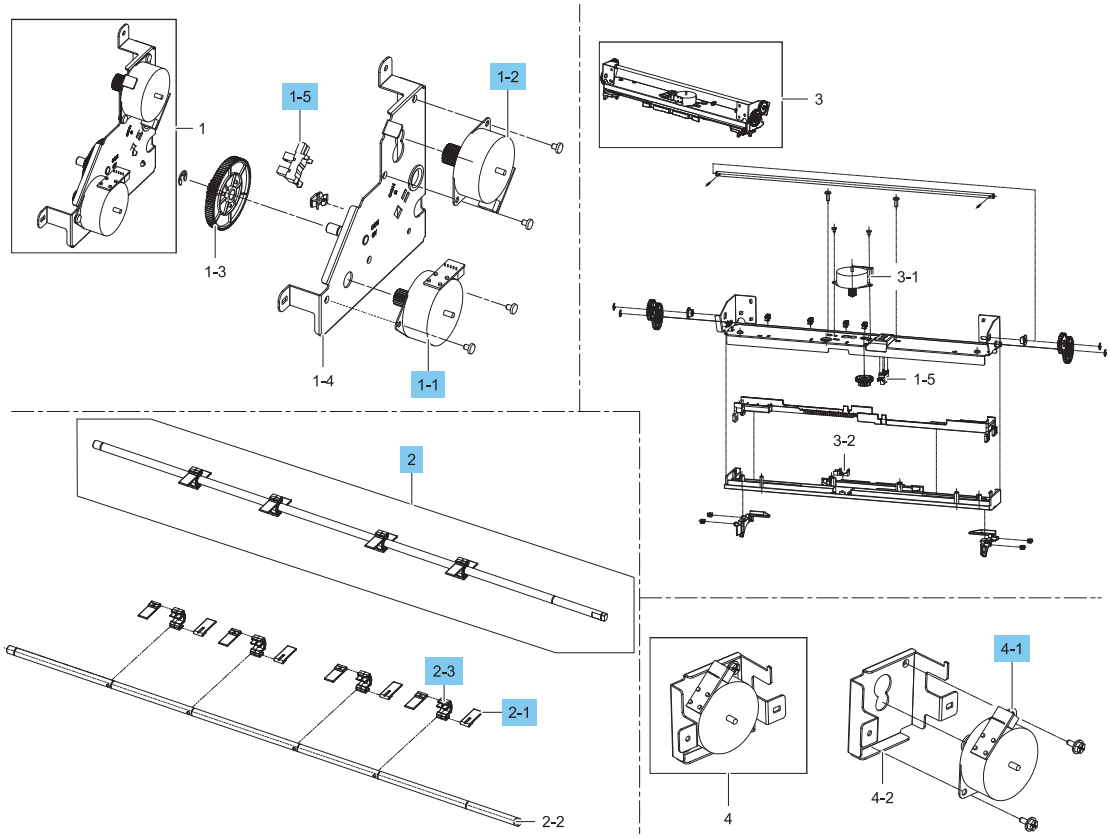


Table 4-51 Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1-1	Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01155A	1
1-2	Driver motor, step	SAM-JC93-01152A	1
1-5	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	1
2	Finisher sub-low paddle	SAM-JC90-01429A	1
2-1	Rooler, feed-lower bm	SAM-JC66-04719A	8
2-3	Paddle holder	SAM-JC61-07225A	4
4-1	Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01001A	1

Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam

Figure 4-52 Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam

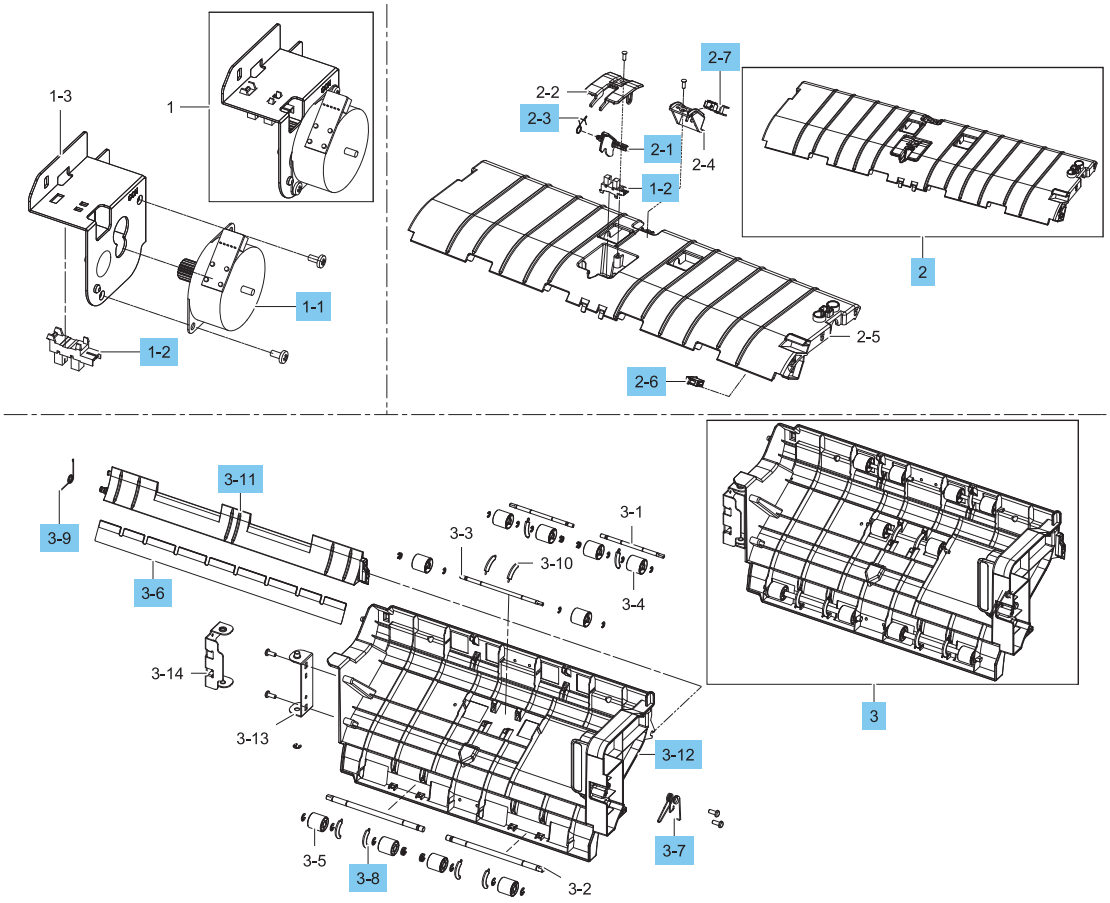


Table 4-52 Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1-1	Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01155A	1
1-2	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	1
2	Finisher sub-top lower	SAM-JC90-01454A	1
2-1	Actuator, top-output	SAM-JC66-04525A	1
2-3	Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07411A	1
2-6	Harness, 3k finisher output path	SAM-JC39-02322A	1
2-7	Sensor, rp	SAM-JC32-00020A	1
3	Finisher sub-top jam	SAM-JC90-01455A	2
3-6	Guide, seal-top	SAM-JC62-01328A	1
3-7	Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07417A	1
3-8	Spring, es	SAM-JC61-07415A	4
3-9	Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07410A	1
3-10	Spring, es	SAM-JC61-07409A	2
3-11	Guide, diverter	SAM-JC61-07205A	1
3-12	Guide, top jam	SAM-JC61-07196A	1

FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade

Figure 4-53 FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade

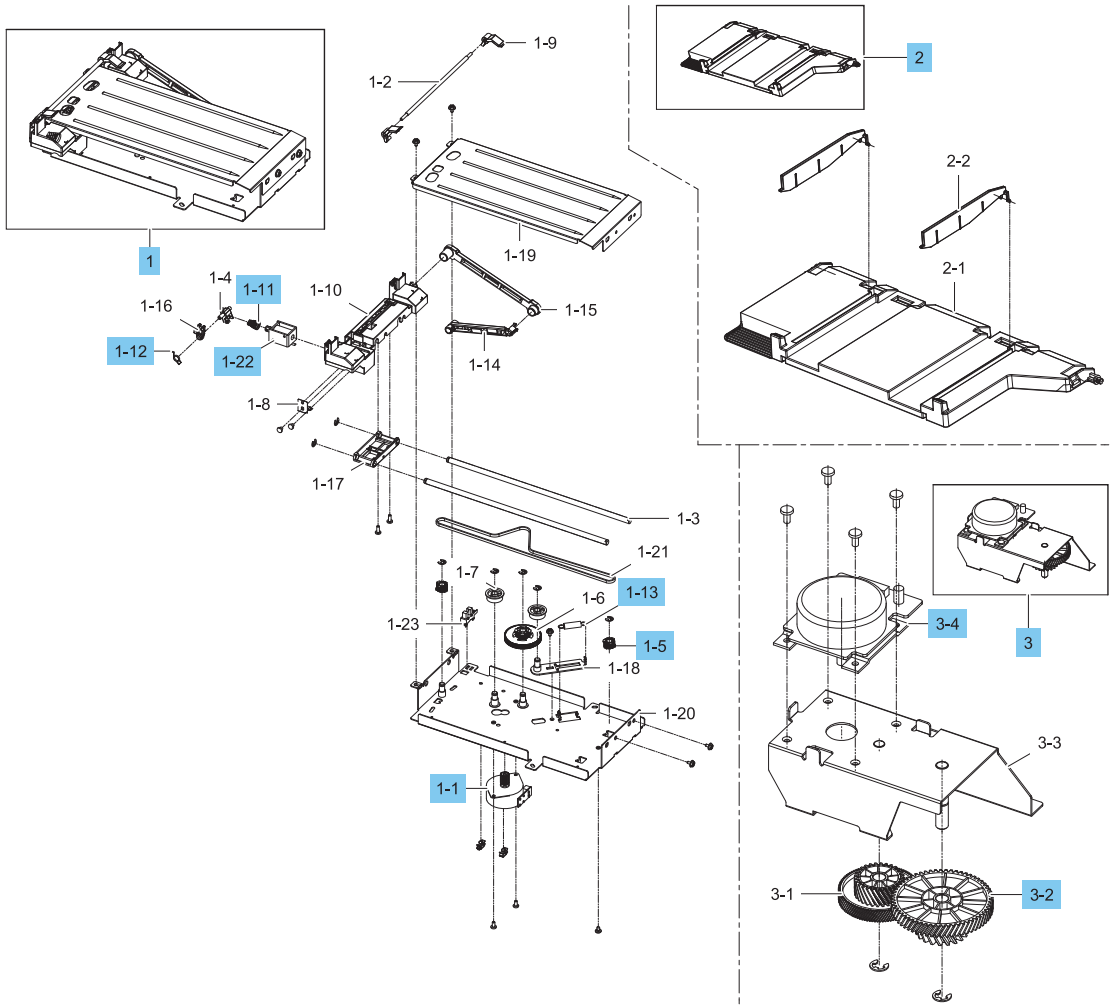


Table 4-53 FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub-fd stopper unit	SAM-JC90-01432A	1
1-1	Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01155A	1
1-5	Timing pulley	SAM-JC66-04583A	2
1-11	Spring, cs	SAM-JC61-07403A	1
1-12	Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07401A	1
1-22	Solenoid	SAM-JC33-00038A	1
2	Finisher sub-jam clear	SAM-JC90-01433A	1
3	Finisher sub-bkt main blade	SAM-JC90-01435A	1
3-1	Gear, helical 4	SAM-JC66-04595A	1
3-2	Gear, helical 3	SAM-JC66-04594A	1
3-4	Motor, bldc	SAM-JC31-00144A	1

Fold roller, main blade, and top frame

Figure 4-54 Fold roller, main blade, and top frame

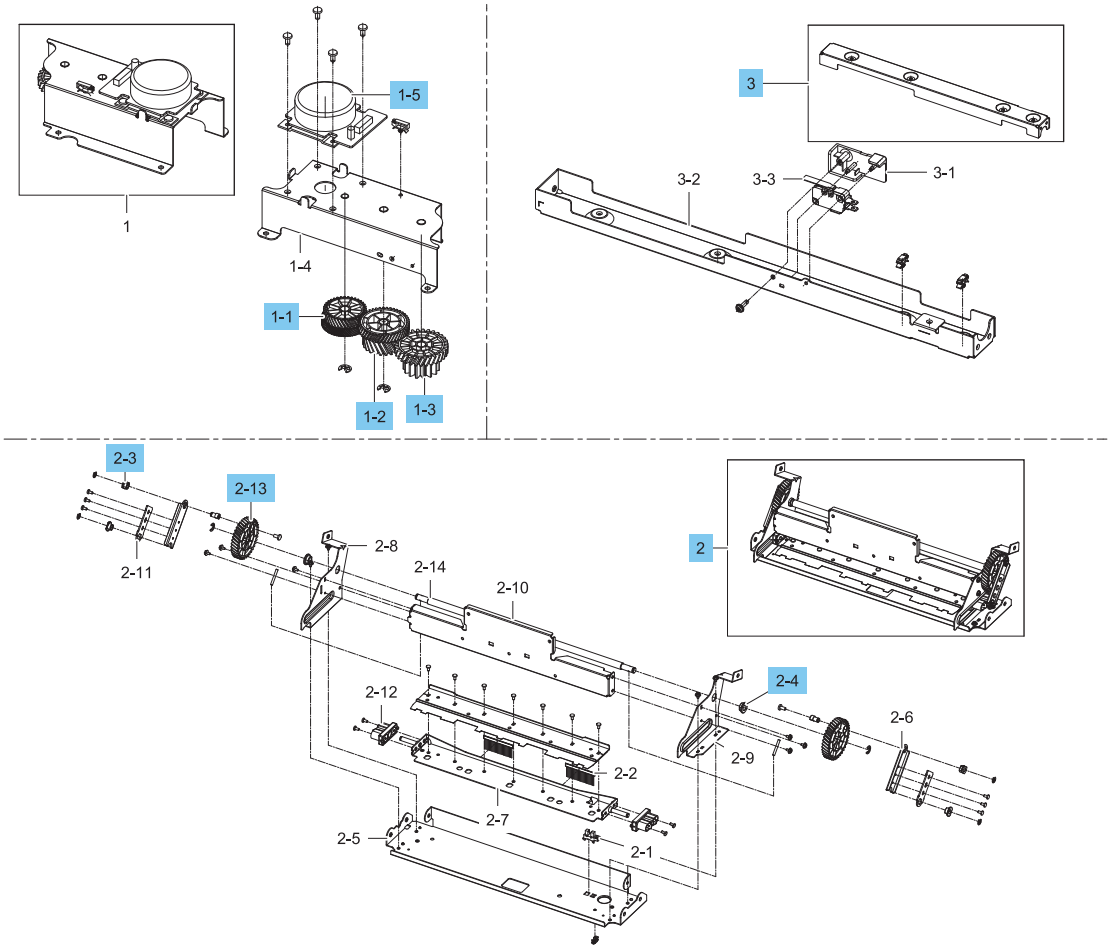


Table 4-54 Fold roller, main blade, and top frame

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1-1	Gear, helical 2	SAM-JC66-04593A	1
1-2	Gear, helical 1	SAM-JC66-04592A	1
1-3	Gear, double	SAM-JC66-04573A	1
1-5	Motor, bldc	SAM-JC31-00144A	1
2	Finisher sub-main blade	SAM-JC90-01437A	1
2-3	Bush-6, d	SAM-JC61-00423A	1
2-4	Bush, 8/5	SAM-JC61-00426A	2
2-13	Gear, helical	SAM-JC66-04591A	2
3	Finisher sub-top frame	SAM-JC90-01440A	1
3-3	Harness, 3k finisher top cover	SAM-JC39-02310A	1

Three fold blade

Figure 4-55 Three fold blade

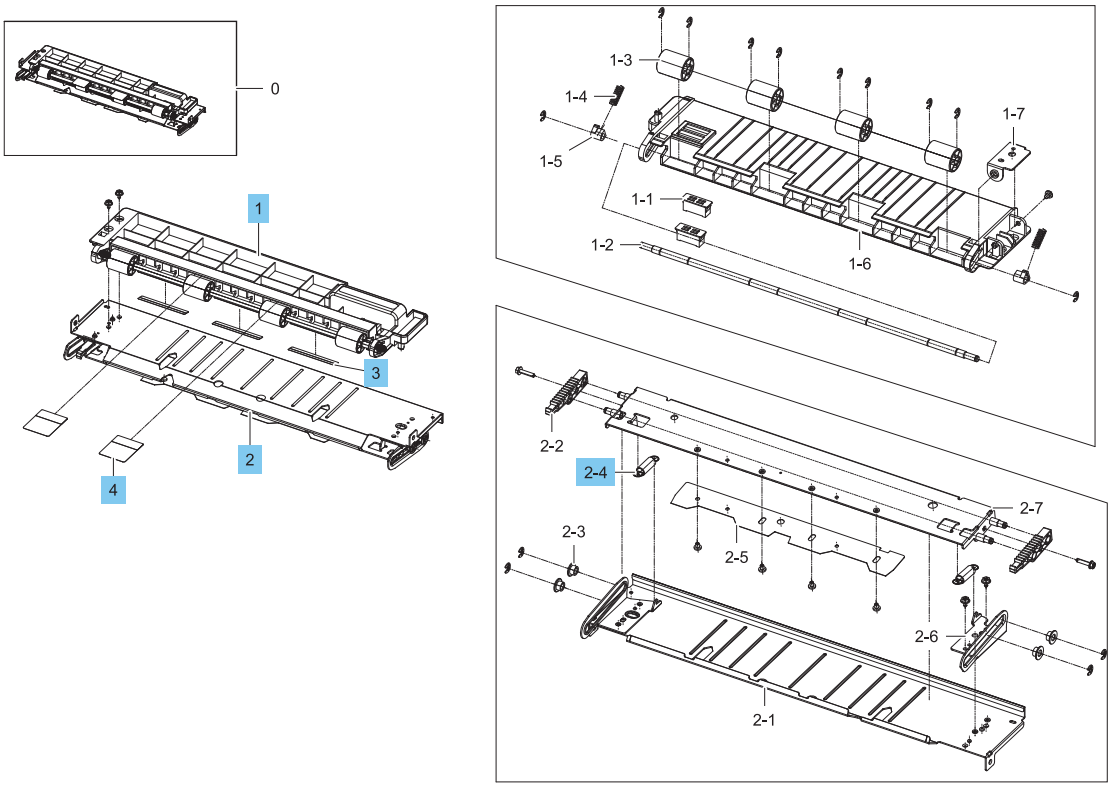


Table 4-55 Three fold blade

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub-output roller	SAM-JC90-01395A	1
2	Finisher sub-guide three fold	SAM-JC90-01394A	1
2-4	Spring, es	SAM-JC61-07391A	2
3	Sheet-jam guide	SAM-JC63-05044A	3
4	Sheet-fold output	SAM-JC63-05041A	2

Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide

Figure 4-56 Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide

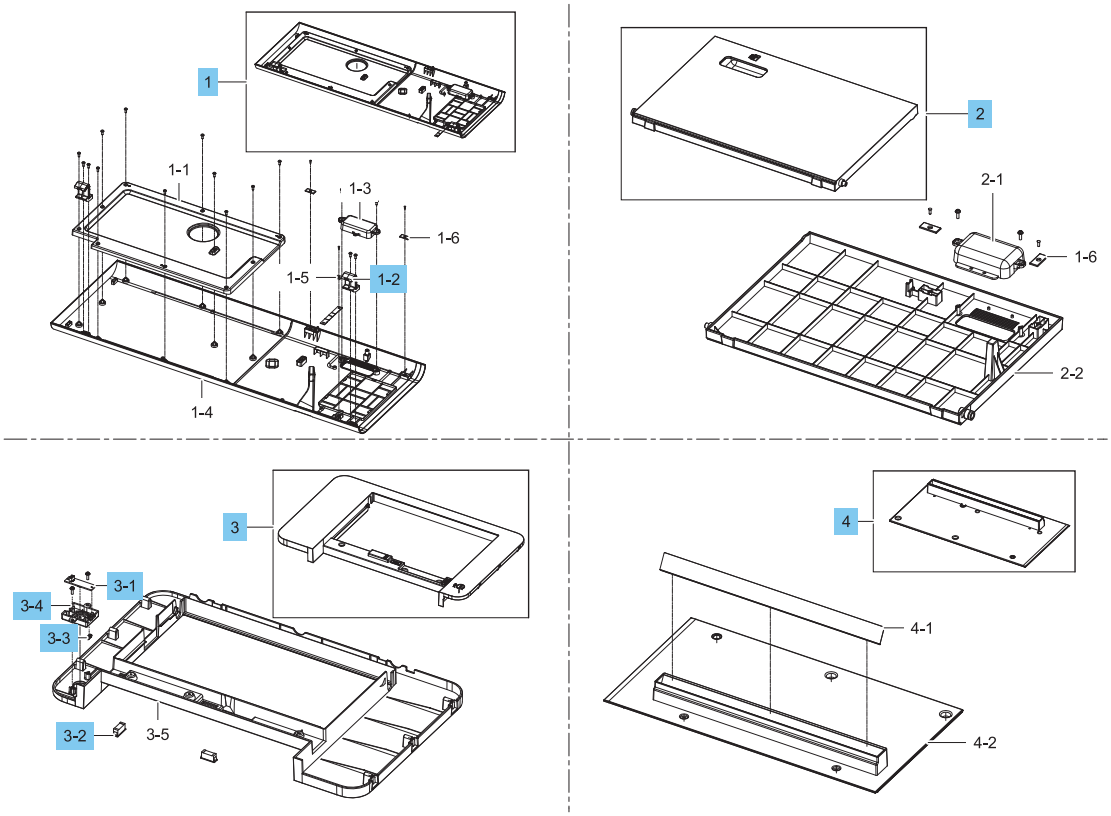


Table 4-56 Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub-door	SAM-JC90-01444A	1
1-2	Cover, link	SAM-JC63-05004A	2
2	Finisher sub-top door	SAM-JC90-01445B	1
3	Finisher sub-top cover	SAM-JC90-01446B	1
3-1	PCA, 3k switch	SAM-JC92-02789A	1
3-2	Magnet, as	SAM-JC81-08263A	1
3-3	Button lens	SAM-JC64-00996A	1
3-4	Button, staple	SAM-JC64-00995A	1

Entrance guide, mid jam, and main output

Figure 4-57 Entrance guide, mid jam, and main output

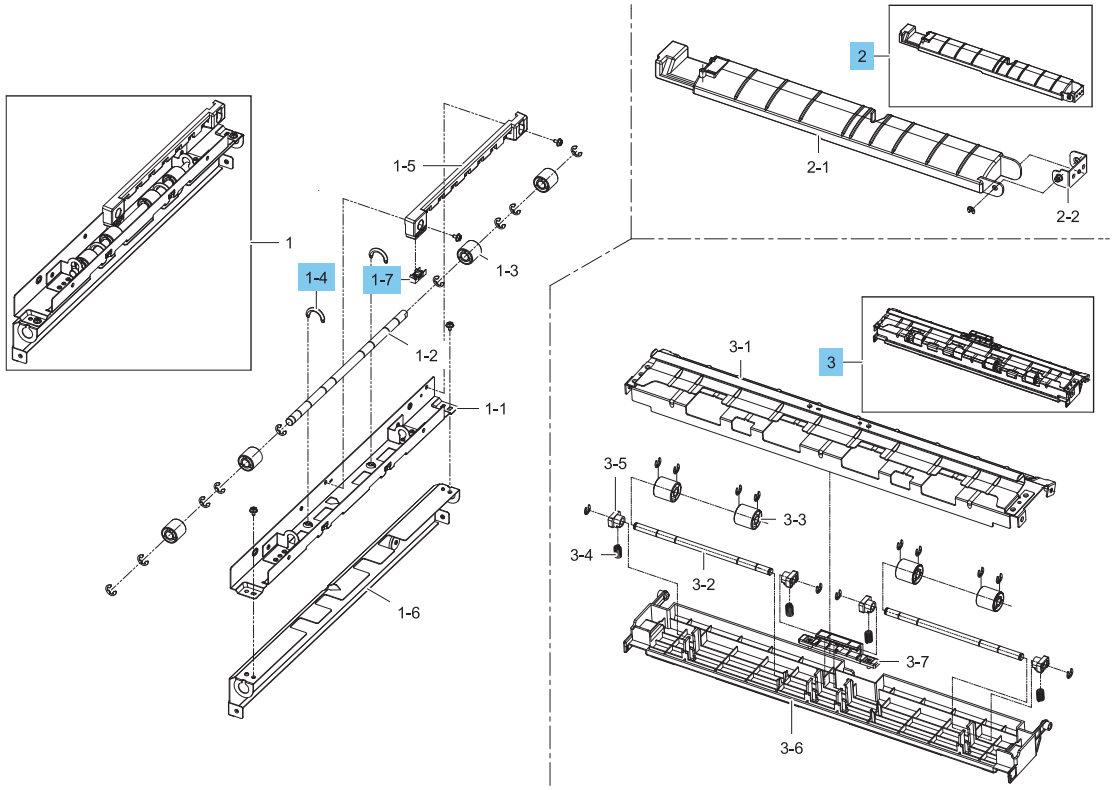


Table 4-57 Entrance guide, mid jam, and main output

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1-4	Spring, es	SAM-JC61-07408A	2
1-7	Sensor, rp	SAM-JC32-00020A	1
2	Finisher sub-mid jam	SAM-JC90-01450A	1
3	Finisher sub-output main	SAM-JC90-01451A	1

Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor

Figure 4-58 Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor

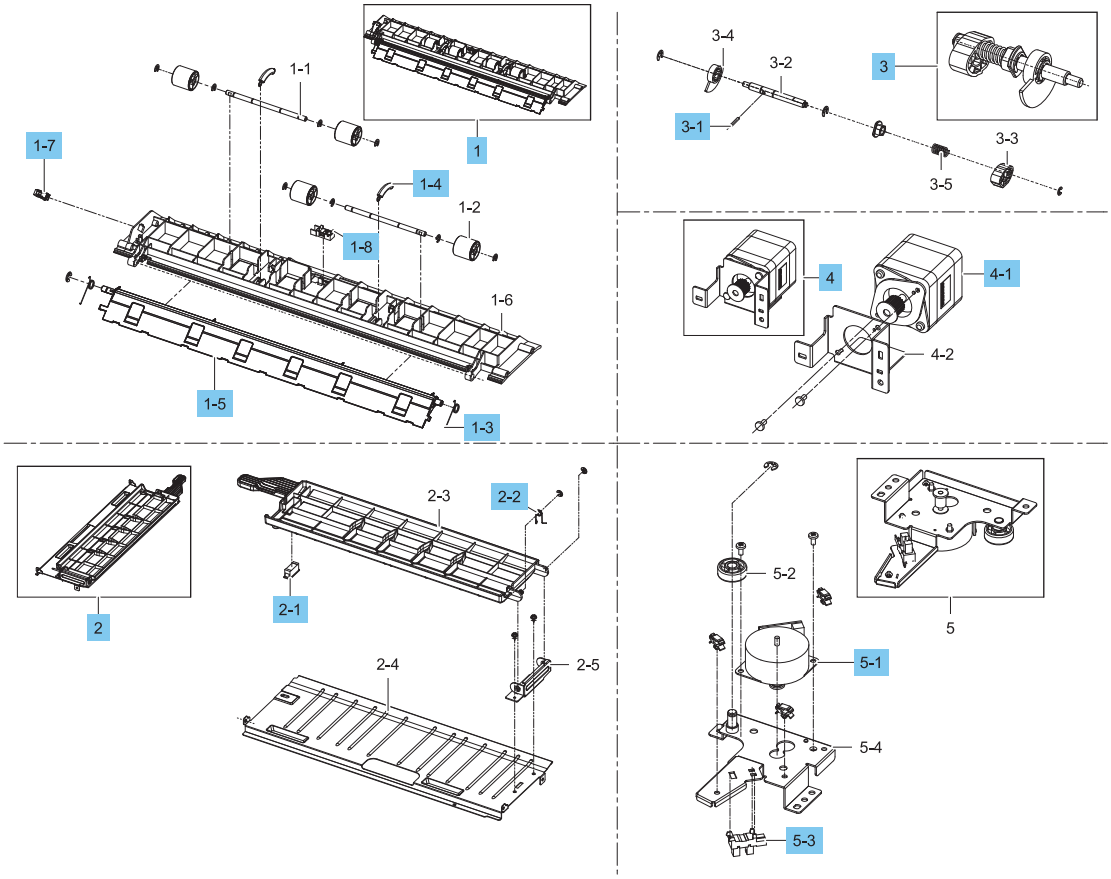


Table 4-58 Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub-trans buff	SAM-JC90-01456A	1
1-3	Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07413A	2
1-4	Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07409A	2
1-5	Guide, buff div	SAM-JC61-07204A	1
1-7	Harness, 3k finisher bm path	SAM-JC39-02320A	1
1-8	Sensor, rp	SAM-JC32-00020A	1
2	Finisher sub-right jam	SAM-JC90-01457A	1
2-1	Magent, as by3-32-1	SAM-JC81-08263A	1
2-2	Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07418A	1
3	Finisher sub-div cam	SAM-JC90-01458A	1
3-1	Ict-pin, paralled, p/u	SAM-JC70-40360A	1
4	Finisher sub-hb motor	SAM-JC90-01459A	2
4-1	Motor step, ip	SAM-JC31-00163B	2
5-1	Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01001A	1
5-3	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	1

Front alignment (tamper)

Figure 4-59 Front alignment (tamper)

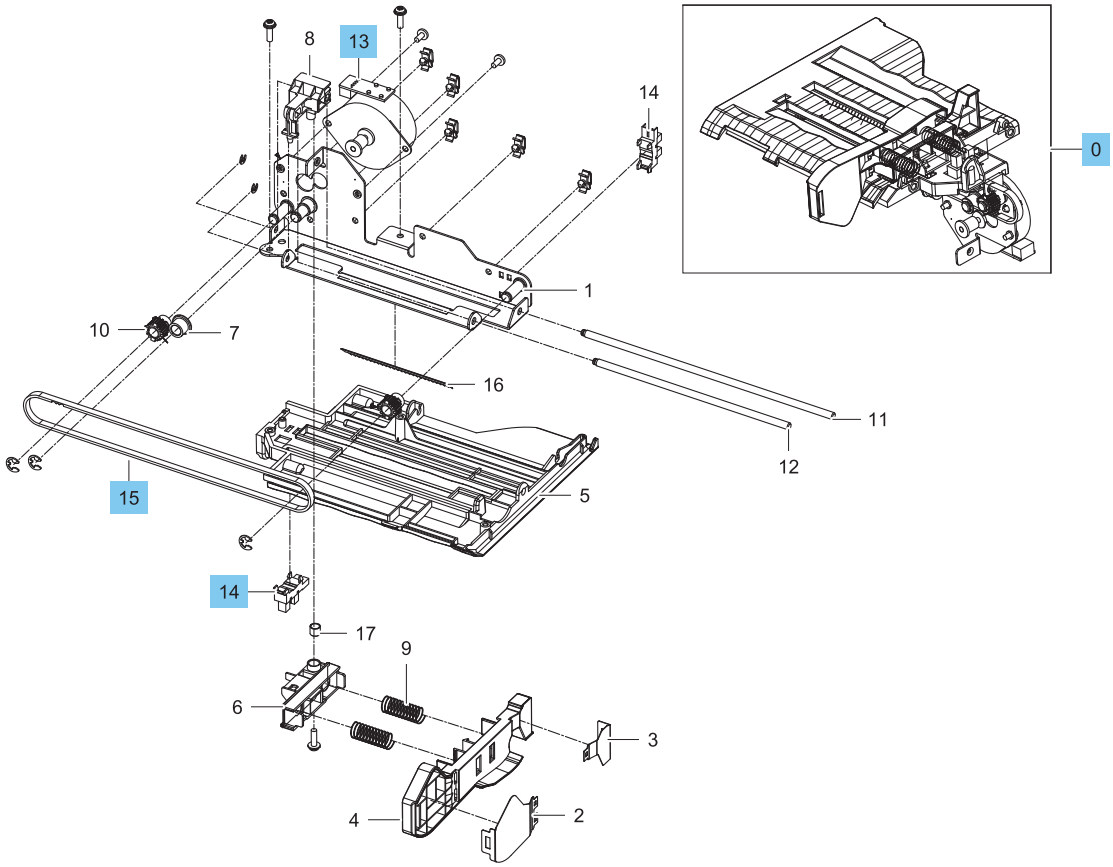


Table 4-59 Front alignment (tamper)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Finisher sub-alignment, front	SAM-JC90-01464A	1
13	Driver motor, step	SAM-JC93-01001A	1
14	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	1
15	Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-003644	1

Rear alignment (tamper)

Figure 4-60 Rear alignment (tamper)

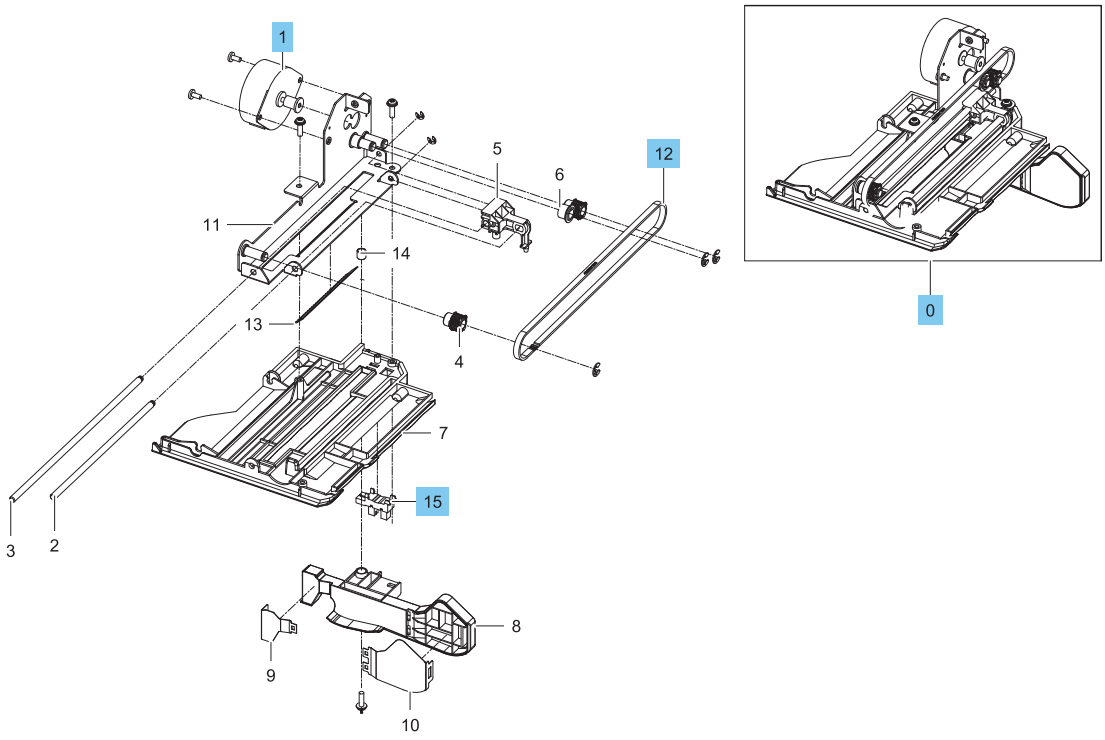


Table 4-60 Rear alignment (tamper)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Finisher sub-alignment, rear	SAM-JC90-01465A	1
1	Driver motor, step	SAM-JC93-01001A	1
12	Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-003644	1
15	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	1

Shield

Figure 4-61 Shield

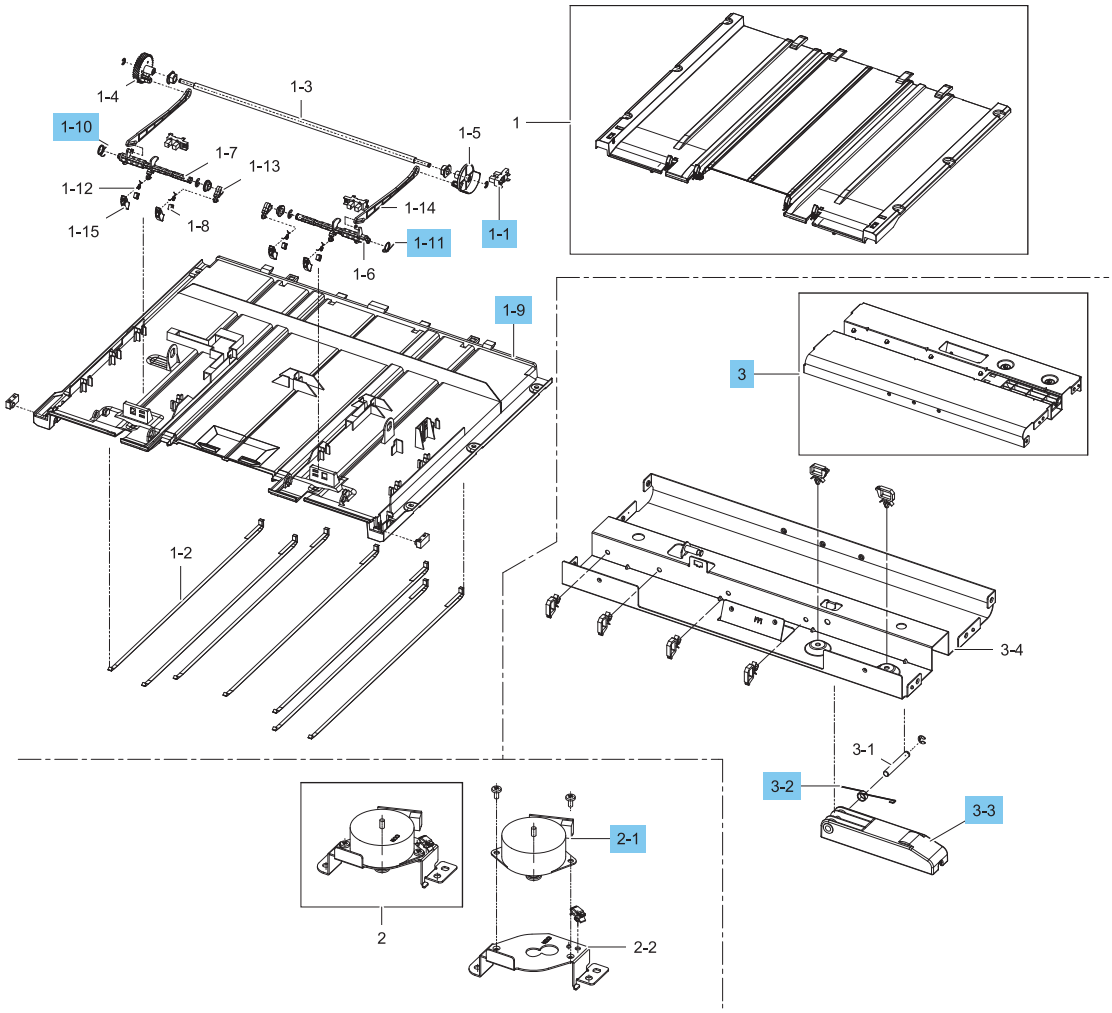


Table 4-61 Shield

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1-1	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	1
1-9	Cover, stacker	SAM-JC63-04999B	1
1-10	Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07428A	1
1-11	Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07427A	1
2-1	Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01001A	1
3	Finisher sub-base low	SAM-JC90-01476A	1
3-2	Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07392A	1
3-3	Leg bracket	SAM-JC61-07279A	1

PCB bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle

Figure 4-62 PCB bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle

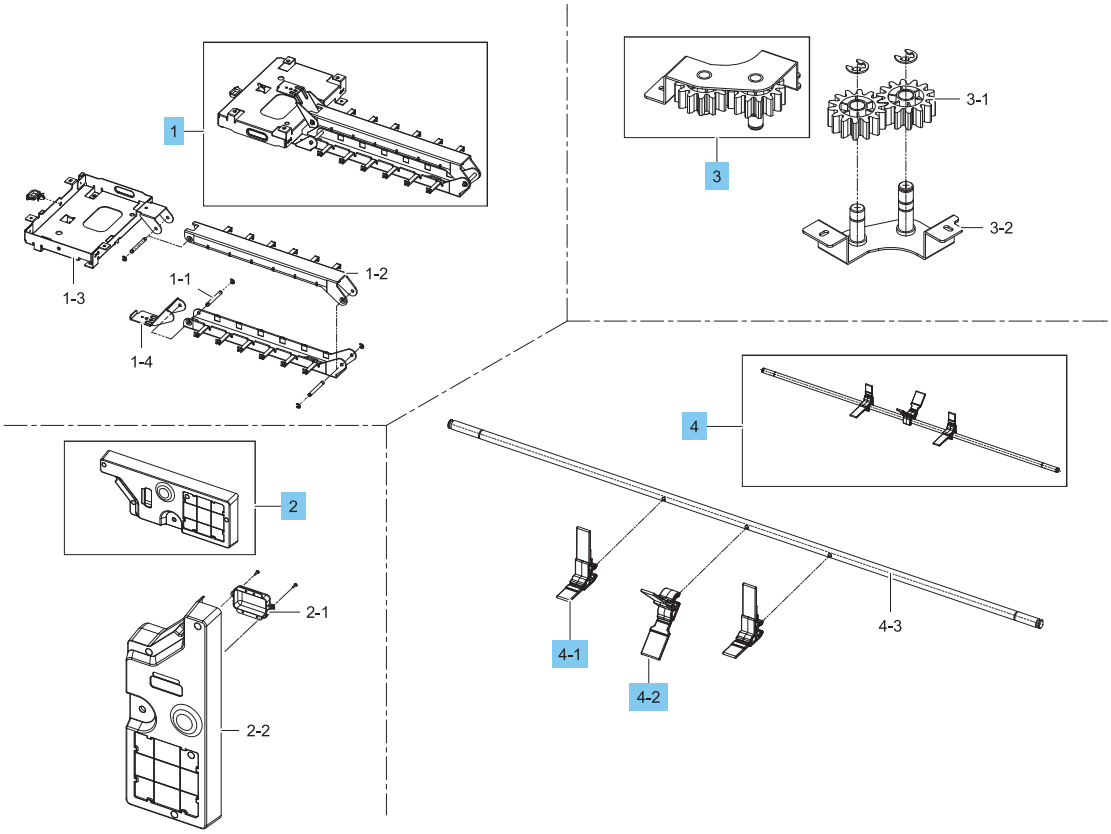


Table 4-62 PCB bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub-pcb bm	SAM-JC90-01477A	1
2	Finisher sub-cover f bm	SAM-JC90-01478B	1
3	Finisher sub-idle fold	SAM-JC90-01479A	1
4	Finisher sub-paddle	SAM-JC90-01480A	1
4-1	Finisher sub-paddle, wing	SAM-JC90-01463A	2
4-2	Finisher sub-paddle, mid	SAM-JC90-01462A	1

Finisher sub booklet

Figure 4-63 Finisher sub booklet

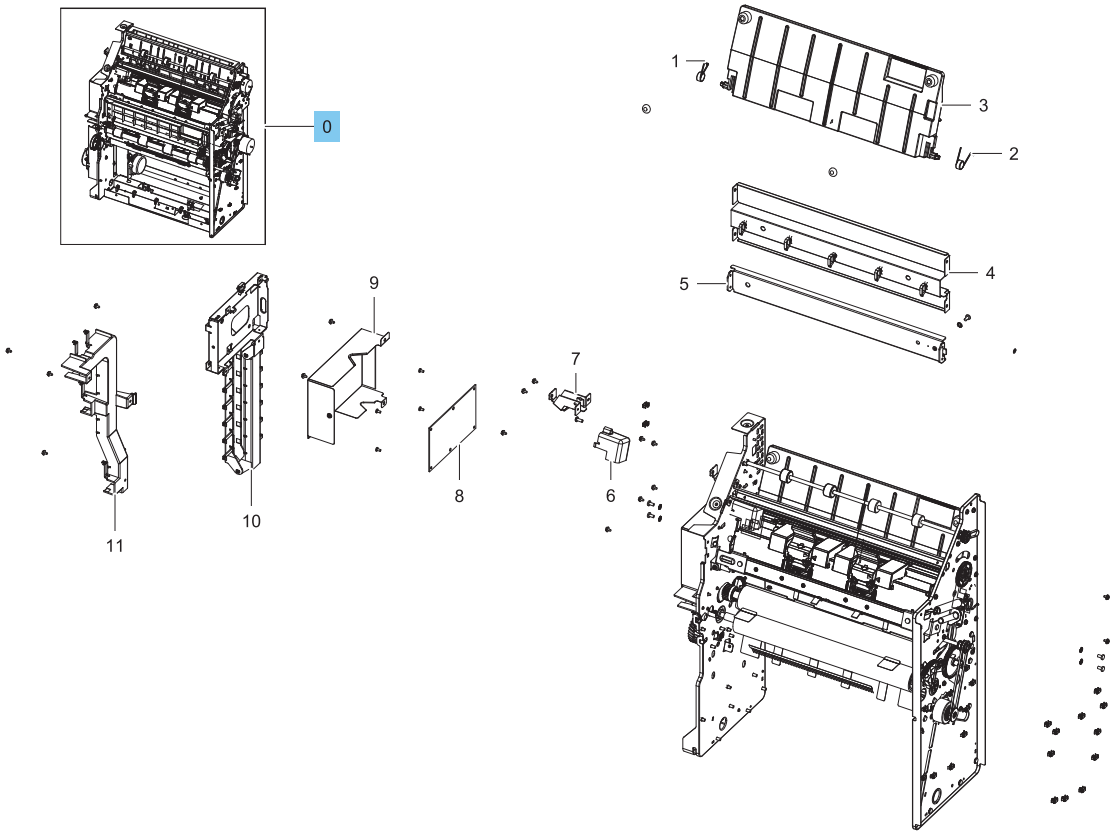


Table 4-63 Finisher sub booklet

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Finisher sub-booklet 4	SAM-JC90-01502A	1

IPTU (bridge)

Figure 4-64 IPTU (bridge)

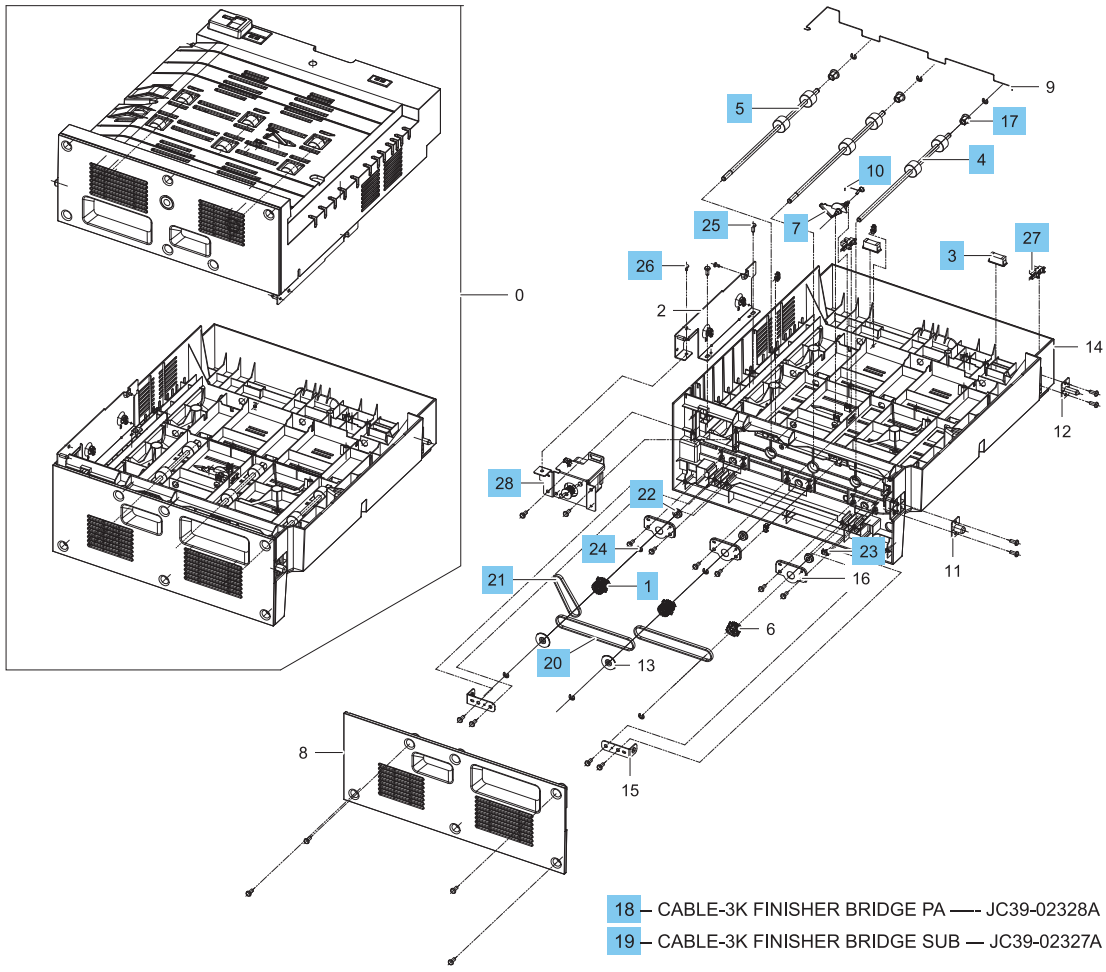


Table 4-64 IPTU (bridge)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub-clutch drive	SAM-JC90-01404A	2
3	AS-Magnet BY3-32-1	SAM-JC81-08263A	1
4	Roller, brg-feed entrance	SAM-JC66-04733A	1
5	Roller, brg-feed	SAM-JC66-04732A	2
7	Actuator, sensor	SAM-JC66-04569A	1
10	Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07432A	1
17	Bush-6, d(l)	SAM-JC61-00884A	3
18	Cable, 3k finisher IPTU PA	SAM-JC39-02328A	1
19	Cable, 3k finisher IPTU sub	SAM-JC39-02327A	1
20	Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003648	2
21	Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003645	1
22	Bearing ball	SAM-6601-001478	2
23	Cable clamp	SAM-6502-001131	1
24	E-ring	SAM-6044-000125	2
25	Screw, tap type	SAM-6003-001256	4
26	Screw, machine	SAM-6001-000130	4
27	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	1
28	Finisher sub-hb mtr	SAM-JC90-01402A	1

Inner finisher

Sub-inner finisher

Figure 4-65 Sub-inner finisher

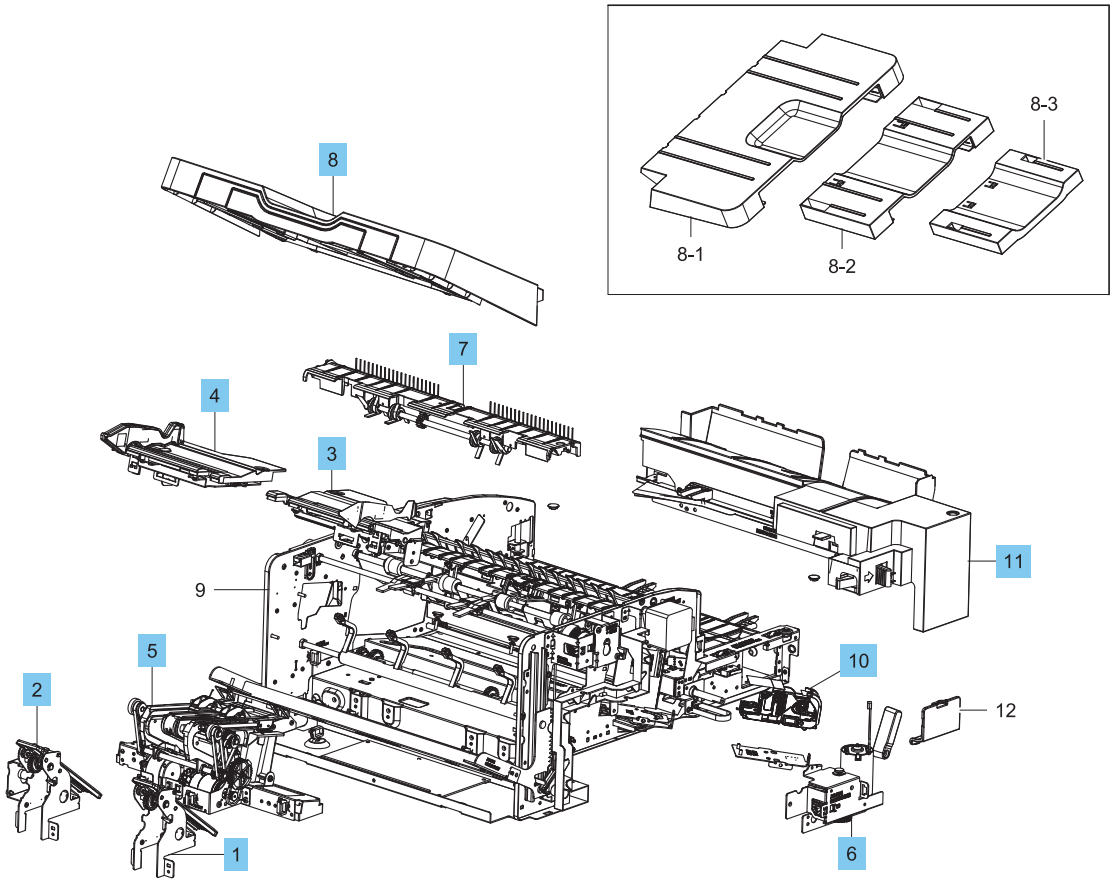


Table 4-65 Sub-inner finisher

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub-paper support	SAM-JC90-01310A	1
2	Finisher sub-paper support, rear	SAM-JC90-01311A	1
3	Finisher sub-alignment, front	SAM-JC90-01315A	1
4	Finisher sub-alignment, rear	SAM-JC90-01317A	1
5	Finisher sub-ejector	SAM-JC90-01332A	1
6	Finisher sub-motor tray	SAM-JC90-01334A	1
7	Finisher sub-guide output, lower	SAM-JC90-01336A	1
8	Finisher sub-tray	SAM-JC63-04797B	1
10	Finisher sub-staple	SAM-JC90-01342A	1
11	Finisher sub-staple	SAM-JC90-01343A	1

Finisher sub 1

Figure 4-66 Finisher sub 1

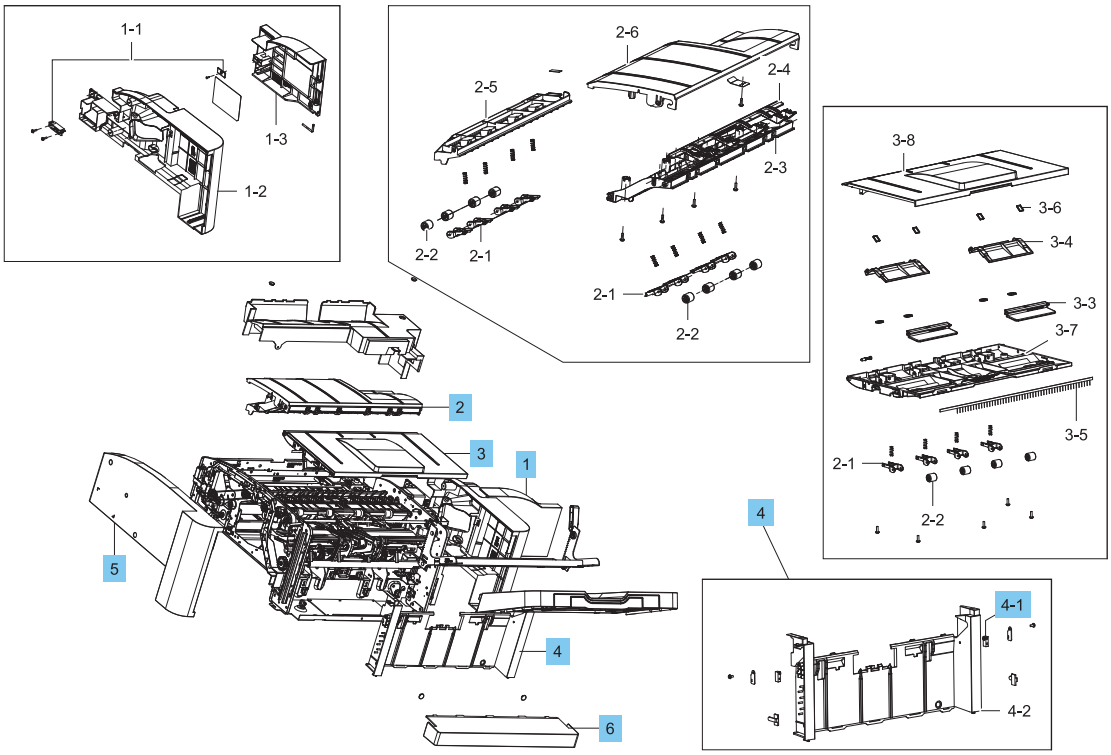


Table 4-66 Finisher sub 1

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub-cover, front	SAM-JC90-01321B	1
2	Finisher sub-cover, middle	SAM-JC90-01322B	1
3	Finisher sub-cover, compile	SAM-JC90-01323B	1
4	Finisher sub-stacker plate	SAM-JC90-01324B	1
4-1	Photo, tr	SAM-0603–001309	1
5	Cover, rear	SAM-JC63-04750B	1
6	Cover, main	SAM-JC63-04792B	1

Finisher sub 7

Figure 4-67 Finisher sub 7

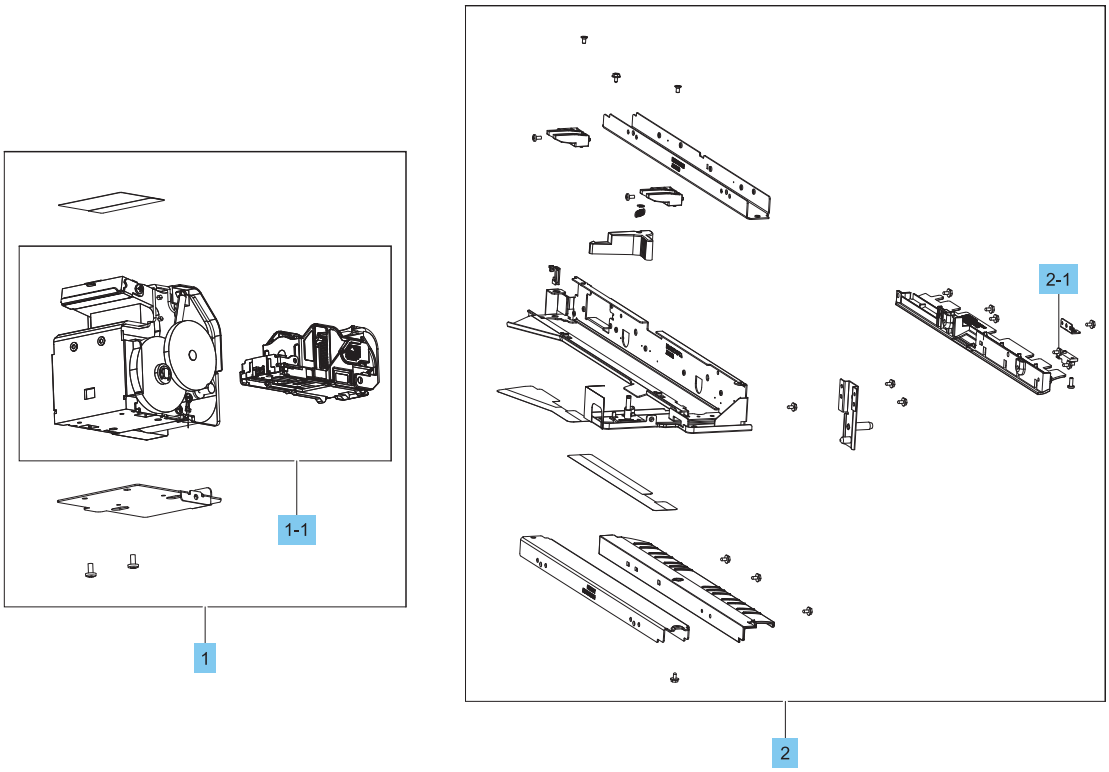


Table 4-67 Finisher sub 7

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub-staple	SAM-JC90-01342A	1
1-1	Stapler-etc assembly	SAM-JC98-04473A	1
2	Finisher sub-punch dummy	SAM-JC90-01343A	1
2-1	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604–001381	1

Finisher sub 8

Figure 4-68 Finisher sub 8

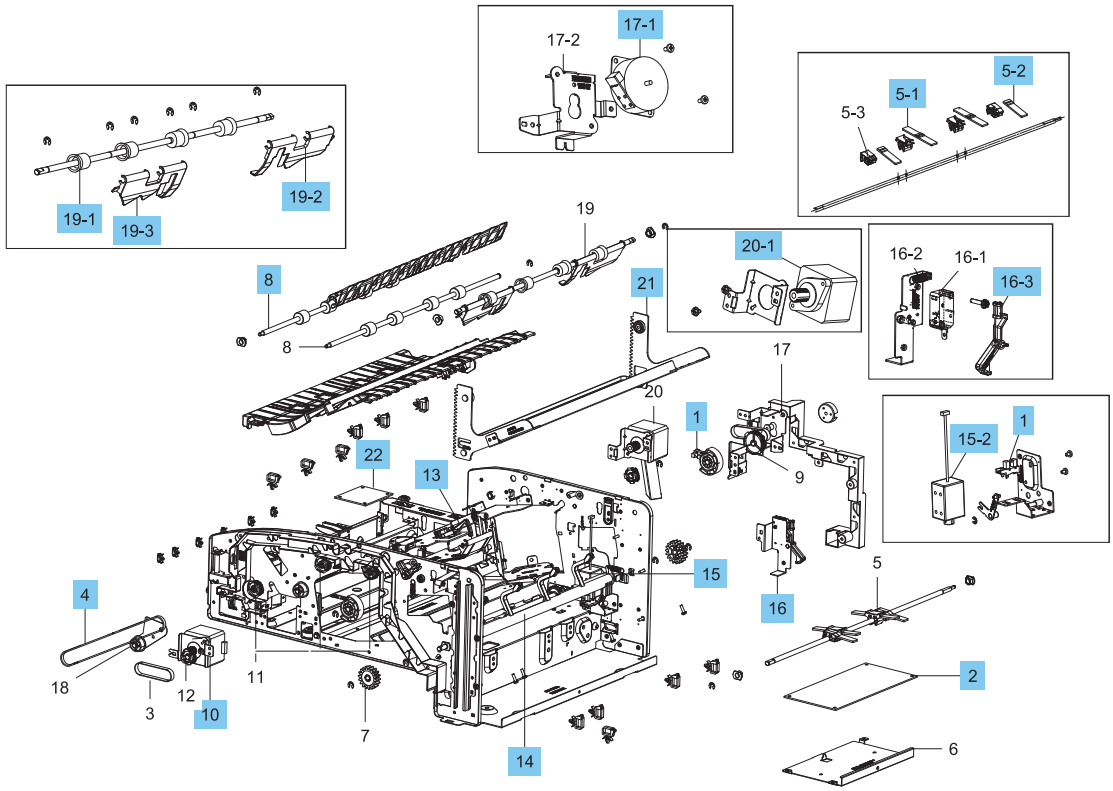


Table 4-68 Finisher sub 8

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	2
2	Inner finisher PCA	SAM-JC92-02774A	1
4	Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003644	1
5-1	Paddle absorber, rubber a	SAM-JC63-04957A	2
5-2	Paddle absorber, rubber b	SAM-JC63-04958A	2
8	Roller, feed-entrance	SAM-JC66-04243A	2
10	Finisher sub-entrance motor	SAM-JC90-01344A	1
13	Actuator, feed sensor	SAM-JC66-04199A	1
14	Finisher sub-actuator tray	SAM-JC90-01313A	1
15	Finisher sub-actuator tray sensor	SAM-JC90-01314A	1
15-2	Solenoid	SAM-JC33-00037A	1
16	Finisher sub-tray lower limit	SAM-JC90-01320A	1
16-3	Actuator tray limit	SAM-JC66-04200A	1
17-1	Step motor ip	SAM-JC31-00149A	1
19-1	Roller, feed-output	SAM-JC66-04244A	1
19-2	Compile guide, front	SAM-JC61-07449A	1
19-3	Compile guide, rear	SAM-JC61-07450A	1
20-1	Step motor ip	SAM-JC31-00169B	1
21	Finisher sub-tray frame	SAM-JC90-01319A	1
22	Rear join PCA	SAM-JC92-02780A	1

Alphabetical parts list

Table 4-69 Alphabetical parts list

Description	Part number	Table and page
Actuator	SAM-JC66-04290A	sHCI main 5 on page 867
Actuator lever, dup	SAM-JC66-04405A	Right door guide on page 821
Actuator lever, empty	SAM-JC66-04459A	MP tray on page 819
Actuator lever, fuser out	SAM-JC66-04406A	Right door output and takeaway on page 823
Actuator tray limit	SAM-JC66-04200A	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
Actuator, empty pickup	SAM-JC66-04276A	Pickup cover unit on page 871
Actuator, entrance feed	SAM-JC66-04520A	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 893
Actuator, F_D full output	SAM-JC66-04469A	Output on page 799
Actuator, feed sensor	SAM-JC66-04199A	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
Actuator, pusher	SAM-JC66-04526A	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
Actuator, sensor	SAM-JC66-04569A	IPTU (bridge) on page 921
Actuator, te-press1	SAM-JC66-04644A	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 893
Actuator, top-output	SAM-JC66-04525A	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 897
Actuator-o, staple	SAM-JC66-04528A	Mainline finisher 4 on page 883
ADF e-duplex	SAM-JC97-04662A	Main assembly on page 795
Adjust guide, DCF	SAM-JC61-04871A	HCI frame on page 859
Agitator paddle, res	SAM-JC66-04311A	Reservoir on page 841
AS-Magnet BY3-32-1	SAM-JC81-08263A	IPTU (bridge) on page 921
Bearing ball	SAM-6601-001478	Mainline finisher 1 on page 877
Bearing ball	SAM-6601-001478	Mainline finisher 2 on page 879
Bearing ball	SAM-6601-003062	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
Bearing ball	SAM-6601-001478	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 893
Bearing ball	SAM-6601-001478	IPTU (bridge) on page 921
Belt	SAM-JC66-04281A	HCI main pickup on page 861
Belt timing gear	SAM-6602-001581	Drive system on page 809
Belt timing gear	SAM-6602-001730	Drive system on page 809
BLDC Motor, 38w	SAM-JC31-00075C	Drive system on page 809
Bush, 8/5	SAM-JC61-00426A	Mainline finisher 2 on page 879
Bush, 8/5	SAM-JC61-00426A	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 891

Table 4-69 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Bush, 8/5	SAM-JC61-00426A	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 901
Bush, D6/L4	SAM-JC61-02372A	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 893
Bush-6, d	SAM-JC61-00423A	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 889
Bush-6, d	SAM-JC61-00423A	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 901
Bush-6, d(l)	SAM-JC61-00884A	IPTU (bridge) on page 921
Bush-6, dl	SAM-JC61-00884A	DCF second pickup on page 851
Bush-6, dl	SAM-JC61-00884A	HCI main pickup on page 861
Bush-6, dl	SAM-JC61-00884A	Pickup cover unit on page 871
Button lens	SAM-JC64-00996A	Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide on page 905
Button, staple	SAM-JC64-00995A	Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide on page 905
C-ring	SAM-6044-000159	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 889
Cable clamp	SAM-6502-001131	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 891
Cable clamp	SAM-6502-001131	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 893
Cable clamp	SAM-6502-001131	IPTU (bridge) on page 921
Cable, 3k finisher IPTU PA	SAM-JC39-02328A	IPTU (bridge) on page 921
Cable, 3k finisher IPTU sub	SAM-JC39-02327A	IPTU (bridge) on page 921
Cartridge sub-belt PTB	SAM-JC96-09863A	PTB transfer on page 825
Cartridge sub-cleaning blade	SAM-JC96-09862A	PTB transfer on page 825
Cartridge sub-cover, front	SAM-JC96-09861A	PTB transfer on page 825
Cartridge sub-cover, rear	SAM-JC96-09859A	PTB transfer on page 825
Cartridge sub-guide, upper	SAM-JC96-09860A	PTB transfer on page 825
Cartridge, developer unit	SAM-JC96-11599A	Main assembly on page 795
Cartridge, ICT-PIN	SAM-JC70-40542A	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 893
Cartridge, TCU	SAM-JC96-11638A	Main assembly on page 795
Cassette	SAM-JC90-01610A	Main assembly on page 795
Cassette	SAM-JC90-01611A	Main assembly on page 795
Cassette	SAM-JC90-01610A	First cassette on page 801

Table 4-69 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Cassette	SAM-JC90-01611A	Second cassette on page 803
Cassette guide rail	SAM-JC61-07471A	HCI cassette on page 857
Cassette, fifth	SAM-JC90-01652	DCF main on page 843
Cassette, fourth	SAM-JC90-01654	DCF main on page 843
Caster	SAM-6109-001138	DCF frame on page 845
Caster	SAM-6109-001138	HCI frame on page 859
Caster cover	SAM-JC63-04985B	Booklet finisher on page 875
Caster cover	SAM-JC63-04985B	Mainline finisher 5 on page 885
Clutch one way	SAM-JC66-00977A	DCF second pickup on page 851
Clutch one way[1]	SAM-JC66-00977A	DCF main on page 843
Clutch, one way	SAM-JC66-00977A	Pickup cover unit on page 871
Compile guide, front	SAM-JC61-07449A	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
Compile guide, rear	SAM-JC61-07450A	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
Compiler-brush, ceiling front	SAM-JC67-00820A	Mainline finisher 4 on page 883
Compiler-brush, ceiling rear	SAM-JC67-00819A	Mainline finisher 4 on page 883
Connector holder, scf	SAM-JC61-01742A	HCI cassette on page 857
Contact image sensor	SAM-0609-001558	Flow ADF main on page 835
Coupler, torque limiter	SAM-JC67-00455A	Frame main pickup on page 813
Coupler, torque limiter	SAM-JC67-00464A	DCF second pickup on page 851
Coupler, torque limiter	SAM-JC67-00455A	HCI main pickup on page 861
Coupler, torque limiter	SAM-JC67-00455A	sHCI main 6 on page 869
Coupler[1]	SAM-JC67-00455A	DCF main on page 843
Cover	SAM-JC95-02098A	Main assembly on page 795
Cover	SAM-JC95-02106A	Cover on page 815
Cover, dummy sHCI	SAM-JC63-04918B	Right door on page 817
Cover, front	SAM-JC63-04986B	Booklet finisher on page 875
Cover, link	SAM-JC63-05004A	Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide on page 905
Cover, main	SAM-JC63-04792B	Finisher sub 1 on page 925
Cover, rear	SAM-JC63-04988B	Booklet finisher on page 875
Cover, rear	SAM-JC63-04750B	Finisher sub 1 on page 925
Cover, stacker	SAM-JC63-04999B	Shield on page 915
Cover-f, lower	SAM-JC63-04987B	Booklet finisher on page 875
Cover-f, lower	SAM-JC63-04987B	Mainline finisher 5 on page 885

Table 4-69 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Cover-m, tray	SAM-JC63-05002B	Booklet finisher on page 875
Cover-m, tray	SAM-JC63-05002B	Mainline finisher 6 on page 887
Cover-s, tray	SAM-JC63-05003B	Booklet finisher on page 875
Cover-s, tray	SAM-JC63-05003B	Mainline finisher 6 on page 887
Cover-t, tray	SAM-JC63-04995B	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
Cover-t, tray 2	SAM-JC63-04996B	Booklet finisher on page 875
Cover-t, tray 2	SAM-JC63-04996B	Mainline finisher 6 on page 887
DCF first pickup	SAM-JC90-01679	DCF main on page 843
DCF guide adjust	SAM-JC61-04871A	DCF frame on page 845
DCF PCA	SAM-JC92-02738A	DCF frame on page 845
DCF second pickup	SAM-JC90-01680	DCF main on page 843
DCF sub-takeaway interlock	SAM-JC90-01385A	DCF frame on page 845
DCF, main harness	SAM-JC39-02276A	DCF frame on page 845
DCF, sub harness	SAM-JC39-02278A	DCF frame on page 845
DCF, sub-auto closing	SAM-JC90-01677	DCF main on page 843
DCF, sub-takeaway	SAM-JC90-01649A	DCF main on page 843
DCF, t1mot harness	SAM-JC39-02268A	DCF frame on page 845
Drive fuser, output	SAM-JC93-01064A	Main assembly on page 795
Drive main, mono	SAM-JC93-01060A	Main assembly on page 795
Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01085A	Right door on page 817
Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01083A	HCI drive on page 855
Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01083A	sHCI main 3 on page 865
Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01154A	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 889
Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01153A	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 889
Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01156A	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 893
Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01155A	Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor on page 895
Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01001A	Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor on page 895
Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01155A	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 897

Table 4-69 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01155A	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 899
Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01001A	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 909
Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01001A	Shield on page 915
Drive pickup	SAM-JC93-01063A	Main assembly on page 795
Drive registration assembly	SAM-JC93-01061A	Main assembly on page 795
Drive takeaway roller	SAM-JC93-01119A	HCI main on page 853
Drive, feed	SAM-JC93-01062A	Main assembly on page 795
Drive, motor step	SAM-JC93-00802A	Output on page 799
Drive, motor step	SAM-JC93-01084A	Drive system on page 809
Drive, motor step	SAM-JC93-01083A	Drive system on page 809
Drive, toner mono	SAM-JC93-01066B	Main assembly on page 795
Driver motor, step	SAM-JC93-01152A	Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor on page 895
Driver motor, step	SAM-JC93-01001A	Front alignment (tamper) on page 911
Driver motor, step	SAM-JC93-01001A	Rear alignment (tamper) on page 913
E-ring	SAM-6044-000125	DCF second pickup on page 851
E-ring	SAM-6044-000125	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 889
E-ring	SAM-6044-000129	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 891
E-ring	SAM-6044–000125	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 893
E-ring	SAM-6044-000125	IPTU (bridge) on page 921
Electric clutch	SAM-JC31-00037A	Drive system on page 809
Fan	SAM-JC31-00146A	Flow ADF main on page 835
Fan motor housing	SAM-JC61-07694A	Flow ADF main on page 835
Fan, dc	SAM-JC31-00168A	Flow ADF main on page 835
Fan, type 6	SAM-JC31-00160C	Main assembly 2 on page 797
Feed drive opt	SAM-JC93-01135A	DCF main on page 843
Feed drive, HCI	SAM-JC63-04797B	HCI main on page 853
Feed guide	SAM-JC61-06988A	Right door guide on page 821

Table 4-69 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Feed roller	SAM-JC66-04607A	HCI main pickup on page 861
Feed roller	SAM-JC66-04670A	HCI main pickup on page 861
Feed roller	SAM-JC66-04606A	sHCI main 6 on page 869
Feed roller opt[1]	SAM-JC66-04670A	DCF main on page 843
Feed roller[1]	SAM-JC66-04607A	DCF main on page 843
Finisher sub-3 fold mtr	SAM-JC90-01396A	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 889
Finisher sub-3 fold output	SAM-JC90-01399A	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 889
Finisher sub-actuator tray	SAM-JC90-01313A	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
Finisher sub-actuator tray sensor	SAM-JC90-01314A	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
Finisher sub-alignment front	SAM-JC90-01464A	Mainline finisher 1 on page 877
Finisher sub-alignment rear	SAM-JC90-01465A	Mainline finisher 1 on page 877
Finisher sub-alignment, front	SAM-JC90-01464A	Front alignment (tamper) on page 911
Finisher sub-alignment, front	SAM-JC90-01315A	Sub-inner finisher on page 923
Finisher sub-alignment, rear	SAM-JC90-01465A	Rear alignment (tamper) on page 913
Finisher sub-alignment, rear	SAM-JC90-01317A	Sub-inner finisher on page 923
Finisher sub-base low	SAM-JC90-01476A	Shield on page 915
Finisher sub-bkt main blade	SAM-JC90-01435A	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 899
Finisher sub-booklet 4	SAM-JC90-01502A	Finisher sub booklet on page 919
Finisher sub-booklet unit	SAM-JC90-01416A	Booklet finisher on page 875
Finisher sub-booklet unit	SAM-JC90-01416A	Mainline finisher 5 on page 885
Finisher sub-clutch div	SAM-JC90-01474A	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
Finisher sub-clutch drive	SAM-JC90-01404A	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
Finisher sub-clutch drive	SAM-JC90-01404A	IPTU (bridge) on page 921
Finisher sub-cover f bm	SAM-JC90-01478A	Booklet finisher on page 875
Finisher sub-cover f bm	SAM-JC90-01478B	PCB bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle on page 917
Finisher sub-cover, compile	SAM-JC90-01323B	Finisher sub 1 on page 925
Finisher sub-cover, front	SAM-JC90-01321B	Finisher sub 1 on page 925
Finisher sub-cover, middle	SAM-JC90-01322B	Finisher sub 1 on page 925

Table 4-69 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Finisher sub-curl pawl	SAM-JC90-01398A	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 889
Finisher sub-div cam	SAM-JC90-01458A	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
Finisher sub-div cam	SAM-JC90-01458A	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 909
Finisher sub-door	SAM-JC90-01444A	Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide on page 905
Finisher sub-drv buff	SAM-JC90-01453A	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
Finisher sub-ef mtr	SAM-JC90-01467A	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
Finisher sub-ejector	SAM-JC90-01332A	Sub-inner finisher on page 923
Finisher sub-ejector unit	SAM-JC90-01409A	Mainline finisher 1 on page 877
Finisher sub-end stopper	SAM-JC90-01466A	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
Finisher sub-entrance guide	SAM-JC90-01424A	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 893
Finisher sub-entrance motor	SAM-JC90-01344A	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
Finisher sub-fd stopper unit	SAM-JC90-01432A	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 899
Finisher sub-guide output, lower	SAM-JC90-01336A	Sub-inner finisher on page 923
Finisher sub-guide three fold	SAM-JC90-01394A	Three fold blade on page 903
Finisher sub-guide top	SAM-JC90-01406A	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 891
Finisher sub-hb motor	SAM-JC90-01459A	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 909
Finisher sub-hb mtr	SAM-JC90-01459A	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
Finisher sub-hb mtr	SAM-JC90-01402A	IPTU (bridge) on page 921
Finisher sub-idle fold	SAM-JC90-01479A	PCB bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle on page 917
Finisher sub-jam clear	SAM-JC90-01433A	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 899
Finisher sub-low output	SAM-JC90-01400A	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 891
Finisher sub-low paddle	SAM-JC90-01429A	Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor on page 895
Finisher sub-main blade	SAM-JC90-01437A	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 901
Finisher sub-mid jam	SAM-JC90-01450A	Entrance guide, mid jam, and main output on page 907

Table 4-69 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Finisher sub-motor tray	SAM-JC90-01334A	Sub-inner finisher on page 923
Finisher sub-output main	SAM-JC90-01451A	Entrance guide, mid jam, and main output on page 907
Finisher sub-output roller	SAM-JC90-01395A	Three fold blade on page 903
Finisher sub-paddle	SAM-JC90-01480A	PCB bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle on page 917
Finisher sub-paddle, mid	SAM-JC90-01462A	PCB bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle on page 917
Finisher sub-paddle, wing	SAM-JC90-01463A	PCB bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle on page 917
Finisher sub-paper support	SAM-JC90-01310A	Sub-inner finisher on page 923
Finisher sub-paper support, rear	SAM-JC90-01311A	Sub-inner finisher on page 923
Finisher sub-pcb bm	SAM-JC90-01477A	PCB bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle on page 917
Finisher sub-punch dummy	SAM-JC90-01343A	Finisher sub 7 on page 927
Finisher sub-regist guide	SAM-JC90-01448B	Mainline finisher 5 on page 885
Finisher sub-right jam	SAM-JC90-01457A	Mainline finisher 1 on page 877
Finisher sub-right jam	SAM-JC90-01457A	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 909
Finisher sub-scu motor	SAM-JC90-01414A	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 893
Finisher sub-scu mtr	SAM-JC90-01414A	Mainline finisher 4 on page 883
Finisher sub-stacker plate	SAM-JC90-01324B	Finisher sub 1 on page 925
Finisher sub-staple	SAM-JC90-01342A	Sub-inner finisher on page 923
Finisher sub-staple	SAM-JC90-01343A	Sub-inner finisher on page 923
Finisher sub-staple	SAM-JC90-01342A	Finisher sub 7 on page 927
Finisher sub-staple unit	SAM-JC90-01412A	Mainline finisher 4 on page 883
Finisher sub-stk motor	SAM-JC90-01415A	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 893
Finisher sub-stk mtr	SAM-JC90-01415A	Mainline finisher 4 on page 883
Finisher sub-top cover	SAM-JC90-01446B	Booklet finisher on page 875
Finisher sub-top cover	SAM-JC90-01446B	Mainline finisher 5 on page 885
Finisher sub-top cover	SAM-JC90-01446B	Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide on page 905
Finisher sub-top door	SAM-JC90-01445B	Booklet finisher on page 875
Finisher sub-top door	SAM-JC90-01445B	Mainline finisher 5 on page 885

Table 4-69 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Finisher sub-top door	SAM-JC90-01445B	Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide on page 905
Finisher sub-top frame	SAM-JC90-01440A	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 901
Finisher sub-top jam	SAM-JC90-01455A	Mainline finisher 2 on page 879
Finisher sub-top jam	SAM-JC90-01455A	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 897
Finisher sub-top lower	SAM-JC90-01454A	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 897
Finisher sub-trans buff	SAM-JC90-01456A	Mainline finisher 2 on page 879
Finisher sub-trans buff	SAM-JC90-01456A	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 909
Finisher sub-tray	SAM-JC63-04797B	Sub-inner finisher on page 923
Finisher sub-tray bm unit	SAM-JC90-01417B	Mainline finisher 5 on page 885
Finisher sub-tray frame	SAM-JC90-01319A	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
Finisher sub-tray lower limit	SAM-JC90-01320A	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
Flow ADF cover, open	SAM-JC97-04869A	Flow ADF open cover on page 829
Flow ADF cover, open lower	SAM-JC97-04696B	Flow ADF open cover on page 829
Flow ADF pickup, sub	SAM-JC97-04650A	Flow ADF pickup roller assembly on page 831
Flow ADF pickup, upper	SAM-JC97-04872A	Flow ADF on page 827
Flow ADF pickup, upper	SAM-JC97-04646B	Flow ADF on page 827
Flow ADF stacker	SAM-JC97-04658B	Flow ADF stacker on page 833
Flow ADF, bottom cover	SAM-JC97-04880A	Flow ADF on page 827
Flow ADF, damper	SAM-JC97-04692A	Flow ADF on page 827
Flow ADF, dummy front	SAM-JC97-04879A	Flow ADF on page 827
Flow ADF, exterior	SAM-JC97-04668B	Flow ADF main on page 835
Flow ADF, feed drive motor	SAM-JC97-04680A	Flow ADF main on page 835
Flow ADF, front cover	SAM-JC97-04881A	Flow ADF on page 827
Flow ADF, hinge l	SAM-JC97-04640A	Flow ADF main on page 835
Flow ADF, hinge r	SAM-JC97-04641A	Flow ADF main on page 835
Flow ADF, housing separation roller	SAM-JC97-04661A	Flow ADF main on page 835
Flow ADF, lift drive	SAM-JC97-04679A	Flow ADF main on page 835
Flow ADF, main frame	SAM-JC97-04883A	Flow ADF on page 827
Flow ADF, main frame sGX (dn models only)	SAM-JC97-04882A	Flow ADF on page 827
Flow ADF, PCA high	SAM-JC92-02964A	Flow ADF main on page 835

Table 4-69 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Flow ADF, pickup release drive	SAM-JC97-04681A	Flow ADF main on page 835
Flow ADF, release drive scan	SAM-JC97-04682A	Flow ADF main on page 835
Flow ADF, scan in lower	SAM-JC97-04656B	Flow ADF main on page 835
Flow ADF, scan out	SAM-JC97-04830A	Flow ADF main on page 835
Flow ADF, separation cover	SAM-JC97-04652A	Flow ADF main on page 835
Flow ADF, white simplex roller	SAM-JC97-04687A	Flow ADF main on page 835
Frame holder dust assembly, TF	SAM-JC93-01026B	Main assembly on page 795
Frame interlock sHCI assemlby	SAM-JC93-01123A	sHCI frame on page 873
Frame latch, rear sensor assembly	SAM-JC93-01124A	sHCI frame on page 873
Frame main pickup 1	SAM-JC93-01096A	Main assembly on page 795
Frame main pickup 2	SAM-JC93-01104A	Main assembly on page 795
Frame main, humidity sensor	SAM-JC93-00486A	Main assembly frame on page 805
Frame main, pickup roller	SAM-JC93-01092A	Frame main pickup on page 813
Frame main, TCU sensor	SAM-JC93-00492A	Main assembly frame on page 805
Frame mount	SAM-JC61-06663A	Mainline finisher 4 on page 883
Frame reservoir	SAM-JC93-01071A	Reservoir on page 841
Frame sub, rear bottom	SAM-JC93-01370A	Main assembly frame on page 805
Frame, left cst rail assembly	SAM-JC93-01044A	DCF frame on page 845
Frame, main pickup roller	SAM-JC93-01092A	DCF second pickup on page 851
Frame, main pickup roller	SAM-JC93-01092A	sHCI main 6 on page 869
Frame, main pickup roller	SAM-JC93-01092A	Pickup cover unit on page 871
Frame, right cst rail assembly	SAM-JC93-01045A	DCF frame on page 845
Front cover	SAM-JC95-02103A	Cover on page 815
Front cover	SAM-JC63-04986B	Mainline finisher 5 on page 885
Front cover, lower	SAM-JC63-04861B	Cover on page 815
Front cover, mp	SAM-JC63-04910B	Right door on page 817
Front door switch open	SAM-JC93-00466A	Main assembly frame on page 805
Fuser 220V	SAM-JC91-01194A	Main assembly on page 795
Fuser assembly 110V	SAM-JC91-01195A	Main assembly on page 795
Fuser drive board 110V	SAM-JC44-00235B	Main assembly on page 795
Fuser drive board 220V	SAM-JC44-00236B	Main assembly on page 795

Table 4-69 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Gear motor	SAM-JC31-00109A	sHCI main 3 on page 865
Gear, buffer	SAM-JC66-04602A	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
Gear, double	SAM-JC66-04579A	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 889
Gear, double	SAM-JC66-04573A	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 901
Gear, helical	SAM-JC66-04591A	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 901
Gear, helical 1	SAM-JC66-04592A	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 901
Gear, helical 2	SAM-JC66-04593A	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 901
Gear, helical 3	SAM-JC66-04594A	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 899
Gear, helical 4	SAM-JC66-04595A	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 899
Gear-db, gear	SAM-JC66-04604A	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 893
Ground plate	SAM-JC61-03002A	DCF rear frame on page 847
Ground-c, safety	SAM-JC63-04984A	Mainline finisher 4 on page 883
Guide, buff div	SAM-JC61-07204A	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 909
Guide, com ceil	SAM-JC61-07189A	Mainline finisher 4 on page 883
Guide, diverter	SAM-JC61-07205A	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 897
Guide, pusher	SAM-JC61-07206A	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
Guide, seal-top	SAM-JC62-01328A	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 897
Guide, top jam	SAM-JC61-07196A	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 897
Guide-l, entrance	SAM-JC61-07247A	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 893
Harness, 3k finisher bm path	SAM-JC39-02320A	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 909
Harness, 3k finisher output path	SAM-JC39-02322A	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 897
Harness, 3k finisher top cover	SAM-JC39-02310A	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 901
Harness, heater HCI	SAM-JC39-02284A	HCI frame on page 859

Table 4-69 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Harness, inner tray HCI	SAM-JC39-02286A	HCI frame on page 859
Harness, main if HCI	SAM-JC39-02283A	HCI frame on page 859
Harness, mot HCI	SAM-JC39-02279A	HCI frame on page 859
Harness, sub if HCI	SAM-JC39-02285A	HCI frame on page 859
HCI cassette	SAM-JC90-01642A	HCI cassette on page 857
HCI main	SAM-JC93-01139A	HCI main pickup on page 861
HCI PCA	SAM-JC92-02738B	HCI frame on page 859
HCI sub-takeaway	SAM-JC90-01646A	HCI main on page 853
HCI, cassette	SAM-JC90-01642A	HCI main on page 853
HCI, main pickup	SAM-JC93-01322B	HCI main on page 853
HCI, sub-auto closer	SAM-JC90-01382A	HCI main on page 853
HDD	SAM-JC59-00036A	Main assembly on page 795
HDD bracket assembly frame	SAM-JC93-01239B	Main assembly on page 795
Hex screw	6009-001665	DCF main on page 843
Hex screw	6009-001665	Opt feed drive on page 849
HVPS	SAM-JC44-00241A	Main assembly on page 795
Ict-pin, paralled, p/u	SAM-JC70-40360A	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 909
Idle holder, one way	SAM-JC61-01288A	Pickup cover unit on page 871
Idle roller, cst	SAM-JC61-03331A	HCI frame on page 859
Idle roller, rubber	SAM-JC66-02289B	Right door guide on page 821
Image scanner	SAM-JC97-04520C	Main assembly on page 795
Image scanner	SAM-JC97-04523B	Flow ADF image scanner, lower on page 839
Image scanner, lower	SAM-JC97-04515A	Flow ADF image scanner on page 837
Image scanner, open sensor	SAM-JC97-04516A	Flow ADF image scanner on page 837
Inner cover	SAM-JC95-02104A	Cover on page 815
Inner finisher PCA	SAM-JC92-02774A	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
Laser scanner assembly	SAM-JC97-04574A	Main assembly on page 795
Left cover	SAM-JC95-02100A	Cover on page 815
Left cover	SAM-JC63-04797B	sHCI main 1 on page 863
Left cover, top	SAM-JC63-04862B	Cover on page 815
Left cover, upper	SAM-JC63-05638A	Cover on page 815

Table 4-69 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Leg bracket	SAM-JC61-07279A	Shield on page 915
Lift drive, shift	SAM-JC93-01118A	HCI main on page 853
Link cover, open	SAM-JC66-02270A	Flow ADF on page 827
Link door	SAM-JC66–04279A	sHCI main 1 on page 863
Link door, front 2	SAM-JC66-04278A	sHCI main 1 on page 863
Link door, rear 2	SAM-JC66-04277A	sHCI main 1 on page 863
Link holder, hinge f	SAM-JC61-06567A	sHCI main 1 on page 863
Link holder, hinge r	SAM-JC61-06568A	sHCI main 1 on page 863
Link lever, d	SAM-JC66-04398A	Right door on page 817
LVPS (SMPS), 110v type 3	SAM-JC44-00222B	Main assembly on page 795
LVPS (SMPS), 110V type 4	SAM-JC44-00091D	Main assembly 2 on page 797
LVPS (SMPS), 110V type 5H	SAM-JC44-00249A	Main assembly 2 on page 797
LVPS (SMPS), 220v type 3	SAM-JC44-00223B	Main assembly on page 795
LVPS (SMPS), 220V type 5H	SAM-JC44-00250A	Main assembly 2 on page 797
LVPS (SMPS), V2	SAM-JC44-00100D	Main assembly on page 795
Machine screw	SAM-6001-002716	Pickup cover unit on page 871
Machinery, fastener screw	SAM-JC60-00078A	DCF main on page 843
Magent, as by3-32-1	SAM-JC81-08263A	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 909
Magnet, as	SAM-JC81-08263A	Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide on page 905
Main drive, common mono	SAM-JC93-01049A	Drive system on page 809
Main frame rear auto-size holder	SAM-JC93-00018A	DCF rear frame on page 847
Main frame registration assebly	SAM-JC93-01116A	Main assembly frame on page 805
Main-brush, output	SAM-JC67-00817A	Mainline finisher 2 on page 879
Motor	SAM-JC90-01673A	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
Motor BLDC	SAM-JC31-00123B	Drive system on page 809
Motor circuit, step	SAM-JC31-00110A	Drive system on page 809
Motor gear	SAM-JC31-00109A	HCI drive on page 855
Motor shift gear	SAM-JC31-00125A	HCI drive on page 855
Motor step 1P	SAM-JC31-00132A	Drive system on page 809
Motor step, ip	SAM-JC31-00177A	HCI drive on page 855

Table 4-69 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Motor step, ip	SAM-JC31-00163B	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 909
Motor, bldc	SAM-JC31-00144A	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 899
Motor, bldc	SAM-JC31-00144A	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 901
Motor, DC-stacker	SAM-JC31-00178A	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 893
Motor, step ip	SAM-JC31-00163B	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 891
MP	SAM-JC90-01352B	Right door on page 817
MP bracket, pickup	SAM-JC90-01355A	MP tray on page 819
MP feed guide	SAM-JC90-01353A	MP tray on page 819
MP solenoid	SAM-JC33-00029B	MP tray on page 819
MP sub-tray	SAM-JC90-01357B	MP tray on page 819
Opt feed drive	SAM-JC93-01135A	Opt feed drive on page 849
Opt feed roller	SAM-JC66-04607A	DCF second pickup on page 851
Output	SAM-JC90–01369A	Main assembly on page 795
Output 1	SAM-JC90-01370A	Main assembly on page 795
Output 2	SAM-JC90-01373A	Main assembly on page 795
Output cover	SAM-JC95-02101A	Cover on page 815
Output cover, rear	SAM-JC63-04840B	Cover on page 815
Output, guide lower	SAM-JC90-01372A	Output on page 799
Output, guide upper	SAM-JC90-01371A	Output on page 799
Output, lower 2	SAM-JC90-01375A	Output on page 799
Output, upper 2	SAM-JC90-01374A	Output on page 799
Paddle absorber, rubber a	SAM-JC63-04957A	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
Paddle absorber, rubber b	SAM-JC63-04958A	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
Paddle holder	SAM-JC61-07225A	Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor on page 895
PCA, 3k switch	SAM-JC92-02789A	Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide on page 905
PCA, paper size sensor	SAM-JC92-02622A	DCF rear frame on page 847
Phone, interrupter	SAM-0604-001393	Main assembly frame on page 805

Table 4-69 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Photo interrupter	SAM-0604-001490	Right door output and takeaway on page 823
Photo, interrupter	SAM-0604-001393	Output on page 799
Photo, interrupter	SAM-0604-001381	Main frame registration assembly on page 807
Photo, interrupter	SAM-0604-001393	Drive system on page 809
Photo, interrupter	SAM-0604-001490	Frame main pickup 1 and 2 on page 811
Photo, interrupter	SAM-0604-001381	Frame main pickup 1 and 2 on page 811
Photo, interrupter	SAM-0604-001393	Frame main pickup on page 813
Photo, tr	SAM-0603–001309	Finisher sub 1 on page 925
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604–001393	MP tray on page 819
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001393	Right door guide on page 821
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604–001393	Right door output and takeaway on page 823
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001502	Flow ADF open cover on page 829
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604–001393	Flow ADF pickup roller assembly on page 831
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001502	Flow ADF pickup roller assembly on page 831
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604–001490	Flow ADF stacker on page 833
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604–001393	Flow ADF stacker on page 833
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001393	Reservoir on page 841
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001381	DCF second pickup on page 851
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001393	HCI cassette on page 857
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001381	HCI main pickup on page 861
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001393	sHCI main 5 on page 867
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001490	Pickup cover unit on page 871
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604–001393	Pickup cover unit on page 871
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	Mainline finisher 1 on page 877
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 889
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 893

Table 4-69 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor on page 895
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 897
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 909
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	Front alignment (tamper) on page 911
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	Rear alignment (tamper) on page 913
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	Shield on page 915
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	IPTU (bridge) on page 921
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604–001381	Finisher sub 7 on page 927
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
Photo-interrupter[1]	SAM-0604-001490	DCF main on page 843
Pick rollers[1]	SAM-JC93-0192A	DCF main on page 843
Pickup cover	SAM-JC63-04798B	sHCI main 1 on page 863
Pickup cover lever	SAM-JC63-04799A	Pickup cover unit on page 871
Pickup drive	SAM-JC93-01063B	DCF main on page 843
Pickup drive	SAM-JC90-01115A	HCI main on page 853
Pickup drive	SAM-JC93-01115A	HCI drive on page 855
Pickup roller	SAM-JC93-01091A	HCI main pickup on page 861
Pickup roller, main frame	SAM-JC93-00540B	MP tray on page 819
PTB transfer	SAM-JC93-01117A	PTB transfer on page 825
Rail	SAM-6102-003369	Mainline finisher 1 on page 877
Rear cover	SAM-JC95-02117A	Cover on page 815
Rear cover	SAM-JC63-05566A	Flow ADF on page 827
Rear cover	SAM-JC63-04988B	Mainline finisher 5 on page 885
Rear cover, dummy	SAM-JC63-04863B	Cover on page 815
Rear cover, sHCI	SAM-JC90-01660A	sHCI main 1 on page 863
Rear cover, upper	SAM-JC63-05633A	Cover on page 815
Rear join PCA	SAM-JC92-02780A	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
Registration assembly, harness	SAM-JC39-02204A	Main frame registration assembly on page 807
Reservoir	SAM-JC93-01071A	Main assembly 2 on page 797

Table 4-69 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Reservoir drive	SAM-JC93-01067A	Reservoir on page 841
Right cover, front	SAM-JC63-04847B	Cover on page 815
Right cover, middle	SAM-JC95-02105A	Cover on page 815
Right cover, rear	SAM-JC63-02102A	Cover on page 815
Right cover, upper	SAM-JC63-04846B	Cover on page 815
Right door mono	SAM-JC95-01987A	Main assembly on page 795
Roller feed	SAM-JC66-04625A	Frame main pickup on page 813
Roller feed, output 2	SAM-JC66-04653A	Output on page 799
Roller, brg-feed	SAM-JC66-04732A	IPTU (bridge) on page 921
Roller, brg-feed entrance	SAM-JC66-04733A	IPTU (bridge) on page 921
Roller, click-feed	SAM-JC66-04523A	Mainline finisher 4 on page 883
Roller, feed-duplex 1	SAM-JC66-04628A	Right door on page 817
Roller, feed-duplex 2	SAM-JC66-04629A	Right door on page 817
Roller, feed-entrance	SAM-JC66-04243A	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
Roller, feed-fold output	SAM-JC66-04721A	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 891
Roller, feed-output	SAM-JC66-04244A	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
Roller, main-feed entrance	SAM-JC66-04722A	Mainline finisher 1 on page 877
Roller, main-feed output	SAM-JC66-04726A	Mainline finisher 2 on page 879
Roller, mid-feed output	SAM-JC66-04724A	Mainline finisher 2 on page 879
Roller, output-3 fold	SAM-JC66-04744A	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 891
Roller, output-feed bm	SAM-JC66-04723A	Mainline finisher 2 on page 879
Roller, top-feed mid output	SAM-JC66-04725A	Mainline finisher 2 on page 879
Roller, top-feed output	SAM-JC66-04727A	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
Rooler, feed-lower bm	SAM-JC66-04719A	Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor on page 895
Safety guide	SAM-JC61-07192A	Mainline finisher 4 on page 883
Scan cover, front	SAM-JC95-02118A	Cover on page 815
Scan cover, left	SAM-JC63-05587A	Cover on page 815
Scan cover, rear	SAM-JC63-04859C	Cover on page 815
Scan cover, right	SAM-JC63-05571A	Cover on page 815
Screw cap	SAM-JC67-00711A	sHCI main 1 on page 863

Table 4-69 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Screw, machine	SAM-6001-000130	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 889
Screw, machine	SAM-6001-000130	IPTU (bridge) on page 921
Screw, tap type	SAM-6003–00269	DCF second pickup on page 851
Screw, tap type	SAM-6003-001256	IPTU (bridge) on page 921
Sensor, rp	SAM-JC32-00020A	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 897
Sensor, rp	SAM-JC32-00020A	Entrance guide, mid jam, and main output on page 907
Sensor, rp	SAM-JC32-00020A	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 909
Shaft, hinge-door	SAM-JC66-04767A	Mainline finisher 5 on page 885
sHCI drive gear	SAM-JC66-04294A	sHCI main 3 on page 865
sHCI, connect sensor harness	SAM-JC39-02291A	sHCI main 5 on page 867
sHCI, feed pulley gear	SAM-JC66-04295A	sHCI main 3 on page 865
sHCI, mot harness	SAM-JC39-02287A	sHCI main 3 on page 865
sHCI, plow harness	SAM-JC39-02288A	sHCI main 5 on page 867
sHCI, plow harness	SAM-JC39-02288A	sHCI main 6 on page 869
Sheet sensor	SAM-JC63-03776A	DCF second pickup on page 851
Sheet-fold output	SAM-JC63-05041A	Three fold blade on page 903
Sheet-jam guide	SAM-JC63-05044A	Three fold blade on page 903
Side cover	SAM-JC63-04920B	Right door on page 817
Side cover guide	SAM-JC95-01969A	Right door guide on page 821
Side cover, link	SAM-JC95-01970A	Right door on page 817
Side cover, output	SAM-JC95-01968A	Right door output and takeaway on page 823
Side cover, takeaway	SAM-JC95-01972A	Right door output and takeaway on page 823
Side cover, upper	SAM-JC63-04916B	Right door on page 817
Side link	SAM-JC66-04400A	Right door on page 817
Side locker	SAM-JC64-00710A	Right door on page 817
Solenoid	SAM-JC90-01675A	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
Solenoid	SAM-JC33-00038A	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 899
Solenoid	SAM-JC33-00037A	Finisher sub 8 on page 929

Table 4-69 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Solenoid, lifting	SAM-JC33-00031B	Output on page 799
Sponge white sheet	SAM-JC63-05238A	Main assembly on page 795
Spring, cs	SAM-6107-001731	Right door guide on page 821
Spring, cs	SAM-6107-002599	Reservoir on page 841
Spring, cs	SAM-JC61-07403A	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 899
Spring, es	SAM-JC61-07414A	Mainline finisher 2 on page 879
Spring, es	SAM-JC61-07431A	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 891
Spring, es	SAM-JC61-07430A	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 891
Spring, es	SAM-JC61-07415A	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 897
Spring, es	SAM-JC61-07409A	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 897
Spring, es	SAM-JC61-07391A	Three fold blade on page 903
Spring, es	SAM-JC61-07408A	Entrance guide, mid jam, and main output on page 907
Spring, etc torsion doc (cc2-f)	SAM-JC61-00076A	HCI cassette on page 857
Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07372A	Right door on page 817
Spring, ts	SAM-6107-001737	Right door guide on page 821
Spring, ts	SAM-6107-001737	Right door output and takeaway on page 823
Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07411A	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 897
Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07417A	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 897
Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07410A	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 897
Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07401A	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 899
Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07413A	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 909
Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07409A	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 909
Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07418A	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 909
Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07428A	Shield on page 915

Table 4-69 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07427A	Shield on page 915
Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07392A	Shield on page 915
Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07432A	IPTU (bridge) on page 921
Stacker, CSP-worm	SAM-JC81-07637A	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 893
Stapler-etc assembly	SAM-JC98-04473A	Finisher sub 7 on page 927
Step motor ip	SAM-JC31-00149A	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
Step motor ip	SAM-JC31-00169B	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
Step motor, ip	SAM-JC31-00177A	Flow ADF main on page 835
Step motor, ip	SAM-JC31-00158A	Flow ADF image scanner on page 837
Step motor, ip	SAM-JC31-00177A	Opt feed drive on page 849
Step motor, ip	SAM-JC31-00163A	sHCI main 3 on page 865
Tempered scan glass	SAM-JC01-00101A	Flow ADF image scanner on page 837
Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-001730	Right door on page 817
Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-003183	Right door on page 817
Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-001730	Flow ADF main on page 835
Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-003185	DCF main on page 843
Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-003670	Opt feed drive on page 849
Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-003670	HCI drive on page 855
Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-001730	sHCI main 3 on page 865
Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-003644	Front alignment (tamper) on page 911
Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-003644	Rear alignment (tamper) on page 913
Timing pulley	SAM-JC66-04583A	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 899
Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003649	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003647	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003645	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003640	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003639	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003652	Mainline finisher 4 on page 883
Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003270	Mainline finisher 4 on page 883
Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003648	IPTU (bridge) on page 921

Table 4-69 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003645	IPTU (bridge) on page 921
Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003644	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
Top-brush output	SAM-JC67-00818A	Mainline finisher 4 on page 883
Top-seal, guide	SAM-JC62-01328A	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
Tray cover	SAM-JC63-04797B	HCI main on page 853
Tray heaters	SAM-JC93-01181A	Main assembly 2 on page 797

Numerical parts list

Table 4-70 Numerical parts list

Part number	Description	Table and page
6009-001665	Hex screw	DCF main on page 843
6009-001665	Hex screw	Opt feed drive on page 849
SAM-0603–001309	Photo, tr	Finisher sub 1 on page 925
SAM-0604-001381	Photo, interrupter	Main frame registration assembly on page 807
SAM-0604-001381	Photo, interrupter	Frame main pickup 1 and 2 on page 811
SAM-0604-001381	Photo-interrupter	DCF second pickup on page 851
SAM-0604-001381	Photo-interrupter	HCI main pickup on page 861
SAM-0604-001393	Photo, interrupter	Output on page 799
SAM-0604-001393	Phone, interrupter	Main assembly frame on page 805
SAM-0604-001393	Photo, interrupter	Drive system on page 809
SAM-0604-001393	Photo, interrupter	Frame main pickup on page 813
SAM-0604-001393	Photo-interrupter	Right door guide on page 821
SAM-0604-001393	Photo-interrupter	Reservoir on page 841
SAM-0604-001393	Photo-interrupter	HCI cassette on page 857
SAM-0604-001393	Photo-interrupter	sHCI main 5 on page 867
SAM-0604-001415	Photo-interrupter	Mainline finisher 1 on page 877
SAM-0604-001415	Photo-interrupter	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
SAM-0604-001415	Photo-interrupter	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 889
SAM-0604-001415	Photo-interrupter	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 893
SAM-0604-001415	Photo-interrupter	Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor on page 895
SAM-0604-001415	Photo-interrupter	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 897
SAM-0604-001415	Photo-interrupter	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 909
SAM-0604-001415	Photo-interrupter	Front alignment (tamper) on page 911
SAM-0604-001415	Photo-interrupter	Rear alignment (tamper) on page 913
SAM-0604-001415	Photo-interrupter	Shield on page 915

Table 4-70 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-0604-001415	Photo-interrupter	IPTU (bridge) on page 921
SAM-0604-001415	Photo-interrupter	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
SAM-0604-001490	Photo, interrupter	Frame main pickup 1 and 2 on page 811
SAM-0604-001490	Photo interrupter	Right door output and takeaway on page 823
SAM-0604-001490	Photo-interrupter[1]	DCF main on page 843
SAM-0604-001490	Photo-interrupter	Pickup cover unit on page 871
SAM-0604-001502	Photo-interrupter	Flow ADF open cover on page 829
SAM-0604-001502	Photo-interrupter	Flow ADF pickup roller assembly on page 831
SAM-0604–001381	Photo-interrupter	Finisher sub 7 on page 927
SAM-0604–001393	Photo-interrupter	MP tray on page 819
SAM-0604–001393	Photo-interrupter	Right door output and takeaway on page 823
SAM-0604–001393	Photo-interrupter	Flow ADF pickup roller assembly on page 831
SAM-0604–001393	Photo-interrupter	Flow ADF stacker on page 833
SAM-0604–001393	Photo-interrupter	Pickup cover unit on page 871
SAM-0604–001490	Photo-interrupter	Flow ADF stacker on page 833
SAM-0609-001558	Contact image sensor	Flow ADF main on page 835
SAM-6001-000130	Screw, machine	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 889
SAM-6001-000130	Screw, machine	IPTU (bridge) on page 921
SAM-6001-002716	Machine screw	Pickup cover unit on page 871
SAM-6003-001256	Screw, tap type	IPTU (bridge) on page 921
SAM-6003–00269	Screw, tap type	DCF second pickup on page 851
SAM-6044-000125	E-ring	DCF second pickup on page 851
SAM-6044-000125	E-ring	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 889
SAM-6044-000125	E-ring	IPTU (bridge) on page 921
SAM-6044-000129	E-ring	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 891
SAM-6044-000159	C-ring	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 889

Table 4-70 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-6044–000125	E-ring	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 893
SAM-6102-003369	Rail	Mainline finisher 1 on page 877
SAM-6107-001731	Spring, cs	Right door guide on page 821
SAM-6107-001737	Spring, ts	Right door guide on page 821
SAM-6107-001737	Spring, ts	Right door output and takeaway on page 823
SAM-6107-002599	Spring, cs	Reservoir on page 841
SAM-6109-001138	Caster	DCF frame on page 845
SAM-6109-001138	Caster	HCI frame on page 859
SAM-6502-001131	Cable clamp	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 891
SAM-6502-001131	Cable clamp	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 893
SAM-6502-001131	Cable clamp	IPTU (bridge) on page 921
SAM-6601-001478	Bearing ball	Mainline finisher 1 on page 877
SAM-6601-001478	Bearing ball	Mainline finisher 2 on page 879
SAM-6601-001478	Bearing ball	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 893
SAM-6601-001478	Bearing ball	IPTU (bridge) on page 921
SAM-6601-003062	Bearing ball	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
SAM-6602-001581	Belt timing gear	Drive system on page 809
SAM-6602-001730	Belt timing gear	Drive system on page 809
SAM-6602-001730	Timing belt, gear	Right door on page 817
SAM-6602-001730	Timing belt, gear	Flow ADF main on page 835
SAM-6602-001730	Timing belt, gear	sHCI main 3 on page 865
SAM-6602-003183	Timing belt, gear	Right door on page 817
SAM-6602-003185	Timing belt, gear	DCF main on page 843
SAM-6602-003270	Timing-belt, gear	Mainline finisher 4 on page 883
SAM-6602-003639	Timing-belt, gear	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
SAM-6602-003640	Timing-belt, gear	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
SAM-6602-003644	Timing belt, gear	Front alignment (tamper) on page 911
SAM-6602-003644	Timing belt, gear	Rear alignment (tamper) on page 913
SAM-6602-003644	Timing-belt, gear	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
SAM-6602-003645	Timing-belt, gear	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881

Table 4-70 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-6602-003645	Timing-belt, gear	IPTU (bridge) on page 921
SAM-6602-003647	Timing-belt, gear	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
SAM-6602-003648	Timing-belt, gear	IPTU (bridge) on page 921
SAM-6602-003649	Timing-belt, gear	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
SAM-6602-003652	Timing-belt, gear	Mainline finisher 4 on page 883
SAM-6602-003670	Timing belt, gear	Opt feed drive on page 849
SAM-6602-003670	Timing belt, gear	HCI drive on page 855
SAM-JC01-00101A	Tempered scan glass	Flow ADF image scanner on page 837
SAM-JC31-00037A	Electric clutch	Drive system on page 809
SAM-JC31-00075C	BLDC Motor, 38w	Drive system on page 809
SAM-JC31-00109A	Motor gear	HCI drive on page 855
SAM-JC31-00109A	Gear motor	sHCI main 3 on page 865
SAM-JC31-00110A	Motor circuit, step	Drive system on page 809
SAM-JC31-00123B	Motor BLDC	Drive system on page 809
SAM-JC31-00125A	Motor shift gear	HCI drive on page 855
SAM-JC31-00132A	Motor step 1P	Drive system on page 809
SAM-JC31-00144A	Motor, bldc	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 899
SAM-JC31-00144A	Motor, bldc	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 901
SAM-JC31-00146A	Fan	Flow ADF main on page 835
SAM-JC31-00149A	Step motor ip	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
SAM-JC31-00158A	Step motor, ip	Flow ADF image scanner on page 837
SAM-JC31-00160C	Fan, type 6	Main assembly 2 on page 797
SAM-JC31-00163A	Step motor, ip	sHCI main 3 on page 865
SAM-JC31-00163B	Motor, step ip	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 891
SAM-JC31-00163B	Motor step, ip	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 909
SAM-JC31-00168A	Fan, dc	Flow ADF main on page 835
SAM-JC31-00169B	Step motor ip	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
SAM-JC31-00177A	Step motor, ip	Flow ADF main on page 835
SAM-JC31-00177A	Step motor, ip	Opt feed drive on page 849
SAM-JC31-00177A	Motor step, ip	HCI drive on page 855

Table 4-70 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-JC31-00178A	Motor, DC-stacker	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 893
SAM-JC32-00020A	Sensor, rp	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 897
SAM-JC32-00020A	Sensor, rp	Entrance guide, mid jam, and main output on page 907
SAM-JC32-00020A	Sensor, rp	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 909
SAM-JC33-00029B	MP solenoid	MP tray on page 819
SAM-JC33-00031B	Solenoid, lifting	Output on page 799
SAM-JC33-00037A	Solenoid	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
SAM-JC33-00038A	Solenoid	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 899
SAM-JC39-02204A	Registration assembly, harness	Main frame registration assembly on page 807
SAM-JC39-02268A	DCF, t1mot harness	DCF frame on page 845
SAM-JC39-02276A	DCF, main harness	DCF frame on page 845
SAM-JC39-02278A	DCF, sub harness	DCF frame on page 845
SAM-JC39-02279A	Harness, mot HCI	HCI frame on page 859
SAM-JC39-02283A	Harness, main if HCI	HCI frame on page 859
SAM-JC39-02284A	Harness, heater HCI	HCI frame on page 859
SAM-JC39-02285A	Harness, sub if HCI	HCI frame on page 859
SAM-JC39-02286A	Harness, inner tray HCI	HCI frame on page 859
SAM-JC39-02287A	sHCI, mot harness	sHCI main 3 on page 865
SAM-JC39-02288A	sHCI, plow harness	sHCI main 5 on page 867
SAM-JC39-02288A	sHCI, plow harness	sHCI main 6 on page 869
SAM-JC39-02291A	sHCI, connect sensor harness	sHCI main 5 on page 867
SAM-JC39-02310A	Harness, 3k finisher top cover	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 901
SAM-JC39-02320A	Harness, 3k finisher bm path	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 909
SAM-JC39-02322A	Harness, 3k finisher output path	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 897
SAM-JC39-02327A	Cable, 3k finisher IPTU sub	IPTU (bridge) on page 921
SAM-JC39-02328A	Cable, 3k finisher IPTU PA	IPTU (bridge) on page 921
SAM-JC44-00091D	LVPS (SMPS), 110V type 4	Main assembly 2 on page 797

Table 4-70 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-JC44-00100D	LVPS (SMPS), V2	Main assembly on page 795
SAM-JC44-00222B	LVPS (SMPS), 110v type 3	Main assembly on page 795
SAM-JC44-00223B	LVPS (SMPS), 220v type 3	Main assembly on page 795
SAM-JC44-00235B	Fuser drive board 110V	Main assembly on page 795
SAM-JC44-00236B	Fuser drive board 220V	Main assembly on page 795
SAM-JC44-00241A	HVPS	Main assembly on page 795
SAM-JC44-00249A	LVPS (SMPS), 110V type 5H	Main assembly 2 on page 797
SAM-JC44-00250A	LVPS (SMPS), 220V type 5H	Main assembly 2 on page 797
SAM-JC59-00036A	HDD	Main assembly on page 795
SAM-JC60-00078A	Machinery, fastener screw	DCF main on page 843
SAM-JC61-00076A	Spring, etc torsion doc (cc2-f)	HCI cassette on page 857
SAM-JC61-00423A	Bush-6, d	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 889
SAM-JC61-00423A	Bush-6, d	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 901
SAM-JC61-00426A	Bush, 8/5	Mainline finisher 2 on page 879
SAM-JC61-00426A	Bush, 8/5	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 891
SAM-JC61-00426A	Bush, 8/5	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 901
SAM-JC61-00884A	Bush-6, dl	DCF second pickup on page 851
SAM-JC61-00884A	Bush-6, dl	HCI main pickup on page 861
SAM-JC61-00884A	Bush-6, dl	Pickup cover unit on page 871
SAM-JC61-00884A	Bush-6, d(l)	IPTU (bridge) on page 921
SAM-JC61-01288A	Idle holder, one way	Pickup cover unit on page 871
SAM-JC61-01742A	Connector holder, scf	HCI cassette on page 857
SAM-JC61-02372A	Bush, D6/L4	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 893
SAM-JC61-03002A	Ground plate	DCF rear frame on page 847
SAM-JC61-03331A	Idle roller, cst	HCI frame on page 859
SAM-JC61-04871A	DCF guide adjust	DCF frame on page 845
SAM-JC61-04871A	Adjust guide, DCF	HCI frame on page 859
SAM-JC61-06567A	Link holder, hinge f	sHCI main 1 on page 863
SAM-JC61-06568A	Link holder, hinge r	sHCI main 1 on page 863
SAM-JC61-06663A	Frame mount	Mainline finisher 4 on page 883

Table 4-70 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-JC61-06988A	Feed guide	Right door guide on page 821
SAM-JC61-07189A	Guide, com ceil	Mainline finisher 4 on page 883
SAM-JC61-07192A	Safety guide	Mainline finisher 4 on page 883
SAM-JC61-07196A	Guide, top jam	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 897
SAM-JC61-07204A	Guide, buff div	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 909
SAM-JC61-07205A	Guide, diverter	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 897
SAM-JC61-07206A	Guide, pusher	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
SAM-JC61-07225A	Paddle holder	Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor on page 895
SAM-JC61-07247A	Guide-l, entrance	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 893
SAM-JC61-07279A	Leg bracket	Shield on page 915
SAM-JC61-07372A	Spring, ts	Right door on page 817
SAM-JC61-07391A	Spring, es	Three fold blade on page 903
SAM-JC61-07392A	Spring, ts	Shield on page 915
SAM-JC61-07401A	Spring, ts	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 899
SAM-JC61-07403A	Spring, cs	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 899
SAM-JC61-07408A	Spring, es	Entrance guide, mid jam, and main output on page 907
SAM-JC61-07409A	Spring, es	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 897
SAM-JC61-07409A	Spring, ts	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 909
SAM-JC61-07410A	Spring, ts	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 897
SAM-JC61-07411A	Spring, ts	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 897
SAM-JC61-07413A	Spring, ts	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 909
SAM-JC61-07414A	Spring, es	Mainline finisher 2 on page 879
SAM-JC61-07415A	Spring, es	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 897

Table 4-70 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-JC61-07417A	Spring, ts	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 897
SAM-JC61-07418A	Spring, ts	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 909
SAM-JC61-07427A	Spring, ts	Shield on page 915
SAM-JC61-07428A	Spring, ts	Shield on page 915
SAM-JC61-07430A	Spring, es	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 891
SAM-JC61-07431A	Spring, es	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 891
SAM-JC61-07432A	Spring, ts	IPTU (bridge) on page 921
SAM-JC61-07449A	Compile guide, front	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
SAM-JC61-07450A	Compile guide, rear	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
SAM-JC61-07471A	Cassette guide rail	HCI cassette on page 857
SAM-JC61-07694A	Fan motor housing	Flow ADF main on page 835
SAM-JC62-01328A	Top-seal, guide	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
SAM-JC62-01328A	Guide, seal-top	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 897
SAM-JC63-02102A	Right cover, rear	Cover on page 815
SAM-JC63-03776A	Sheet sensor	DCF second pickup on page 851
SAM-JC63-04750B	Cover, rear	Finisher sub 1 on page 925
SAM-JC63-04792B	Cover, main	Finisher sub 1 on page 925
SAM-JC63-04797B	Tray cover	HCI main on page 853
SAM-JC63-04797B	Feed drive, HCI	HCI main on page 853
SAM-JC63-04797B	Left cover	sHCI main 1 on page 863
SAM-JC63-04797B	Finisher sub-tray	Sub-inner finisher on page 923
SAM-JC63-04798B	Pickup cover	sHCI main 1 on page 863
SAM-JC63-04799A	Pickup cover lever	Pickup cover unit on page 871
SAM-JC63-04840B	Output cover, rear	Cover on page 815
SAM-JC63-04846B	Right cover, upper	Cover on page 815
SAM-JC63-04847B	Right cover, front	Cover on page 815
SAM-JC63-04859C	Scan cover, rear	Cover on page 815
SAM-JC63-04861B	Front cover, lower	Cover on page 815
SAM-JC63-04862B	Left cover, top	Cover on page 815
SAM-JC63-04863B	Rear cover, dummy	Cover on page 815

Table 4-70 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-JC63-04910B	Front cover, mp	Right door on page 817
SAM-JC63-04916B	Side cover, upper	Right door on page 817
SAM-JC63-04918B	Cover, dummy sHCI	Right door on page 817
SAM-JC63-04920B	Side cover	Right door on page 817
SAM-JC63-04957A	Paddle absorber, rubber a	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
SAM-JC63-04958A	Paddle absorber, rubber b	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
SAM-JC63-04984A	Ground-c, safety	Mainline finisher 4 on page 883
SAM-JC63-04985B	Caster cover	Booklet finisher on page 875
SAM-JC63-04985B	Caster cover	Mainline finisher 5 on page 885
SAM-JC63-04986B	Cover, front	Booklet finisher on page 875
SAM-JC63-04986B	Front cover	Mainline finisher 5 on page 885
SAM-JC63-04987B	Cover-f, lower	Booklet finisher on page 875
SAM-JC63-04987B	Cover-f, lower	Mainline finisher 5 on page 885
SAM-JC63-04988B	Cover, rear	Booklet finisher on page 875
SAM-JC63-04988B	Rear cover	Mainline finisher 5 on page 885
SAM-JC63-04995B	Cover-t, tray	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
SAM-JC63-04996B	Cover-t, tray 2	Booklet finisher on page 875
SAM-JC63-04996B	Cover-t, tray 2	Mainline finisher 6 on page 887
SAM-JC63-04999B	Cover, stacker	Shield on page 915
SAM-JC63-05002B	Cover-m, tray	Booklet finisher on page 875
SAM-JC63-05002B	Cover-m, tray	Mainline finisher 6 on page 887
SAM-JC63-05003B	Cover-s, tray	Booklet finisher on page 875
SAM-JC63-05003B	Cover-s, tray	Mainline finisher 6 on page 887
SAM-JC63-05004A	Cover, link	Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide on page 905
SAM-JC63-05041A	Sheet-fold output	Three fold blade on page 903
SAM-JC63-05044A	Sheet-jam guide	Three fold blade on page 903
SAM-JC63-05238A	Sponge white sheet	Main assembly on page 795
SAM-JC63-05566A	Rear cover	Flow ADF on page 827
SAM-JC63-05571A	Scan cover, right	Cover on page 815
SAM-JC63-05587A	Scan cover, left	Cover on page 815
SAM-JC63-05633A	Rear cover, upper	Cover on page 815
SAM-JC63-05638A	Left cover, upper	Cover on page 815
SAM-JC64-00710A	Side locker	Right door on page 817

Table 4-70 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-JC64-00995A	Button, staple	Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide on page 905
SAM-JC64-00996A	Button lens	Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide on page 905
SAM-JC66-00977A	Clutch one way[1]	DCF main on page 843
SAM-JC66-00977A	Clutch one way	DCF second pickup on page 851
SAM-JC66-00977A	Clutch, one way	Pickup cover unit on page 871
SAM-JC66-02270A	Link cover, open	Flow ADF on page 827
SAM-JC66-02289B	Idle roller, rubber	Right door guide on page 821
SAM-JC66-04199A	Actuator, feed sensor	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
SAM-JC66-04200A	Actuator tray limit	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
SAM-JC66-04243A	Roller, feed-entrance	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
SAM-JC66-04244A	Roller, feed-output	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
SAM-JC66-04276A	Actuator, empty pickup	Pickup cover unit on page 871
SAM-JC66-04277A	Link door, rear 2	sHCI main 1 on page 863
SAM-JC66-04278A	Link door, front 2	sHCI main 1 on page 863
SAM-JC66-04281A	Belt	HCI main pickup on page 861
SAM-JC66-04290A	Actuator	sHCI main 5 on page 867
SAM-JC66-04294A	sHCI drive gear	sHCI main 3 on page 865
SAM-JC66-04295A	sHCI, feed pulley gear	sHCI main 3 on page 865
SAM-JC66-04311A	Agitator paddle, res	Reservoir on page 841
SAM-JC66-04398A	Link lever, d	Right door on page 817
SAM-JC66-04400A	Side link	Right door on page 817
SAM-JC66-04405A	Actuator lever, dup	Right door guide on page 821
SAM-JC66-04406A	Actuator lever, fuser out	Right door output and takeaway on page 823
SAM-JC66-04459A	Actuator lever, empty	MP tray on page 819
SAM-JC66-04469A	Actuator, F_D full output	Output on page 799
SAM-JC66-04520A	Actuator, entrance feed	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 893
SAM-JC66-04523A	Roller, click-feed	Mainline finisher 4 on page 883
SAM-JC66-04525A	Actuator, top-output	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 897
SAM-JC66-04526A	Actuator, pusher	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
SAM-JC66-04528A	Actuator-o, staple	Mainline finisher 4 on page 883
SAM-JC66-04569A	Actuator, sensor	IPTU (bridge) on page 921

Table 4-70 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-JC66-04573A	Gear, double	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 901
SAM-JC66-04579A	Gear, double	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 889
SAM-JC66-04583A	Timing pulley	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 899
SAM-JC66-04591A	Gear, helical	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 901
SAM-JC66-04592A	Gear, helical 1	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 901
SAM-JC66-04593A	Gear, helical 2	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 901
SAM-JC66-04594A	Gear, helical 3	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 899
SAM-JC66-04595A	Gear, helical 4	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 899
SAM-JC66-04602A	Gear, buffer	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
SAM-JC66-04604A	Gear-db, gear	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 893
SAM-JC66-04606A	Feed roller	sHCI main 6 on page 869
SAM-JC66-04607A	Feed roller[1]	DCF main on page 843
SAM-JC66-04607A	Opt feed roller	DCF second pickup on page 851
SAM-JC66-04607A	Feed roller	HCI main pickup on page 861
SAM-JC66-04625A	Roller feed	Frame main pickup on page 813
SAM-JC66-04628A	Roller, feed-duplex 1	Right door on page 817
SAM-JC66-04629A	Roller, feed-duplex 2	Right door on page 817
SAM-JC66-04644A	Actuator, te-press1	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 893
SAM-JC66-04653A	Roller feed, output 2	Output on page 799
SAM-JC66-04670A	Feed roller opt[1]	DCF main on page 843
SAM-JC66-04670A	Feed roller	HCI main pickup on page 861
SAM-JC66-04719A	Rooler, feed-lower bm	Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor on page 895
SAM-JC66-04721A	Roller, feed-fold output	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 891
SAM-JC66-04722A	Roller, main-feed entrance	Mainline finisher 1 on page 877
SAM-JC66-04723A	Roller, output-feed bm	Mainline finisher 2 on page 879
SAM-JC66-04724A	Roller, mid-feed output	Mainline finisher 2 on page 879

Table 4-70 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-JC66-04725A	Roller, top-feed mid output	Mainline finisher 2 on page 879
SAM-JC66-04726A	Roller, main-feed output	Mainline finisher 2 on page 879
SAM-JC66-04727A	Roller, top-feed output	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
SAM-JC66-04732A	Roller, brg-feed	IPTU (bridge) on page 921
SAM-JC66-04733A	Roller, brg-feed entrance	IPTU (bridge) on page 921
SAM-JC66-04744A	Roller, output-3 fold	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 891
SAM-JC66-04767A	Shaft, hinge-door	Mainline finisher 5 on page 885
SAM-JC66–04279A	Link door	sHCI main 1 on page 863
SAM-JC67-00455A	Coupler, torque limiter	Frame main pickup on page 813
SAM-JC67-00455A	Coupler[1]	DCF main on page 843
SAM-JC67-00455A	Coupler, torque limiter	HCI main pickup on page 861
SAM-JC67-00455A	Coupler, torque limiter	sHCI main 6 on page 869
SAM-JC67-00464A	Coupler, torque limiter	DCF second pickup on page 851
SAM-JC67-00711A	Screw cap	sHCI main 1 on page 863
SAM-JC67-00817A	Main-brush, output	Mainline finisher 2 on page 879
SAM-JC67-00818A	Top-brush output	Mainline finisher 4 on page 883
SAM-JC67-00819A	Compiler-brush, ceiling rear	Mainline finisher 4 on page 883
SAM-JC67-00820A	Compiler-brush, ceiling front	Mainline finisher 4 on page 883
SAM-JC70-40360A	Ict-pin, paralled, p/u	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 909
SAM-JC70-40542A	Cartridge, ICT-PIN	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 893
SAM-JC81-07637A	Stacker, CSP-worm	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 893
SAM-JC81-08263A	Magnet, as	Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide on page 905
SAM-JC81-08263A	Magent, as by3-32-1	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 909
SAM-JC81-08263A	AS-Magnet BY3-32-1	IPTU (bridge) on page 921
SAM-JC90-01115A	Pickup drive	HCI main on page 853
SAM-JC90-01310A	Finisher sub-paper support	Sub-inner finisher on page 923
SAM-JC90-01311A	Finisher sub-paper support, rear	Sub-inner finisher on page 923
SAM-JC90-01313A	Finisher sub-actuator tray	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
SAM-JC90-01314A	Finisher sub-actuator tray sensor	Finisher sub 8 on page 929

Table 4-70 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-JC90-01315A	Finisher sub-alignment, front	Sub-inner finisher on page 923
SAM-JC90-01317A	Finisher sub-alignment, rear	Sub-inner finisher on page 923
SAM-JC90-01319A	Finisher sub-tray frame	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
SAM-JC90-01320A	Finisher sub-tray lower limit	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
SAM-JC90-01321B	Finisher sub-cover, front	Finisher sub 1 on page 925
SAM-JC90-01322B	Finisher sub-cover, middle	Finisher sub 1 on page 925
SAM-JC90-01323B	Finisher sub-cover, compile	Finisher sub 1 on page 925
SAM-JC90-01324B	Finisher sub-stacker plate	Finisher sub 1 on page 925
SAM-JC90-01332A	Finisher sub-ejector	Sub-inner finisher on page 923
SAM-JC90-01334A	Finisher sub-motor tray	Sub-inner finisher on page 923
SAM-JC90-01336A	Finisher sub-guide output, lower	Sub-inner finisher on page 923
SAM-JC90-01342A	Finisher sub-staple	Sub-inner finisher on page 923
SAM-JC90-01342A	Finisher sub-staple	Finisher sub 7 on page 927
SAM-JC90-01343A	Finisher sub-staple	Sub-inner finisher on page 923
SAM-JC90-01343A	Finisher sub-punch dummy	Finisher sub 7 on page 927
SAM-JC90-01344A	Finisher sub-entrance motor	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
SAM-JC90-01352B	MP	Right door on page 817
SAM-JC90-01353A	MP feed guide	MP tray on page 819
SAM-JC90-01355A	MP bracket, pickup	MP tray on page 819
SAM-JC90-01357B	MP sub-tray	MP tray on page 819
SAM-JC90-01370A	Output 1	Main assembly on page 795
SAM-JC90-01371A	Output, guide upper	Output on page 799
SAM-JC90-01372A	Output, guide lower	Output on page 799
SAM-JC90-01373A	Output 2	Main assembly on page 795
SAM-JC90-01374A	Output, upper 2	Output on page 799
SAM-JC90-01375A	Output, lower 2	Output on page 799
SAM-JC90-01382A	HCI, sub-auto closer	HCI main on page 853
SAM-JC90-01385A	DCF sub-takeaway interlock	DCF frame on page 845
SAM-JC90-01394A	Finisher sub-guide three fold	Three fold blade on page 903
SAM-JC90-01395A	Finisher sub-output roller	Three fold blade on page 903
SAM-JC90-01396A	Finisher sub-3 fold mtr	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 889

Table 4-70 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-JC90-01398A	Finisher sub-curl pawl	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 889
SAM-JC90-01399A	Finisher sub-3 fold output	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 889
SAM-JC90-01400A	Finisher sub-low output	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 891
SAM-JC90-01402A	Finisher sub-hb mtr	IPTU (bridge) on page 921
SAM-JC90-01404A	Finisher sub-clutch drive	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
SAM-JC90-01404A	Finisher sub-clutch drive	IPTU (bridge) on page 921
SAM-JC90-01406A	Finisher sub-guide top	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 891
SAM-JC90-01409A	Finisher sub-ejector unit	Mainline finisher 1 on page 877
SAM-JC90-01412A	Finisher sub-staple unit	Mainline finisher 4 on page 883
SAM-JC90-01414A	Finisher sub-scu mtr	Mainline finisher 4 on page 883
SAM-JC90-01414A	Finisher sub-scu motor	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 893
SAM-JC90-01415A	Finisher sub-stk mtr	Mainline finisher 4 on page 883
SAM-JC90-01415A	Finisher sub-stk motor	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 893
SAM-JC90-01416A	Finisher sub-booklet unit	Booklet finisher on page 875
SAM-JC90-01416A	Finisher sub-booklet unit	Mainline finisher 5 on page 885
SAM-JC90-01417B	Finisher sub-tray bm unit	Mainline finisher 5 on page 885
SAM-JC90-01424A	Finisher sub-entrance guide	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 893
SAM-JC90-01429A	Finisher sub-low paddle	Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor on page 895
SAM-JC90-01432A	Finisher sub-fd stopper unit	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 899
SAM-JC90-01433A	Finisher sub-jam clear	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 899
SAM-JC90-01435A	Finisher sub-bkt main blade	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 899
SAM-JC90-01437A	Finisher sub-main blade	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 901
SAM-JC90-01440A	Finisher sub-top frame	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 901
SAM-JC90-01444A	Finisher sub-door	Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide on page 905

Table 4-70 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-JC90-01445B	Finisher sub-top door	Booklet finisher on page 875
SAM-JC90-01445B	Finisher sub-top door	Mainline finisher 5 on page 885
SAM-JC90-01445B	Finisher sub-top door	Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide on page 905
SAM-JC90-01446B	Finisher sub-top cover	Booklet finisher on page 875
SAM-JC90-01446B	Finisher sub-top cover	Mainline finisher 5 on page 885
SAM-JC90-01446B	Finisher sub-top cover	Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide on page 905
SAM-JC90-01448B	Finisher sub-regist guide	Mainline finisher 5 on page 885
SAM-JC90-01450A	Finisher sub-mid jam	Entrance guide, mid jam, and main output on page 907
SAM-JC90-01451A	Finisher sub-output main	Entrance guide, mid jam, and main output on page 907
SAM-JC90-01453A	Finisher sub-drv buff	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
SAM-JC90-01454A	Finisher sub-top lower	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 897
SAM-JC90-01455A	Finisher sub-top jam	Mainline finisher 2 on page 879
SAM-JC90-01455A	Finisher sub-top jam	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 897
SAM-JC90-01456A	Finisher sub-trans buff	Mainline finisher 2 on page 879
SAM-JC90-01456A	Finisher sub-trans buff	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 909
SAM-JC90-01457A	Finisher sub-right jam	Mainline finisher 1 on page 877
SAM-JC90-01457A	Finisher sub-right jam	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 909
SAM-JC90-01458A	Finisher sub-div cam	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
SAM-JC90-01458A	Finisher sub-div cam	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 909
SAM-JC90-01459A	Finisher sub-hb mtr	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
SAM-JC90-01459A	Finisher sub-hb motor	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 909
SAM-JC90-01462A	Finisher sub-paddle, mid	PCB bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle on page 917
SAM-JC90-01463A	Finisher sub-paddle, wing	PCB bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle on page 917
SAM-JC90-01464A	Finisher sub-alignment front	Mainline finisher 1 on page 877

Table 4-70 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-JC90-01464A	Finisher sub-alignment, front	Front alignment (tamper) on page 911
SAM-JC90-01465A	Finisher sub-alignment rear	Mainline finisher 1 on page 877
SAM-JC90-01465A	Finisher sub-alignment, rear	Rear alignment (tamper) on page 913
SAM-JC90-01466A	Finisher sub-end stopper	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
SAM-JC90-01467A	Finisher sub-ef mtr	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
SAM-JC90-01474A	Finisher sub-clutch div	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
SAM-JC90-01476A	Finisher sub-base low	Shield on page 915
SAM-JC90-01477A	Finisher sub-pcb bm	PCB bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle on page 917
SAM-JC90-01478A	Finisher sub-cover f bm	Booklet finisher on page 875
SAM-JC90-01478B	Finisher sub-cover f bm	PCB bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle on page 917
SAM-JC90-01479A	Finisher sub-idle fold	PCB bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle on page 917
SAM-JC90-01480A	Finisher sub-paddle	PCB bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle on page 917
SAM-JC90-01502A	Finisher sub-booklet 4	Finisher sub booklet on page 919
SAM-JC90-01610A	Cassette	Main assembly on page 795
SAM-JC90-01610A	Cassette	First cassette on page 801
SAM-JC90-01611A	Cassette	Main assembly on page 795
SAM-JC90-01611A	Cassette	Second cassette on page 803
SAM-JC90-01642A	HCI, cassette	HCI main on page 853
SAM-JC90-01642A	HCI cassette	HCI cassette on page 857
SAM-JC90-01646A	HCI sub-takeaway	HCI main on page 853
SAM-JC90-01649A	DCF, sub-takeaway	DCF main on page 843
SAM-JC90-01652	Cassette, fifth	DCF main on page 843
SAM-JC90-01654	Cassette, fourth	DCF main on page 843
SAM-JC90-01660A	Rear cover, sHCI	sHCI main 1 on page 863
SAM-JC90-01673A	Motor	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
SAM-JC90-01675A	Solenoid	Mainline finisher 3 on page 881
SAM-JC90-01677	DCF, sub-auto closing	DCF main on page 843
SAM-JC90-01679	DCF first pickup	DCF main on page 843
SAM-JC90-01680	DCF second pickup	DCF main on page 843
SAM-JC90–01369A	Output	Main assembly on page 795

Table 4-70 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-JC91-01194A	Fuser 220V	Main assembly on page 795
SAM-JC91-01195A	Fuser assembly 110V	Main assembly on page 795
SAM-JC92-02622A	PCA, paper size sensor	DCF rear frame on page 847
SAM-JC92-02738A	DCF PCA	DCF frame on page 845
SAM-JC92-02738B	HCI PCA	HCI frame on page 859
SAM-JC92-02774A	Inner finisher PCA	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
SAM-JC92-02780A	Rear join PCA	Finisher sub 8 on page 929
SAM-JC92-02789A	PCA, 3k switch	Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide on page 905
SAM-JC92-02964A	Flow ADF, PCA high	Flow ADF main on page 835
SAM-JC93-00018A	Main frame rear auto-size holder	DCF rear frame on page 847
SAM-JC93-00466A	Front door switch open	Main assembly frame on page 805
SAM-JC93-00486A	Frame main, humidity sensor	Main assembly frame on page 805
SAM-JC93-00492A	Frame main, TCU sensor	Main assembly frame on page 805
SAM-JC93-00540B	Pickup roller, main frame	MP tray on page 819
SAM-JC93-00802A	Drive, motor step	Output on page 799
SAM-JC93-01001A	Drive motor, step	Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor on page 895
SAM-JC93-01001A	Drive motor, step	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 909
SAM-JC93-01001A	Driver motor, step	Front alignment (tamper) on page 911
SAM-JC93-01001A	Driver motor, step	Rear alignment (tamper) on page 913
SAM-JC93-01001A	Drive motor, step	Shield on page 915
SAM-JC93-01026B	Frame holder dust assembly, TF	Main assembly on page 795
SAM-JC93-01044A	Frame, left cst rail assembly	DCF frame on page 845
SAM-JC93-01045A	Frame, right cst rail assembly	DCF frame on page 845
SAM-JC93-01049A	Main drive, common mono	Drive system on page 809
SAM-JC93-01060A	Drive main, mono	Main assembly on page 795
SAM-JC93-01061A	Drive registration assembly	Main assembly on page 795
SAM-JC93-01062A	Drive, feed	Main assembly on page 795
SAM-JC93-01063A	Drive pickup	Main assembly on page 795

Table 4-70 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-JC93-01063B	Pickup drive	DCF main on page 843
SAM-JC93-01064A	Drive fuser, output	Main assembly on page 795
SAM-JC93-01066B	Drive, toner mono	Main assembly on page 795
SAM-JC93-01067A	Reservoir drive	Reservoir on page 841
SAM-JC93-01071A	Reservoir	Main assembly 2 on page 797
SAM-JC93-01071A	Frame reservoir	Reservoir on page 841
SAM-JC93-01083A	Drive, motor step	Drive system on page 809
SAM-JC93-01083A	Drive motor, step	HCI drive on page 855
SAM-JC93-01083A	Drive motor, step	sHCI main 3 on page 865
SAM-JC93-01084A	Drive, motor step	Drive system on page 809
SAM-JC93-01085A	Drive motor, step	Right door on page 817
SAM-JC93-01091A	Pickup roller	HCI main pickup on page 861
SAM-JC93-01092A	Frame main, pickup roller	Frame main pickup on page 813
SAM-JC93-01092A	Frame, main pickup roller	DCF second pickup on page 851
SAM-JC93-01092A	Frame, main pickup roller	sHCI main 6 on page 869
SAM-JC93-01092A	Frame, main pickup roller	Pickup cover unit on page 871
SAM-JC93-01096A	Frame main pickup 1	Main assembly on page 795
SAM-JC93-01104A	Frame main pickup 2	Main assembly on page 795
SAM-JC93-01115A	Pickup drive	HCI drive on page 855
SAM-JC93-01116A	Main frame registration assebly	Main assembly frame on page 805
SAM-JC93-01117A	PTB transfer	PTB transfer on page 825
SAM-JC93-01118A	Lift drive, shift	HCI main on page 853
SAM-JC93-01119A	Drive takeaway roller	HCI main on page 853
SAM-JC93-01123A	Frame interlock sHCI assemlby	sHCI frame on page 873
SAM-JC93-01124A	Frame latch, rear sensor assembly	sHCI frame on page 873
SAM-JC93-01135A	Feed drive opt	DCF main on page 843
SAM-JC93-01135A	Opt feed drive	Opt feed drive on page 849
SAM-JC93-01139A	HCI main	HCI main pickup on page 861
SAM-JC93-01152A	Driver motor, step	Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor on page 895
SAM-JC93-01153A	Drive motor, step	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 889

Table 4-70 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-JC93-01154A	Drive motor, step	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 889
SAM-JC93-01155A	Drive motor, step	Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor on page 895
SAM-JC93-01155A	Drive motor, step	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 897
SAM-JC93-01155A	Drive motor, step	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 899
SAM-JC93-01156A	Drive motor, step	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 893
SAM-JC93-01181A	Tray heaters	Main assembly 2 on page 797
SAM-JC93-01239B	HDD bracket assembly frame	Main assembly on page 795
SAM-JC93-01322B	HCI, main pickup	HCI main on page 853
SAM-JC93-01370A	Frame sub, rear bottom	Main assembly frame on page 805
SAM-JC93-0192A	Pick rollers[1]	DCF main on page 843
SAM-JC95-01968A	Side cover, output	Right door output and takeaway on page 823
SAM-JC95-01969A	Side cover guide	Right door guide on page 821
SAM-JC95-01970A	Side cover, link	Right door on page 817
SAM-JC95-01972A	Side cover, takeaway	Right door output and takeaway on page 823
SAM-JC95-01987A	Right door mono	Main assembly on page 795
SAM-JC95-02098A	Cover	Main assembly on page 795
SAM-JC95-02100A	Left cover	Cover on page 815
SAM-JC95-02101A	Output cover	Cover on page 815
SAM-JC95-02103A	Front cover	Cover on page 815
SAM-JC95-02104A	Inner cover	Cover on page 815
SAM-JC95-02105A	Right cover, middle	Cover on page 815
SAM-JC95-02106A	Cover	Cover on page 815
SAM-JC95-02117A	Rear cover	Cover on page 815
SAM-JC95-02118A	Scan cover, front	Cover on page 815
SAM-JC96-09859A	Cartridge sub-cover, rear	PTB transfer on page 825
SAM-JC96-09860A	Cartridge sub-guide, upper	PTB transfer on page 825
SAM-JC96-09861A	Cartridge sub-cover, front	PTB transfer on page 825
SAM-JC96-09862A	Cartridge sub-cleaning blade	PTB transfer on page 825

Table 4-70 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-JC96-09863A	Cartridge sub-belt PTB	PTB transfer on page 825
SAM-JC96-11599A	Cartridge, developer unit	Main assembly on page 795
SAM-JC96-11638A	Cartridge, TCU	Main assembly on page 795
SAM-JC97-04515A	Image scanner, lower	Flow ADF image scanner on page 837
SAM-JC97-04516A	Image scanner, open sensor	Flow ADF image scanner on page 837
SAM-JC97-04520C	Image scanner	Main assembly on page 795
SAM-JC97-04523B	Image scanner	Flow ADF image scanner, lower on page 839
SAM-JC97-04574A	Laser scanner assembly	Main assembly on page 795
SAM-JC97-04640A	Flow ADF, hinge l	Flow ADF main on page 835
SAM-JC97-04641A	Flow ADF, hinge r	Flow ADF main on page 835
SAM-JC97-04646B	Flow ADF pickup, upper	Flow ADF on page 827
SAM-JC97-04650A	Flow ADF pickup, sub	Flow ADF pickup roller assembly on page 831
SAM-JC97-04652A	Flow ADF, separation cover	Flow ADF main on page 835
SAM-JC97-04656B	Flow ADF, scan in lower	Flow ADF main on page 835
SAM-JC97-04658B	Flow ADF stacker	Flow ADF stacker on page 833
SAM-JC97-04661A	Flow ADF, housing separation roller	Flow ADF main on page 835
SAM-JC97-04662A	ADF e-duplex	Main assembly on page 795
SAM-JC97-04668B	Flow ADF, exterior	Flow ADF main on page 835
SAM-JC97-04679A	Flow ADF, lift drive	Flow ADF main on page 835
SAM-JC97-04680A	Flow ADF, feed drive motor	Flow ADF main on page 835
SAM-JC97-04681A	Flow ADF, pickup release drive	Flow ADF main on page 835
SAM-JC97-04682A	Flow ADF, release drive scan	Flow ADF main on page 835
SAM-JC97-04687A	Flow ADF, white simplex roller	Flow ADF main on page 835
SAM-JC97-04692A	Flow ADF, damper	Flow ADF on page 827
SAM-JC97-04696B	Flow ADF cover, open lower	Flow ADF open cover on page 829
SAM-JC97-04830A	Flow ADF, scan out	Flow ADF main on page 835
SAM-JC97-04869A	Flow ADF cover, open	Flow ADF open cover on page 829
SAM-JC97-04872A	Flow ADF pickup, upper	Flow ADF on page 827
SAM-JC97-04879A	Flow ADF, dummy front	Flow ADF on page 827
SAM-JC97-04880A	Flow ADF, bottom cover	Flow ADF on page 827
SAM-JC97-04881A	Flow ADF, front cover	Flow ADF on page 827

Table 4-70 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-JC97-04882A	Flow ADF, main frame sGX (dn models only)	Flow ADF on page 827
SAM-JC97-04883A	Flow ADF, main frame	Flow ADF on page 827
SAM-JC98-04473A	Stapler-etc assembly	Finisher sub 7 on page 927

5 Problem solving

- Troubleshooting process
- Tools for troubleshooting
- Clear paper jams
- Service mode (tech mode)
- Print quality troubleshooting guide
- Adjusting the Flow ADF skew

Troubleshooting process

Determine the problem source

When the printer malfunctions or encounters an unexpected situation, the printer control panel alerts you to the situation. This section contains a pre-troubleshooting checklist to filter out many possible causes of the problem. A troubleshooting flowchart helps you diagnose the root cause of the problem. The remainder of this chapter provides steps for correcting problems.

- Use the troubleshooting flowchart to pinpoint the root cause of hardware malfunctions. The flowchart guides you to the section of this chapter that contains steps for correcting the malfunction.

Before beginning any troubleshooting procedure, check the following issues:

- Are supply items within their rated life?
- Are supply items Genuine HP supplies?
- Does the configuration page reveal any configuration errors?

NOTE: The customer or service provider is responsible for checking supplies and for using supplies that are in good condition.

Power subsystem

Power-on checks

The basic printer functions should start up when the printer is connected into an electrical outlet and the power switch is pushed to the *on* position. If the printer does not start, use the information in this section to isolate and solve the problem.

If the control-panel display remains blank, random patterns display, or asterisks remain on the control-panel display, perform power-on checks to find the cause of the problem.

Power-on troubleshooting overview

During normal operation, a cooling fan begins to spin briefly after the printer power is turned on. Place your hand over the vents at the rear of the printer, next to the formatter, or on the on the rear of the scanner. If the fan is operating, you will feel air passing out of the printer. You can lean close to the printer and hear the fan operating.

A fan begins to blow on the right door (fuser), and then the control panel goes through a series of set up functions. The main motor turns on (unless the left door or cartridge access door is open, a jam condition is sensed, or the paper-path sensors are damaged). You might be able to visually and audibly determine if the main motor is turned on.

If the fan and main motor are operating correctly, the next troubleshooting step is to isolate print engine, formatter, and control panel problems.

If the control panel is blank 1 minute after turning on the printer, check the following items:

1. Make sure that the printer is connected directly into an active electrical outlet (not a power strip) that delivers the correct voltage.
2. Make sure that the power switch is in the *on* position, and then verify that the LED is on.
3. Make sure that the fan runs briefly, which indicates that the power supply is operational.

4. Depress the button on the back of the control panel to test the control panel functionality.
5. Make sure that the control-panel display wire harness is connected.
6. Remove any external solutions, and then try to turn the printer on again.

Troubleshooting a blank display, black display, no display, or no power situation

Customers usually report that the control-panel display is not showing anything. It is very important to collect as much information as possible from the customer about the issue to help resolve it.

Following are some printer behaviors the customer might encounter:

- The control panel is completely blank (no LEDs or back light).
- The control Panel is blank, but there might be LEDs illuminated.
- The control Panel is blank (LEDs are on or flashing) and the back light is on (but no text visible).

Following are some possible causes of a blank control-panel display:

- No power to the printer.
- The control panel contrast setting is not correctly adjusted.
- The formatter connector(s) are not fully seated into the connector(s) on the DC controller, or the connectors are not fully seated on the formatter.
- A faulty component is installed on the formatter (for example a memory DIMM, fax PCA, network PCA, USB device, or other component).
- The formatter is defective.
- The control panel connector is not fully seated, or the control panel is defective.
- The DC controller is defective.

Following are some questions to ask the customer:

- Was the printer newly install or has the printer been properly functioning?
  - For a new install, investigate to see if there was any shipping damage to the printer.
  - Did the customer notice any damage to the shipping box or any visible damage to the printer?
- What happened just prior to the control panel going blank?
  - Was the printer serviced recently, a power outage occurred?
  - Has a lightning storm recently occurred?
  - Did the customer recently add a memory DIMM or install a third-party component?
- Make sure to get a complete description of the failure.
  - Is the control-panel display completely blank (might be faint text and no back light)?
  - Is the control-panel display back light on?
  - Has a print job been sent to the printer? The customer might report that their print jobs seemed to print but when they go to the printer the control-panel display is blank.

Recommended actions

If the control-panel display is completely blank (no LEDs illuminated or no back light) check to see if the printer is getting power. Listen for fans or any printer initialization sounds when the power is turned on.

If there are no signs of power, then perform the following:

1. Make sure that the printer is plugged directly into an active electrical outlet (not a power strip or interruptible power supply) that delivers the correct voltage.

   TIP: Try using a different power cable if possible.

2. Turn the printer power on, and make sure that the fan(s) run briefly (this indicates that the power supply is operational).
3. Check if the yellow LED on formatter is flashing. If so, there is a communication issue between the formatter and the control panel.
4. Turn the printer power off.
5. Make sure that the control-panel display wire harness (and/or flat cable) is properly connected (and fully seated), and then turn the printer power on again.
6. Check control panel diagnostics by pressing the button on the back of the control panel to run different diagnostic tests.
7. Verify the status LEDs are illuminated, but the control-panel display is blank. If applicable: Check if the contrast setting is adjusted to very low. If so, try turning the contrast knob to see if the control-panel display becomes visible.
8. From a host computer, send a print job to the printer.

   NOTE: If the print job correctly prints, then the problem is most likely to a defective control panel.

9. Turn the printer power off, and then make sure that the memory DIMM is installed in the correct slot and is fully seated.

   NOTE: For some printers, there may be more than one memory DIMM installed. Some printers have third-party solutions/applications or fonts that use memory.

10. Remove all of the components/accessories installed on the formatter (for example, hard drive, solid-state drive, memory DIMM(s), fax PCA, network PCA, USB devices, or other devices).

    - Make sure that the formatter is fully seated.

      IMPORTANT: This is important because the formatter or a component on the formatter might be defective or shorted, which causes the printer to lose power.

11. Reinstall the formatter. Make sure that it makes a good connection and is fully seated.

    Make sure that all of the connectors on the formatter are correctly connected and fully seated.

12. Turn the printer power on, and then check the control-panel display.
13. If the printer control panel is properly working, replace each removed component (one at a time) to determine which one is causing the problem.

⚠ CAUTION: Turn the printer power off, and then on again, after replacing a component on the formatter.

14. If the control-panel display is still blank after performing the above troubleshooting steps, and the control panel diagnostics do not function, replace the control panel. If the control panel diagnostics are functioning, then replace the formatter.

Control panel checks

Control panel diagnostic flowcharts

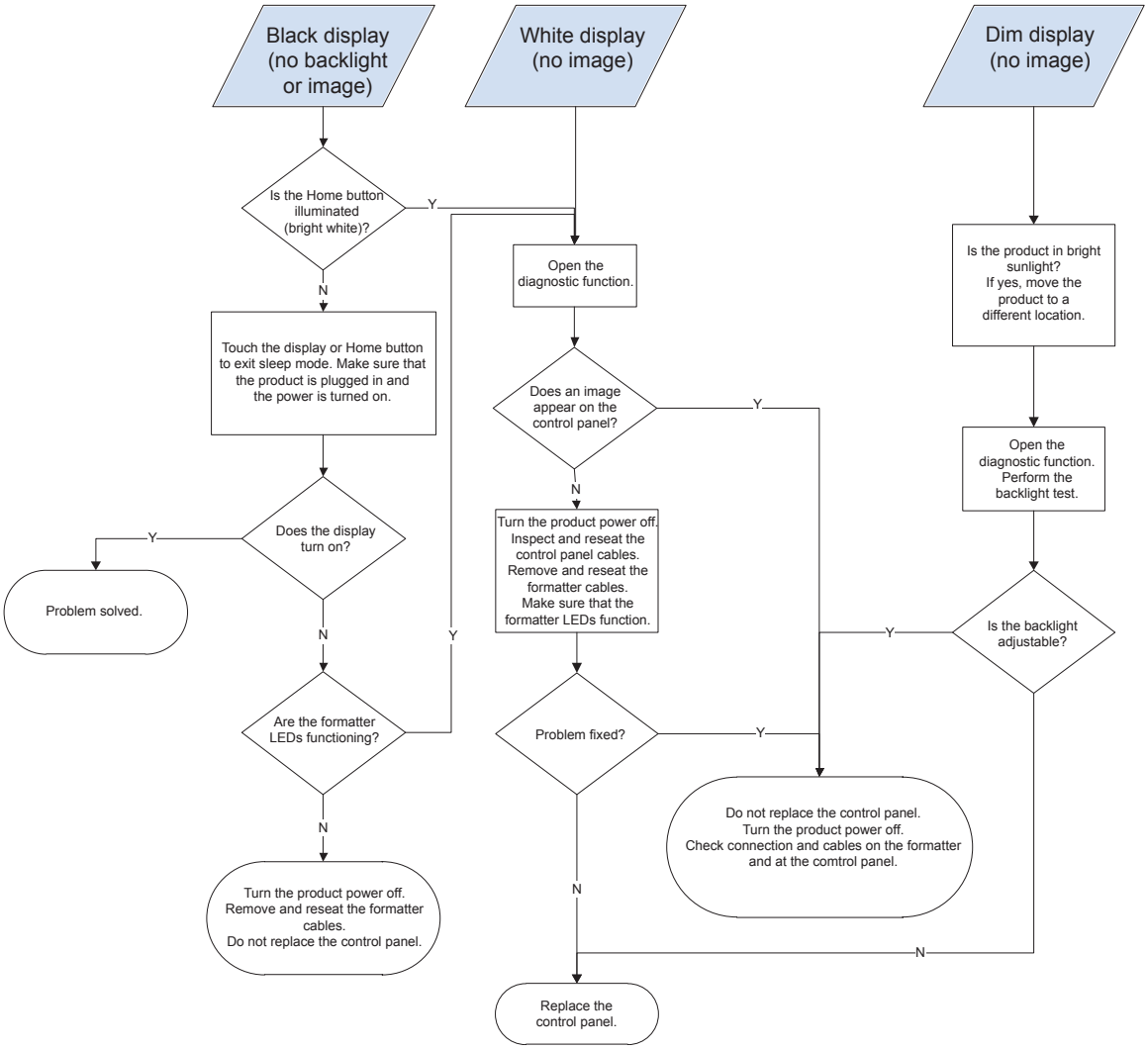
Use the flowcharts in this section to troubleshoot the following control panel problems.

- Touchscreen is blank, white, or dim (no image).
- Touchscreen is slow to respond or requires multiple presses to respond.
- Touchscreen has an unresponsive zone.
- No control panel sound.
- Home button is unresponsive.
- Hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning (control panel functional).

Touchscreen black, white, or dim (no image)

NOTE: To open the diagnostic function, press the button on the back of the control panel.

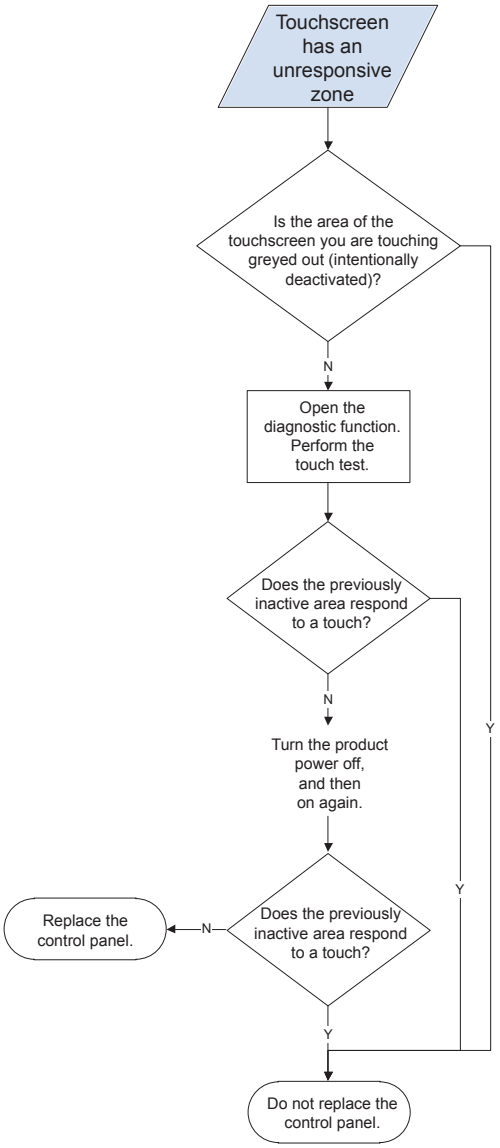
Figure 5-1 Touchscreen blank, white, or dim (no image)



Touchscreen has an unresponsive zone

NOTE: To open the diagnostic function, press the button on the back of the control panel.

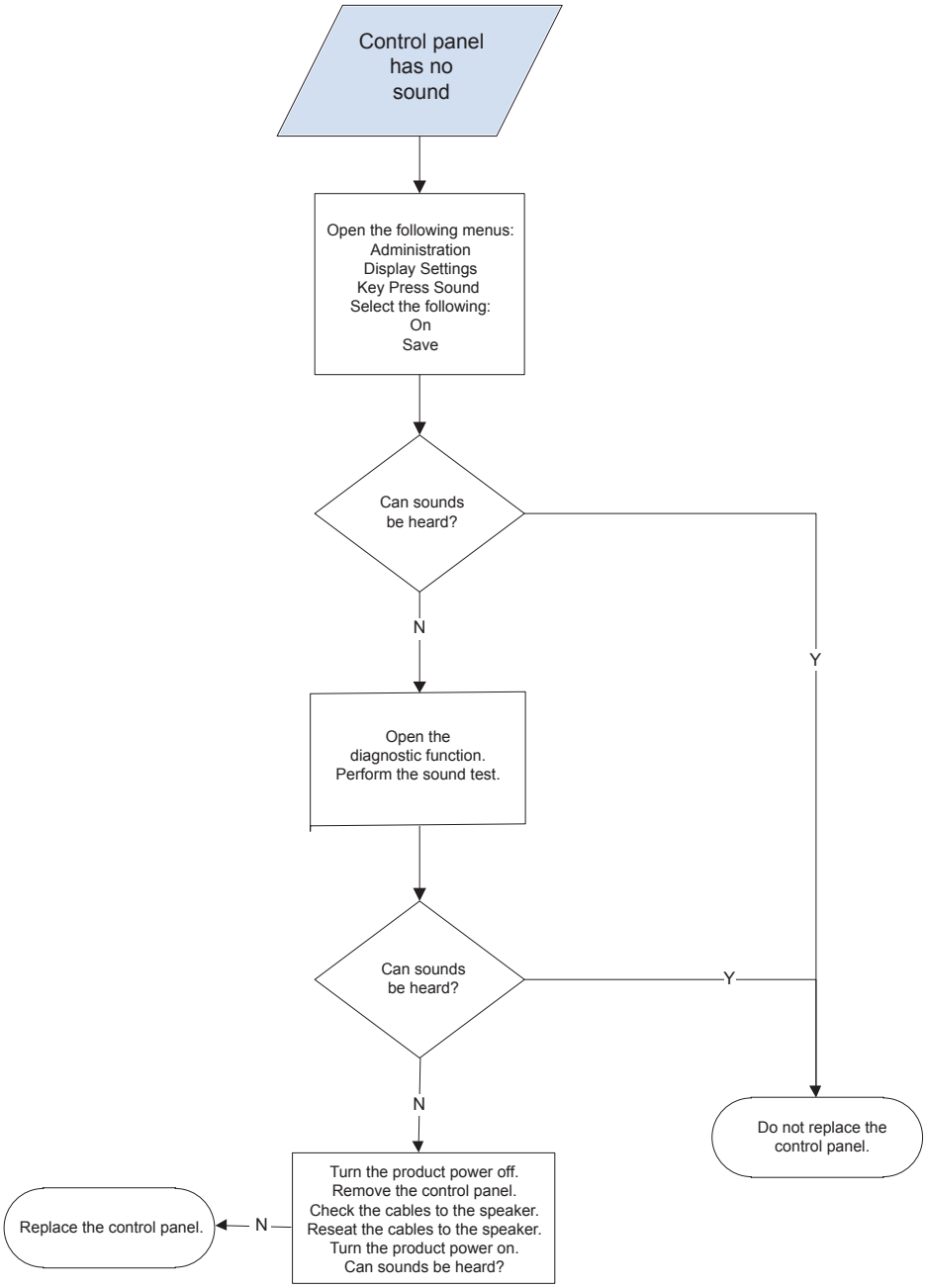
Figure 5-2 Touchscreen has an unresponsive zone



No control panel sound

NOTE: To open the diagnostic function, press the button on the back of the control panel.

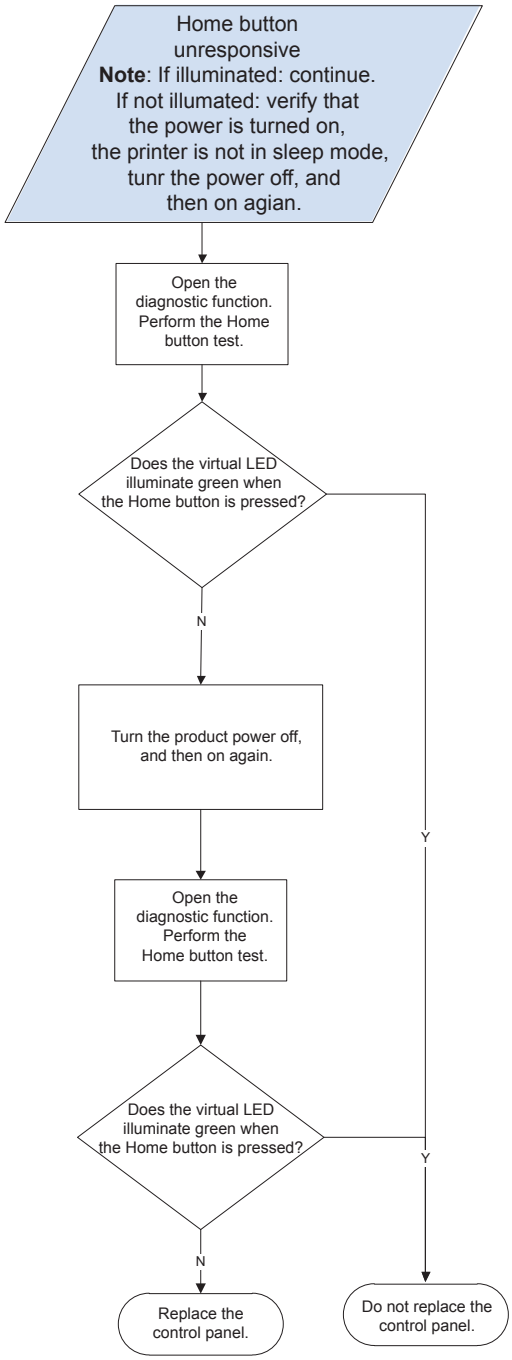
Figure 5-3 No control panel sound



Home button is unresponsive

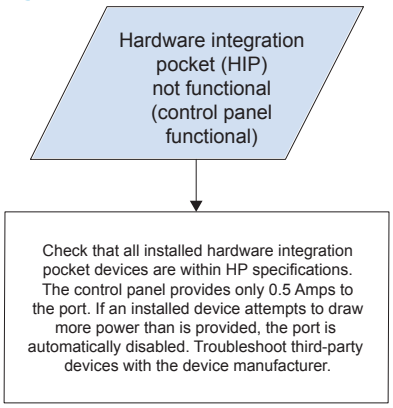
NOTE: To open the diagnostic function, press the button on the back of the control panel.

Figure 5-4 Home button is unresponsive



Hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning (control panel functional)

Figure 5-5 Hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning (control panel functional)



Individual component diagnostics

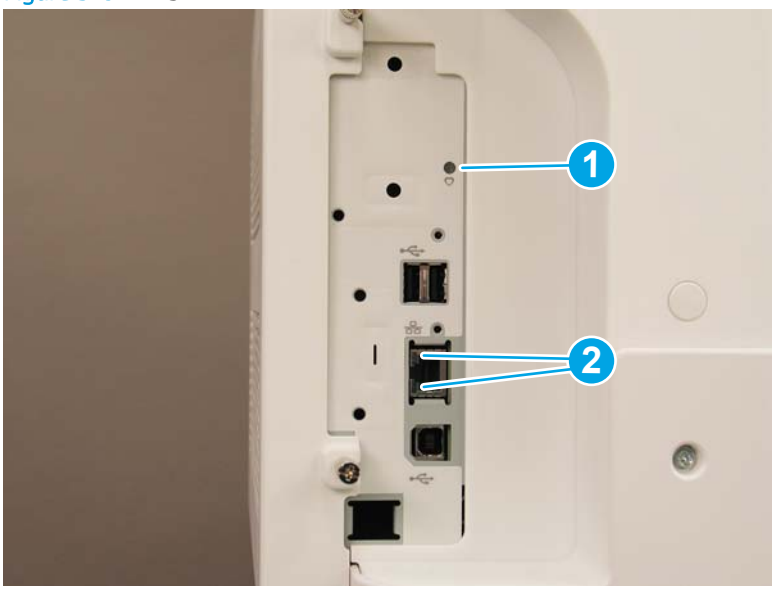
Tools for troubleshooting: LED diagnostics

LED, engine, and individual diagnostics can identify and troubleshoot printer problems.

Understand lights on the formatter

Three LEDs on the formatter indicate that the printer is functioning correctly.

Figure 5-6 LEDs



1	Heartbeat LED
2	HP Jetdirect LEDs

HP Jetdirect LEDs

The embedded HP Jetdirect print server has two LEDs. The yellow LED indicates network activity, and the green LED indicates the link status. A blinking yellow LED indicates network traffic. If the green LED is off, a link has failed.

For link failures, check all the network cable connections. In addition, try to manually configure the link settings on the embedded print server by using the printer control-panel menus.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select **Settings**.
2. Open the following menus:
   - **Networking**
   - **Ethernet**
   - **Link Speed**
3. Select the appropriate link speed, and then select **OK**.

Tools for troubleshooting: Engine diagnostics

The printer contains extensive internal engine diagnostics that help in troubleshooting print quality, paper path, noise, assembly, and timing issues.

Defeating interlocks

Different tests can be used to isolate different types of issues. For assembly or noise isolation, run the diagnostic test when the toner cartridge door or right door is open.

Defeating the door interlocks allows observation of the paper pick operation (and view the page enter registration).

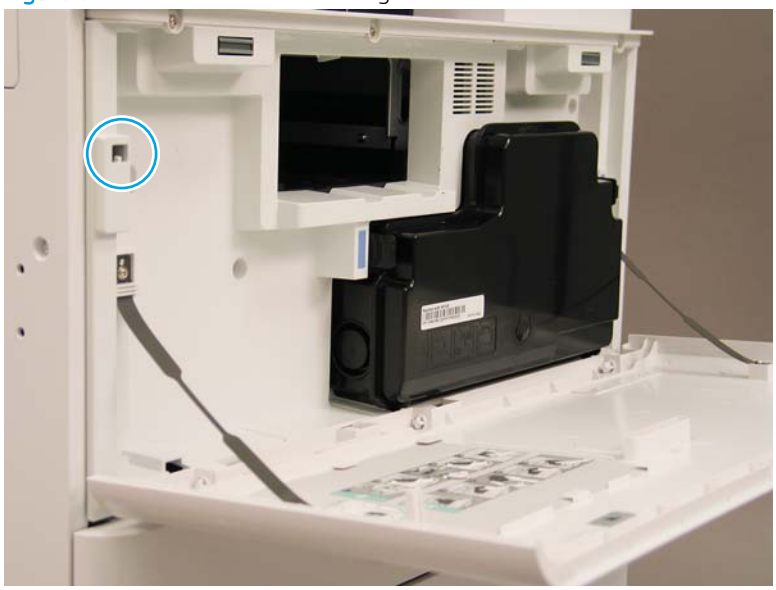
⚠ **WARNING!** Be careful when performing printer diagnostics to avoid risk of injury. Only trained service personnel should open and run the diagnostics with a door open. Never touch any of the power supplies when the printer is turned on.

Defeat the toner cartridge door interlock

1. Open the toner cartridge door.
2. Insert a folded piece of paper into the slot.

TIP: Fold a stiff piece of paper, for example a business card or index card, into two 10 mm (.375 in) strips, and insert the strips into the slot for the cartridge door logic switches.

Figure 5-7 Defeat the toner cartridge door interlock



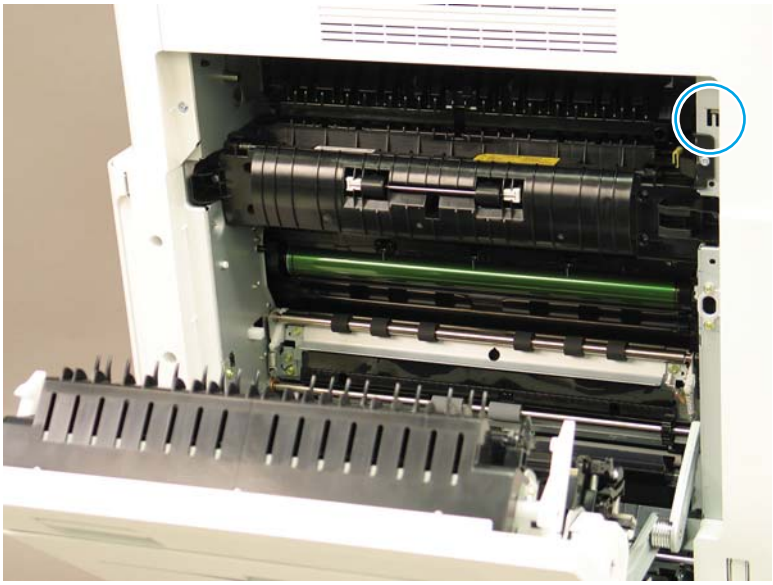
Defeat the front door interlock

1. Open the front door.

2. Insert a folded piece of paper into the slot.

TIP: Fold a stiff piece of paper, for example a business card or index card, into two 10 mm (.375 in) strips, and insert the strips into the slot for the front door logic switches.

Figure 5-8 Defeat the front door interlock



Tools for troubleshooting

Use the procedure below to test various printer mechanical and electromechanical assemblies.

Individual component diagnostics (special-mode test)

This test activates individual parts independently to isolate problems.

Each component test can be performed once or repeatedly.

Each component test can be performed once or repeatedly.

NOTE: The cartridge door interlocks must be defeated to run the component tests.

Access the individual component diagnostics from a touchscreen control panel

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Support Tools button.
2. Select one of the following tests:
   - Continuous Scan
   - Run Fax Test
3. Select the component test options for the test.

Tools for troubleshooting

Problem-solving checklist

Follow these steps when trying to solve a problem with the printer.

- Step 1: Check that the printer power is on
- Step 2: Check the control panel for error messages
- Step 3: Test print functionality
- Step 4: Test copy functionality
- Step 5: Test the fax sending functionality
- Step 6: Test the fax receiving functionality
- Step 7: Try sending a print job from a computer
- Step 8: Test the Plug and Print USB Drive printing functionality
- Factors that affect printer performance

Step 1: Check that the printer power is on

1. Make sure that the printer is plugged in and turned on. The power button should be lit with a white light. If it is not, press the power button. If the power button does not light up, check the following conditions.
   - Make sure that the power cable is connected to the printer and the outlet.
   - Check the power source by connecting the power cable to a different outlet.
2. If the printer motors do not rotate, make sure that the toner cartridges are installed and that the doors are all closed. The control panel displays messages to indicate these problems.

Step 2: Check the control panel for error messages

The control panel should indicate ready status. If an error message appears, resolve the error.

Print a supplies status page to ensure that the supplies are not at or over end of life.

NOTE: HP long-life consumable and maintenance kit life specifications are estimations. Actual individual life or yield during normal use will vary depending on usage, environment, media, and other factors. Estimated life is not an implied warranty.

Step 3: Test print functionality

1. From the control panel Home screen, touch the Reports button.
2. Open the Reports menu, touch the Configuration/Status Pages menu, select the Configuration Page item, and then touch the Print button to print the report.
3. If the report does not print, make sure that paper is loaded in the tray, and check the control panel to see if paper is jammed inside the printer.

NOTE: Make sure that the paper in the tray meets specifications for this printer.

Step 4: Test copy functionality

1. Place the configuration page into the ADF and make a copy. If paper does not feed smoothly through the ADF, you might need to clean the ADF rollers and separation pad. Make sure that the paper meets specifications for this printer.
2. Place the configuration page onto the scanner glass and make a copy.
3. If the print quality on the copied pages is not acceptable, clean the scanner glass and the small glass strip.

Step 5: Test the fax sending functionality

1. From the control panel Home screen, touch the Support Tools button.
2. Open the Troubleshooting menu, and then open the Diagnostics Tools menu. Touch the Run Fax Test button to test the fax functionality.
3. Touch the Fax on the printer control panel, and then touch the Start Fax button.

Step 6: Test the fax receiving functionality

1. From the control panel Home screen, touch the Support Tools button.
2. Touch the Troubleshooting menu, and then open the Diagnostics Tests menu. Touch the Run Fax Test button to test the fax functionality.
3. Use another fax machine to send a fax to the printer.
4. Review and reset the printer fax settings.

Step 7: Try sending a print job from a computer

1. Use a word-processing program to send a print job to the printer.
2. If the job does not print, make sure that you selected the correct printer driver.
3. Uninstall and then reinstall the printer software.

Step 8: Test the Plug and Print USB Drive printing functionality

1. Load a .PDF document or .JPEG photo onto a USB flash drive, and insert it in the USB port near the control panel.
2. The USB Flash Drive menu opens. Try printing the document or photo.
3. If no documents are listed, try a different type of USB flash drive.

Factors that affect printer performance

Several factors affect the time it takes to print a job:

- The software program that you are using and its settings
- The use of special paper (such as heavy paper or custom-size paper)
- Printer processing and download time
- The complexity and size of graphics

- The speed of the computer you are using
- The USB or network connection
- Whether the printer is printing in color or in monochrome
- The type of USB drive, if you are using one
- Environmental factors, such as low temperature or high humidity

Print menu map

To more easily navigate individual settings, print a report of the complete Reports menu.

Print the menu map from a touchscreen control panel

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Reports button.
2. Open the Configuration/Status Pages menu.
3. Select the Settings Menu Map option.
4. Touch the Print button to print the report.

TIP: Multiple report pages can be selected, and then printed together.

Print current settings pages

Printing the current settings page provides a map of the user configurable settings that might be helpful in the troubleshooting process.

Print the current settings page from a touchscreen control panel

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Reports button.
2. Open the Configuration/Status Pages menu.
3. Select the Current Settings Page option.
4. Touch the Print button to print the report.

TIP: Multiple report pages can be selected, and then printed together.

Print event log

Printing the event log might be helpful in the troubleshooting process. For more information, see the Interpret control-panel messages and event log entries section in the printer troubleshooting manual.

Print the event log from the Reports menu from a touchscreen control panel

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Support Tools button.
2. Open the following menus:
   - Troubleshooting
   - Event Log
3. The event log displays on the screen. To print it, touch the Print button.

Print the event log from the Service menu from a touchscreen control panel

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Support Tools button.
2. Open the Service menu.
3. Enter the following service access code for the printer:

- Access code: 04082517

4. Touch the Event Log item.

Clear the event log from a touchscreen control panel

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Support Tools button.
2. Open the Service menu.
3. On the sign-in screen, select the Service Access Code option from the drop-down list.
4. Enter the following service access code for the printer:
   - Access code: 04082517
5. Select the trash icon to clear the event log.

Pre-boot menu options

The Pre-boot menus are available prior to the printer initializing.

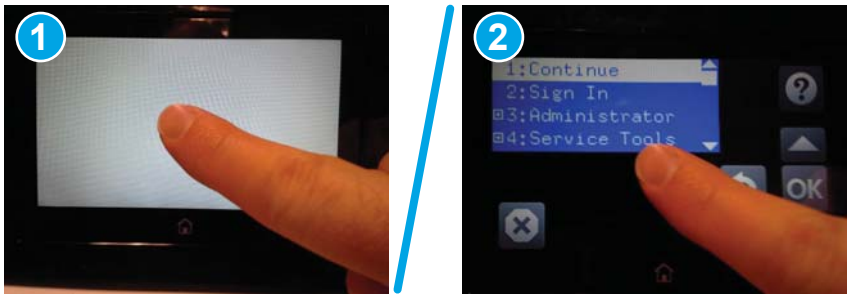
CAUTION: The Format Disk option (printers with a hard-disk drive only) performs a disk initialization for the entire disk. The operating system, firmware files, and third party files (among other files) will be completely lost. HP does not recommend this action.

TIP: The Pre-boot menu can be remotely accessed by using a telnet network protocol to establish an administration connection to the printer. See Remote Admin on page 1002.

Open the Pre-boot menu from a touchscreen control panel

1. Touch the middle of the control-panel display when you see the 1/8 under the logo.

Figure 5-9 Open the Pre-boot menu



2. On the Pre-boot menu screen, use the following buttons to navigate the tests.

Figure 5-10 Pre-boot menu

	Use this button to see more information about a selected item.
	Use this button to scroll up through menu items.
	Use this button to select a highlighted menu item.
	Use this button to scroll down through menu items.
	Use this button to go back to the previous menu.
	Not used.
	Use this button to exit a diagnostic test.

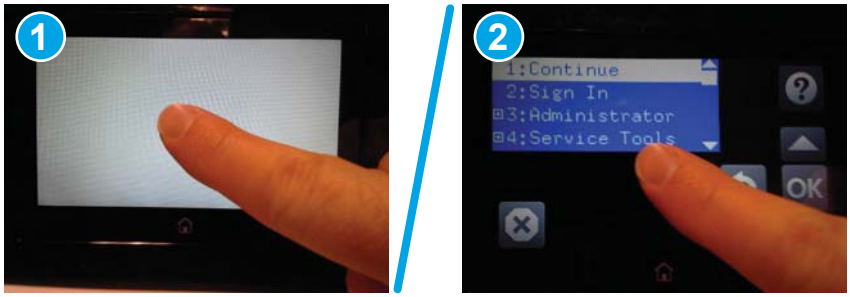
3. Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to navigate the Pre-boot menu.
4. Touch the OK button to select a menu item.

Cold reset using the Pre-boot menu from a touchscreen control panel

CAUTION: This procedure resets all printer configurations and settings to factory defaults (customer configurations and settings are lost).

1. Touch the middle of the control-panel display when you see the 1/8 under the logo.

Figure 5-11 Open the Pre-boot menu



2. Use the ▼ button to highlight the +3:Administrator item, and then touch the OK button.
3. Use the ▼ button to highlight the +8:Startup Options item, and then touch the OK button.
4. Use the ▼ button to highlight the 2 Cold Reset item, and then touch the OK button to select it.
5. Touch the Home button to return to the main Pre-boot menu and highlight the 1:Continue item, and then touch the OK button.

NOTE: The printer will initialize.

NOTE: Some of the pre-boot options in the following tables are not supported by the current version of the printer firmware and are included for information only. Future versions of firmware will support these options.

Table 5-1 Pre-boot menu options (1 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Continue				Selecting the Continue item exits the Pre-boot menu and continues the normal boot process. If a selection is not made in the initial menu within 30 seconds, the printer returns to a normal boot (the same as selecting Continue). If the user navigates to another menu, the timeout does not apply.
Sign In				Enter the administrator PIN or service PIN if one is required to open the Pre-boot menu.
Administrator				This item navigates to the Administrator submenus. If authentication is required (and the user is not already signed in) the Sign In prompt displays. The user is required to sign in.

Table 5-1 Pre-boot menu options (1 of 7) (continued)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
	Download	Network USB USB Thumbdrive		This item initiates a Pre-boot firmware download process. A USB Thumbdrive option will work on all FutureSmart printers. USB or Network connections are not currently supported.
	Format Disk			This item reinitializes the disk and cleans all disk partitions. **CAUTION:** Selecting the Format Disk item removes **all** data. A delete confirmation prompt is **not** provided. The system is **not** bootable after this action and a **99.09.67** error displays on the control panel. A firmware download must be performed to return the system to a bootable state.
	Partial Clean			This item reinitializes the disk (removing all data except the firmware repository where the master firmware bundle is downloaded and saved). **CAUTION:** Selecting the Partial Clean item removes **all** data except the firmware repository. A delete confirmation prompt is **not** provided. **CAUTION:** This procedure resets all printer configurations and settings to factory defaults (customer configurations and settings are lost). This allows a user to reformat the disk by removing the firmware image from the active directory without having to download new firmware code (printer remains bootable).
	Change Password			Select this item to set or change the administrator password.
	Clear Password			Select the Clear Password item to remove a password from the Administrator menu. Before the password is actually cleared, a message will be shown asking to confirm that the password should be cleared. Press the OK button to confirm the action. When the confirmation prompt displays, press the OK button to clear the password.

Table 5-2 Pre-boot menu options (2 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator (continued)	Manage Disk	Clear disk		Select the Clear disk item to enable using an external device for job storage. Job storage is normally enabled only for the Boot device. This will be grayed out unless the **99.09.68** error is displayed.

Table 5-2 Pre-boot menu options (2 of 7) (continued)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
		Lock Disk		Select the Lock Disk item to lock (mate) a new secure disk to this printer. The secure disk already locked to this printer will remain accessible to this printer. Use this function to have more than one encrypted disk accessible by the printer when using them interchangeably. The data stored on the secure disk locked to this printer always remains accessible to this printer.
		Leave Unlocked		Select the Leave Unlocked item to use a new secure disk in an unlocked mode for a single service event. The secure disk that is already locked to this printer will remain accessible to this printer and uses the old disk's encryption password with the new disk. The secure disk that is already locked to this printer remains accessible to this printer.
		Clear Disk Pwd		Select the Clear Disk Pwd item to continue using the non-secure disk and clear the password associated with the yet-to-be installed secure disk. CAUTION: Data on the missing secure disk will be permanently inaccessible.
		Retain Password		Select the Retain Password item to use the non-secure disk for this session only, and then search for the missing secure disk in future sessions.
		Boot Device	Secure Erase	Select the Secure Erase item to erase all of the data on the disk and unlock it if required. This might take a long time. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. The ATA secure-erase command is a one-pass overwrite, which erases the entire disk including firmware. The disk remains an encrypted disk.
			Erase/Unlock	Select the Erase/Unlock item to cryptographically erase all data on the disk and unlock the disk to allow a user to gain access to it from any printer. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. It erases the encryption key. The encryption key is erased, so the disk becomes a non-encrypted disk.
			Get Status	This item provides disk status information if any is available.

Table 5-3 Pre-boot menu options (3 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator (continued)	Manage Disk (continued)	Internal Device		Select the Internal Device item to erase the internal device or get a status about the internal device.

Table 5-3 Pre-boot menu options (3 of 7) (continued)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
			Secure Erase	Select the Secure Erase item to erase all of the data on the disk and unlock it if required. This might take a long time. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. The ATA secure-erase command erases the entire disk, including firmware. The disk remains an encrypted disk.
			Erase/Unlock	Select the Erase/Unlock item to cryptographically erase all of the data on disk and unlock the disk to allow the user to gain access to it from any printer. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. The HP High Performance Secure Hard Disk is erased.
			Get Status	This item provides disk status information if any is available.
		External Device		Select the External Device item to erase the external device or get status about the external device.
			Secure Erase	Select the Secure Erase item to erase all of the data on the disk and unlock it if required. This might take a long time. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. The ATA secure-erase command erases the entire disk, including firmware. The disk remains an encrypted disk.
			Erase/Unlock	Select the Erase/Unlock item to cryptographically erase all of the data on disk and unlock the disk to allow a user to gain access to it from any printer. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. The encryption key is erased, so the disk becomes a non-encrypted disk.
			Get Status	This item provides disk status information if any is available.

Table 5-4 Pre-boot menu options (4 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator (continued)	Configure LAN NOTE: This configuration is only active when the Pre-boot menu is open.	IP Mode [DHCP]		The network can be configured to obtain the network settings from a DHCP server or as static. Use this item for automatic IP address acquisition from the DHCP server.
		IP Mode [STATIC]		Use this item to manually assign the network addresses.
			IP Address	Use this item to manually enter the IP addresses.
			Subnet Mask	Use this item to manually enter the subnet mask.
			Default Gateway	Use this item to manually enter the default gateway.
			Save	Select the Save item to save the manual settings.

Table 5-5 Pre-boot menu options (5 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator (continued)	Startup Options			Select the Startup Options item to specify options that can be set for the next time the printer is turned on and initializes to the **Ready** state.
		Show Revision		**Not currently functional**: Select the Show Revision item to allow the printer to initialize and show the firmware version when the printer reaches the **Ready** state. Once the printer power is turned on the next time, the Show Revision item is unchecked so that the firmware revision is not shown.
		Cold Reset		Select the Cold Reset item to clear the IP address and all customer settings. (This item also returns all settings to factory defaults.) **NOTE:** Items in the Service menu are not reset.
		Skip Disk Load		Select the Skip Disk Load item to disable installed third-party applications.
		Skip Cal		Select the Skip Cal item to skip the printer calibration for the very next power-initialization cycle only.
		Lock Service		**CAUTION:** Select the Lock Service item to lock the Service menu access (both in the Pre-boot menu and the Device Maintenance menu). Service personnel must have the administrator remove the Lock Service setting before they can open the Service menu.
		Skip FSCK		Select the Skip FSCK item to disable Chkdisk/ScanVolume during startup.
Administrator (continued)	Startup Options (continued)	First Power		**Not currently functional**: This item allows the printer to initialize as if it is the first time it has been turned on. For example, the user is prompted to configure first-time settings like date/time, language, and other settings. Select this item so that it is enabled for the next time the printer power is turned on. When the printer power is turned on the next time, this item is unchecked so that the pre-configured settings are used during configuration, and the first-time setting prompt is not used.
		Embedded Jetdirect Off		Select the Embedded Jetdirect Off item to disable the embedded HP Jetdirect. By default this item is unchecked so that HP Jetdirect is always enabled.
		WiFi Accessory		Select the WiFi Accessory item to enable the wireless accessory.

Table 5-6 Pre-boot menu options (6 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator (continued)	Diagnostics			Diagnostic items are useful to diagnose hardware components and their interface connections. Use these items to troubleshoot specific hardware components, and the interface between them and other components.
		Memory	Do Not Run	Use the Do Not Run item to exclude the Memory diagnostic when executing multiple diagnostics.
			Short	Use the Short item to select a brief memory test. **NOTE:** This test requires about four minutes to execute.
			Long	Use the Long item to select an extended memory test. **NOTE:** This test requires about twenty minutes to execute.
		Disk	Do Not Run	Use the Do Not Run item to exclude the Disk diagnostic when executing multiple diagnostics.
			Short	Use the Short item to select a brief firmware self-test. **NOTE:** This test requires about two or three minutes to execute.
			Long	Use the Long item to select an extended firmware self-test. **NOTE:** This test requires about sixty minutes to execute.
			Optimized	Use the Optimized item to select a test that checks the active sectors on the disk. **NOTE:** This test requires about thirty minutes to execute.
			Raw	Use the Raw item to select a test that checks every sector on the disk. **NOTE:** This test requires about fifty minutes to execute.
			Smart	Use the Smart item to select a very brief test that checks the drive self-monitoring analysis and reporting technology (SMART) status—the drive detects and reports reliability indicators to help anticipate disk failures (SMART status).
		CPB		Use the CPB item to verify the integrity of the copy processor board (CPB) and the formatter PCA connections.

Table 5-6 Pre-boot menu options (6 of 7) (continued)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
		Interconnect		Use the Interconnect item to verify the integrity of the interconnect PCA (ICB) and its connections.
		Run Selected		Select the Run Selected item to execute a selected test. NOTE: If more than one test is selected, they are executed in sequence.

Table 5-7 Pre-boot menu options (7 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator (continued)	Remote Admin	Start Telnet		The Remote Admin item allows a service technician to access to the printer Pre-boot menu remotely, and to navigate the menu selections from a remote location. IMPORTANT: A Remote Admin connection must be initiated by a person that is physically present at the printer. This person will also need to provide a randomly generated PIN to the remote service technician. NOTE: For more information about using the Remote Admin function, see Remote Admin on page 1002.
		Stop Telnet		
		Refresh IP		
	System Triage	Copy Logs		If the device will not boot to the **Ready** state, or the diagnostic log feature found in the Troubleshooting menu is not accessible, then use the System Triage item to copy the diagnostic logs to a USB flash drive at the next printer start up. The files can then be sent to HP to help diagnose the problem.
	Change Svc PWD			Use this item to change the Service menu personal identification number (PIN).
	Reset Svc PWD			If the Service menu personal identification number (PIN) has been changed. Use this item to reset it to the original PIN.
Service Tools	Reset Password			Use this item to reset the Pre-boot administrator password.
	Subsystems			For manufacturing use only. Do not change these values.
Developer Tools	Netexec			

Remote Admin

The Remote Admin feature allows remote access the printer Pre-boot menu (BIOS environment). The printer functions as a telnet server which uses the telnet networking protocol to transmit text data. Any computer (with telnet installed and enabled) can function as the telnet client to remotely display and interact with the Pre-boot menu.

IMPORTANT: While the Remote Admin function allows remote access the Pre-boot menu, for security reasons the Remote Admin connection must be initiated by a person that is physically present at the printer.

This section describes the following Remote Admin items.

- Required software and network connection
- Connect a remote connection
- Disconnect a remote connection

Required software and network connection

Before using the Remote Admin feature, make sure that the telnet network protocol is installed, and enabled, on the remote telnet client computer.

NOTE: This section describes enabling and configuring the telnet feature for computers using a Windows® operating system.

HP recommends that the telnet client computer be a Windows based system, however, there are other operating systems that support the telnet network protocol. For information about enabling and configuring the telnet network protocol for other operating systems, see the owner's manual for that operating system.

Telnet client

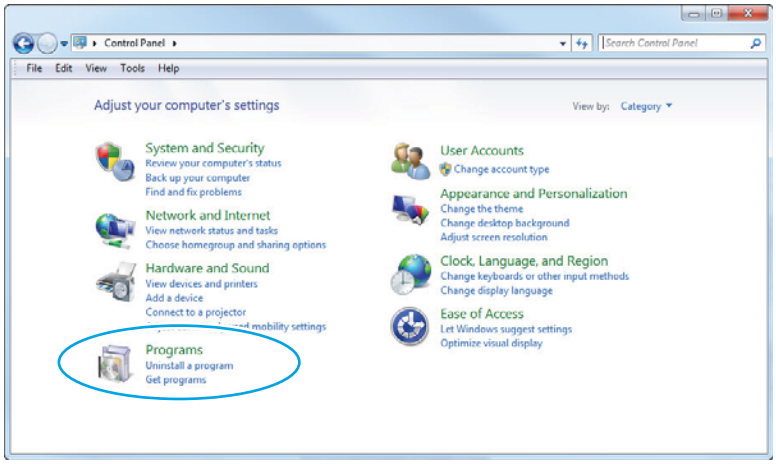
Enable the Windows telnet client

All computers using the Windows operating system have the telnet client installed, however, the telnet client function might not be enabled by default.

NOTE: The figures and menus in this section are for the Windows 7 Enterprise® operating system. Screens and menu selections might vary slightly for other operating systems.

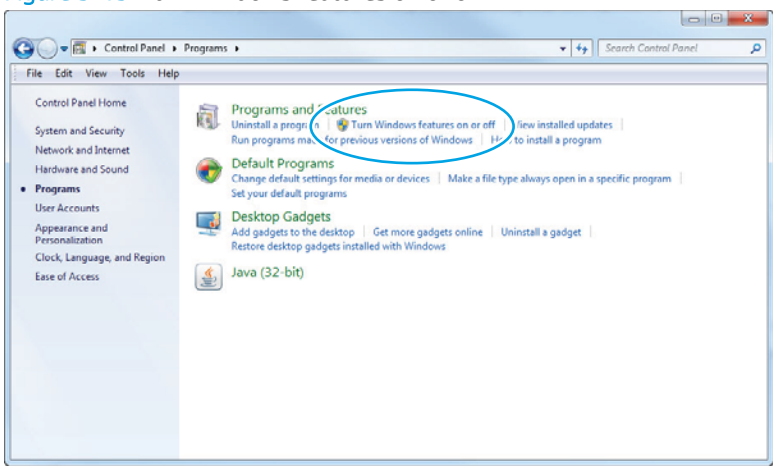
1. Use the **Start** menu to open the **Control Panel**, and then click the **Programs** item to select it.

Figure 5-12 Open the Control Panel



2. Click the **Turn Windows features on or off** item to select it.

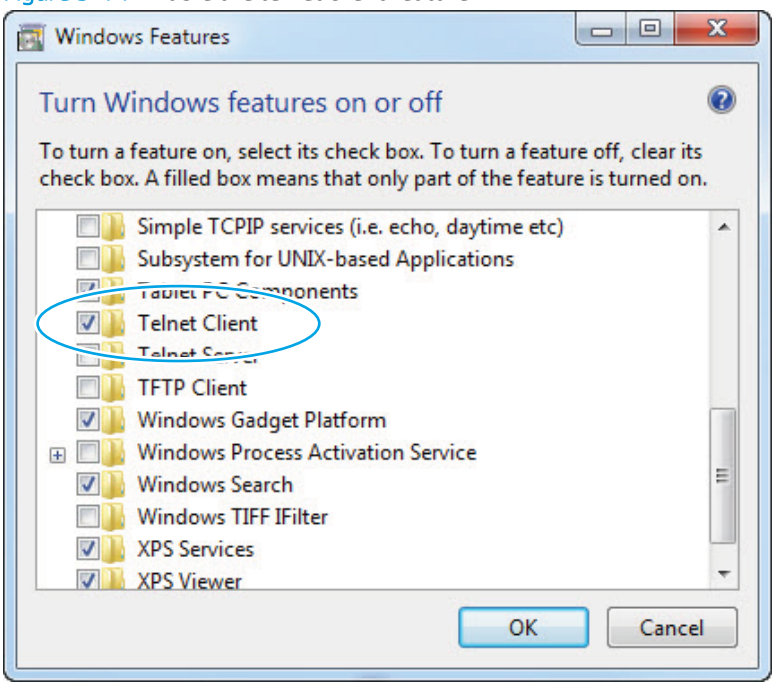
Figure 5-13 Turn Windows features on or off



3. In the **Windows Features** box, scroll down to **Telnet Client**. If the check box is not checked, click the box to select it, and then click the **OK** button.

TIP: If the check box is already checked then the telnet client function is already enabled. Click the **Cancel** button.

Figure 5-14 Enable the telnet client feature



Network connection

The remote telnet client computer must have direct network access to the printer for the Remote Admin function to operate. This means that the telnet client computer must be on the same network as the printer. The Remote Admin function cannot be accessed through a network firewall or other remote access network security programs.

If a private network is not accessible, ask the network administrator to set up a virtual private network (VPN) connection to the network.

Connect a remote connection

Start the telnet server function at the printer

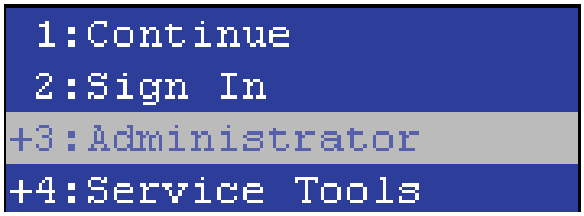
For security reasons the Remote Admin feature must be initiated by a person that is physically present at the printer. The following steps must be performed by a person that is physically present at the printer.

NOTE: This person might need to sign in with an administrator or service password depending on how the printer is configured.

1. Turn the printer on.
2. The HP logo displays on the printer control panel. When a "1/8" with an underscore displays, touch the middle of the screen to open the Pre-boot menu.

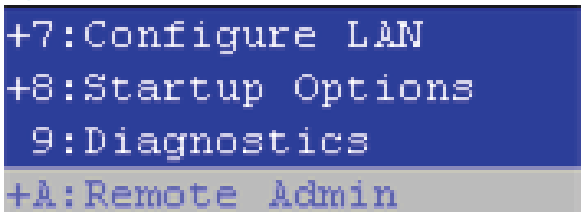
3. Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to scroll down and highlight the **+3:Administrator** item, and then touch the OK button to select it.

Figure 5-15 Select the +3:Administrator item



4. Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to scroll down and highlight the **+A:Remote Admin** item, and then touch the OK button to select it.

Figure 5-16 Select the +A:Remote Admin item



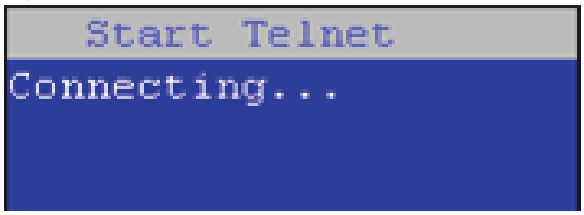
5. Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to scroll down and highlight the **1:Start Telnet** item, and then touch the OK button to select it.

Figure 5-17 Select the 1:Start Telnet item

6. Do one of the following

- If a connecting message displays briefly, go to step 7.

  Figure 5-18 Telnet connecting message

- If an error message displays, use the steps below to identify the problem.

Figure 5-19 Telnet error message

a. The printer network cable is not correctly connected.

b. The BIOS LAN settings are incorrect.

   - The printer should be configured to use a static IP address, but is configured to use DHCP instead.
   - The printer is configured to use a static IP address, but the IP address is incorrect.

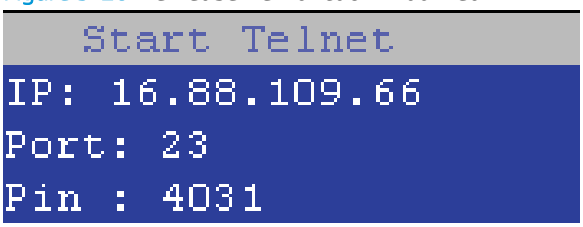
c. The printer is correctly configured to use DHCP, but the DHCP server is not turned on or is malfunctioning.

7. When the printer telnet server function is initialized, the following screen appears. Use the information on this screen to connect the remote telnet client computer to the printer.

NOTE: The printer is now ready to receive remote telnet client commands.

- **IP**: The static or dynamically allocated IP address for the printer.
- **Port**: The standard telnet port (23).
- **Pin**: A randomly generated 4-digit personal identification number (PIN).

Figure 5-20 Telnet server function initialized

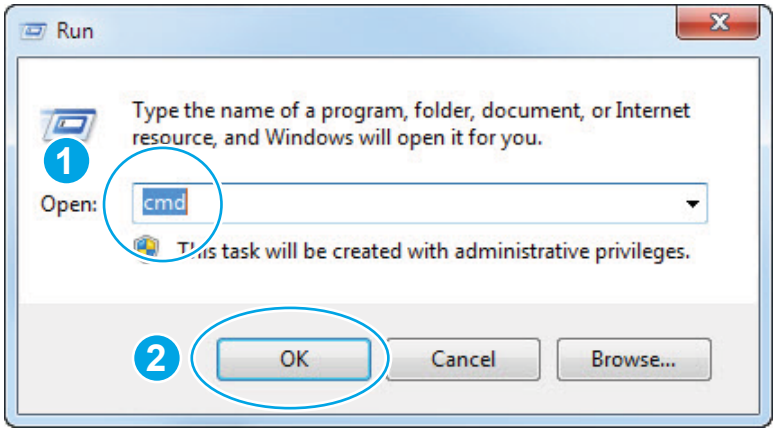


Start the telnet client function at the remote computer

The following steps establish a Remote Admin connection from a remote computer to the printer.

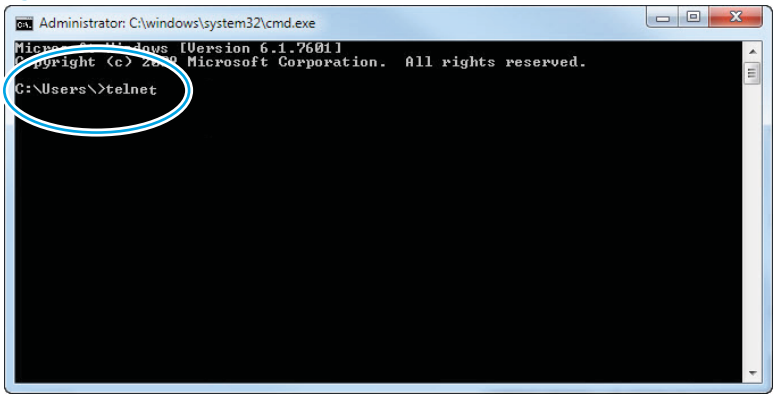
1. From the **Start** menu click **Run** to open a dialog box, type `cmd` in the **Open** field, and then click the **OK** button to open a Windows command window.

Figure 5-21 Open a command window



2. From any displayed directory, type `telnet` at the prompt, and then press the **Enter** key.

Figure 5-22 Start a telnet session

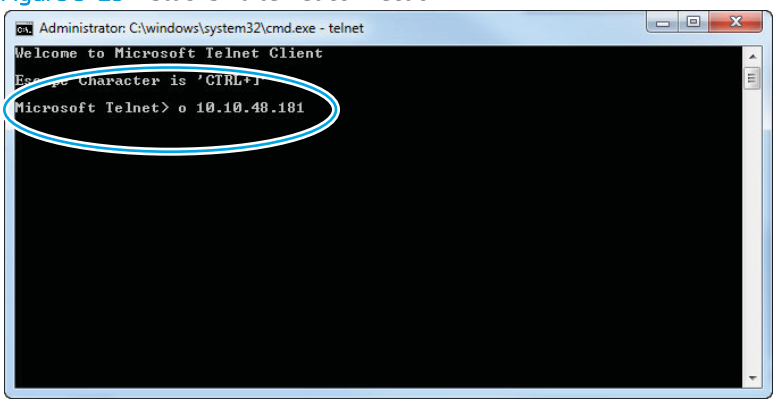


3. Type `o <IP ADDRESS>` at the telnet prompt, and then press the **Enter** key.

NOTE: For `<IP ADDRESS>`, substitute the IP address that was displayed in step 7 in Start the telnet server function at the printer on page 1004.

TIP: If the telnet connection fails to establish a connection, the printer is probably behind a firewall or on a different network that the remote telnet client computer. See Network connection on page 1004.

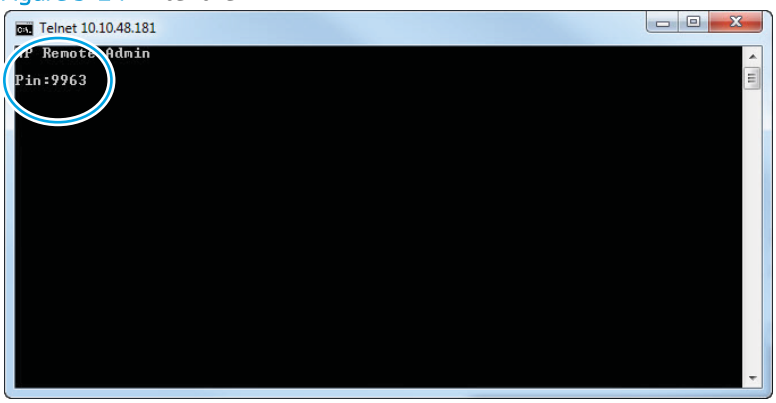
Figure 5-23 Establish a telnet connection



4. Type the PIN that was displayed in step 7 in Start the telnet server function at the printer on page 1004 at the prompt, and then press the **Enter** key.

IMPORTANT: Make sure to type the PIN correctly. After five incorrect PIN entries, the printer terminates the Remote Admin connection. The Remote Admin feature must be re-initiated at the printer. See Start the telnet server function at the printer on page 1004.

Figure 5-24 Enter the PIN

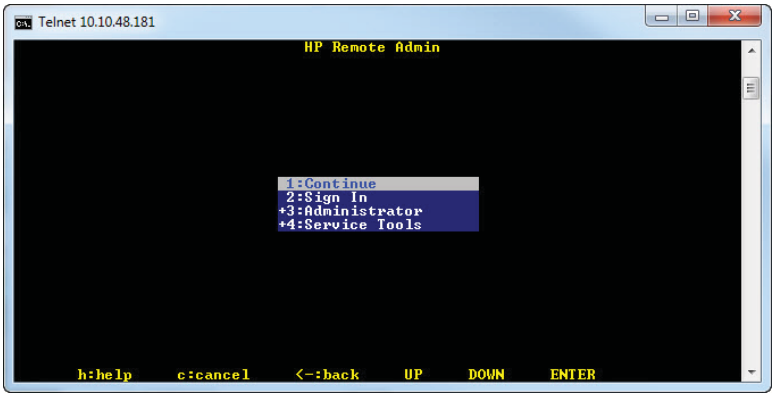


5. The following screen displays when the correct PIN is entered and the Remote Admin connection is successful. For information about the Pre-boot menu and options, see Pre-boot menu options on page 993.

NOTE: Because a Remote Admin connection is an unsecure telnet network protocol connection, the following Pre-boot menu items are disabled for the remote telnet client computer.

- The **+3:Administrator** menu **4:Change Password** item.
- The **+3:Administrator** menu **5:Clear Password** item.
- The **+3:Administrator** menu **6:Disk Manage** item.

Figure 5-25 Remote Admin window



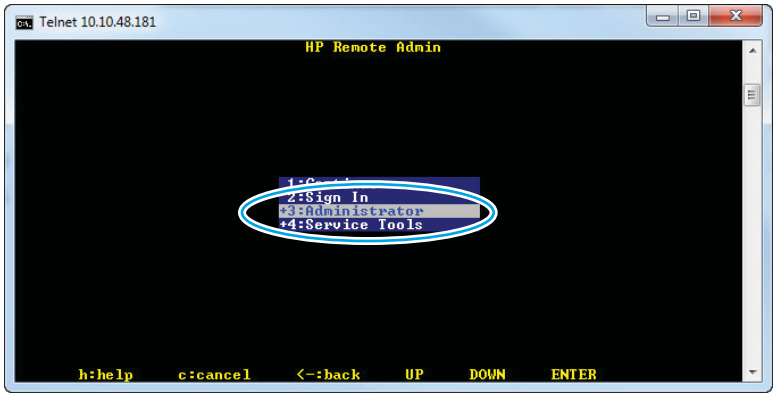
Disconnect a remote connection

The Remote Admin connection can be terminated from the printer control panel or the remote telnet client computer.

NOTE: The following procedure describes terminating a Remote Admin connection from the remote telnet client computer.

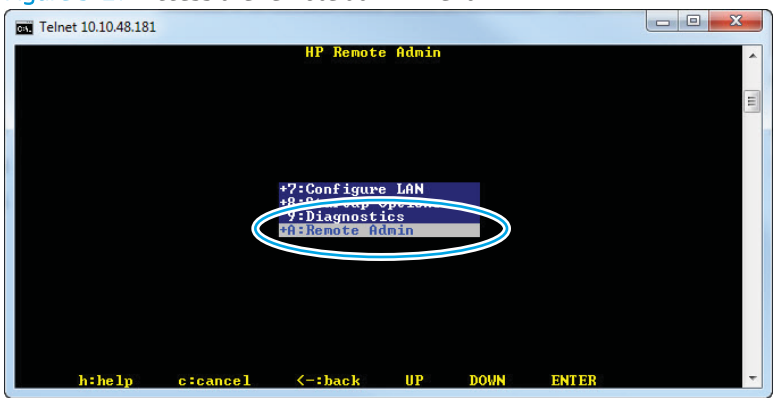
1. From the Pre-boot main menu, use the arrow buttons on the keyboard to scroll down to the **+3:Administrator** item, and then press the **Enter** key.

Figure 5-26 Access the administrator menu



2. Use the arrow buttons on the keyboard to scroll down to the **+A:Remote Admin** item, and then press the **Enter** key.

Figure 5-27 Access the remote admin menu

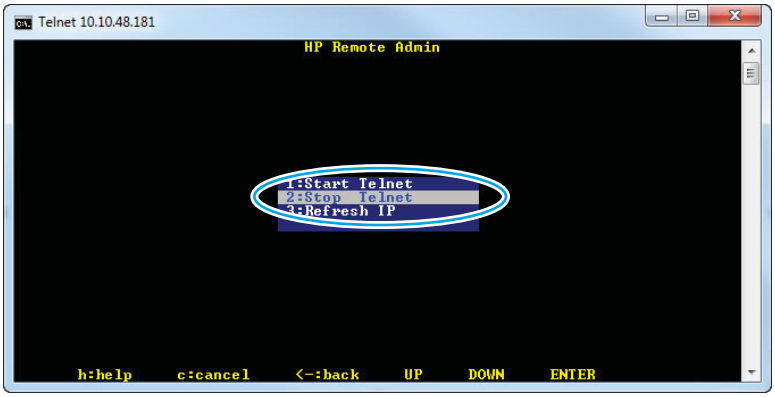


3. Use the arrow buttons on the keyboard to scroll down to the **2:Stop Telnet** item, and then press the **Enter** key. The Remote Admin connection between the printer and the remote telnet client computer terminates.

IMPORTANT: The printer remains in the Pre-boot menu. Have the person that is physically present at the printer do the following:

- Touch the Home button to return to the main Pre-boot menu and highlight the **1:Continue** item, and then touch the OK button. The printer will continue to initialize.

Figure 5-28 Terminate the telnet connection



Control panel menus

You can perform basic printer setup by using the Settings menu. Use the HP Embedded Web Server for more advanced printer setup. To open the HP Embedded Web Server, enter the printer IP address or host name in the address bar of a web browser.

- Reports menu
- Settings menu
- Copy menu (MFP only)
- Scan menu (MFP only)
- Fax menu (fax models only)
- Print menu
- Supplies menu
- Trays menu
- Troubleshooting menu
- Maintenance menu

Reports menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select Reports.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-8 Reports menu

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Configuration/Status Pages	Settings Menu Map	Print View	Shows a map of the entire control panel system and the selected values for each setting.
	Current Settings Page	Print View	Shows a summary of the current settings for the printer. This might be helpful if you plan to make changes and need a record of the present configuration.

Table 5-8 Reports menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Values	Description
	Configuration Page	Print View	Shows the printer settings and installed accessories.
	How to Connect Page	Print View	Shows the network information typically needed to connect the printer to a network.
	Supplies Status Page	Print View	Shows the approximate remaining life for the supplies; reports statistics on total number of pages and jobs processed, serial number, page counts, and maintenance information. HP provides approximations of the remaining life for the supplies as a customer convenience. The actual remaining supply levels might be different from the approximations provided.
	Usage Page	Print View	Shows a count of all paper sizes that have passed through the printer; lists whether they were simplex, duplex, monochrome, or color; and reports the page count.
	File Directory	Print View	Shows the file name and folder name for files that are stored in the printer memory.
	Web Services Status Page	Print View	Shows the detected Web Services for the printer.
	Color Usage Job Log	Print View	Shows color jobs completed by the printer.
Fax Reports (MFP fax models only)	Fax Activity Log	Print View	Contains a list of the faxes that have been sent from or received by this printer.
	Billing Codes Report	Print View	Provides a list of billing codes that have been used for outgoing faxes. This report shows how many sent faxes were billed to each code.
	Blocked Fax List	Print View	A list of phone numbers that are blocked from sending faxes to this printer.
	Speed Dial List	Print View	Shows the speed dials that have been set up for this printer.
	Fax Call Report	Print View	A detailed report of the last fax operation, either sent or received.
Other Pages	Demonstration Page	Print	Prints a demonstration page.

Table 5-8 Reports menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Values	Description
	RGB samples	Print	Prints color samples for different RGB values. Use the samples as a guide for matching printed colors.
	CMYK samples	Print	Prints color samples for different CMYK values. Use the samples as a guide for matching printed colors.
	PCL Font List	Print	Prints the available PCL fonts.
	PS Font List	Print	Prints the available PS fonts.

Settings menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Settings menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-9 Settings menu

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
General	Date/Time Settings	Date/Time Format	Date Format		DD/MMM/YYYY MMM/DD/YYYY YYYY/MMM/DD	Use the Date/Time Settings menu to specify the date and time and to configure date/time settings.
			Time Format		12 hour (AM/PM) 24 hours	Select the format that the printer uses to show the date and time, for example 12-hour format or 24-hour format.
		Date/Time	Date		Select the time zone from a list.	Select the time zone, date, and time that the printer uses.
			Time		Select the date from a pop-up calendar.	
			Time Zone		Select the time from a pop-up keypad.	
	Energy Settings	Sleep Schedule	A list of scheduled events displays.		+ (Add) Edit Delete	Use to configure the printer to automatically wake up or go to sleep at specific times on specific days. Using this feature saves energy. **NOTE:** You must configure the date and time settings before you can use this feature.
			New event	Event Type		Select whether to add or edit a Wake event or a Sleep event, and then select the time and the days for the wake or sleep event.
				Time		Set the wake or sleep event time parameters.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
				Event Days	Select days of the week from a list.	Set the wake or sleep event day parameters.
		Sleep Settings	Auto Off After Sleep Sleep After Inactivity HP Auto Off/Auto On Shut Down		Range: 1 to 110 minutes Default = 0 minutes	Set the number of minutes after which the printer enters Sleep or Auto Off mode. Touch the existing number to open the virtual keypad, and then increase or decrease the number of minutes.
			Wake/Auto On to These Events		All Events* Network port Power button only	
	Display Settings	Display Brightness	Automatic* Manual		The Manual setting uses a slider to manually control the display brightness.	Use to specify the intensity of the LCD control panel display.
		System Sound			On* Off	Use to specify whether you hear a sound when you touch the screen or press buttons on the control panel.
		Language Settings	Language		Select from a list of languages that the printer supports.	Use to select a different language for control panel messages and specify the default keyboard layout. When you select a new language, the keyboard layout automatically changes to match the factory default for the selected language.
			Keyboard Layout M681z/M682z only		Each language has a default keyboard layout. To change it, select from a list of layouts.	Select the default keyboard layout that matches the language you want to use.
		Information Screen			Show connection information* Hide connection information	Use this menu item to display or hide connection information on the Home screen.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		DisplayDate and Time M681/M682 only			Show Date and Time* Hide Date and Time	Select whether to display or hide the date and time on the control panel Home screen.
		Inactivity Timeout			Range: 10-300 seconds Default = 60 seconds	Specifies the amount of time that elapses between any activity on the control panel and when the printer resets to the default settings. When the timeout expires, the control panel display returns to the Home menu, and any user signed in to the printer is signed out.
		Clearable Warnings			On Job*	Use this feature to set the period that a clearable warning displays on the control panel. If the On setting is selected, clearable warnings appear until the Clearable Warnings button is pressed. If the Job setting is selected, clearable warnings stay on the display during the job that generated the warning and disappear from the display when the next job starts.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Continuable Events			Auto-continue (10 seconds)* Touch OK to continue	Use this option to configure the printer behavior when the printer encounters certain errors. If the Auto-continue (10 seconds) option is selected, the job will continue after 10 seconds. If the Touch OK to continue option is selected, the job will stop and require the user to touch the OK button before continuing.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Jam Recovery				Auto* Off On	This printer provides a jam recovery feature that reprints jammed pages. Select one of the following options: Auto: The printer attempts to reprint jammed pages when sufficient memory is available. This is the default setting. Off: The printer does not attempt to reprint jammed pages. Because no memory is used to store the most recent pages, performance is optimal. NOTE: When using this option, if the printer runs out of paper and the job is being printed on both sides, some pages can be lost. On: The printer always reprints jammed pages. Additional memory is allocated to store the last few pages printed. This might cause a decrease in overall performance.
	Auto Recovery				Enabled Disabled*	The printer attempts to reprint jammed pages when sufficient memory is available. This is the default setting.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Hold Off Print Job				Enabled* Disabled	Enable this feature if you want to prevent print jobs from starting while a user is initiating a copy job from the control panel. Held print jobs start printing after the copy job is finished, provided that no other copy job is in the print queue.
	Restore Factory Settings				Restore Cancel	Use to restore all printer settings to their factory defaults.
Copy/Print	Copy Settings	Image Preview				Display a preview of the image before printing it.
	Enable Device USB				Enabled Disabled*	Enables the printer to open a file from a USB drive.
	Manage Stored Jobs	Job Sort Order			Job Name* Date	This option allows you list the jobs either alphabetically or chronologically.
		Retain Temporary Jobs After Reboot			Do not retain Personal jobs only All temporary jobs	Sets which temporary jobs will be retained in the event of a printer reboot.
		Temporary Job Storage Limit			1-300 Default = 32	Configure global settings for jobs that are stored in the printer memory. The Temporary Job Storage Limit feature specifies the number of temporary jobs that can be stored on the printer. The maximum allowed value is 300.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Temporary Stored Job Retention			1-300 Default = 32	Configure global settings for jobs that are stored in the printer memory. The Temporary Stored Job Retention feature specifies the number of temporary jobs that can be stored on the printer. The maximum allowed value is 300.
		Standard Stored Job Retention			1-300 Default = 32	Configure global settings for jobs that are stored in the printer memory. The Temporary Stored Job Retention feature specifies the number of standard jobs that can be stored on the printer. The maximum allowed value is 300.
	Default Print Options	Number of Copies		Range: 1-32000 Default = 1	Sets the default number of copies for a copy job. This default applies when the Copy function or the Quick Copy function is initiated from the printer Home screen.	
		Paper Selection		Select from a list of sizes that the printer supports.	Configures the default paper size used for print jobs.	
		Default Custom Paper Size	X Dimension	Range: 3-8.5 inches Default = 8.5 inches	Configures the default paper size that is used when the user selects **Custom** as the paper size for a print job.	
			Y Dimension	Range: 5-14 inches Default = 14 inches		
			Use Inches	Enabled* Disabled		

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Output Sides		1-sided*	Use to indicate whether the original document is printed on one or both sides, and whether the copies should be printed on one or both sides. For example, select the 1-sided original, 2-sided output option when the original is printed on one side, but you want to make two-sided copies.	
				2-sided		
		Staple			None	Sets the position of the staple on the page.
					Top left	
					Top right	
					Top left or right	
		Output Bin			Automatically select	
					Standard bin	
					Upper bin	
					Middle bin	
		Resolution			FastRes1200	Sets the resolution for sent documents. Higher resolution images have more dots per inch (dpi), so they show more detail. Lower resolution images have fewer dots per inch and show less detail, but the file size is smaller. Some file types, for example a file that will be processed with OCR, require a specific resolution. When these file types are selected, the Resolution setting might automatically change to a valid value.
					1200x1200dpi	

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Edge-to-Edge			Normal (recommended)* Edge-to-Edge output	Use to avoid shadows that can appear along the edges of copies when the original document is printed close to the edges.
	PCL and PostScript Settings	Courier Font			Regular* Dark	Select which version of the Courier font you want to use. The factory default setting is Regular, which uses an average stroke width. The Dark setting can be used if a heavier Courier font is needed.
		Wide A4			Enabled Disabled*	Changes the printable area of A4-size paper. If you enable this option, eighty 10-pitch characters can be printed on a single line of A4 paper.
		Print PS Errors			Enabled Disabled*	Use this feature to select whether a PostScript (PS) error page is printed when the printer encounters a PS error.
		Print PDF Errors			Enabled Disabled*	Selects whether a PDF error page is printed when the printer encounters a PDF error.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Personality			Auto* PCL PS PDF	Configures the default print language or personality for the printer. Normally you should not change the printer language. If you change the setting to a specific printer language, the printer does not automatically switch from one language to another unless specific software commands are sent to it.
		PCL	Font Settings	Font Source	Internal Disk resident	Selects the font source for the user-soft default font. The list of available options varies depending on the installed printer options.
				Font Number	Range: 0-110 Default = 0	Specifies the font number for the user-soft default font using the source that is specified in the Font Source menu. The printer assigns a number to each font and lists it on the PCL font list. The font number displays in the Font # column of the printout.
				Font Pitch	Range: 0.44-99.99 Default = 10	If the Font Source option and the Font Number setting indicate a contour font, then use this feature to select a default pitch (for a fixed-spaced font).

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			PCL Settings	Form Length	Range: 5-128 Default = 60	Controls the PCL print-command options. PCL is a set of printer commands that HP developed to provide access to printer features. Use the Form Length feature to select the user-soft default vertical form length.
				Orientation	Portrait* Landscape	Select the orientation that is most often used for copy or scan originals. Select the Portrait option if the short edge is at the top or select the Landscape option if the long edge is at the top.
				Symbol Set	Select from a list of symbol sets.	Select any one of several available symbol sets from the control panel. A symbol set is a unique grouping of all the characters in a font. The factory default value for this option is PC-8. Either PC-8 or PC-850 are recommended for line-draw characters.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
				Append CR to LF	No* Yes	Configure whether a carriage return (CR) is appended to each line feed (LF) encountered in backwards-compatible PCL jobs (pure text, no job control). Select Yes to append the carriage return. The default setting is No. Some environments, such as UNIX, indicate a new line by using only the line-feed control code. This option allows the user to append the required carriage return to each line feed.
				Suppress Blank Pages	No* Yes	This option is for users who are generating their own PCL, which could include extra form feeds that would cause blank pages to be printed. When the Yes option is selected, form feeds are ignored if the page is blank.
				Media Source Mapping	Standard* Classic	Use to select and maintain input trays by number when you are not using the printer driver, or when the software program has no option for tray selection. The following options are available: Standard: Tray numbering is based on newer HP LaserJet models. Classic: Tray numbering is based on HP LaserJet 4 and older models.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Print Quality	Adjust Color	Tonal Range	Highlights		
				Midtones		
				Shadows		
			Cyan			
			Magenta			
			Yellow			
			Black			
		Image Registration	Tray	Tray 1		Specify tray to be adjusted
				Tray 2		
				Tray 3		
				Tray 4		
				Tray 5		
				Depends upon number of trays installed		

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			Front-side Horizontal Shift Front-side Vertical Shift Back-side Horizizontal Shift Back-side Vertical Shift		-5.00 mm to 5.00 mm	Shift the margin alignment to center the image on the page from top to bottom and from left to right. You can also align the image on the front with the image printed on the back. The direction that is perpendicular to the way the paper passes through the printer is referred to as X. This is also known as the scan direction. X1 is the scan direction for a single-sided page or for the second side of a two-sided page. X2 is the scan direction for the first side of a two-sided page. The direction that the paper feeds through the printer is referred to as Y. Y1 is the feed direction for a single-sided page or for the second side of a two-sided page. Y2 is the feed direction for the first side of a two-sided page. Use the Adjust Tray <X> menu to adjust the registration settings for each tray. Before adjusting these values, print a registration test page. It provides alignment guides in the X and Y directions so you can determine which adjustments are necessary. You can adjust values for X1 Shift, X2 Shift, Y1 Shift, and Y2 Shift.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
				Print Test Page		Use the Print Test Page option to print a page to test the image registration. It provides alignment guides in the X and Y directions so you can determine which adjustments are necessary.
		Auto Sense Behavior	Tray 1		Sense every page	
					Sense first page	
					Sense transparency ony	
			All Other Trays		Sense first page	
					Sense transparency only	
		Adjust paper types			Select from a list of paper types	
					Reset Paper Types	
		Optimize			Normal Paper	
					Heavy paper	
					Envelope control	
					Tray 1	
					Background	
					Background 1	
					Uniformity Control	
					Tracking Control	
					Registration	
					Transfer Control	
					Moisture Control	
					Reset Optimize	
		Edge Control			Off	
					Light	
					Normal	
					Maximum	

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Manage Trays	Use Requested Tray			Exclusively* First	Controls how the printer handles jobs that have specified a specific input tray. Two options are available: Exclusively: The printer never selects a different tray when the user has indicated that a specific tray should be used, even if that tray is empty. First: The printer pulls from another tray if the specified tray is empty, even though the user specifically indicated a tray for the job.
		Manually Feed Prompt			Always* Unless loaded	Indicate whether a prompt should appear when the type or size for a job does not match the specified tray and the printer pulls from the multipurpose tray instead. Two options are available: Always: A prompt always displays before using the multipurpose tray. Unless loaded: A message displays only if the multipurpose tray is empty.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Size/Type Prompt			Display* Do not display	Controls whether the tray configuration message displays whenever a tray is closed. Two options are available: Display: Shows the tray configuration message when a tray is closed. The user is able to configure the tray settings directly from this message. Do not display: Prevents the tray configuration message from automatically appearing.
		Use Another Tray			Enabled* Disabled	Use to turn on or off the control panel prompt to select another tray when the specified tray is empty. Two options are available: Enabled: When this option is selected, the user is prompted either to add paper to the selected tray or to choose a different tray. Disabled: When this option is selected, the user is not given the option of selecting a different tray. The printer prompts the user to add paper to the tray that was initially selected.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Alternative Letterhead Mode			Disabled* Enabled	Use to load letterhead or preprinted paper into the tray the same way for all print jobs, whether you are printing to one side of the sheet or to both sides of the sheet. When this option is selected, load the paper as you would for printing on both sides. See the user documentation that came with the printer for instructions about loading letterhead for printing on both sides. When this option is selected, the printer speed slows to the speed required for printing on both sides.
		Duplex Blank Pages			Auto* Yes	Controls how the printer handles two-sided jobs (duplexing). Two options are available: Auto: Enables Smart Duplexing, which instructs the printer not to process blank pages. Yes: Disables Smart Duplexing and forces the duplexer to flip the sheet of paper even if it is printed on only one side. This might be preferable for certain jobs that use paper types such as letterhead or prepunched paper.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Override A4/Letter			Yes* No	Prints on letter-size paper when an A4 job is sent but no A4-size paper is loaded in the printer (or to print on A4 paper when a letter-size job is sent but no letter-size paper is loaded). This option will also override A3 with ledger-size paper and ledger with A3-size paper.
Scan/Digital Send	E-mail Settings Network Folder Settings SharePoint Settings Scan to USB Drive Settings **NOTE:** The same options are available for each of these features, except where noted.	E-mail Setup **NOTE:** Email Settings only				Use to configure settings that apply to sending documents through email or saving documents to a folder on the network or on a USB multi-drive. The E-mail Setup Wizard feature configures the printer to send scanned images as email attachments. To open the printer HP Embedded Web Server and set up the email notification server, enter the printer IP address into a Web browser.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Image Preview			Make optional* Require preview Disable preview	Defines the default job options for each function. If you do not specify the job options when creating the job, the default options are used. For complete setup, go to the HP Embedded Web Server by typing the IP address of the printer into a Web browser. Use the Image Preview feature to scan a document and display a preview before completing the job. Select whether this feature is available on the printer. Make optional: The feature is optional, depending on the user who is signed in. Require preview Previews are required for all users. Disable preview: Previews are disabled for all users.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Default File Name				The printer is shipped with a factory default file name of [Untitled] for any scanned files that are sent or saved. Use this feature to specify a different default file name. If you are saving a file to a network folder or USB storage printer and a file with the default file name already exists, a number is appended to the file name, for example, [Untitled]001.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Document File Type			Select from a list of file types.	PDF provides the best overall image and text quality. JPEG is a good choice for most graphics. Most computers have a browser that can view .JPEG files. This file type produces one file per page. TIFF is a standard file format that many graphics programs support. This file type produces one file per page. MTIFF: stands for multi-page TIFF. This file type saves multiple scanned pages in a single file. XPS (XML Paper Specification) creates an XML file that preserves the original formatting of the document and supports color graphics and embedded fonts. **NOTE:** OCR file types are not supported on this printer unless attached to DSS.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Optimize Text/ Picture			Manually Adjust* Text Printed picture Photograph	Use to optimize the output for a particular type of content. You can optimize the output for text, printed pictures, or a mixture. Manually Adjust: Use to manually optimize the setting for text or for pictures. Text: Use to optimize the text portion of the copy when text and/or pictures are on the original. Printed picture: Use for line drawings and preprinted images, such as magazine clippings or pages from books. Photograph: Best suited for making copies of printed pictures.
		Output Quality			High (large file) Medium* Low (small file)	Use to select the quality for the output. Higher-quality images require a larger file size than lower-quality images. Larger files take more time to send, and some recipients might have trouble receiving larger files.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Original Sides			1-sided 2-sided	Use to describe the layout for each side of the original document. First select whether the original document is printed on one side or both sides. Then touch the Orientation setting to indicate whether the original has portrait or landscape orientation. If it is printed on both sides, also select the 2-sided format that matches the original document.
			Orientation		Automatically detect Portrait* Landscape	For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top. In the Orientation area, select whether the original document has a portrait or landscape orientation.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			2-Sided Format		Book-style Flip-style	Book-style: The back side of the original is printed right-side-up, and the back side of the copy is printed the same way. Use this option for originals and copies that are bound along the left edge. Flip-style: The back side of the original is printed upside-down, and the back side of the copy is printed the same way. Use this option for originals and copies that are to be bound along the top edge.
		Resolution			400 dpi 300 dpi 200 dpi 150 dpi* 75 dpi	Sets the resolution for sent documents. Higher resolution images have more dots per inch (dpi), so they show more detail. Lower resolution images have fewer dots per inch and show less detail, but the file size is smaller. Some file types, for example a file that will be processed with OCR, require a specific resolution. When these file types are selected, the Resolution setting might automatically change to a valid value.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Content Orientation	Orientation		Auto Detect Portrait* Landscape	For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top. In the Orientation area, select whether the original document has a portrait or landscape orientation.
			2-Sided Format		Book-style* Flip-style	Use to configure the default style for 2-sided print jobs. If the Book-style option is selected, the back side of the page is printed the right way up. This option is for print jobs that are bound along the left edge. If the Flip-style option is selected, the back side of the page is printed upside-down. This option is for print jobs that are bound along the top edge.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Color/Black			Automatically detect* Color Black/Gray Black	Use to enable or disable color scanning. Automatically detect: Automatically scans documents in color if at least one page has color. Color: Scans documents in color. Black/Gray: Scans documents in grayscale. Black: Scans documents in black and white with a compressed file size.
		Original Size			Select from a list of supported sizes.	Use to describe the page size of the original document.
		Notification			Do not notify* Notify when job completes Notify only if job fails Print E-mail	Configure to receive notification about the status of a sent document. Do not notify: Turns off this feature. Notify when job completes: Select to receive notification for this job only. Notify only if job fails: Select to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully. Print: Select to print the notification at this printer. E-mail: Select to receive the notification to an email account.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			Include Thumbnail			NOTE: When sending an analog fax, select Include Thumbnail to receive a thumbnail image of the first page of the fax in your notification.
			Notification E-mail address			E-mail: Select to receive the notification in an email. Touch the text box following Email Address, and then type the email address for the notification.
		Image Adjustment		Darkness		Use to improve the overall quality of the copy. Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.
				Contrast		Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.
				Background Cleanup		Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.
				Sharpness		Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
				Automatic Tone		The printer automatically adjusts the Darkness, Contrast, and Background Cleanup settings to the most appropriate for the scanned document.
				Default		Select this to make the selected Image Adjustment setting the default value.
		Job Build			Job Build off* Job Build on	Use to combine several original documents into one job. Also use to scan an original document that has more pages than the document feeder can accommodate at one time. The printer temporarily saves all the scanned images. After you have scanned all the pages for the job, touch Finish to finish the job.
		Cropping Options			Do not crop* Crop to content Crop to paper	Use this menu item to automatically crop the scan for digital sending. Use the Crop to content option to scan the smallest possible area that has detectable content.
		Erase Edges			Use inches Back side erase Front side erase	Use this menu item to remove blemishes, such as dark borders or staple marks, by cleaning the specified edges of the scanned image. In each of the text boxes enter the measurements, in millimeters or inches, for how much of the top edge, bottom edge, left edge, and right edge to clean.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Multi-feed Detection			Disabled Enabled*	This setting stops the scanning process if it detects multiple-page feeds through the document feeder.
		Blank Page Suppression			Disabled* Enabled	Use to prevent blank pages in the original document from being included in the output document.
		Create Multiple Files			Disabled* Enabled	Enable this item to scan pages into separate files based on a specified page limit. A page is one side of an original document. JPEG and TIFF have a limit of one page per file.
	Digital Sending Software Setup	Allow Use of a DSS Server Allow Transfer to New DSS server			Disabled Enabled*	Configure how the printer interacts with the HP Digital Sending Software (DSS) server. HP DSS handles digital sending tasks, such as faxing, emailing, and sending scanned documents to a network folder or USB storage device. Use the Allow Use of a DSS Server and Allow Transfer to New DSS server options to configure the printer to use HP DSS.
Fax	Internal Fax Modem Setup					
	Fax Send Settings	Image Preview				

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Fax Dialing Settings	Fax Dial Volume		Off Low* High	These settings control how the fax modem dials the outgoing fax number when faxes are sent.
			Dialing Mode		Tone* Pulse	
			Redial Interval		1-5 Minutes Default = 5 minutes	
			Fax Send Speed		Fast* Medium Slow	
			Dialing Prefix			
			Detect Dial Tone			
			Redial on Error		Range: 0-9 Default = 2	
			Redial on No Answer		Range: 0-2 Default = 0	
			Redial on Busy		Range: 0-9 Default = 3	
		General Fax Send Settings	Fax Number Confirmation		Enabled Disabled*	If this feature is enabled, you must enter the fax number twice.
			PC Fax Send		Enabled* Disabled	Enables users who have the correct driver installed to send faxes through the printer from their computers.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			JBIG Compression		Enabled* Disabled	The JBIG compression reduces fax-transmission time, which can result in lower phone charges. However, using JBIG compression sometimes causes compatibility problems with older fax machines. If this occurs, turn off the JBIG compression.
			Error Correction Mode		Enabled* Disabled	When error-correction mode is enabled and an error occurs during fax transmission, the printer sends or receives the error portion again.
			Fax Header		Prepend* Overlay	Use to prepend or overlay the fax header page.
			Fax Number Speed Dial Matching		Enabled Disabled*	Use this item to match the fax number that you type to numbers that are saved as a speed dial.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Billing Code Settings	Enable Billing Codes		Off* On	When billing codes are enabled, a prompt displays that asks the user to enter the billing code for an outgoing fax. This prompt does not appear if the Allow users to edit billing codes check box is not checked. You can also use the billing codes report in the Reports menu to view the list of the billing codes that have been used for faxes that have been sent from the printer. The list is grouped by billing code and also shows fax details. This feature can be used for billing or usage tracking.
			Default Billing Code			Specify a default billing code for faxing. If you specify a default billing code, this code displays in the Billing Code field when the user sends an outgoing fax. If this field is blank, no default billing code is provided for the user.
			Minimum Length		Range: 1-16 Default = 1	Specify the required length of the billing code. Billing codes can be between 1 and 16 characters long.
			Allow users to edit billing codes		Off On*	
	Fax Receive Settings	Fax Receive Setup	Ringer Volume		Off Low* High	Use to configure settings for receiving faxes.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			Rings To Answer		Range: 1-6 Default = 1	
			Fax Receive Speed		Fast* Medium Slow	
			Ring Interval		Range: 220-600 ms Default = 600 ms	
			Ring Frequency		Range: 1-200 Default = 68hz	
		Fax Printing Schedule			Always store faxes Always print faxes* Use Fax Printing Schedule	If you have concerns about the security of private faxes, use this feature to store faxes rather than having them automatically print. Open the Fax Printing Schedule sub-menu, and then you can choose to always store faxes, always print them, or you can set up a schedule for each day of the week.
			Schedule Touch this to set up a fax printing schedule if you selected the Use Fax Printing Schedule option.	+ (Add) Edit Delete (trash can)	Print incoming faxes Store incoming faxes Time Event Days	If you are using a fax printing schedule, use this menu to configure when to print faxes.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Blocked Fax Numbers	Fax Number to Block			The blocked fax list can contain up to 30 numbers. When the printer receives a call from one of the blocked fax numbers, it deletes the incoming fax. It also logs the blocked fax in the activity log along with job-accounting information. Add blocked numbers: Enter a fax number into the Fax Number to Block field, and then touch the arrow button to add a new number to the blocked fax list. To remove blocked numbers: Select a number and touch the Delete button to delete it from the blocked fax list. To clear all blocked numbers: Touch the Delete All button to clear all of the numbers from the blocked fax list. You also can use the Blocked Fax List report in the Information menu to view the list of the fax numbers that have been blocked on this printer.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Default Job Options	Notification		Do not notify* Notify when job completes Notify only if job fails	Configure to receive notification about the status of a sent document. Do not notify: Turns off this feature. Notify when job completes: Select to receive notification for this job only. Notify only if job fails: Select to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully.
					Print E-mail*	E-mail: Select to receive the notification in an email. Touch the text box following Email Address, and then enter the email address for the notification.
				Include Thumbnail		NOTE: When sending an analog fax, select Include Thumbnail to receive a thumbnail image of the first page of the fax in your notification.
				Notification E-mail address		Touch this text field, provide the email address to which you want notifications sent, and then touch the OK button.
			Stamp Received Faxes		Enabled Disabled*	Use this option to add the date, time, sender's phone number, and page number to each page of the faxes that this printer receives.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			Fit to Page		Enabled* Disabled	Use to shrink faxes that are larger than Letter-size or A4-size so that they can fit onto a Letter-size or A4-size page. If this feature set to Disabled, faxes larger than Letter or A4 will flow across multiple pages.
			Paper Tray		Automatic* Select from a list of the trays.	
			Output Bin		Automatically select Standard bin Upper bin Middle bin	
			Out Sides		1-sided* 2-sided	Use to describe the layout for each side of the original document. First select whether the original document is printed on one side or both sides.
	Fax Forwarding	Enable Fax Forwarding			Disabled* Enabled	Use to forward received faxes to another fax machine.
			Type of Fax Job to Forward		All faxes Sent faxes Received faxes	Use to select the type of fax jobs that you want forwarded.
			Fax Forwarding Number			Provide the forwarding phone number, and then touch the OK button.
	Clear Fax Activity Log					Clears all events from the fax activity log.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
Manage Supplies	Low Warning Thresholds			Black Cartridge Cyan Cartridge Magenta Cartridge Yellow Cartridge	1-100% Default = 5%	Set the estimated percentage at which the printer notifies you when a toner cartridge is very low.
	Low Warning Threshold Message				On Off	Displays a message on the control panel when a cartridge is very low.
	Very Low Behavior	Black Cartridge Color Cartridges Transfer Kit Fuser Kit Document Feeder Kit			Stop Continue Prompt to continue	
		Staples			Stop Prompt to continue	
	Restrict Color Use				Enable Disable Color Color if allowed*	Use this feature to enable, restrict, or disable color printing or copying.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Color/Black Mix				Auto Mostly Color Pages Mostly Black Pages	Instructs the printer when to switch between color and monochrome printing modes for the best overall performance. Auto: Uses the mode that is appropriate for the first page of the job. If necessary, the printer switches modes during the middle of a job and then stays in that mode until the job is finished. Mostly Color Pages: The printer uses color mode for all jobs, even if the job contains no color pages. Mostly Black Pages: The printer uses monochrome mode until it detects a color page. The printer switches back to monochrome mode when it detects a sequence of several monochrome pages.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Store Usage Data				On supplies Not on supplies	The Store Usage Data provides a way to suppress the toner cartridges from storing most of the information gathered exclusively for the purpose of understanding the usage of the printer. Select the On supplies setting to store the data on the toner cartridge memory chip. Select the Not on supplies setting to suppress the information from being stored on the memory chip.
	Cartridge Protection				Off* Protect Cartridges	Select to permanently protect cartridges so that they can be used only in this product or fleet of products.
	Cartridge Policy				Off* Authorized HP	Set Authorized HP to allow only genuine HP cartridges to be used in this product.
Manage Stapler/ Stacker	Operation Mode				Mailbox Stacker Function Separator	
	Job Offset				On Off	
Networking	Ethernet	Information	Print Security Report		Yes No*	Yes: Prints a page that contains the current security settings on the HP Jetdirect print server. No: A security settings page is not printed.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		TCP/IP	Host Name		Use the arrow buttons to edit the host name. NPIXXXXXX*	An alphanumeric string, up to 32 characters, used to identify the printer. This name is listed on the HP Jetdirect configuration page. The default host name is NPIxxxxxx, where xxxxxx is the last six digits of the LAN hardware (MAC) address.
			IPV4 Settings	Config Method	Bootp DHCP* Auto IP Manual	Specifies the method that TCP/IPv4 parameters will be configured on the HP Jetdirect print server. Bootp (Bootstrap Protocol): Use for automatic configuration from a BootP server. DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol): Use for automatic configuration from a DHCPv4 server. If selected and a DHCP lease exists, the DHCP Release menu and the DHCP Renew menu are available to set DHCP lease options. Auto IP: Use for automatic link-local IPv4 addressing. An address in the form 169.254.x.x is assigned automatically. If you set this option to the Manual setting, use the Manual Settings menu to configure TCP/IPv4 parameters.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
				Default IP	Auto IP* Legacy	Specify the IP address to default to when the print server is unable to obtain an IP address from the network during a forced TCP/IP reconfiguration (for example, when manually configured to use BootP or DHCP). **NOTE:** This feature assigns a static IP address that might interfere with a managed network. Auto IP: A link-local IP address 169.254.x.x is set. Legacy: The address 192.0.0.192 is set, consistent with older HP Jetdirect printers.
				Primary DNS	Range: 0-255 Default = **xxx.xxx.xx.xx**	Specify the IP address (n.n.n.n) of a Primary Domain Name System (DNS) Server.
				Secondary DNS	Range: 0-255 Default = **0.0.0.0**	Specify the IP address (n.n.n.n) of a Secondary DNS Server.
			IPV6 Settings	Enable	Off On*	Use this item to enable or disable IPv6 operation on the print server. Off: IPv6 is disabled. On: IPv6 is enabled.
				Address	Manual Settings Enable Address	Use this item to enable and manually configure a TCP/IPv6 address.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
				DHCPV6 Policy	Router Specified Router Unavailable* Always	Router Specified: The stateful auto-configuration method to be used by the print server is determined by a router. The router specifies whether the print server obtains its address, its configuration information, or both from a DHCPv6 server. Router Unavailable: If a router is not available, the print server should attempt to obtain its stateful configuration from a DHCPv6 server. Always: Whether a router is available, the print server always attempts to obtain its stateful configuration from a DHCPv6 server.
				Primary DNS	Range: 0-255 Default = **xxx.xxx.xx.xx**	Specify the IP address (n.n.n.n) of a Primary Domain Name System (DNS) Server.
				Secondary DNS	Range: 0-255 Default = **0.0.0.0**	Specify the IP address (n.n.n.n) of a Secondary DNS Server.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			Proxy Server		Select from a provided list.	Specifies the proxy server to be used by embedded applications in the printer. A proxy server is typically used by network clients for Internet access. It caches Web pages, and provides a degree of Internet security for those clients. To specify a proxy server, enter its IPv4 address or fully-qualified domain name. The name can be up to 255 octets. For some networks, you might need to contact your Internet Service Provider (ISP) for the proxy server address.
			Proxy Port		Default = **00080**	Enter the port number used by the proxy server for client support. The port number identifies the port reserved for proxy activity on your network, and can be a value from 0 to 65535.
			Idle Timeout		Default = **0270**	The time period, in seconds, after which an idle TCP print data connection is closed (default is 270 seconds, 0 disables the timeout).

Copy menu (MFP only)

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Copy menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-10 Copy menu (MFP only)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
Sides	Original Sides		1-sided* 2-sided	Use to indicate whether the original document is printed on one or both sides.
	Output Sides		1-sided 2-sided	Use to indicate whether the copies should be printed on one or both sides.
Color/Black			Automatically detect* Color Black/Gray	Select how the copy should be printed. Automatically detect: Prints color documents in color, and black and white documents in black and white. For mixed documents, the printer will determine whether to print in color or black and white. Color: Prints documents in color. Black: Prints documents in black and white or grayscale.
Quick Sets and Defaults			Load Save	
Options	Sides	Original Sides	1-sided 2-sided	
		Output Sides	1-sided 2-sided	
	Color/Black		Automatically detect* Color Black/Gray	Select how the copy should be printed. Automatically detect: Prints color documents in color, and black and white documents in black and white. For mixed documents, the printer will determine whether to print in color or black and white. Color: Prints documents in color. Black: Prints documents in black and white or grayscale.

Table 5-10 Copy menu (MFP only) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
	Staple		None Top left angled Top right angled	Sets the position of the staple on the page.
	Scan mode		Standard Document Book Mode 2–sided ID	Book Mode allows the user to scan pages from a book. 2–sided ID allows the user to scan both sides of an identification card onto one sheet.
	Reduce/Enlarge		Automatic* Manual	Use to scale the size of the document up or down. Select one of the predefined percentages, or select the Scaling field and type a percentage between 25 and 400. The Auto option automatically scales the image to fit the paper size in the tray. NOTE: To reduce the image, select a scaling percentage that is less than 100. To enlarge the image, select a scaling percentage that is greater than 100.
	Original Size		Select from a list of sizes that the printer supports.	Describes the page size of the original document.
	Paper Selection		Paper Size Paper Type Paper Tray	For the best color and image quality, select the appropriate paper type from the control panel menu or from the print driver.
	Booklet	Booklet Format	(Checkbox)	Use to copy two or more pages onto one sheet of paper so you can fold the sheets in the center to form a booklet. The printer arranges the pages in the correct order. For example, if the original document has eight pages, the printer prints pages 1 and 8 on the same sheet.

Table 5-10 Copy menu (MFP only) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
	Content Orientation		Auto Detect Portrait* Landscape	For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top. In the Orientation area, select whether the original document has a portrait or landscape orientation.
	Pages per Sheet		One (1) Two (2) Four (4)	Copies multiple pages onto one sheet of paper. NOTE: Before using this screen, use the Content Orientation screen to describe the original document orientation.
	Image Adjustment	Sharpness		Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.
		Darkness		Use to improve the overall quality of the copy. Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.
		Contrast		Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.
		Background Cleanup		Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.

Table 5-10 Copy menu (MFP only) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
	Optimize Text/Picture	Manually Adjust*	Optimize For: Text Mixed Printed picture Photograph	Optimizes the output for a particular type of content. You can optimize the output for text, printed pictures, or a mixture. Manually Adjust: Use to manually optimize the setting for text or for pictures. Text: Use to optimize the text portion of the copy where text and/or pictures are on the original. Printed picture: Use for line drawings and preprinted images, such as magazine clippings or pages from books. Photograph: Best suited for making copies of printed pictures.
	Edge-to-Edge		Normal (recommended)* Edge-to-Edge output	Use to avoid shadows that can appear along the edges of copies when the original document is printed close to the edges.
	Erase Edges	Front Side	Use inches Apply same width to all edges Top edge Bottom edge Left edge Right edge	Use this menu item to remove blemishes, such as dark borders or staple marks, by cleaning the specified edges of the scanned image. In each of the text boxes enter the measurements, in millimeters or inches, for how much of the top edge, bottom edge, left edge, and right edge to clean.
		Back Side	Use inches Mirror front side Top edge Bottom edge Left edge Right edge	

Table 5-10 Copy menu (MFP only) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
	Collate		Collate on (Sets in page order)* Collate off (Pages grouped)	If you are making more than one copy, select the Collate on (Sets in page order) option to assemble the pages in the correct order in each set of copies. Select the Collate off (Pages grouped) option to group the same pages together. For example, if you are making five copies of an original document that has two pages, all five first pages would be grouped together and all five second pages would be grouped together.
	Multi-feed Detection		Enabled* Disabled	This setting stops the scanning process if it detects multiple-page feeds through the document feeder.
	Output Bin		Automatically select Standard bin Upper bin Middle bin	

Scan menu (MFP only)

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Scan menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-11 Scan menu (MFP)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Scan to Email					
Scan to Network Folder	Folder Paths				
	File Name				
	Quick Sets and Defaults				
	Options	File Type and Resolution			
		Original sides		1-sided 2-sided	Use to describe the layout for each side of the original document. First select whether the original document is printed on one side or both sides. Then touch the Orientation setting to indicate whether the original has portrait or landscape orientation. If it is printed on both sides, also select the 2-sided format that matches the original document.
		Color/Black		Automatically detect* Color Black/Gray Black	Use to enable or disable color scanning. Automatically detect: Automatically scans documents in color if at least one page has color. Color: Scans documents in color. Black/Gray: Scans documents in grayscale. Black: Scans documents in black and white with a compressed file size.
		Original Size		Select from a list of supported sizes.	Use to describe the page size of the original document.

Table 5-11 Scan menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Content Orientation	Orientation	Automatically Detect Portrait* Landscape	For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top. In the Orientation area, select whether the original document has a portrait or landscape orientation.
		Image Adjustment	Darkness		Use to improve the overall quality of the copy. Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.
			Contrast		Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.
			Background Cleanup		Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.
			Sharpness		Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.
			Automatic Tone		The printer automatically adjusts the Darkness, Contrast, and Background Cleanup settings to the most appropriate for the scanned document.

Table 5-11 Scan menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
			Default		Select this to make the selected Image Adjustment setting the default value.
		Optimize Text/Picture			
		Erase Edges		Use inches Back side erase Front side erase	Use this menu item to remove blemishes, such as dark borders or staple marks, by cleaning the specified edges of the scanned image. In each of the text boxes enter the measurements, in millimeters or inches, for how much of the top edge, bottom edge, left edge, and right edge to clean.
		Cropping Options		Do not crop Crop to content Crop to paper	Use this menu item to automatically crop the scan for digital sending. Use the Crop to content option to scan the smallest possible area that has detectable content.
		Automatically Straighten			
		Blank Page Suppression		Disabled Enabled	Use to prevent blank pages in the original document from being included in the output document.
		Multi-feed Detection		Disabled Enabled*	This setting stops the scanning process if it detects multiple-page feeds through the document feeder.
		Create Multiple Files		Disabled Enabled	Enable this item to scan pages into separate files based on a specified page limit. A page is one side of an original document. JPEG and TIFF have a limit of one page per file.

Table 5-11 Scan menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Notification		Do not notify Notify when job completes Notify only if job fails Print E-mail	Configure to receive notification about the status of a sent document. Do not notify: Turns off this feature. Notify when job completes: Select to receive notification for this job only. Notify only if job fails: Select to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully. Print: Select to print the notification at this printer. E-mail: Select to receive the notification to an email account.
			Include Thumbnail		Select Include Thumbnail to receive a thumbnail image of the first page of the job in your notification.
			Notification Email		E-mail: Select to receive the notification in an email. Touch the text box following Email Address, and then type the email address for the notification.
Scan to USB Drive	Destination				
	Job Name				
	Options	File Type and Resolution			

Table 5-11 Scan menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Original sides		1-sided 2-sided	Use to describe the layout for each side of the original document. First select whether the original document is printed on one side or both sides. Then touch the Orientation setting to indicate whether the original has portrait or landscape orientation. If it is printed on both sides, also select the 2-sided format that matches the original document.
		Color/Black		Automatically detect* Color Black/Gray Black	Use to enable or disable color scanning. Automatically detect: Automatically scans documents in color if at least one page has color. Color: Scans documents in color. Black/Gray: Scans documents in grayscale. Black: Scans documents in black and white with a compressed file size.
		Original Size		Select from a list of supported sizes.	Use to describe the page size of the original document.
		Content Orientation		Automatically detect Portrait* Landscape	For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top. In the Orientation area, select whether the original document has a portrait or landscape orientation.

Table 5-11 Scan menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Image Adjustment	Darkness		Use to improve the overall quality of the copy. Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.
			Contrast		Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.
			Background Cleanup		Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.
			Sharpness		Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.
			Automatic Tone		The printer automatically adjusts the Darkness, Contrast, and Background Cleanup settings to the most appropriate for the scanned document.
			Default		Select this to make the selected Image Adjustment setting the default value.

Table 5-11 Scan menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Optimize Text/Picture		Manually Adjust* Text Printed picture Photograph	Use to optimize the output for a particular type of content. You can optimize the output for text, printed pictures, or a mixture. Manually Adjust: Use to manually optimize the setting for text or for pictures. Text: Use to optimize the text portion of the copy when text and/or pictures are on the original. Printed picture: Use for line drawings and preprinted images, such as magazine clippings or pages from books. Photograph: Best suited for making copies of printed pictures.
		Erase Edges		Use inches Back side erase Front side erase	Use this menu item to remove blemishes, such as dark borders or staple marks, by cleaning the specified edges of the scanned image. In each of the text boxes enter the measurements, in millimeters or inches, for how much of the top edge, bottom edge, left edge, and right edge to clean.
		Cropping Options		Do not crop Crop to content Crop to paper	Use this menu item to automatically crop the scan for digital sending. Use the Crop to content option to scan the smallest possible area that has detectable content.
		Automatically Straighten			
		Blank Page Suppression		Disabled Enabled	Use to prevent blank pages in the original document from being included in the output document.

Table 5-11 Scan menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Multi-feed Detection		Disabled Enabled*	This setting stops the scanning process if it detects multiple-page feeds through the document feeder.
		Create Multiple Files		Disabled Enabled	Enable this item to scan pages into separate files based on a specified page limit. A page is one side of an original document. JPEG and TIFF have a limit of one page per file.
		Notification		Do not notify Notify when job completes Notify only if job fails Print E-mail	Configure to receive notification about the status of a sent document. Do not notify: Turns off this feature. Notify when job completes: Select to receive notification for this job only. Notify only if job fails: Select to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully. Print: Select to print the notification at this printer. E-mail: Select to receive the notification to an email account.
			Include Thumbnail		Select Include Thumbnail to receive a thumbnail image of the first page of the job in your notification.
			Notification Email		E-mail: Select to receive the notification in an email. Touch the text box following Email Address, and then type the email address for the notification.

Table 5-11 Scan menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Scan to Job Storage				Folder	
				Job Name	
Scan to SharePoint					

Fax menu (fax models only)

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Fax menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-12 Fax menu (fax models only)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
Dialing Prefix				
Fax Recipients				
Quick Sets and Defaults				
Options	Original Sides		1-sided* 2-sided	Use to describe the layout for each side of the original document. First select whether the original document is printed on one side or both sides. Then touch the Orientation setting to indicate whether the original has portrait or landscape orientation. If it is printed on both sides, also select the 2-sided format that matches the original document.
	Resolution		Standard (100 x 200dpi)* Fine (200 x 200dpi) Superfine (300 x 300dpi)	Select the resolution for outgoing faxes. If you increase the resolution, faxes might be clearer but they could transmit more slowly. Some file types, for example a file that will be processed with OCR, require a specific resolution. When these file types are selected, the Resolution setting might be automatically changed to a valid value.
	Original Size		Select from a list of sizes that the printer supports.	Use to describe the page size of the original document.
	Content Orientation	Orientation	Portrait* Landscape	For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait: This setting means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape: This setting means the long edge of the page is along the top.

Table 5-12 Fax menu (fax models only) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
	Image Adjustment	Darkness		Use to improve the overall quality of the copy. Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.
		Contrast		Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.
		Background Cleanup		Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.
		Sharpness		Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.
		Automatic Tone		The printer automatically adjusts the Darkness, Contrast, and Background Cleanup settings to the most appropriate for the scanned document.
		Default		Select this to make the selected Image Adjustment setting the default value.

Table 5-12 Fax menu (fax models only) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
	Optimize Text/Picture	Manually Adjust*	Optimize For: Text Printed picture Photograph	Optimizes the output for a particular type of content. You can optimize the output for text, printed pictures, or a mixture. Manually Adjust: Use to manually optimize the setting for text or for pictures. Text: Use to optimize the text portion of the copy where text and/or pictures are on the original. Printed picture: Use for line drawings and preprinted images, such as magazine clippings or pages from books. Photograph: Best suited for making copies of printed pictures.
	Blank Page Suppression		Disabled* Enabled	Prevents blank pages in the original document from being included in the output document.
	Multi-feed Detection		Disabled Enabled*	Use this feature to prevent multiple pages being fed through the document feeder during document scans.
	Notification		Do not notify* Notify when job completes Notify only if job fails	Use to receive notification about the status of a sent document. Do not notify: Turns off this feature. Notify when job completes: Select to receive notification for this job only. Notify only if job fails: Select to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully.
			Print E-mail	Print: Select to print the notification at this printer. E-mail: Select to receive the notification in an email. Touch the text box following Email Address, and then enter the email address for the notification.

Table 5-12 Fax menu (fax models only) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
		Include Thumbnail		When sending an analog fax, select Include Thumbnail to receive a thumbnail image of the first page of the fax in your notification.
		Notification E-mail address		Provide the email address that will receive notifications.
		2-Sided Format	Book-style* Flip-style	Use to configure the default style for 2-sided print jobs. If the Book-style option is selected, the back side of the page is printed the right way up. This option is for print jobs that are bound along the left edge. If the Flip-style option is selected, the back side of the page is printed upside-down. This option is for print jobs that are bound along the top edge.

Print menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Print menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-13 Print Options menu

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Print from Job Storage	Stored Job to Print	Untitled Stored Faxes	Print a job stored on the printer.
Print from USB Drive	Stored Job to Print	Choose file to print on USB drive.	Print a job stored on a USB drive.
Fax Polling	Fax Polling Number		

Supplies menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Supplies menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-14 Supplies menu

First level	Values	Description
Supplies Summary		
Black Cartridge	Status	
Cyan Cartridge	Order HP Part	
Magenta Cartridge	Pages Printed	
Yellow Cartridge	Approximate Pages Remaining	
Toner Collection Unit	Status	
Transfer Kit	Order HP Part	
Fuser Kit		
Document Feeder Kit		
Stapler 1		

Trays menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Trays menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-15 Trays menu

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Tray 1 Tray 2–x	Size	Select paper size from a list of supported sizes.	Choose the paper size for the tray
	Type	Select paper type from a list of supported types.	Choose the paper type for the tray.

Troubleshooting menu

To display: At the product control panel, select the Support Tools menu, and then select the Troubleshooting menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-16 Troubleshooting

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Configuration/Status Pages	• Settings Menu Map • Current Settings Page • Configuration Page • How to Connect Page • Supplies Status Page • sage Page • File Directory Page • Web Services Status Page • Color Usage Job Log				Select the configuration/Status reports to review, and then touch the Print or View button.
Reports					
Other Pages	• Demonstration Page • RGB Samples • CMYK Samples • PCL Font List • PS Font List				
Event Log				Print	Prints the 50 most recent events in the Event Log. For each event, the printed log shows the error number, page count, error code, and description or personality.
Paper Path Page				View Print	Shows how many pages were printed from each tray.

Table 5-16 Troubleshooting (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Fax (Fax is optional)	Fax T.30 Trace	Print T.30 Report		Print	Use to print or configure the fax T.30 trace report. T.30 is the standard that specifies handshaking, protocols, and error correction between fax machines.
		When to Print Report		Never automatically print* Print after every fax Print only after fax send jobs Print after any fax error Print only after fax send errors Print only after fax receive errors	Configure the T.30 report to print after certain events. You can choose to print the report after every fax job, every fax job sent, every fax job received, every send error, or every receive error.
	Fax V.34			Normal* Off	Use to disable V.34 modulations if several fax failures have occurred or if phone line conditions require it.
	Fax Speaker Mode			Normal* Diagnostic	Used by a technician to evaluate and diagnose fax issues by listening to the sounds of fax modulations
	Fax Log Entries			On Off*	The standard fax log includes basic information such as the time and whether the fax was successful. The detailed fax log shows the intermediate results of the redial process not shown in the standard fax log.
Print Quality Pages	Print Fuser Test Page			Print	Use to print pages that help you resolve problems with print quality.
Diagnostic Tests					
	Continuous Scan			2-sided	

Table 5-16 Troubleshooting (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
	Run Fax Test			Start	Use this menu to perform a test on specific components within the product to determine whether the components are functioning correctly.
Retrieve Diagnostic Data				Insert a US drive into the USB port. The exported data might contain personally identifiable information.	Create files that contain information about the product that can help identify the cause of problems.
Generate Debug Data				Start	

Maintenance menu

Backup/Restore menu

To display: At the product control panel, select Support Tools and then Maintenance, and then select the Backup/Restore menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-17 Backup/Restore menu

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
Backup Data	Enable Scheduled Backups	Backup Time	Enter a time	
		Days Between Backups	Enter the number of days	
	Backup Now			
	Export Last Backup			
Restore Data			Insert a USB drive that contains the backup file.	

Calibration/Cleaning menu

To display: At the product control panel, select the Maintenance menu, and then select the **Calibrate/Cleaning** menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-18 Calibrate/Cleaning menu

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Calibration/Cleaning Page		Print	Use to process the cleaning page that was created by using the Create Cleaning Page menu. The process takes up to 1.5 minutes.
Calibration		Start	The product automatically calibrates itself at various times. However, you can calibrate the product immediately if you see problems with print quality. Use this feature to perform a full calibration, which can take up to three minutes. Use this calibration if the color layers seem to be shifted on the page. Before calibrating the product, make sure that the **Ready** indicator displays on the control-panel display. If a job is in progress, the calibration occurs when that job is complete.
Delay Calibration at Wake/Power On		No Delay Delay 15 minutes	Controls the timing of power-on calibration when the product wakes up or is turned on. Wake: Select if you are not using the feature and want to print jobs immediately when the product wakes up or is turned on, before calibration begins. No: The product will calibrate immediately when it wakes up or is turned on. The product will not print any jobs until it finishes calibrating. Yes: Enables the product that is asleep to accept print jobs before it calibrates. It might start calibrating before it has printed all the jobs it has received. This option allows quicker printing when coming out of sleep mode or when you turn the product on, but print quality might be reduced. **NOTE:** For the best results, allow the product to calibrate before printing. Print jobs performed before calibration might not be of the highest quality.

USB Firmware Upgrade menu

To display: At the product control panel, select the Maintenance menu, and then select the **USB Firmware Upgrade** menu.

Insert a USB storage device with a firmware upgrade bundle into the USB port, and follow the on-screen instructions.

Clear paper jams

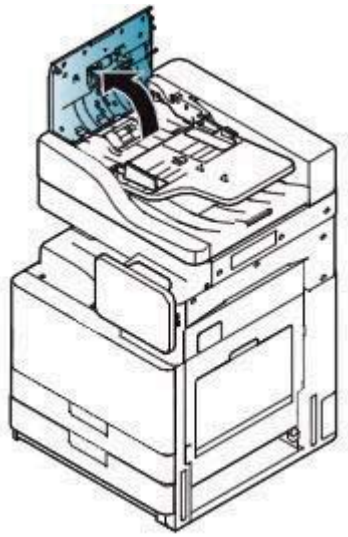
Clearing original document jams

When an original becomes jammed while passing through the Flow ADF, an error message displays on the control panel.

Original jam in front of scanner

1. Remove any remaining paper from the Flow ADF.
2. Open the Flow ADF cover.

Figure 5-29 Open the Flow ADF cover

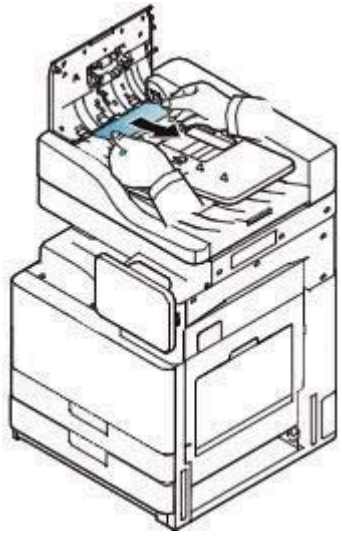


CAUTION: To avoid tearing the document, remove the jammed original slowly and gently.

NOTE: To prevent document jams, use the scanner glass for thick, thin, or mixed paper-type originals.

3. Gently remove the jammed paper from the Flow ADF.

Figure 5-30 Remove jam from the Flow ADF

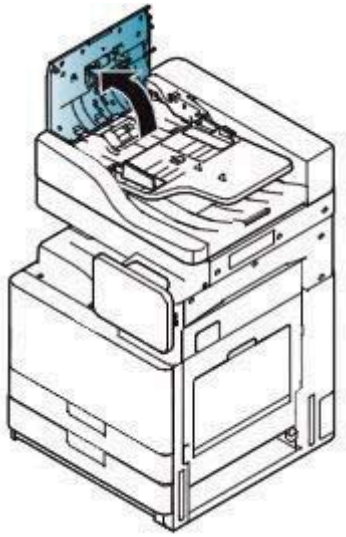


4. Close the Flow ADF cover.

Original jam inside of scanner

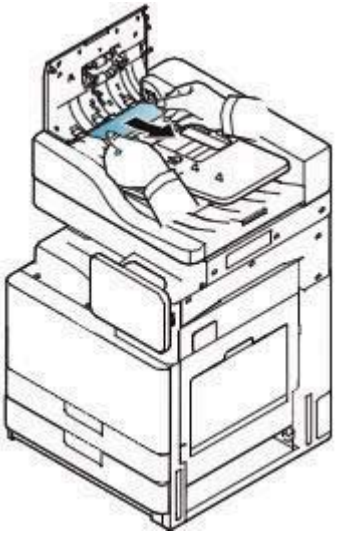
1. Remove any remaining paper from the Flow ADF.
2. Open the Flow ADF cover.

Figure 5-31 Open the Flow ADF cover



3. Gently remove the jammed paper from the Flow ADF.

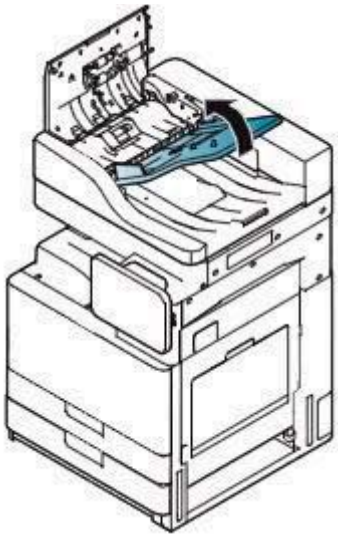
Figure 5-32 Remove jam from the Flow ADF



If there is no paper in this area, go to step 4.

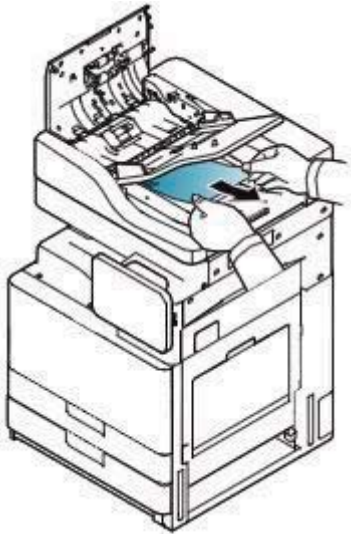
4. Open the input tray.

Figure 5-33 Open input tray



5. Pull the jammed paper gently out of the Flow ADF.

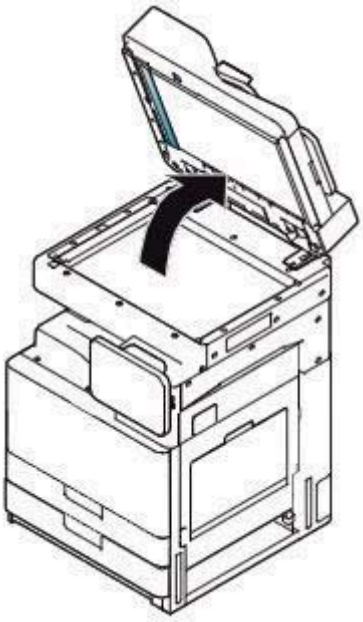
Figure 5-34 Remove jam from the Flow ADF



If there is no paper in this area, go to step 6.

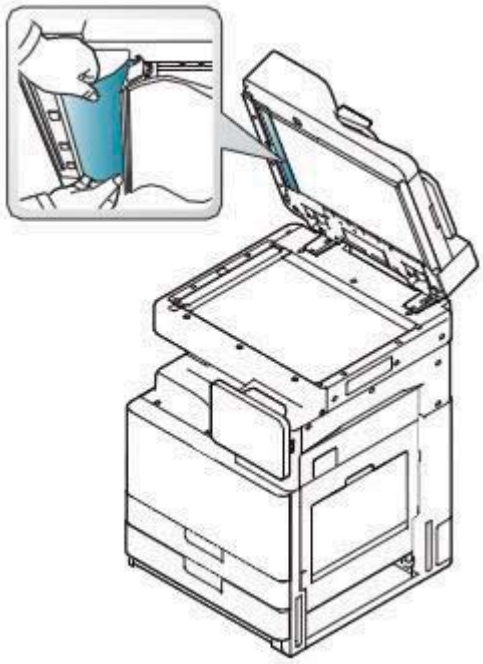
6. Close the Flow ADF cover and the Flow ADF input tray.
7. Open the Flow ADF.

Figure 5-35 Open the Flow ADF



8. Grasp the jammed paper and remove it from the feed area by pulling it with both hands.

Figure 5-36 Remove jam from the feed area



9. Close the Flow ADF.

Clearing paper jams

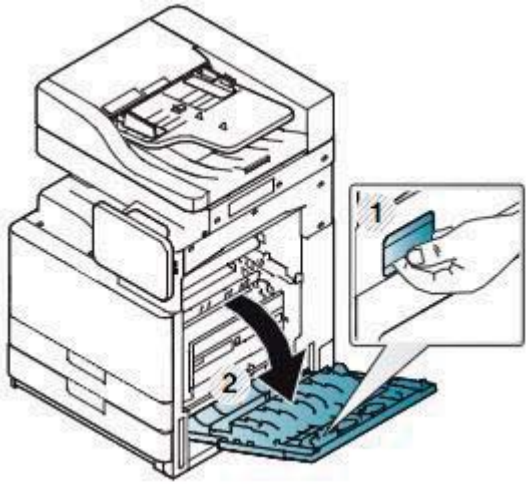
When a paper jam occurs, an error message displays on the control panel.

Paper jam in Tray 2 or 3

⚠ CAUTION: The fuser area is hot. Use caution when removing paper from the printer.

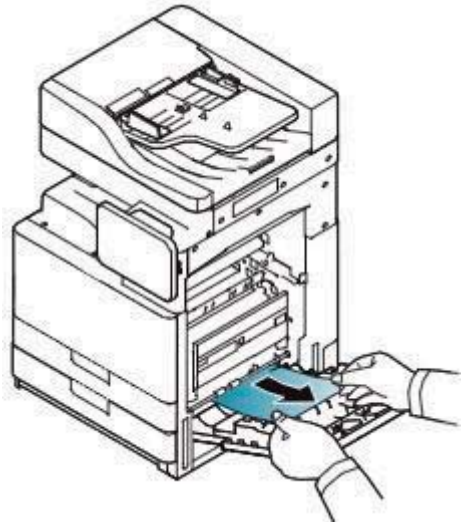
1. Open the right door.

Figure 5-37 Open right door



2. Remove the jammed paper by gently pulling it straight out.

Figure 5-38 Remove jam

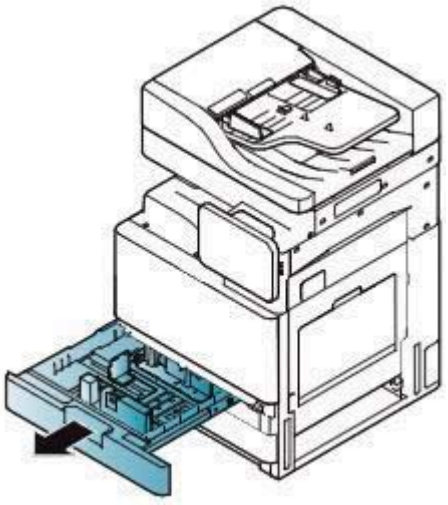


Close the right door. If there is no paper in this area, go to step 3.

NOTE: To avoid tearing the paper, pull the jammed paper out slowly and gently. The following steps describe how to clear the jam.

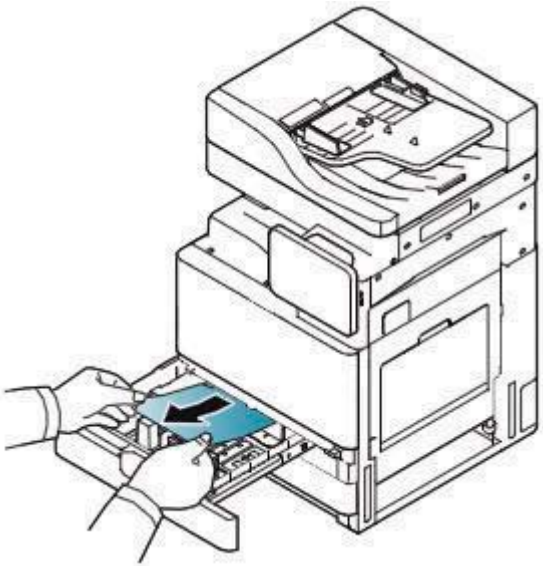
3. Remove Tray 2 or 3.

Figure 5-39 Remove tray



4. Remove the jammed paper from the printer.

Figure 5-40 Remove jam

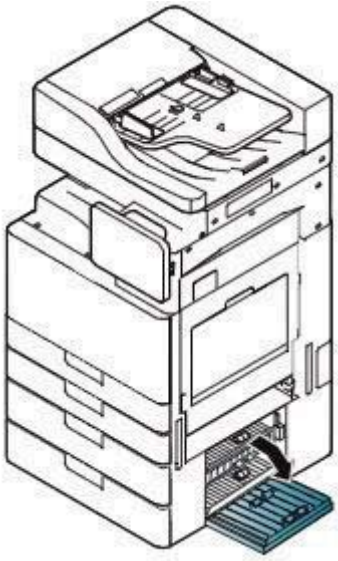


5. Insert Tray 2 or 3 back into the machine until it is firmly seated. Printing automatically resumes.

Paper jam in Tray 4 or 5

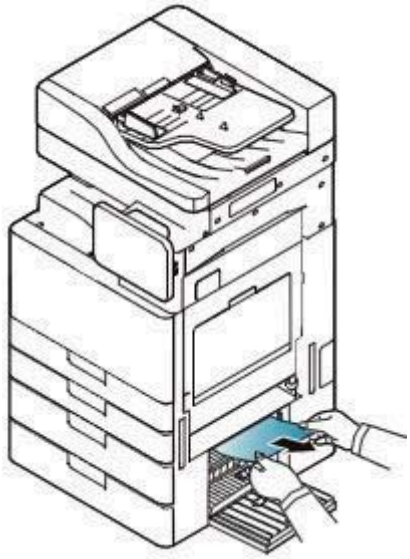
1. Open the right bottom door of the dual cassette feeder.

Figure 5-41 Open bottom right door



2. Remove the jammed paper by gently pulling it straight out.

Figure 5-42 Remove jam



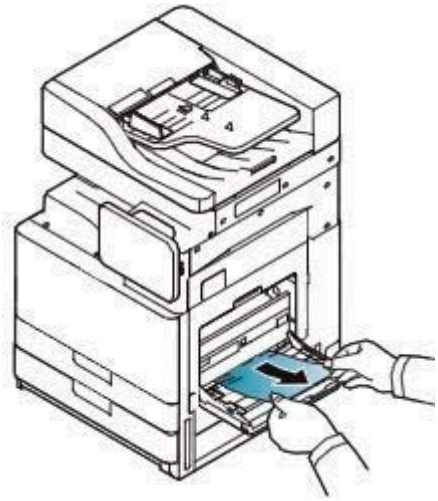
Close the dual cassette feeder right bottom door. If there is no paper in this area, go to step 3.

3. Remove Tray 4 or 5.
4. Remove the jammed paper from the printer.
5. Insert Tray 4 or 5 back into the machine until it is firmly seated. Printing automatically resumes.

Paper jam in the Tray 1

1. If the paper is not feeding properly, pull the paper out of the machine.

Figure 5-43 Remove paper



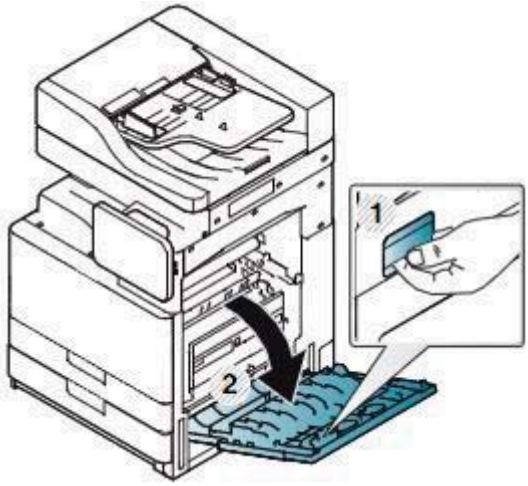
2. Open and close the front door to resume printing.

Paper jam inside the printer (jam feed 1, jam feed 2)

⚠ CAUTION: The fuser area is hot. Use caution when removing paper from the machine.

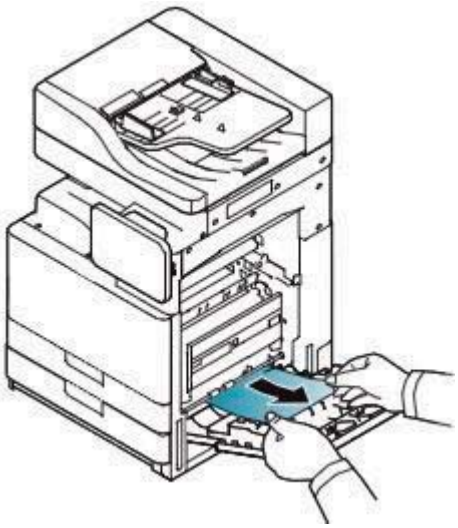
1. Open the right door.

   Figure 5-44 Open right door

2. Remove the jammed paper by gently pulling it straight out.

   Figure 5-45 Remove jam

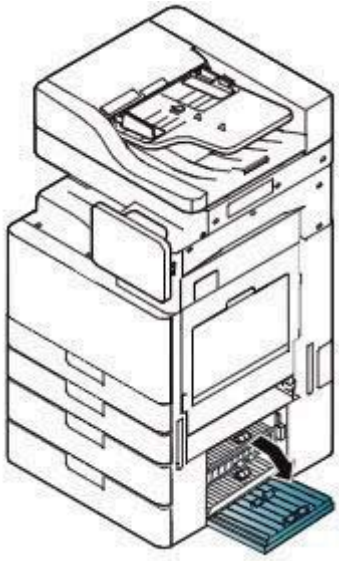
   

3. Close the right door.

Paper jam inside the printer (jam feed 3, jam feed 4)

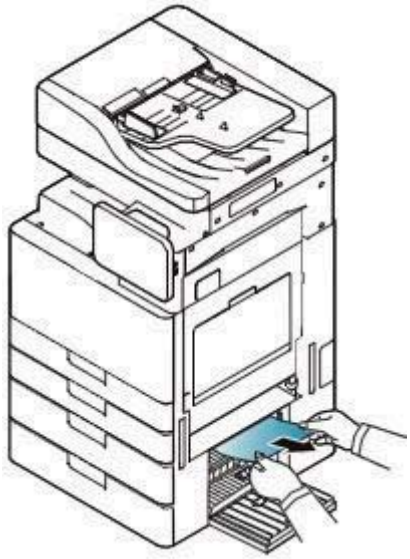
1. Open the bottom right door of the dual cassette feeder.

Figure 5-46 Open right door



2. Remove the jammed paper by gently pulling it straight out.

Figure 5-47 Remove jam



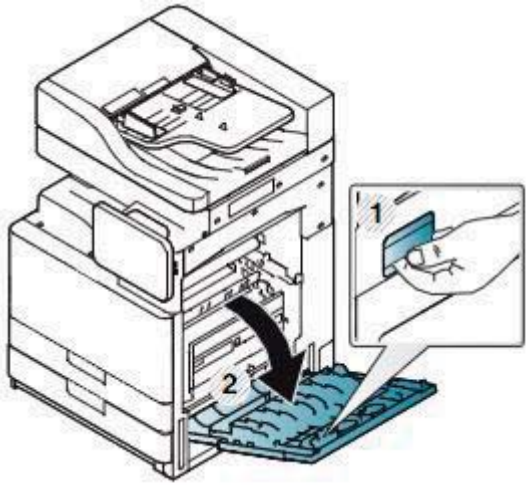
3. Close the dual cassette feeder right bottom door.

Paper jam inside the printer (jam registration)

⚠ CAUTION: The fuser area is hot. Use caution when removing paper from the machine.

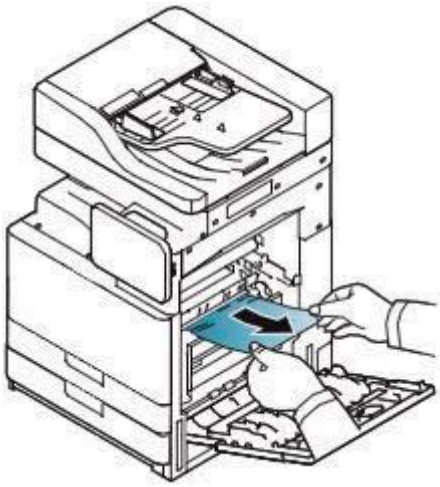
1. Open the right door.

Figure 5-48 Open right door



2. Remove the jammed paper by gently pulling it straight out.

Figure 5-49 Remove jam



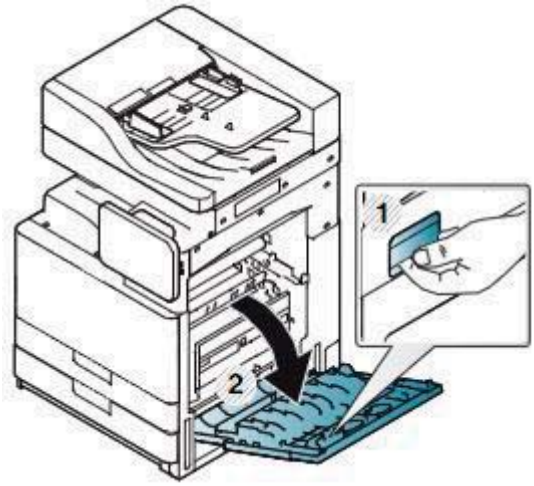
3. Close the right door.

Paper jam inside the printer (jam at fuser out)

⚠ CAUTION: The fuser area is hot. Use caution when removing paper from the machine.

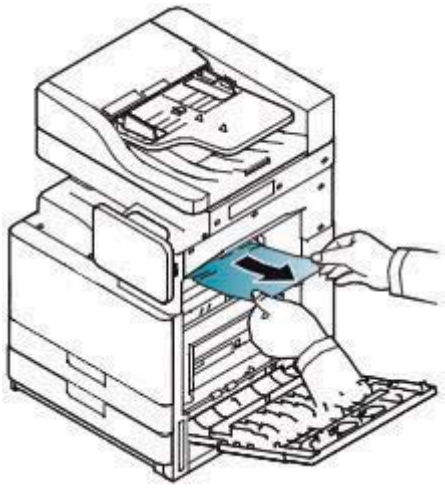
1. Open the right door.

Figure 5-50 Open right door



2. Open the fuser cover. Remove the jammed paper by gently pulling it straight out.

Figure 5-51 Remove jam

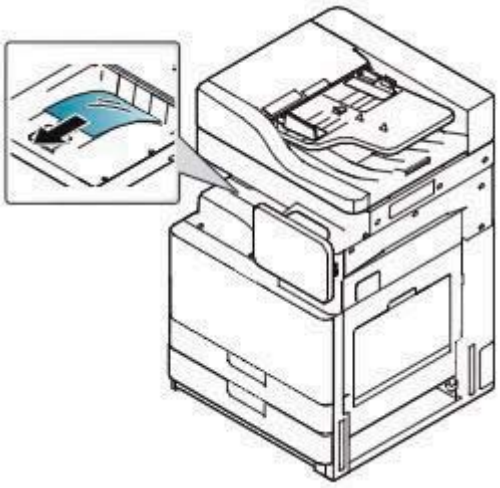


3. Close the fuser cover and the right door.

Paper jam in output area (jam output face down)

1. Gently pull the paper out of the output tray.

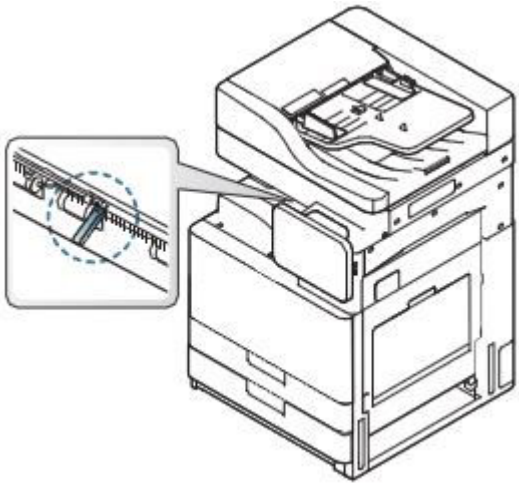
Figure 5-52 Remove paper



2. Open and close the front door. Printing automatically resumes.

   If the paper jam persists, make sure the bin full sensor is unfolded. The bin full sensor is located in front of the output tray.

   Figure 5-53 Bin full sensor



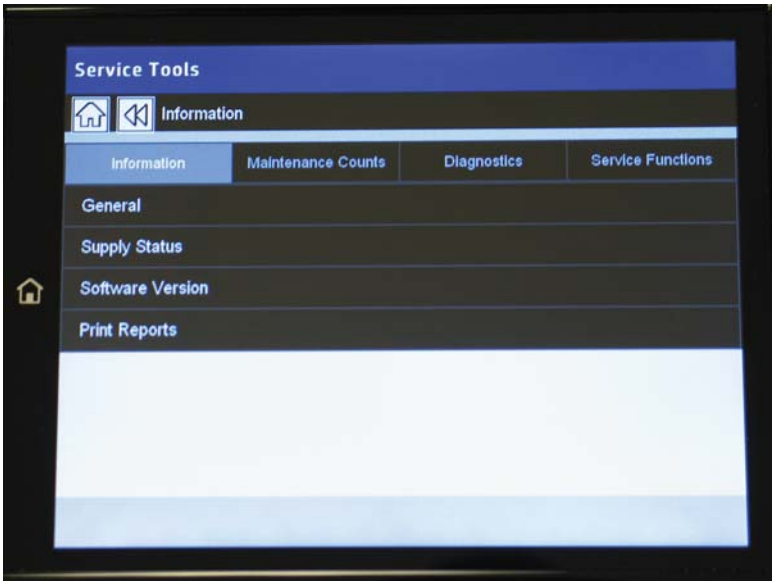
Service mode (tech mode)

Entering service mode

To enter service mode

1. From the control panel, select **Support tools** and then **Service**.
2. Enter the Service PIN ID.
   - ▲ ID: 04082517
3. Select **Service tools**.

Figure 5-54 Service tools view



Service mode menu tree

Figure 5-55 Information

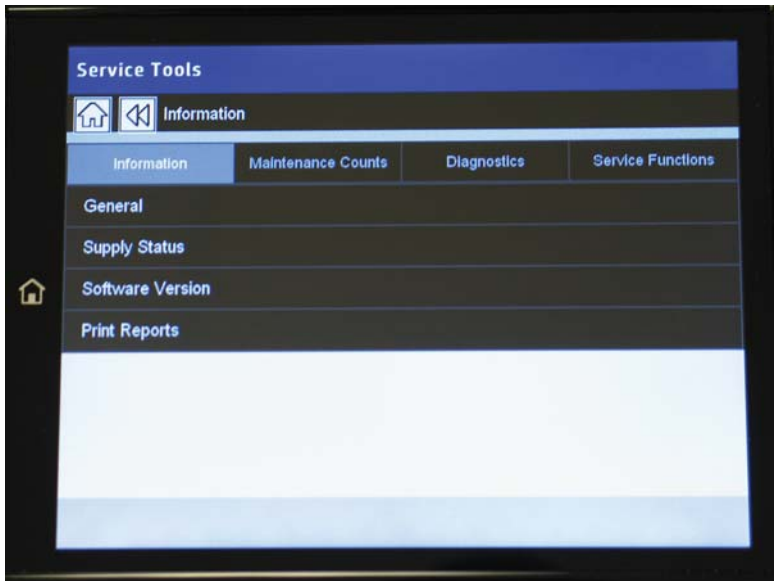


Table 5-19 Information

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
Information	General	Engine Board Serial Number	
	Supply Status	Customer Replacement Unit	Toner (K)
		Field Replacement Unit	Imaging Unit (K)
			Development Unit (K)
			TCU
			Paper transfer belt (PTB)
			Fuser
			Tray x rollers
			Flow ADF Roller
	Software Version	System Firmware Version	
		Main Firmware Version	
		Engine Firmware Version	
		Boot ROM Version	
		File System Version	
		Flow ADF Firmware Version	
		Finisher Version	
		Scanner Version	

Table 5-19 Information (continued)

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	
		Scan Control Version		
		Tray 2 Version		
		Tray 3 Version		
		Tray 4 Version		
		Tray 5 Version		
		Tray 6 Version		
		EP Version		
		Fuser Version		
		TR Version		
		Toner Version		
		Print CMS Version		
		Copy CMS Version		
		Scan CMS Version		
	Print Reports	Supplies Information		
		Auto Toning History		

Figure 5-56 Maintenance counts

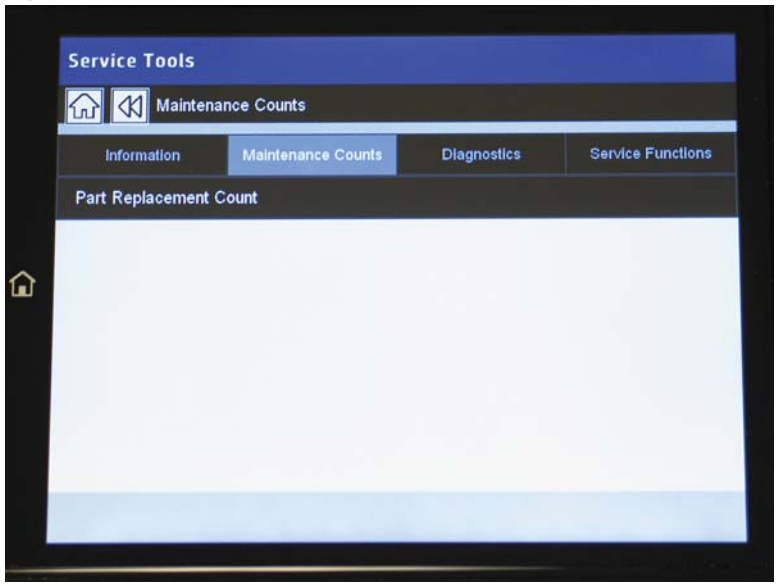


Table 5-20 Maintenance counts

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
Maintenance counts	Part Replacement Count	Toner Cartridge (K)	
		Imaging Unit (K)	

Table 5-20 Maintenance counts (continued)

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
		Development Unit (K)	
		Paper Transfer Belt (PTB)	
		Fuser	
		Tray x rollers	
		Flow ADF Pickup Roller	

Figure 5-57 Diagnostics

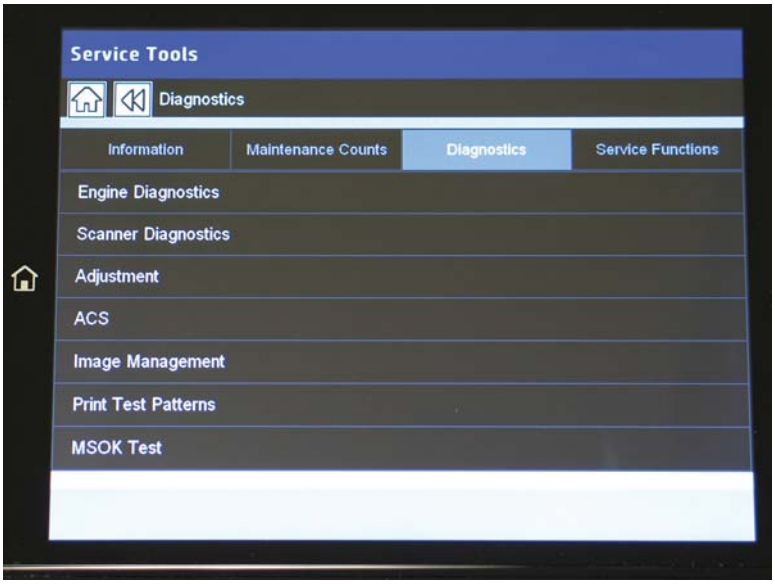


Table 5-21 Diagnostics

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
Diagnostics	Engine Diagnostics	Engine NVM Initialization	
		Engine NVM Read/Write	
		Engine Test Routines	
	Scanner Diagnostics	Shading Test	Shade and Print Report
			Print Last Shade Report
			Shade and Print Report (Flow ADF) (dn/z models)
			Print Last Shade Report (Flow ADF) (dn/z models)
		Scanner/Flow ADF (dn/z models) NVM Read/Write	
		Scanner/Flow ADF (dn/z models) Test Routines	
	Adjustment	Print Adjustment	Image Position

Table 5-21 Diagnostics (continued)

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
			Print Test Patterns
		Copy Adjustment	Image Position
		Scan Area Adjustment	Automatic Adjustment
			Manual Adjustment
		Flow ADF Adjustment	Automatic Adjustment
			Manual Adjustment
	Image Management	Auto Tone Adjustment Activation	Normal
			Full
	Print Test Patterns		

Figure 5-58 Service functions

Table 5-22 Service functions

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	
Service Functions	Main Memory Clear			
	Debug Log	Job Status		
		Details		
	Capture Log	All		
		Period	Start Date/End Date	
	Transfer Assembly Control Mode	T2 Control Mode	Paper Group/Paper Side/ Paper Direction/T2 PWM	
	Envelope Rotate	Off		

Table 5-22 Service functions (continued)

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	
		90 degrees		
		180 degrees		

Information

General

Information > General

This menu displays the following information:

- Machine serial number

Supply status

Customer replacement unit (CRU)

Information > Supply Status > Customer Replacement Unit

- This menu displays the printer's customer replacement unit status. Users can select one item in the list to check the information of the selected unit.

Field replacement unit (FRU)

Information > Supply Status > Field Replacement Unit

- This menu displays the printer's field replacement unit status. Users can select one item in the list to check the information of the selected unit.

In this menu, there are five columns: Item, Threshold, Status, Count, and Maximum Life.

- Status: This column shows the current status of the selected item.
  - OK: The current count is smaller than the default warning value.
  - Check: The current count is bigger than the default warning value.
  - OFF: The current count exceeds the maximum life.
- Count: This column shows the current count of the selected item.
- Maximum Life: This column shows the maximum capacity of the selected item.

The technician can edit the default warning value within the given threshold.

Selecting some items will enable the reset button to reset the current count to zero after replacing the unit.

Software version

Information > Software Version

- This menu displays the version of the software installed on the printer.

Print reports

Information > Print Reports

This menu displays reports that can be printed from the system. The following reports are available to print:

- Supplies Information
- Auto Toning History

Information > Print Reports > Auto Toning History

NOTE: TRC means Tone Reproduction Curve.

This report shows a history of execution of the TRC control. The TRC control preserves color consistency against changes in supplies resulting from long-time use and environmental change. The purpose of the history report is to check if the TRC control is working normally.

- If the TRC control performs normally, **Pass** count must be a non-zero value and **Fail** count must be zero.
- If **Fail** count is not zero, check the image density sensor.

Maintenance counts

Part replacement count

Maintenance Counts > Part Replacement Count

- This menu displays the replacement counts for the system parts. Users can select one group and press **OK** to see the exact name of the part and the occurrence of the replacement.

  The following table shows replaceable parts groups of the system:

Unit	Item	Sensing Method
Toner Cartridge	Toner (Black)	Auto Sensing
Imaging Unit	Imaging Unit (Black)	Auto Sensing
Fuser	Fuser	Auto Sensing
Transfer	Transfer Roller	Count Clear
Roller	Tray 2 Roller	Count Clear
	Tray 3 Roller	Count Clear
	Tray 4 Roller	Count Clear
	Tray 5 Roller	Count Clear
Flow ADF Roller	Flow ADF Roller	Count Clear

Diagnostics

Engine diagnostics

Diagnostics > Engine Diagnostics > Engine NVM Initialization

- This menu initializes all engine NVM values to the default.

Diagnostics > Engine Diagnostics > Engine NVM Read/Write

Purpose	To change a configuration value for the engine firmware
Operation procedure	When the main **NVM Read/Write** window displays, users can navigate through the list of codes with descriptions and saved values. Users can also input a code through the text box to find a configuration value directly. After selecting one value, press the **Edit** button to open an interface for user input.

Code	Display	Meaning	Offset
109–0200	Standby Center Temperature		10/10
109–0201	Standby Side Temperature		10/10

Engine test routines

- Diagnostics > Engine Diagnostics > Engine Test Routines

Purpose	To perform test routines for the engine
Operation procedure	When the main Engine Test Routines window displays, users can navigate through the list of routines and descriptions that display. Users can directly input an EDC code through the text box to search for a routine. A maximum of three routines can be selected at the same time. After selecting one or more routines, press the **OK** button to open the test window. The selected routines will display and users can start/start the selected test routine.
Verification	N/A
Specification	N/A
Reference	N/A

Code	Display	Meaning
100-0044	OPC Motor K	Black OPC BLDC motor is on/off
100-0049	K OPC Motor Ready	Detects if black OPC BLDC motor is running at normal speed
100-0140	Duplex Motor Forward	Duplex motor forward on/off
100-0141	Duplex Motor Forward Slow	Duplex motor forward slow on/off
100-0142	Duplex Motor Forward Slowest	Duplex motor forward slowest on/off

Code	Display	Meaning
100-0160	Duplex Fan 1 Run	Start/stop duplex fan 1 run
100-0180	Duplex Fan 1 Run Ready	Detects if duplex fan 1 is running at normal speed
100-0200	Transfer Assembly Elevating Motor	Transfer assembly elevate motor on/off
100-0210	Tray 3 Elevating Motor	Tray 3 elevate motor on/off (optional)
100-0220	Tray 4 Elevating Motor	Tray 4 elevate motor on/off (optional)
100-0230	Tray 5 Elevating Motor	Tray 5 elevate motor on/off (optional)
100-0231	Tray 6 Elevating Motor	Tray 6 elevate motor on/off (optional)
100-0241	TCU LED	TCU LED on/off
100-0250	TCU Full Sensor	Detects if the TCU is full
100-0251	PTB TCU Full Sensor	Detect level of a PTB TCU bottle
100-0260	LVPS Fan Run	Start/stop LVPS fan run
100-0270	LVPS Fan Run Ready	Detects if LVPS fan is running at normal speed
100-0340	Feed Motor	Feed motor is on/off
100-0341	Feed Motor Slow	Feed motor slow is on/off
100-0342	Feed Motor Slowest	Feed motor slowest is on/off
100-0370	Tray 2 Pickup Motor	Tray 2 motor is on/off
100-0371	Tray 2 Pickup Motor Slow	Tray 2 motor slow on/off
100-0372	Tray 2 Pickup Motor Slowest	Tray 2 motor slowest on/off
100-0380	Tray 3 Pickup Motor	Tray 3 motor is on/off
100-0381	Tray 3 Pickup Motor Slow	Tray 3 motor slow on/off
100-0382	Tray 3 Pickup Motor Slowest	Tray 3 motor slowest on/off
100-0390	Tray 4 Pickup Motor	Tray 4 motor is on/off
100-0391	Tray 4 Pickup Motor Slow	Tray 4 motor slow on/off
100-0392	Tray 4 Pickup Motor Slowest	Tray 4 motor slowest on/off
100-0400	Tray 5 Pickup Motor	Tray 5 motor is on/off
100-0401	Tray 5 Pickup Motor Slow	Tray 5 motor slow on/off
100-0402	Tray 5 Pickup Motor Slowest	Tray 5 motor slowest on/off
100-0410	Registration Motor	Registration motor is on/off
100-0411	Registration Motor Slow	Registration motor slow on/off
100-0412	Registration Motor Slowest	Registration motor slowest on/off
100-0420	Tray 1 Motor	Tray 1 motor is on/off
100-0421	Tray 1 Motor Slow	Tray 1 motor slow on/off
100-0422	Tray 1 Motor Slowest	Tray 1 motor slowest on/off
100-0430	Output 2 Motor Forward	Output 2 motor is on/off

Code	Display	Meaning
100-0431	Output 2 Motor Forward Slow	Output 2 motor slow on/off
100-0432	Output 2 Motor Forward Slowest	Output 2 motor slowest on/off
100-0490	Duplex 2 Motor Forward	Duplex motor forward is on/off
100-0491	Duplex 2 Motor Forward Slow	Duplex motor forward slow is on/off
100-0492	Duplex 2 Motor Forward Slowest	Duplex motor forward slowest is on/off
100-0600	Return Motor Forward	Return motor forward is on/off
100-0601	Return Motor Forward Slow	Return motor forward slow is on/off
100-0602	Return Motor Forward Slowest	Return motor forward slowest is on/off
100-0603	Return Motor Reverse	Return motor reverse is on/off
100-0604	Return Motor Reverse Slow	Return motor reverse slow is on/off
100-0605	Return Motor Reverse Slowest	Return motor reverse slowest is on/off
100-0700	Tray 6 Pickup Motor	Tray 6 motor is on/off
100-0701	Tray 6 Pickup Motor Slow	Tray 6 motor slow on/off
100-0702	Tray 6 Pickup Motor Slowest	Tray 6 motor slowest on/off
101-0101	Tray 4 Shift Gate Solenoid	Tray 4 shift gate solenoid on/off
101-0140	Tray 4 Feed Motor	Tray 4 feed motor on/off
101-0150	Tray 5 Feed Motor	Tray 5 feed motor on/off
101-0151	Tray 5 Feed Motor Slow	Tray 5 feed motor slow on/off
101-0152	Tray 5 Feed Motor Slowest	Tray 5 feed motor slowest on/off
101-0160	Tray 6 Feed Motor	Tray 6 feed motor on/off
101-0161	Tray 6 Feed Motor Slow	Tray 6 feed motor slow on/off
101-0162	Tray 6 Feed Motor Slowest	Tray 6 feed motor slowest on/off
101-0190	Output Bin Full Sensor	Detects when paper is at output bin full sensor
101-0191	Output Bin 2 Full Sensor	Detects when paper is at output bin 2 full sensor
101-0206	Developer Suction Fan Run	Start/stop developer suction fan run
101-0207	Developer Suction Fan Run Ready	Detects if developer suction fan runs at normal speed
101-0270	Tray 1 Clutch	Tray 1 clutch on/off
101-0271	Tray 1 Solenoid	Tray 1 solenoid on/off
101-0280	Reverse Solenoid	Reverse solenoid on/off
102-0000	Tray 2 Home Position	Detects when Tray 2 is closed
102-0001	Tray 2 Lock Detect	Detect Tray 2 lock unit
102-0002	Tray 2 Lock Position	Check Tray 2 lock position
102-0010	Transfer Assembly Paper Empty Sensor	Detects when paper is in Tray 2
102-0041	Transfer Assembly Paper Size Read	Detects paper Tray 2 size.

Code	Display	Meaning
102-0050	Transfer Assembly Stack Height Sensor	Detects if paper in Tray 2 is elevated to the sensor
102-0070	Tray 3 Home Position	Detects when Tray 3 is closed
102-0071	Tray 3 Lock Detect	Detect Tray 3 lock unit
102-0072	Tray 3 Lock Position	Check Tray 3 lock position
102-0080	Tray 3 Paper Empty Sensor	Detects when paper is in Tray 3
102-0111	Tray 3 Paper Size Read	Detects paper Tray 3 size.
102-0120	Tray 3 Stack Height Sensor	Detects if paper in Tray 3 is elevated to the sensor
102-0140	Tray 4 Home Position	Detects when Tray 4 is closed
102-0141	Tray 4 Lock Detect	Detect Tray 4 lock unit
102-0142	Tray 4 Lock Position	Check Tray 4 lock position
102-0150	Tray 4 Paper Empty Sensor	Detect when paper is in Tray 4
102-0181	Tray 4 Paper Size Read	Detects Paper Tray 4 size.
102-0190	Tray 4 Stack Height Sensor	Detects if paper in Tray 4 is elevated to the sensor
102–0201	Tray 4 Level Sensor 1	Detects when the stack height of Tray 4 level sensor 1
102–0202	Tray 4 Level Sensor 2	Detects when the stack height of Tray 4 level sensor 2
102-0210	Tray 5 Home Position	Detect when Tray 5 is closed.
102-0211	Tray 5 Lock Detect	Detect Tray 5 lock unit
102-0212	Tray 5 Lock Position	Check Tray 5 lock position
102-0220	Tray 5 Paper Empty Sensor	Detects when paper is in Tray 5
102-0251	Tray 5 Paper Size Read	Detects Paper Tray 5 size
102-0260	Tray 5 Stack Height Sensor	Detects if paper in Tray 5 is elevated to the sensor
102–0271	Tray 5 Level Sensor 1	Detects when the stack height of Tray 5 level sensor 1
102–0272	Tray 5 Level Sensor 2	Detects when the stack height of Tray 5 level sensor 2
102–0273	Tray 5 Install Sensor 1	Detect when Tray 5 install sensor 1
102–0274	Tray 5 Install Sensor 2	Detect when Tray 5 install sensor 2
102-0280	Bypass Paper Empty Sensor	Detects when paper is in Bypass Tray (Tray 1)
102-0281	Bypass Paper Size Read	Detect Paper Tray 1 size
102-0292	Prefeed 1 Sensor	Detects when paper is at prefeed 1 sensor
102-0300	Tray 3 Feed Sensor (or Door Open)	Detects when paper is at Tray 3 feed sensor (optional)
102-0301	Prefeed 2 Sensor	Detects when paper is at prefeed 2 sensor
102-0320	Tray 4 Feed Sensor (or Door Open)	Detects when paper is at Tray 4 feed sensor (optional)

Code	Display	Meaning
102-0321	Prefeed 3 Sensor	Detects when paper is at prefeed 3 sensor
102-0330	Tray 4 Door Open Sensor	Detect when Tray 4 is closed
102-0343	Prefeed 4 Sensor	Detects when paper is at prefeed 4 sensor
102-0350	Tray 5 Door Open Sensor	Detect when Tray 5 is closed
102-0351	Tray 6 Door Open Sensor	Detect when Tray 6 is closed
102-0353	Prefeed 5 Sensor	Detects when paper is at Tray 6 feed sensor (optional)
102-0360	Registration Sensor	Detects when paper is at the registration sensor
102-0361	Fuser Out Sensor	Detects when paper is at the fuser out sensor.
102-0371	Output 2 Sensor	Detects when paper is at output 2 sensor.
102-0380	Duplex Jam 1 Sensor	Detects when paper is at duplex jam 1 sensor.
102-0390	Duplex Jam 2 Sensor	Detects when paper is at duplex jam 2 sensor.
102-0435	Front Cover Sensor	Detects status of front cover
102-0436	Right Door Sensor	Detects status of right door
102-0480	Tray 6 Paper Empty Sensor	Detect when paper is in Tray 6
102-0520	Tray 6 Stack Height Sensor	Detects if paper in Tray 6 is elevated to the sensor
102-0531	Tray 6 Level Sensor 1	Detects when the stack height of Tray 6 level sensor 1
102-0532	Tray 6 Level Sensor 2	Detects when the stack height of Tray 6 level sensor 2
102-0533	Tray 6 Install Sensor 1	Detect when Tray 6 install sensor 1
102-0534	Tray 6 Install Sensor 2	Detect when Tray 6 install sensor 2
102-0730	Tray 4 Knock Up Home Sensor	Detect when Tray 4 knock up home sensor
102-0731	Tray 4 Shift Tray Paper Empty Sensor	Detect when paper is in Tray 4 shift tray
102-0732	Tray 4 Shift Tray Level Sensor 1	Detects when the stack height of Tray 4 shift tray level sensor 1
102-0733	Tray 4 Shift Tray Level Sensor 2	Detects when the stack height of Tray 4 shift tray level sensor 2
102-0734	Tray 4 Shift Plate Home Sensor	Detect when Tray 4 shift plate home sensor
102-0735	Tray 4 Shift Plate End Sensor	Detect when Tray 4 shift plate end sensor
102-0736	Tray 4 Gate Solenoid Home Sensor	Detect when Tray 4 gate solenoid home sensor
104-0000	Waste Install Sensor	Detects if waste is installed
105-0030	Black MHV Bias	Black MHV bias voltage on at normal drive level
106-0030	Black Developer Bias	Black developer bias voltage on at normal drive level
106-0031	Black Developer AC Bias	Black developer bias AC voltage on at normal drive level

Code	Display	Meaning
106-0200	HVPS Installed	Detect HVPS unit
107-0033	THV(-) Bias	THV minus bias voltage on at normal drive level
107-0034	THV CC Bias	THV constant current plus bias voltage
107-0035	THV CV Bias	THV constant voltage plus bias voltage
107-0165	K Eraser On	K eraser lamp on/off
107-0169	K Eraser Detect	Detect K eraser status
109-0000	Fuser Temperature A	Detects what the temperature A is on fuser
109-0010	Fuser Temperature B	Detects what the temperature B is on fuser
109-0012	Inner Temperature	Inner temperature
109-0013	Outer Temperature	Outer temperature
109-0014	Humidity	Humidity
109-0020	Fuser Fan Run Ready	Detects if fuser fan motor runs at normal speed
109-0021	Output 2 Fan Run	Start/stop output 2 fan run
109-0022	Output 2 Fan Run Ready	Detects if output 2 fan runs at normal speed
109-0023	Output 3 Fan Run	Start/stop output 3 fan run
109-0024	Output 3 Fan Run Ready	Detects if output 3 fan runs at normal speed
109-0030	Fuser Motor Forward	Fuser motor forward on/off
109-0034	Fuser Motor Ready	Detects if fuser motor runs at each speed
109-0040	Fuser Fan Run	Fuser fan motor on/off
109-0046	Output Fan Run	Output fan motor on/off
109-0047	Output Fan Run Ready	Detects if fuser fan runs at normal speed
109-0130	Fuser Gap Motor	Fuser press control motor on/off
109-0140	Fuser Gap Home Sensor	Detects if the fuser press is located home position
109-0200	Detect Fuser Relay	Detect fuser relay status
109-0210	Detect Zero Cross Period	Detect zero cross period
109-0300	Fuser Installed	Detect fuser unit
110-0000	Laser Scanner Assembly Motor 1 Run Ready	Detects if laser scanner assembly motor 1 runs at normal speed
110-0060	Laser Scanner Assembly Motor 1 Run	Laser scanner assembly motor 1 on/off
110-0110	Laser Scanner Assembly LD Power 4	Laser scanner assembly LD 4 power on/off (black)
110-0170	Laser Scanner Assembly HSync 4	Detects laser scanner assembly HSync 4 (black)
110-0200	Laser Scanner Assembly Installed	Detect laser scanner assembly
111-0030	Toner Dispense Motor Black	Toner dispense (supply) motor on/off
111-0070	Toner Sensor Black	TC sensor in developer tank
111-0140	Toner Control Voltage K	K toner voltage on/off

Code	Display	Meaning
111-0230	Toner Supply Lock Sensor K	K supply motor lock sensor
111-0330	Toner Reservoir Motor K	K reservoir motor on/off
111-0370	Toner Reservoir Level K	K reservoir level display
112-0340	Center ID Sensor P Read	Show center ID sensor P value
112-0350	Center ID Sensor S Read	Show center ID sensor S value
113-0000	Finisher Present Sensor	Detect if the finisher is in place
113-0350	Finisher Entrance Sensor	Detects when paper is at entrance sensor
113-0360	Finisher Output Sensor	Detects when paper is at output sensor
113-0361	Finisher Compile Paper Sensor	Detect when a paper is at compile sensor
113-0370	Finisher Paddle Home Sensor	Detects paddle home position
113-0380	Finisher Left Tamper Home Sensor	Detects lift tamper home position
113-0390	Finisher Right Tamper Home Sensor	Detects right tamper home position
113-0410	Finisher Stapler Door Sensor	Detects if stapler door cover is closed
113-0420	Finisher Jam Cover Sensor	Detects if jam door cover is closed
113-0430	Finisher Stapler Home Sensor	Detects stapler home position
113-0440	Finisher Stapler Low Sensor	Detects stapler level
113-0451	Finisher Stapler Ready Sensor	Detect stapler ready sensor
113-0461	Finisher Ejector 1 Home Sensor	Detect ejector 1 home position
113-0462	Finisher Ejector 2 Home Sensor	Detect ejector 2 home position
113-0463	Finisher Ejector 2 Encoder Sensor	Detect ejector 2 encoder Sensor
113-0470	Finisher Main Tray Home Sensor	Detects main tray home position
113-0471	Finisher Main Tray Beam Sensor	Detect main tray beam sensor
113-0472	Finisher Main Tray Low Limit Sensor	Detect main tray low limit sensor
113-0473	Finisher Main Tray Encoder Sensor	Detect main tray encoder sensor
113-0481	Finisher Paper Support Sensor	Detect paper support home sensor
113-0491	Finisher Traverse Front Sensor	Detect traverse front home sensor
113-0492	Finisher Traverse Rear Sensor	Detect traverse rear home sensor
113-0501	Finisher Entrance Motor	Finisher entrance motor on/off
113-0502	Finisher Output Motor	Finisher output motor on/off
113-0510	Finisher Paddle Motor	Finisher paddle motor on/off
113-0520	Finisher Left Tamper Motor	Finisher left tamper motor on/off
113-0530	Finisher Right Tamper Motor	Finisher right tamper motor on/off
113-0550	Finisher Staple Unit Motor	Finisher staple unit motor on/off
113-0561	Finisher Ejector 1 Motor	Finisher ejector 1 motor on/off

Code	Display	Meaning
113-0562	Finisher Ejector 2 Motor	Finisher ejector 2 motor on/off
113-0563	Finisher Ejector 2 Reverse Motor	Finisher ejector 2 reverse direction on/off
113-0570	Finisher Main Tray Motor	Finisher main tray motor on/off
113-0571	Finisher Paper Support Motor	Finisher paper support motor on/off
113-0581	Finisher Traverse Motor	Finisher staple unit traverse motor on/off
113-0591	Finisher Stack Solenoid	Finisher stack solenoid on/off
113-0600	Finisher Punch Motor	Finisher punch motor on/off
113-0610	Finisher Punch Encoder Sensor	Detect finisher punch encoder sensor
113-0611	Finisher Punch Position Sensor	Detect finisher punch position sensor
113-0612	Finisher Punch Home Sensor	Detect finisher punch home sensor
113-0620	Finisher output bin Install Sensor	Detect finisher punch output bin install sensor
113-0621	Finisher output bin Full Sensor	Detect finisher punch output bin full sensor
113-2000	2 Bin Finisher Buffer Lift Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher buffer lift sensor
113-2010	2 Bin Finisher Clamp Home Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher clamp home sensor
113-2020	2 Bin Finisher Diverter Home Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher diverter home sensor
113-2030	2 Bin Finisher Eject 1 Away Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher eject 1 away sensor
113-2031	2 Bin Finisher Eject 1 Home Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher eject 1 home sensor
113-2032	2 Bin Finisher Eject 1 Encoder Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher eject 1 encoder sensor
113-2040	2 Bin Finisher Eject 2 Home Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher eject 2 home sensor
113-2041	2 Bin Finisher Eject 2 Encoder Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher eject 2 encoder sensor
113-2050	2 Bin Finisher End Stopper Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher end stopper sensor
113-2060	2 Bin Finisher Paddle Home Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher paddle home sensor
113-2070	2 Bin Finisher IPTU Entrance Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher IPTU entrance sensor
113-2071	2 Bin Finisher IPTU Middle Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher IPTU middle sensor
113-2080	2 Bin Finisher Entrance Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher entrance sensor
113-2090	2 Bin Finisher Main Output Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher main output sensor
113-2091	2 Bin Finisher Sub Output Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher sub output sensor
113-2100	2 Bin Finisher Buffer Output Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher buffer output sensor
113-2110	2 Bin Finisher Stapler Home Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher stapler home sensor
113-2111	2 Bin Finisher Stapler Rear Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher stapler rear sensor
113-2112	2 Bin Finisher Stapler Front Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher stapler front sensor
113-2113	2 Bin Finisher Stapler Manual Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher stapler manual sensor
113-2114	2 Bin Finisher Stapler Head Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher stapler head sensor
113-2115	2 Bin Finisher Stapler Low Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher stapler low sensor

Code	Display	Meaning
113-2116	2 Bin Finisher Stapler Ready Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher stapler ready sensor
113-2120	2 Bin Finisher Front Tamper Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher front tamper sensor
113-2130	2 Bin Finisher Rear Tamper Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher rear tamper sensor
113-2140	2 Bin Finisher Main Beam Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher main beam sensor
113-2141	2 Bin Finisher Main Front Level Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher main front level sensor
113-2142	2 Bin Finisher Main Rear Level Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher main rear level sensor
113-2143	2 Bin Finisher Main Encoder Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher main encoder sensor
113-2144	2 Bin Finisher Main Full Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher main full sensor
113-2145	2 Bin Finisher Sub Full Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher sub full sensor
113-2150	2 Bin Finisher Booklet Paper Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher booklet paper sensor
113-2160	2 Bin Finisher Staple Paper Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher staple paper sensor
113-2161	2 Bin Finisher Staple Button Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher staple button sensor
113-2170	2 Bin Finisher Compile Paper Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher compile paper sensor
113-2180	2 Bin Finisher IPTU Cover Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher IPTU cover sensor
113-2181	2 Bin Finisher Top Cover Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher top cover sensor
113-2182	2 Bin Finisher Front Door Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher front door sensor
113-2190	2 Bin Finisher Stack Top Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher stack top sensor
113-2200	2 Bin Finisher IPTU Detect Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher IPTU detect sensor
113-2201	2 Bin Finisher Punch Detect Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher punch detect sensor
113-2202	2 Bin Finisher Booklet Detect Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher booklet detect sensor
113-2500	2 Bin Finisher Buffer Lift Motor	2 bin finisher buffer lift motor on/off
113-2510	2 Bin Finisher Clamp Motor	2 bin finisher camp motor on/off
113-2520	2 Bin Finisher Diverter Motor	2 bin finisher dverter motor on/off
113-2530	2 Bin Finisher Eject 1 Motor	2 bin finisher eject 1 motor on/off
113-2540	2 Bin Finisher Eject 2 Motor	2 bin finisher eject 2 motor on/off
113-2560	2 Bin Finisher IPTU Feed Motor	2 bin finisher IPTU feed motor on/off
113-2570	2 Bin Finisher Entrance Motor	2 bin finisher entrance motor on/off
113-2580	2 Bin Finisher Output Feed Motor	2 bin finisher output feed motor on/off
113-2590	2 Bin Finisher End Stopper Motor	2 bin finisher end stopper motor on/off
113-2600	2 Bin Finisher Paddle Motor	2 bin finisher paddle motor on/off
113-2610	2 Bin Finisher Main Tray Motor	2 bin finisher main tray motor on/off
113-2620	2 Bin Finisher Staple Move Motor	2 bin finisher staple move motor on/off
113-2621	2 Bin Finisher Staple Head Motor	2 bin finisher staple head motor on/off
113-2630	2 Bin Finisher Front Tamper Motor	2 bin finisher front tamper motor on/off

Code	Display	Meaning
113-2640	2 Bin Finisher Rear Tamper Motor	2 bin finisher rear tamper motor on/off
113-2650	2 Bin Finisher Manual Blue LED	2 bin finisher manual blue LED on/off
113-2651	2 Bin Finisher Manual Red LED	2 bin finisher Manual red LED on/off
113-3000	Booklet Stopper Home Sensor	Detect booklet Stopper home sensor
113-3010	Booklet Staple Home Sensor	Detect booklet staple home sensor
113-3020	Booklet Front Staple Empty Sensor	Detect booklet front staple empty sensor
113-3030	Booklet Rear Staple Empty Sensor	Detect booklet rear staple empty sensor
113-3040	Booklet Knife Home Sensor	Detect booklet knife home sensor
113-3050	Booklet Guide Home Sensor	Detect booklet guide home sensor
113-3060	Booklet Diverter Home Sensor	Detect booklet Diverter home Sensor
113-3080	Booklet Tamper Home Sensor	Detect booklet tamper home sensor
113-3090	Booklet Paddle Home Sensor	Detect booklet paddle home sensor
113-3100	Booklet Entrance Paper Sensor	Detect booklet entrance paper sensor
113-3110	Booklet Tray Paper Sensor	Detect booklet fold output paper sensor
113-3120	Booklet Fold Output Paper Sensor	Detect booklet fold output paper sensor
113-3130	Booklet Press Home Sensor	Detect booklet press home sensor
113-3500	Booklet Feed Motor	Booklet feed motor on/off
113-3510	Booklet Fold Motor	Booklet fold motor on/off
113-3520	Booklet Stopper Solenoid	Booklet stopper solenoid on/off
113-3530	Booklet Stopper Motor	Booklet stopper motor on/off
113-3540	Booklet Tamper Motor	Booklet tamper motor on/off
113-3550	Booklet Knife Motor	Booklet knife motor on/off
113-3560	Booklet Diverter Motor	Booklet diverter motor on/off
113-3570	Booklet Press Motor	Booklet press motor on/off
113-3580	Booklet Paddle Motor	Booklet paddle motor on/off
113-3590	Booklet Guide Motor	Booklet guide motor on/off
113-3600	Booklet Staple Motor	Booklet staple motor on/off
113-4000	Punch Scan Home Sensor	Detect punch scan home sensor
113-4010	Punch Scan Edge 1 Sensor	Detect punch scan edge 1 sensor
113-4011	Punch Scan Edge 2 Sensor	Detect punch scan edge 2 sensor
113-4012	Punch Scan Edge 3 Sensor	Detect punch scan edge 3 sensor
113-4013	Punch Scan Edge 4 Sensor	Detect punch scan edge 4 sensor
113-4020	Punch Home Sensor	Detect punch home sensor
113-4030	Punch Position A Sensor	Detect punch position A sensor

Code	Display	Meaning
113-4031	Punch Position B Sensor	Detect punch position B sensor
113-4040	Punch Encoder Sensor	Detect punch encoder sensor
113-4050	Punch Output Bin Full Sensor	Detect punch output bin full sensor
113-4060	Punch Type 1 Detect Sensor	Detect punch type 1 detect sensor
113-4061	Punch Type 2 Detect Sensor	Detect punch type 2 detect sensor
113-4500	Punch Scan Motor	Punch scan motor on/off
113-4510	Punch Motor	Punch motor on/off

Fax diagnostics

Fax NVM Read/Write

- Diagnostics > Fax Diagnostics Fax NVM Read/Write

Purpose	To change a configuration value for fax firmware.
Operation procedure	When the main **NVM Read/Write** window displays, users can navigate through the list of configuration values and descriptions that display. Users can input a code through the text box to search for a configuration value. After selecting a value, press the **Edit** button to open an interface for user input.
Verification	N/A
Specification	N/A
Reference	N/A

Code	Name	Description	Default	Range
20-200	Pause dial time	Pause time (value * 1000 ms)	Country value	0-200
20-210	Dial pulse M/B ratio	33/66 40/60	Country value	0 = OPTION_DP_33 1 = OPTION_DP_40 2 = OPTION_DP_37 3 = OPTION_DP_50
20-220	Auto dial start pause time	Pause time before auto-dialing (second)	1	0-10
20-300	Ring on time	Ring on time (ms)	170	90-800
20-310	Ring off time	Ring off time (ms)	560	90-800

Code	Name	Description	Default	Range
20-320	Ring detection frequency	Sets the call indication frequency range that will be detected by LIU.	1	1 = 12-80 hz 2 = 16-55 hz 3 = 20-55 hz 4 = 22-55 hz
20-330	Ring on max time	Ring on max time (ms)	5100	3000-12000
20-340	Ring off max time	Ring off max time (ms)	11100	9000-22000
20-400	DTMF high-frequency level	DTMF high-frequency level (dBm)	Country value	0-15
20-410	DTMF low-frequency level	DTMF low-frequency level (dBm)	Country value	0-15
20-420	DTMF timing	DTMF duration of on/off output (ms)	8	1 = 80/80 2 = 70/70 3 = 70/150 4 = 60/60 5 = 80/100 6 = 150/50 7 = 150/240 8 = 100/100 9 = 100/80
20-500	Dial mode	Select tone/pulse	Country value	0 = OPTION_TONE_MODE 1 = OPTION_PULSE_MODE
20-520	Error rate	Adjust error rate (Off/5%/10%/20%)	2	0 = OPTION_RATE_OFF 1 = OPTION_RATE_5 2 = OPTION_RATE_10 3 = OPTION_RATE_20
20-530	Dial tone detect	Detect dial tone prior to sending	Country value	0 = OPTION_OFF 1 = OPTION_ON
20-540	Loop current detect	Detect if loop current is present prior to sending	Country value	0 = OPTION_OFF 1 = OPTION_ON

Code	Name	Description	Default	Range
20-550	Busy signal detect	Detect busy signal to allow redials	Country value	0 = OPTION_OFF 1 = OPTION_ON
20-560	TCF duration	Adjust TCF duration (ms)	1500	1000-3000
20-800	Modem speed	Select modem start speed	24	
20-810	Fax transmission level	Adjust fax transmission level (dBm)	Country value	Country value
20-830	Auto dial timeout	Adjust auto dial timeout (second)	Country value	30-150
20-920	CNG detection count	CNG tone detection check count during ANS/FAX mode	2	1-15
20-930	Caller ID	This option is needed to guide Caller ID off for user environment	Country value	0 = OPTION_OFF 1 = OPTION_ON
20-940	Ext. phone	Ext. phone detection enable/ disable (default: enable 1)	1	0 = Disable 1 = Enable
21-999	Fax line setting	Fax test line setting (dual fax)	0	0 = Line 1 1 = Line 2
21-800	Modem speed line 2	Select modem start speed for line 2. This item will display only when a dual line fax kit is installed	24	

Fax test routines

- Diagnostics > Fax Diagnostics > Fax Test Routines

Purpose	To perform test routines for the fax machine.
Operation procedure	When the main Fax Test Routines window displays, users can navigate through the list of routines and descriptions that display. Users can input a code through the text box to search for a routine. After selecting a routine, press **OK** to open the test window that lists the selected routine. Users can start/stop the selected test routine.

Code	Name	Description	State Displayed
20-012	Single tone 1100Hz Ln1	Emits single tone 1100Hz on line 1	On/Off
20-014	Single tone 1650Hz Ln1	Emits single tone 1650Hz on line 1	On/Off
20-015	Single tone 1850Hz Ln1	Emits single tone 1850Hz on line 1	On/Off
20-016	Single tone 2100Hz Ln1	Emits single tone 2100Hz on line 1	On/Off
20-020	DTMF # Line1	Emits DTMF # on line 1	On/Off
20-021	DTMF * Line1	Emits DTMF * on line 1	On/Off
20-022	DTMF 0 Line1	Emits DTMF 0 on line 1	On/Off
20-023	DTMF 1 Line1	Emits DTMF 1 on line 1	On/Off

Code	Name	Description	State Displayed
20-024	DTMF 2 Line1	Emits DTMF 2 on line 1	On/Off
20-025	DTMF 3 Line1	Emits DTMF 3 on line 1	On/Off
20-026	DTMF 4 Line1	Emits DTMF 4 on line 1	On/Off
20-027	DTMF 5 Line1	Emits DTMF 5 on line 1	On/Off
20-028	DTMF 6 Line1	Emits DTMF 6 on line 1	On/Off
20-029	DTMF 7 Line1	Emits DTMF 7 on line 1	On/Off
20-030	DTMF 8 Line1	Emits DTMF 8 on line 1	On/Off
20-031	DTMF 9 Line1	Emits DTMF 9 on line 1	On/Off
20-040	V.21 300 bps Line1	Emits V.21 300 bps Line 1	On/Off
20-041	V.27ter 2400 bps Line1	Emits V.27ter 2400 bps Line1	On/Off
20-042	V.27ter 4800 bps Line1	Emits V.27ter 4800 bps Line1	On/Off
20-043	V.29 7200 bps Line1	Emits V.29 7200 bps Line1	On/Off
20-044	V.29 9600 bps Line1	Emits V.29 9600 bps Line1	On/Off
20-045	V.17 7200 bps Line1	Emits V.17 7200 bps Line1	On/Off
20-046	V.17 9600 bps Line1	Emits V.17 9600 bps Line1	On/Off
20-047	V.17 12000 bps Line1	Emits V.17 12000 bps Line1	On/Off
20-048	V.17 14400 bps Line1	Emits V.17 14400 bps Line1	On/Off
20-049	V.34 2400 bps Line1	Emits V.34 2400 bps Line1	On/Off
20-050	V.34 4800 bps Line1	Emits V.34 4800 bps Line1	On/Off
20-051	V.34 7200 bps Line1	Emits V.34 7200 bps Line1	On/Off
20-052	V.34 9600 bps Line1	Emits V.34 9600 bps Line1	On/Off
20-053	V.34 12000 bps Line1	Emits V.34 12000 bps Line1	On/Off
20-054	V.34 14400 bps Line1	Emits V.34 14400 bps Line1	On/Off
20-055	V.34 16800 bps Line1	Emits V.34 16800 bps Line1	On/Off
20-056	V.34 19200 bps Line1	Emits V.34 19200 bps Line1	On/Off
20-057	V.34 21600 bps Line1	Emits V.34 21600 bps Line1	On/Off
20-058	V.34 24000 bps Line1	Emits V.34 24000 bps Line1	On/Off
20-059	V.34 26400 bps Line1	Emits V.34 26400 bps Line1	On/Off
20-060	V.34 28800 bps Line1	Emits V.34 28800 bps Line1	On/Off
20-061	V.34 31200 bps Line1	Emits V.34 31200 bps Line1	On/Off
20-062	V.34 33600 bps Line1	Emits V.34 33600 bps Line1	On/Off
21-012	Single tone 1100Hz Ln2	Emits single tone 1100Hz on line 2	On/Off
21-014	Single tone 1650Hz Ln2	Emits single tone 1650Hz on line 2	On/Off
21-015	Single tone 1850Hz Ln2	Emits single tone 1850Hz on line 2	On/Off

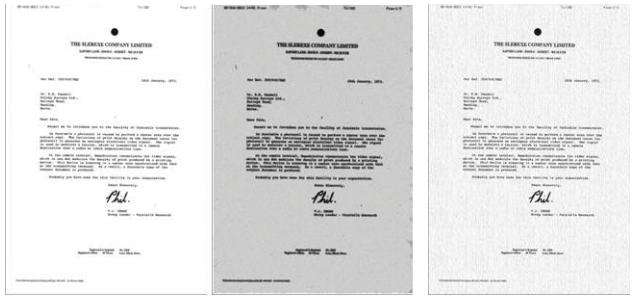
Code	Name	Description	State Displayed
21-016	Single tone 2100Hz Ln2	Emits single tone 2100Hz on line 2	On/Off
21-020	DTMF # Line2	Emits DTMF # on line 2	On/Off
21-021	DTMF * Line2	Emits DTMF * on line 2	On/Off
21-022	DTMF 0 Line2	Emits DTMF 0 on line 2	On/Off
21-023	DTMF 1 Line2	Emits DTMF 1 on line 2	On/Off
21-024	DTMF 2 Line2	Emits DTMF 2 on line 2	On/Off
21-025	DTMF 3 Line2	Emits DTMF 3 on line 2	On/Off
21-026	DTMF 4 Line2	Emits DTMF 4 on line 2	On/Off
21-027	DTMF 5 Line2	Emits DTMF 5 on line 2	On/Off
21-028	DTMF 6 Line2	Emits DTMF 6 on line 2	On/Off
21-029	DTMF 7 Line2	Emits DTMF 7 on line 2	On/Off
21-030	DTMF 8 Line2	Emits DTMF 8 on line 2	On/Off
21-031	DTMF 9 Line2	Emits DTMF 9 on line 2	On/Off
21-040	V.21 300 bps Line2	Emits V.21 300 bps Line2	On/Off
21-041	V.27ter 2400 bps Line2	Emits V.27ter 2400 bps Line2	On/Off
21-042	V.27ter 4800 bps Line2	Emits V.27ter 4800 bps Line2	On/Off
21-043	V.29 7200 bps Line2	Emits V.29 7200 bps Line2	On/Off
21-044	V.29 9600 bps Line2	Emits V.29 9600 bps Line2	On/Off
21-045	V.17 7200 bps Line2	Emits V.17 7200 bps Line2	On/Off
21-046	V.17 9600 bps Line2	Emits V.17 9600 bps Line2	On/Off
21-047	V.17 12000 bps Line2	Emits V.17 12000 bps Line2	On/Off
21-048	V.17 14400 bps Line2	Emits V.17 14400 bps Line2	On/Off
21-049	V.34 2400 bps Line2	Emits V.34 2400 bps Line2	On/Off
21-050	V.34 4800 bps Line2	Emits V.34 4800 bps Line2	On/Off
21-051	V.34 7200 bps Line2	Emits V.34 7200 bps Line2	On/Off
21-052	V.34 9600 bps Line2	Emits V.34 9600 bps Line2	On/Off
21-053	V.34 12000 bps Line2	Emits V.34 12000 bps Line2	On/Off
21-054	V.34 14400 bps Line2	Emits V.34 14400 bps Line2	On/Off
21-055	V.34 16800 bps Line2	Emits V.34 16800 bps Line2	On/Off
21-056	V.34 19200 bps Line2	Emits V.34 19200 bps Line2	On/Off
21-057	V.34 21600 bps Line2	Emits V.34 21600 bps Line2	On/Off
21-058	V.34 24000 bps Line2	Emits V.34 24000 bps Line2	On/Off
21-059	V.34 26400 bps Line2	Emits V.34 26400 bps Line2	On/Off
21-060	V.34 28800 bps Line2	Emits V.34 28800 bps Line2	On/Off

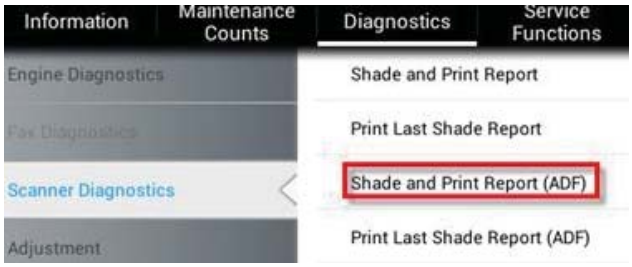
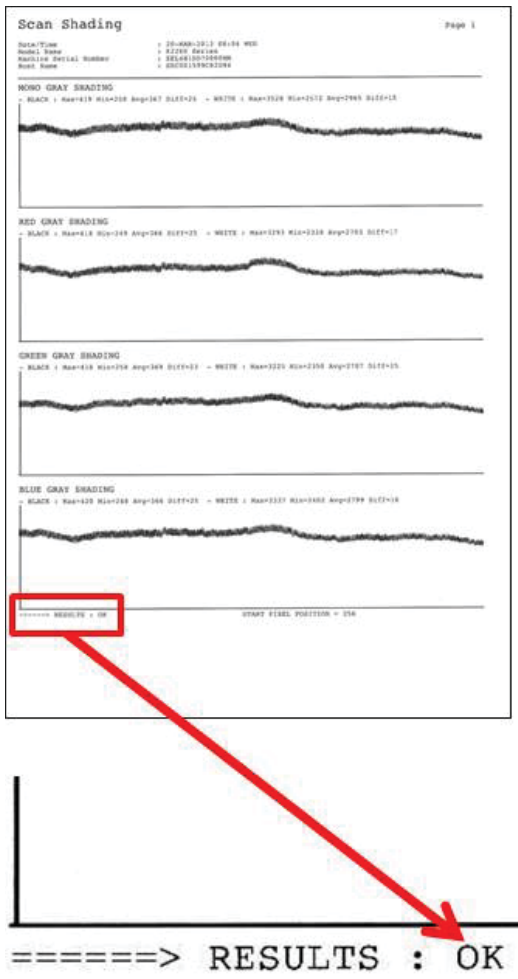
Code	Name	Description	State Displayed
21-061	V.34 31200 bps Line2	Emits V.34 31200 bps Line2	On/Off
21-062	V.34 33600 bps Line2	Emits V.34 33600 bps Line2	On/Off

Scanner diagnostics

Shading test

- Diagnostics > Scanner Diagnostics > Shading Test

Purpose	– To check the quality of scanned images, especially if there might be defects in optical devices such as the lens, mirror, or lamp. – Check the quality problem as shown below:  Normal Image Defected Image Defected Image

Operation procedure	**For the Image Scanner Unit** Press **Shade and Print report** to see if the current shading value is correct. Mono, red, green, and blue gray shading values will be shown on the printed report. When the previous shading value is needed, press “Print Last Shade Report”. **For the Flow ADF unit** 1. Load the shading sheet on the Flow ADF tray. 2. Enter SCV mode. Select the following menu items: Diagnostics > Scanner Diagnostics > Shading Test > Shade and Print Report (Flow ADF)  Press **Print Last Shade Report (ADF)** for the previous shading value report. 3. Check if the printed results are correct. NOTE: – When executing Flow ADF shading, use only the shading sheet (JC63–05055A). – A Shading Test for the Flow ADF unit must be completed after replacing the Flow ADF unit or main board.
Verification	

Scanner/Flow ADF NVM Read/Write

- Diagnostics > Scanner Diagnostics > Scanner/Flow ADF NVM Read/Write

Purpose	To read and/or write values in the scanner and Flow ADF memory.
Operation procedure	When the main **NVM Read/Write** window displays, users can navigate through the list of codes with descriptions and saved values. Users can also directly input a code through the text box to search for an NVM. After selecting a code, the **Edit** button will be enabled only if the code is writable. If the selected code is writable and the **Edit** button is enabled, press the button to configure the desired value for the code.
Verification	N/A
Specification	N/A
Reference	N/A

Code	NVM description	Default	GX Model
05-0000	Pick Up Count	0	0
05-0001	Separation Roller Count	0	0
05-0010	Document Duplex Reverse Point	0	0
05-0030	Simplex Registration Value (Registration 1)	0	0
05-0040	Duplex Registration Value (Registration 2)	0	0
05-0050	Width Guide Max Value	Depends on Flow ADF	0
05-0060	Width Guide Min Value	Depends on Flow ADF	0

Scanner/Flow ADF test routines

- Diagnostics > Scanner Diagnostics > Scanner/Flow ADF Test Routines

Purpose	To perform test routines for the scanner and Flow ADF.
Operation procedure	When the main **Scanner/Flow ADF Test Routines** window displays, users can navigation through the list of routines and descriptions that display. Users can input a code through the text box to search for a routine. After selecting a routine, press **OK** to open the test window that lists the selected routine. Users can start/stop the selected test routine.
Verification	N/A
Specification	N/A
Reference	Table below

Code	Name	Value	GX model
06-0000	Scanner Original Size Detecting Sensor 1	High/Low	0

Code	Name	Value	GX model
06-0001	Scanner Original Size Detecting Sensor 2	High/Low	0
06-0010	Scanner Cover Open/Close Sensor 1	High/Low	0
06-0011	Scanner Cover Open/Close Sensor 2	High/Low	0
06-0020	Scanner Image Scanner Motor Forward	Start/Stop	0
06-0030	Scanner Image Scanner Motor Backward	Start/Stop	0
06-0040	Scanner Image Scanner Home Position Sensor	High/Low	0
05-0000	Document Length .1 Sensor	High/Low	0
05-0001	Document Length .2 Sensor	High/Low	0
05-0020	Document Cover Open Sensor	High/Low	0
05-0040	Document Detect Sensor	High/Low	0
05-0050	Document Feed Sensor	High/Low	0
05-0060	Document Simplex Registration Sensor	High/Low	0
05-0070	Document Scan Read Sensor 1	High/Low	0
05-0071	Document Scan Read Sensor 2	High/Low	0
05-0080	Document Output Sensor	High/Low	0
05-0090	Document Pickup Clutch	Start/Stop	X
05-0110	Document Motor Forward	Start/Stop	0
05-0111	Document Motor Backward	Start/Stop	0
05-0123	Document width 1 MSO Sensor	High/Low	0
05-0124	Document width 2 MSO Sensor	High/Low	0
05-0125	Document width 3 MSO Sensor	High/Low	0
05-0130	Document Pickup Motor Forward	Start/Stop	0
05-0131	Document Pickup Motor Backward	Start/Stop	0
05-0140	Document Pickup Roller Detect Sensor	High/Low	X
05-0150	Document Stacker Lift Upper Sensor	High/Low	0
05-0151	Document Stacker Lift Lower Sensor	High/Low	0

Code	Name	Value	GX model
05-0160	Document Registration 1 Motor Forward	Start/Stop	0
05-0162	Document Registration 1 Motor Backward	Start/Stop	0
05-0170	Document Registration 2 Motor Forward	Start/Stop	0
05-0171	Document Registration 2 Motor Backward	Start/Stop	0
05-0180	Document Stacker Lift Motor Forward	Start/Stop	0
05-0181	Document Stacker Lift Motor Backward	Start/Stop	0
05-0190	Document Width Guide ADC Sensor	10Bit (0~1023)	0
05-0210	Document Jig Test Low Speed Simplex	Start/Stop	0
05-0230	Document Jig Test High Speed Simplex	Start/Stop	0

Adjustment

Print adjustment

- Diagnostics > Adjustment > Print Adjustment > Image Position

Purpose	Manually adjust the position of the printed image on the paper in the print engine.
Operation procedure	1. Select a tray to adjust. 2. Change the adjustment value using the **+** or **-** buttons, then press the **OK** button to save the changes. ○ Simplex Leading Edge ○ Simplex Side Edge ○ Duplex Leading Edge ○ Duplex Side Edge NOTE: ○ Adjustment must be done for each tray (Tray 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5). ○ Do not choose **ALL** for the tray selection. ○ Adjust for the tray with each new tray selection. 3. Print out the test pattern and check if the image is adjusted. If not, repeat Step 2.

- Diagnostics > Adjustment > Print Adjustment > Print Test Patterns

  This menu is used to print out the test pattern manually.

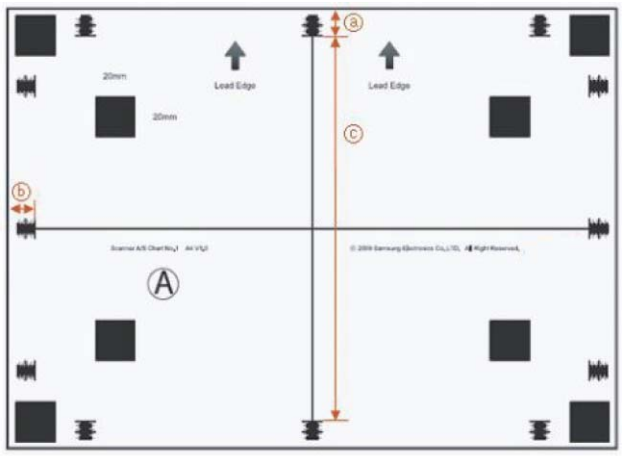
Copy adjustment

- Diagnostics > Adjustment > Copy Adjustment > Image Position

Purpose	Manually adjust the position of the copied image on the paper in the copy engine.
Operation procedure	NOTE: Before copy adjustment: – Make sure that the initial values of margin adjustment are the same as the values of the print adjustment. – Perform an adjustment for each tray. Do not choose **All** for tray selection, as this can confuse the adjustment. NOTE: – Complete adjustment for each tray (Tray 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5). – Do not choose **All** for tray selection. – Adjust for the tray with each new tray selection. 1. Locate the Scanner A/S Chart at the scanner glass. 2. Change the adjustment value using the **+** or **-** button, and then press **OK** to save the changes. ○ Simplex Leading Edge ○ Simplex Side Edge ○ Duplex Leading Edge ○ Duplex Side Edge 3. Print out the test pattern and check if the image has moved. It not, repeat Step 2.

Scan area adjustment

- Diagnostics > Adjustment > Scan Area Adjustment > Automatic Adjustment

Purpose	To correct the image position and magnification of scanned images automatically.
Operation procedure	1. Locate the Scanner A/S chart at the scanner glass.  A4 Scanner A/S Chart

Note that the **Lead Edge** arrows point to the left side of the scanner glass and are placed face down. The Scanner A/S Chart comes in two sizes, A4 and Letter.

2. Press **OK**. A scan begins and the system will automatically calculate the proper value based on the scanning result of the chart.
3. The new value saves to the system.
4. Scan the Scanner A/S Chart and send it to a PC. The chart must be scanned from the scanner glass.
5. To check the image position, compare the position of the scale marks (a, b) from the chart to the scanned image.
6. To check the magnification, compare the length of line **c** from the chart to the scanned image.

   NOTE: Specifications:

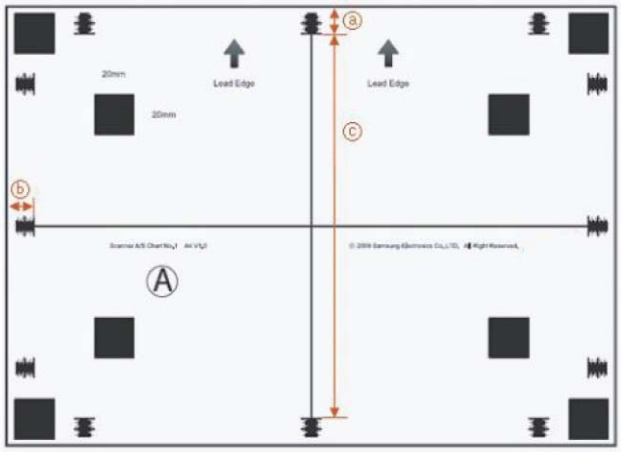
   - a, b: 10, ± 1.5 mm
   - c: 190, ± 1.5 mm

- Diagnostics > Adjustment > Scan Area Adjustment > Manual Adjustment

Purpose	To correct the position and magnification of scanned images manually.
Operation procedure	1. Choose one item from the table. There are three items to choose from: ○ Image Position — Leading Edge (Unit: mm, Scale: 0.1, Min/Max: -6/+6) ○ Image Position — Side Edge (Unit: mm, Scale: 0.1, Min/Max: -6/+6) ○ Magnification — Vertical Direction (Unit: %, Min/Max: 98.5/101.5) 2. Select one item and press the **Edit** button. 3. Change the adjustment value using the arrow button. 4. Image position (a, b): If the current value is smaller than the specification, press **+**, otherwise press **-**. 5. Magnification (c): If the current value is smaller than the specification, press **-**, otherwise, press **+**. 6. Press the **OK** button to apply the new value to the system. 7. Scan the Scanner A/S Chart and send it to a PC. The chart must be scanned from the scanner glass. 8. To check the image position, compare the position of the scale marks (a, b) from the chart to the scanned image. 9. To check the magnification, compare the length of line **c** from the chart to the scanned image. NOTE: Specifications: ○ a, b: 10, ± 1.5 mm ○ c: 190, ± 1.5 mm

Flow ADF adjustment

- Diagnostics > Adjustment > Flow ADF Adjustment > Automatic Adjustment

Purpose	To correct the image position and magnification of images scanned with the Flow ADF automatically.
Operation procedure	1. Locate the Scanner A/S chart at the scanner glass.  **A4 Scanner A/S Chart** 2. Press **OK**. A scan begins and the system will automatically calculate the proper value based on the scanning result of the chart. 3. The new value saves to the system. 4. Scan the Scanner A/S Chart and send it to a PC. The chart must be scanned from the Flow ADF. 5. To check the image position, compare the position of the scale marks (a, b) from the chart to the scanned image. 6. To check the magnification, compare the length of line **c** from the chart to the scanned image. NOTE: Specifications: ○ a, b: 10, ± 1.5 mm ○ c: 190, ± 1.5 mm NOTE: After executing the Flow ADF adjustment, perform a shading test. Refer to Scanner Diagnostics.

- Diagnostics > Adjustment > Flow ADF Adjustment > Manual Adjustment

Purpose	To correct the position and magnification of scanned images manually.
Operation procedure	1. Choose one item from the table. There are three items to choose from:

- Image Position — Leading Edge (Unit: mm, Scale: 0.1, Min/Max: -6/+6)
- Image Position — Side Edge (Unit: mm, Scale: 0.1, Min/Max: -6/+6)
- Magnification — Vertical Direction (Unit: %, Min/Max: 98.5/101.5)

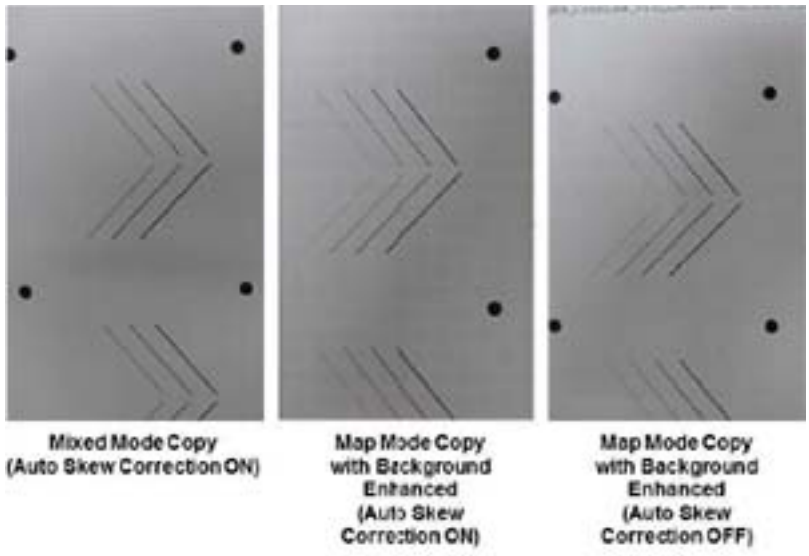
2. Select one item and press the **Edit** button.
3. Change the adjustment value using the arrow button.
4. Image position (a, b): If the current value is smaller than the specification, press **+**, otherwise press **-**.
5. Magnification (c): If the current value is smaller than the specification, press **-**, otherwise, press **+**.

NOTE: Specifications:

- a, b: 10, ± 1.5 mm
- c: 190, ± 1.5 mm

6. Press the **OK** button to apply the new value to the system.
7. Scan the Scanner A/S Chart and send it to a PC. The chart must be scanned from the Flow ADF.
8. To check the image position, compare the position of the scale marks (a, b) from the chart to the scanned image.
9. To check the magnification, compare the length of line **c** from the chart to the scanned image.
10. If **Auto Skew Correction during job** box is checked, skewed image is corrected by digitally rotating the scanned images.

NOTE: When this function is enabled, visual artifact (like checkerboard patterns) might appear on the image depending on the original contents or copy option settings.



NOTE: After executing the Flow ADF adjustment, perform a shading test. Refer to Scanner Diagnostics.

Image management

Auto tone adjustment activation

- Diagnostics > Image Management > Auto Tone Adjustment Activation > Normal

Purpose	To correct image quality when density of the image is poor. Normal TRC Control is recommended after changing a unit, such as a toner cartridge, imaging unit, and ITB, or after restarting the printer.
Operation procedure	1. Select **On** or **Off** for Normal TRC Control execution. ○ Off: Normal TRC Control will not execute. ○ On: Normal TRC Control will execute during the determined conditions, 2. Change the execution condition(s) of Normal TRC Control. ○ Page Count: The system executes Normal TRC Control based on the count of printed pages since the last execution. ○ Time Left Alone: The system executes Normal TRC Control when the system returns from a power save mode and the rest time exceeds the configured value.
Verification	Print out a test job and make sure the image quality has recovered.

- Diagnostics > Image Management > Auto Tone Adjustment Activation > Full

Purpose	To correct image quality when any OPC drum is replaced, the life of the OPC drum is changed, the density of the image is poor, or the temperature and/or humidity in the room changes suddenly.
Operation procedure	1. Select **On** or **Off** for Full TRC Control execution. ○ Off: Full TRC Control will not execute. ○ On: Full TRC Control will execute during the determined conditions, 2. Change the execution condition(s) of Full TRC Control. ○ Page Count: The system executes Full TRC Control based on the count of printed pages since the last execution. ○ Time Left Alone: The system executes Full TRC Control when the system returns from a power save mode and the rest time exceeds the configured value.
Verification	Print out a test job and make sure the image quality has recovered.

Print test patterns

Diagnostics > Print Test Patterns >

- EP Calibration Pattern1 Contone

Service functions

Main memory clear

Service Functions > Main Memory Clear

- This function resets the main memory of the system to the factory default setting. This function can be used to reset the system to the initial value when the product is functioning abnormally. User configured values return to the default values.

  To clear the main memory, select the country/region where the system is located, and restart the printer.

Debug log

Service Functions > Debug Log

- This function sets the system log message level. Users can select three options:
  - Off: This option disables the logging option.
  - Job Status: This option only enables the logging of user created jobs.
  - Details: This option enables all the logging options of the running tasks of the system. This option might effect the performance of certain system operations. Use this option when the system performs abnormally and engineers need to investigate the problem.

Capture log

Service Functions > Capture Log

- This function copies all the saved logs in the system to a USB flash drive as a .zip file. The size of the system log could reach up to 1 GB. If the system log size becomes very large, it will take a longer time to copy to the USB flash drive.

  1. Connect the USB flash drive to the printer.
  2. Tap the **Service Mode** app. When the pop-up displays, press the area below the pop-up until the password window appears. Enter **1934** and press the **OK** button.
  3. Go to **Service Functions > Debug Log** and change the debug log level to **DETAILS**.
  4. Go to **Service Functions > Capture Log**.
  5. Select **All** or **Period**. If selecting **Period**, enter the start and end date.
  6. Press the **Capture Log** button.
  7. Once the log is completed, a completion message will display. Restore the debug log level to **JOB STATUS**.

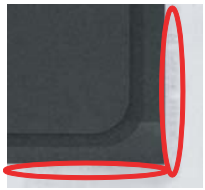
     NOTE: If the system log size becomes very large, it will take longer to copy to the USB flash drive.

  8. Check that the Log File has been saved to the USB flash drive.

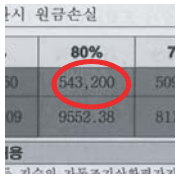
Transfer assembly control mode

Service Functions > Transfer Assembly Control Mode

Purpose	To correct transfer related problems. This function can be used to change the transfer value to optimize image quality to a certain type of paper.
Operation procedure	– T2 Control Mode ○ Choose the paper group, paper side, and paper direction. ○ Adjust PWM value based on the problem type. • Blur: Increase PWM value • Poor Transfer: Increase PWM value • Re-transfer: Decrease PWM value • White Spot: Decrease PWM value • OPC Cylic Ghost: Decrease PWM value
Verification	Print a test job and make sure the transfer problem has been resolved.
Specification	N/A
Reference	N/A



Blur



Poor Transfer

Retransfer

White Spot

OPC Cyclic Ghost

Envelope rotate

Service Functions > Envelope Rotate

- This menu enables rotation when printing on an envelope. The machine usually guides loaded envelopes with SEF direction. If this function is enabled, the user can load an envelope with LEF direction and the machine will rotate the image for printing on the envelope.

  This function provides the following setting options:

  – Off (default): Load envelope SEF direction

  – 90 degrees: Load envelope LEF direction.

– 180 degrees: Load envelope SEF direction with flap on bottom side.

Off 90 degrees 180 degrees

NOTE: If the paper source is **Auto**, the device will feed from the Tray 1 because the LEF envelope can only be loaded in the Tray 1 according to paper specification.

If the length of envelope is over the maximum size of the custom width, the device will not rotate the image and determine that the direction of the envelope is SEF. For example, the A4 model supports custom sizes like W 98–216 ~ L148–356. This model does not support C5 Env (162x229) DL Env (110x220), No 9 Env (98x225), No 10 Env (105x241) rotation.

Print quality troubleshooting guide

Image quality problems and solutions

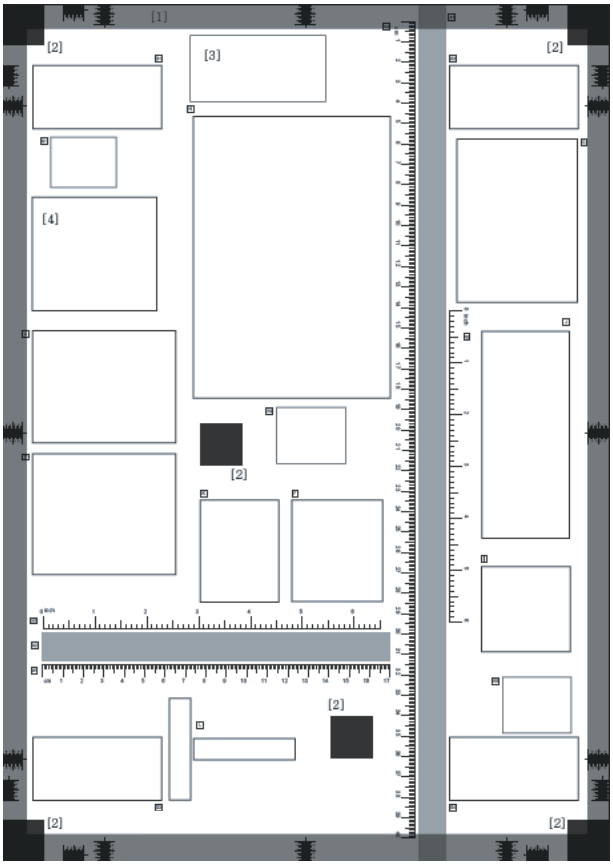
Print quality defects can be caused by printer components, consumables, media, internal software, external software applications, and environmental conditions.

To successfully troubleshoot print quality problems, eliminate as many variables as possible.

First, generate prints using printable pages using laser paper. Use paper from an unopened ream that has been acclimated to room temperature. Make sure that genuine HP toner is installed in the printer.

Figure 5-59 A/S chart (A3)

Figure 5-60 A/S chart



[1]	Grid pattern	For adjusting margin and magnification
[2]	Black patches	For adjusting skew error
[3]	Barcode	For checking the reproduction of the barcode
[4]	Note area	For recording the date, conditions, and so on.
[A]	Halftone band	For checking banding and jitter (K 50%)
[B, L]	Resolution patterns	For checking resolution
[C, D, E]	Images	For checking color reproduction
[F]	Map image	For checking fine line reproduction
[G]	Color patches	For checking color reproduction and uniformity
[H]	Gradation pattern	For checking tone reproduction of seven colors (C, M, Y, K, R, G, B/ 10~100%)
[I]	Color/Mono text	For checking the reproduction of color, mono text
[J]	Multilingual feature	For checking the reproduction of small text
[K]	White gap pattern	For checking color to color, color to mono white gap
[M]	Rulers	For checking the magnification error (unit: cm)
[N]	Rulers	For checking the magnification error (unit: inch)

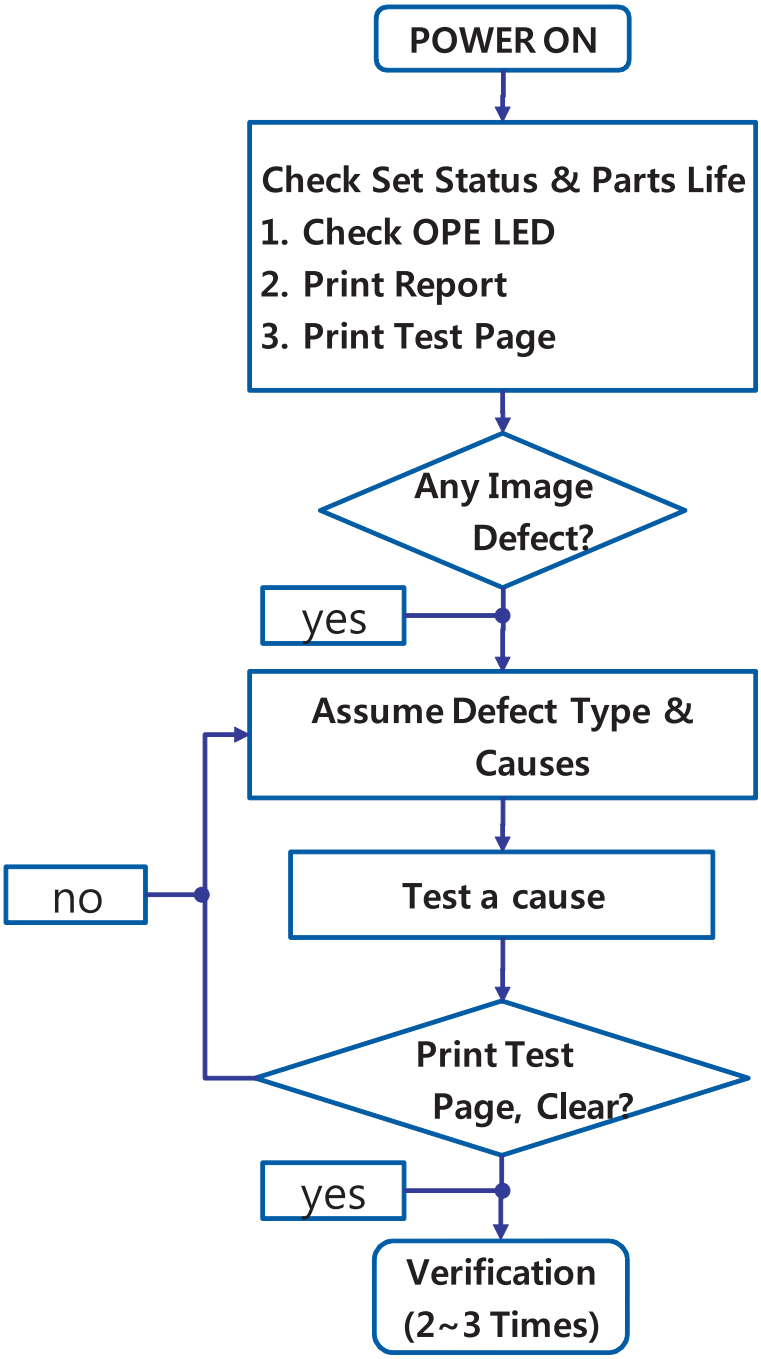
How to analyze image defects

See the following flowchart.

TIP: Depending on the remaining life of the part, the cause of the defect can vary. Check the remaining life of the part.

Check for defects even if the defect is not repeated.

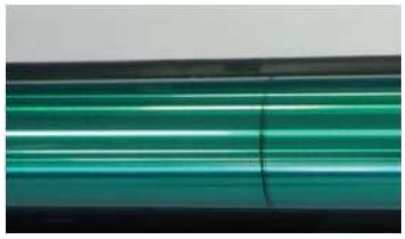
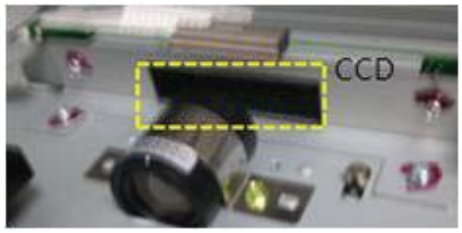
Figure 5-61 Defect analysis flowchart



Vertical black lines

Figure 5-62 Typical faulty images

Table 5-23 Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Check item	Action
1	Check the OPC for scratches or contamination in a vertical direction. 	Replace the drum unit.
2	Scanner unit is contaminated (Flow ADF glass/mirror/CCD sensor) 	Wipe the surface of the contaminated parts with a soft cloth.

Vertical light or white lines

Figure 5-63 Typical faulty images

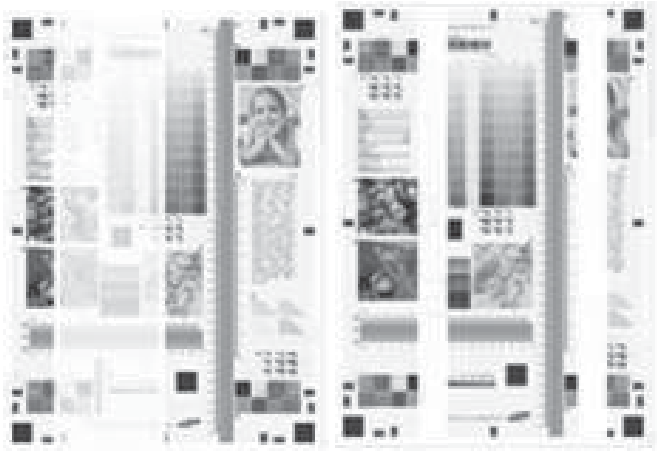


Table 5-24 Troubleshooting procedure

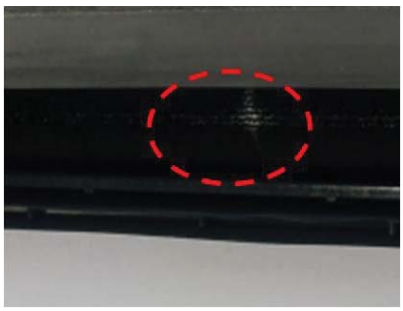
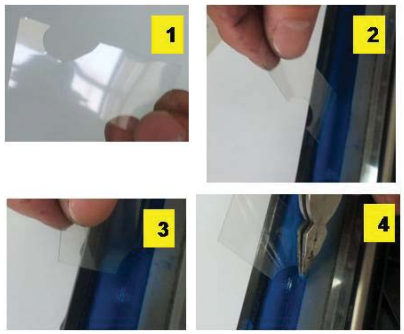
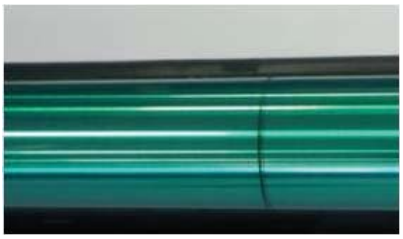
Step	Check item	Action
1	A foreign substance is between the magnetic roller and the blade. No toner on magnetic roller. 	Remove the foreign substance.  Make the hook (transparency sheet is recommended.) Put the hook into the gap between magnetic roller and blade. Pull out foreign substances.
2	The developer in the developer unit is empty or the developer unit life has expired.	• Check the life remaining of the developer unit on the supplies information report. – If its life has expired, replace the developer unit. • Check if the developer layer on magnetic roller is uniform.

Table 5-24 Troubleshooting procedure (continued)

Step	Check item	Action
		– If the developer layer is short, replace the developer unit. Normal
3	The laser beam path is blocked. (Foreign substance is on the laser scanner assembly window.)	Clean the laser scanner assembly window.
4	The OPC is scratched or contaminated in a vertical direction. 	Replace the drum unit.

Horizontal periodic black lines, dots

Figure 5-64 Typical faulty images

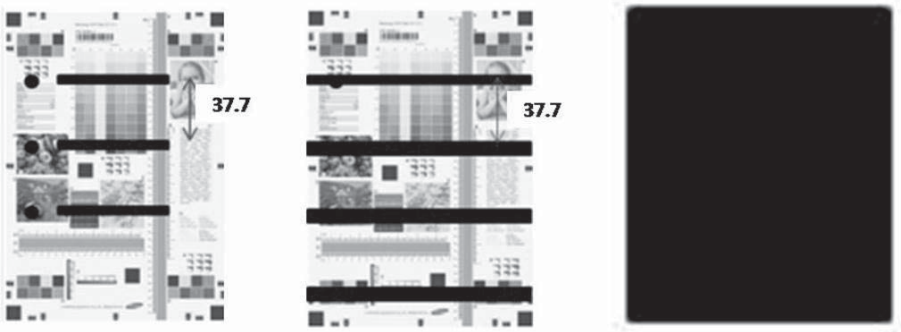


Table 5-25 Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Check item	Action
1	Horizontal periodic band or dot (CR 38 mm). Check if the surface of the charge roller is contaminated or scratched.	Clean the contaminated surface on the charge roller with a soft cloth. If the surface is scratched, replace the drum unit.
2	Horizontal periodic band or dot (OPC 188 mm). Check if the surface of the OPC drum is contaminated or scratched.	Clean the contaminated surface on the OPC drum with a soft cloth. If the surface is scratched, replace the drum unit.
3	Check if the charge roller contact plate had debris or is contaminated.	Clean the charge roller contact plate. If the problem persists, replace the drum unit. If the problem persists after replacing the drum unit, replace the HVPS board.

Horizontal periodic light/dark lines, dots

Figure 5-65 Typical faulty images

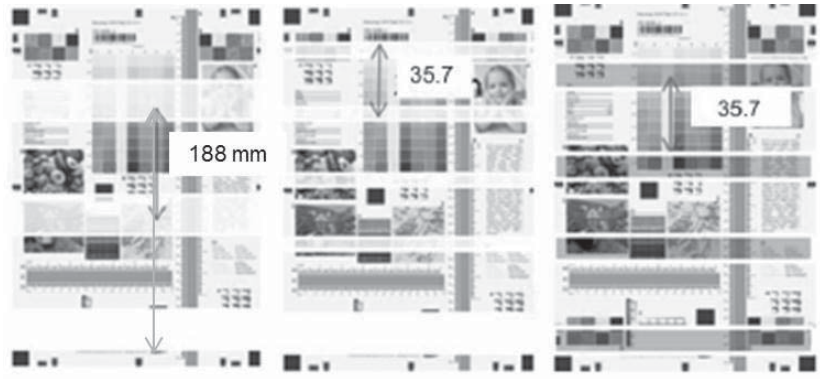
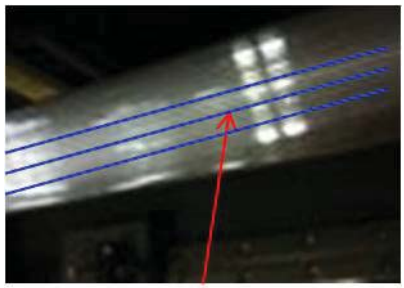


Table 5-26 Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Check item	Action
1	Horizontal periodic bands (OPC, 188 mm) • OPC was exposed for too long. • Damage was caused by a high voltage in a short amount of time.	This problem is likely to resolve itself over time. If the problem persists, replace the drum unit.
2	Horizontal periodic bands (magnetic roller, 35.7 mm) The magnetic roller is in poor condition. V-groove of the surface of magnetic roller is not uniform.  V-groove in Roller-Magnetic	Replace developer unit.

Blurred image

Figure 5-66 Typical faulty images

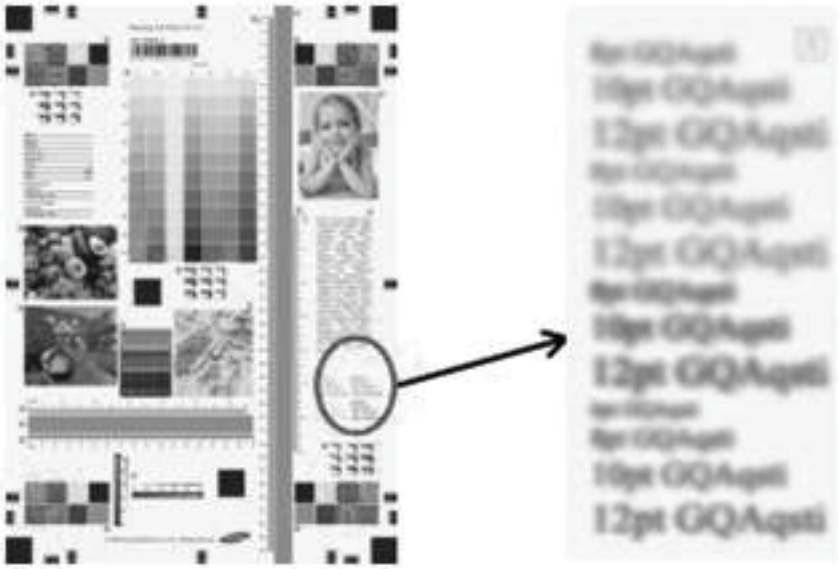


Table 5-27 Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Cause	Action
1	High humidity and/or the quality of the paper.	Use new, high quality paper.

Table 5-27 Troubleshooting procedure (continued)

Step	Cause	Action
2	THV transfer voltage is low.	Increase the THV transfer voltage.
3	Connection between HVPS and THV is incorrect.	Check if the connection between THV high voltage terminal and HVPS THV terminal is correct. Check if the connection between the HVPS and TR is correct.

Foggy image

Figure 5-67 Typical faulty images

Table 5-28 Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Cause	Action
1	Voltage of OPC motor is abnormally low.	Replace the drum unit.
2	Toner is over supplied by abnormal TC sensor.	Replace the toner cartridge.
3	Transfer assembly voltage is abnormally high.	Check the HVPS connection. • Connection of transfer rollers in THV and TR. Replace HVPS.
4	HVPS operates abnormally. HVPS is damaged or broken.	Replace HVPS.

Light image

Figure 5-68 Typical faulty images

Table 5-29 Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Cause	Action
1	A poor transfer has occurred.	Replace HVPS.
2	Output voltage of HVPS is abnormally low. • Color density decreases.	Replace HVPS.
3	TC sensor operates abnormally.	Replace the developer unit.

Uneven pitch and jitter image

Figure 5-69 Typical faulty images

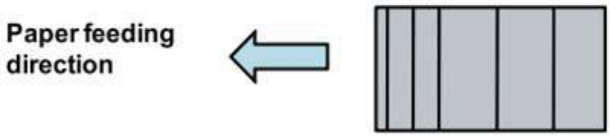
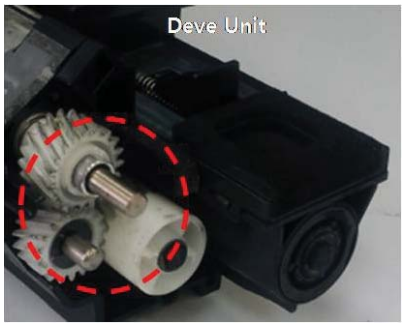
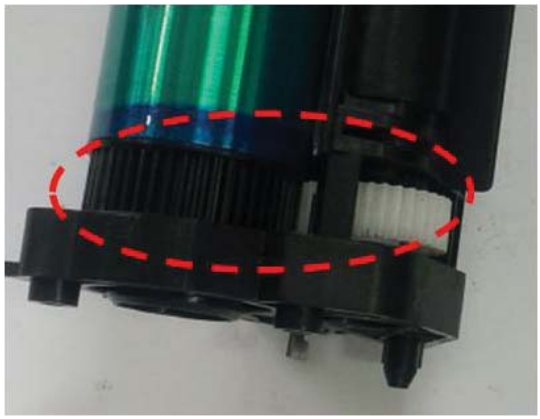


Table 5-30 Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Cause	Action
1	Under 3 mm periodic jitters or horizontal bands have occurred.	Remove foreign substance from the drive gears. Grease the drive gears. • Toner cartridge gears

Table 5-30 Troubleshooting procedure (continued)

Step	Cause	Action
		 • OPC unit gears.  • Main drive unit gears. Replace abnormal units. • Toner cartridge • Drum unit • Main drive unit
2	Under 1 mm periodic jitter or horizontal bands have occurred.	Check if the laser scanner assembly is assembled correctly. If not, replace the screws. Replace the laser scanner assembly.

Skewed image

Figure 5-70 Typical faulty images

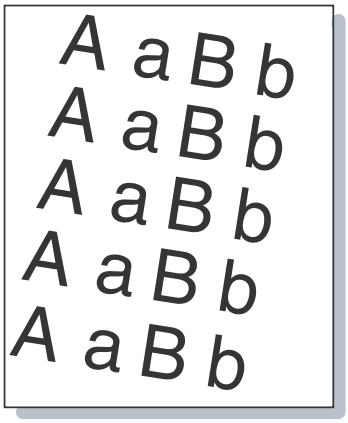


Table 5-31 Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Check item	Action
1	Is the tray properly installed?	Reinstall the tray correctly.
2	Is too much paper loaded in the tray?	Remove some paper.
3	Are the paper guides properly set?	Adjust the paper guides.
4	Is the surface of the pickup/reverse/feed roller dirty?	Clean or replace the contaminated roller.
5	Is the Flow ADF installed and adjusted properly?	Reinstall the Flow ADF unit. Adjust the Flow ADF skew.
6	Is the transfer belt installed properly?	Reinstall the ITB unit.

Poor fusing performance

Figure 5-71 Typical faulty images

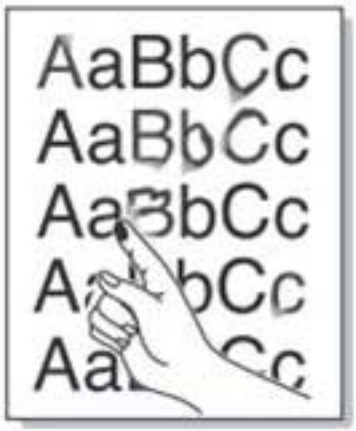
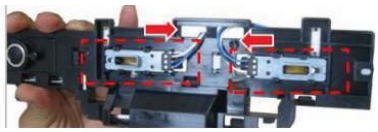


Table 5-32 Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Cause	Action
1	Check the paper type. Depending on what type of paper is used, print speed varies. • Plain (71~90g/), Thick (91~105g/): Full Speed • Heavy weight (106~175g/): Half Speed • Envelope (75~90 g/), Label (120~150 g/): Half Speed	Check that the paper type displayed on the control panel is the same type of paper being used for the print job.
2	The fuser unit is worn out.	Replace the fuser unit.
3	Check the surface of the fuser belt and pressure roller for scratches.	Replace the fuser unit.
4	Check the temperature control system for problems. • Thermistor is broken or operates abnormally • Halogen lamp is broken or operates abnormally	Check the non-contact thermistor sensor  Check the halogen lamp. If parts are broken, replace the broken parts or the fuser unit.
5	Check if the pressure control system operates properly.	Check the pressure control system. If the problem persists, replace the fuser unit.
6	Paper is wrapped on the heating roller.	Remove the wrapped paper and print a test page. If the problem persists, replace the fuser unit.

Stain on the paper back side

Figure 5-72 Typical faulty images

Table 5-33 Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Cause	Action
1	Is the transfer roller dirty or worn out?	Clean or replace the transfer roller assembly.
2	Is the fuser belt or pressure roller dirty?	Clean the fuser belt and pressure roller.
3	Check the pressure roller surface for damage or scratches.	Replace the fuser unit.

Setting standard tone

Setting standard tone

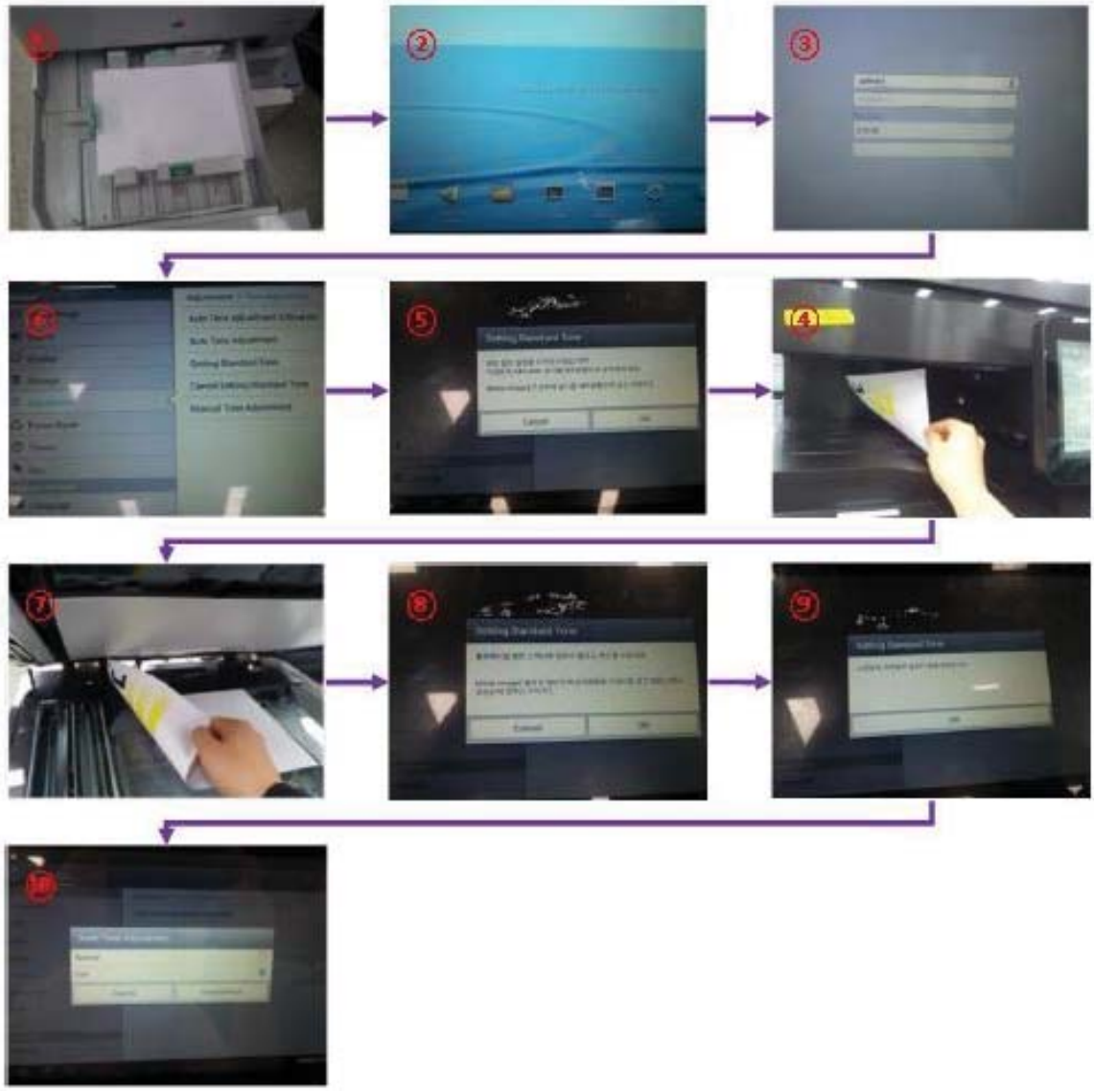
Purpose

- To adjust the color tone to the standard set by the manufacturer.

NOTE: This function must be executed after first installation.

Procedure

1. Load A4 or Letter with Short Edge Feeding (SEF) direction on tray.
2. Select **Setting** on the control panel.
3. Log in as Admin.
4. Select **Adjustment > Tone Adjustment > Setting Standard Tone**.
5. Select **OK** on confirmation window.
6. The scan ID chart prints.
7. Load the chart on the scanner glass in a horizontal direction.
8. Start the scan.
9. When the scan complete window appears, select **OK**.



Cancel setting standard tone

NOTE: When the machine is installed for the first time, **Cancel Setting Standard Tone** does not need to be executed.

Purpose

- Cancel the setting standard tone
- Return to the customized tone set by the user after setting the standard tone

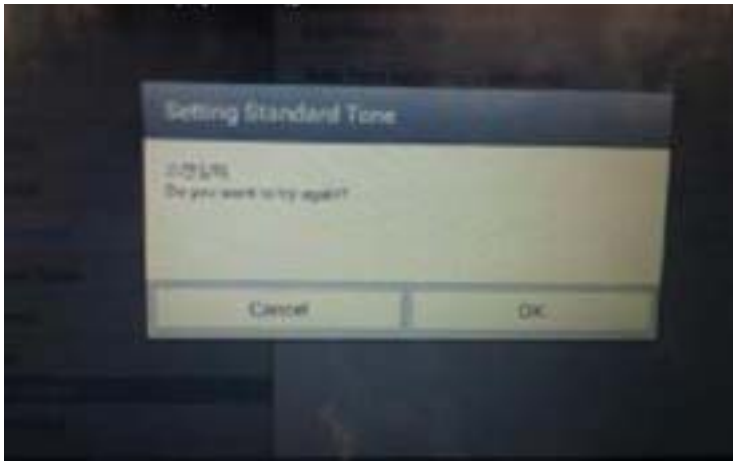
Procedure

1. Select **Adjustment > Tone Adjustment > Cancel Setting Standard Tone**.
2. When the cancellation is complete, select **OK**.
3. Select **Full TRC** : **Adjustment > Tone Adjustment > Auto Tone Adjustment > *Full + Execute Now**

Error message

Scan image fail

- When a problem occurs on the scanned ID chart, an error message will display.



Check items

- Check the scanned ID chart for correct placement.
- Make sure the chart direction is horizontal.
- Retry the setting standard tone procedure.

When to perform Setting Standard Tone procedure

- When installing the machine for the first time.
- When the brightness has changed in comparison to the previous image.

NOTE: If the problem persists after executing the setting standard tone procedure, look for other causes.

Other errors

Image system problem

No	Problem Description	Troubleshooting Page
1	Toner cartridge detection error	
2	Image contamination (pressure roller contamination)	

Toner cartridge detection error

Symptom

- Toner cartridge is installed, but **Not Installed** message displays.

Cause

- Toner cartridge is not properly installed.
- Toner cartridge e-label harness is defective.
- E-label PCA or e-label Chip is defective.
- E-label connection (modular connector) is defective.
- E-label Joint PCA is defective.
- Bad connection between the main board and the e-label Joint PCA.

Troubleshooting

- Toner cartridge installation problem:
  - Check if the toner cartridge is properly installed.
  - If the cartridge comes out automatically, check the cartridge fixing hook.
  - If the cartridge fixing hook is damaged, replace the cartridge cap or cartridge.
- E-label harness problem:
  - Make sure the e-label harness is correctly connected.

    Check the modular jack for damage or abnormal assembly.
  - If the modular jack harness is defective, replace it with a new one.

    If the modular jack has moved into the toner cartridge, remove it.
- E-label PCA problem or e-label data problem:
  - Replace the toner cartridge.
- E-label connection (modular connector) installation problem:

- Open the front cover. Remove the toner cartridge.
- Make sure that the e-label connection (modular connector) is correctly installed.
- If the modular connector is not installed correctly, open the rear cover and reinstall.

- E-label Joint PCA problem:
  - If the e-label Joint PCA, modular jack pin, or main board interface connector are damaged, replace the PCA (see the previous step).
- Bad connection between the main board and the e-label Joint PCA:
  - Check the connection between the main board and the e-label Joint PCA. If the connection is bad, replace the harness, the e-label Joint PCA, or the main board.

Image contamination (pressure roller contamination)

Symptom

- Image (front/back side of paper) is contaminated with toner

Cause

- Toner is contaminated on the surface of pressure roller with low coverage, mainly simplex, and low duty jobs.

Troubleshooting

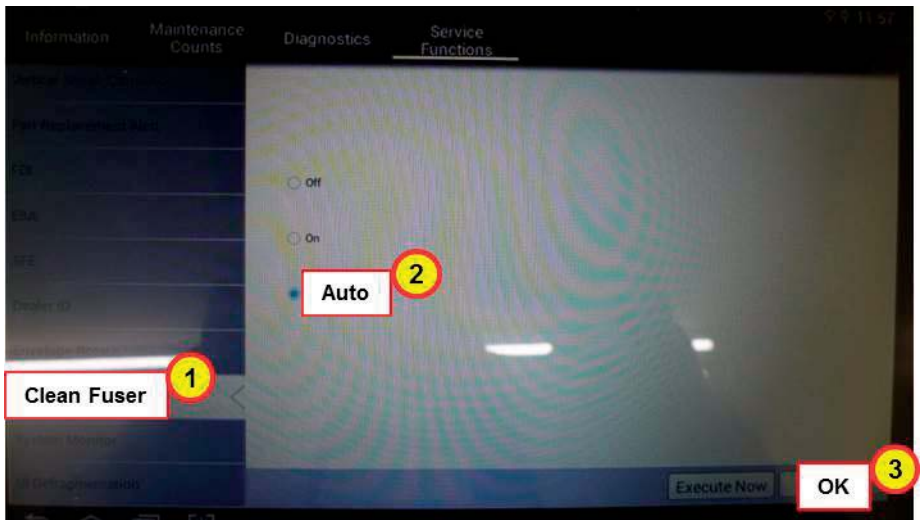
1. Install Vx.D6.08 or latest version.
2. Make sure **Clean Fuser** function is set to **Auto**.

   Vx.D6.08 or later version has **Clean Fuser: Auto** function as default.

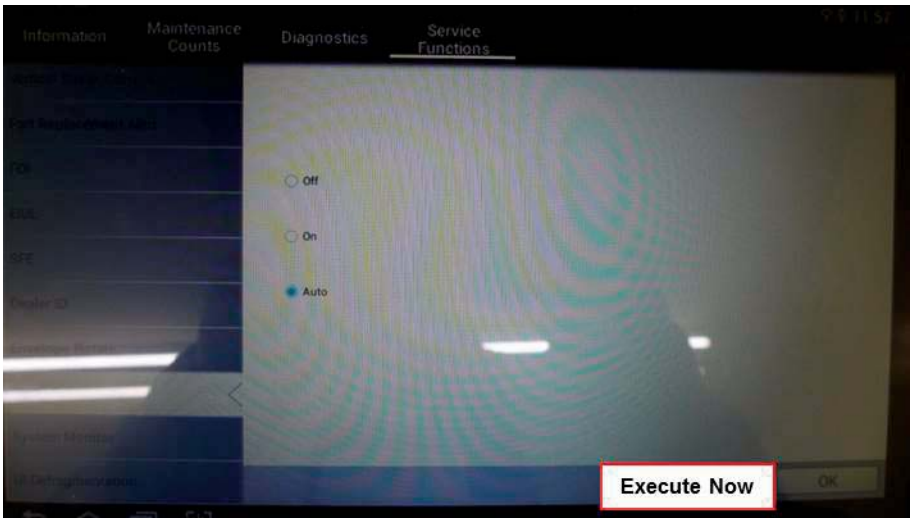
   If the previous setting used is **On** mode, that pre-existing setting value will be kept as before. Otherwise, it will be changed to **Auto**.

   On mode can be set at desired intervals as required.

   SVC mode → Service Functions → Clean Fuser → Auto



3. To execute fuser cleaning function manually, press **Execute Now**.

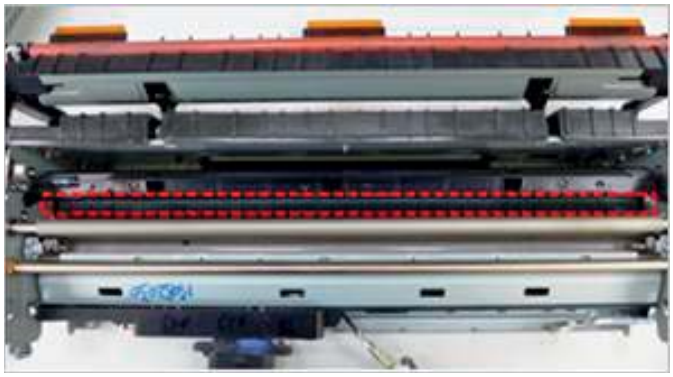


4. Repeat step 3 up to six times until you cannot find any contamination on the fuser cleaning sheet.

   If the contamination on the fuser cleaning sheet still exists, clean the pressure-roller with soft brush or scraper with care.

   – Open the fuser jam cover. Remove three screws, and then remove the brush.

   – Check the surface of pressure roller and remove the toner contamination while carefully rotating the pressure roller one cycle.



Fuser problem

No	Problem Description	Troubleshooting Page
1	Acoustic noise in fuser unit	
2	Image hot offset problem	
3	Error **fusing unit not compatible** problem	

Acoustic noise in fuser unit

- **Symptom:** Acoustic noise from the fuser assembly in the early stages of printing.
- **Cause:** Fuser belt edges are damaged.

Troubleshooting

▲ Replace the fuser unit.

Image hot offset problem

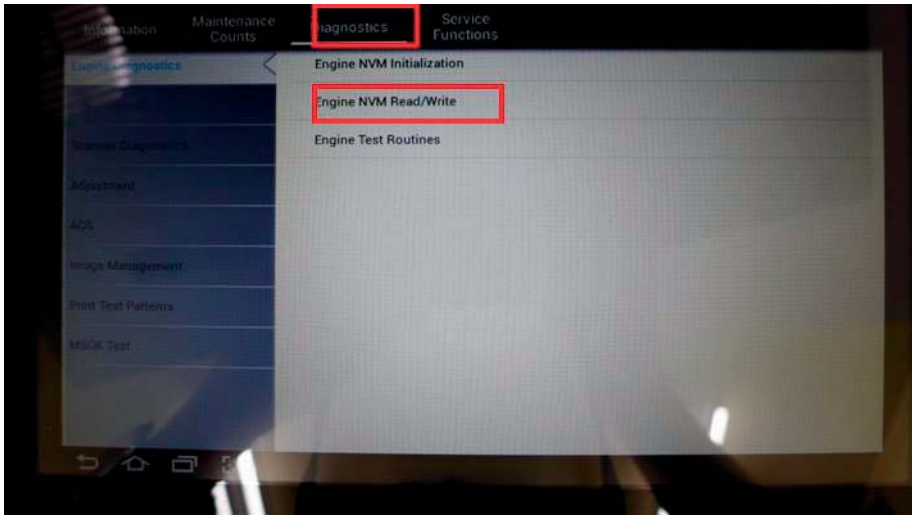
- **Symptom:** Image at the leading edge of the paper is duplicated after 110 mm.
- **Cause:** The fusing temperature is high.

Troubleshooting

▲ Lower the fusing temperature in SVC mode until the problem disappears. The default value is 10, and it is recommended to change the value up to 8.

How to change the plain temperature offset

a. Enter SVC mode, and select **Engine NVM Rear/Write**.



b. Select the **Plain Temperature offset** menu.

c. Press the **OK** button after adjusting the value. (1 = 2℃)

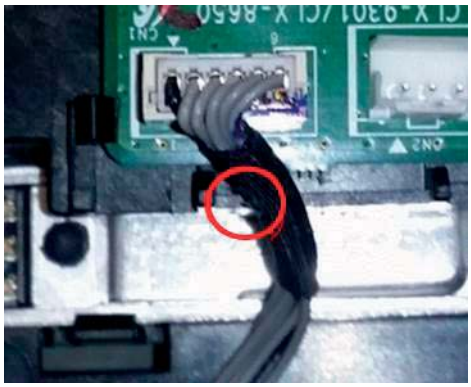
d. Press the **Home** button to exit SVC mode.

Error “fusing unit not compatible” problem

- **Symptom:** Error **Fusing unit not compatible** message appears.
- **Cause:** Harness for EEPROM signal is damaged by the sharp edge of the fuser frame.

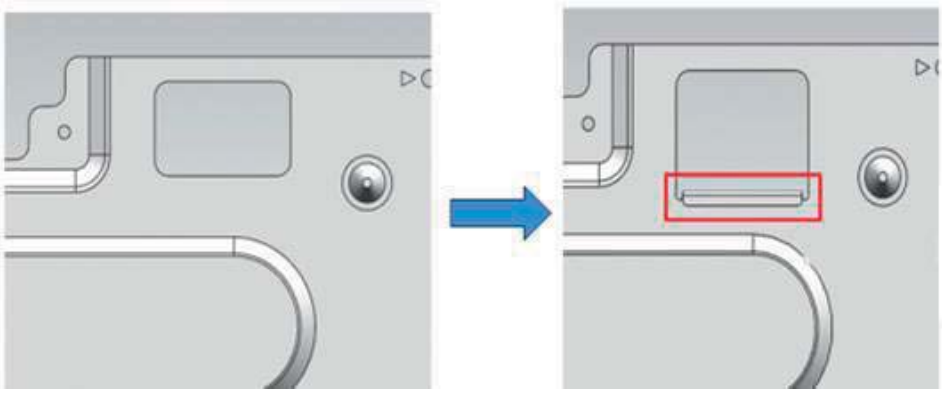
▲ Check if the EEPROM signal harness is damaged.

If so, replace the fuser unit (from 2015.08.11 the new part was applied) or insulate the damaged spot of harness by wrapping each harness up.



NOTE: The pre-existing AT tape might need to be removed, and then re-apply the insulation for each damaged harness.

NOTE: New design was applied from 2015.08.11 which doesn't have the sharp edge on the harness path



Scanner and Flow ADF problems

No	Problem Description	Troubleshooting Page
1	Noise of Flow ADF hinge/Crack of Flow ADF hinge/Flow ADF will not stay open	
2	Flow ADF is not recognized	
3	During copy or scan job, the original paper JAM and U3–3213 error occur.	

Noise of Flow ADF hinge/crack of Flow ADF/Flow ADF does not stay open

Symptom

- A noise comes from the Flow ADF hinges when it is opened or closed.
- The Flow ADF hinge is cracked.
- When the Flow ADF is opened to access the scanner glass, the unit should remain at a 50° angle (±10°). The Flow ADF does not remain open as expected.

Troubleshooting

1. Remove the Flow ADF connector cover.
2. Remove the connector and one screw.
3. Lift and remove the Flow ADF unit.
4. Remove four screws from the hinge unit. Remove and replace the hinge unit.
5. Reassemble the Flow ADF.

Flow ADF is not recognized.

Symptom

- The Flow ADF installation is not recognized.

Cause

- The Flow ADF power cable fails.

Troubleshooting

1. Reassemble the Flow ADF power cable. If the problem is not resolved, replace the power cable.
2. Adjust the harness and fix it with a cable tie.

During copy or scan job, the original paper JAM and U3–3213 error occurs.

Symptom

- During copy or scan job, the original paper JAM and U3–3213 error occurs.

Troubleshooting

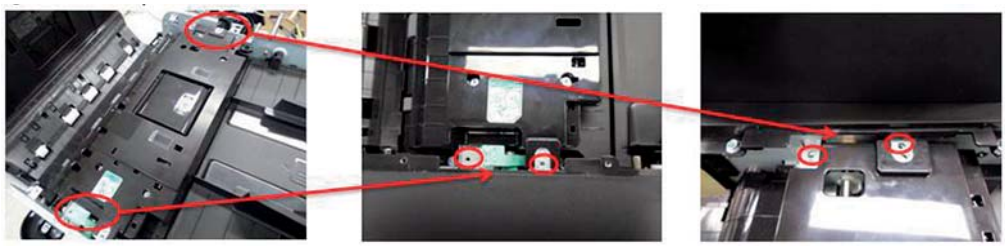
1. Check if the **Sponge-Damper Separation** has changed position.

2. If yes, refer to following guide.

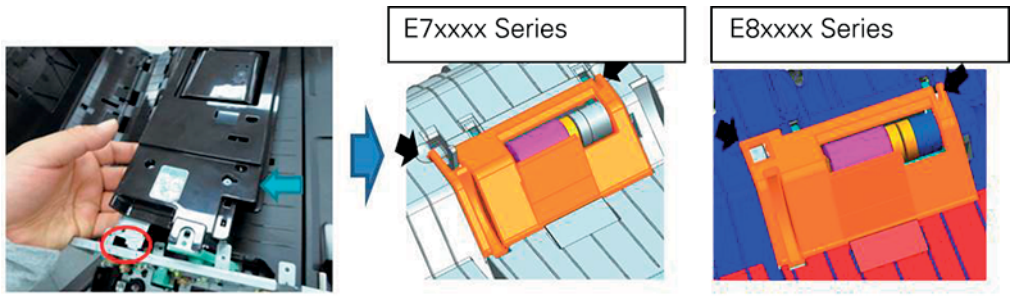
   a. Remove three screws.

   b. Remove the linker by pressing its upper side from an inner direction. Then remove the front cover.

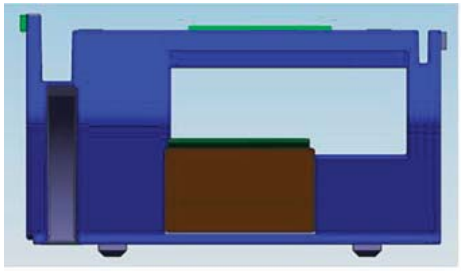
   c. Remove four screws.



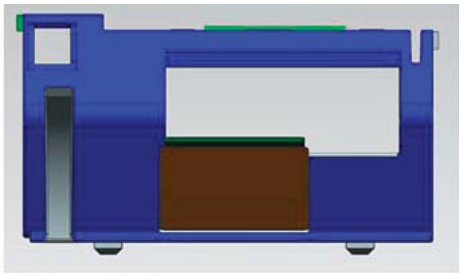
   d. Remove the pickup assembly.



e. Replace the Flow ADF housing separation.



E7xxxx Series
JC97-04586A_Flow ADF



E8xxxx Series
JC97-04621A_Flow ADF

Drive unit problem

No	Problem Description	Troubleshooting Page
1	Machine makes noise during print job	

Machine makes noise during print job

Symptom

- Machine makes noise during a print job.

Cause

- The gear train needs to be greased.
- An old type gear is assembled.

Troubleshooting

1. Enter service mode.
2. Execute a fuser motor test.

   Service Mode > Diagnostics > Engine Diagnostics > Engine Test Routines > Fuser Motor Forward
3. Remove the fuser unit and execute the fuser motor test again.
4. If the printer still makes a noise during a print job, replace the fuser drive output assembly.
5. If the problem is not resolved, replace the fuser unit.

Feeding system problem

No	Problem Description	Troubleshooting Page
1	Tray 1, Tray 2, and Tray 3 cannot pick up paper	
2	Printer cannot feed paper	
3	Envelope wrinkle	

Tray 1, Tray 2, and Tray 3 cannot pick up paper

Symptom

- Tray 1, Tray 2, and Tray 3 cannot pick up paper.

Cause

- Bad harness connection on the main board.
- Connector defect of the main board.

Troubleshooting

1. Check the harness connection. Reconnect the harness if it is not connected correctly.
2. Check the pickup connector on the main board.

   If the connector has a problem with the soldering, replace the main board.

Printer cannot feed paper

Symptom

- The printer cannot feed paper from Tray 2 or Tray 3.

Cause

- Feed motor problem
- Feed motor connection problem
- Main board defect

Troubleshooting

- Check the feed motor operation.
  - Open the right door and push the cover switch forcibly.
  - Enter service mode.
  - Select the following menu items:

    EDC Mode > Diagnostics > Engine Diagnostics > Engine Test Routine > Feed motor > On/Off

    Check the operating status of the two feed rollers.
  - If the feed rollers cannot rotate, open the rear cover and check the motor and gears.
- Check the connection between the main board and the feed motor.
- If the problem persists, replace the main board.

Envelope wrinkle

Symptom

- Envelope is wrinkled when printed from the MP Tray.

Troubleshooting

1. Enter service mode.
2. Select **Envelope Rotate**. (**Service Functions > Envelope Rotate**)
3. Select a menu item: **Off**, **90 degrees**, or **180 degrees**.

Laser scanner assembly problem

No	Problem Description	Troubleshooting Page
1	Laser scanner assembly motor makes a loud noise	

Symptom

- The laser scanner assembly motor makes a loud noise while in printing mode.

Cause

- The laser scanner assembly motor is defective.

Troubleshooting

1. Enter service mode and execute the laser scanner assembly motor test.
2. If the laser scanner assembly motor running sound is loud, replace the laser scanner assembly.
3. If the laser scanner assembly motor running sound is not loud, check the other unit.

Electrical circuit problem

No	Problem Description	Troubleshooting Page
1	LVPS output voltage drop error	
2	SMPS output voltage drop error	
3	HDD makes a loud noise	
4	Control panel malfunction: networking not functioning	
5	Home screen icon not visible or control panel is broken	

LVPS output voltage drop error

Symptom

- An error message occurs on the control panel (C3–1312, S3–3121, M1–4111, M1–4211).

Cause

- 24V channel output voltage drops to under 21.6V and 5V channel output is normal.

Troubleshooting

1. Check all 24V output channels (24VS1, 24VS2, 24VS3, 24VS4) to determine if 24V voltage comes out.
2. If 24V voltage does not come out, check **24V on/off signal pin** on the main board.
   a. The voltage at **24V on/off signal pin** is 0V. → Main board and signal is normal.
   b. The voltage at signal pin is **4~5.3V** → Main board and signal is abnormal
3. If Main board and signal is normal and all 24V output channels are nearly 0V, check other parts (such as the fuser, motor, scanner harness, and so on) driven by 24V voltage before replacing the LVPS.
4. If Main board and signal is normal and just one or two or three 24V output channels are nearly 0V, inspect some harness from abnormal 24V output channel before replacing the LVPS.
5. If Main board and signal is abnormal and all 24V output channels are nearly 0V, inspect the harness, connector and main board.

Hard disk drive (HDD) makes a loud noise

Symptom

- The Hard disk drive (HDD) makes a loud noise.

Cause

- The HDD has defects.

Troubleshooting

- Replace the HDD.

Networking not function

Symptom

- Network is not functioning.

Cause

- Network line itself is not working properly.
- Network configuration is wrong.
- Some related electronic components in the main board have defects.

Troubleshooting

1. Connect a network line to the PC and complete a ping test.
2. Complete a ping test after connecting the network line to the SET. If the connection is working, check the network configuration which might have been set incorrectly.
3. If the ping test does not have a result, open the rear cover and check the main board for visible defects on the network related components such as the connector (CN16), capacitor (C192), and other close components. Surge voltage from the outside can cause defects.
4. If any of the components have visible defects, then replace the main board.

Control panel malfunction

Symptom

- When touching a button, another button is pressed.

※ **For example,**

When touching home button,
another menu is executed.

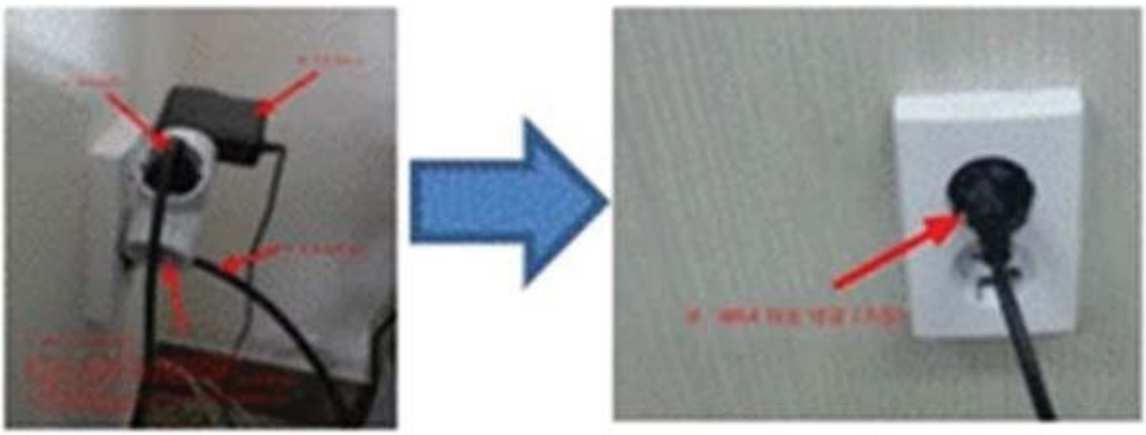
When touching "5" button,
"4", "6", "cos" are entered.

Cause

- Touch IC is influenced by the interference between TX frequency and power noise frequency.

Troubleshooting

1. If the power cable is connected to the multi-tap, unplug and plug it into an independent outlet.

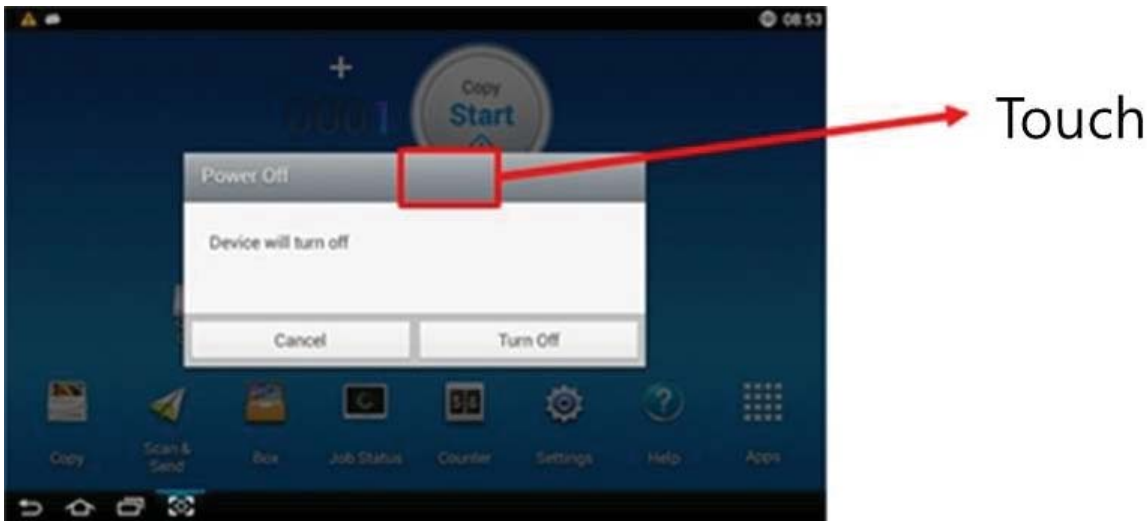


[X]

[O]

2. If the touch malfunction persists, check the following:
   - Press the power button until a pop-up window displays.

– Press and hold inside of the window area, avoiding the **Cancel** and **Turn Off** buttons, until the password window displays.



– Enter **8378** and press **Done**.

– Select **Utilities**.

– Change the **Touch Config** value:
  - After changing **Touch Config** value, select **Home**.
  - Priority: 1.(default) → 4. 401K_500K → 5. 500K_599K → 3. 148K_290K → 2. 86K_216K
– Check the touch operation.

- If the touch malfunction persists, change **Touch Config** to another value and test the touch operation again.

Home screen icon is missing or control panel is broken

Symptom

- Home screen icon is missing or the control panel screen is broken.

Cause

- UI software error.

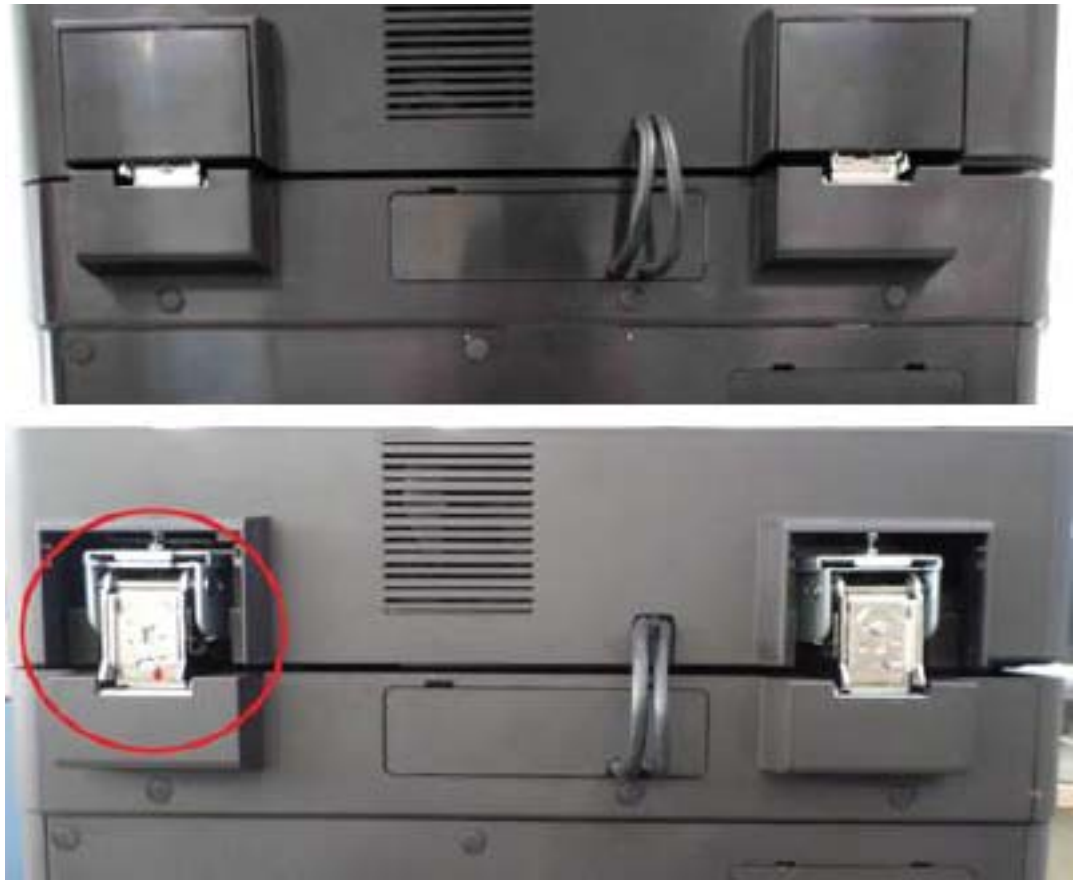
Troubleshooting

- Enter service mode.
- Execute **Main Memory Clear** (**Service Functions** > **Main Memory Clear**)

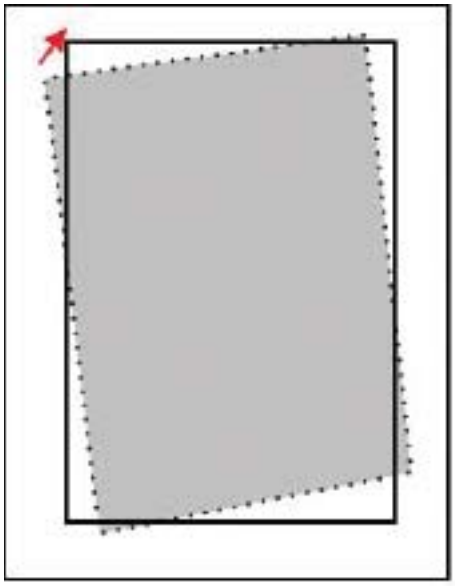
Adjusting the Flow ADF skew

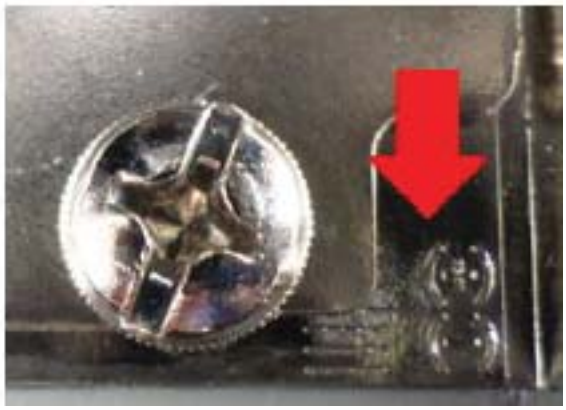
1. Open the Flow ADF. Loosen the two screws securing both hinges.

2. Adjust the position of the Flow ADF hinge according to the skew status.

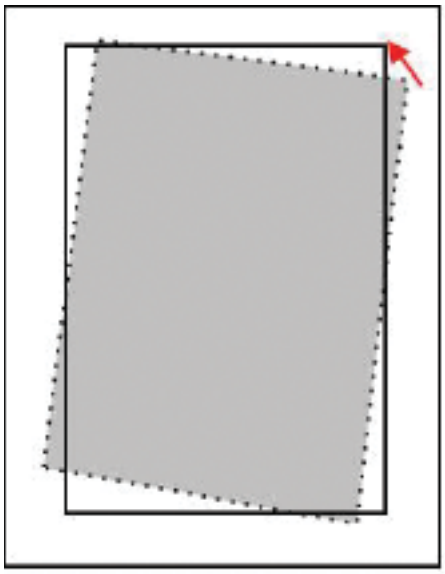


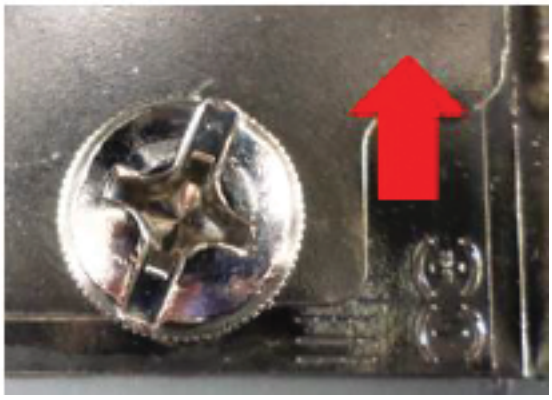
a. If the skew image is similar to the following example, adjust the hinge unit in the direction of the arrow. (1 scale = >1.0 mm skew adjustment)





b. If the skew image is like the following example, adjust the hinge unit in the direction of the arrow. (1 scale = >1.0 mm skew adjustment)



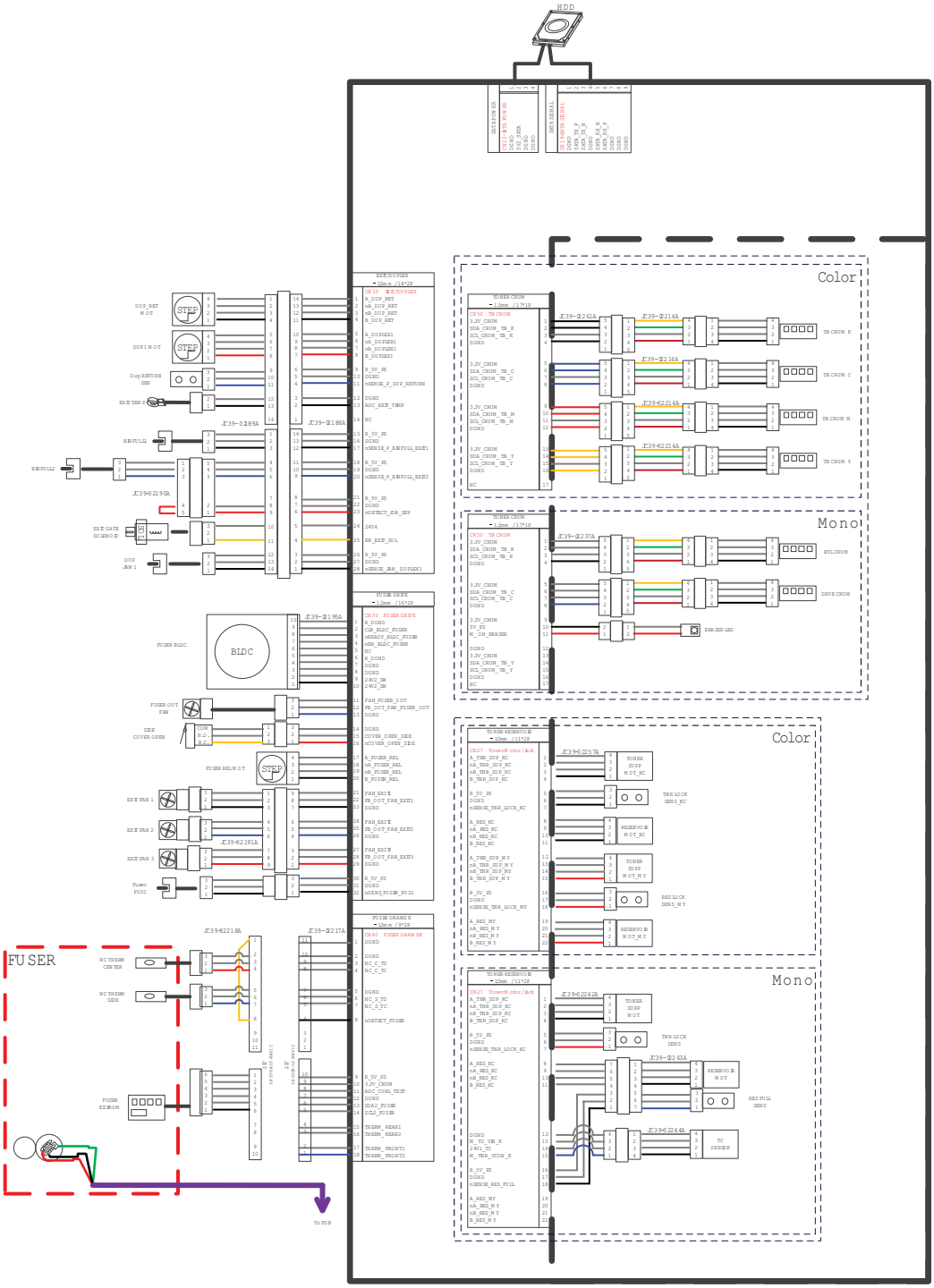


3. Detach the Flow ADF sponge after adjusting the skew. Place the Flow ADF sponge on the scanner glass. Close the Flow ADF unit to attach the sponge.

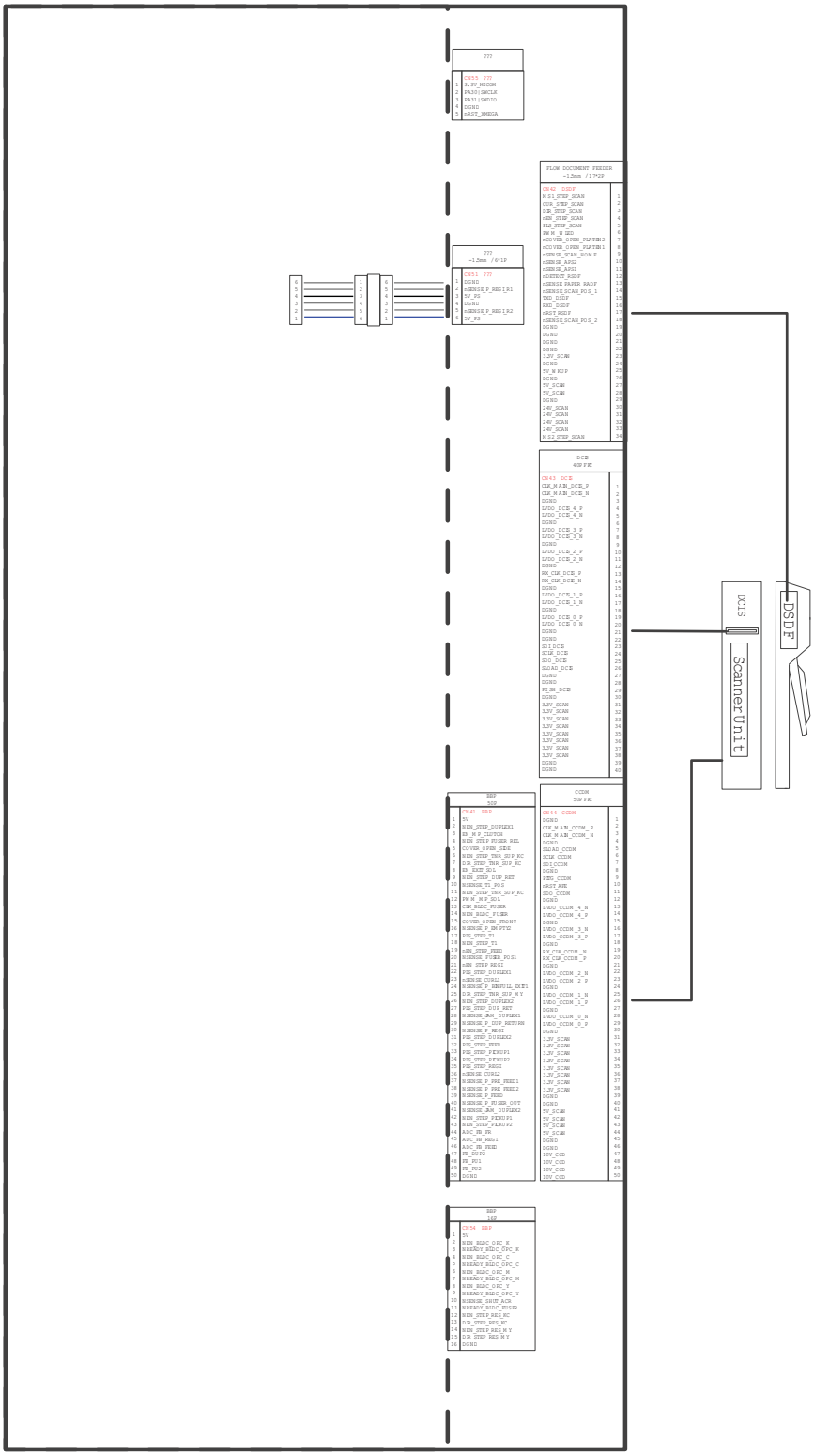
6 Diagrams

- Connection Diagram (FUSER/EXIT/DUPLEX/TONER)
- Connection Diagram (Scanner)
- Connection Diagram (Laser Scanner Assembly/OPE/USB)
- Connection Diagram (Side/MP/Feed/Registration/Pickup)
- Connection Diagram (OPC/WTB/CST Lock)
- Connection Diagram (HVPS/LVPS/FDB)

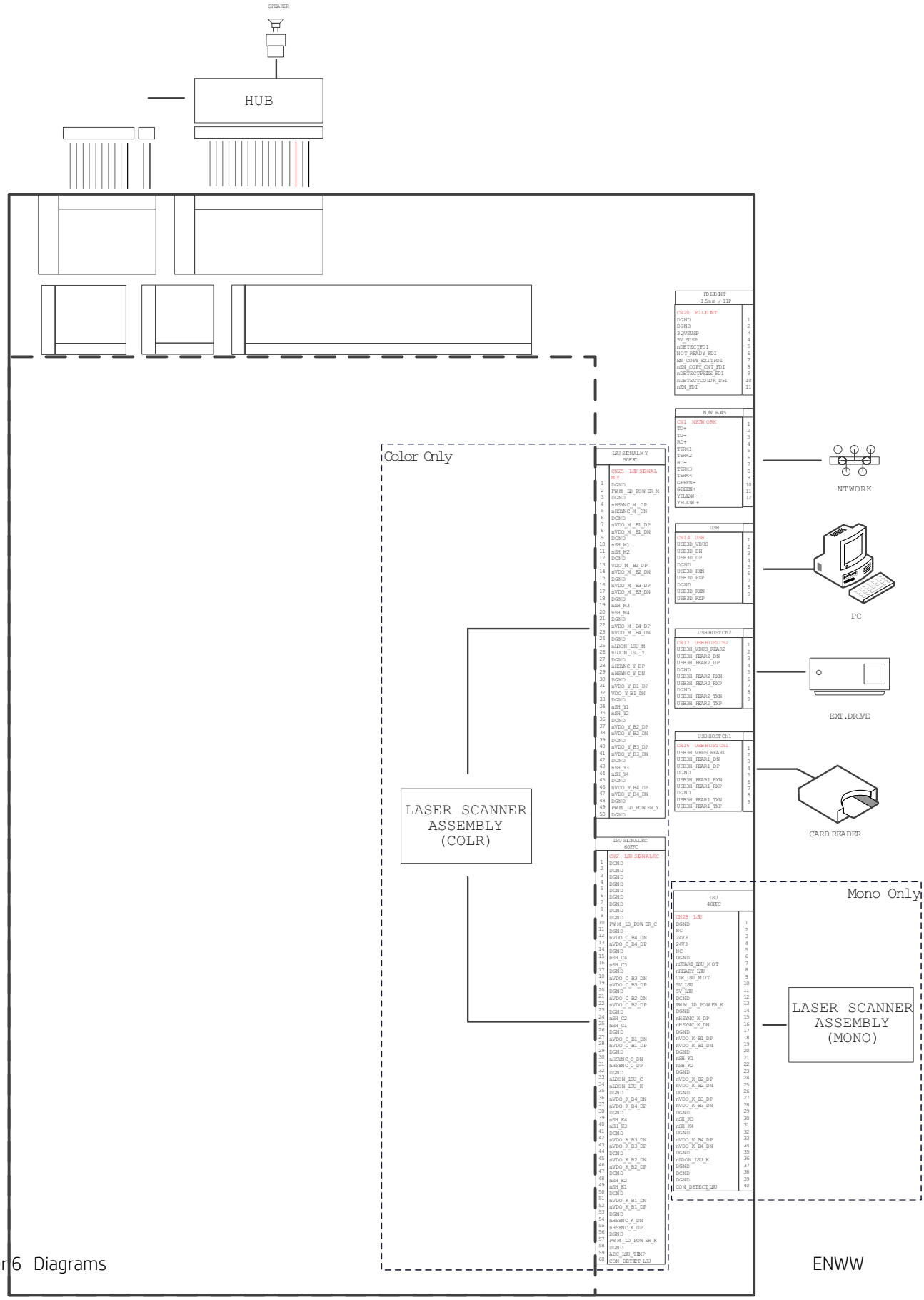
Connection Diagram (FUSER/EXIT/DUPLEX/TONER)



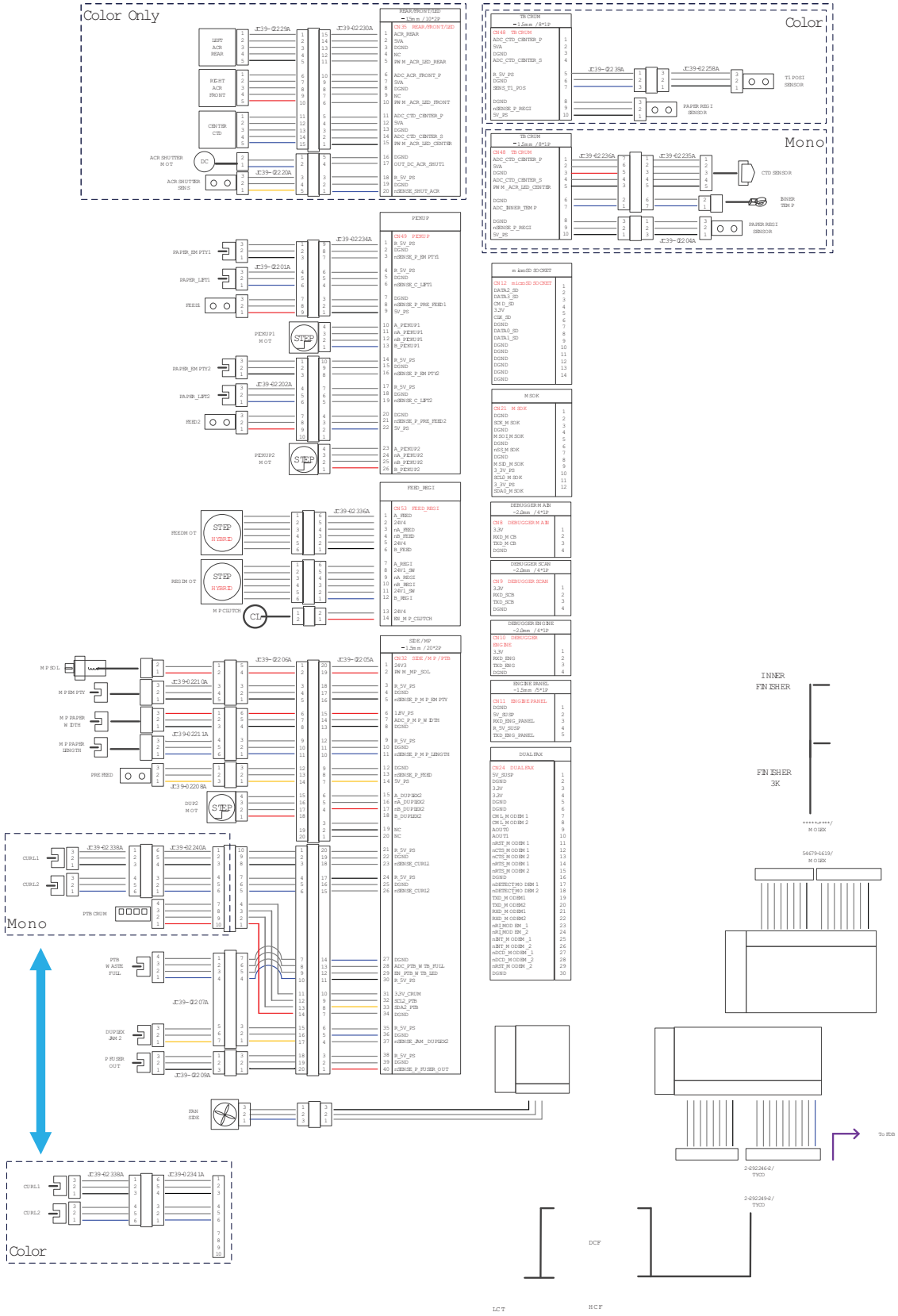
Connection Diagram (Scanner)



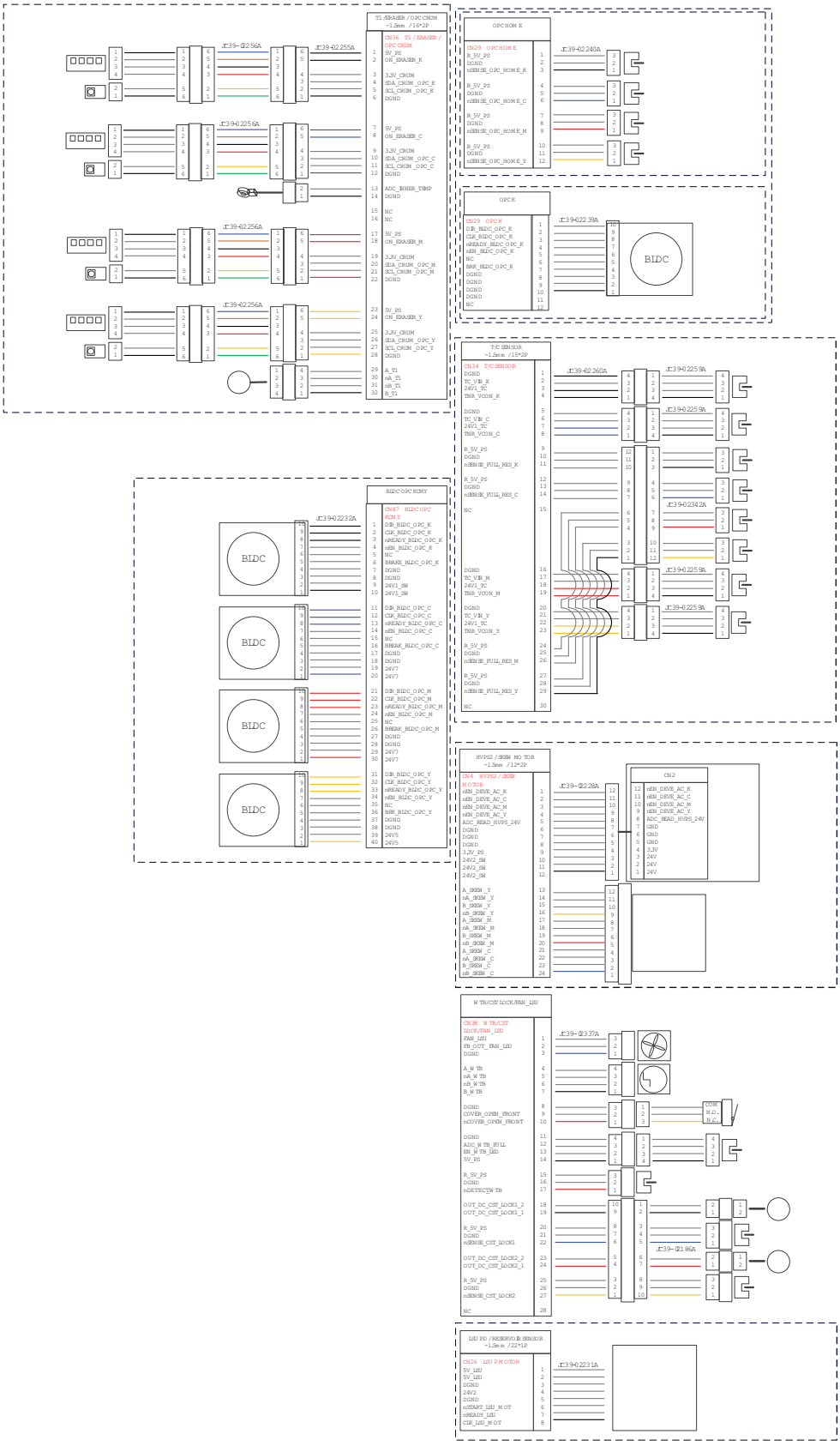
Connection Diagram (Laser Scanner Assembly/OPE/USB)



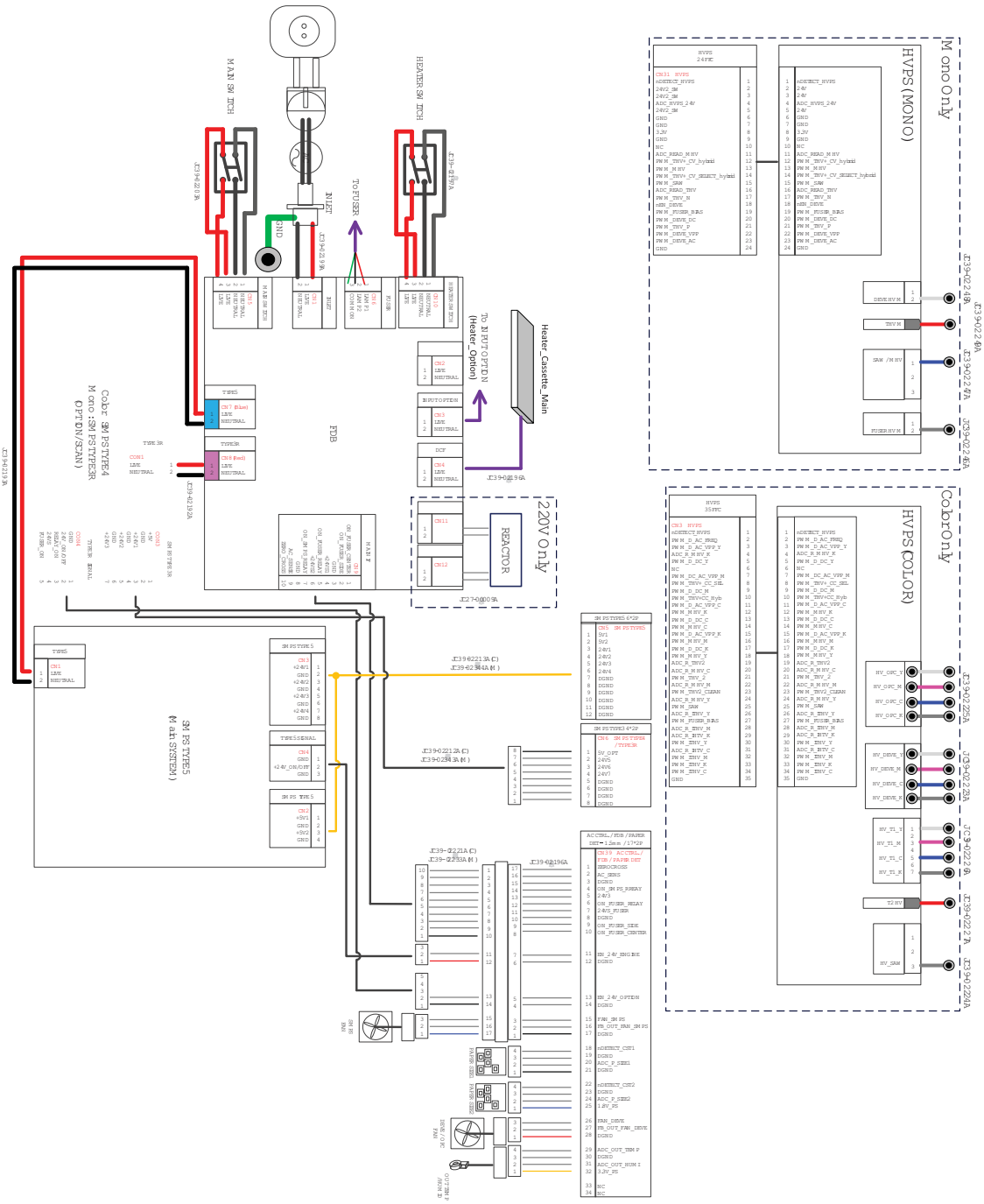
Connection Diagram (Side/MP/Feed/Registration/Pickup)



Connection Diagram (OPC/WTB/CST Lock)



Connection Diagram (HVPS/LVPS/FDB)



7 3,250-sheet Stapling Finisher/2,250-sheet Booklet Finisher

- Precautions
- Product specification and description
- Service approach
- Removal and replacement procedures (stapler/stacker and booklet finishers)
- Problem solving
- Finisher system diagram

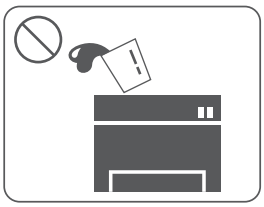
Precautions

Caution for safety

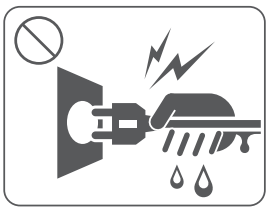
Electric shock and fire safety precautions

Failure to follow these instructions could result in electric shock or cause a fire.

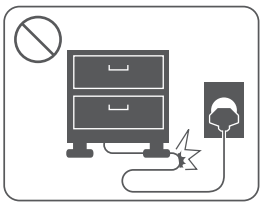
1. Use the correct voltage. Failure to do so could damage the printer and cause fire or electric shock.
2. Use the power cable supplied with the printer. Use of an incorrectly specified cable could cause overheating and fire.
3. Do not overload the power socket. This could lead to overheating of the cables inside the wall and cause fire.
4. Keep water and other liquids, paper clips, pins, and other foreign objects away from the printer. Contact with liquids or these objects might cause electric shock or fire.



5. Do not touch the plugs on the ends of the power cable with wet hands. When servicing the printer, remove the power plug from the wall socket.

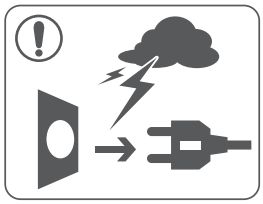


6. Use caution when connecting or disconnecting the power cable.
7. Take care of the power cable. Do not allow the power cable to become twisted or sharply bent around corners as this will cause damage. Do not place objects on top of the power cable. Damage to the power cable might cause overheating and fire. Exposed cables might cause electric shock. Replace damaged power cable immediately. Do not reuse or repair a damaged power cable. Certain chemicals can damage the coating on the power cable, weakening the coating or exposing cables which might cause electric shock or fire.

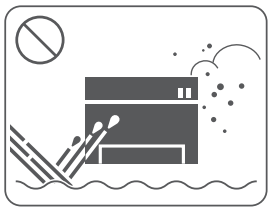


8. Make sure that the power outlet and plugs are not cracked or broken. Repair these defects as soon as possible. Be careful to not cut or damage the power cable or plugs when moving the printer.

9. Use caution during thunder or lightning storms. HP recommends the printer be disconnected from the power source when thunder or lightning is expected. Do not touch the printer or the power cable if it is still connected to the power outlet during these weather conditions.

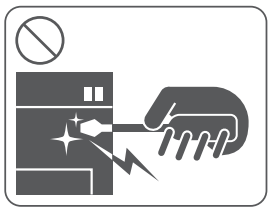


10. Do not place the printer in damp or dusty areas. Install the printer in a clean, well-ventilated location. Do not position the printer near a humidifier or in front of an air conditioner. Moisture and dust build up inside the printer can lead to overheating and cause fire or rust.



11. Do not place the printer in direct sunlight. Direct sunlight can cause the temperature inside the printer to rise causing failure to work properly, and in extreme conditions, might lead to fire.

12. Do not insert metal objects into the printer through the ventilator fan or other parts of the casing. Doing so could lead to the metal object making contact with the high voltage conductor inside the printer, causing electric shock.



13. Wait 5 minutes after unplugging the power cable before replacing the LVPS board to avoid electric shock.

Handling precautions

The following instructions are for the user's personal safety, to avoid injury, and to avoid damage to the printer.

1. Make sure the printer is placed on a level surface capable of supporting the weight of the printer. Failure to do so could cause the printer to tip or fall.

2. The printer contains rollers, gears, and fans. Make sure to not catch fingers, hair, or clothing in any these rotating devices.

3. Do not place any small metal objects, or containers of water, chemicals, or other liquids close to the printer. If spilled, these objects or liquids could get into the printer and cause damage, or cause electric shock or fire.

4. Do not place the printer in damp or dusty areas, near an open window, or close to a humidifier or heater. These conditions can cause damage to the printer.

5. Do not place candles or burning cigarettes on the printer. Doing so could cause fire.
6. Make sure that the printer is installed and operated in an area that meets temperature and humidity specifications.
   - The printer cannot be used immediately after being stored at below zero Celsius for long periods of time. Doing so could cause malfunction. Place the printer in an area where it can reach room temperature before operation.

Removal and replacement precautions

1. Use caution when replacing parts. Always use HP parts. Make sure to note the exact location of parts and cable routing before dismantling any part of the printer. Make sure all parts and cables are replaced correctly. Complete the following procedures before dismantling the printer or replacing any parts.
2. Make sure that the power cable is disconnected before servicing or replacing any electrical parts.
3. Disconnect interface cables and power cables.
4. Use approved replacement parts. Make sure that the part number, printer name, voltage, and current or temperature ratings are correct.
5. Do not excessive force to remove or refit parts, especially when fitting screws into plastic.
6. Make sure not to drop any small parts into the printer.
7. Be careful when handling the OPC drum:
   - The OPC Drum can be permanently damaged if exposed to light. Be careful not to expose the OPC Drum to direct sunlight, fluorescent light, or incandescent room lighting. Exposure for as little as 5 minutes can damage the surface of the photoconductive properties and will result in print quality degradation. Be careful when servicing the printer. Remove the OPC Drum and store it in a black bag or other lightproof container. Be careful when working with the printer if the covers, especially the top cover, are open, as light is admitted to the OPC area and can damage the OPC Drum.
   - Make sure not to scratch the green surface of the OPC Drum Unit. If the green surface of the Drum Cartridge is scratched or touched, the print quality will be compromised.

Disregarding this warning may cause bodily injury

1. Be careful with high temperature parts.

   The fuser unit operates at high temperatures. Wait for the fuser unit to cool down before disassembly.

2. Keep fingers, hair, and clothes away from moving parts.

   To avoid injury, do not put fingers, hair, or clothes near moving parts such as the paper feeding entrance, motor, and fan.

3. Use safe lifting and handling techniques to move the printer.

   The printer is heavy. To avoid injury, use the lifting handles located on each side of the printer and lift carefully.

4. Make sure the printer is installed safely.

   Make sure the printer is placed on a level surface that is capable of supporting the weight of the printer. Failure to do so could cause the printer to tip or fall, possibly causing personal injury or damage to the printer.

5. Do not install the printer on a sloping or unstable surface. After installation, make sure that the printer is stable.

ESD precautions

⚠ CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Look for the ESD reminder when removing printer parts. Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground *before* touching an ESD-sensitive assembly.

Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

Product specification and description

Finisher system

Finisher sectional view

Sensor location

Figure 7-1 Sensor locations

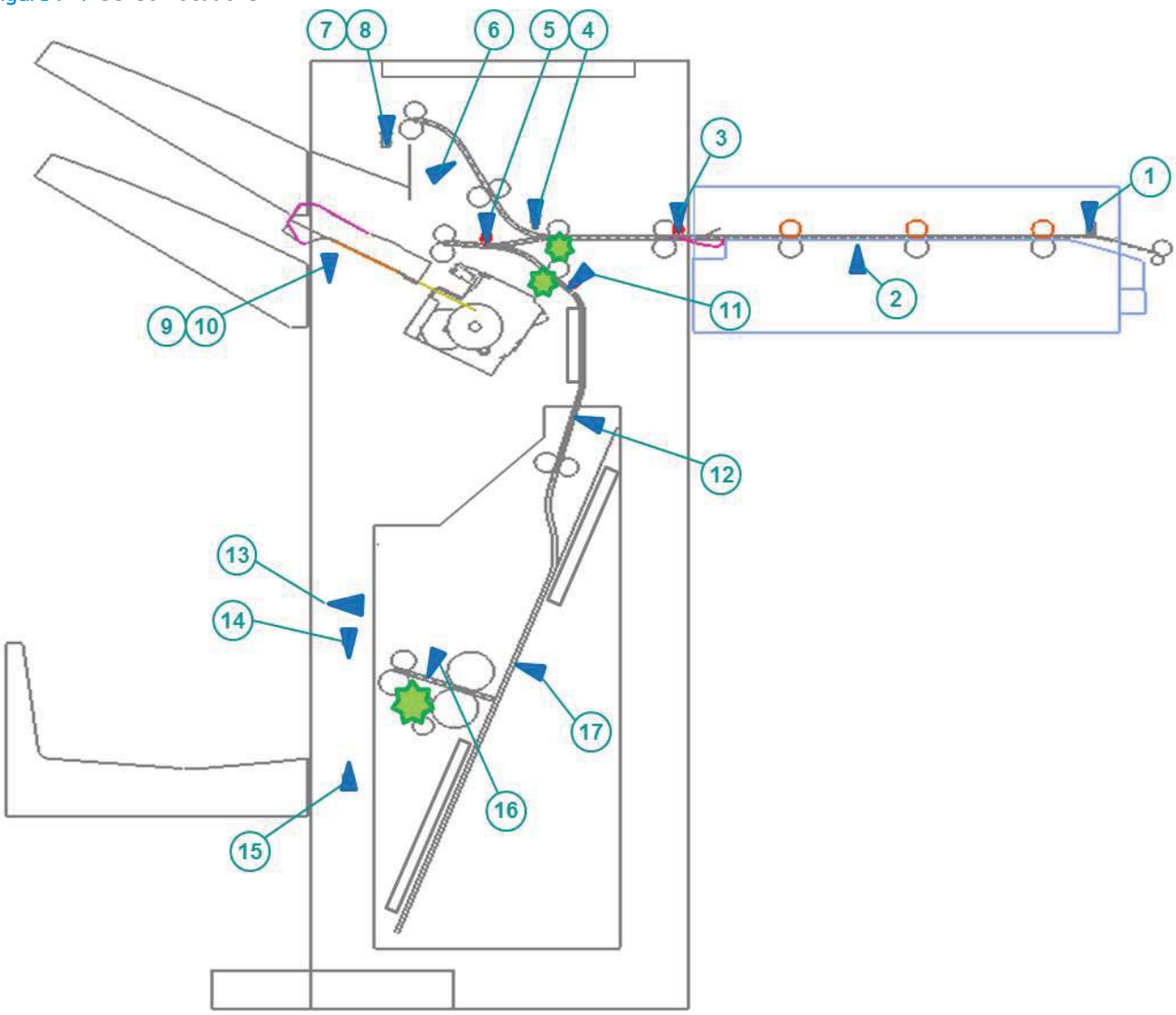


Table 7-1 Sensor locations

Item	Name	Item	Name
1	IPTU Entrance Sensor	10	Main Tray Upper Level Sensor (Emitter)
2	IPTU Output Sensor	11	Feed Buffer Output Sensor
3	Feed Entrance Paper Sensor	12	Feed Booklet Entrance Sensor
4	Diverter Home Sensor	13	Stacker Full Sensor

Table 7-1 Sensor locations (continued)

Item	Name	Item	Name
5	Feed Main Output Sensor	14	Booklet Tray Paper Sensor (Detector)
6	Feed Top Output Sensor	15	Booklet Tray Paper Sensor (Emitter)
7	Sub Tray Full Sensor (Detector)	16	Fold Output Paper Sensor
8	Sub Tray Full Sensor (Emitter)	17	Booklet Compile Paper Sensor
9	Main Tray Upper Level Sensor (Detector)		

Roller location

Figure 7-2 Roller location

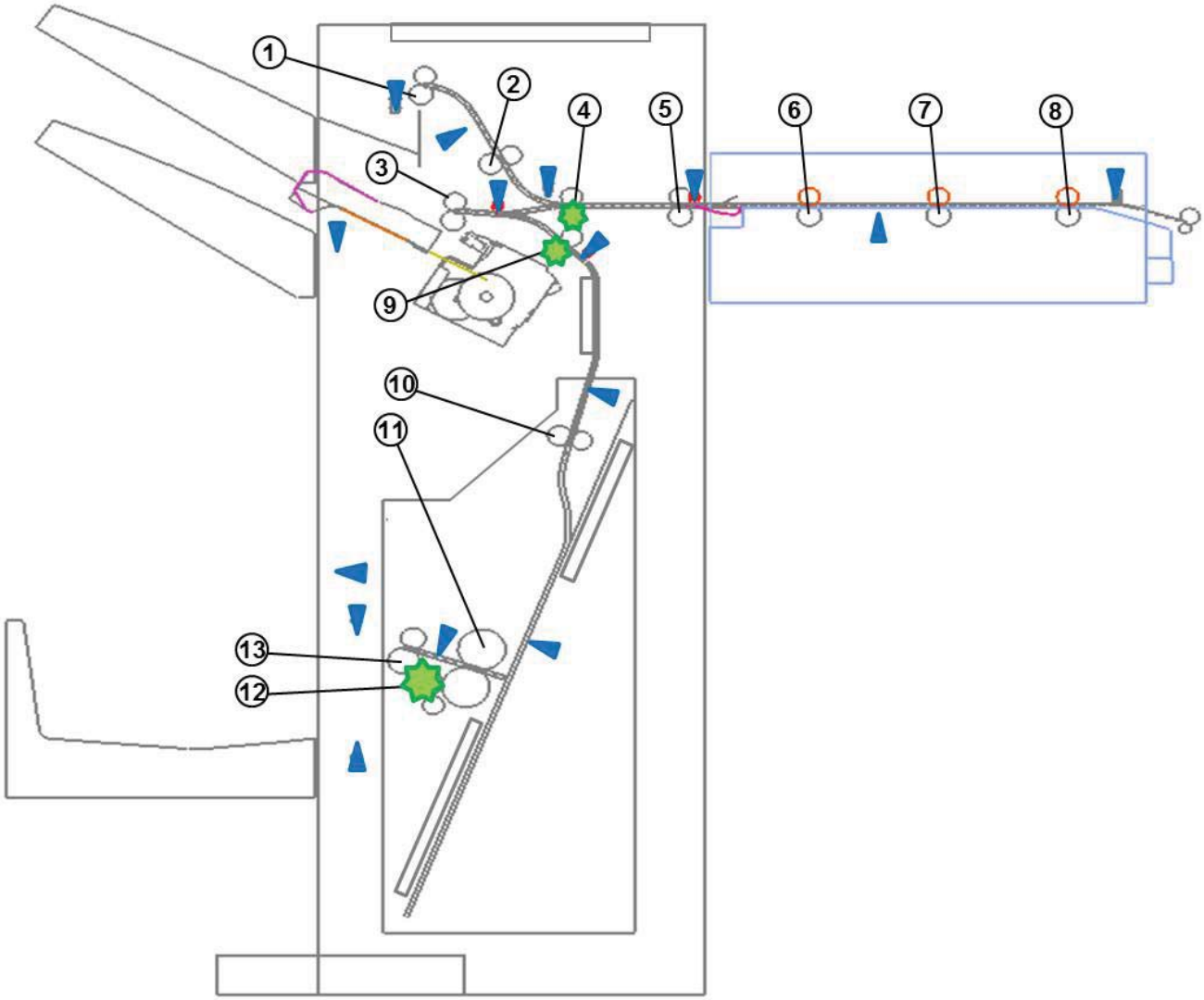


Table 7-2 Roller location

Item	Name	Item	Name
1	Top Output Roller	8	TB Entrance Roller

Table 7-2 Roller location (continued)

Item	Name	Item	Name
2	Top Middle Roller	9	Feed Buffer Output Roller
3	Finisher Compile Output Roller	10	BM Compile Output Roller
4	Middle Roller	11	BM Folding Roller
5	Entrance Roller	12	BM C-Folding Roller
6	TB Output Roller	13	BM Folding Output Roller
7	TB Middle Roller		

Jam removal guide

Figure 7-3 Jam removal guide

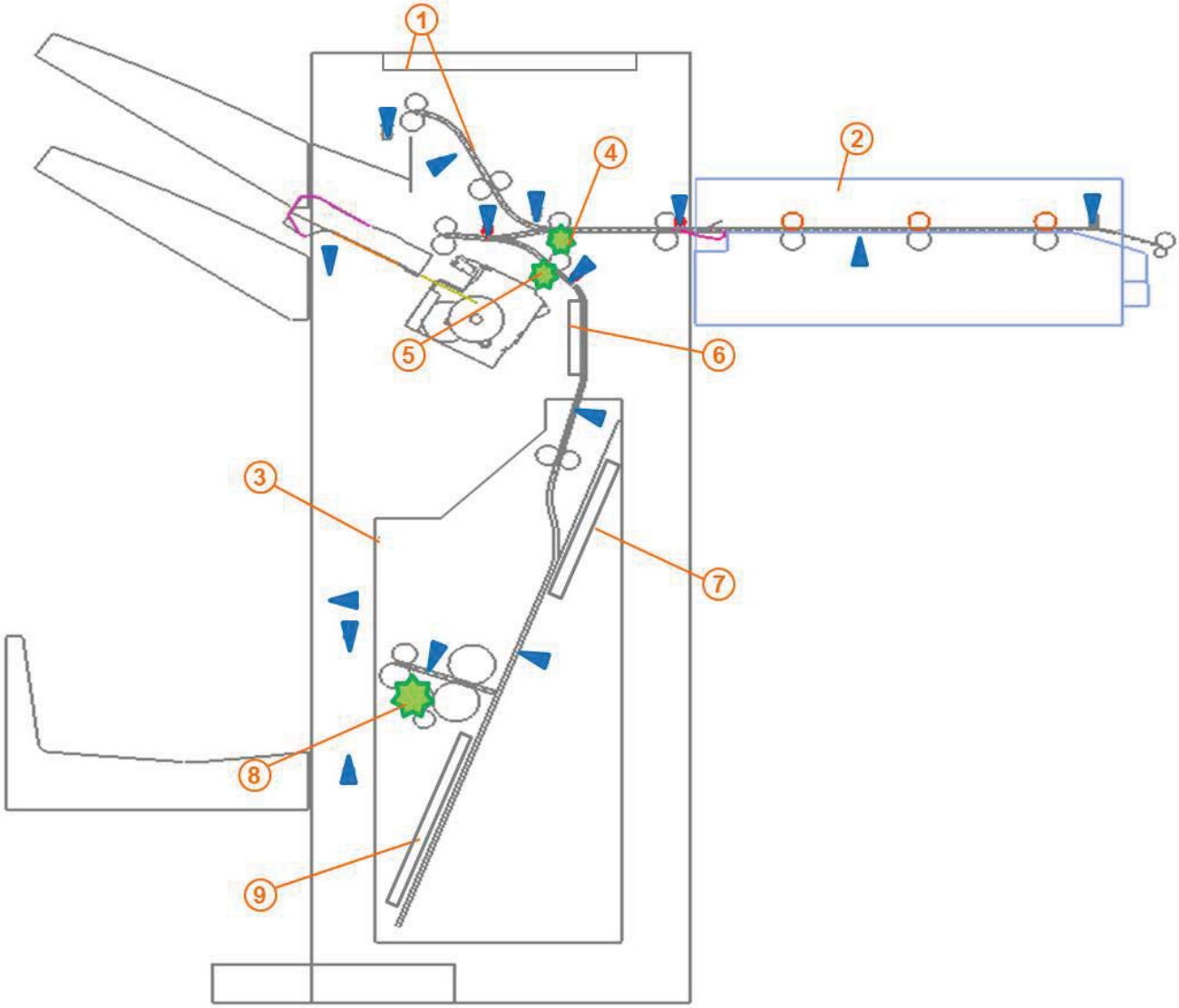


Table 7-3 Jam removal guide

Item	Name	Item	Name
1	Top Door Guide	6	SD Jam Clear Cover
2	IPTU Door	7	Booklet Feed Jam Clear Cover
3	Booklet Module	8	BM C-Folding Roller Knob
4	Middle Roller Knob	9	Booklet Lower Feed Jam Clear Cover
5	Feed Buffer Output Roller Knob		

Paper path

Figure 7-4 Paper path

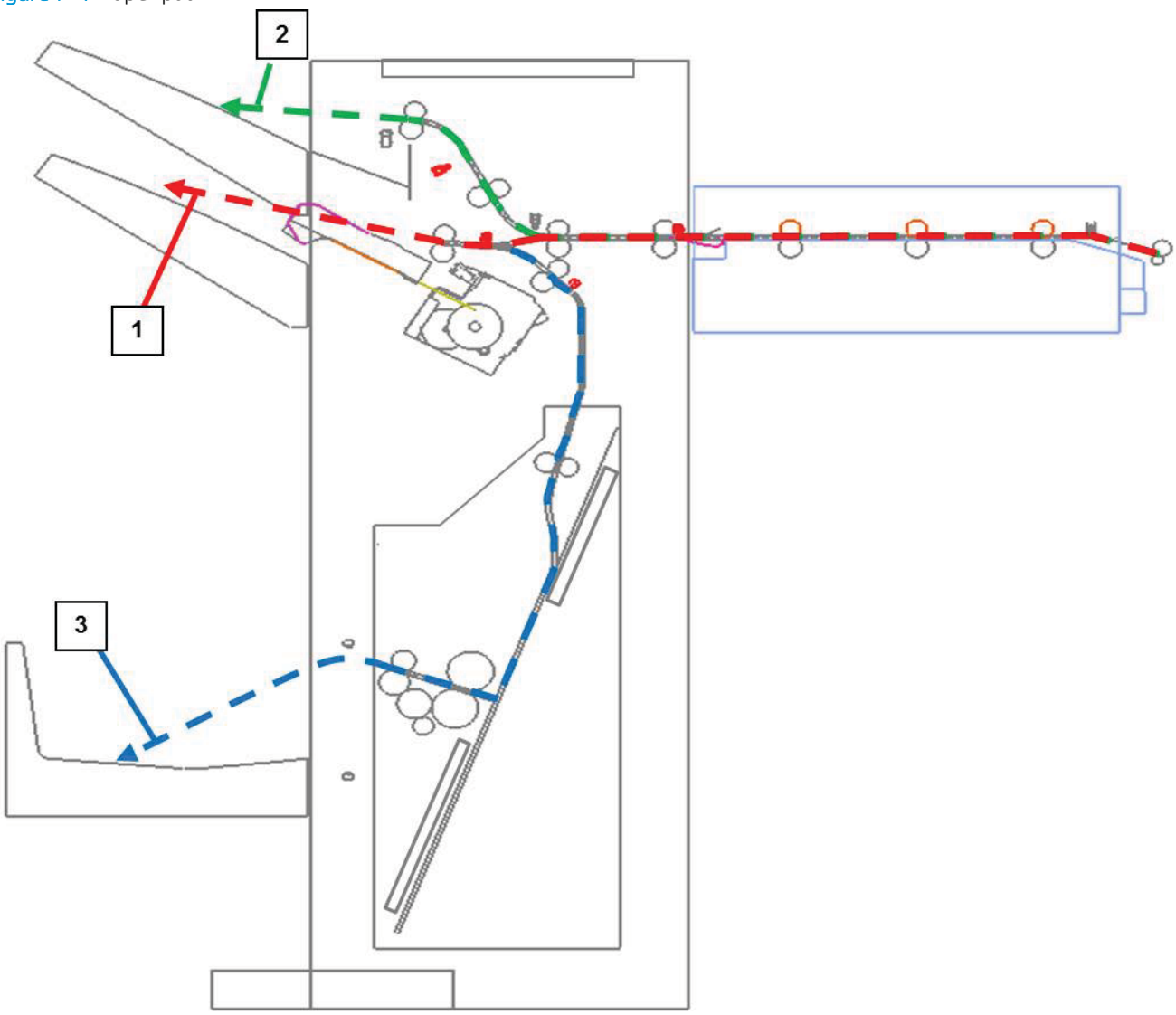


Table 7-4 Paper path

Item	Name
1	Finisher Main Tray - Staple & Punch (Optional)
2	Finisher Top Tray - Punch (Optional)
3	Booklet Tray – Folding & Staple

Electrical parts layout

Finisher and booklet module

Figure 7-5 Electrical parts layout (1 of 2)

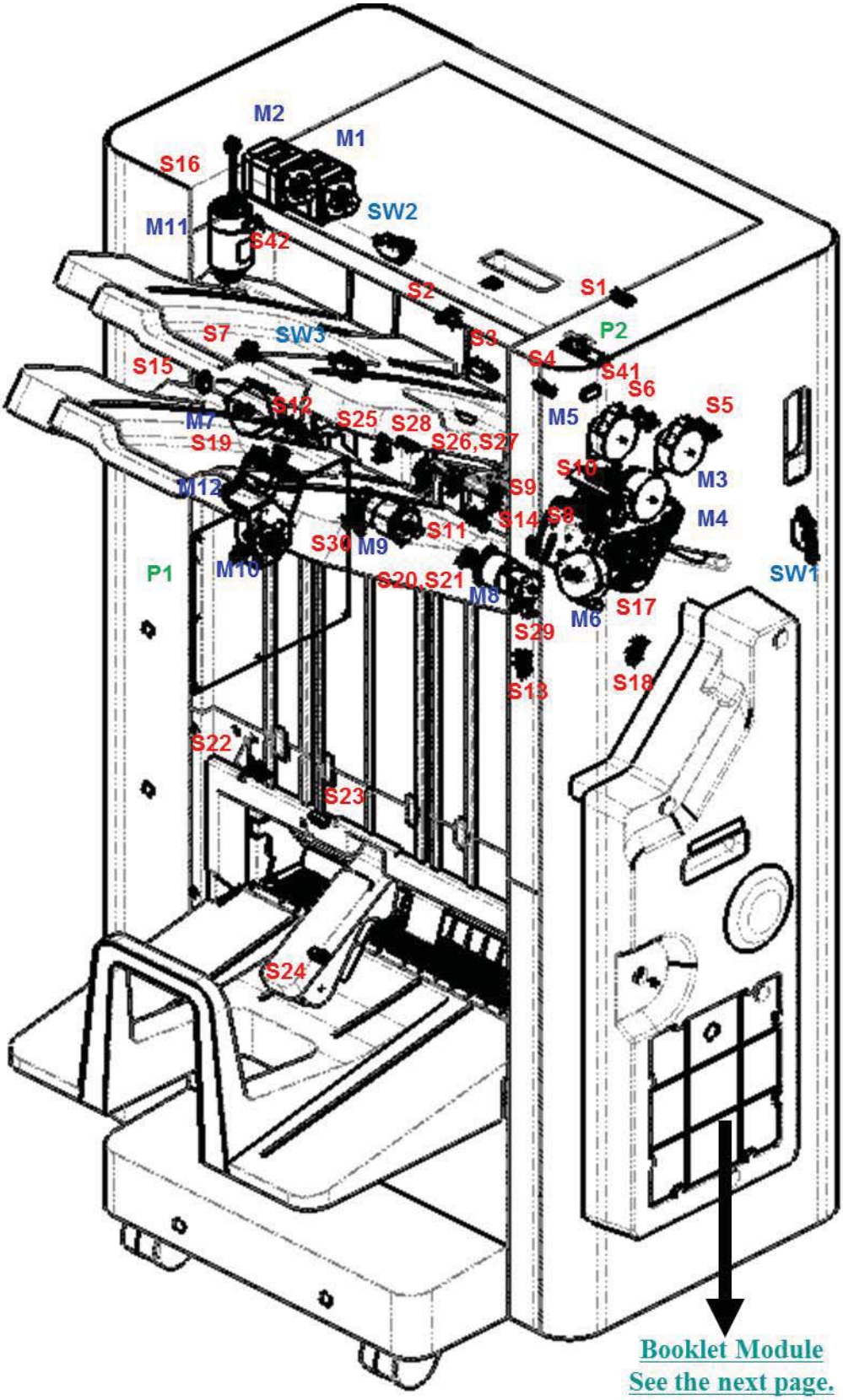


Figure 7-6 Electrical parts layout (2 of 2)

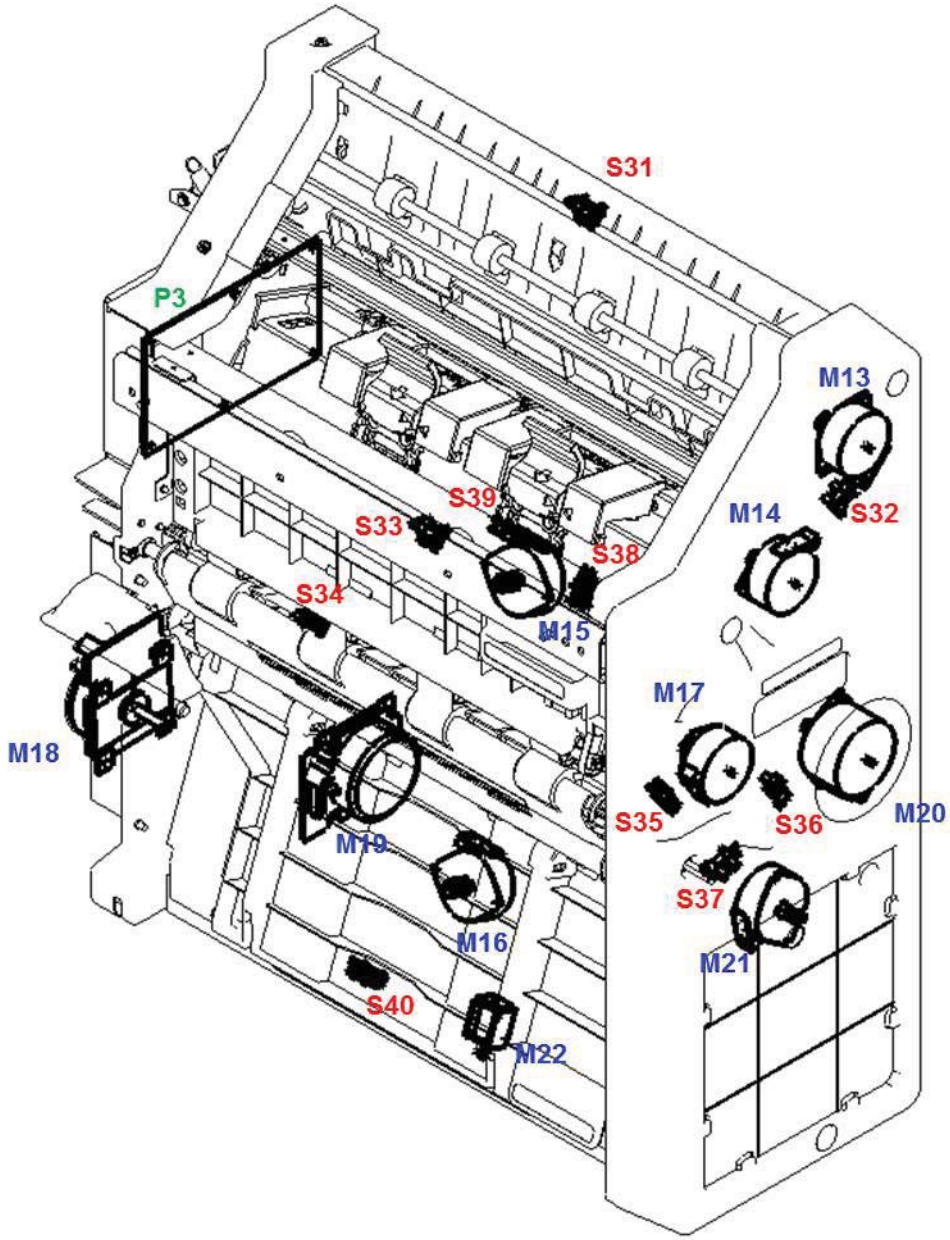


Table 7-5 Electrical parts layout

Item	Part code	Description	Function
S1		Sensor-RP A	Feed Entrance Paper Sensor
S2		Photo Sensor	Feed Top Output Sensor
S3		Sensor-RP A	Feed Main Output Sensor
S4		Sensor-RP A	Feed Buffer Output Sensor
S5		Photo Sensor	Diverter Home Sensor
S6		Photo Sensor	Buffer Home Sensor
S7		Photo Sensor	Rear Tamper Home Sensor

Table 7-5 Electrical parts layout (continued)

Item	Part code	Description	Function
S8		Photo Sensor	Front Tamper Home Sensor
S9		AS-Sensor	EF Home Sensor
S10		Photo Sensor	Main Paddle Home Sensor
S11		Photo Sensor	Main Tray Front Level Sensor
S12		Photo Sensor	Main Tray Rear Level Sensor
S13		Photo Sensor	SCU Home Sensor
S14		AS-Sensor	Main Tray Upper Level Sensor (Detector)
S15		AS-Sensor	Main Tray Upper Level Sensor (Emitter)
S16		Photo Sensor	Main Tray Encoder Sensor
S17		Photo Sensor	Offline Staple Position Sensor
S18		Photo Sensor	Stapler Move Offline Sensor
S19		Photo Sensor	Stapler Move Home Sensor
S20		Photo Sensor	Stapler Move Mid-Rear Sensor
S21		Photo Sensor	Stapler Move Mid-Front Sensor
S22		Photo Sensor	Stacker Full Sensor
S23		AS-Sensor	Booklet Tray Paper Sensor (Detector)
S24		AS-Sensor	Booklet Tray Paper Sensor (Emitter)
S25		Photo Sensor	Grip Home Sensor
S26		Photo Sensor	PE EJT Home Sensor
S27		Photo Sensor	PE EJT Away Sensor
S28		Sensor-RP A	Compile Paper Sensor
S29		Photo Sensor	GE Encoder Sensor
S30		Photo Sensor	PE Encoder Sensor
S31		Photo Sensor	Feed Booklet Entrance Sensor
S32		Photo Sensor	TE Presser Home Sensor
S33		Photo Sensor	Blade Home Sensor
S34		Sensor-RP A	Fold Output Paper Sensor
S35		Photo Sensor	Separate Pawl Home Sensor
S36		Photo Sensor	Guide Home Sensor
S37		Photo Sensor	Booklet Paddle Home Sensor
S38		Photo Sensor	Booklet Tamper Home Sensor
S39		Sensor-RP A	Booklet Compile Paper Sensor
S40		Photo Sensor	Stopper Home Sensor

Table 7-5 Electrical parts layout (continued)

Item	Part code	Description	Function
S41		AS-Sensor	Sub Tray Full Sensor (Detector)
S42		AS-Sensor	Sub Tray Full Sensor (Emitter)
SW1		Micro Switch	Front Door I/L Switch
SW2		Micro Switch	Top Door I/L Switch
SW3		Micro Switch	Stacker Upper Limit Switch
P1		3K Main PCA	Finisher Main PCA
P2		Switch PCA	Offline Staple OP PCA
P3		Booklet PCA	Booklet Main PCA
M1		Assembly, HB Motor	Feed Entrance Motor
M2		Assembly, HB Motor	Feed Output Motor
M3		Assembly, PM Motor	Buffer Motor
M4		Assembly, PM Motor	End Fence Motor
M5		Assembly, PM Motor	Main Paddle Motor
M6		Assembly, PM Motor	Front Tamper Motor
M7		Assembly, PM Motor	Rear Tamper Motor
M8		AS-Motor DC Ejector	Grip-Eject Motor
M9		AS-Motor DC Ejector	Pre-Eject Motor
M10		Assembly, PM Motor	SCU Motor
M11		Assembly, 3657 DC Motor	Main Tray Moving Motor
M12		Assembly, HB Motor	Stapler Move Motor
M13		Assembly, PM Motor	Booklet Feed Entrance Motor
M14		Assembly, PM Motor	TE Presser Motor
M15		Assembly, PM Motor	Booklet Tamper Motor
M16		Assembly, PM Motor	Stopper Moving Motor
M17		Assembly, PM Motor	Separate Pawl Motor
M18		Motor BLDC-Main	Folding Roller Motor
M19		Motor BLDC-Main	Blade Motor
M20		Assembly, PM Motor	C Fold Motor
M21		Assembly, PM Motor	Booklet Paddle Motor
M22		Solenoid	Stopper Solenoid

IPTU

Figure 7-7 IPTU

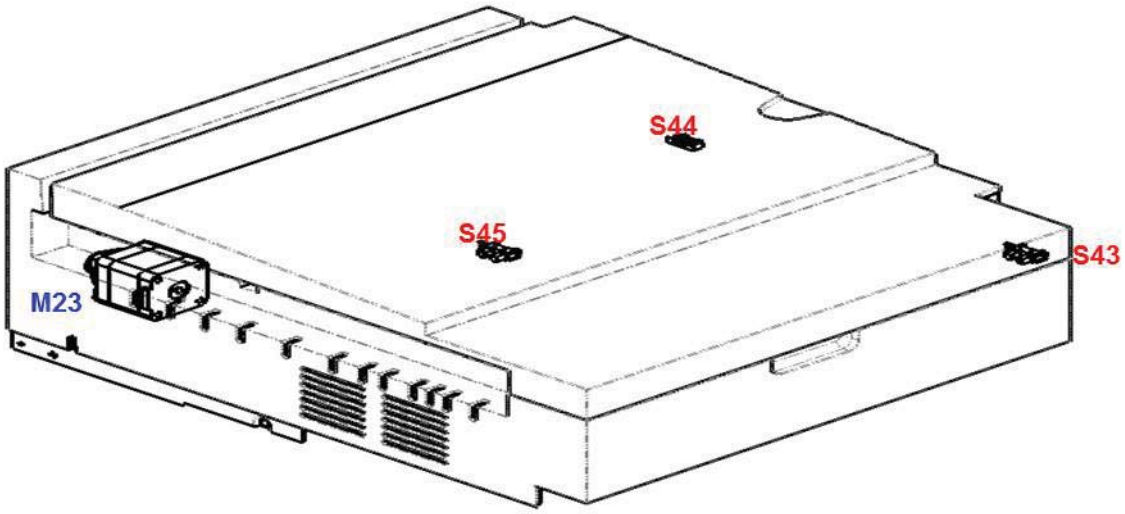


Table 7-6 IPTU

Item	Part code	Description	Function
M23		Assembly, HB Motor	IPTU Feed Motor
S43		Photo Sensor	IPTU Door Sensor
S44		Sensor-RP A	IPTU Entrance Sensor
S45		Photo Sensor	IPTU Output Sensor

Punch unit

Figure 7-8 Punch unit

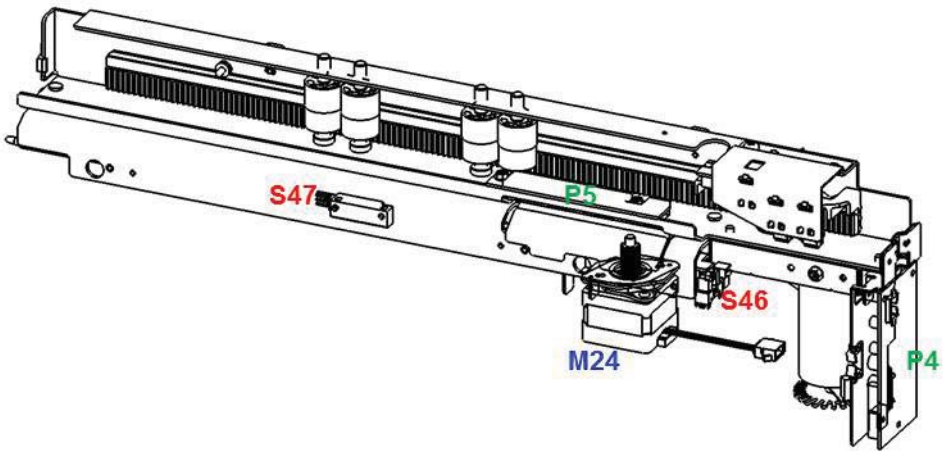


Table 7-7 Punch unit

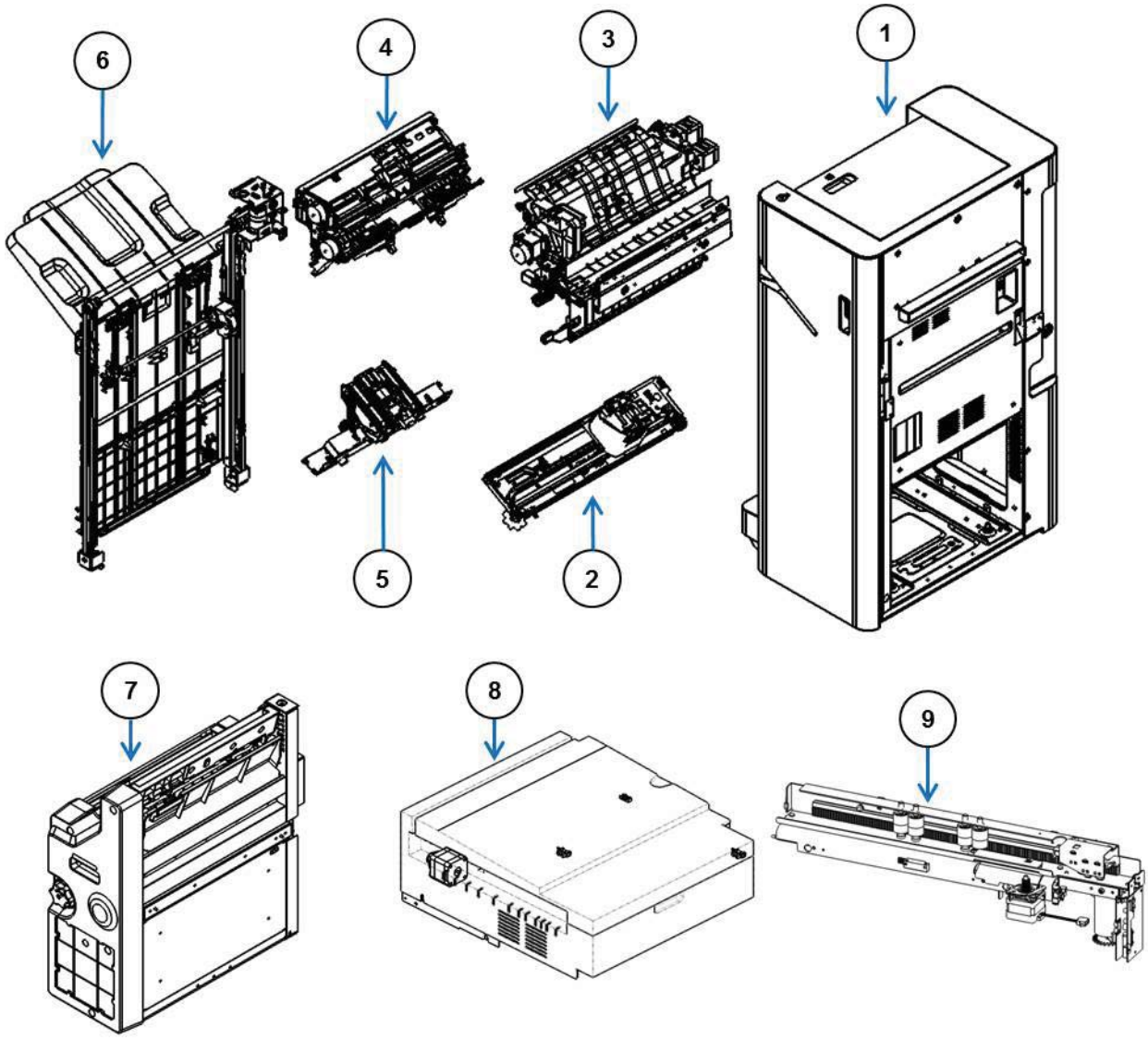
Item	Part code	Description	Function
M24		AS-HB Motor	Punch Scan Motor

Table 7-7 Punch unit (continued)

Item	Part code	Description	Function
S46		AS-Sensor	Punch Scan Home Motor
S47		AS-Sensor	Hole Punch Hopper Sensor
P4		AS-PCB Punch	Punch PCA
P5		AS-PCB Punch Sensor	Punch Scan Sensor PCA

Each unit functions

Figure 7-9



Item	Unit	Function
1	Frame unit	Finisher main frame and exterior.
2	Stapler unit	Device used for putting staples in to sheets of paper.

(continued)

Item	Unit	Function
3	Feed unit	Transports the paper to the compile and eject unit.
4	Compile unit	Compiles the paper.
5	Eject unit	Transports the stacked paper to the tray.
6	Stacker unit	Stacks the stapled papers on the tray.
7	Booklet unit	Folds paper, completes stapling jobs, and transports paper to the tray.
8	IPTU	Transports the paper from the main machine to the finisher entrance.
9	Punch unit	Device used for punching on the paper.

PCA connection information

Finisher PCA

Figure 7-10 Finisher PCA

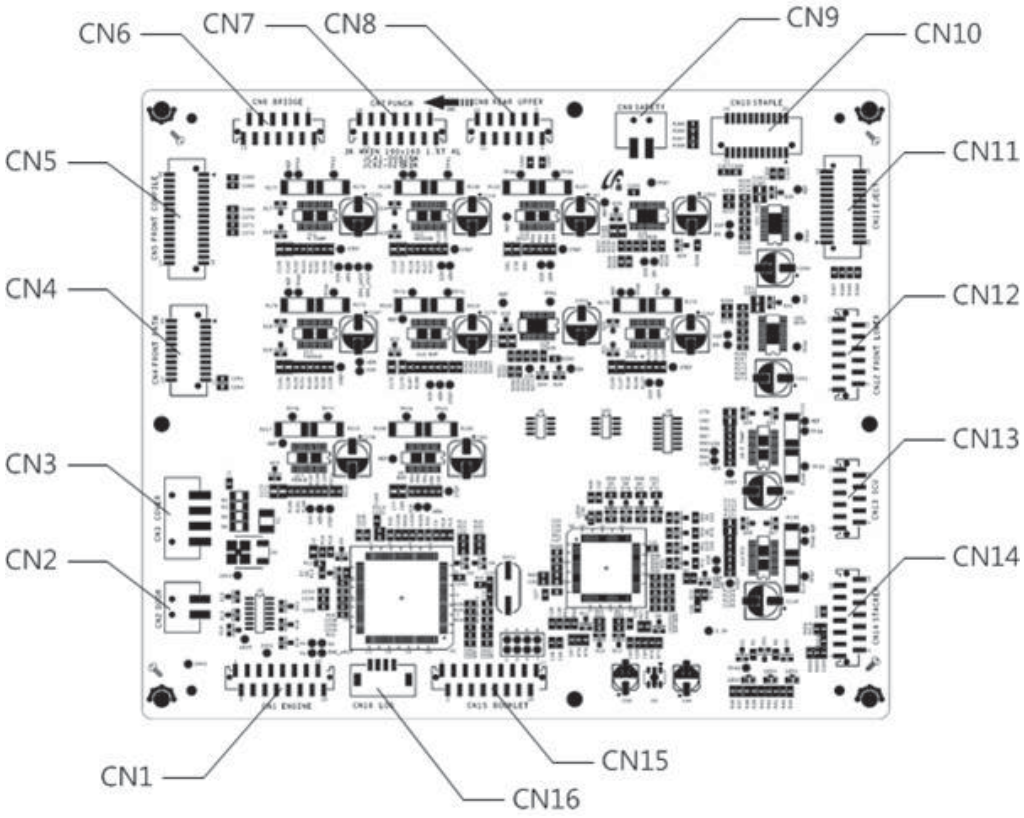


Table 7-9 Finisher PCA

CN No.	Connection	CN No.	Connection
CN1	PSU, ENGINE INTERFACE	CN9	SAFETY SWITCH
CN2	FRONT DOOR SWITCH	CN10	STAPLER

Table 7-9 Finisher PCA (continued)

CN No.	Connection	CN No.	Connection
CN3	TOP DOOR SWITCH	CN11	EJECTOR
CN4	FRONT PATH	CN12	FRONT LOWER
CN5	FRONT COMPILE	CN13	SCU
CN6	IPTU	CN14	STACKER
CN7	PUNCH	CN15	BOOKLET
CN8	REAR UPPER	CN16	LOG

Switch PCA

Figure 7-11 Switch PCA

Table 7-10 Switch PCA

CN No.	Connection
CN1	Offline Staple LED and Button

Booklet maker PCA

Figure 7-12 Booklet maker PCA

CN No.	Connection
CN1	Finisher interface
CN3	Log

CN No.	Connection
CN4	Stapler/Feed Booklet Entrance Sensor
CN5	Booklet Feed Entrance Motor/TE Presser Motor
CN6	Blade Home Sensor/Booklet Tamper Home Sensor/ Booklet Compile Paper Sensor
CN7	Booklet Paddle Motor/Separate Pawl Motor
CN8	Fold Output Paper Sensor/Guide Home Sensor/C Fold Motor
CN9	Stopper Solenoid/Stopper Moving Motor
CN10	Folding Roller Motor/Blade Motor

Service approach

⚠ CAUTION: When working on the product, do not pick up the unit by the output tray, which will detach under the weight of the product.

Precautions when replacing parts

Precautions when assembling and disassembling

- Use only HP approved replacement parts. Make sure that the part number, product name, voltage, and current or temperature ratings are correct. Failure to do so might result in damage to the printer, circuit overload, fire, or electric shock.
- Do not make unauthorized changes or additions to the printer. Unauthorized changes might cause the printer to malfunction and create electric shock or fire hazards.
- Use caution when dismantling the unit. Take note of the location of each screw or other part. This printer contains 19 different screws. Using the wrong screw might lead to system failure, short circuit or electric shock.
- Do not disassemble the laser scanner assembly. Once the laser scanner assembly is disassembled, dust might enter the mirror chamber and will seriously degrade print quality. There are no serviceable parts inside the laser scanner assembly.
- Regularly check the condition of the power cable, plug and socket. Bad contacts might lead to overheating and fire. Damaged cables might lead to electric shock or unit malfunction.

Precautions when handling PCA

Static electric might damage a PCA. Use approved, anti-static precautions when handling or storing a PCA. Service personnel should use grounded ESD straps and/or mats when handling PCAs.

- Precautions when moving and storing a PCA
  - Keep PCA in a conductive case, anti-static bag, or wrapped in aluminum foil.
  - Do not store a PCA where it is exposed to direct sunlight.
- Precautions when replacing a PCA

- Disconnect power cables before disconnecting other cables.
- Do not touch any soldered connections, connector terminals, or other electronic parts when handling insulated parts.

- Precautions when checking a PCA
  - Touch a grounded area of the printer chassis to discharge static electric charge before touching a PCA.
  - Do not touch a PCA with bare hands or metal objects. Doing so might create a short circuit or cause electric shock. Use caution when handling a PCA with moving parts such as sensors, motors, or lamps, as they might become very hot.
  - Use caution when fitting and removing screws. Watch for hidden screens. Make sure that the correct screw is used and make sure that when toothed washers are removed, they are refitted in their original positions.
  - Place the product on an ESD workstation or mat, or use an ESD strap (if one is available). If an ESD workstation, mat, or strap is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis *before* touching an ESD-sensitive part.

Releasing plastic latches

Many of the parts are held in place with plastic latches. The latches can break easily; release them carefully. To remove such parts, press the hook end of the latch away from the part to which it is latched.

Before performing service

- Remove all paper from the product.
- Turn off the power using the power button.
- Unplug the power cable and interface cable or cables.
- Place the product on an ESD workstation or mat, or use an ESD strap (if one is available). If an ESD workstation, mat, or strap is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis *before* touching an ESD-sensitive part.
- Remove the toner cartridges.
- Remove the Tray 2 cassette.

After performing service

- Plug in the power cable.
- Verify the functions of the printer that might have been impacted by service procedures. Make sure the printer is in complete working order.
- Replace any accessories removed for service.

Post-service test

Perform the following tests to verify that the repair or replacement was successful:

Print-quality test

1. Verify that you have completed the necessary reassembly steps.
2. Make sure that the tray contains clean, unmarked paper.
3. Attach the power cord and interface cable or interface cables, and then turn on the product.
4. Print a configuration page.
5. Print a print quality page, and then verify that there are no lines, streaks, banding, or other print quality defects.
6. Send a print job from the host computer, and then verify that the output meets expectations.

Order parts, accessories, and supplies

Ordering

Order supplies and paper	www.hp.com/go/suresupply
Order genuine HP parts or accessories	www.hp.com/buy/parts or partsurfer.hp.com
Order through service or support providers	Contact an HP-authorized service or support provider.
Order using the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)	To access, in a supported Web browser on your computer, enter the printer IP address or host name in the address/URL field. The EWS contains a link to the HP SureSupply Web site, which provides options for purchasing Original HP supplies.

Orderable parts

Not all of the parts shown in the diagrams in this chapter can be ordered. Refer to the table following the diagram or the parts lists at the end of this chapter to determine if a part is orderable.

Removal and replacement procedures (stapler/stacker and booklet finishers)

- Top output bin
- Right top cover
- Top cover
- Front door
- Rear cover
- Front cover
- Front lower cover
- Booklet tray
- Caster cover
- Lower shield assembly
- Upper shield assembly
- Controller PCA
- Stapler unit
- Dummy feed guide
- Top jam access cover
- Top lower feed assembly
- Ejector unit
- Front tamper unit
- Rear tamper unit
- Feed entrance motor (M1)
- Feed exit motor (M2)
- Buffer motor, gear, and sensor (M3)
- Front tamper motor (M6)
- Rear tamper motor (M7)
- SCU motor (M10)
- Main tray moving motor (M11)
- Booklet finisher front cover
- Booklet finisher
- Booklet finisher PCA

- Booklet finisher fold stopper unit
- Booklet feed entrance motor (M13)
- TE presser motor (M14)
- Stopper moving motor (M16)
- Separate pawl motor (M17)
- Folding roller motor (M18)
- Blade motor (M19)
- C fold motor (M20)

Top output bin

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the top output bin
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the top output bin on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Top output bin part number	
SAM-JC63-05002B	Cover, M Tray

Required tools

- No special tools are needed to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

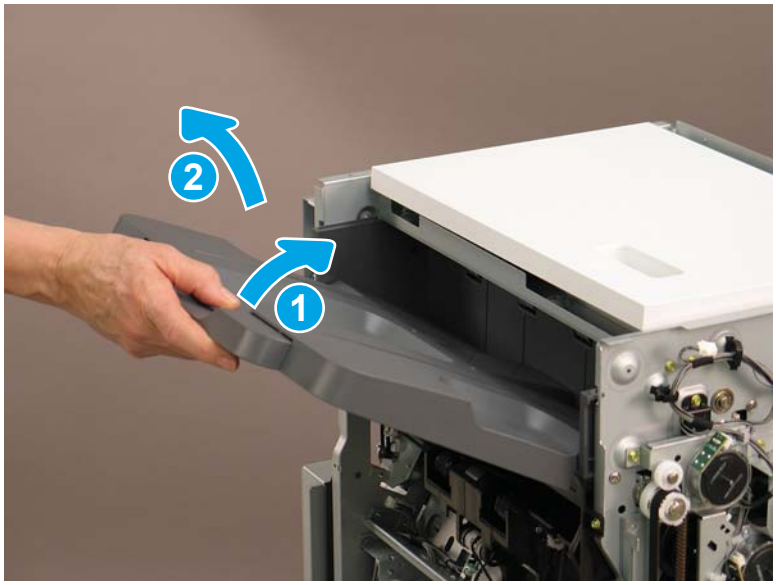
Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Step 1: Remove the top output bin

▲ Raise the end of the top output bin (callout 1), and then lift it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 7-13 Remove the top output bin



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Right top cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the right top cover of the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Right top cover (finisher) part number	
SAM-JC90-01448B	Finisher sub - regist guide

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

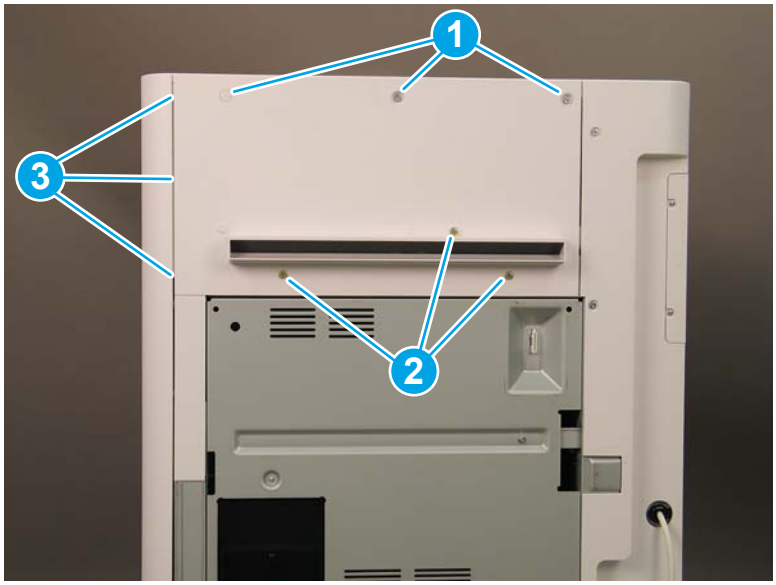
Step 1: Remove the right top cover

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-14 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Top cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the top cover of the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Top cover (finisher) part number	
SAM-JC90-01446B	Cover, top

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

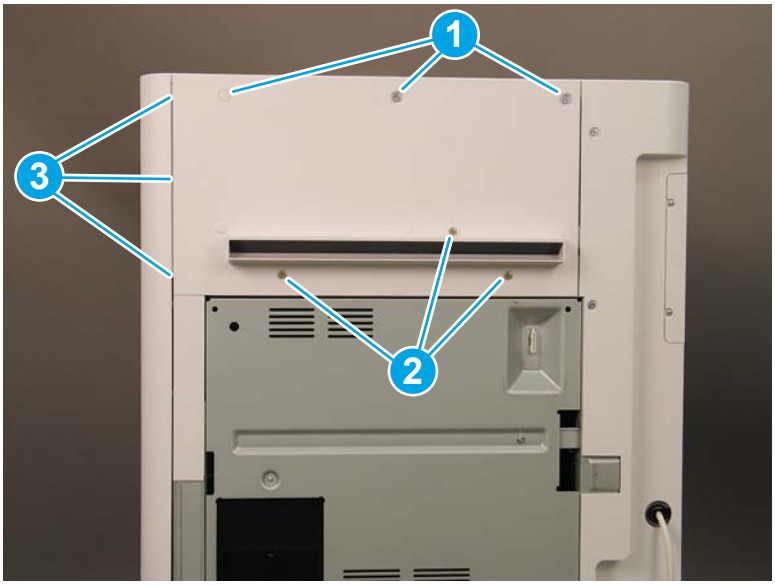
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

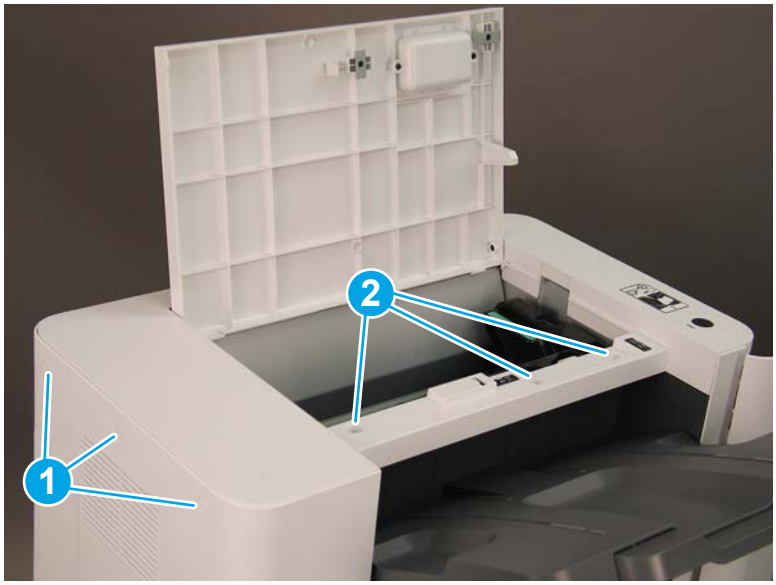
Figure 7-15 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

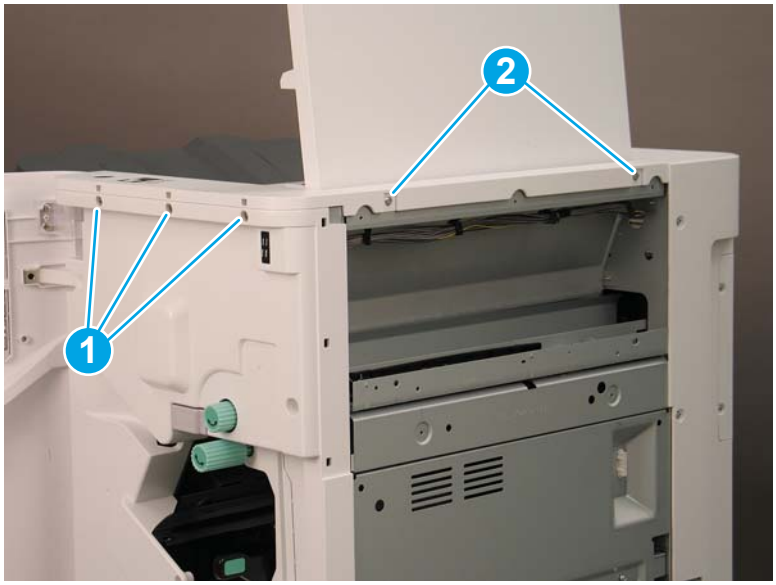
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-16 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

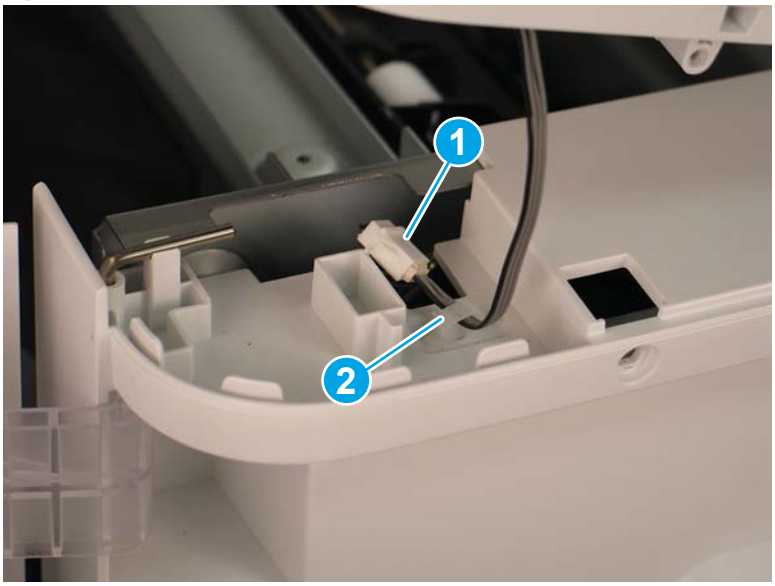
Figure 7-17 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-18 Disconnect one connector and release retainer



Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Front door

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front door for the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Front door (finisher) part number	
SAM-JC90-01444A	Finisher sub - door

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

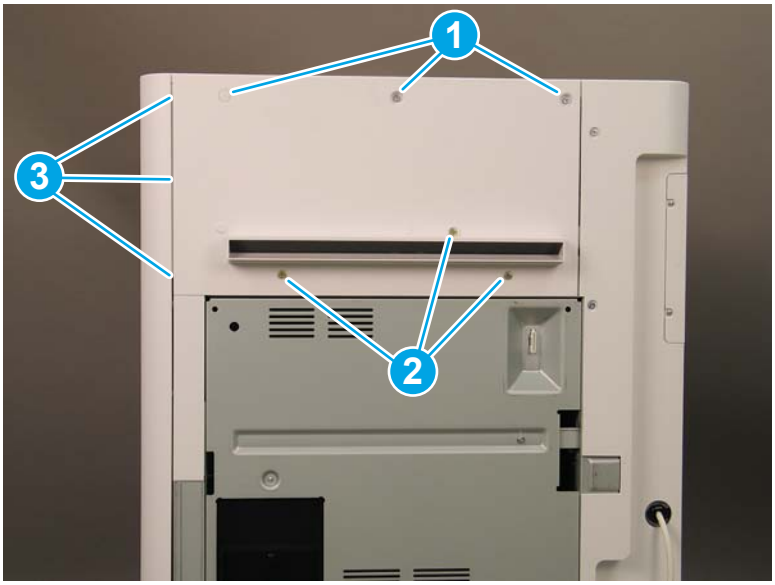
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

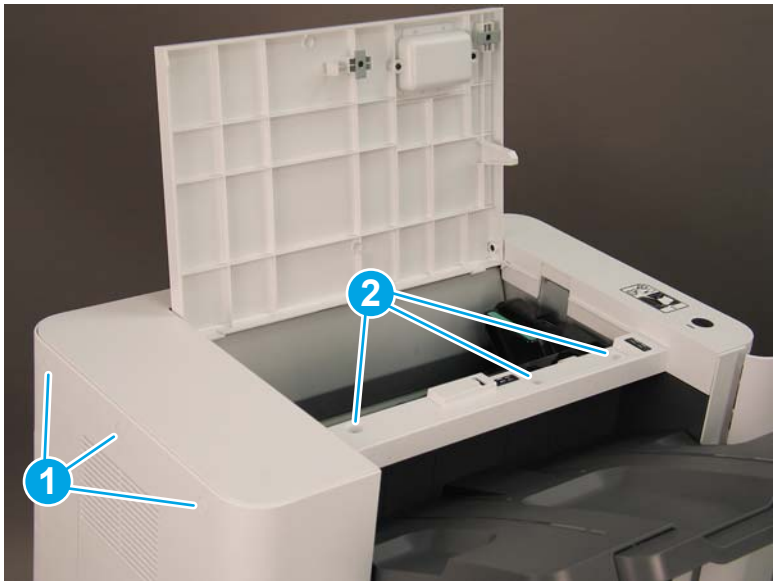
Figure 7-19 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

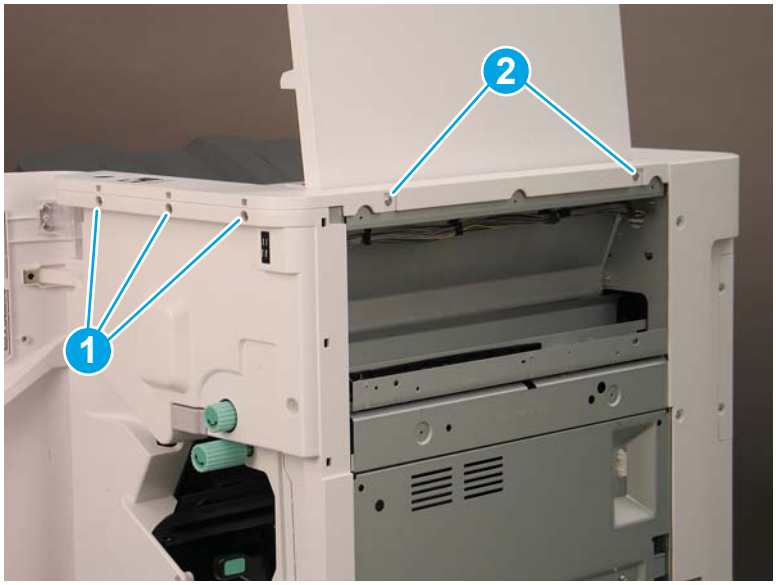
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-20 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

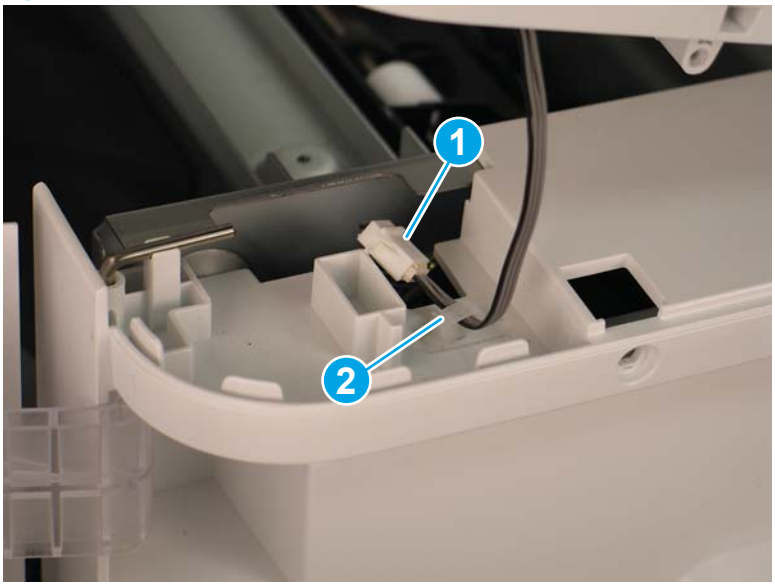
Figure 7-21 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-22 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

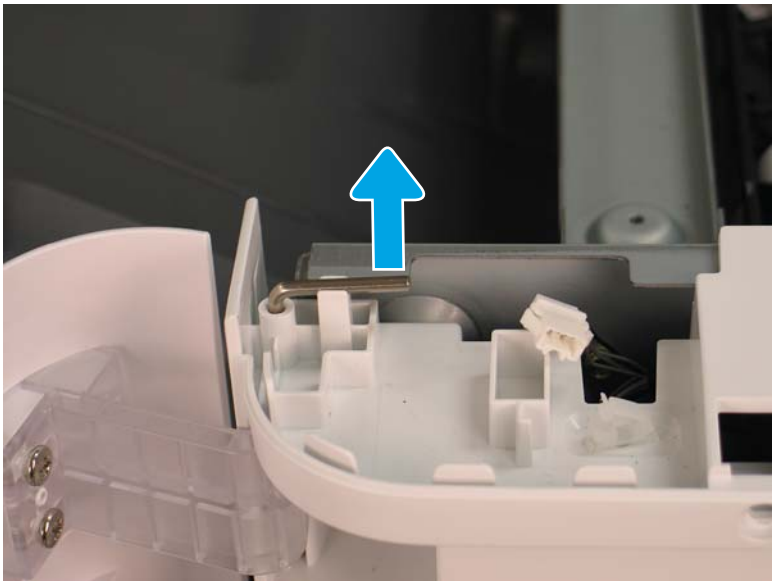


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

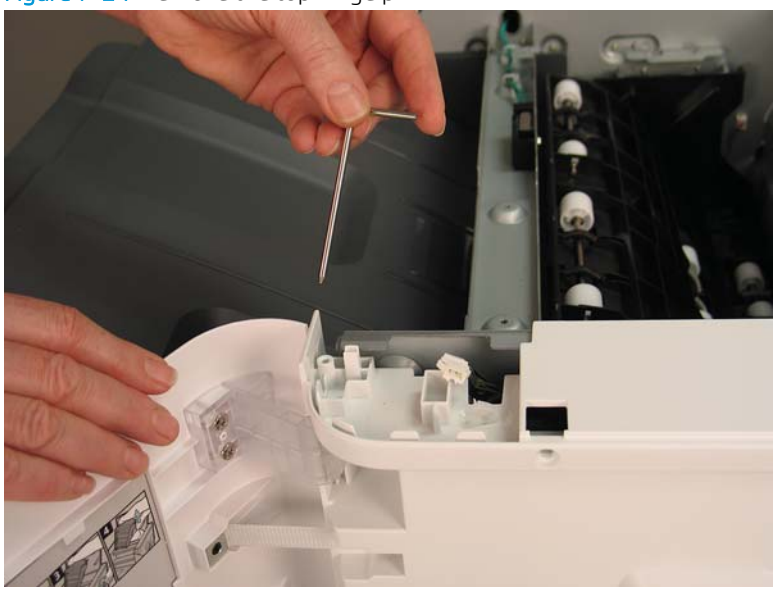
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 7-23 Lift the top hinge pin



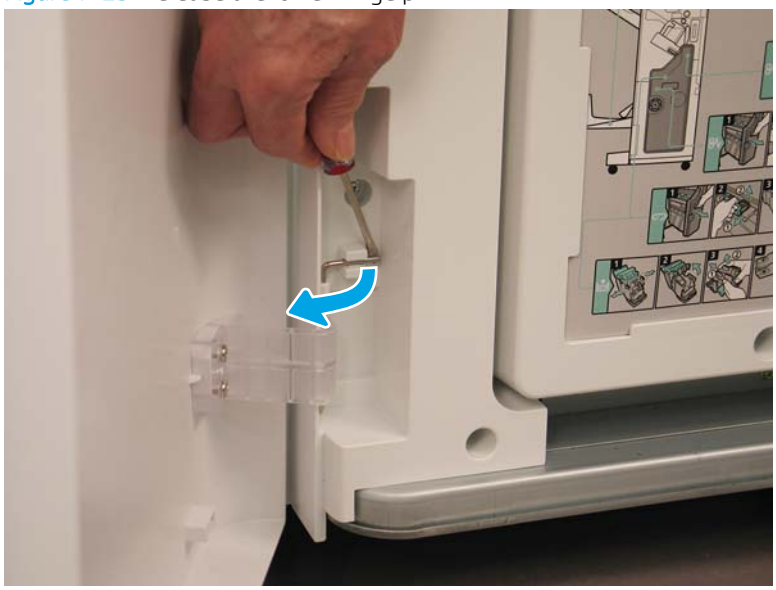
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 7-24 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 7-25 Release the lower hinge pin



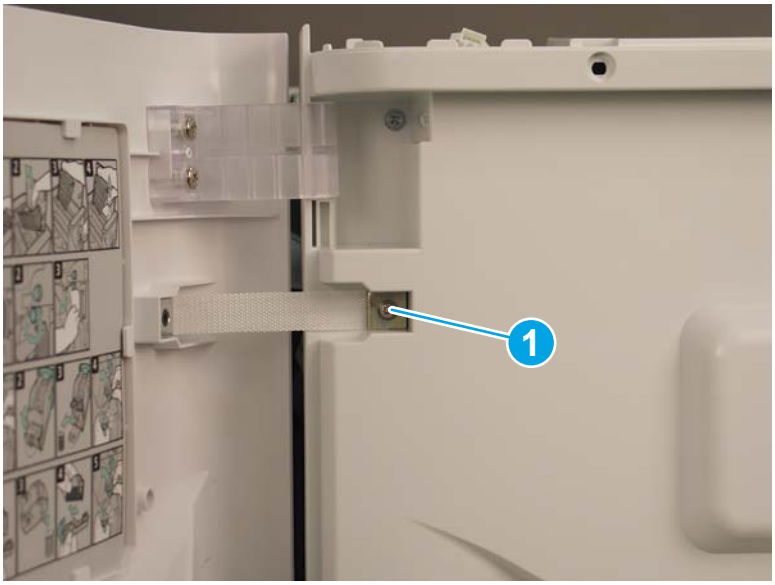
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 7-26 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-27 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Rear cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the rear cover for the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Rear cover (finisher) part number	
SAM-JC63-04988B	Cover, rear

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

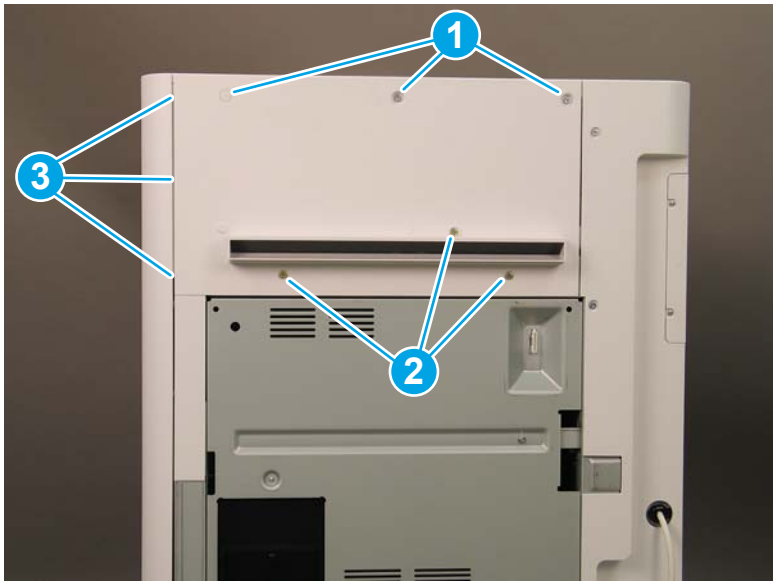
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

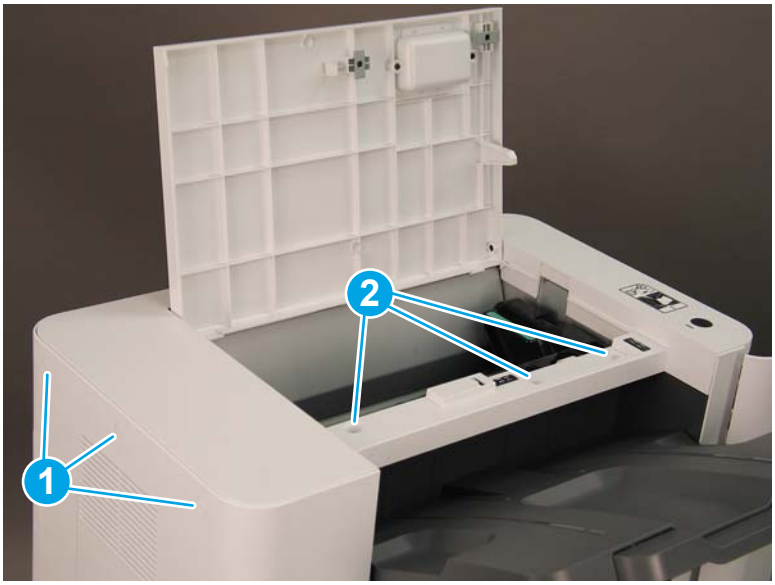
Figure 7-28 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

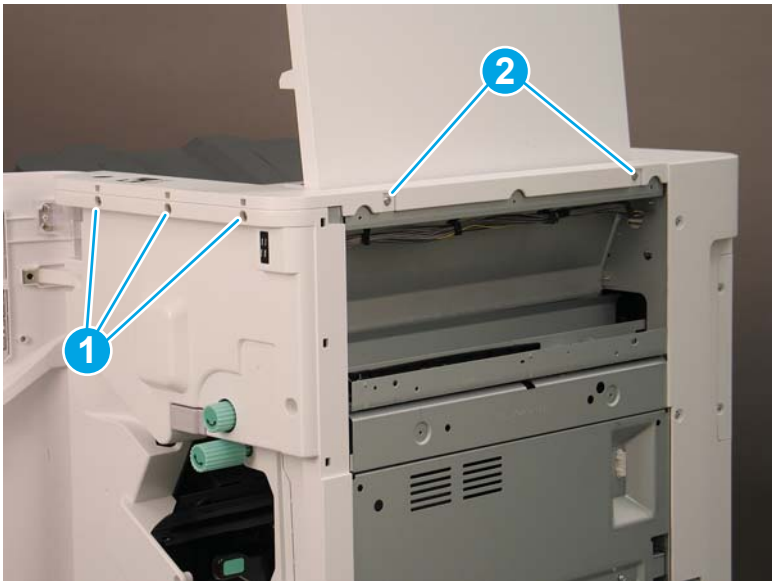
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-29 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

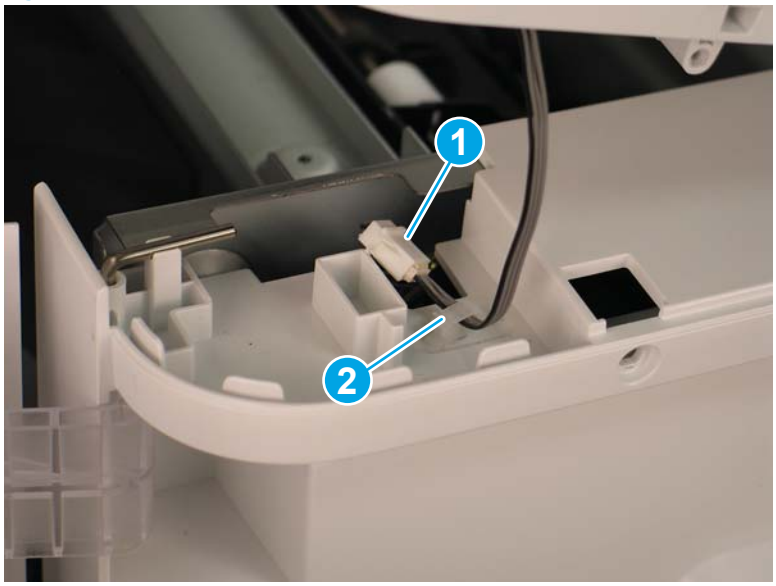
Figure 7-30 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-31 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

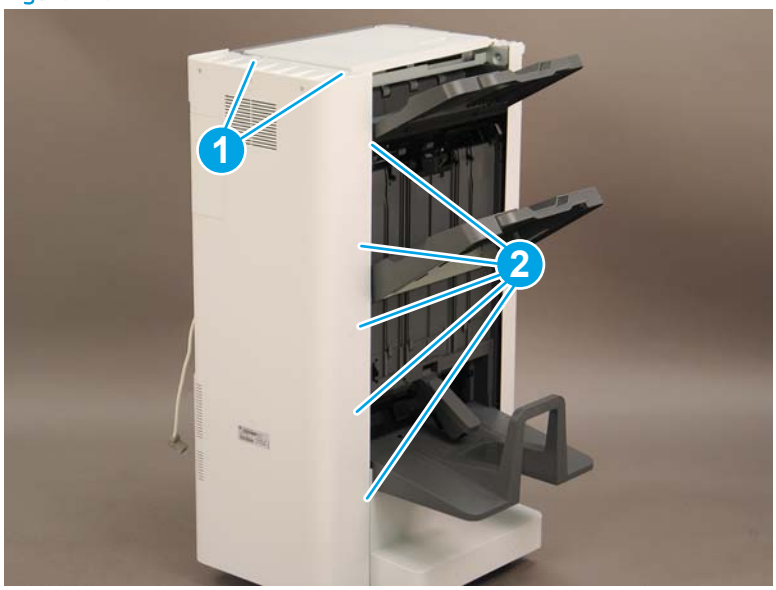


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-32 Remove seven screws

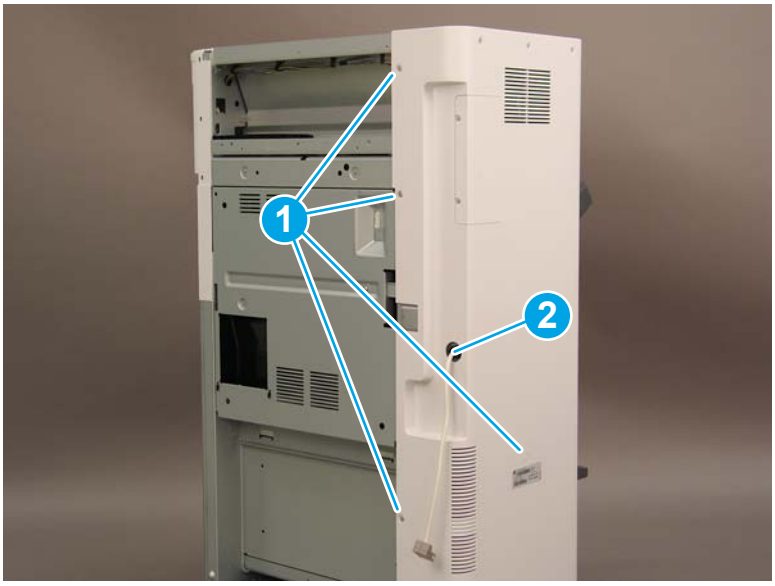


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-33 Remove four screws and the rear cover



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Front cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front cover for the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Front cover (finisher) part number	
SAM-JC63-04986B	Cover, front

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.

- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

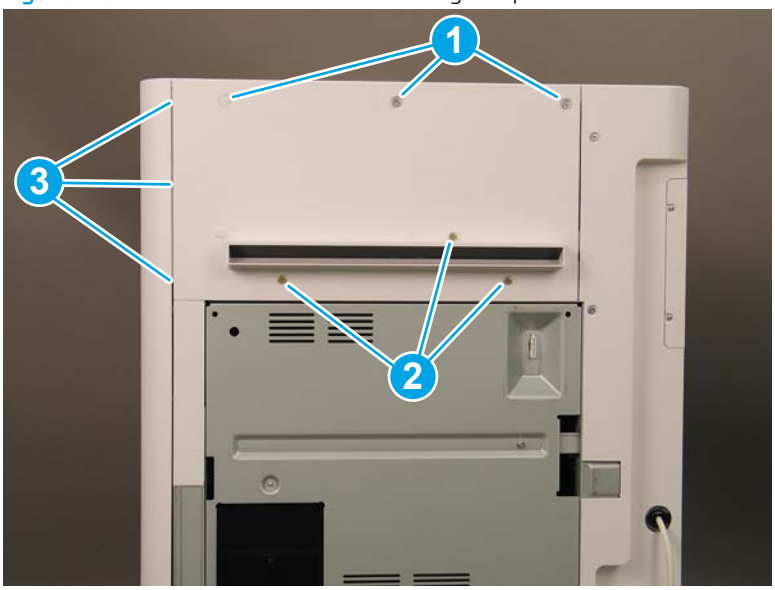
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

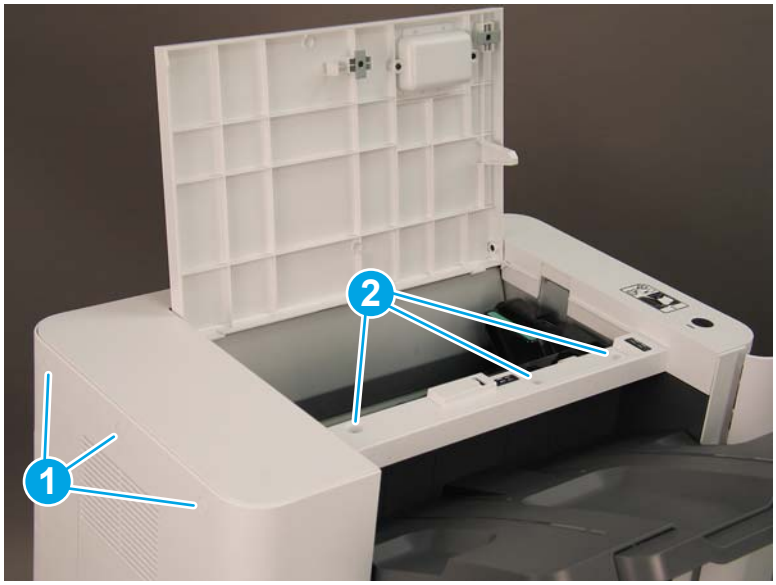
Figure 7-34 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

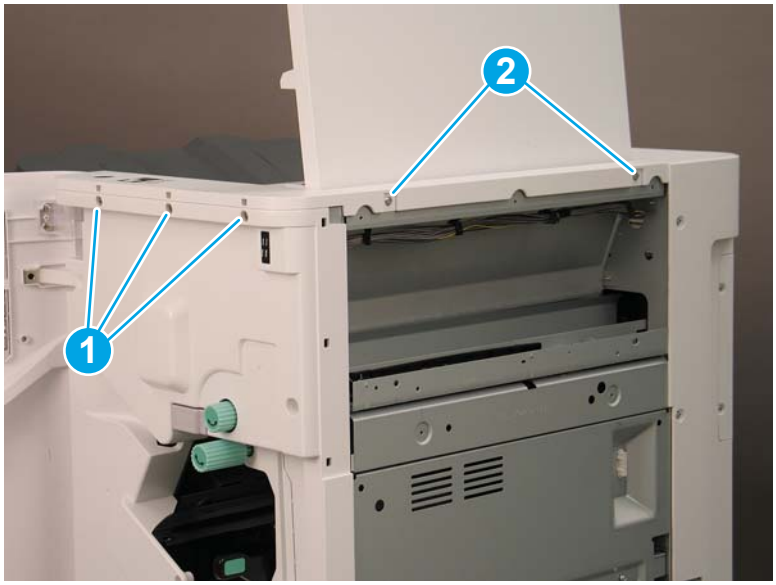
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-35 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

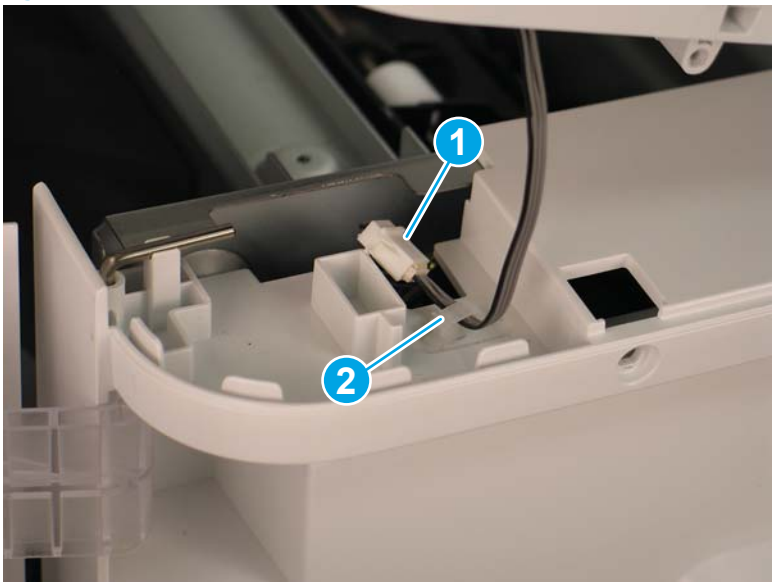
Figure 7-36 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-37 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

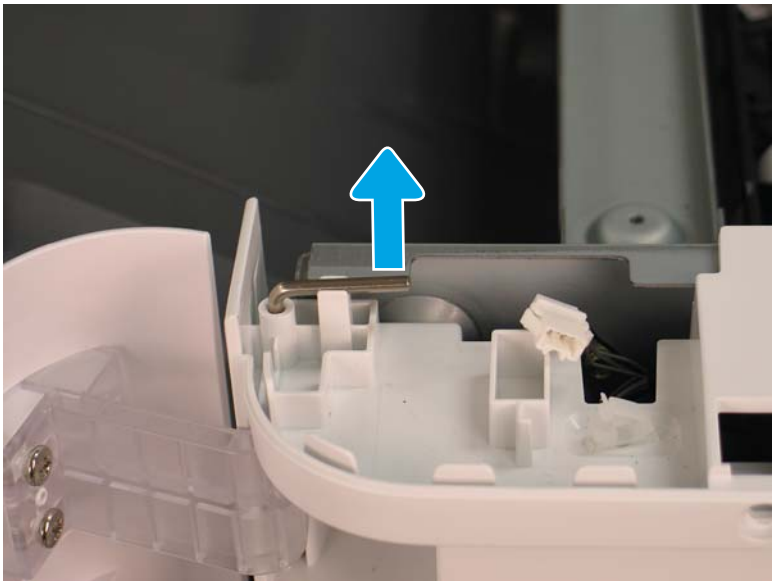


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

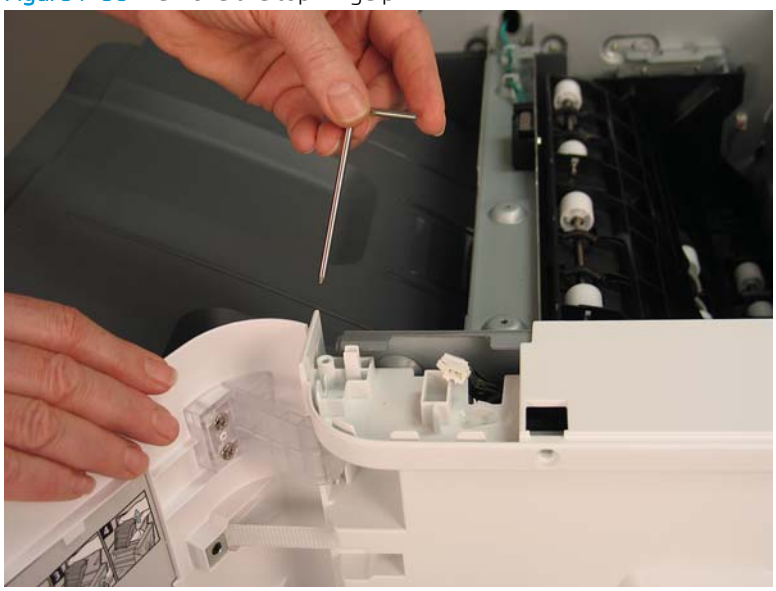
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 7-38 Lift the top hinge pin



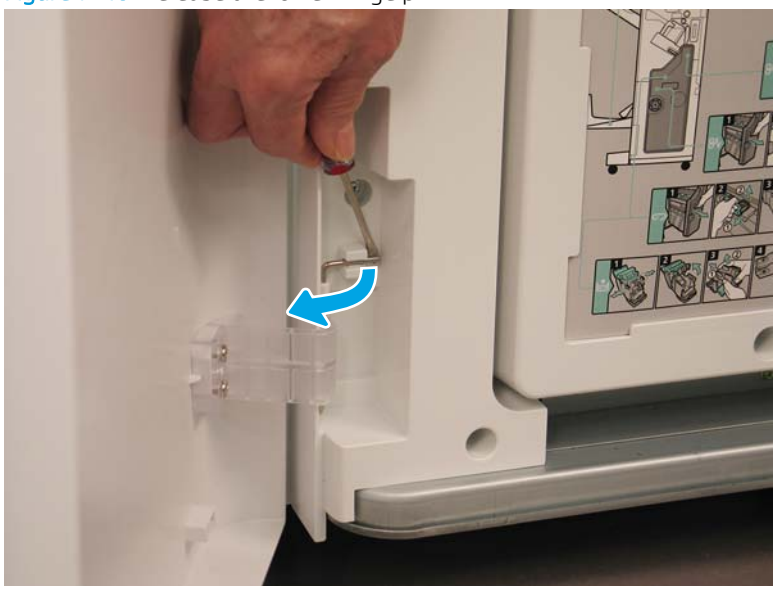
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 7-39 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 7-40 Release the lower hinge pin



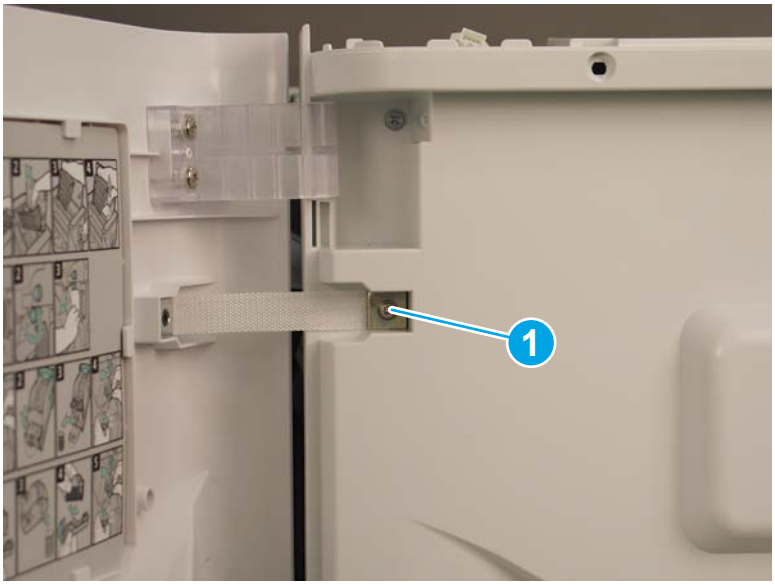
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 7-41 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

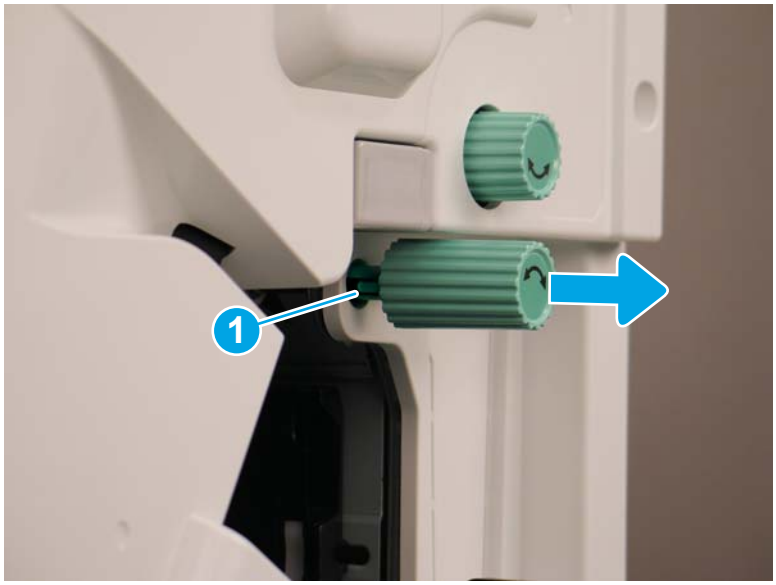
Figure 7-42 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

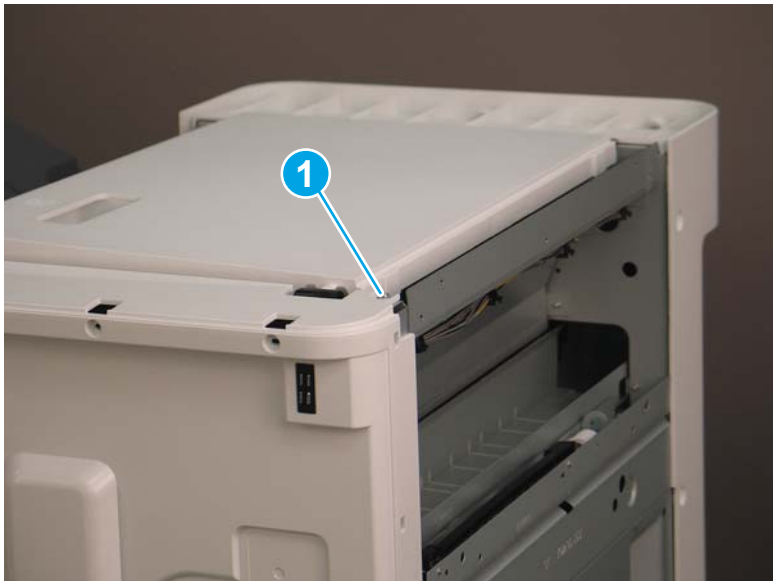
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 7-43 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

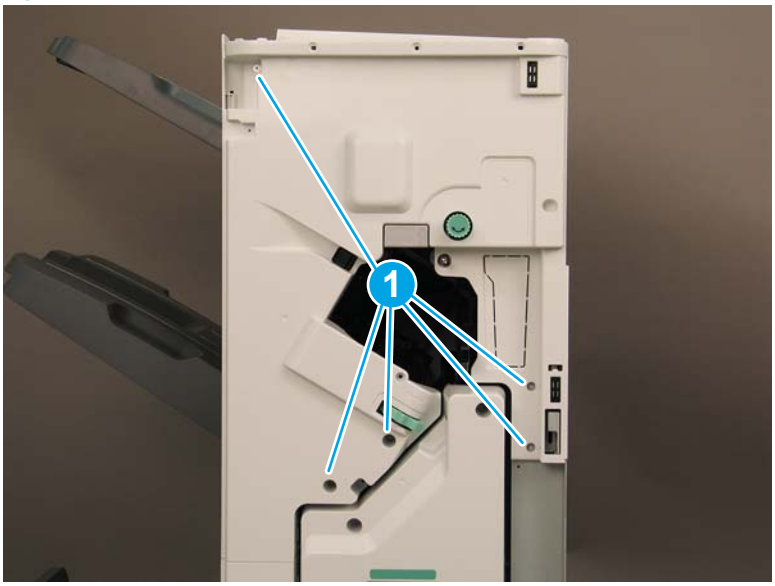
Figure 7-44 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-45 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Front lower cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Remove the front lower cover (finisher)
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front lower cover for the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Front lower cover (finisher) part number	
SAM-JC63-04987B	Cover, front lower

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

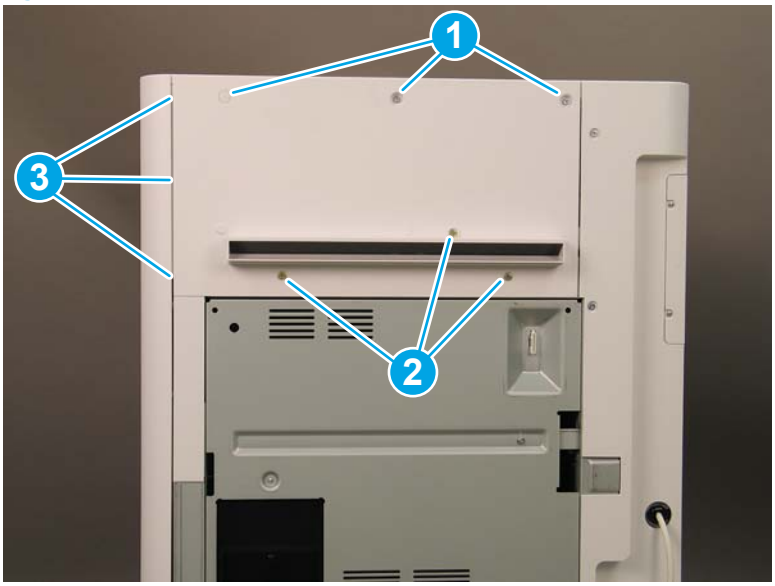
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

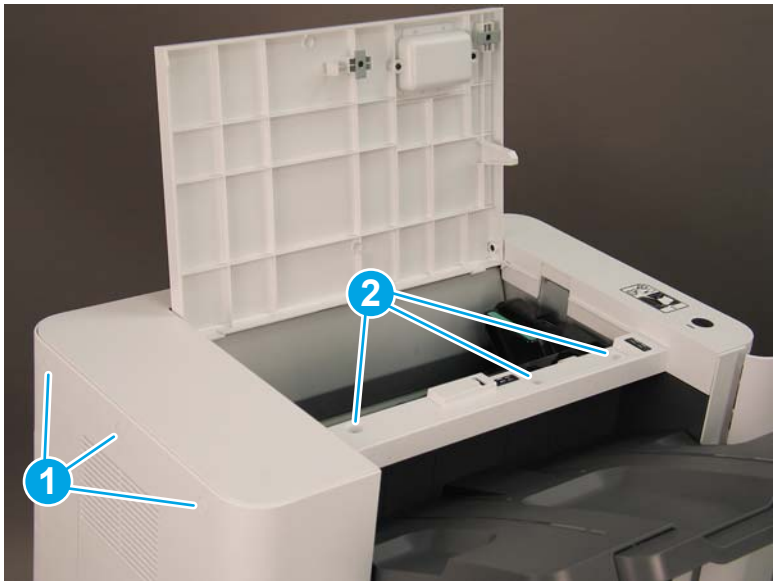
Figure 7-46 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

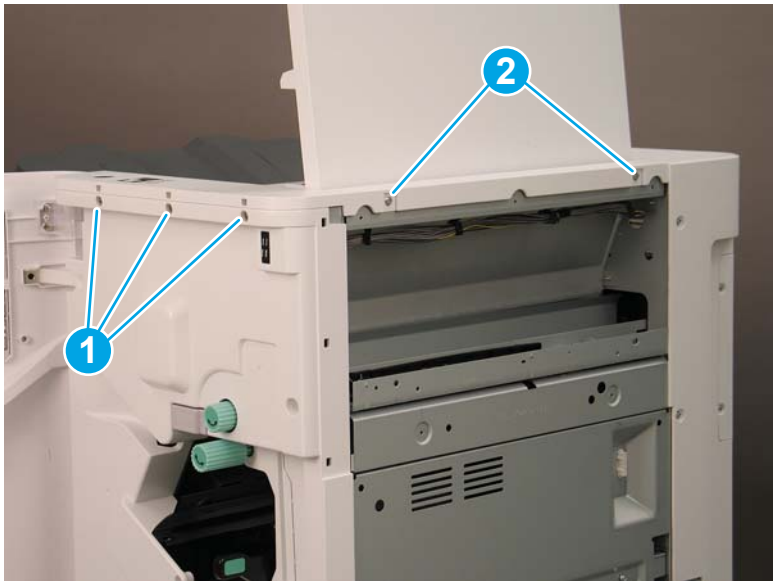
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-47 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

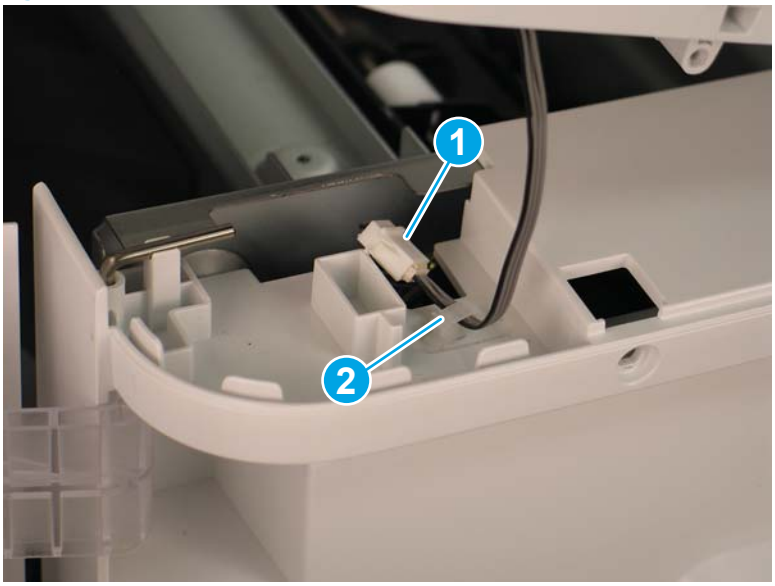
Figure 7-48 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-49 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

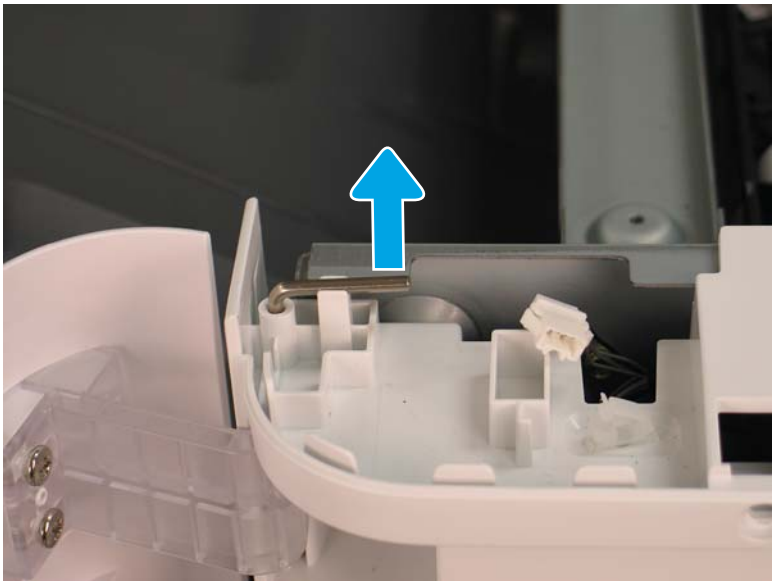


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

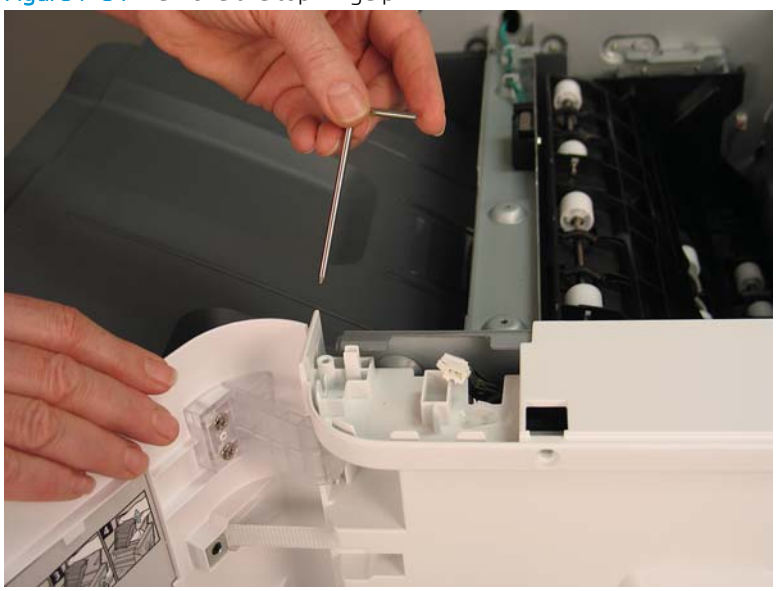
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 7-50 Lift the top hinge pin



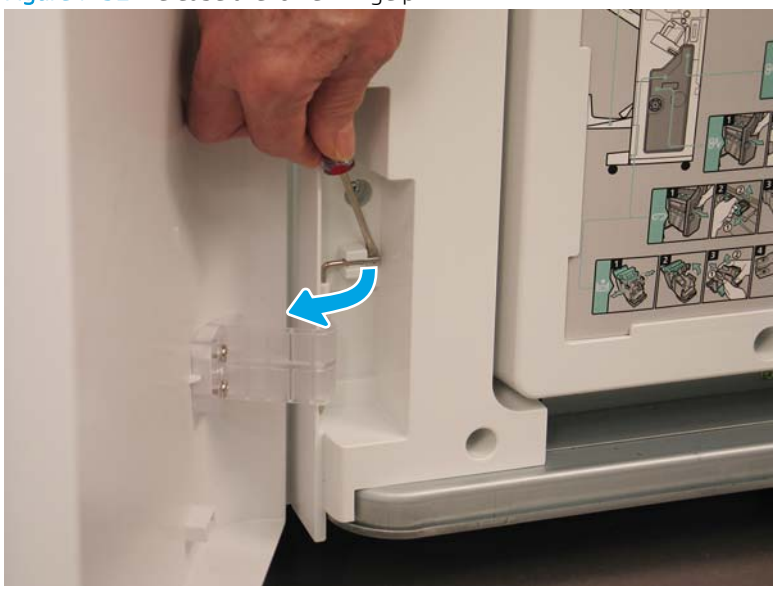
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 7-51 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 7-52 Release the lower hinge pin



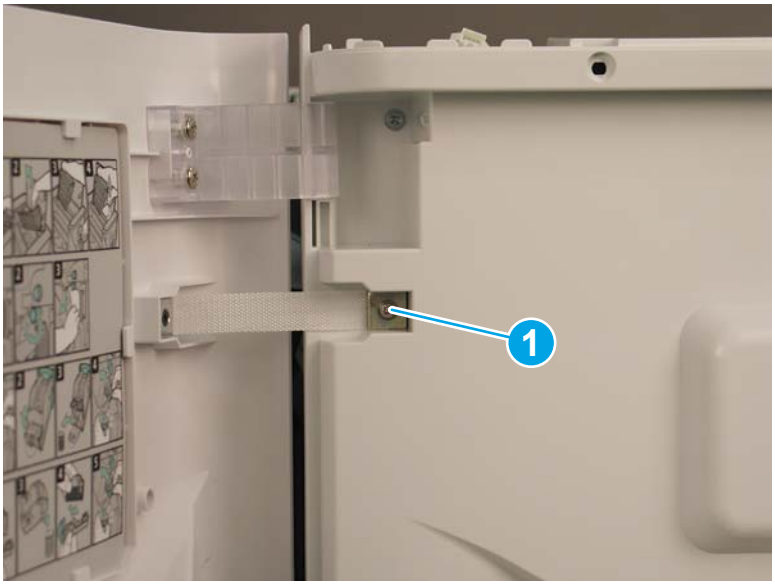
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 7-53 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

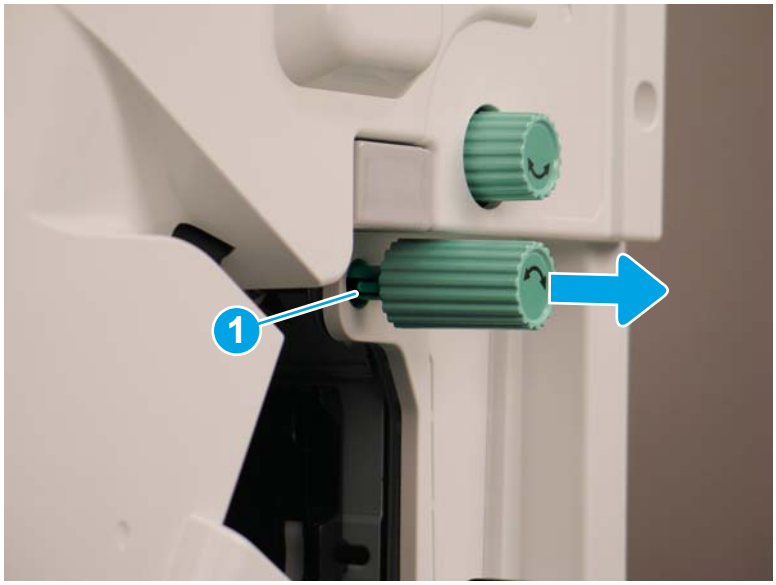
Figure 7-54 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

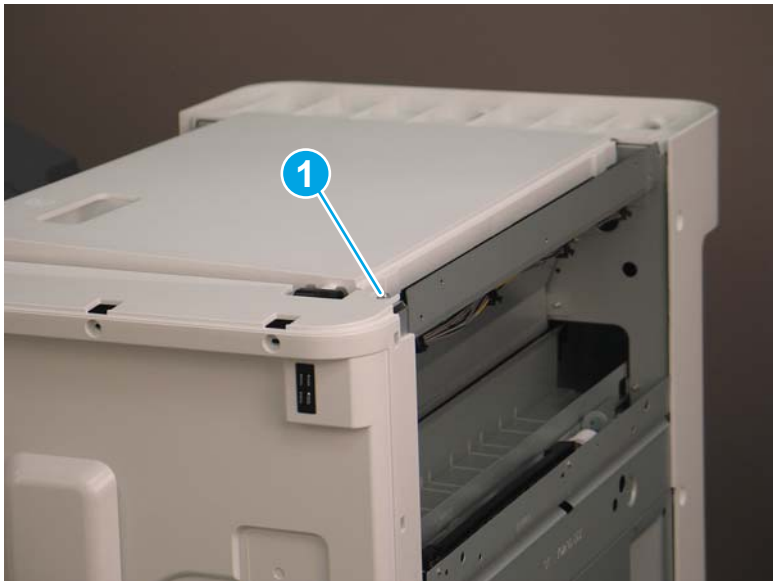
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 7-55 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

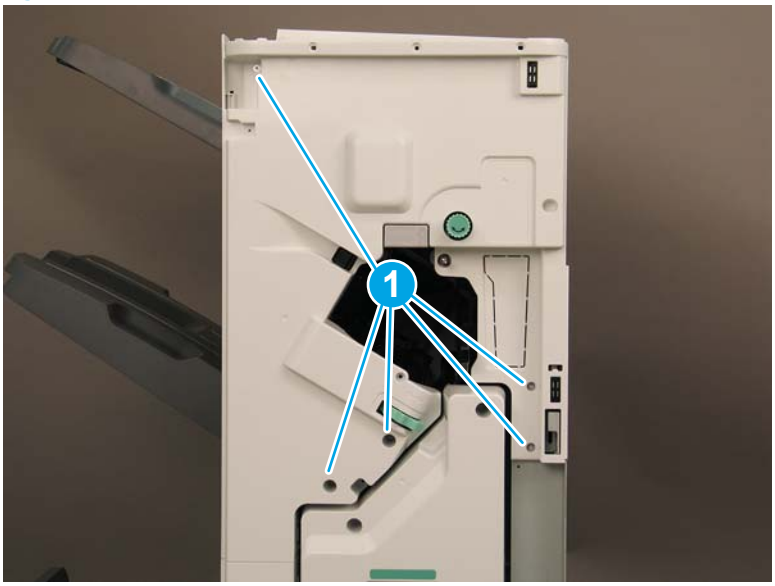
Figure 7-56 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-57 Remove five screws and the front cover

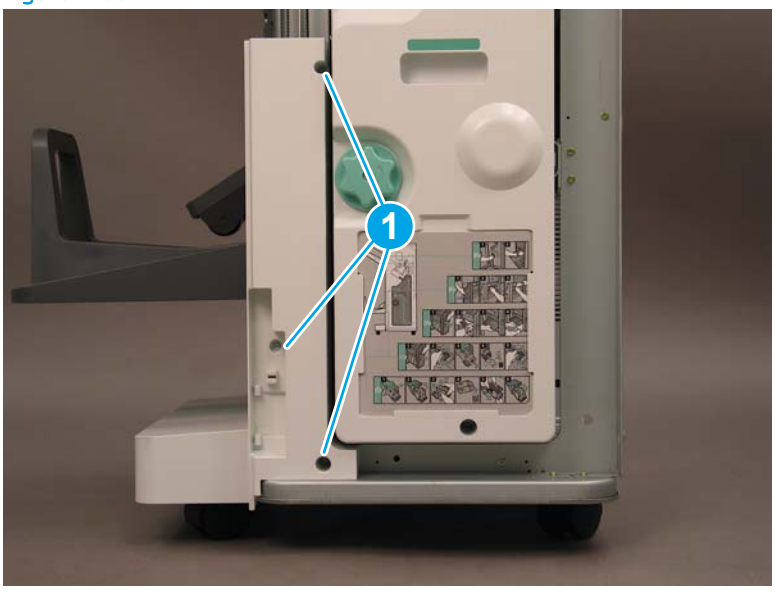


Step 5: Remove the front lower cover (finisher)

▲ Remove three machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front lower cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-58 Remove three screws and the front lower cover



Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet tray

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the booklet tray
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet tray on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Booklet tray part number	
SAM-JC90-01419A	Booklet tray

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

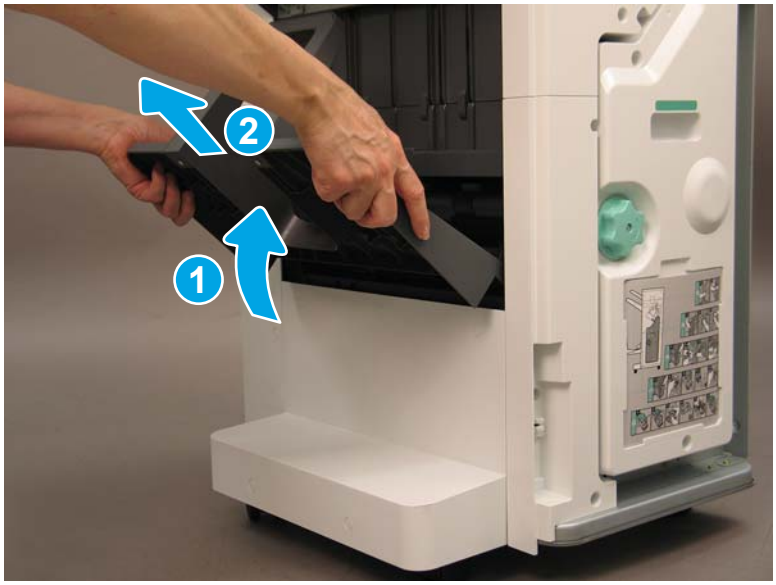
Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Step 1: Remove the booklet tray

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 7-59 Remove the booklet tray



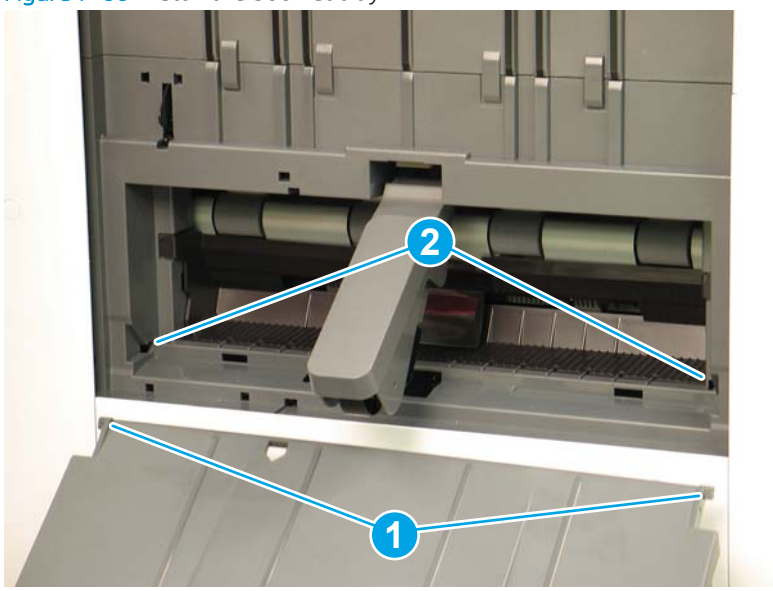
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

Figure 7-60 Install the booklet tray



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Caster cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the booklet tray (booklet finishers only)
- Step 2: Remove the caster cover
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the caster cover on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Caster cover part number	
SAM-JC63-04985A	Caster cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

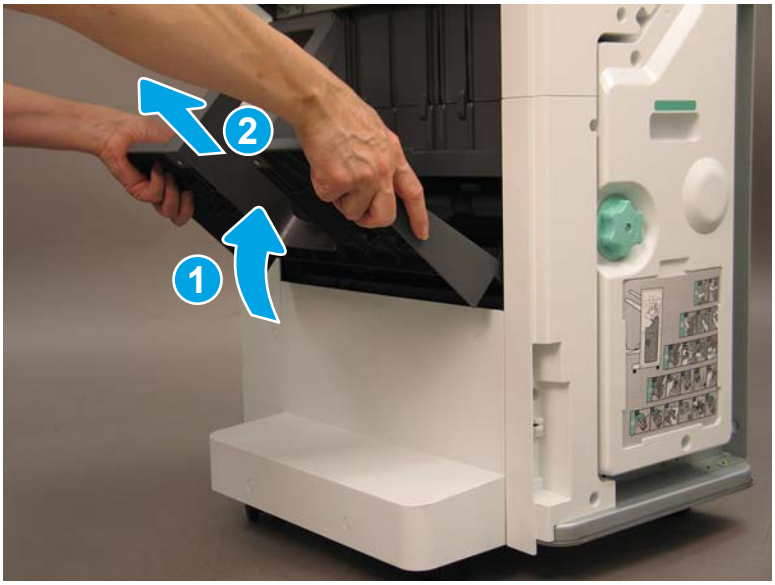
Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Step 1: Remove the booklet tray (booklet finishers only)

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 7-61 Remove the booklet tray



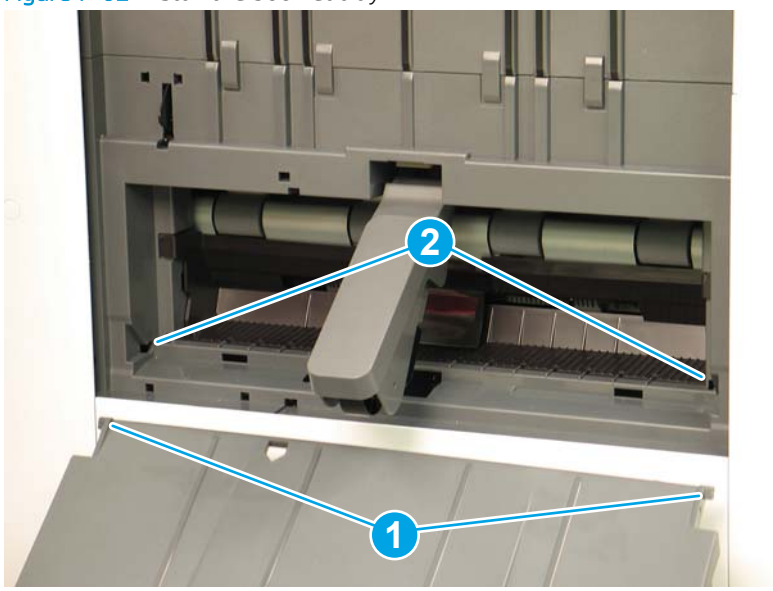
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

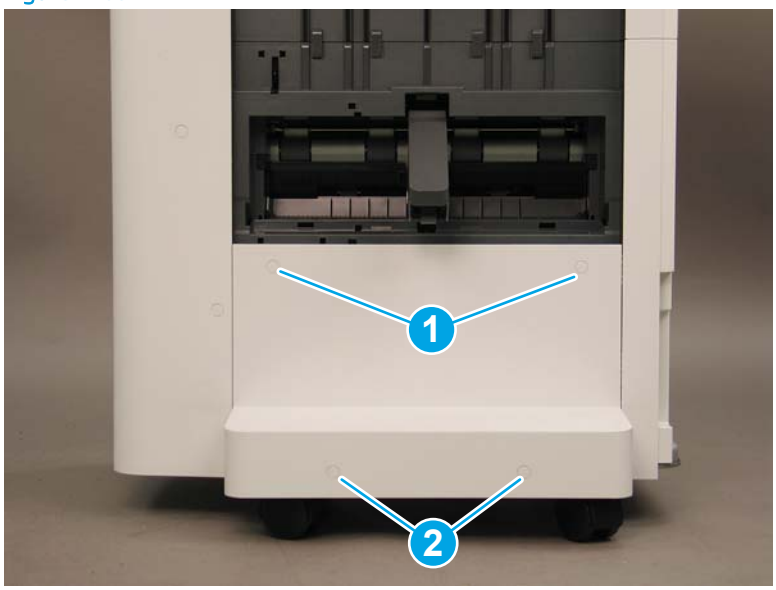
Figure 7-62 Install the booklet tray



Step 2: Remove the caster cover

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 7-63 Remove four screws

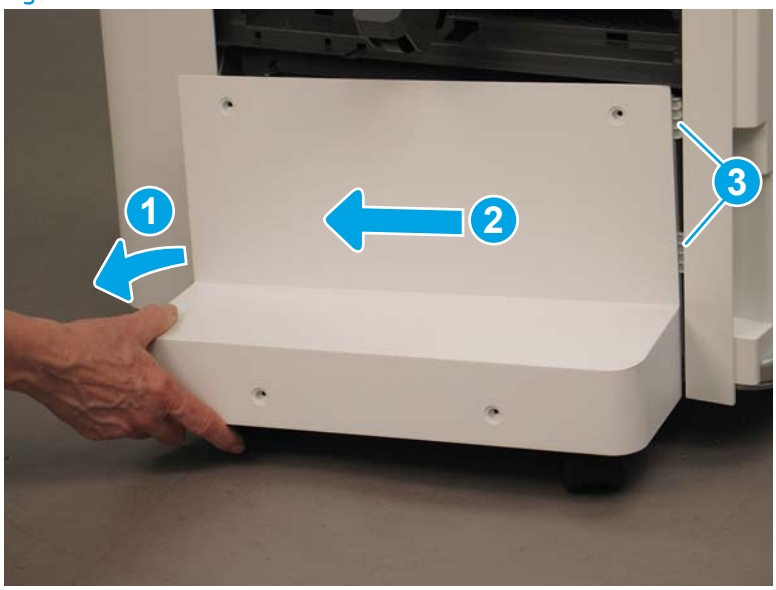


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-64 Remove the caster cover



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Lower shield assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 6: Remove the booklet tray
- Step 7: Remove the caster cover
- Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the lower shield assembly on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Lower shield assembly (finisher) part number	
SAM-JC90-01417A	Lower shield assembly (finisher)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

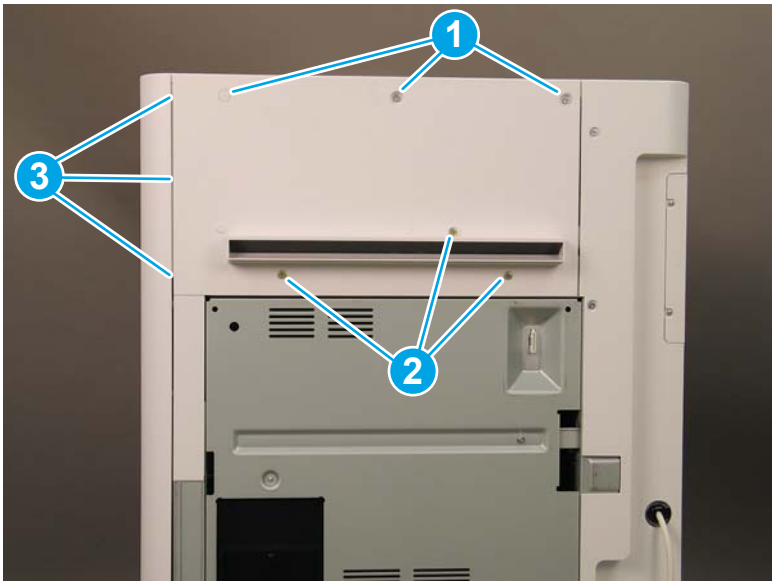
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

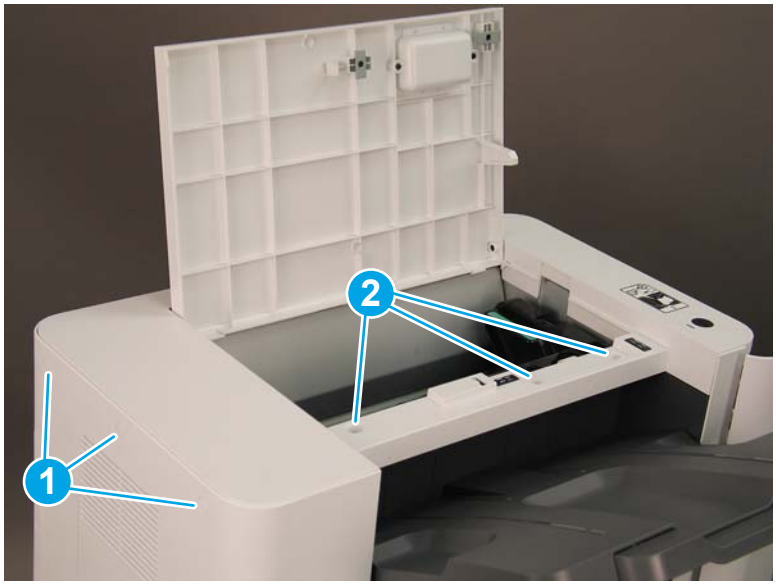
Figure 7-65 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

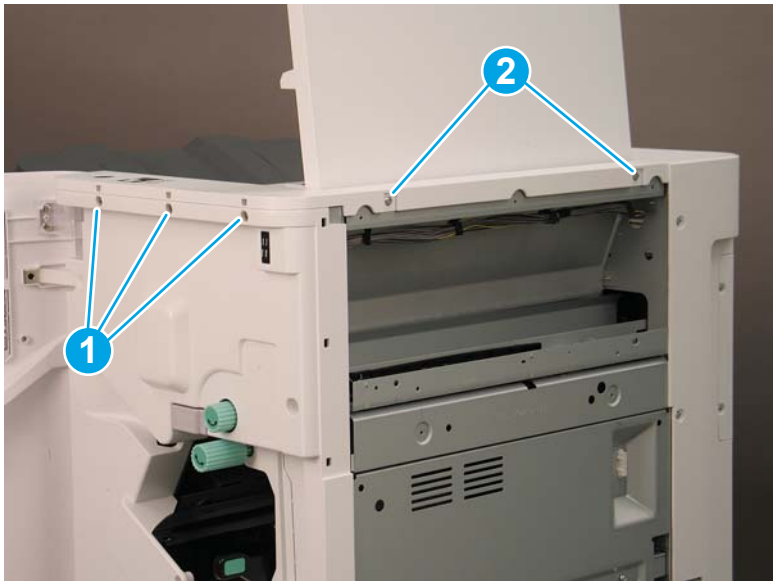
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-66 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

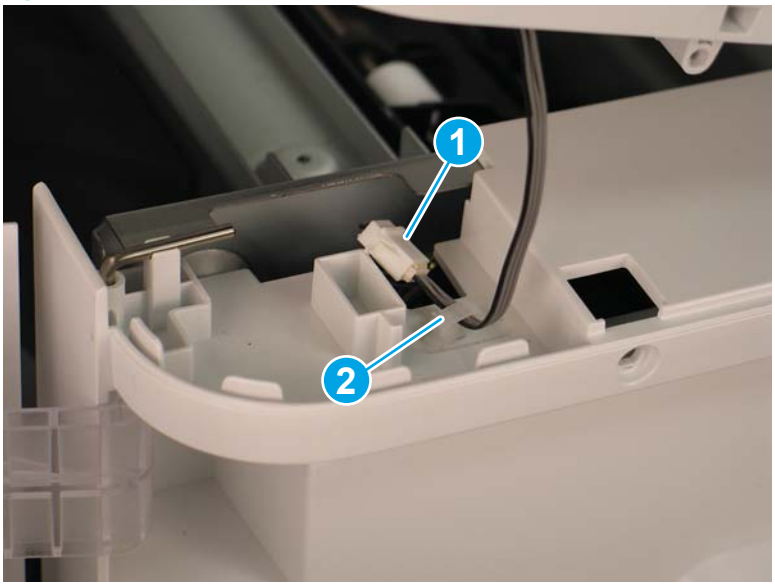
Figure 7-67 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-68 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

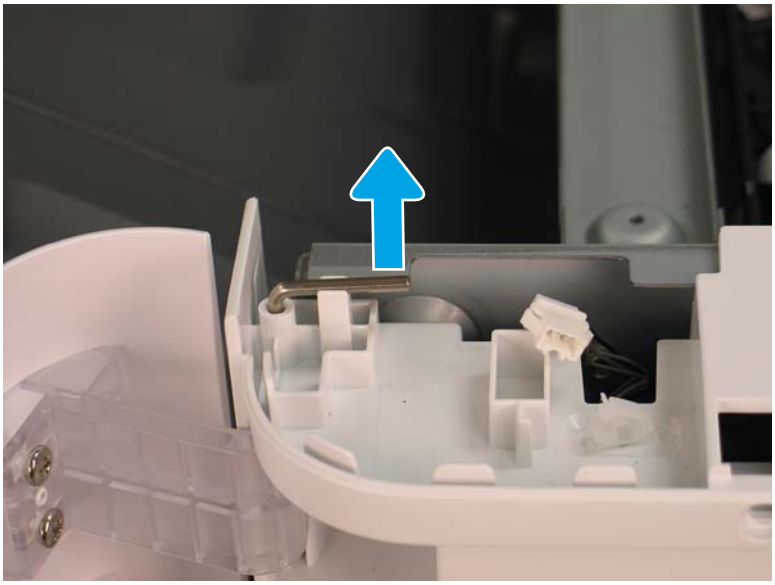


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

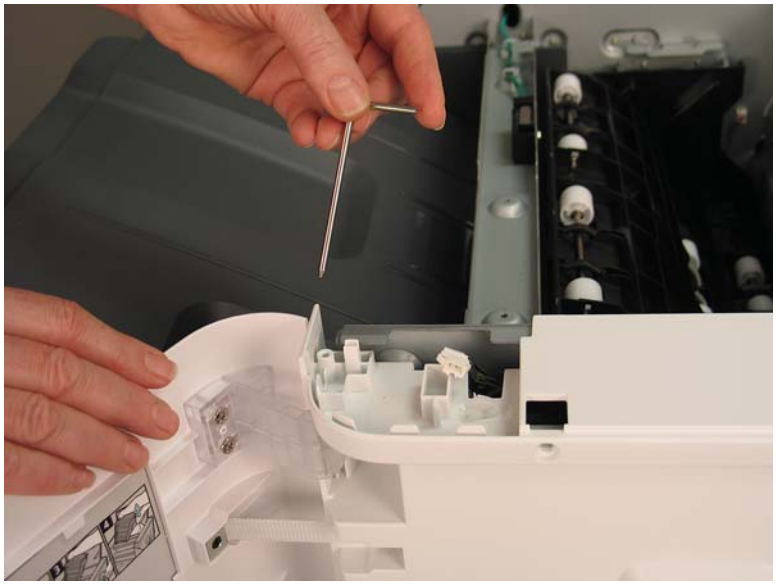
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 7-69 Lift the top hinge pin



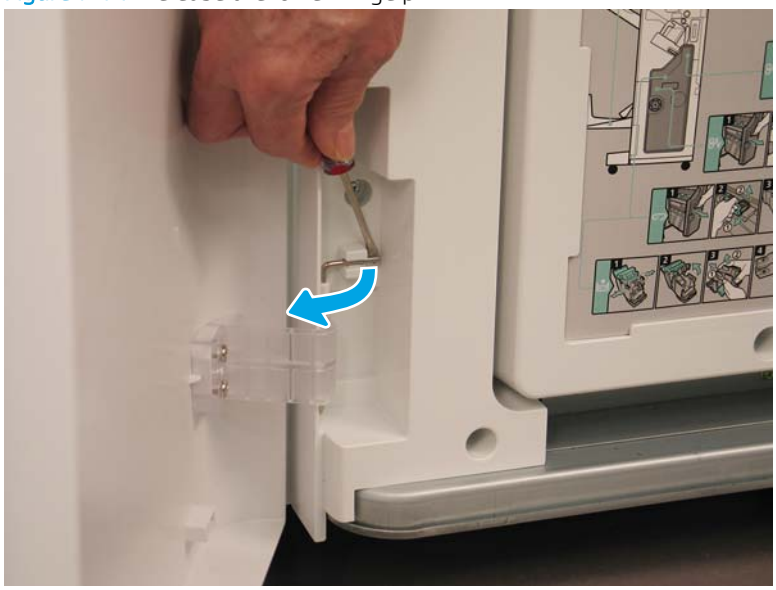
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 7-70 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 7-71 Release the lower hinge pin



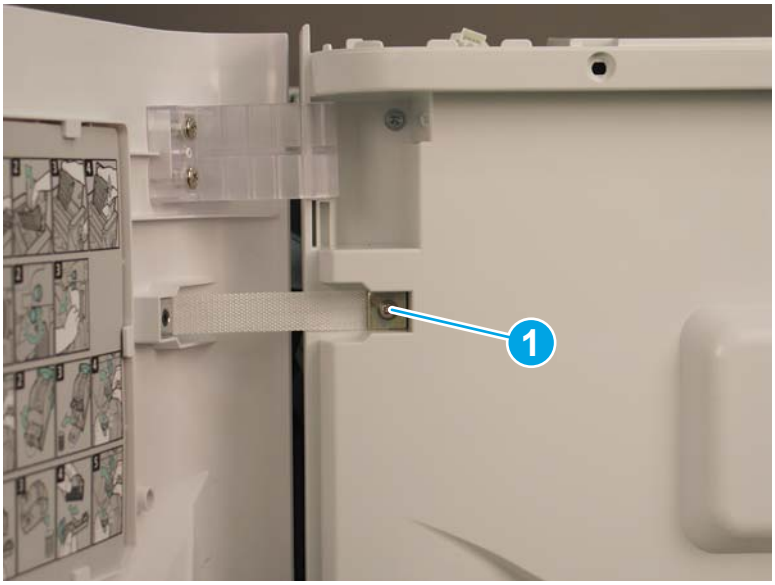
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 7-72 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

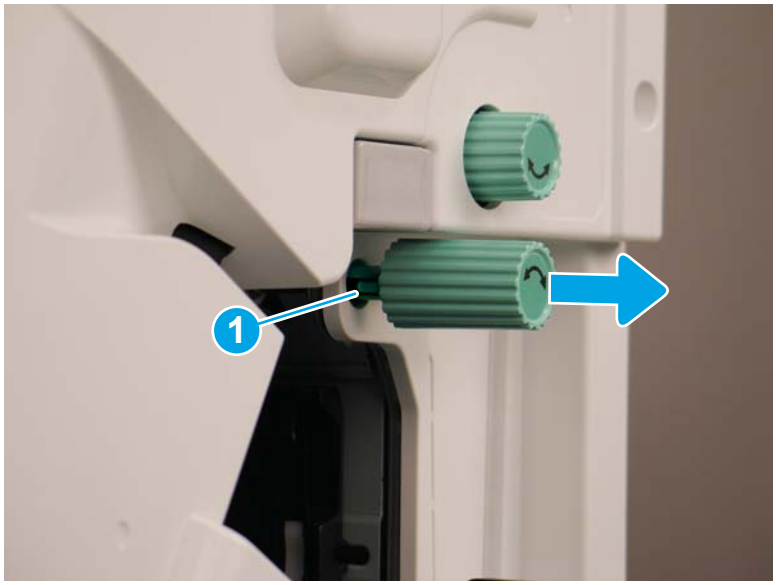
Figure 7-73 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

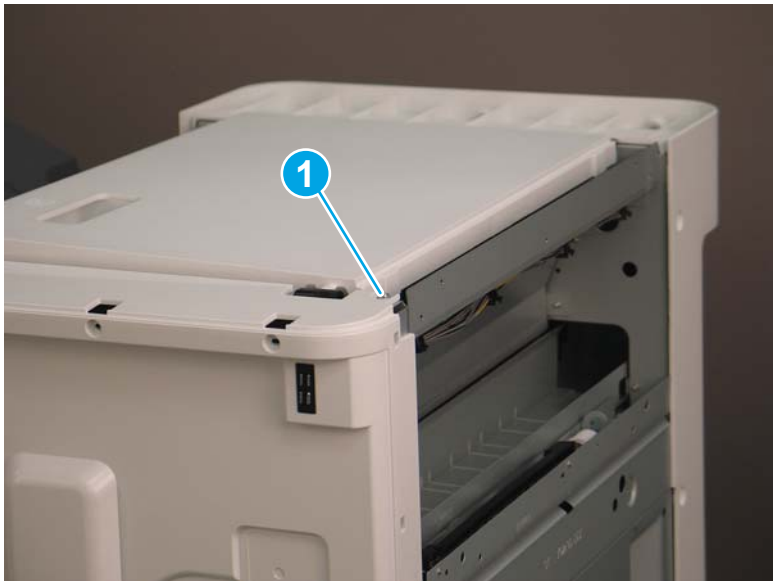
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 7-74 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

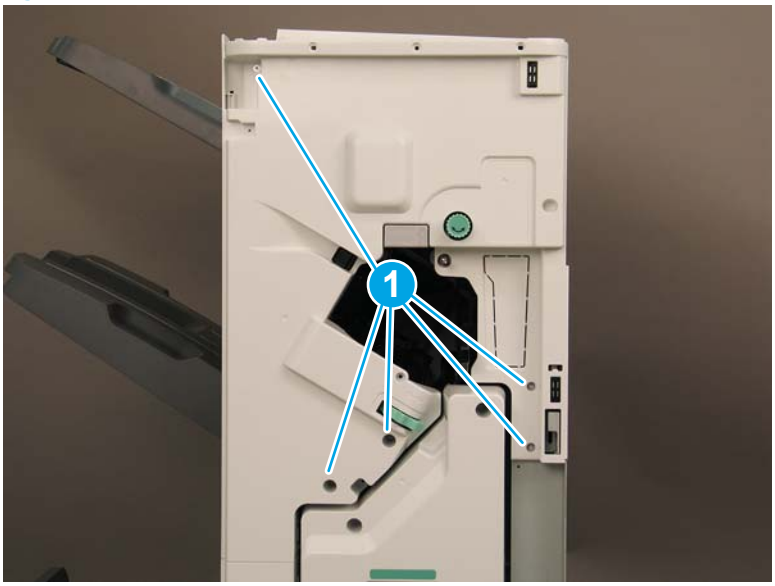
Figure 7-75 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

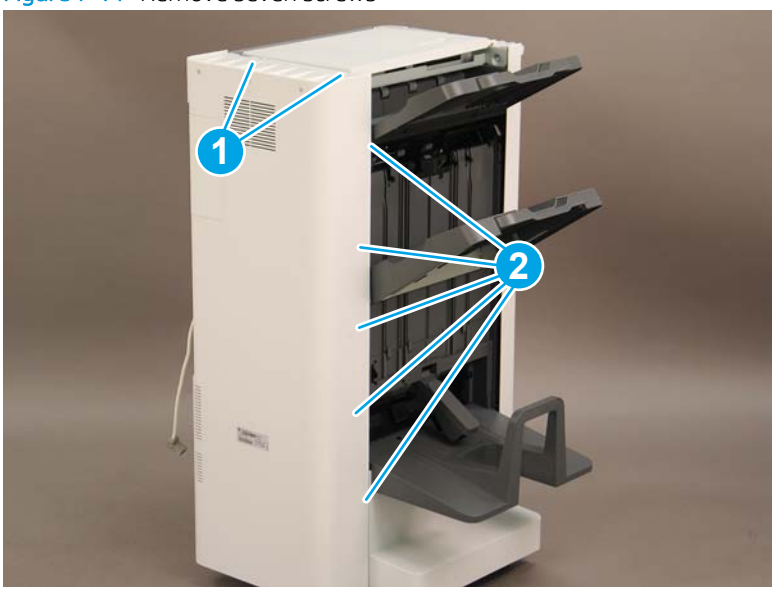
Figure 7-76 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-77 Remove seven screws

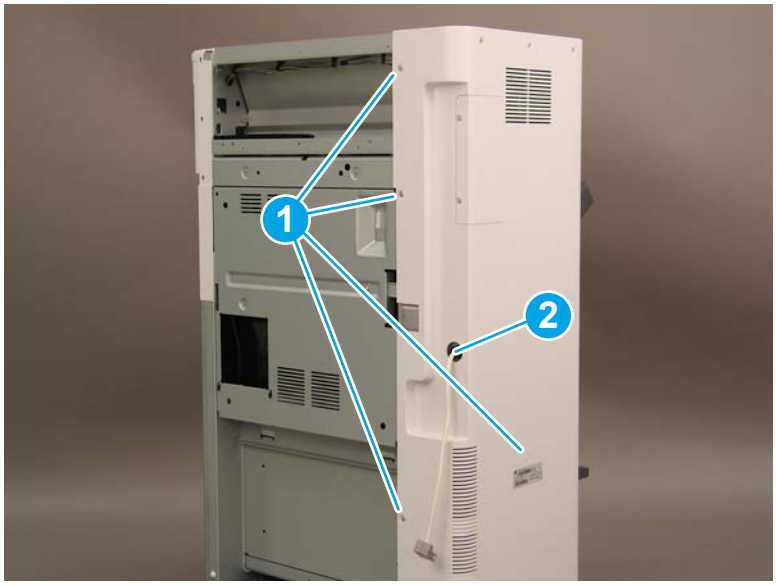


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

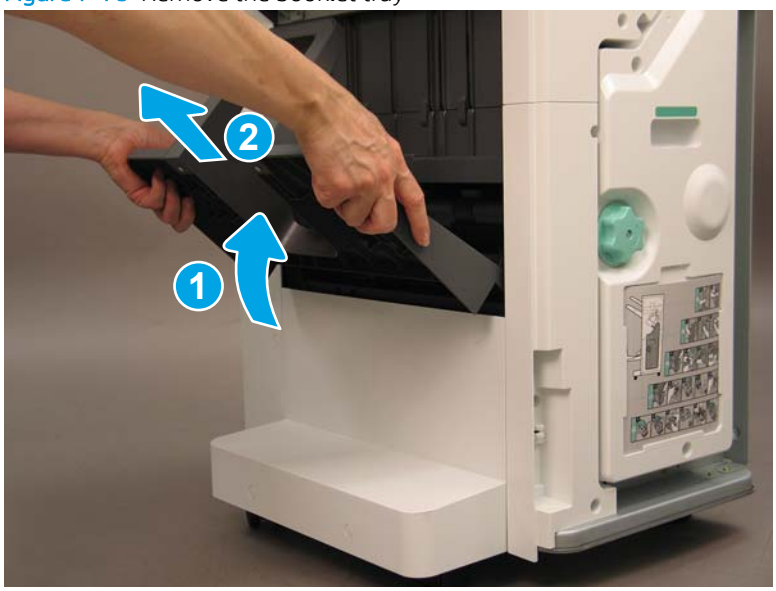
Figure 7-78 Remove four screws and the rear cover



Step 6: Remove the booklet tray

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 7-79 Remove the booklet tray



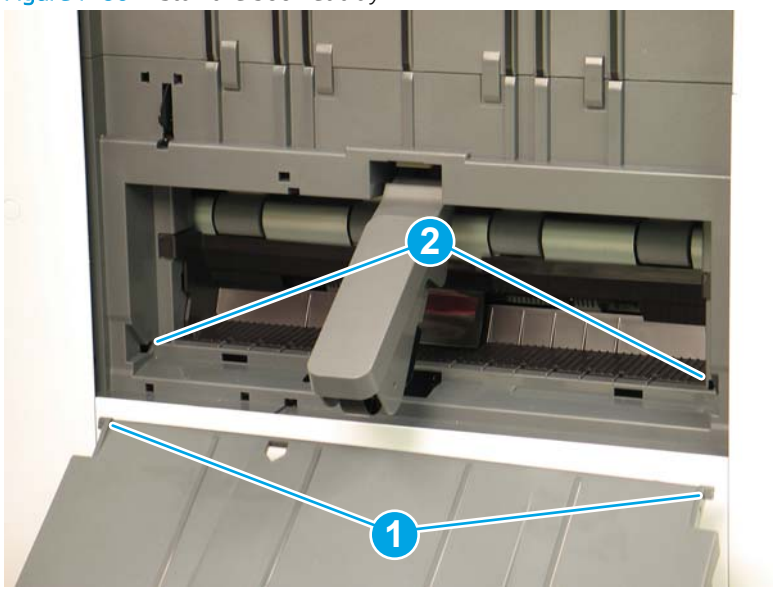
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

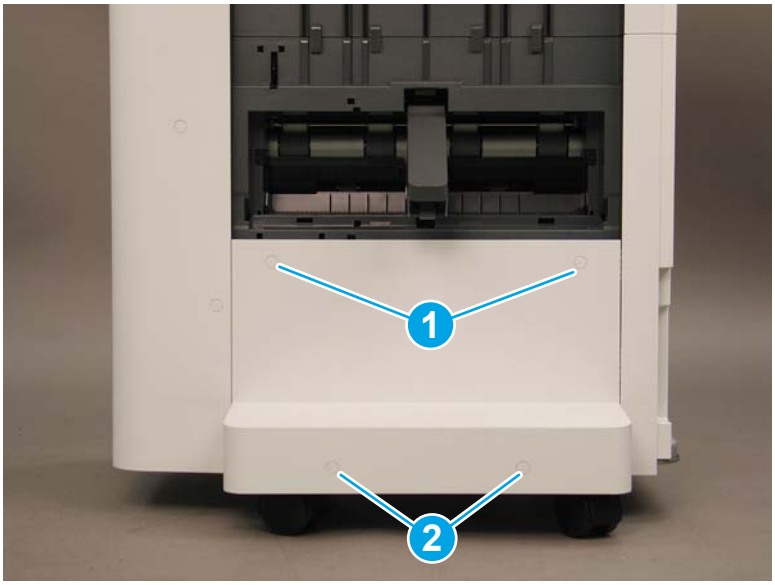
Figure 7-80 Install the booklet tray



Step 7: Remove the caster cover

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 7-81 Remove four screws

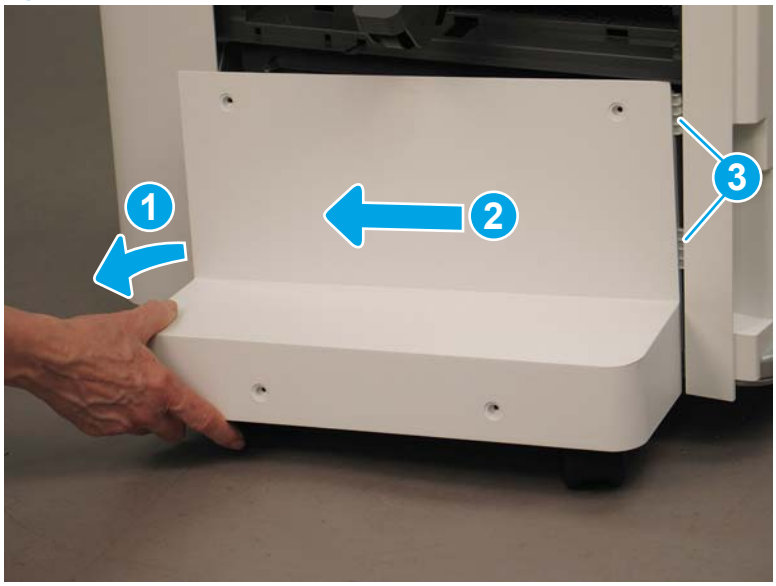


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-82 Remove the caster cover

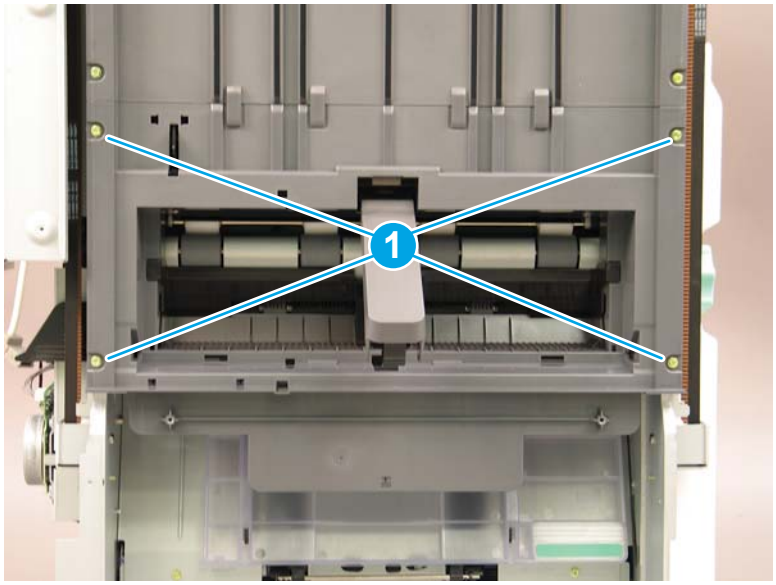


Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raise the lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 7-83 Remove four screws

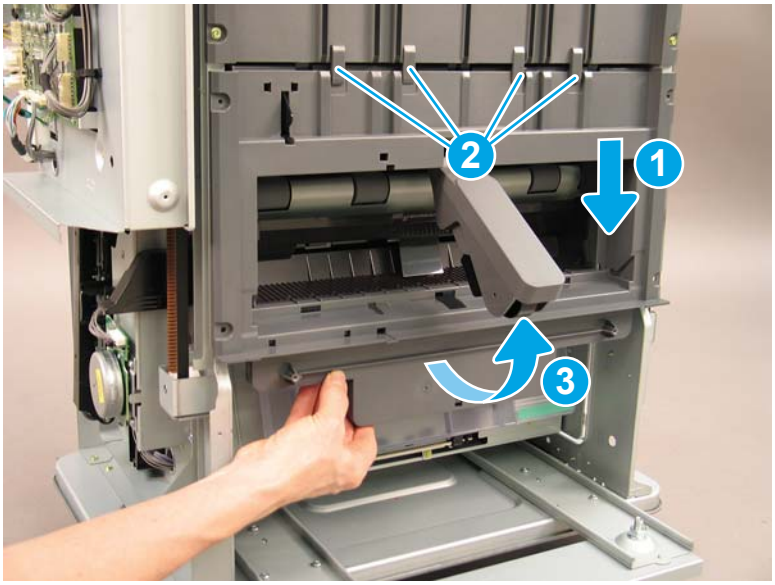


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

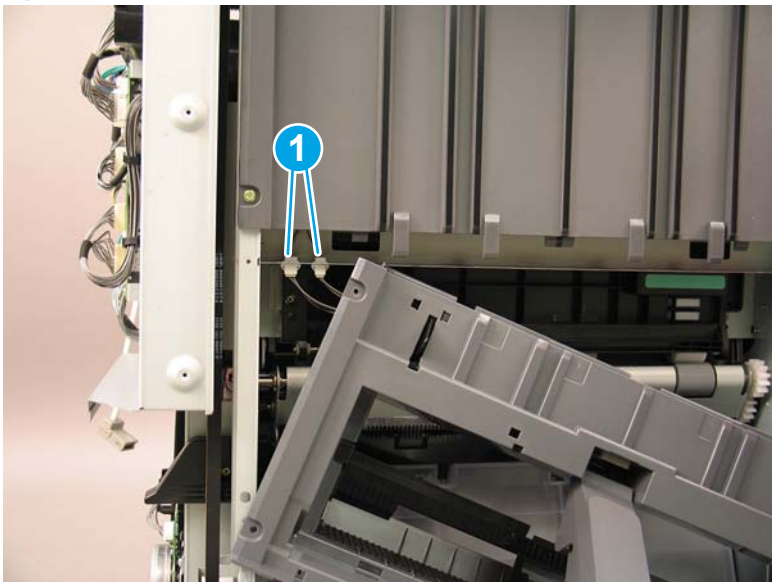
Figure 7-84 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

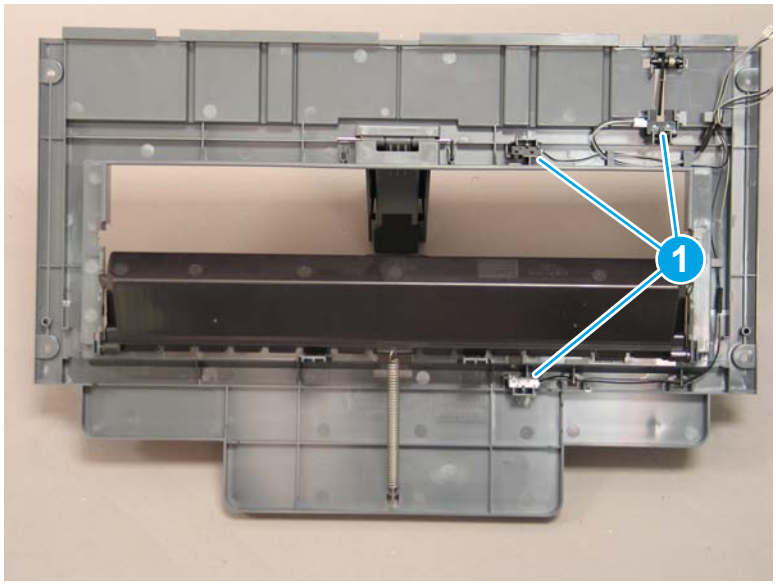
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-85 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the lower shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the lower shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 7-86 Locate sensors



Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Upper shield assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 6: Remove the booklet tray
- Step 7: Remove the caster cover
- Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 10: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the upper shield assembly on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Upper shield assembly (finisher) part number	
SAM-JC90-01475A	Finisher sub - shield

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

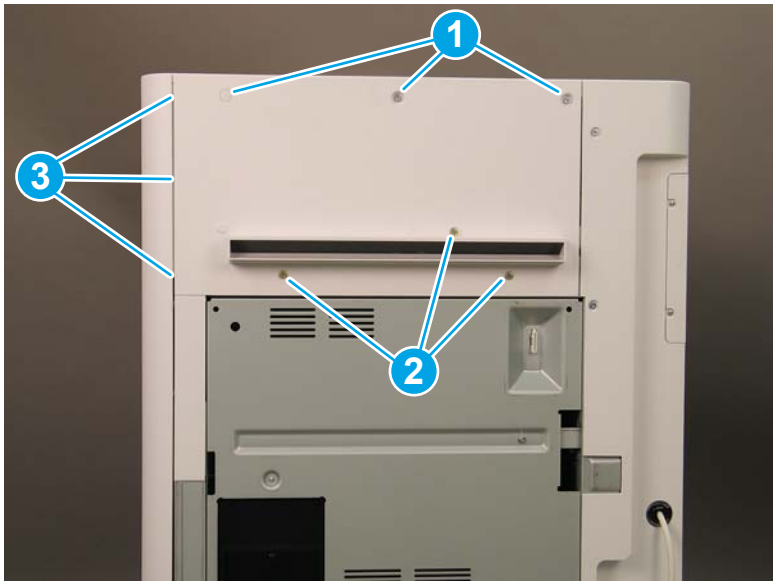
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

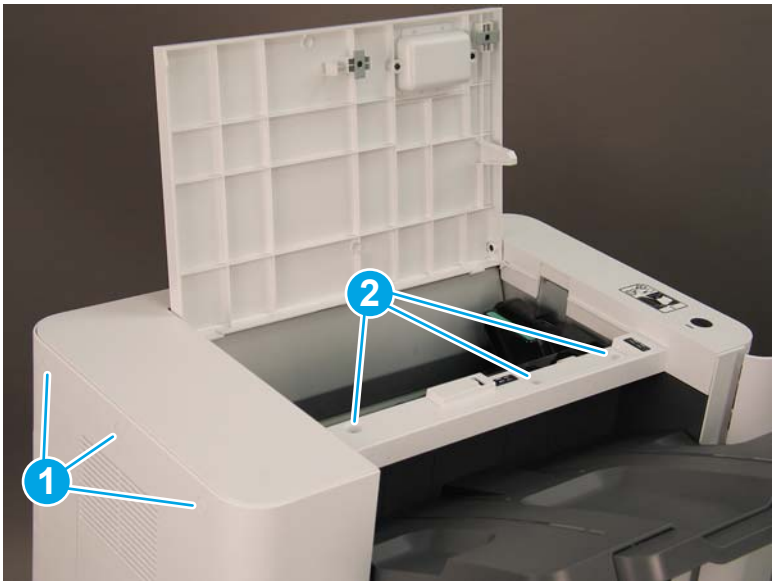
Figure 7-87 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

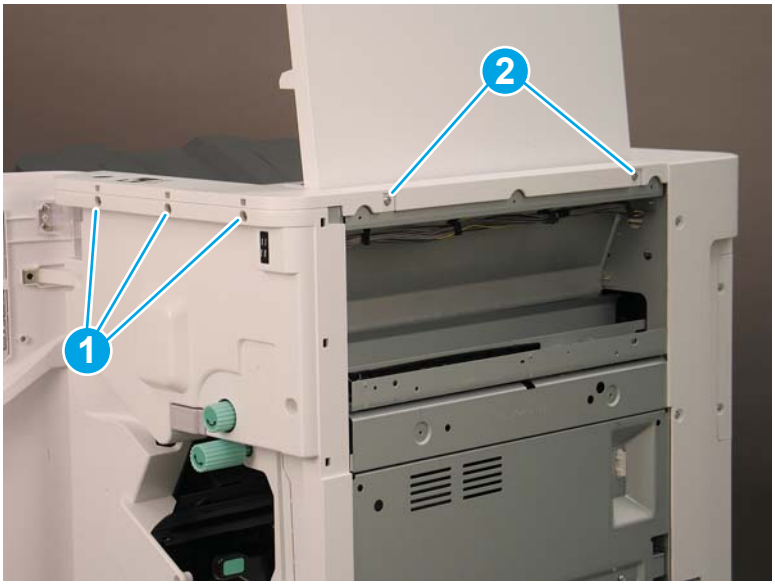
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-88 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

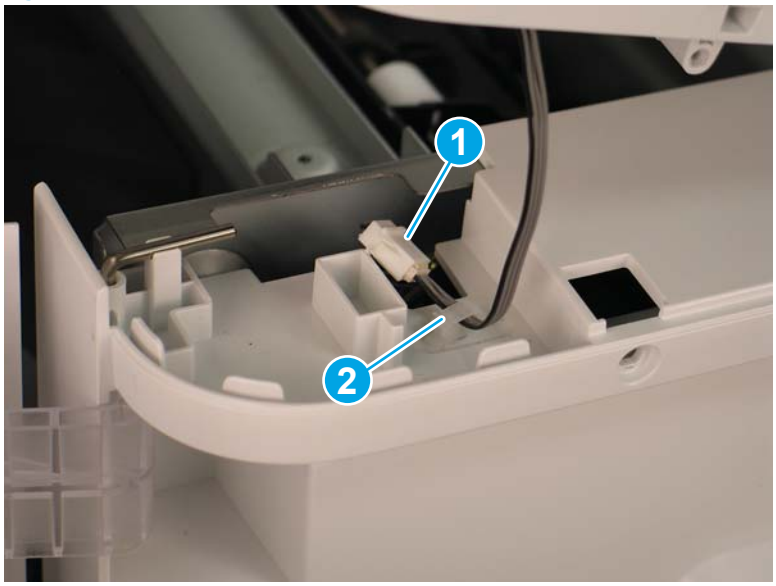
Figure 7-89 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-90 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

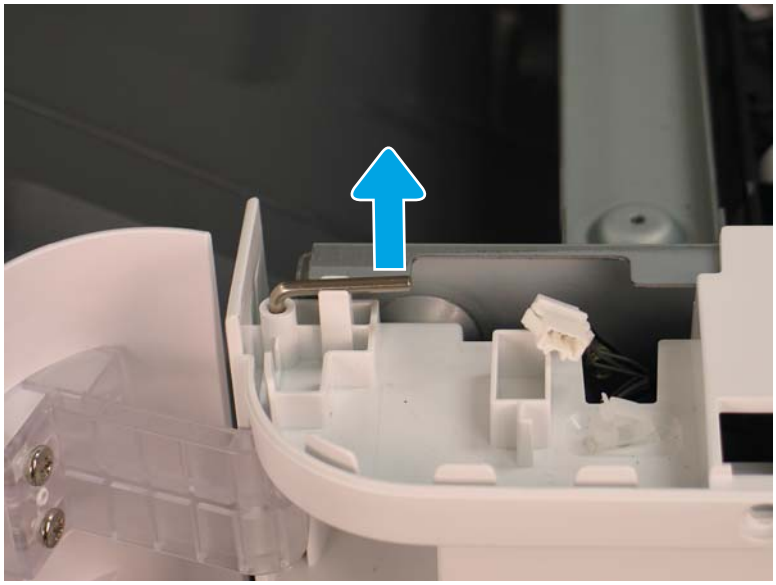


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

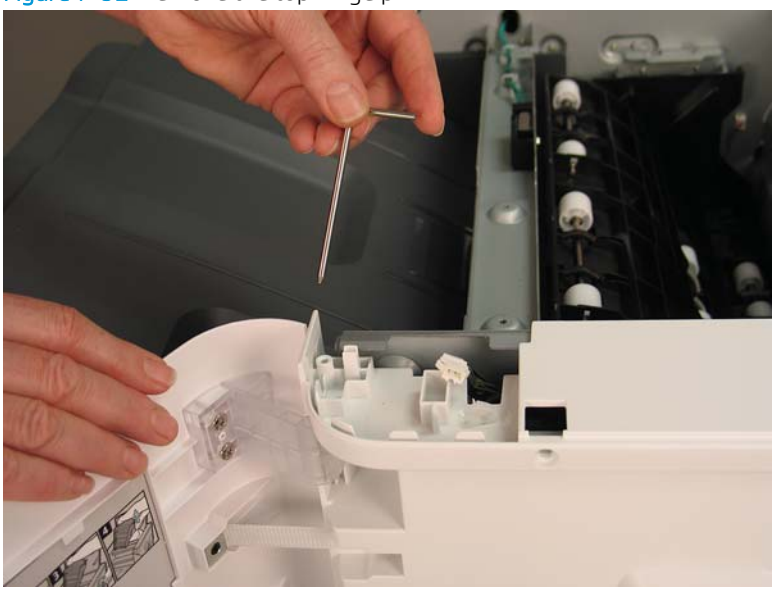
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 7-91 Lift the top hinge pin



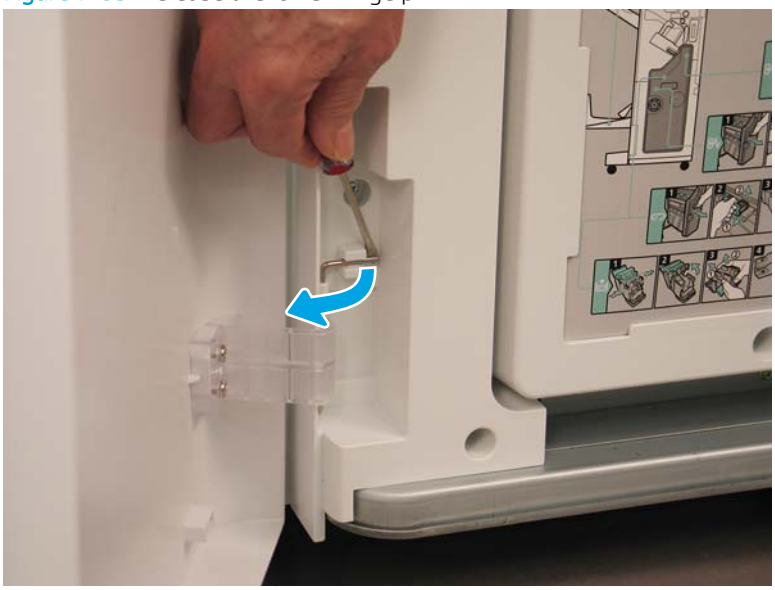
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 7-92 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 7-93 Release the lower hinge pin



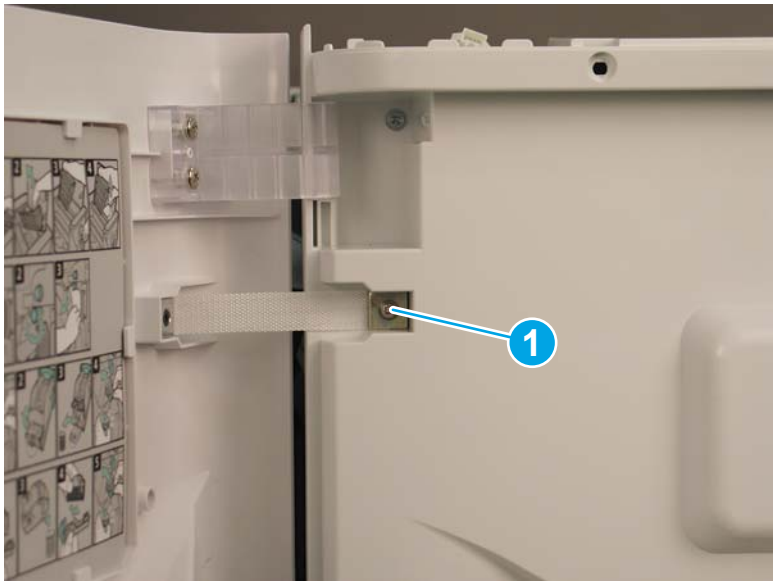
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 7-94 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

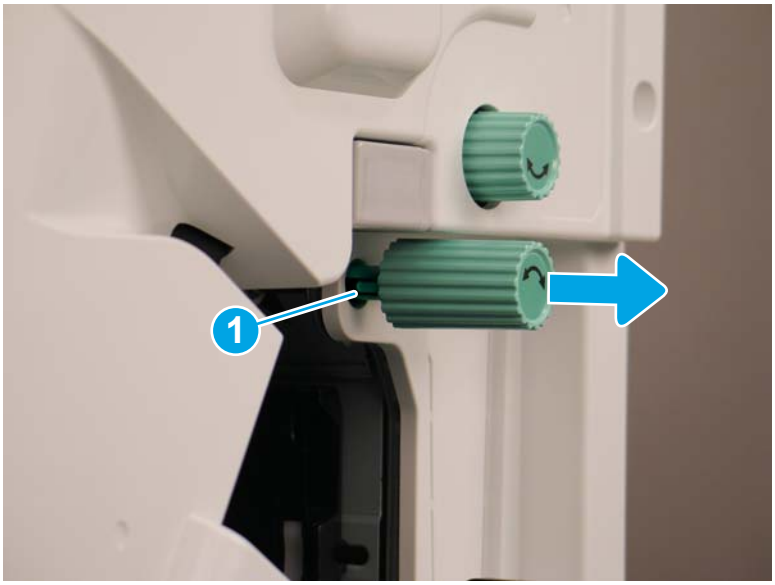
Figure 7-95 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

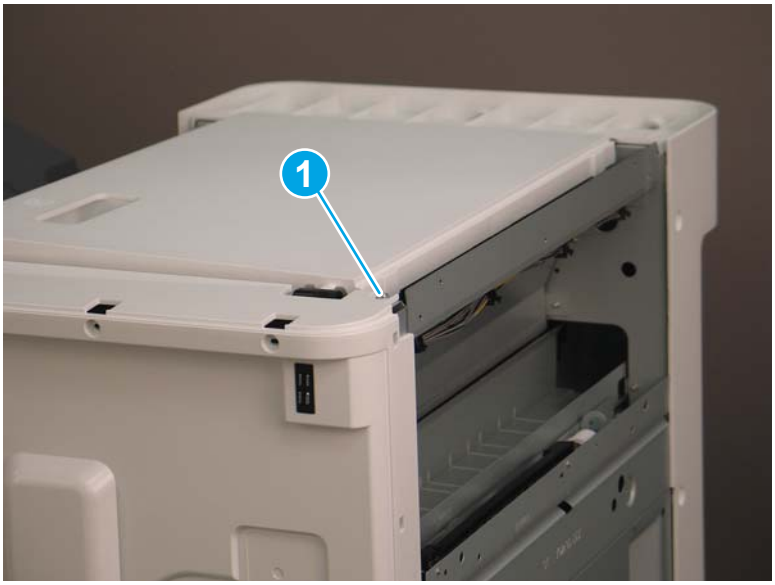
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 7-96 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

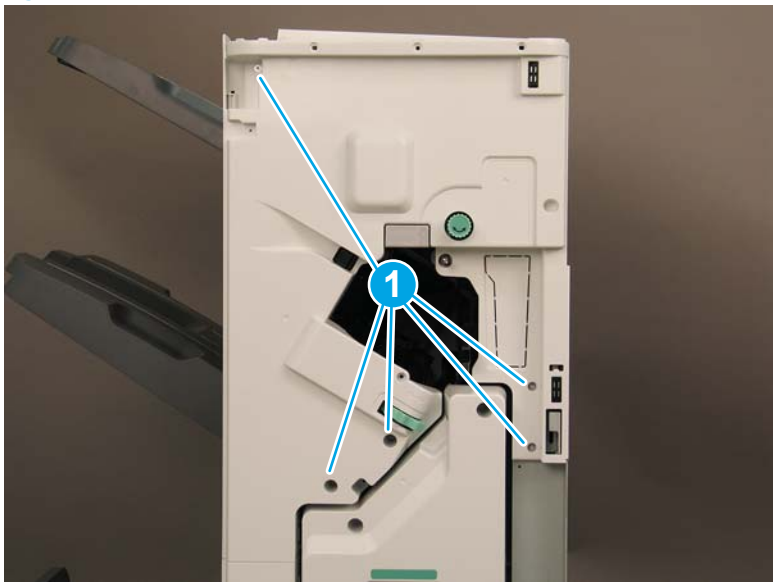
Figure 7-97 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

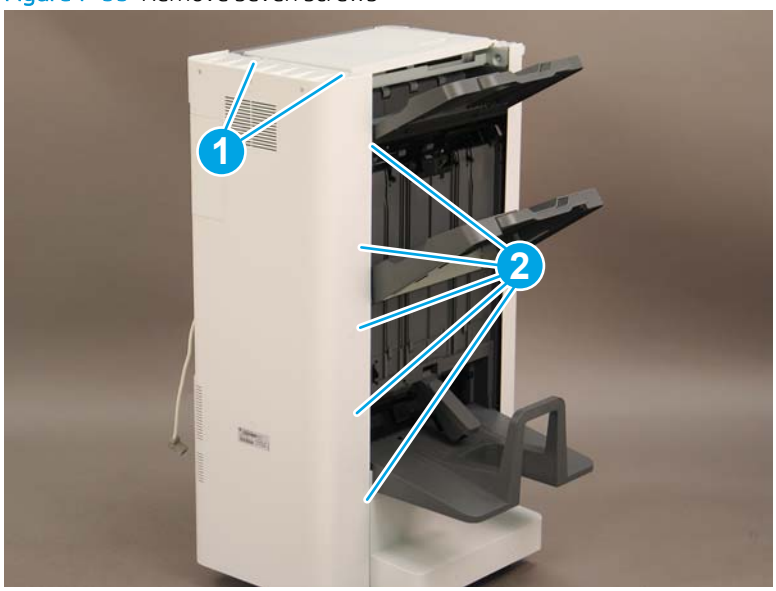
Figure 7-98 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-99 Remove seven screws

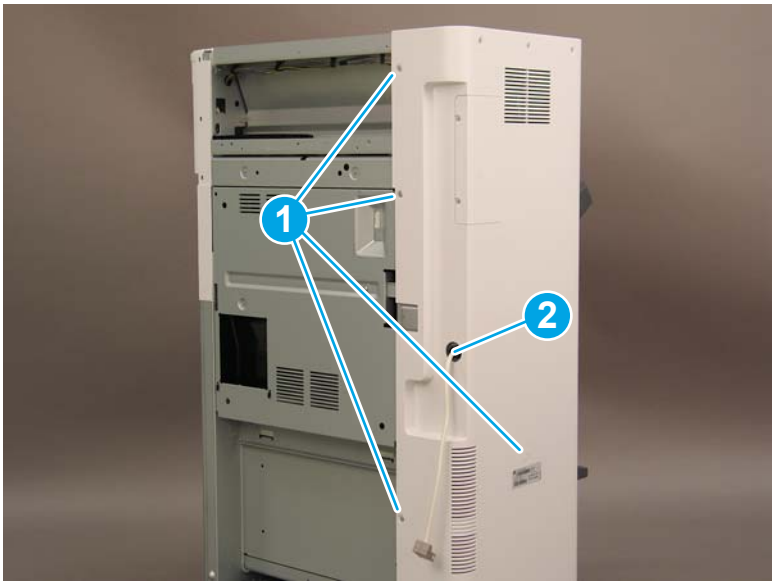


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

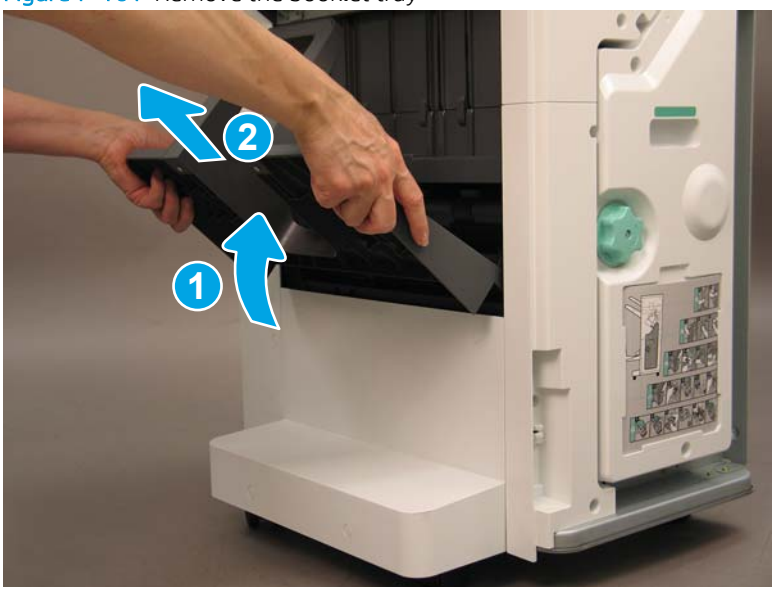
Figure 7-100 Remove four screws and the rear cover



Step 6: Remove the booklet tray

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 7-101 Remove the booklet tray



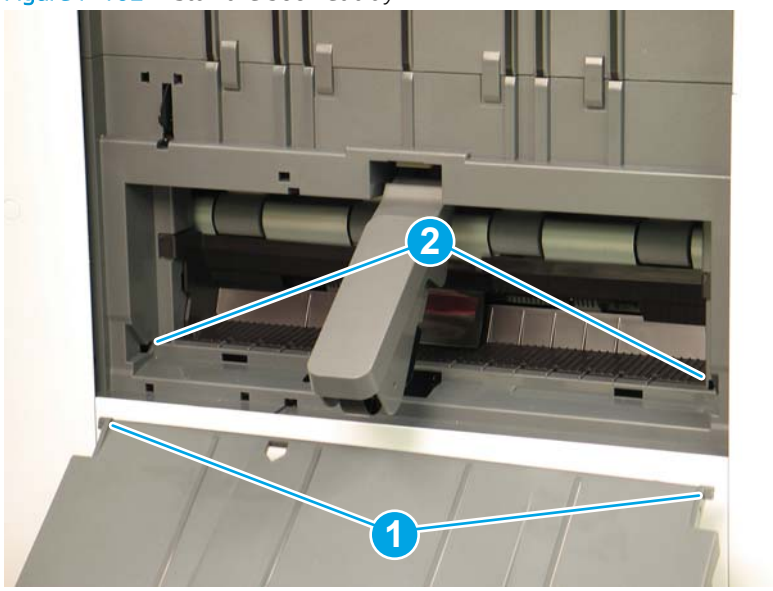
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

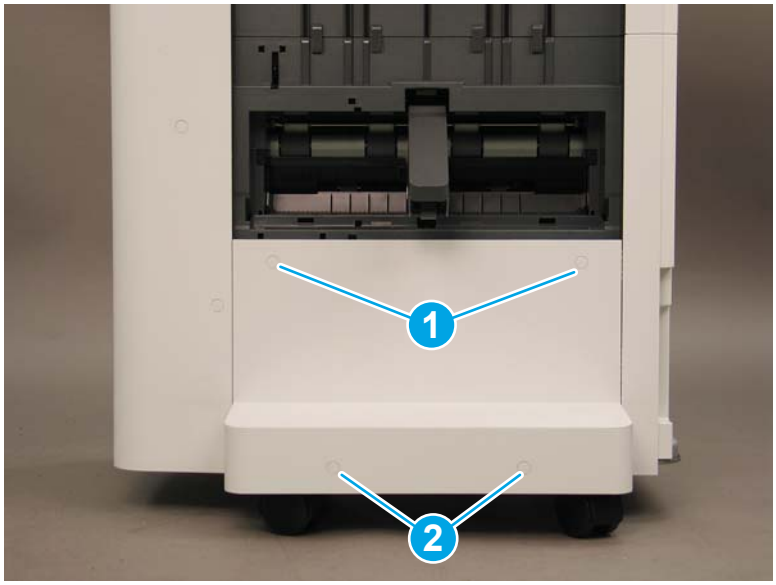
Figure 7-102 Install the booklet tray



Step 7: Remove the caster cover

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 7-103 Remove four screws

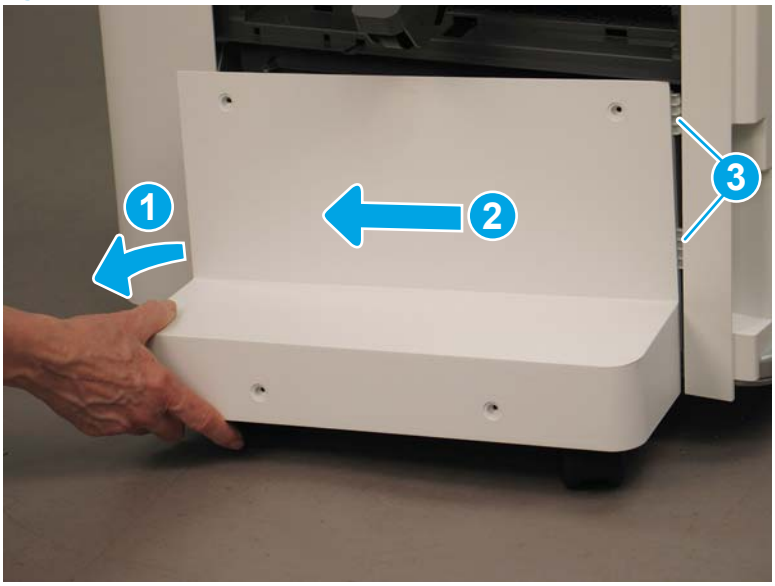


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-104 Remove the caster cover

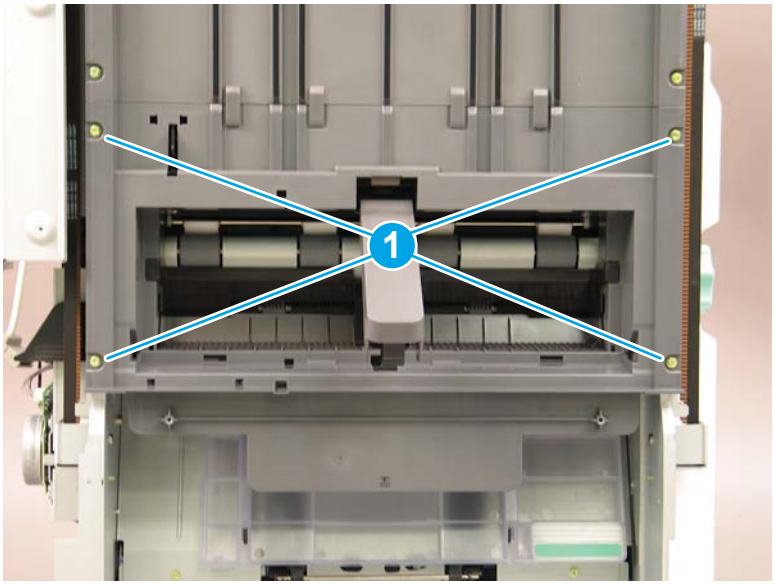


Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raise the lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 7-105 Remove four screws

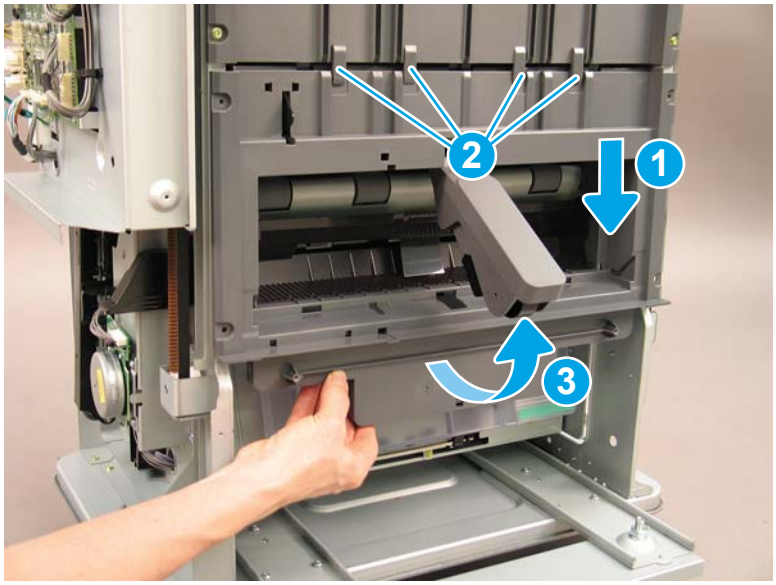


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

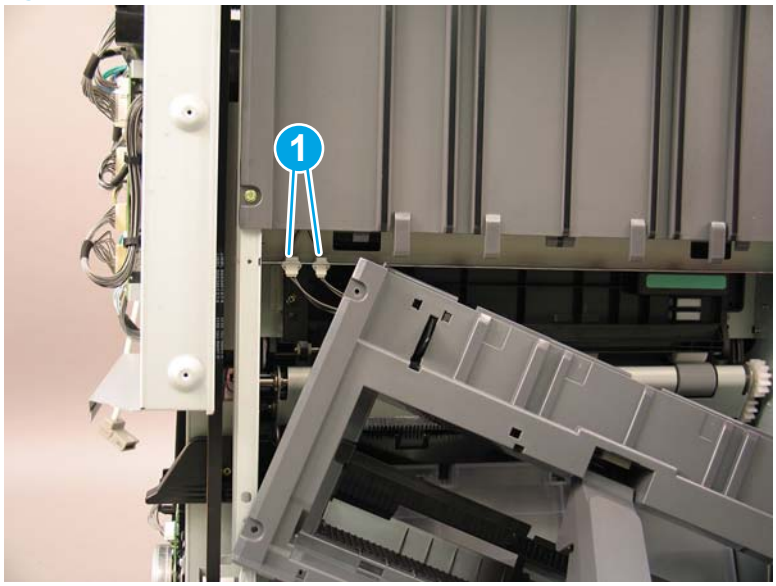
Figure 7-106 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

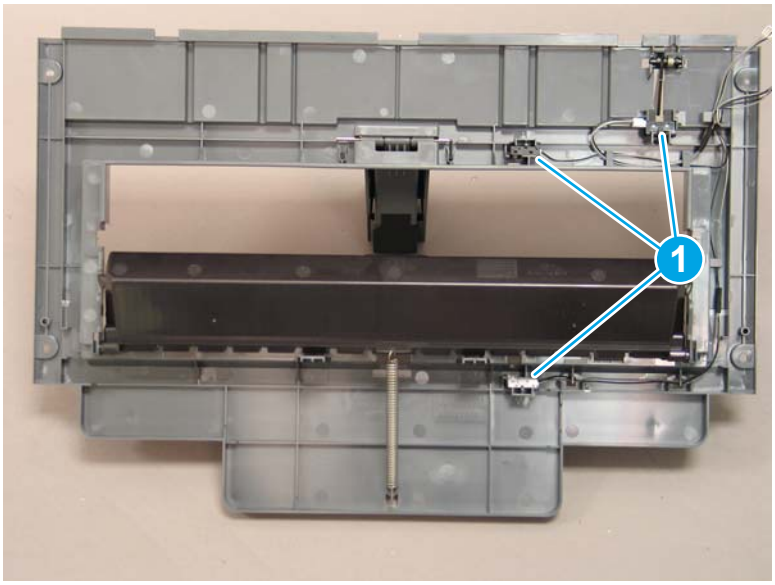
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-107 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the lower shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the lower shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

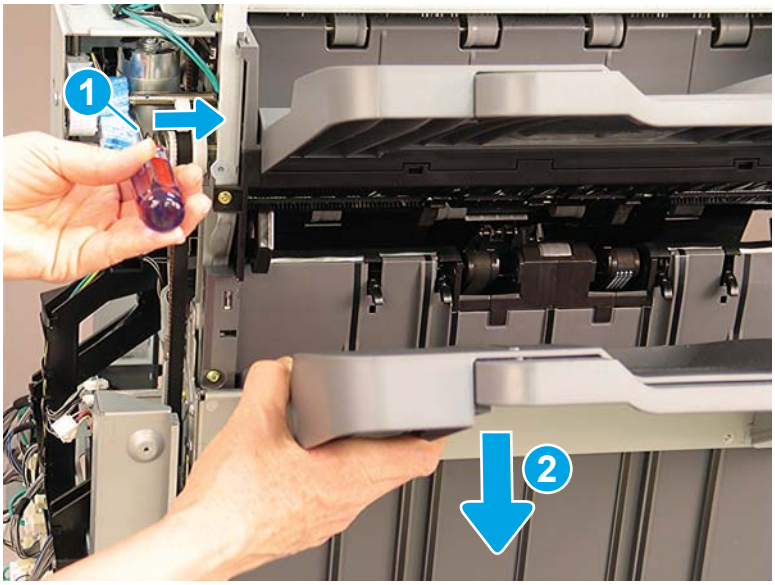
Figure 7-108 Locate sensors



Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)

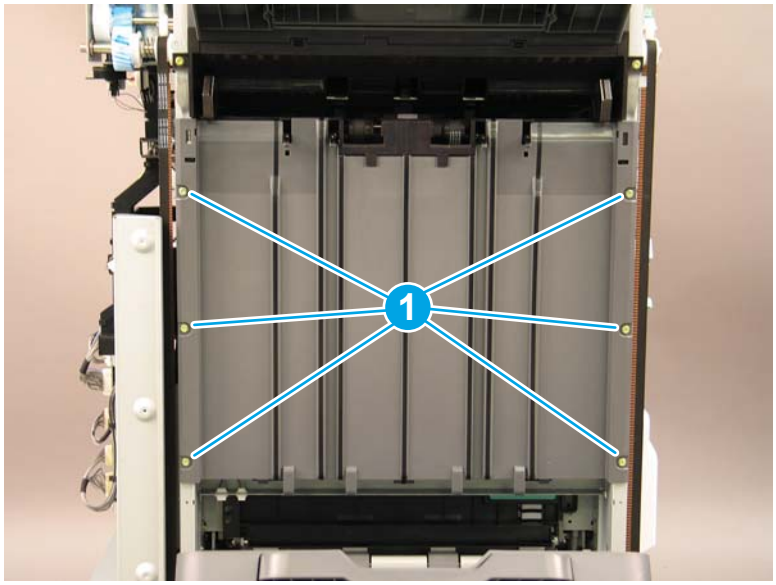
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 7-109 Lower the output tray



2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-110 Remove six screws

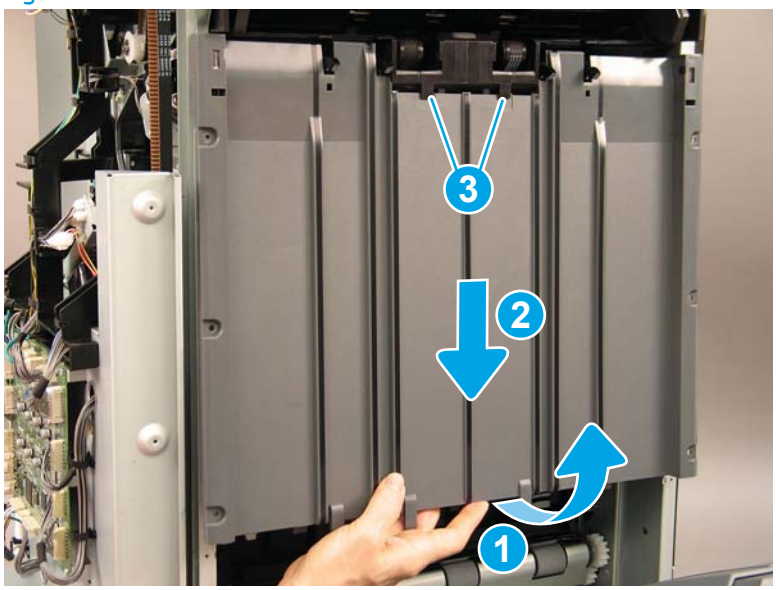


3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

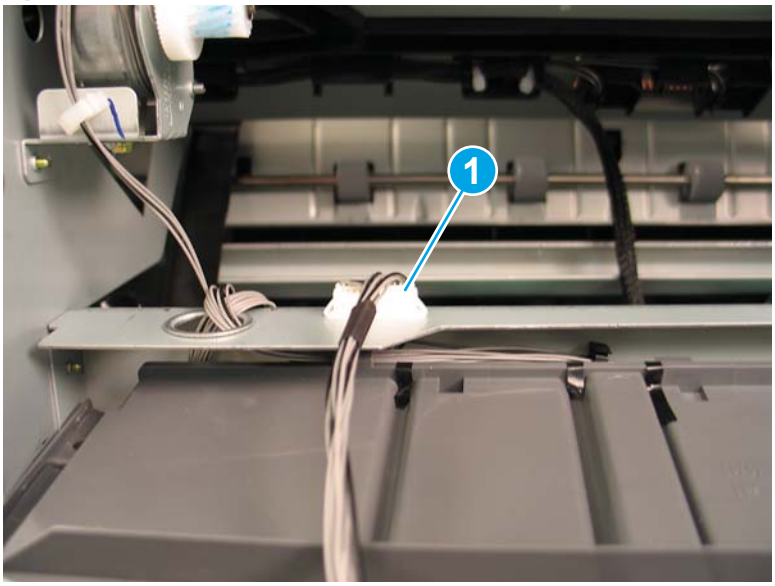
Figure 7-111 Release the shield



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.

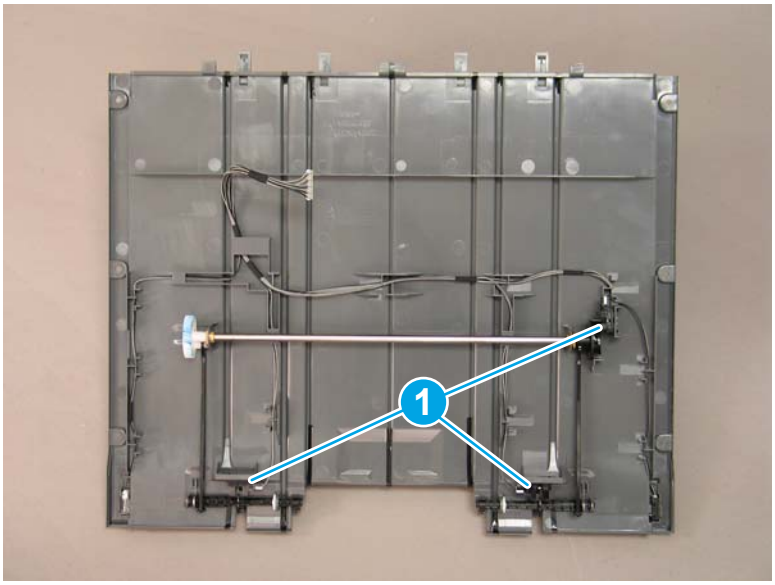
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-112 Disconnect one connector



5. If you are replacing the upper shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the upper shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 7-113 Locate sensors



Step 10: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Controller PCA

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the controller PCA
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the controller PCA on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Controller PCA (finisher) part number	
XXXXX	Controller PCA (finisher)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

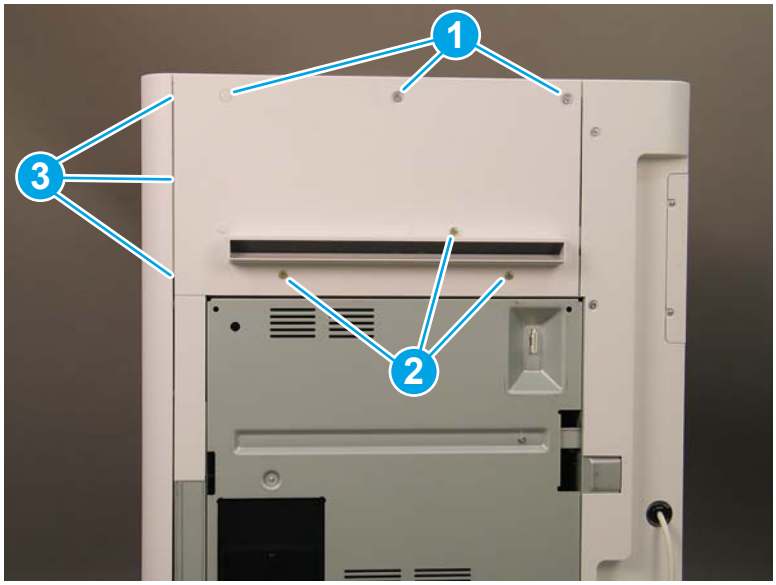
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

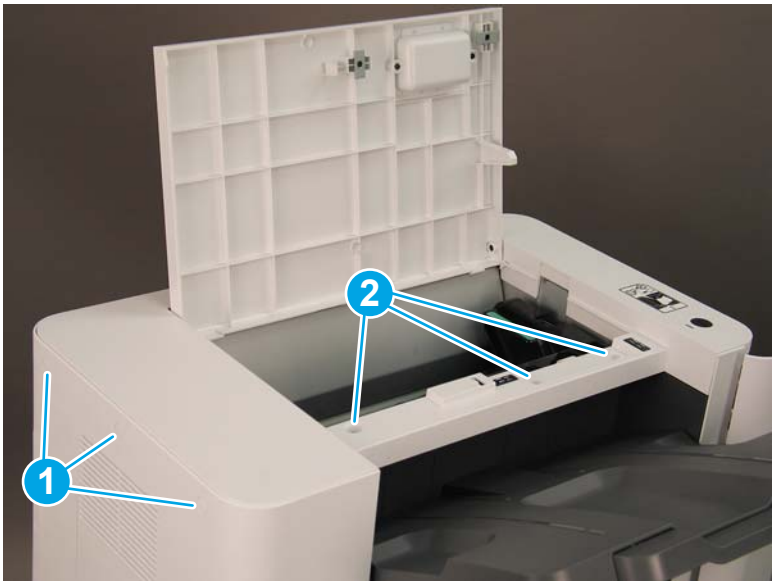
Figure 7-114 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

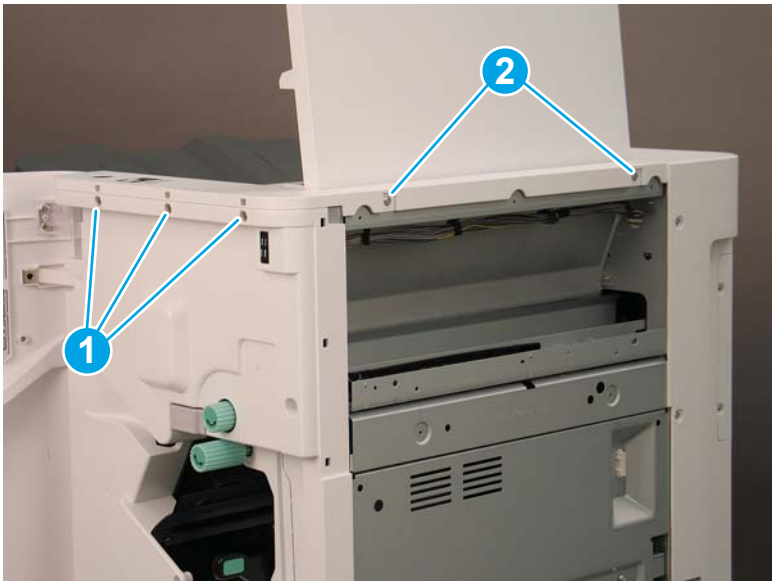
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-115 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

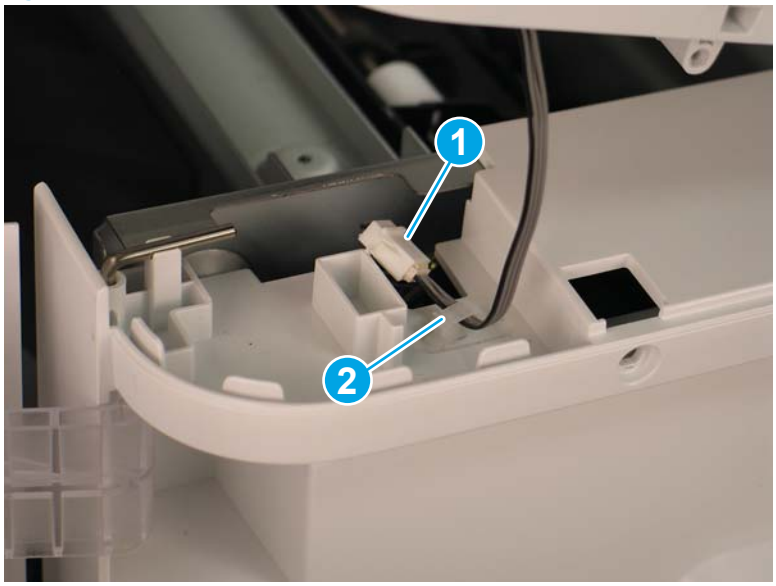
Figure 7-116 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-117 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

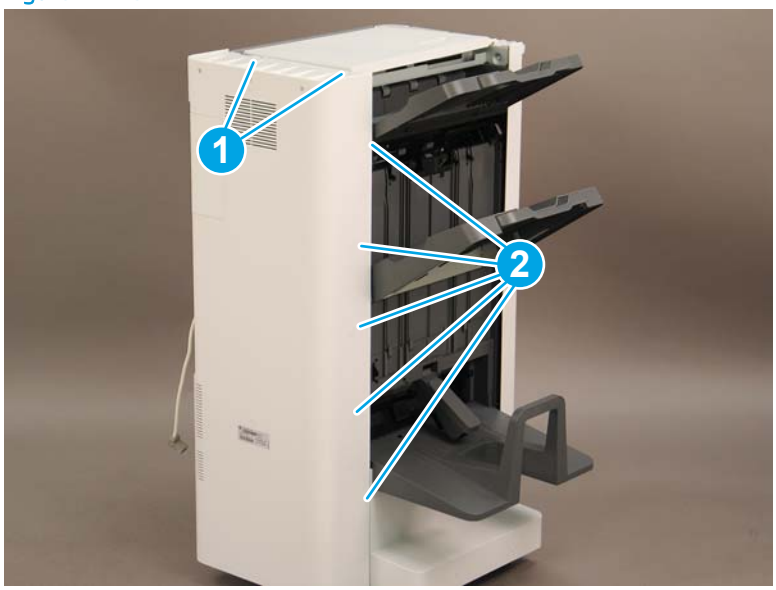


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-118 Remove seven screws

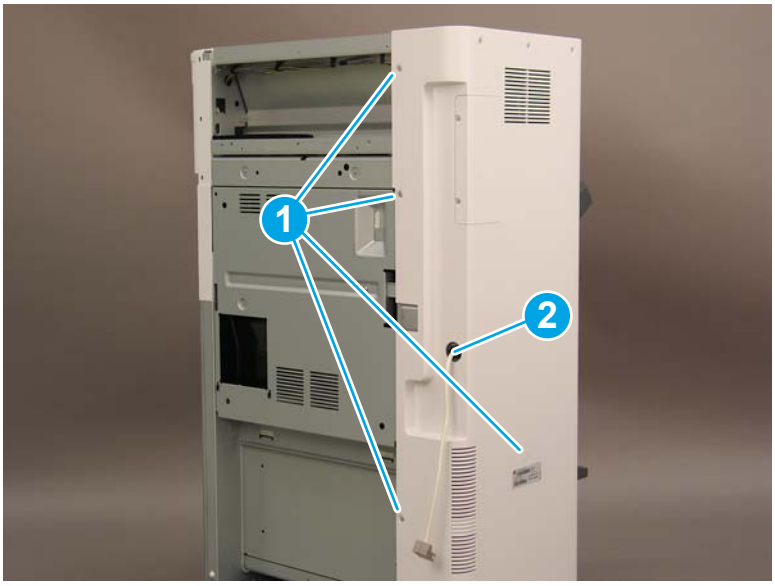


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-119 Remove four screws and the rear cover



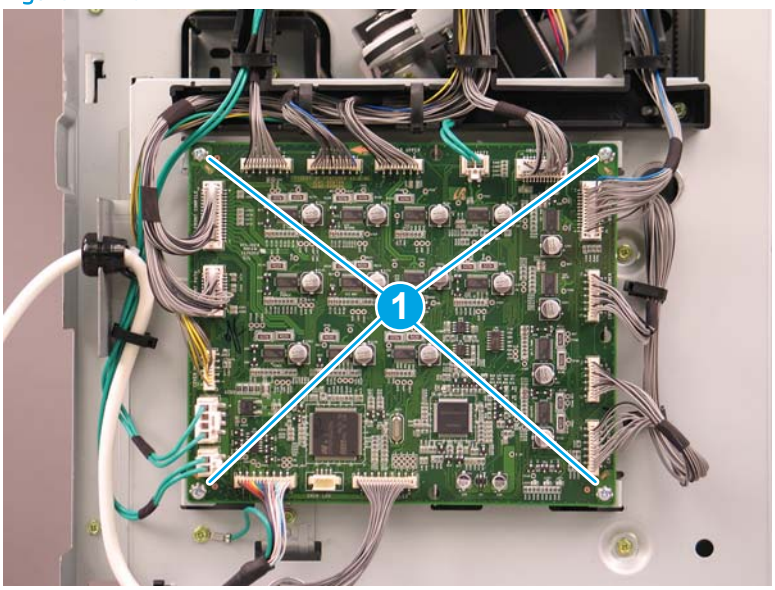
Step 4: Remove the controller PCA

▲ Disconnect all of the connectors, remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the controller PCA.

Reinstallation tip: Refer to the figure below for correct positioning and connection of the cables.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-120 Remove the controller PCA



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Stapler unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 6: Remove the staple unit
- Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the staple unit on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Staple unit part number	
SAM-JC90-01412A	Finisher Sub - Staple Unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Staple a document and verify that the stapler functions correctly.

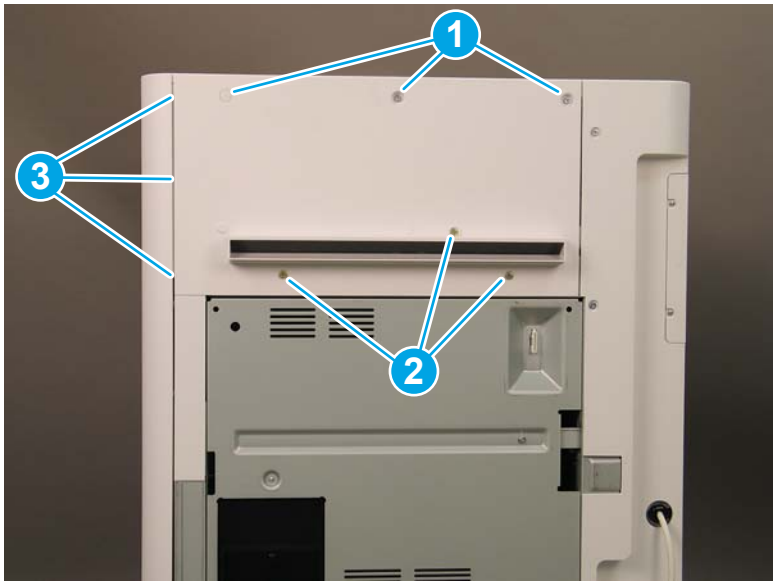
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

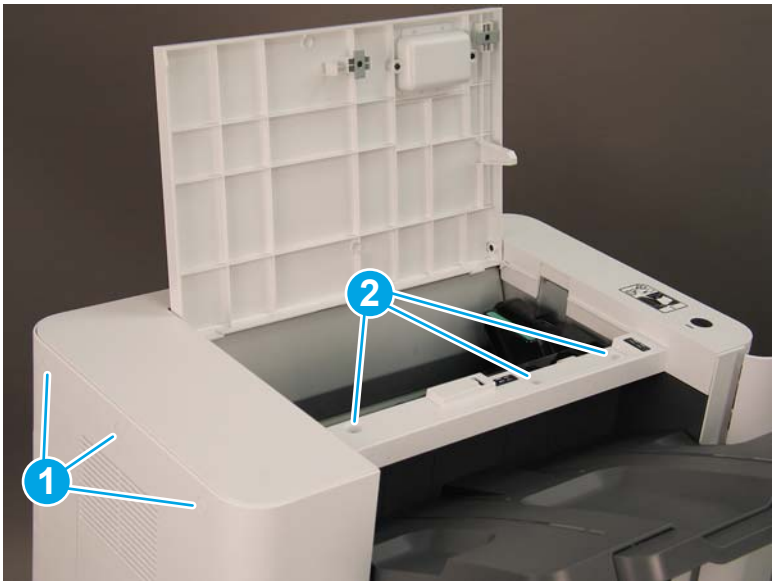
Figure 7-121 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

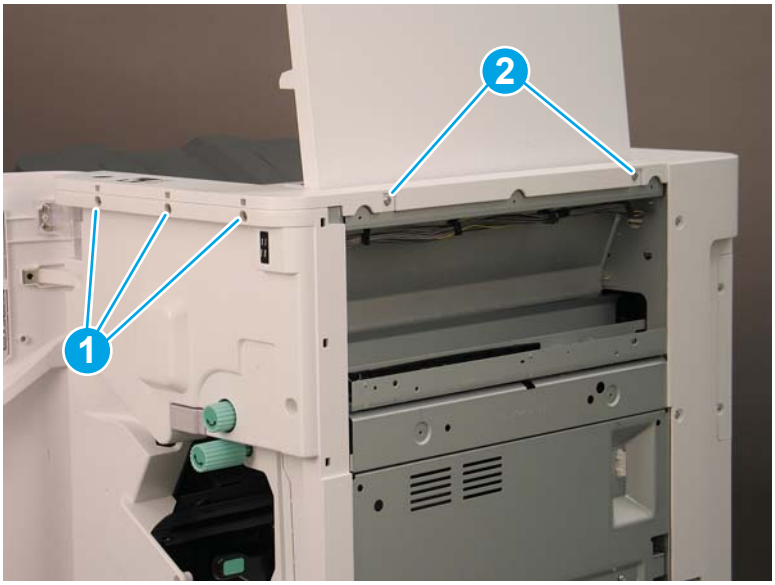
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-122 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

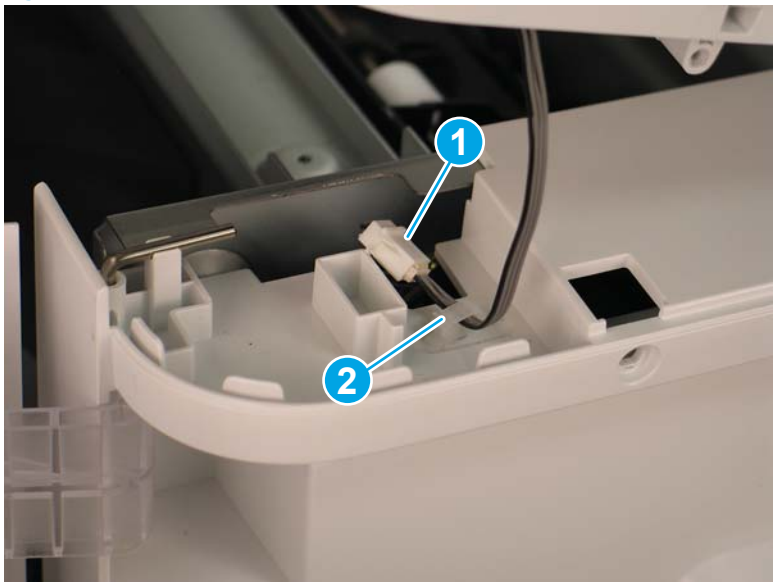
Figure 7-123 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-124 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

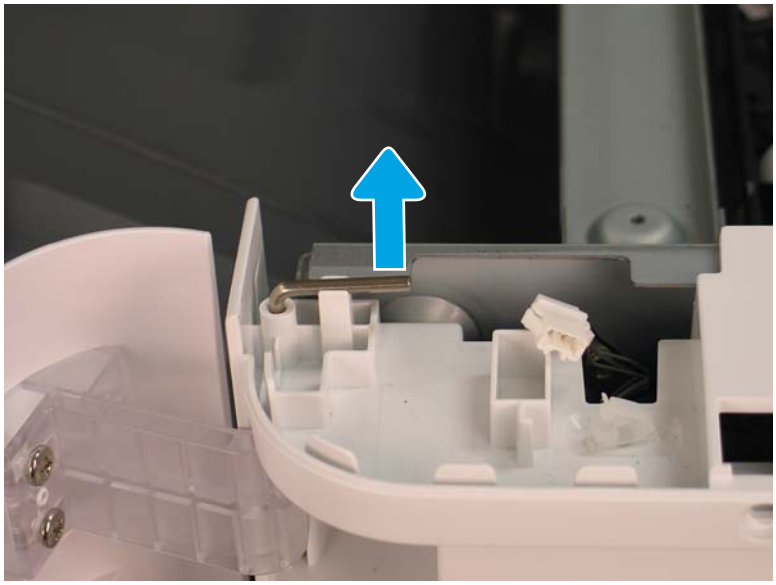


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

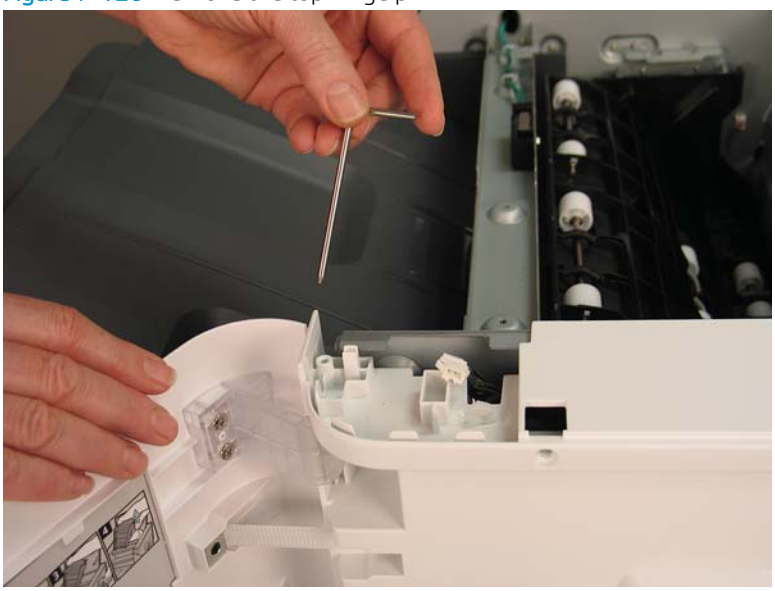
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 7-125 Lift the top hinge pin



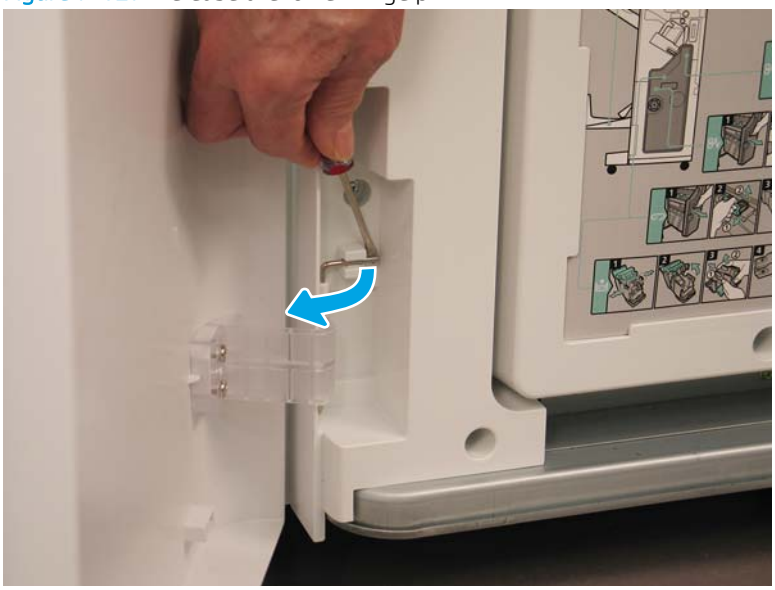
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 7-126 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 7-127 Release the lower hinge pin



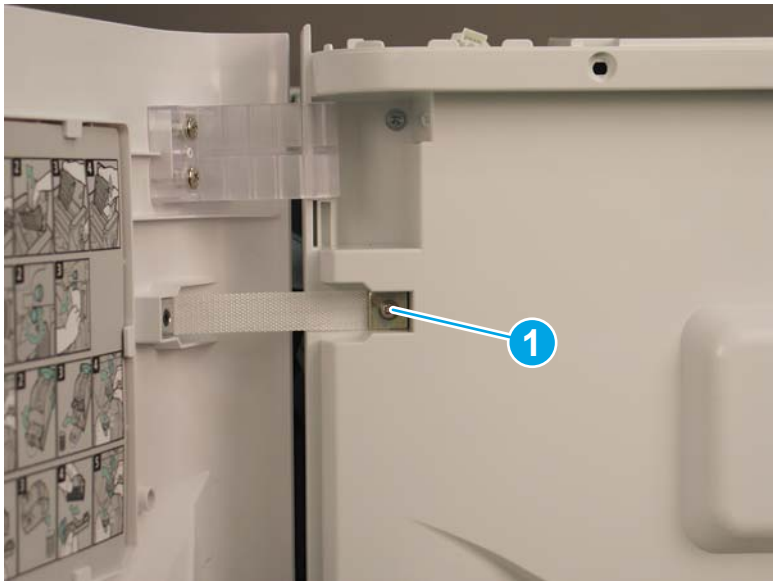
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 7-128 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

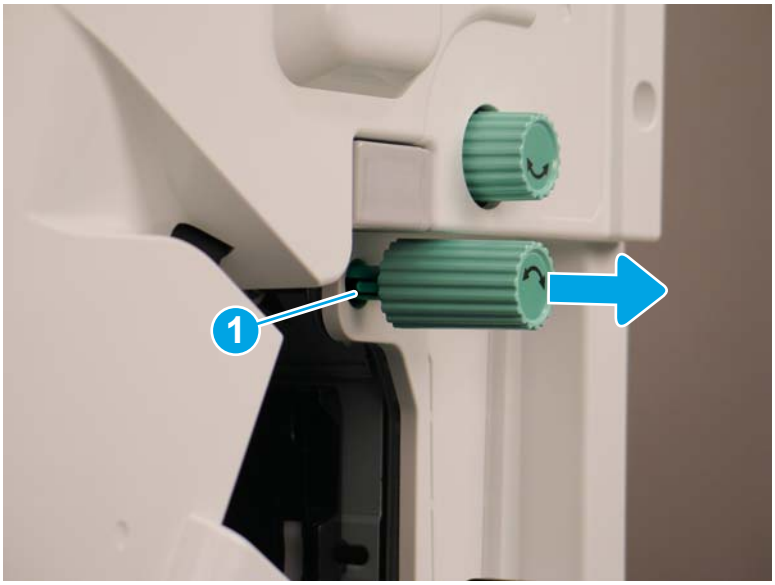
Figure 7-129 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

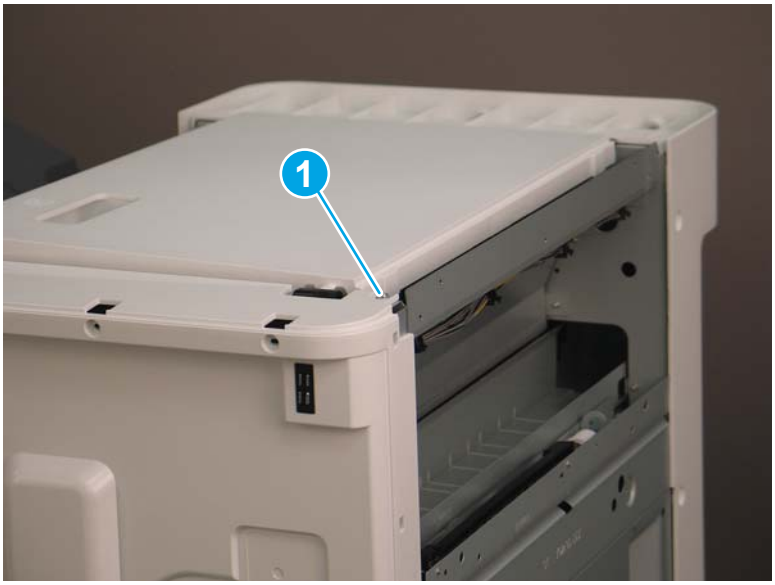
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 7-130 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

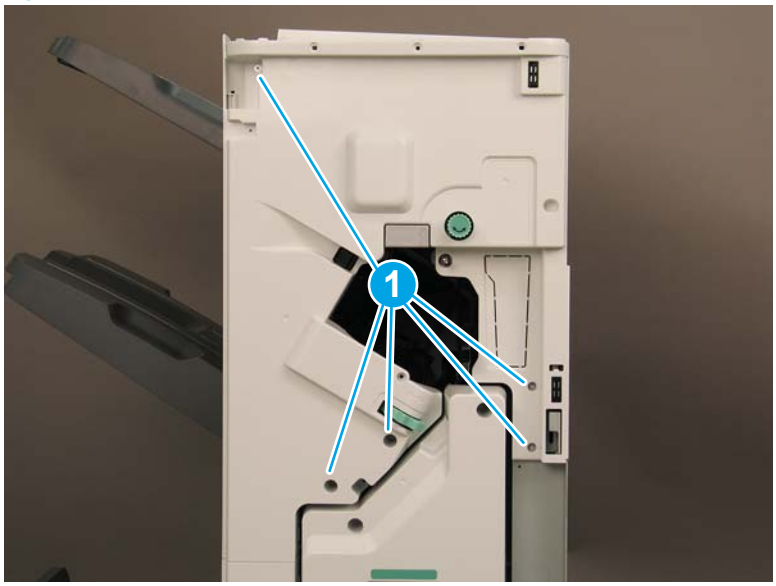
Figure 7-131 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

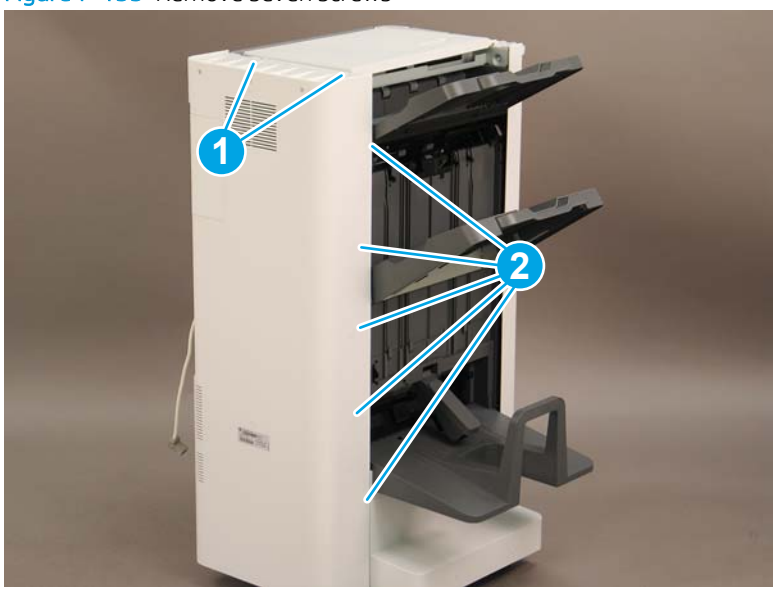
Figure 7-132 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-133 Remove seven screws

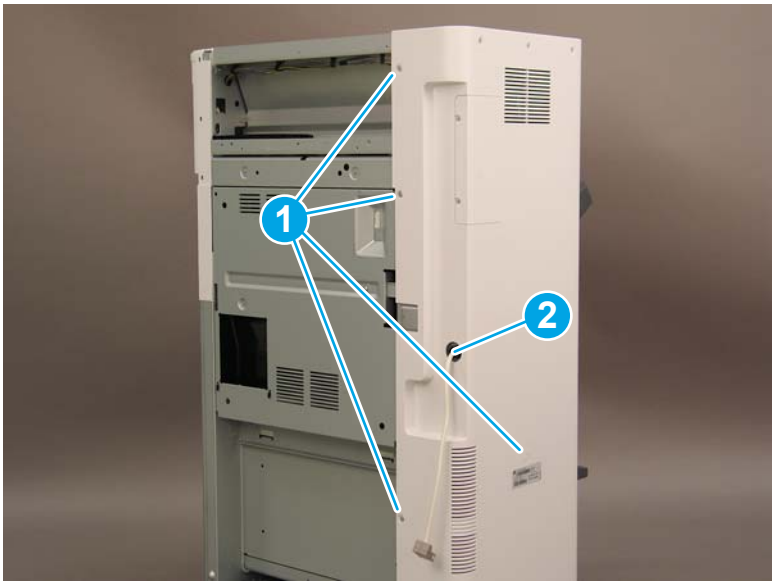


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

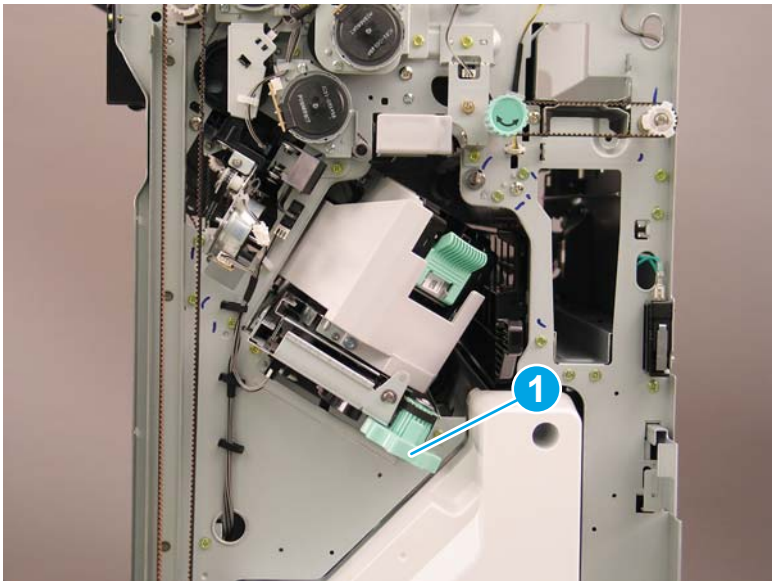
Figure 7-134 Remove four screws and the rear cover



Step 6: Remove the staple unit

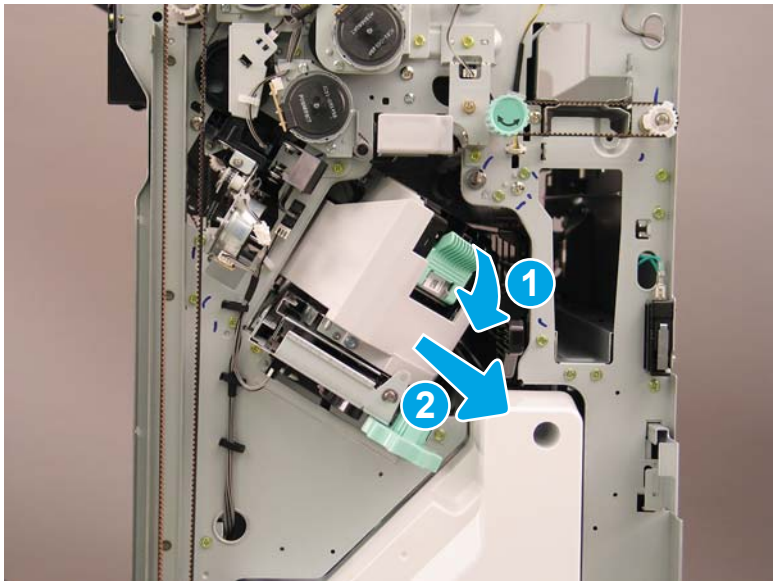
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the front until it stops.

Figure 7-135 Move the staple unit to the front



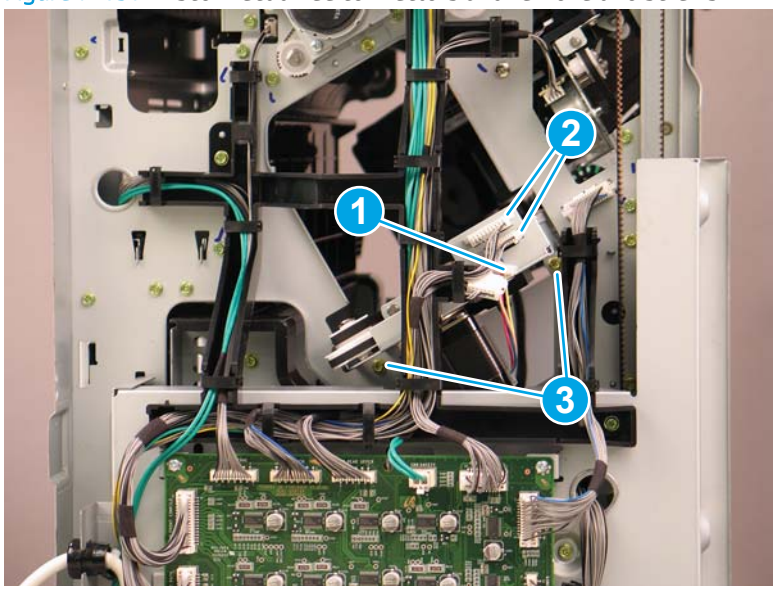
2. Lower the green latch (callout 1), and then slide the staple cartridge away from the finisher to remove it (callout 2).

Figure 7-136 Remove the staple cartridge



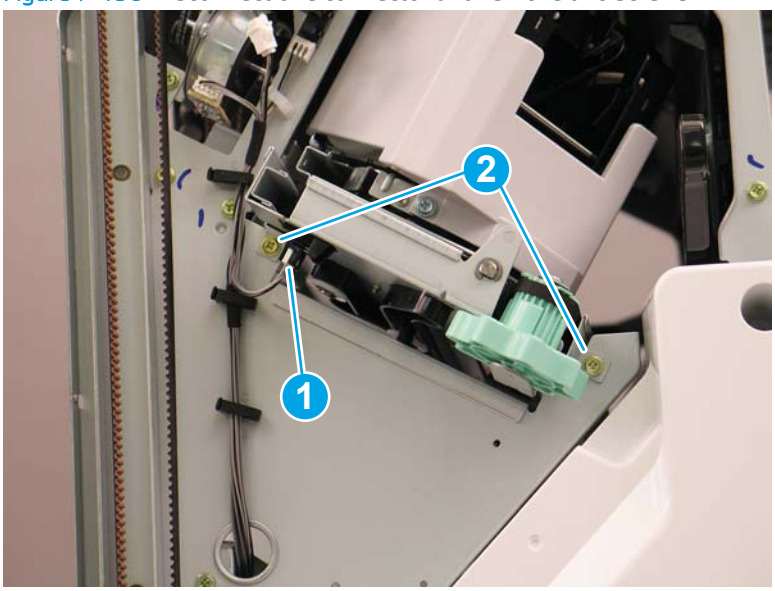
3. At the back of the finisher, release one retainer (callout 1), disconnect two connectors (callout 2), and then remove two screws (callout 3).

Figure 7-137 Disconnect three connectors and remove two screws



4. At the front of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

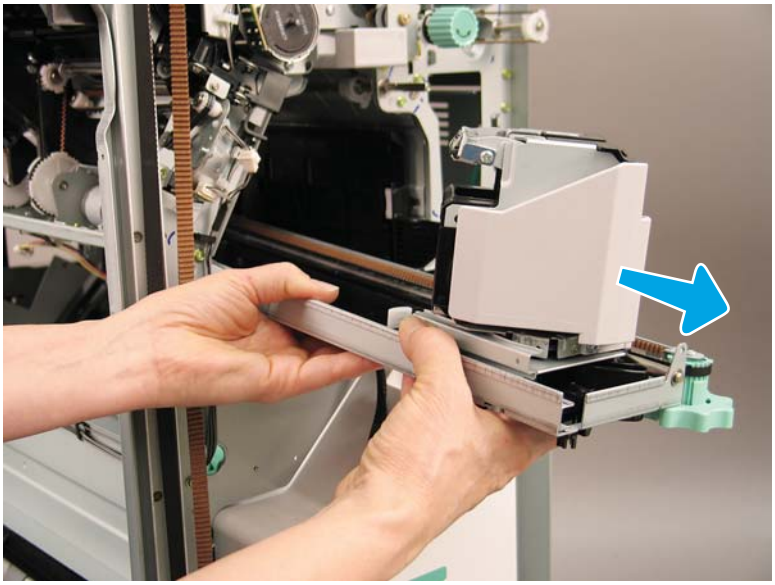
Figure 7-138 Disconnect one connector and remove two screws



5. Lift up, and then slide the staple unit to the front of the finisher to remove it.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-139 Remove the staple unit



Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Dummy feed guide

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the dummy feed guide (finisher)
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the dummy feed guide on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Dummy feed guide part number	
SAM-JC93-01161A	Assy-Guide Dummy-Feed

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

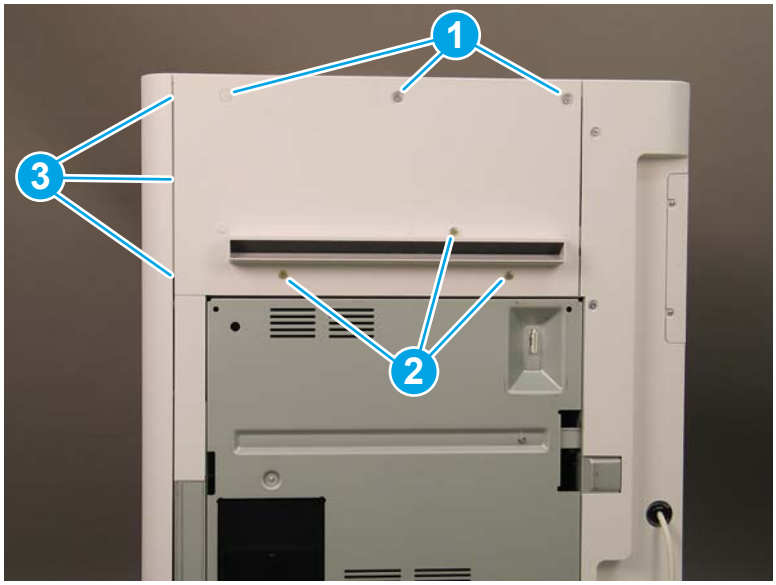
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

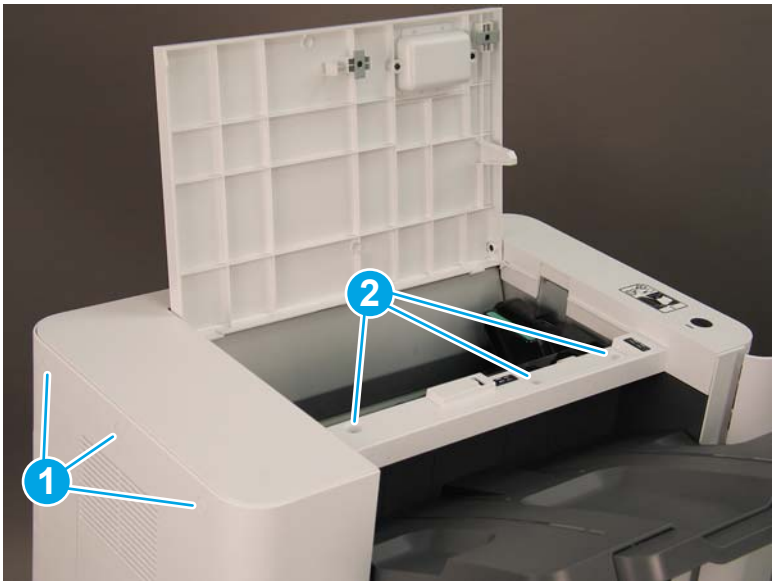
Figure 7-140 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

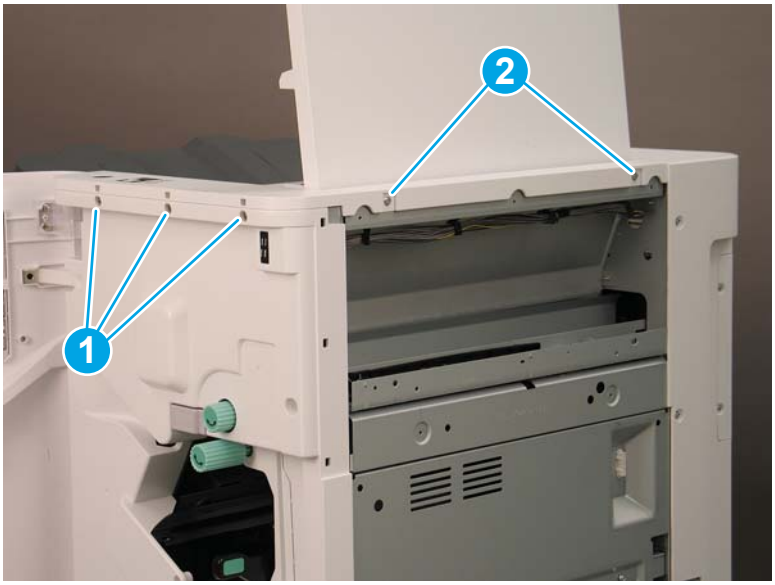
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-141 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

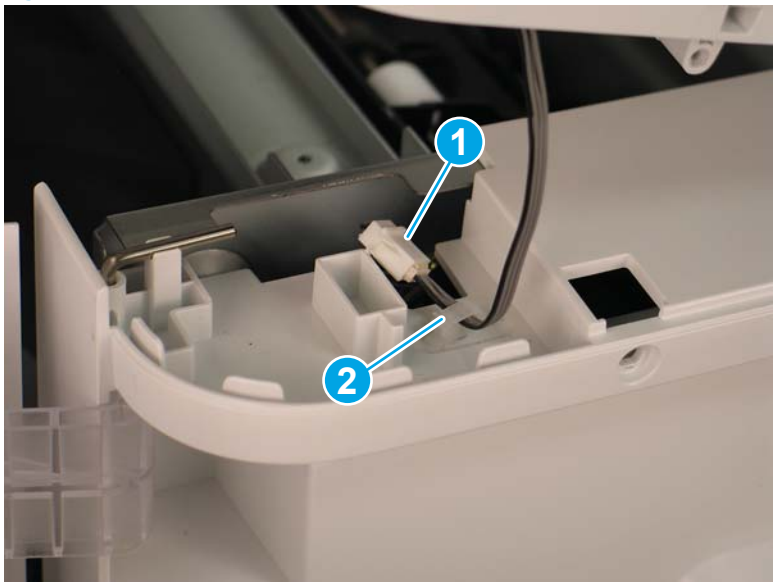
Figure 7-142 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-143 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

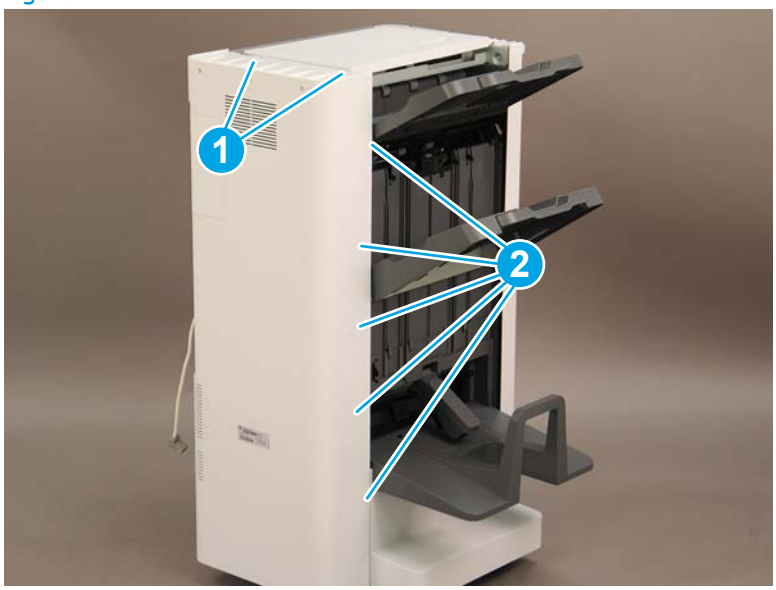


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-144 Remove seven screws

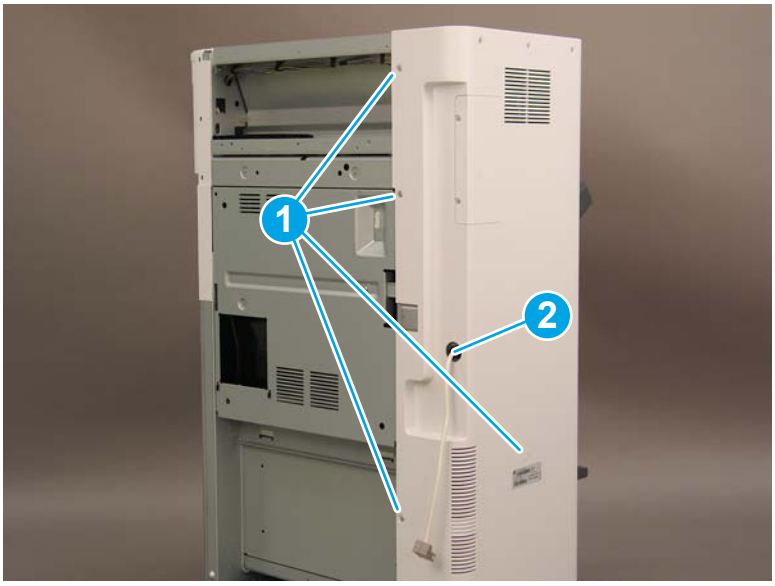


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-145 Remove four screws and the rear cover

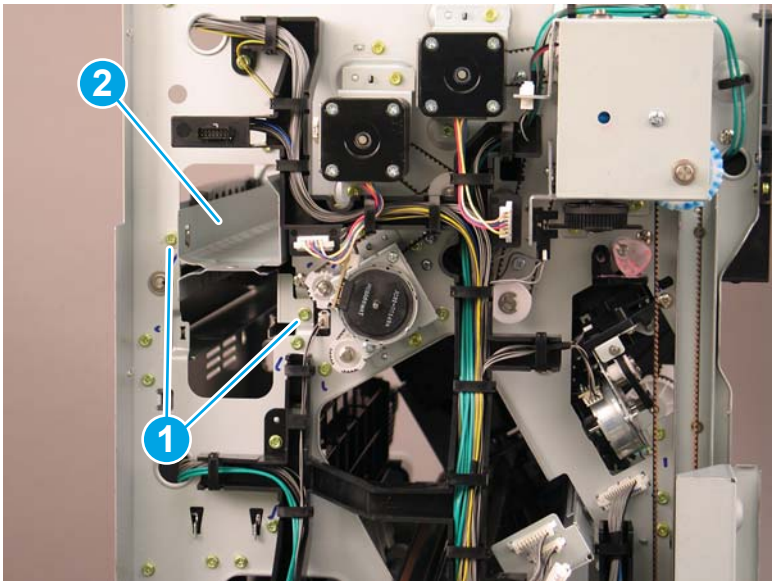


Step 4: Remove the dummy feed guide (finisher)

▲ At the rear of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the dummy feed guide (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-146 Remove two screws and the feed guide



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Top jam access cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 6: Remove the feed exit motor
- Step 7: Remove the top jam access cover
- Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the top jam access cover for the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Top jam access cover part number	
SAM-JC90-01455A	Finisher Sub - Top Jam

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

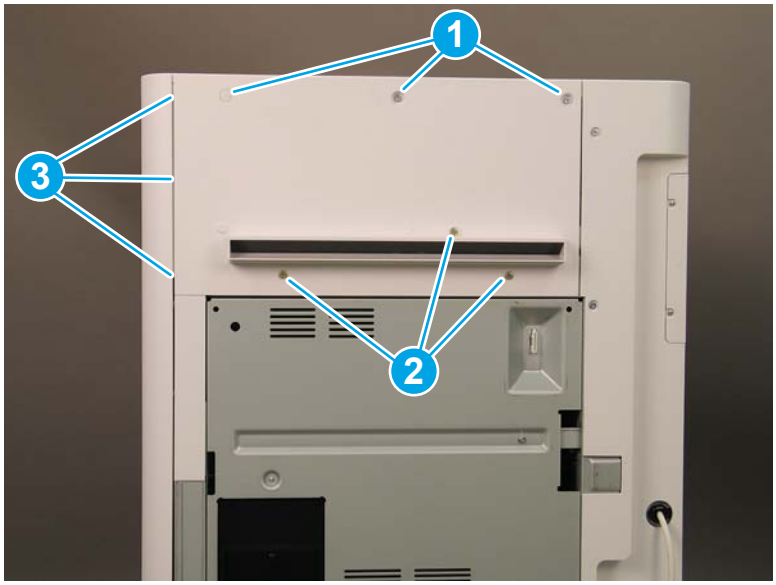
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

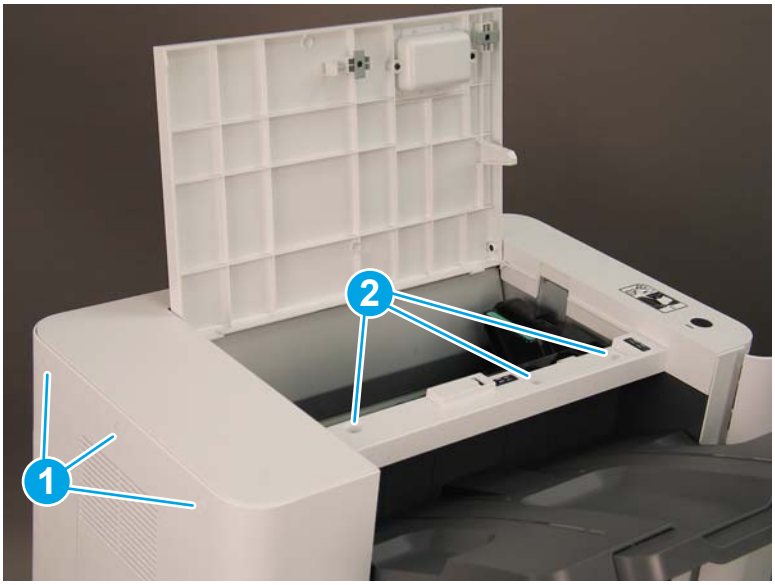
Figure 7-147 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

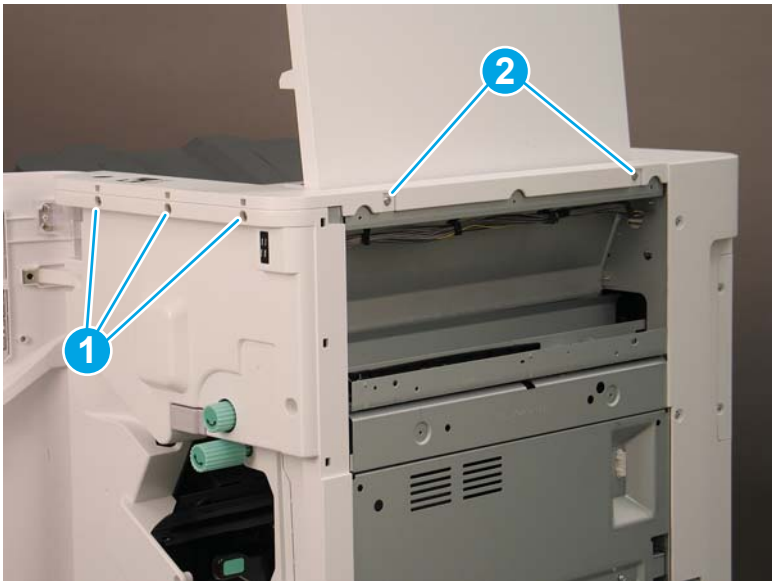
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-148 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

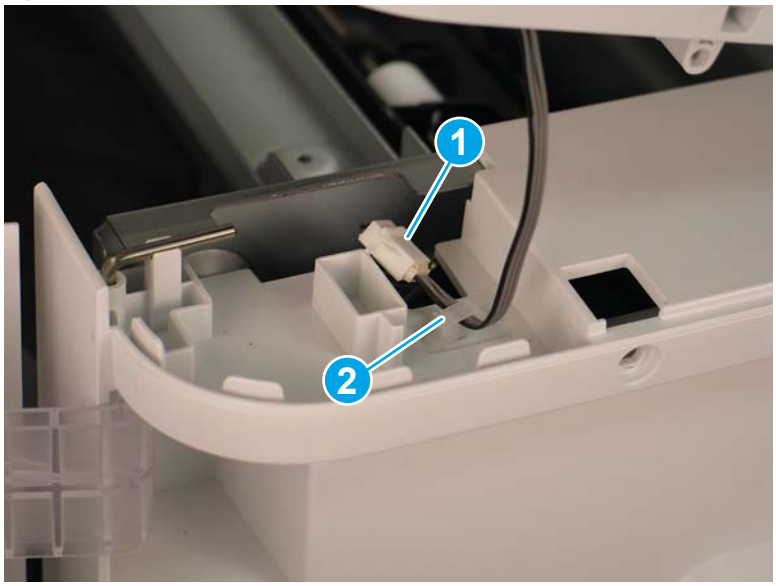
Figure 7-149 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-150 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

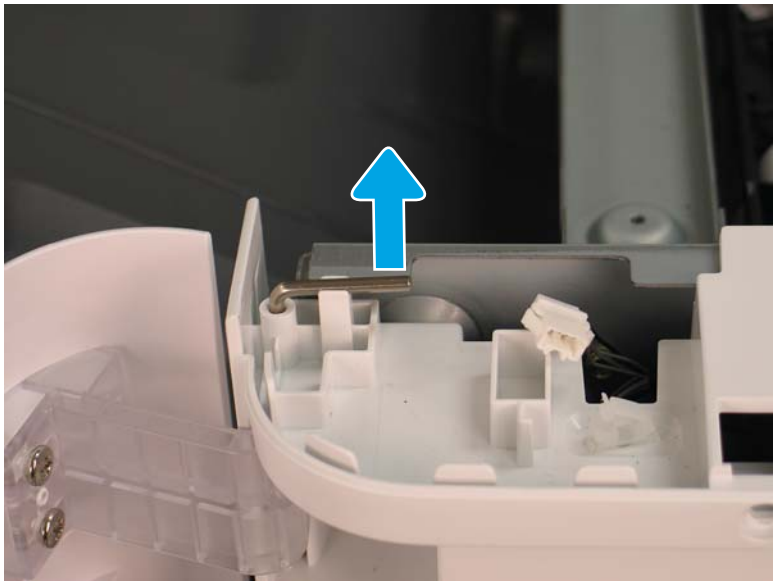


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

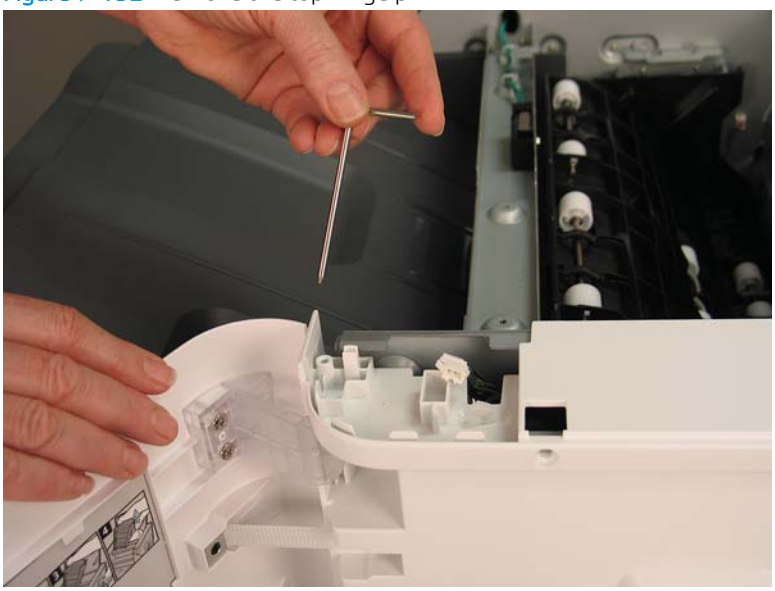
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 7-151 Lift the top hinge pin



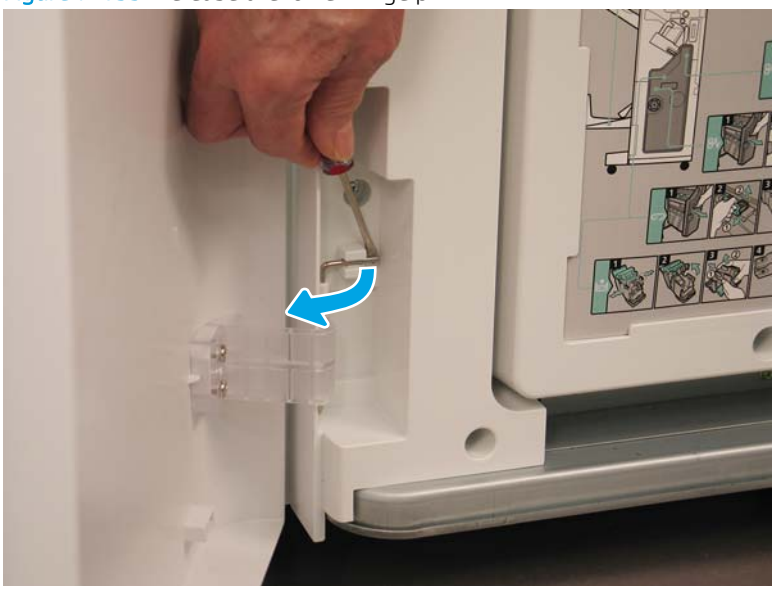
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 7-152 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 7-153 Release the lower hinge pin



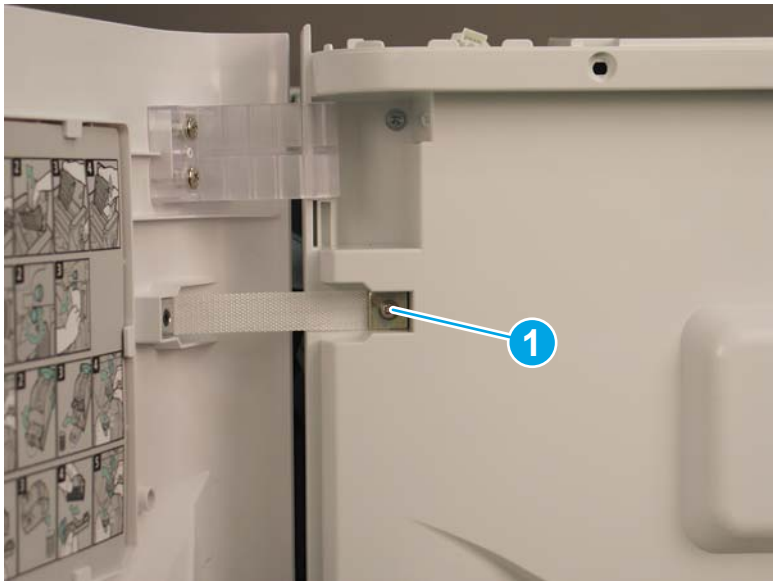
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 7-154 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

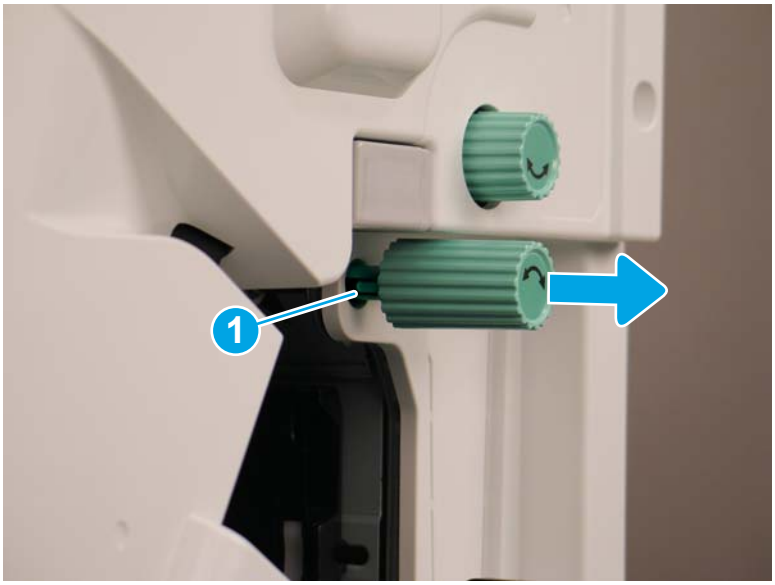
Figure 7-155 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

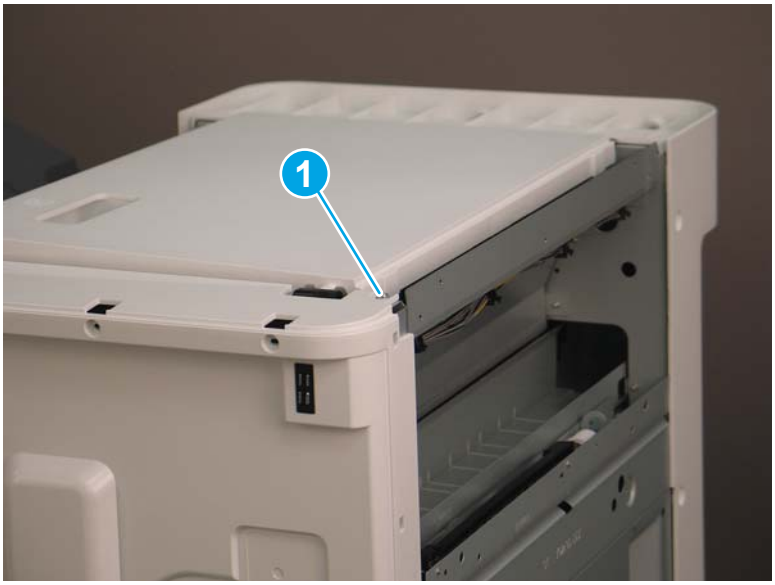
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 7-156 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

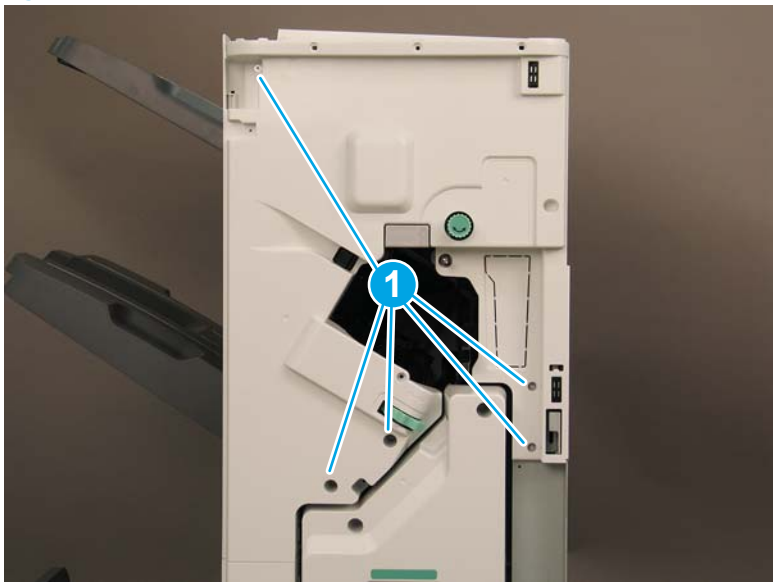
Figure 7-157 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

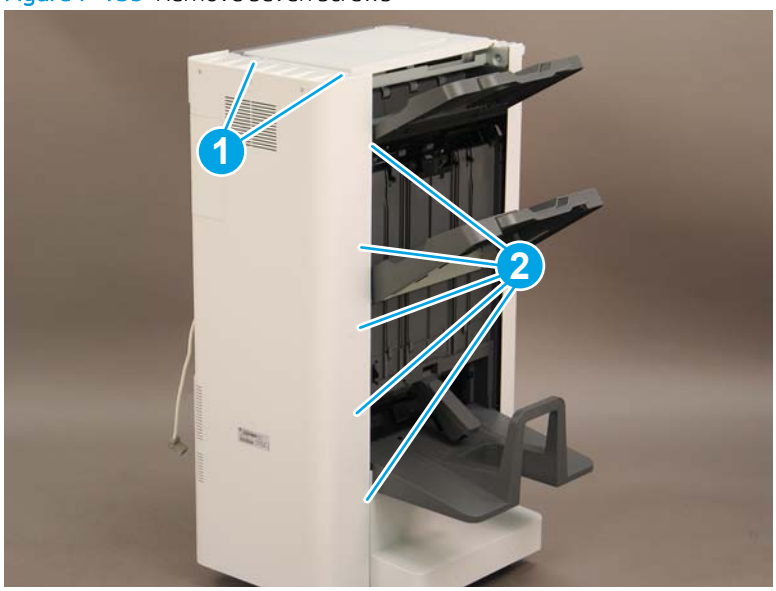
Figure 7-158 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-159 Remove seven screws

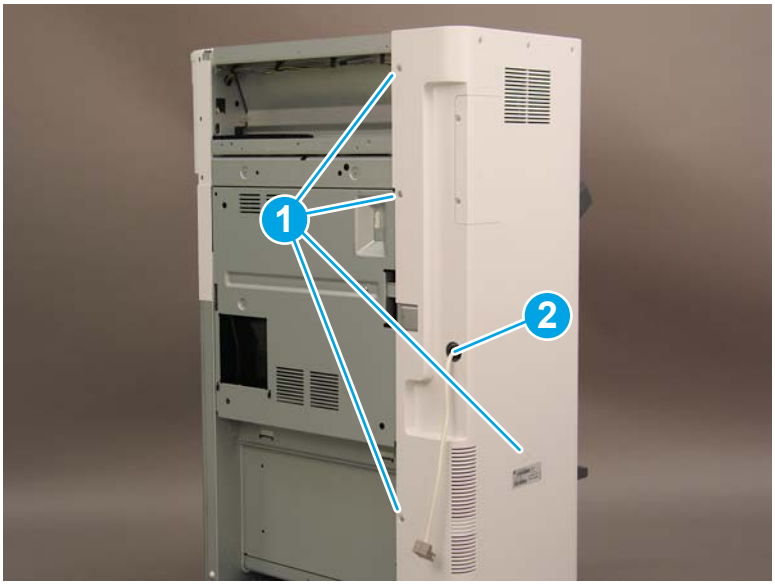


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-160 Remove four screws and the rear cover



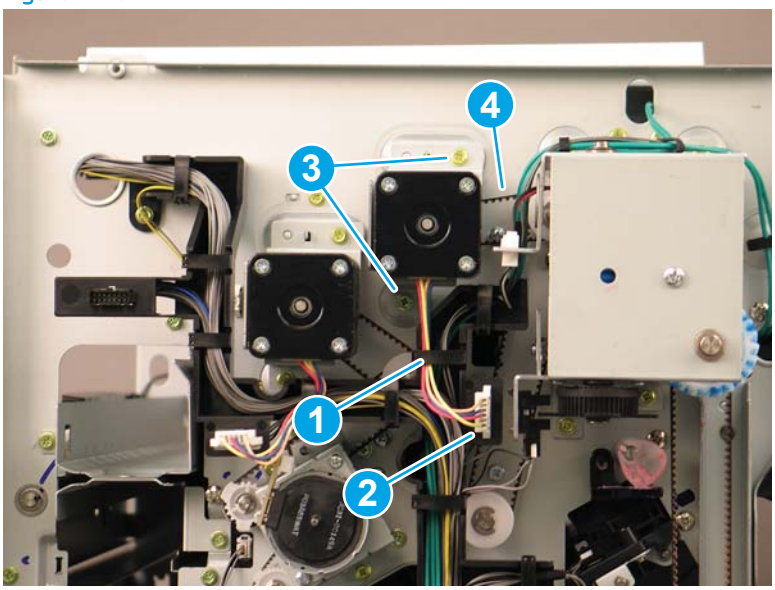
Step 6: Remove the feed exit motor

▲ Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2). Remove two screws (callout 3), and then remove the feed exit motor.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that the belt (callout 4) is positioned on the gear behind the motor when reinstalling the motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

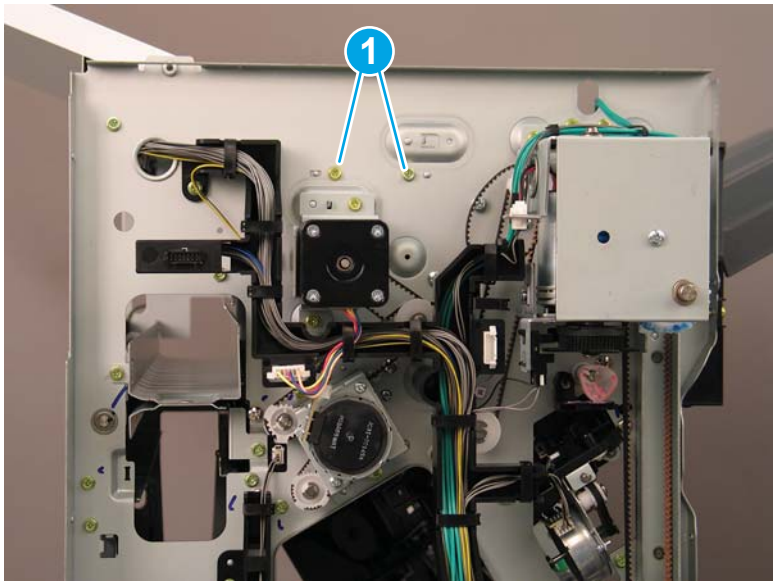
Figure 7-161 Remove the feed exit motor



Step 7: Remove the top jam access cover

1. At the rear of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-162 Remove two screws



2. Remove the top jam access cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-163 Remove the top jam access cover

Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Top lower feed assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 6: Remove the feed exit motor (finisher)
- Step 7: Remove the top jam access cover
- Step 8: Remove the top lower feed assembly (finisher)
- Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the top lower feed assembly for the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Top lower feed assembly part number	
SAM-JC90-01454A	Finisher Sub-Top Lower

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

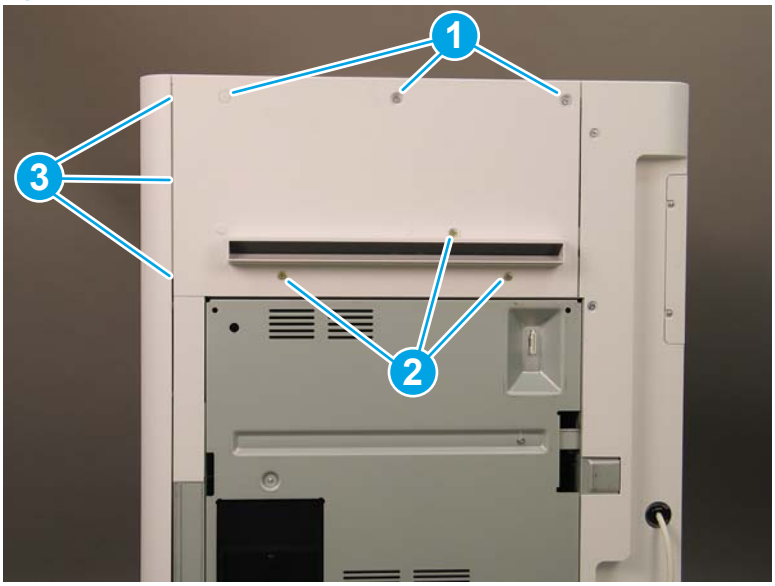
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

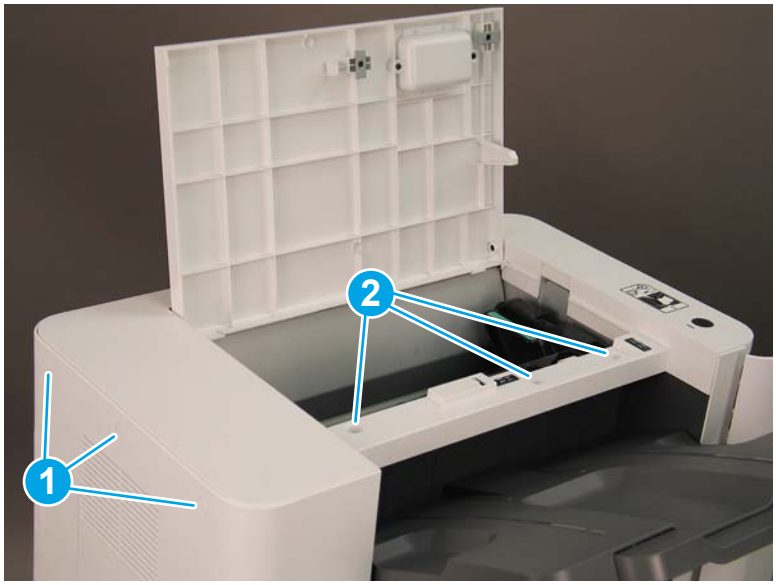
Figure 7-164 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

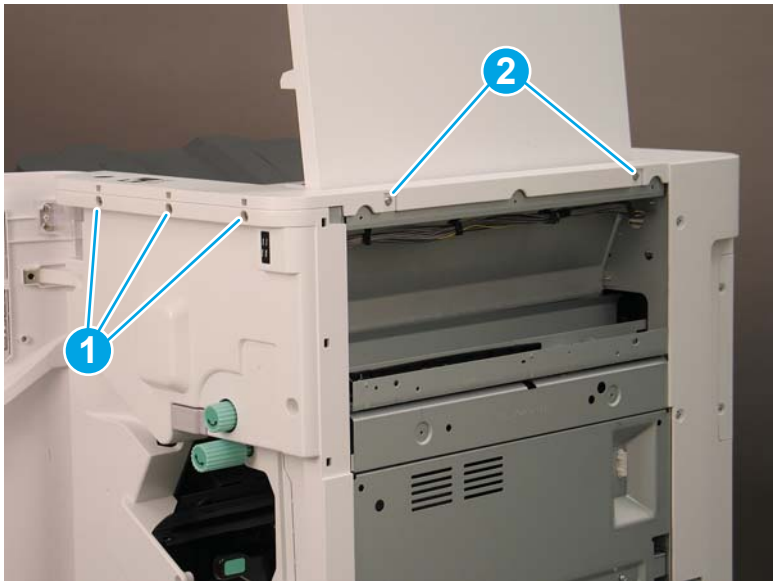
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-165 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

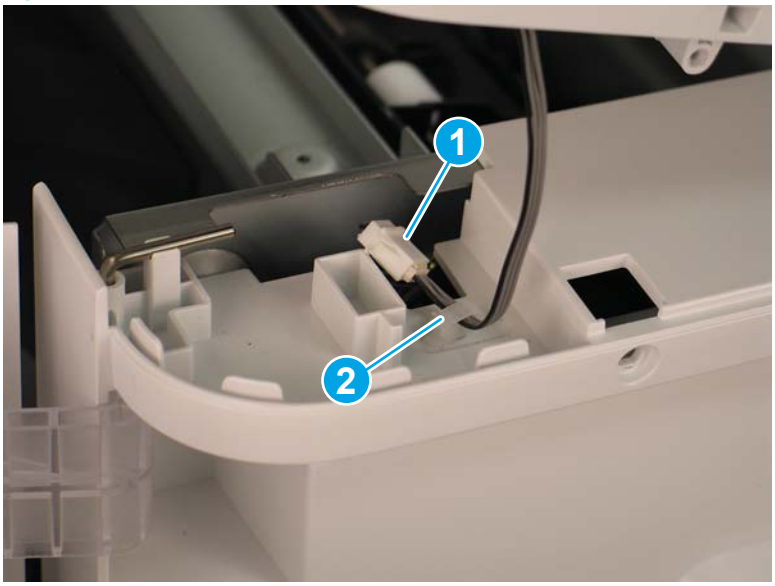
Figure 7-166 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-167 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

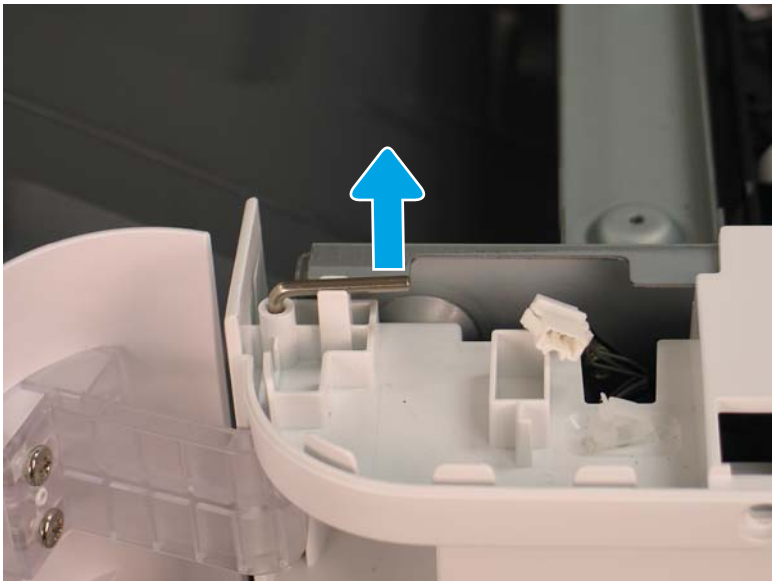


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

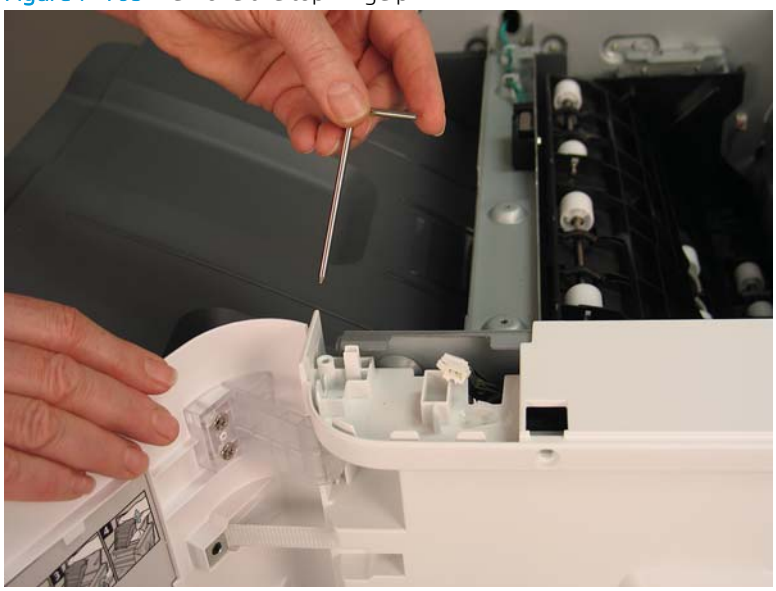
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 7-168 Lift the top hinge pin



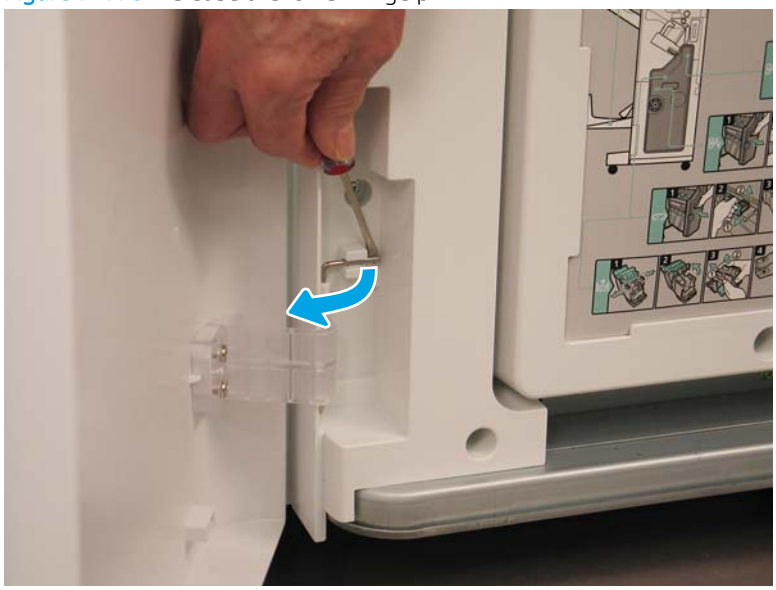
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 7-169 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 7-170 Release the lower hinge pin



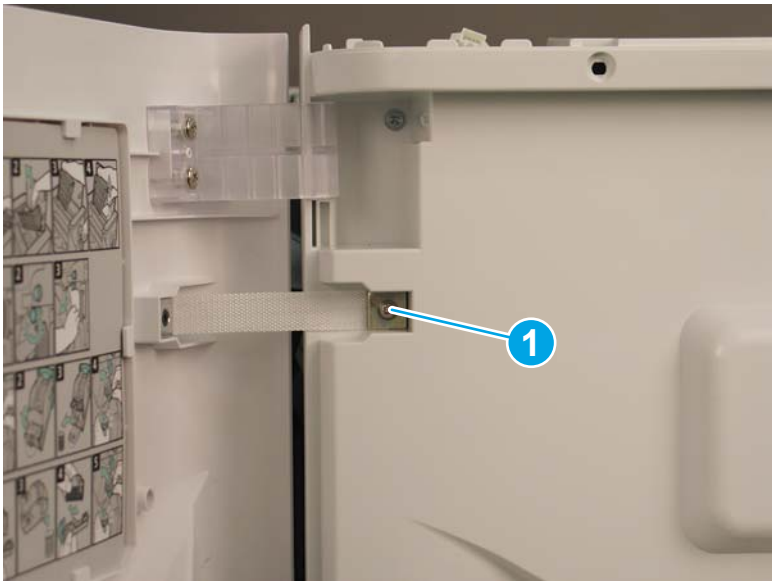
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 7-171 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

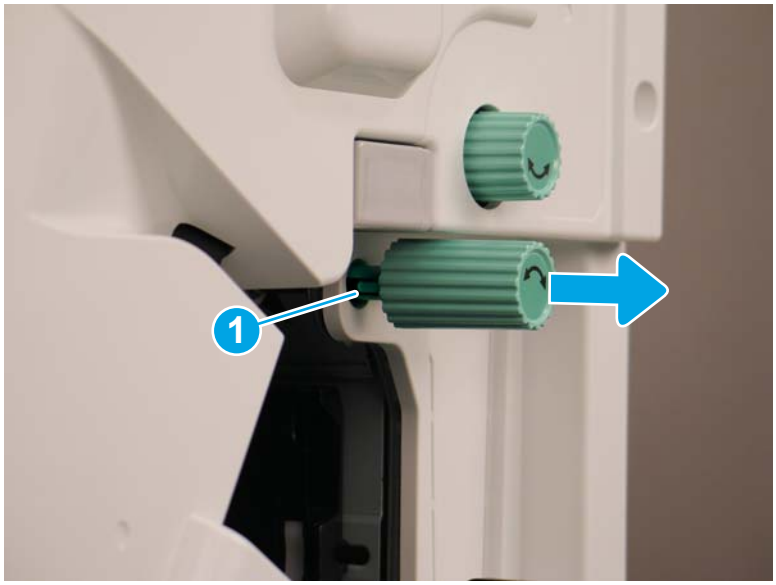
Figure 7-172 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

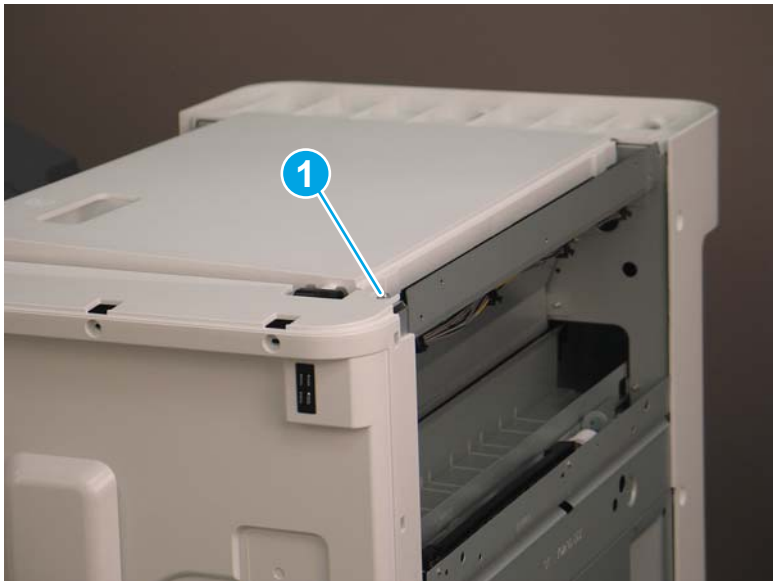
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 7-173 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

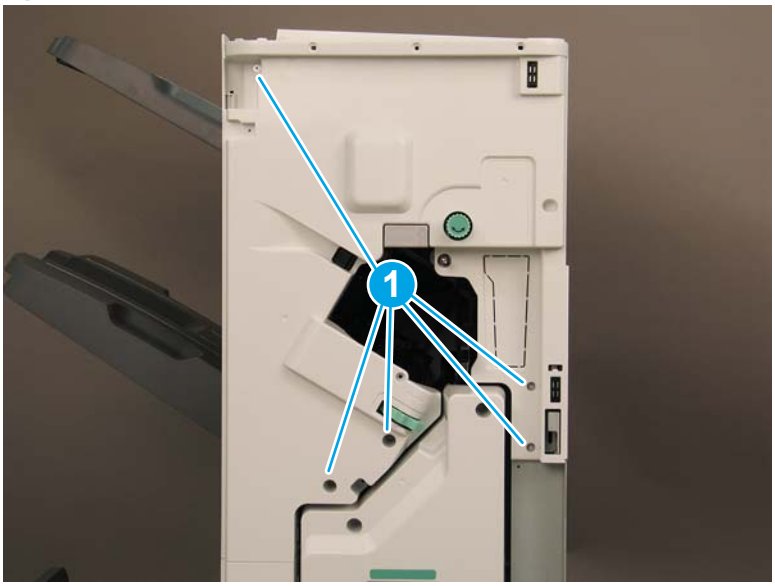
Figure 7-174 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

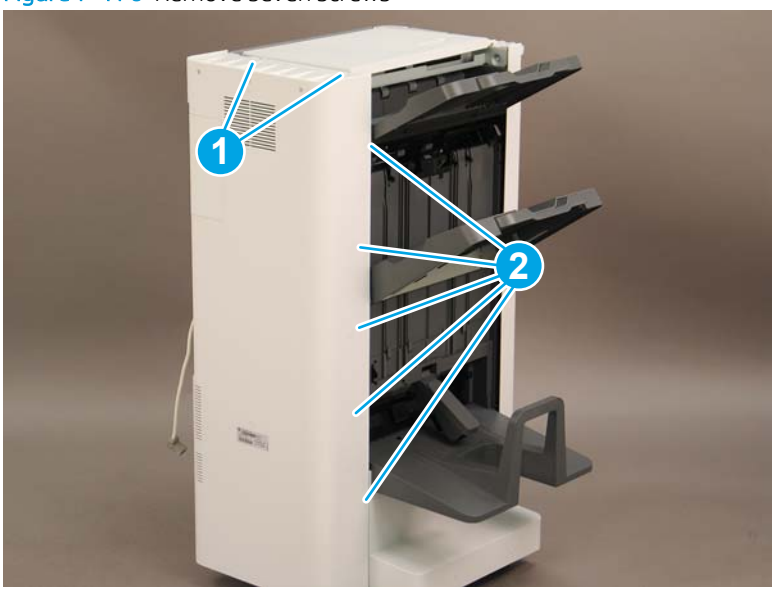
Figure 7-175 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-176 Remove seven screws

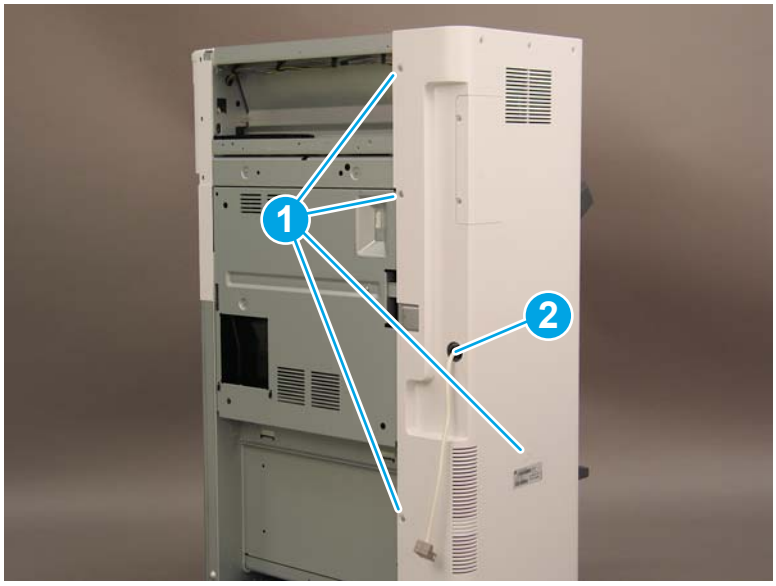


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-177 Remove four screws and the rear cover



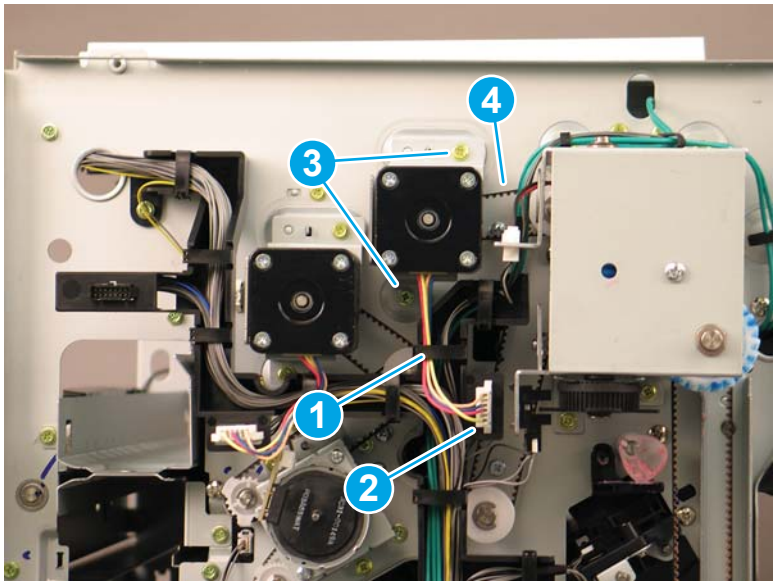
Step 6: Remove the feed exit motor (finisher)

▲ Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2). Remove two screws (callout 3), and then remove the feed exit motor.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that the belt (callout 4) is positioned on the gear behind the motor when reinstalling the motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

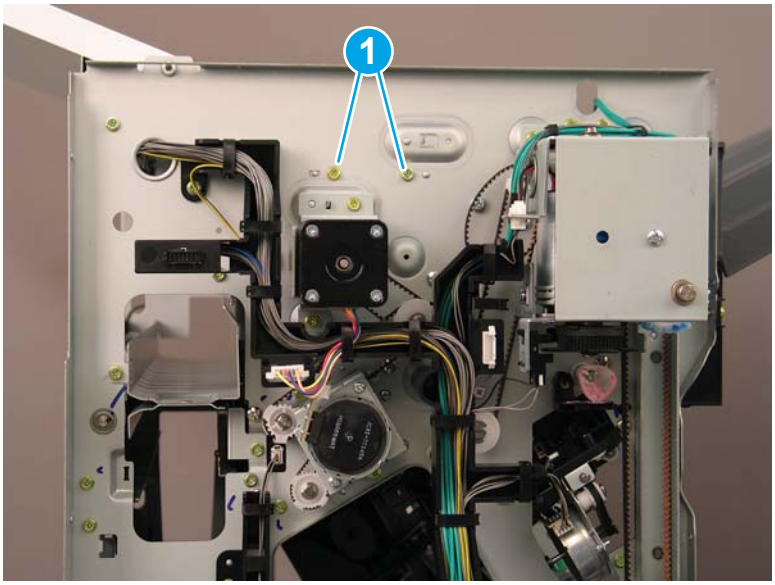
Figure 7-178 Remove the feed exit motor



Step 7: Remove the top jam access cover

1. At the rear of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-179 Remove two screws



2. Remove the top jam access cover.

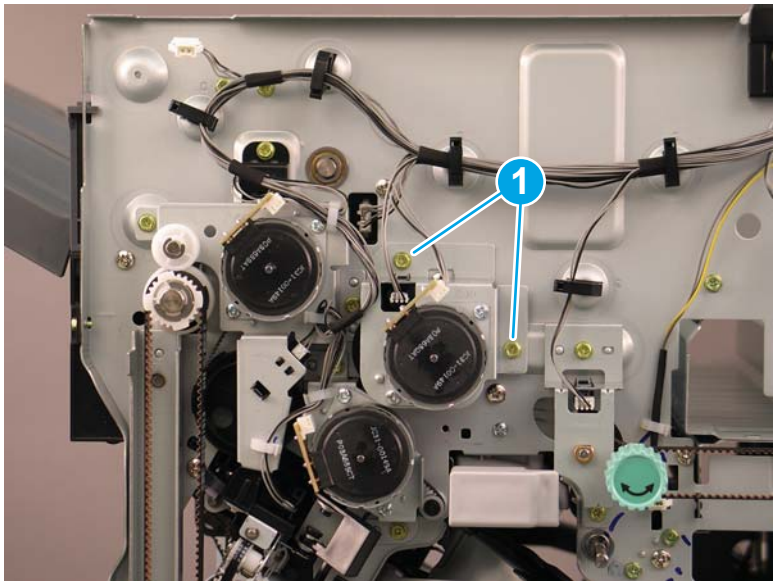
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-180 Remove the top jam access cover

Step 8: Remove the top lower feed assembly (finisher)

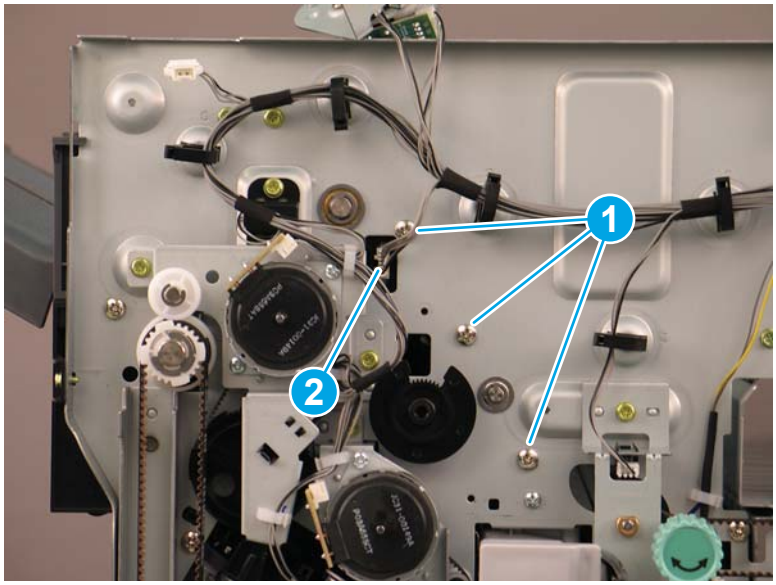
1. At the front of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1) on the buffer motor housing, and then tilt the motor aside to access the screws under it.

Figure 7-181 Remove two screws



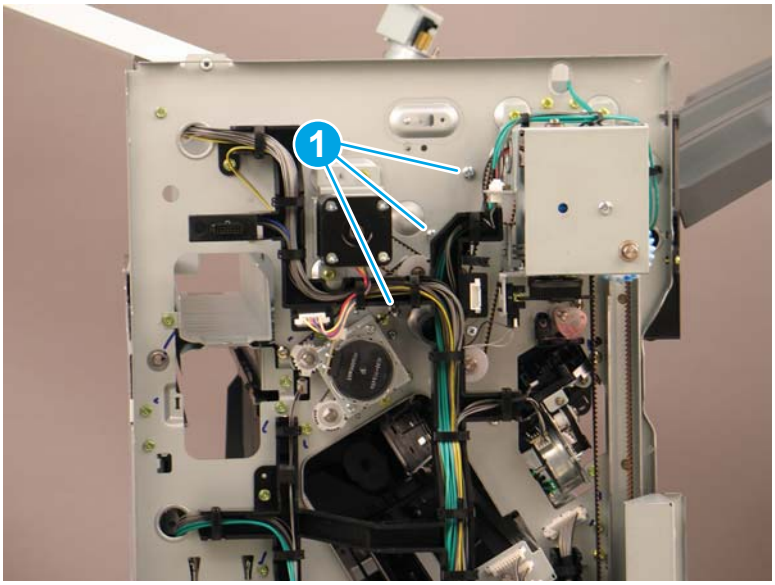
2. At the front of the finisher, remove three self-tapping screws (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 7-182 Remove three screws and disconnect one connector



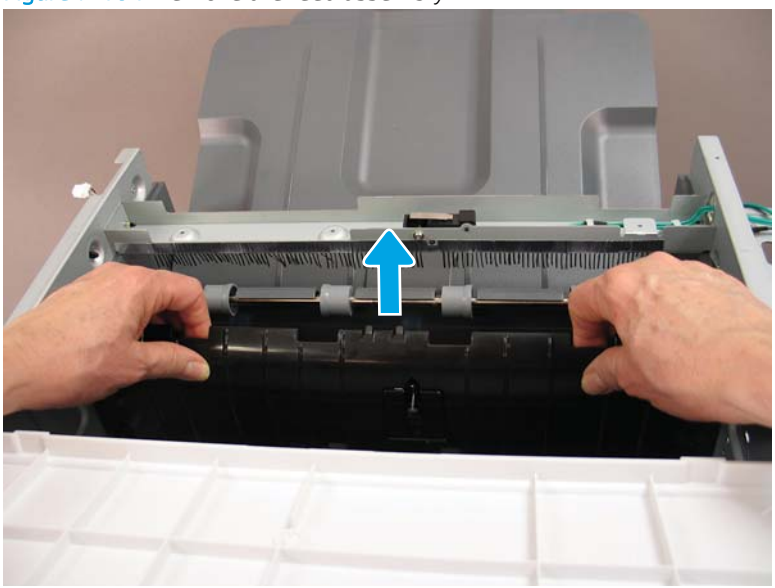
3. At the rear of the finisher, remove three machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-183 Remove three screws



4. At the top of the finisher, lift the feed assembly straight up to disengage two tabs on the bottom and remove the assembly.

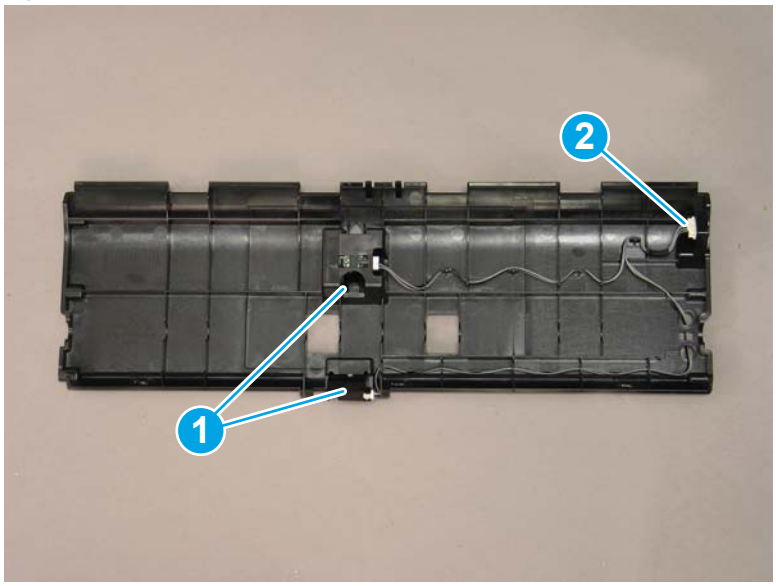
Figure 7-184 Remove the feed assembly



5. If you are replacing the top lower feed assembly, locate two sensors (callout 1) and one connector (callout 2) on the back of the assembly. Remove these items and transfer them to the replacement part.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-185 Locate sensors and connector



Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Ejector unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)
- Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)
- Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)
- Step 11: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the ejector unit on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Ejector unit part number	
SAM-JC90-01409A	Finisher Sub - Ejector Unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

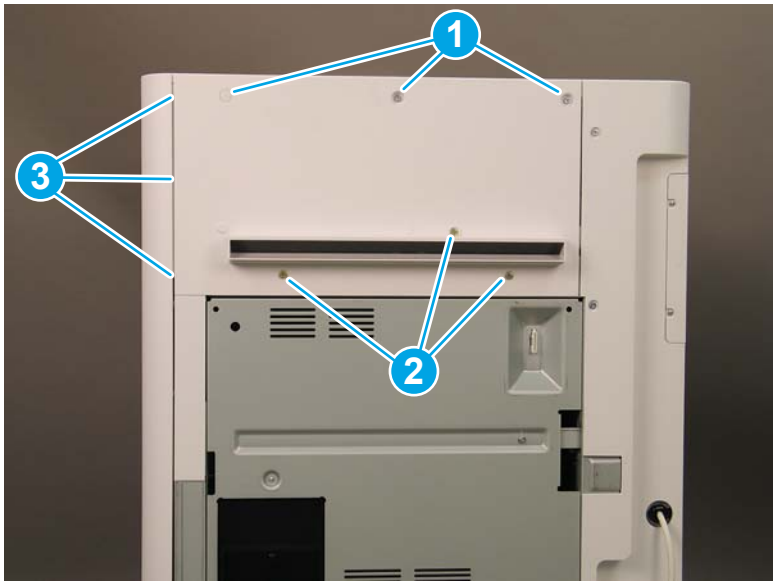
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

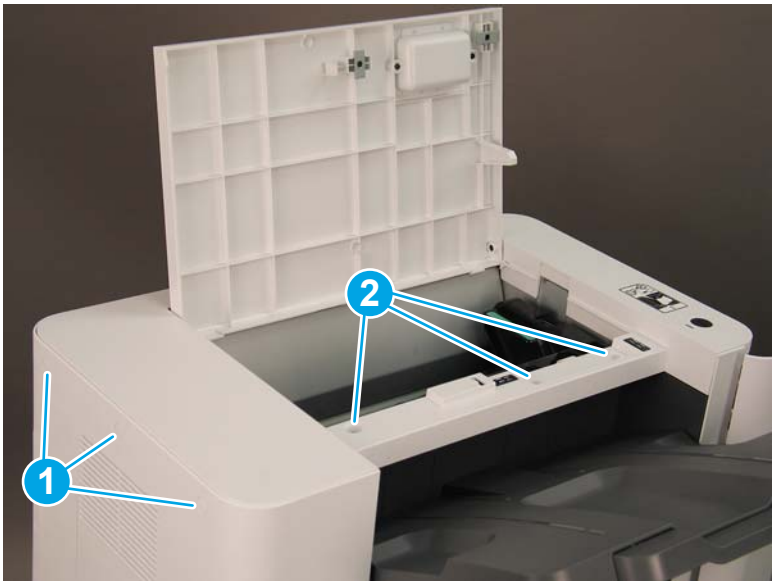
Figure 7-186 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

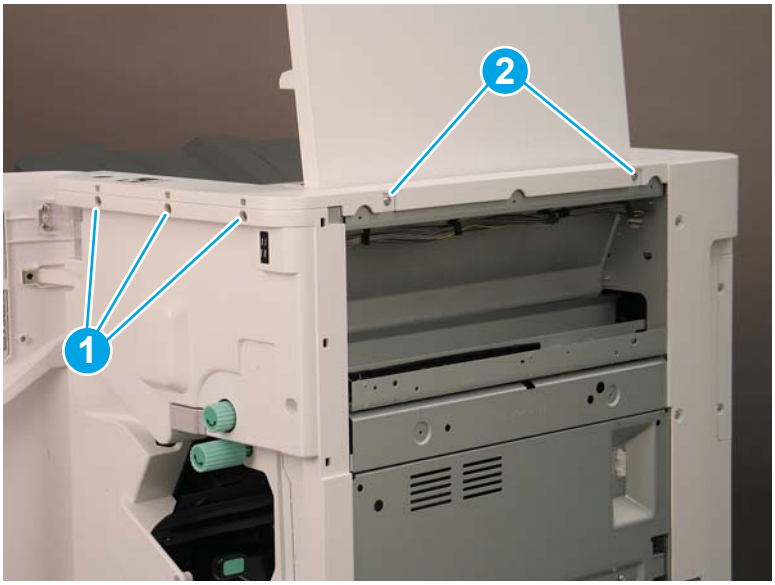
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-187 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

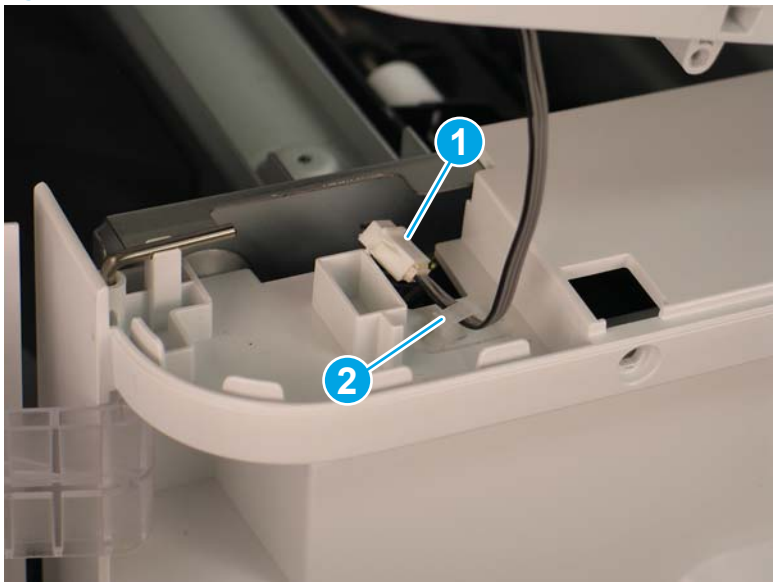
Figure 7-188 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-189 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

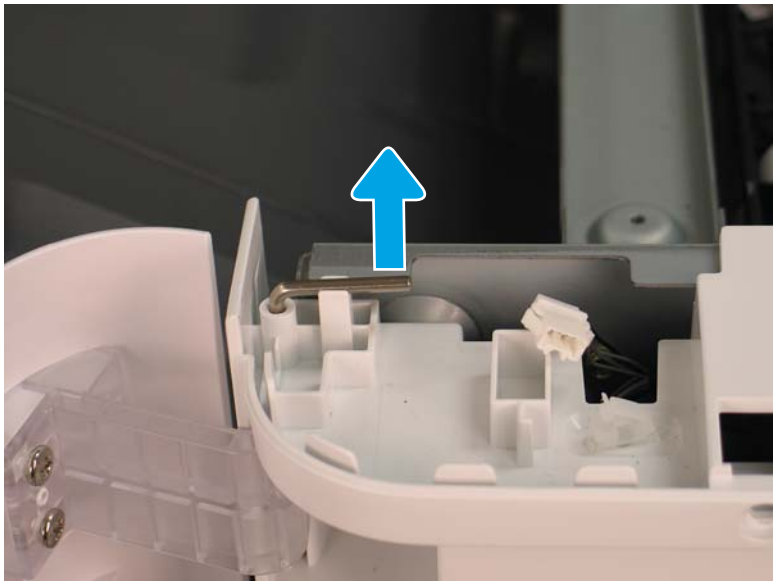


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

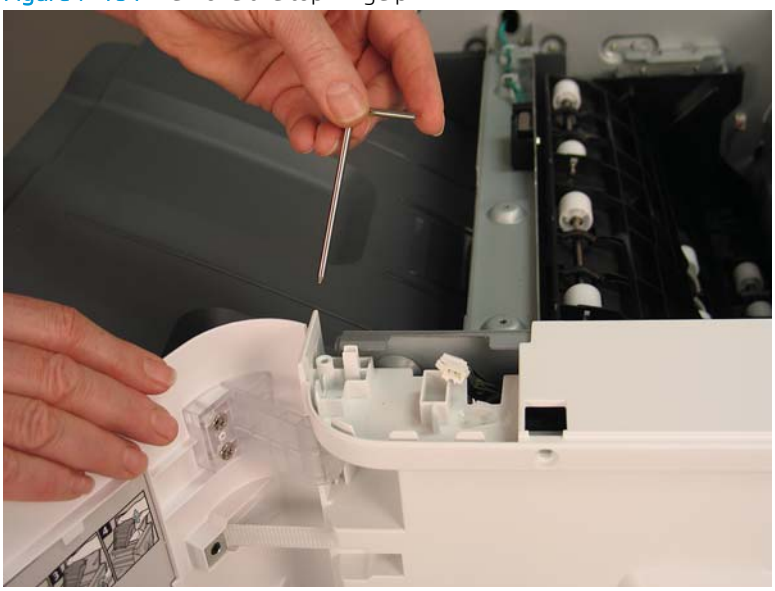
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 7-190 Lift the top hinge pin



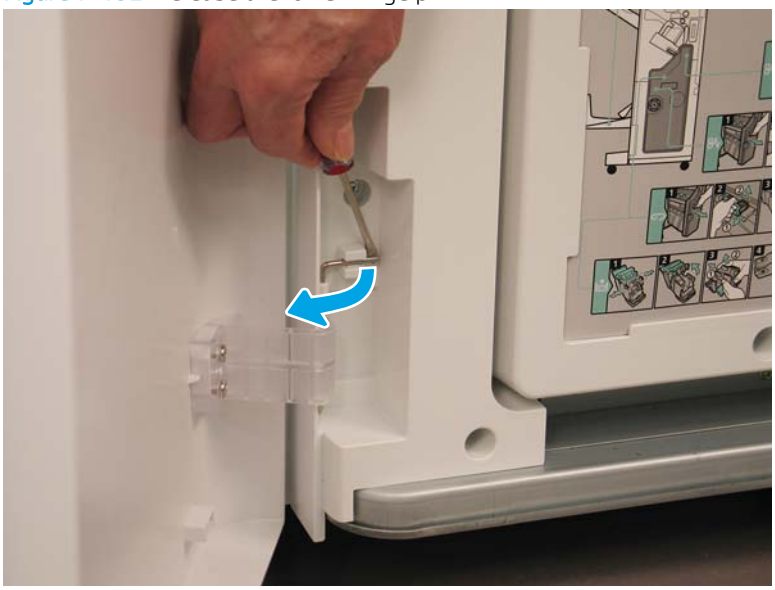
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 7-191 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 7-192 Release the lower hinge pin



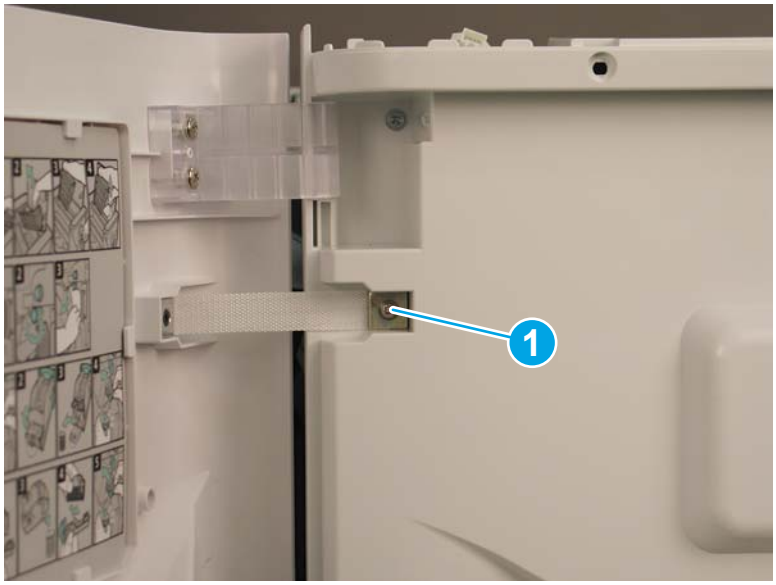
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 7-193 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

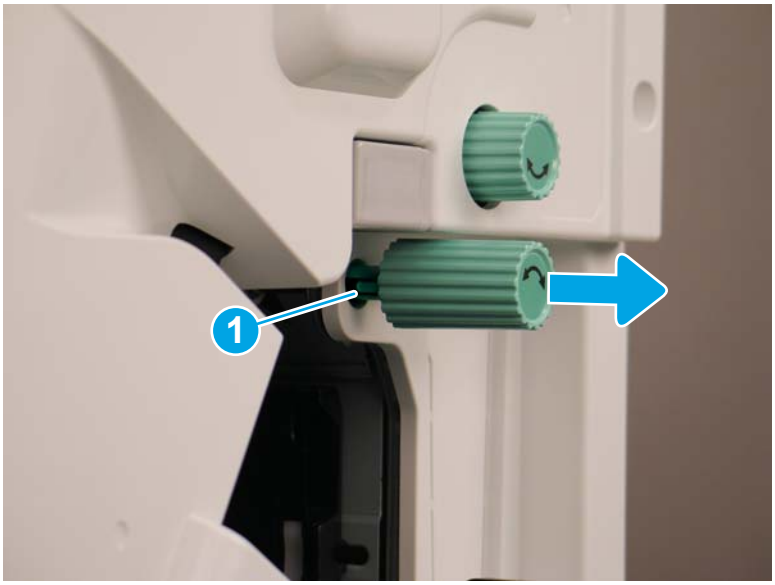
Figure 7-194 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

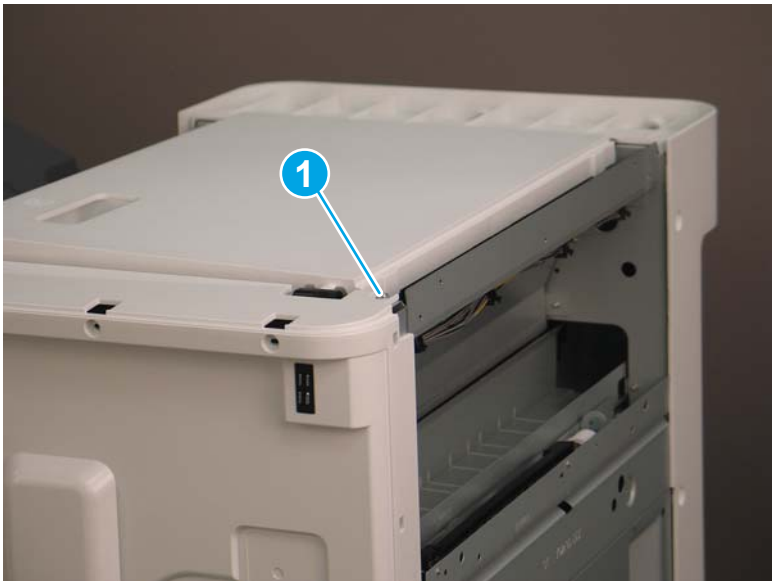
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 7-195 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

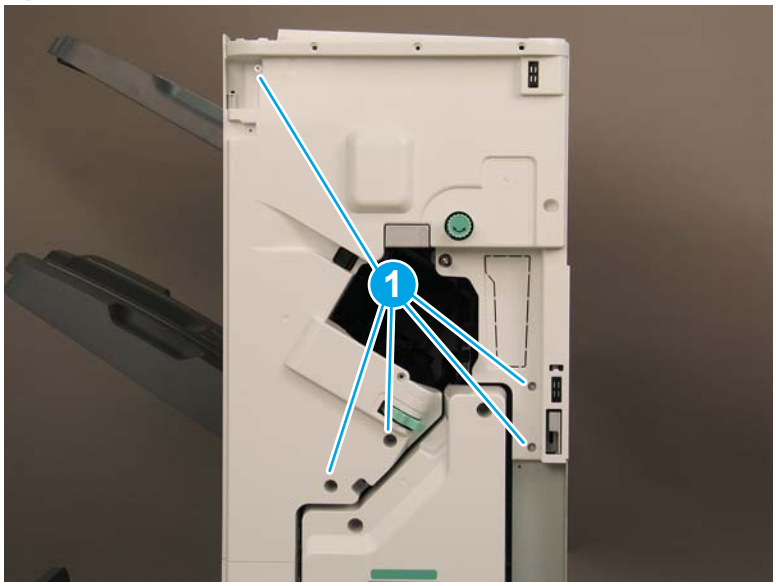
Figure 7-196 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

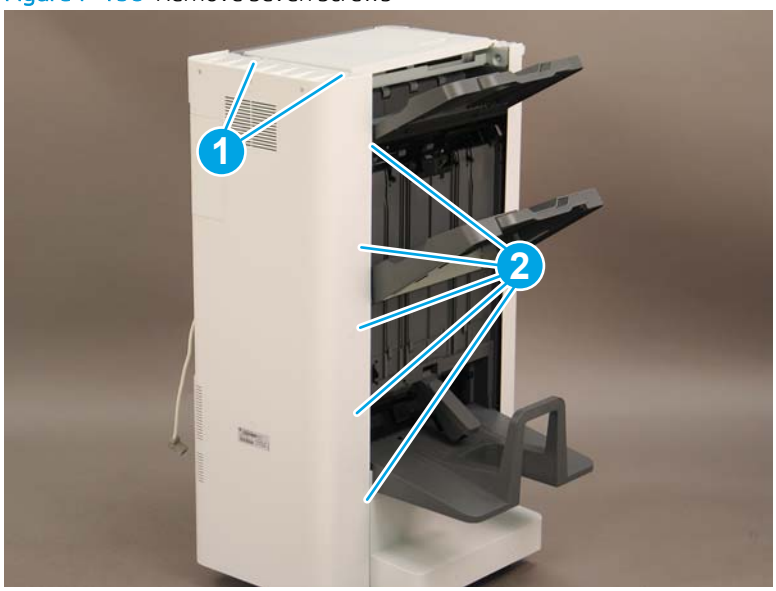
Figure 7-197 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-198 Remove seven screws

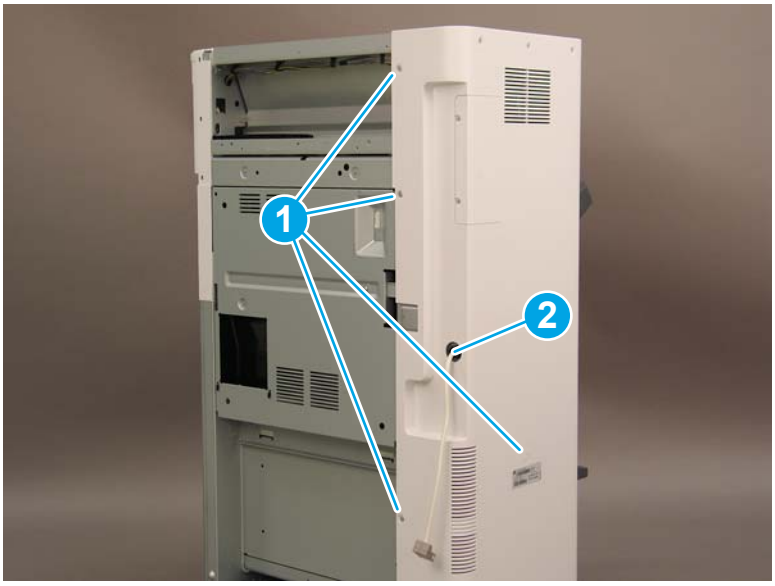


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

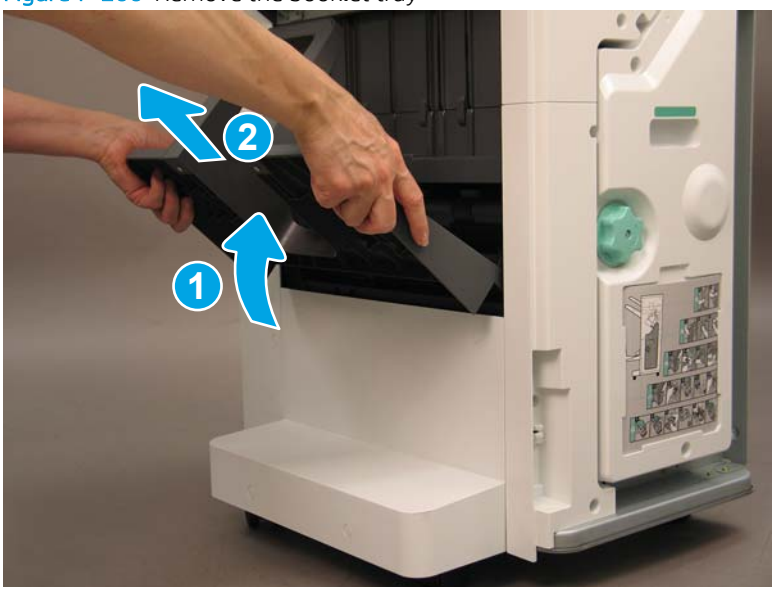
Figure 7-199 Remove four screws and the rear cover



Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 7-200 Remove the booklet tray



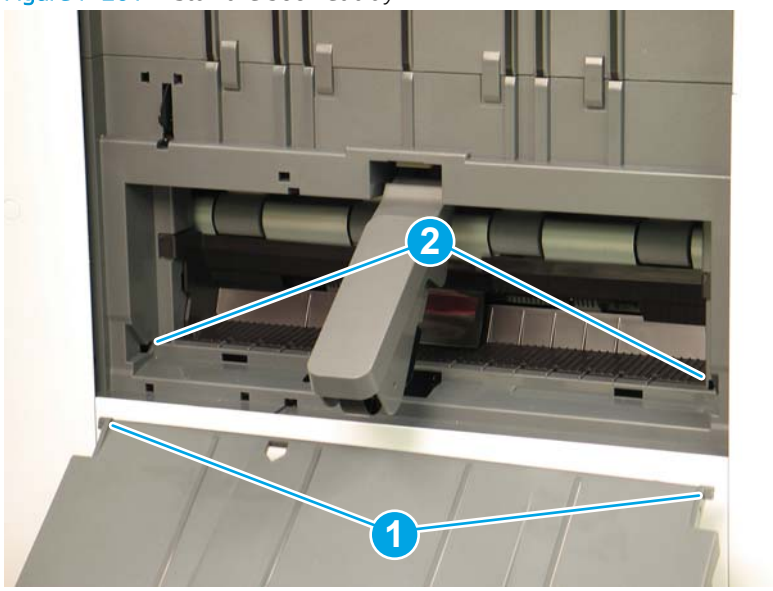
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

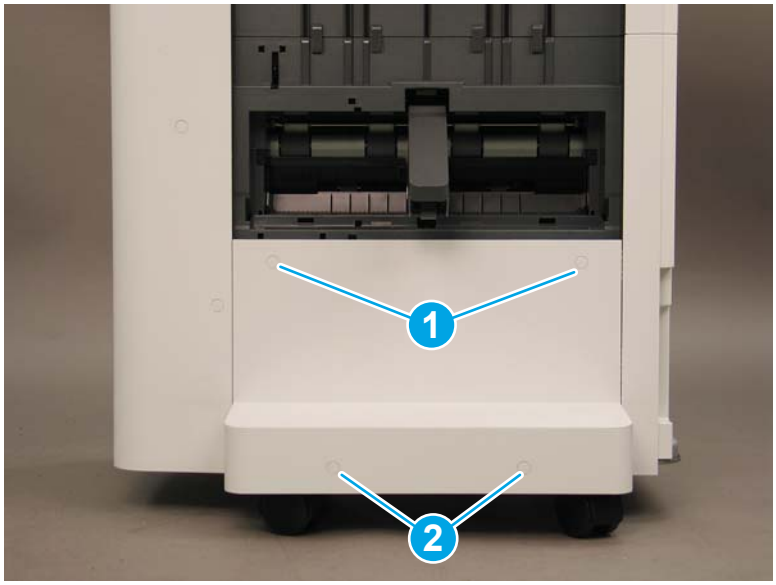
Figure 7-201 Install the booklet tray



Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 7-202 Remove four screws

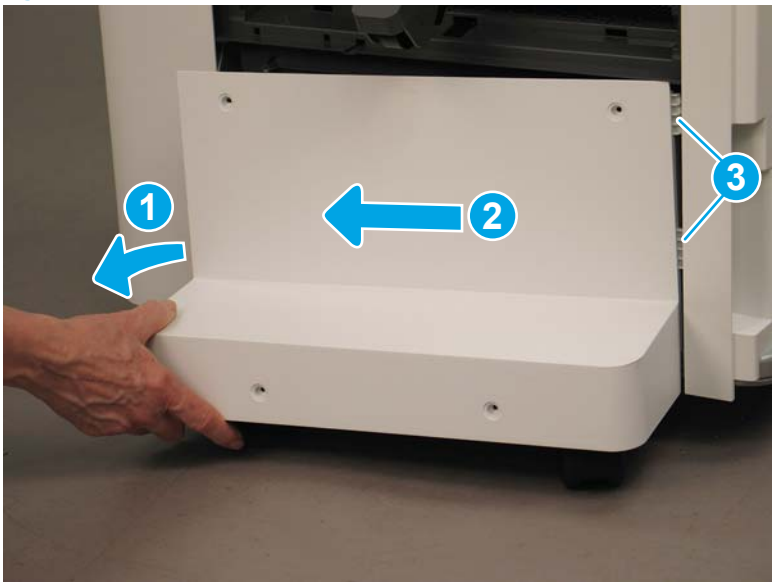


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-203 Remove the caster cover

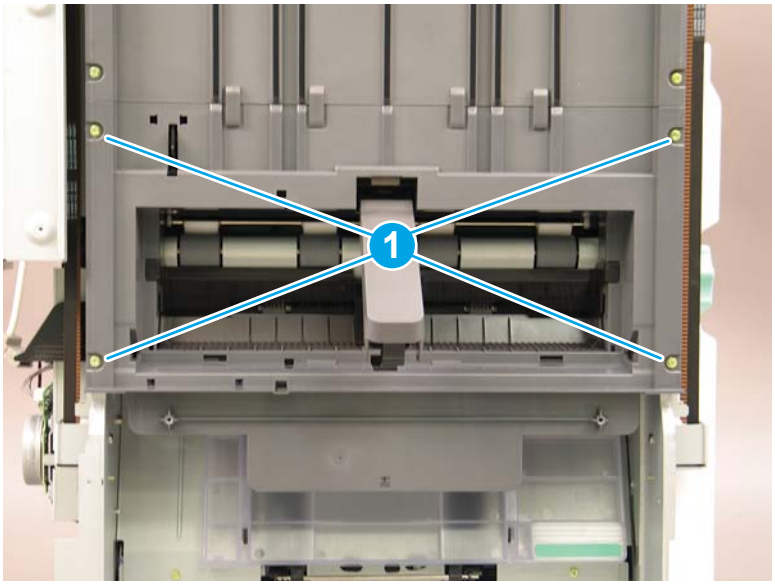


Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raise the lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 7-204 Remove four screws

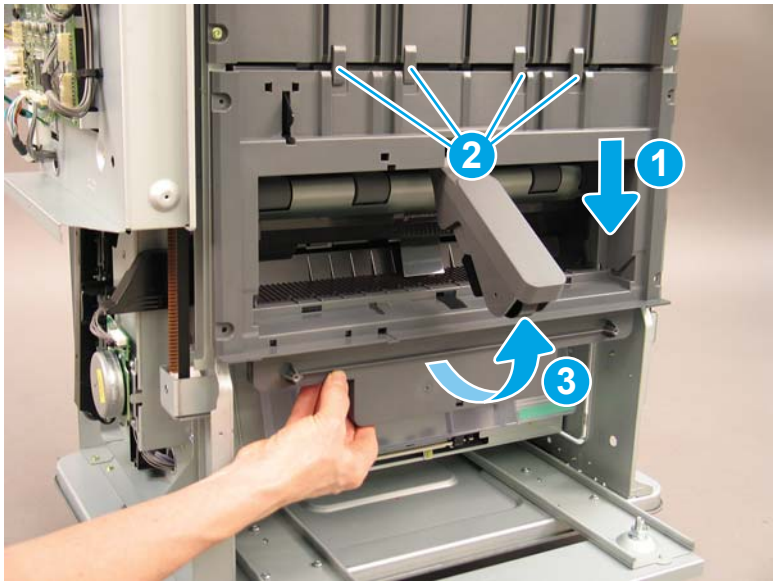


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

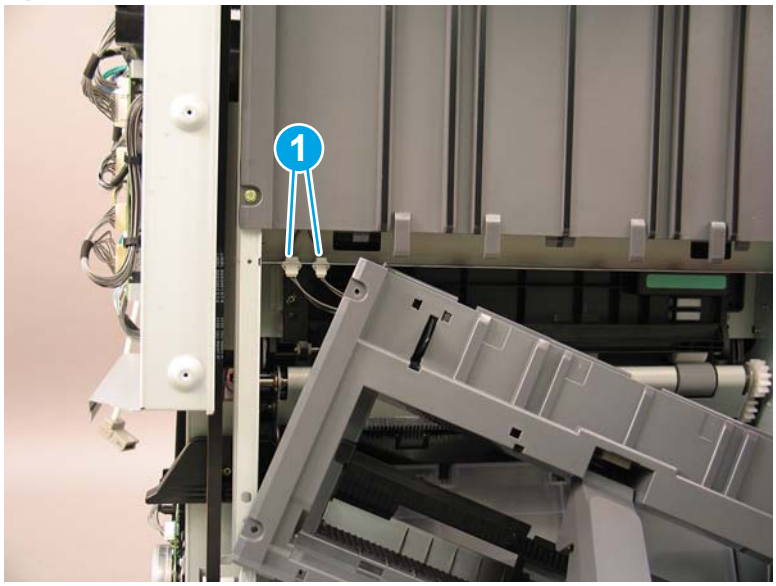
Figure 7-205 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

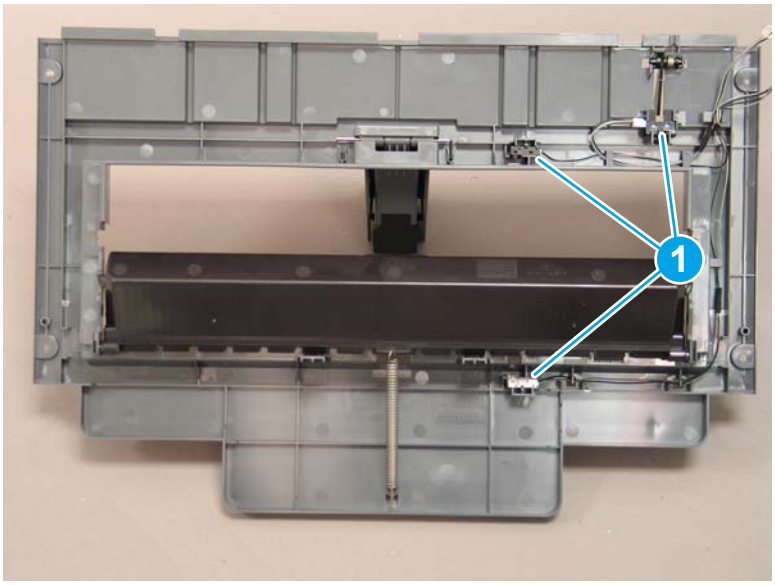
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-206 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the lower shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the lower shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

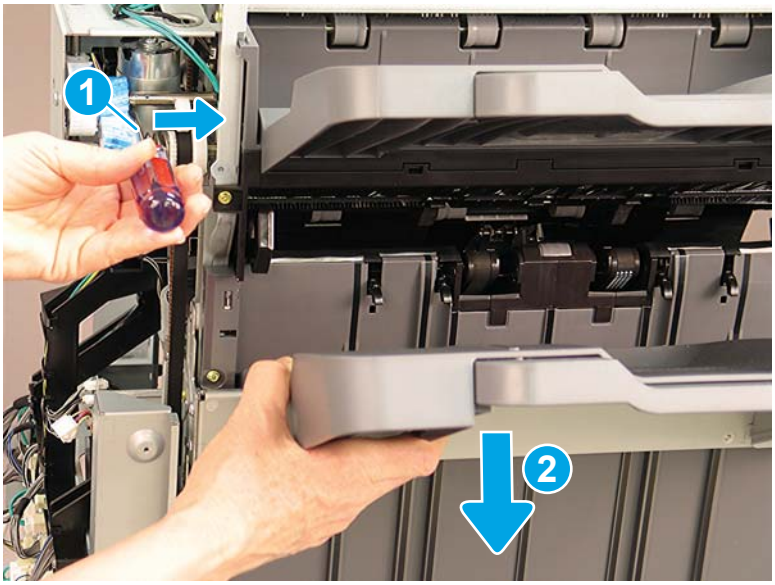
Figure 7-207 Locate sensors



Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)

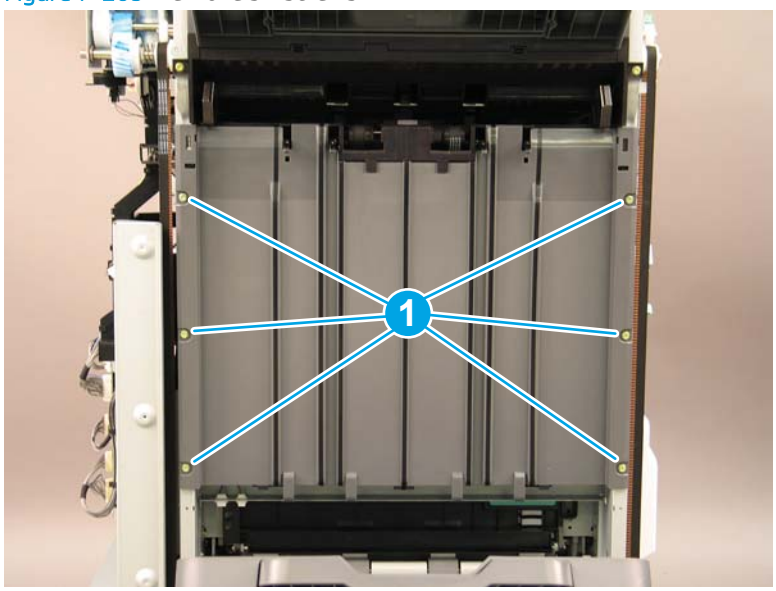
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 7-208 Lower the output tray



2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-209 Remove six screws

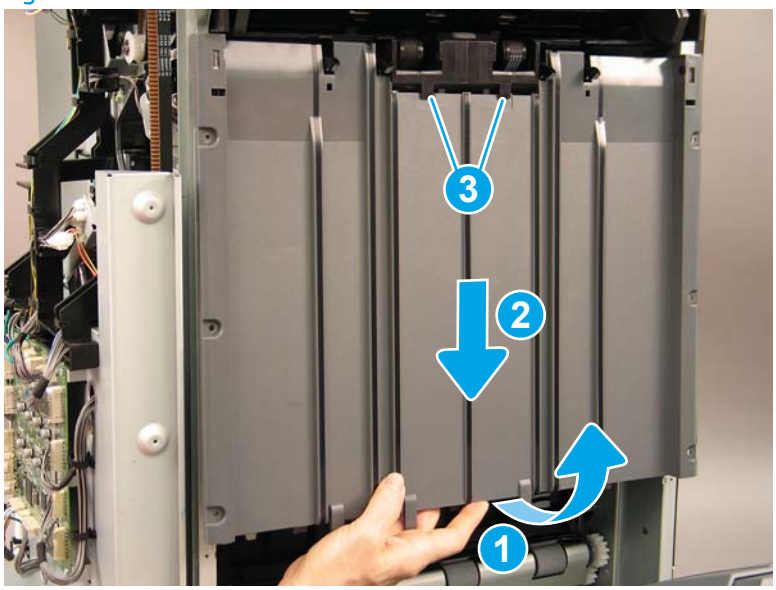


3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

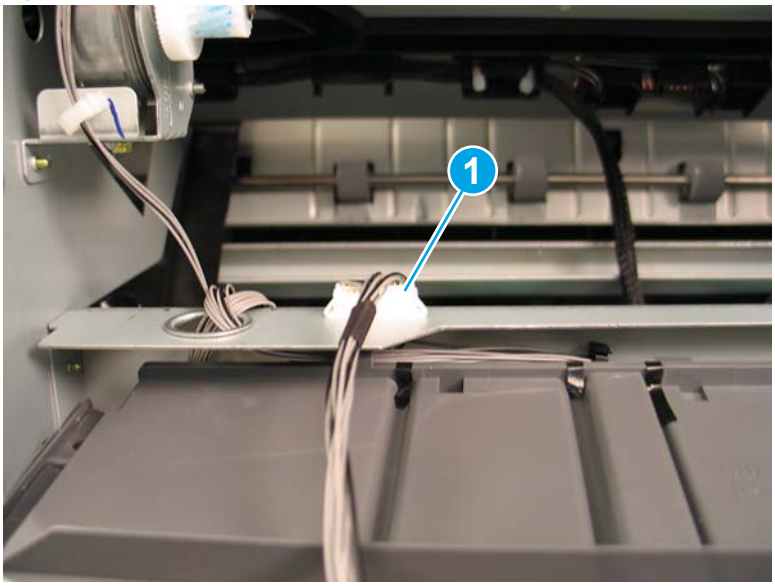
Figure 7-210 Release the shield



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.

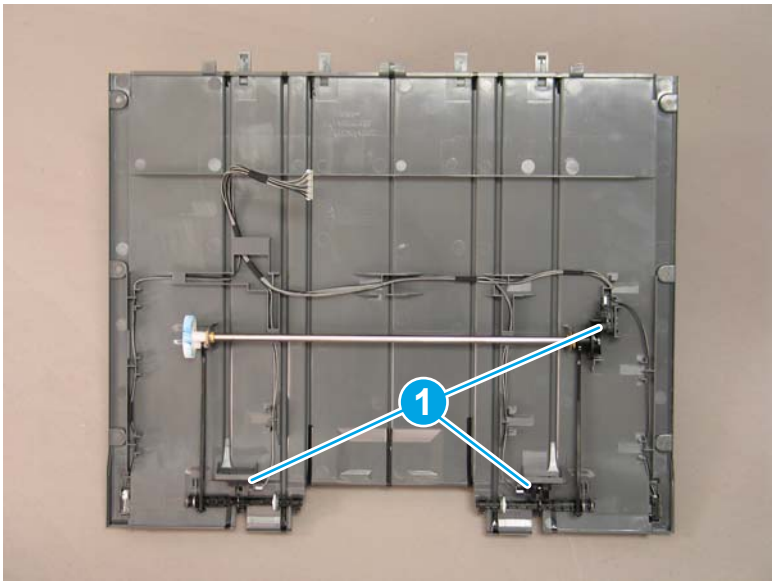
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-211 Disconnect one connector



5. If you are replacing the upper shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the upper shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

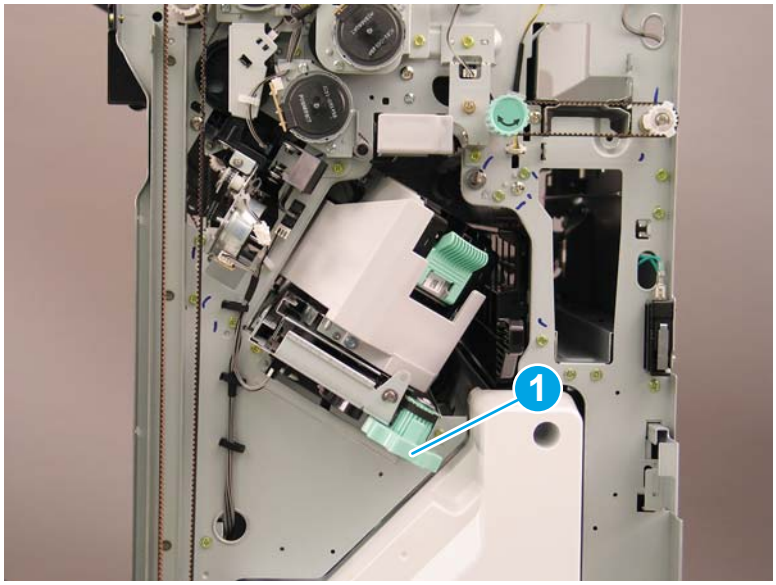
Figure 7-212 Locate sensors



Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)

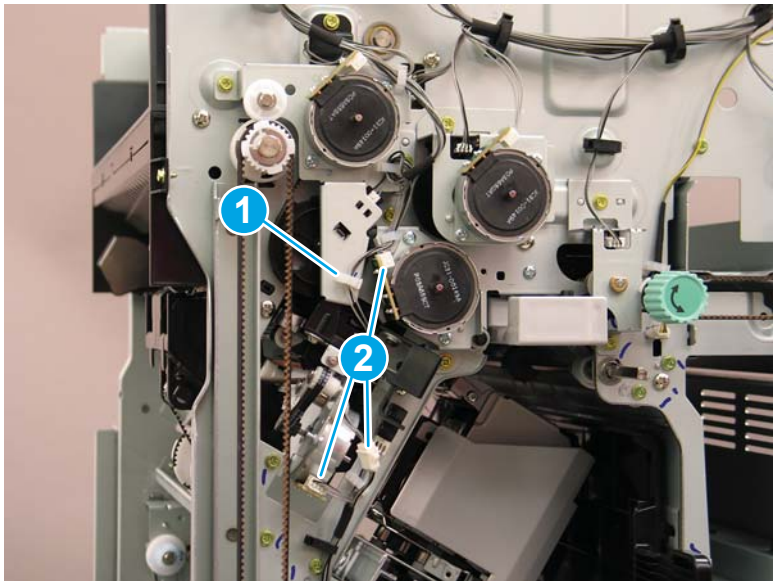
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the center of the finisher.

Figure 7-213 Move the staple unit to the center



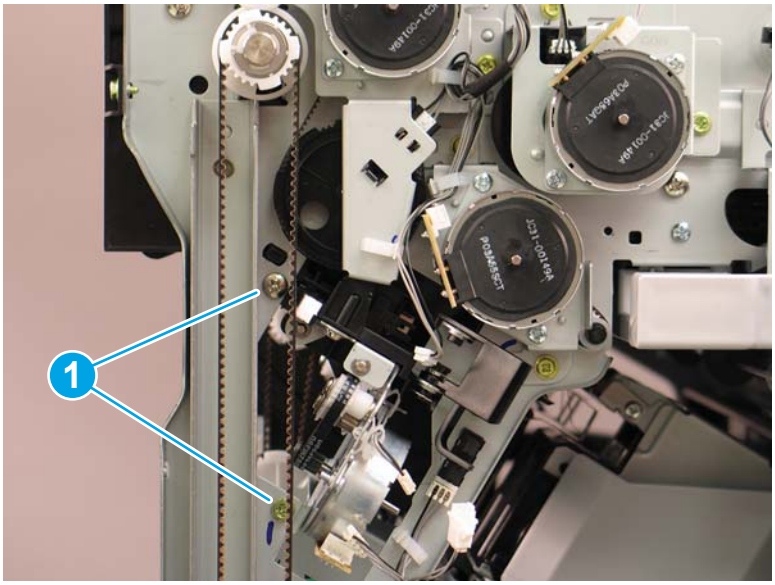
2. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 7-214 Disconnect three connectors



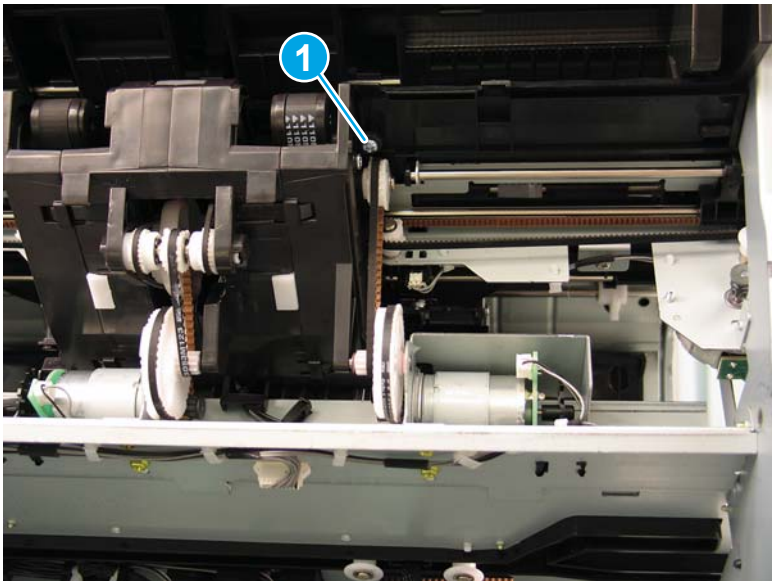
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-215 Remove two screws



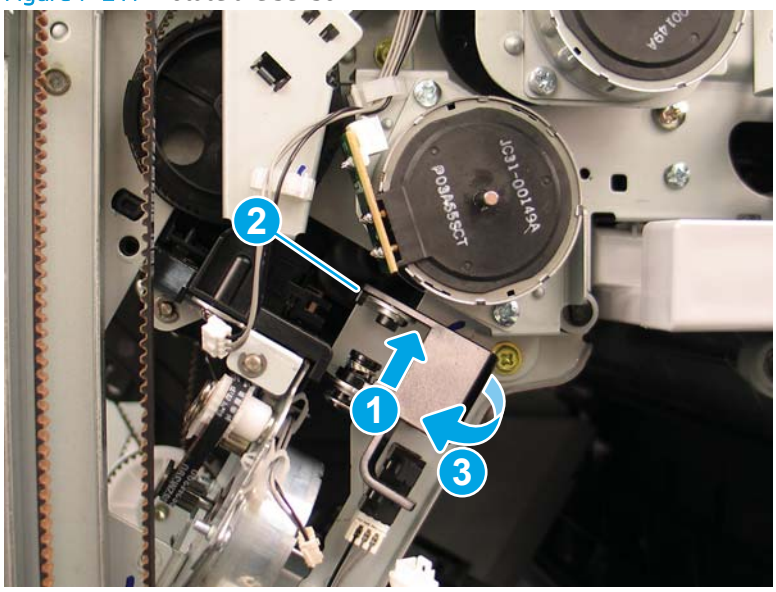
4. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 7-216 Remove one screw



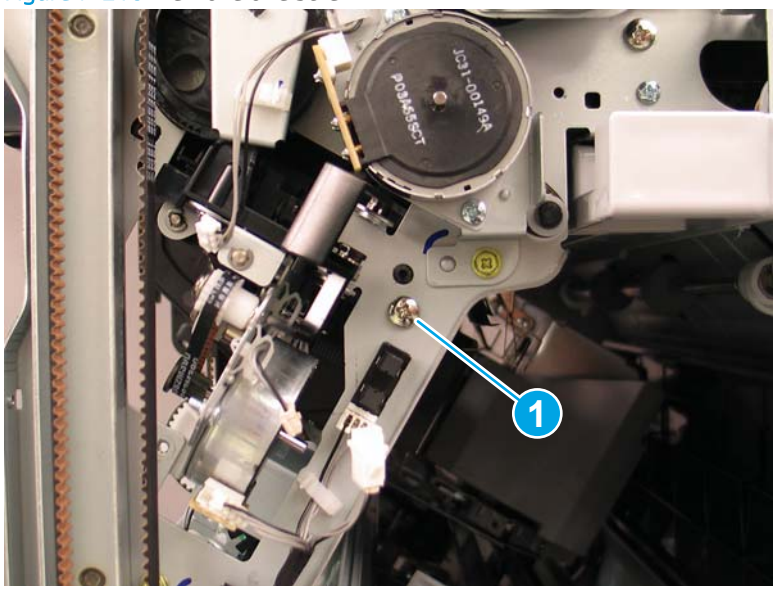
5. Press up on the hinge (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then rotate the sensor away from the finisher (callout 3).

Figure 7-217 Rotate the sensor



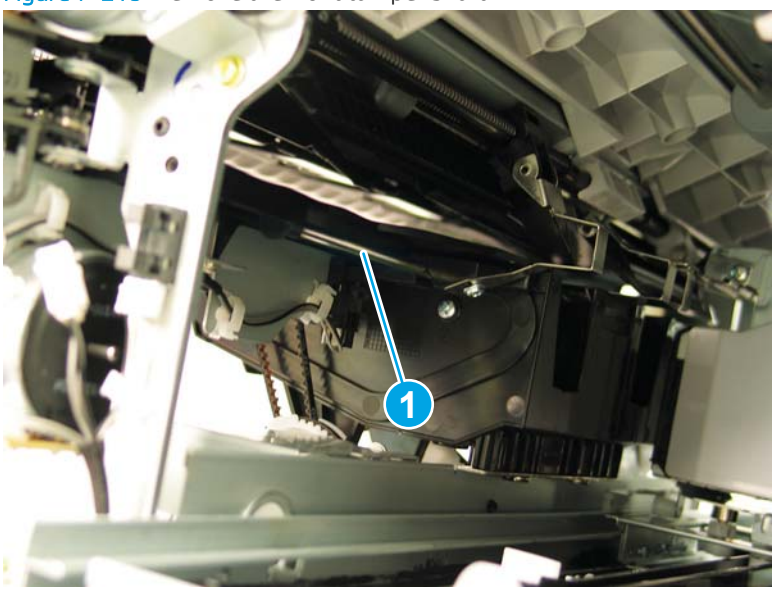
6. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 7-218 Remove one screw



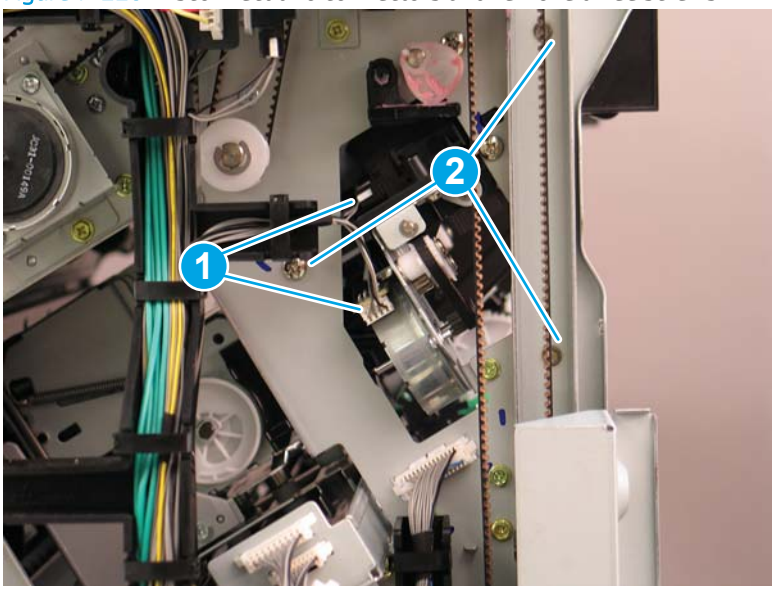
7. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the front and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the front tamper unit.

Figure 7-219 Remove the front tamper shaft



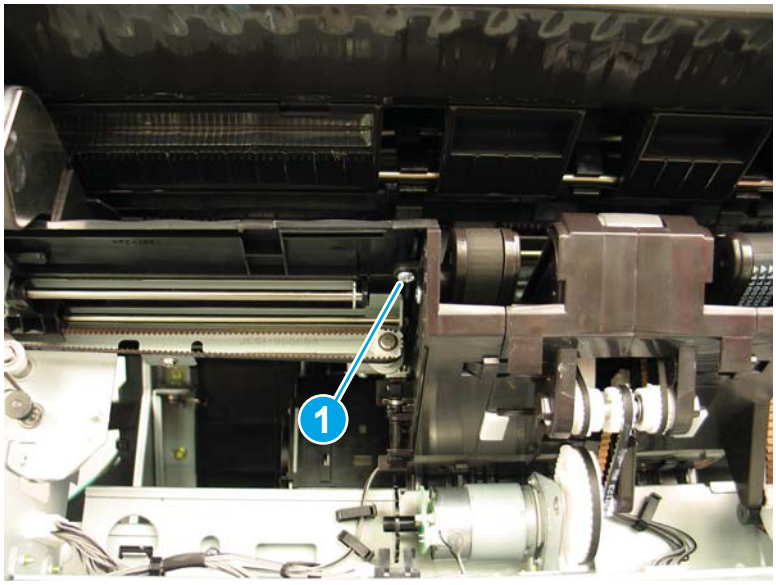
8. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 7-220 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws



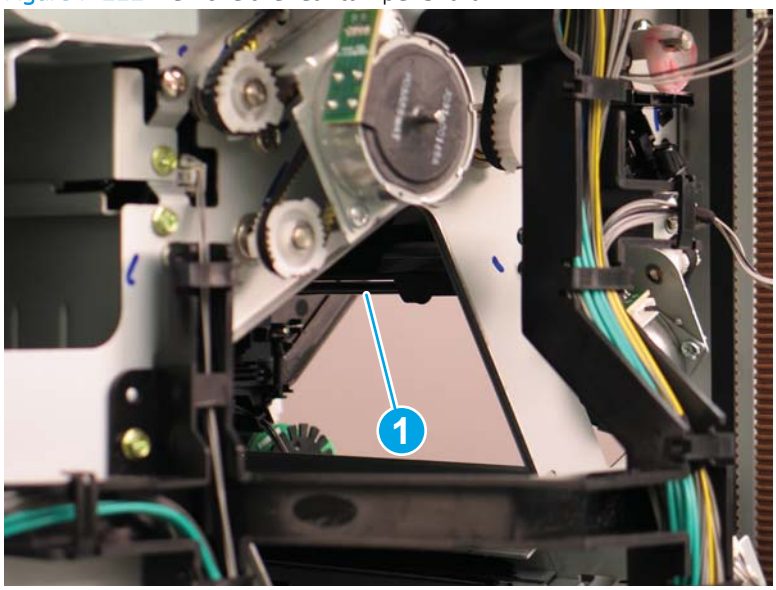
9. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 7-221 Remove one screw



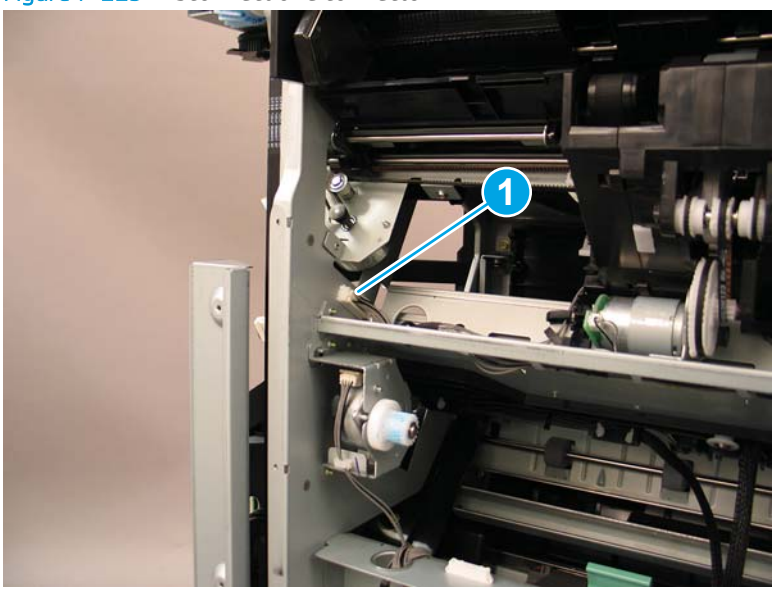
10. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the rear and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the rear tamper unit.

Figure 7-222 Remove the rear tamper shaft



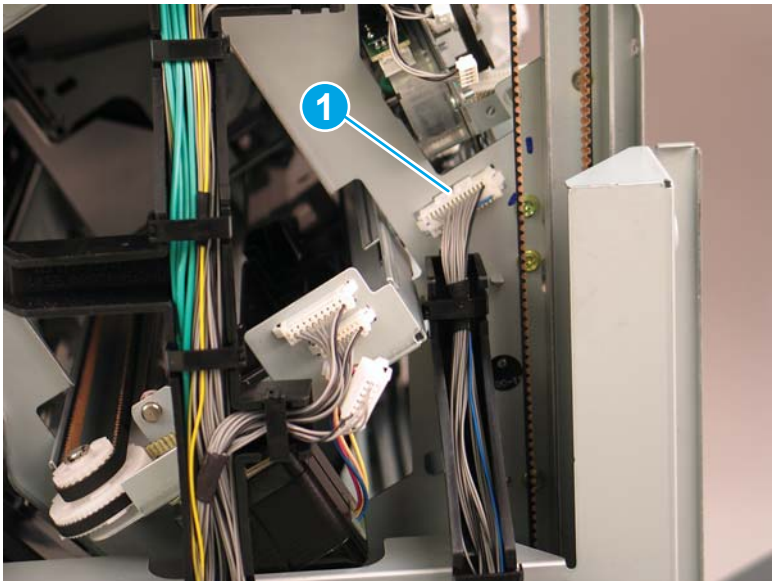
11. At the left side of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 7-223 Disconnect one connector



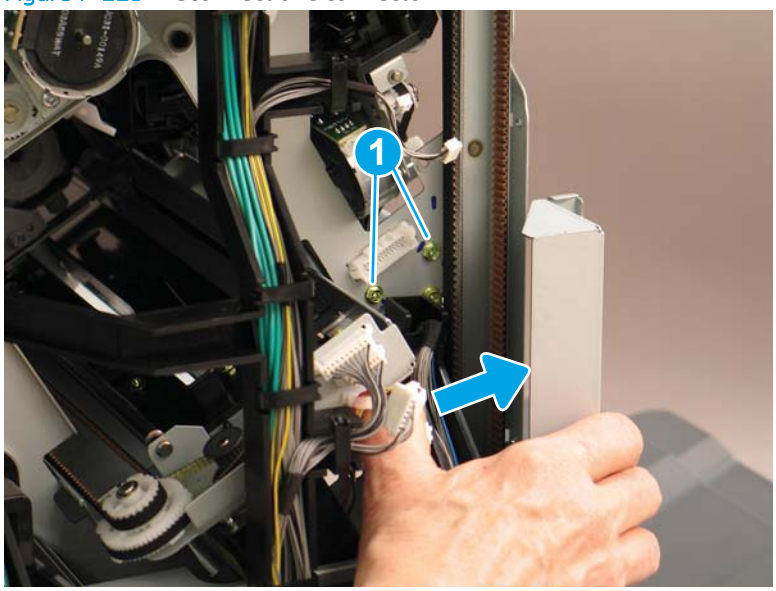
12. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 7-224 Disconnect one connector



13. At the rear of the finisher, press the wire retainer to the right to access and remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-225 Disconnect one connector

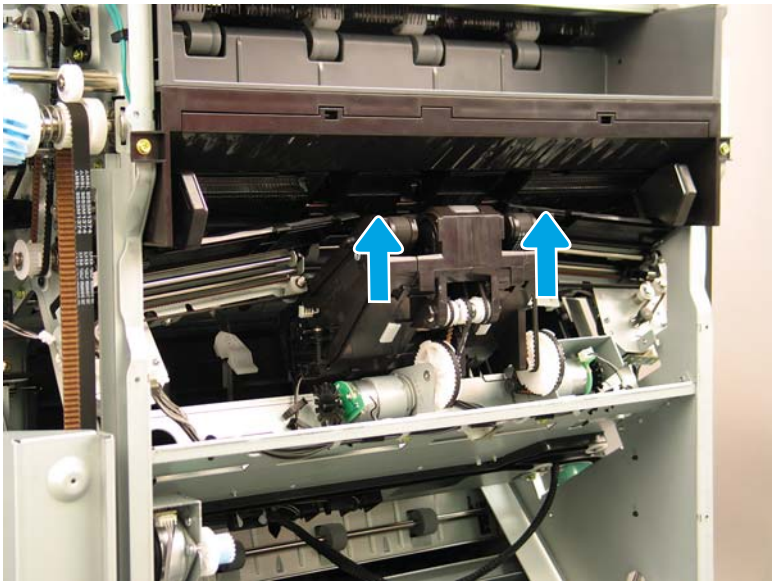


14. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-226 Remove two screws

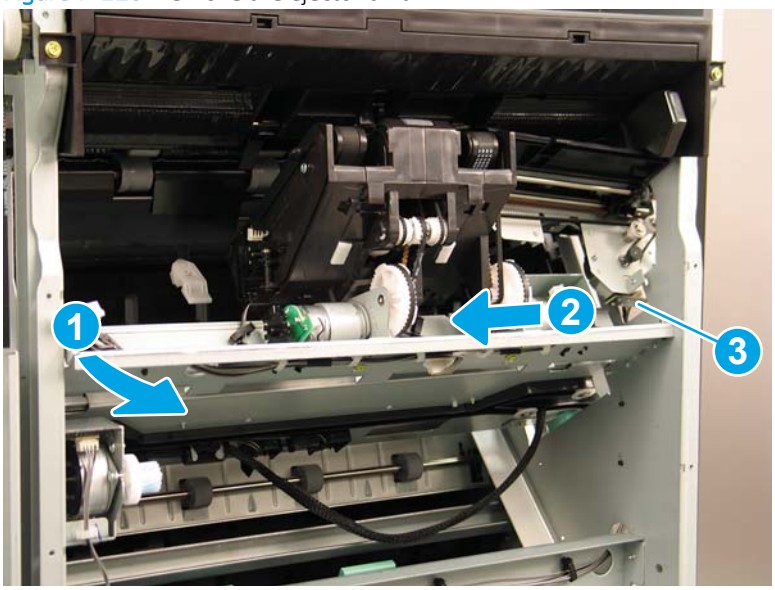
15. Lift the inside edges of the front and rear tampers up.

Figure 7-227 Lift the edges of the tampers



16. Rotate the rear edge of the ejector unit away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide it toward the rear of the finisher (callout 2) to remove it. Make sure that the PCA (callout 3) stays clear of the sheet metal frame.

Figure 7-228 Remove the ejector unit



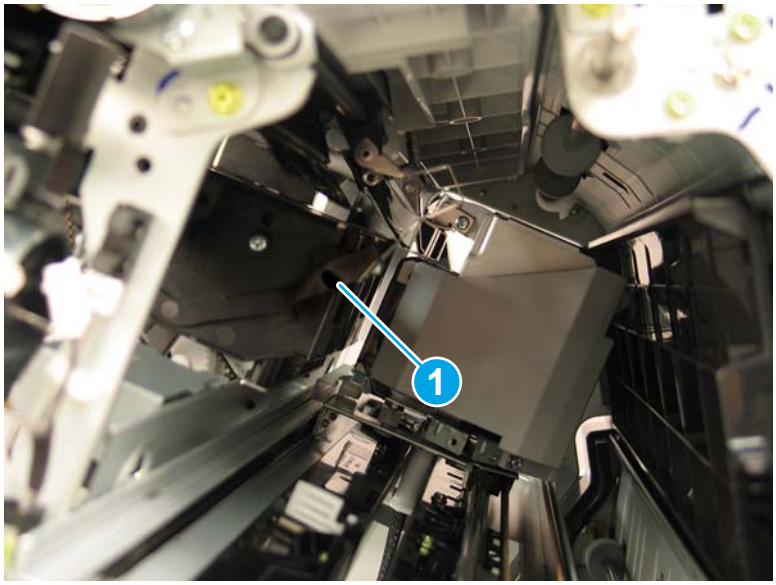
17. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Ejector unit

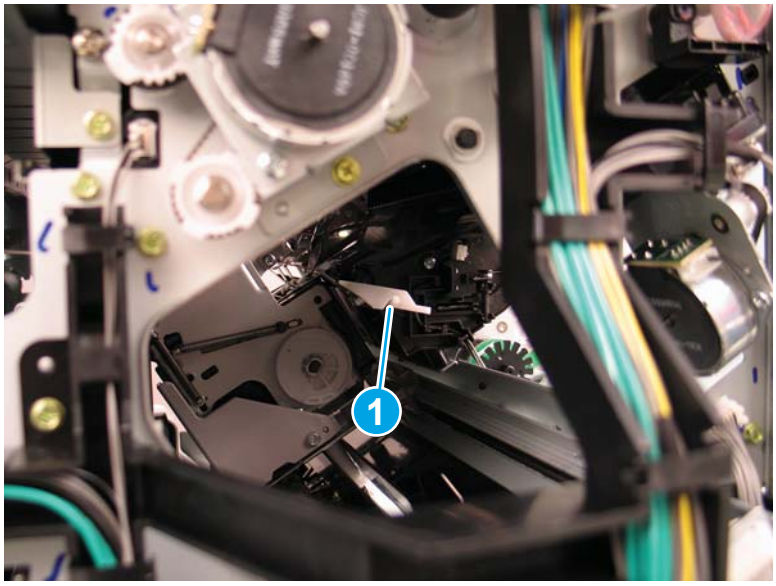
a. When the front tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 7-229 Reinstall the front tamper shaft



b. When the rear tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 7-230 Reinstall the rear tamper shaft



Step 11: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Front tamper unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Remove the rear cover
- Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)
- Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)
- Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)
- Step 11: Remove the front tamper unit
- Step 12: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front tamper unit on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Front tamper unit part number	
SAM-JC90-01464A	Finisher Sub - Tamper Front

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

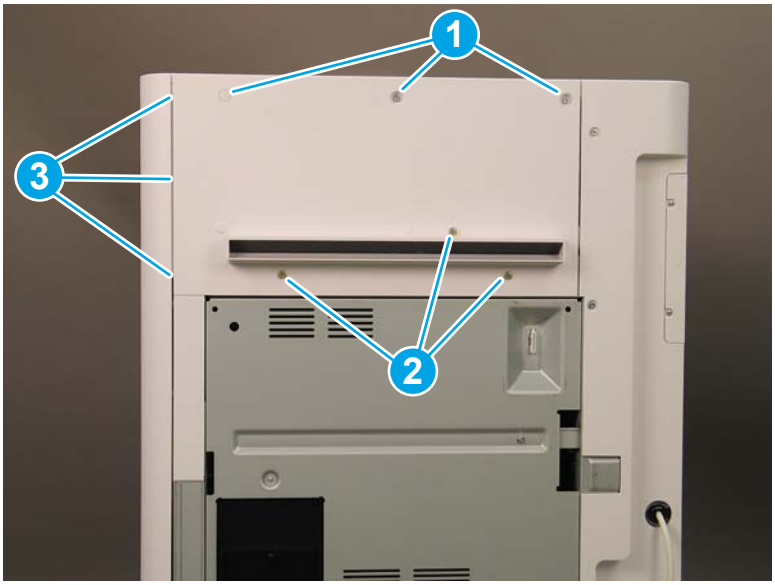
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

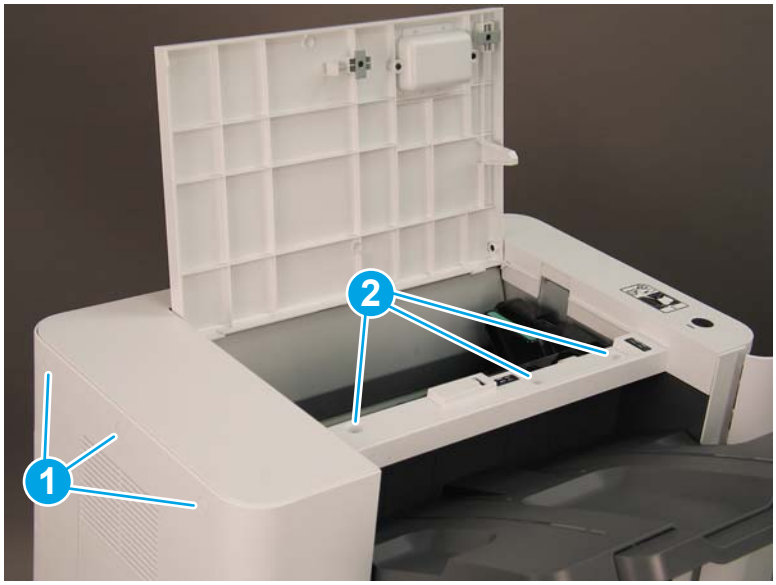
Figure 7-231 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

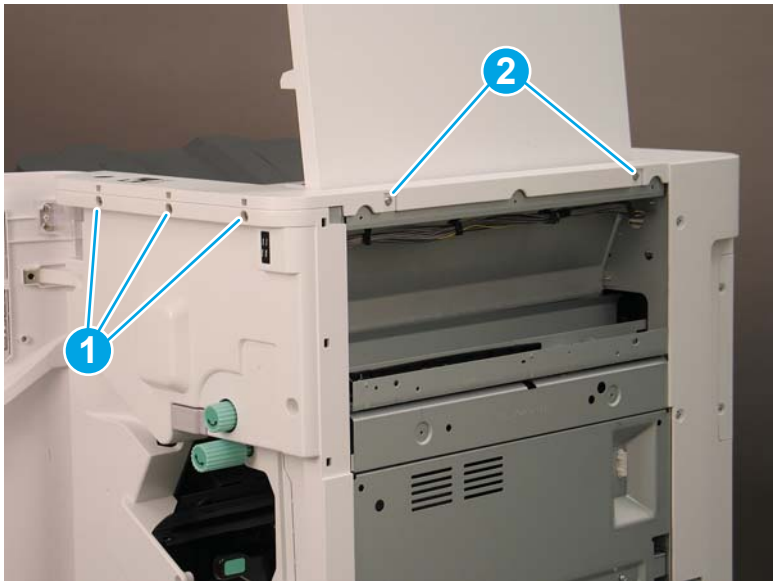
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-232 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

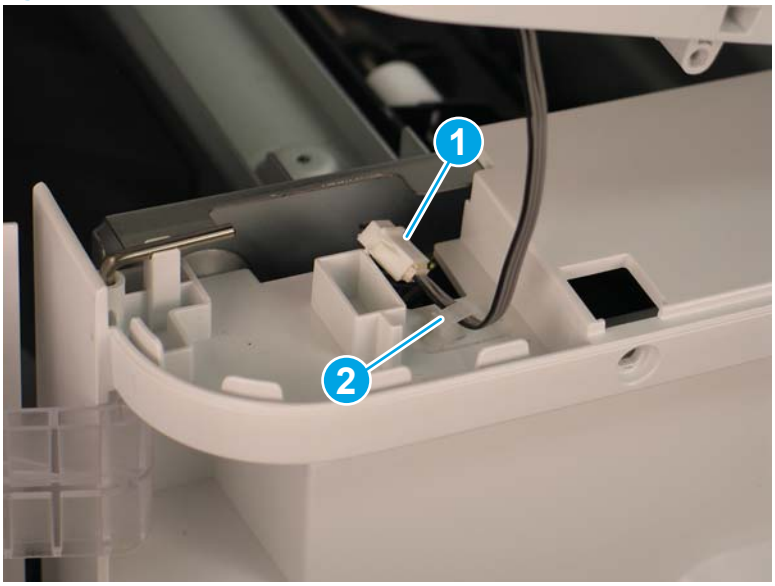
Figure 7-233 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-234 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

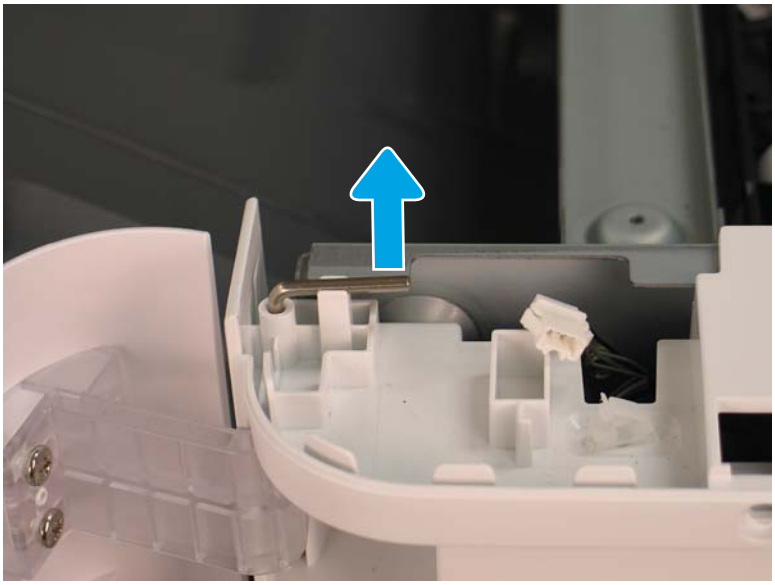


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

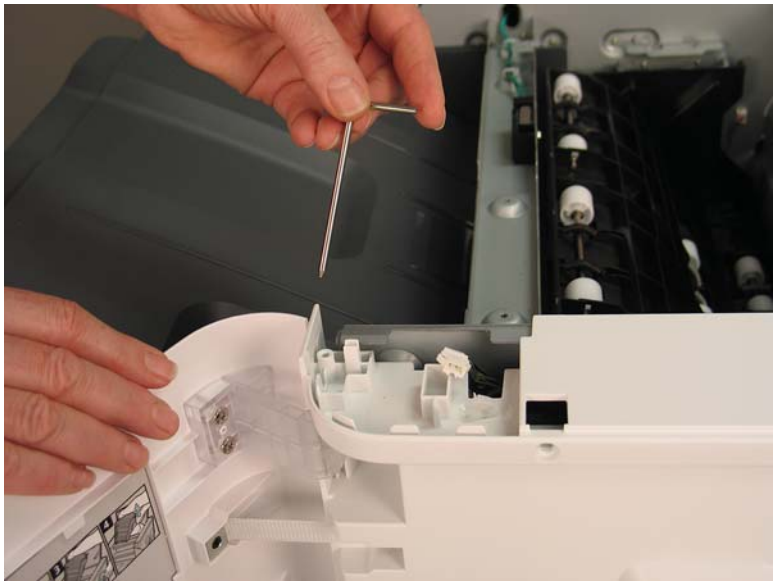
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 7-235 Lift the top hinge pin



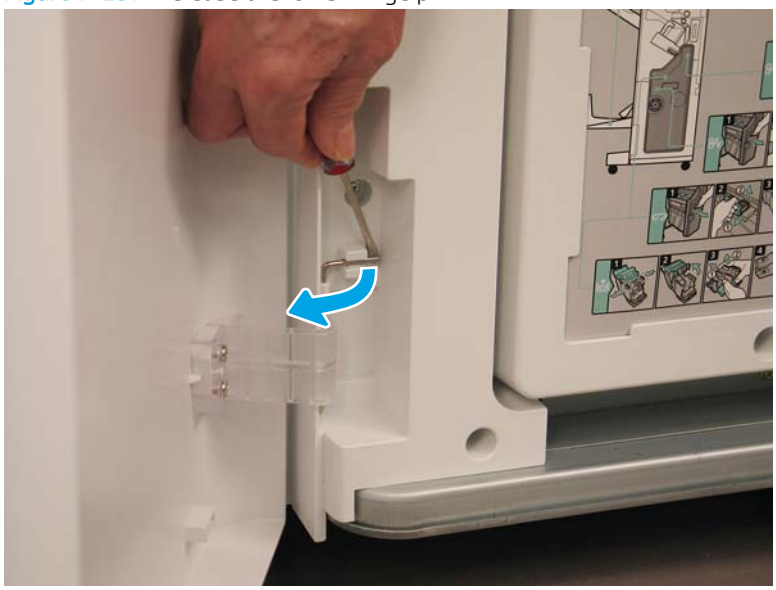
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 7-236 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 7-237 Release the lower hinge pin



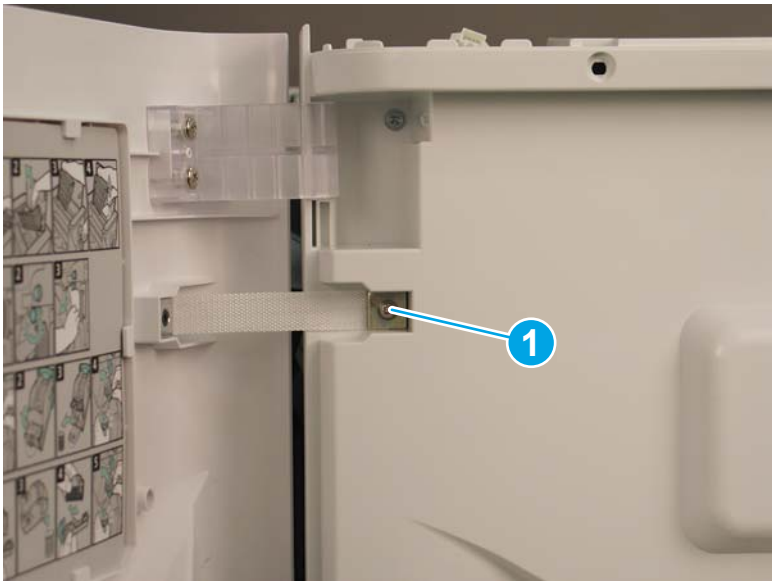
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 7-238 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

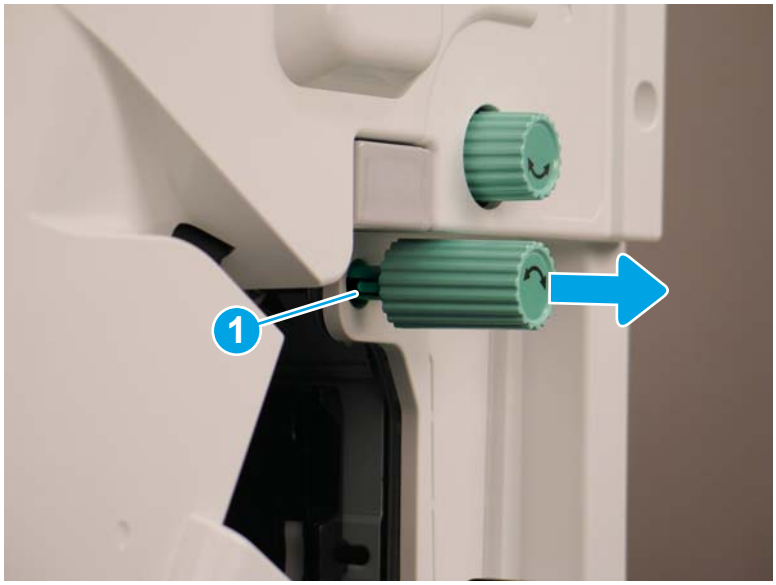
Figure 7-239 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

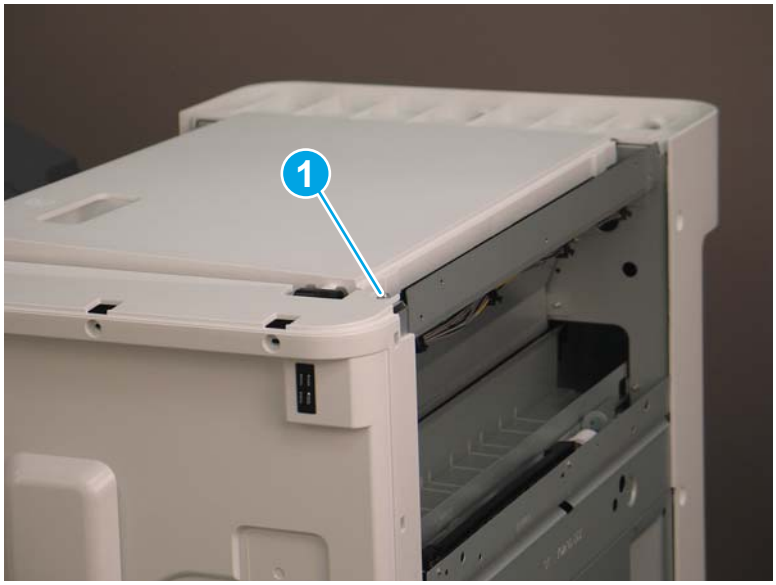
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 7-240 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

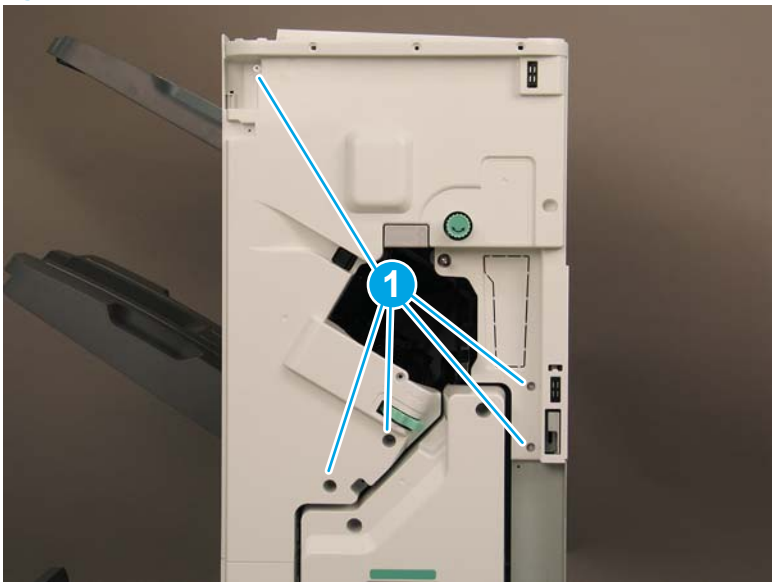
Figure 7-241 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

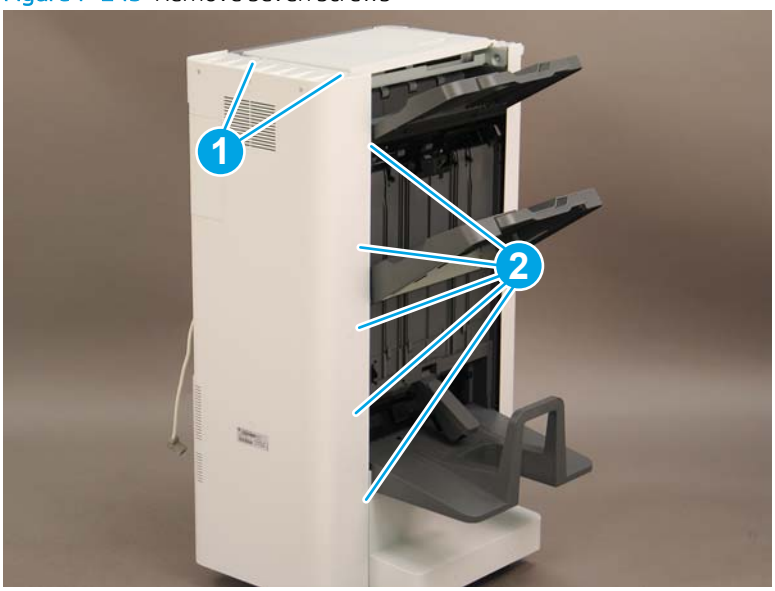
Figure 7-242 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 5: Remove the rear cover

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-243 Remove seven screws

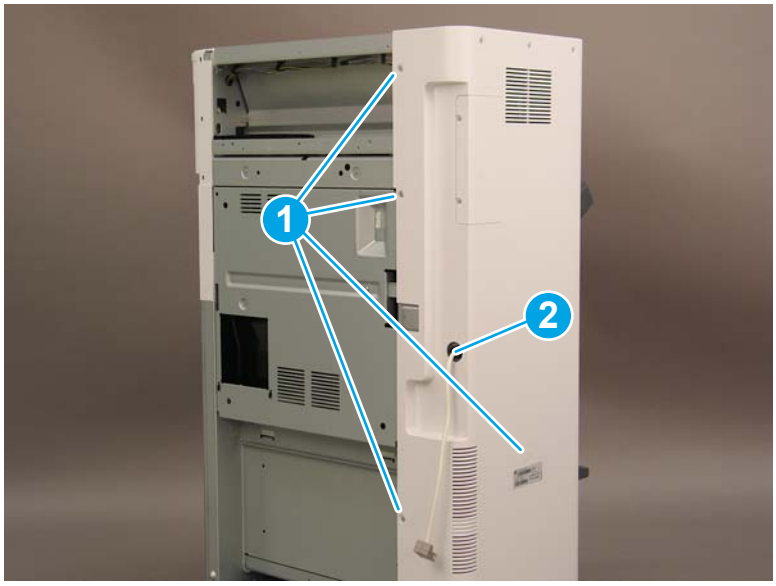


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

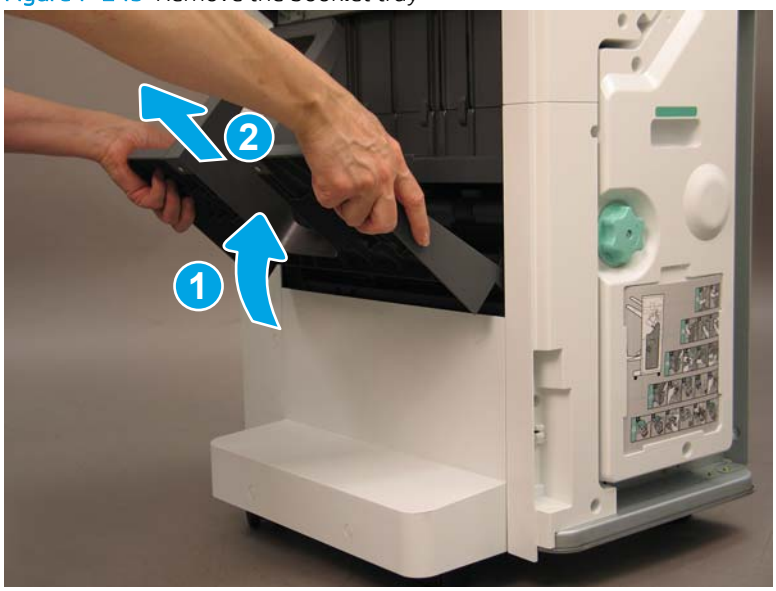
Figure 7-244 Remove four screws and the rear cover



Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 7-245 Remove the booklet tray



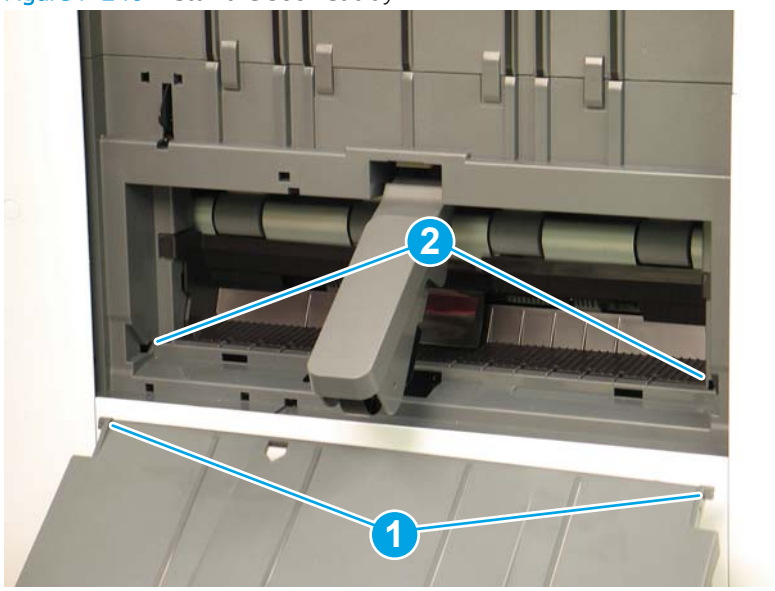
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

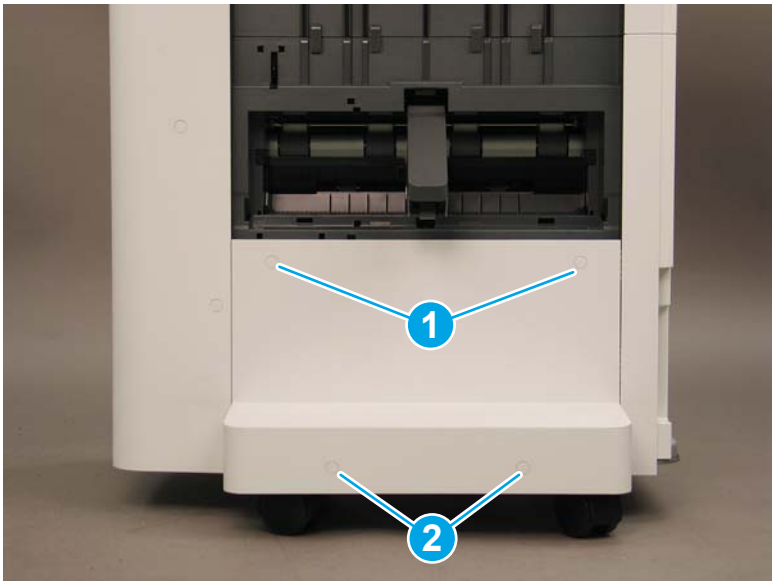
Figure 7-246 Install the booklet tray



Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 7-247 Remove four screws

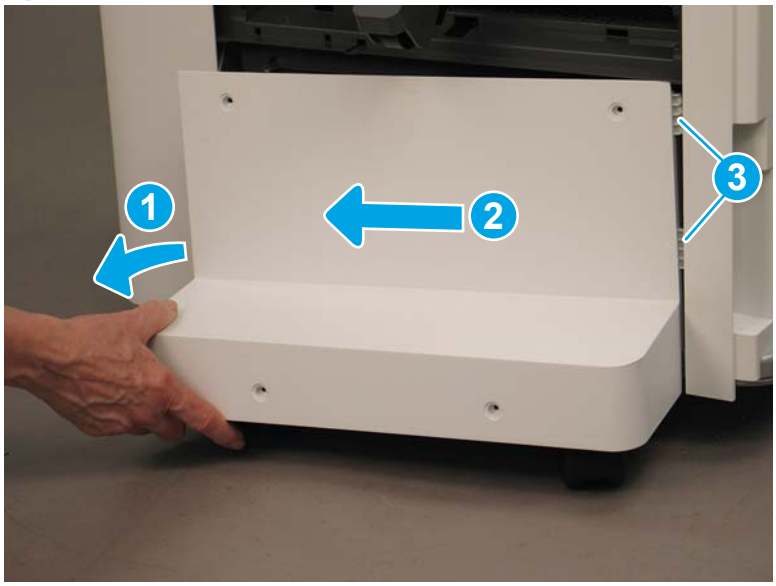


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-248 Remove the caster cover

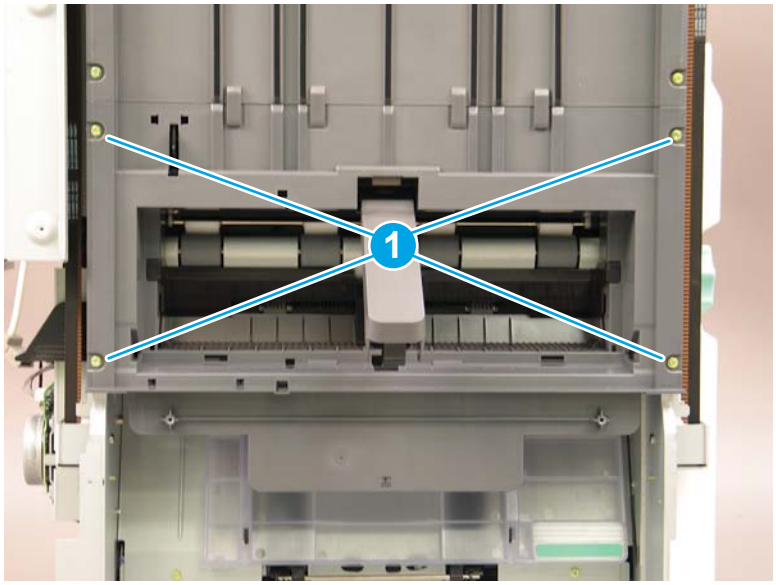


Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raise the lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 7-249 Remove four screws

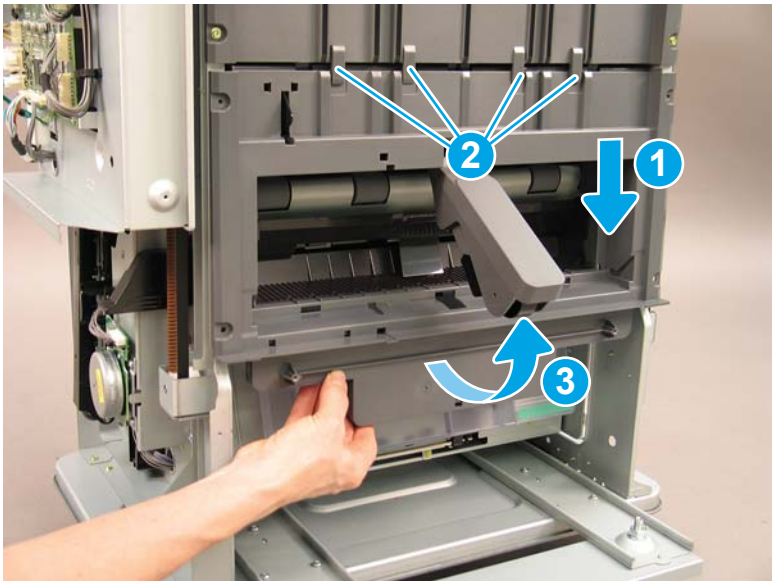


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

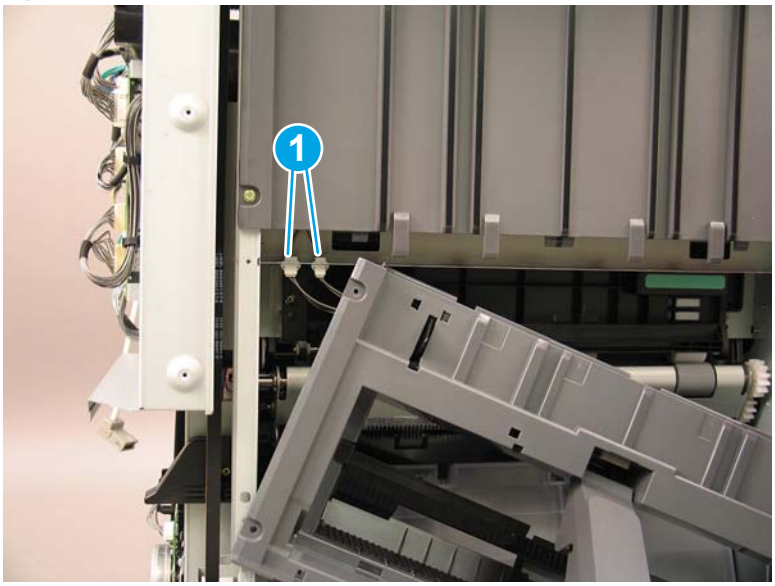
Figure 7-250 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

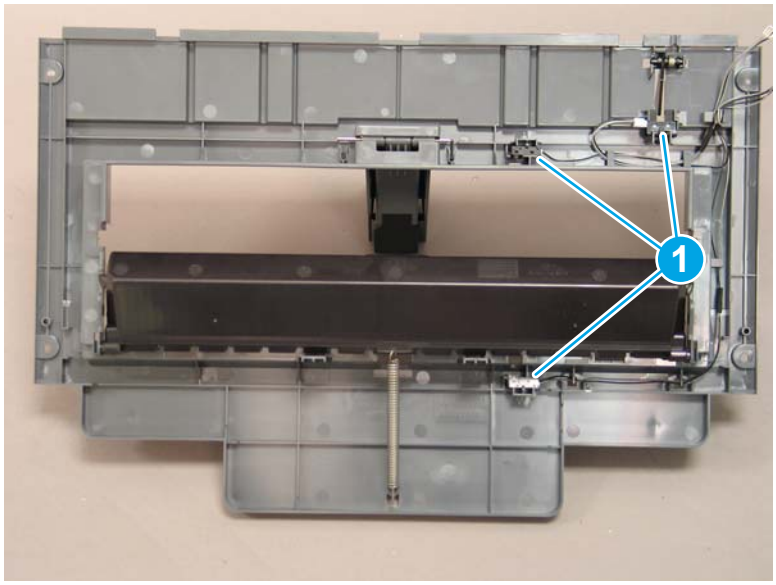
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-251 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the lower shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the lower shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

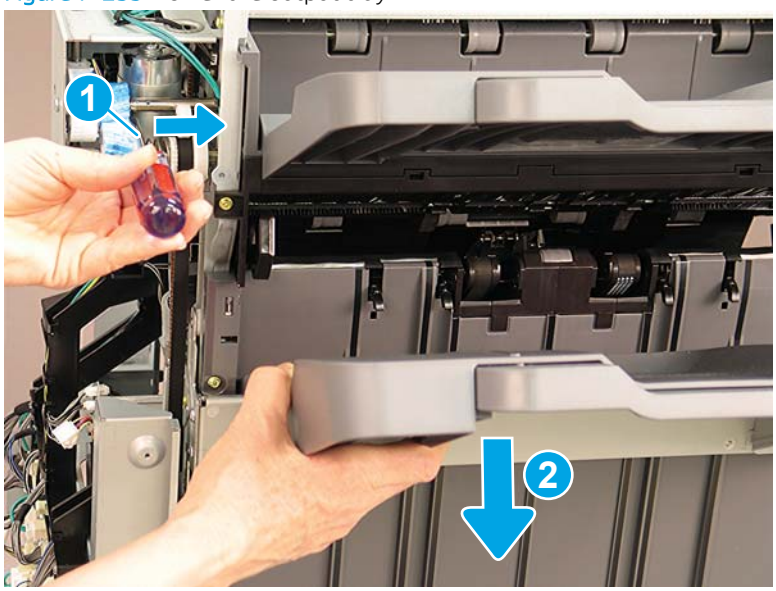
Figure 7-252 Locate sensors



Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)

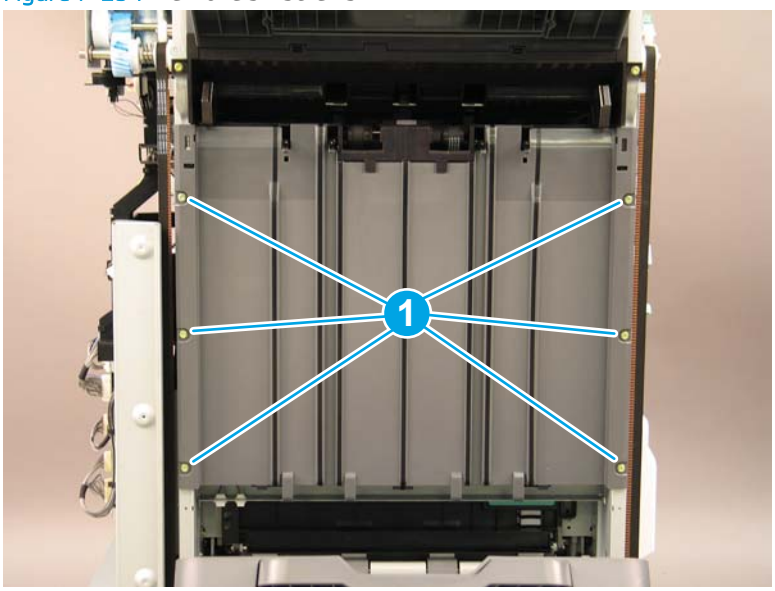
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 7-253 Lower the output tray



2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-254 Remove six screws

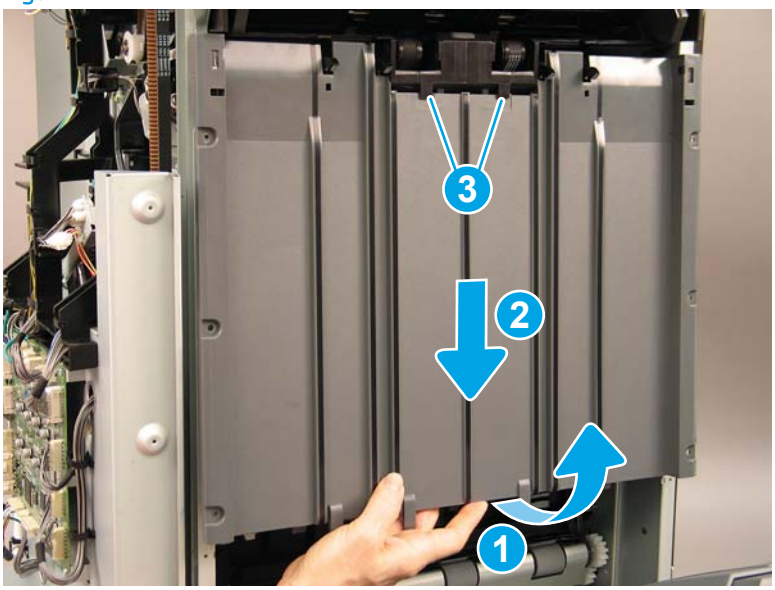


3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

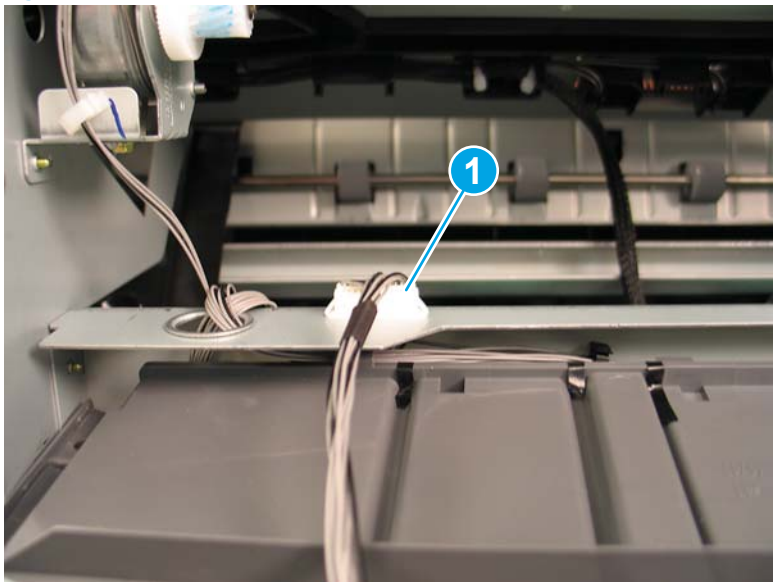
Figure 7-255 Release the shield



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.

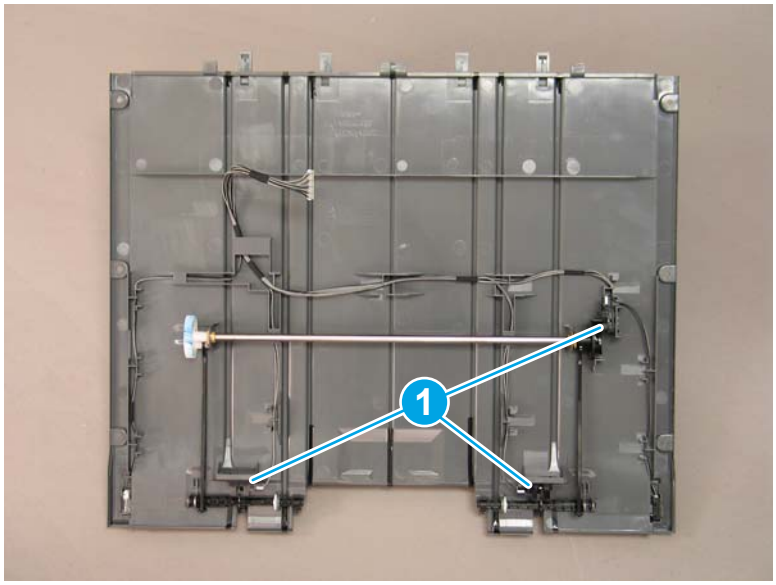
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-256 Disconnect one connector



5. If you are replacing the upper shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the upper shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

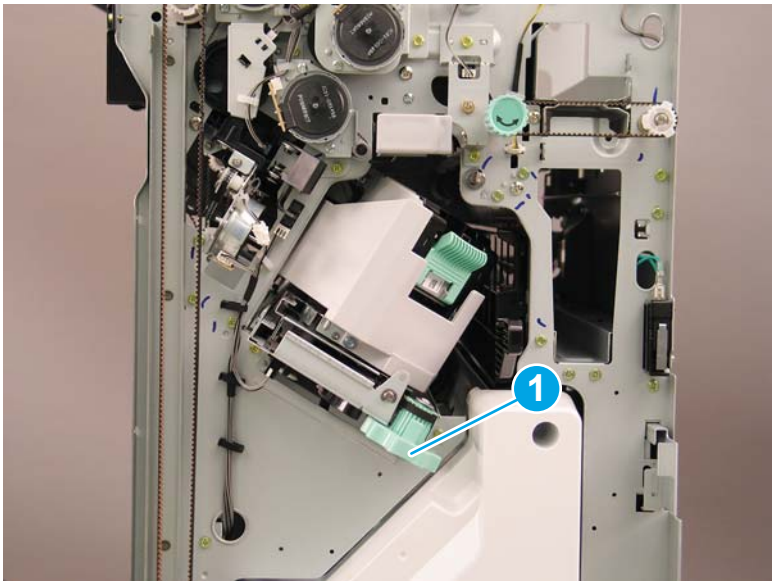
Figure 7-257 Locate sensors



Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)

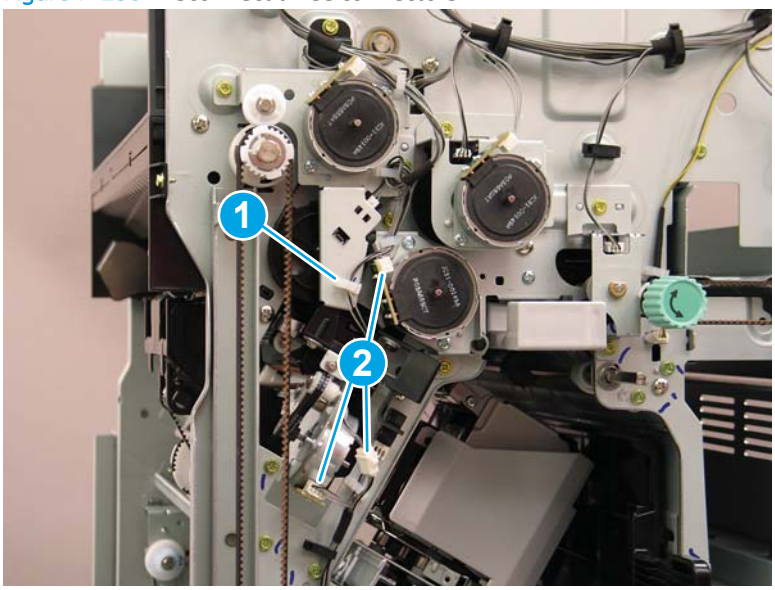
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the center of the finisher.

Figure 7-258 Move the staple unit to the center



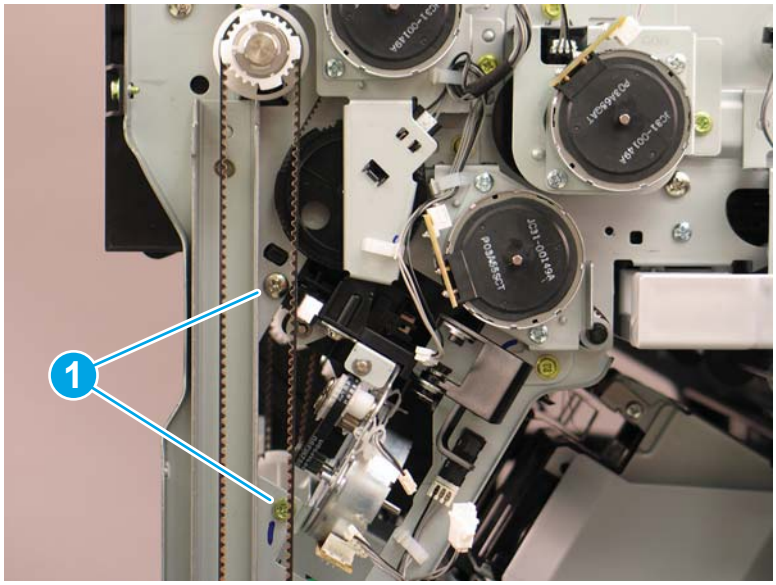
2. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 7-259 Disconnect three connectors



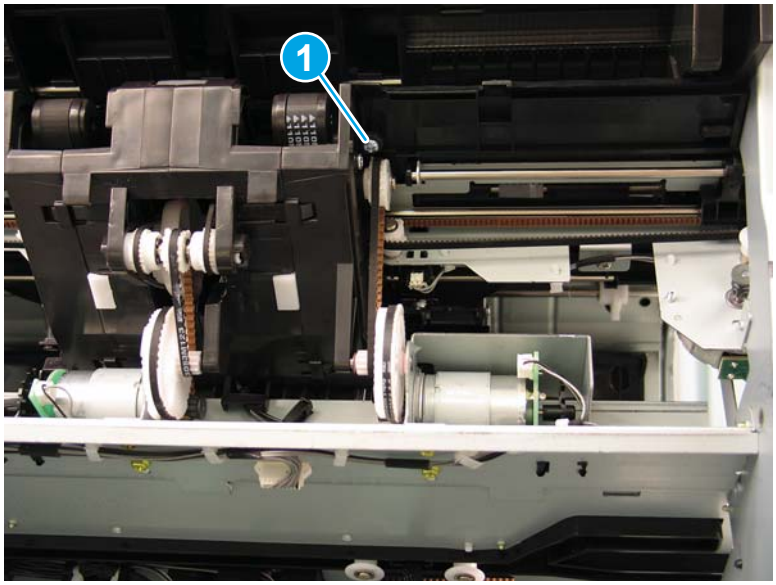
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-260 Remove two screws



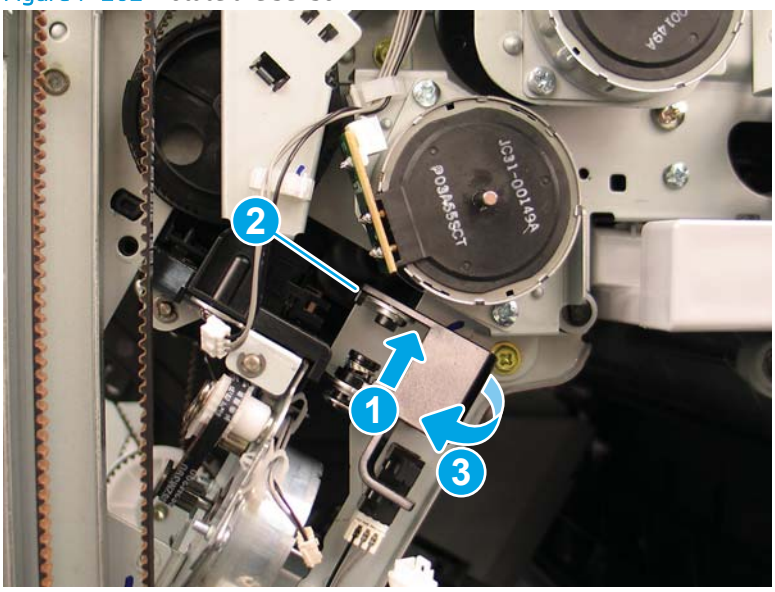
4. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 7-261 Remove one screw



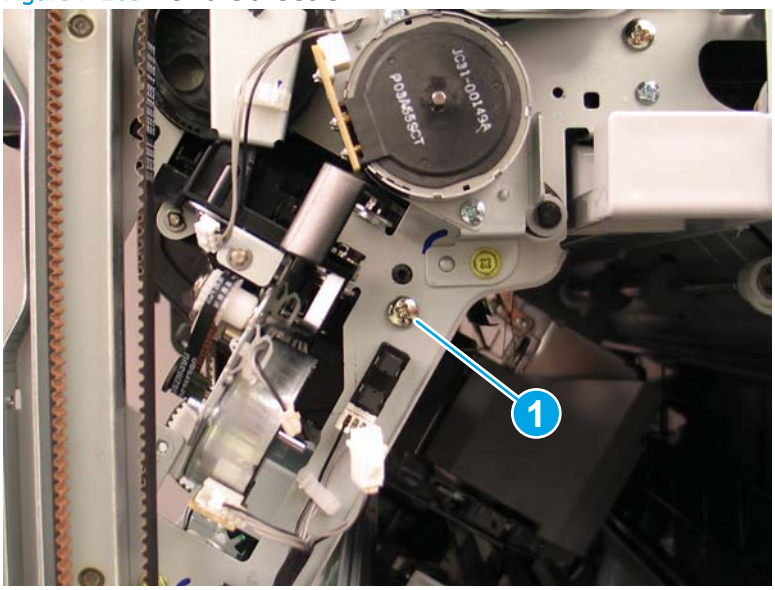
5. Press up on the hinge (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then rotate the sensor away from the finisher (callout 3).

Figure 7-262 Rotate the sensor



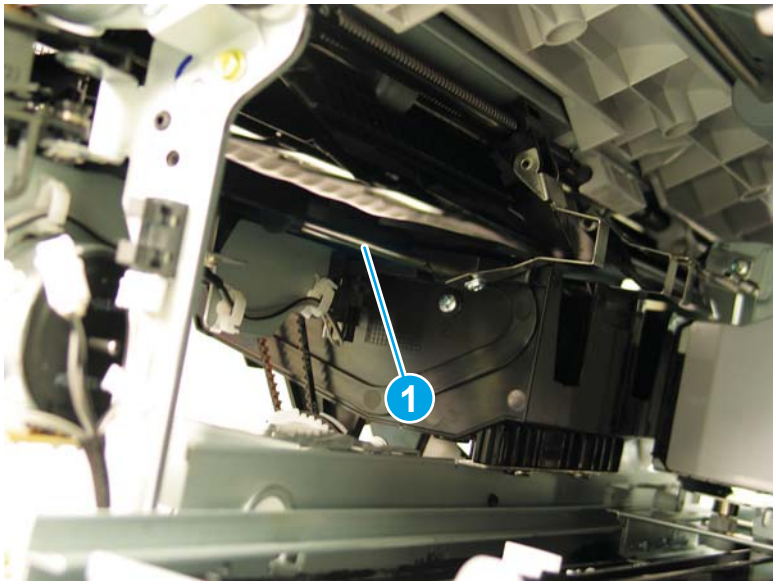
6. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 7-263 Remove one screw



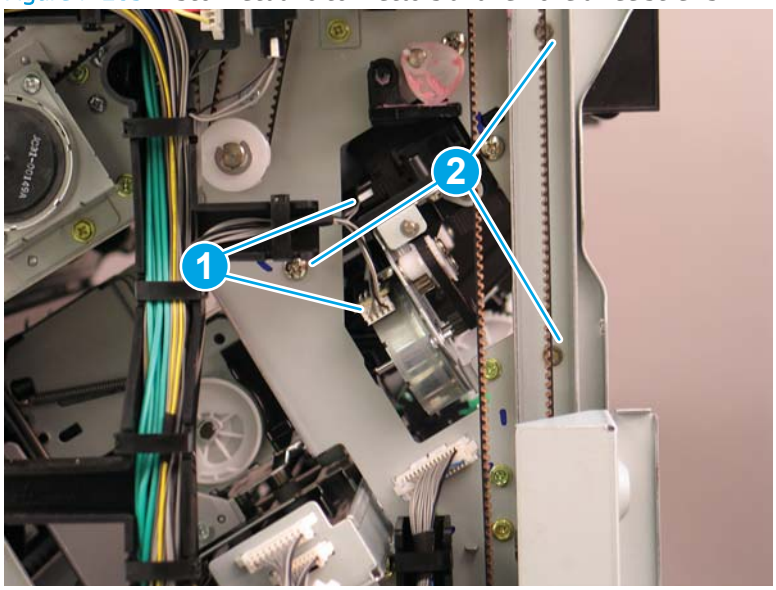
7. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the front and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the front tamper unit.

Figure 7-264 Remove the front tamper shaft



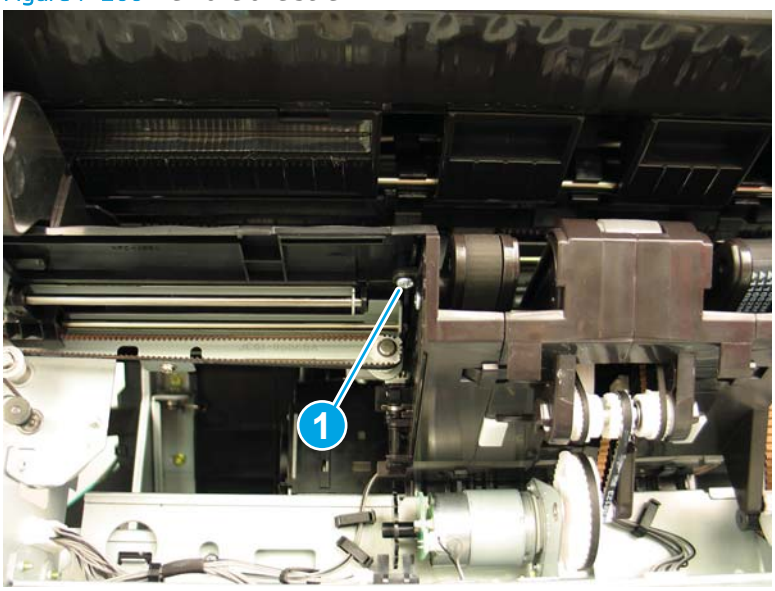
8. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 7-265 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws



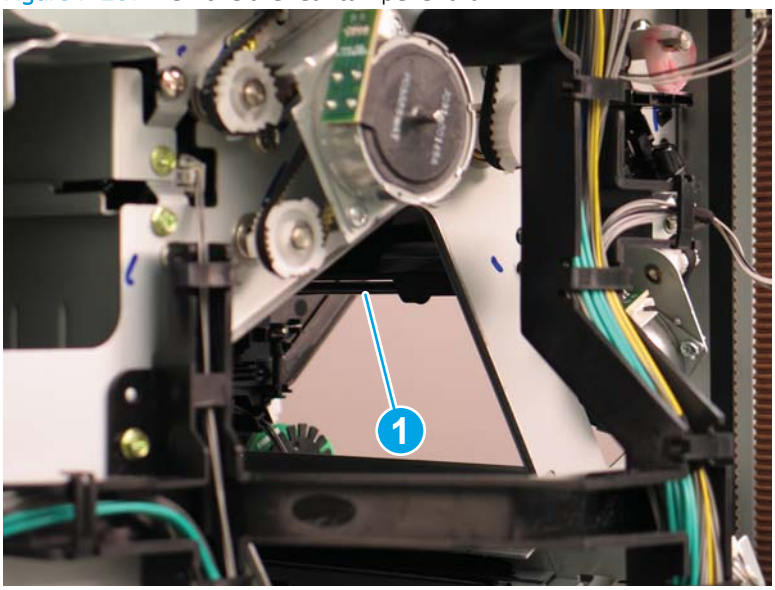
9. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 7-266 Remove one screw



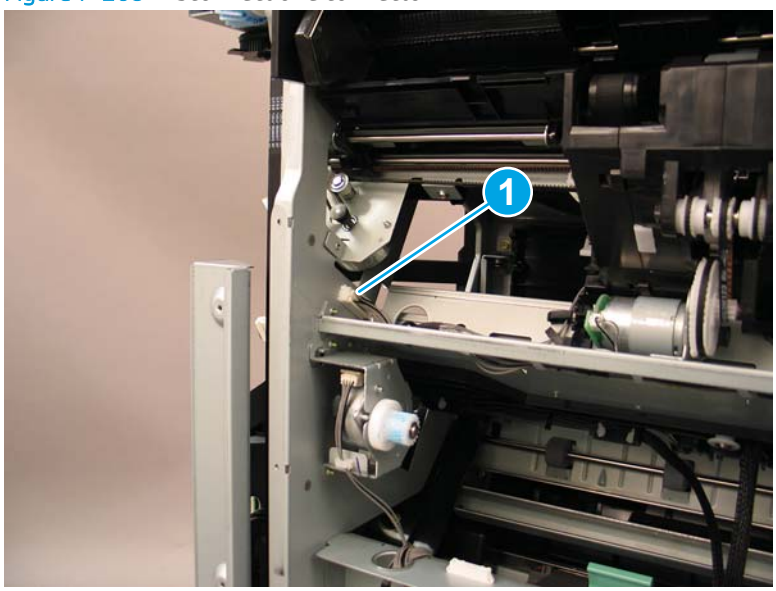
10. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the rear and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the rear tamper unit.

Figure 7-267 Remove the rear tamper shaft



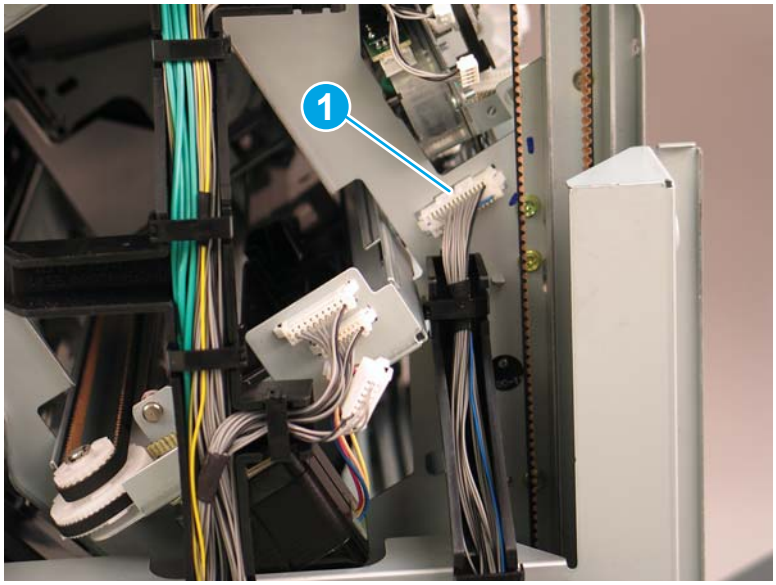
11. At the left side of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 7-268 Disconnect one connector



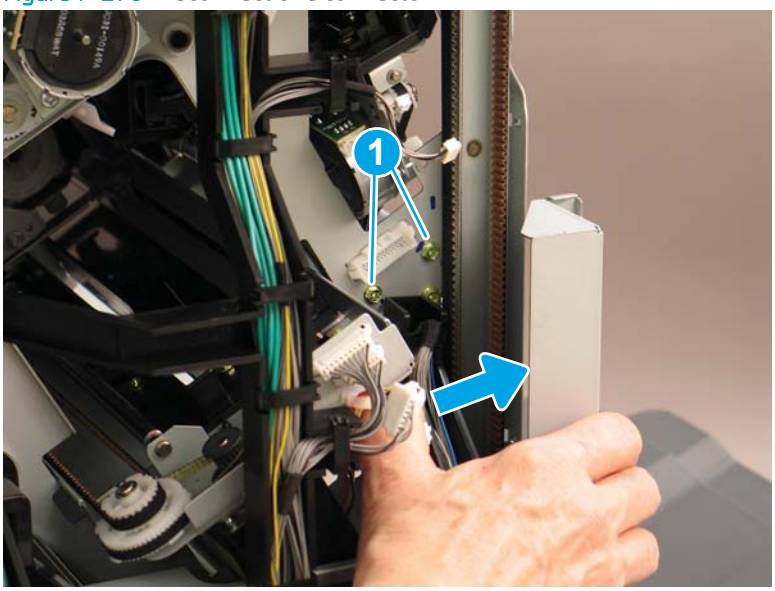
12. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 7-269 Disconnect one connector



13. At the rear of the finisher, press the wire retainer to the right to access and remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-270 Disconnect one connector

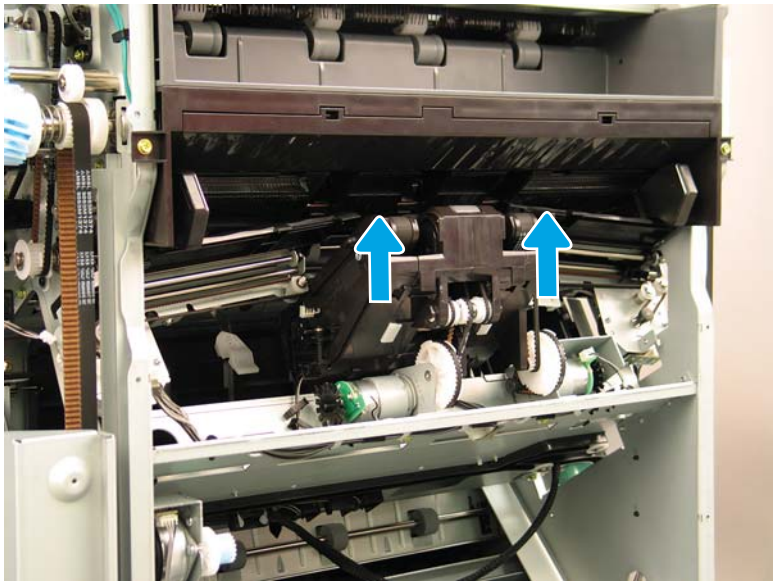


14. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-271 Remove two screws

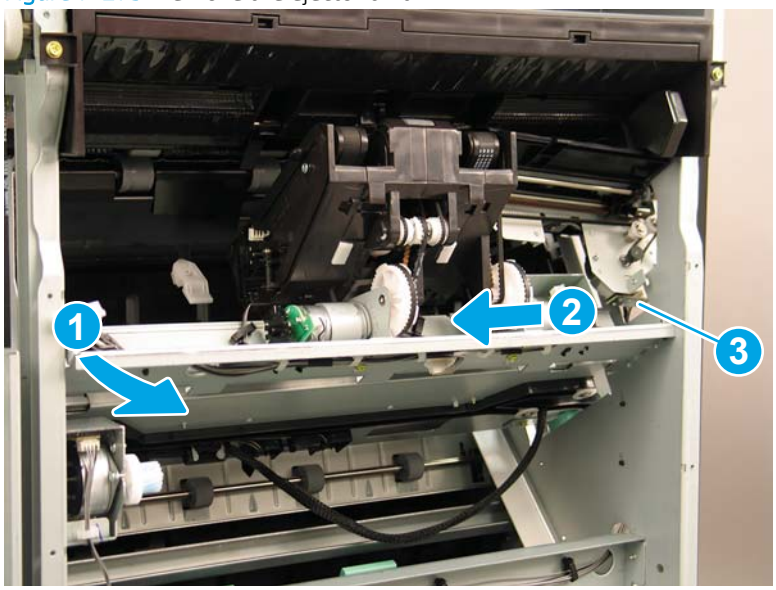
15. Lift the inside edges of the front and rear tampers up.

Figure 7-272 Lift the edges of the tampers



16. Rotate the rear edge of the ejector unit away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide it toward the rear of the finisher (callout 2) to remove it. Make sure that the PCA (callout 3) stays clear of the sheet metal frame.

Figure 7-273 Remove the ejector unit



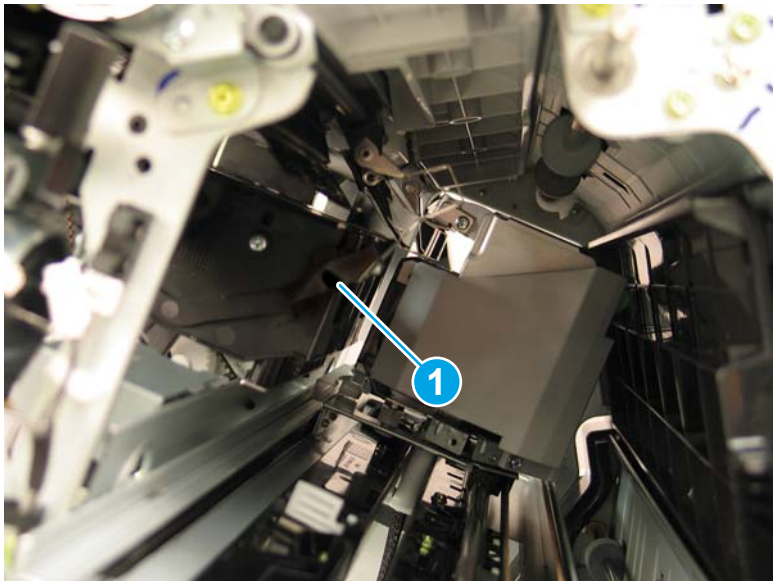
17. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Ejector unit

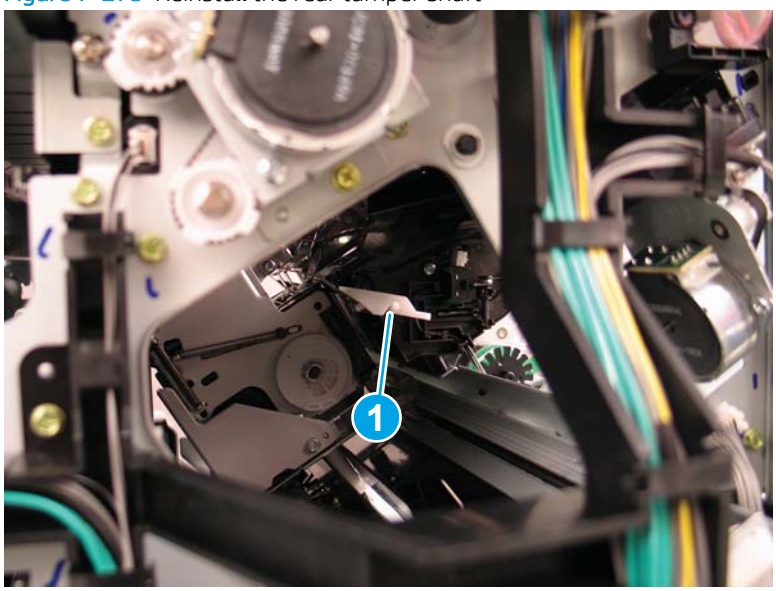
a. When the front tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 7-274 Reinstall the front tamper shaft



b. When the rear tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 7-275 Reinstall the rear tamper shaft

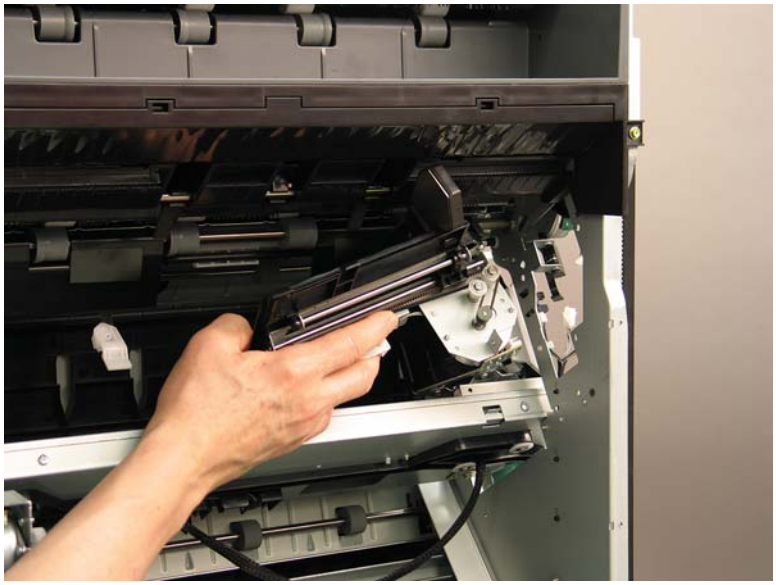


Step 11: Remove the front tamper unit

▲ Lift the front tamper away from the finisher to remove it

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-276 Remove the front tamper



Step 12: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Rear tamper unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Remove the rear cover
- Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)
- Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)
- Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)
- Step 11: Remove the rear tamper unit
- Step 12: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the rear tamper unit on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Rear tamper unit part number	
SAM-JC90-01465A	Finisher Sub - Tamper Rear

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

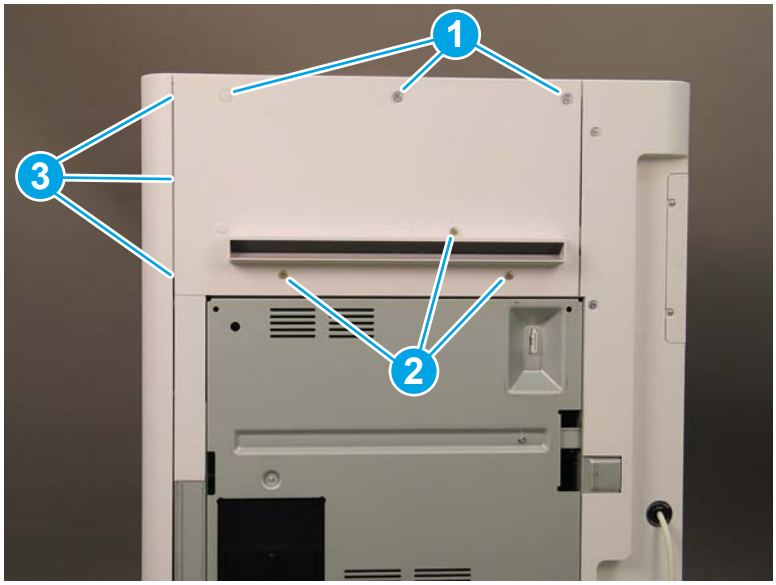
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

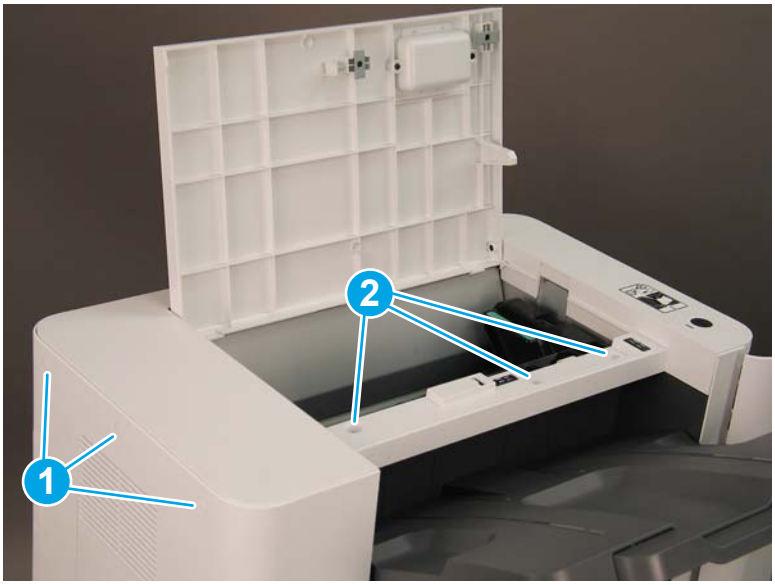
Figure 7-277 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

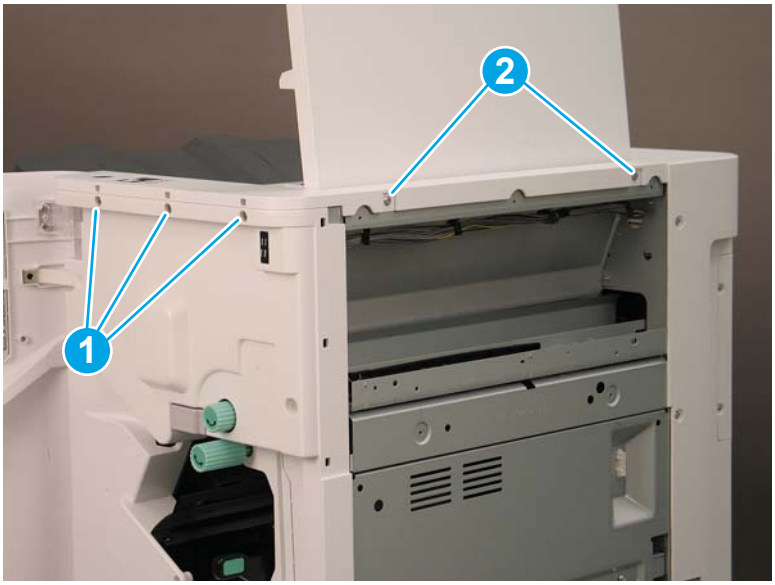
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-278 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

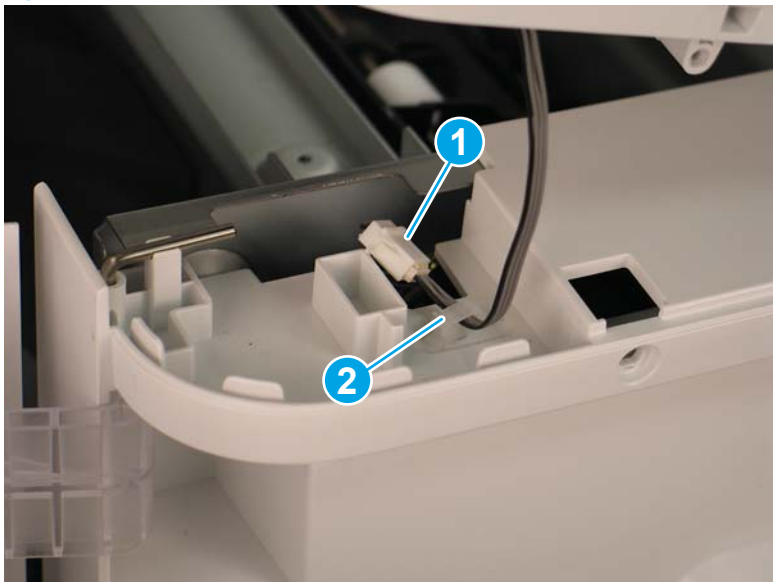
Figure 7-279 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-280 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

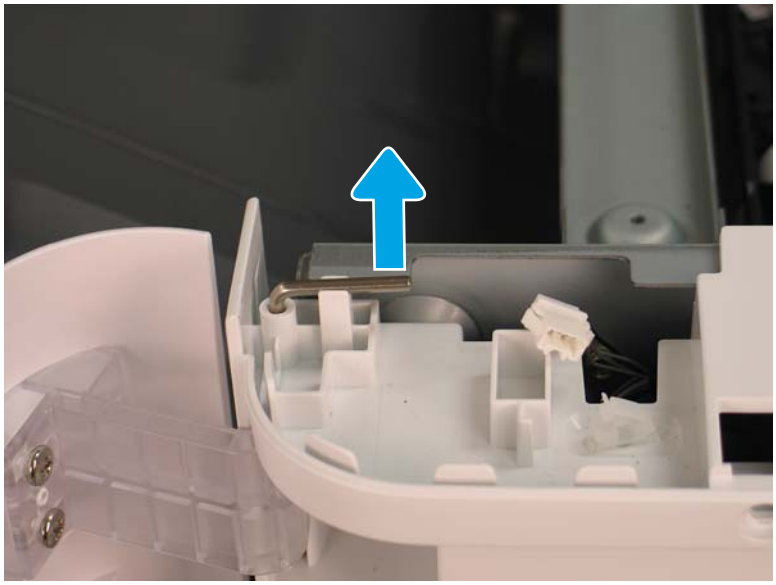


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

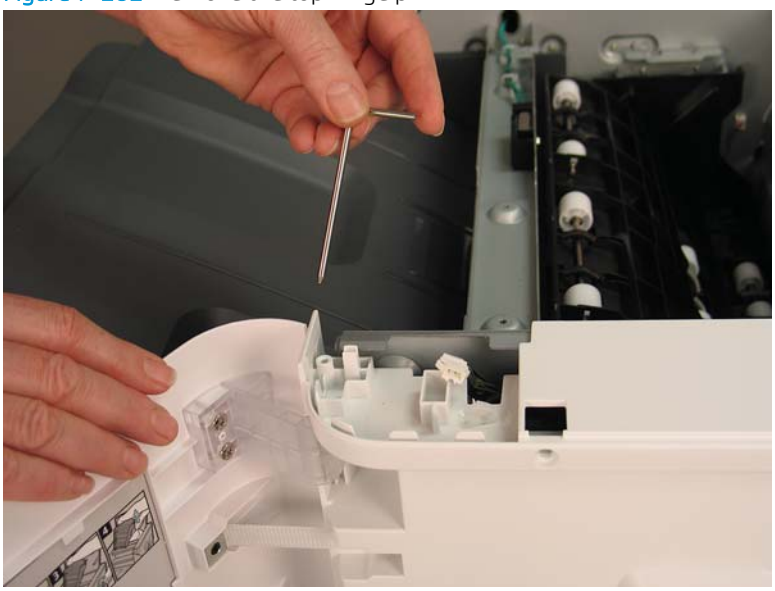
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 7-281 Lift the top hinge pin



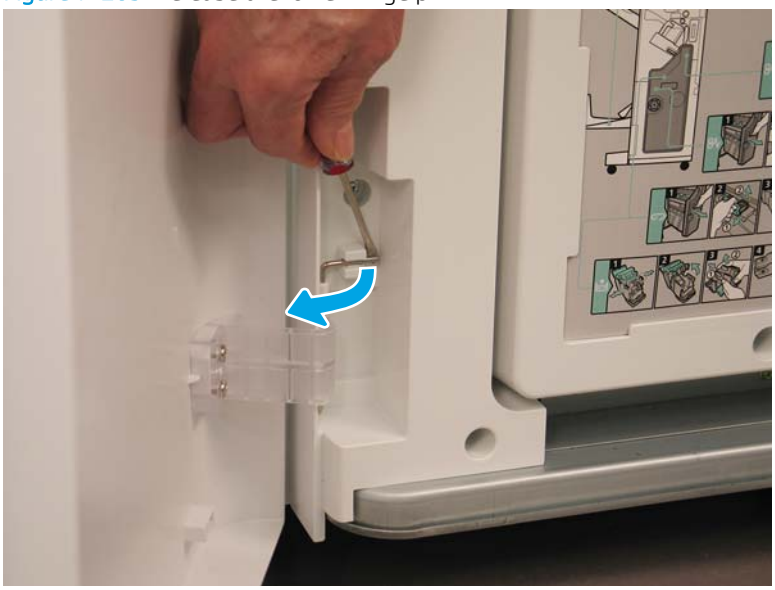
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 7-282 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 7-283 Release the lower hinge pin



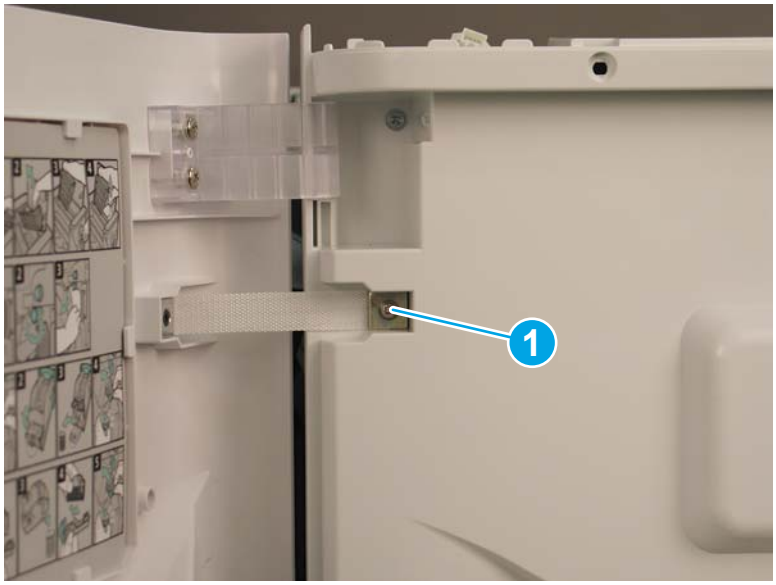
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 7-284 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

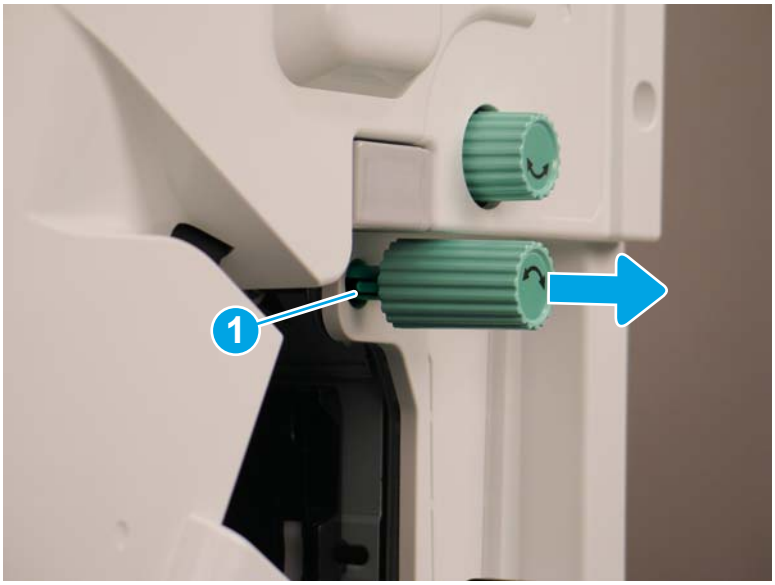
Figure 7-285 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

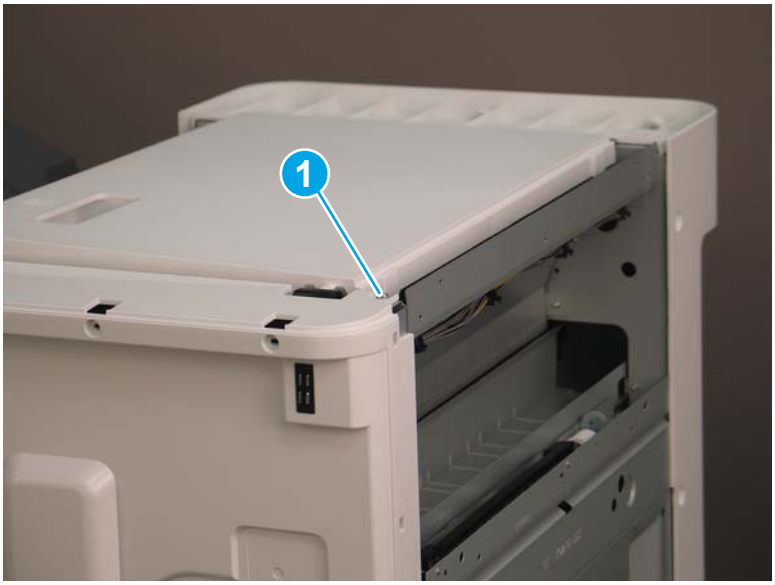
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 7-286 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

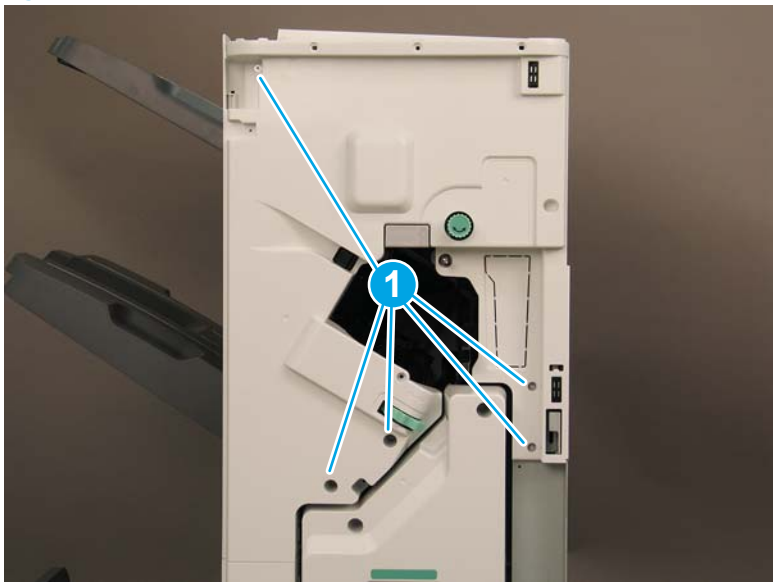
Figure 7-287 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

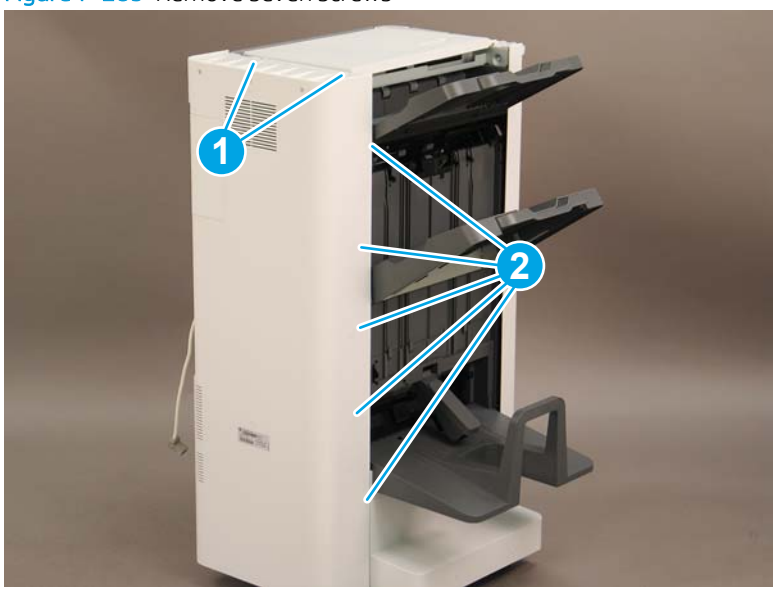
Figure 7-288 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 5: Remove the rear cover

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-289 Remove seven screws

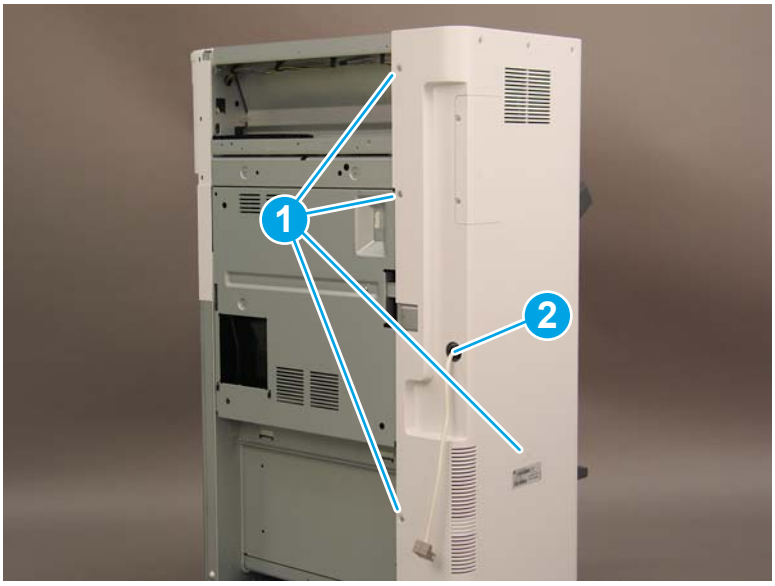


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

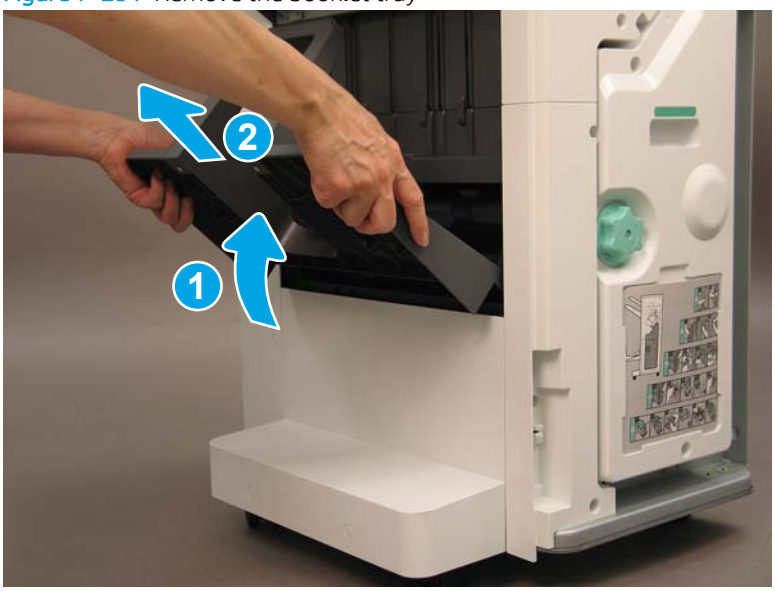
Figure 7-290 Remove four screws and the rear cover



Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 7-291 Remove the booklet tray



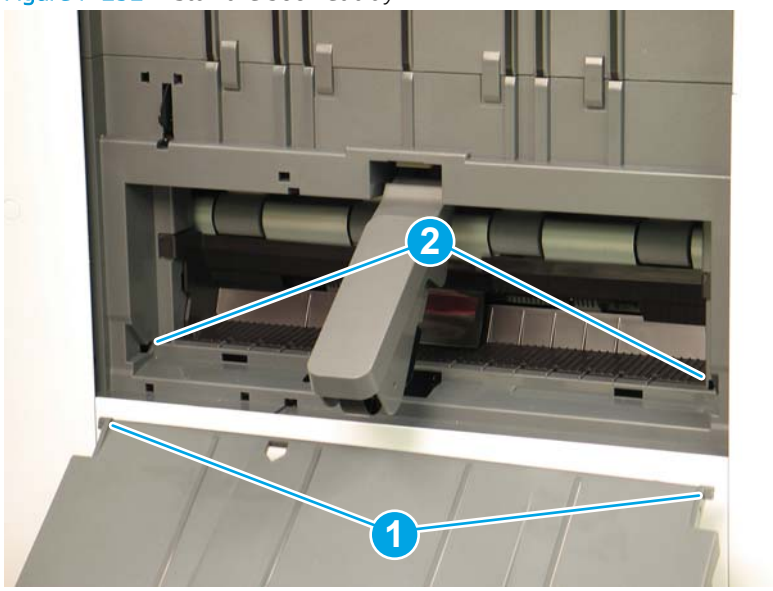
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

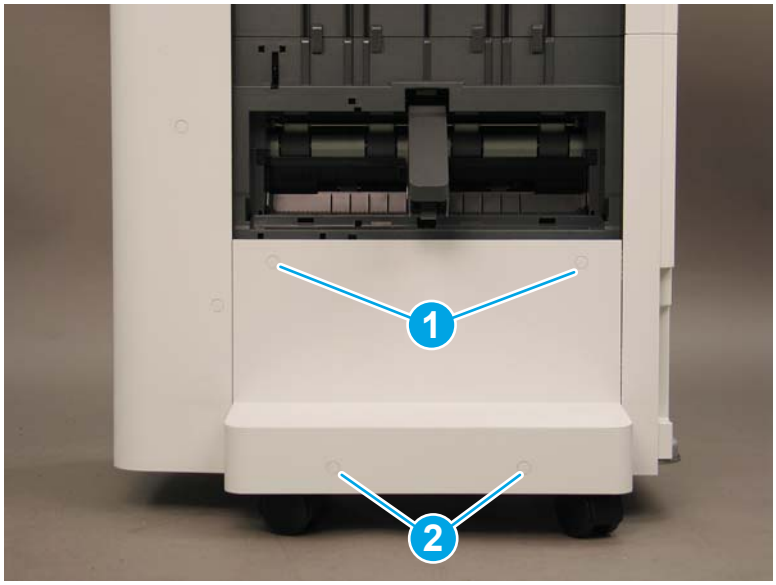
Figure 7-292 Install the booklet tray



Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 7-293 Remove four screws

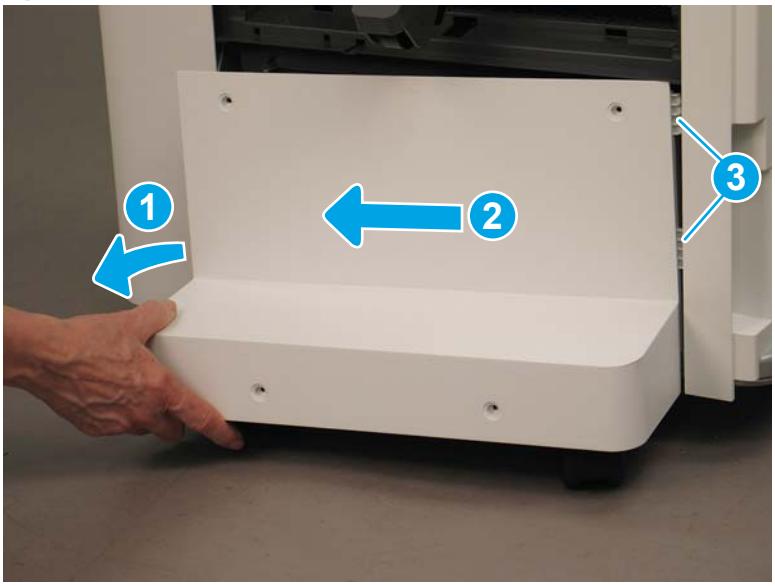


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-294 Remove the caster cover

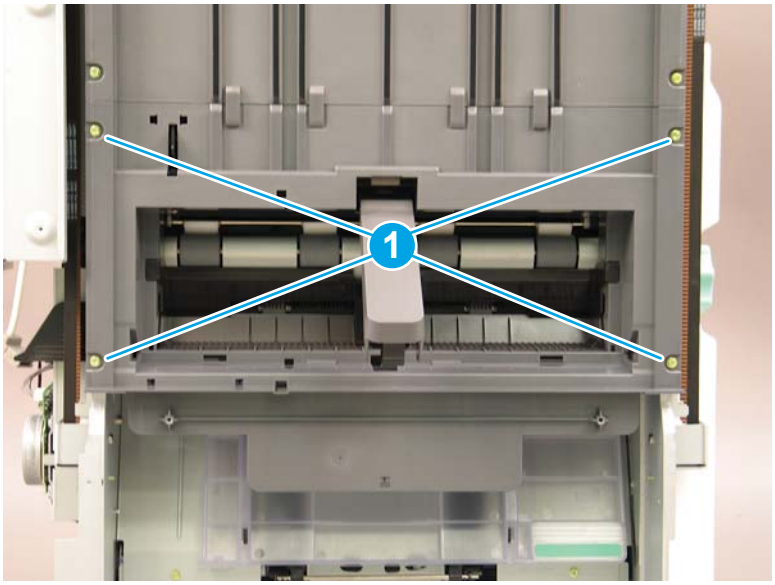


Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raise the lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 7-295 Remove four screws

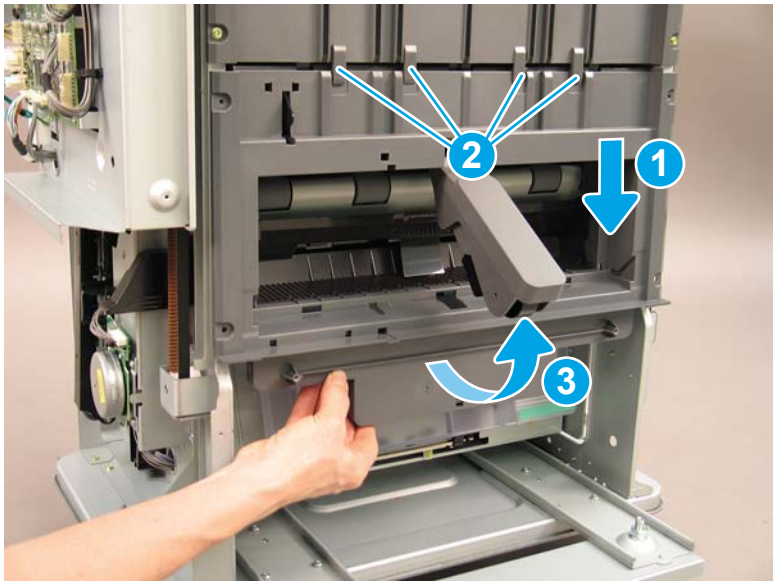


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

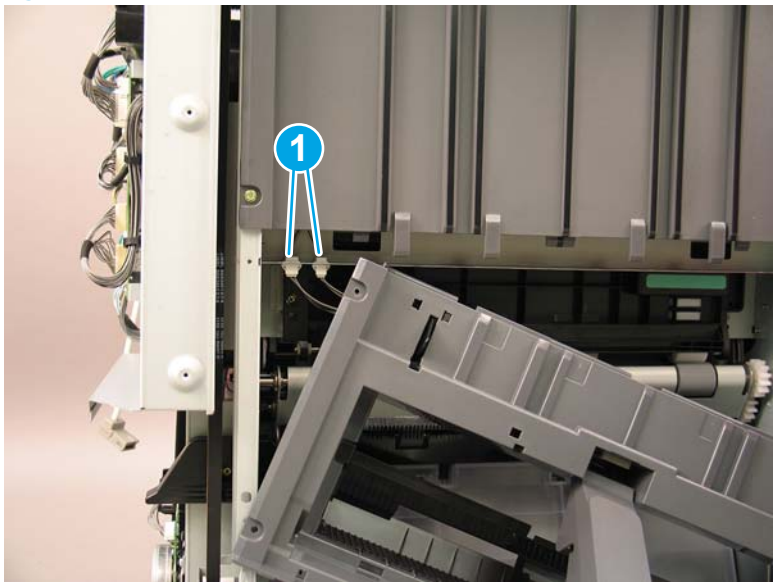
Figure 7-296 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

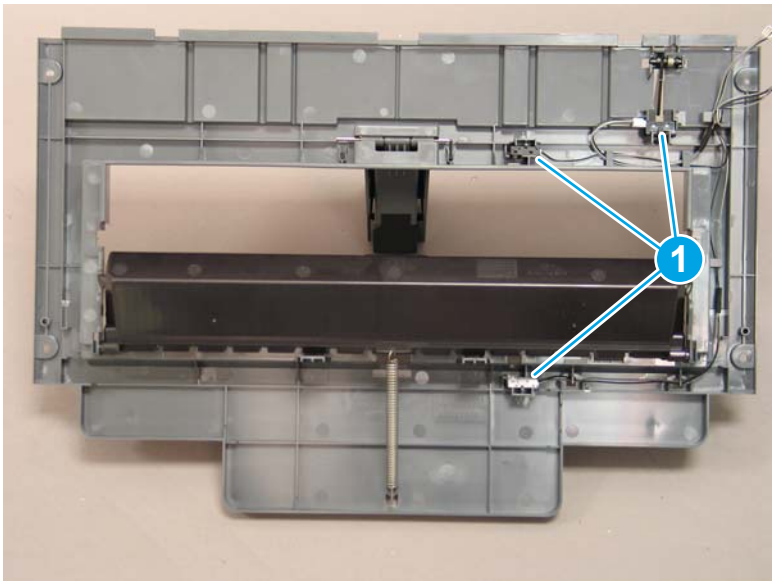
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-297 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the lower shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the lower shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

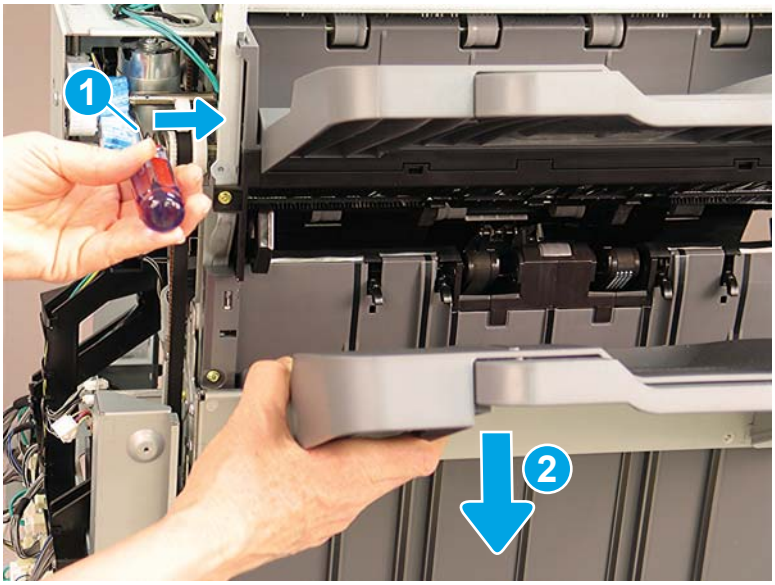
Figure 7-298 Locate sensors



Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)

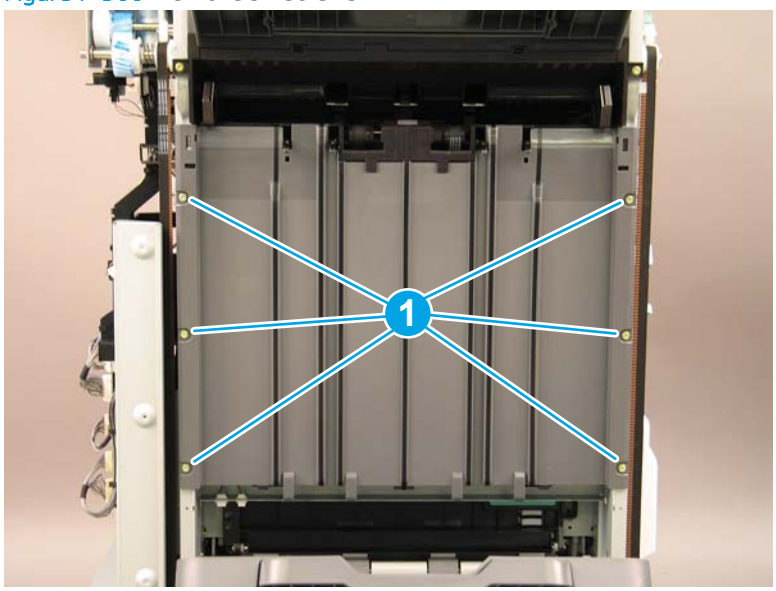
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 7-299 Lower the output tray



2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-300 Remove six screws

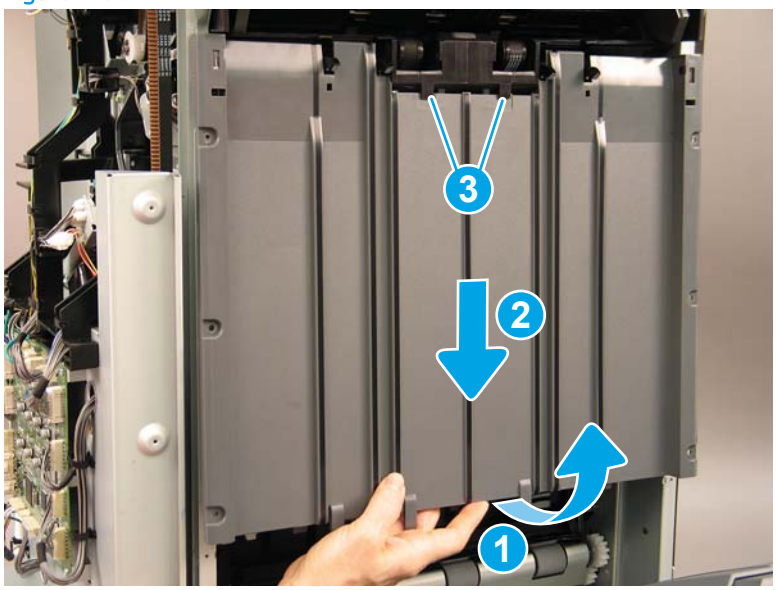


3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

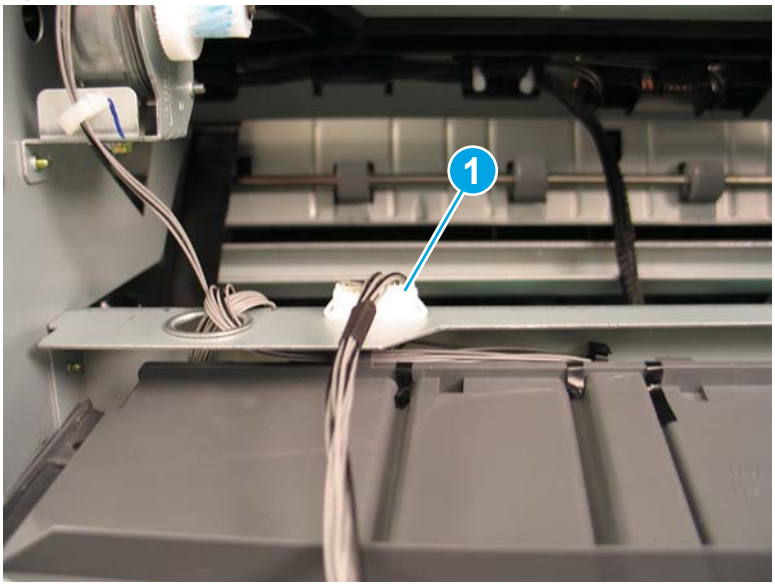
Figure 7-301 Release the shield



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.

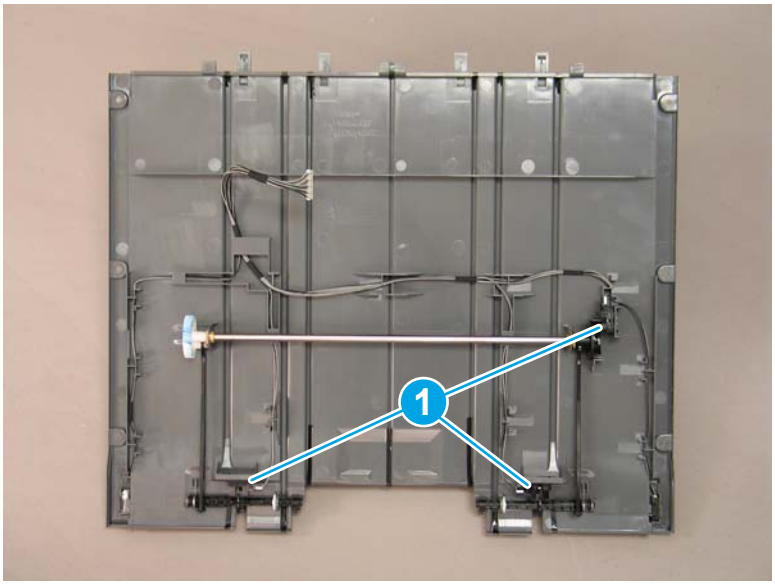
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-302 Disconnect one connector



5. If you are replacing the upper shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the upper shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

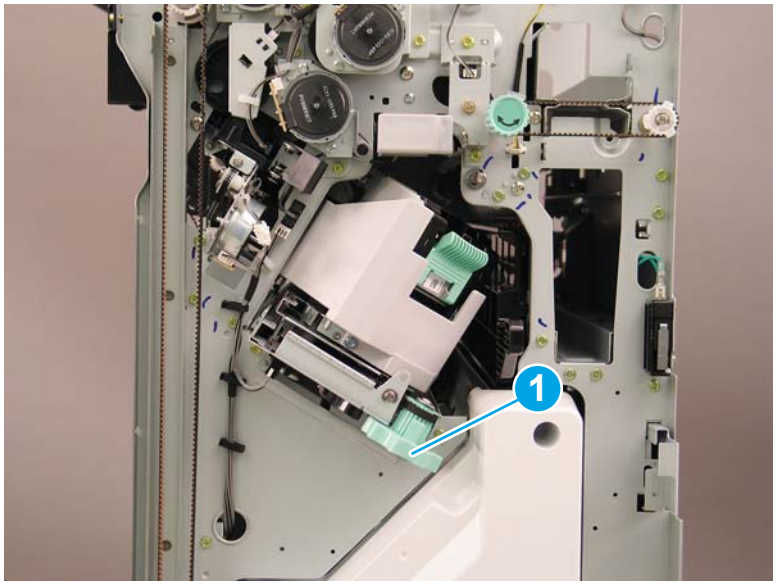
Figure 7-303 Locate sensors



Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)

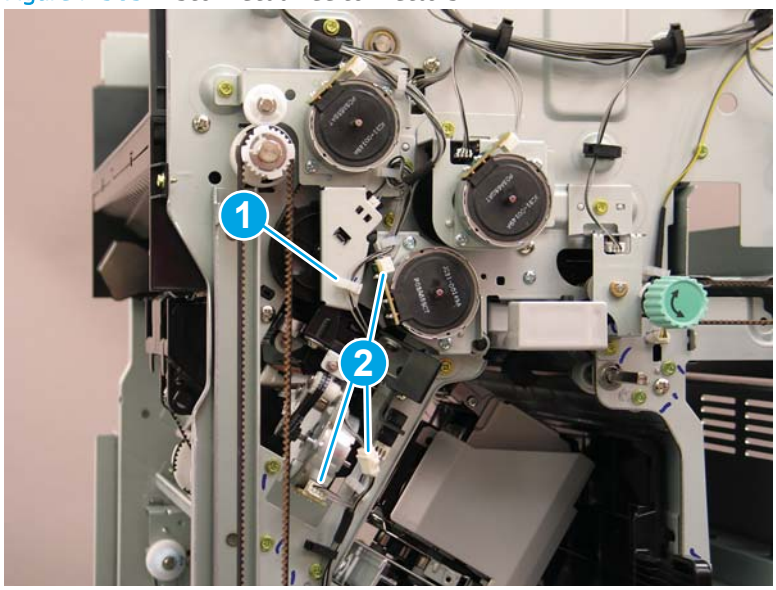
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the center of the finisher.

Figure 7-304 Move the staple unit to the center



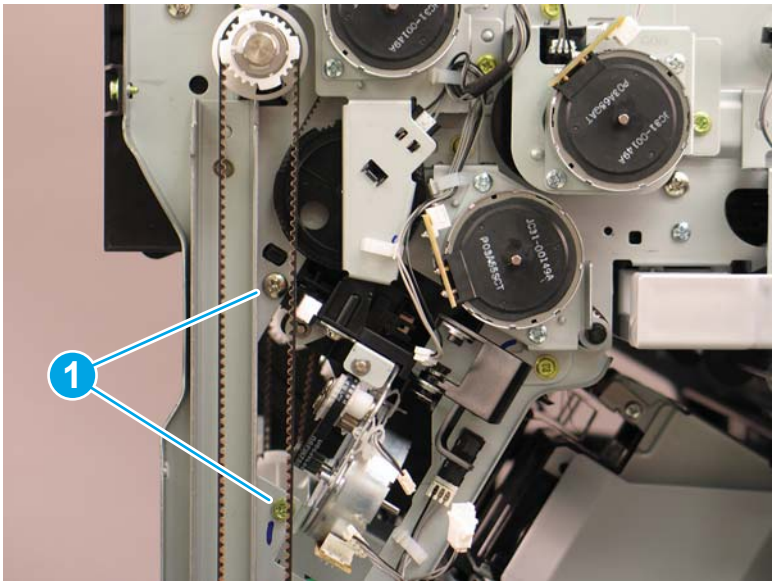
2. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 7-305 Disconnect three connectors



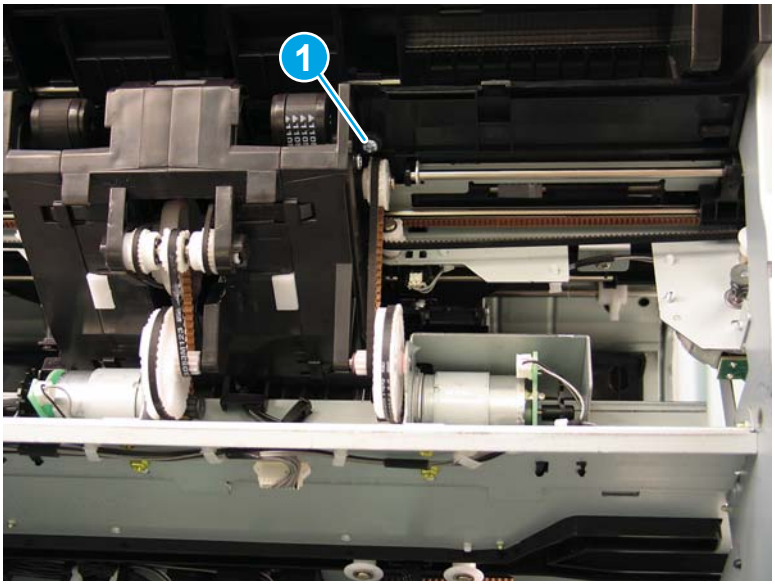
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-306 Remove two screws



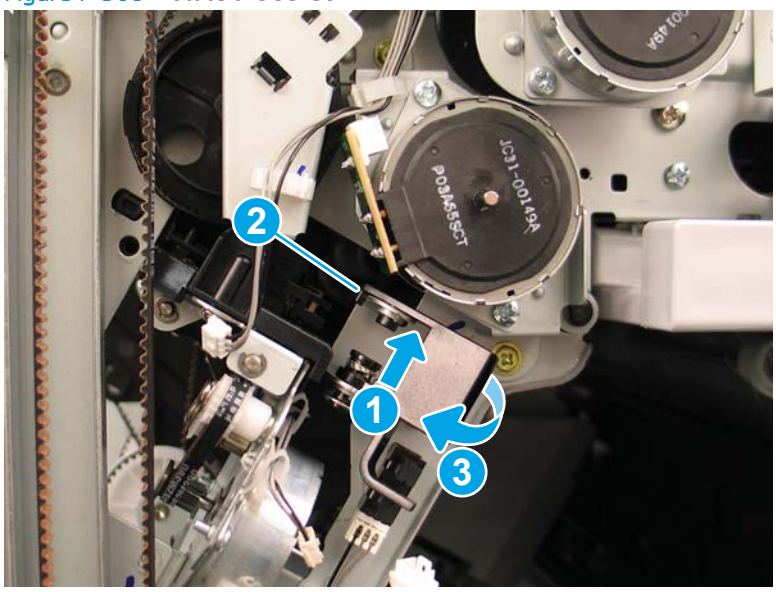
4. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 7-307 Remove one screw



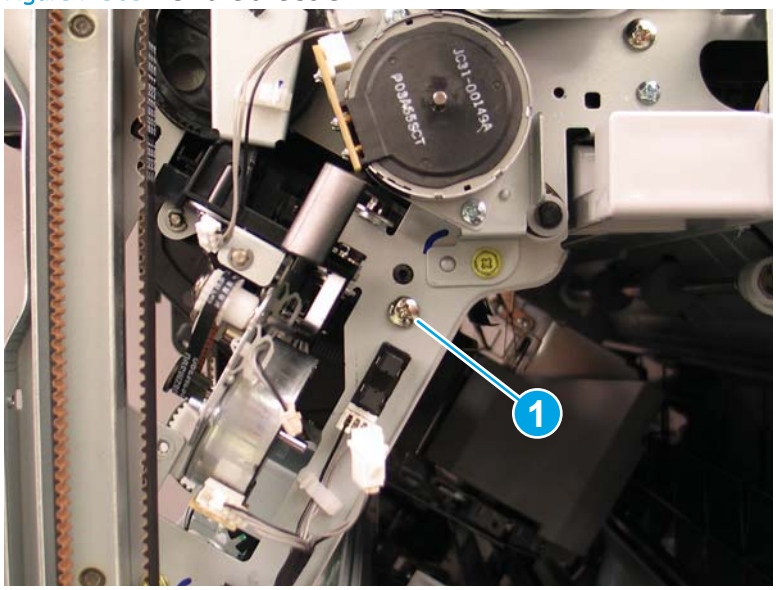
5. Press up on the hinge (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then rotate the sensor away from the finisher (callout 3).

Figure 7-308 Rotate the sensor



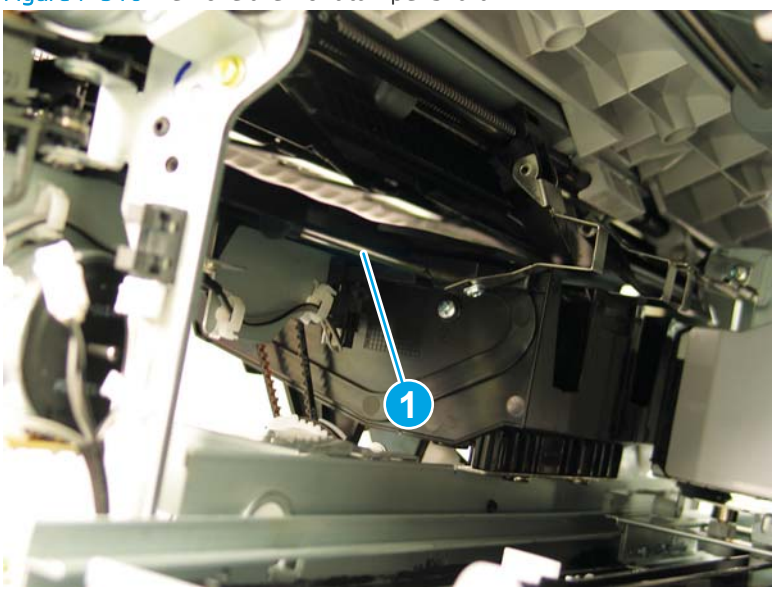
6. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 7-309 Remove one screw



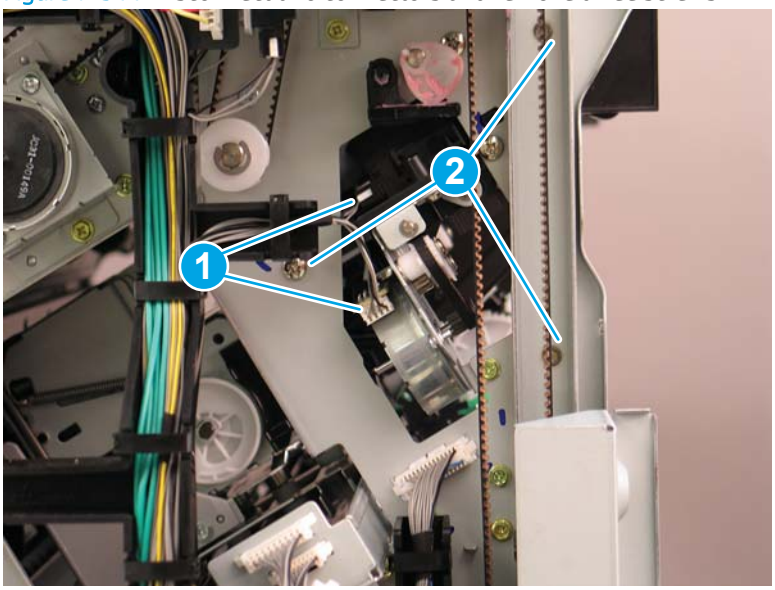
7. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the front and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the front tamper unit.

Figure 7-310 Remove the front tamper shaft



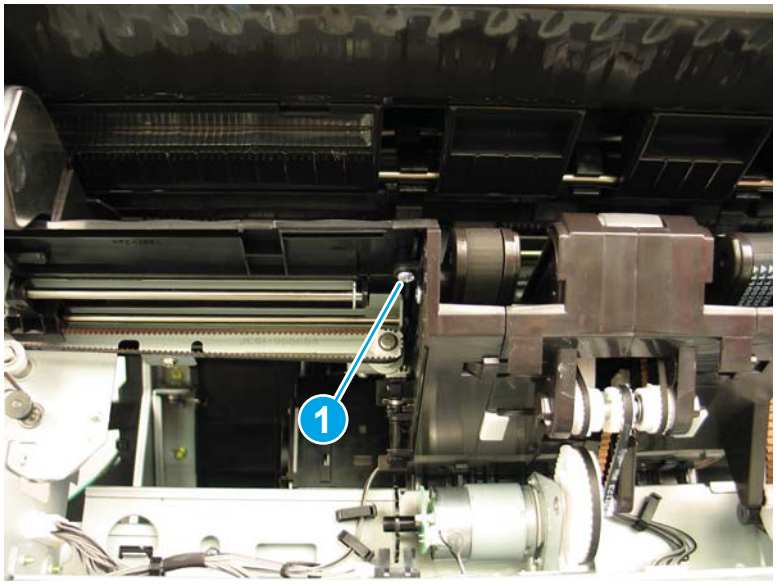
8. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 7-311 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws



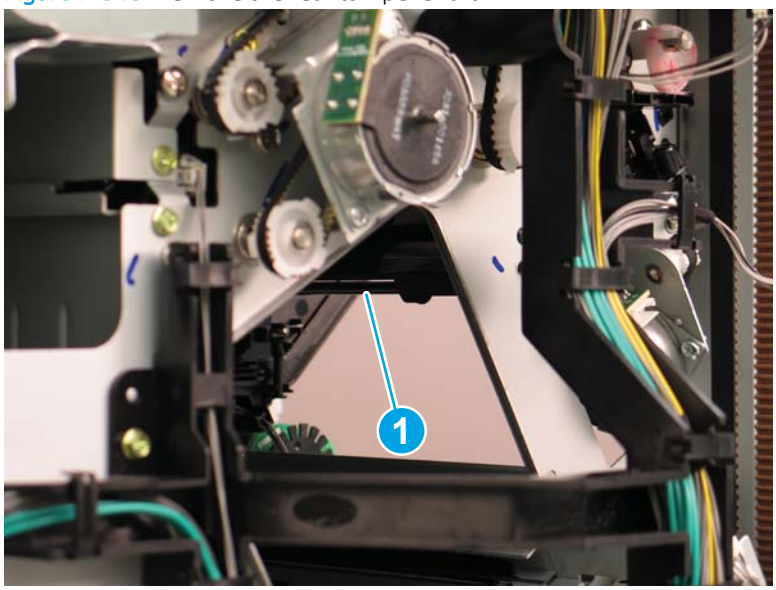
9. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 7-312 Remove one screw



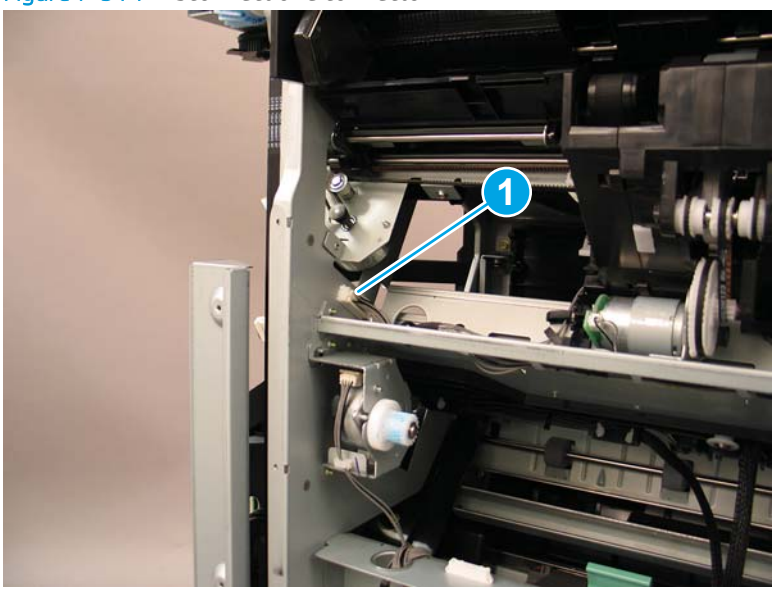
10. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the rear and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the rear tamper unit.

Figure 7-313 Remove the rear tamper shaft



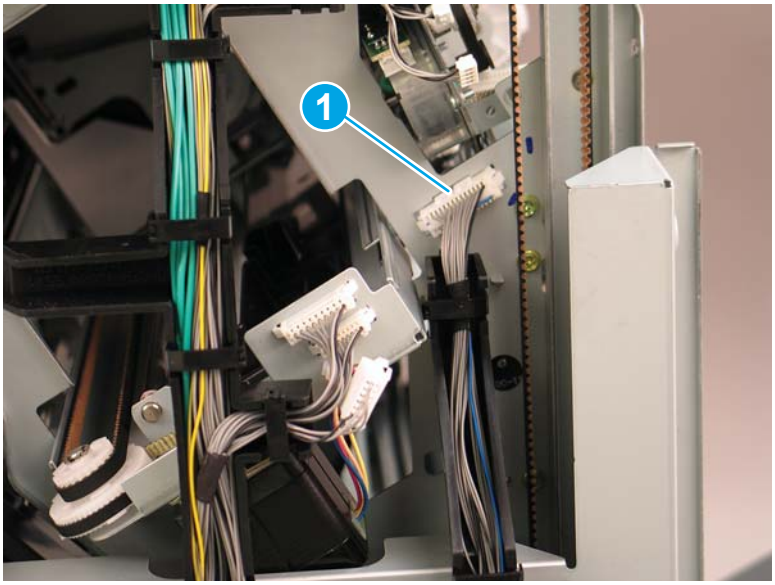
11. At the left side of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 7-314 Disconnect one connector



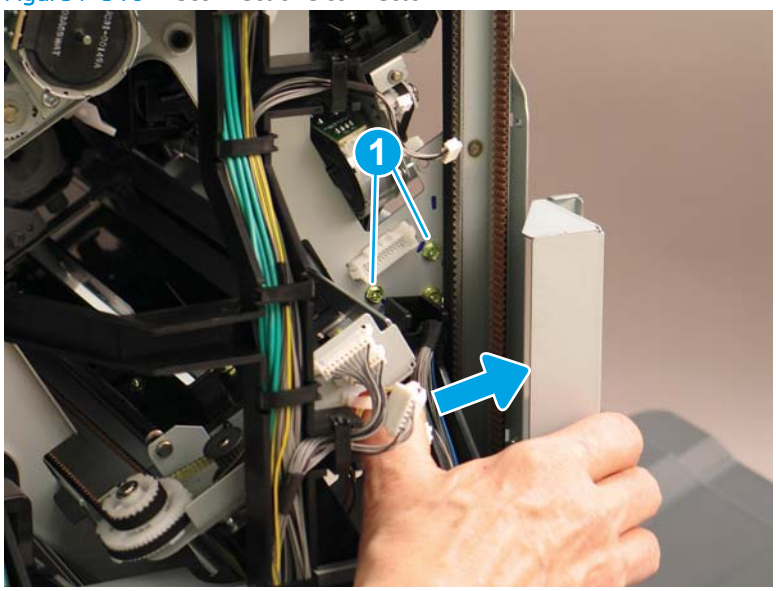
12. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 7-315 Disconnect one connector



13. At the rear of the finisher, press the wire retainer to the right to access and remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-316 Disconnect one connector

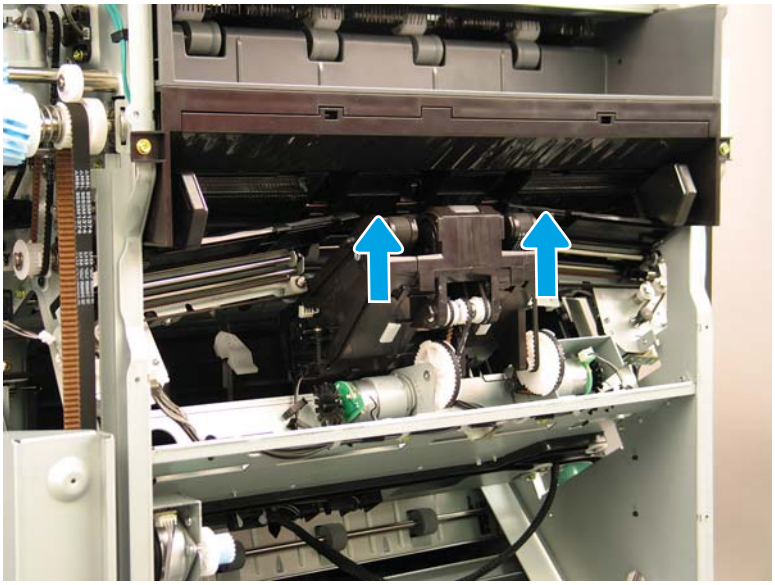


14. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-317 Remove two screws

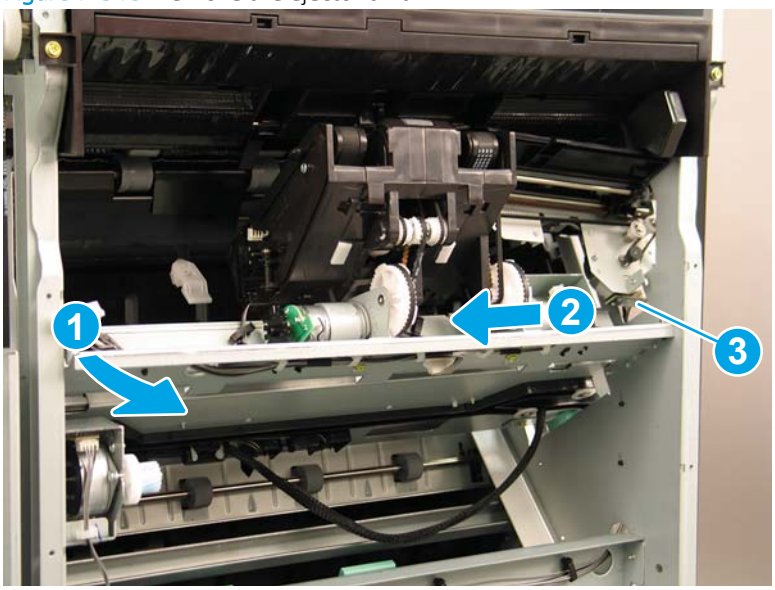
15. Lift the inside edges of the front and rear tampers up.

Figure 7-318 Lift the edges of the tampers



16. Rotate the rear edge of the ejector unit away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide it toward the rear of the finisher (callout 2) to remove it. Make sure that the PCA (callout 3) stays clear of the sheet metal frame.

Figure 7-319 Remove the ejector unit



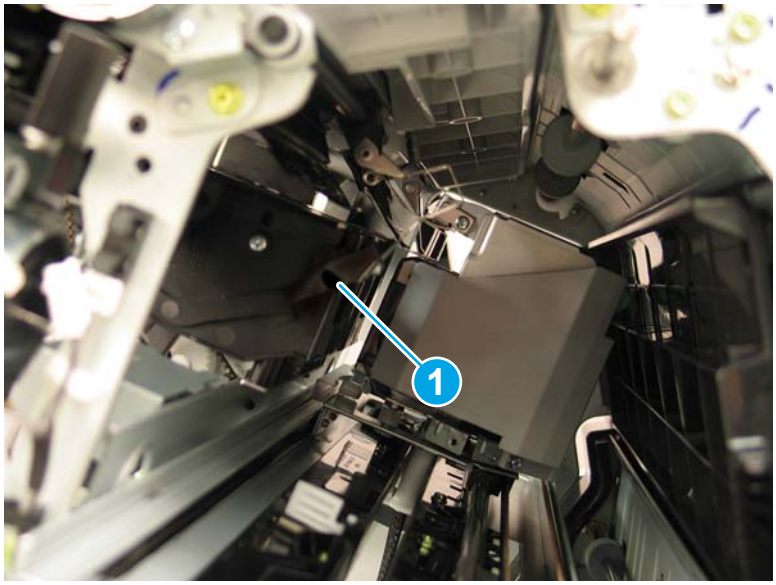
17. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Ejector unit

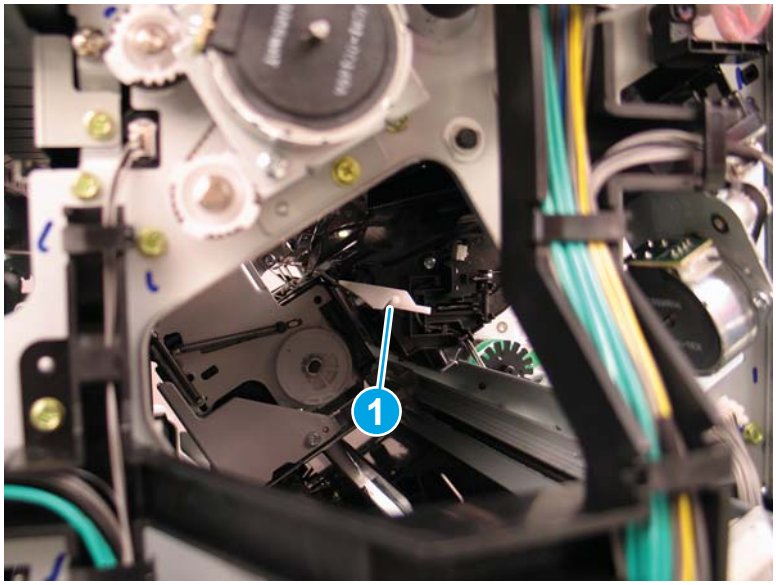
a. When the front tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 7-320 Reinstall the front tamper shaft



b. When the rear tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 7-321 Reinstall the rear tamper shaft

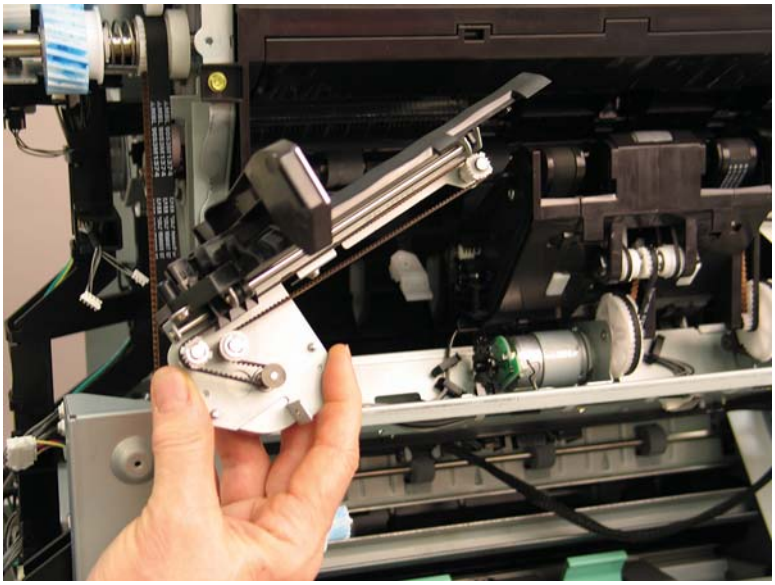


Step 11: Remove the rear tamper unit

▲ Lift the rear tamper away from the finisher to remove it

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-322 Remove the rear tamper



Step 12: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Feed entrance motor (M1)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the feed entrance motor (M1)
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the feed entrance motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Feed entrance motor (M1) part number	
SAM-JC31-00163B	Motor, Step

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

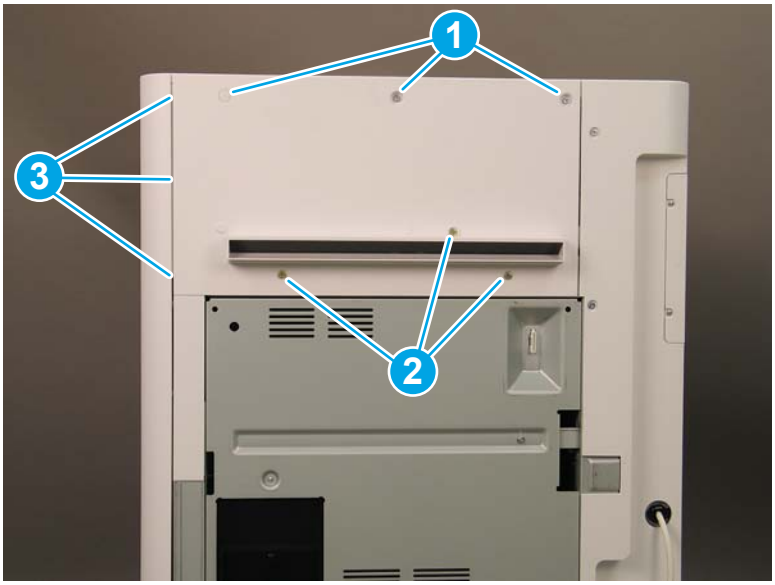
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

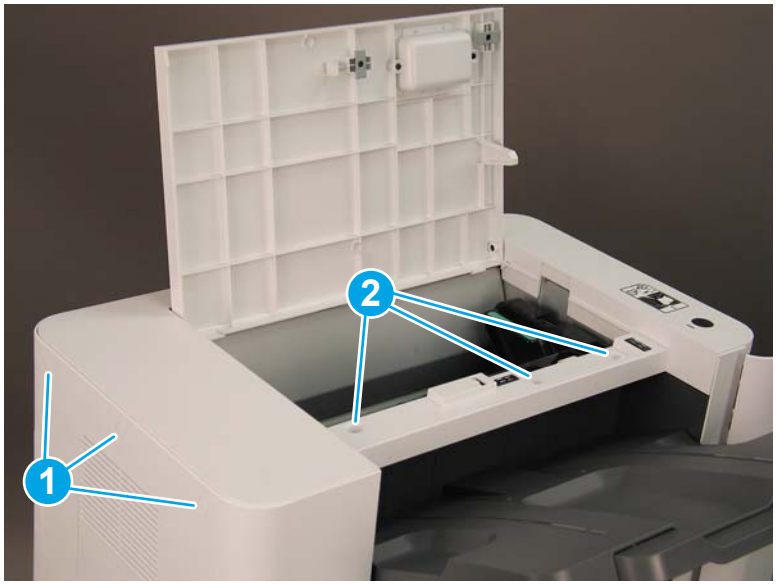
Figure 7-323 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

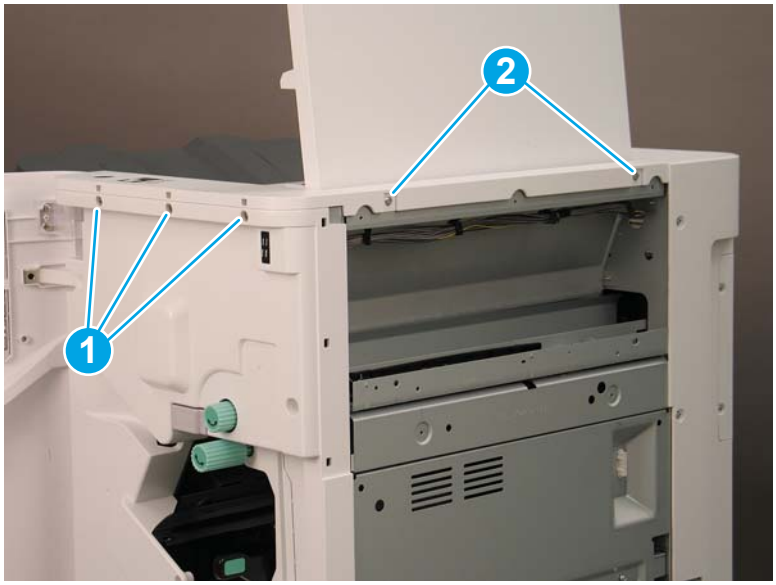
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-324 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

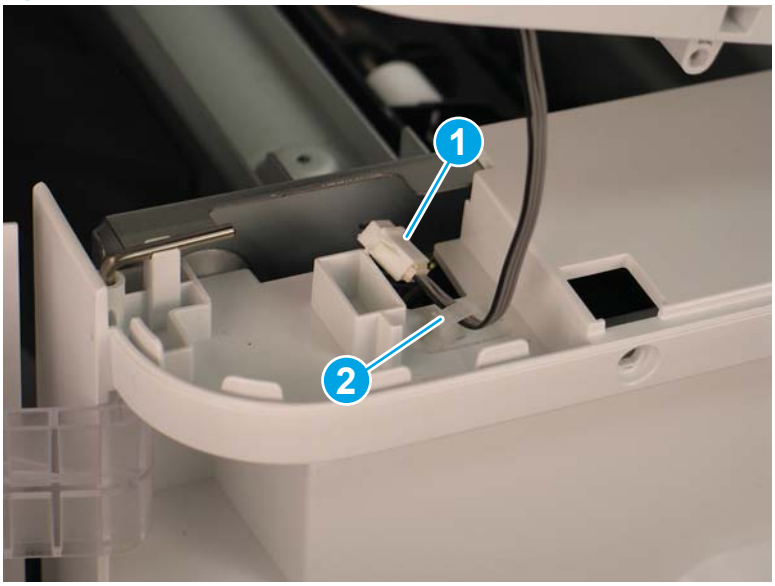
Figure 7-325 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-326 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

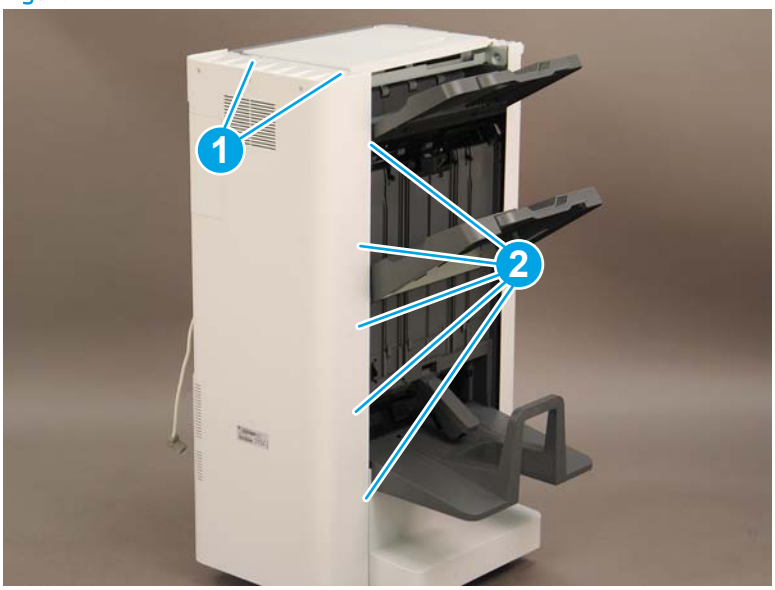


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-327 Remove seven screws

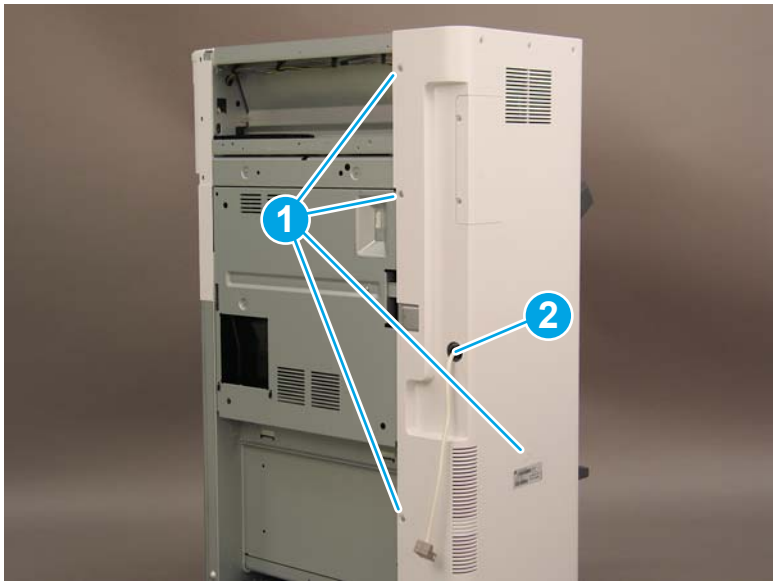


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-328 Remove four screws and the rear cover



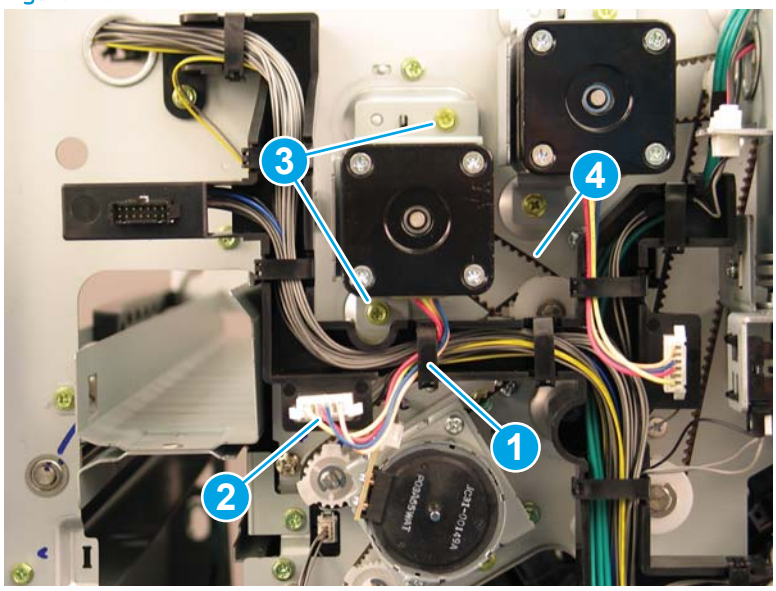
Step 4: Remove the feed entrance motor (M1)

▲ Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2). Remove two screws (callout 3), and then remove the feed entrance motor.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that the belt (callout 4) is positioned on the gear behind the motor when reinstalling the motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-329 Remove the feed entrance motor



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Feed exit motor (M2)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the feed exit motor (M2)
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the feed exit motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Feed exit motor (M2) part number	
SAM-JC31-00163B	Motor, Step

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

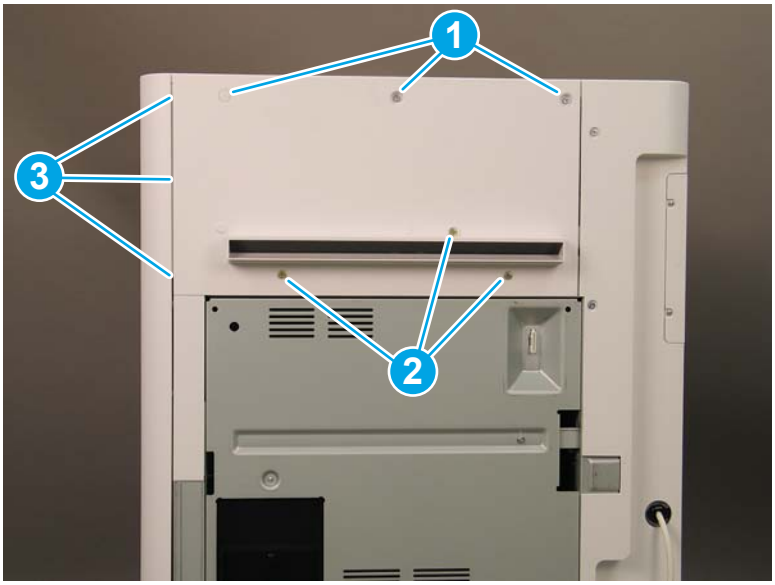
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

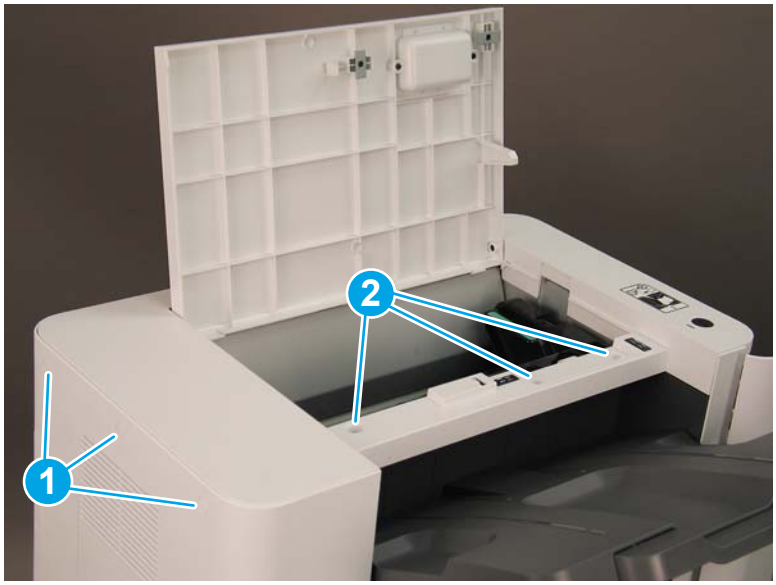
Figure 7-330 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

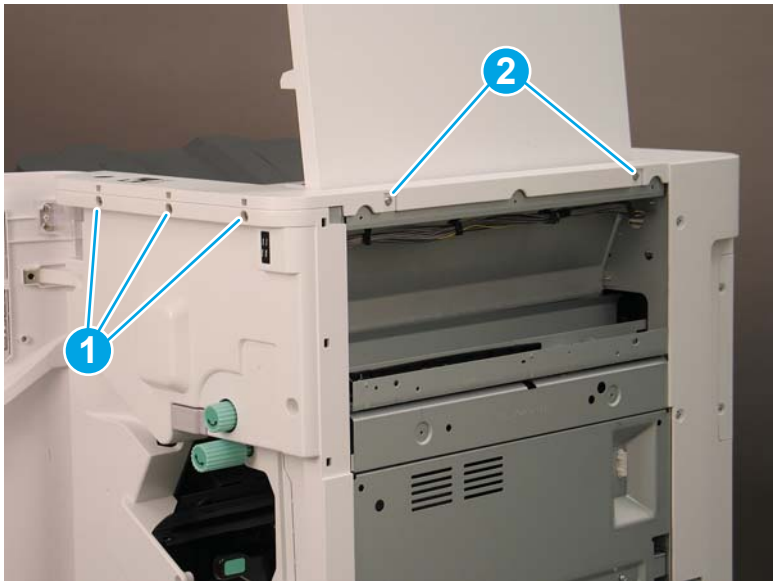
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-331 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

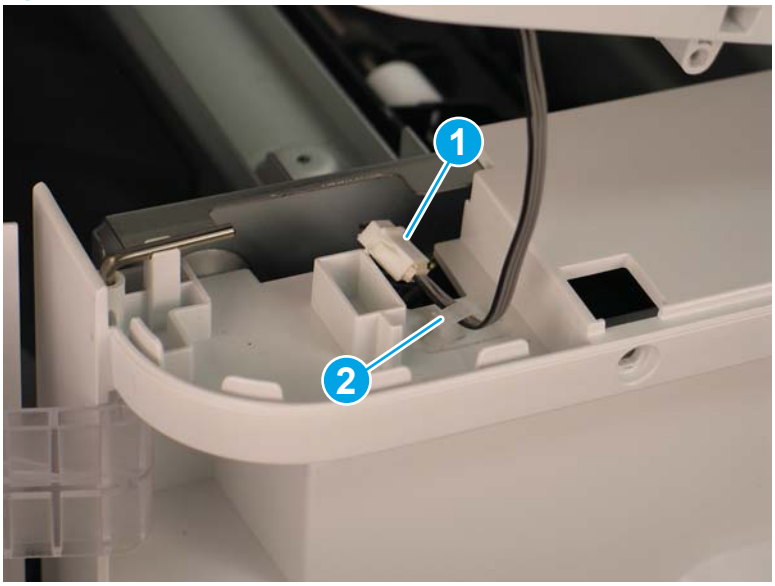
Figure 7-332 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-333 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

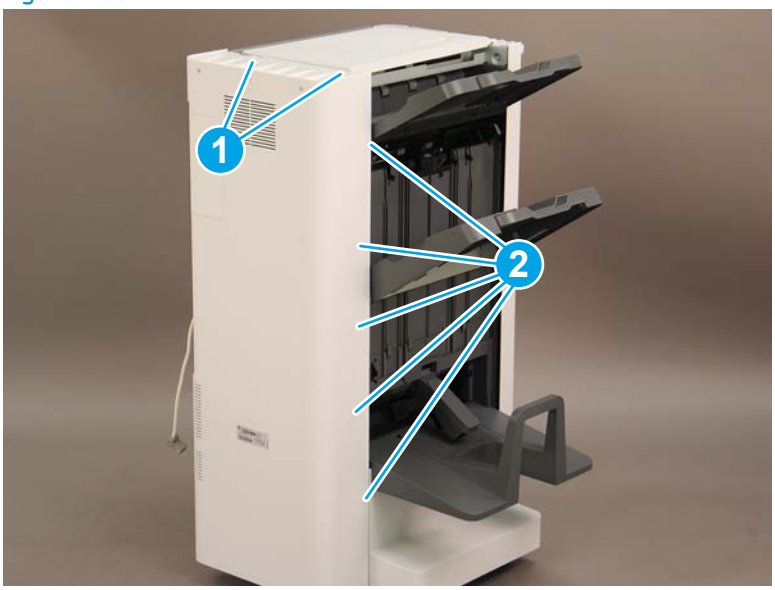


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-334 Remove seven screws

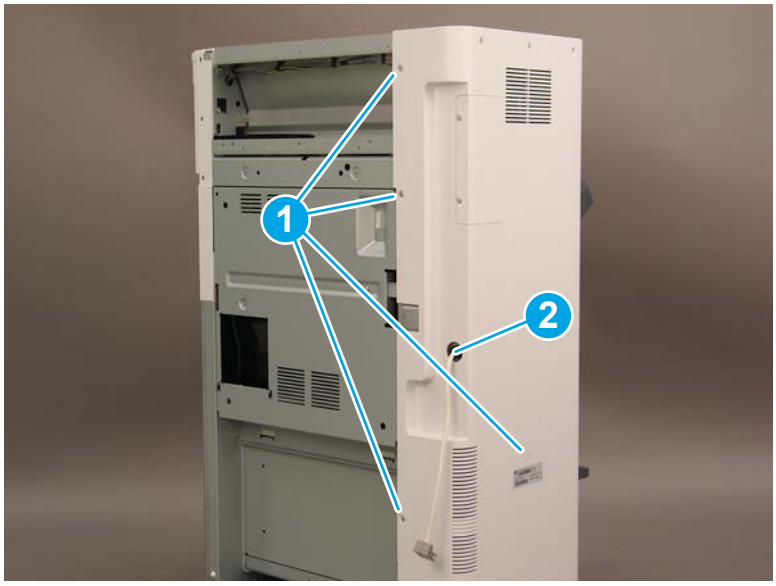


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-335 Remove four screws and the rear cover



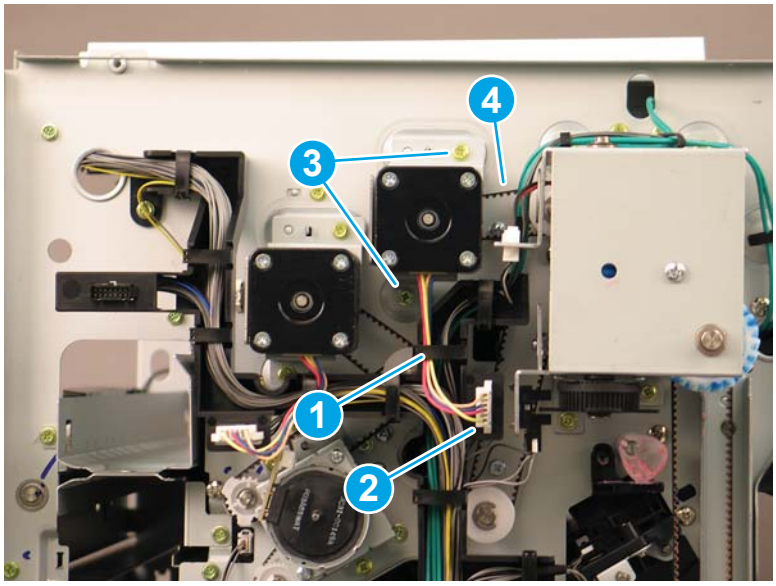
Step 4: Remove the feed exit motor (M2)

▲ Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2). Remove two screws (callout 3), and then remove the feed exit motor.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that the belt (callout 4) is positioned on the gear behind the motor when reinstalling the motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-336 Remove the feed exit motor



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Buffer motor, gear, and sensor (M3)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the buffer motor, gear, and sensor
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the buffer motor, gear, and sensor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Finisher sub - drive buffer part number	
SAM-JC90-01453A	Finisher sub - drive buffer

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

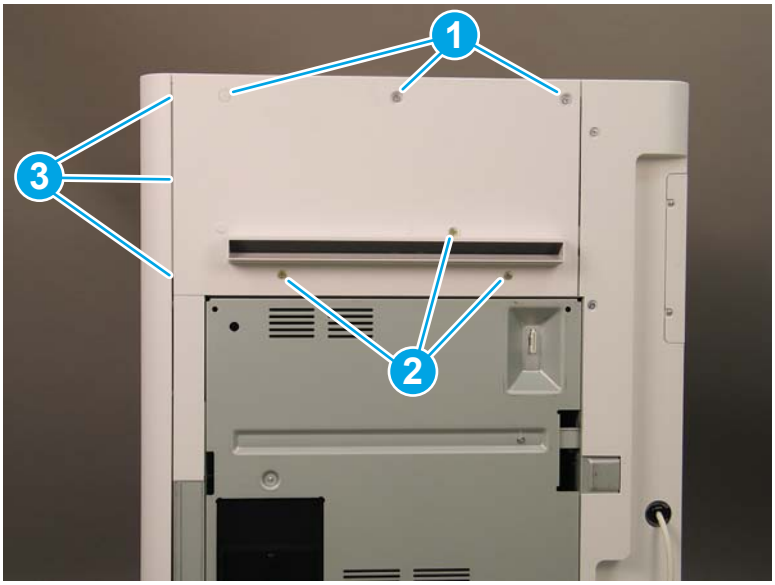
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

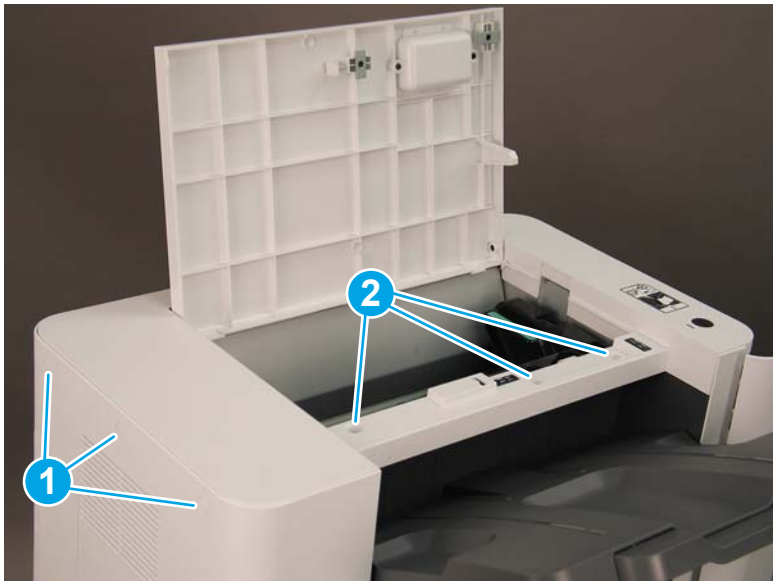
Figure 7-337 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

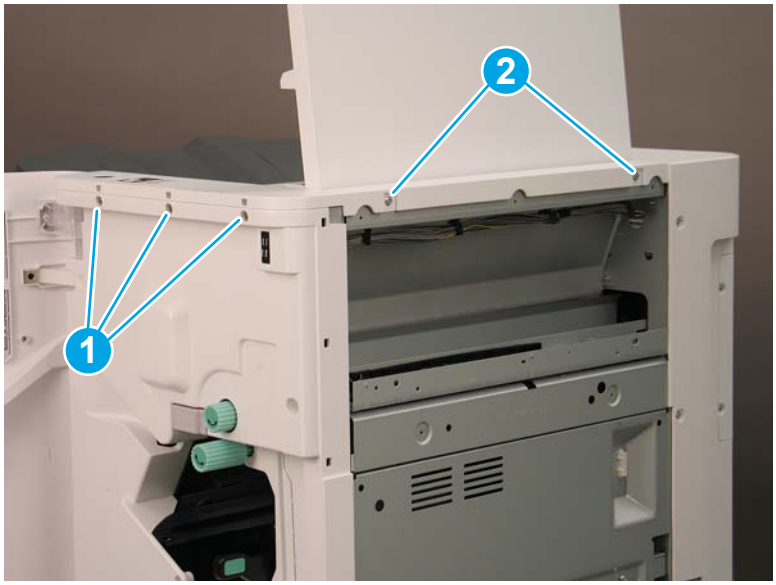
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-338 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

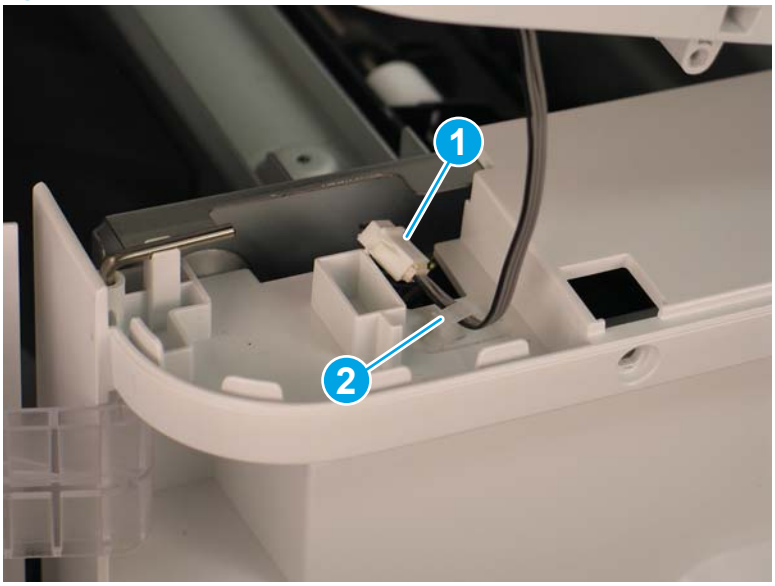
Figure 7-339 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-340 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

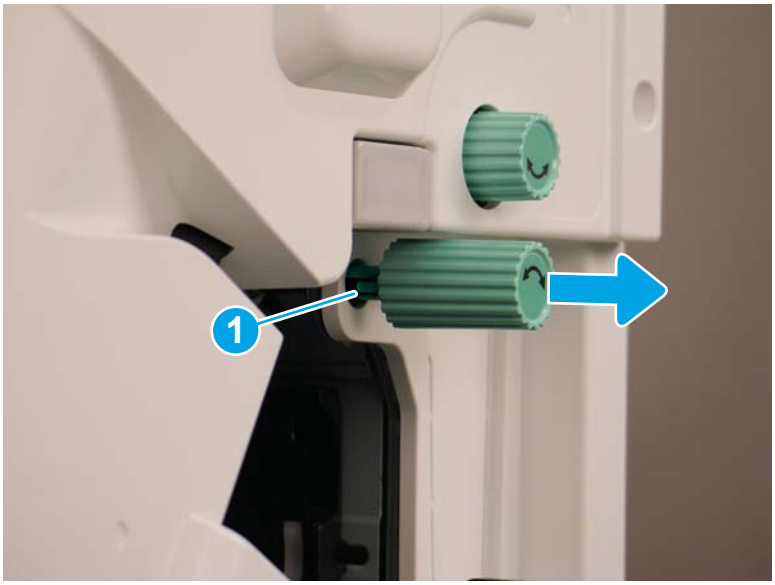


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front cover (finisher)

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 7-341 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

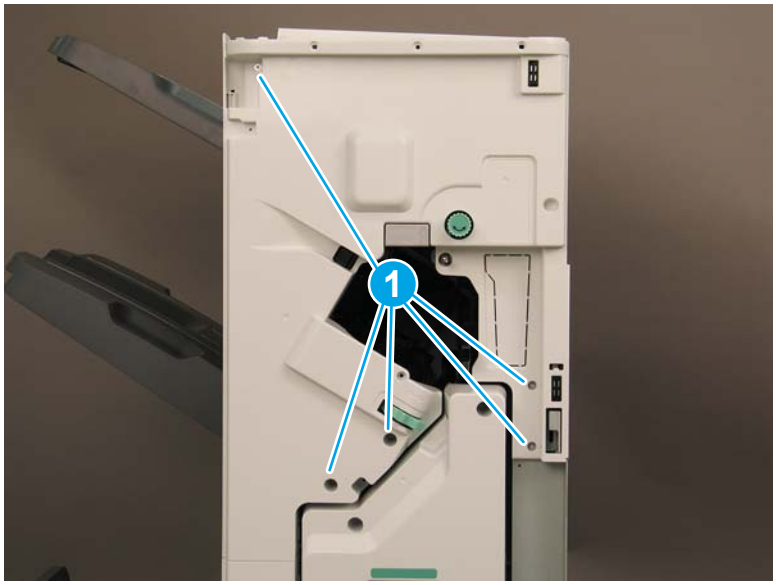
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 7-342 Remove one screw

4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

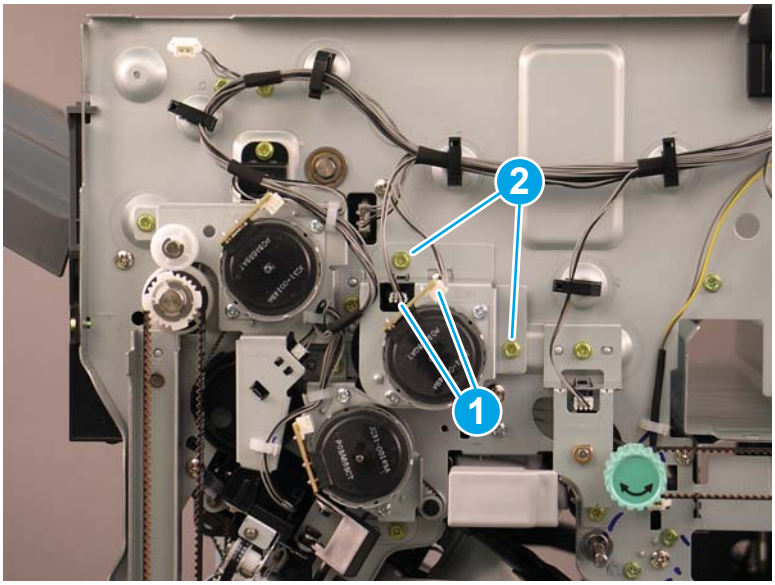
Figure 7-343 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 4: Remove the buffer motor, gear, and sensor

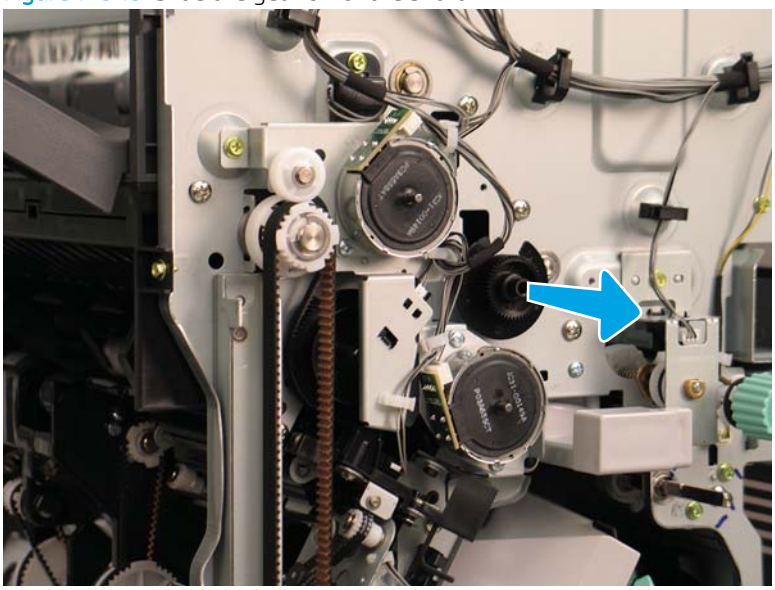
1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

Figure 7-344 Disconnect two connectors and remove two screws



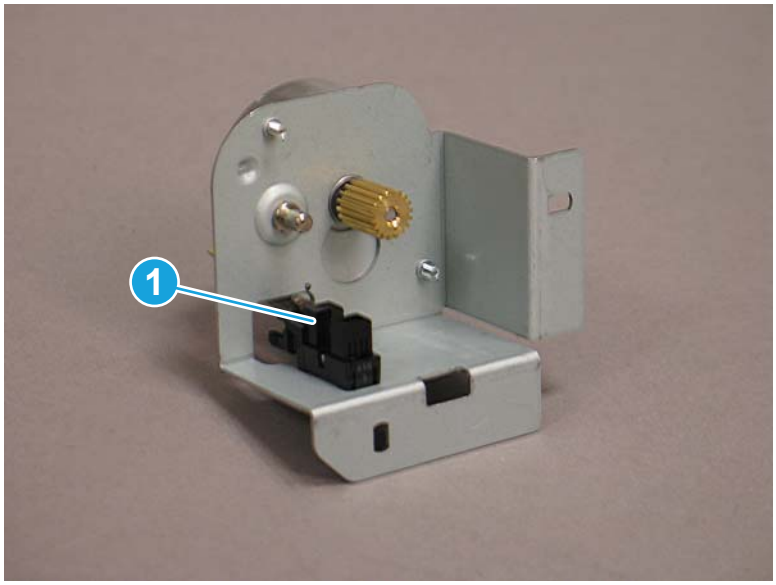
2. If you are replacing the gear, slide it off of the shaft.

Figure 7-345 Slide the gear off of the shaft



3. If you are replacing the sensor (callout 1), remove it from the motor housing.

Figure 7-346 Remove the sensor

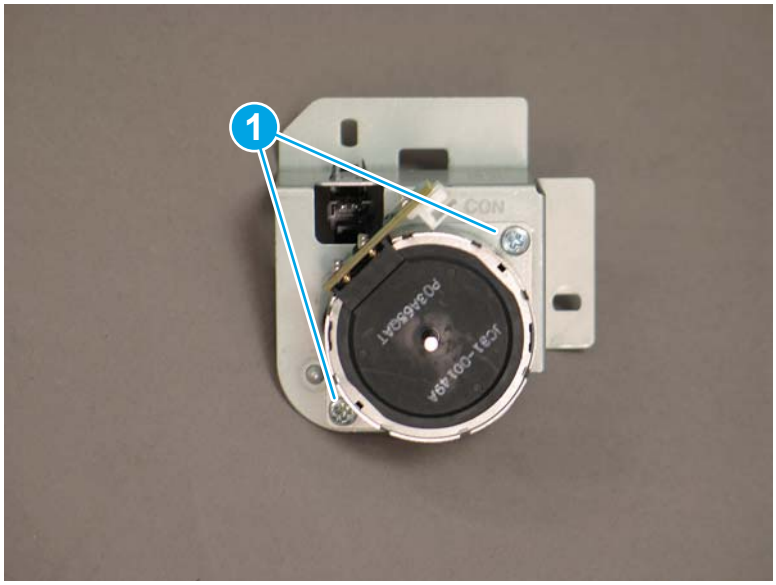


4. If you are replacing the motor, do the following:).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

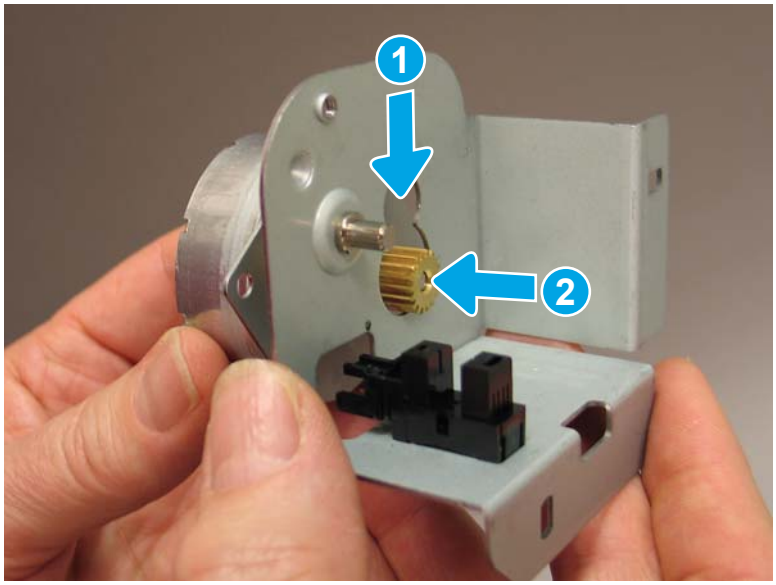
a. Remove two screws (callout 1)

Figure 7-347 Remove two screws



b. Lower the motor (callout 1) and then pull it away from the housing (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 7-348 Remove the buffer motor



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Front tamper motor (M6)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Remove the rear cover
- Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)
- Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)
- Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)
- Step 11: Remove the front tamper (finisher)
- Step 12: Remove the front tamper motor (M7)
- Step 13: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front tamper motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Front tamper motor (M6) part number	
SAM-JC93-01001A	Drive Motor, Step

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

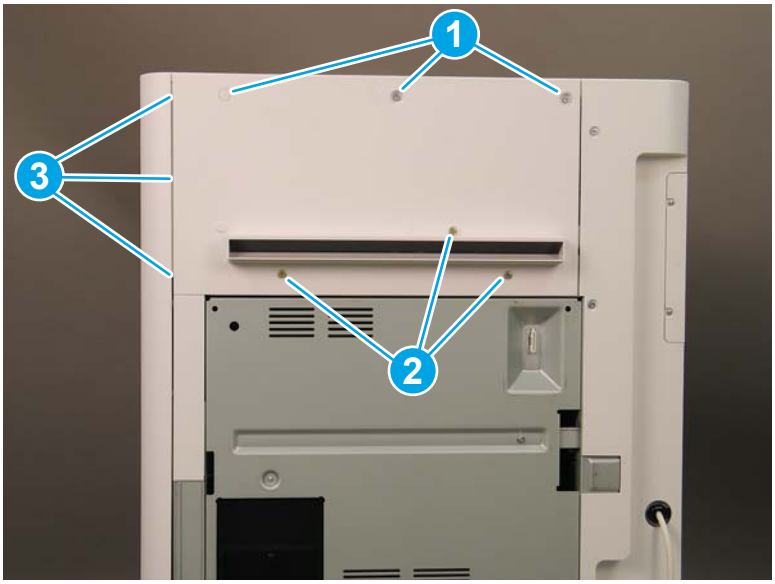
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

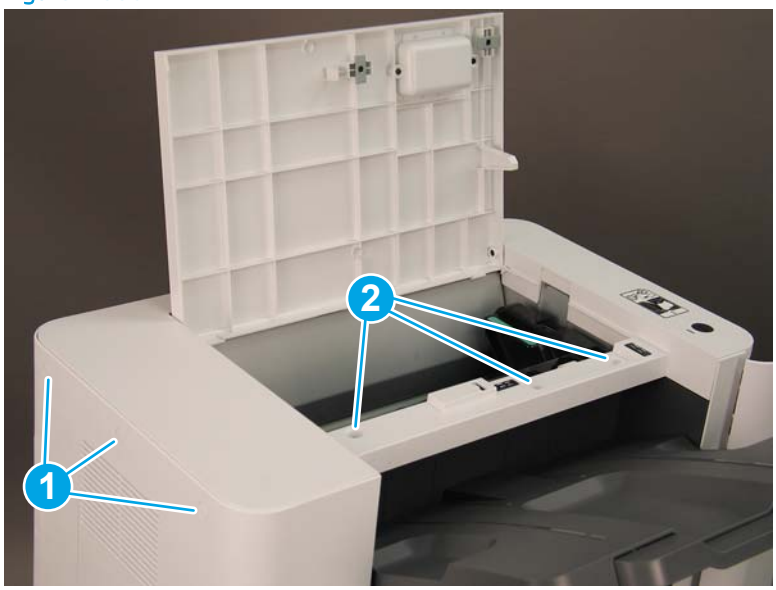
Figure 7-349 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

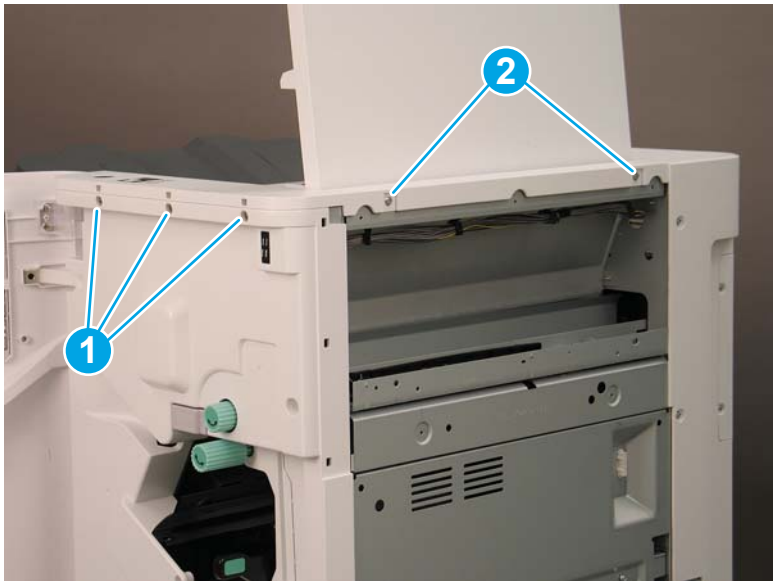
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-350 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

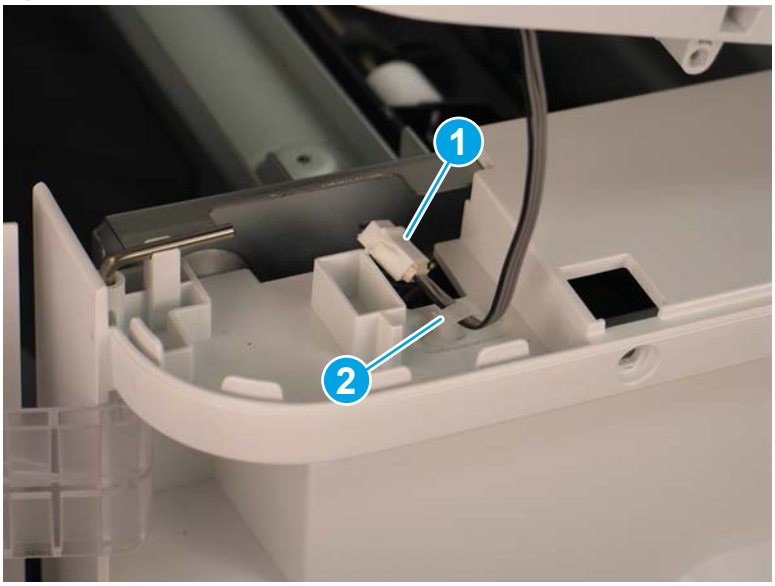
Figure 7-351 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-352 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

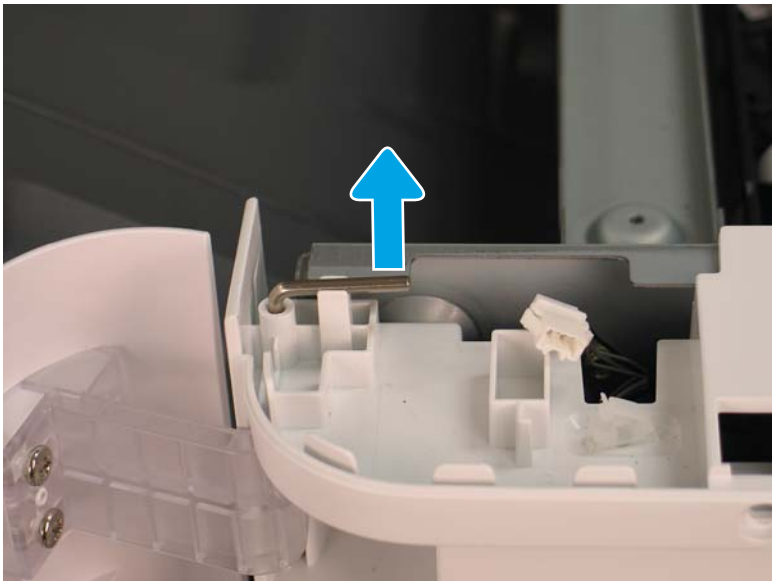


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

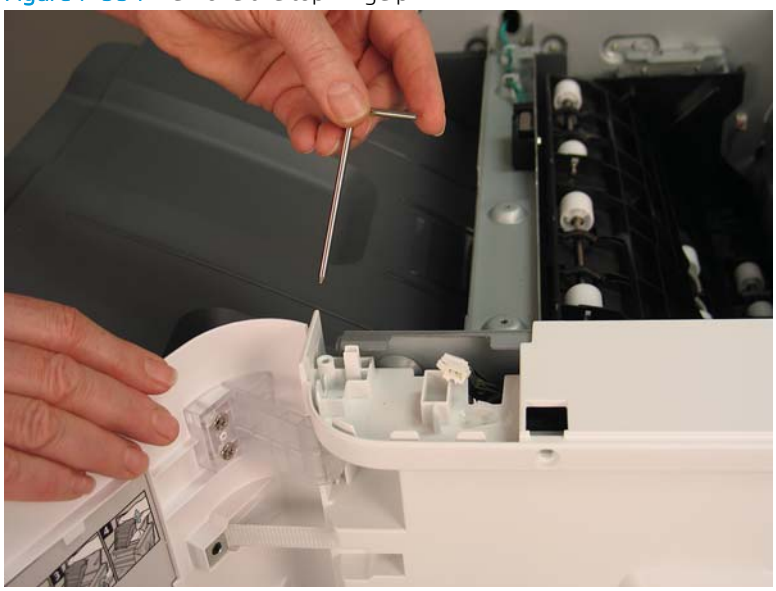
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 7-353 Lift the top hinge pin



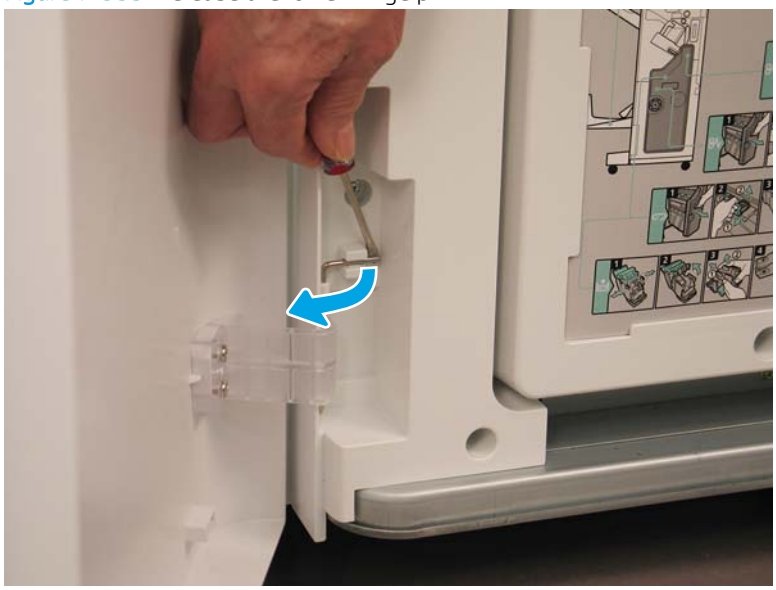
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 7-354 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 7-355 Release the lower hinge pin



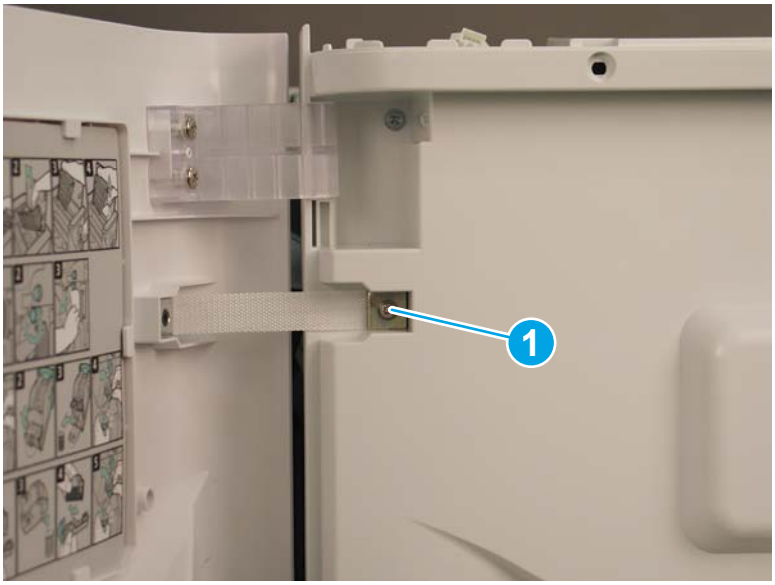
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 7-356 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

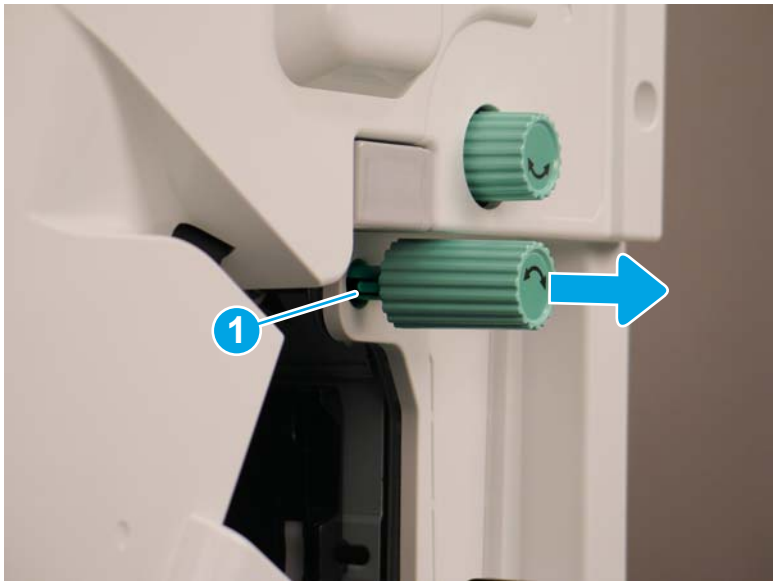
Figure 7-357 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

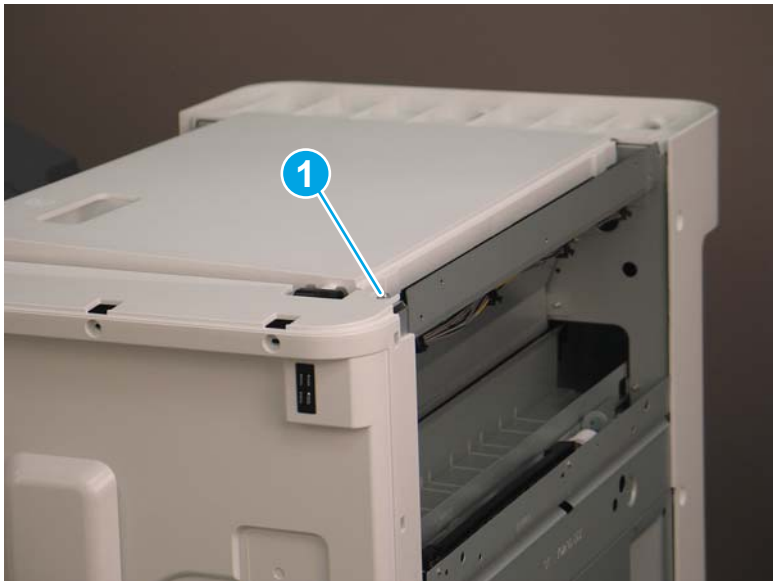
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 7-358 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

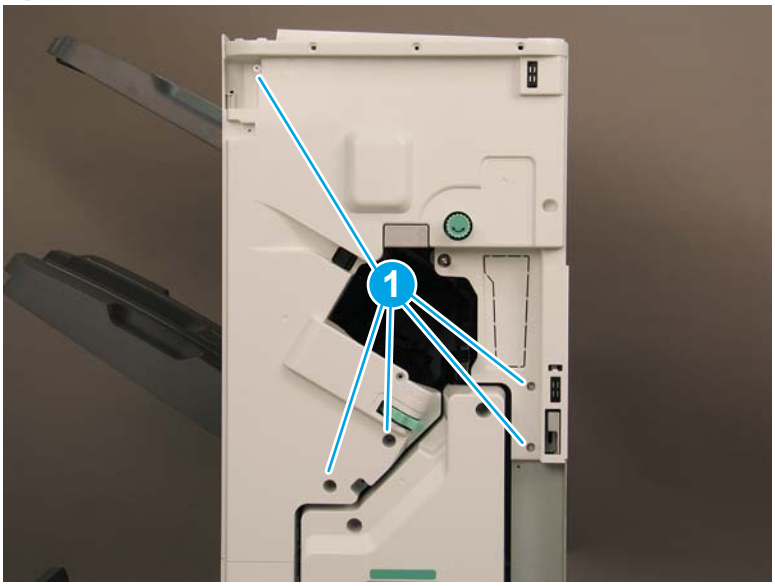
Figure 7-359 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

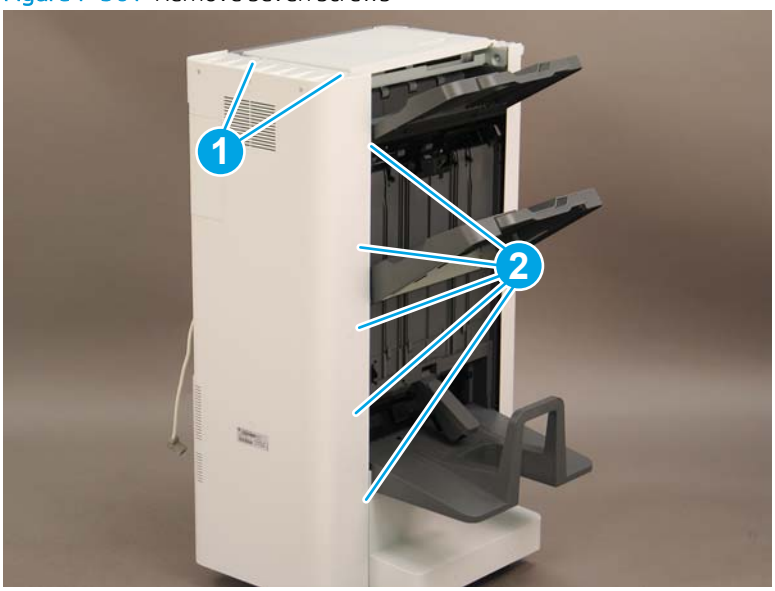
Figure 7-360 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 5: Remove the rear cover

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-361 Remove seven screws

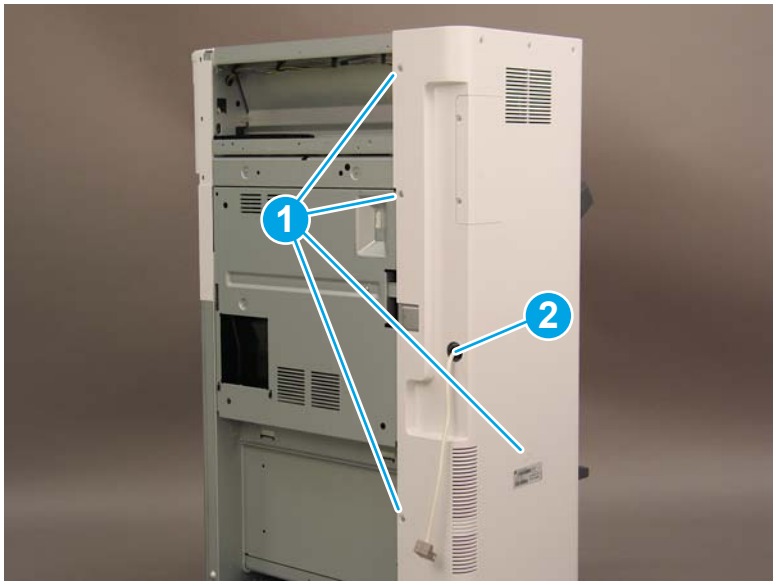


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

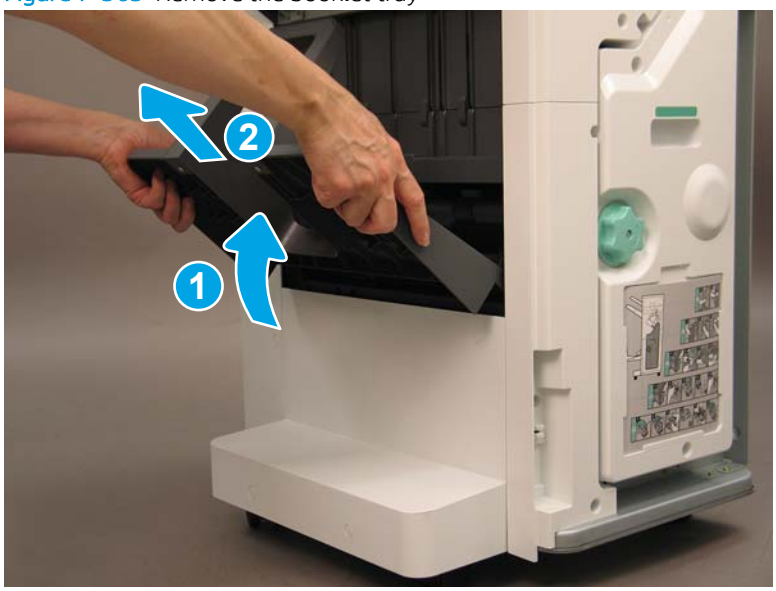
Figure 7-362 Remove four screws and the rear cover



Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 7-363 Remove the booklet tray



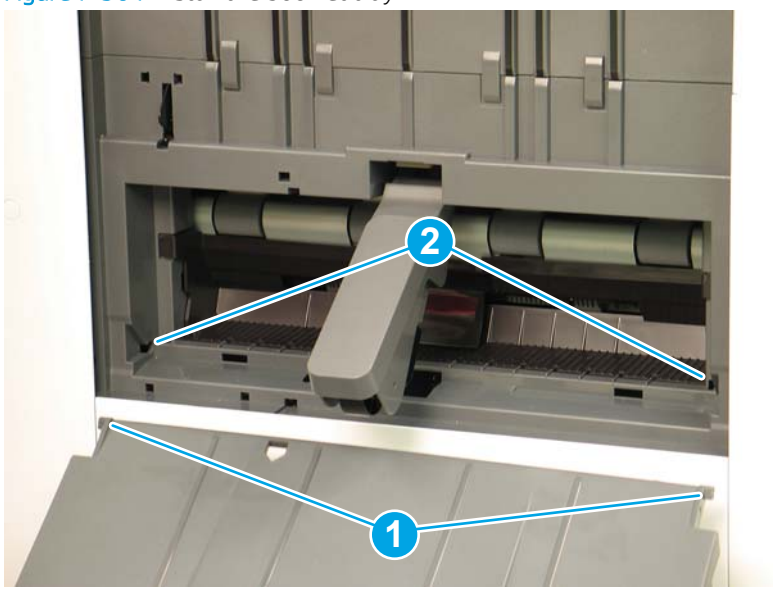
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

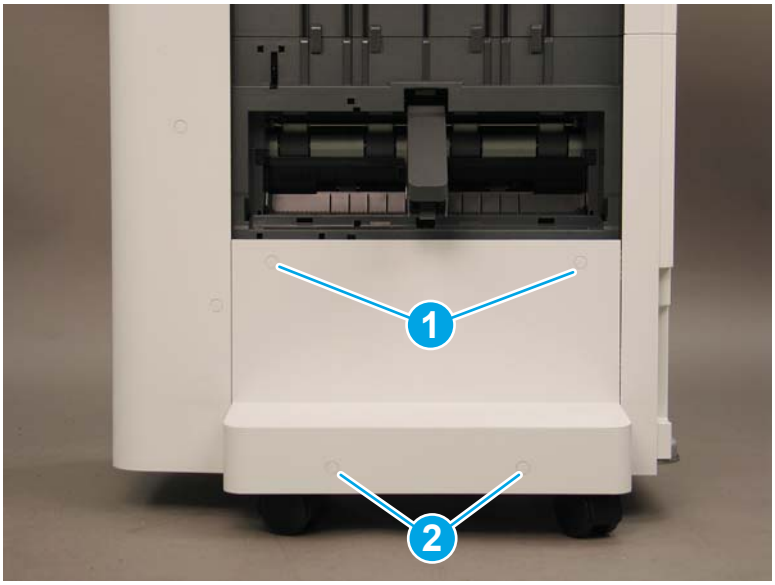
Figure 7-364 Install the booklet tray



Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 7-365 Remove four screws

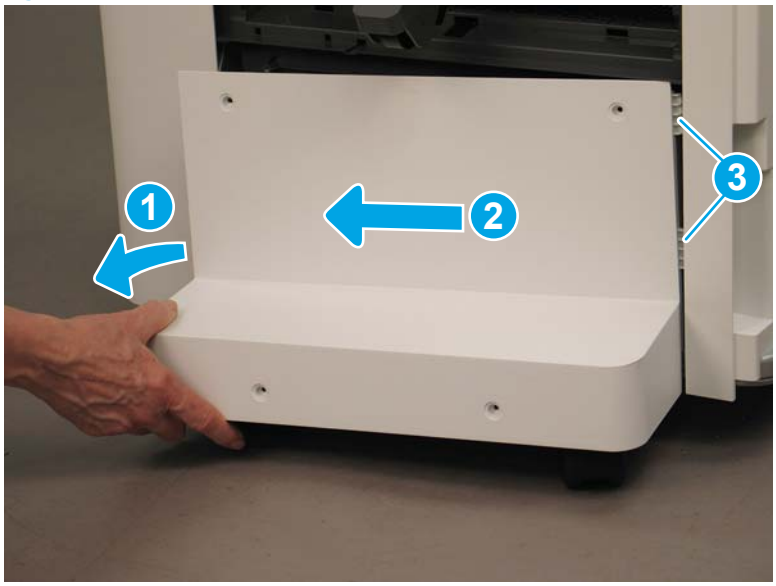


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-366 Remove the caster cover

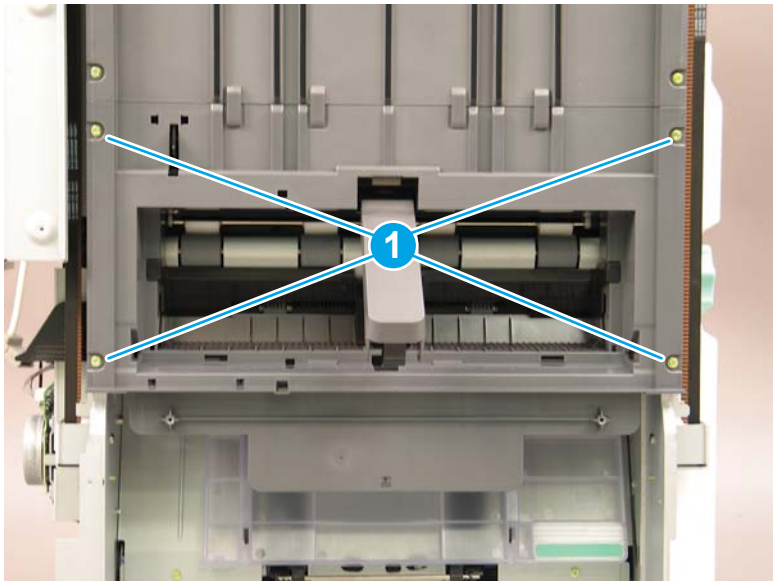


Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raise the lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 7-367 Remove four screws

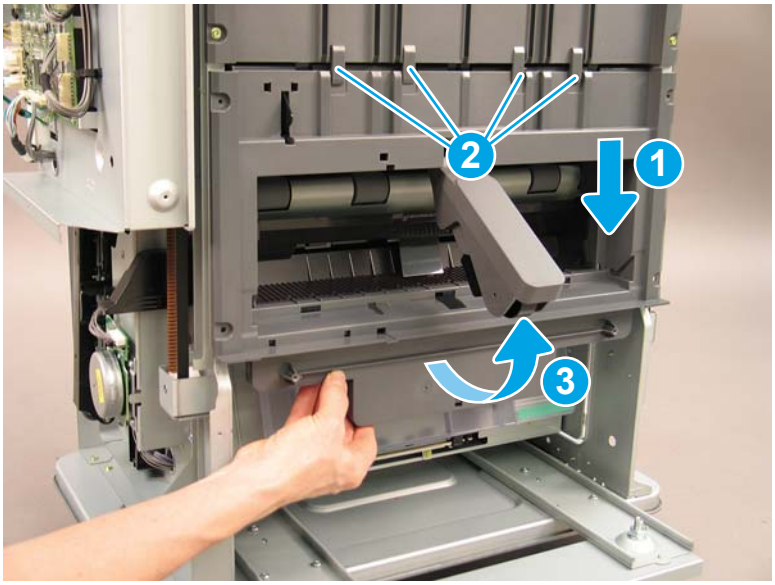


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

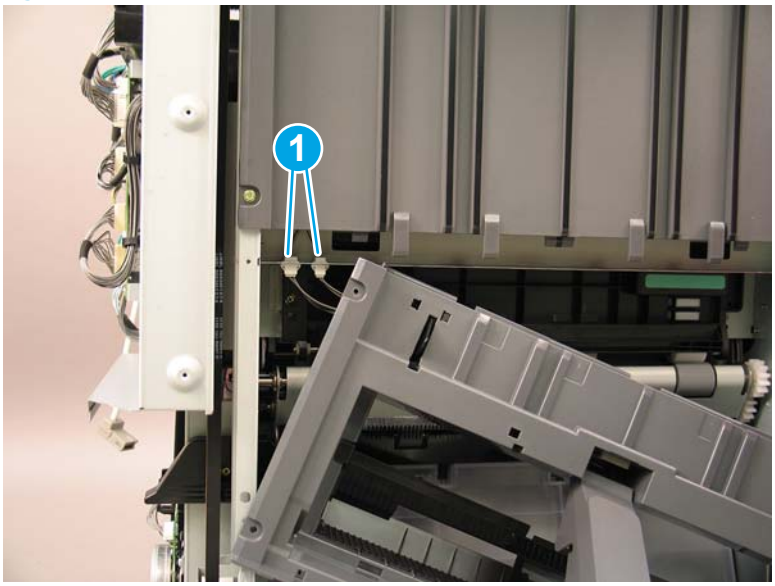
Figure 7-368 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

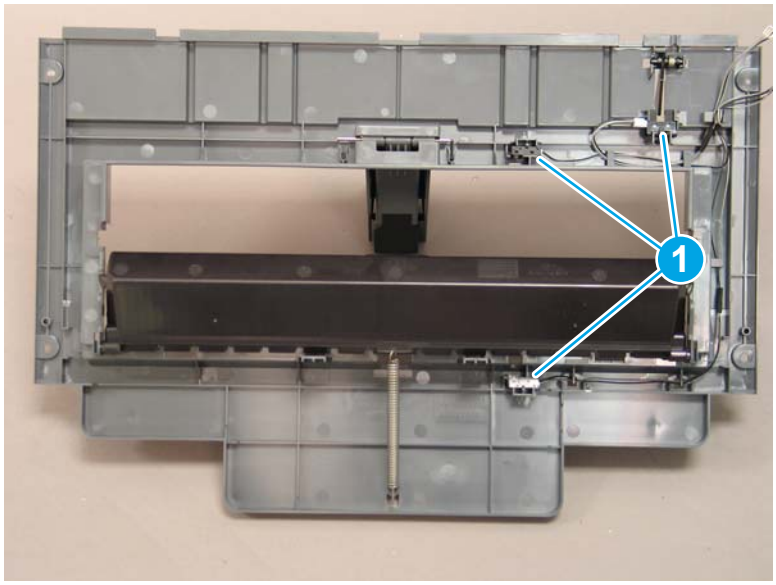
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-369 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the lower shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the lower shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

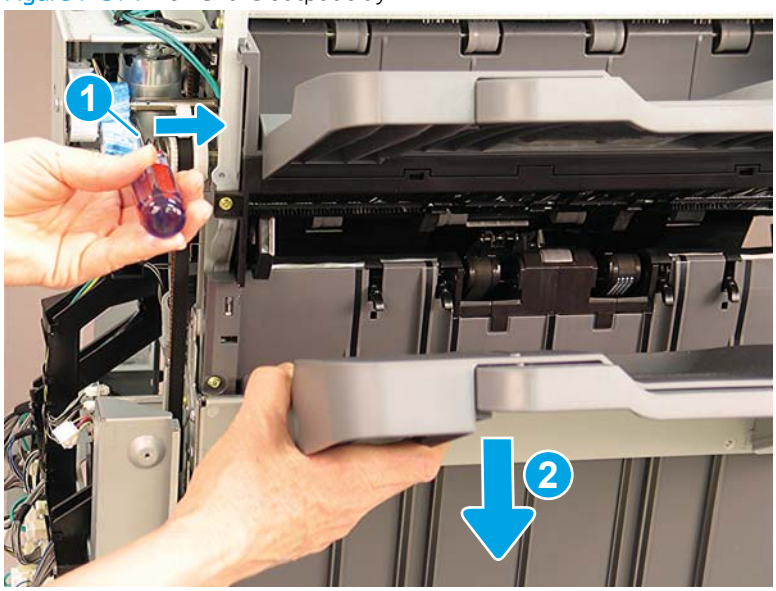
Figure 7-370 Locate sensors



Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)

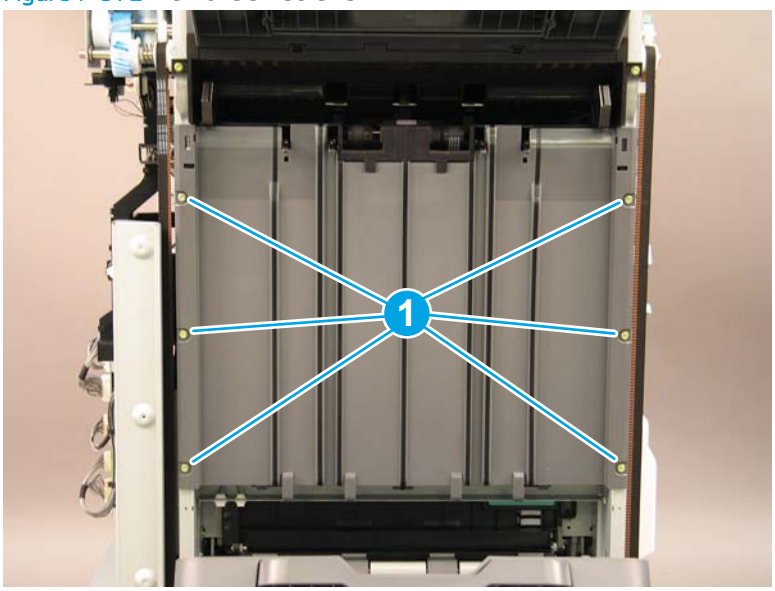
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 7-371 Lower the output tray



2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-372 Remove six screws

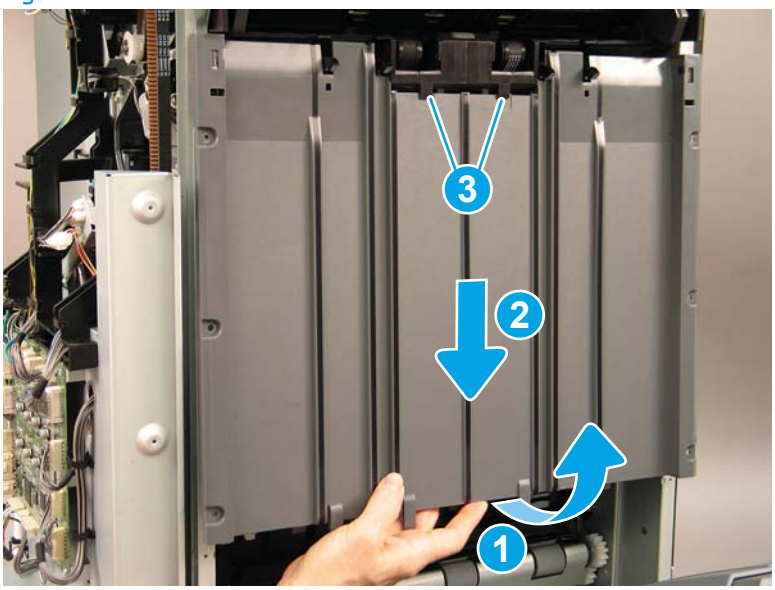


3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

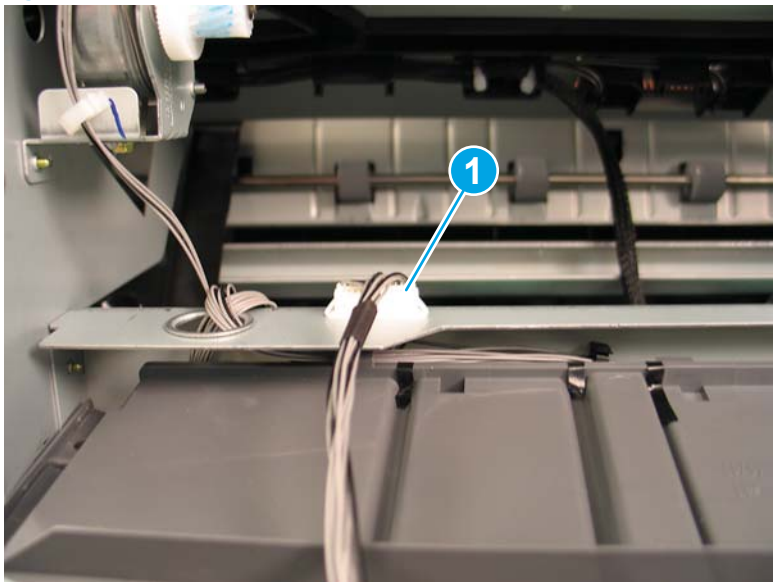
Figure 7-373 Release the shield



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.

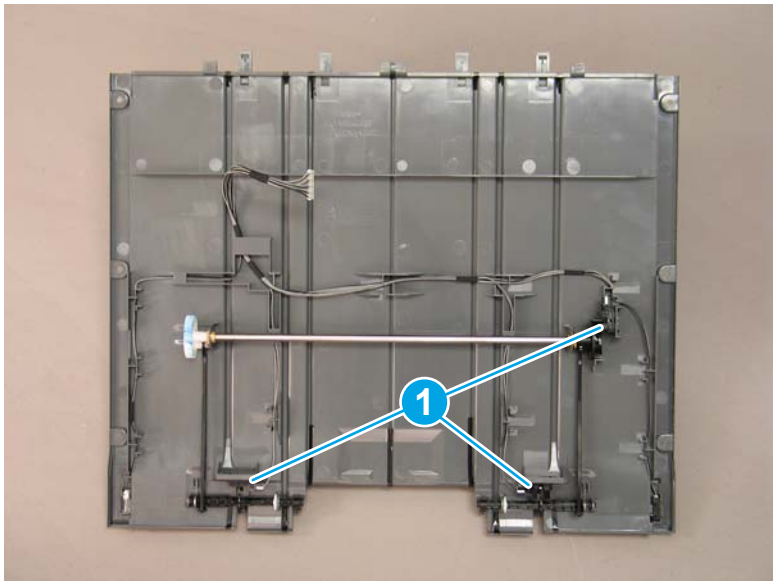
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-374 Disconnect one connector



5. If you are replacing the upper shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the upper shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

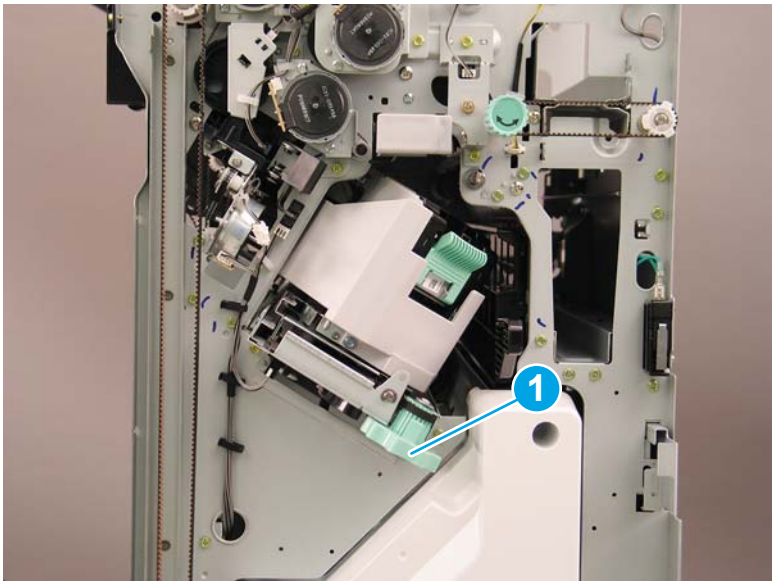
Figure 7-375 Locate sensors



Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)

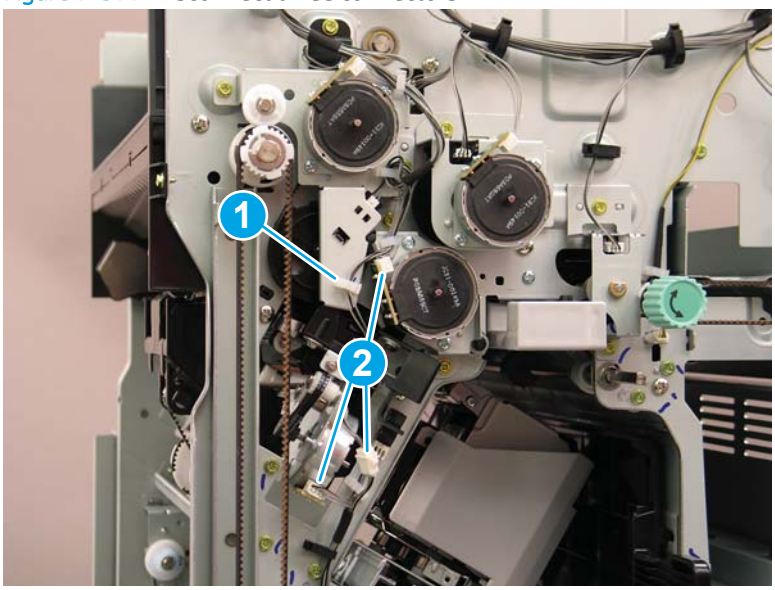
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the center of the finisher.

Figure 7-376 Move the staple unit to the center



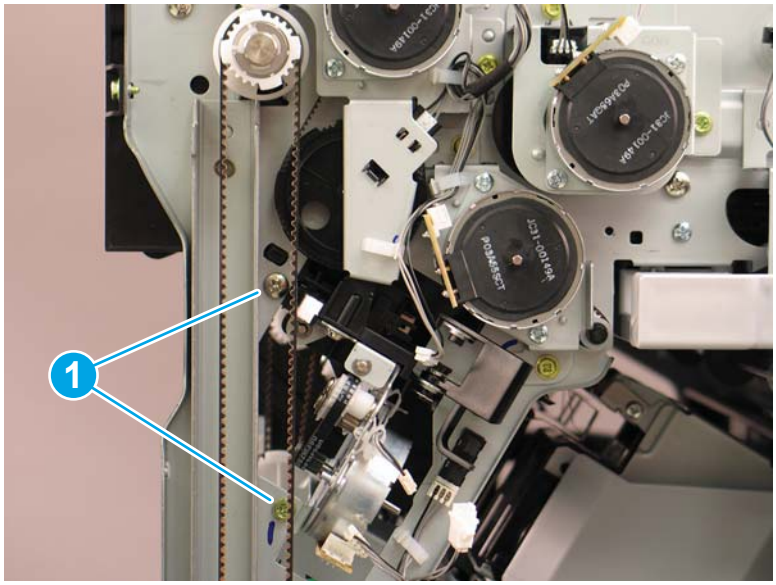
2. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 7-377 Disconnect three connectors



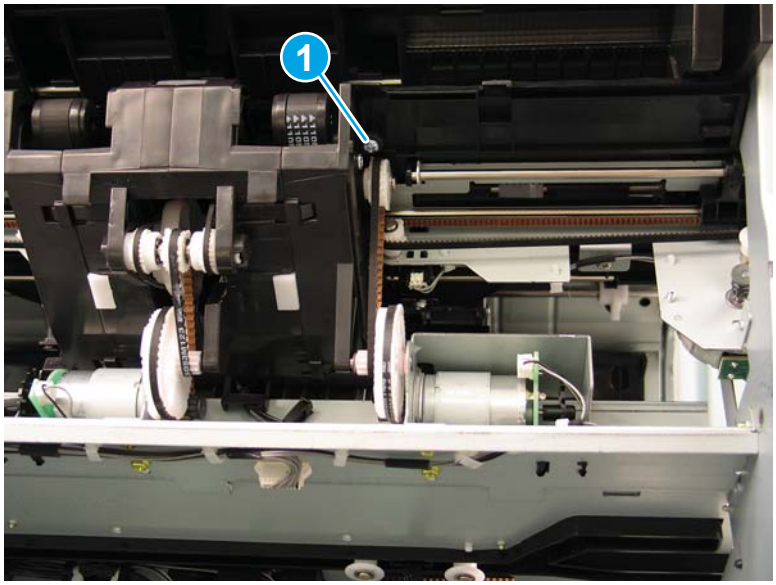
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-378 Remove two screws



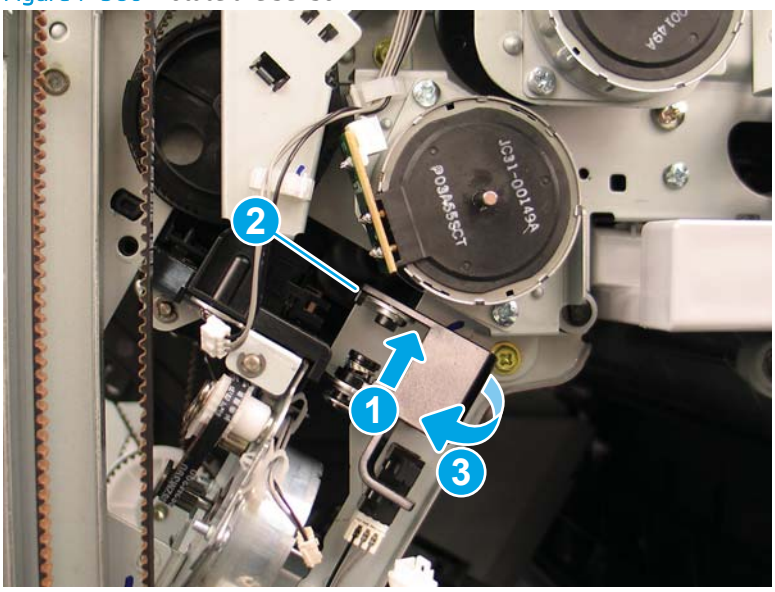
4. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 7-379 Remove one screw



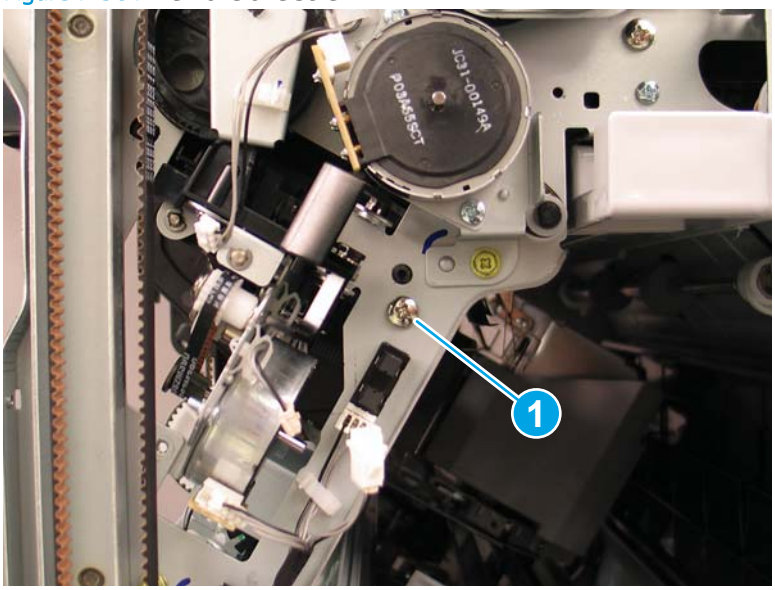
5. Press up on the hinge (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then rotate the sensor away from the finisher (callout 3).

Figure 7-380 Rotate the sensor



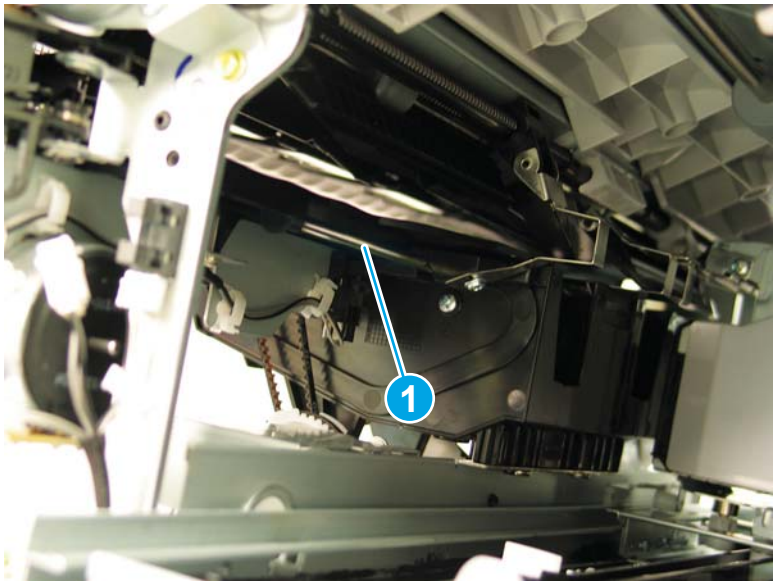
6. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 7-381 Remove one screw



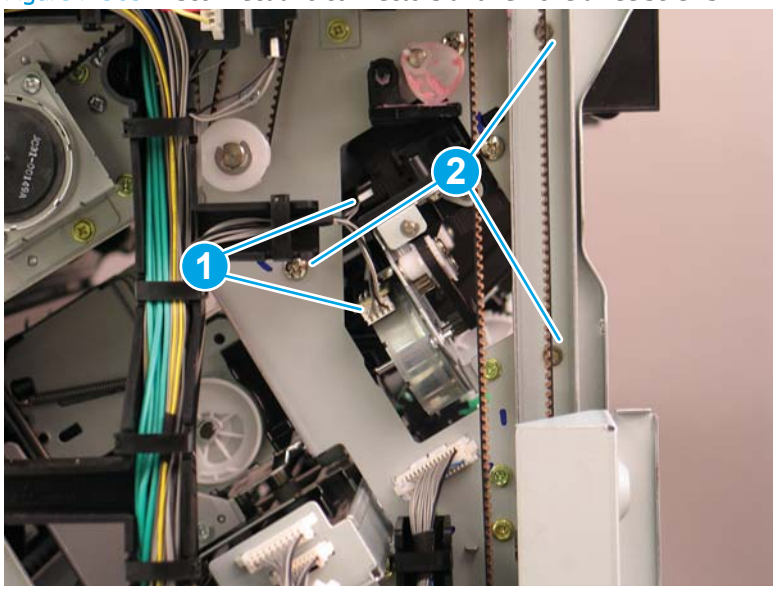
7. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the front and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the front tamper unit.

Figure 7-382 Remove the front tamper shaft



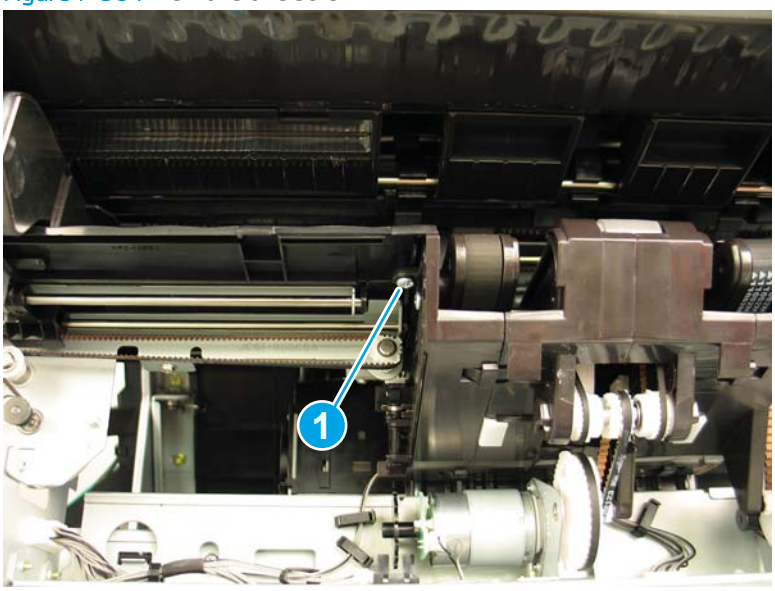
8. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 7-383 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws



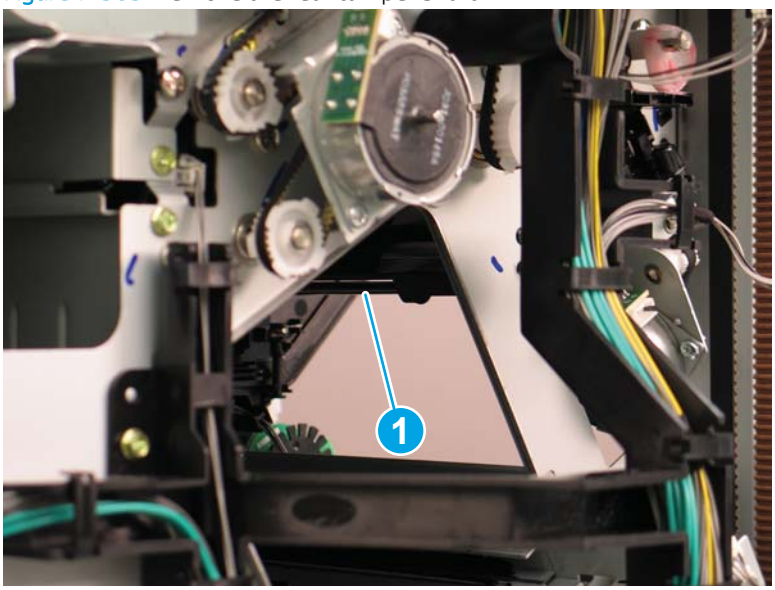
9. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 7-384 Remove one screw



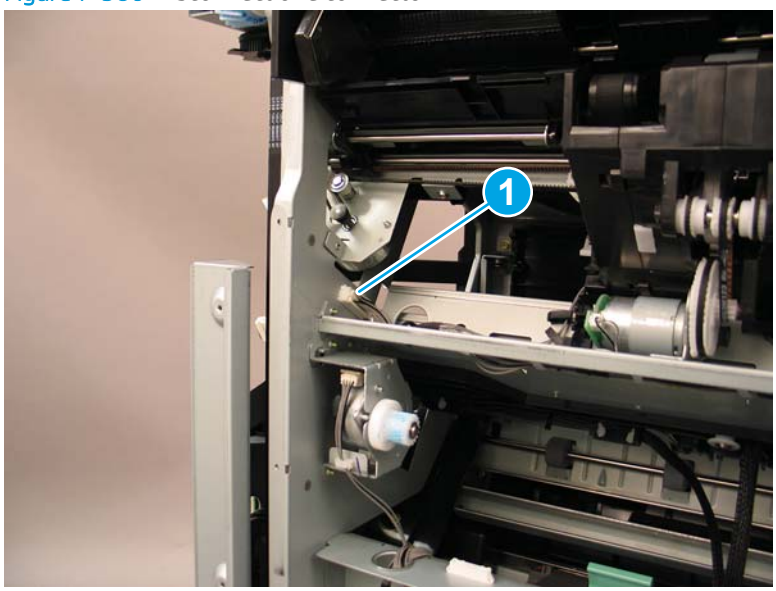
10. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the rear and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the rear tamper unit.

Figure 7-385 Remove the rear tamper shaft



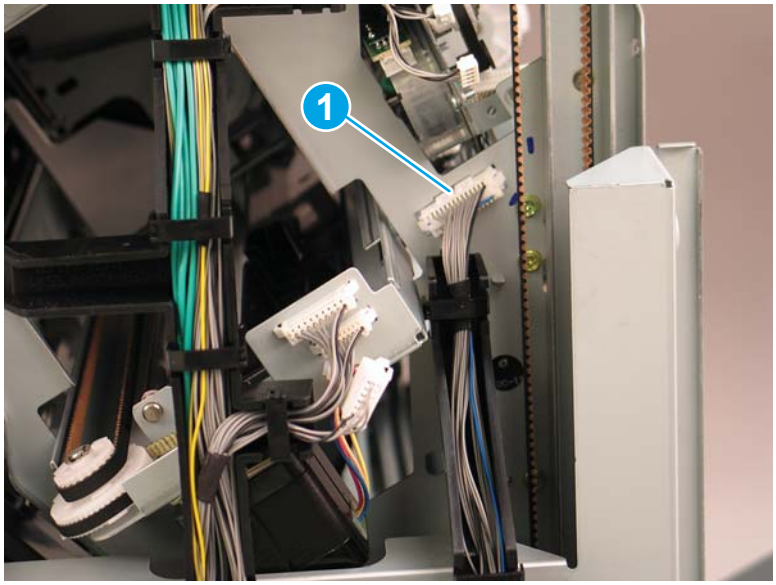
11. At the left side of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 7-386 Disconnect one connector



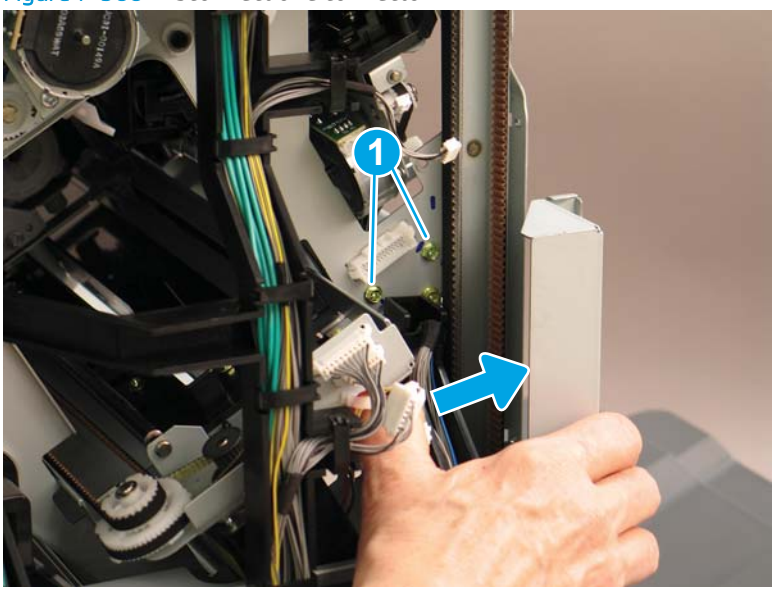
12. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 7-387 Disconnect one connector



13. At the rear of the finisher, press the wire retainer to the right to access and remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-388 Disconnect one connector

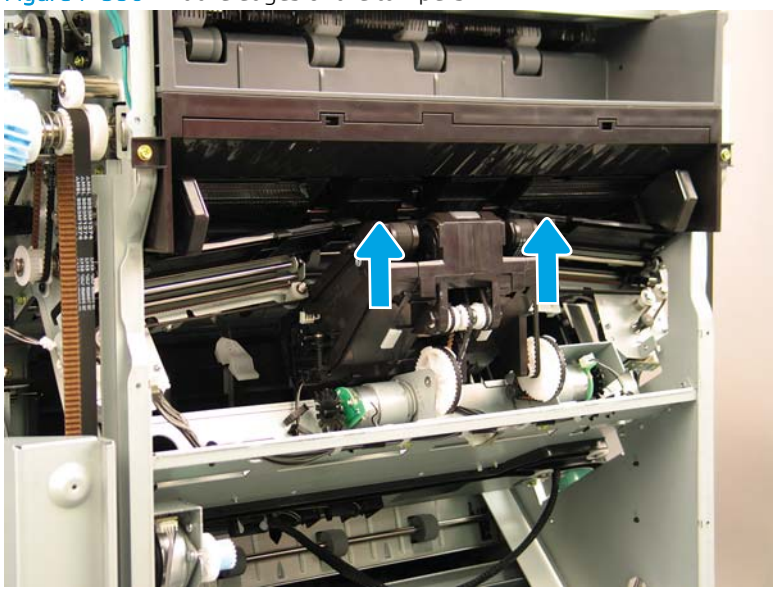


14. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-389 Remove two screws

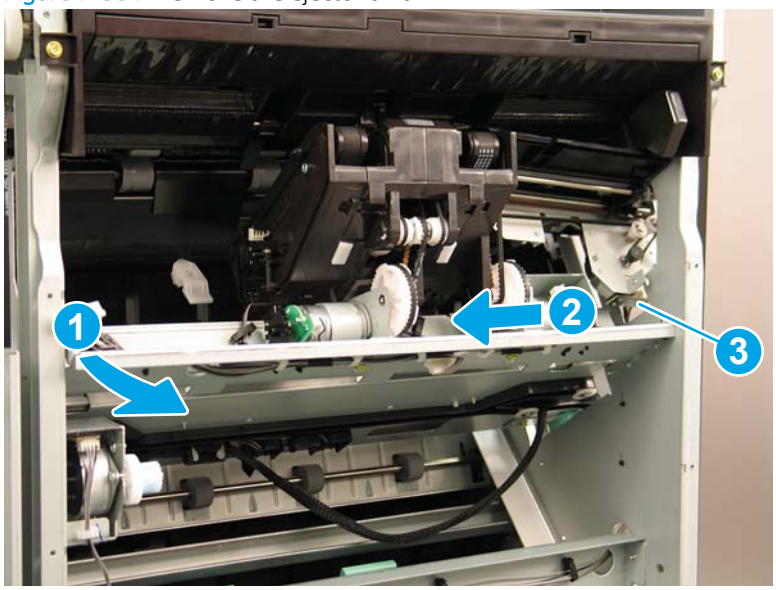
15. Lift the inside edges of the front and rear tampers up.

Figure 7-390 Lift the edges of the tampers



16. Rotate the rear edge of the ejector unit away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide it toward the rear of the finisher (callout 2) to remove it. Make sure that the PCA (callout 3) stays clear of the sheet metal frame.

Figure 7-391 Remove the ejector unit



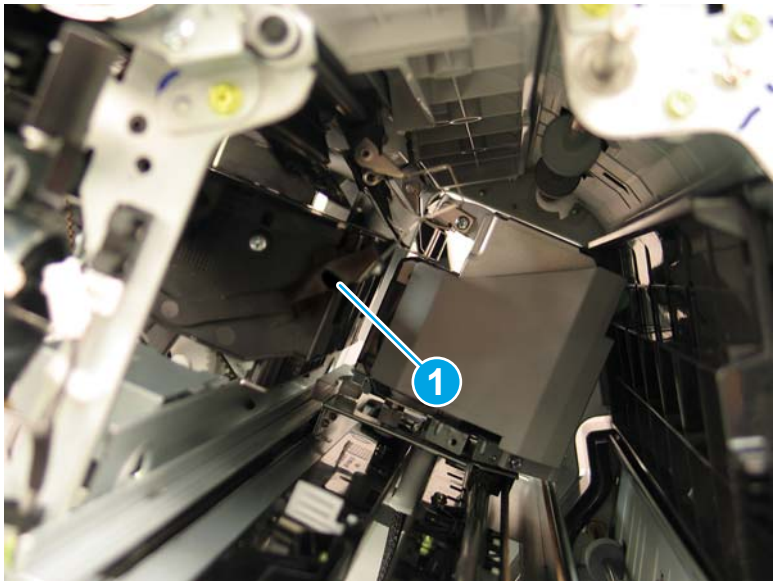
17. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Ejector unit

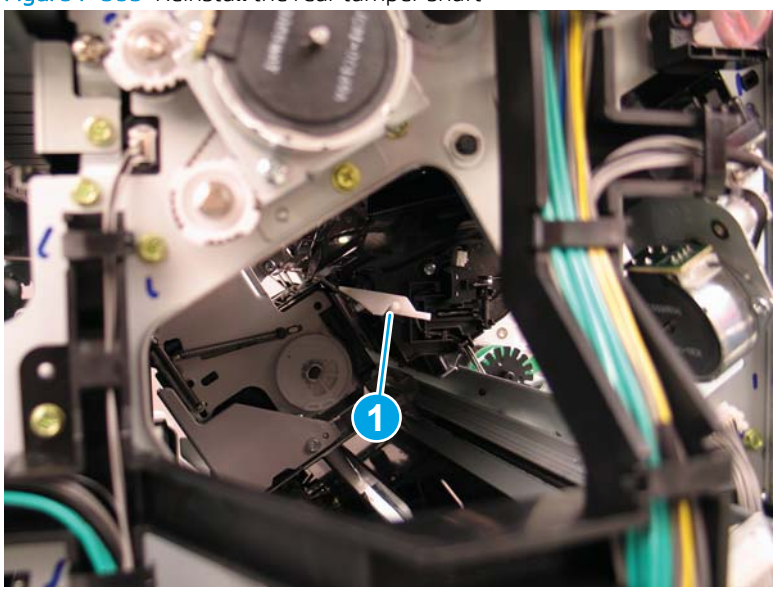
a. When the front tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 7-392 Reinstall the front tamper shaft



b. When the rear tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 7-393 Reinstall the rear tamper shaft

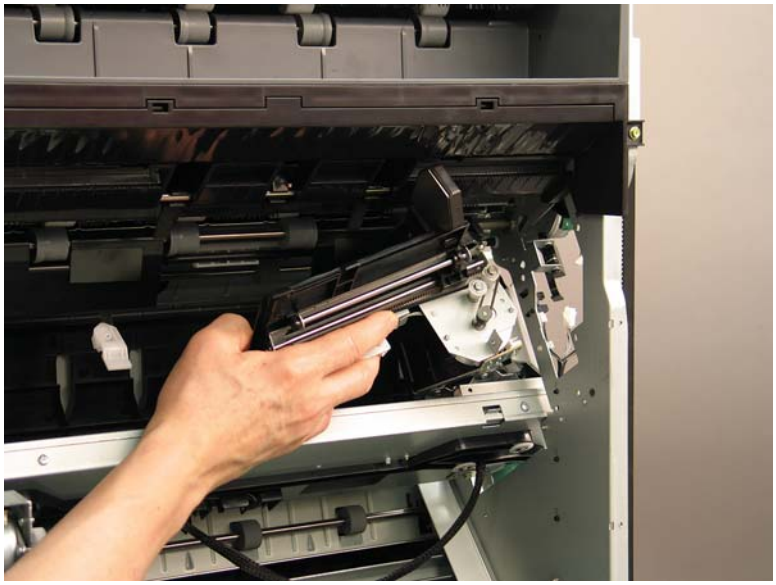


Step 11: Remove the front tamper (finisher)

▲ Lift the front tamper away from the finisher to remove it

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

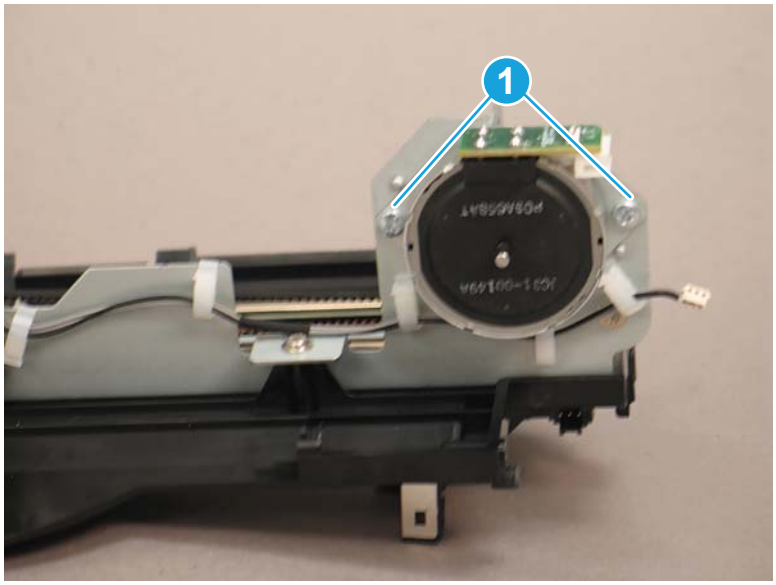
Figure 7-394 Remove the front tamper



Step 12: Remove the front tamper motor (M7)

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-395 Remove two screws

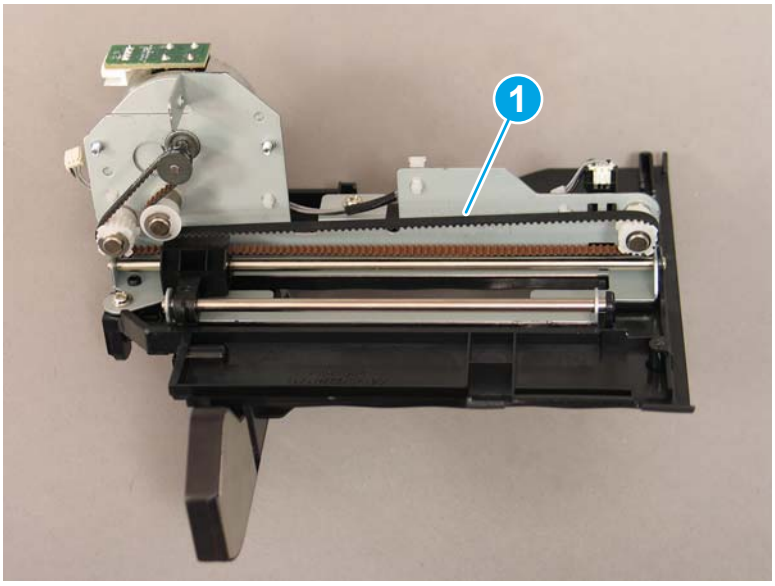


2. Release the belt (callout 1), and then remove the front tamper motor.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that the belt is routed correctly when reinstalling the motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-396 Release the belt and remove the motor



Step 13: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Rear tamper motor (M7)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Remove the rear cover
- Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)
- Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)
- Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)
- Step 11: Remove the rear tamper (finisher)
- Step 12: Remove the rear tamper motor (M7)
- Step 13: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the rear tamper motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Rear tamper motor (M7) part number	
SAM-JC93-01001A	Drive Motor, Step

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

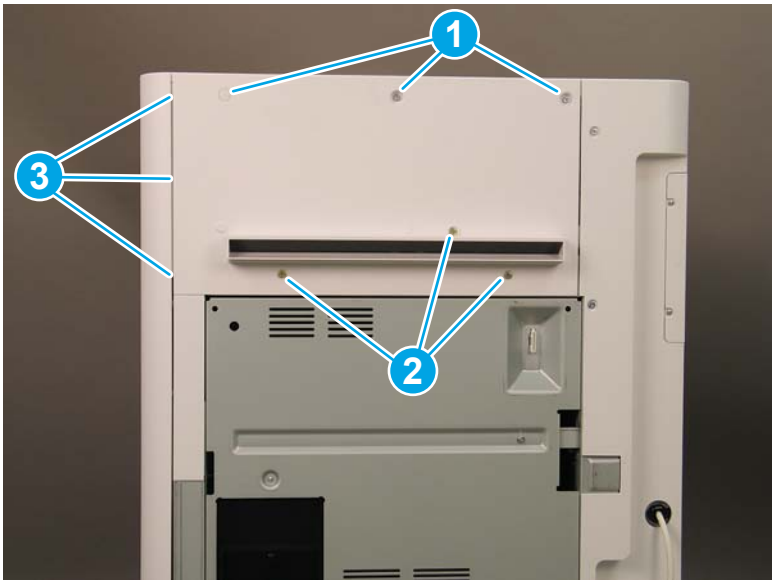
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

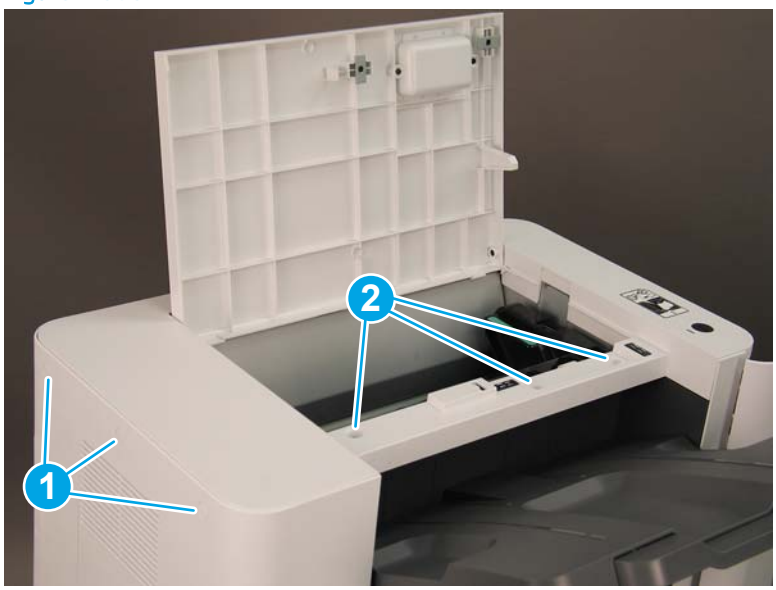
Figure 7-397 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

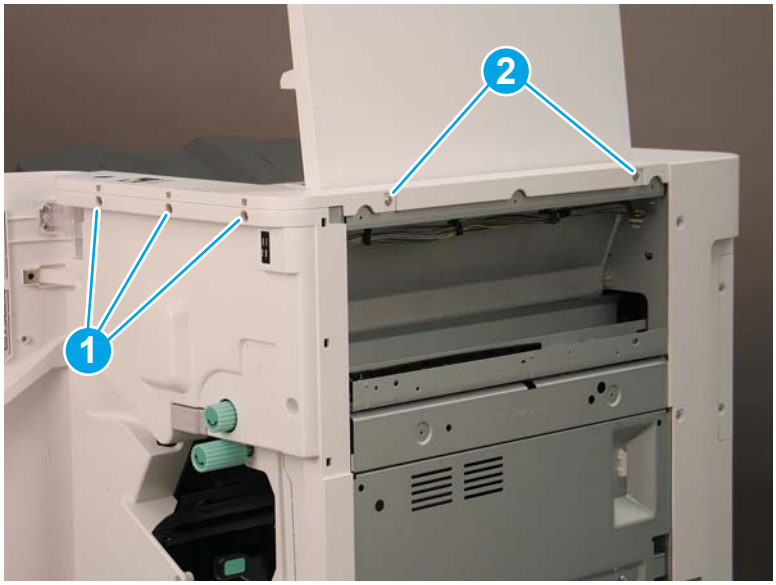
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-398 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

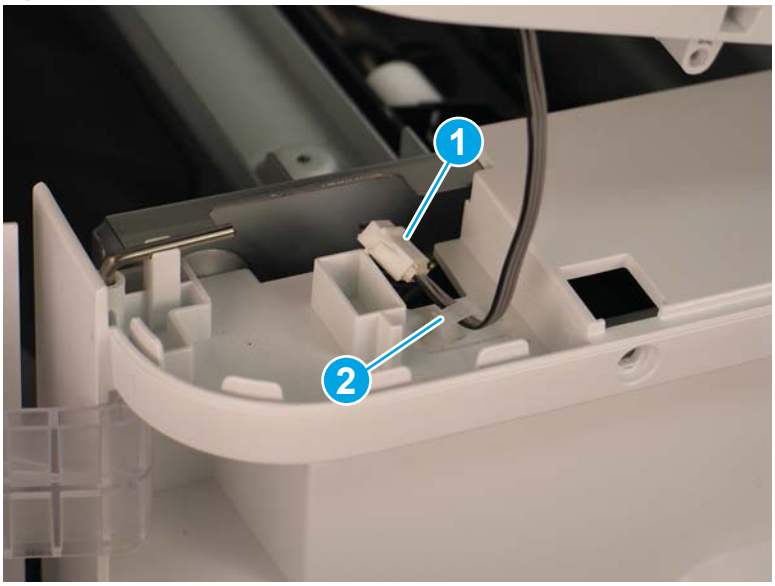
Figure 7-399 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-400 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

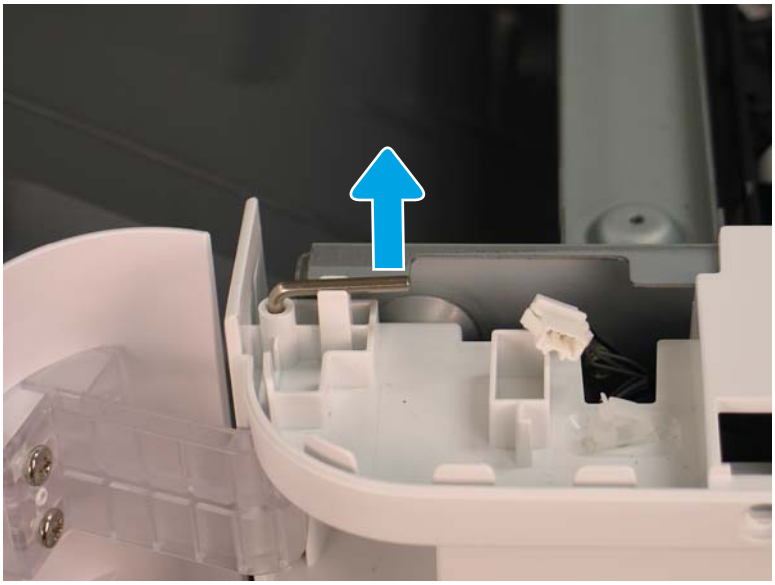


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

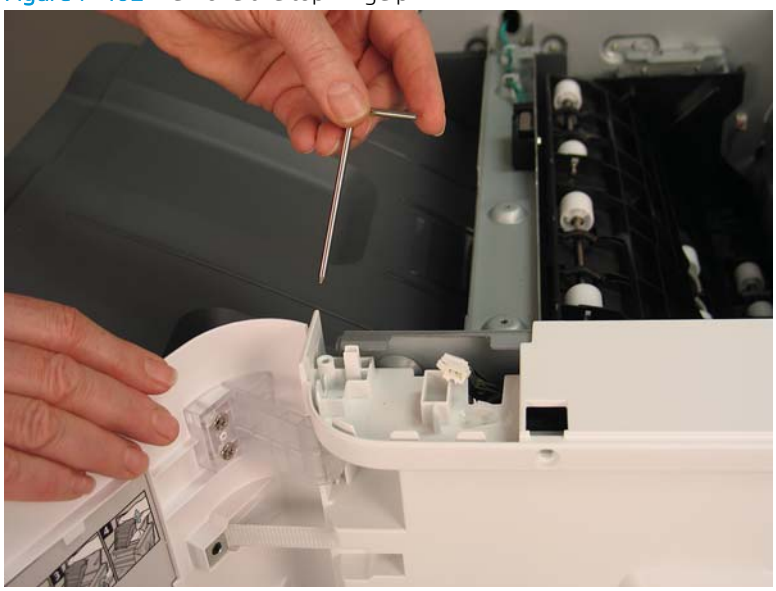
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 7-401 Lift the top hinge pin



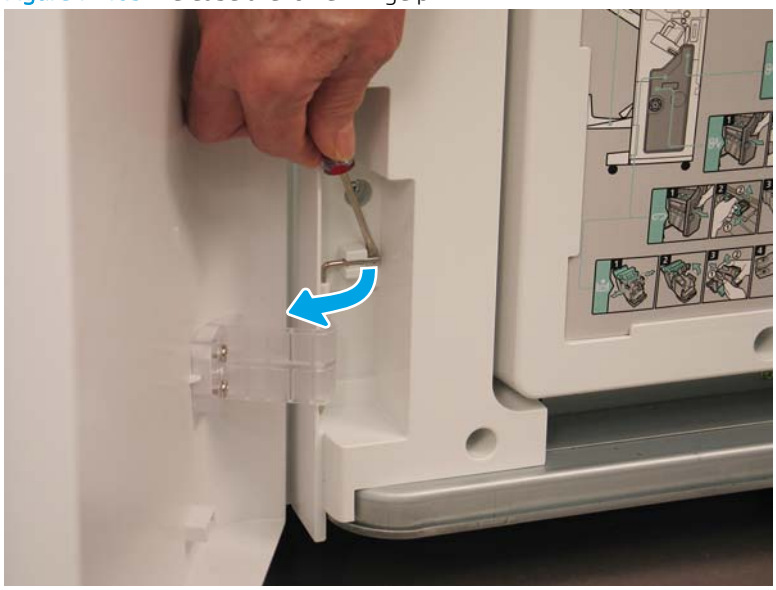
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 7-402 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 7-403 Release the lower hinge pin



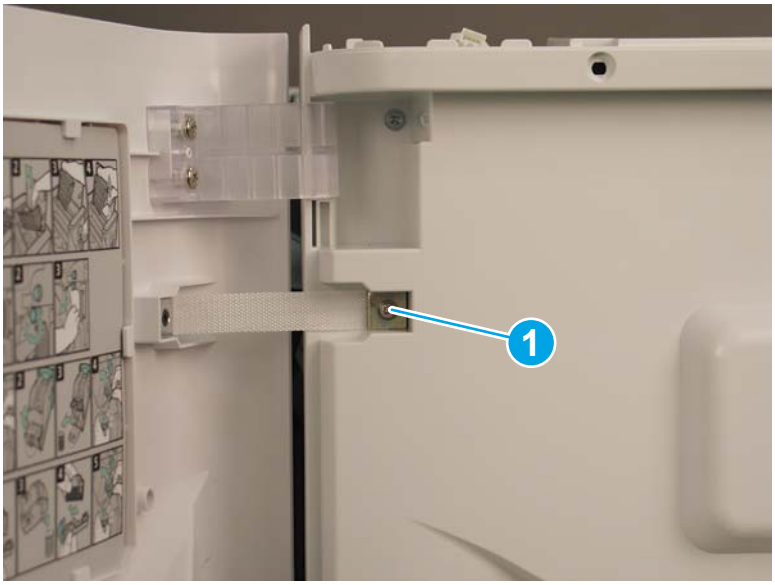
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 7-404 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

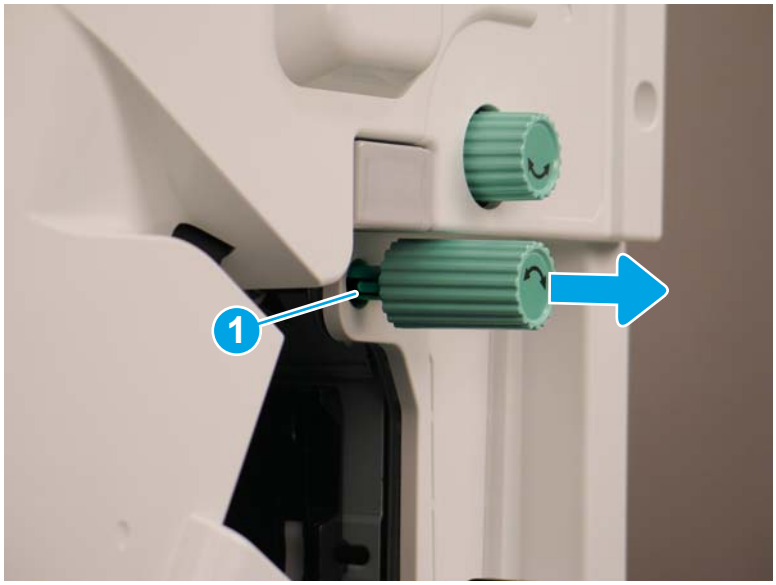
Figure 7-405 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

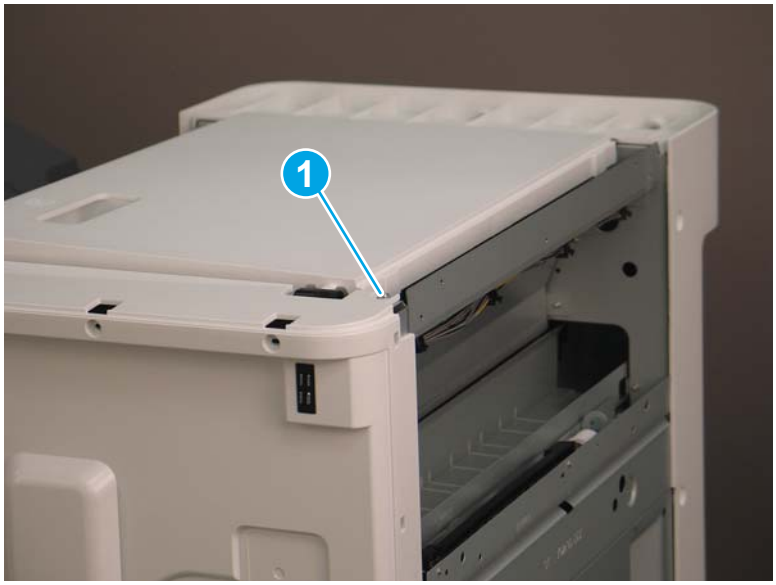
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 7-406 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

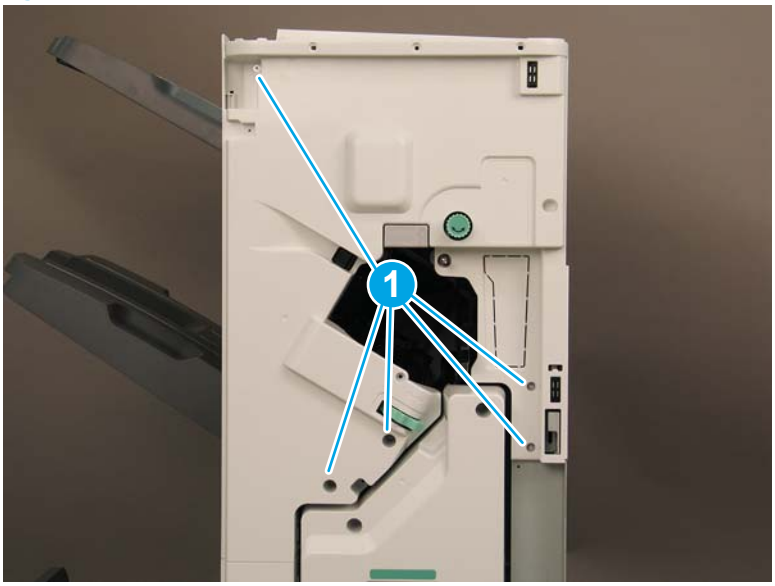
Figure 7-407 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

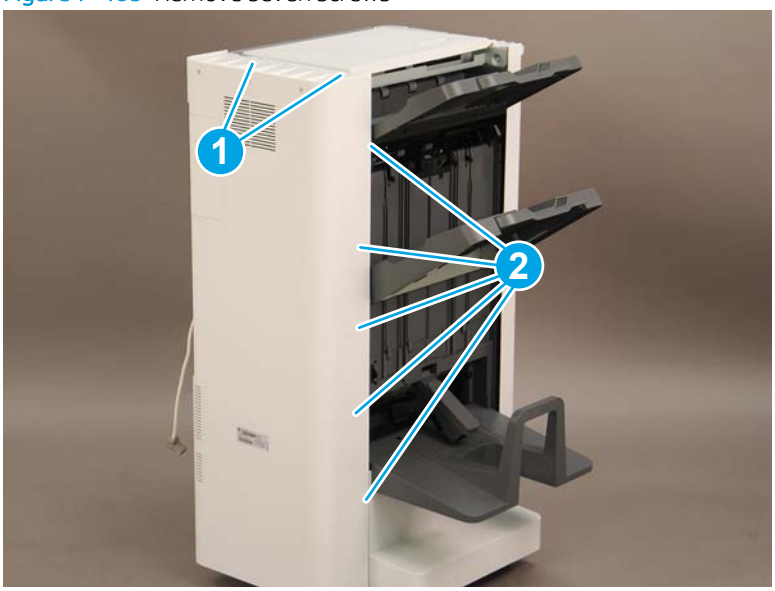
Figure 7-408 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 5: Remove the rear cover

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-409 Remove seven screws

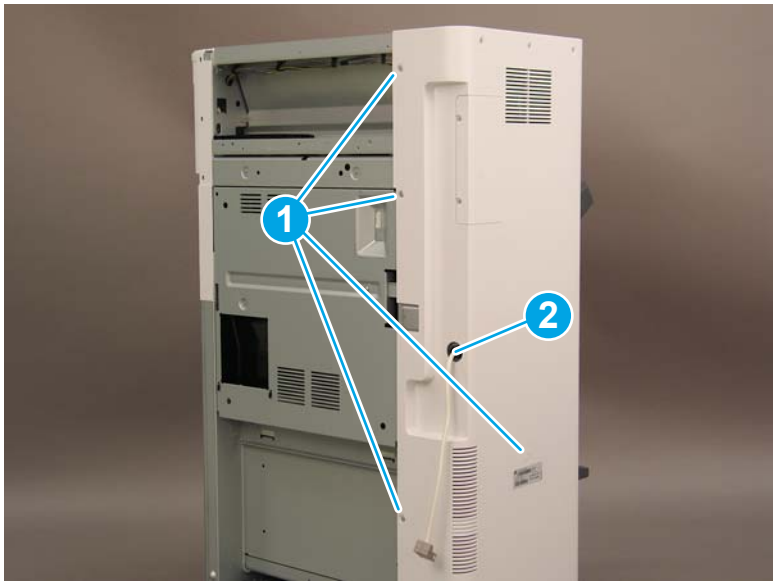


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

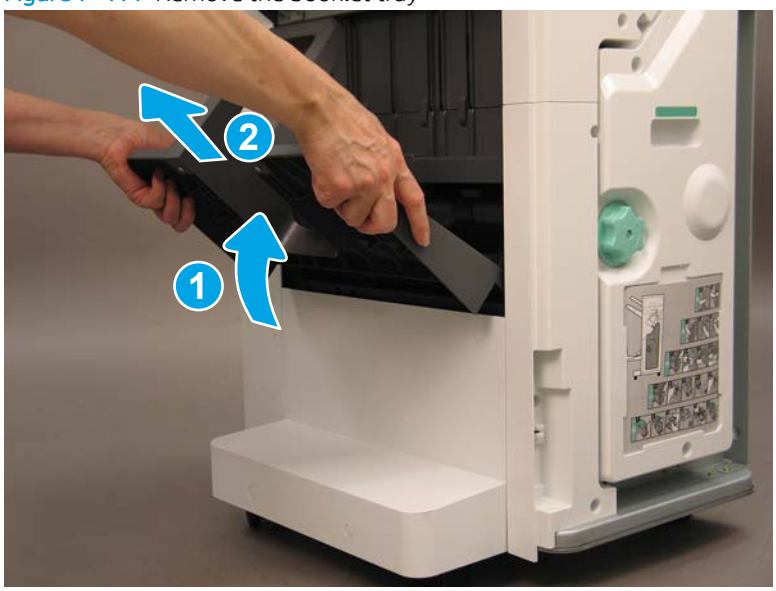
Figure 7-410 Remove four screws and the rear cover



Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 7-411 Remove the booklet tray



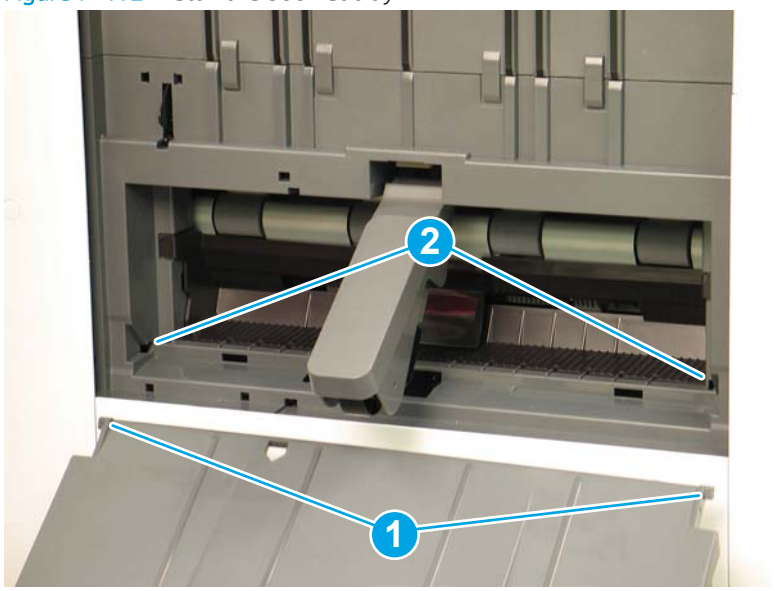
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

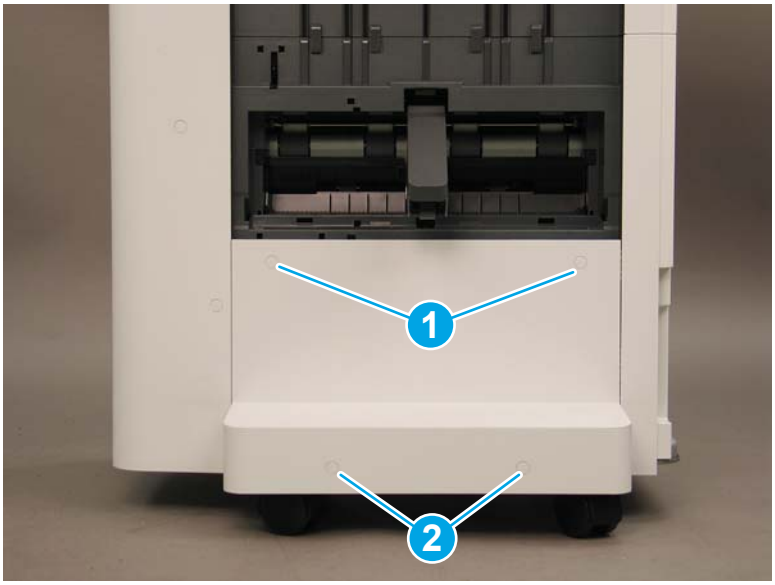
Figure 7-412 Install the booklet tray



Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 7-413 Remove four screws

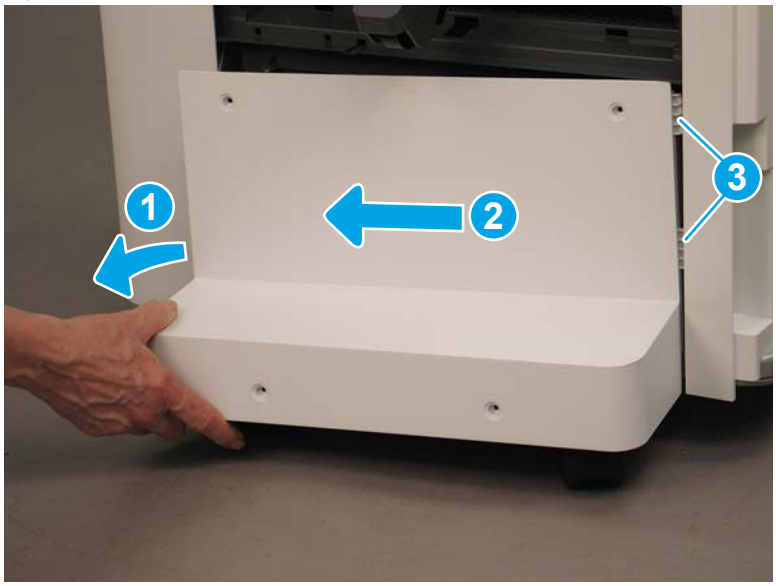


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-414 Remove the caster cover

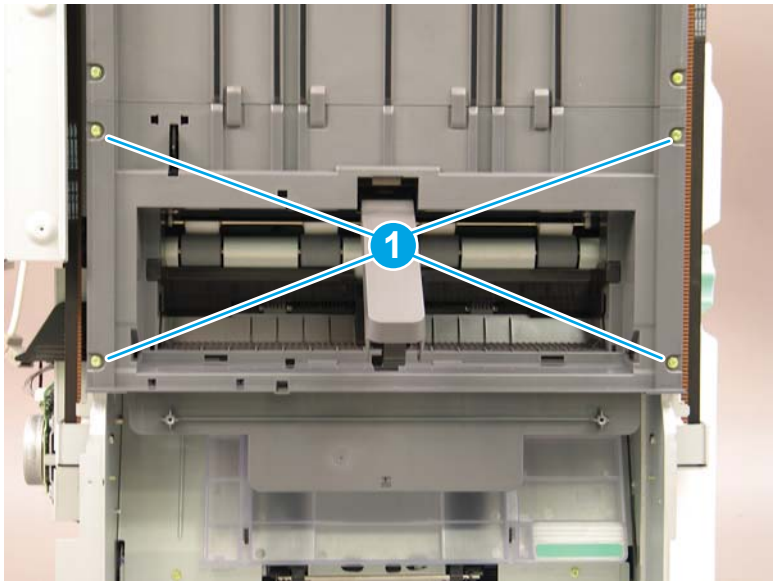


Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raise the lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 7-415 Remove four screws

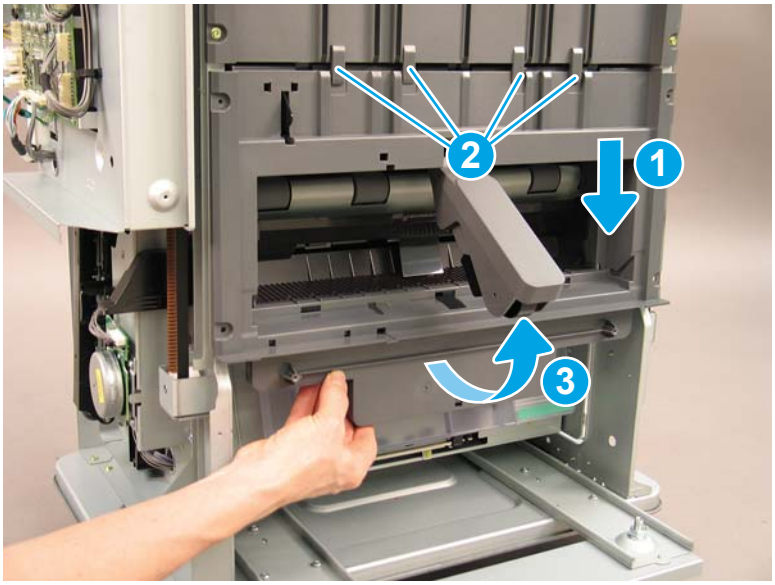


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

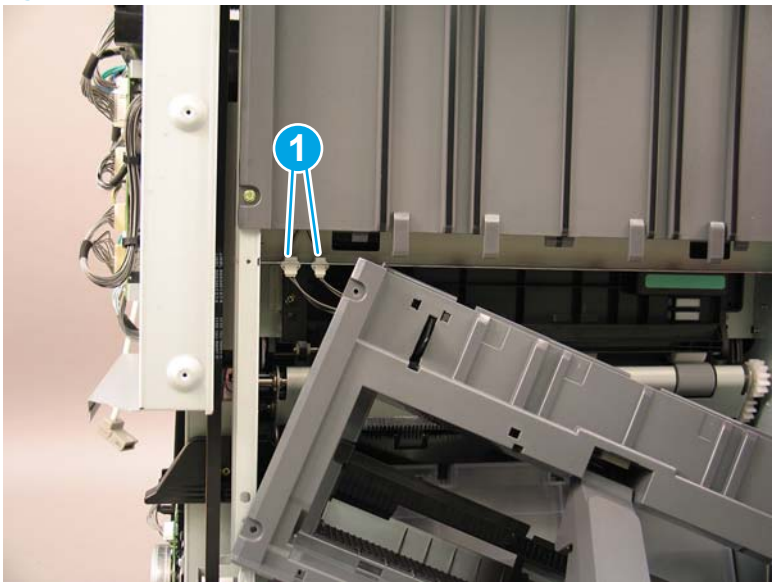
Figure 7-416 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

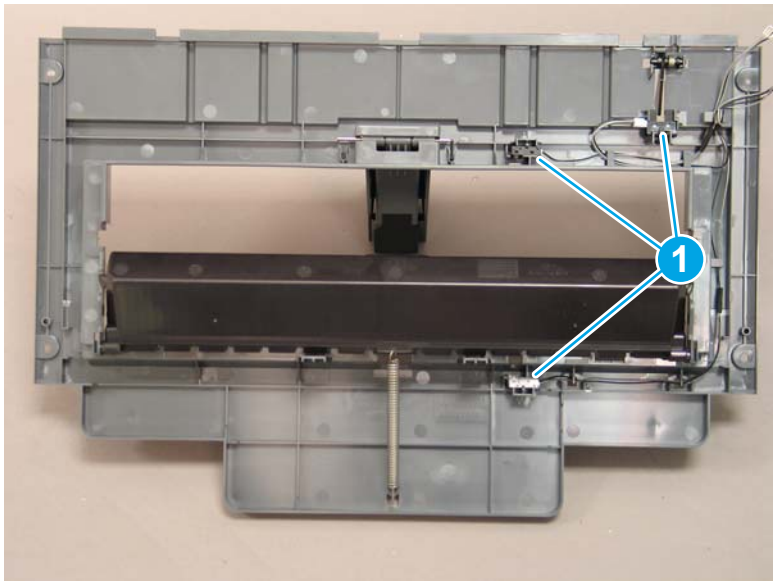
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-417 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the lower shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the lower shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

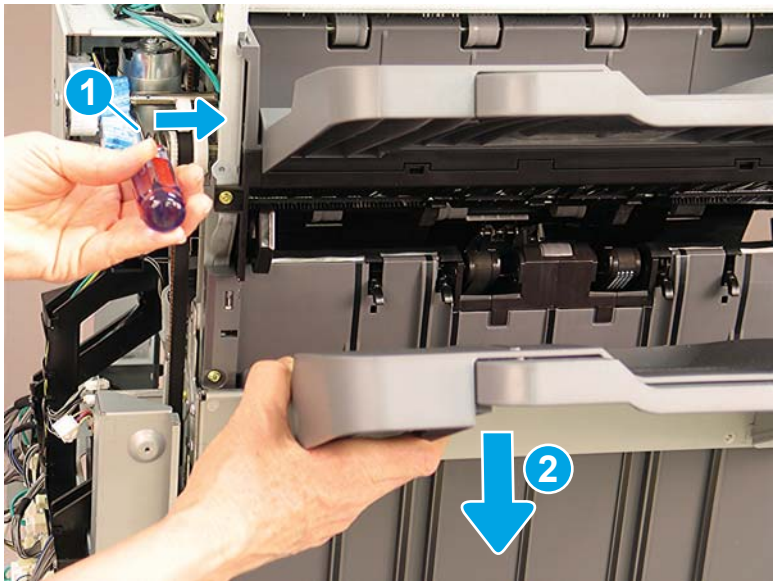
Figure 7-418 Locate sensors



Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)

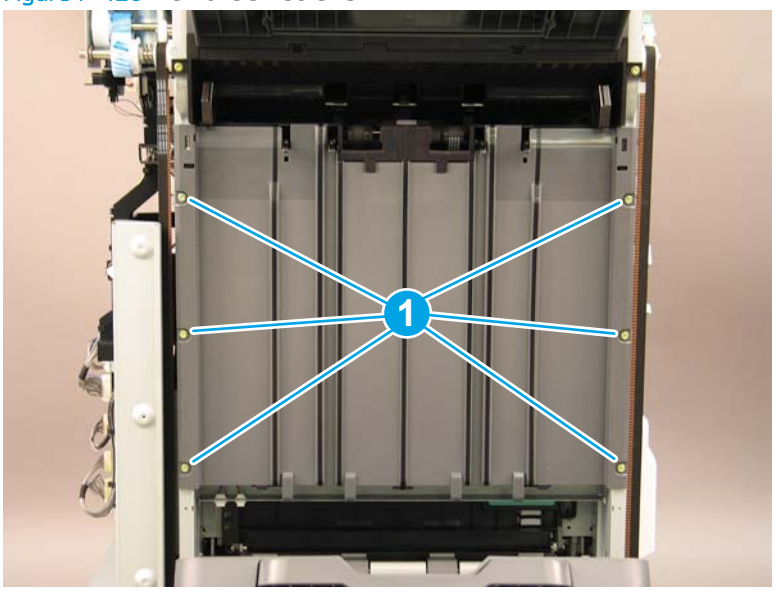
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 7-419 Lower the output tray



2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-420 Remove six screws

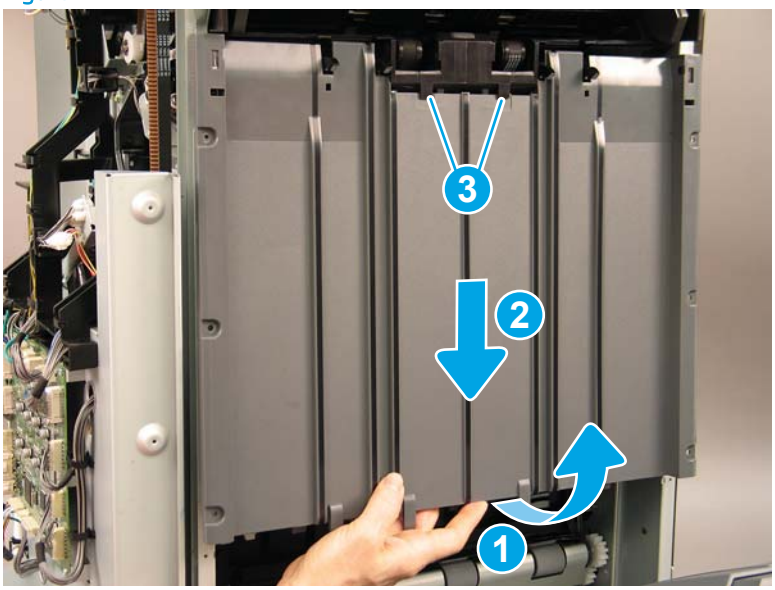


3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

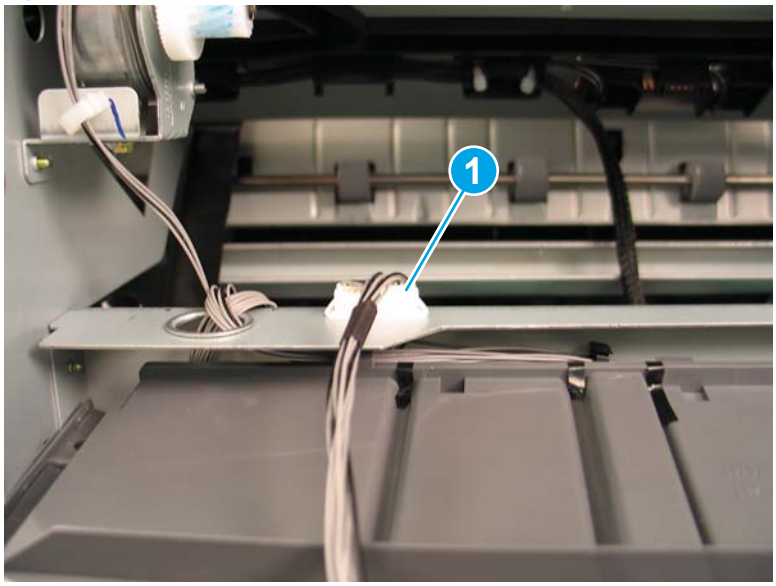
Figure 7-421 Release the shield



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.

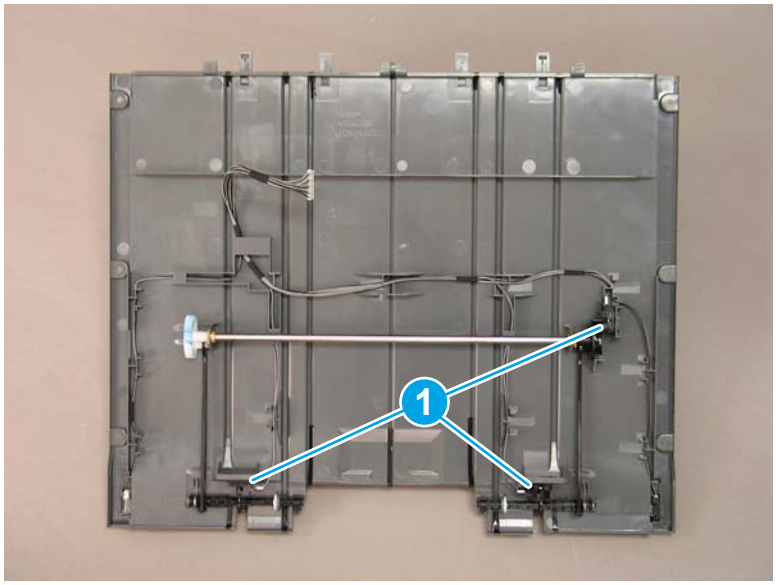
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-422 Disconnect one connector



5. If you are replacing the upper shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the upper shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

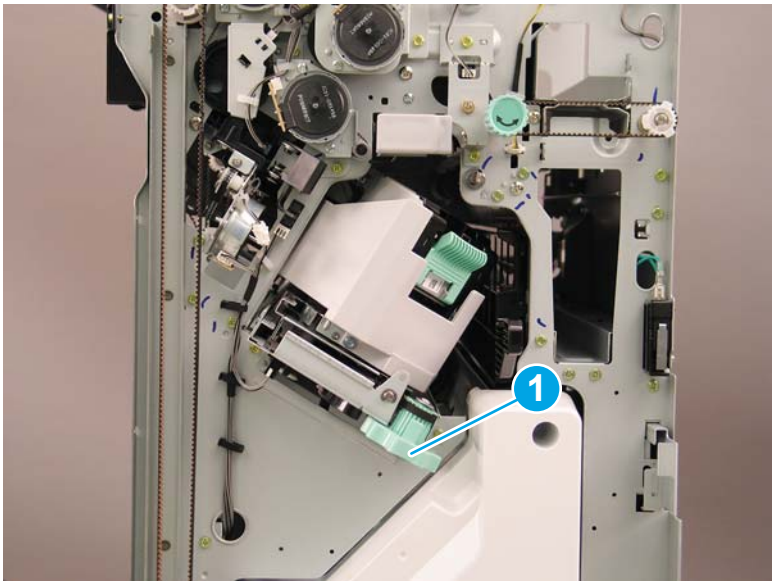
Figure 7-423 Locate sensors



Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)

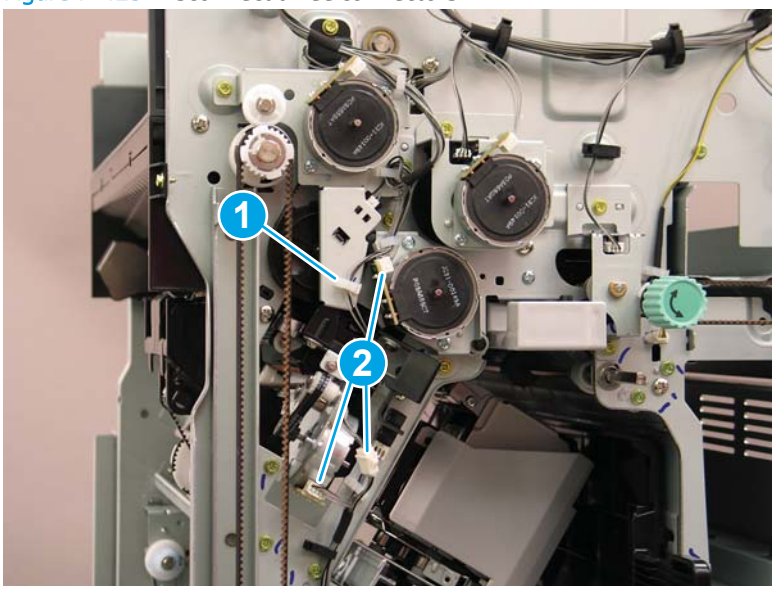
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the center of the finisher.

Figure 7-424 Move the staple unit to the center



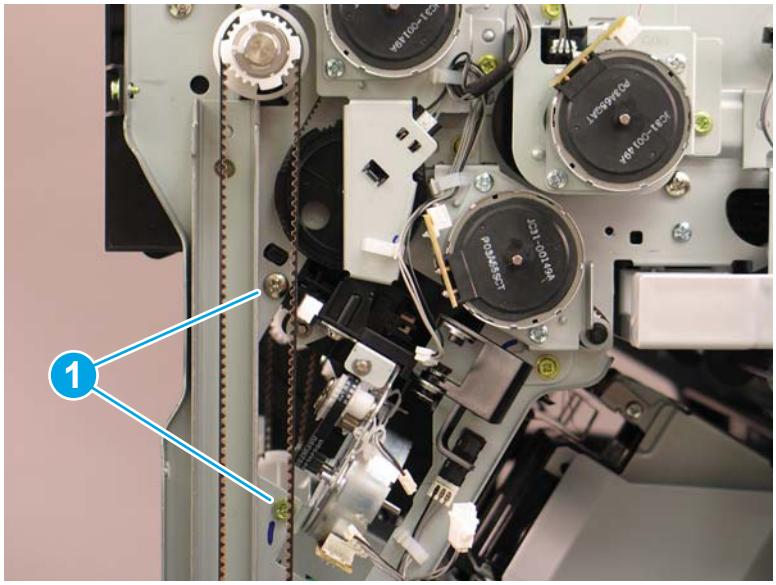
2. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 7-425 Disconnect three connectors



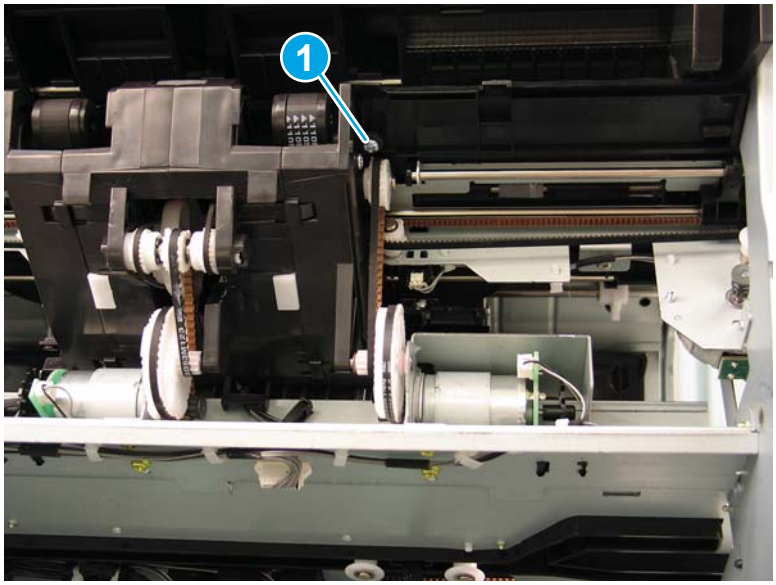
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-426 Remove two screws



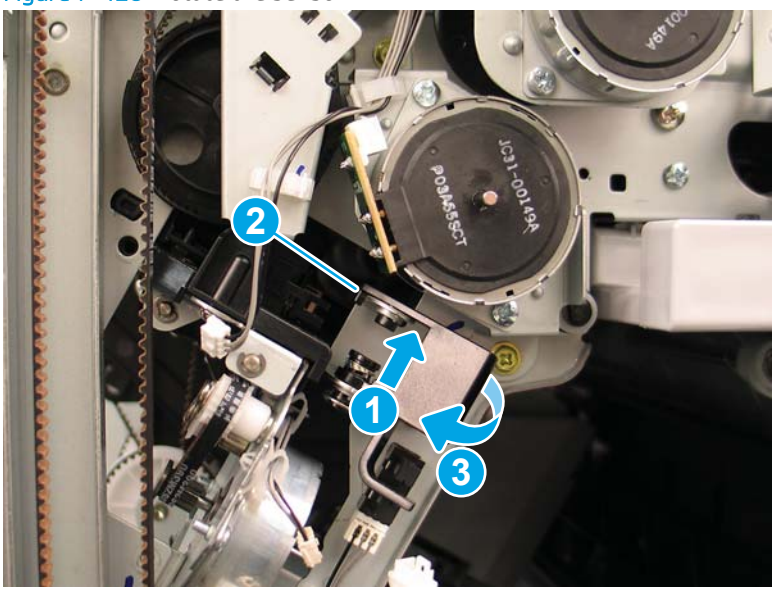
4. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 7-427 Remove one screw



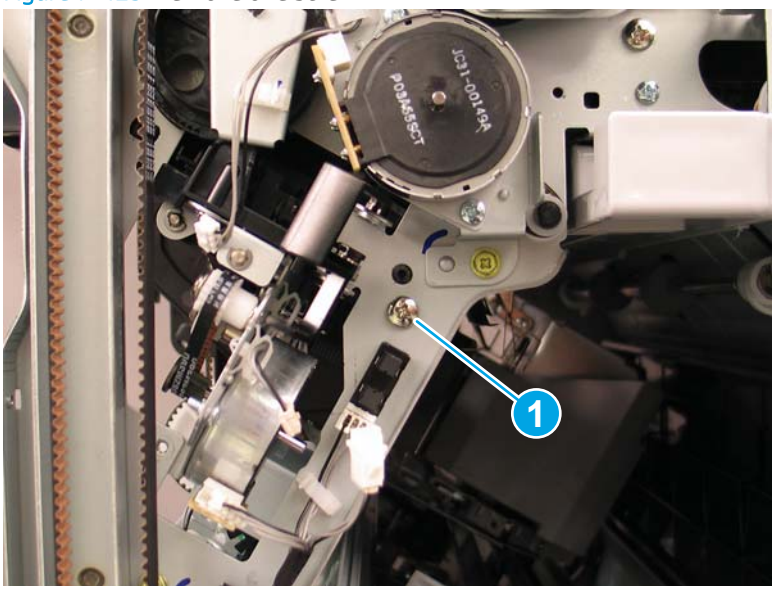
5. Press up on the hinge (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then rotate the sensor away from the finisher (callout 3).

Figure 7-428 Rotate the sensor



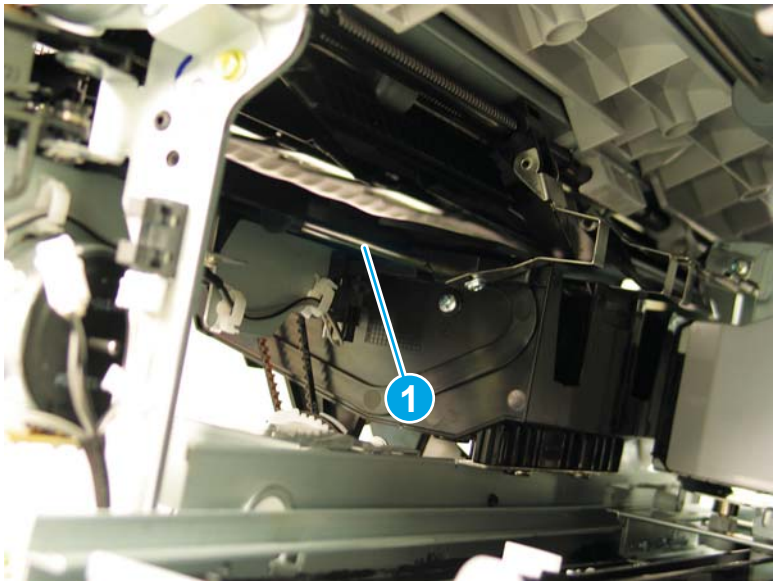
6. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 7-429 Remove one screw



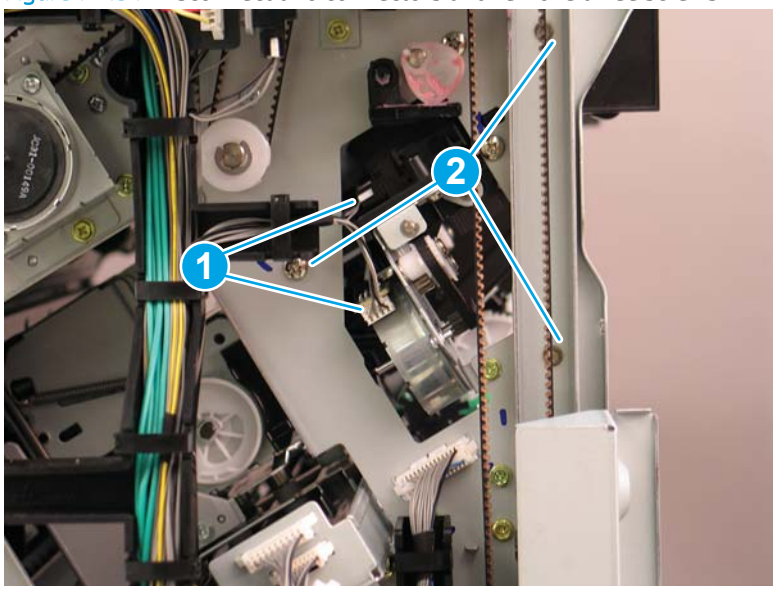
7. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the front and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the front tamper unit.

Figure 7-430 Remove the front tamper shaft



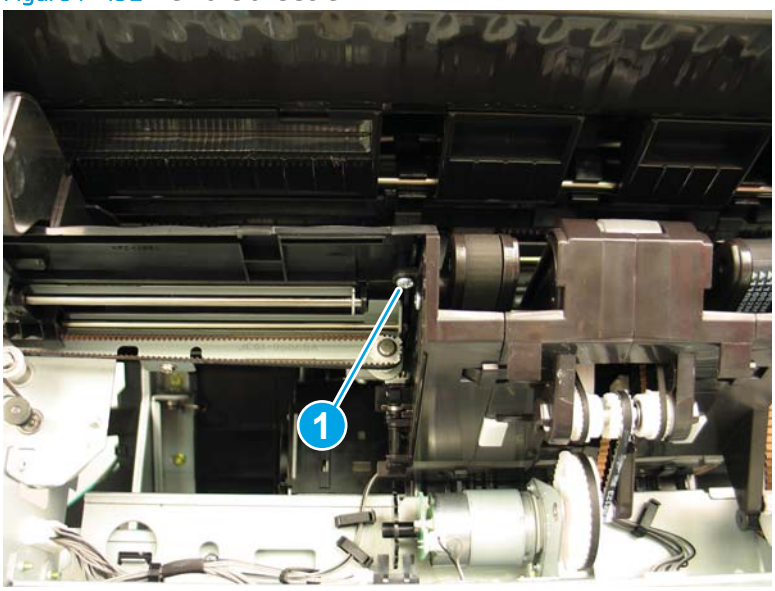
8. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 7-431 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws



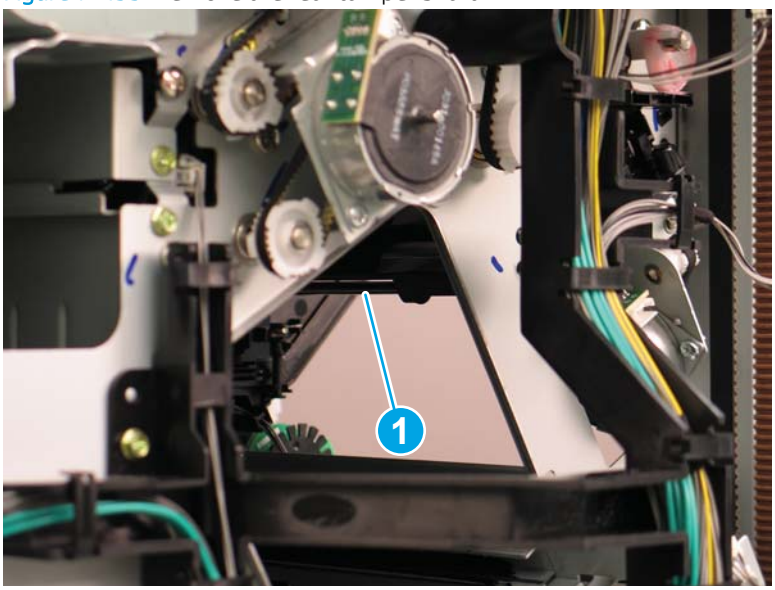
9. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 7-432 Remove one screw



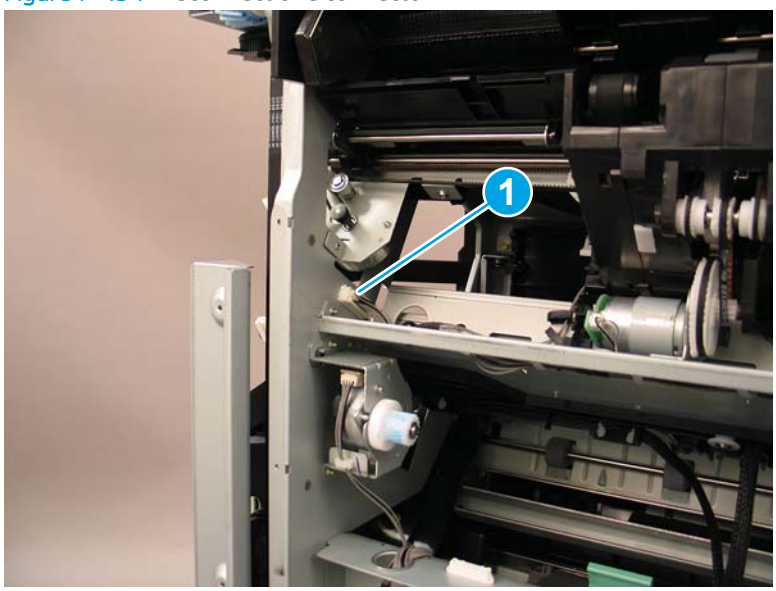
10. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the rear and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the rear tamper unit.

Figure 7-433 Remove the rear tamper shaft



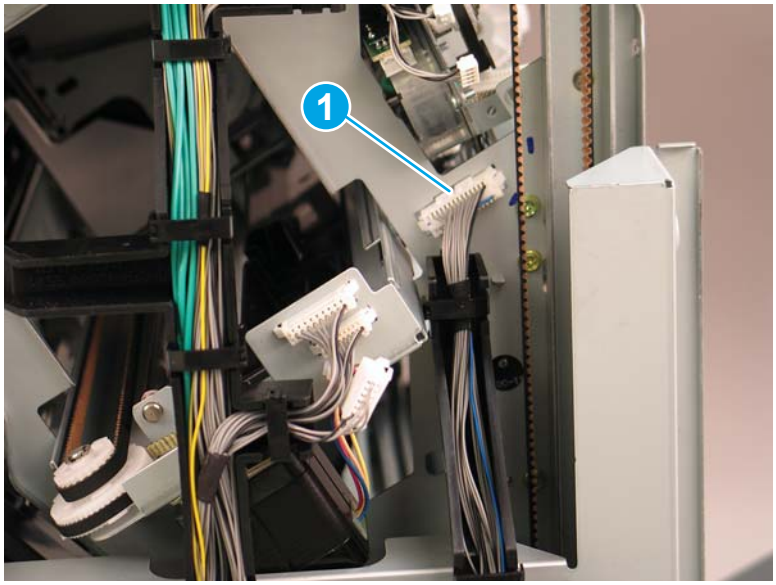
11. At the left side of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 7-434 Disconnect one connector



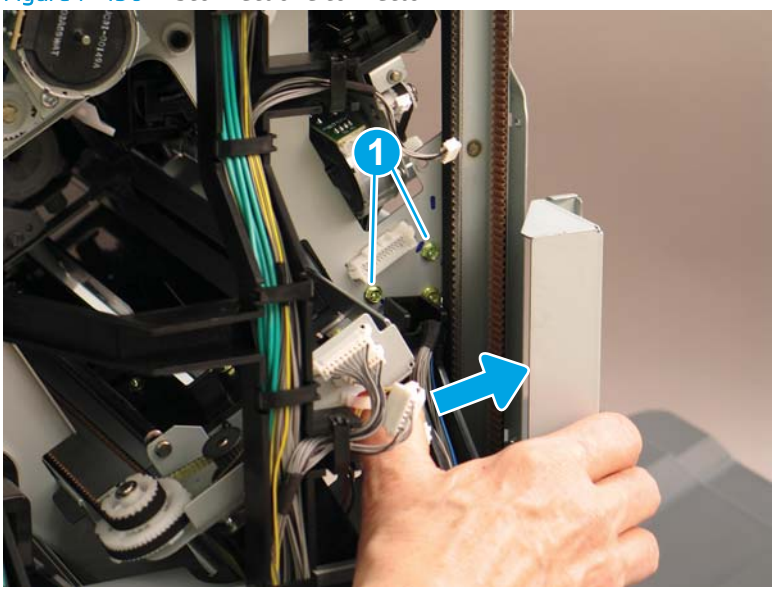
12. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 7-435 Disconnect one connector



13. At the rear of the finisher, press the wire retainer to the right to access and remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-436 Disconnect one connector

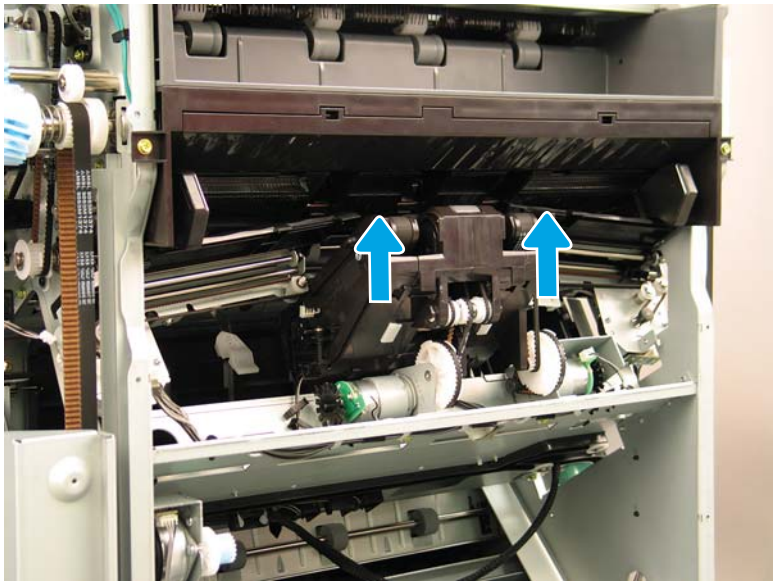


14. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-437 Remove two screws

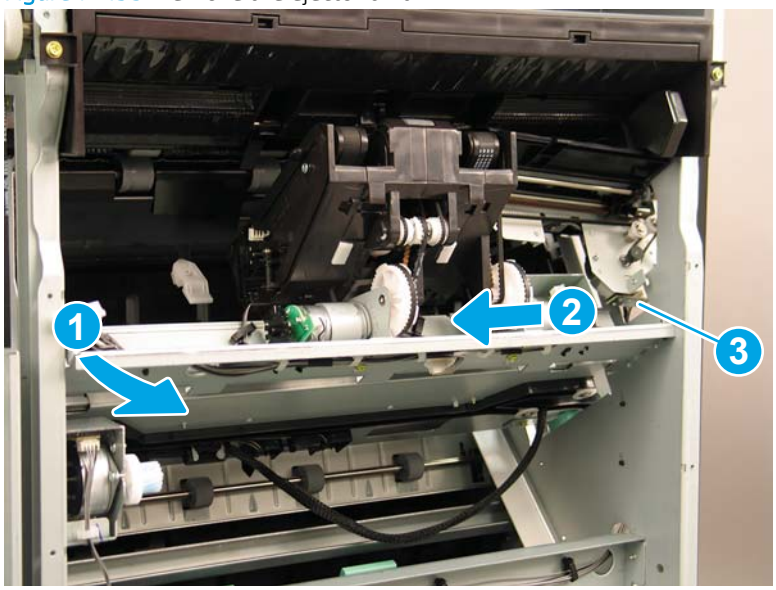
15. Lift the inside edges of the front and rear tampers up.

Figure 7-438 Lift the edges of the tampers



16. Rotate the rear edge of the ejector unit away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide it toward the rear of the finisher (callout 2) to remove it. Make sure that the PCA (callout 3) stays clear of the sheet metal frame.

Figure 7-439 Remove the ejector unit



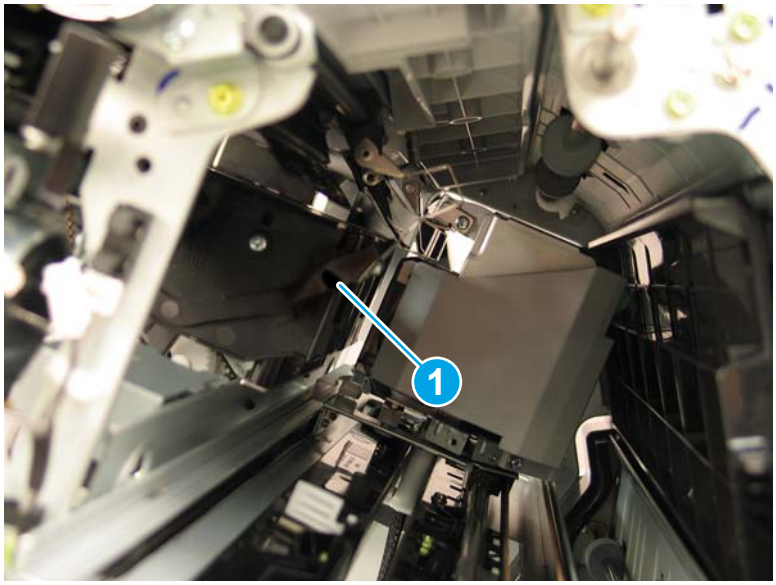
17. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Ejector unit

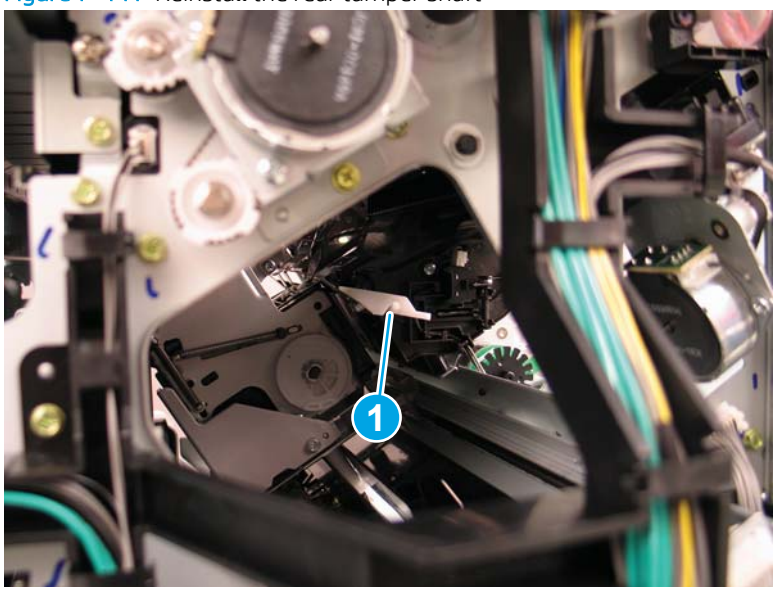
a. When the front tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 7-440 Reinstall the front tamper shaft



b. When the rear tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 7-441 Reinstall the rear tamper shaft

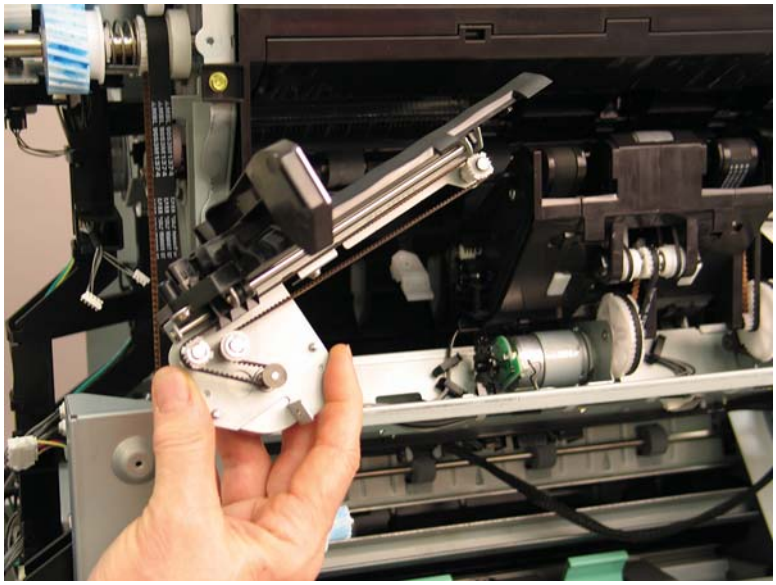


Step 11: Remove the rear tamper (finisher)

▲ Lift the rear tamper away from the finisher to remove it

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

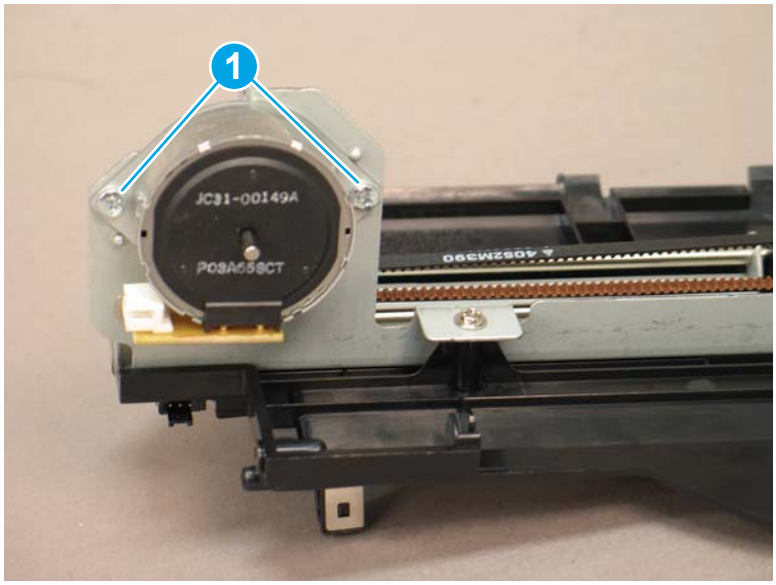
Figure 7-442 Remove the rear tamper



Step 12: Remove the rear tamper motor (M7)

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-443 Remove two screws

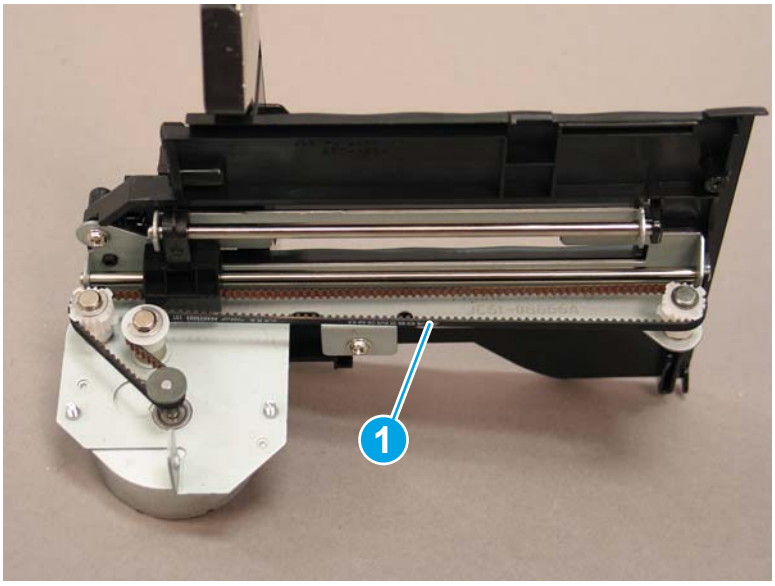


2. Release the belt (callout 1), and then remove the rear tamper motor.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that the belt is routed correctly when reinstalling the motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-444 Release the belt and remove the motor



Step 13: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

SCU motor (M10)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Remove the rear cover
- Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)
- Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)
- Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 10: Remove the SCU motor (M10)
- Step 11: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the SCU motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

SCU motor (M10) part number	
SAM-JC93-01156A	Motor, Step

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

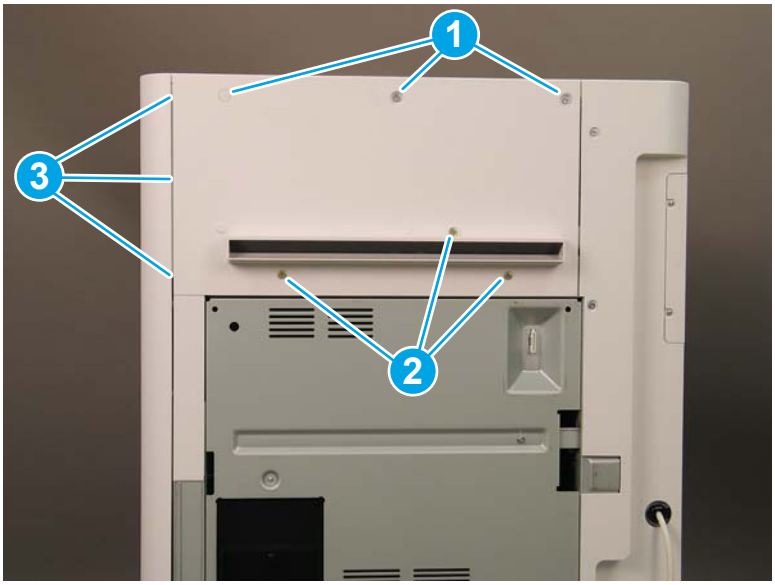
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

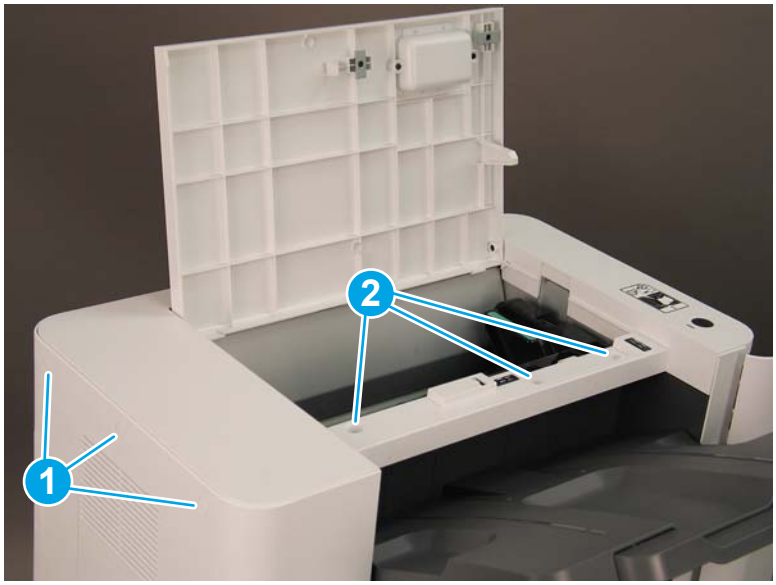
Figure 7-445 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

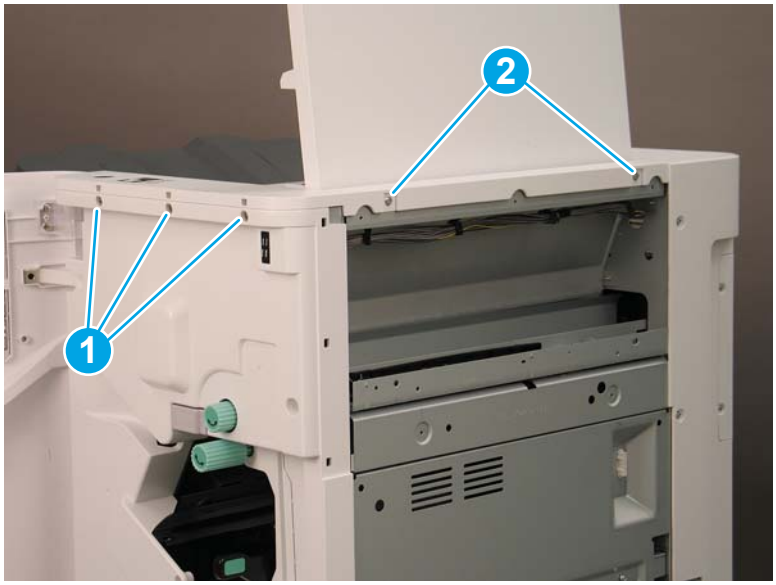
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-446 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

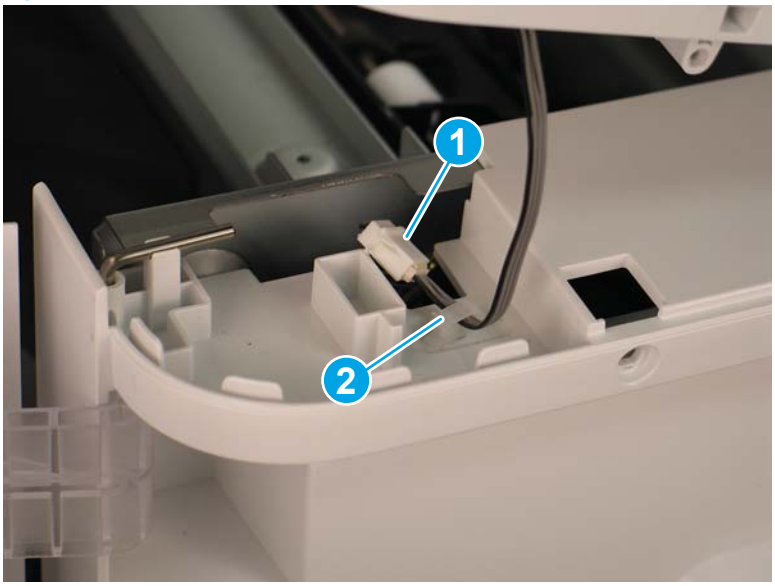
Figure 7-447 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-448 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

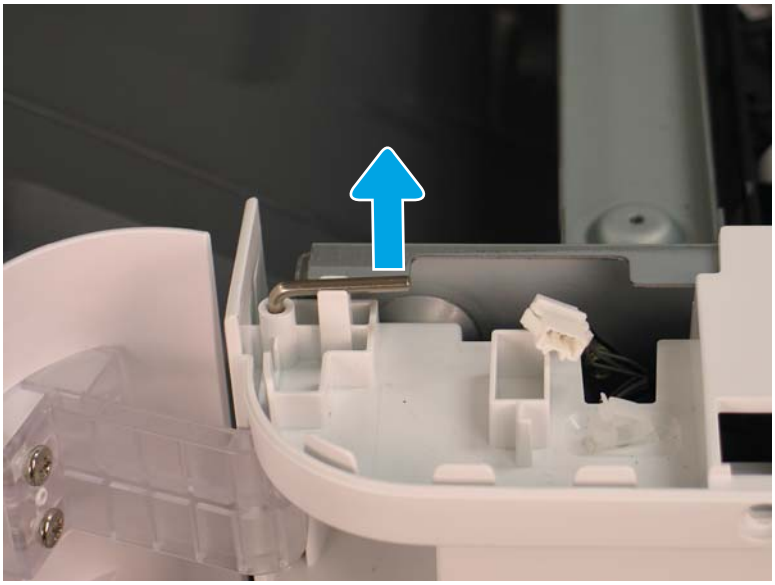


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

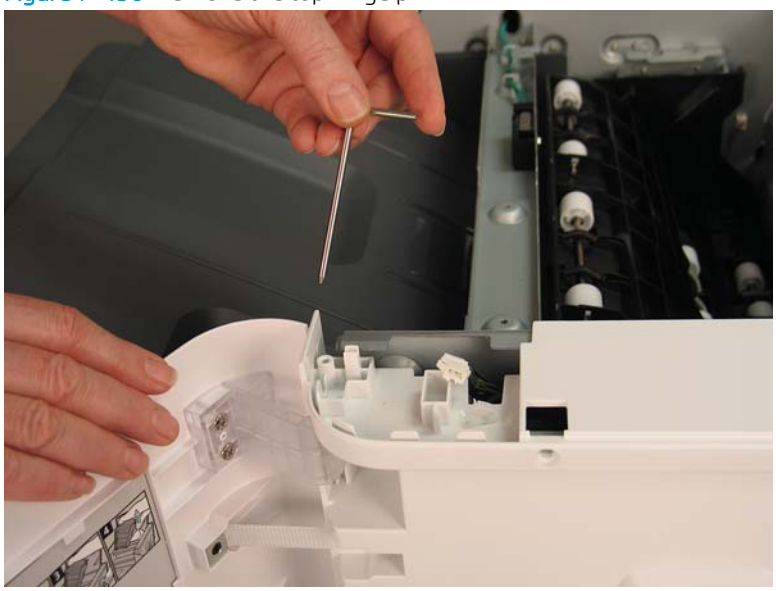
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 7-449 Lift the top hinge pin



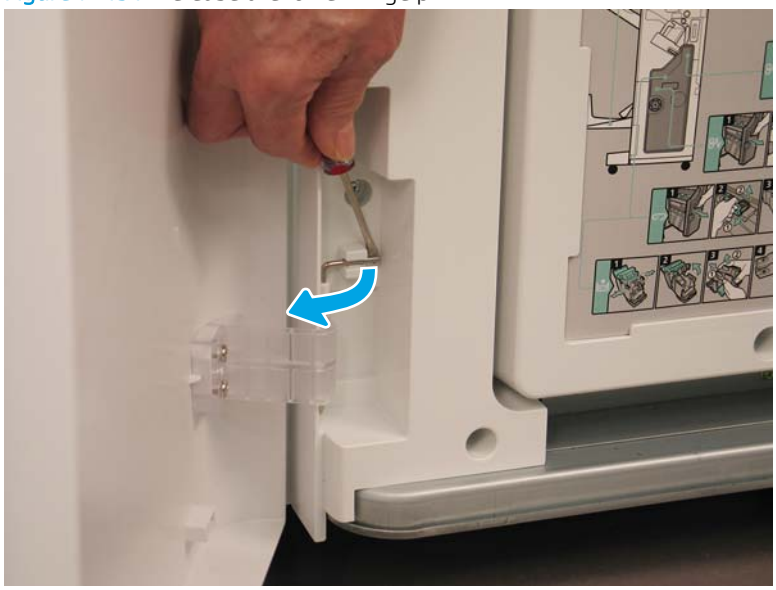
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 7-450 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 7-451 Release the lower hinge pin



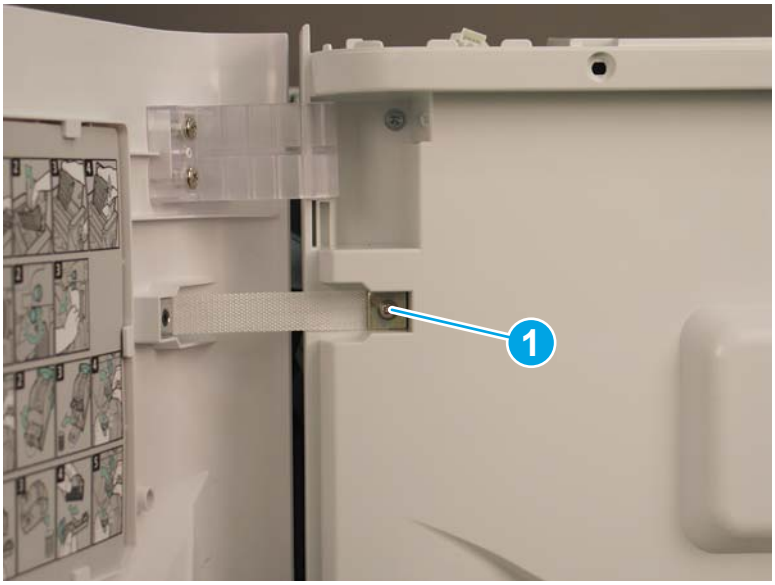
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 7-452 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

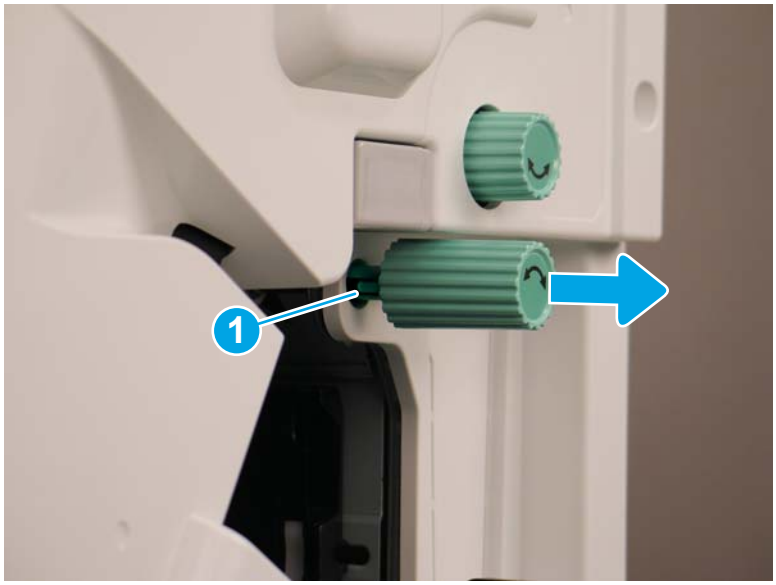
Figure 7-453 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

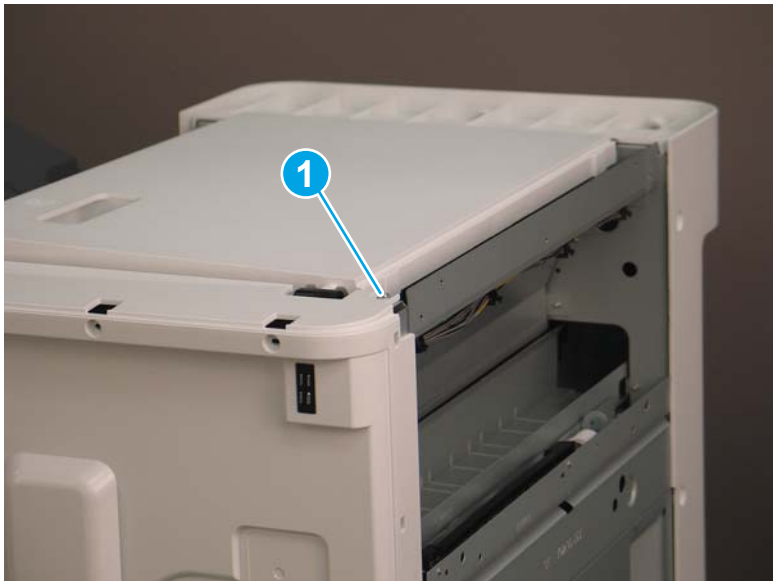
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 7-454 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

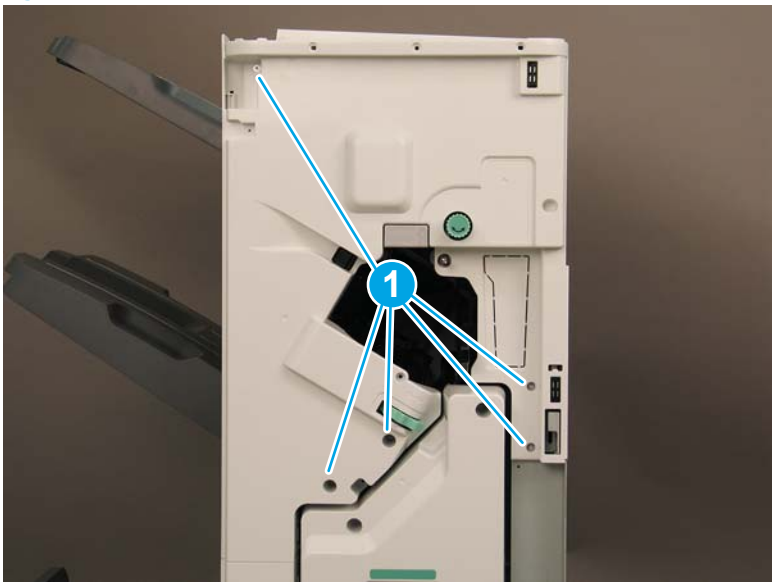
Figure 7-455 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

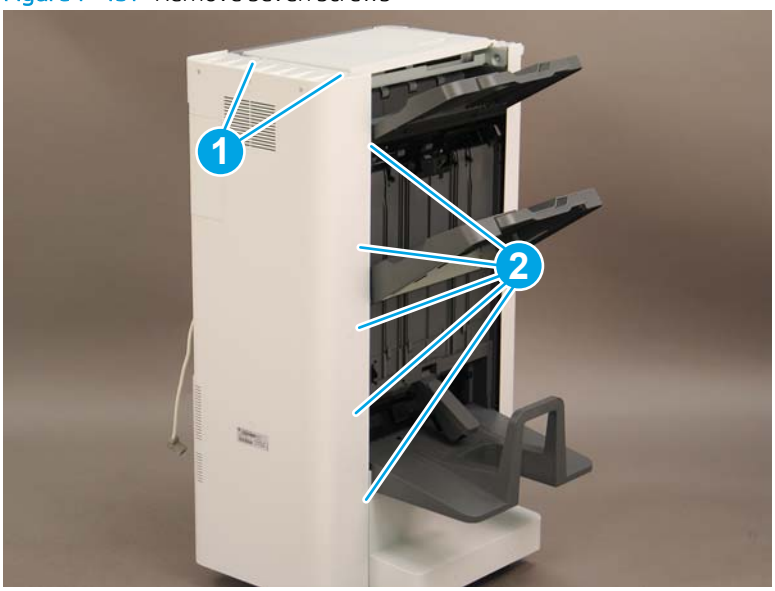
Figure 7-456 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 5: Remove the rear cover

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-457 Remove seven screws

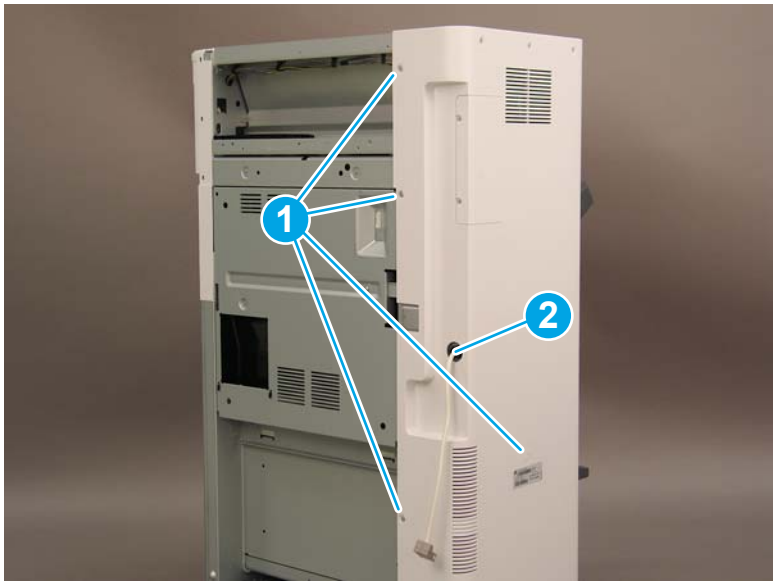


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

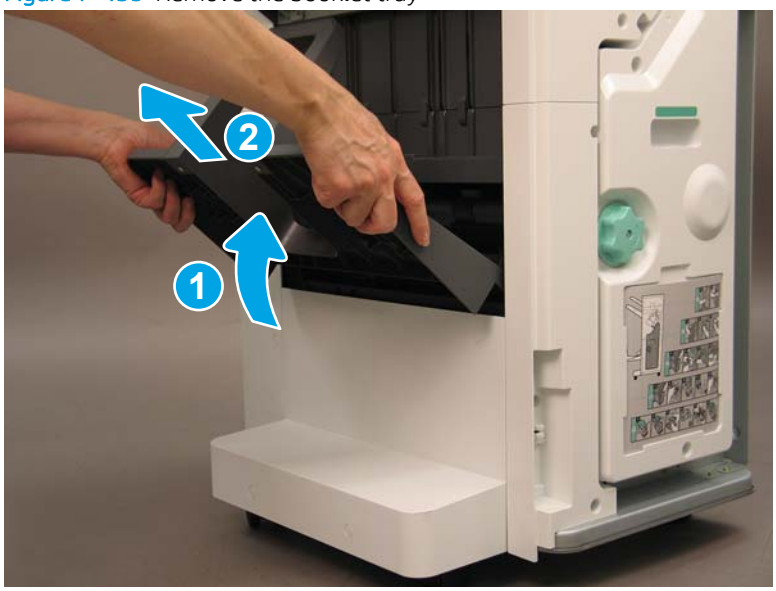
Figure 7-458 Remove four screws and the rear cover



Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 7-459 Remove the booklet tray



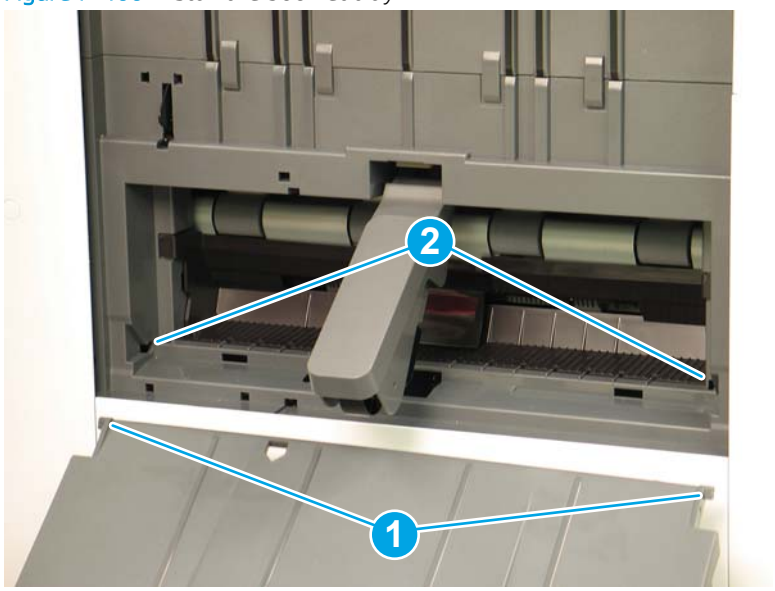
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

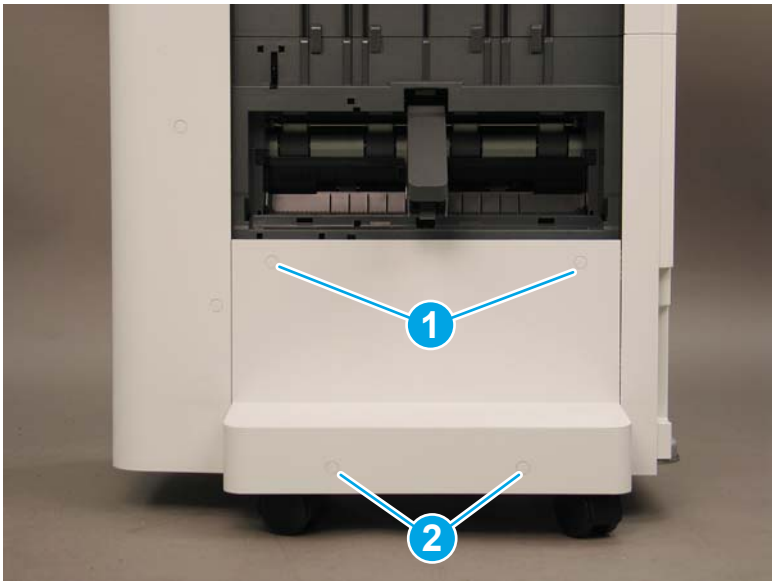
Figure 7-460 Install the booklet tray



Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 7-461 Remove four screws

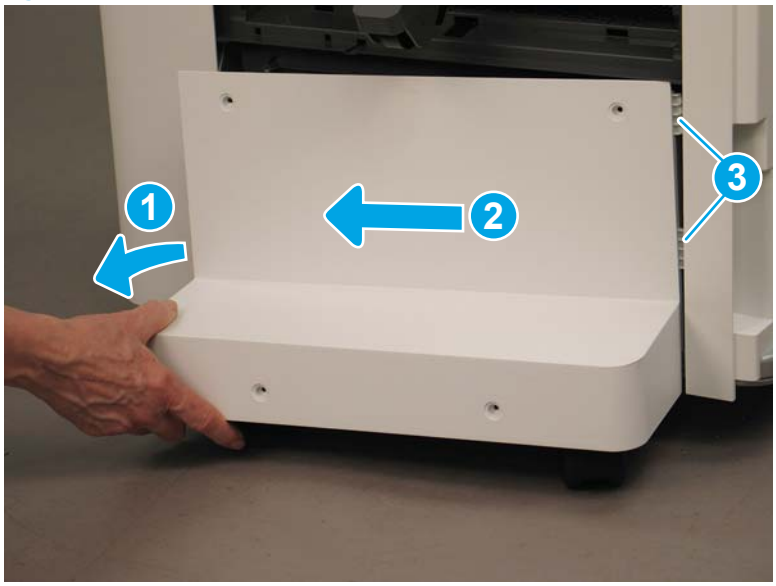


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-462 Remove the caster cover

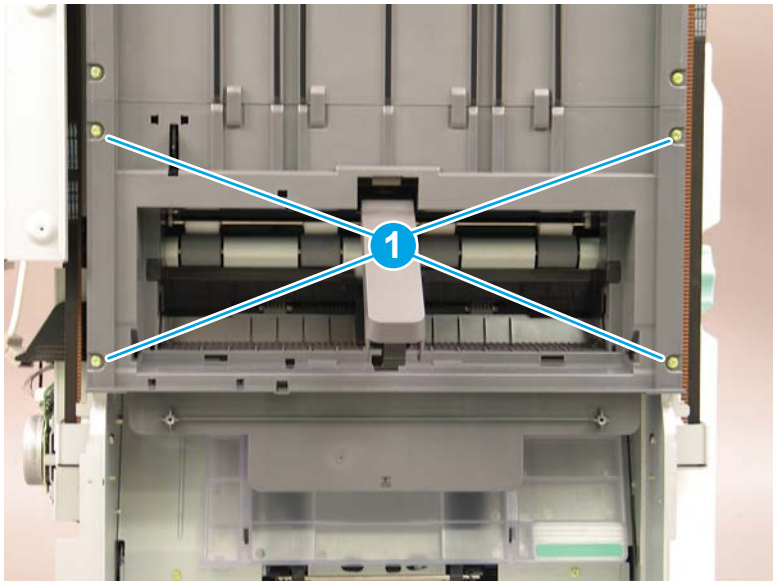


Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raise the lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 7-463 Remove four screws

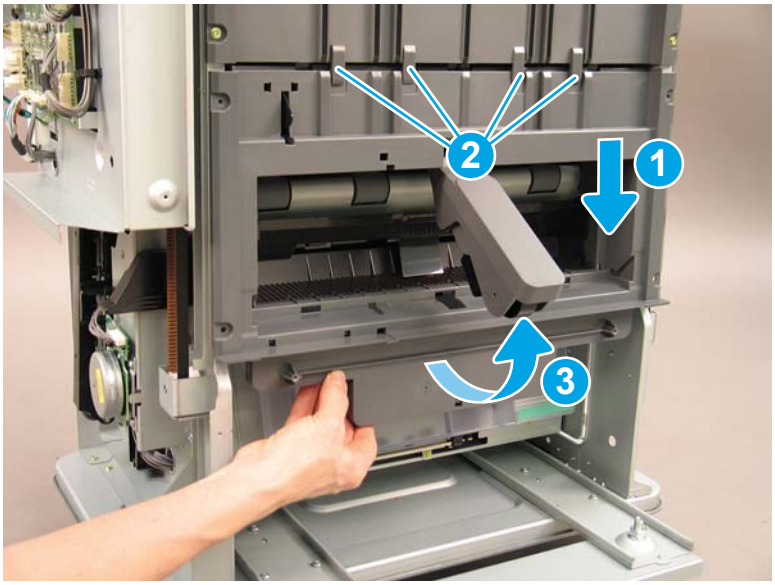


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

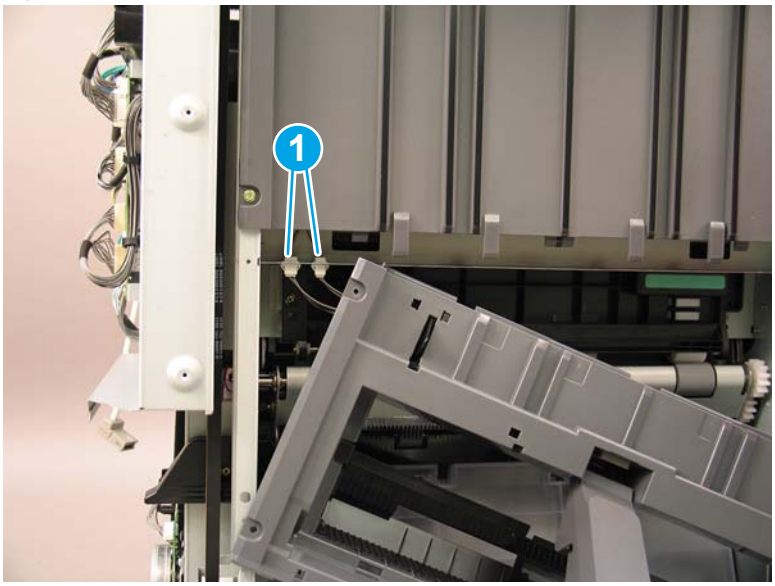
Figure 7-464 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

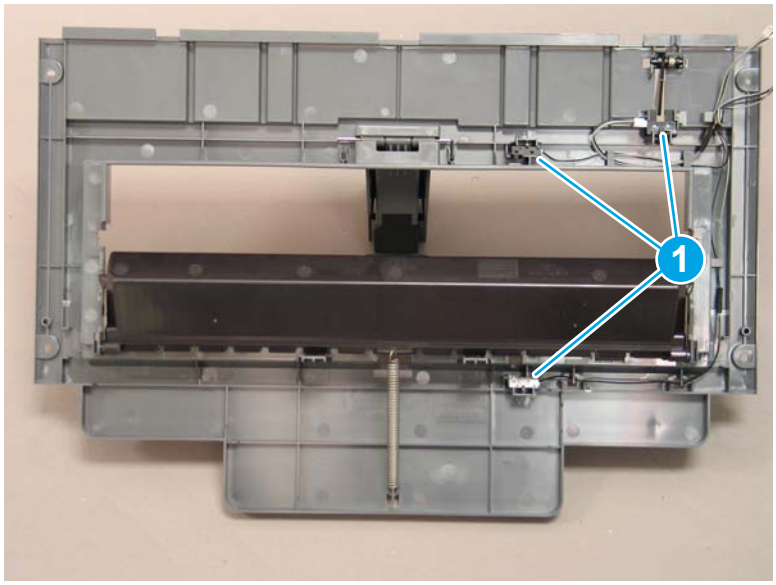
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-465 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the lower shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the lower shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

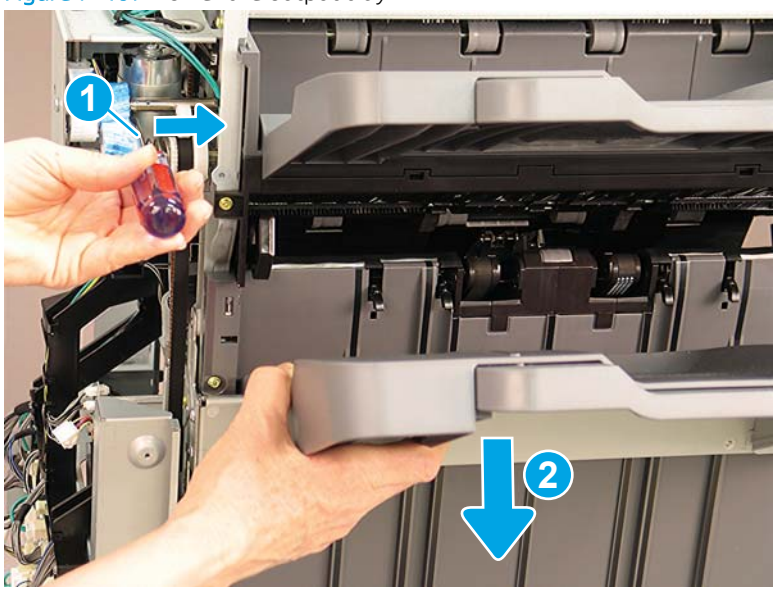
Figure 7-466 Locate sensors



Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)

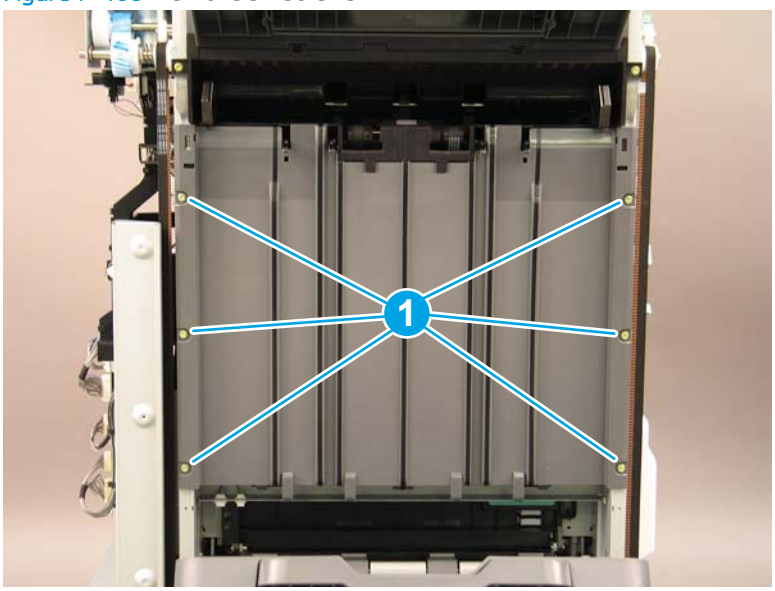
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 7-467 Lower the output tray



2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-468 Remove six screws

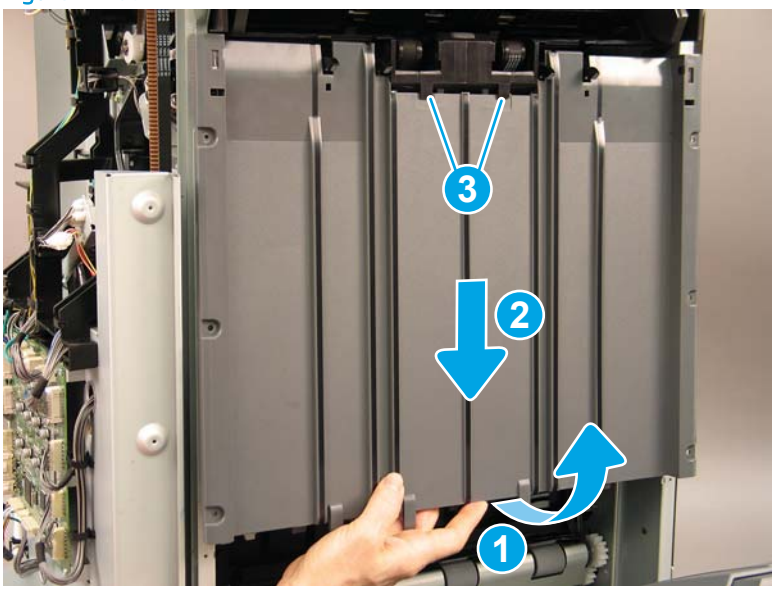


3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

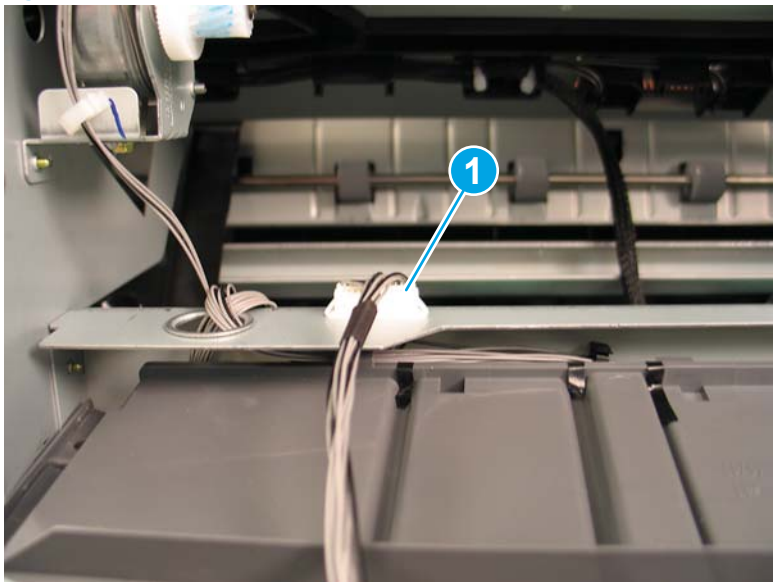
Figure 7-469 Release the shield



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.

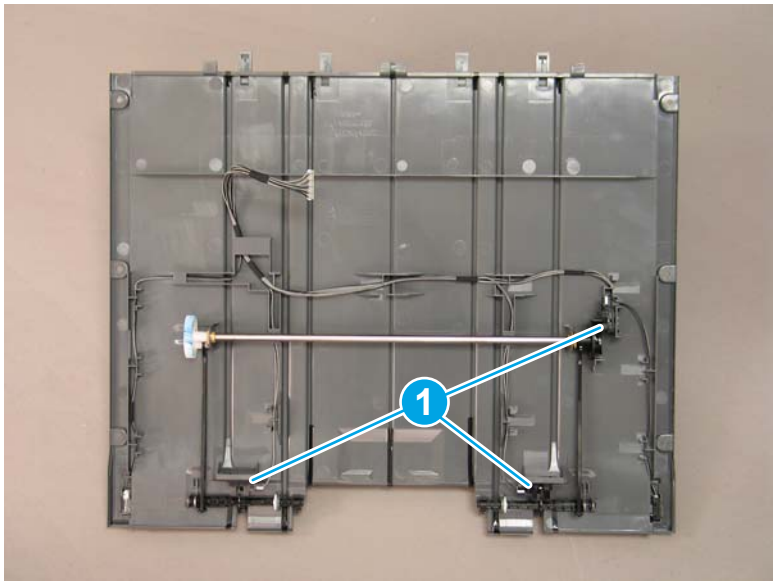
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-470 Disconnect one connector



5. If you are replacing the upper shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the upper shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

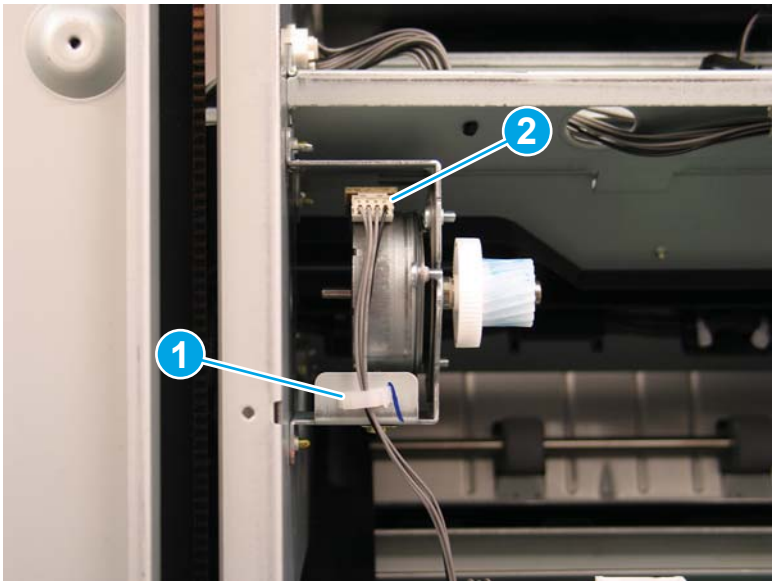
Figure 7-471 Locate sensors



Step 10: Remove the SCU motor (M10)

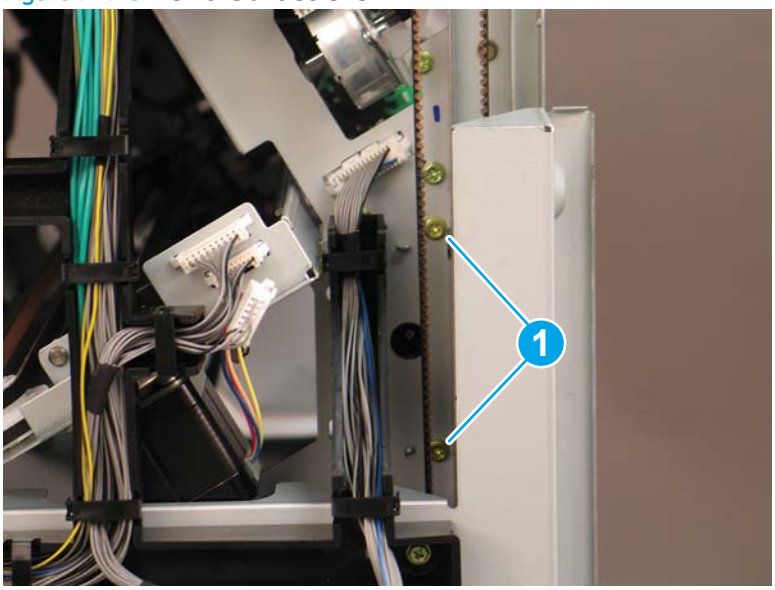
1. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 7-472 Disconnect one connector



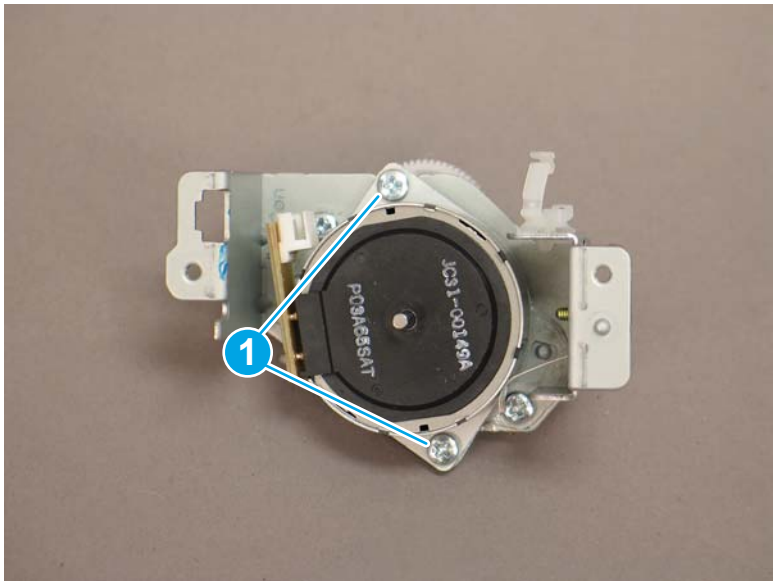
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the motor and bracket.

Figure 7-473 Remove two screws



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the motor.

Figure 7-474 Remove two screws and the motor



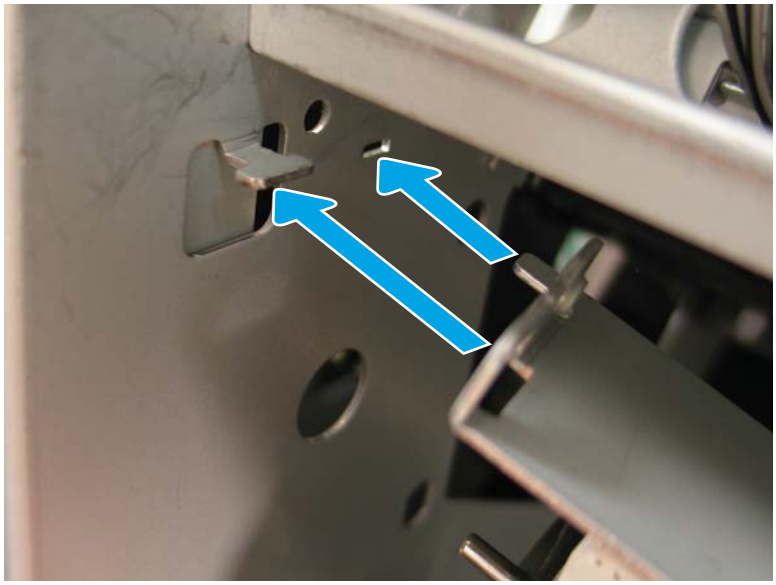
4. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: SCU motor (M10)

- When installing the motor and bracket, align the tab and slot on the motor bracket with the tab and slot in the printer.

Figure 7-475 Install the motor and bracket



Step 11: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Main tray moving motor (M11)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the main tray moving motor (M11)
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the main tray moving motor (M11) on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Main tray moving motor (M11) part number	
SAM-JC90-01415A	Motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

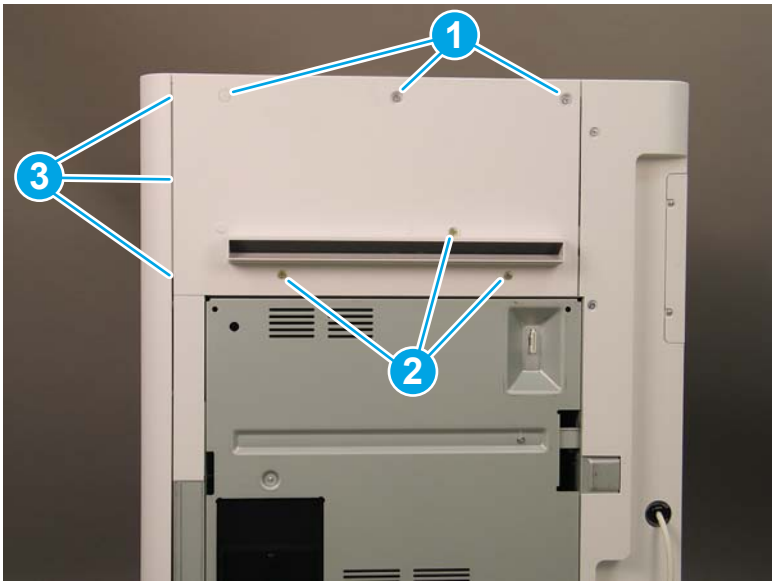
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

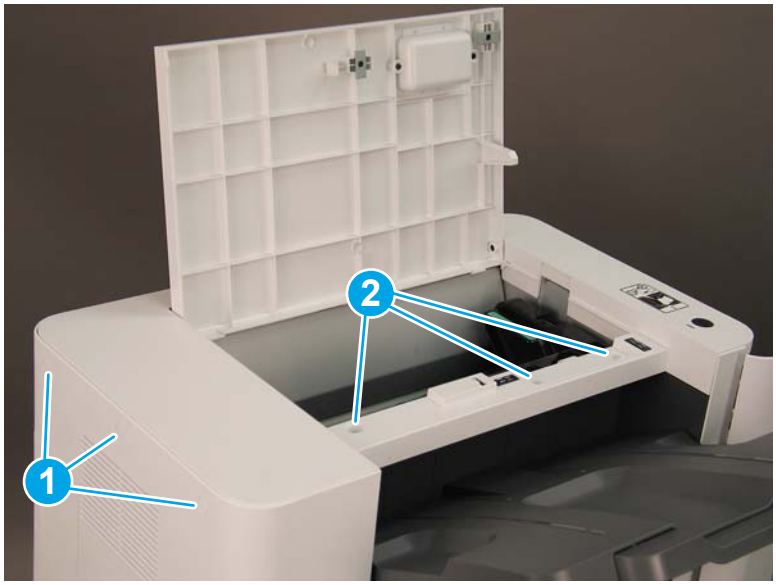
Figure 7-476 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

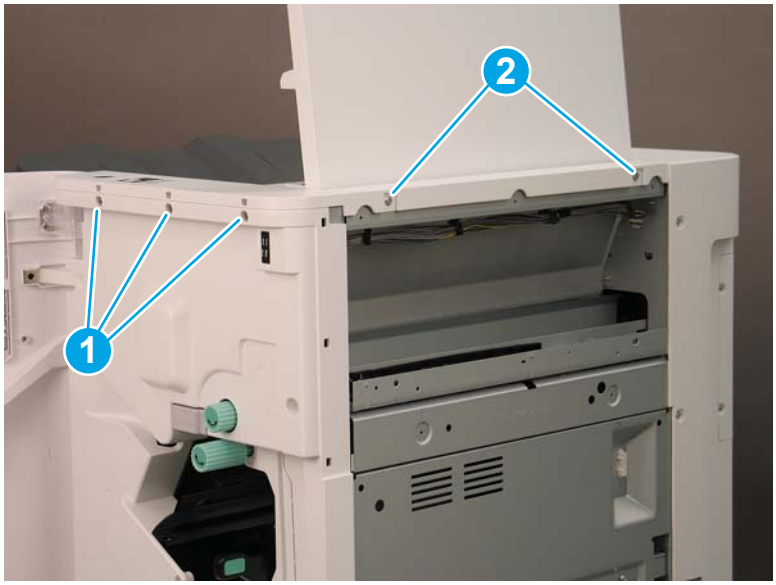
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-477 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

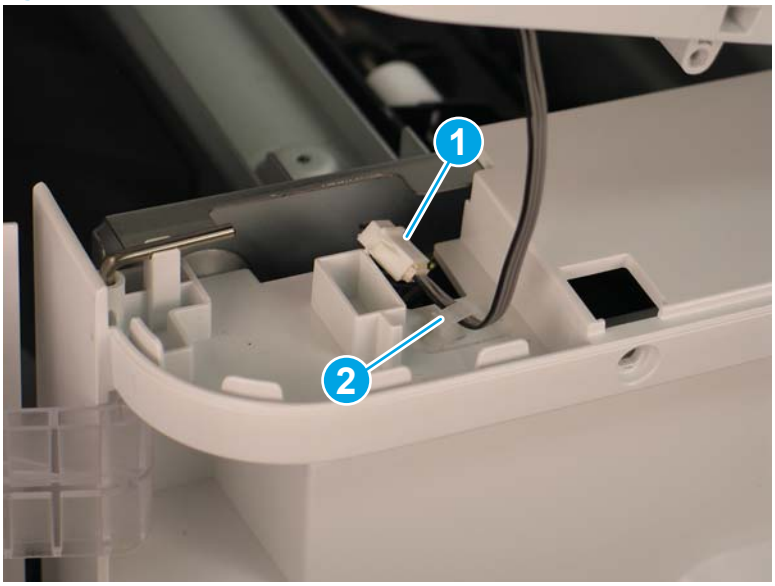
Figure 7-478 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-479 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

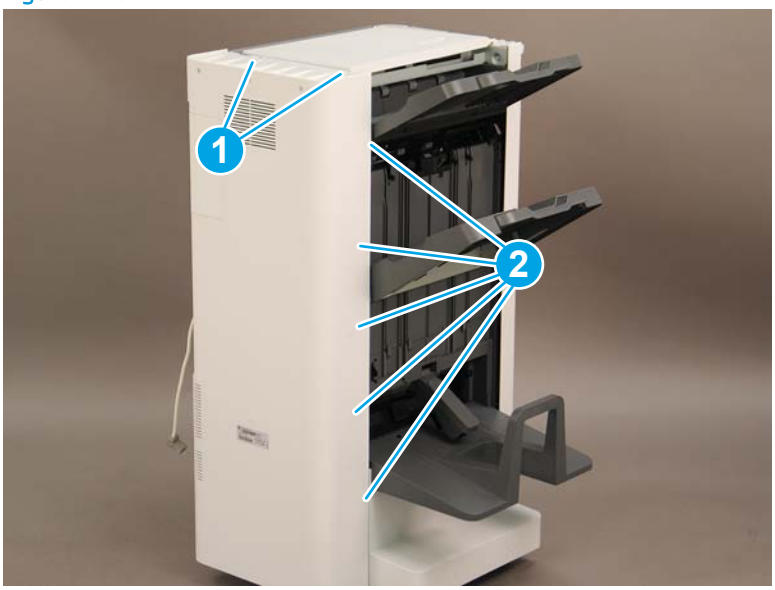


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-480 Remove seven screws

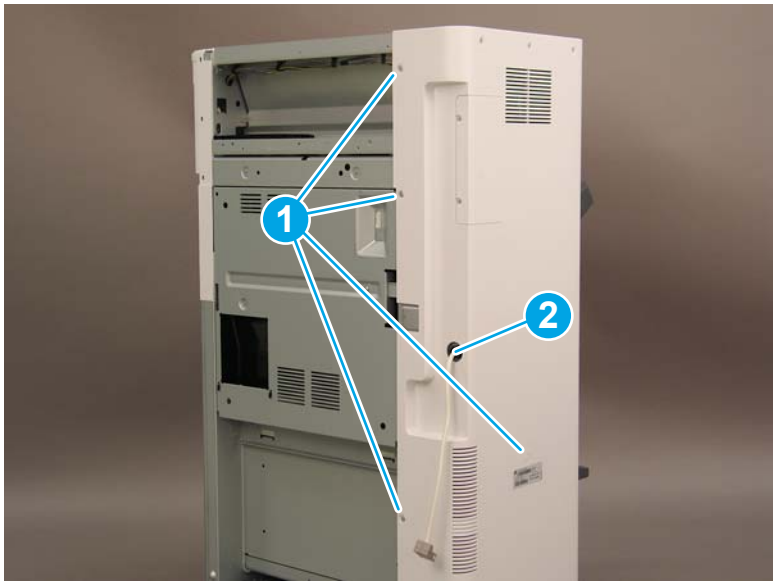


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

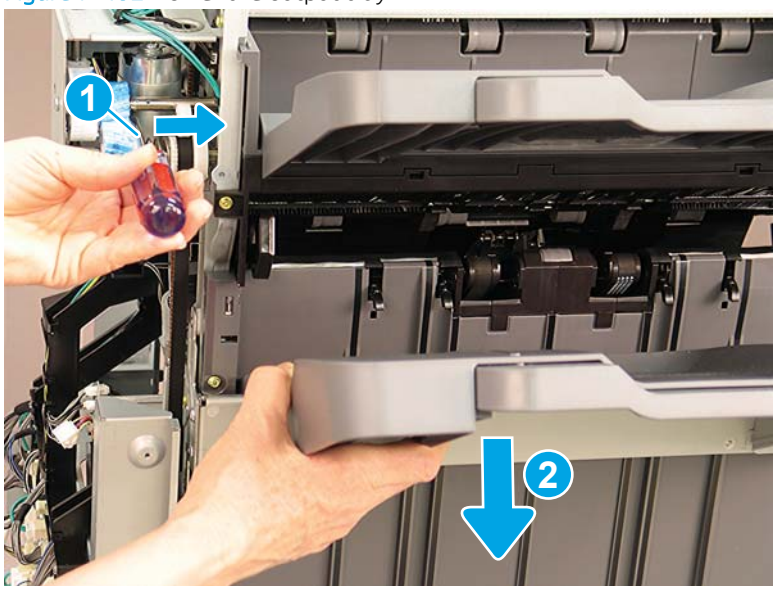
Figure 7-481 Remove four screws and the rear cover



Step 4: Remove the main tray moving motor (M11)

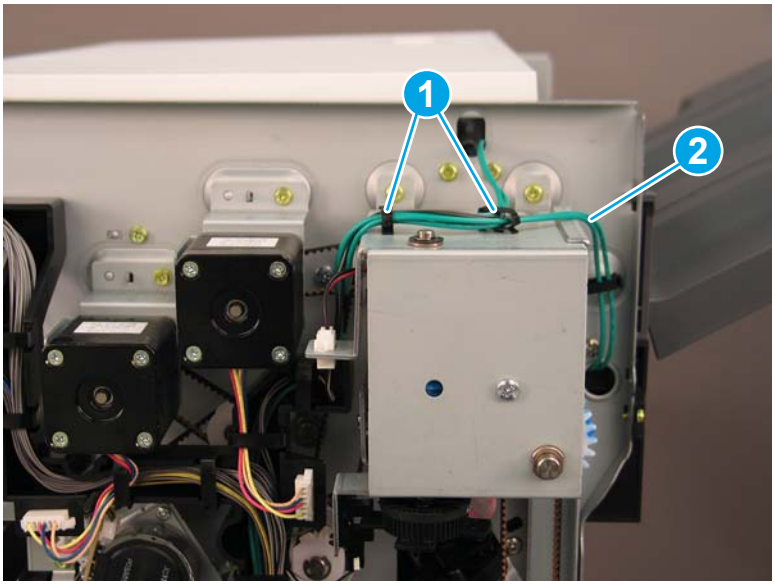
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 7-482 Lower the output tray



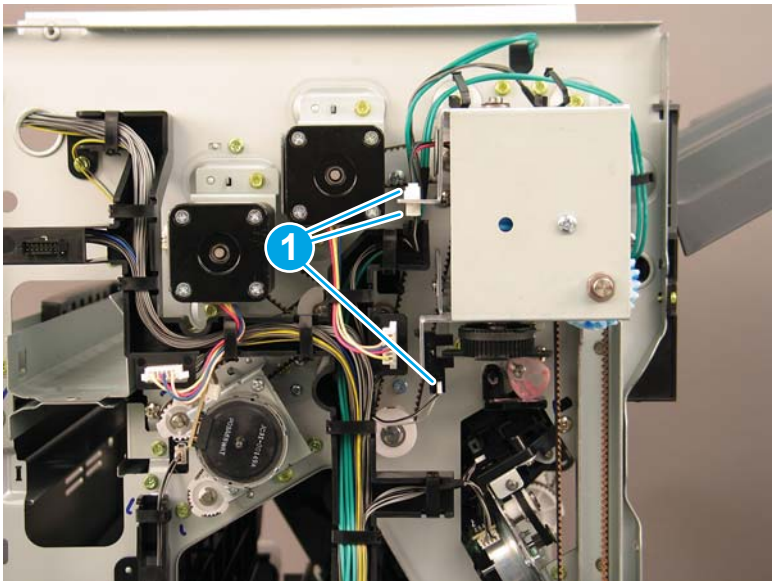
2. Open two retainers (callout 1), and then release the green wires (callout 2).

Figure 7-483 Open two retainers



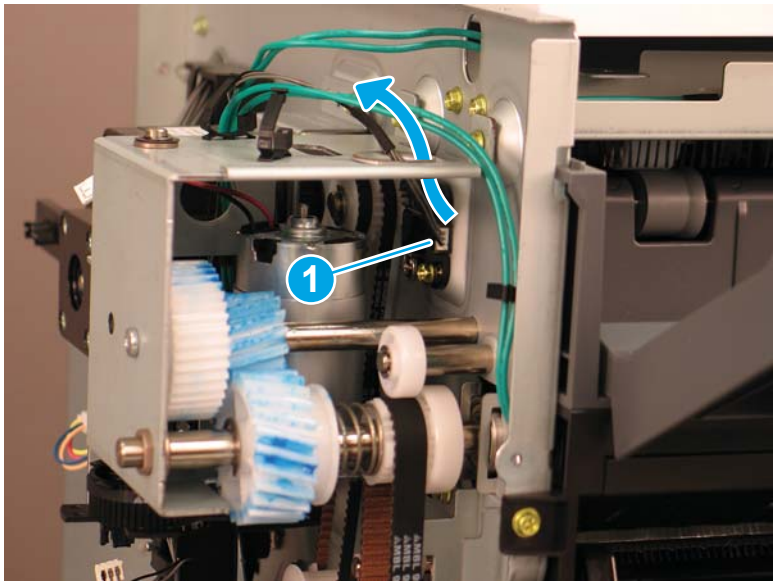
3. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1).

Figure 7-484 Disconnect three connectors



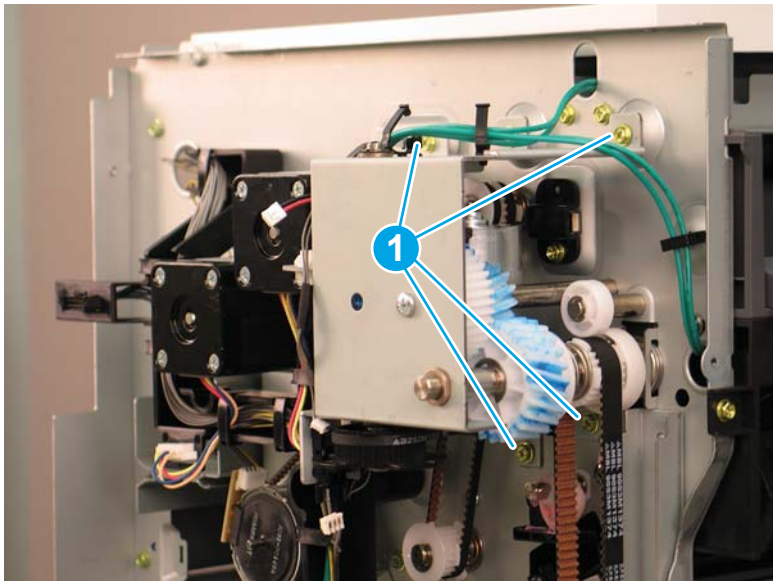
4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then thread the cable up through the opening in the top of the bracket.

Figure 7-485 Disconnect one connector



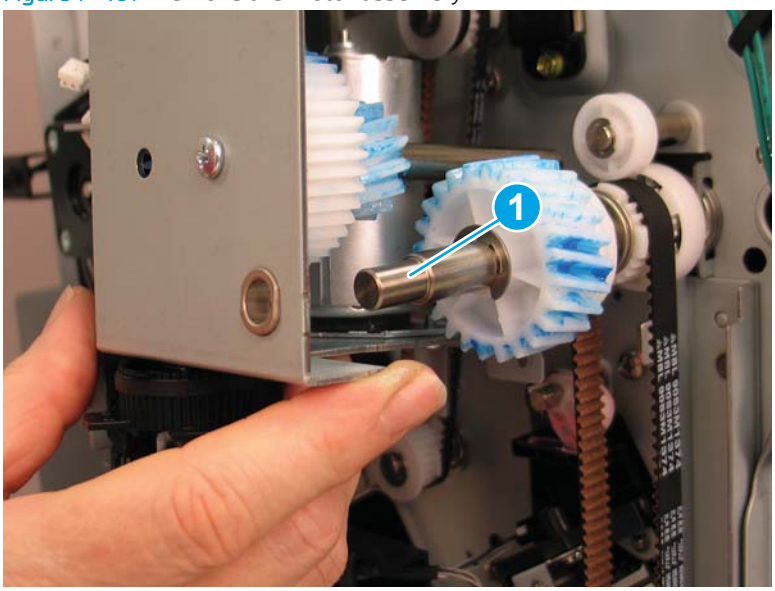
5. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the motor assembly.

Figure 7-486 Remove four screws and the motor assembly



6. Carefully pull the motor assembly away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 7-487 Remove the motor assembly



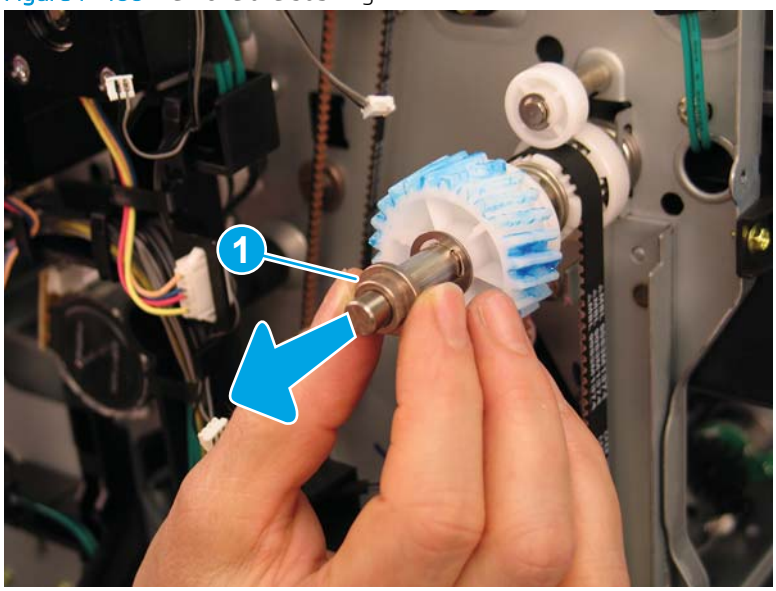
7. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Main tray moving motor (M11)

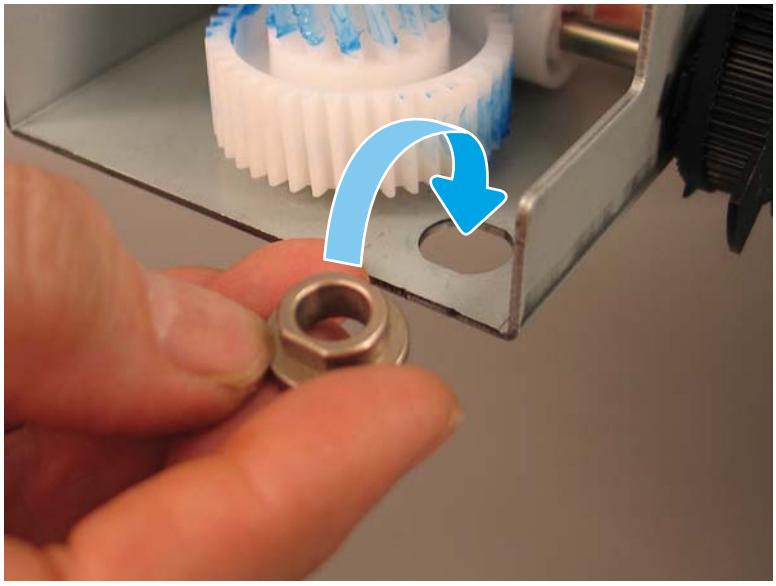
a. Before installing the motor assembly, slide the bushing (callout 1) off of the shaft.

Figure 7-488 Remove the bushing



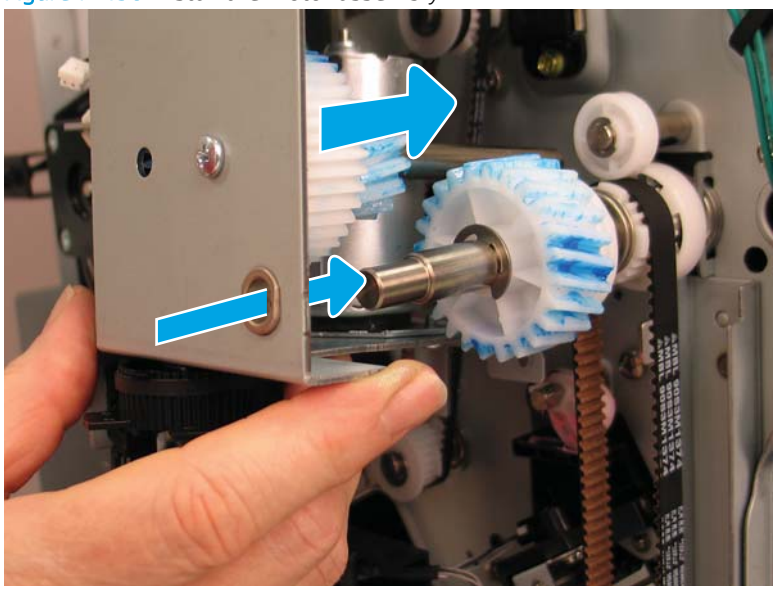
b. Align the flat edges on the bushing with the flat edges on the opening in the motor assembly bracket, and then install the bushing.

Figure 7-489 Install the bushing



c. Position the bushing over the shaft, and then install the motor assembly.

Figure 7-490 Install the motor assembly



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet finisher front cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet finisher front cover.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Booklet finisher front cover part number	
SAM-JC90-01478B	Finisher Sub - Cover F Bm

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

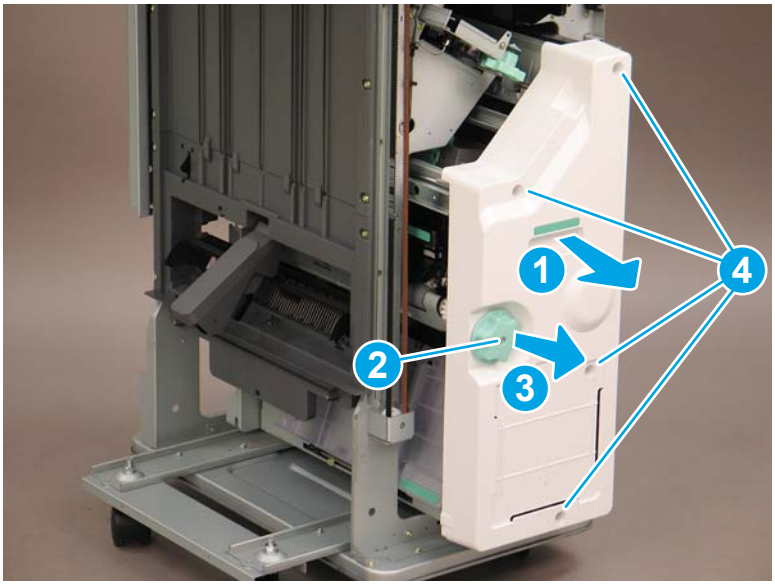
Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover

▲ Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-491 Remove five screws and the cover



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet finisher

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the booklet finisher
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Booklet finisher part number	
SAM-JC90-01416A	Finisher Sub - Booklet Unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

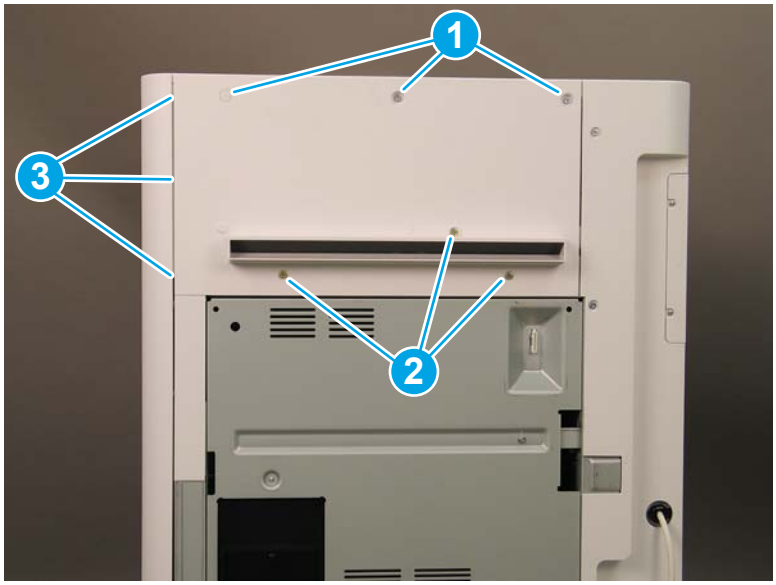
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

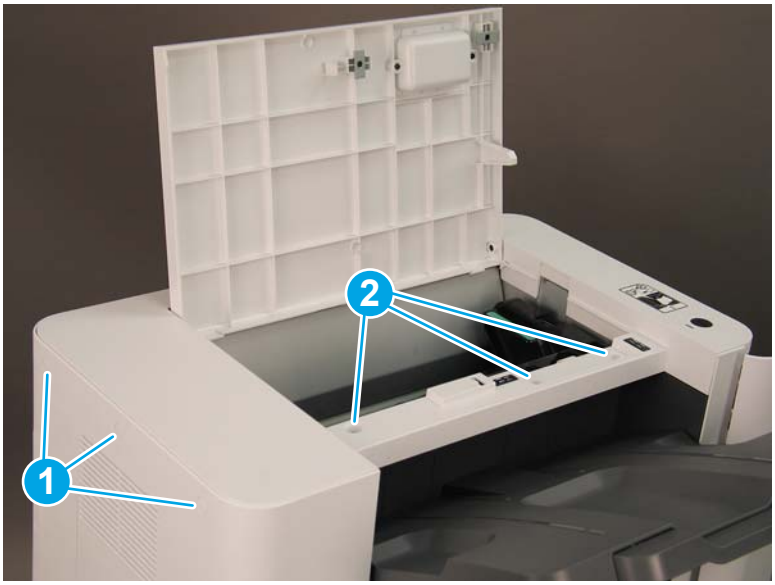
Figure 7-492 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

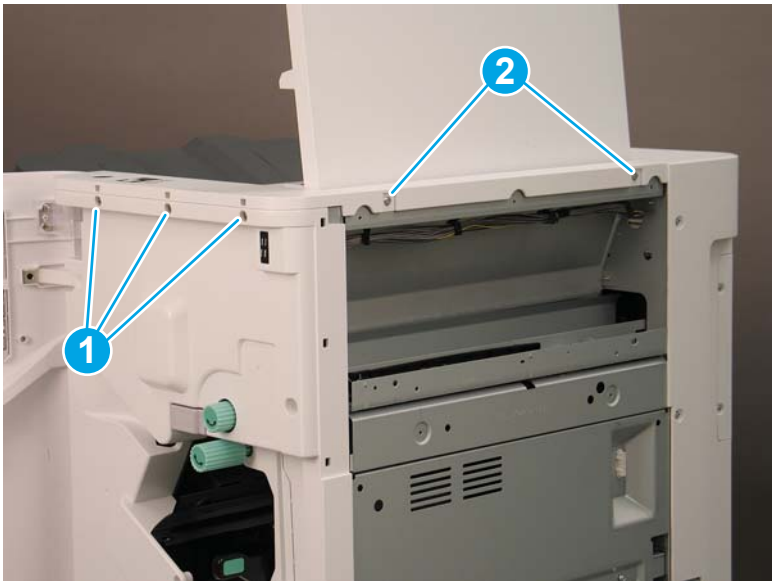
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-493 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

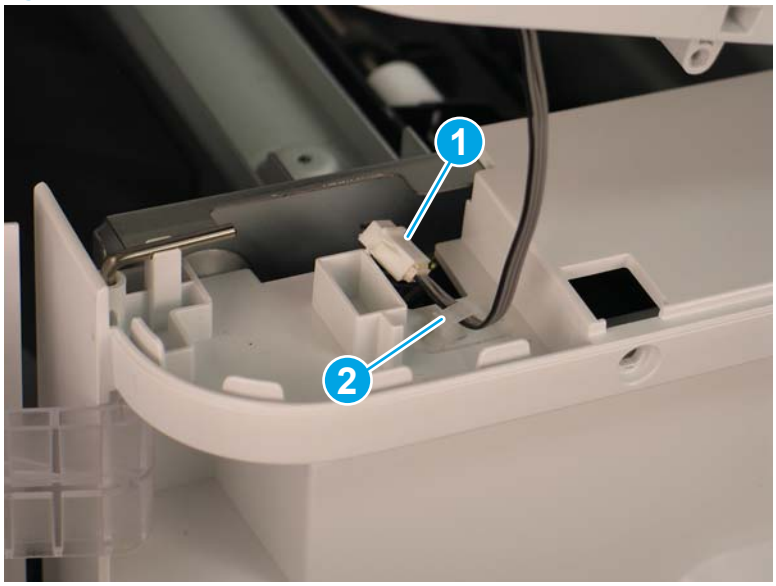
Figure 7-494 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-495 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

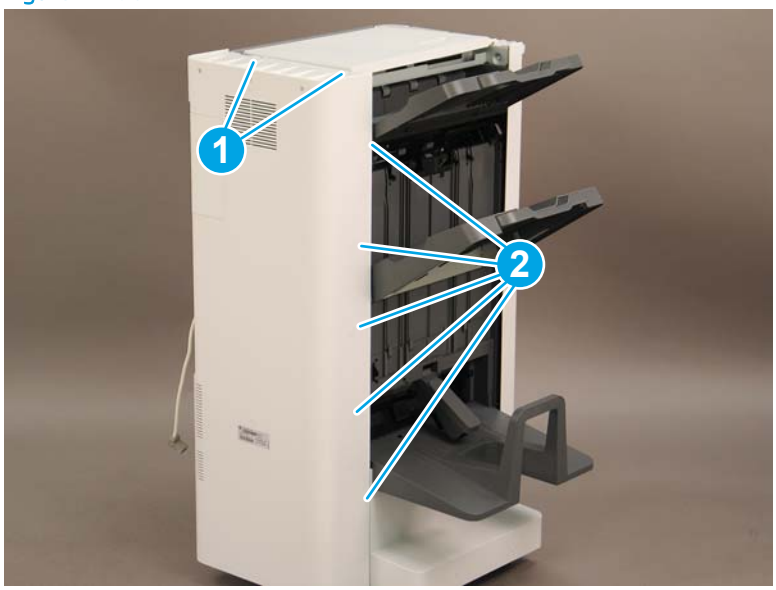


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-496 Remove seven screws

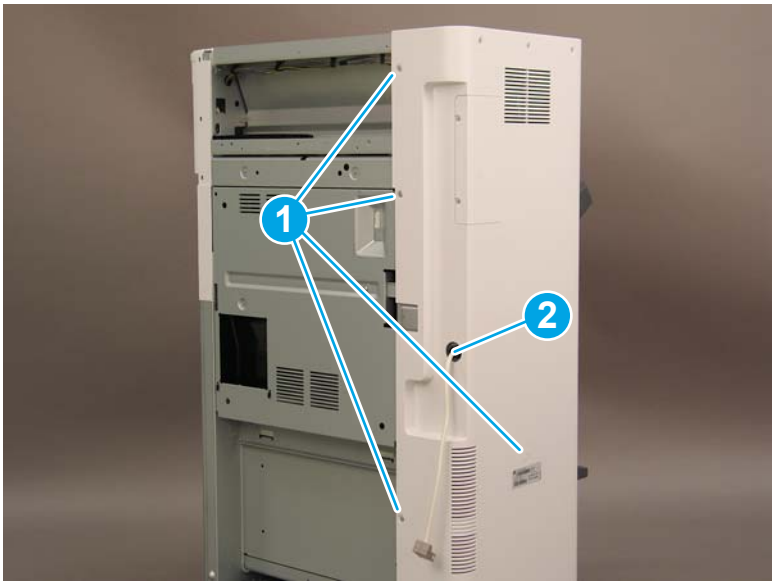


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-497 Remove four screws and the rear cover



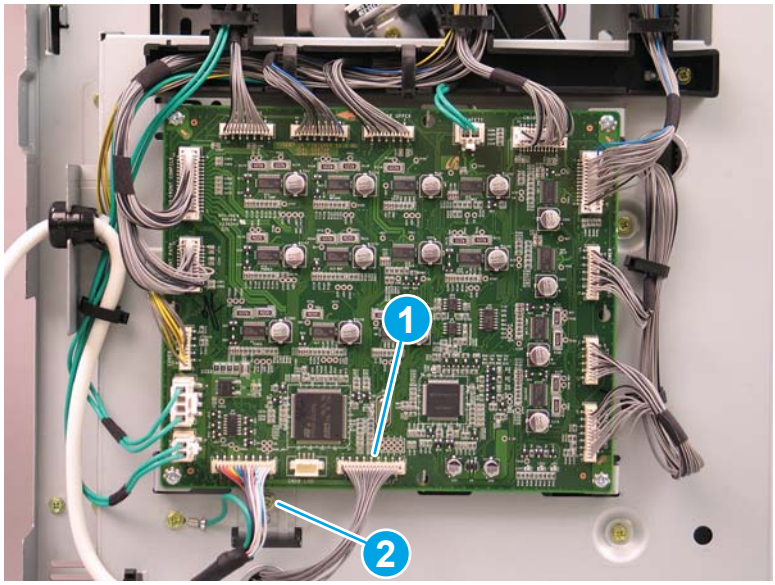
Step 4: Remove the booklet finisher

1. Slide the booklet finisher away from the finisher.

Figure 7-498 Slide the booklet finisher away from the finisher

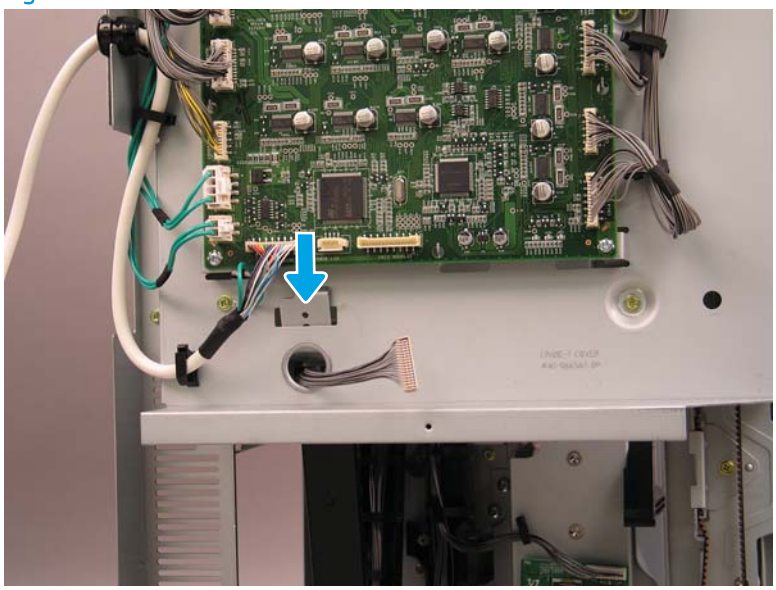
2. At the Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 7-499 Disconnect one connector and remove one screw



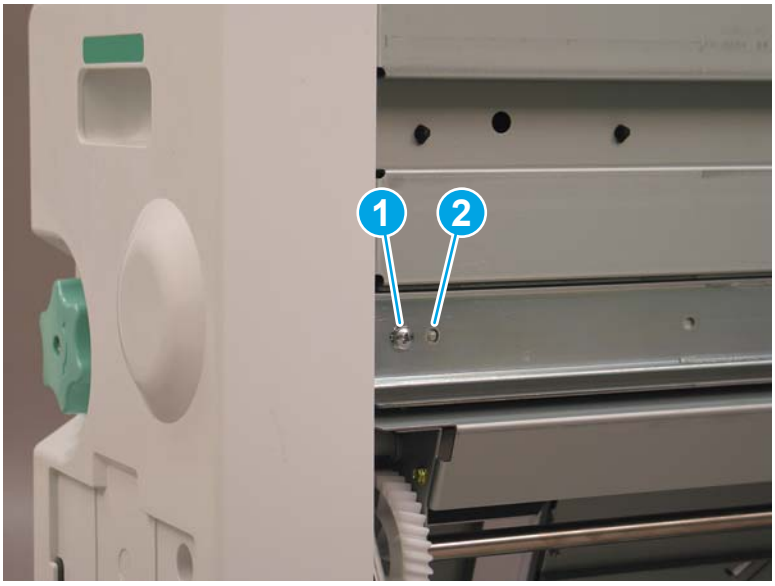
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet metal.

Figure 7-500 Release the metal bracket



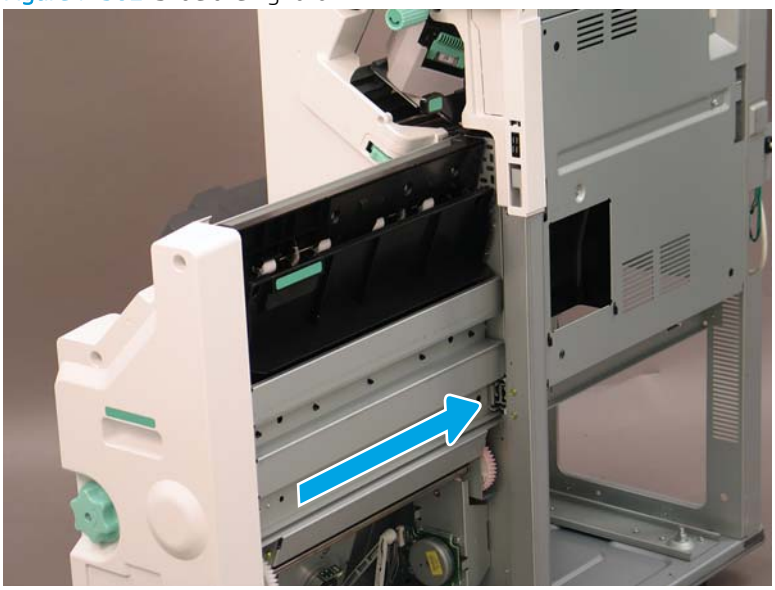
4. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2) on the right side of the booklet finisher.

Figure 7-501 Remove one screw



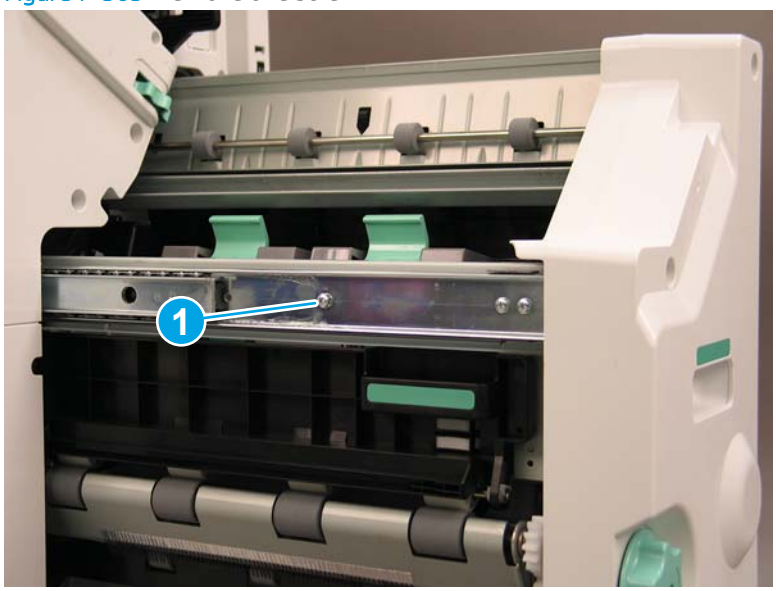
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 7-502 Slide the right rail



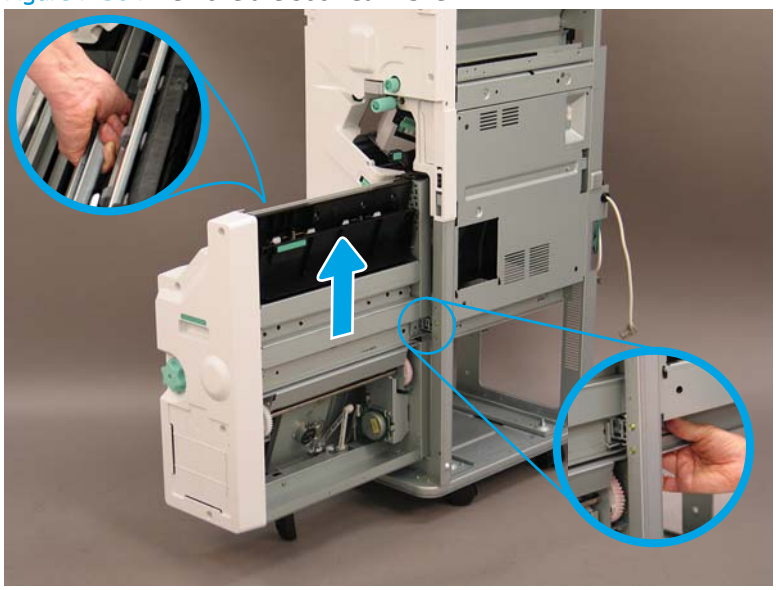
6. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet finisher.

Figure 7-503 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet finisher up on the left side while squeezing the right rail away from the finisher slightly to clear the sheet metal. Remove the booklet finisher.

Figure 7-504 Remove the booklet finisher



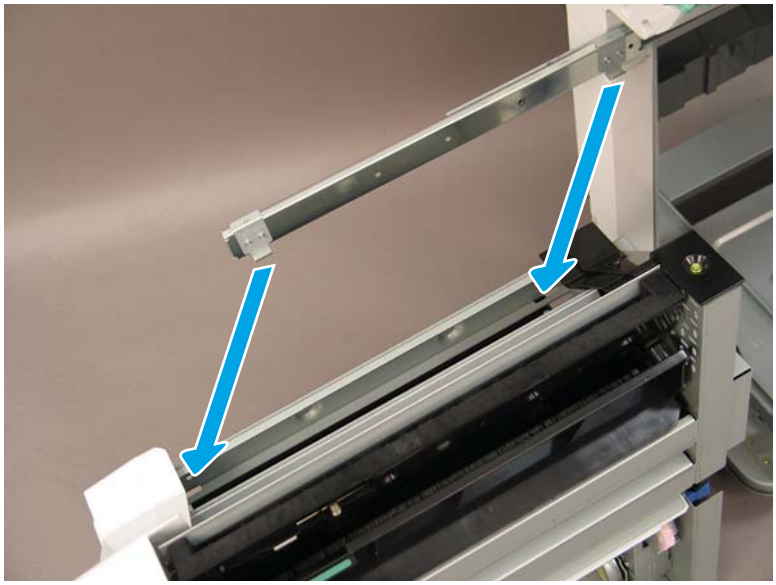
8. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet finisher

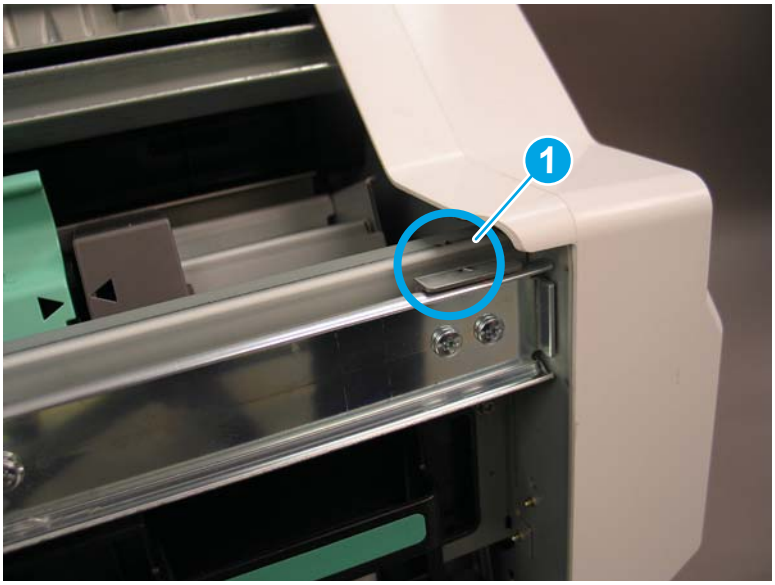
- When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet finisher.

Figure 7-505 Position the hooks



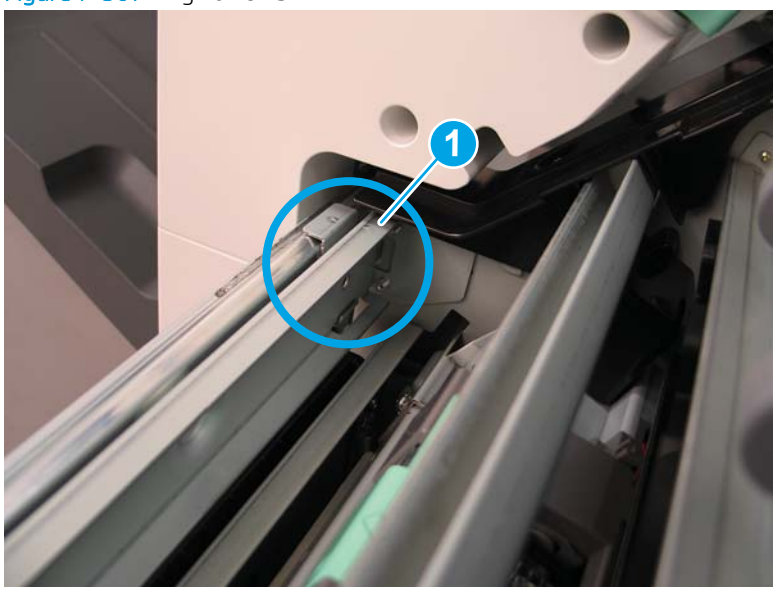
9. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet finisher aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 7-506 Align arrows



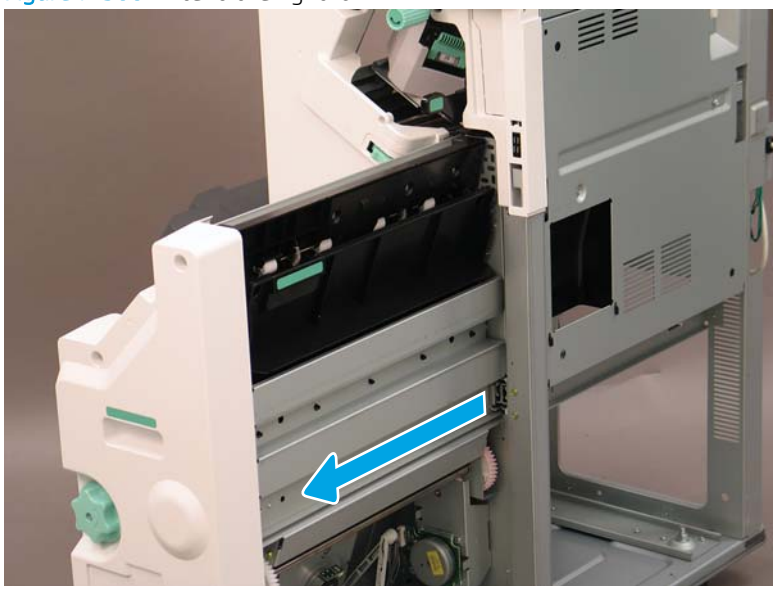
10. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet finisher aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 7-507 Align arrows



11. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet finisher slot.

Figure 7-508 Extend the right rail



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet finisher PCA

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the booklet finisher
- Step 5: Remove the booklet finisher PCA
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet finisher PCA.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Booklet finisher PCA part number	
XXXXX	Booklet finisher PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.

- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

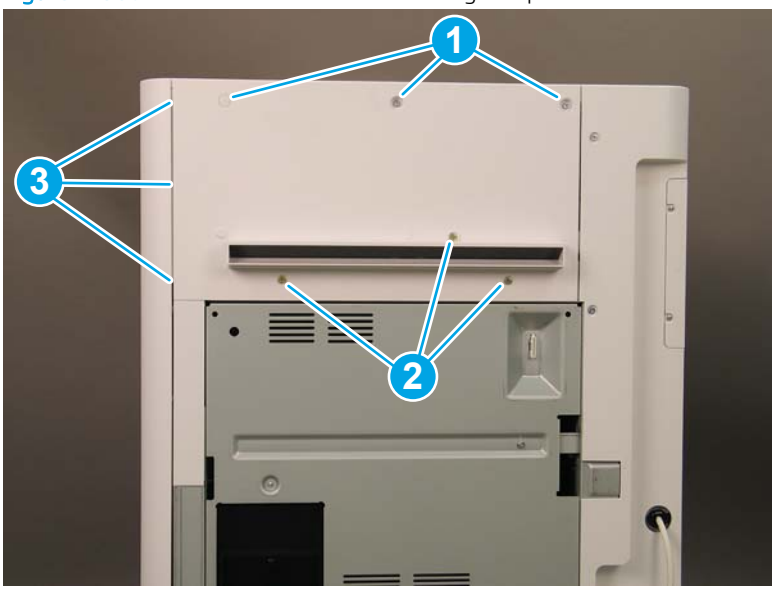
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

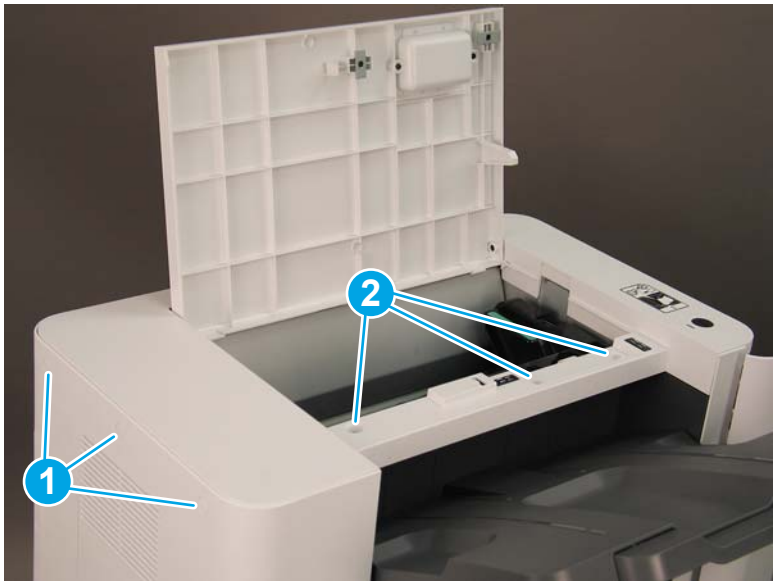
Figure 7-509 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

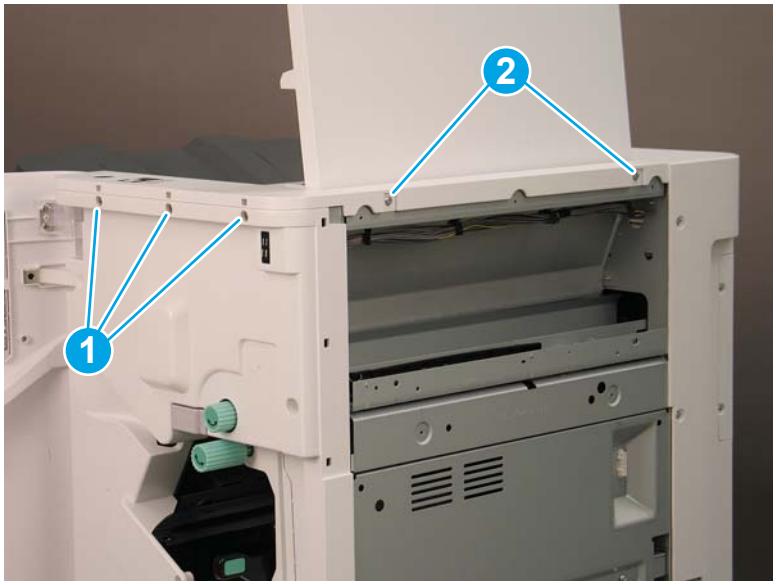
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-510 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

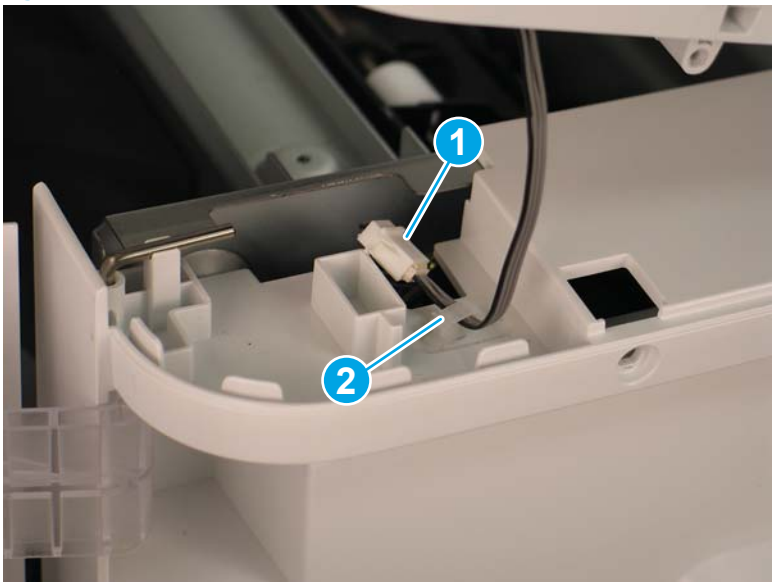
Figure 7-511 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-512 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

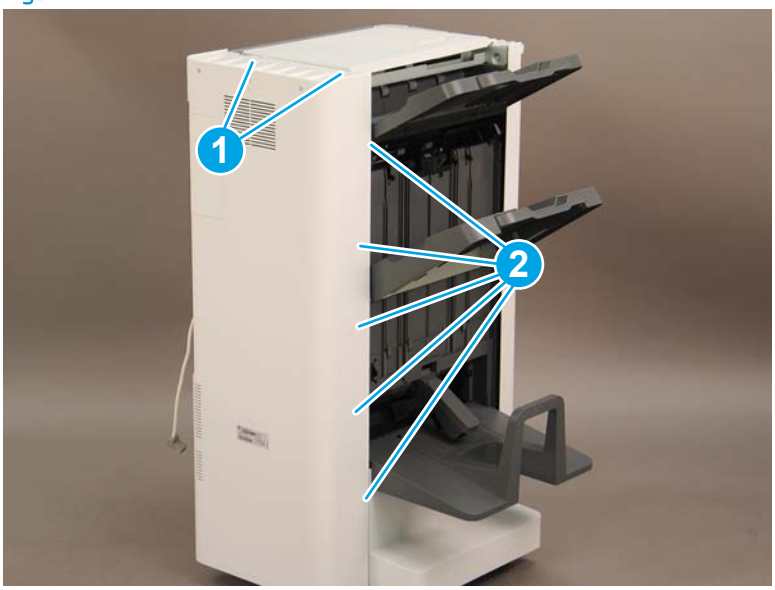


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-513 Remove seven screws

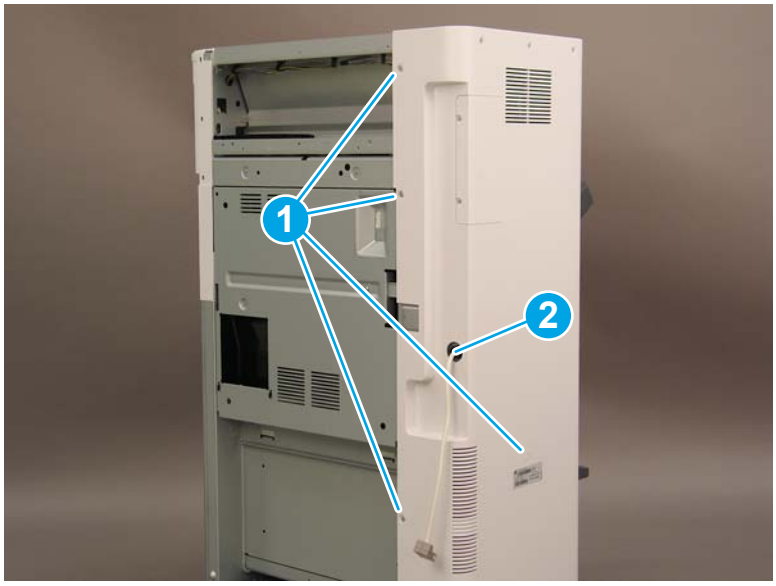


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-514 Remove four screws and the rear cover



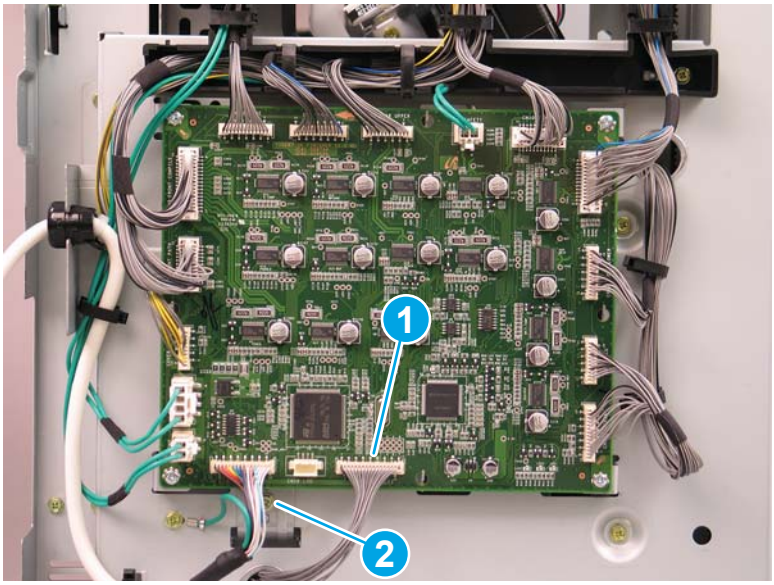
Step 4: Remove the booklet finisher

1. Slide the booklet finisher away from the finisher.

Figure 7-515 Slide the booklet finisher away from the finisher

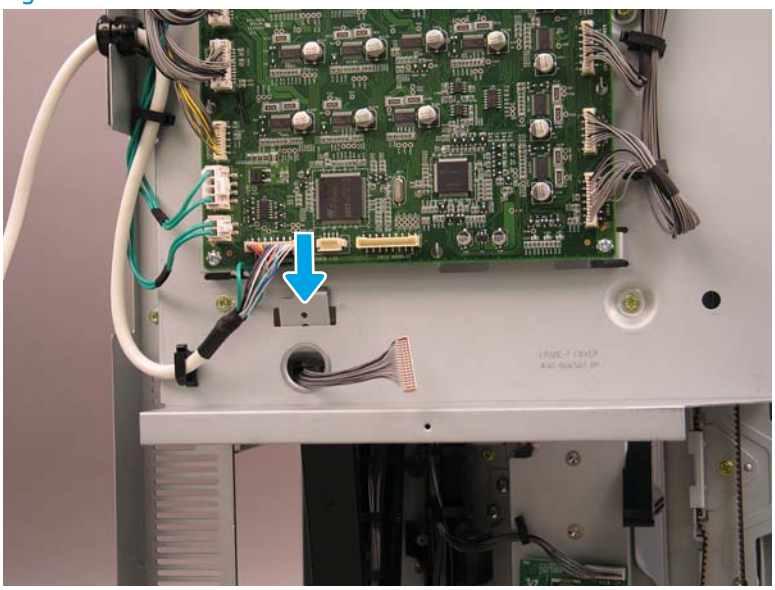
2. At the Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 7-516 Disconnect one connector and remove one screw



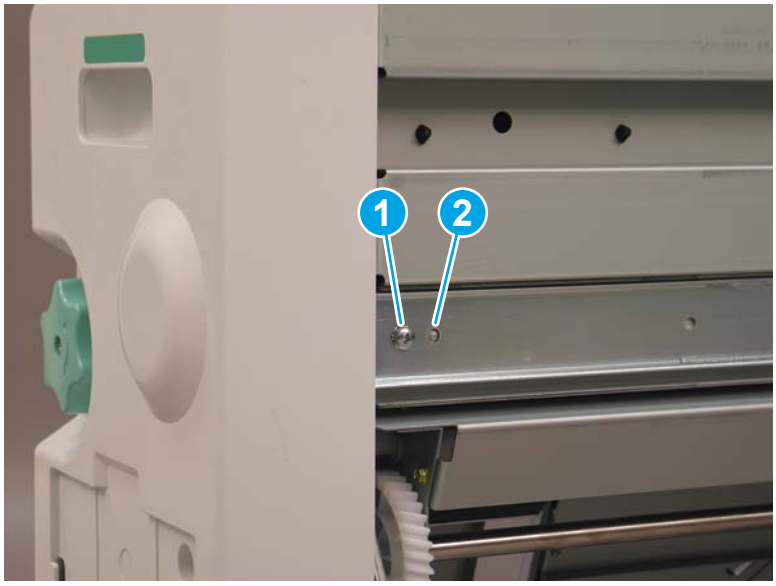
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet metal.

Figure 7-517 Release the metal bracket



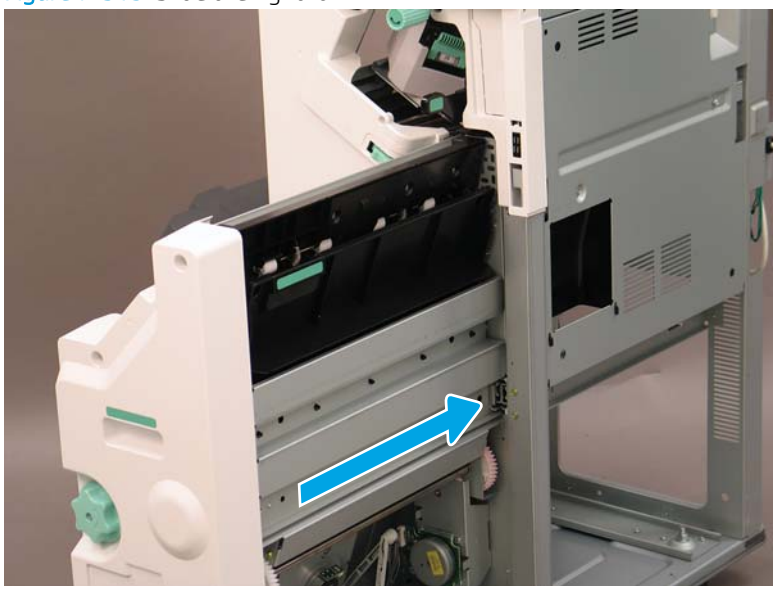
4. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2) on the right side of the booklet finisher.

Figure 7-518 Remove one screw



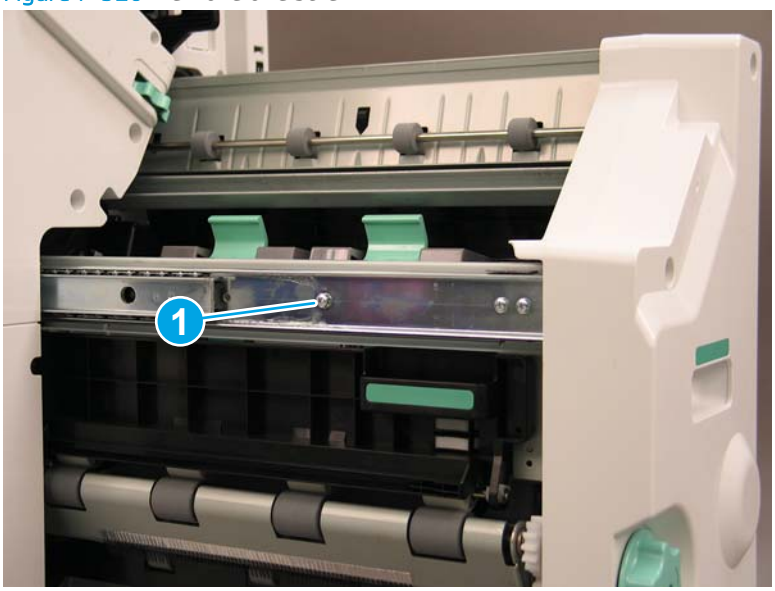
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 7-519 Slide the right rail



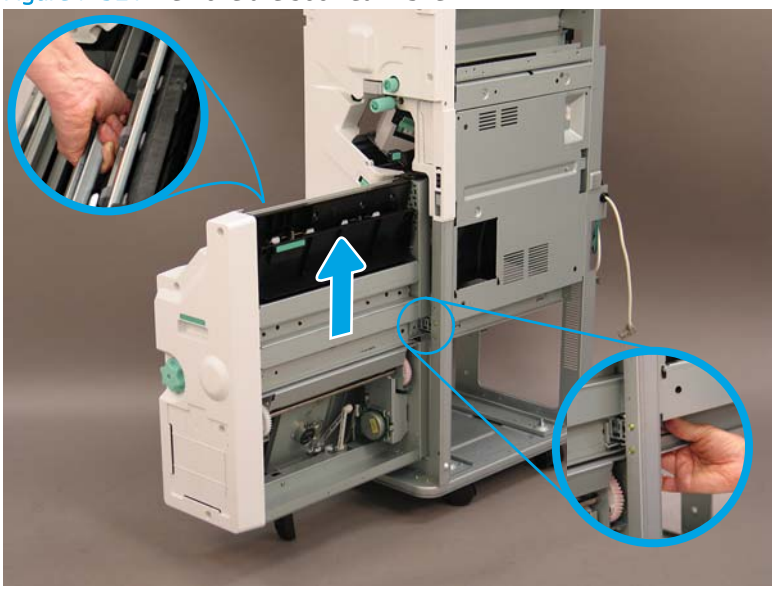
6. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet finisher.

Figure 7-520 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet finisher up on the left side while squeezing the right rail away from the finisher slightly to clear the sheet metal. Remove the booklet finisher.

Figure 7-521 Remove the booklet finisher



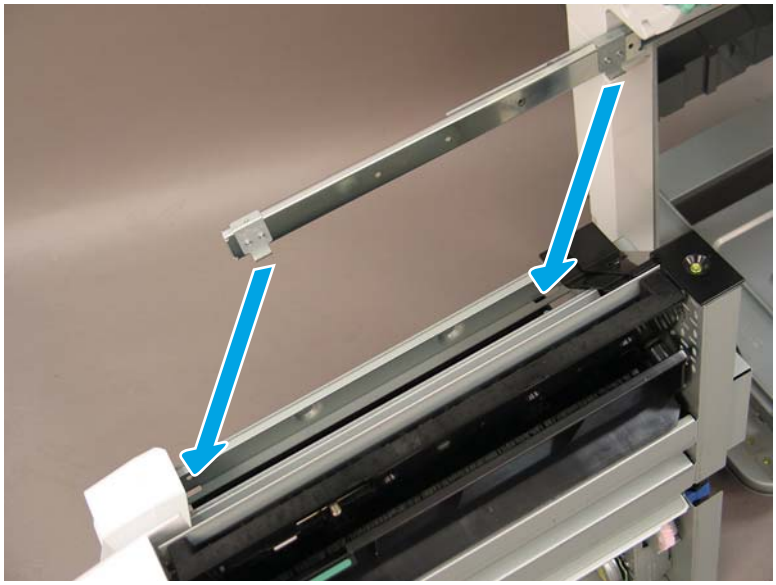
8. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet finisher

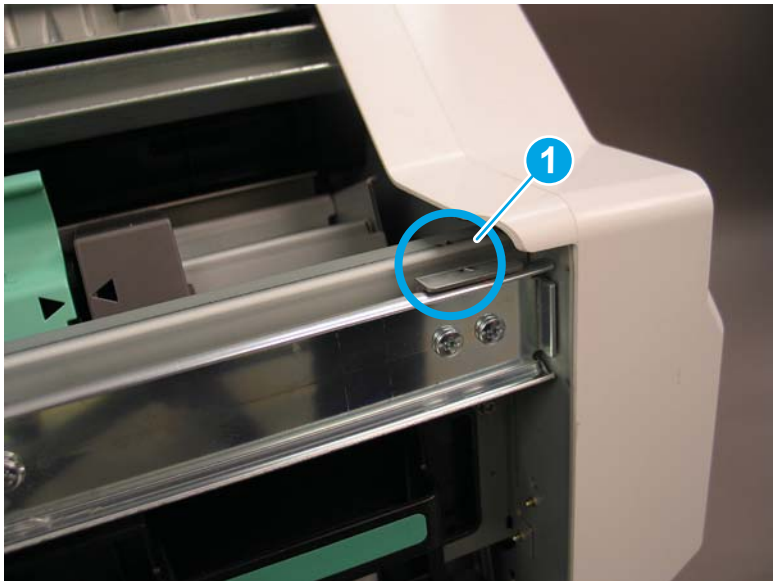
- When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet finisher.

Figure 7-522 Position the hooks



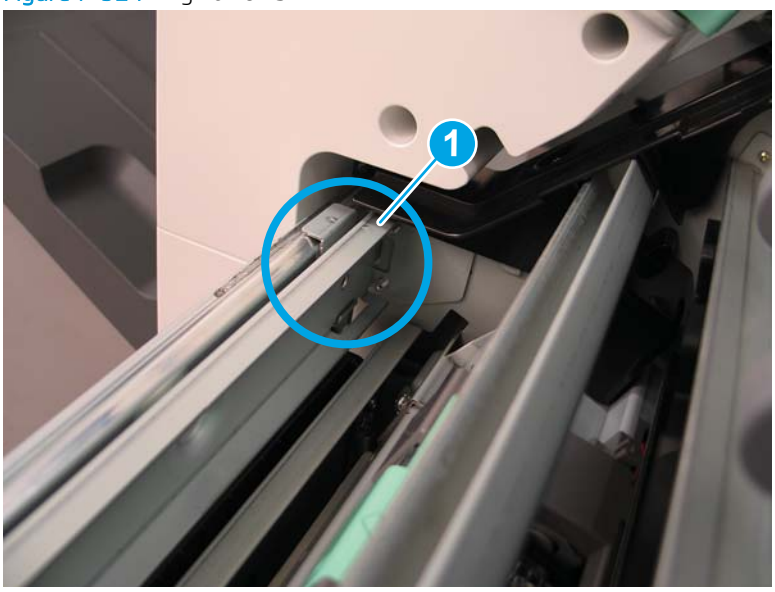
9. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet finisher aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 7-523 Align arrows



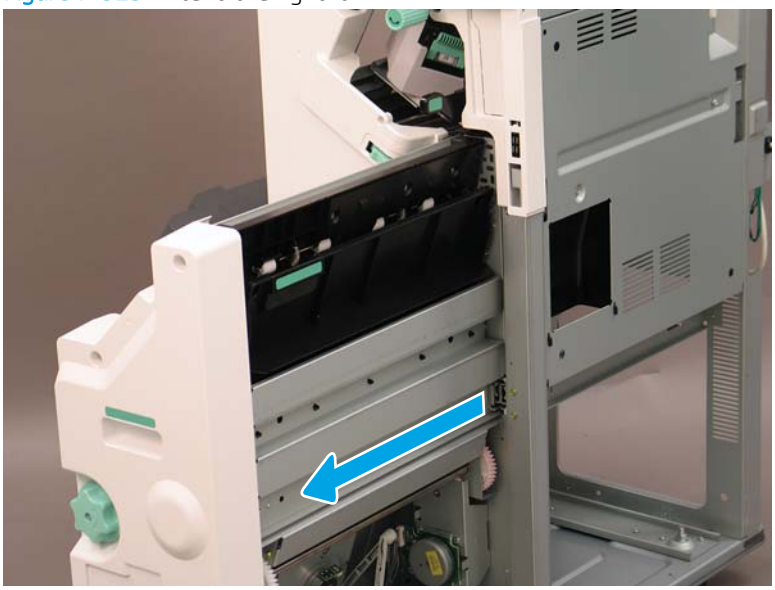
10. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet finisher aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 7-524 Align arrows



11. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet finisher slot.

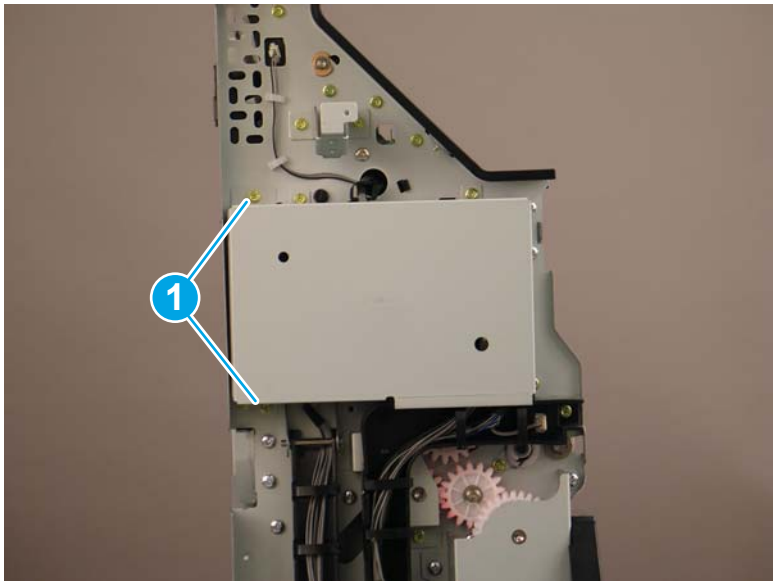
Figure 7-525 Extend the right rail



Step 5: Remove the booklet finisher PCA

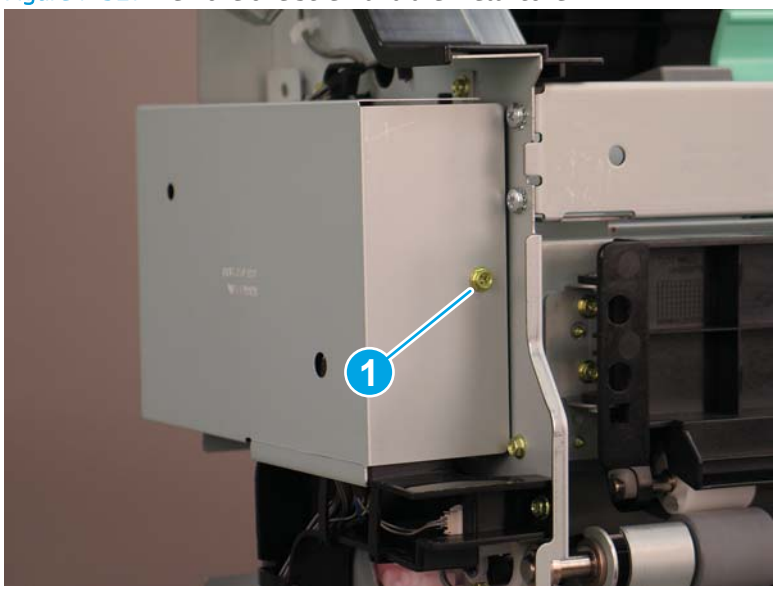
1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-526 Remove two screws



2. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the metal cover.

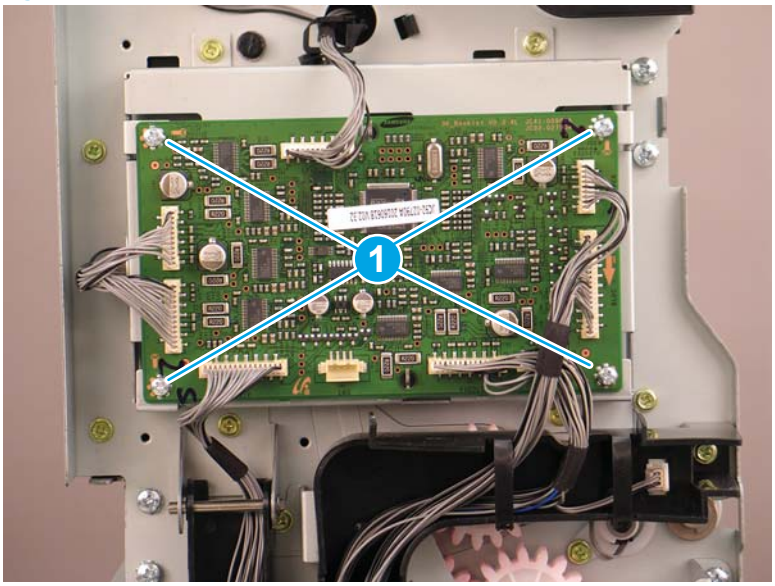
Figure 7-527 Remove one screw and the metal cover



3. Disconnect all of the connectors, remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the booklet finisher PCA.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-528 Remove four screws and the PCA



Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet finisher fold stopper unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the booklet finisher front cover
- Step 5: Remove the booklet finisher lower right shield
- Step 6: Remove the fold stopper unit
- Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet finisher fold stopper unit.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Booklet finisher fold stopper unit part number	
SAM-JC90-01432A	Finisher Sub - Face Down Stopper Unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

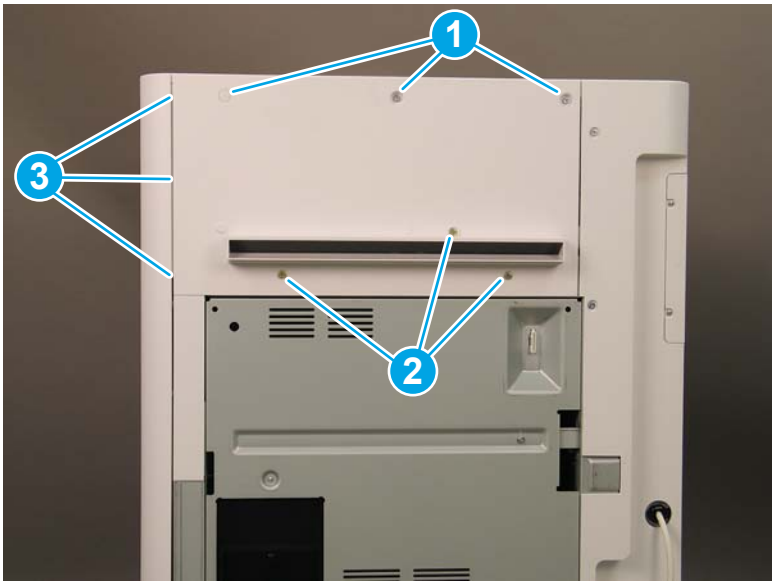
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

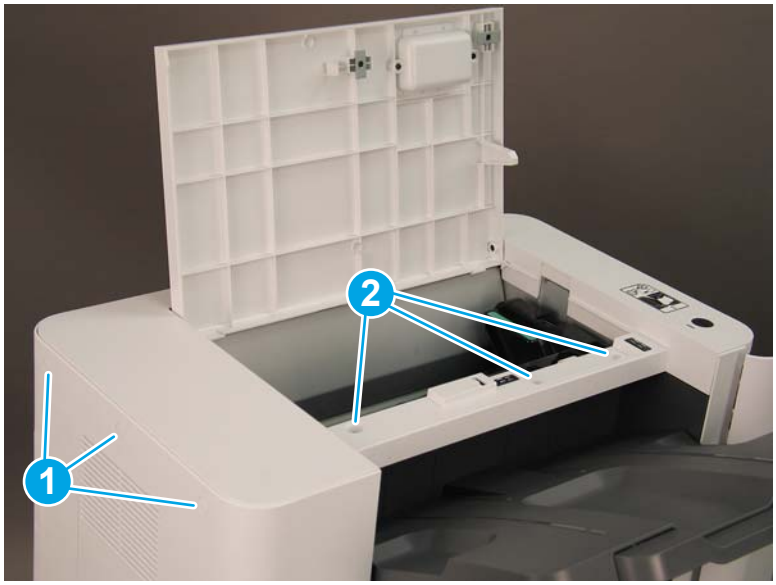
Figure 7-529 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

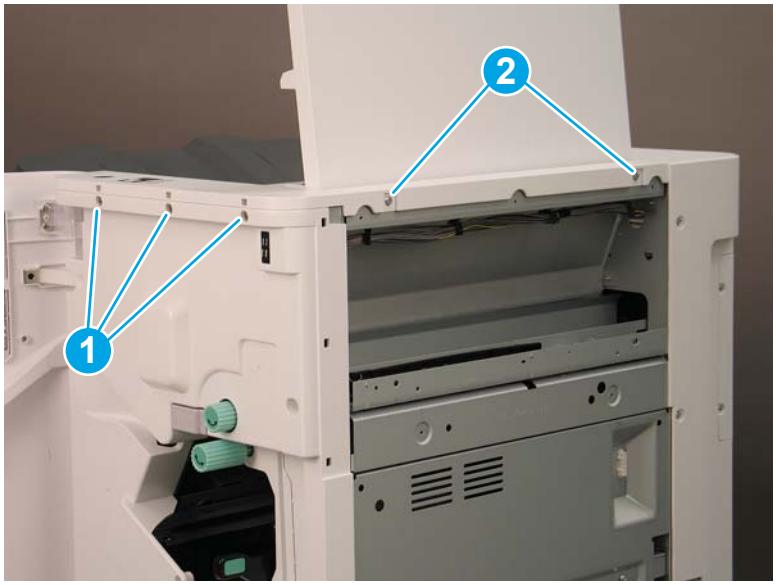
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-530 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

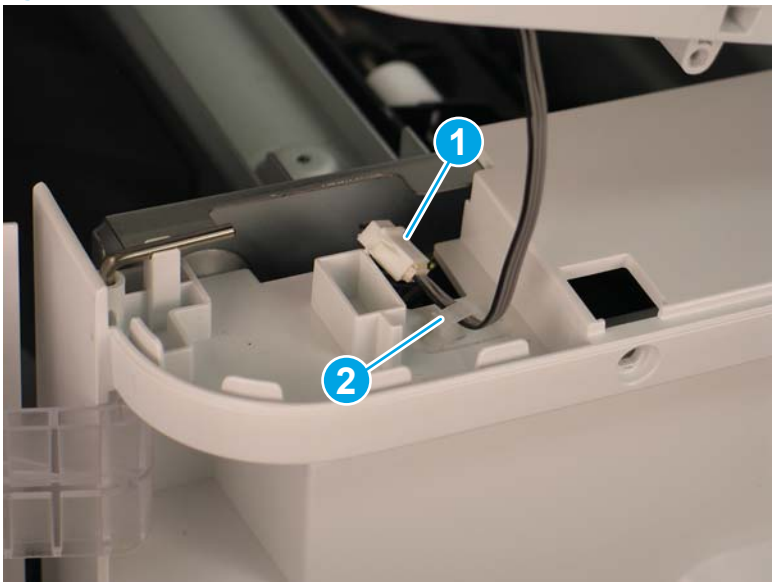
Figure 7-531 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-532 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

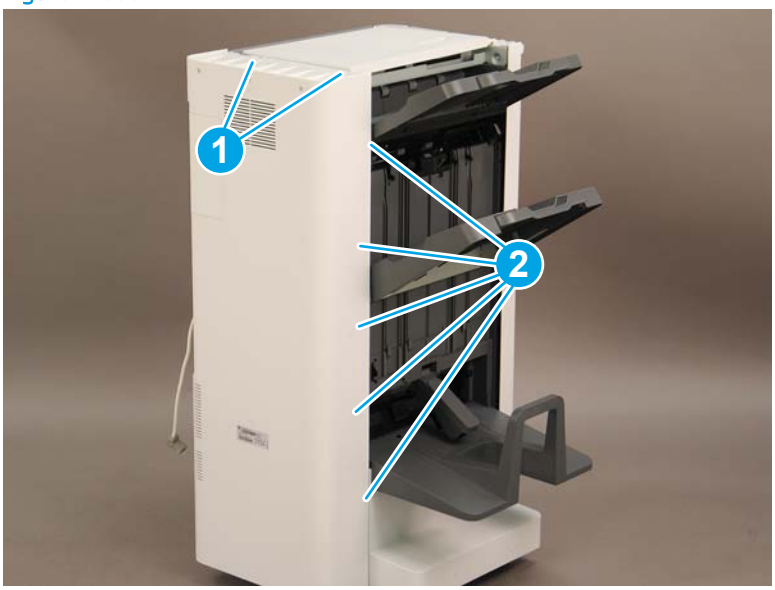


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-533 Remove seven screws

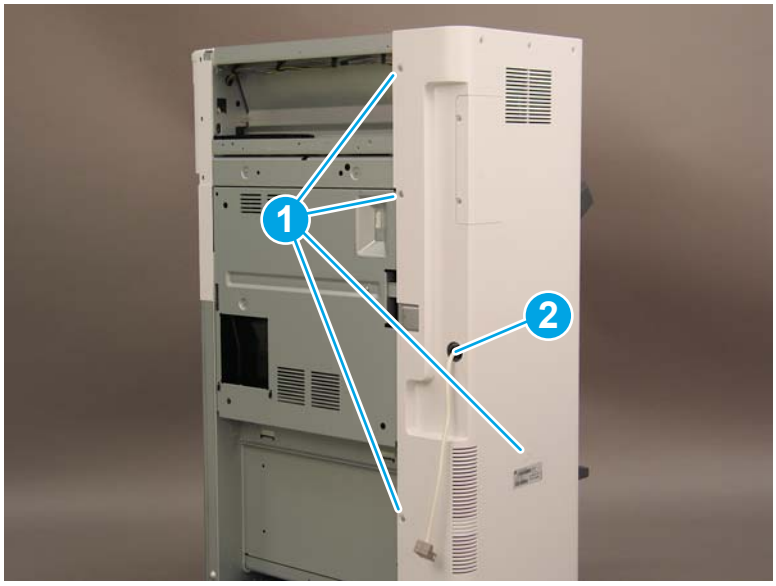


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-534 Remove four screws and the rear cover

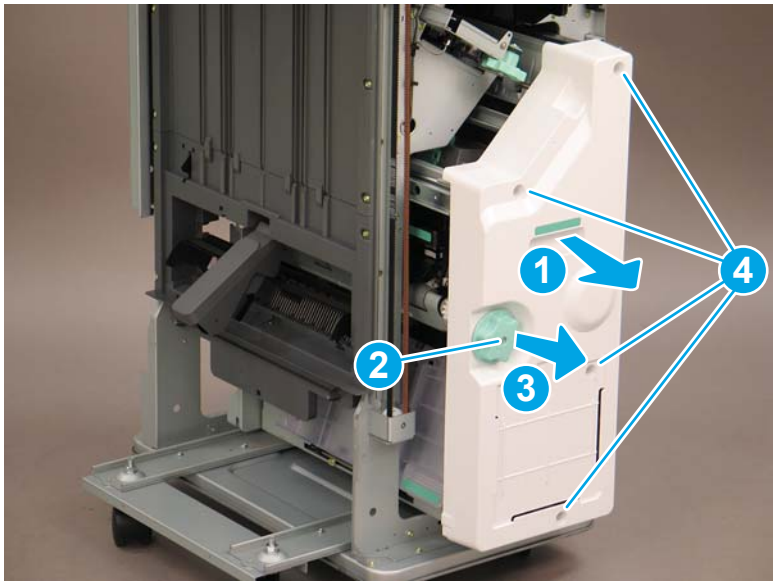


Step 4: Remove the booklet finisher front cover

▲ Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

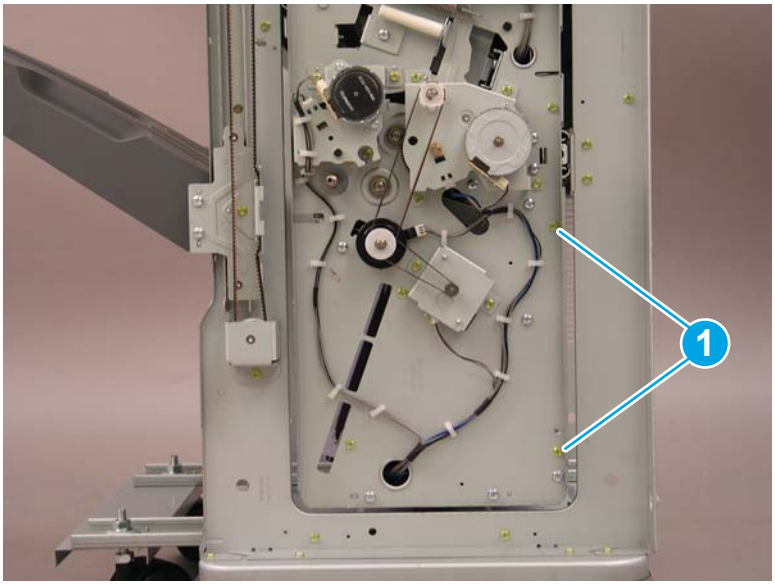
Figure 7-535 Remove five screws and the cover



Step 5: Remove the booklet finisher lower right shield

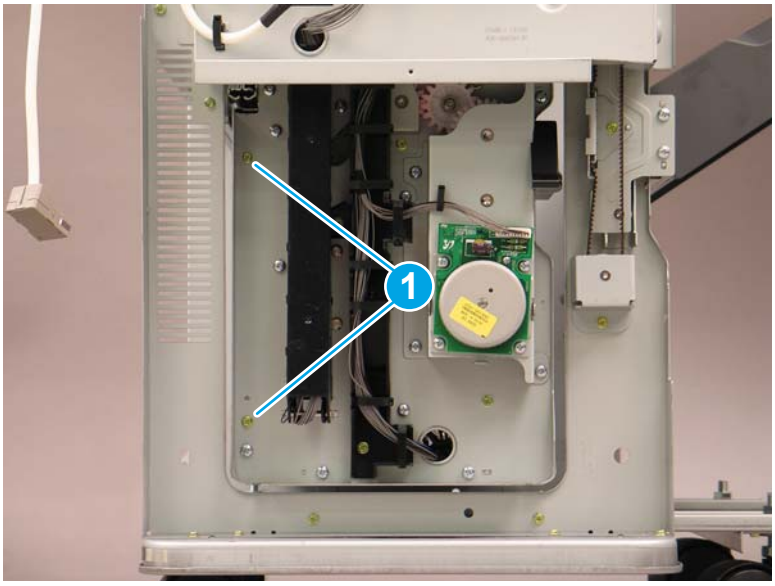
1. Remove two screws at the front of the booklet finisher (callout 1).

Figure 7-536 Remove two screws



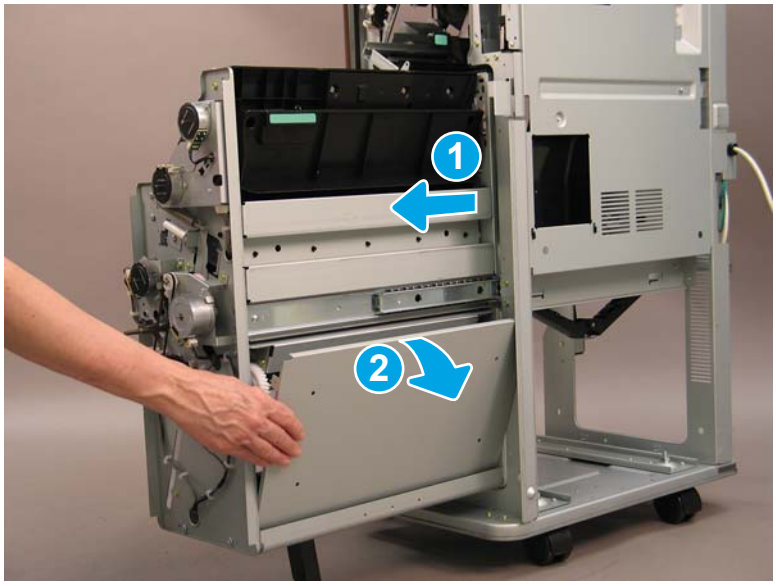
2. Remove two screws at the back of the booklet finisher (callout 1).

Figure 7-537 Remove two screws



3. Slide the booklet finisher out of the finisher (callout 1), and then rotate the top of the lower right shield (callout 2) away from the booklet finisher to remove it.

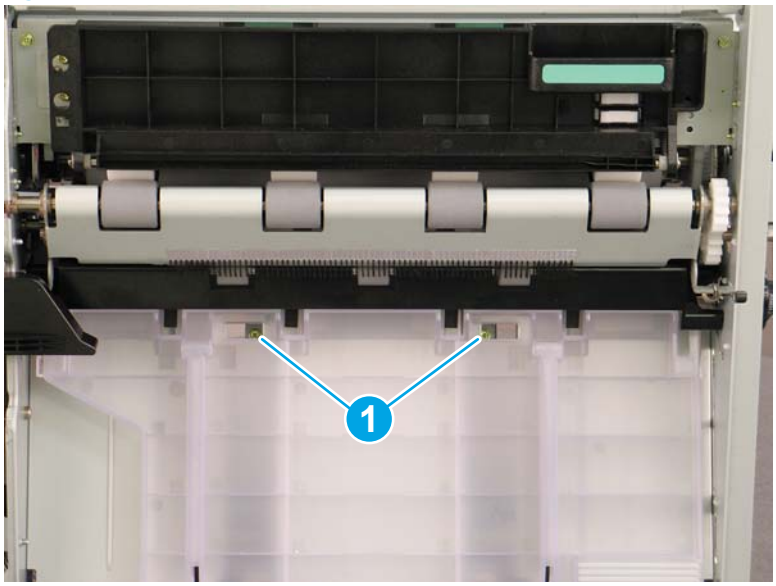
Figure 7-538 Remove the lower right shield



Step 6: Remove the fold stopper unit

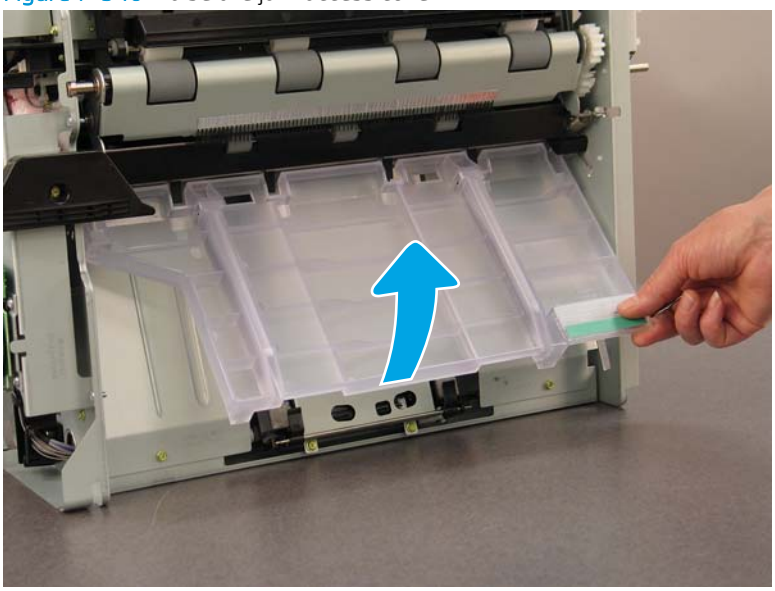
1. On the left side of the booklet finisher, remove two screws through access openings in the jam access cover (callout 1).

Figure 7-539 Remove two screws



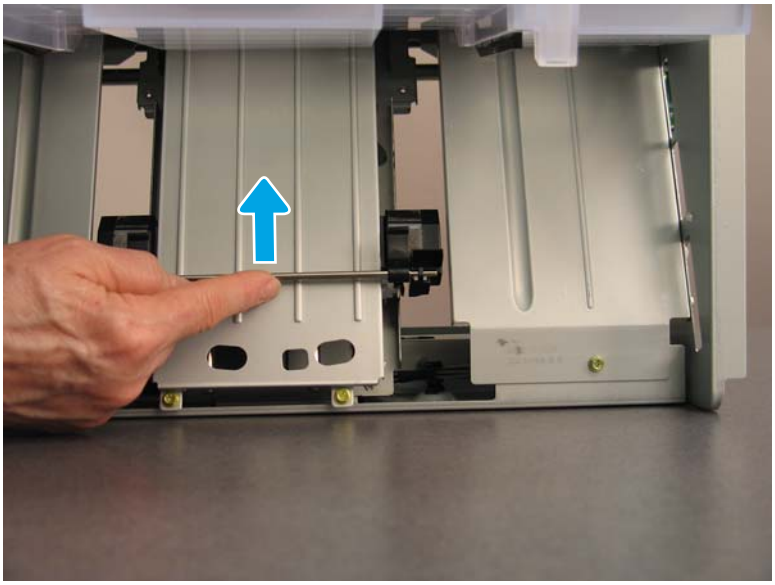
2. Raise the jam access cover.

Figure 7-540 Raise the jam access cover



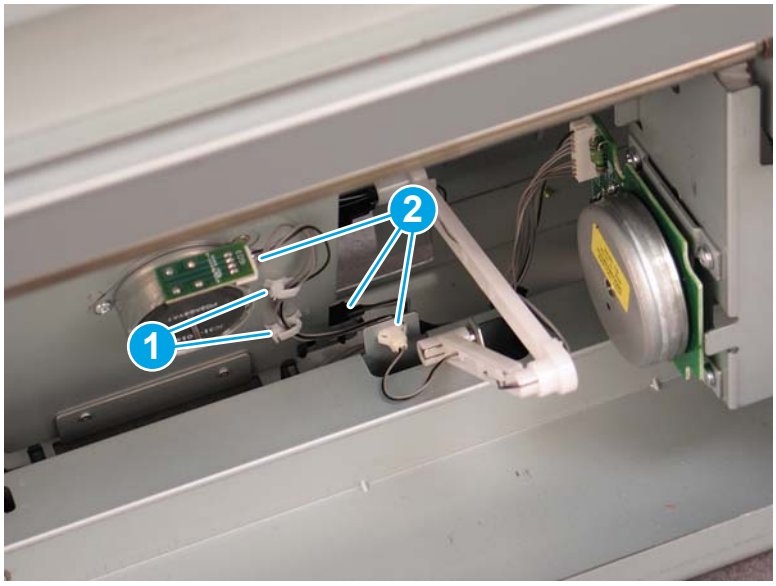
3. Raise the booklet width guide.

Figure 7-541 Raise the booklet width guide



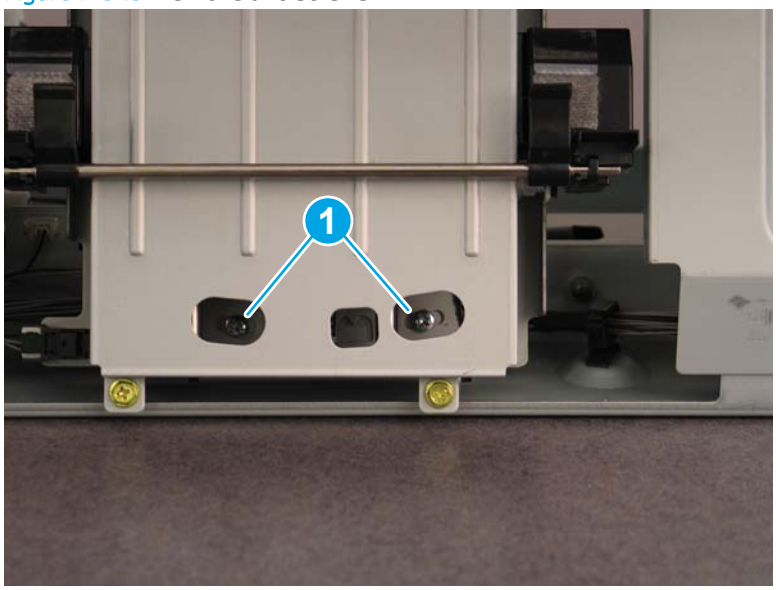
4. On the right side of the booklet finisher, open two retainers (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 7-542 Disconnect three connectors



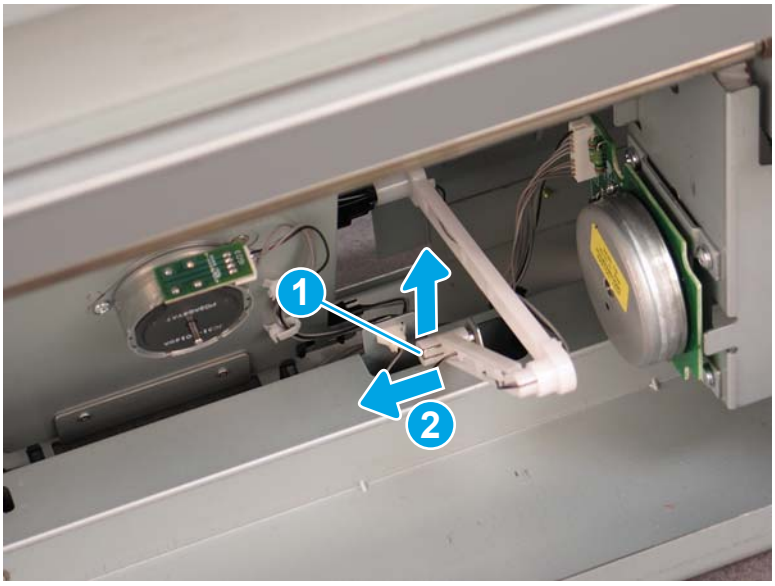
5. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-543 Remove two screws



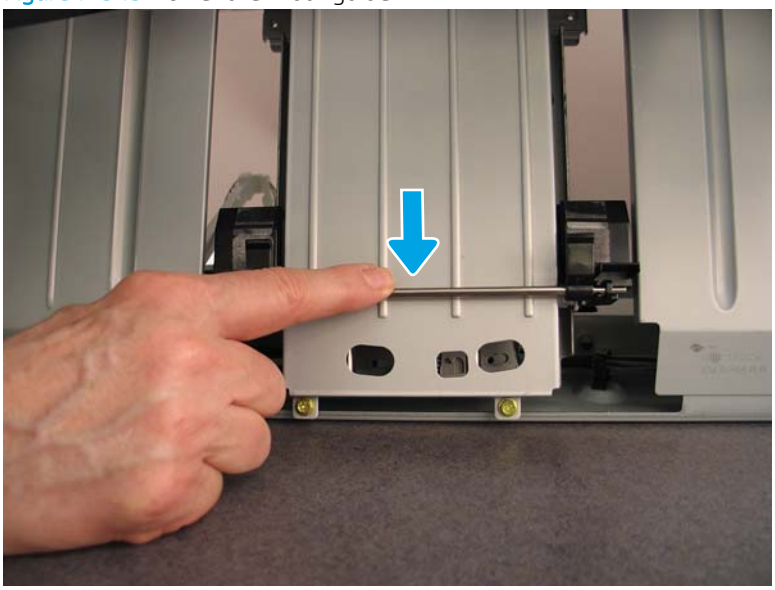
6. Release the tab (callout 1) on the guide arm, and then slide the guide off of the shaft (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 7-544 Release the guide arm



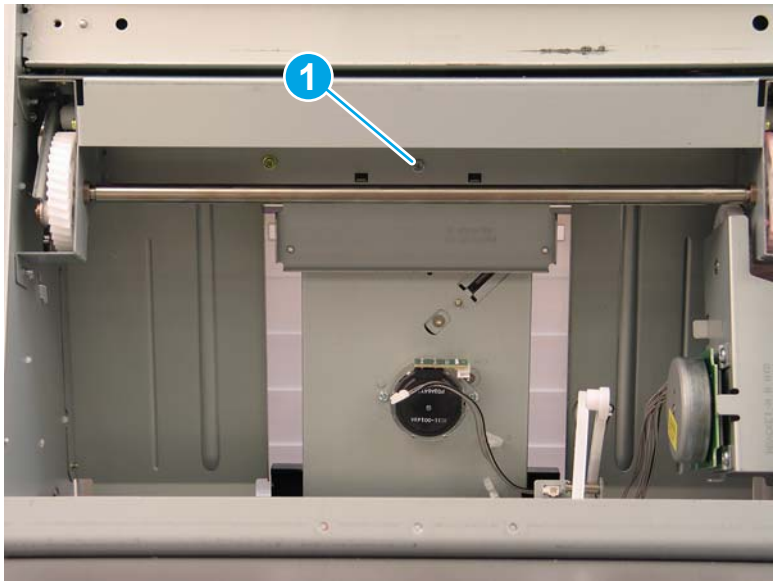
7. Lower the width guide to the lowest position.

Figure 7-545 Lower the width guide



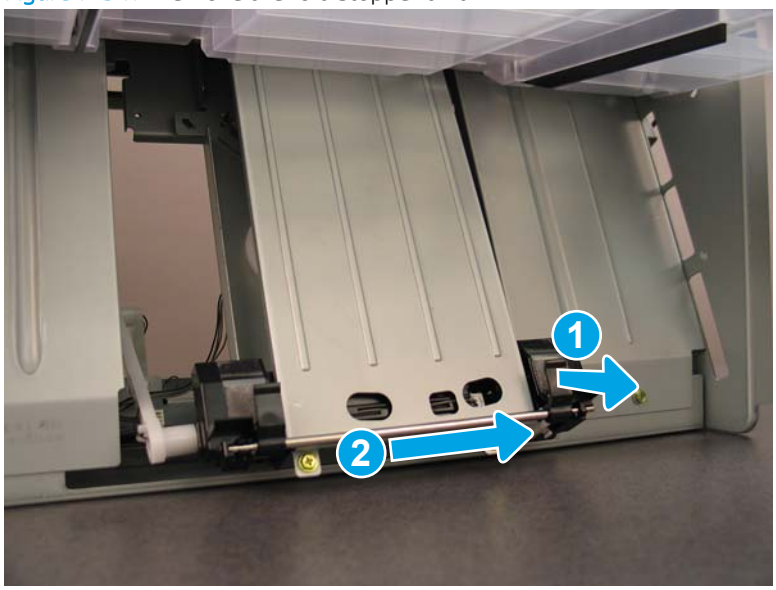
8. On the right side of the booklet finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 7-546 Remove one screw



9. Lift the right lower corner (callout 1) to clear the cable guide, and then slide the assembly to the right (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 7-547 Remove the fold stopper unit



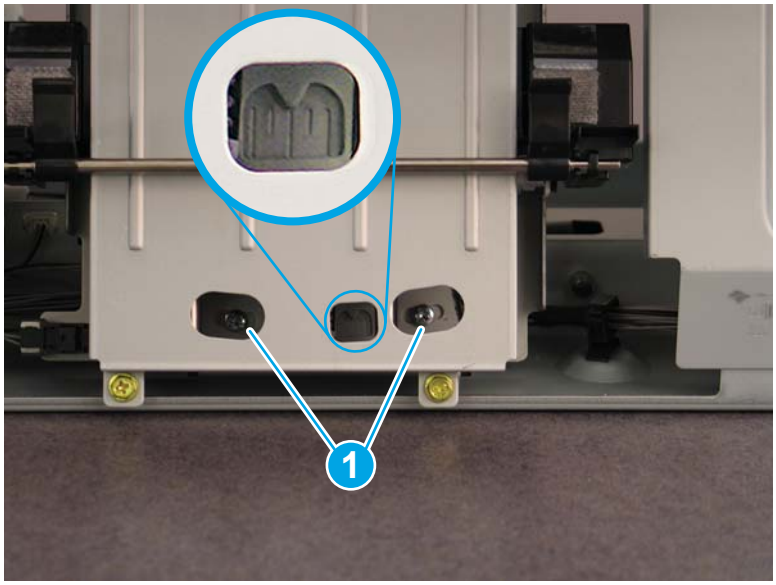
10. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Fold stopper unit

- Loosen the two alignment screws (callout 1) and move the fold unit side to side to until the alignment gauge is positioned on the center line. Tighten the screws and run a folded job through the finisher and verify that the fold is correct. If the fold is not correct, loosen the screws, adjust the alignment, and run another fold job. Continue this process until the fold is correct.

Figure 7-548 Adjust the alignment gauge



Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet feed entrance motor (M13)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover
- Step 2: Remove the booklet feed entrance motor (M13)
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet feed entrance motor on the booklet finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Booklet feed entrance motor (M13) part number	
SAM-JC93-01152A	Drive Motor, Step

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

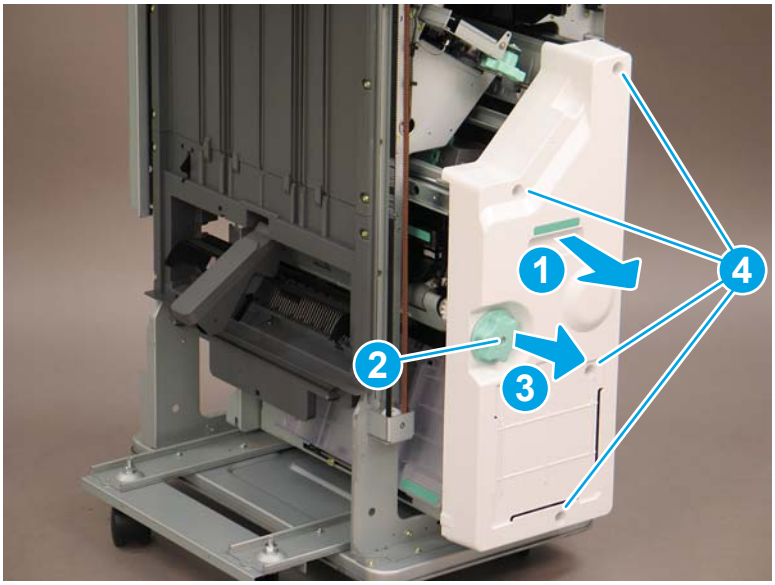
Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover

- Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-549 Remove five screws and the cover

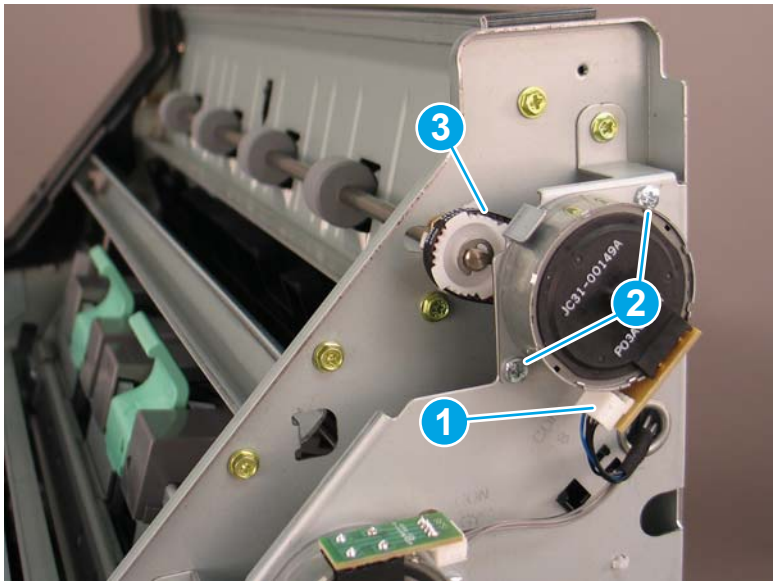


Step 2: Remove the booklet feed entrance motor (M13)

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2). Lift the motor away from the booklet finisher and release the belt (callout 3) from the back of the motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-550 Remove the booklet feed entrance motor



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

TE presser motor (M14)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover
- Step 2: Remove the TE presser motor (M14)
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the TE presser motor on the booklet finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

TE presser motor (M14) part number	
SAM-JC93-01155A	Drive Motor, Step

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

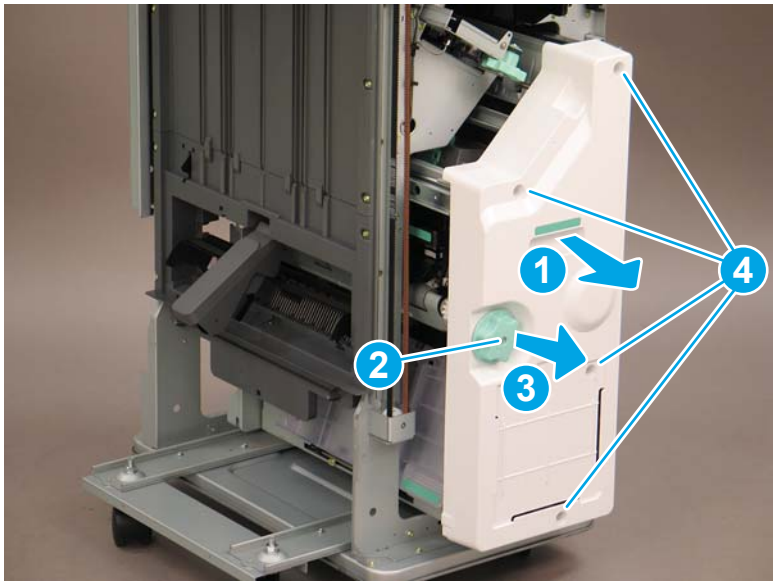
Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover

- Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-551 Remove five screws and the cover

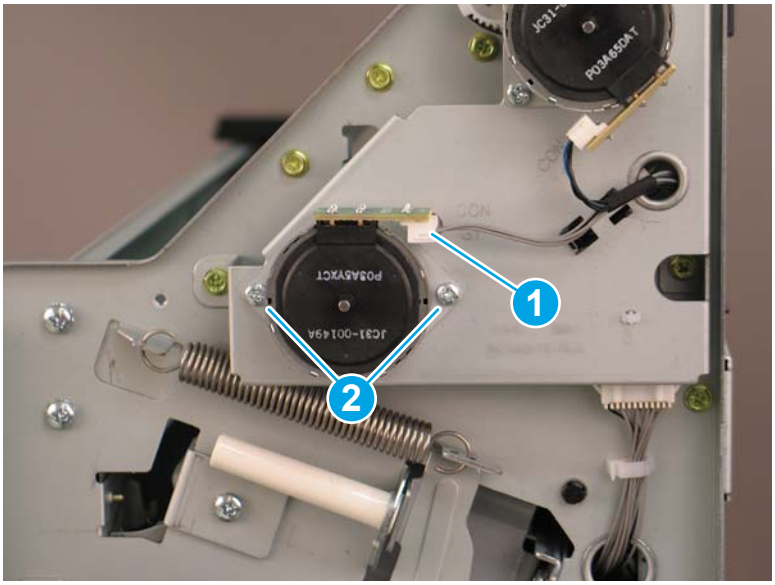


Step 2: Remove the TE presser motor (M14)

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the TE presser motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-552 Remove the TE presser motor



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Stopper moving motor (M16)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover
- Step 2: Remove the booklet finisher lower right shield
- Step 3: Remove the stopper moving motor (M16)
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the stopper moving motor on the booklet finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Stopper moving motor (M16) part number	
SAM-JC93-01155A	Drive Motor, Step

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

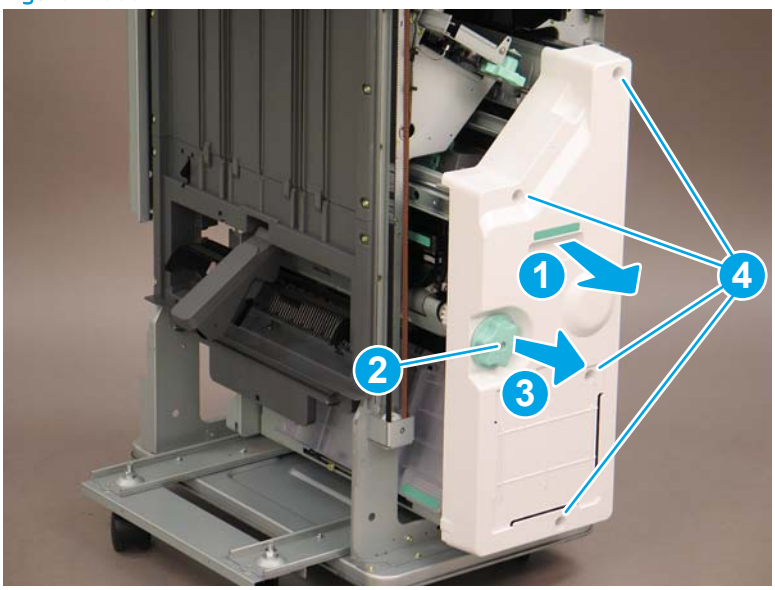
Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover

▲ Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

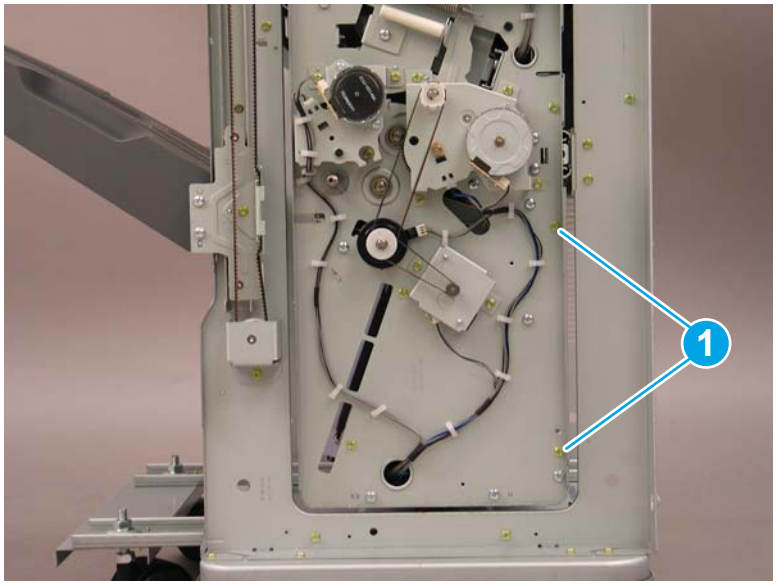
Figure 7-553 Remove five screws and the cover



Step 2: Remove the booklet finisher lower right shield

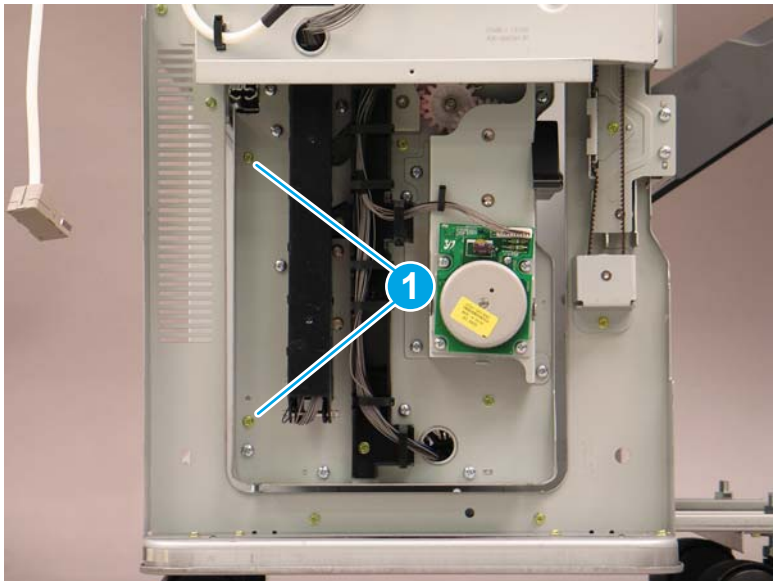
1. Remove two screws at the front of the booklet finisher (callout 1).

Figure 7-554 Remove two screws



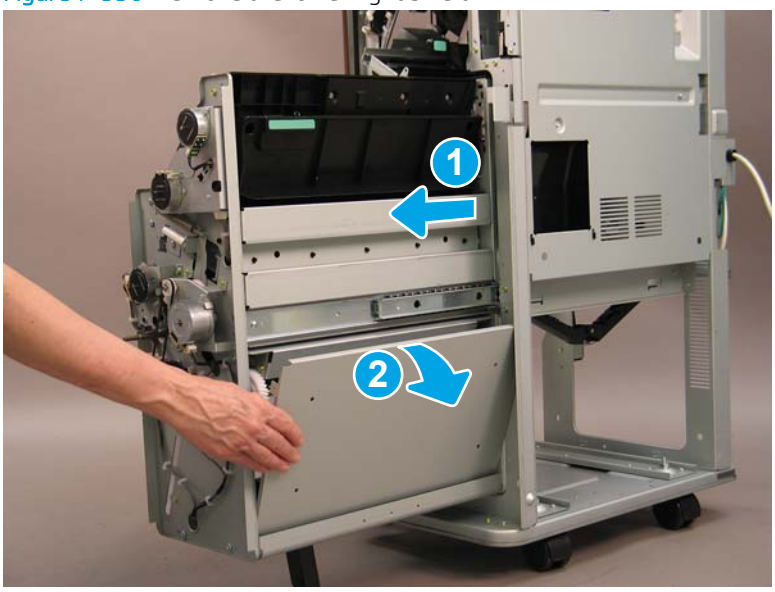
2. Remove two screws at the back of the booklet finisher (callout 1).

Figure 7-555 Remove two screws



3. Slide the booklet finisher out of the finisher (callout 1), and then rotate the top of the lower right shield (callout 2) away from the booklet finisher to remove it.

Figure 7-556 Remove the lower right shield

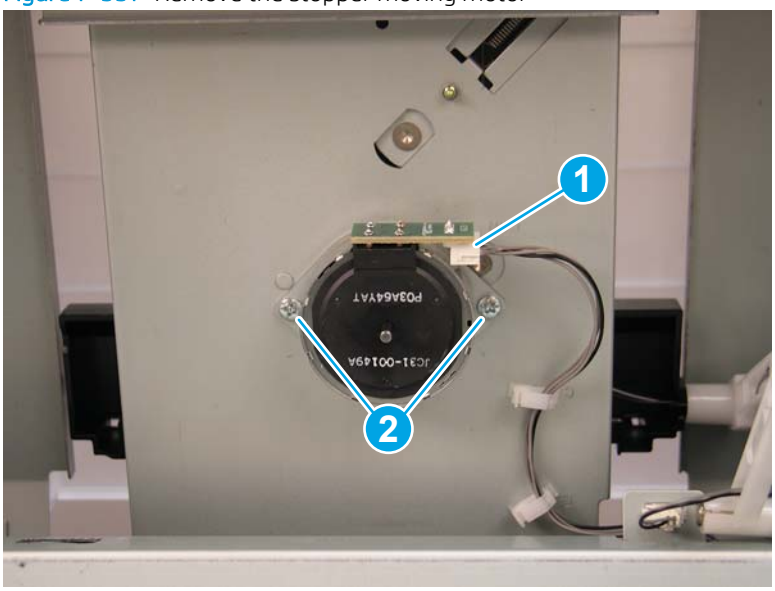


Step 3: Remove the stopper moving motor (M16)

▲ Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the stopper moving motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-557 Remove the stopper moving motor



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Separate pawl motor (M17)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover
- Step 2: Remove the separate pawl motor (M17)
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the separate pawl motor on the booklet finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Separate pawl motor (M17) part number	
SAM-JC93-01001A	Drive Motor, Step

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

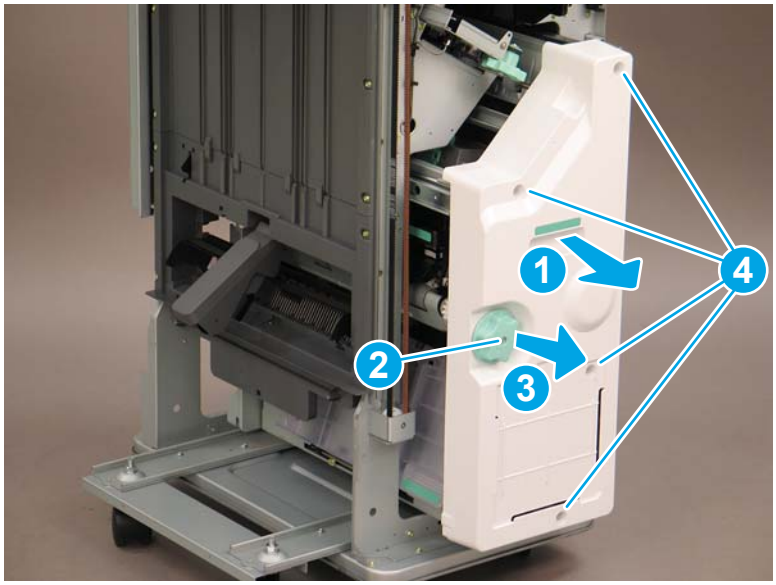
Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover

- Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-558 Remove five screws and the cover

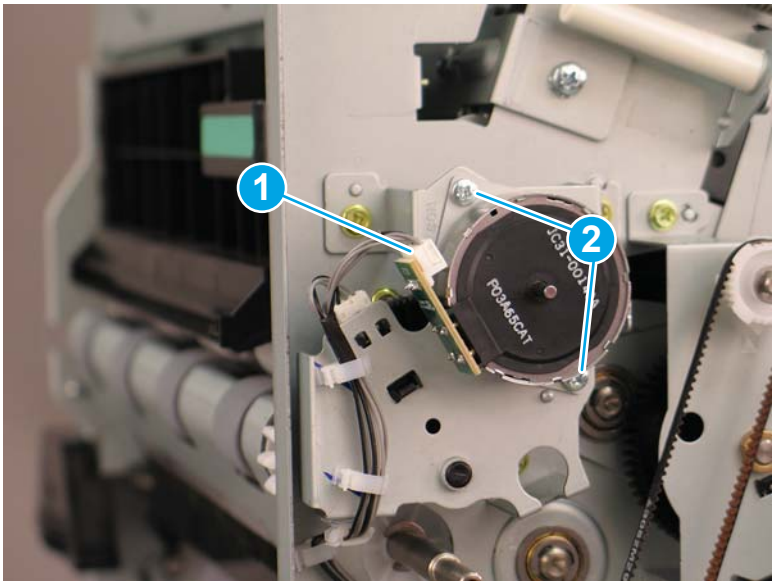


Step 2: Remove the separate pawl motor (M17)

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the separate pawl motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-559 Remove the separate pawl motor



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Folding roller motor (M18)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the folding roller motor (M18)
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the folding roller motor on the booklet finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Folding roller motor (M18) part number	
SAM-JC31-00144B	Folding roller motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

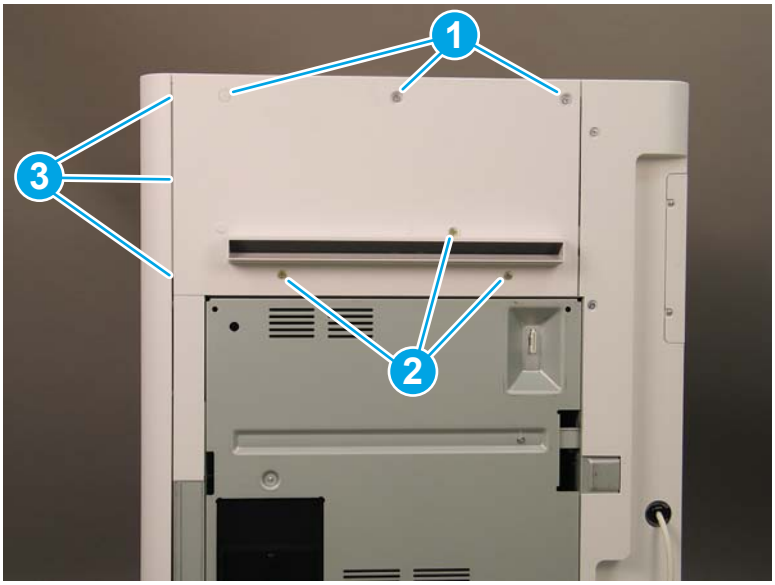
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

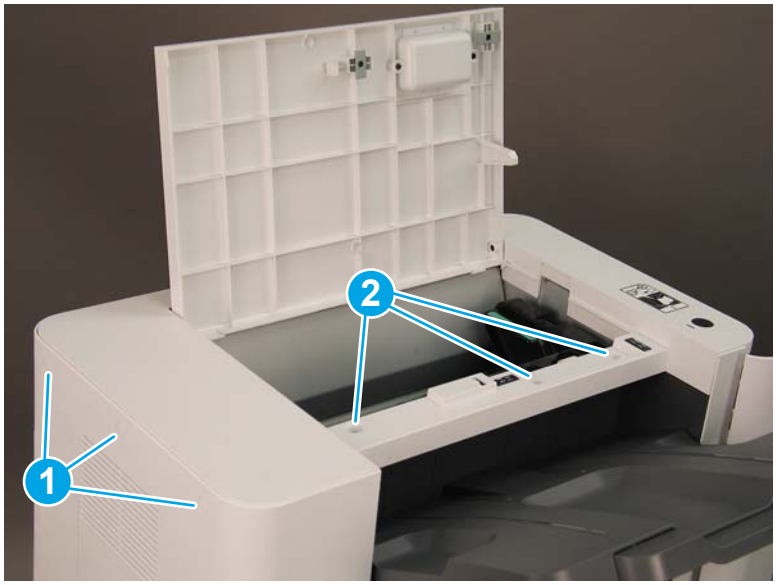
Figure 7-560 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

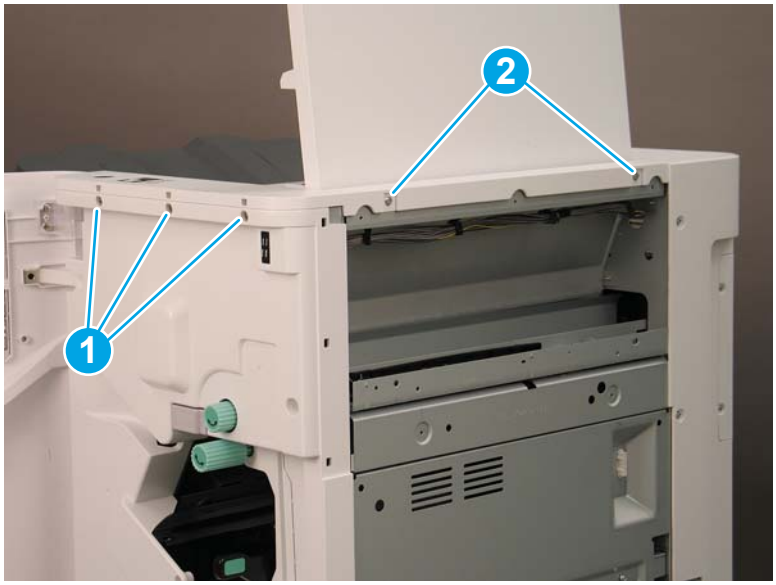
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-561 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

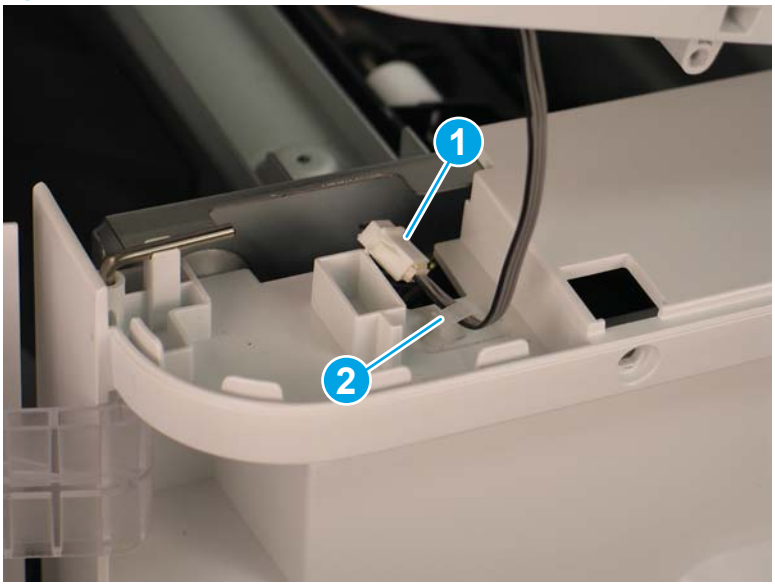
Figure 7-562 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-563 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

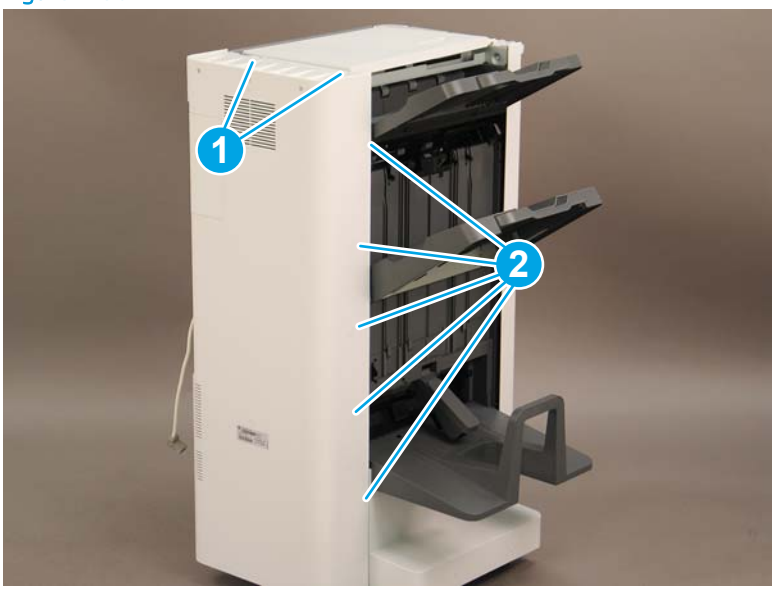


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-564 Remove seven screws

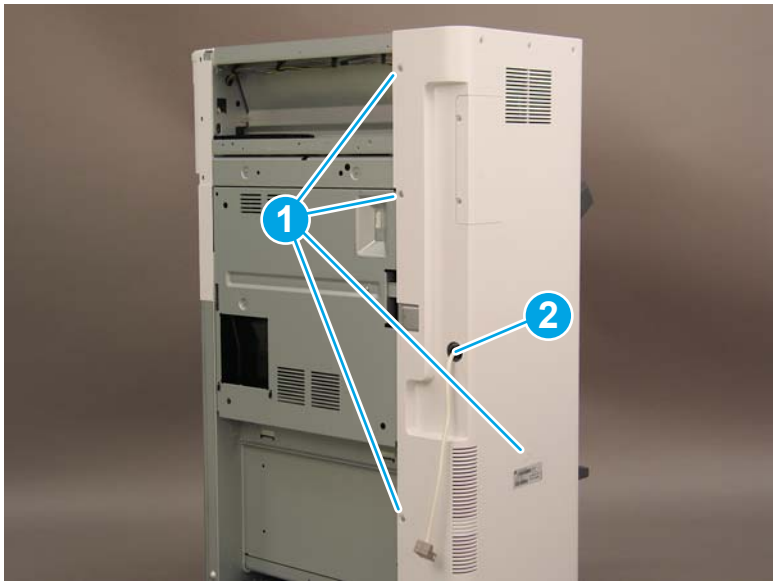


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-565 Remove four screws and the rear cover

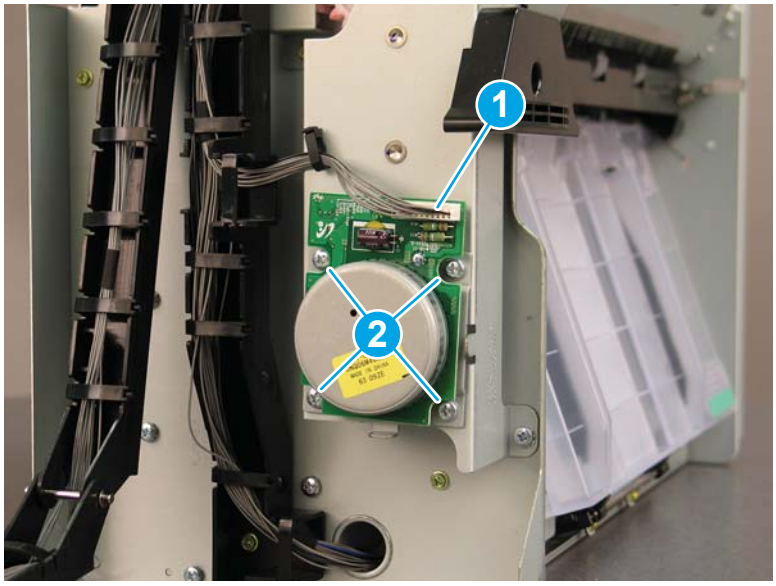


Step 4: Remove the folding roller motor (M18)

▲ Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the folding roller motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-566 Remove the folding roller motor



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Blade motor (M19)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover
- Step 2: Remove the booklet finisher lower right shield
- Step 3: Remove the blade motor (M19)
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the blade motor on the booklet finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Finisher sub - bm main blade part number	
SAM-JC90-01435A	Finisher sub - bm main blade

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

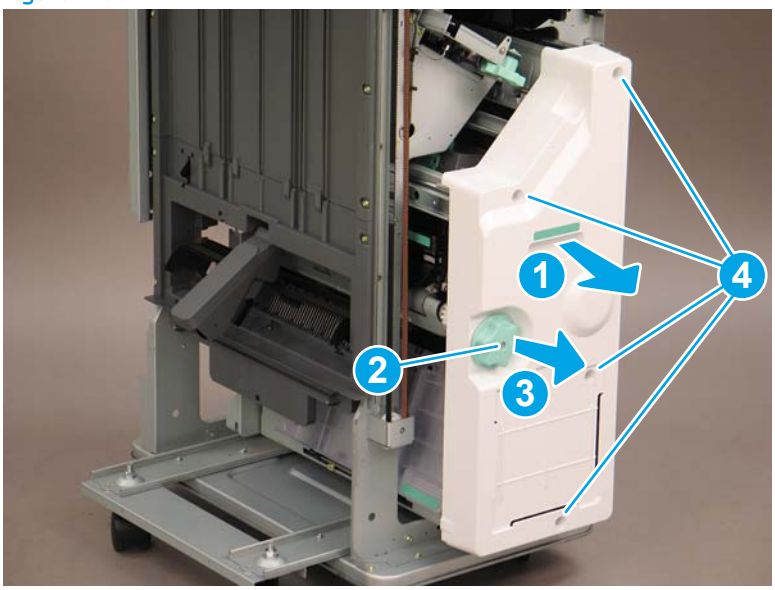
Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover

▲ Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

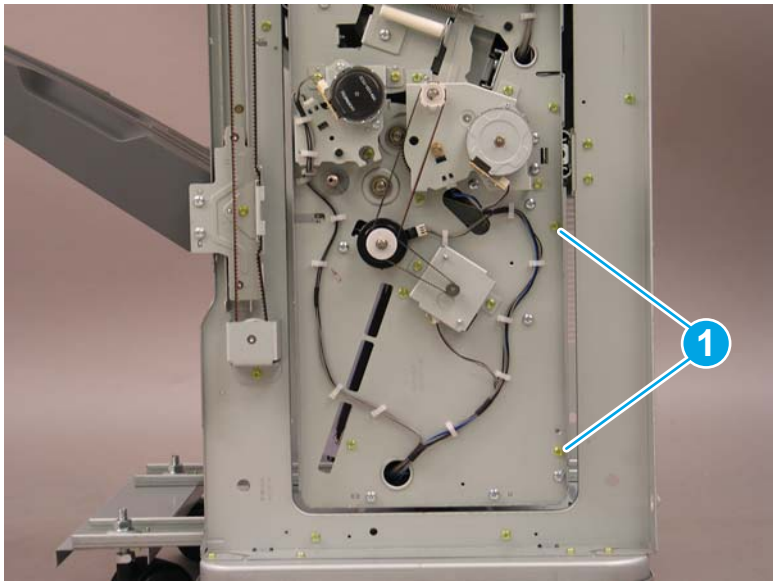
Figure 7-567 Remove five screws and the cover



Step 2: Remove the booklet finisher lower right shield

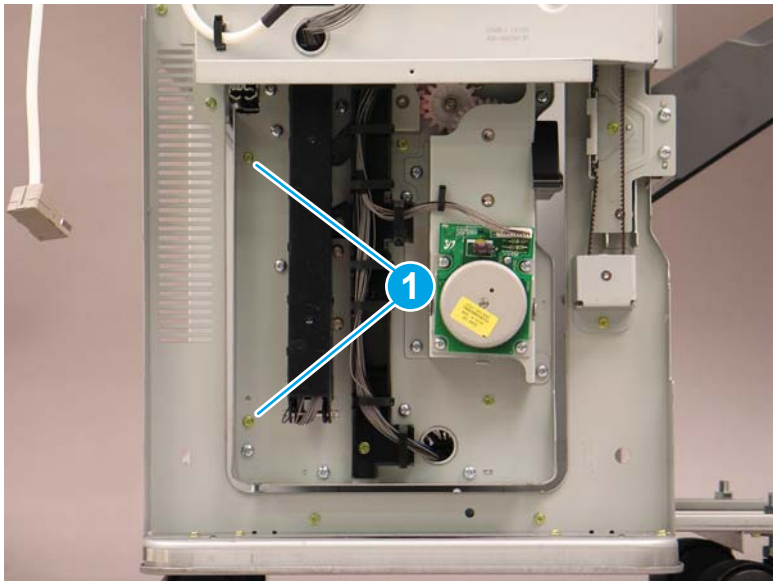
1. Remove two screws at the front of the booklet finisher (callout 1).

Figure 7-568 Remove two screws



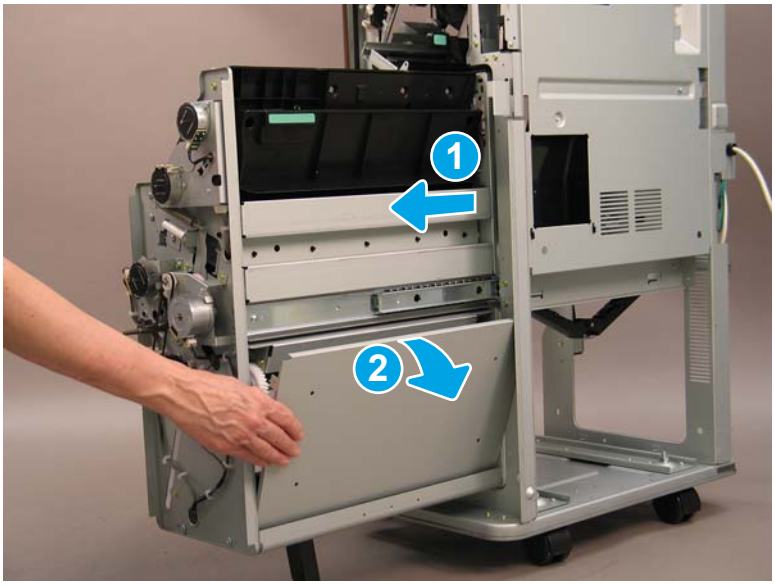
2. Remove two screws at the back of the booklet finisher (callout 1).

Figure 7-569 Remove two screws



3. Slide the booklet finisher out of the finisher (callout 1), and then rotate the top of the lower right shield (callout 2) away from the booklet finisher to remove it.

Figure 7-570 Remove the lower right shield

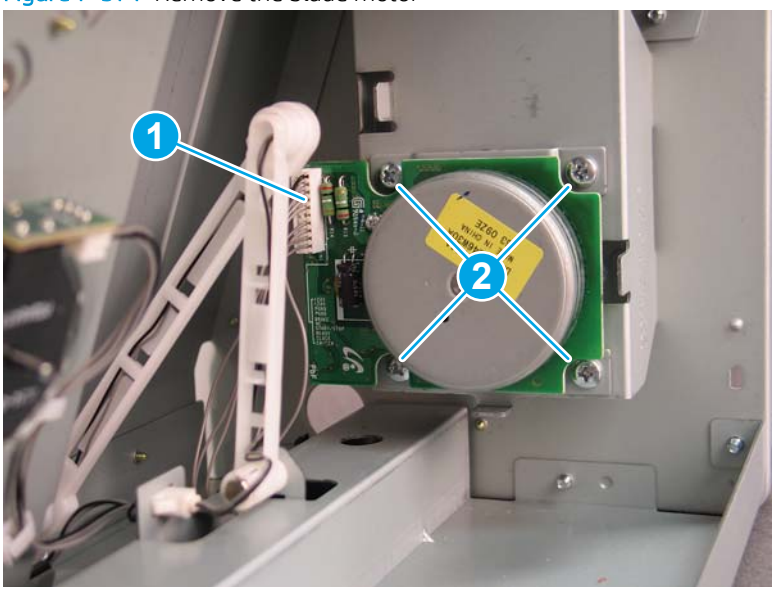


Step 3: Remove the blade motor (M19)

▲ Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the blade motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-571 Remove the blade motor



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

C fold motor (M20)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover
- Step 2: Remove the C fold motor
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the C fold motor on the booklet finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

C fold motor (M20) part number	
SAM-JC93-01154A	Drive Motor, Step

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

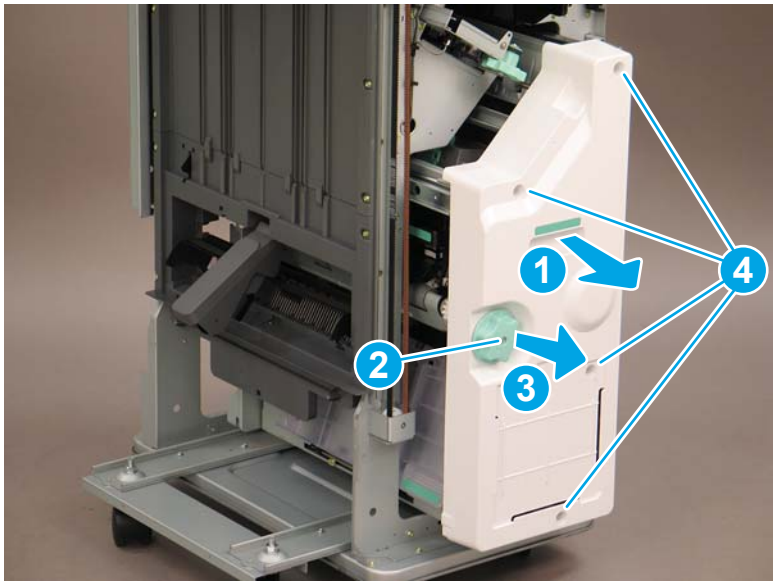
Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover

- Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

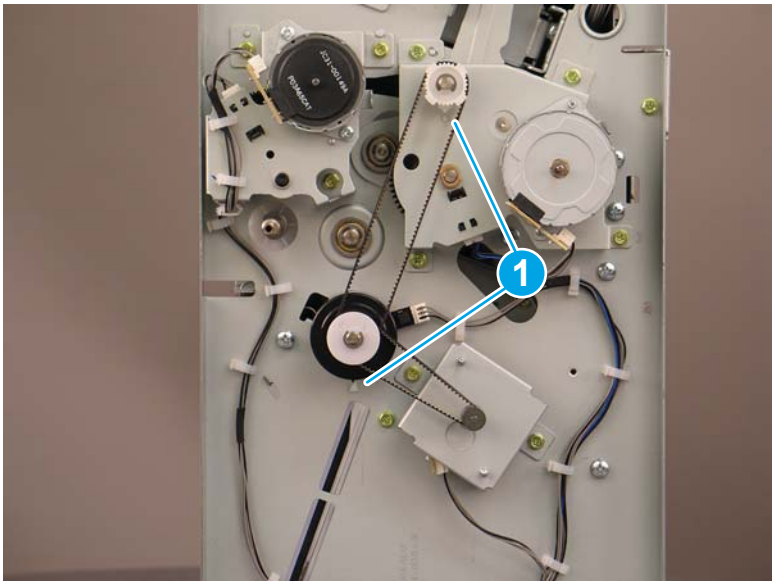
Figure 7-572 Remove five screws and the cover



Step 2: Remove the C fold motor

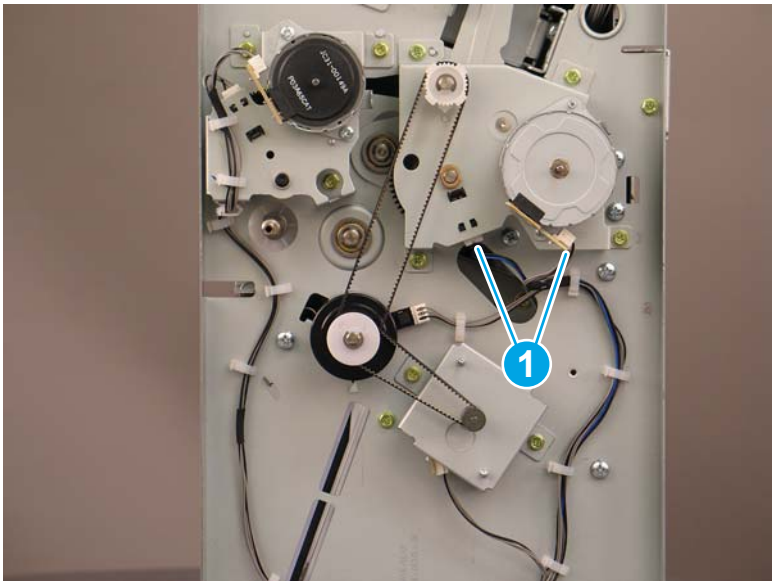
1. Note the position of the alignment arrows on the upper white gear and the lower motor (callout 1). These arrows must be aligned in these positions when the motor is reinstalled.

Figure 7-573 Check arrow alignment



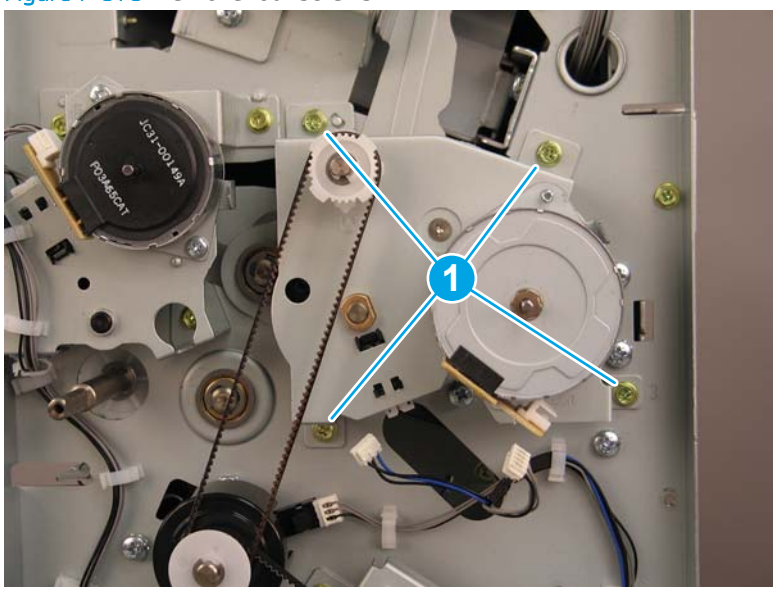
2. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1).

Figure 7-574 Disconnect two connectors



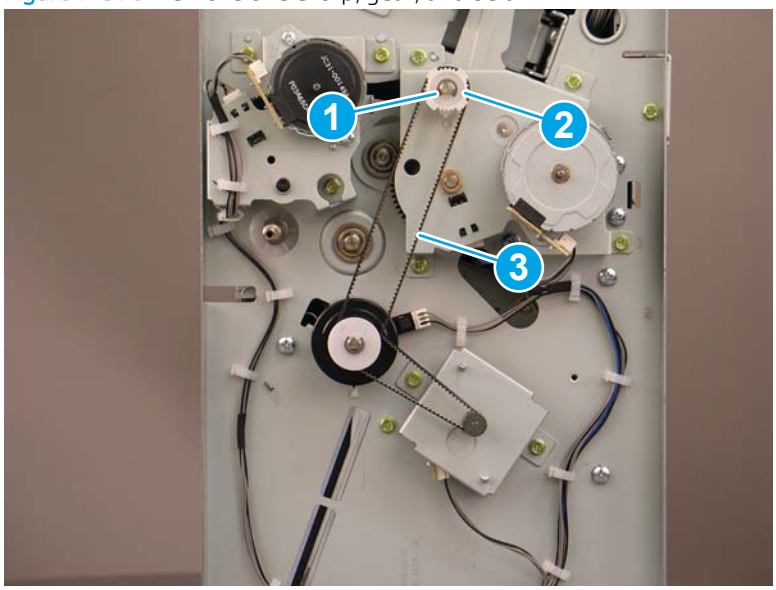
3. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-575 Remove four screws



4. Remove one e-clip (callout 1) on top of the white gear. Remove the white gear (callout 2) and release the belt (callout 3).

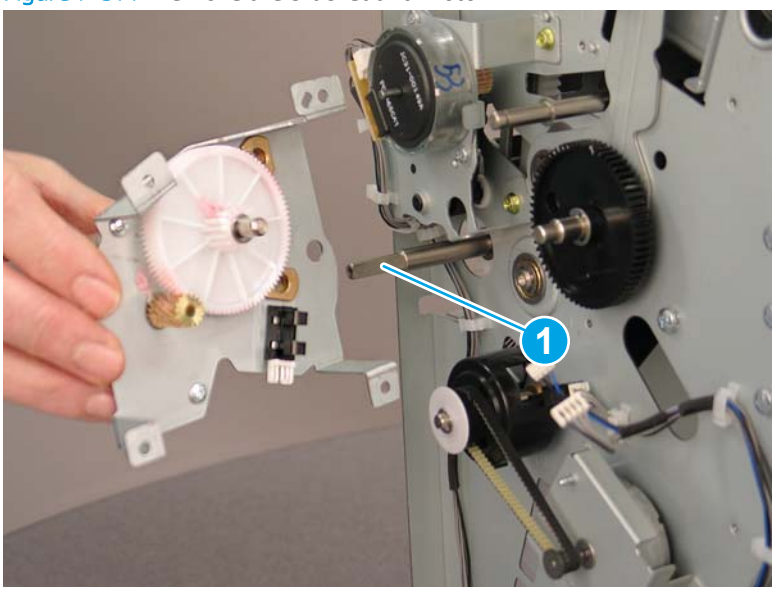
Figure 7-576 Remove one e-clip, gear, and belt



5. Remove the bracket and motor from the booklet finisher.

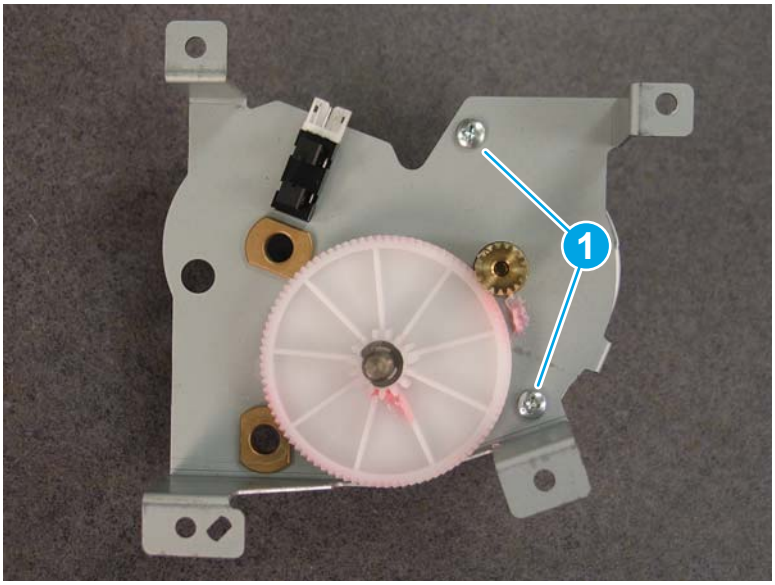
CAUTION: Do not pull on the shaft (callout 1) while removing the bracket and motor. The shaft might become dislodged at the other end. If the shaft becomes dislodged, remove the booklet finisher PCA shield and PCA bracket to reinstall the shaft.

Figure 7-577 Remove the bracket and motor



6. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the C fold motor.

Figure 7-578 Remove two screws



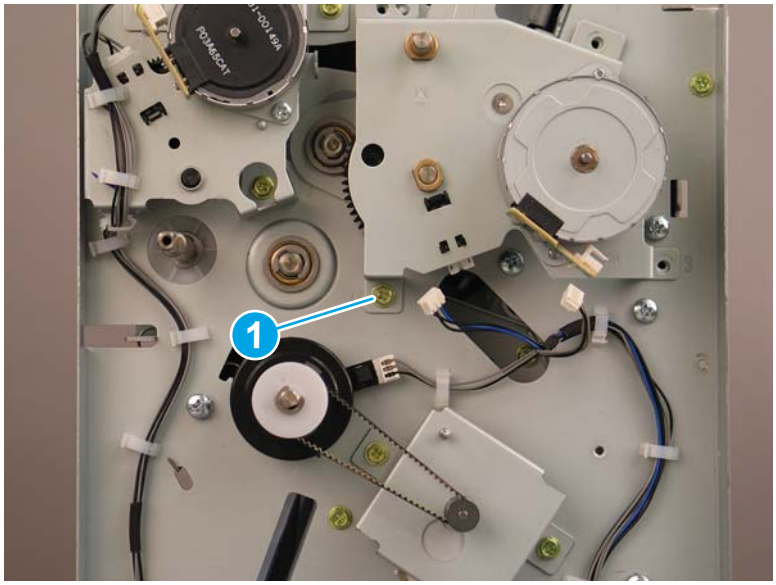
7. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: C fold motor

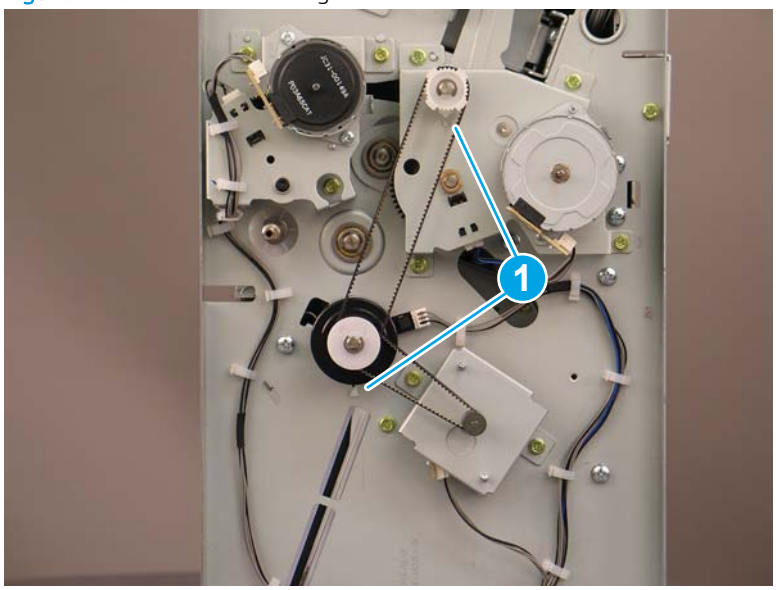
a. When installing the motor, install one screw (callout 1) to hold the bracket in place while installing the gear and belt.

Figure 7-579 Install one screw



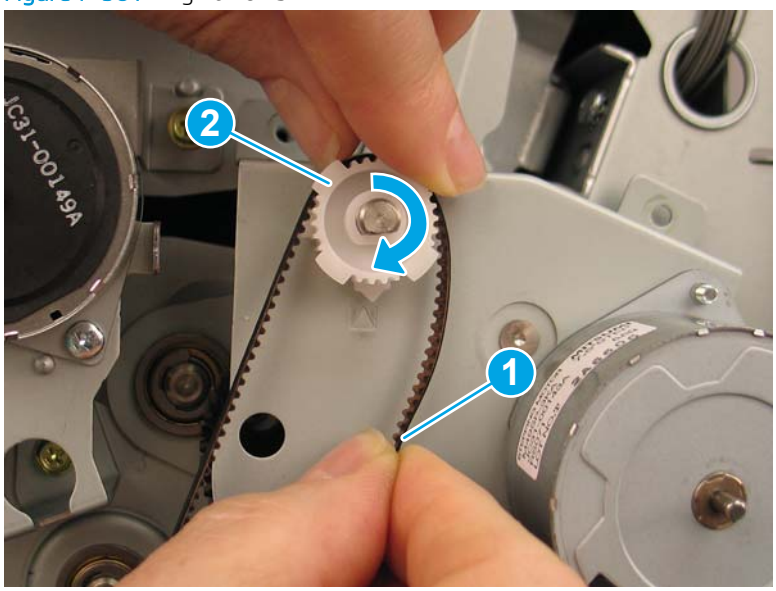
b. Check the position of the alignment arrows on the upper white gear and the lower motor (callout 1).

Figure 7-580 Check arrow alignment



c. If the arrows are not aligned, slightly pull up on the belt to create some slack around the gear (callout 1), and then rotate the gear (callout 2) until the arrows align.

Figure 7-581 Align arrows



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Problem solving

Control panel message document (CPMD)

Control-panel messages and event log entries

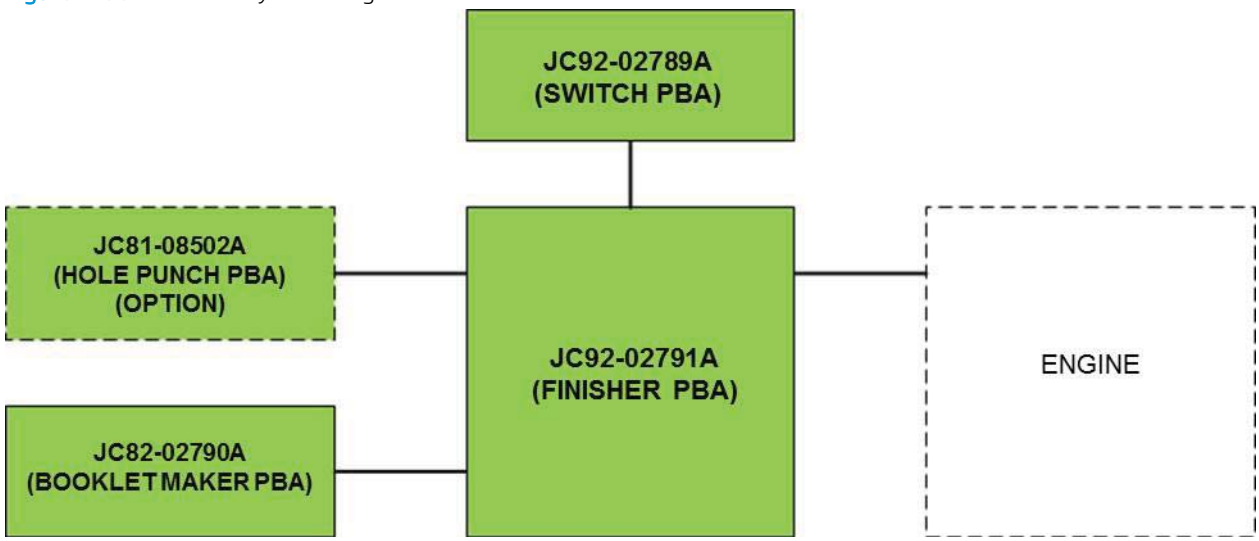
The CPMD is not provided in this service manual. The CPMD for this printer is available on the HP Service Access Workbench (SAW) Web site. Go to h41302.www4.hp.com/km/saw/home.do.

Finisher system diagram

PCA structure diagram

Finisher system consists of the FINISHER PCA, BOOKLET MAKER PCA, SWITCH PCA, and HOLE PUNCH PCA.

Figure 7-582 Finisher system diagram



PCA function

- FINISHER PCA

  This PCA controls the finisher modules and consists of the micro-controller and driver ICs.

- SWITCH PCA

  This PCA shows the manual stapling condition and accepts the button input for manual staple operation.

- BOOKLET MAKER PCA

  This PCA controls the booklet maker module and consists of the micro-controller and driver ICs.

- HOLE PUNCH PCA

  This PCA controls the hole punch module and consists of the micro-controller and driver ICs.

8 Inner finisher

- Precautions
- Product Specification and Description
- Service approach
- Removal and replacment (inner finisher)
- Problem solving
- Block Diagram

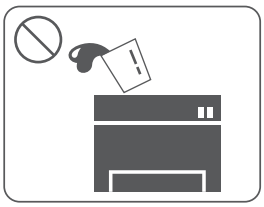
Precautions

Caution for safety

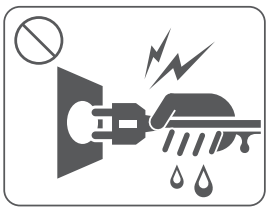
Electric shock and fire safety precautions

Failure to follow these instructions could result in electric shock or cause a fire.

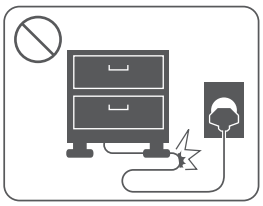
1. Use the correct voltage. Failure to do so could damage the printer and cause fire or electric shock.
2. Use the power cable supplied with the printer. Use of an incorrectly specified cable could cause overheating and fire.
3. Do not overload the power socket. This could lead to overheating of the cables inside the wall and cause fire.
4. Keep water and other liquids, paper clips, pins, and other foreign objects away from the printer. Contact with liquids or these objects might cause electric shock or fire.



5. Do not touch the plugs on the ends of the power cable with wet hands. When servicing the printer, remove the power plug from the wall socket.

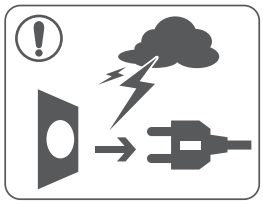


6. Use caution when connecting or disconnecting the power cable.
7. Take care of the power cable. Do not allow the power cable to become twisted or sharply bent around corners as this will cause damage. Do not place objects on top of the power cable. Damage to the power cable might cause overheating and fire. Exposed cables might cause electric shock. Replace damaged power cable immediately. Do not reuse or repair a damaged power cable. Certain chemicals can damage the coating on the power cable, weakening the coating or exposing cables which might cause electric shock or fire.

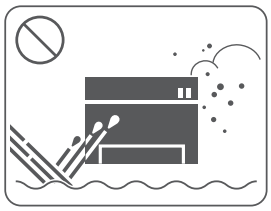


8. Make sure that the power outlet and plugs are not cracked or broken. Repair these defects as soon as possible. Be careful to not cut or damage the power cable or plugs when moving the printer.

9. Use caution during thunder or lightning storms. HP recommends the printer be disconnected from the power source when thunder or lightning is expected. Do not touch the printer or the power cable if it is still connected to the power outlet during these weather conditions.

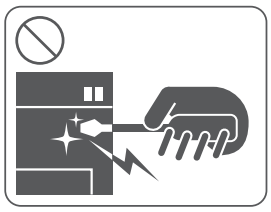


10. Do not place the printer in damp or dusty areas. Install the printer in a clean, well-ventilated location. Do not position the printer near a humidifier or in front of an air conditioner. Moisture and dust build up inside the printer can lead to overheating and cause fire or rust.



11. Do not place the printer in direct sunlight. Direct sunlight can cause the temperature inside the printer to rise causing failure to work properly, and in extreme conditions, might lead to fire.

12. Do not insert metal objects into the printer through the ventilator fan or other parts of the casing. Doing so could lead to the metal object making contact with the high voltage conductor inside the printer, causing electric shock.



13. Wait 5 minutes after unplugging the power cable before replacing the LVPS board to avoid electric shock.

Handling precautions

The following instructions are for the user's personal safety, to avoid injury, and to avoid damage to the printer.

1. Make sure the printer is placed on a level surface capable of supporting the weight of the printer. Failure to do so could cause the printer to tip or fall.

2. The printer contains rollers, gears, and fans. Make sure to not catch fingers, hair, or clothing in any these rotating devices.

3. Do not place any small metal objects, or containers of water, chemicals, or other liquids close to the printer. If spilled, these objects or liquids could get into the printer and cause damage, or cause electric shock or fire.

4. Do not place the printer in damp or dusty areas, near an open window, or close to a humidifier or heater. These conditions can cause damage to the printer.

5. Do not place candles or burning cigarettes on the printer. Doing so could cause fire.
6. Make sure that the printer is installed and operated in an area that meets temperature and humidity specifications.
   - The printer cannot be used immediately after being stored at below zero Celsius for long periods of time. Doing so could cause malfunction. Place the printer in an area where it can reach room temperature before operation.

Removal and replacement precautions

1. Use caution when replacing parts. Always use HP parts. Make sure to note the exact location of parts and cable routing before dismantling any part of the printer. Make sure all parts and cables are replaced correctly. Complete the following procedures before dismantling the printer or replacing any parts.
2. Make sure that the power cable is disconnected before servicing or replacing any electrical parts.
3. Disconnect interface cables and power cables.
4. Use approved replacement parts. Make sure that the part number, printer name, voltage, and current or temperature ratings are correct.
5. Do not excessive force to remove or refit parts, especially when fitting screws into plastic.
6. Make sure not to drop any small parts into the printer.
7. Be careful when handling the OPC drum:
   - The OPC Drum can be permanently damaged if exposed to light. Be careful not to expose the OPC Drum to direct sunlight, fluorescent light, or incandescent room lighting. Exposure for as little as 5 minutes can damage the surface of the photoconductive properties and will result in print quality degradation. Be careful when servicing the printer. Remove the OPC Drum and store it in a black bag or other lightproof container. Be careful when working with the printer if the covers, especially the top cover, are open, as light is admitted to the OPC area and can damage the OPC Drum.
   - Make sure not to scratch the green surface of the OPC Drum Unit. If the green surface of the Drum Cartridge is scratched or touched, the print quality will be compromised.

Disregarding this warning may cause bodily injury

1. Be careful with high temperature parts.

   The fuser unit operates at high temperatures. Wait for the fuser unit to cool down before disassembly.

2. Keep fingers, hair, and clothes away from moving parts.

   To avoid injury, do not put fingers, hair, or clothes near moving parts such as the paper feeding entrance, motor, and fan.

3. Use safe lifting and handling techniques to move the printer.

   The printer is heavy. To avoid injury, use the lifting handles located on each side of the printer and lift carefully.

4. Make sure the printer is installed safely.

   Make sure the printer is placed on a level surface that is capable of supporting the weight of the printer. Failure to do so could cause the printer to tip or fall, possibly causing personal injury or damage to the printer.

5. Do not install the printer on a sloping or unstable surface. After installation, make sure that the printer is stable.

ESD precautions

⚠ CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Look for the ESD reminder when removing printer parts. Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground *before* touching an ESD-sensitive assembly.

Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

Product Specification and Description

Specification

Item	Description
Capacity	550 Sheets (Main 500, Top 50) @ 80gsm
Sensing	Paper Jam/Tray Sensing/Stapler/Cover Open
Media Sizes	• Main: 148 - 320 mm x 140-457.2 mm (58.3-126 inch x 55.1-180 inch) • Top: 98 - 297 mm x 140-432 mm (38.6-116.9 inch x 55.1-170.1 inch)
Media types	Plain/Thick/Heavy weight/Thin/Cotton/Colored/Recycled/Bond/Archive/Pre-Punched/Cardstock/Glossy/ Envelope
Media Weight	• Main: 52-256 gsm (13.9-68.3 lb.) • Top: 52-325 gsm (13.9-86.7 lb.)
Number of Bin	2 (Main/Top)
Dimension (W X D X H)	458 x 491 x 173 mm (18.0 X 19.3 X 6.8 inch)
Weight	15 kg (33 lb.)
Tray1 Finishing Capacity	50 Sheets @ 80gsm
Tray1 Finishing Mode	Stapling (Left, Right, Center)/Punch (2/3, 2/4, Swedish)
Tray2 Finishing Capacity	500 Sheets @ 80 gsm

Table 8-1 Paper Size Specification

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Output			Staple position		
	mm	Inches	Direction	Main tray		Top tray	Corner		DUAL
				52-256 g	Offset	52-325 g	45°	Flat	
A5	210 x 148	8.3 x 5.8	LEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	O
Statement	216 x 140	8.5 x 5.5	LEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	O
Lt	279 x 216	11 x 8.5	LEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
A4	297 x 210	8.3 x 11.7	LEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
B5(JIS)	257 x 182	10.1 x 7.2	LEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
B5(ISO)	250 x 176	9.8 x 6.9	LEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
Executive	267 x 184	10.5 x 7.3	LEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
No 9 Env	98 x 225	3.9 x 8.9	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
Monarch Env	98.4 x 190.5	3.9 x 7.5	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
PostCard 4X6	101.6 x 152.4	4.0 x 6.0	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
A6	105 x 148	4.1 x 5.8	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X

Table 8-1 Paper Size Specification (continued)

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Output			Staple position		
	mm	Inches	Direction	Main tray		Top tray	Corner		DUAL
				52-256 g	Offset	52-325 g	45°	Flat	
No 10 Env	105 x 241	4.1 x 9.5	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
DL Env	110 x 220	4.3 x 8.7	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
C6 Env	114 x 162	4.5 x 6.4	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
B6	128 x 182	5.0 x 7.2	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
Statement	140 x 216	5.5 x 8.5	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
A5	148 x 210	5.8 x 8.3	SEF	O	X	O	X	X	X
C5 Env	162 x 229	6.4 x 9.0	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
B5(ISO)	176 x 250	6.9 x 9.8	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	X
B5(JIS)	182 x 257	6.9 x 9.8	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	X
Executive	184 x 267	7.3 x 10.5	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	X
16k	195 x 270	7.7 x 10.6	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	O
A4	210 x 297	8.3 x 11.7	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	O
Legal	216 x 356	8.5 x 14	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	O
Letter	216 x 279	8.5 x 11	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	O
Folio	216 x 330	8.5 x 13	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	O
Oficio	215.9 x 342.9	8.5 x 13.5	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	O
C4	229 x 324	9.1 x 12.8	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
Tabloid	254 x 374	10 x 14.7	SEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
B4	257 x 364	10 x 14.3	SEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
8K	270 x 390	10.6 x 15.4	SEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
Ledger	279 x 432	11 x 17	SEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
A3	297 x 420	11.7 x 16.5	SEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
Tabloid Extra	304.8 x 457.2	12 x 18	SEF	O	X	X	X	X	X
SRA3	320 x 450	12.6 x 17.7	SEF	O	O	X	X	X	X
Custom	W 98-320 ~ L 140-1200	W3.9-12.6 ~ L 5.5-47	—	W 148-320 - L 140-1200	X	W 98-297 - L 140-1200	X	X	X

[1] "F/R" means front side and rear side can be supported.

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Punch				
	mm	Inches	Direction	NA 2/3		EU 2/4H		Swedish
				2H	3H	2H	4H	4H
A5	210 x 148	8.3 x 5.8	LEF	O	X	O	X	O
Statement	216 x 140	8.5 x 5.5	LEF	O	X	O	X	O
Lt	279 x 216	11 x 8.5	LEF	O	O	O	O	O
A4	297 x 210	8.3 x 11.7	LEF	O	O	O	O	O
B5 (JIS)	257 x 182	10.1 x 7.2	LEF	O	O	O	X	O
B5 (ISO)	250 x 176	9.8 x 6.9	LEF	O	O	O	X	O
Executive	267 x 184	10.5 x 7.3	LEF	O	O	O	O	O
No 9 Env	98 x 225	3.9 x 8.9	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
Monarch Env	98.4 x 190.5	3.9 x 7.5	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
PostCard 4X6	101.6 x 152.4	4.0 x 6.0	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
A6	105 x 148	4.1 x 5.8	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
No 10 Env	105 x 241	4.1 x 9.5	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
DL Env	110 x 220	4.3 x 8.7	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
C6 Env	114 x 162	4.5 x 6.4	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
B6	128 x 182	5.0 x 7.2	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
Statement	140 x 216	5.5 x 8.5	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
A5	148 x 210	5.8 x 8.3	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
C5 Env	162 x 229	6.4 x 9.0	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
B5(ISO)	176 x 250	6.9 x 9.8	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
B5(JIS)	182 x 257	6.9 x 9.8	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
Executive	184 x 267	7.3 x 10.5	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
16k	195 x 270	7.7 x 10.6	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
A4	210 x 297	8.3 x 11.7	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
Legal	216 x 356	8.5 x 14	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
Letter	216 x 279	8.5 x 11	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
Folio	216 x 330	8.5 x 13	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
Oficio	215.9 x 342.9	8.5 x 13.5	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
C4	229 x 324	9.1 x 12.8	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
Tabloid	254 x 374	10 x 14.7	SEF	O	O	O	X	O
B4	257 x 364	10 x 14.3	SEF	O	O	O	X	O

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Punch				
	mm	Inches	Direction	NA 2/3		EU 2/4H		Swedish
				2H	3H	2H	4H	4H
8K	270 x 390	10.6 x 15.4	SEF	O		O	O	O
Ledger	279 x 432	11 x 17	SEF	O	O	O	O	O
A3	297 x 420	11.7 x 16.5	SEF	O	O	O	O	O
Tabloid EXtra	304.8 x 457.2	12 x 18	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
SRA3	320 x 450	12.6 x 17.7	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
Custom	W 98-320 ~ L 140-1200	W3.9-12.6 ~ L 5.5-47	-	X	X	X	X	X

Table 8-2 Media performance

Paper Type	Function			
	Main Tray	Top Tray	Staple	Punch
Plain (71-90 g/m²)	O	O	O	O
Thick (91-105 g/m²)	O	O	O	O
Heavy weight (106-175 g/m²)	O	O	O	O
Extra Heavy weight 1 (176-216 g/m²)	O	O	O	O
Extra Heavy weight 2 (217-256 g/m²)	O	O	O	O
Extra Heavy weight 3 (257-300 g/m²)	X	O	X	X
Extra Heavy weight 4 (301-325 g/m²)	X	O	X	X
Thin (60-70 g/m²)	O	O	O	O
Cotton (75-90 g/m²)	O	O	O	O
Colored (75-90 g/m²)	O	O	O	O
Pre-Printed (75-90 g/m²)	O	O	O	O
Recycled (60-90 g/m²)	O	O	O	O
Bond	O	O	O	O
Archive (75-105 g/m²)	O	O	O	O
LetterHead	O	O	O	O
Pre-Punched	O	O	O	X
Thin Cardstock (105-163 g/m²)	O	O	O	O

Table 8-2 Media performance (continued)

Paper Type	Function			
	Main Tray	Top Tray	Staple	Punch
Thick Cardstock (170-216 g/m²)	O	O	O	X
Heavy Cardstock (217-256 g/m²)	O	O	O	X
Extra Heavy Cardstock 1(257-300 g/m²)	X	O	X	X
Extra Heavy Cardstock 2(301-325 g/m²)	X	O	X	X
Thin Glossy (106-169 g/m²)	O	O	O	O
Thick Glossy (170-216 g/m²)	O	O	O	X
Heavy Glossy (217-256 g/m²)	O	X	X	X
Envelope (75-90 g/m²)	X	O	X	X
Thick Envelope (217-256 g/m²)	O	X	X	X
Tab	O	X	X	O
Perforated Paper (75-90 g/m²)	X	O	X	X

Finisher System

Sectional view

Figure 8-1 Finisher system—sectional view

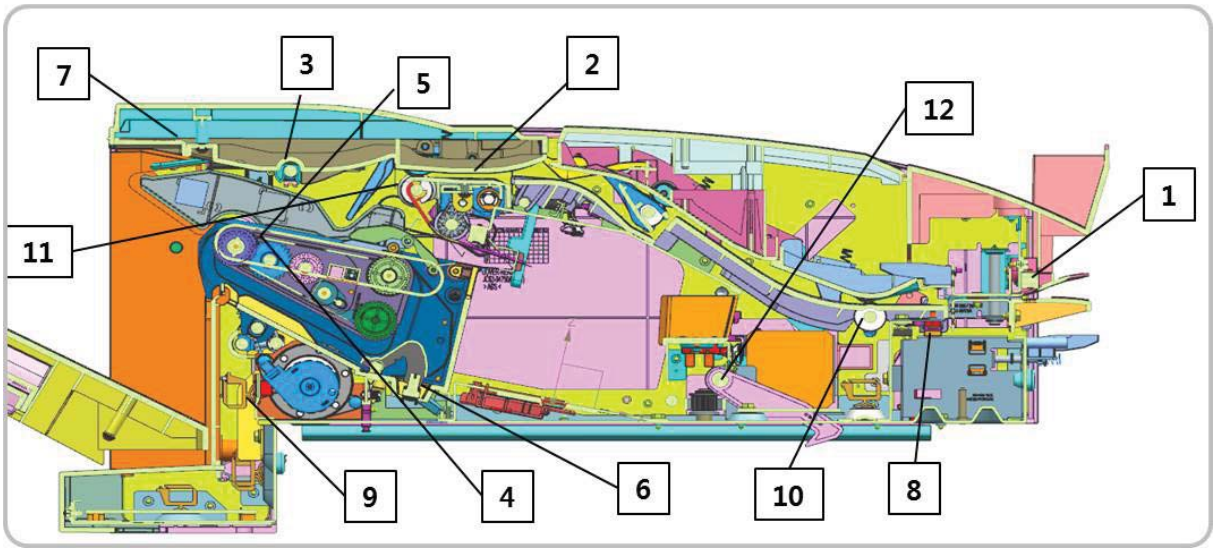


Table 8-3 Finisher system—sectional view

Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Entrance sensor	7	Jam Door Open Sensor
2	Passthru Sensor	8	Front Door Open Sensor
3	Paddle Home Sensor	9	Stacker Tray Home Sensor
4	Tamper Home_F Sensor	10	Paper Feed roller
5	Tamper Home_R Sensor	11	Paper Exit roller
6	Eject Home Sensor	12	Turning Knob

Paper path

Figure 8-2 Finisher system—paper path

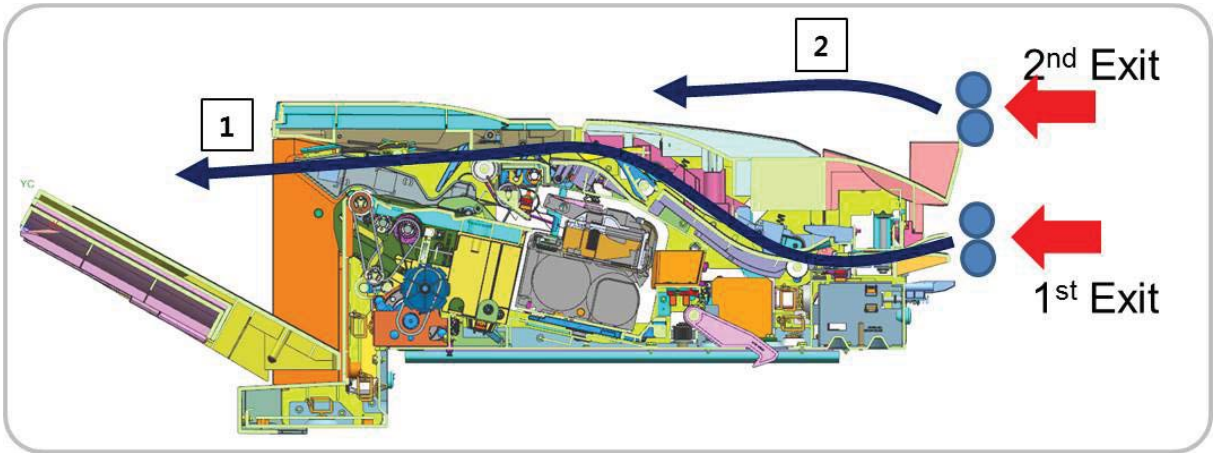


Table 8-4 Finisher system—paper path

Item	Description
1	Finisher Main Tray – Staple / offset / Punch
2	Finisher Top Tray – Stack only

Electrical parts layout

Figure 8-3 Finisher system—electrical parts layout

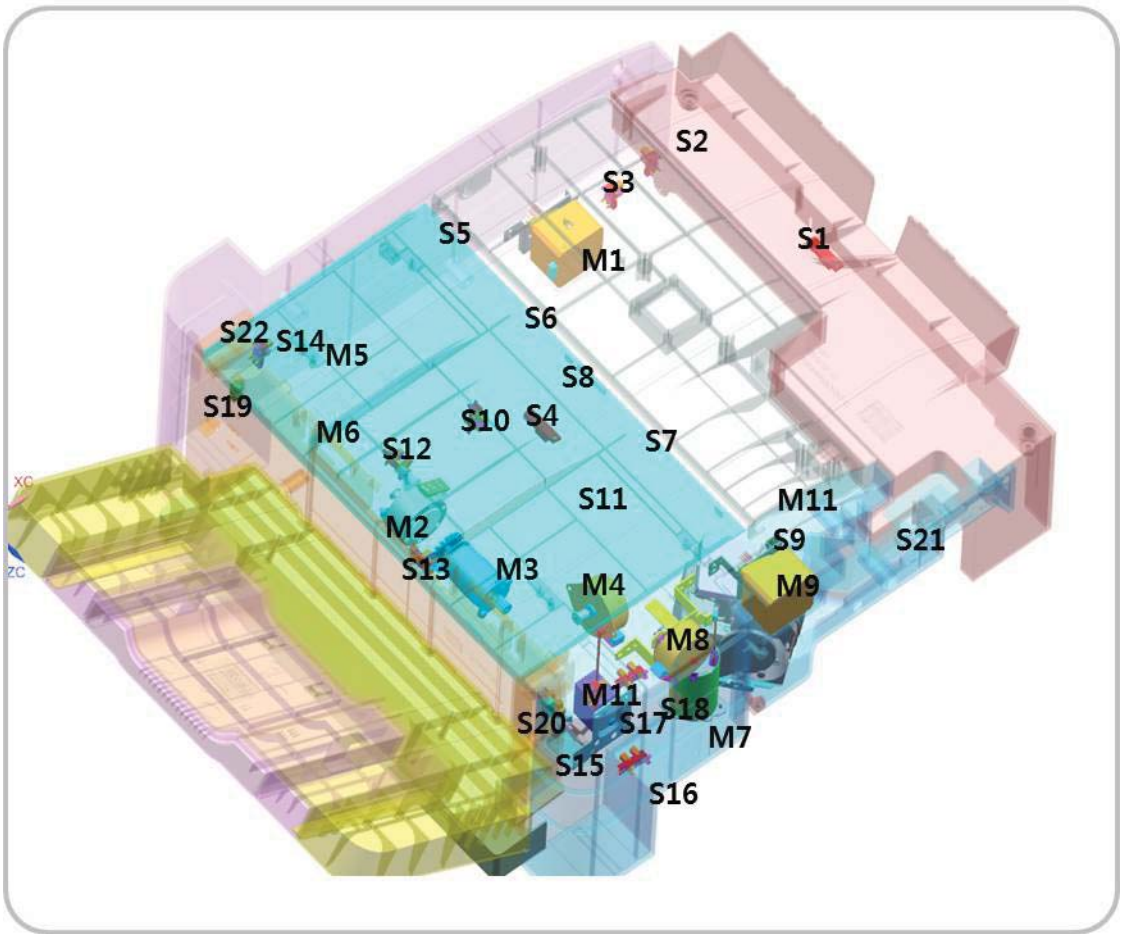


Table 8-5 Finisher system—electrical parts layout

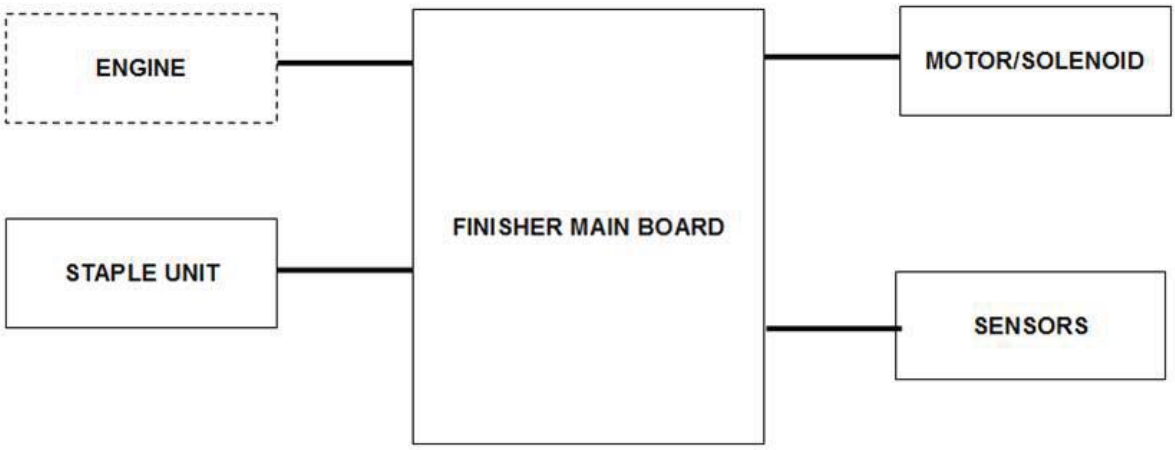
Item	Description	Function
S1	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001381)	Entrance Sensor
S2	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Shaft Docking Sensor
S3	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Dust Box Sensor
S4	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001381)	Sub Stay Sensor
S5	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Stapler Position Sensor_Rear
S6	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Staple Position Sensor_ Center 1
S7	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Staple Position Sensor_ Center 2
S8	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Exit Sensor
S9	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Stapler Position Sensor_Front
S10	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	End Defence Sensor
S11	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Eject Sensor
S12	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Paper Support Sensor

Table 8-5 Finisher system—electrical parts layout (continued)

Item	Description	Function
S13	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Eject 2 Motor Sensor
S14	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Tamper Position Sensor_Rear
S15	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Paper Holder Position Sensor
S16	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Tray Home Position Sensor
S17	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Tamper Position Sensor_Front
S18	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Main Paddle Position Sensor
S19	JC81-07403A	AS- Sensor
S20	JC81-07396A	AS- Sensor
S21	JC39-01610A	Switch Front cover open
S22	JC39-02175A	Switch Jam door open
M1	JC31-00169A	Entrance Motor
M2	JC31-00009C	EJECTOR_1_Motor
M3	Mabuchi	EJECTOR_2_Motor
M4	JC31-00149A	Tamper_Motor_Front
M5	JC31-00149A	Tamper_Motor_Rear
M6	JC31-00149A	Paper Support
M7	KIG	Tray Motor
M8	JC31-00149A	Main Paddle Motor
M9	JC31-00169A	Exit Motor
M10	JC31-00149A	Traverse Motor
M11	TDS-10SL	Paper Holder Solenoid

Block Diagram

Figure 8-4 Finisher system—block diagram



PBA Connection Information

Figure 8-5 Finisher system—PBA connection information

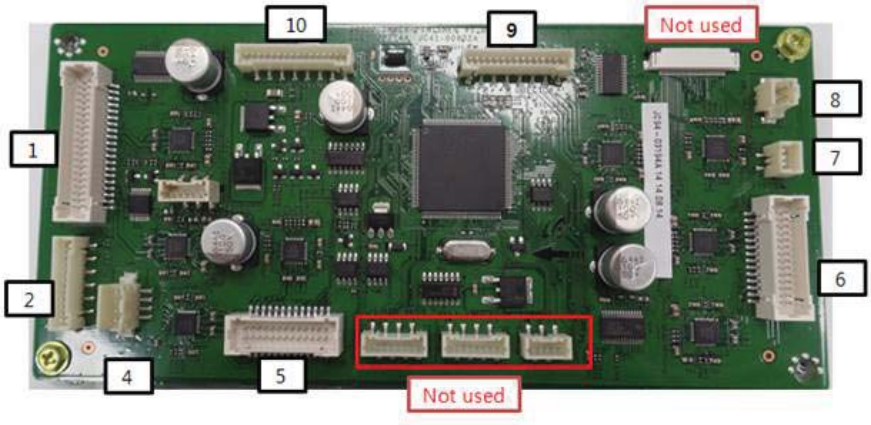


Table 8-6 Finisher system—PBA connection information

No.	Connection
1	CN3 : REAR Joint I/F
2	CN1 : REAR Sensor
3	CN10 : Traverse Mid Sensor
4	CN8 : Debug
5	CN2 : REAR I/F
6	CN7 : FRONT I/F
7	CN6 : Stacker Switch
8	CN9 : Solenoid
9	CN4 : Ejector & Supporter I/F
10	CN5 : Main I/F

Service approach

⚠ CAUTION: When working on the product, do not pick up the unit by the output tray, which will detach under the weight of the product.

Precautions when replacing parts

Precautions when assembling and disassembling

- Use only HP approved replacement parts. Make sure that the part number, product name, voltage, and current or temperature ratings are correct. Failure to do so might result in damage to the printer, circuit overload, fire, or electric shock.
- Do not make unauthorized changes or additions to the printer. Unauthorized changes might cause the printer to malfunction and create electric shock or fire hazards.
- Use caution when dismantling the unit. Take note of the location of each screw or other part. This printer contains 19 different screws. Using the wrong screw might lead to system failure, short circuit or electric shock.
- Do not disassemble the laser scanner assembly. Once the laser scanner assembly is disassembled, dust might enter the mirror chamber and will seriously degrade print quality. There are no serviceable parts inside the laser scanner assembly.
- Regularly check the condition of the power cable, plug and socket. Bad contacts might lead to overheating and fire. Damaged cables might lead to electric shock or unit malfunction.

Precautions when handling PCA

Static electric might damage a PCA. Use approved, anti-static precautions when handling or storing a PCA. Service personnel should use grounded ESD straps and/or mats when handling PCAs.

- Precautions when moving and storing a PCA
  - Keep PCA in a conductive case, anti-static bag, or wrapped in aluminum foil.
  - Do not store a PCA where it is exposed to direct sunlight.
- Precautions when replacing a PCA
  - Disconnect power cables before disconnecting other cables.
  - Do not touch any soldered connections, connector terminals, or other electronic parts when handling insulated parts.
- Precautions when checking a PCA
  - Touch a grounded area of the printer chassis to discharge static electric charge before touching a PCA.
  - Do not touch a PCA with bare hands or metal objects. Doing so might create a short circuit or cause electric shock. Use caution when handling a PCA with moving parts such as sensors, motors, or lamps, as they might become very hot.

- Use caution when fitting and removing screws. Watch for hidden screens. Make sure that the correct screw is used and make sure that when toothed washers are removed, they are refitted in their original positions.
- Place the product on an ESD workstation or mat, or use an ESD strap (if one is available). If an ESD workstation, mat, or strap is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis *before* touching an ESD-sensitive part.

Releasing plastic latches

Many of the parts are held in place with plastic latches. The latches can break easily; release them carefully. To remove such parts, press the hook end of the latch away from the part to which it is latched.

Before performing service

- Remove all paper from the product.
- Turn off the power using the power button.
- Unplug the power cable and interface cable or cables.
- Place the product on an ESD workstation or mat, or use an ESD strap (if one is available). If an ESD workstation, mat, or strap is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis *before* touching an ESD-sensitive part.
- Remove the toner cartridges.
- Remove the Tray 2 cassette.

After performing service

- Plug in the power cable.
- Verify the functions of the printer that might have been impacted by service procedures. Make sure the printer is in complete working order.
- Replace any accessories removed for service.

Post-service test

Perform the following tests to verify that the repair or replacement was successful:

Print-quality test

1. Verify that you have completed the necessary reassembly steps.
2. Make sure that the tray contains clean, unmarked paper.
3. Attach the power cord and interface cable or interface cables, and then turn on the product.
4. Print a configuration page.
5. Print a print quality page, and then verify that there are no lines, streaks, banding, or other print quality defects.
6. Send a print job from the host computer, and then verify that the output meets expectations.

Order parts, accessories, and supplies

Ordering

Order supplies and paper	www.hp.com/go/suresupply
Order genuine HP parts or accessories	www.hp.com/buy/parts or partsurfer.hp.com
Order through service or support providers	Contact an HP-authorized service or support provider.
Order using the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)	To access, in a supported Web browser on your computer, enter the printer IP address or host name in the address/URL field. The EWS contains a link to the HP SureSupply Web site, which provides options for purchasing Original HP supplies.

Orderable parts

Not all of the parts shown in the diagrams in this chapter can be ordered. Refer to the table following the diagram or the parts lists at the end of this chapter to determine if a part is orderable.

Removal and replacment (inner finisher)

- Entrance sensor
- Entrance motor
- Exit sensor
- Exit motor
- Sub Paddle Shaft Sub assembly
- Front Jogger Motor
- Front Jogger Home Sensor
- Rear Jogger Motor
- Rear Jogger Home Sensor
- Stapler
- Stapler position sensor assembly
- Traverse Motor
- Stacker Motor
- Stacker Encoder Sensor
- Stacker Lower Limit Switch
- Stack Beam Sensor
- Stack Position Sensor
- Paper Holding Lever Solenoid
- Paper Support Motor
- Paper Support Home Sensor
- Ejector Motor assembly
- Main Paddle Motor
- Main Paddle Home Sensor
- Main Paddle
- Ejector assembly
- Punch Dust Full Sensor
- Door Switch
- Top Door Switch
- End Fence Home Sensor

Entrance sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the entrance sensor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Entrance sensor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Entrance sensor assembly part number
Entrance sensor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

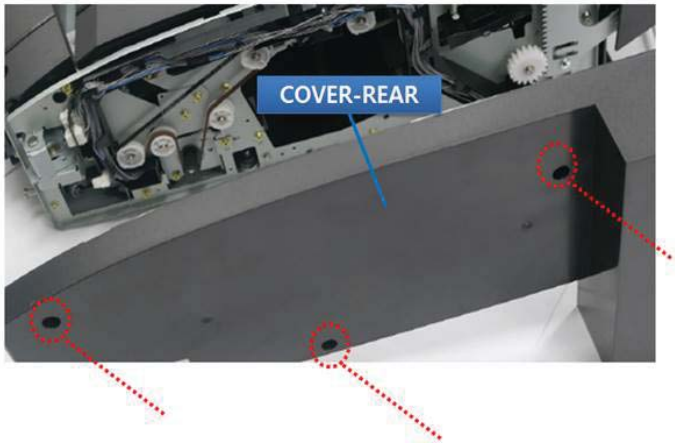
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the entrance sensor

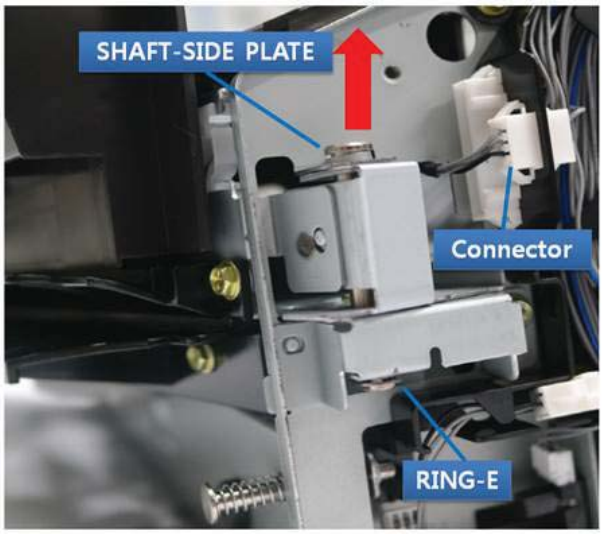
1. On the right-side of the printer remove three screws, and then remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-6 Remove the entrance sensor (1 of 7)

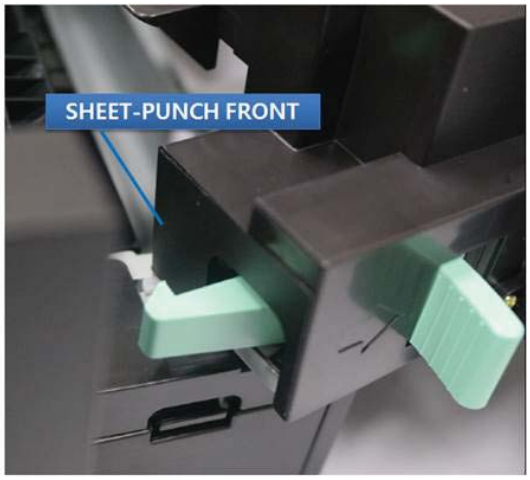
2. On the right, back-side of the printer remove the e-ring, and then remove the shaft-side plate. Unplug the connector.

   Figure 8-7 Remove the entrance sensor (2 of 7)

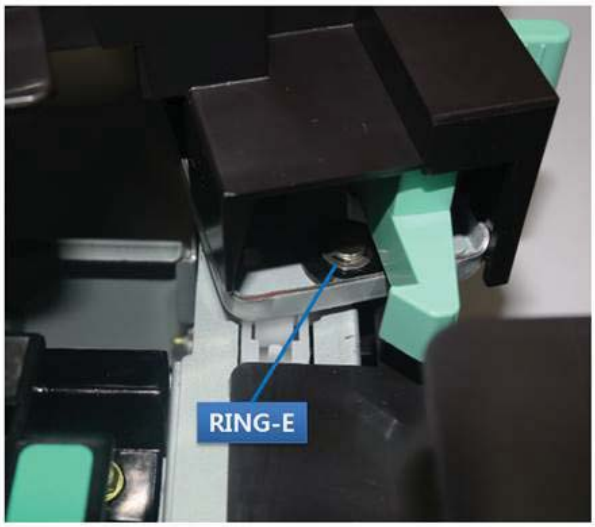
3. On the right, front-side of the printer remove the sheet-punch front.

Figure 8-8 Remove the entrance sensor (3 of 7)



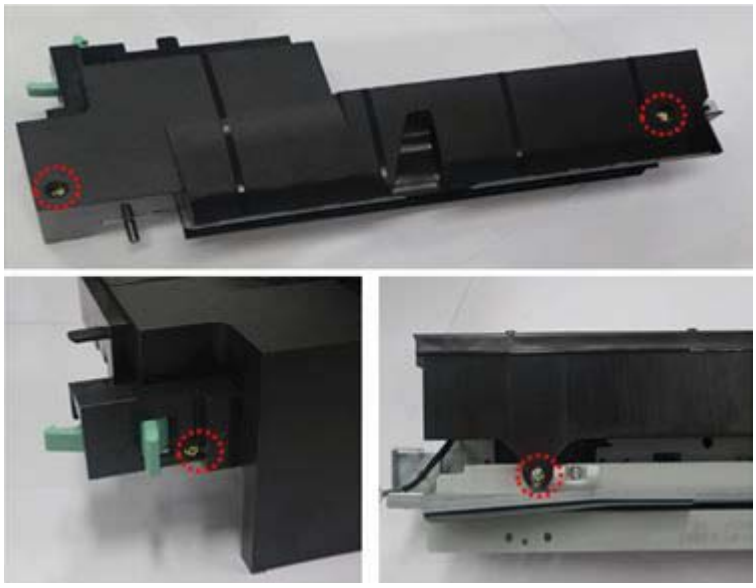
4. Remove the e-ring and washer, and then remove the punch dummy.

Figure 8-9 Remove the entrance sensor (4 of 7)



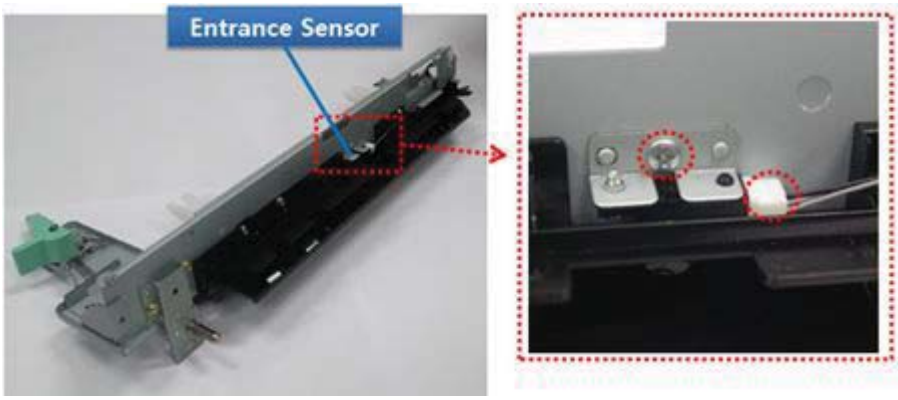
5. Loosen the adhesive tape around, and then remove, four screws. Remove the handle, and then remove the punch dummy cover.

Figure 8-10 Remove the entrance sensor (5 of 7)



6. Remove one screw, unplug the connector, and then remove the sensor bracket.

Figure 8-11 Remove the entrance sensor (6 of 7)



7. Remove one screw, and then remove the sensor.

Figure 8-12 Remove the entrance sensor (7 of 7)

Entrance motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers
- Step 2: Remove the entrance motor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Entrance motor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Entrance motor assembly part number
Entrance motor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

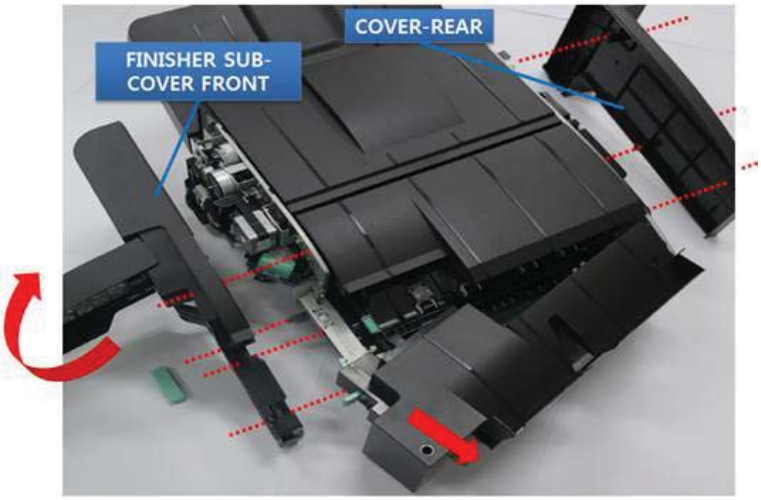
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub-cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub-cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub-cover front.

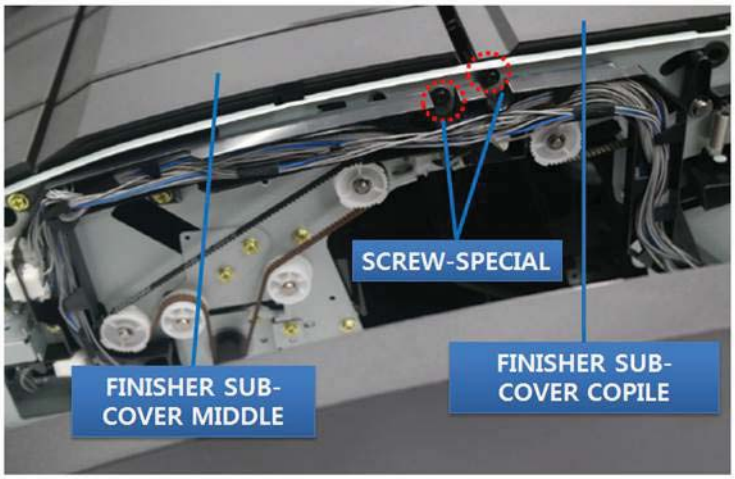
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-13 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 8-14 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)



3. On the front of the printer remove the e-ring and bushing. On the rear of the printer remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, spring (slightly hidden from view), and then remove the guide reverse and roller feed.

Figure 8-15 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7)

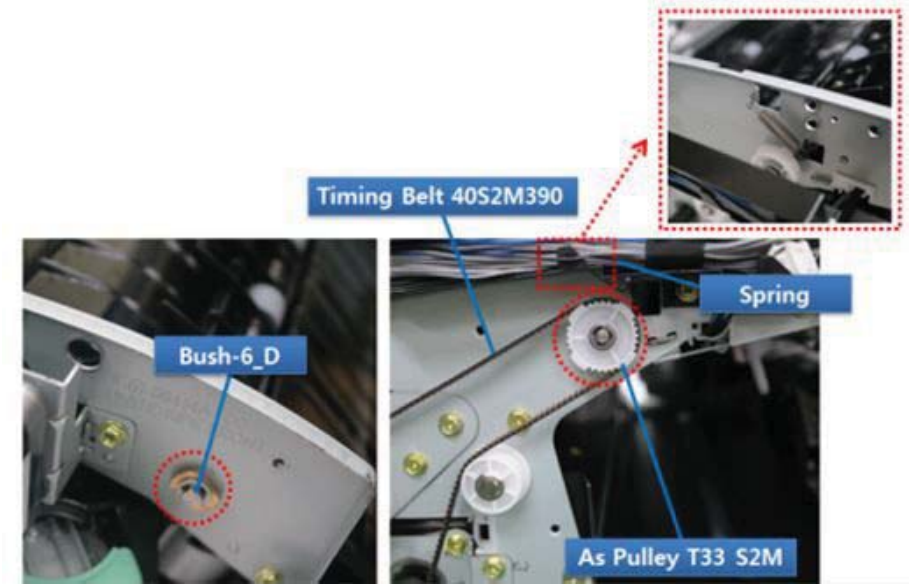
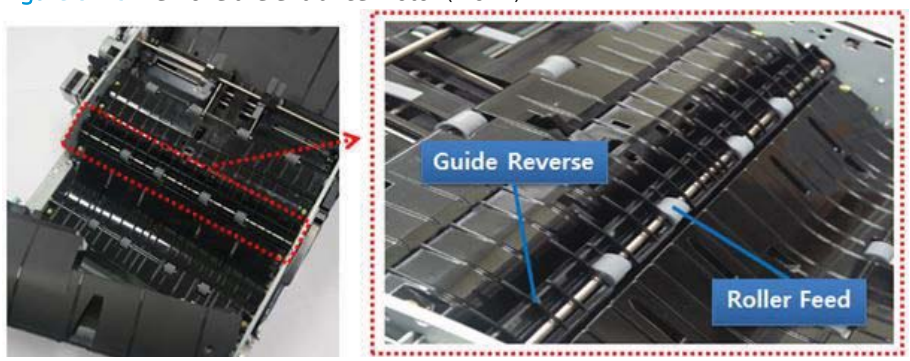


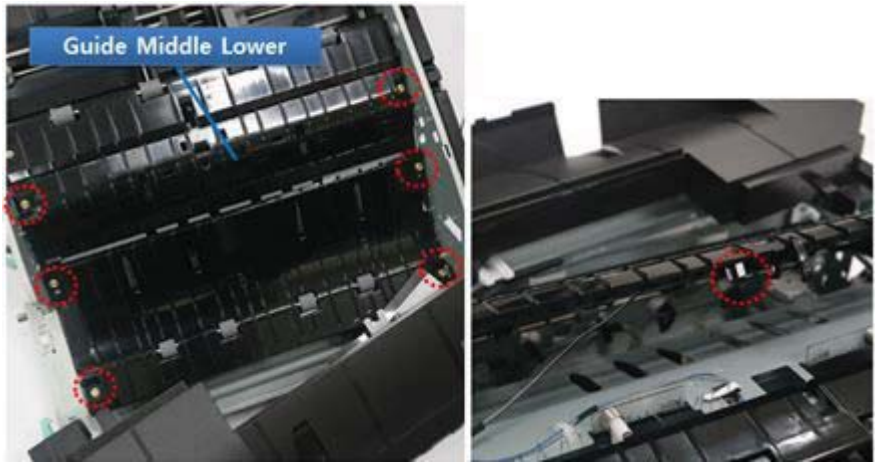
Figure 8-16 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7)



4. Remove six screws.

NOTE: Be careful not to damage the sensor.

Figure 8-17 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7)



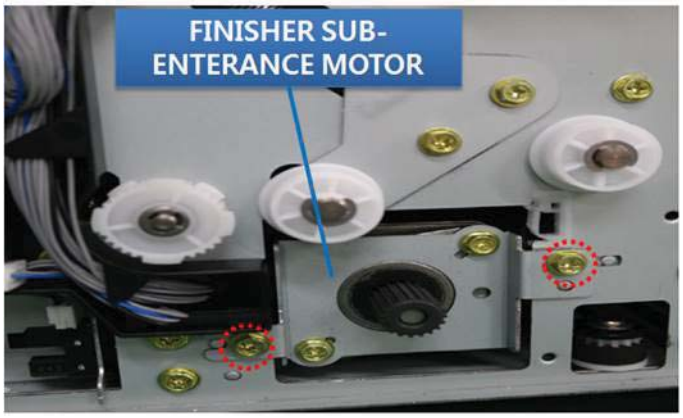
Step 2: Remove the entrance motor

1. Disconnect the sensor cable at the rear.
2. Remove the cable restraint at the rear.
3. Release two tabs that engage with the frame, and then remove the guide middle lower.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not damage the sensor flag.

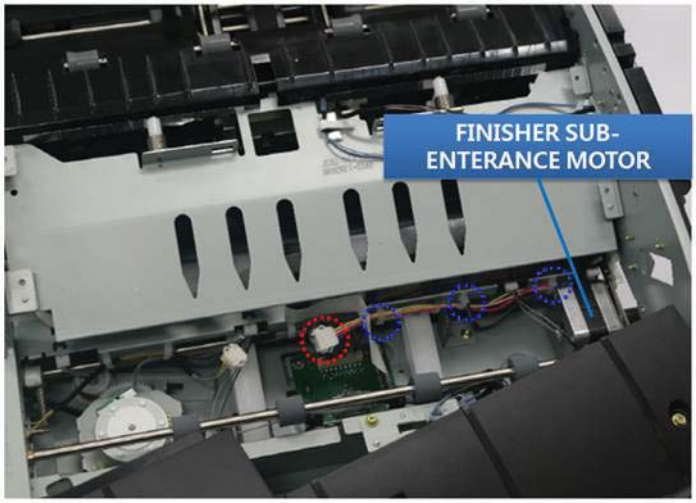
4. Remove two screws.

Figure 8-18 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7)



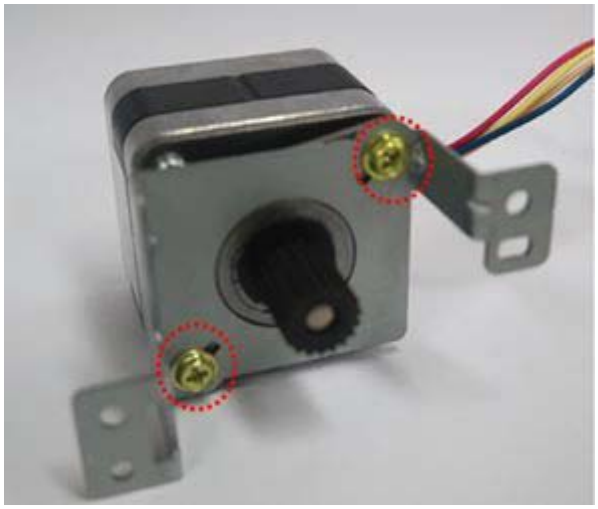
5. Open the clamps, and then unplug the connector.

Figure 8-19 Remove the entrance motor (6 of 7)



6. Remove two screws, and then remove the motor.

Figure 8-20 Remove the entrance motor (7 of 7)



Exit sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers
- Step 2: Remove the exit sensor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Exit sensor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Exit sensor assembly part number
Exit sensor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

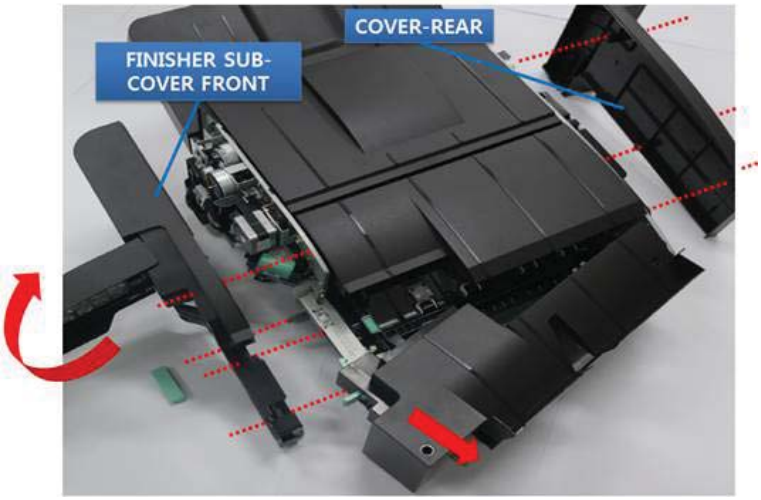
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub-cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub-cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub-cover front.

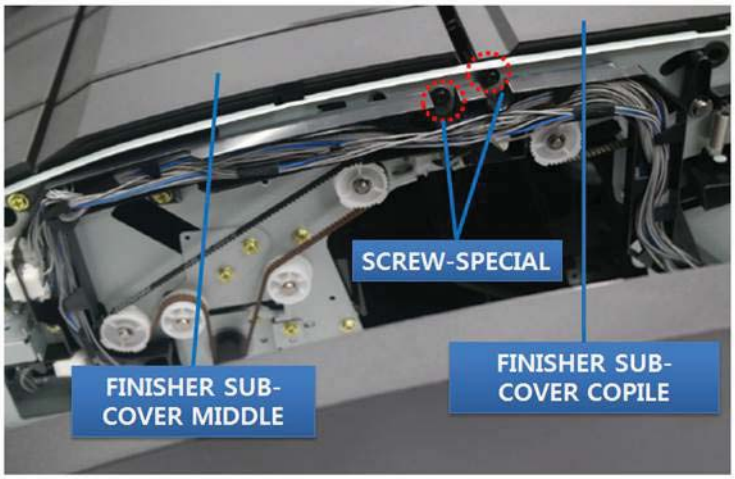
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-21 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)

2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 8-22 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)

3. On the front of the printer remove the e-ring and bushing. On the rear of the printer remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, spring (slightly hidden from view), and then remove the guide reverse and roller feed.

Figure 8-23 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7)

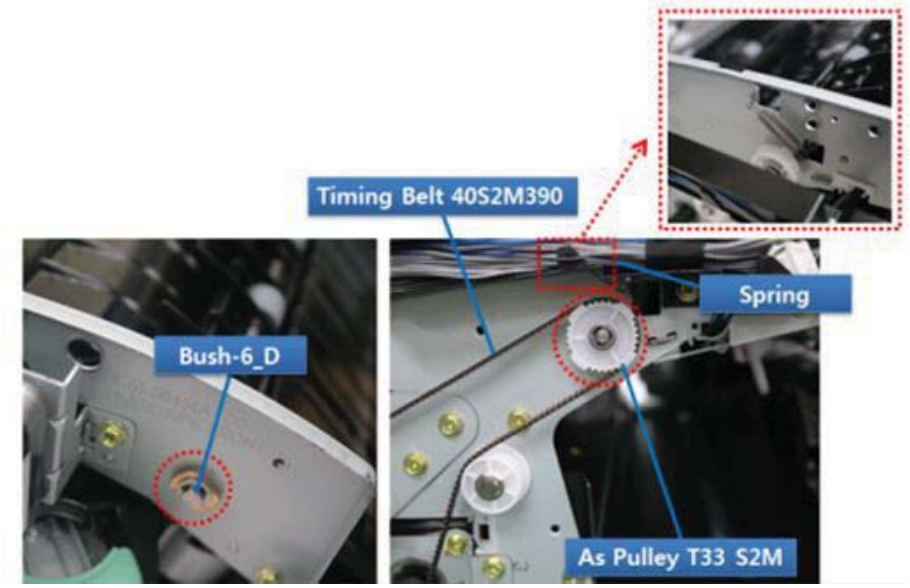
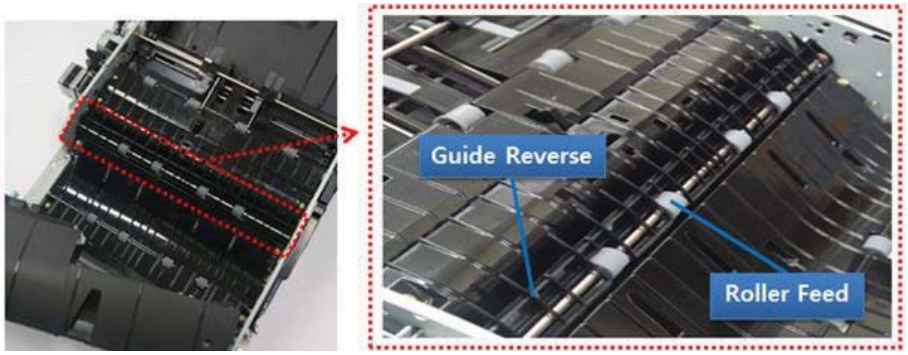


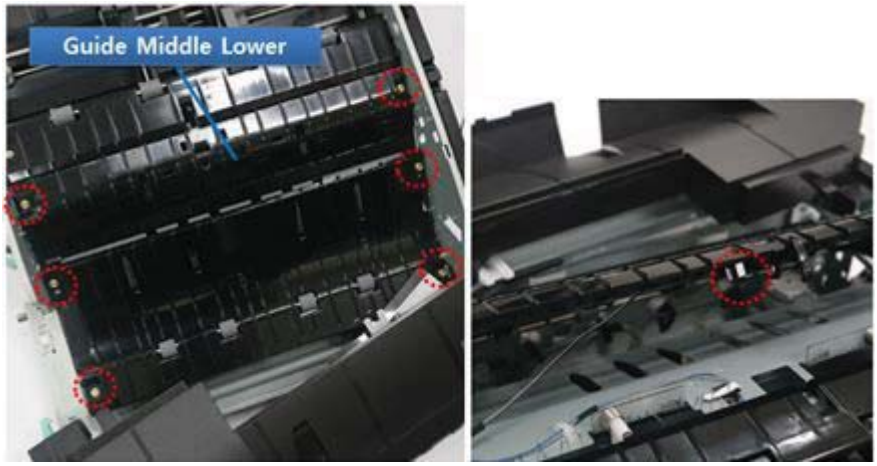
Figure 8-24 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7)



4. Remove six screws.

NOTE: Be careful not to damage the sensor.

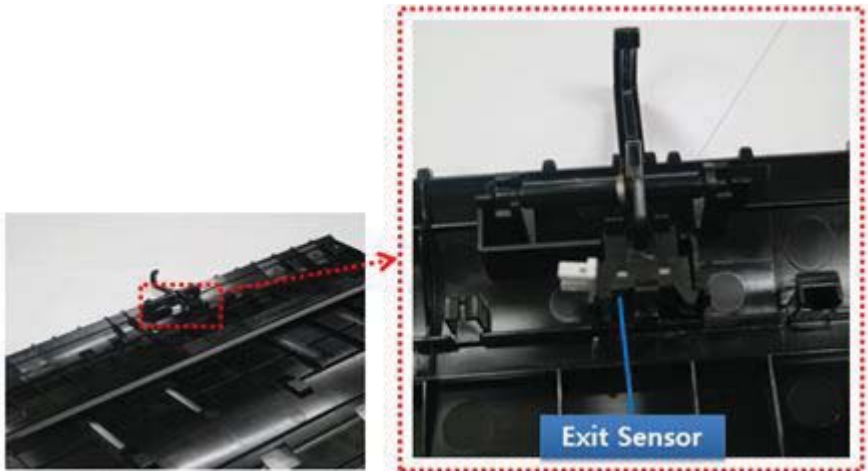
Figure 8-25 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7)



Step 2: Remove the exit sensor

▲ Remove the hook, and then remove the exit sensor.

Figure 8-26 Remove the exit sensor



Exit motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the exit motor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Exit motor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Exit motor assembly part number
Exit motor

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

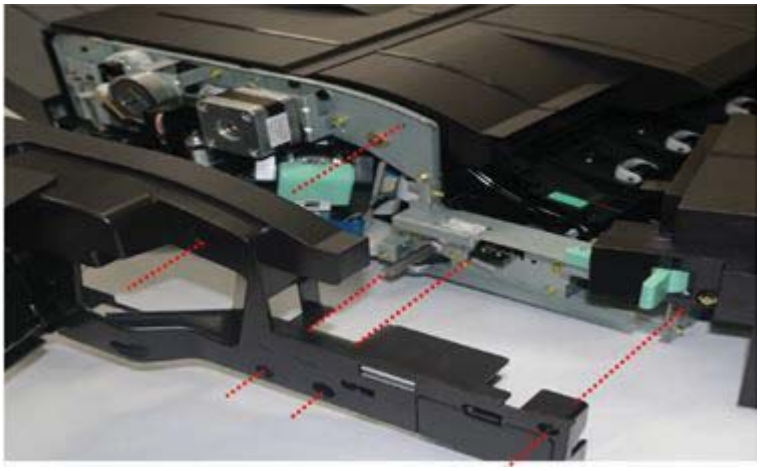
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the exit motor

1. Remove the front cover.

Figure 8-27 Remove the exit motor (1 of 3)



2. Remove two screws, and then unplug the motor connector.

Figure 8-28 Remove the exit motor (2 of 3)

3. Remove the exit motor from the BKT motor feed exit.

Figure 8-29 Remove the exit motor (3 of 3)

Sub Paddle Shaft Sub assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Sub Paddle Shaft Sub assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Sub Paddle Shaft Sub assembly part number
Sub Paddle Shaft Sub assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

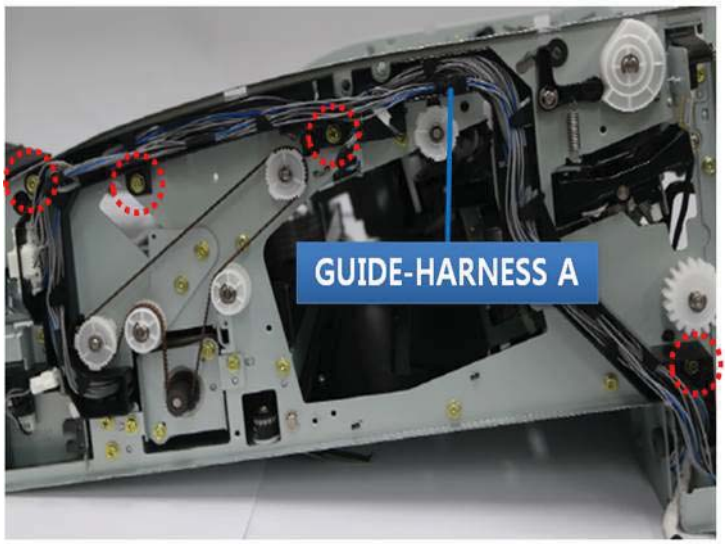
Step 1: Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly

1. Open the cover top tray sub-assembly, and then remove one screw securing the guide-exit lower.

Figure 8-30 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub-assembly (1 of 6)

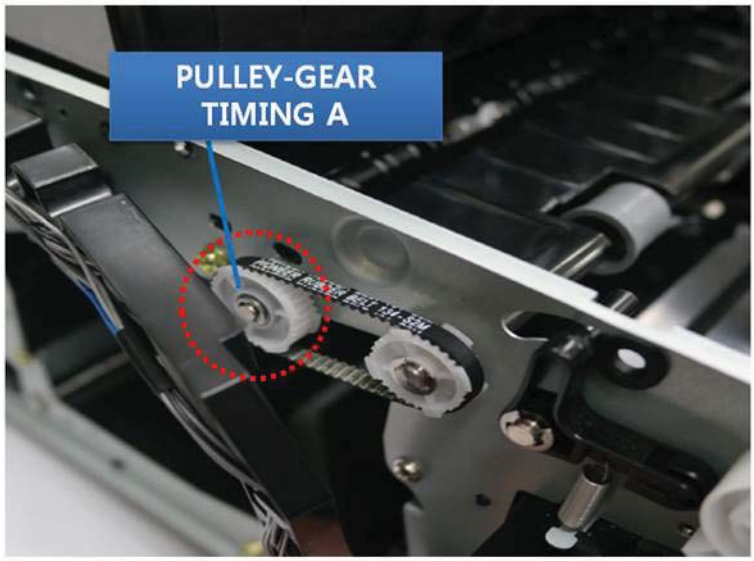
2. Remove four screws securing the guide-harness A.

Figure 8-31 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub-assembly (2 of 6)



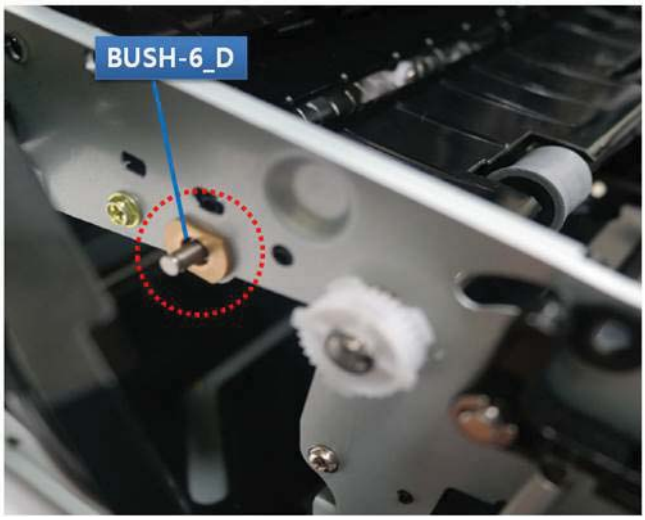
3. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the pulley and timing belt.

Figure 8-32 Remove the Sub Paddle Shaft Sub assembly (3 of 6)



4. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 8-33 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (4 of 6)



5. Lift up and remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly.

Figure 8-34 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (5 of 6)

Front Jogger Motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the front jogger motor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Front Jogger Motor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Front Jogger Motor assembly part number
Front Jogger Motor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the front jogger motor

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

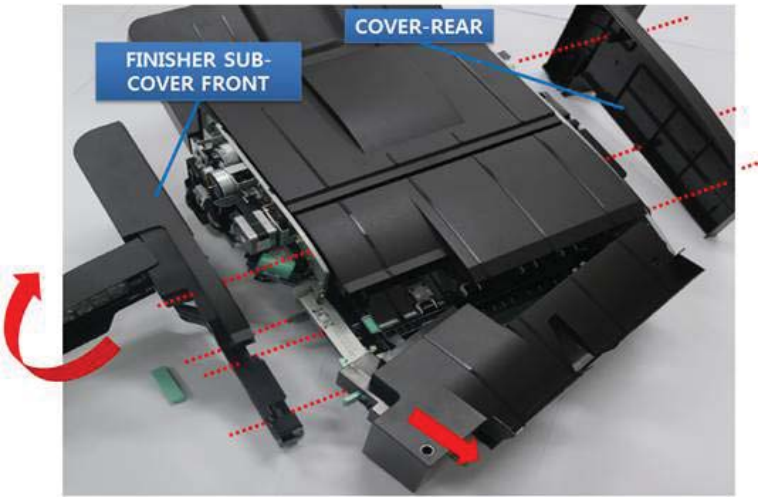
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub cover front.

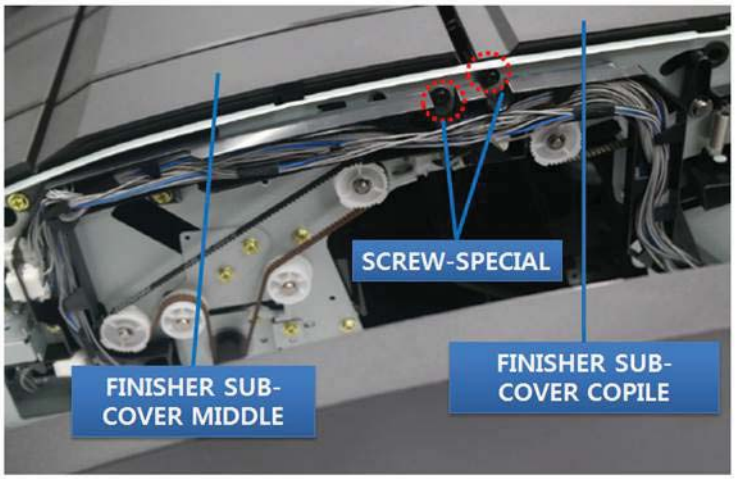
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-35 Remove the front jogger motor (1 of 22)

2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 8-36 Remove the front jogger motor (2 of 22)

3. Remove four screws, and then remove the tray.

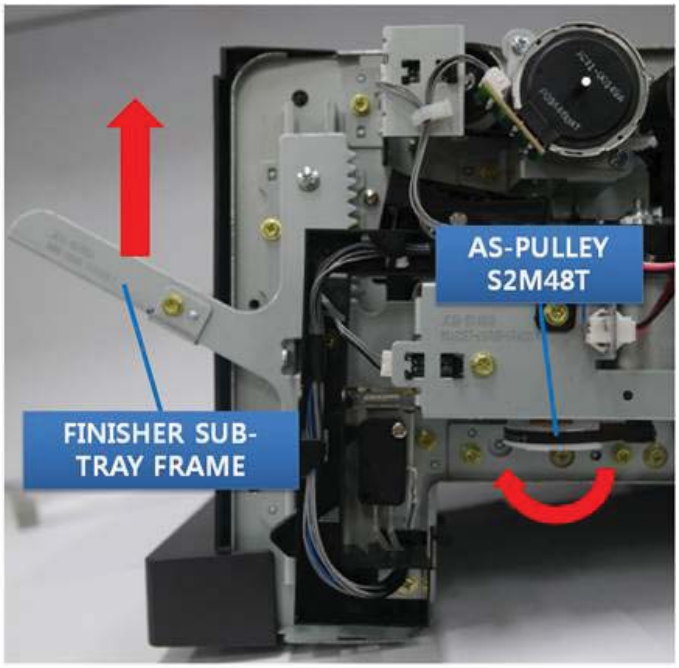
Figure 8-37 Remove the front jogger motor (3 of 22)

4. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.

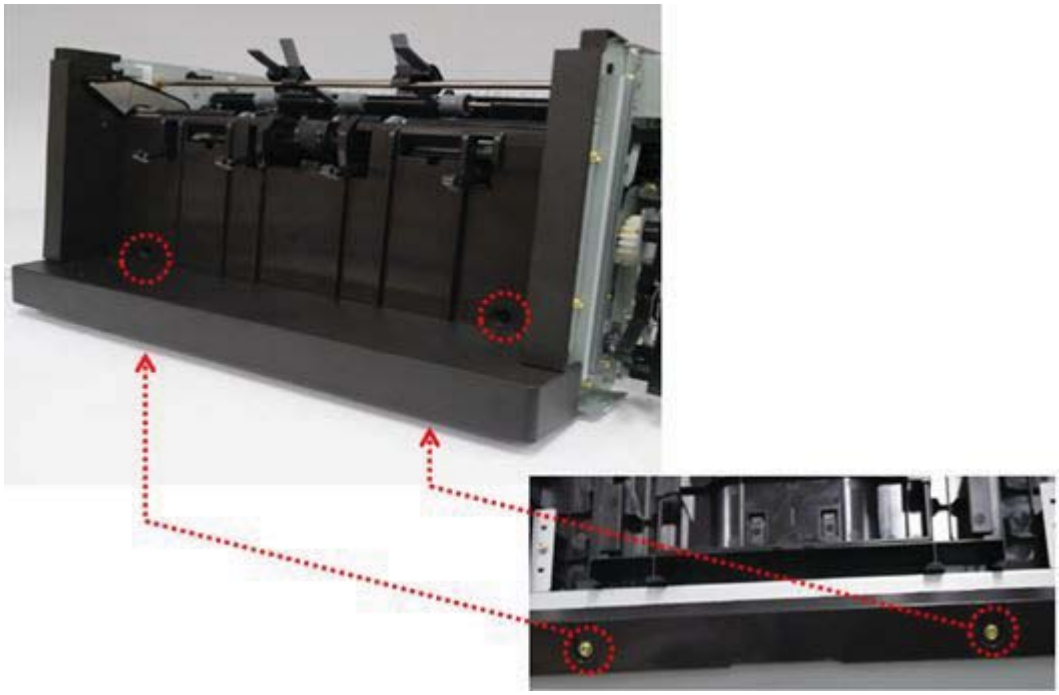
NOTE: Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.

Figure 8-38 Remove the front jogger motor (4 of 22)



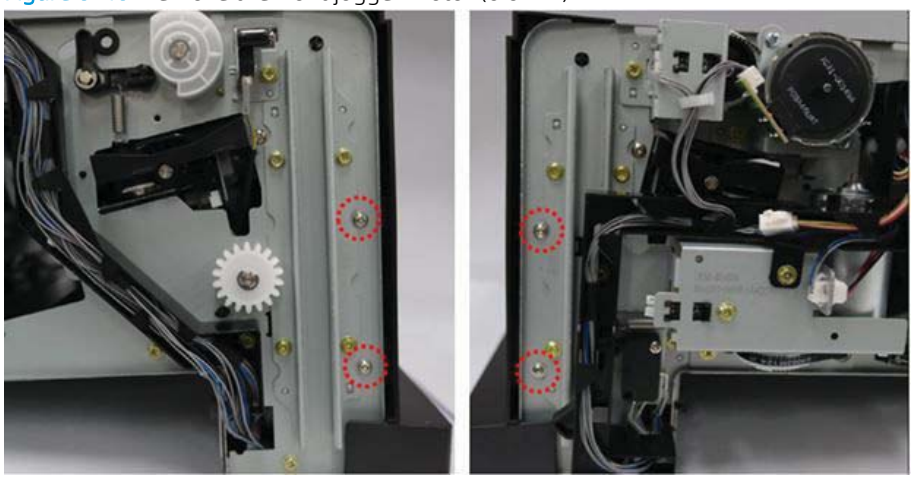
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 8-39 Remove the front jogger motor (5 of 22)



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

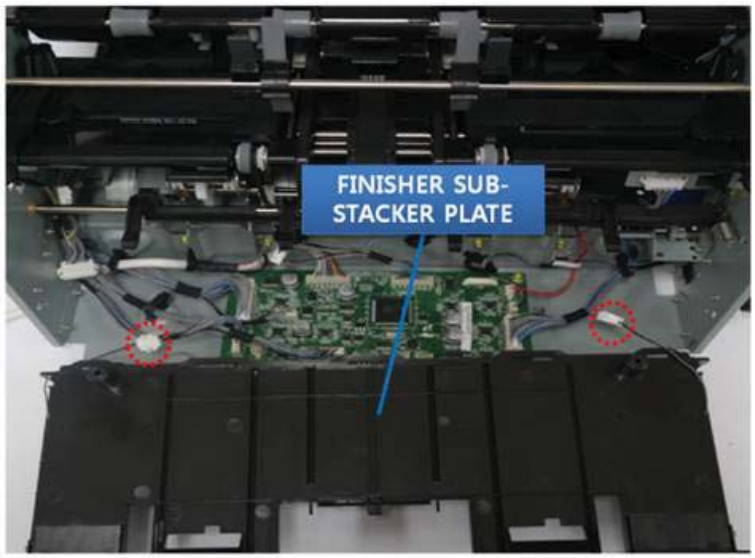
Figure 8-40 Remove the front jogger motor (6 of 22)



7. Remove two screws and then remove the lower PBA cover.

8. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 8-41 Remove the front jogger motor (7 of 22)



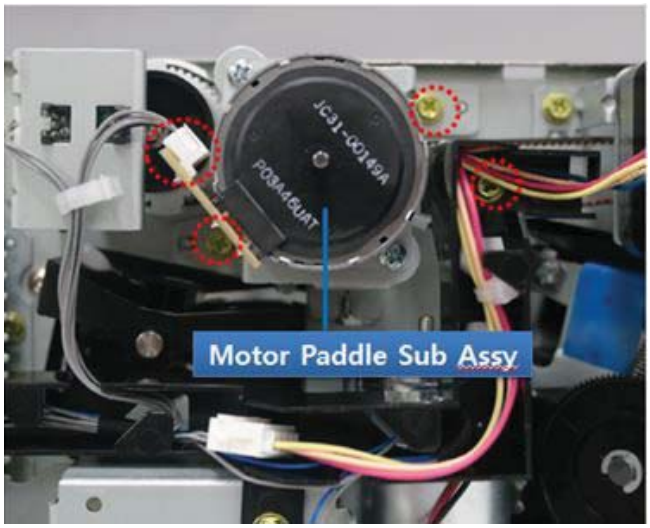
9. Remove one screw, and then remove the cable guide. Unplug the connector, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

Figure 8-42 Remove the front jogger motor (8 of 22)

10. Remove three screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the motor paddle sub assembly.

NOTE: Move cable out of the wiring guide to access the third screw.

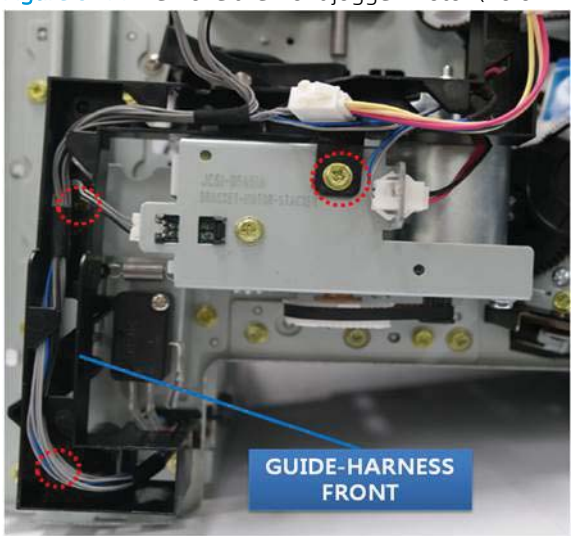
Figure 8-43 Remove the front jogger motor (9 of 22)



11. Remove the wire harness from the harness guide, remove three screws, and then remove the guide-harness front.

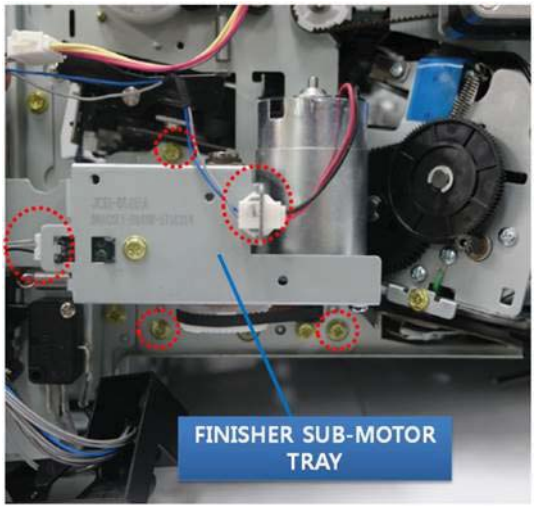
NOTE: The wire harness will hang loosely after the harness guide is removed.

Figure 8-44 Remove the front jogger motor (10 of 22)



12. Remove three screws, unplug two connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-motor tray.

Figure 8-45 Remove the front jogger motor (11 of 22)

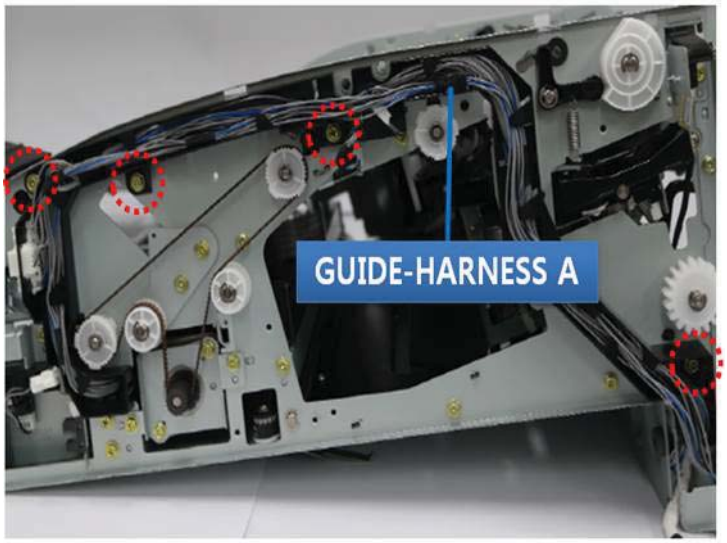


13. Open the cover top tray sub assembly, and then remove one screw securing the guide-exit lower.

Figure 8-46 Remove the front jogger motor (12 of 22)

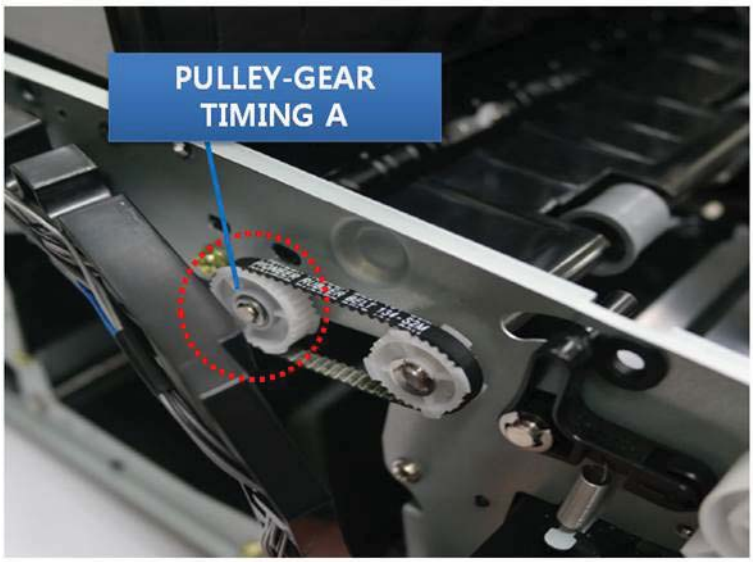
14. Remove four screws securing the guide-harness A.

Figure 8-47 Remove the front jogger motor (13 of 22)



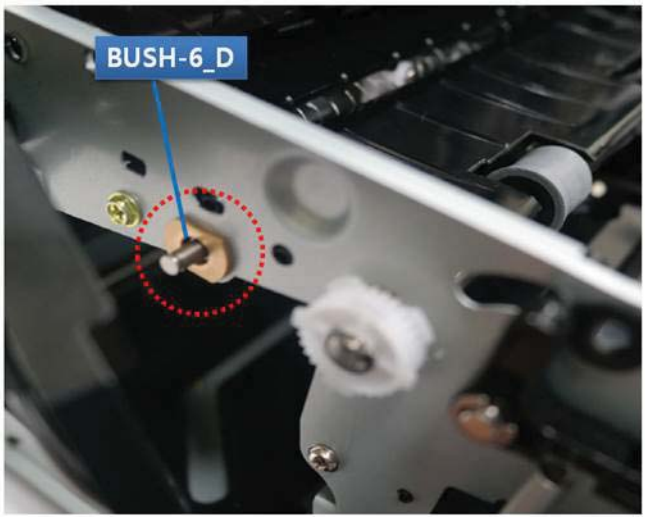
15. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the pulley and timing belt.

Figure 8-48 Remove the front jogger motor (14 of 22)



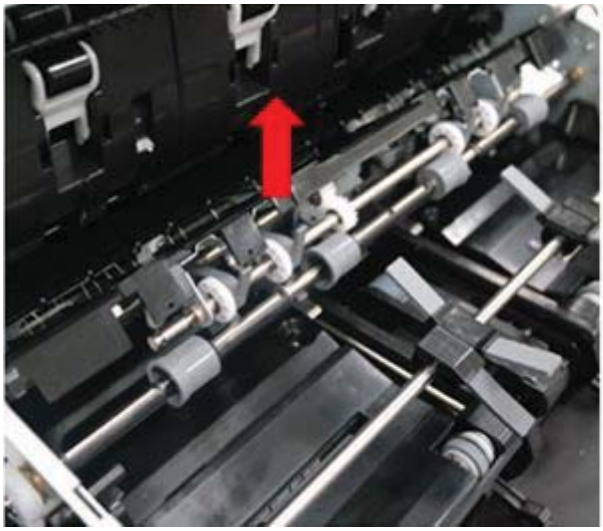
16. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 8-49 Remove the front jogger motor (15 of 22)



17. Lift up and remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly.

Figure 8-50 Remove the front jogger motor (16 of 22)

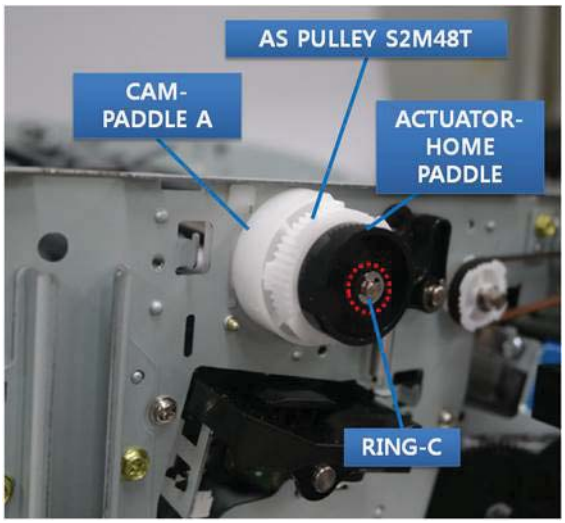


18. Remove the ring-c, actuator-home paddle, AS pulley S2M48T, and cam-paddle A.

Reinstallation tip: The cam must be installed with the same orientation as the cam on the opposite side.

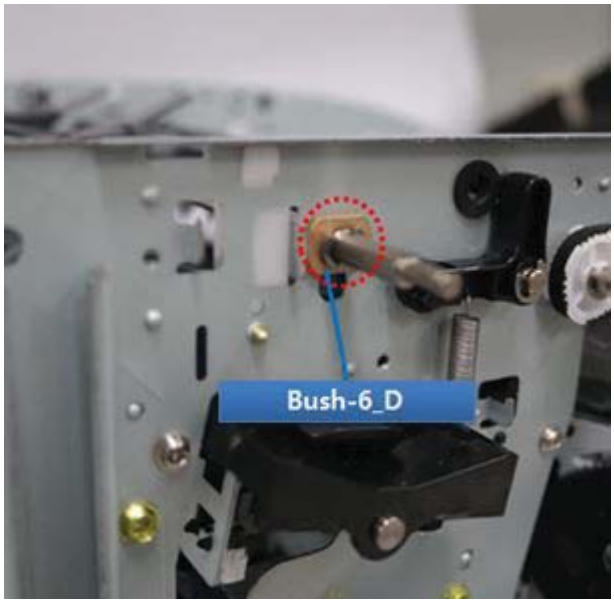
Reinstallation tip: The actuator home cam paddle is installed hollow side out

Figure 8-51 Remove the front jogger motor (17 of 22)



19. Remove the e-ring and bush-6_D.

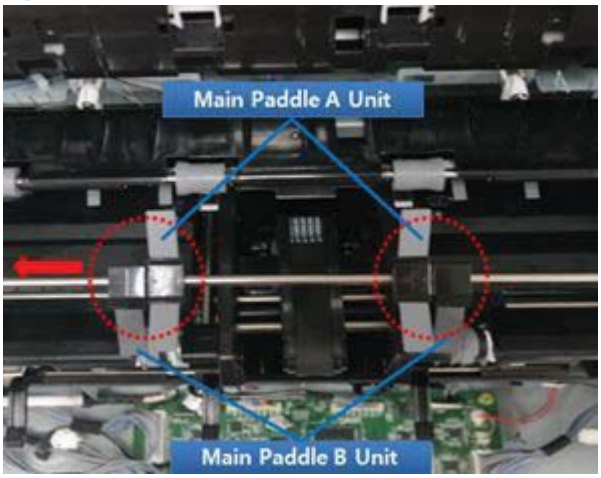
Figure 8-52 Remove the front jogger motor (18 of 22)



20. Remove the main paddle A unit / B unit, and then carefully remove the shaft from its retainer.

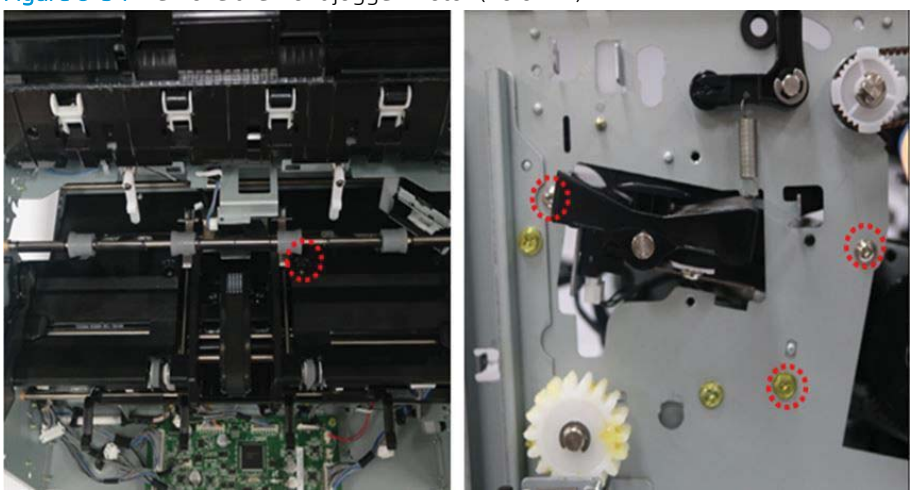
NOTE: Note the orientation of paddles and use caution to not break the plastic locator pin on the paddle.

Figure 8-53 Remove the front jogger motor (19 of 22)



21. Remove four screws.

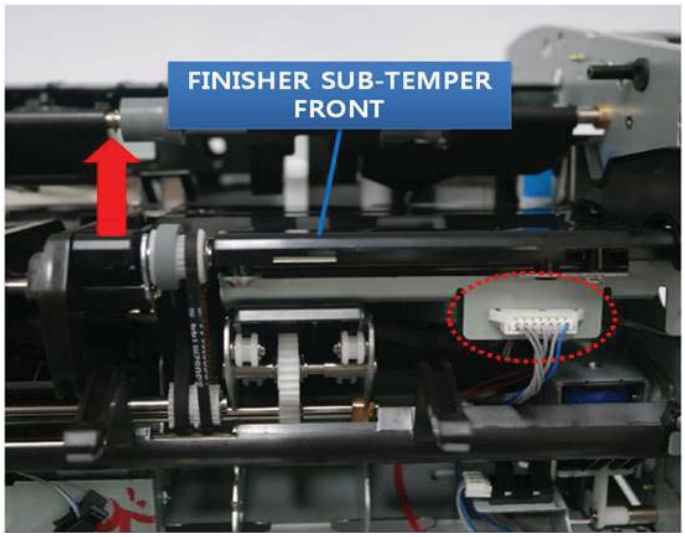
Figure 8-54 Remove the front jogger motor (20 of 22)



22. Unplug the connector, and then pull the finisher sub-tamper front up to remove.

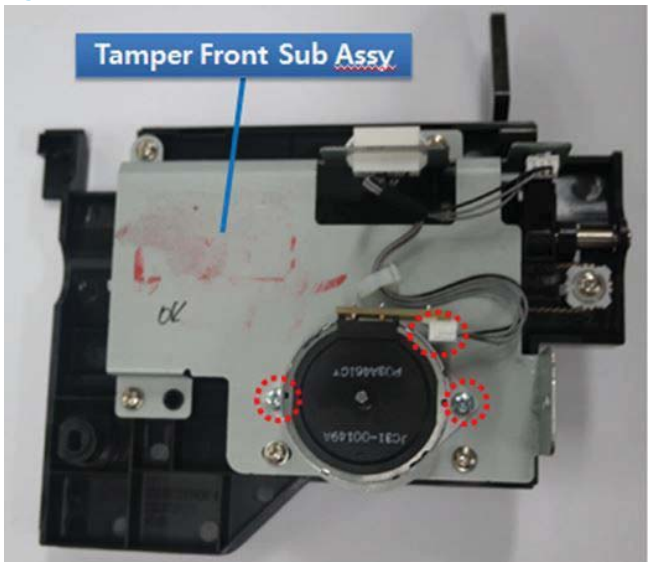
Reinstallation tip: Position the upper left-corner of the sub tamper, and then carefully rotate it counter-clockwise into position.

Figure 8-55 Remove the front jogger motor (21 of 22)



23. Remove two screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the motor.

Figure 8-56 Remove the front jogger motor (22 of 22)



Front Jogger Home Sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the front jogger home sensor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Front Jogger Home Sensor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Front Jogger Home Sensor assembly part number
Front Jogger Home Sensor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the front jogger home sensor

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

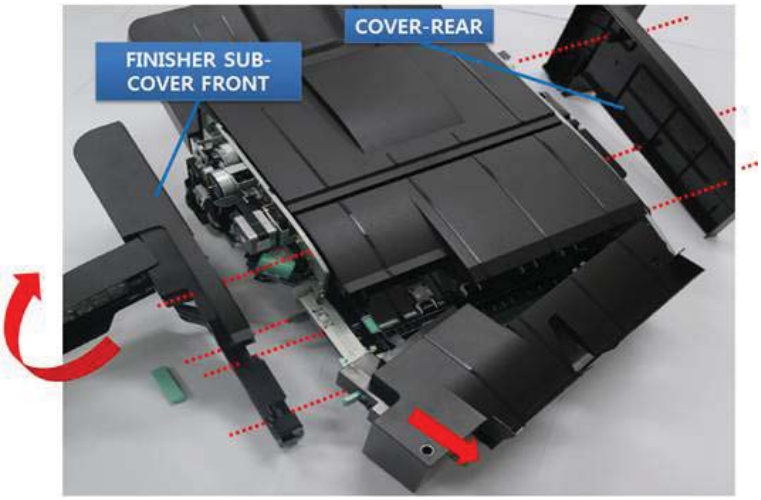
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub cover front.

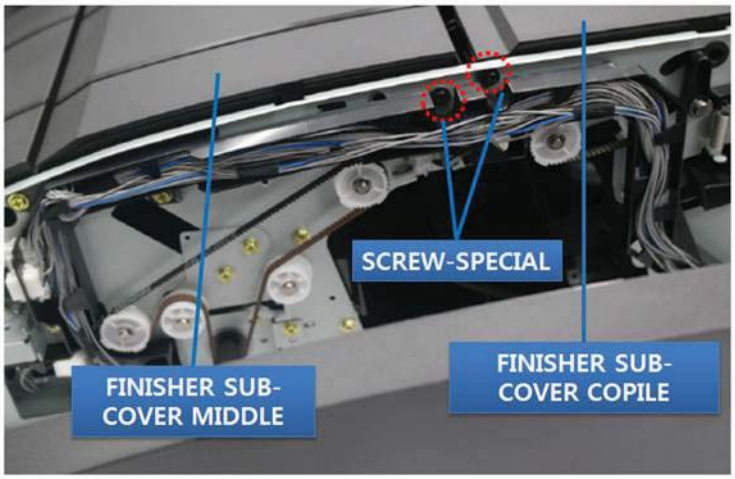
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-57 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)

2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 8-58 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)

3. Remove four screws, and then remove the tray.

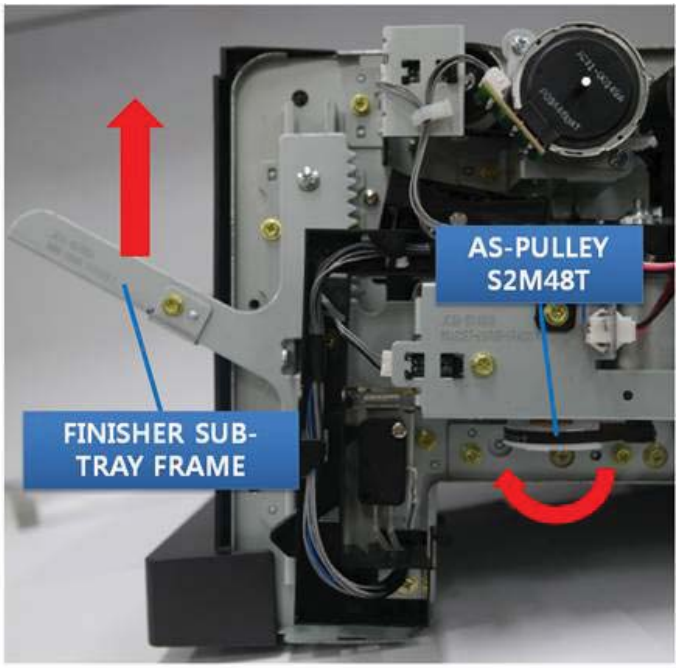
Figure 8-59 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15)

4. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.

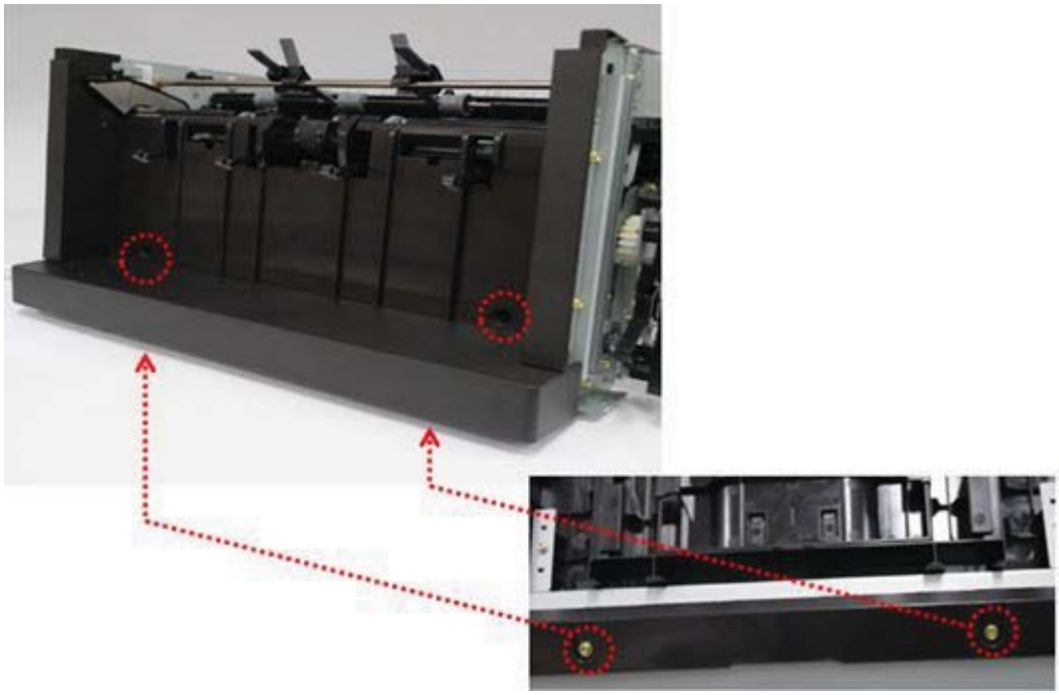
NOTE: Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.

Figure 8-60 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15)



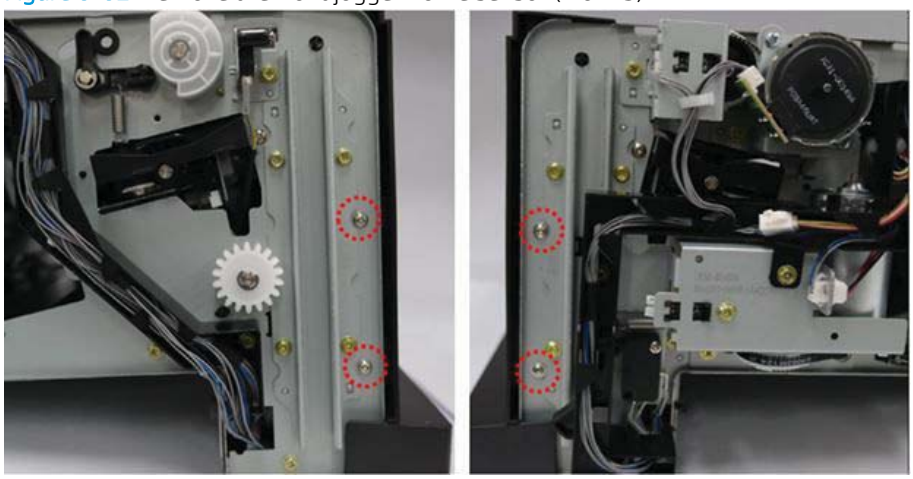
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 8-61 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15)



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

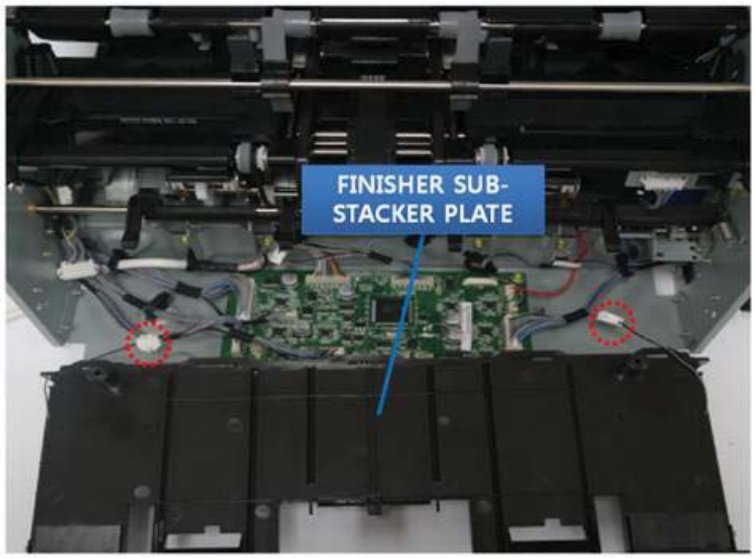
Figure 8-62 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15)



7. Remove two screws and then remove lower PBA cover.

8. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 8-63 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 15)



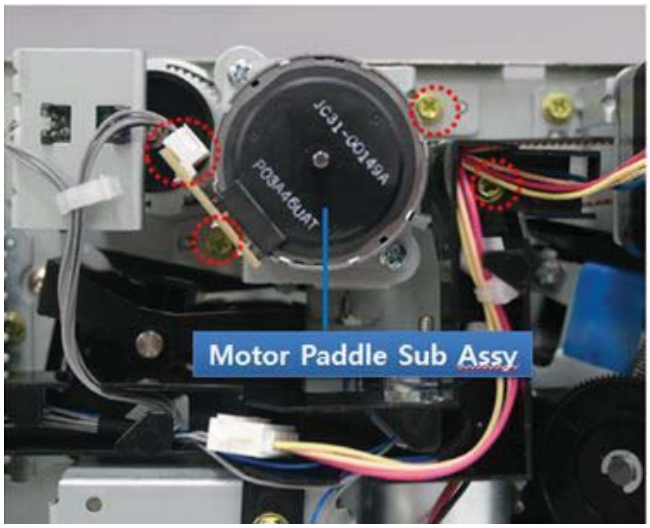
9. Remove one screw and then remove the cable guide. Unplug the connector, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

Figure 8-64 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 15)

10. Remove three screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the motor paddle sub assembly.

NOTE: Move cable out of the wiring guide to access the third screw.

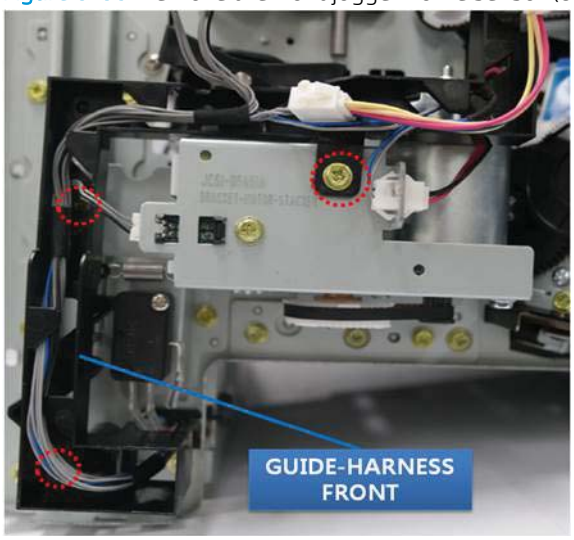
Figure 8-65 Remove the front jogger home sensor (7 of 15)



11. Remove the wire harness from the harness guide, remove three screws, and then remove the guide-harness front.

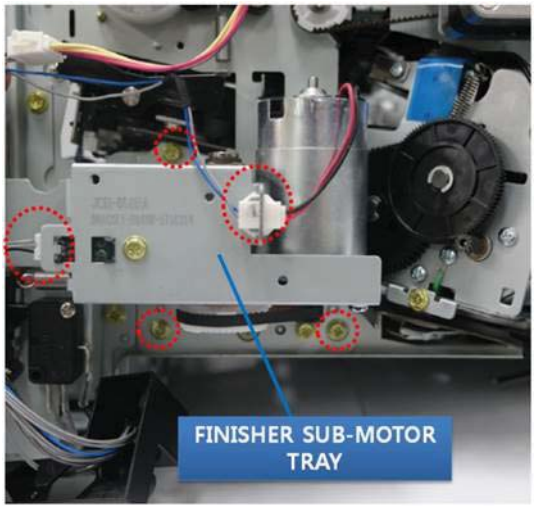
NOTE: The wire harness will hang loosely after the harness guide is removed.

Figure 8-66 Remove the front jogger home sensor (8 of 15)



12. Remove three screws, unplug two connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-motor tray.

Figure 8-67 Remove the front jogger home sensor (9 of 15)

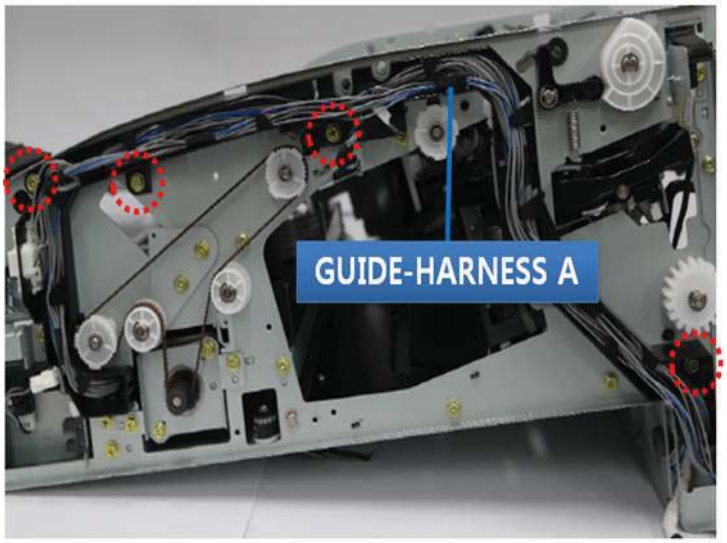


13. Open the cover top tray sub assembly, and then remove one screw securing the guide-exit lower.

Figure 8-68 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (1 of 6)

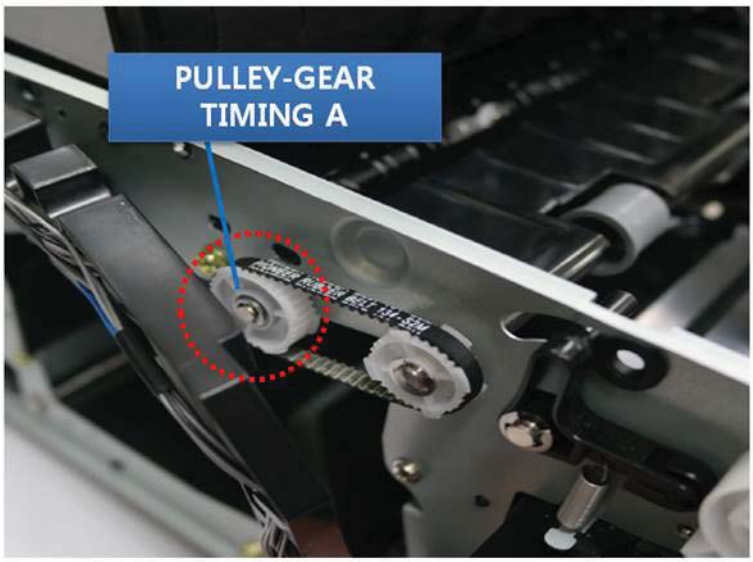
14. Remove four screws securing the guide-harness A.

Figure 8-69 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (2 of 6)



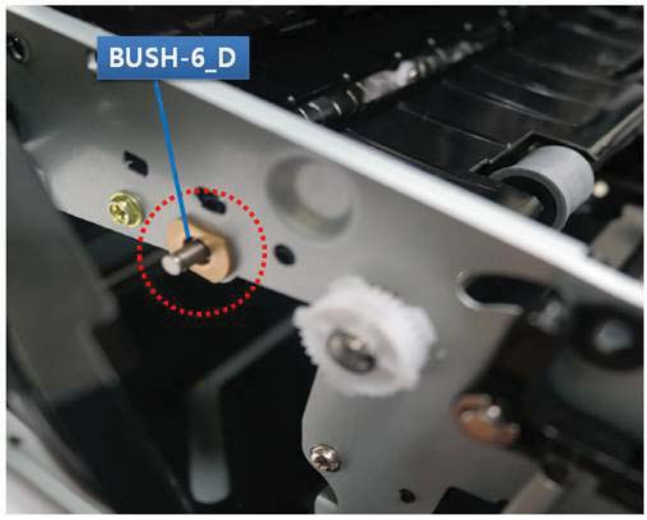
15. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the pulley and timing belt.

Figure 8-70 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (3 of 6)



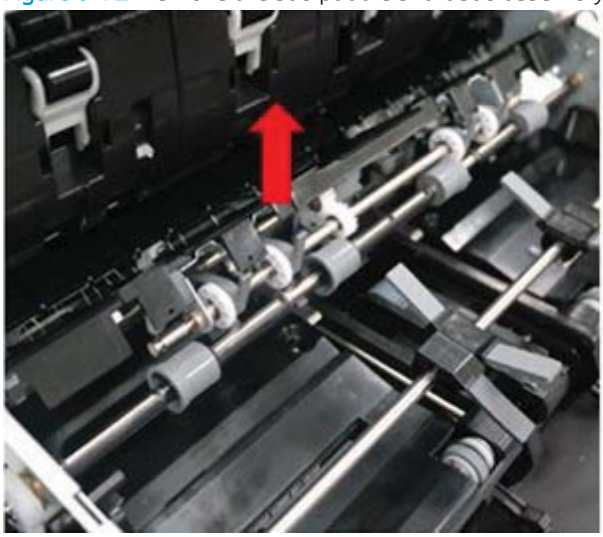
16. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 8-71 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (4 of 6)



17. Lift up and remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly.

Figure 8-72 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (5 of 6)

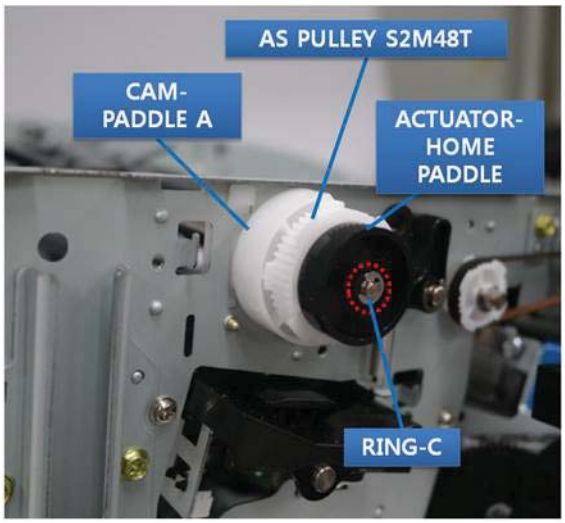


18. Remove the ring-C, actuator-home paddle, AS pulley S2M48T, and cam-paddle A.

Reinstallation tip: The cam must be installed with the same orientation as the cam on the opposite side.

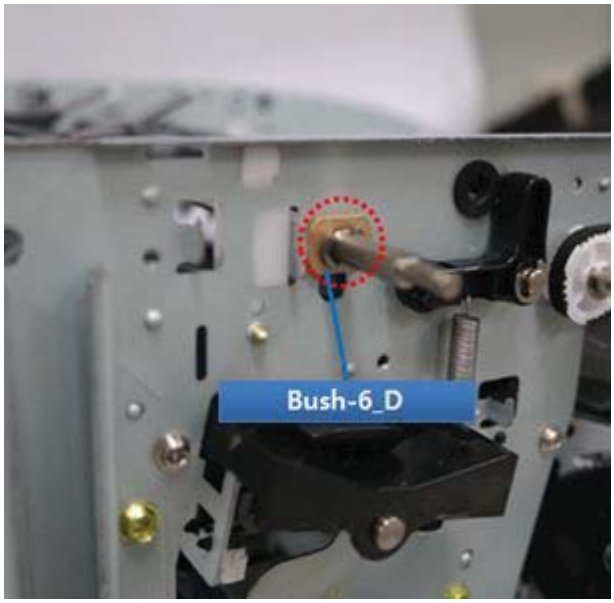
Reinstallation tip: The actuator home cam paddle is installed hollow side out

Figure 8-73 Remove the front jogger home sensor (10 of 15)



19. Remove the e-ring and bush-6_D.

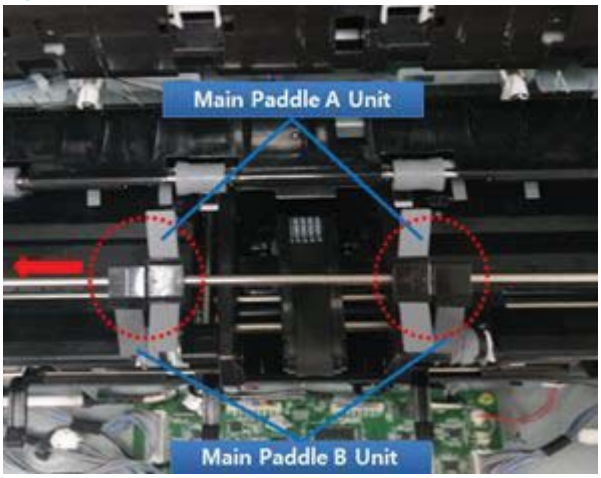
Figure 8-74 Remove the front jogger home sensor (11 of 15)



20. Remove the main paddle A unit / B unit, and then carefully remove the shaft from its retainer.

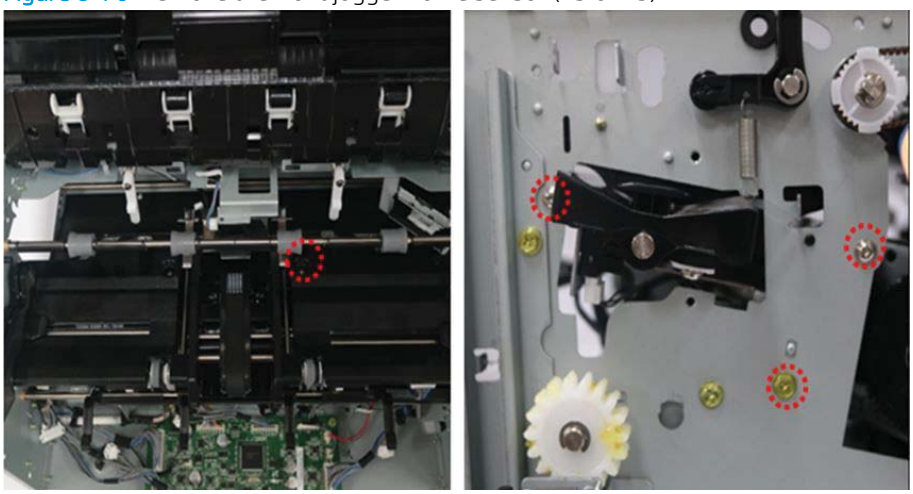
NOTE: Note the orientation of paddles and use caution to not break the plastic locator pin on the paddle.

Figure 8-75 Remove the front jogger home sensor (12 of 15)



21. Remove four screws.

Figure 8-76 Remove the front jogger home sensor (13 of 15)



22. Unplug the connector, and then remove the front jogger home sensor.

Figure 8-77 Remove the front jogger home sensor

23. Remove the tamper front sub assembly.

Rear Jogger Motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the rear jogger motor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Rear Jogger Motor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Rear Jogger Motor assembly part number
Rear Jogger Motor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the rear jogger motor

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

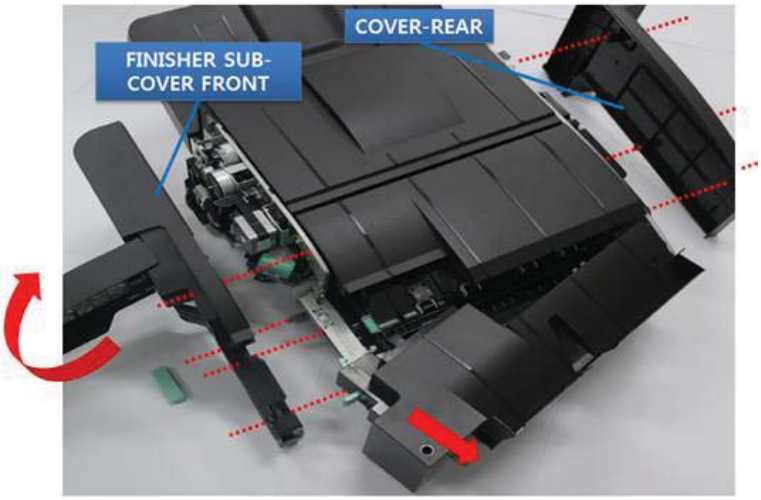
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub cover front.

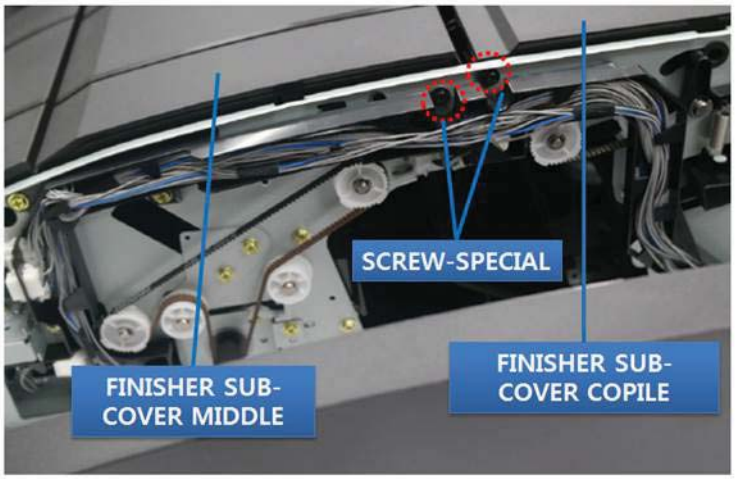
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-78 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)

2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 8-79 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)

3. Remove four screws, and then remove the tray.

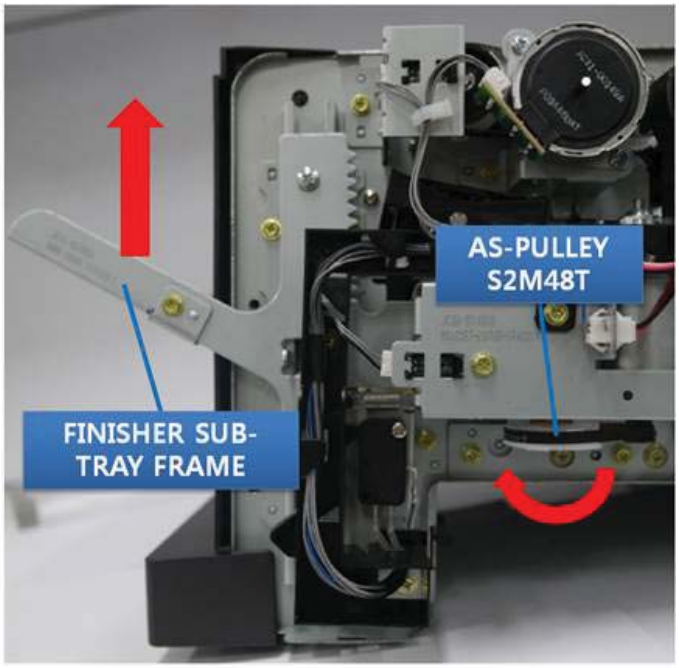
Figure 8-80 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15)

4. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.

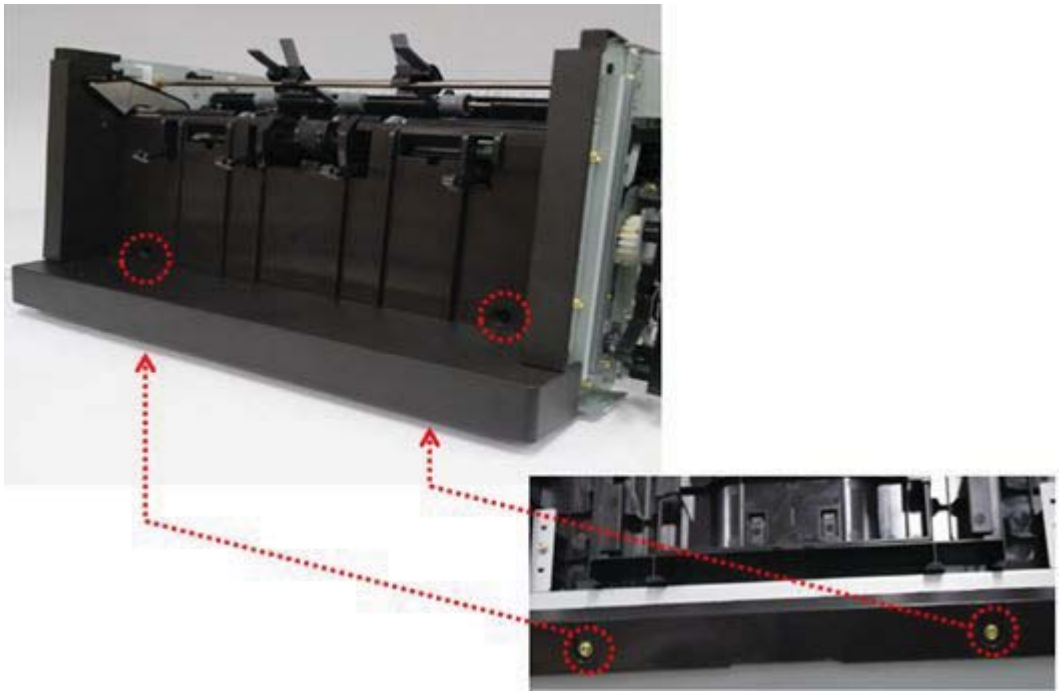
NOTE: Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.

Figure 8-81 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15)



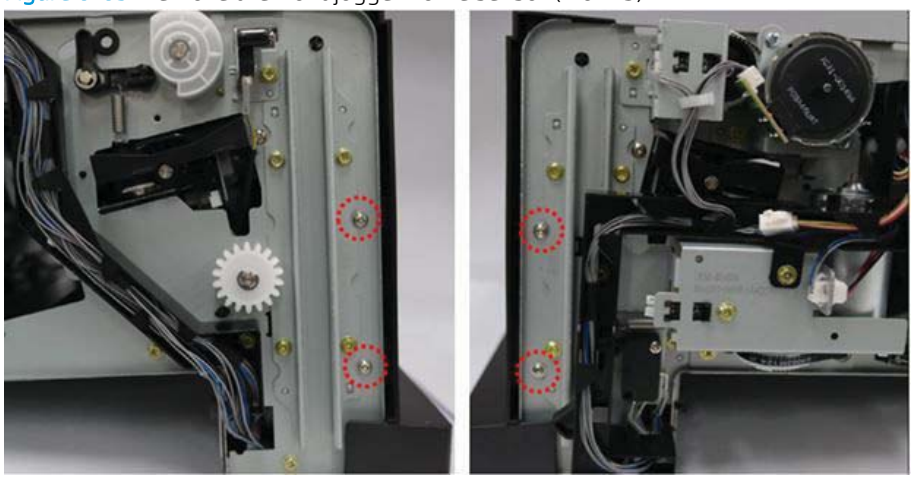
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 8-82 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15)



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

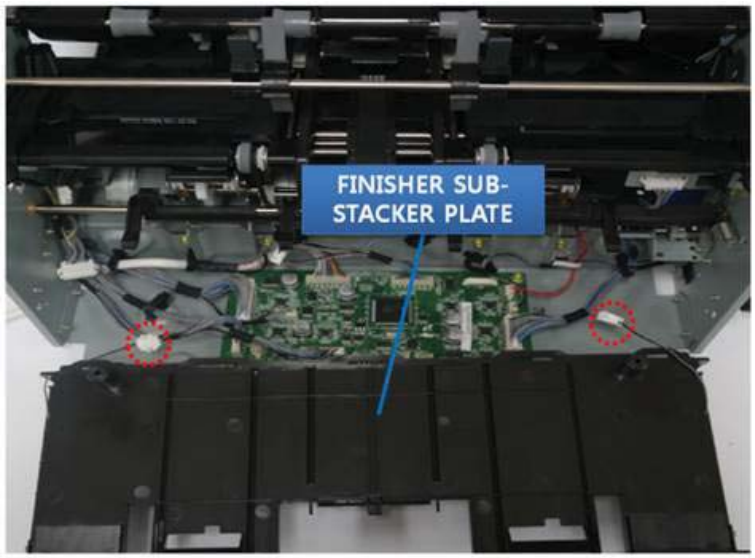
Figure 8-83 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15)



7. Remove two screws and then remove lower PBA cover.

8. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 8-84 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 15)

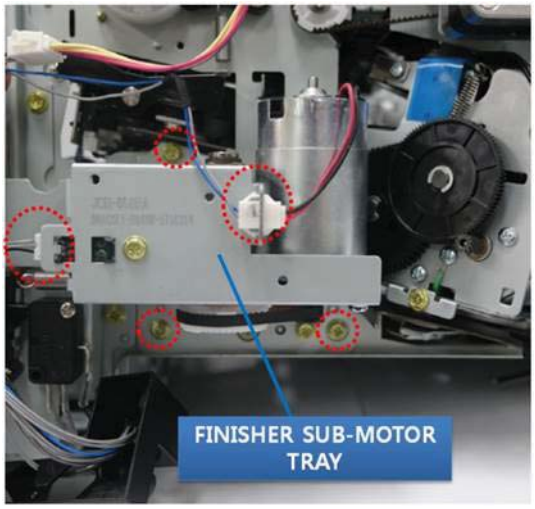


9. Remove one screw and then remove the cable guide. Unplug the connector, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

Figure 8-85 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 15)

10. Remove three screws, unplug two connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-motor tray.

Figure 8-86 Remove the front jogger home sensor (9 of 15)



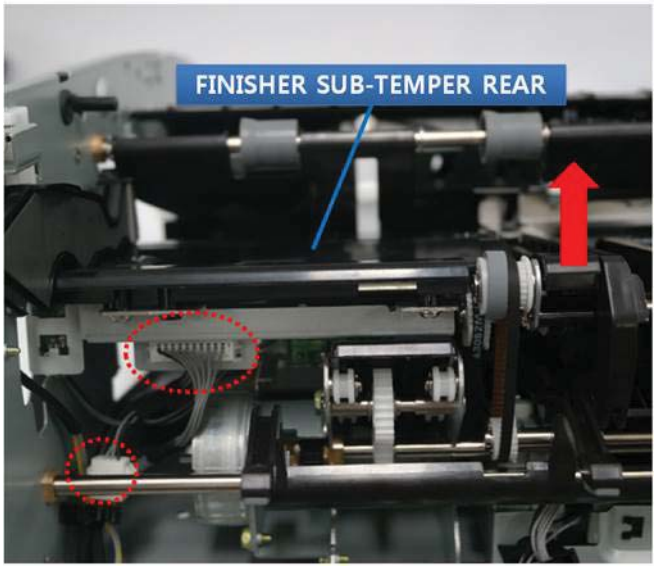
11. Remove four screws.

NOTE: Move cable guide out of position to access the screws.

Figure 8-87 Remove the rear jogger motor (1 of 3)

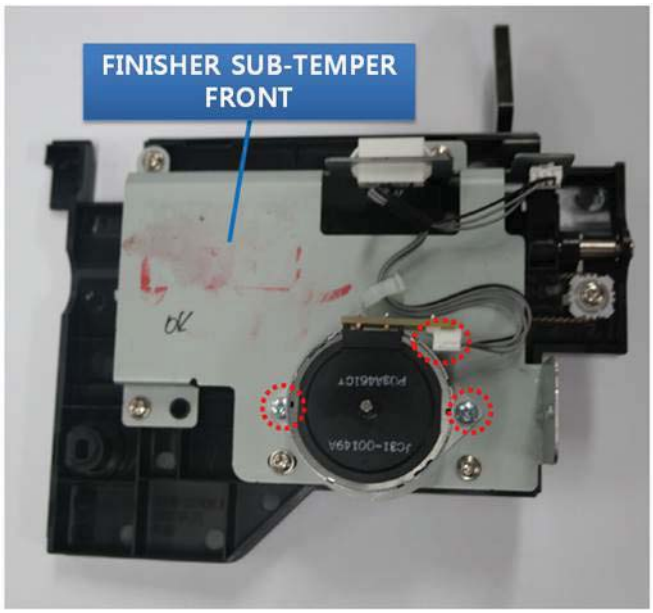
12. Unplug two connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-tamper rear.

Figure 8-88 Remove the rear jogger motor (2 of 3)



13. Remove two screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the rear jogger motor.

Figure 8-89 Remove the rear jogger motor (3 of 3)



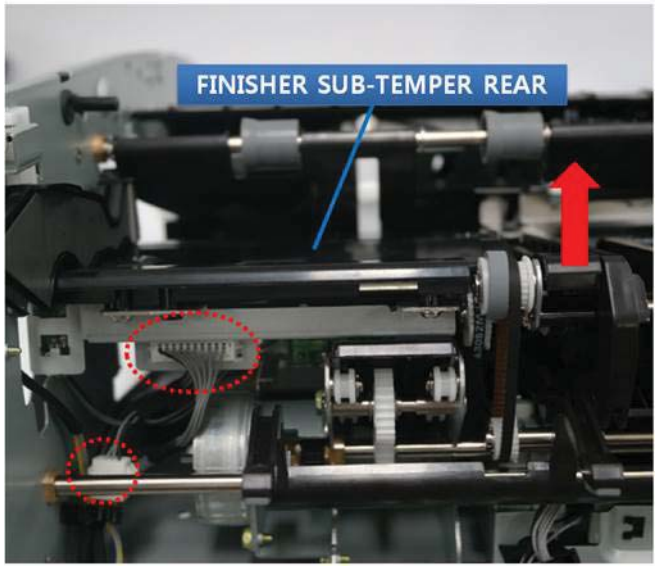
14. Remove four screws.

NOTE: Move cable guide out of position to access the screws.

Figure 8-90 Remove the rear jogger motor (1 of 3)

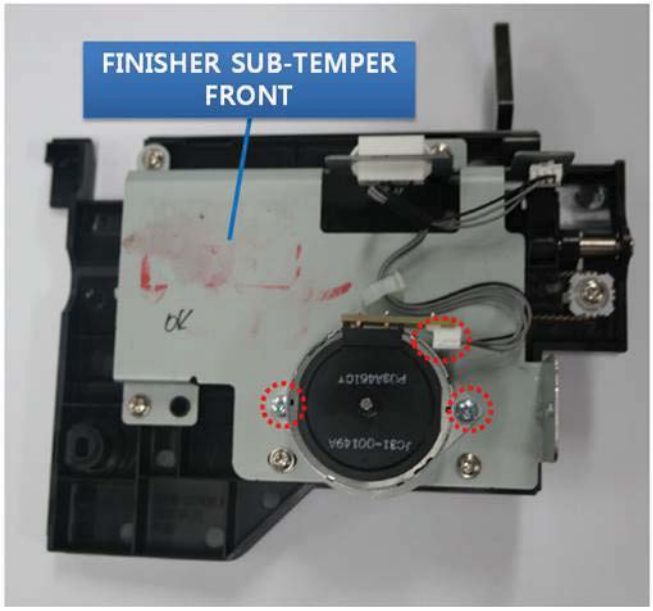
15. Unplug two connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-tamper rear.

Figure 8-91 Remove the rear jogger motor (2 of 3)



16. Remove two screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the rear jogger motor.

Figure 8-92 Remove the rear jogger motor (3 of 3)



Rear Jogger Home Sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the rear jogger home sensor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Rear Jogger Home Sensor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Rear Jogger Home Sensor assembly part number
Rear Jogger Home Sensor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the rear jogger home sensor

Remove the rear jogger home sensor

1. Remove the finisher sub-cover front and the cover-rear.

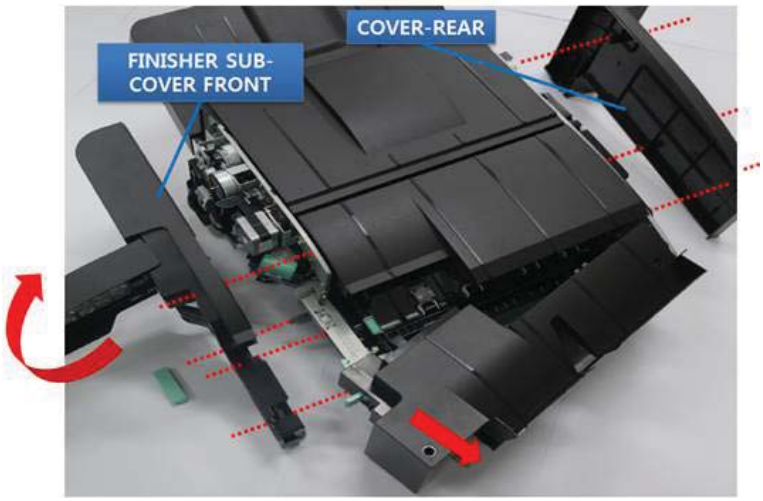
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub-cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub-cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub-cover front.

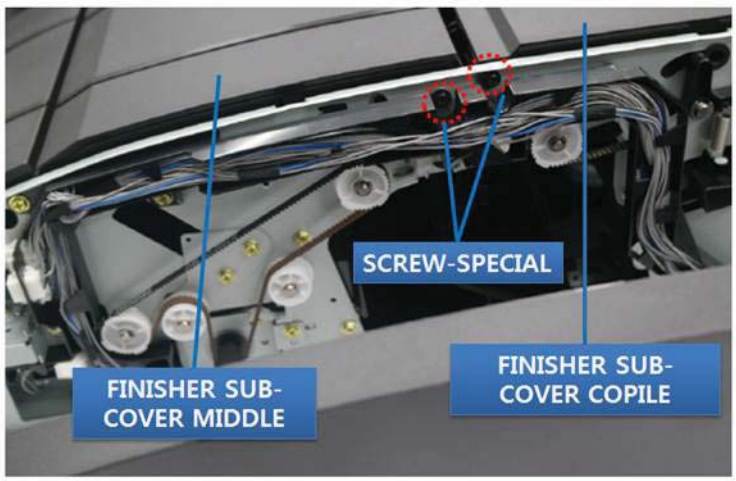
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-93 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 11)

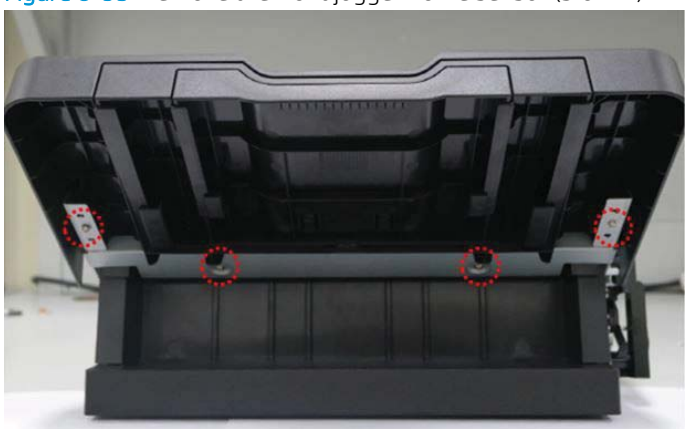
2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 8-94 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 11)

3. Remove four screws, and then remove the tray.

Figure 8-95 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 11)

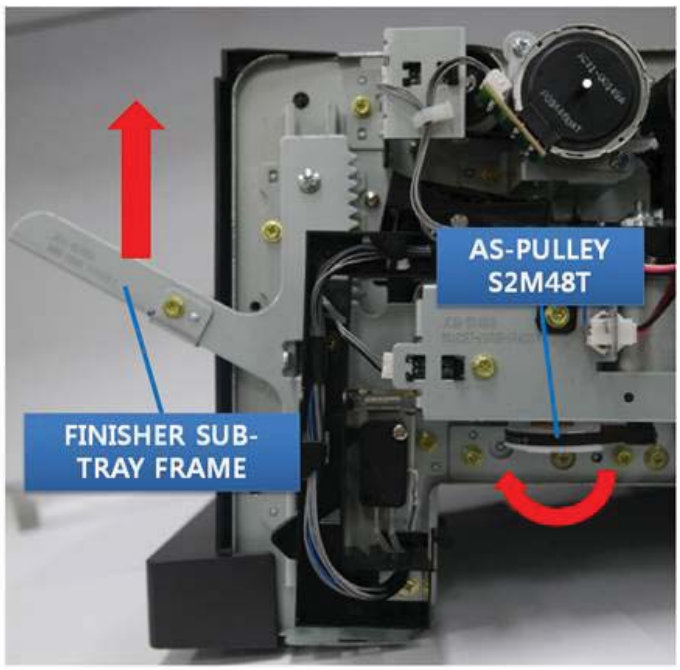


4. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.

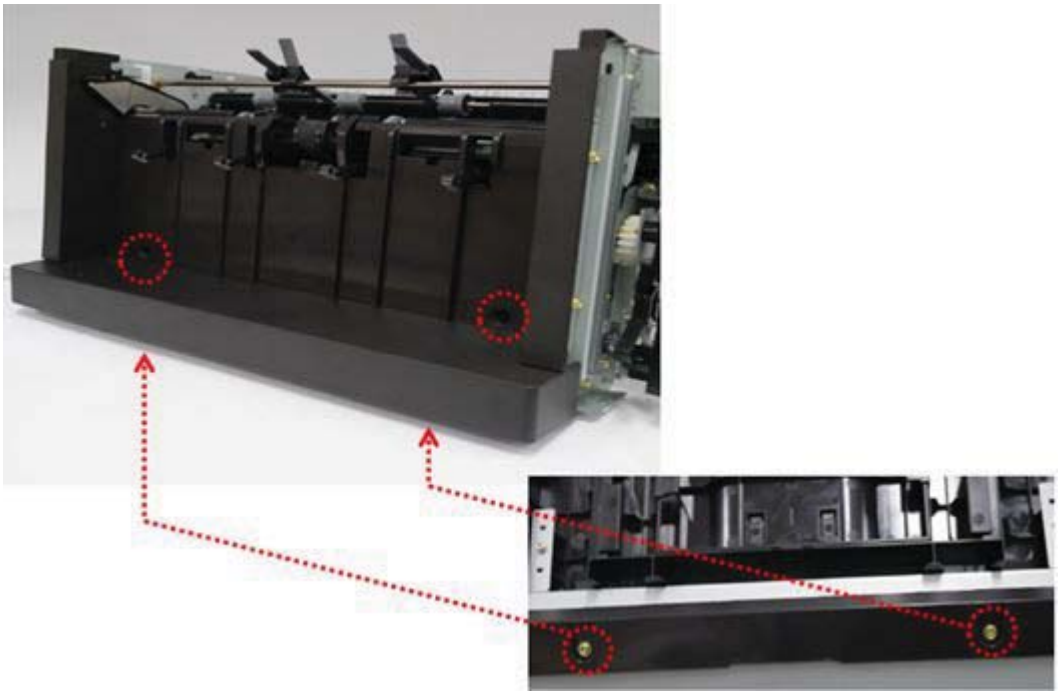
NOTE: Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.

Figure 8-96 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 11)



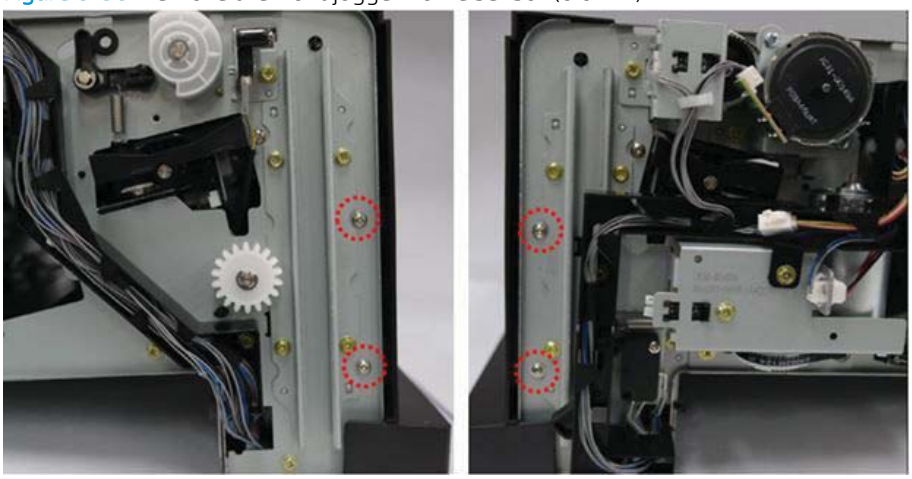
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 8-97 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 11)



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

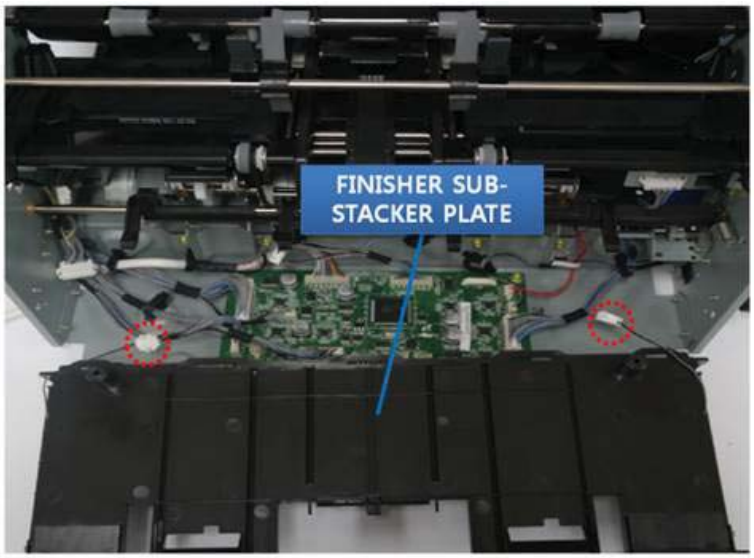
Figure 8-98 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 11)



7. Remove two screws and then remove lower PBA cover.

8. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 8-99 Remove the front jogger home sensor (8 of 11)

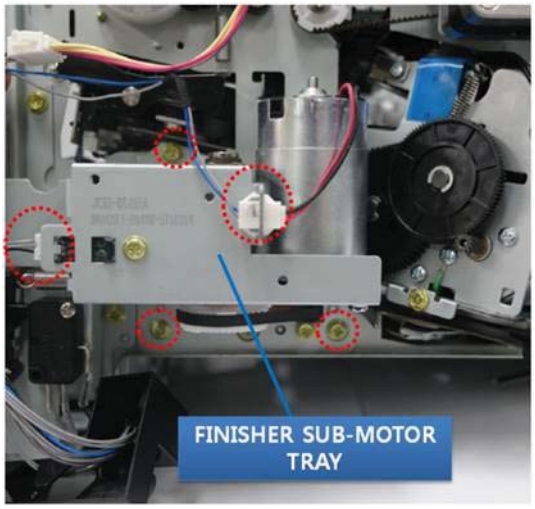


9. Remove one screw and then remove the cable guide. Unplug the connector, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

Figure 8-100 Remove the front jogger home sensor (9 of 11)

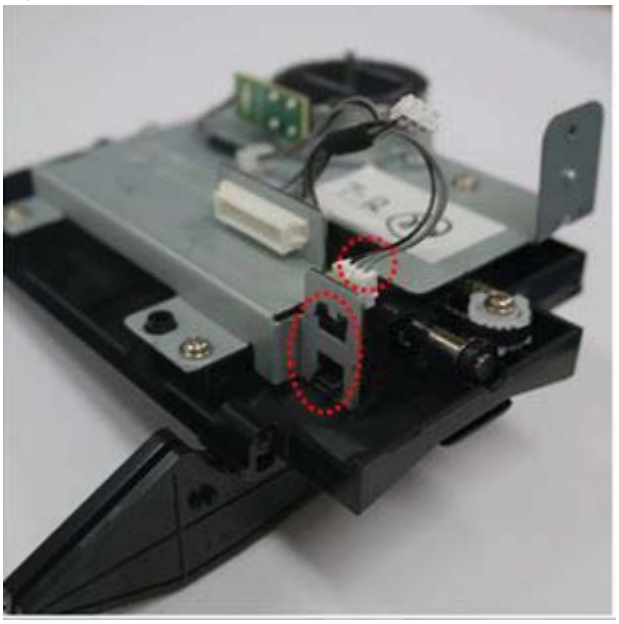
10. Remove three screws, unplug two connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-motor tray.

Figure 8-101 Remove the front jogger home sensor (10 of 11)



11. Unplug the connector, and then remove the rear jogger home sensor.

Figure 8-102 Remove the rear jogger home sensor (11 of 11)



Stapler

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the stapler

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the stapler assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Stapler assembly part number	
SAM-JC90-01342A	Stapler assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

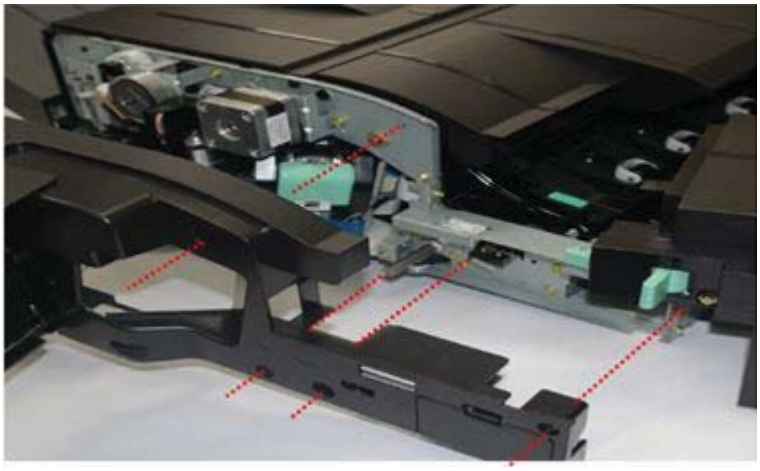
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the stapler

1. Remove the front cover.

Figure 8-103 Remove the exit motor (1 of 3)



2. Remove two screws, and then unplug the motor connector.

Figure 8-104 Remove the exit motor (2 of 3)

3. Remove one screw, unplug two connectors, and then remove the stapler unit.

NOTE: Ensure the tab on the back of the stapler unit clears the chassis while removing.

Figure 8-105 Remove the stapler (1 of 2)

4. Remove two screws, and then remove the finisher sub-staple.

Figure 8-106 Remove the stapler (2 of 2)

Stapler position sensor assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers
- Step 2: Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly
- Step 3: Remove the staple position sensor assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Stapler position sensor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Stapler position sensor assembly part number
Stapler position sensor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

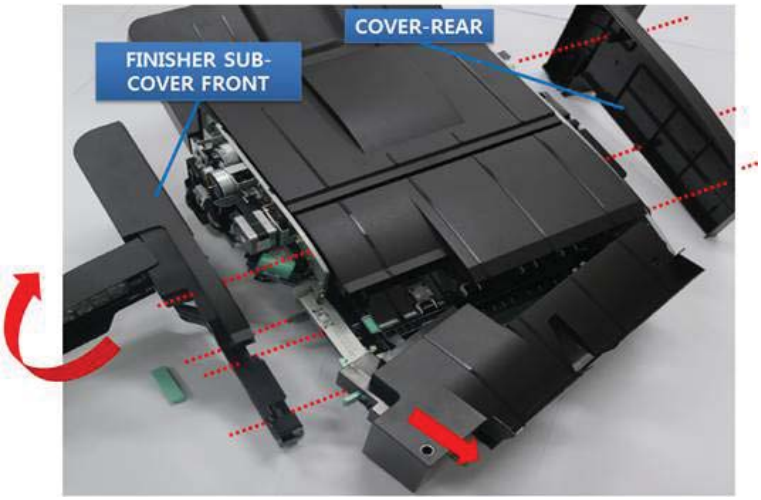
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub-cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub-cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub-cover front.

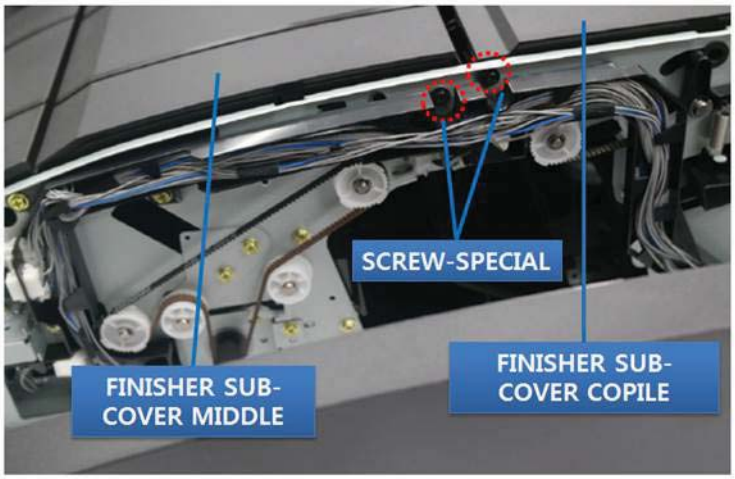
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-107 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 8-108 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)



3. On the front of the printer remove the e-ring and bushing. On the rear of the printer remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, spring (slightly hidden from view), and then remove the guide reverse and roller feed.

Figure 8-109 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7)

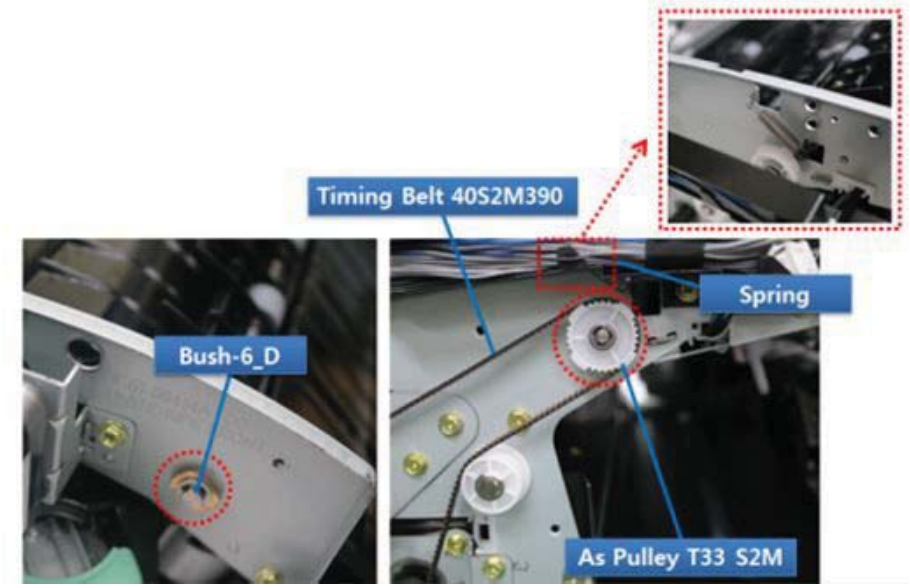
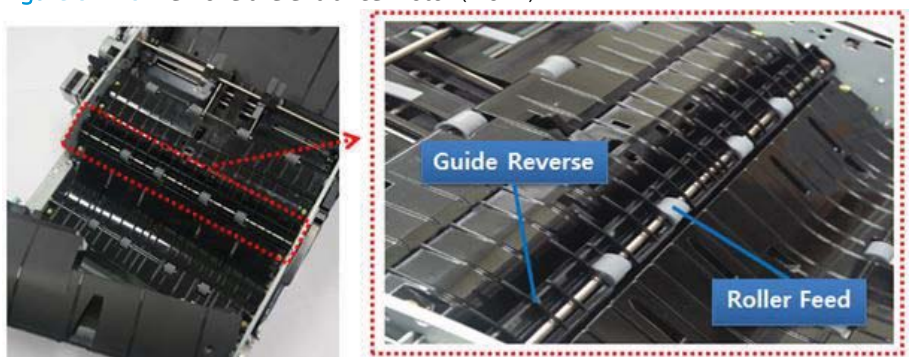


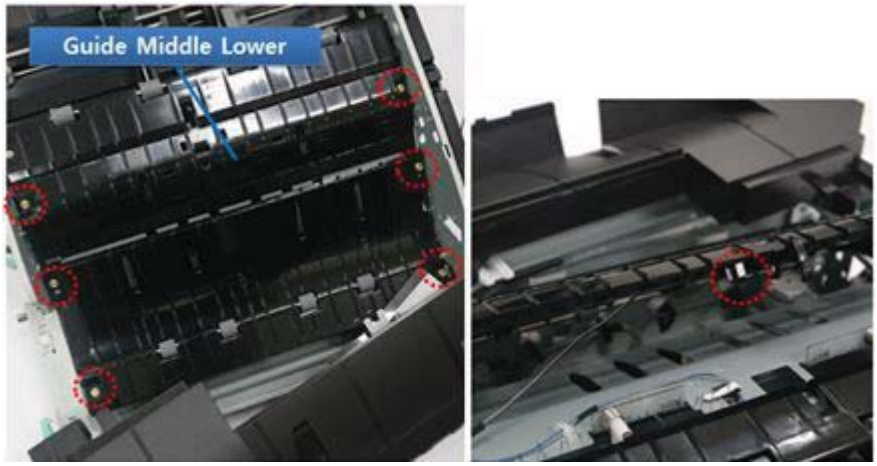
Figure 8-110 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7)



4. Remove six screws.

NOTE: Be careful not to damage the sensor.

Figure 8-111 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7)



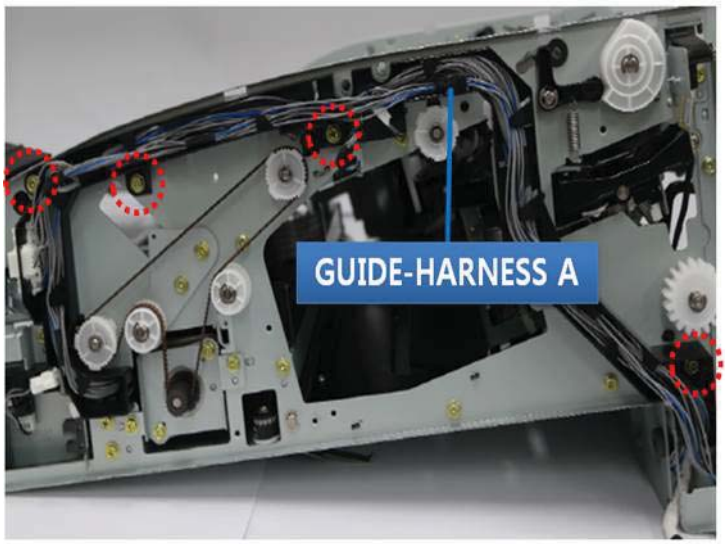
Step 2: Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly

1. Open the cover top tray sub-assembly, and then remove one screw securing the guide-exit lower.

Figure 8-112 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub-assembly (1 of 6)

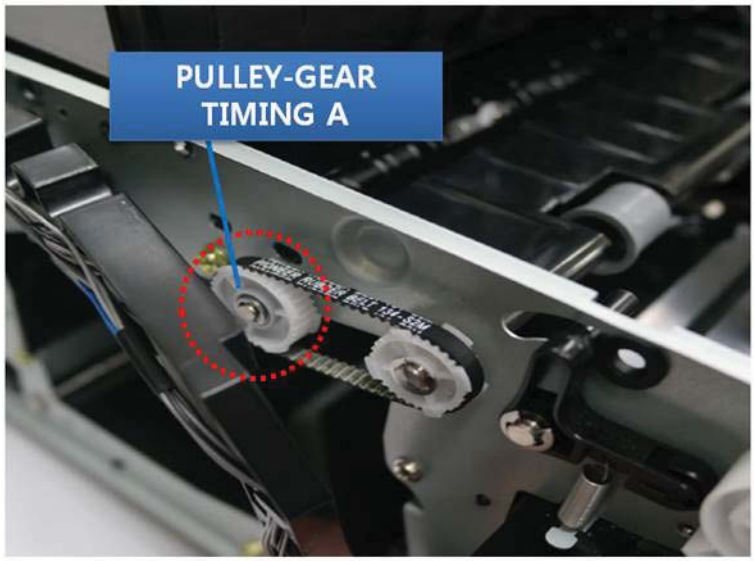
2. Remove four screws securing the guide-harness A.

Figure 8-113 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub-assembly (2 of 6)



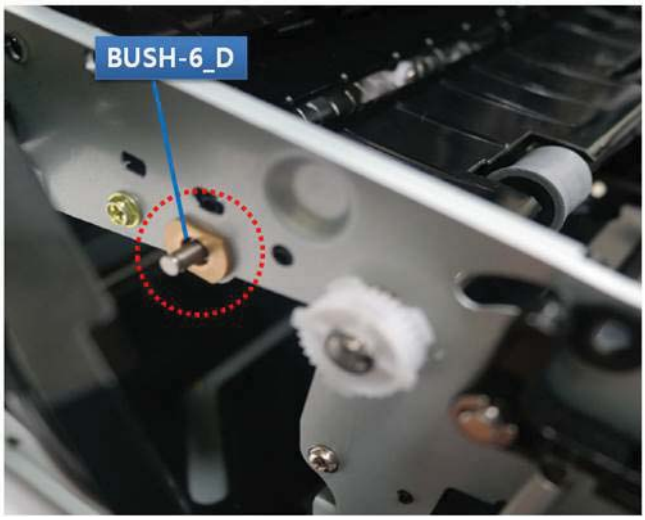
3. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the pulley and timing belt.

Figure 8-114 Remove the Sub Paddle Shaft Sub assembly (3 of 6)



4. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 8-115 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (4 of 6)



5. Lift up and remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly.

Figure 8-116 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (5 of 6)

Step 3: Remove the staple position sensor assembly

1. Remove two screws from the front of the printer. Remove three screws, and then remove the bracket support.

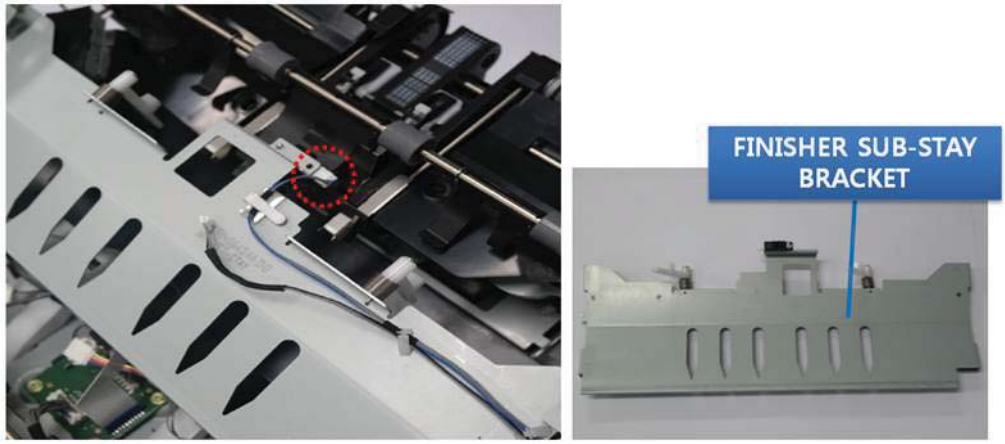
Figure 8-117 Remove the stapler position sensor (1 of 7)

2. Remove two screws from the rear of the printer.

Figure 8-118 Remove the stapler position sensor (2 of 7)

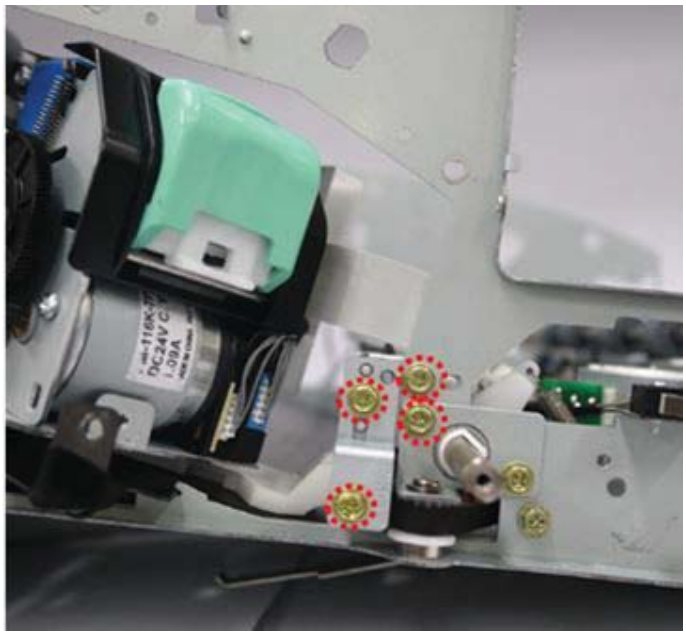
3. Loosen three cable restraints. Unplug the connector at the sensor, and then remove the finisher sub-stay bracket.

Figure 8-119 Remove the stapler position sensor (3 of 7)



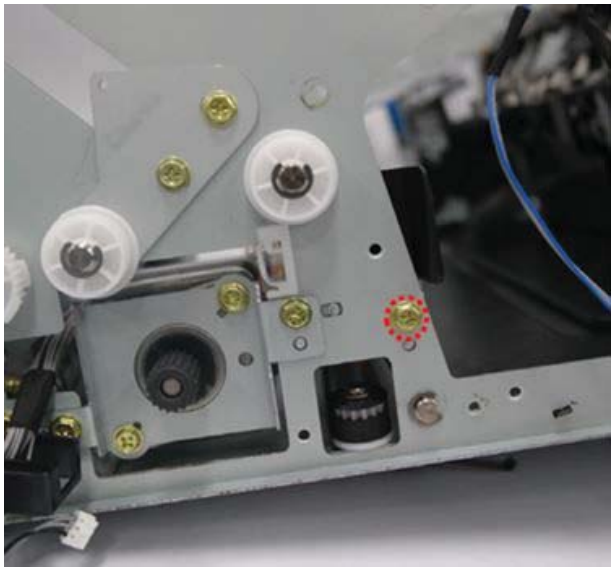
4. Remove one screw from the front of the printer.

Figure 8-120 Remove the stapler position sensor (4 of 7)



5. Remove one screw from the rear of the printer.

Figure 8-121 Remove the stapler position sensor (5 of 7)

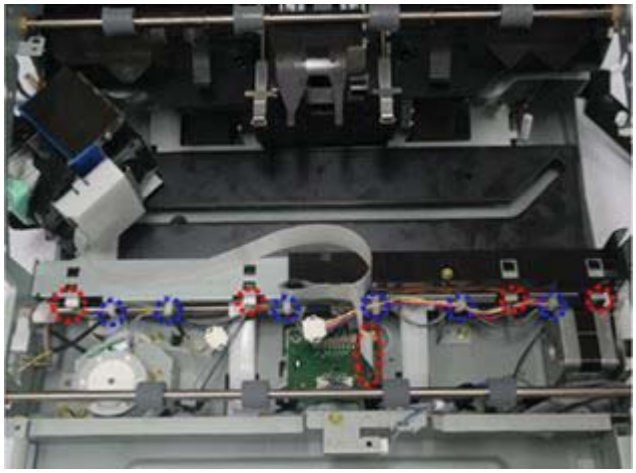


6. Unplug four photo-sensor connectors. Open the six cable restraints, and then unplug the FFC cable.

NOTE: The FFC is glued to the support bracket. However, the sensors can be replaced without removal of the FFC.

Reinstallation tip: Connect the sensors, lock the cable restraints, and then connect the FCC.

Figure 8-122 Remove the stapler position sensor (6 of 7)



7. Remove the assembly, and then remove the sensor.

Figure 8-123 Remove the stapler position sensor (7 of 7)

Traverse Motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers
- Step 2: Remove the traverse motor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Traverse Motor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Traverse Motor assembly part number	
???	Traverse Motor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

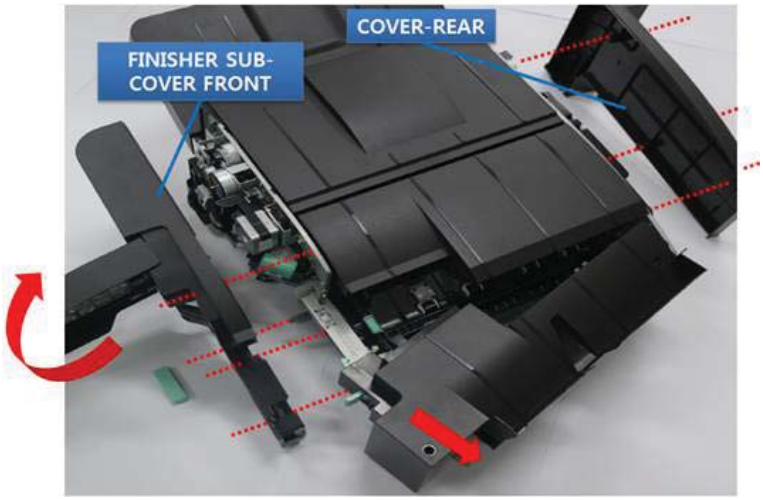
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub-cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub-cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub-cover front.

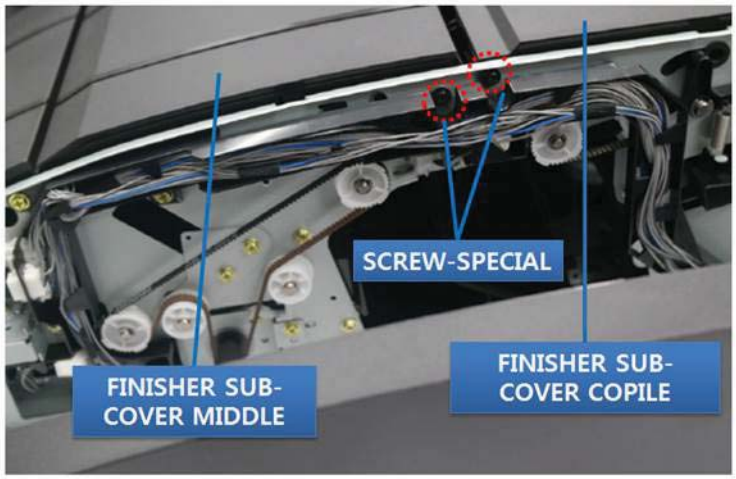
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-124 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 8-125 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)



3. On the front of the printer remove the e-ring and bushing. On the rear of the printer remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, spring (slightly hidden from view), and then remove the guide reverse and roller feed.

Figure 8-126 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7)

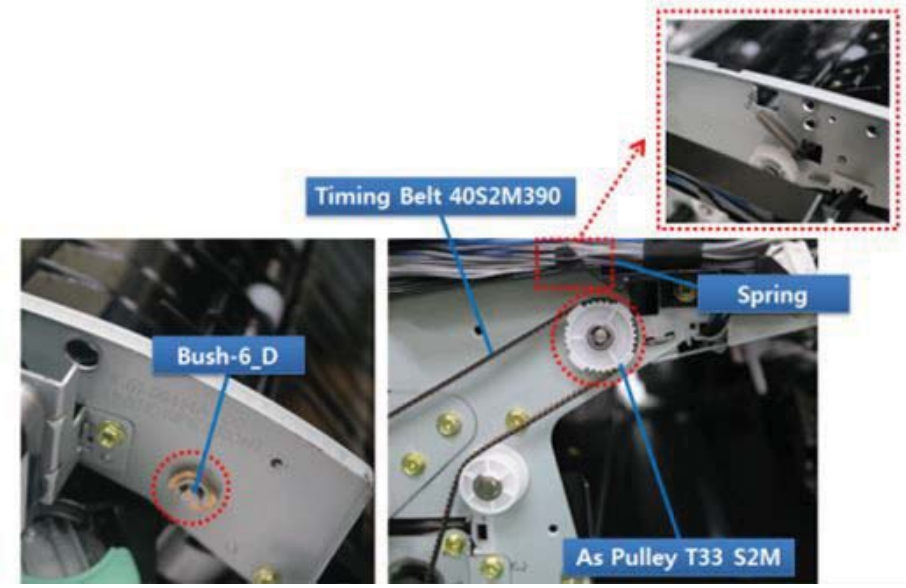
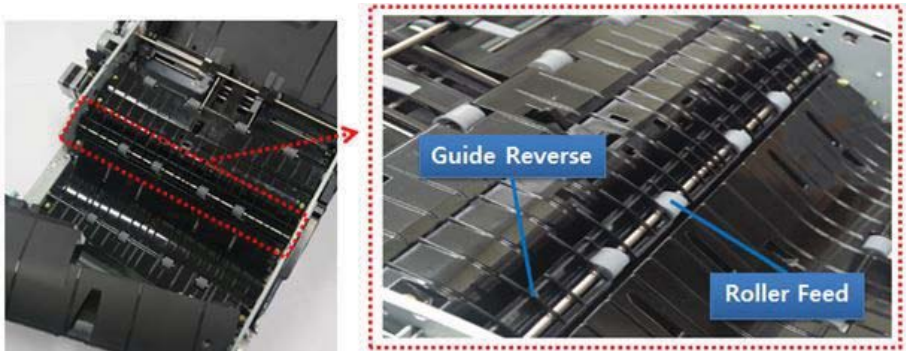


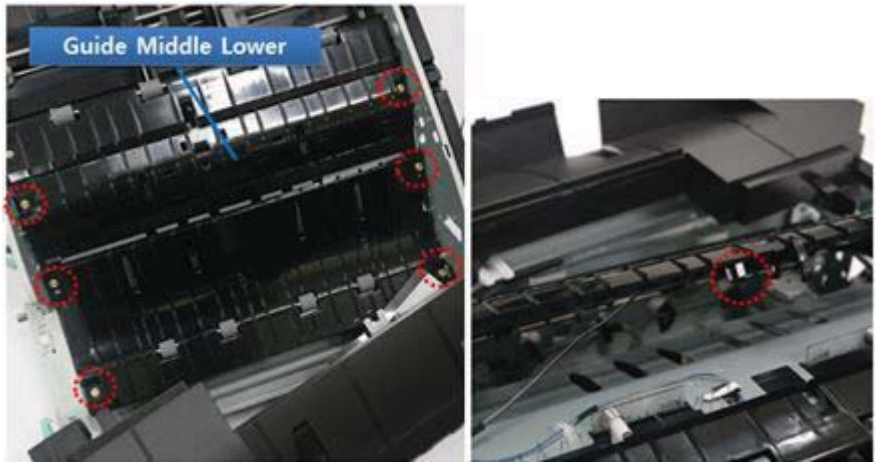
Figure 8-127 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7)



4. Remove six screws.

NOTE: Be careful not to damage the sensor.

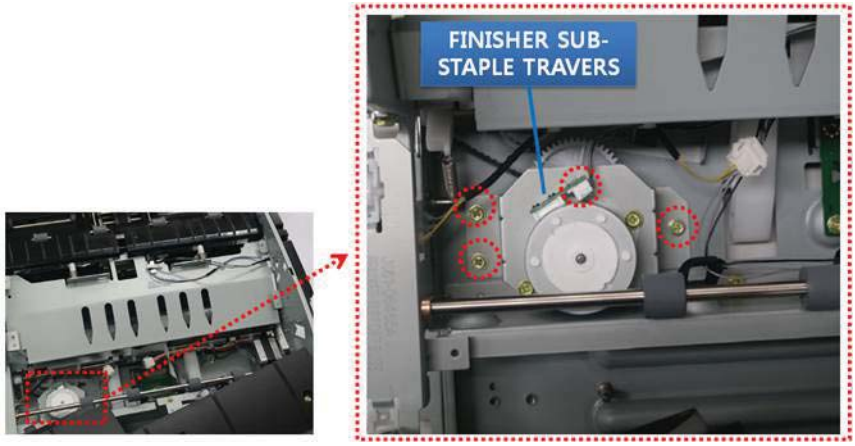
Figure 8-128 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7)



Step 2: Remove the traverse motor

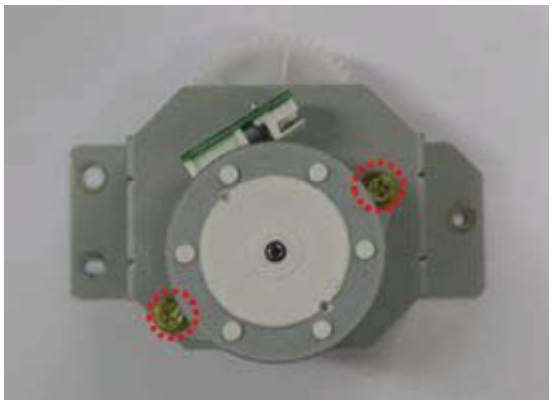
1. Remove three screws, unplug the motor connector, and then remove the finisher sub-staple travers.

   Figure 8-129 Remove the traverse motor (1 of 2)



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the motor.

   Figure 8-130 Remove the traverse motor (2 of 2)



3. Use the following steps when reinstalling the traverse motor:

   a. Apply tension to the spring by pushing toward the center of the printer, and then tighten the screw. Tightening the screw puts maximum slack in the belt.

   b. Lower the motor while placing the belt on the motor pulley.

   c. Secure the bracket with three screws.

   d. Release the spring tension screw to allow the spring to apply tension to the belt.

   e. Tighten the screw.

Stacker Motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the stacker motor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Stacker Motor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Keyboardr assembly part number	
???	Stacker Motor

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the stacker motor

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

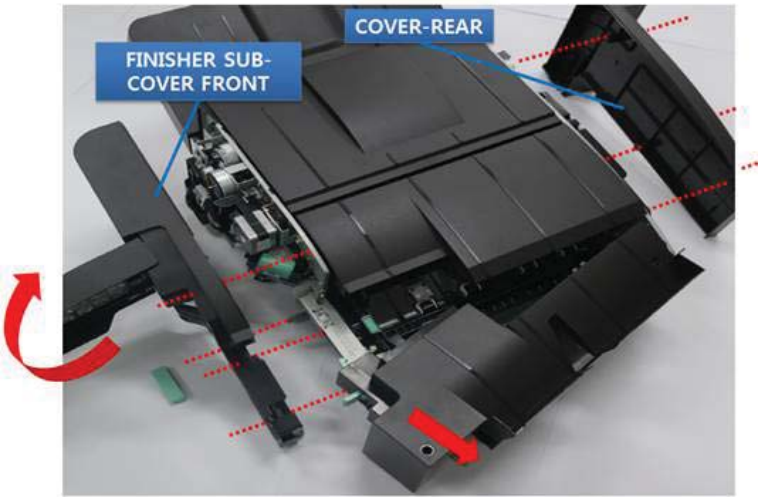
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub cover front.

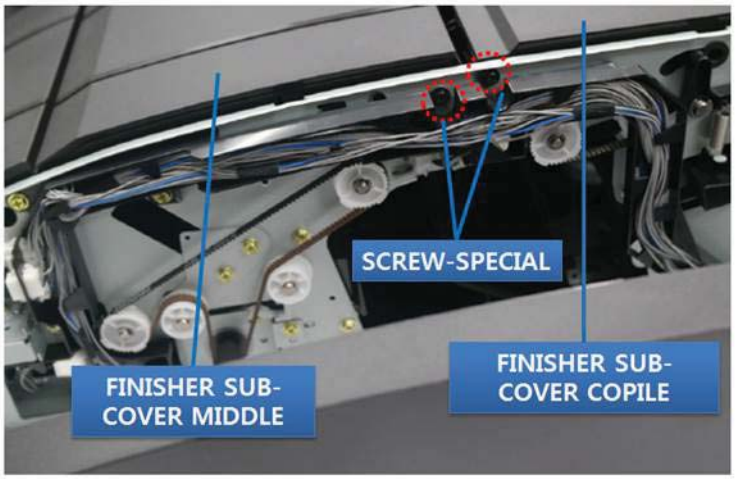
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-131 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 8-132 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)



3. Remove four screws, and then remove the tray.

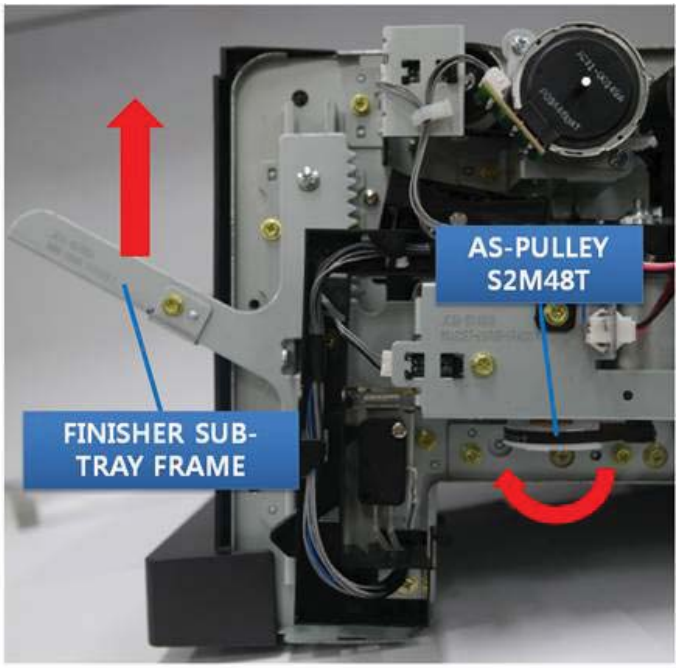
Figure 8-133 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15)

4. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.

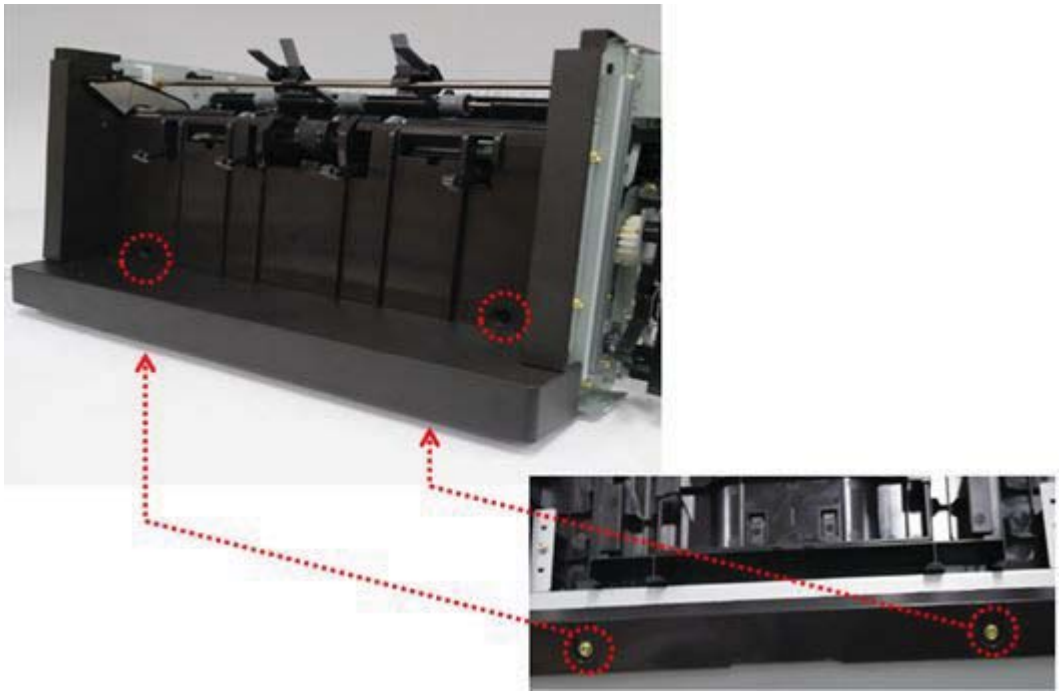
NOTE: Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.

Figure 8-134 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15)



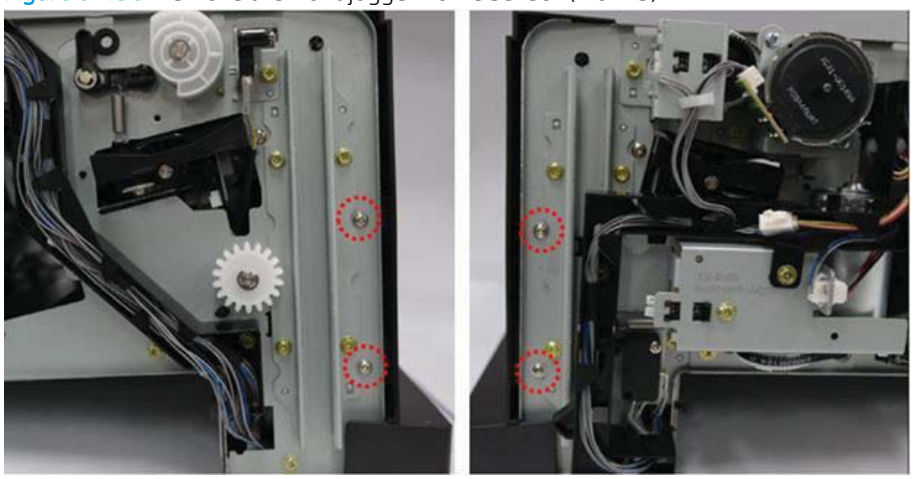
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 8-135 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15)



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

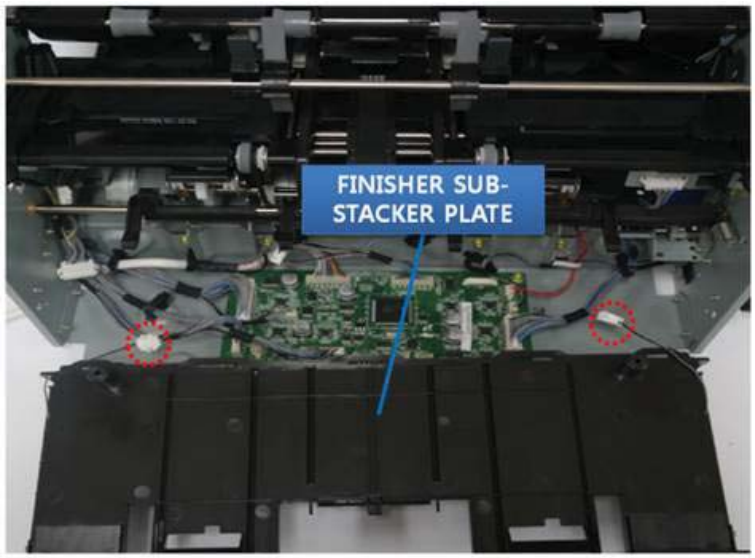
Figure 8-136 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15)



7. Remove two screws and then remove Lower PBA cover.

8. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 8-137 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 15)



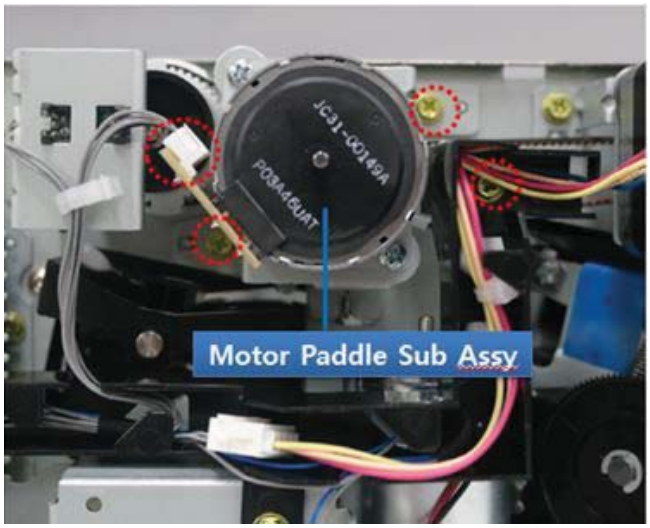
9. Remove one screw and then remove the cable guide. Unplug the connector, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

Figure 8-138 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 15)

10. Remove three screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the motor paddle sub assembly.

NOTE: Move cable out of the wiring guide to access the third screw.

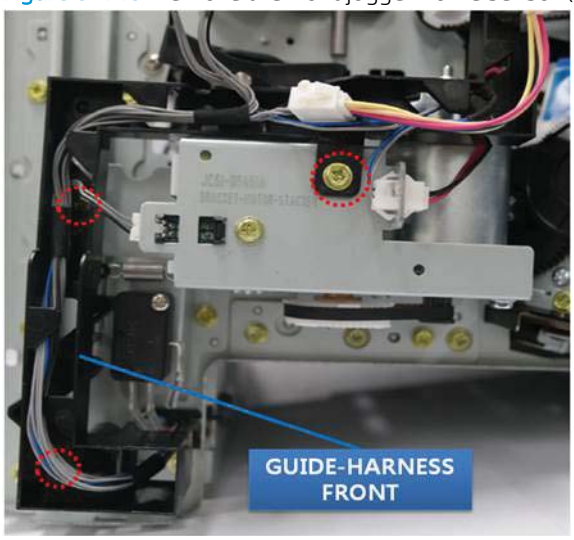
Figure 8-139 Remove the front jogger home sensor (7 of 15)



11. Remove the wire harness from the harness guide, remove three screws, and then remove the guide-harness front.

NOTE: The wire harness will hang loosely after the harness guide is removed.

Figure 8-140 Remove the front jogger home sensor (8 of 15)



12. Remove two screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the stacker motor.

Figure 8-141 Remove the stacker motor

Stacker Encoder Sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the stacker encoder sensor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Stacker Encoder Sensor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Stacker Encoder Sensor assembly part number
Stacker Encoder Sensor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the stacker encoder sensor

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

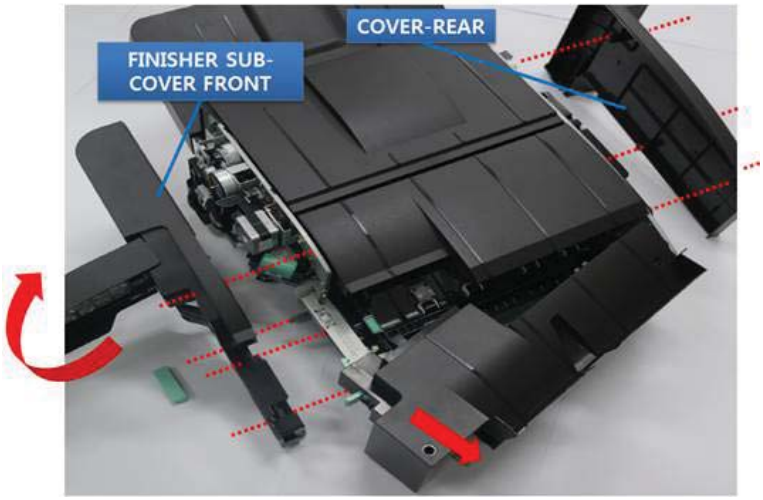
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub cover front.

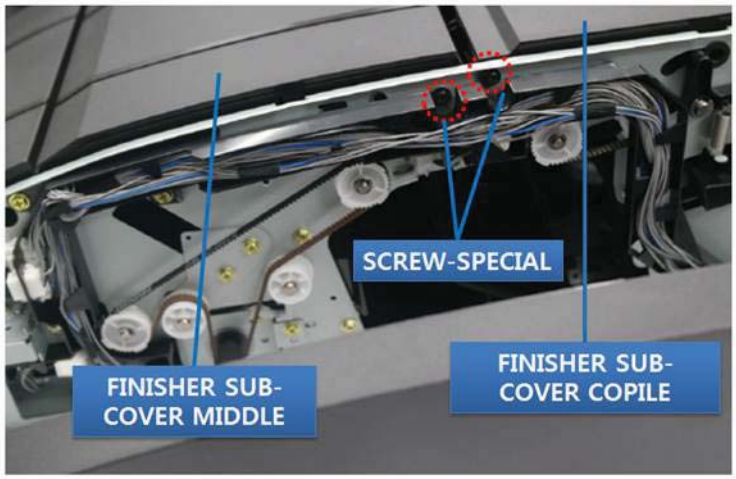
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-142 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)

2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 8-143 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)

3. Remove four screws, and then remove the tray.

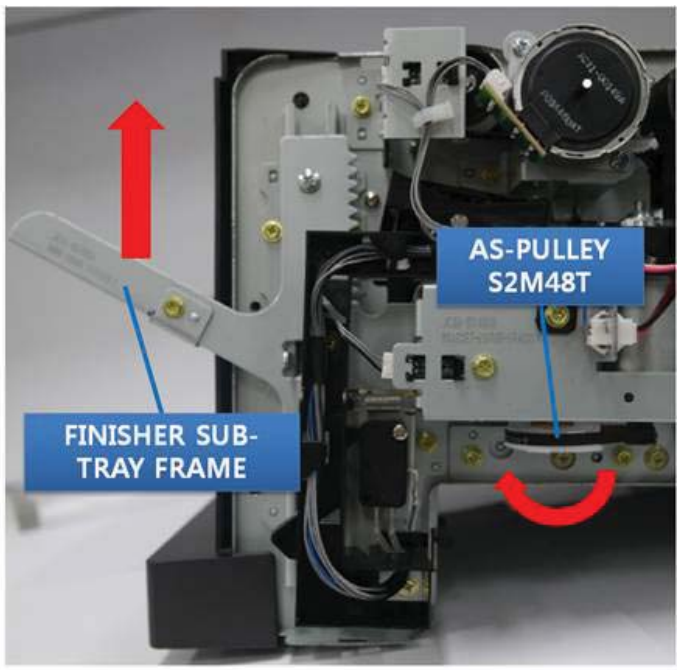
Figure 8-144 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15)

4. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.

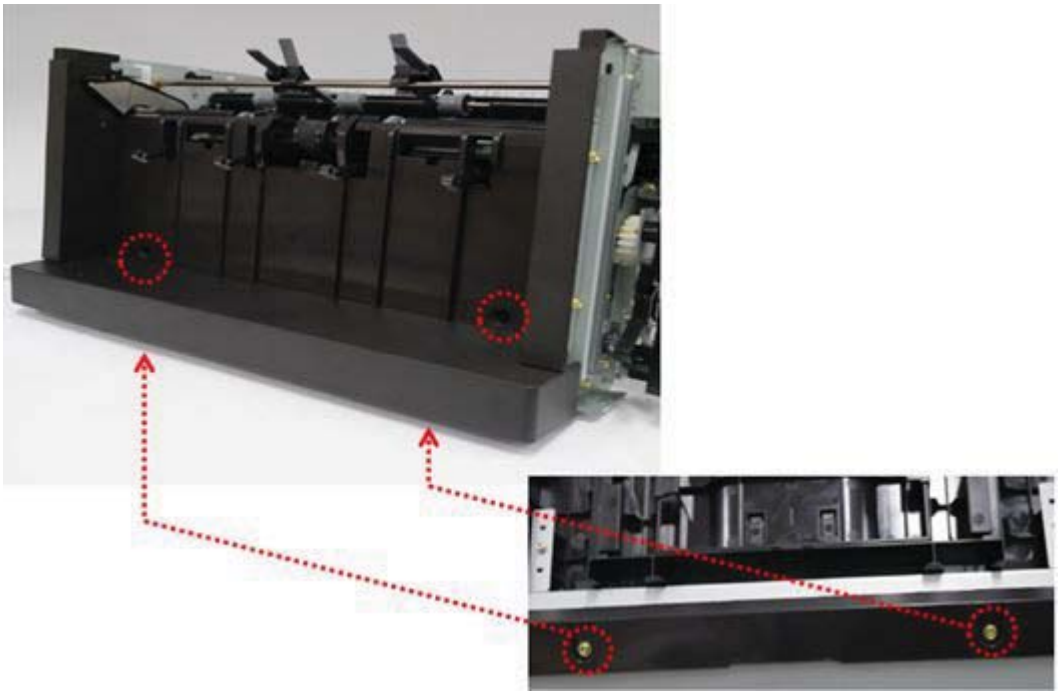
NOTE: Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.

Figure 8-145 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15)



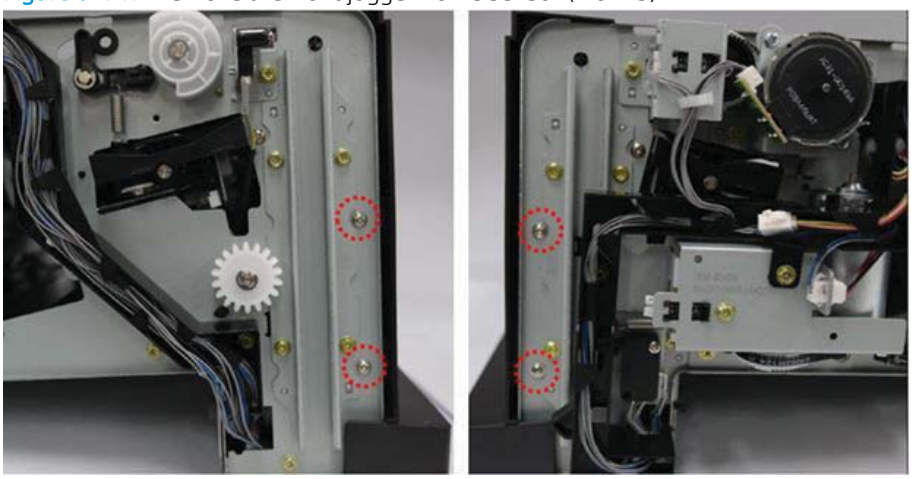
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 8-146 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15)



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

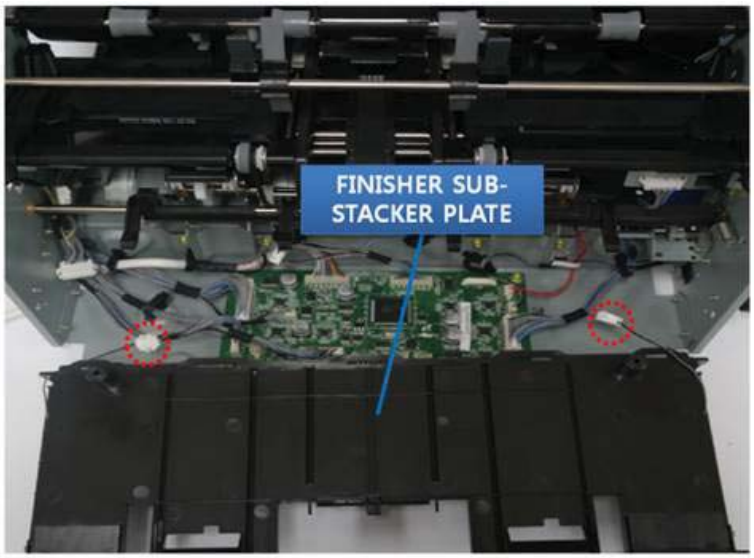
Figure 8-147 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15)



7. Remove two screws and then remove lower PBA cover.

8. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 8-148 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 15)



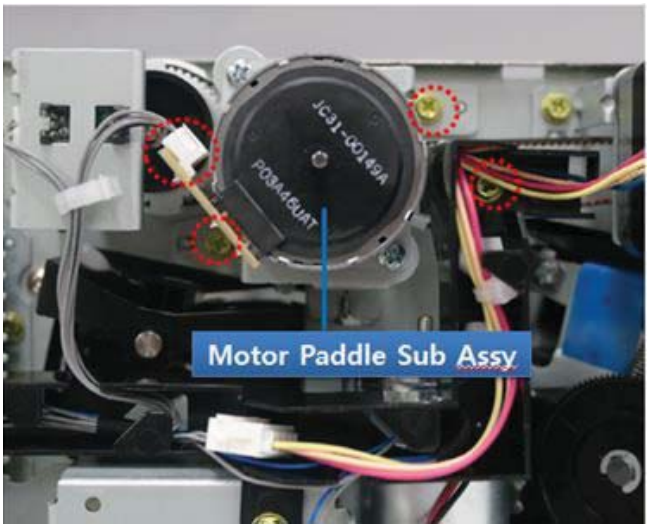
9. Remove one screw and then remove the cable guide. Unplug the connector, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

Figure 8-149 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 15)

10. Remove three screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the motor paddle sub assembly.

NOTE: Move cable out of the wiring guide to access the third screw.

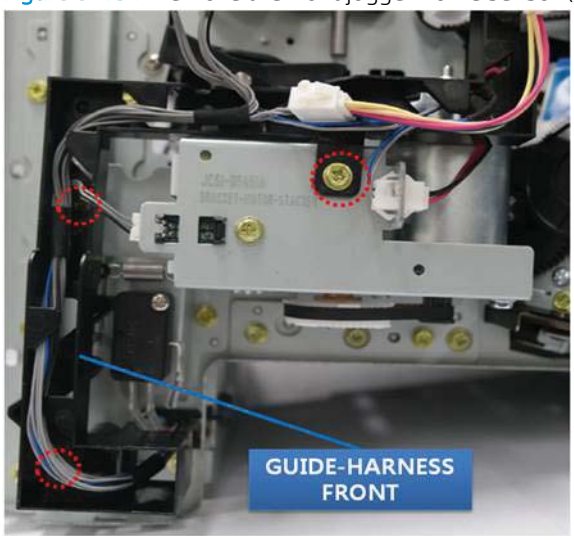
Figure 8-150 Remove the front jogger home sensor (7 of 15)



11. Remove the wire harness from the harness guide, remove three screws, and then remove the guide-harness front.

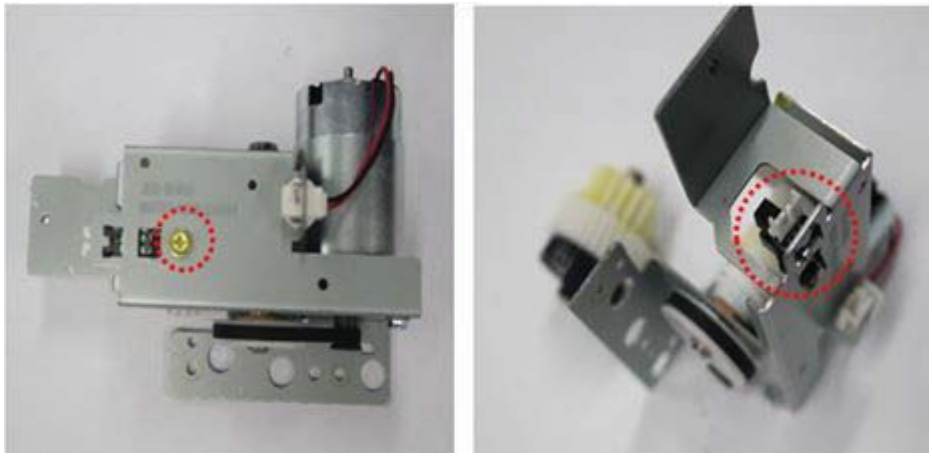
NOTE: The wire harness will hang loosely after the harness guide is removed.

Figure 8-151 Remove the front jogger home sensor (8 of 15)



12. Remove one screw, remove the shaft, and then remove the sensor.

Figure 8-152 Remove the stacker encoder sensor



Stacker Lower Limit Switch

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the stacker lower limit switch

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Stacker Lower Limit Switch assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Stacker Lower Limit Switch assembly part number
Stacker Lower Limit Switch assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the stacker lower limit switch

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

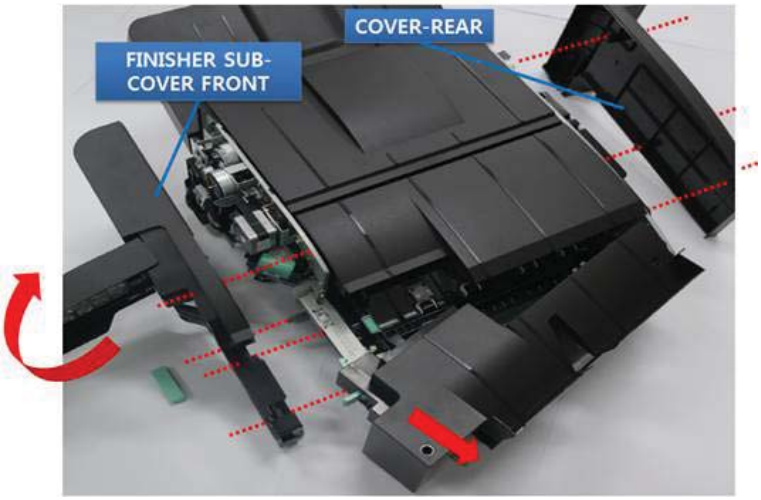
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub cover front.

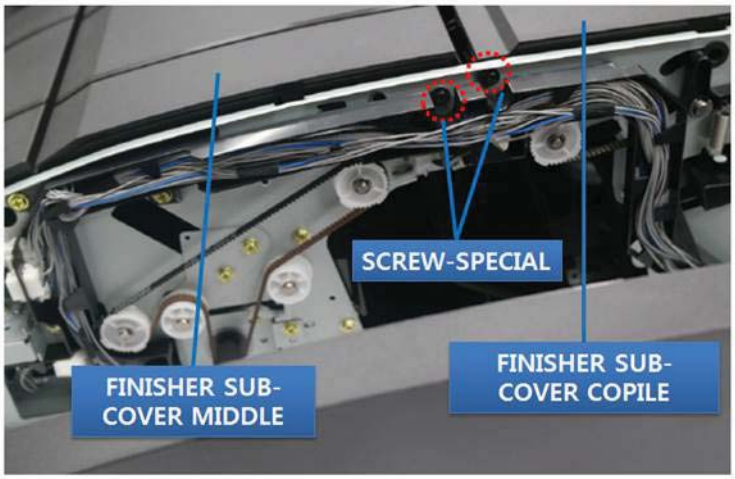
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-153 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 8-154 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)



3. Remove four screws, and then remove the tray.

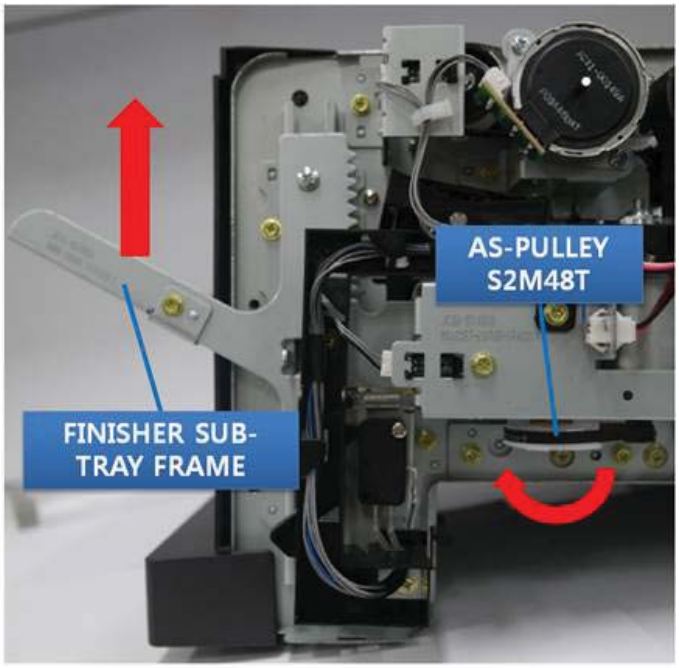
Figure 8-155 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15)

4. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.

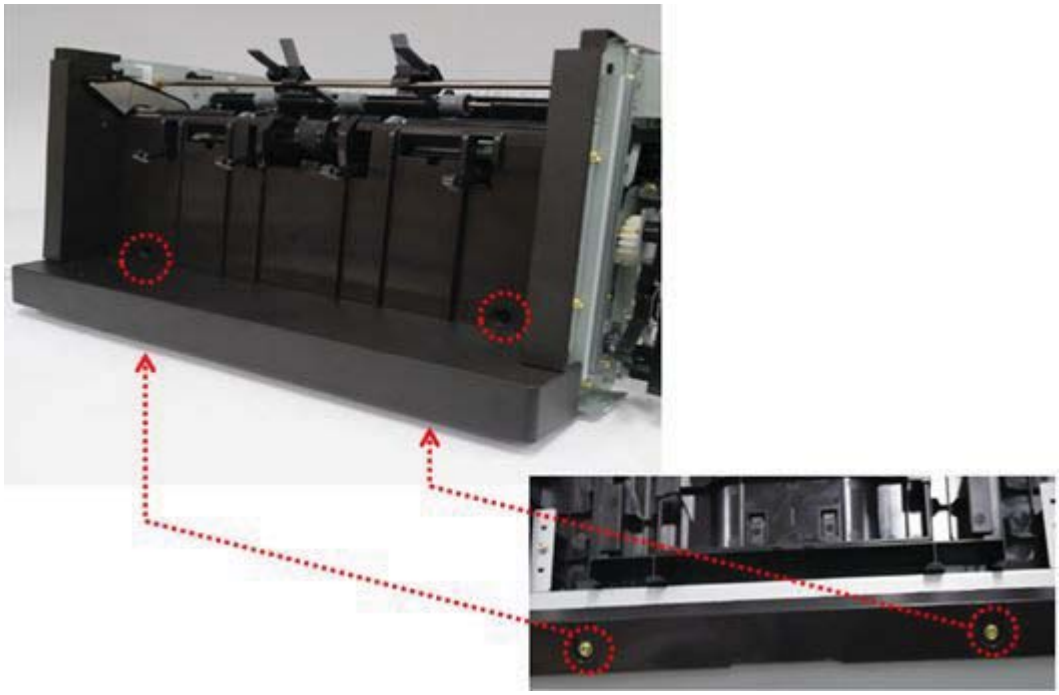
NOTE: Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.

Figure 8-156 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15)



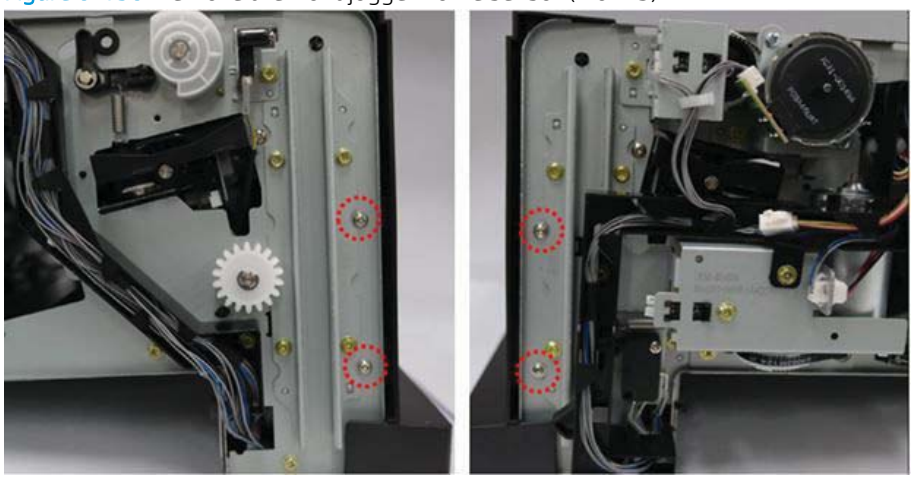
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 8-157 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15)



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

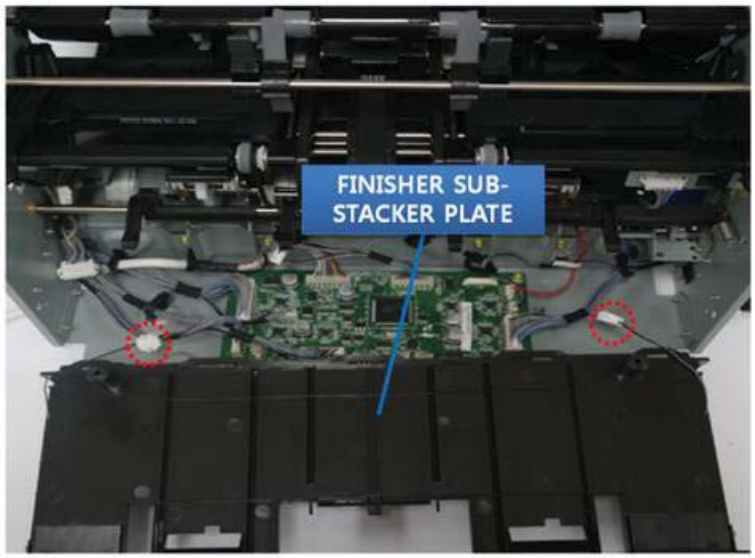
Figure 8-158 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15)



7. Remove two screws and then remove lower PBA cover.

8. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 8-159 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 15)



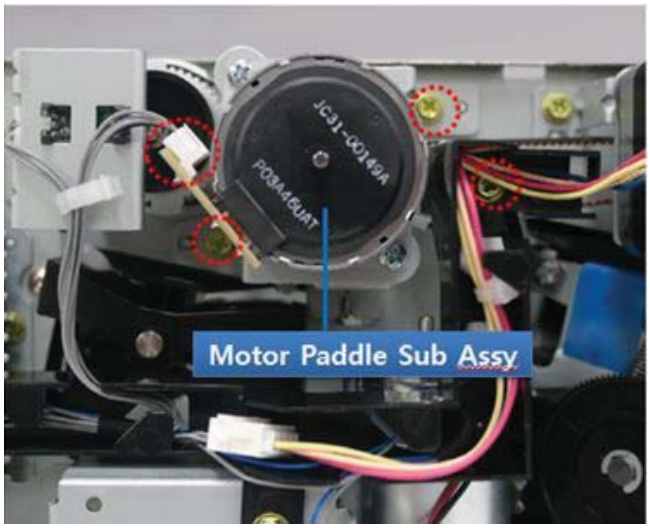
9. Remove one screw and then remove the cable guide. Unplug the connector, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

Figure 8-160 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 15)

10. Remove three screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the motor paddle sub assembly.

NOTE: Move cable out of the wiring guide to access the third screw.

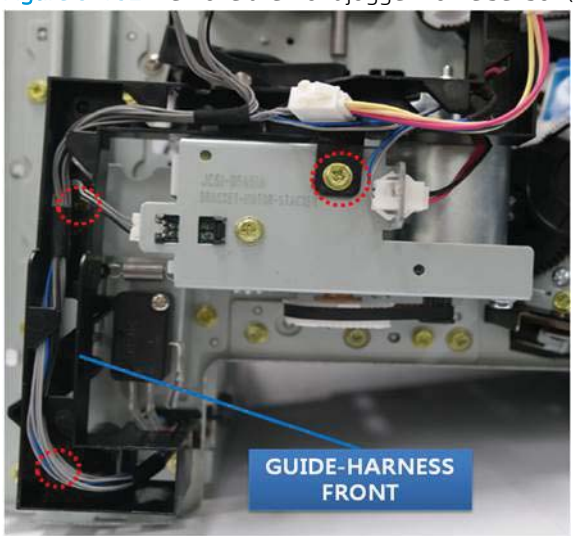
Figure 8-161 Remove the front jogger home sensor (7 of 15)



11. Remove the wire harness from the harness guide, remove three screws, and then remove the guide-harness front.

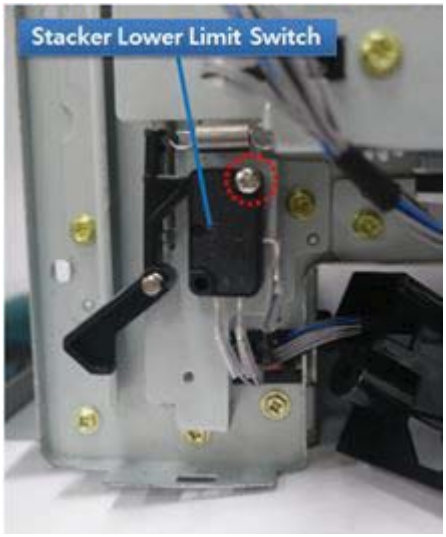
NOTE: The wire harness will hang loosely after the harness guide is removed.

Figure 8-162 Remove the front jogger home sensor (8 of 15)



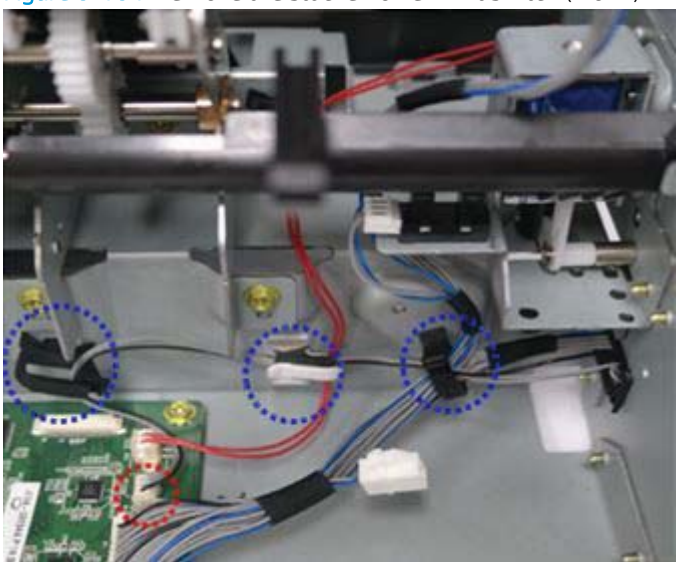
12. Remove one screw.

Figure 8-163 Remove the stacker lower limit switch (1 of 2)



13. Open three clamps, unplug the connector, and then remove the sensor.

Figure 8-164 Remove the stacker lower limit switch (2 of 2)



Stack Beam Sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the stack beam sensor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Stack Beam Sensor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Stack Beam Sensor assembly part number
Stack Beam Sensor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the stack beam sensor

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

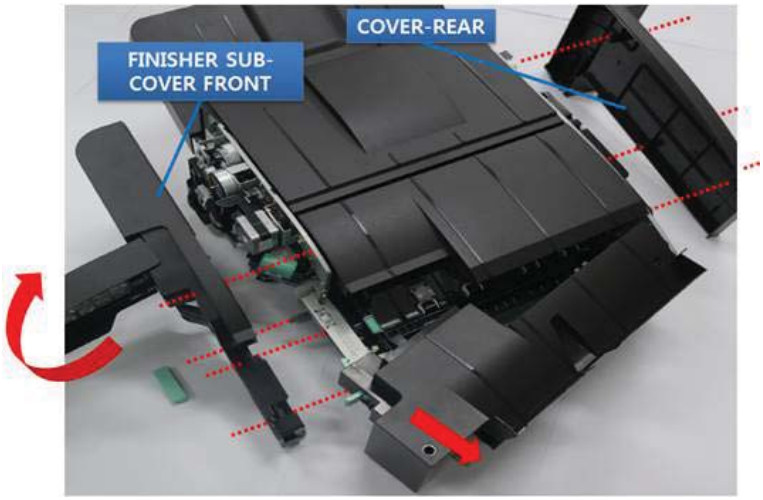
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub cover front.

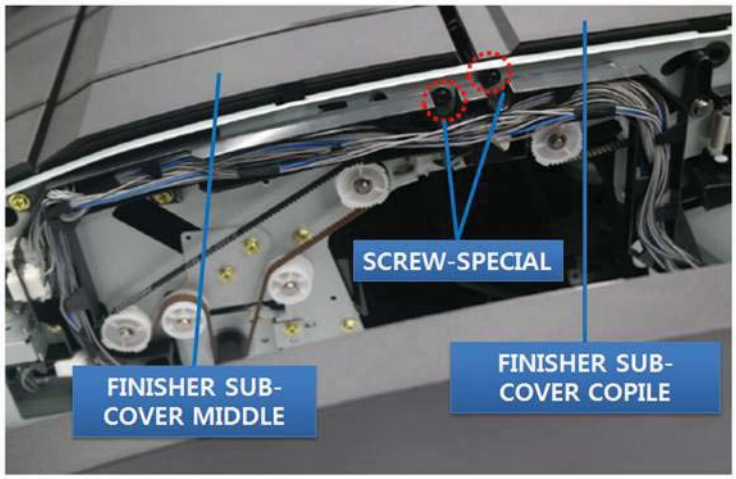
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-165 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)

2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 8-166 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)

3. Remove four screws, and then remove the tray.

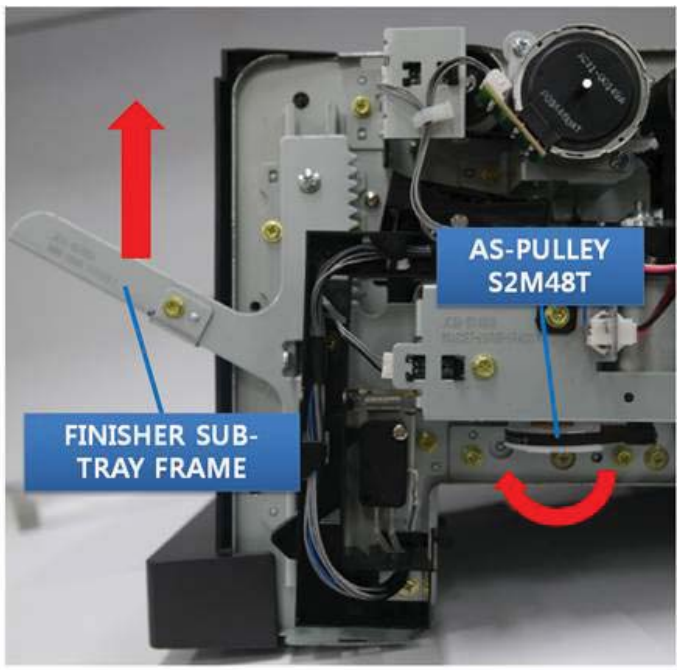
Figure 8-167 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15)

4. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.

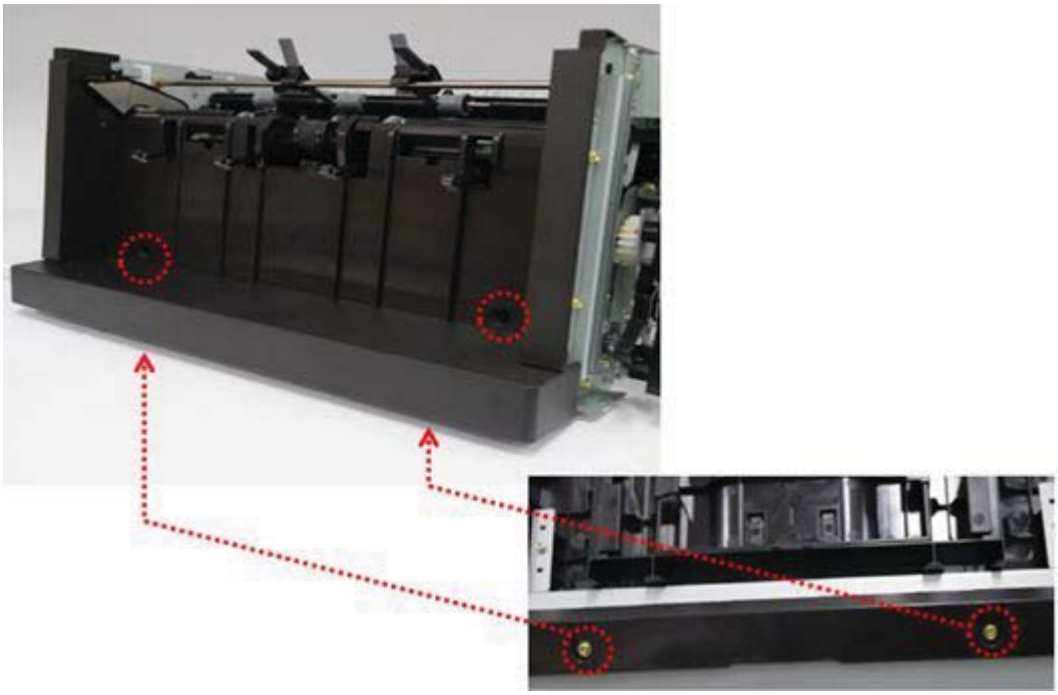
NOTE: Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.

Figure 8-168 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15)



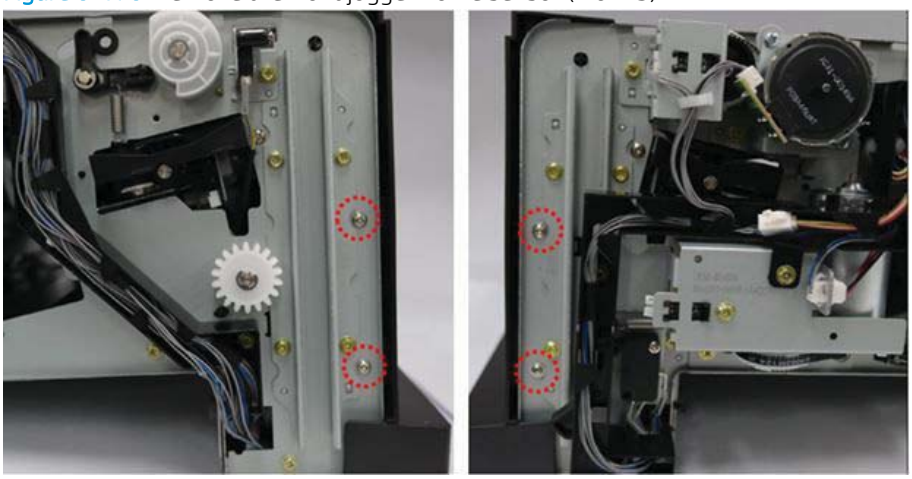
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 8-169 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15)



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

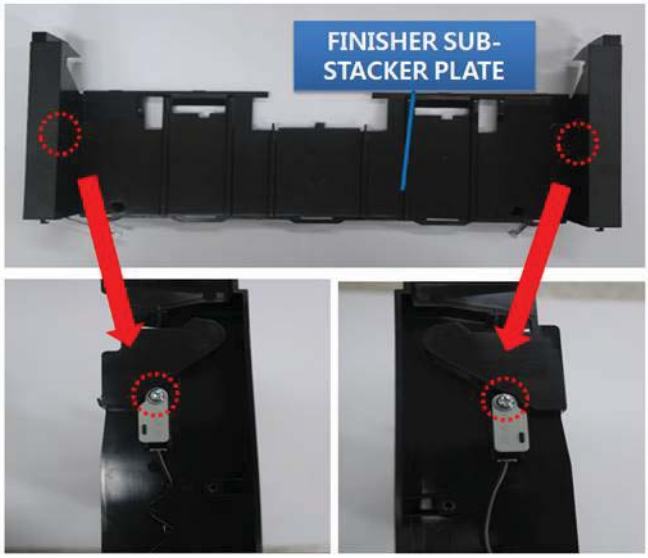
Figure 8-170 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15)



7. Remove two screws and then remove lower PBA cover.

8. Remove two screws from both sides of the finisher sub-stacker plate. Remove the bracket, and then remove the sensor.

Figure 8-171 Remove the stack beam sensor



Stack Position Sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers
- Step 2: Remove the stack position sensor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Stack Position Sensor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Stack Position Sensor assembly part number
Stack Position Sensor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

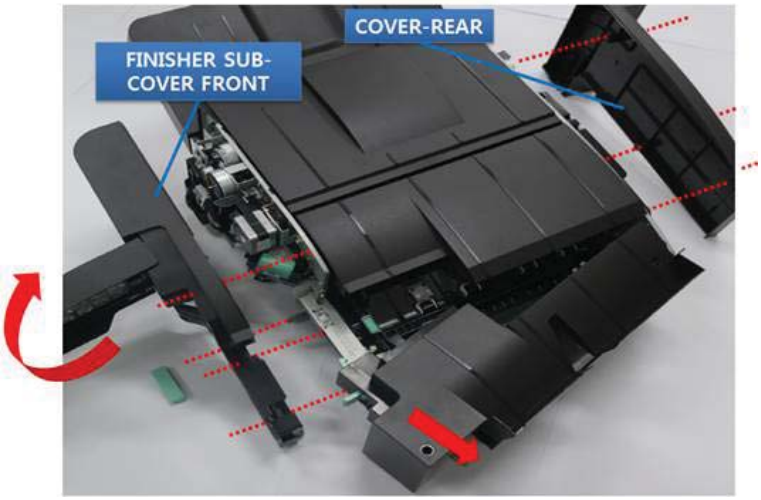
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub-cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub-cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub-cover front.

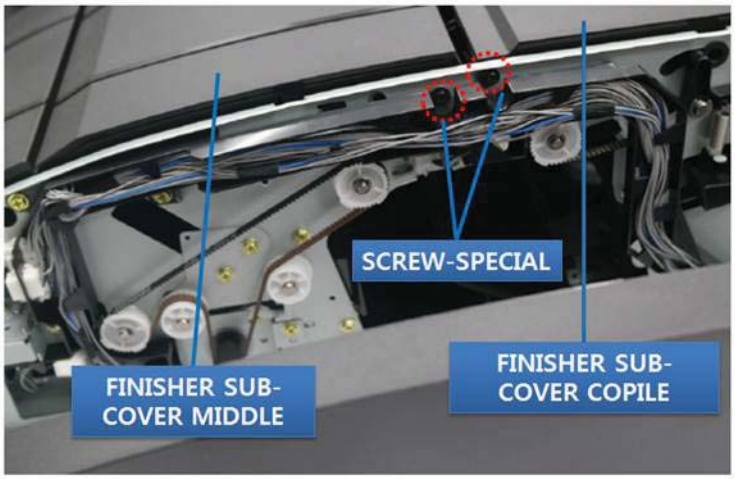
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-172 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 8-173 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)



3. On the front of the printer remove the e-ring and bushing. On the rear of the printer remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, spring (slightly hidden from view), and then remove the guide reverse and roller feed.

Figure 8-174 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7)

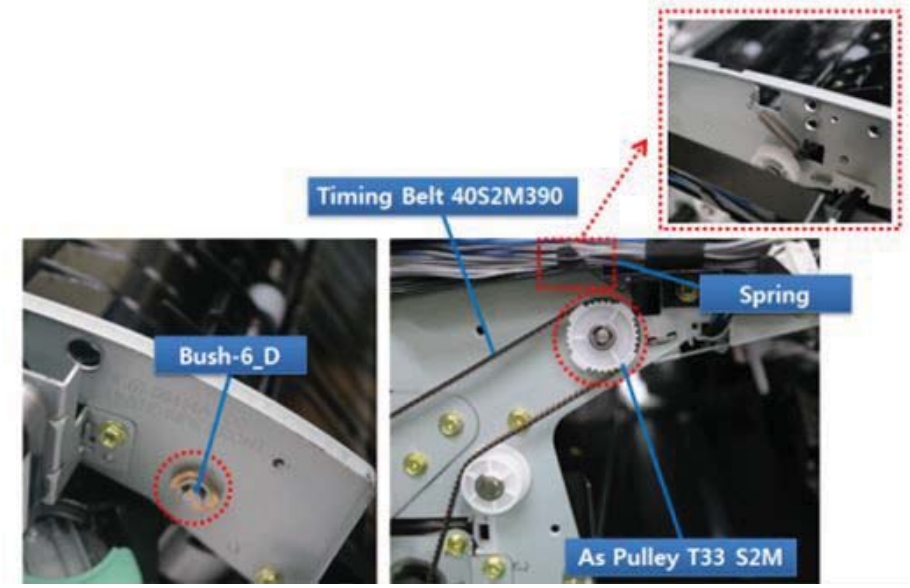
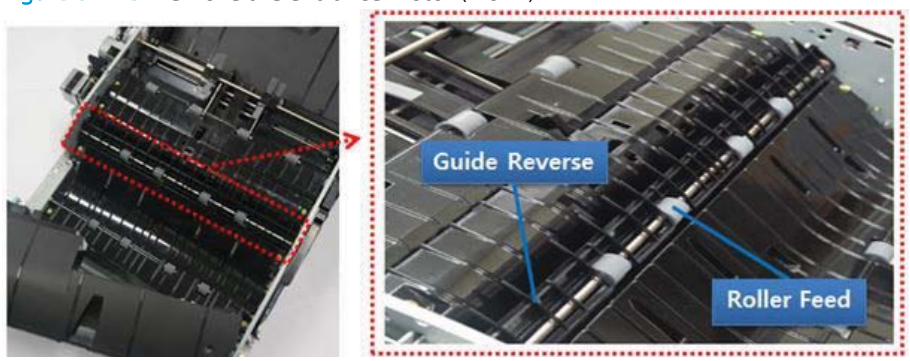


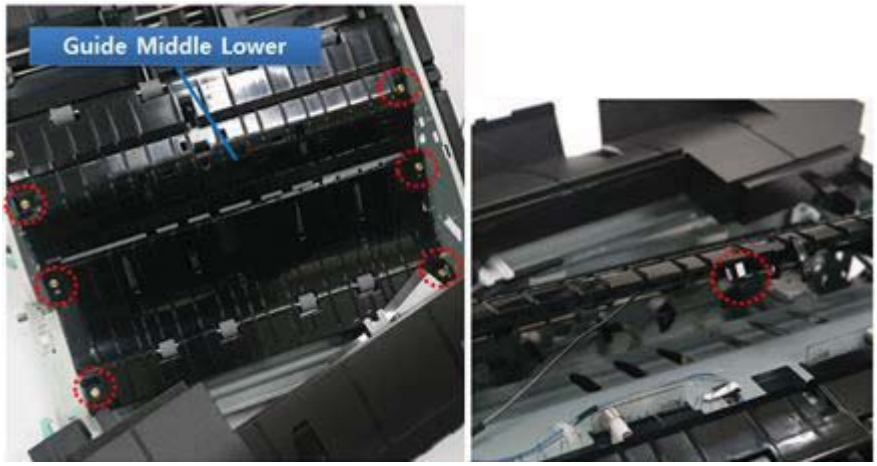
Figure 8-175 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7)



4. Remove six screws.

NOTE: Be careful not to damage the sensor.

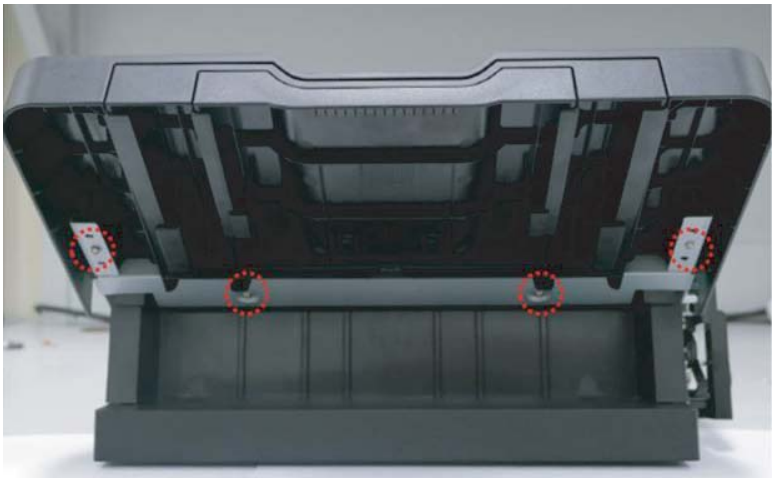
Figure 8-176 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7)



Step 2: Remove the stack position sensor

1. Remove four screws, and then, remove the tray.

Figure 8-177 Remove the tray

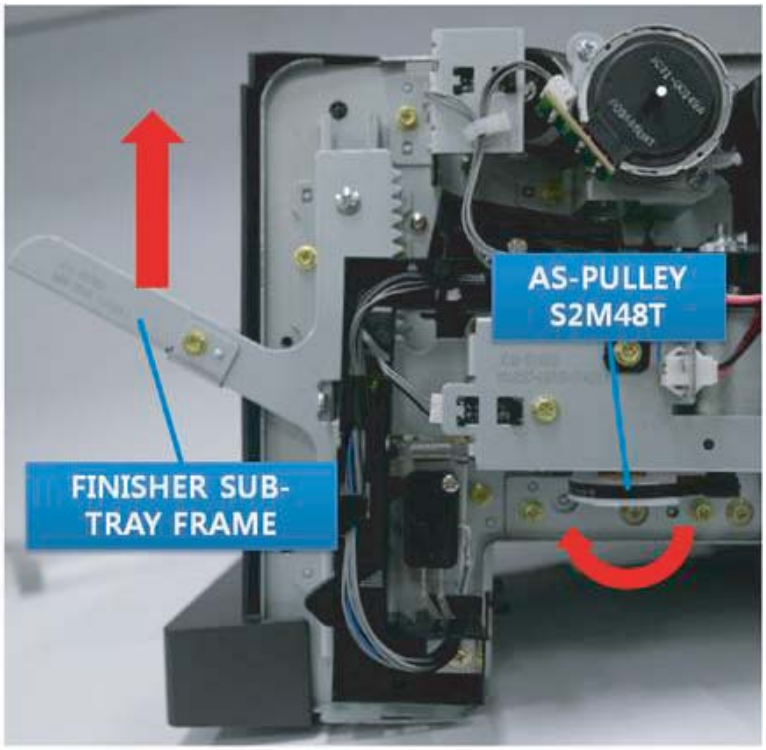


2. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the device while assembling.

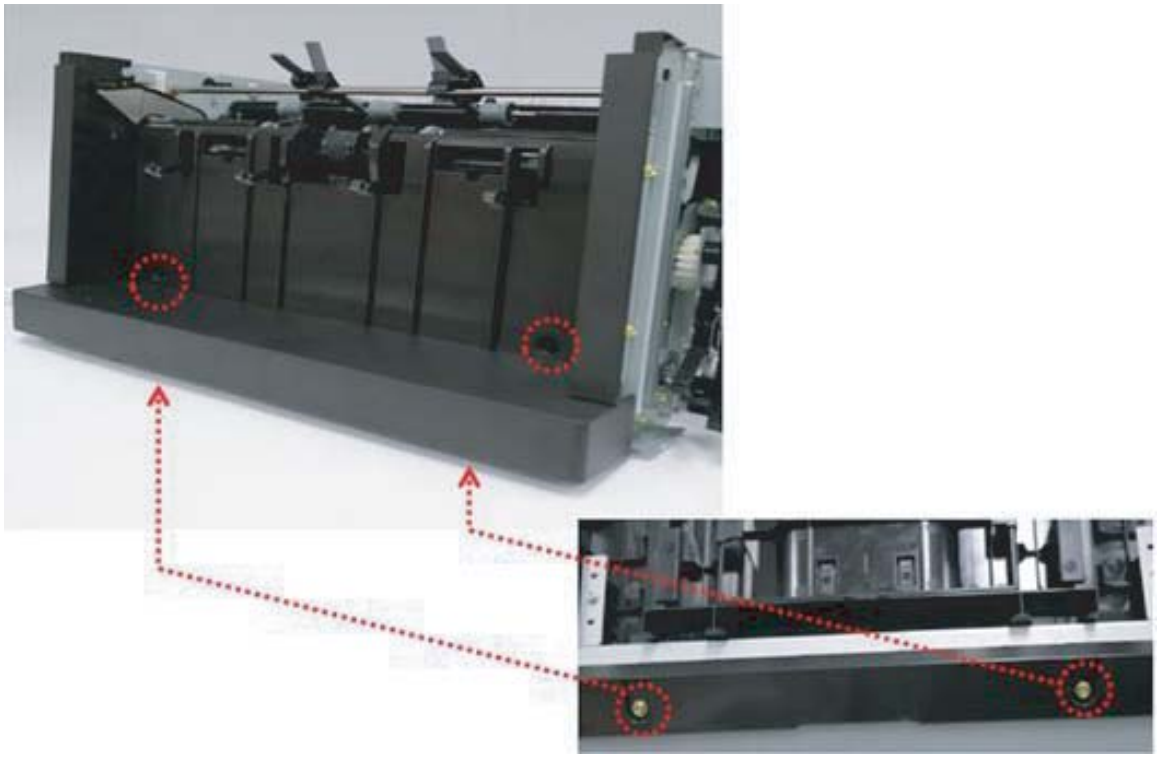
Hold the arms, and then drop the first wheel into the channel (on both sides). Simultaneously let the second wheel rest on the channel (on both sides). Gently squeeze wheels into the channel. The rack and pinion might need to be engaged several times to achieve a level assembly.

Figure 8-178 Remove the sub-tray



3. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

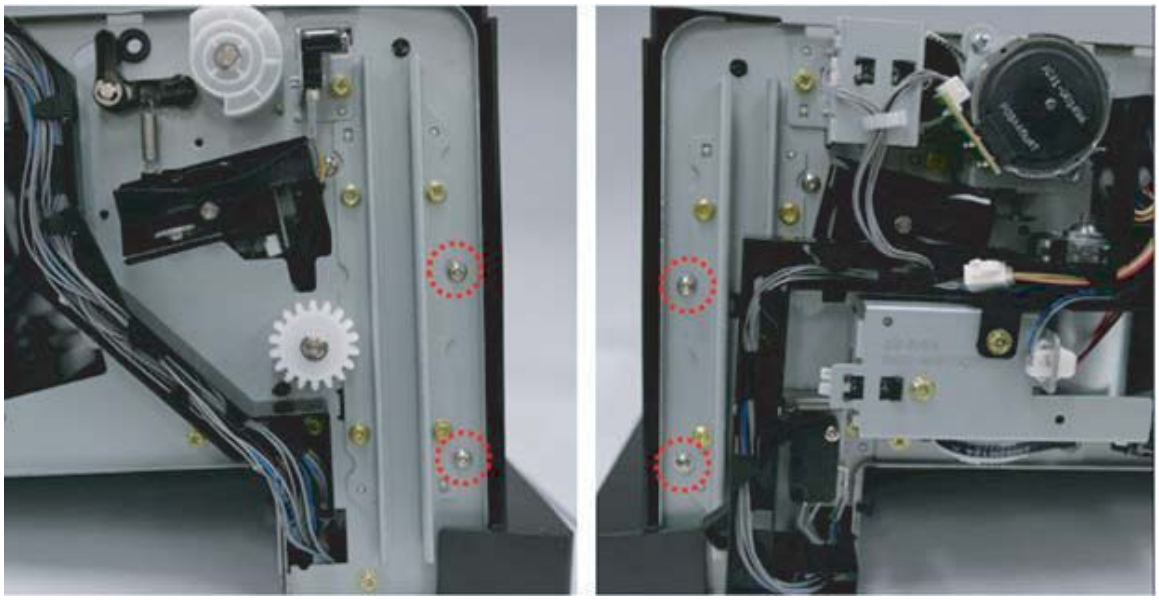
Figure 8-179 Remove the PBA



4. Remove four screws.

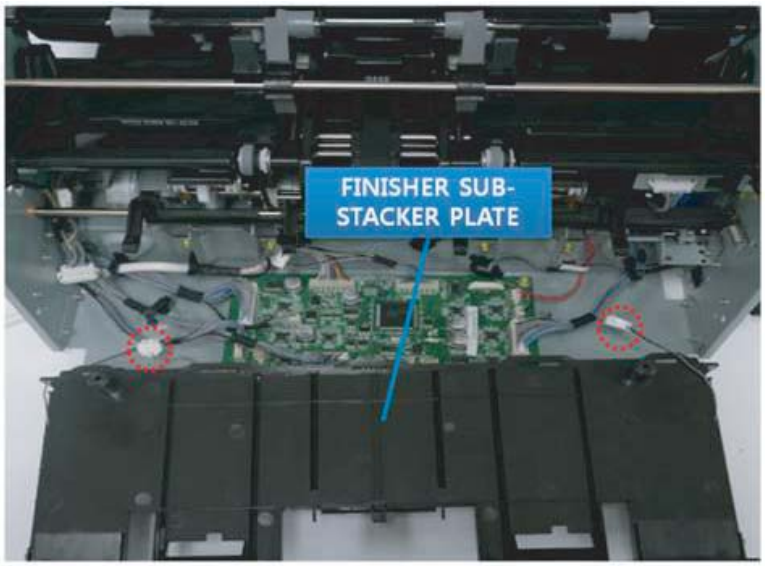
NOTE: Also, remove two screws, and then remove the lower PBA cover (not shown).

Figure 8-180 Remove the PBA



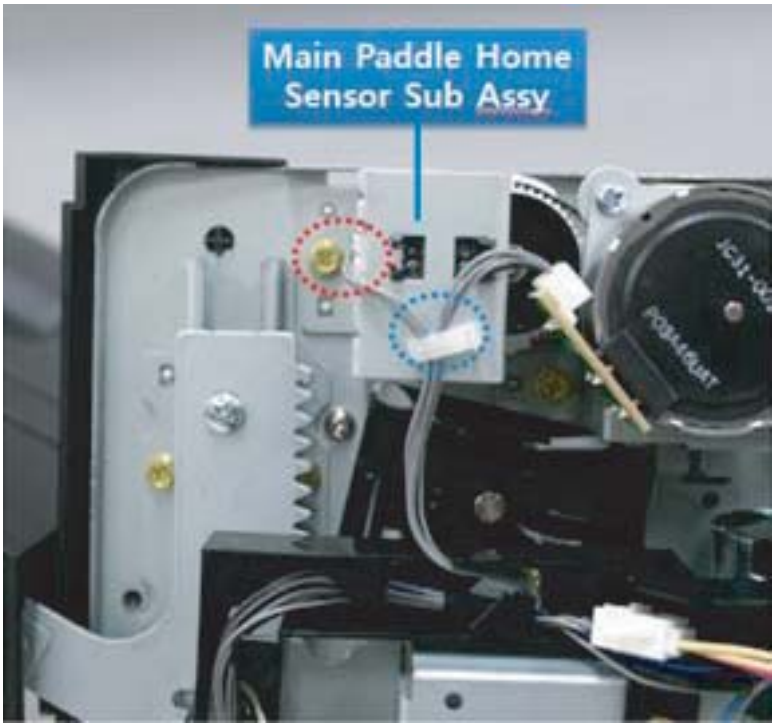
5. Disconnect two in-line connectors, and then, remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 8-181 Remove the sub-stacker plate



6. Remove one screw, disconnect the connector, release the cable guide, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

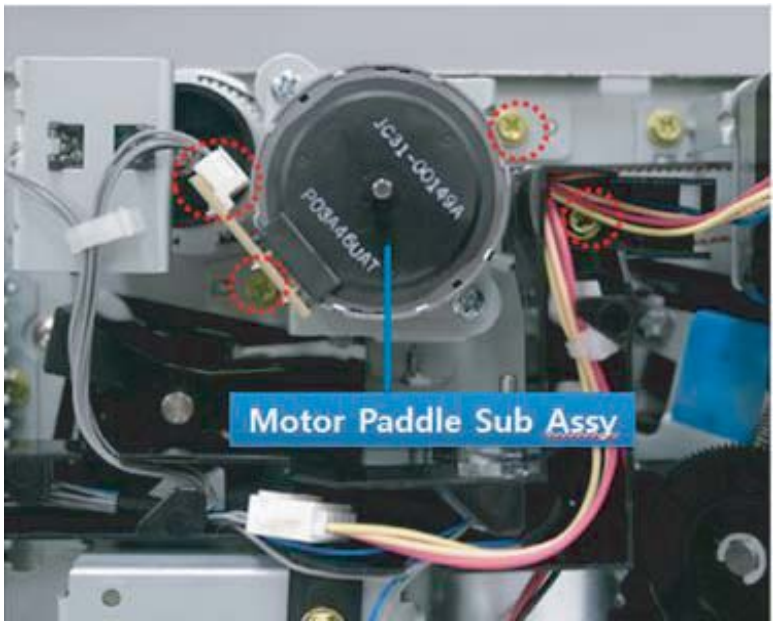
Figure 8-182 Remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly



7. Remove three screws, disconnect the connector, and then release the motor paddle sub assembly.

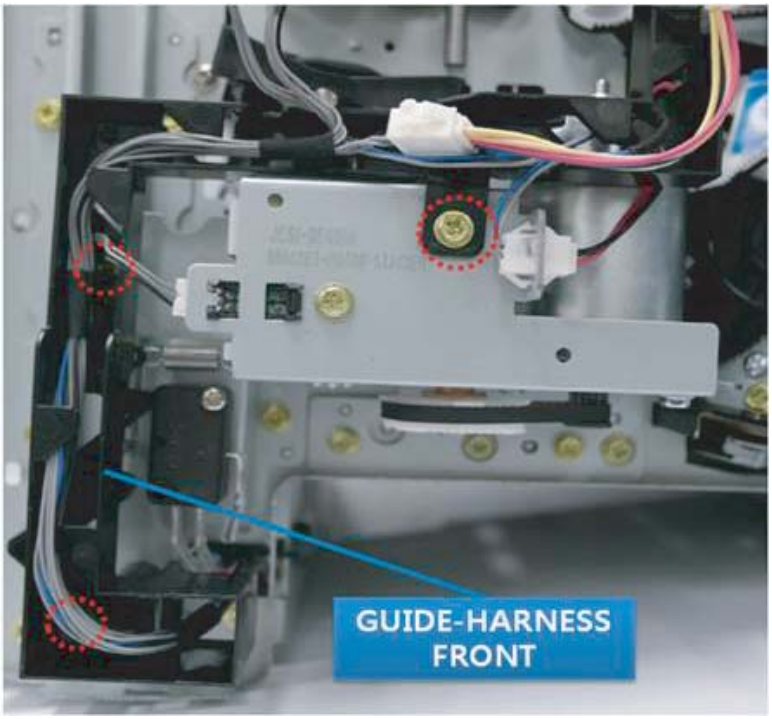
NOTE: Move the wire harness out of the guide to access one screw.

Figure 8-183 Release the motor paddle sub assembly



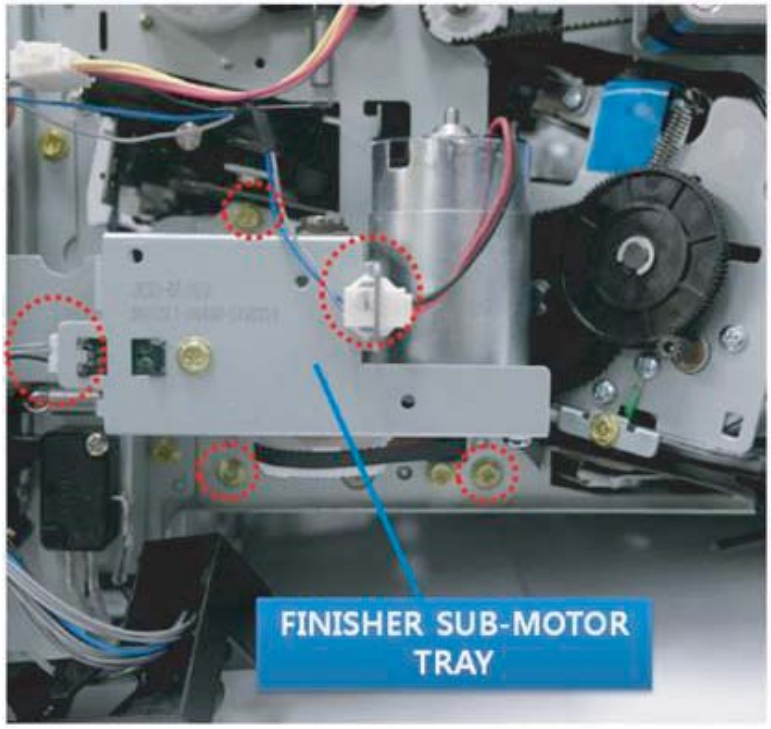
8. Remove three screws, release the wire harness from the guide, and then remove the guide harness front.

Figure 8-184 Remove the guide harness front



9. Remove three screws, disconnect two connectors, and then release the finisher sub-motor tray.

Figure 8-185 Release the finisher sub-motor tray

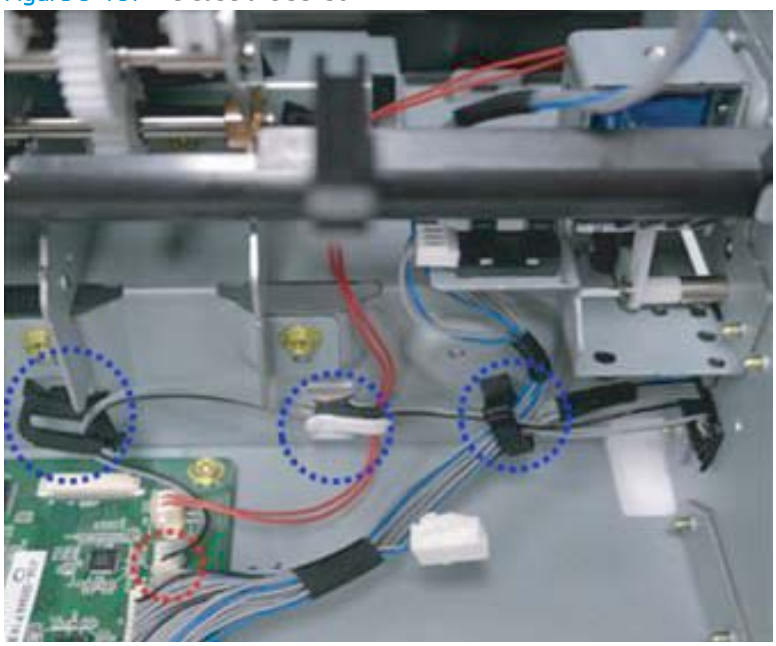


10. Remove one screw.

Figure 8-186 Remove one screw

11. Open three clamps, disconnect the connector, and then release the switch.

Figure 8-187 Release the sensor



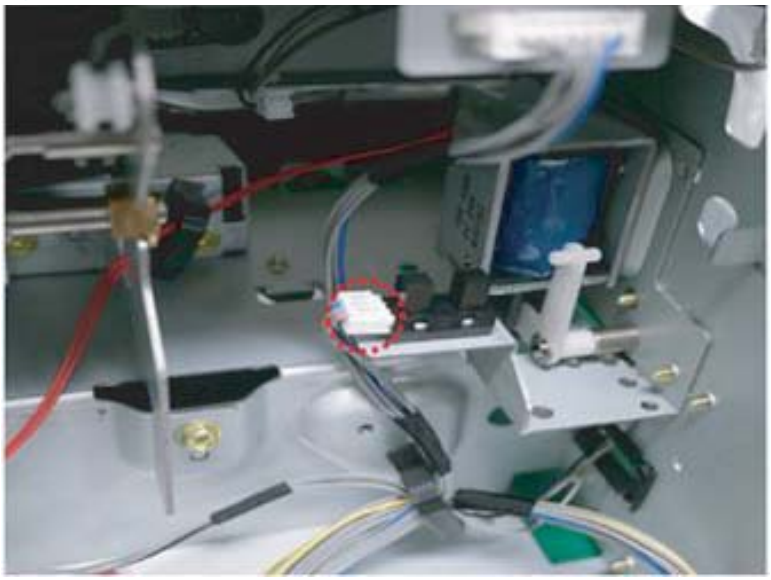
12. Do the following:

    a. Disconnect the sensor.

    b. Remove the adhesive strip from below the sensor.

    c. Remove the stack position sensor.

Figure 8-188 Remove the sensor



Paper Holding Lever Solenoid

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the paper holding lever solenoid

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Paper Holding Lever Solenoid assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Paper Holding Lever Solenoid assembly part number
Paper Holding Lever Solenoid assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the paper holding lever solenoid

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

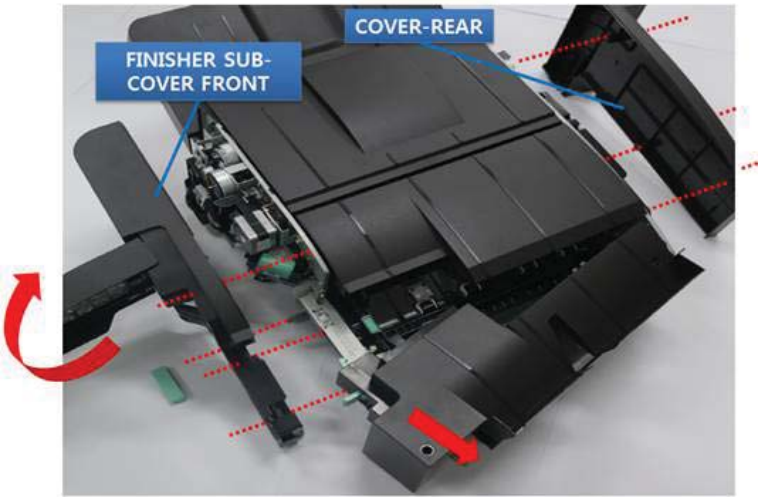
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub cover front.

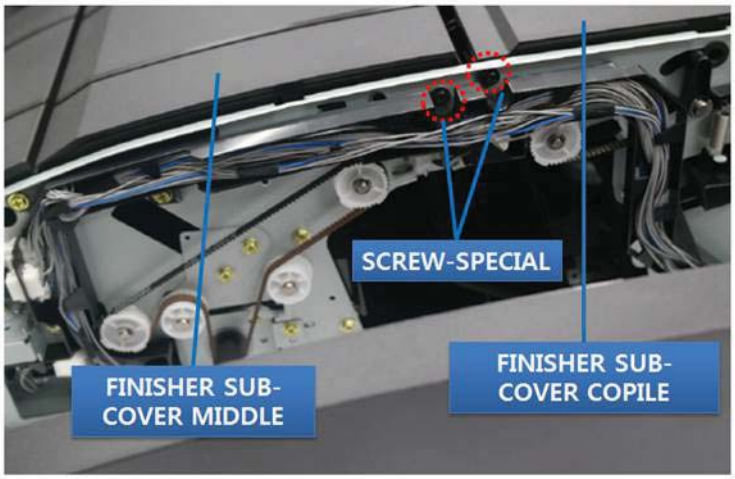
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-189 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)

2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 8-190 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)

3. Remove four screws, and then remove the tray.

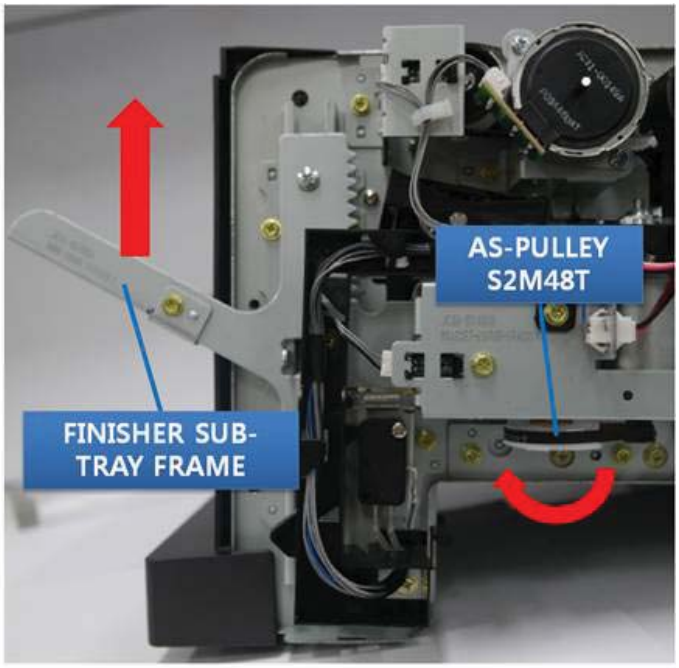
Figure 8-191 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15)

4. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.

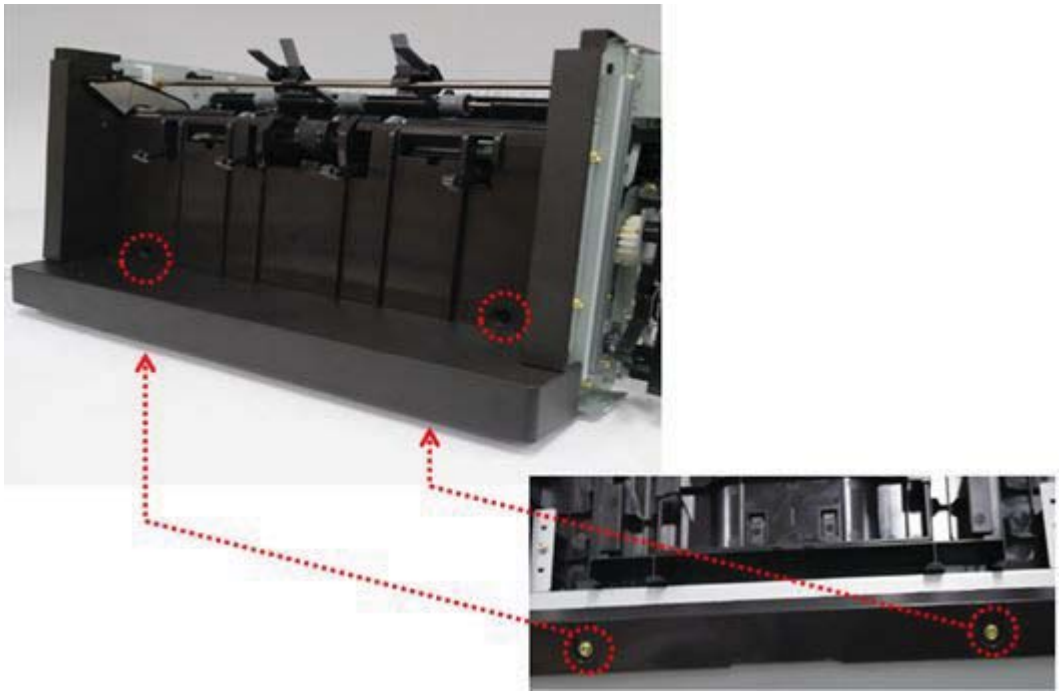
NOTE: Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.

Figure 8-192 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15)



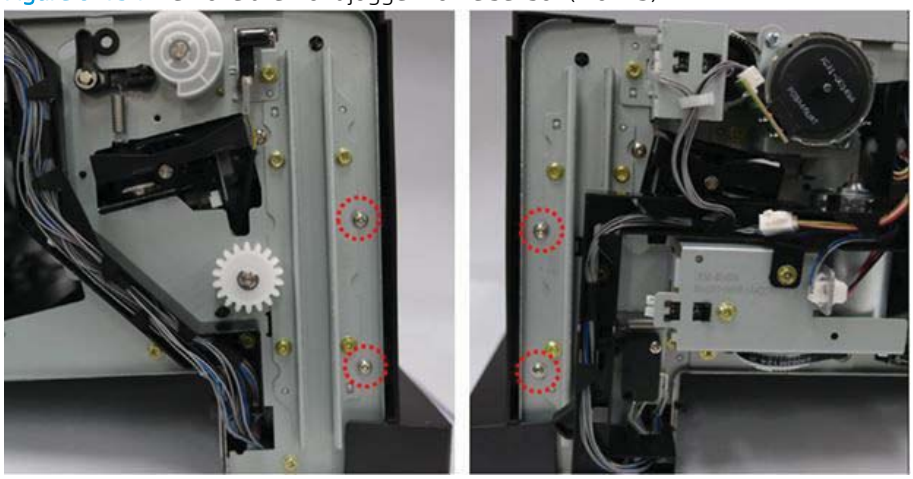
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 8-193 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15)



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

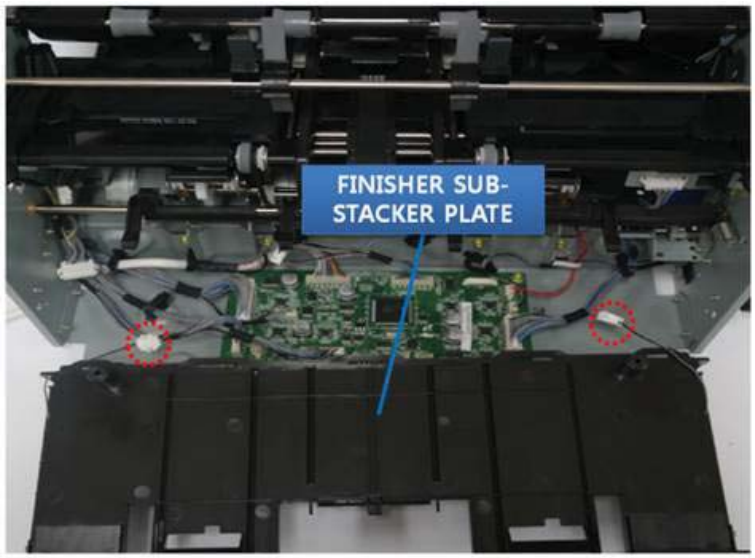
Figure 8-194 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15)



7. Remove two screws and then remove lower PBA cover.

8. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 8-195 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 15)



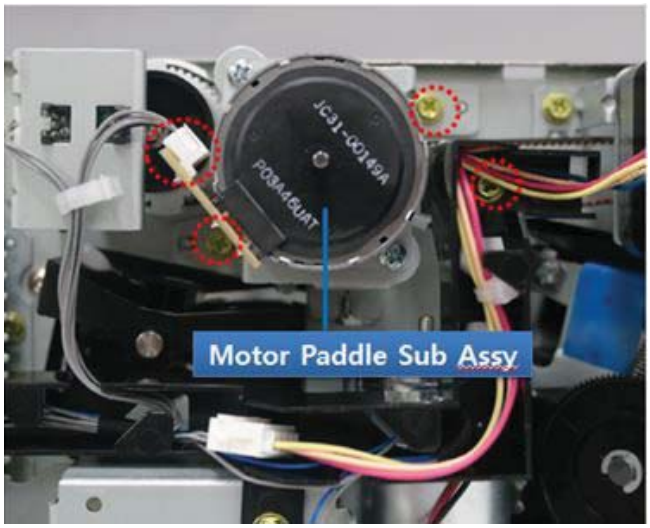
9. Remove one screw and then remove the cable guide. Unplug the connector, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

Figure 8-196 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 15)

10. Remove three screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the motor paddle sub assembly.

NOTE: Move cable out of the wiring guide to access the third screw.

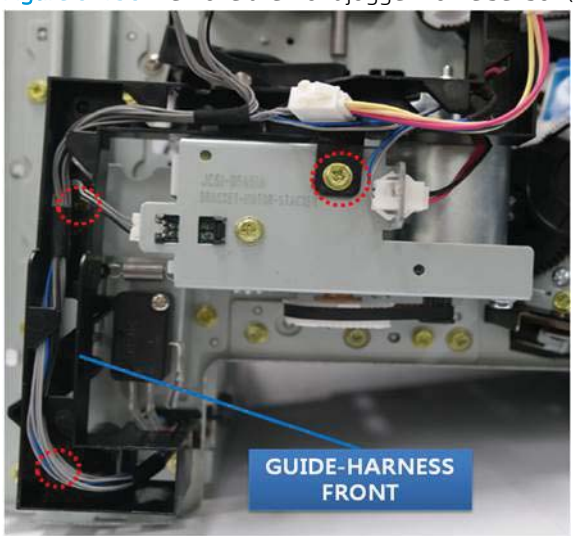
Figure 8-197 Remove the front jogger home sensor (7 of 15)



11. Remove the wire harness from the harness guide, remove three screws, and then remove the guide-harness front.

NOTE: The wire harness will hang loosely after the harness guide is removed.

Figure 8-198 Remove the front jogger home sensor (8 of 15)

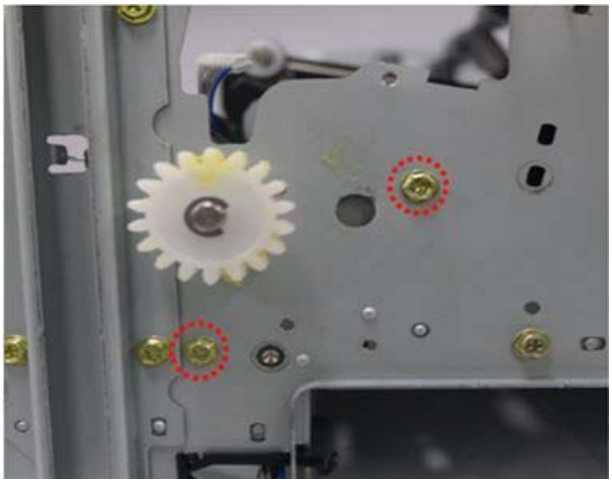


12. Remove one screw, and then remove stack lower limit switch bracket.

Figure 8-199 Remove the paper holding lever solenoid (1 of 4)

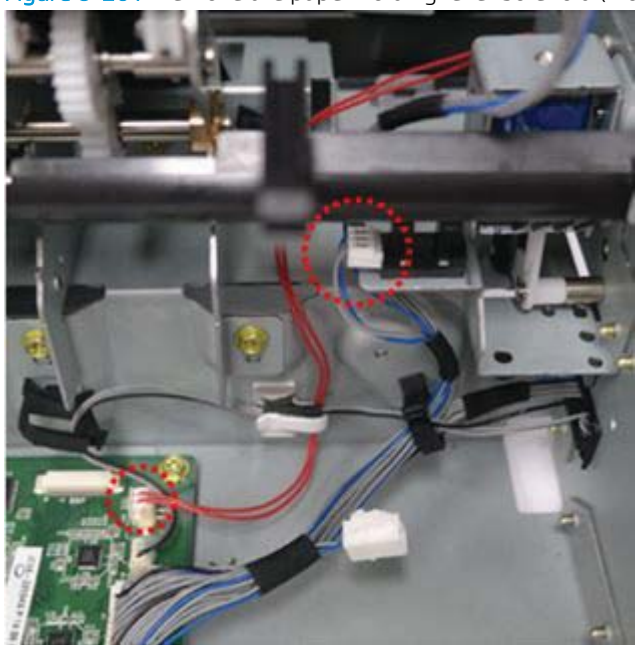
13. Remove the second screw.

Figure 8-200 Remove the paper holding lever solenoid (1 of 4)



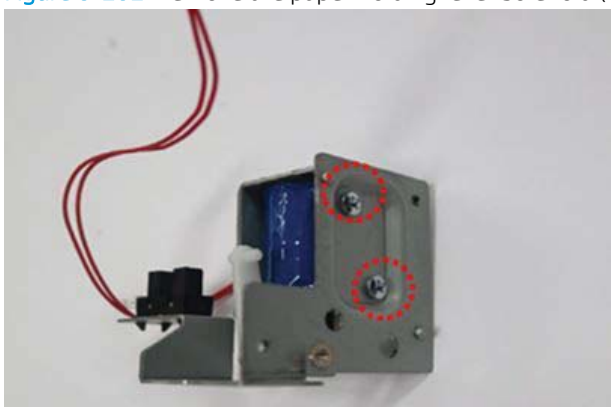
14. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 8-201 Remove the paper holding lever solenoid (1 of 4)



15. Remove two screws on the solenoid bracket.

Figure 8-202 Remove the paper holding lever solenoid (1 of 4)



16. Disconnect the connector from the main board.
17. Remove the solenoid assembly.

Paper Support Motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the stack position sensor
- Step 2: Remove the paper support motor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Paper Support Motor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Paper Support Motor assembly part number
Paper Support Motor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

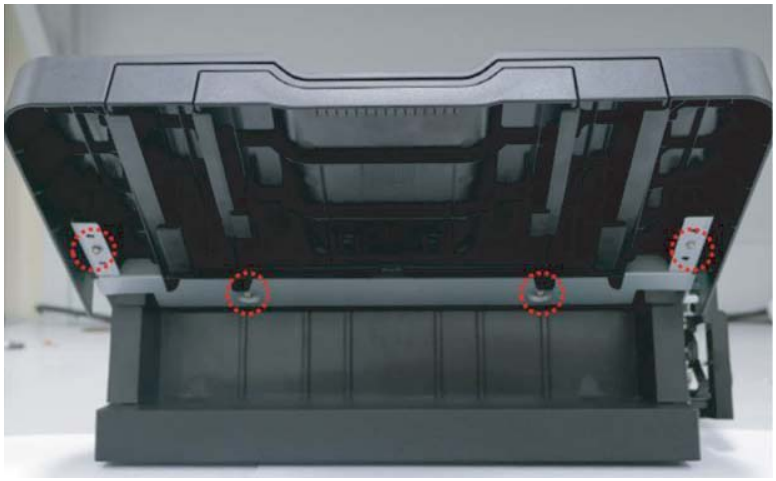
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the stack position sensor

1. Remove four screws, and then, remove the tray.

Figure 8-203 Remove the tray

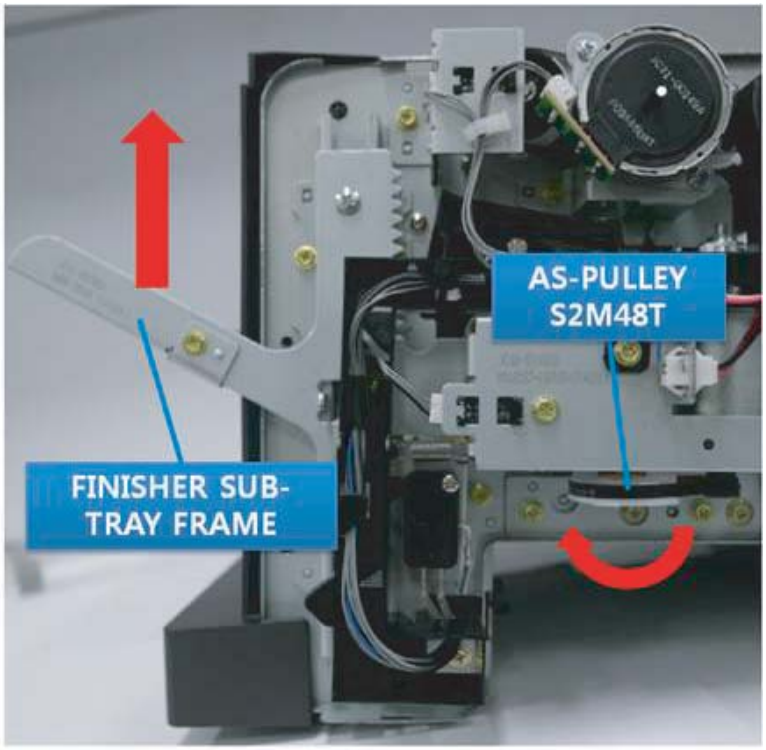


2. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the device while assembling.

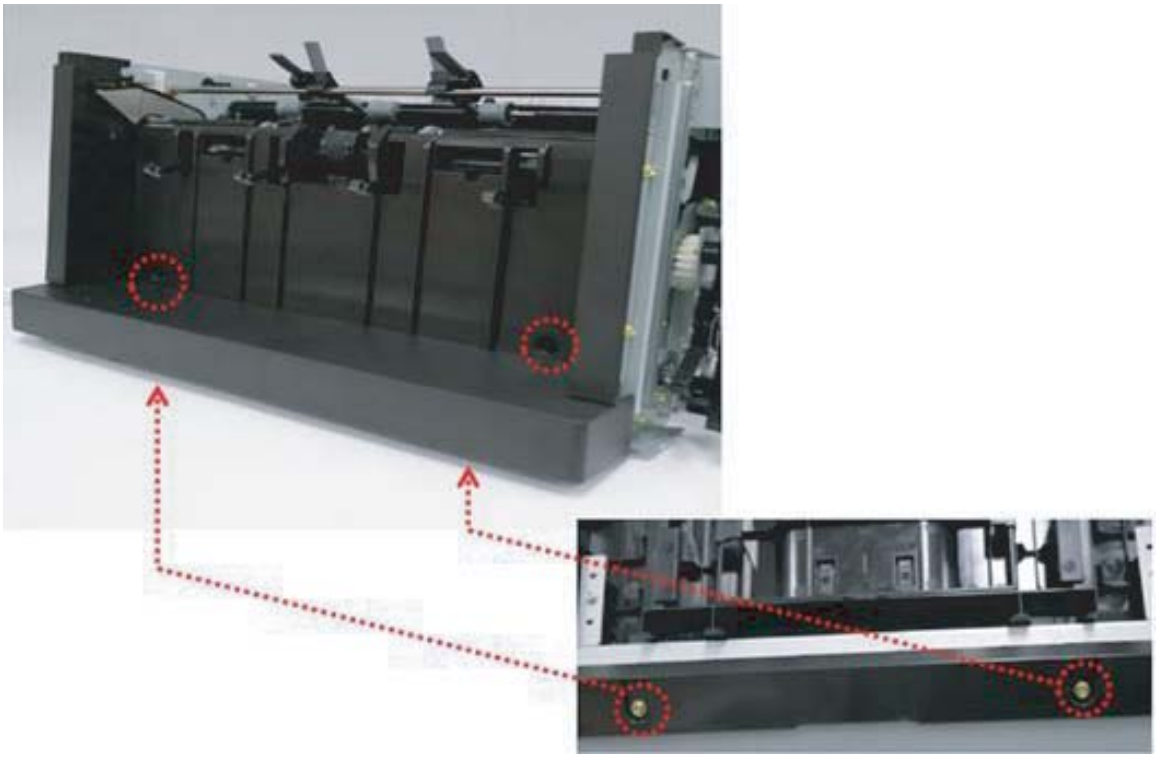
Hold the arms, and then drop the first wheel into the channel (on both sides). Simultaneously let the second wheel rest on the channel (on both sides). Gently squeeze wheels into the channel. The rack and pinion might need to be engaged several times to achieve a level assembly.

Figure 8-204 Remove the sub-tray



3. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

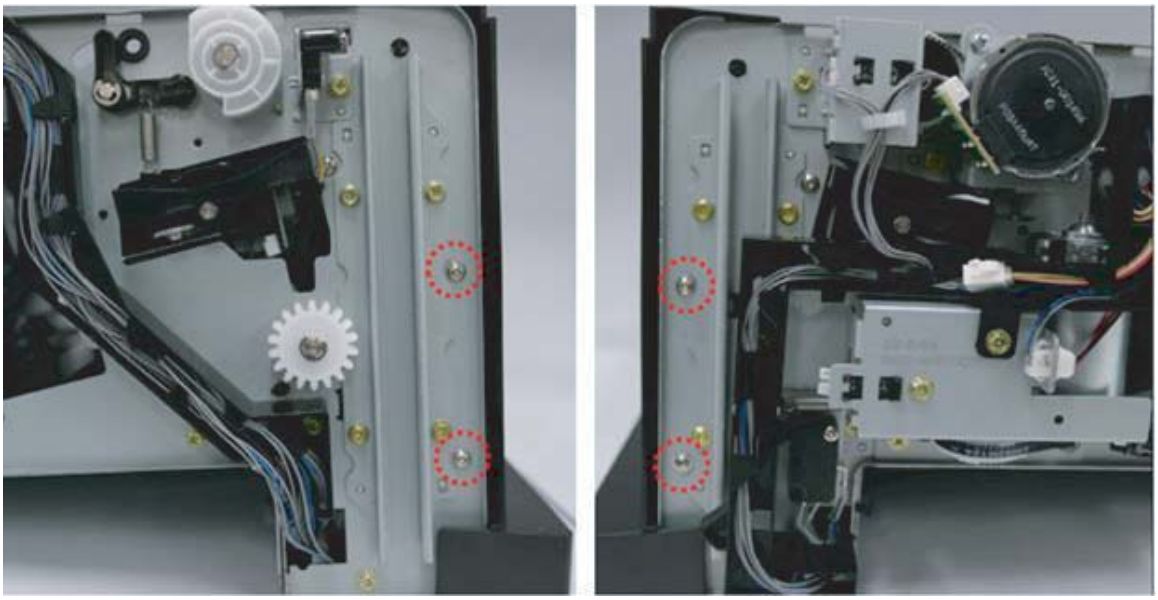
Figure 8-205 Remove the PBA



4. Remove four screws.

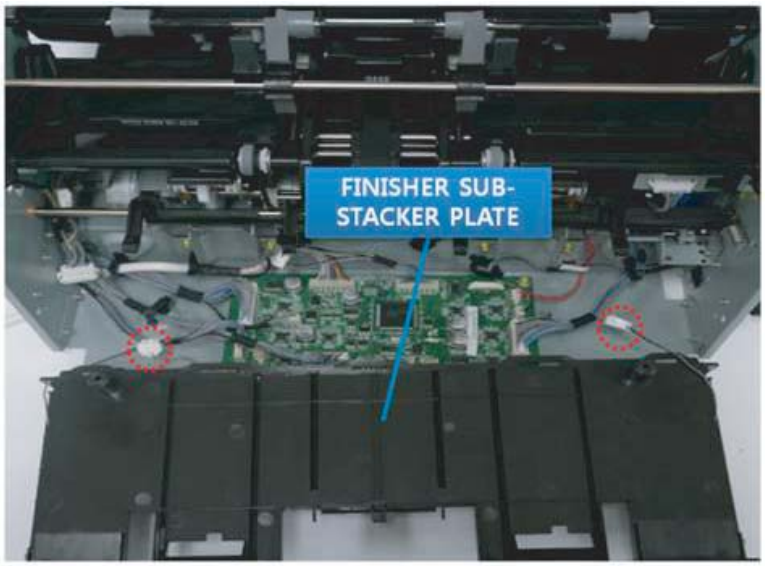
NOTE: Also, remove two screws, and then remove the lower PBA cover (not shown).

Figure 8-206 Remove the PBA



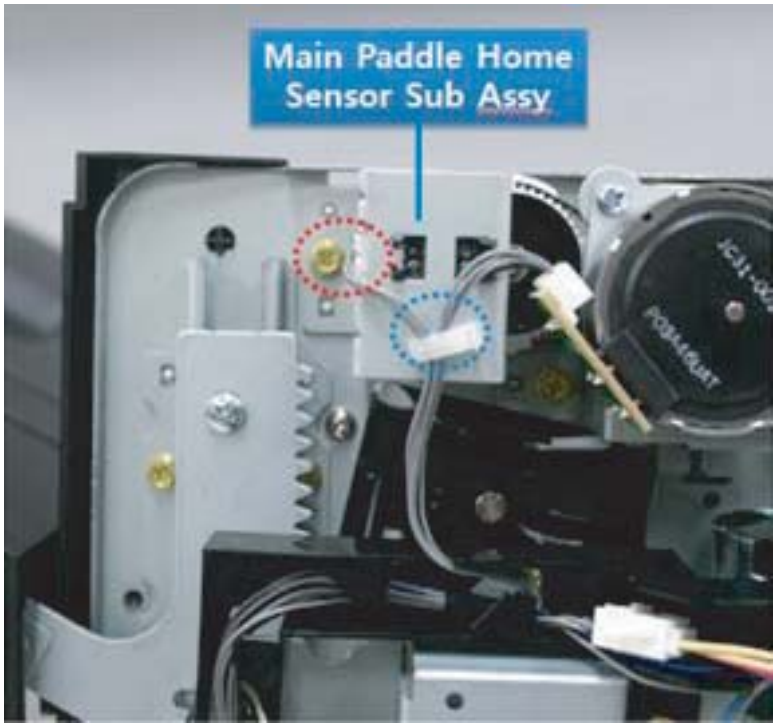
5. Disconnect two in-line connectors, and then, remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 8-207 Remove the sub-stacker plate



6. Remove one screw, disconnect the connector, release the cable guide, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

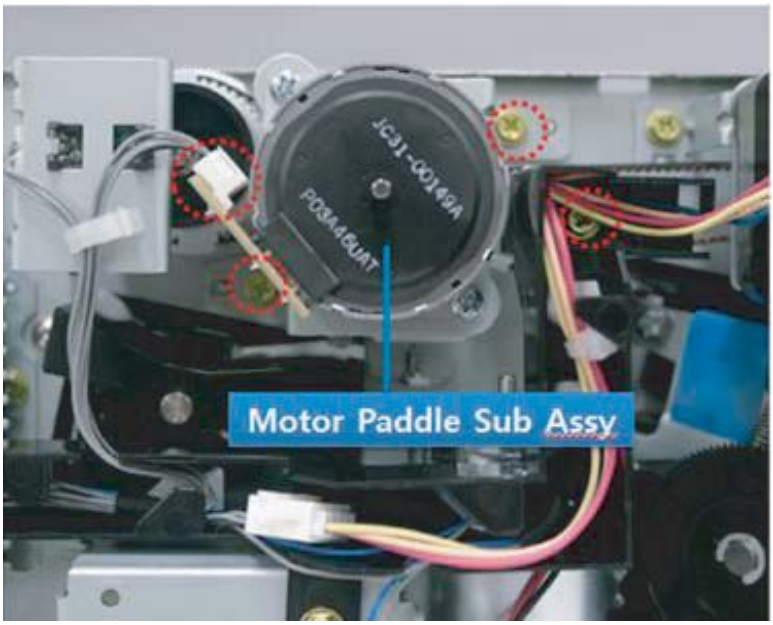
Figure 8-208 Remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly



7. Remove three screws, disconnect the connector, and then release the motor paddle sub assembly.

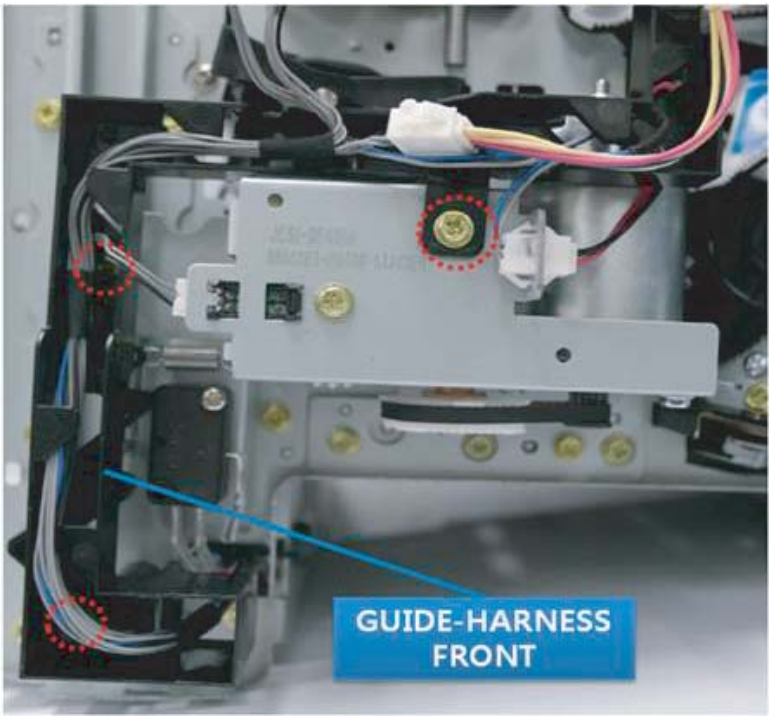
NOTE: Move the wire harness out of the guide to access one screw.

Figure 8-209 Release the motor paddle sub assembly



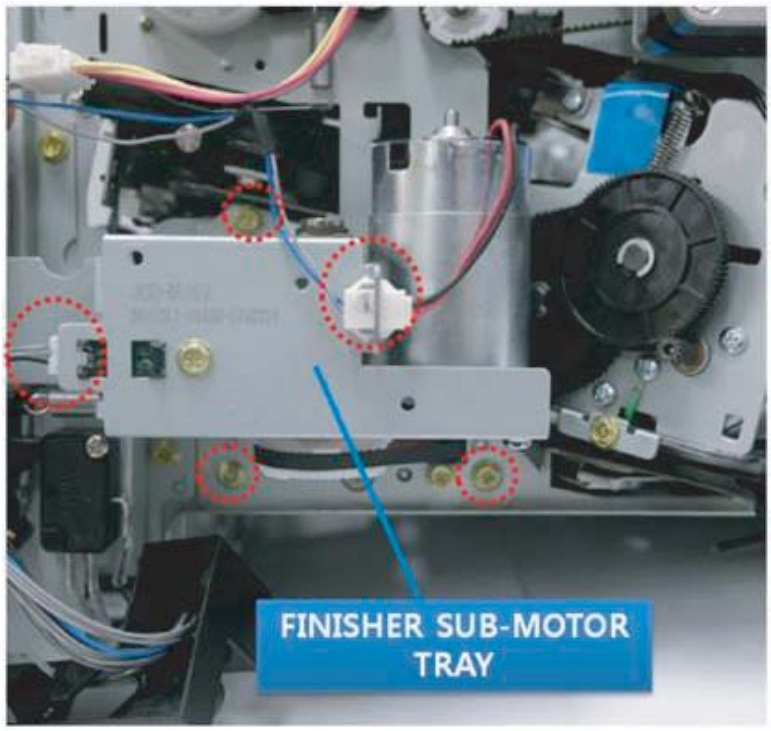
8. Remove three screws, release the wire harness from the guide, and then remove the guide harness front.

Figure 8-210 Remove the guide harness front



9. Remove three screws, disconnect two connectors, and then release the finisher sub-motor tray.

Figure 8-211 Release the finisher sub-motor tray

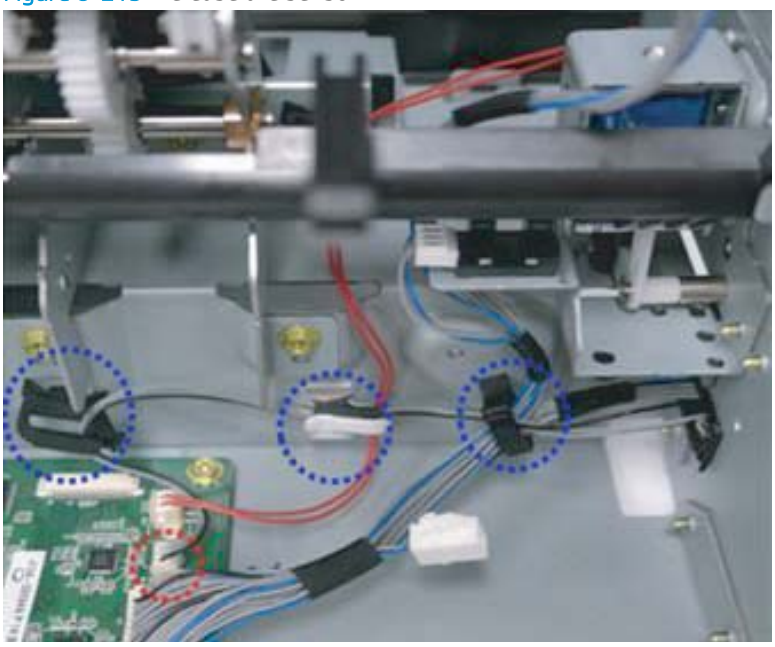


10. Remove one screw.

Figure 8-212 Remove one screw

11. Open three clamps, disconnect the connector, and then release the switch.

Figure 8-213 Release the sensor



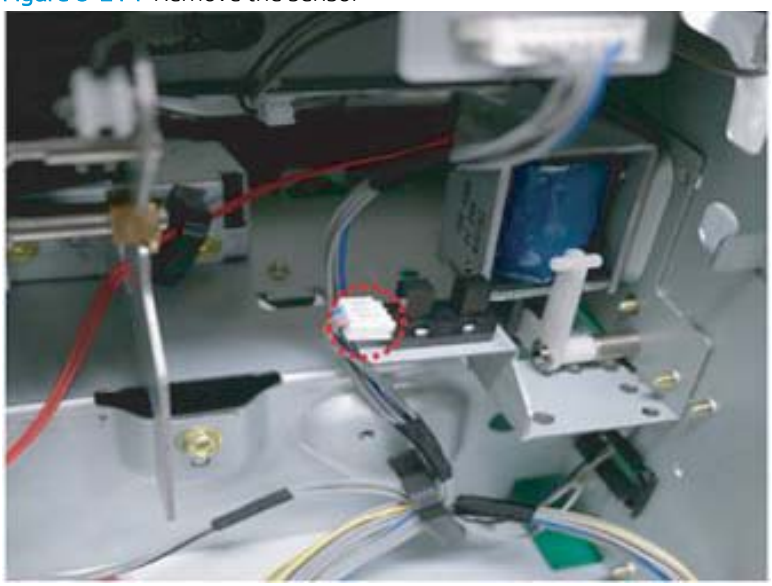
12. Do the following:

    a. Disconnect the sensor.

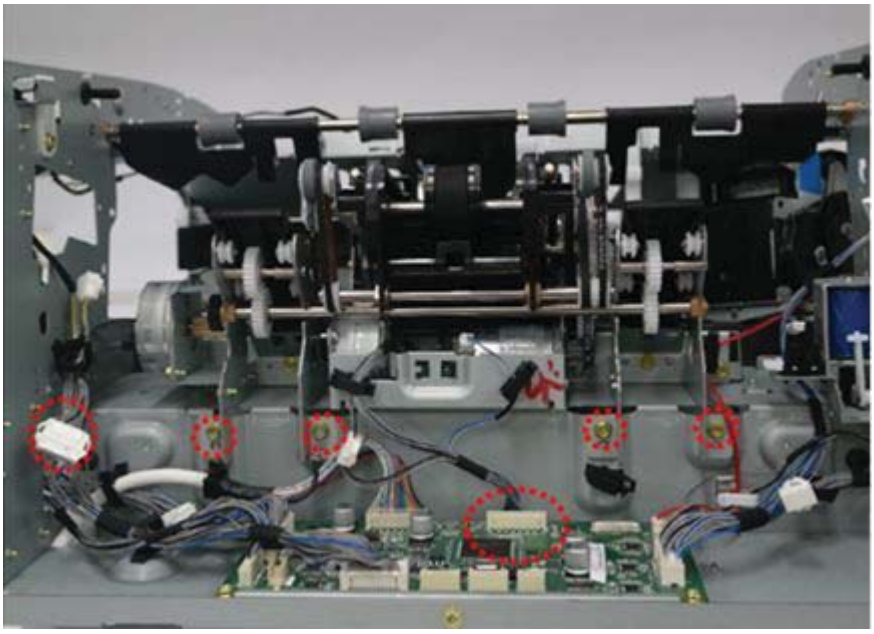
    b. Remove the adhesive strip from below the sensor.

    c. Remove the stack position sensor.

Figure 8-214 Remove the sensor



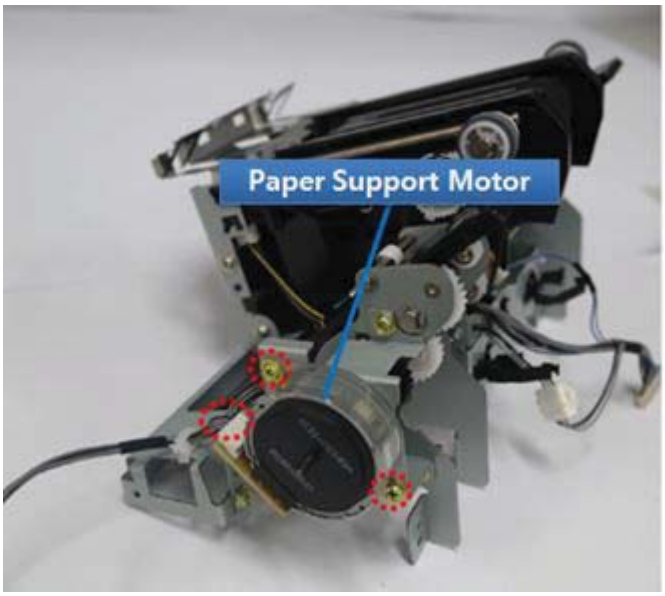
Step 2: Remove the paper support motor



1. Disconnect one connector.
2. Remove four screws.
3. Remove the cables from their restraints at the front of the ejector.
4. Disconnect the motor and the sensor cable at the rear

5. Remove the cables from the cable restraints at the rear.

NOTE: The black paddle is inside the chrome bracket at rear of ejector



6. Remove the ejector.

Paper Support Home Sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers
- Step 2: Remove the stack position sensor
- Step 3: Remove the paper support home sensor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Paper Support Home Sensor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Paper Support Home Sensor assembly part number
Paper Support Home Sensor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

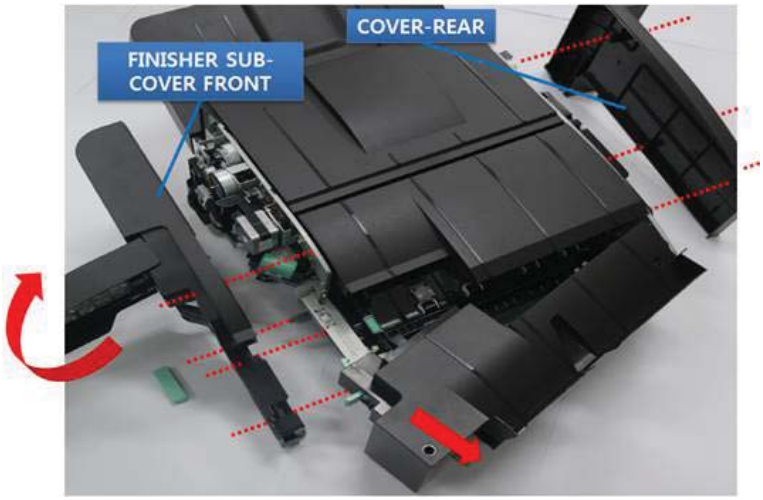
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub-cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub-cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub-cover front.

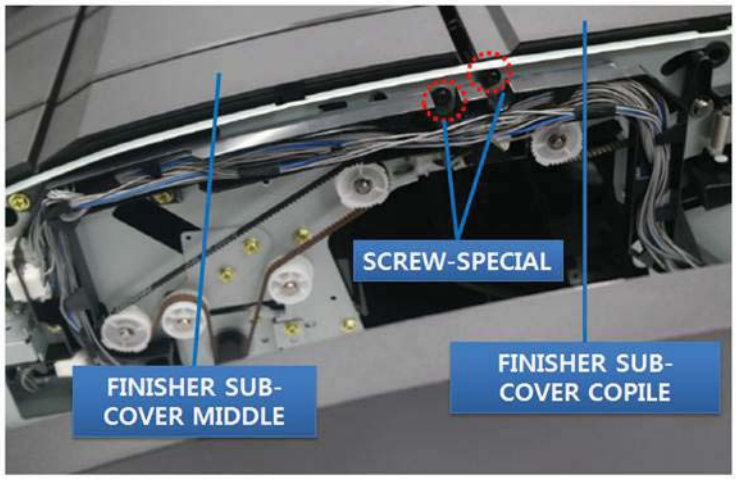
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-215 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 8-216 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)



3. On the front of the printer remove the e-ring and bushing. On the rear of the printer remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, spring (slightly hidden from view), and then remove the guide reverse and roller feed.

Figure 8-217 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7)

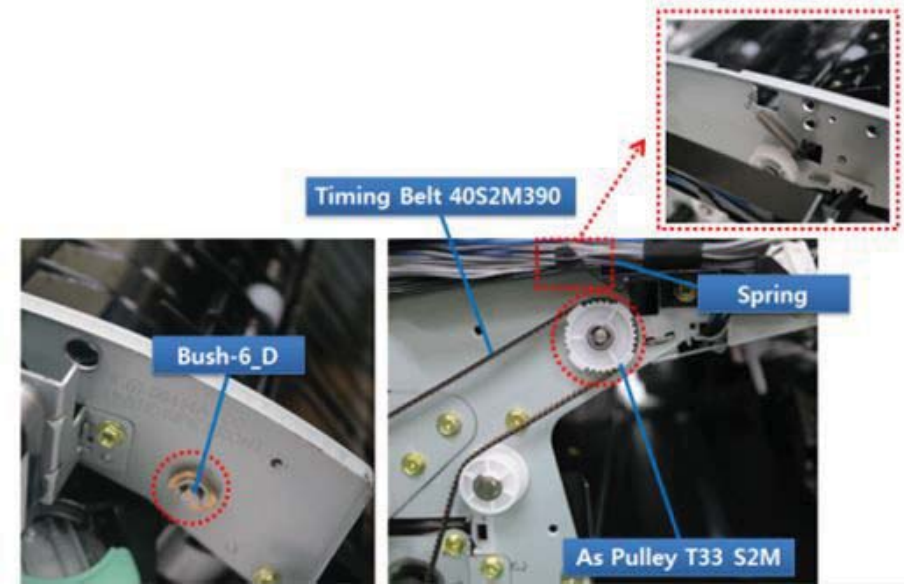
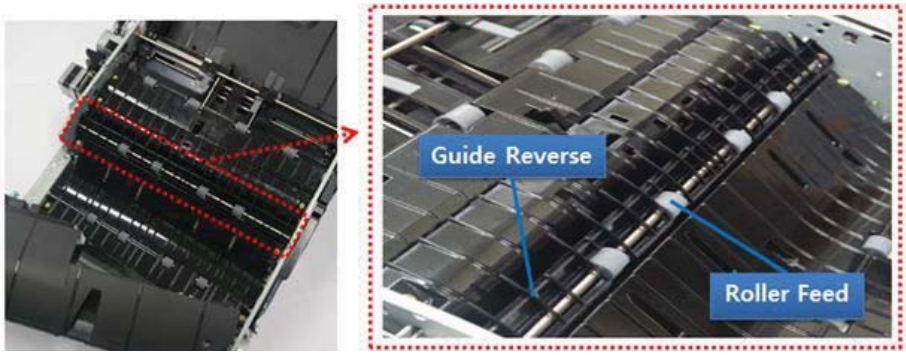


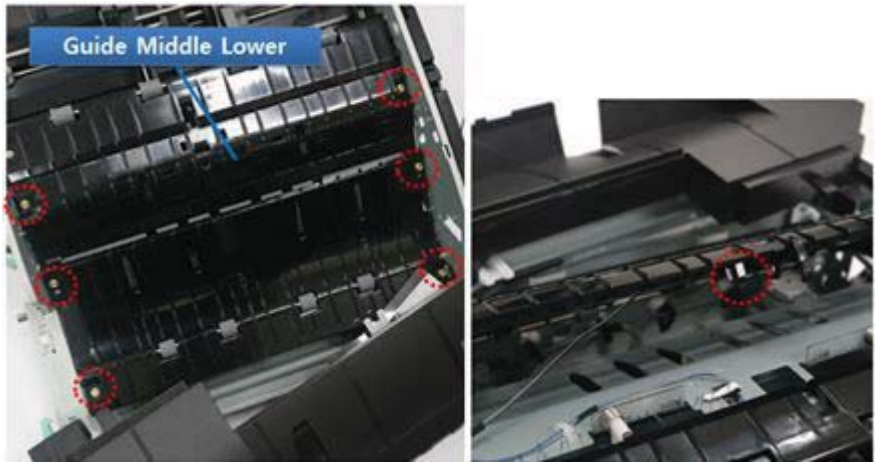
Figure 8-218 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7)



4. Remove six screws.

NOTE: Be careful not to damage the sensor.

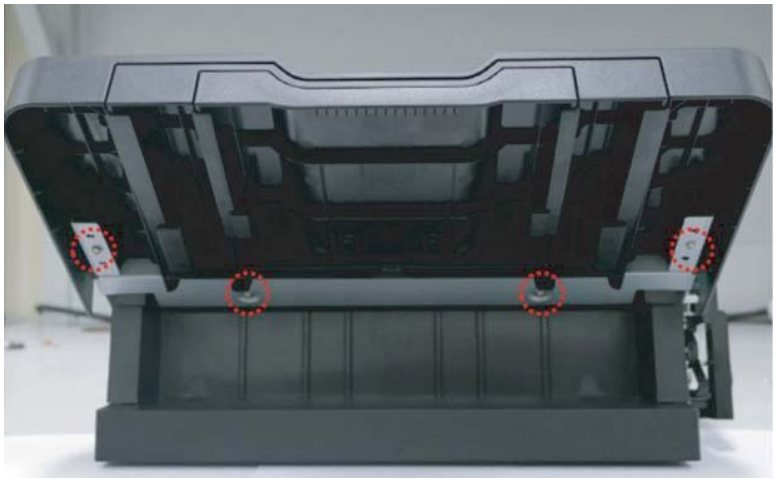
Figure 8-219 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7)



Step 2: Remove the stack position sensor

1. Remove four screws, and then, remove the tray.

Figure 8-220 Remove the tray

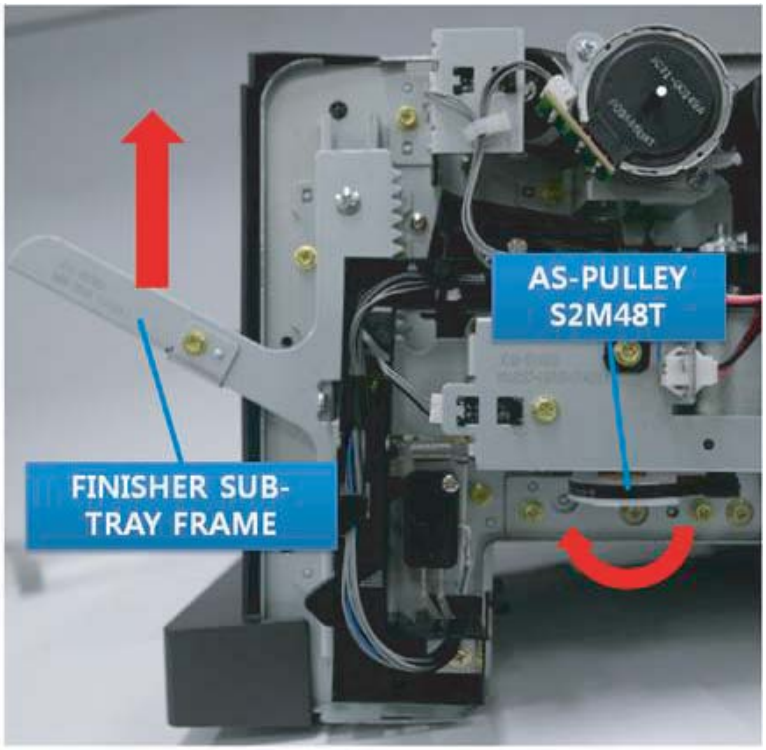


2. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the device while assembling.

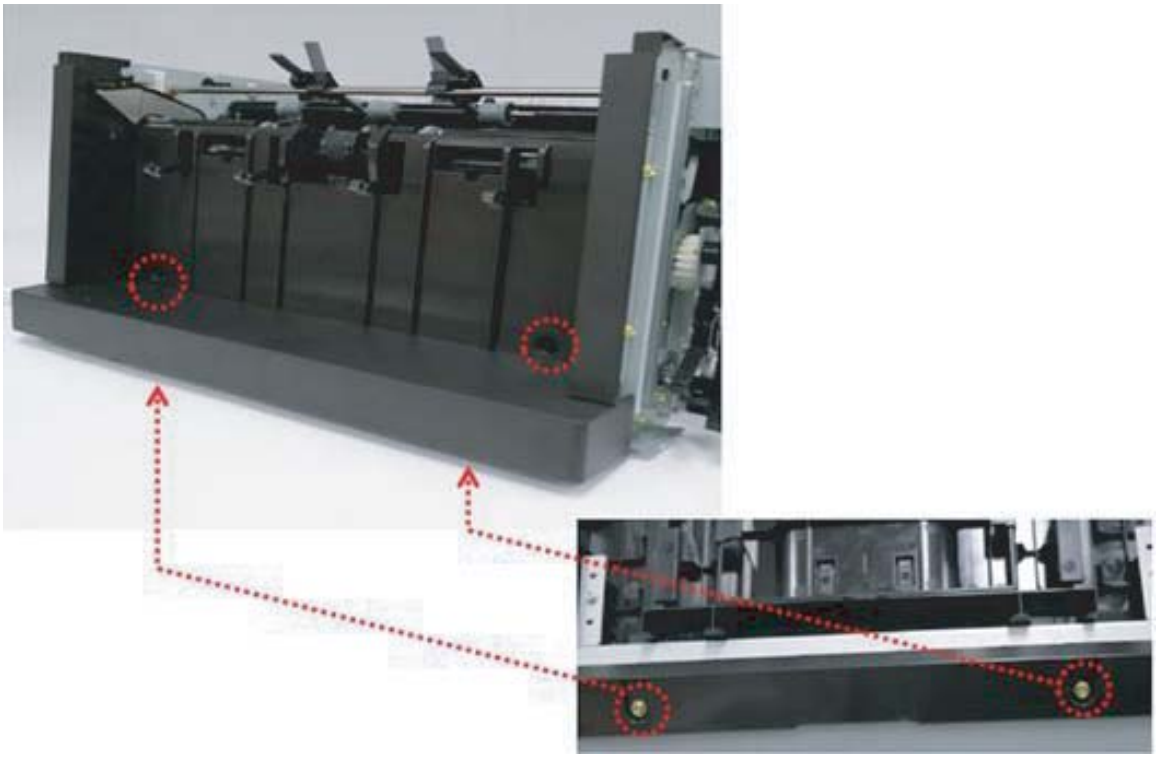
Hold the arms, and then drop the first wheel into the channel (on both sides). Simultaneously let the second wheel rest on the channel (on both sides). Gently squeeze wheels into the channel. The rack and pinion might need to be engaged several times to achieve a level assembly.

Figure 8-221 Remove the sub-tray



3. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

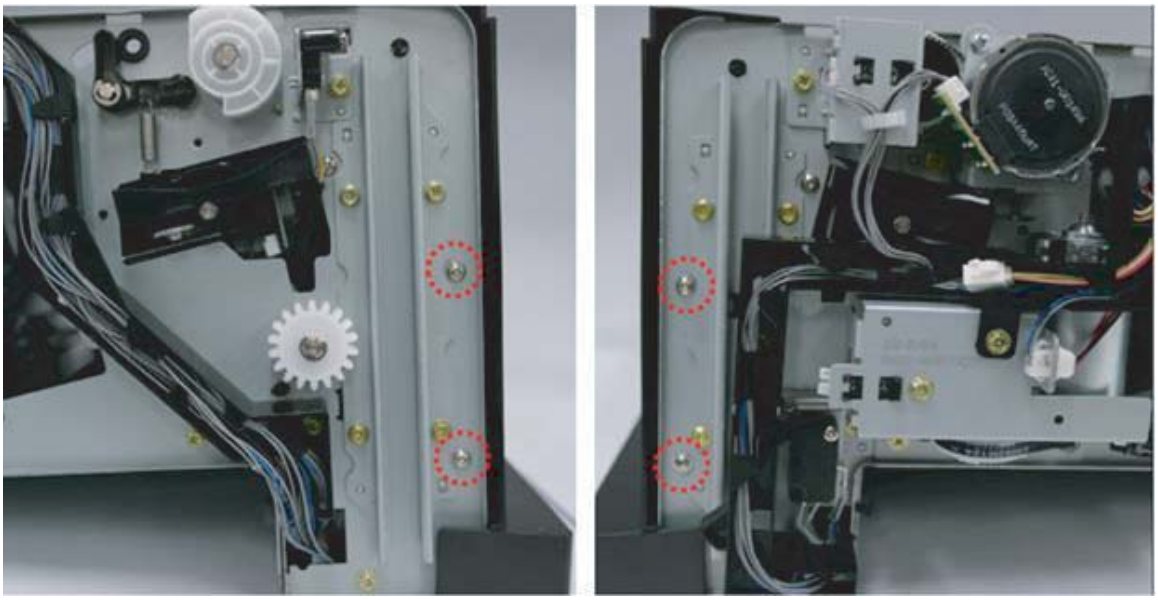
Figure 8-222 Remove the PBA



4. Remove four screws.

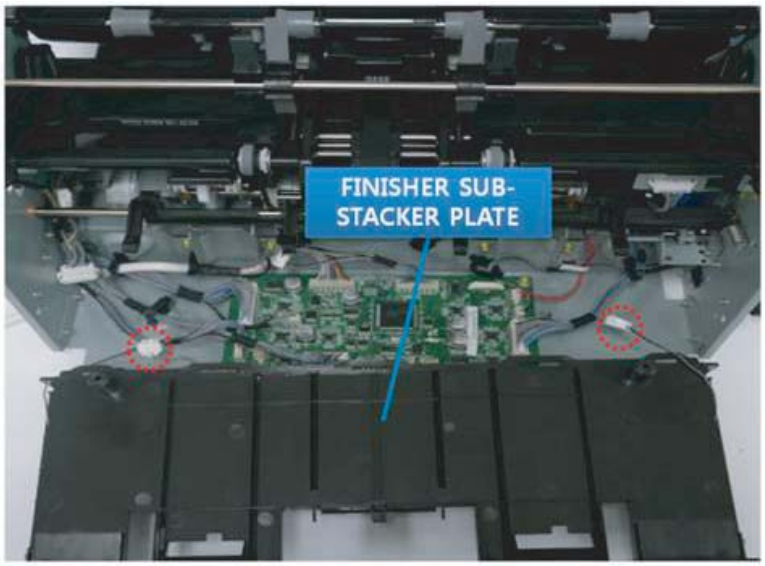
NOTE: Also, remove two screws, and then remove the lower PBA cover (not shown).

Figure 8-223 Remove the PBA



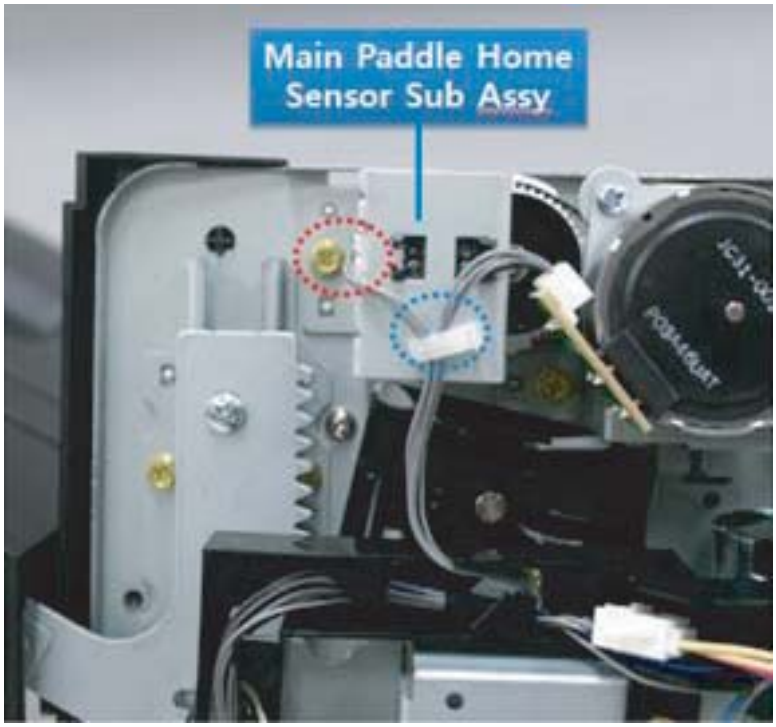
5. Disconnect two in-line connectors, and then, remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 8-224 Remove the sub-stacker plate



6. Remove one screw, disconnect the connector, release the cable guide, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

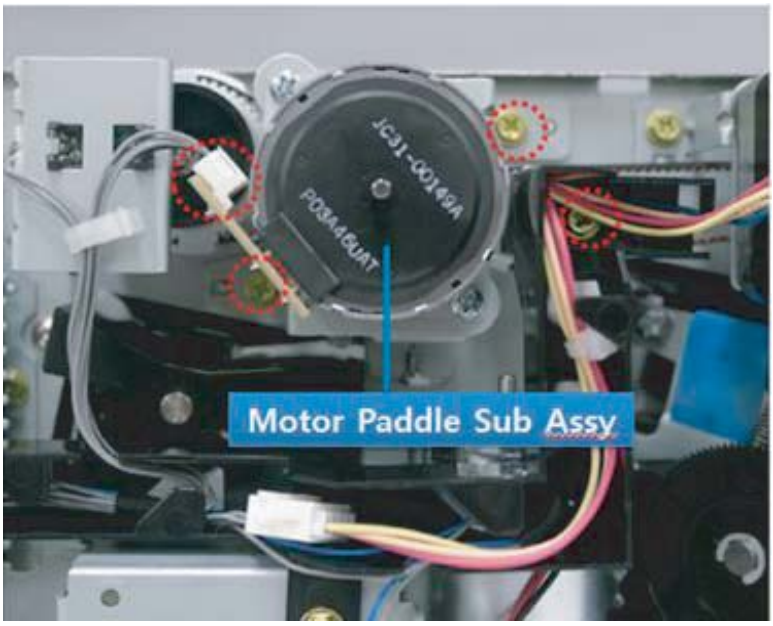
Figure 8-225 Remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly



7. Remove three screws, disconnect the connector, and then release the motor paddle sub assembly.

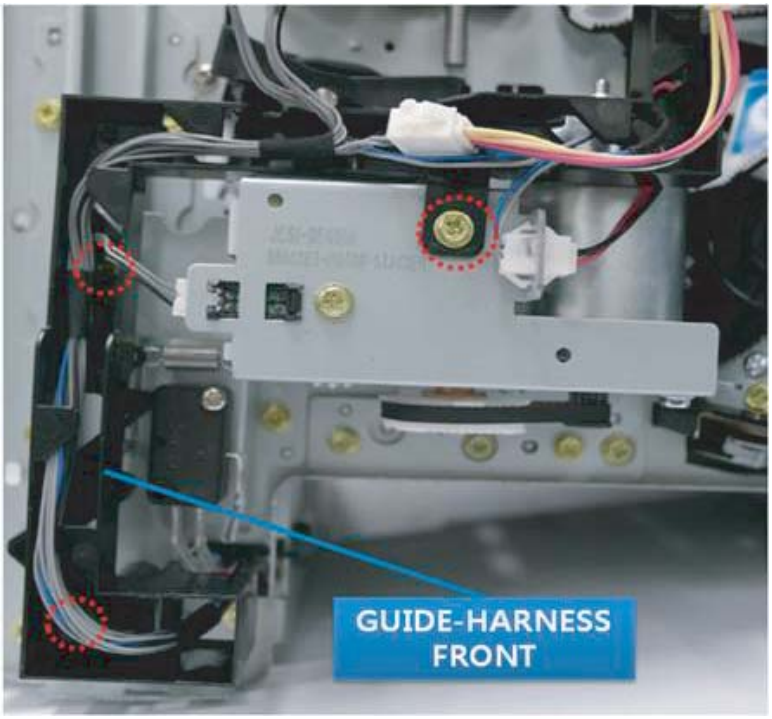
NOTE: Move the wire harness out of the guide to access one screw.

Figure 8-226 Release the motor paddle sub assembly



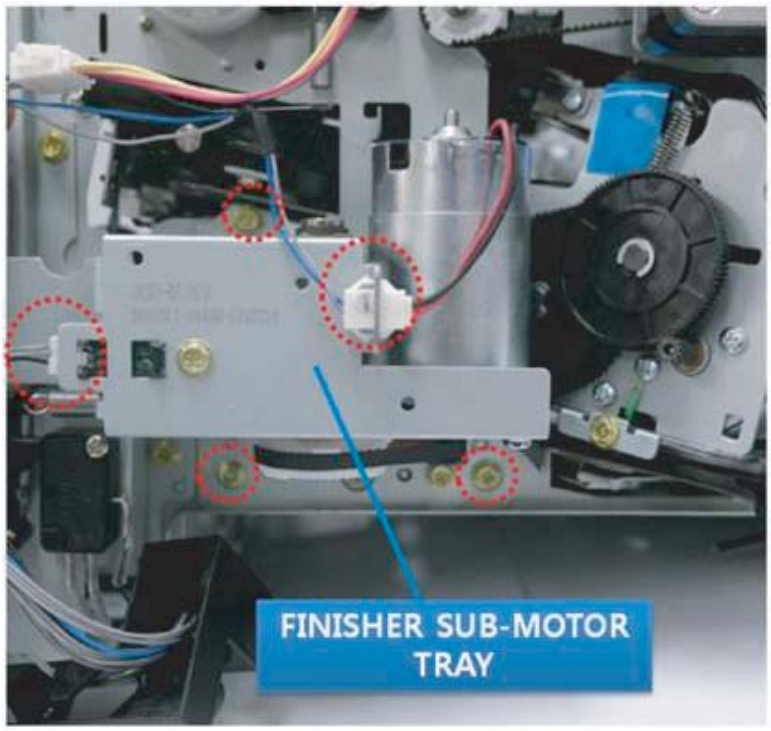
8. Remove three screws, release the wire harness from the guide, and then remove the guide harness front.

Figure 8-227 Remove the guide harness front



9. Remove three screws, disconnect two connectors, and then release the finisher sub-motor tray.

Figure 8-228 Release the finisher sub-motor tray

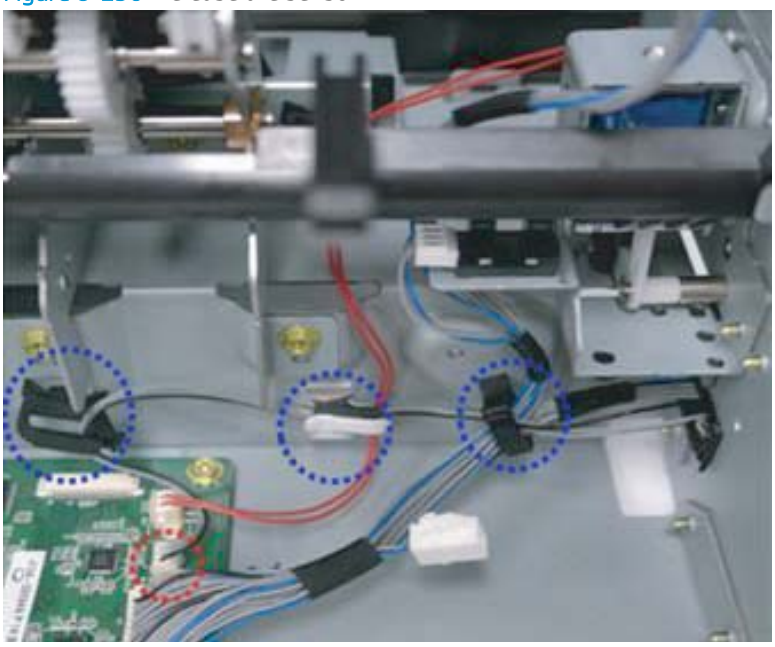


10. Remove one screw.

Figure 8-229 Remove one screw

11. Open three clamps, disconnect the connector, and then release the switch.

Figure 8-230 Release the sensor



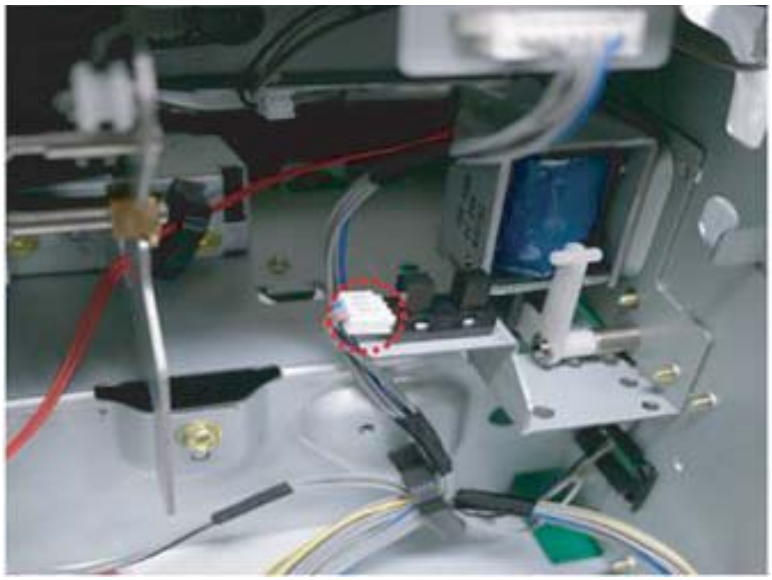
12. Do the following:

    a. Disconnect the sensor.

    b. Remove the adhesive strip from below the sensor.

    c. Remove the stack position sensor.

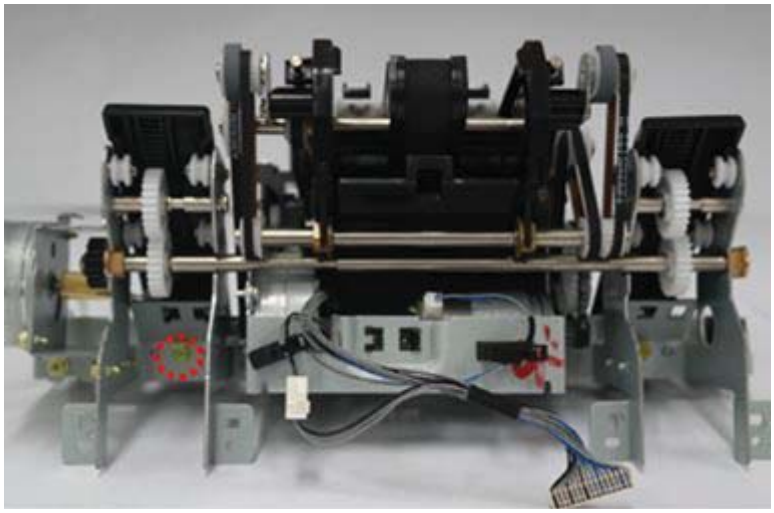
Figure 8-231 Remove the sensor



Step 3: Remove the paper support home sensor

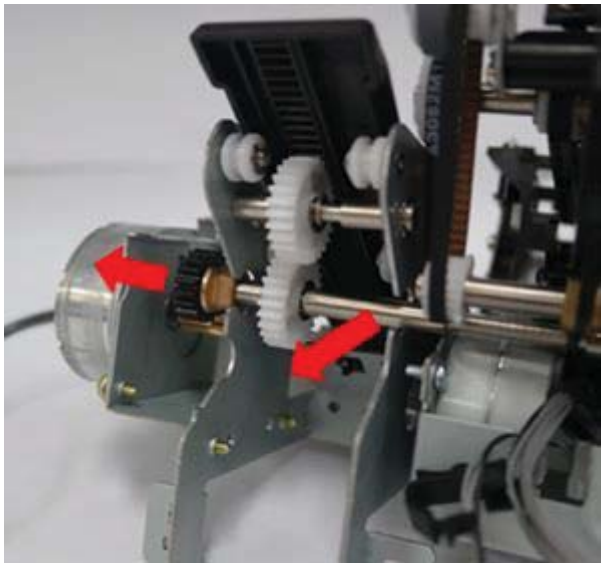
1. Disconnect one connector.
2. Remove one screw.

Figure 8-232 Remove the paper support home sensor (1 of 4)



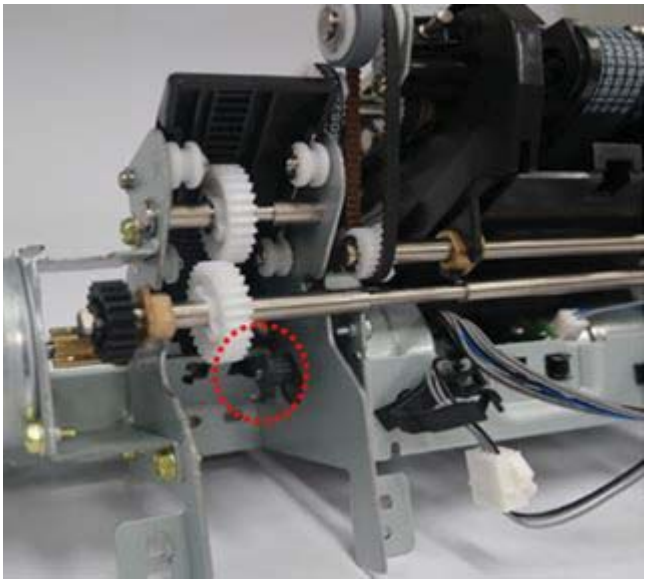
3. Remove the shaft while pulling the bushing in the direction of the arrow.

Figure 8-233 Remove the paper support home sensor (2 of 4)



4. Remove the paper support with attention for pinion.

Figure 8-234 Remove the paper support home sensor (3 of 4)



5. Remove the sensor from the paper support.

Figure 8-235 Remove the paper support home sensor (4 of 4)

Ejector Motor assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers
- Step 2: Remove the stack position sensor
- Step 3: Remove the paper ejector motor assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Ejector Motor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Ejector Motor assembly part number
Ejector Motor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

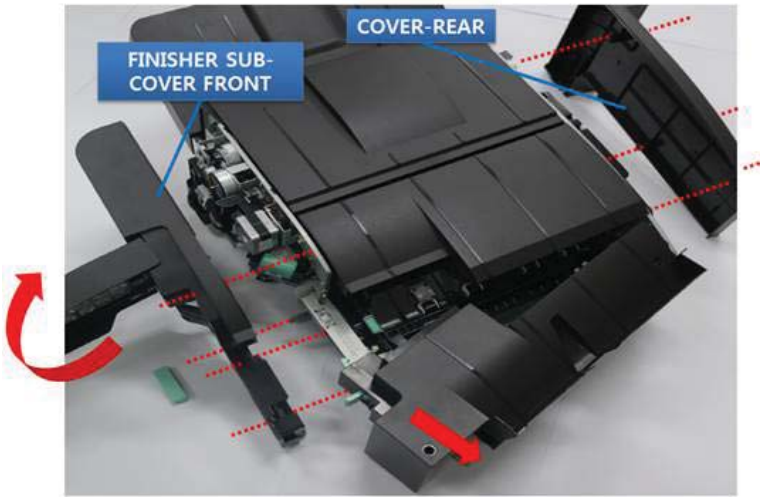
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub-cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub-cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub-cover front.

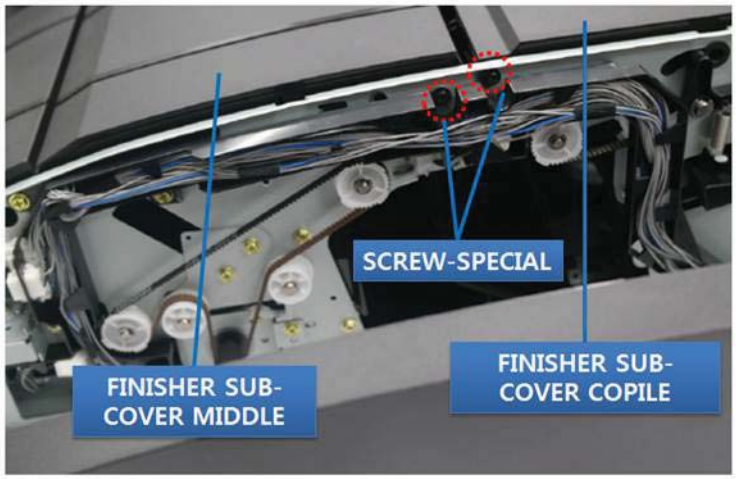
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-236 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 8-237 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)



3. On the front of the printer remove the e-ring and bushing. On the rear of the printer remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, spring (slightly hidden from view), and then remove the guide reverse and roller feed.

Figure 8-238 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7)

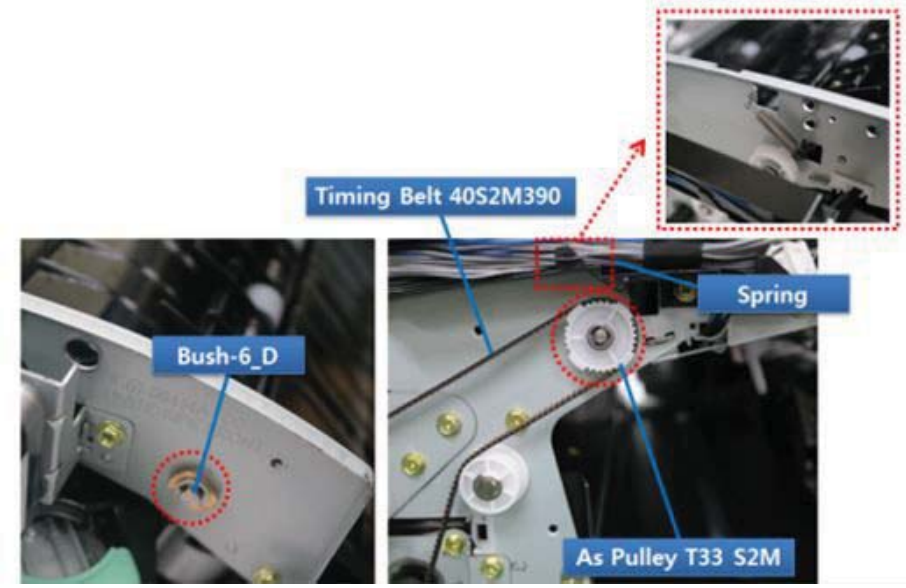
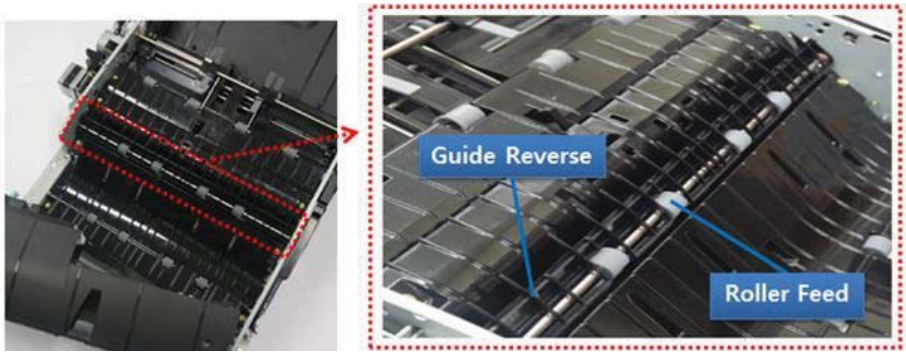


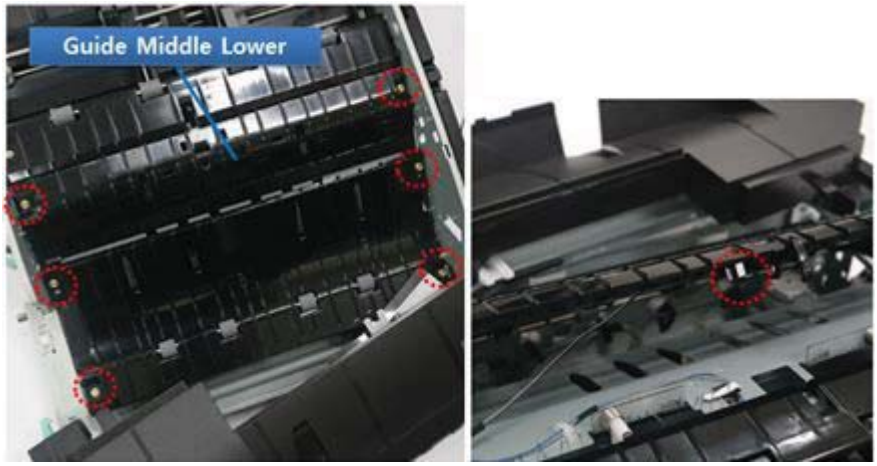
Figure 8-239 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7)



4. Remove six screws.

NOTE: Be careful not to damage the sensor.

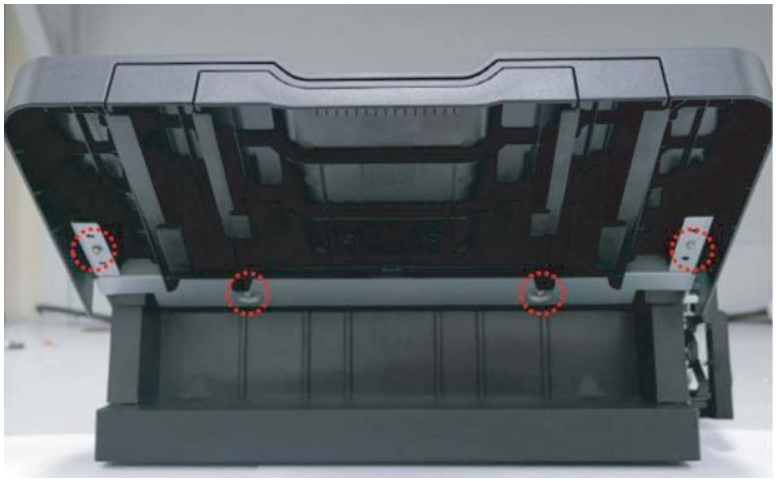
Figure 8-240 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7)



Step 2: Remove the stack position sensor

1. Remove four screws, and then, remove the tray.

Figure 8-241 Remove the tray

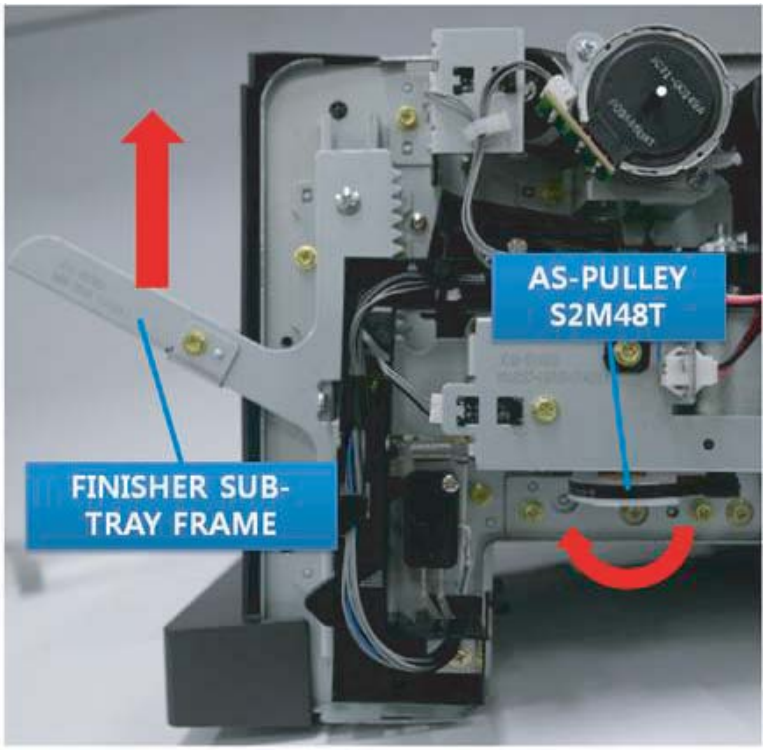


2. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the device while assembling.

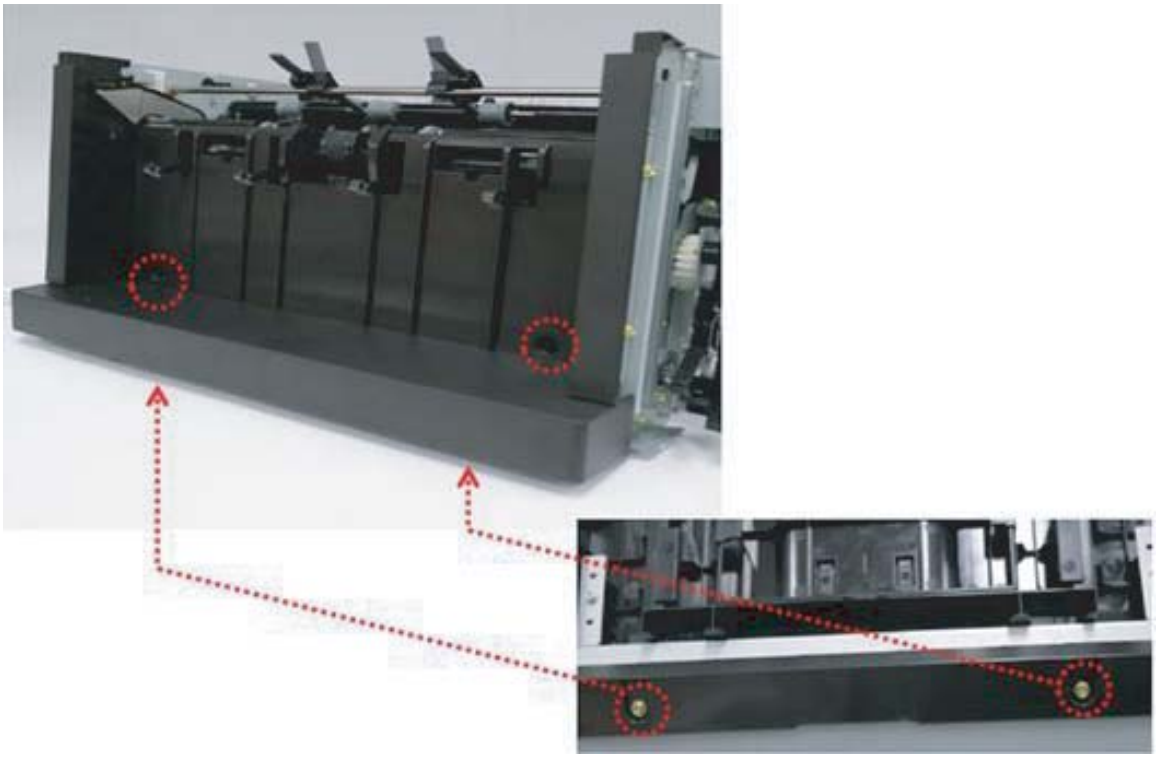
Hold the arms, and then drop the first wheel into the channel (on both sides). Simultaneously let the second wheel rest on the channel (on both sides). Gently squeeze wheels into the channel. The rack and pinion might need to be engaged several times to achieve a level assembly.

Figure 8-242 Remove the sub-tray



3. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

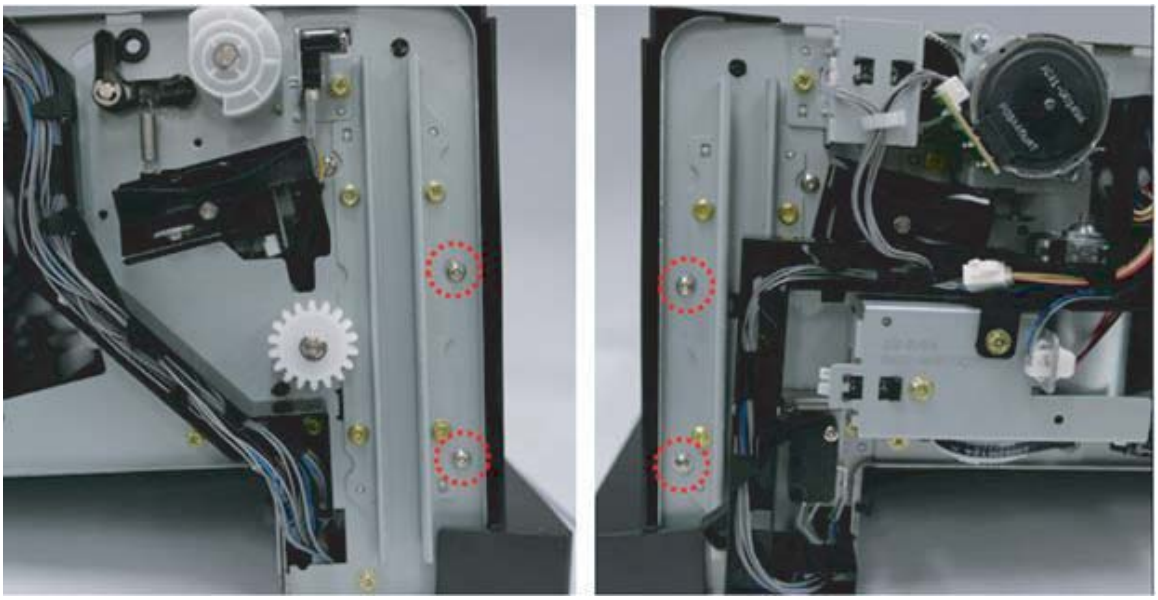
Figure 8-243 Remove the PBA



4. Remove four screws.

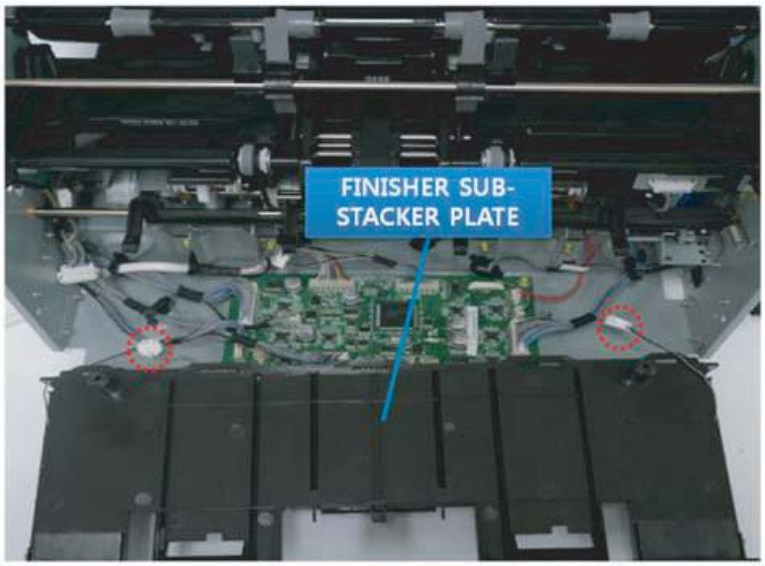
NOTE: Also, remove two screws, and then remove the lower PBA cover (not shown).

Figure 8-244 Remove the PBA



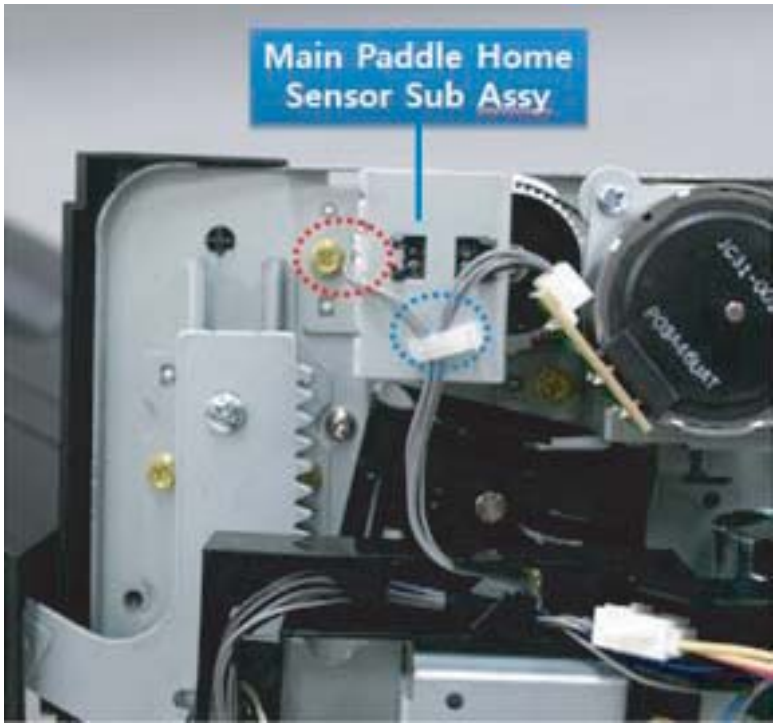
5. Disconnect two in-line connectors, and then, remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 8-245 Remove the sub-stacker plate



6. Remove one screw, disconnect the connector, release the cable guide, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

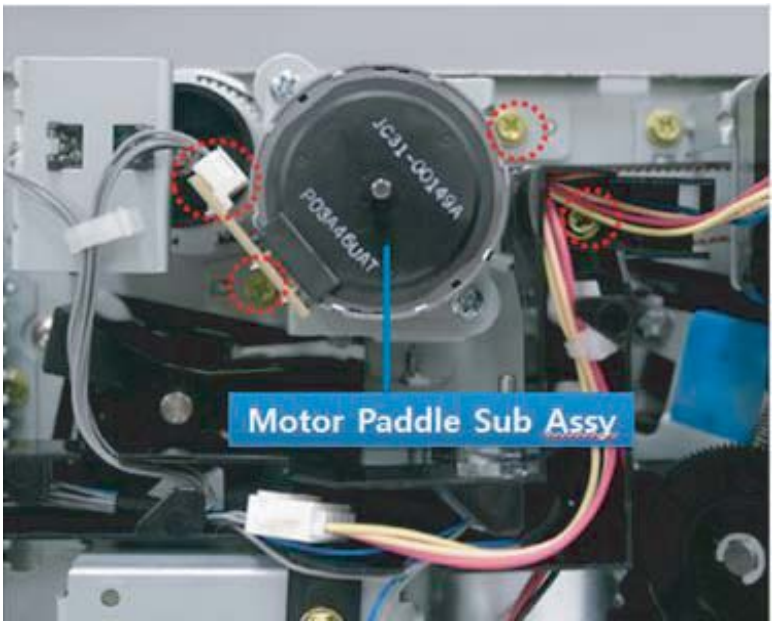
Figure 8-246 Remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly



7. Remove three screws, disconnect the connector, and then release the motor paddle sub assembly.

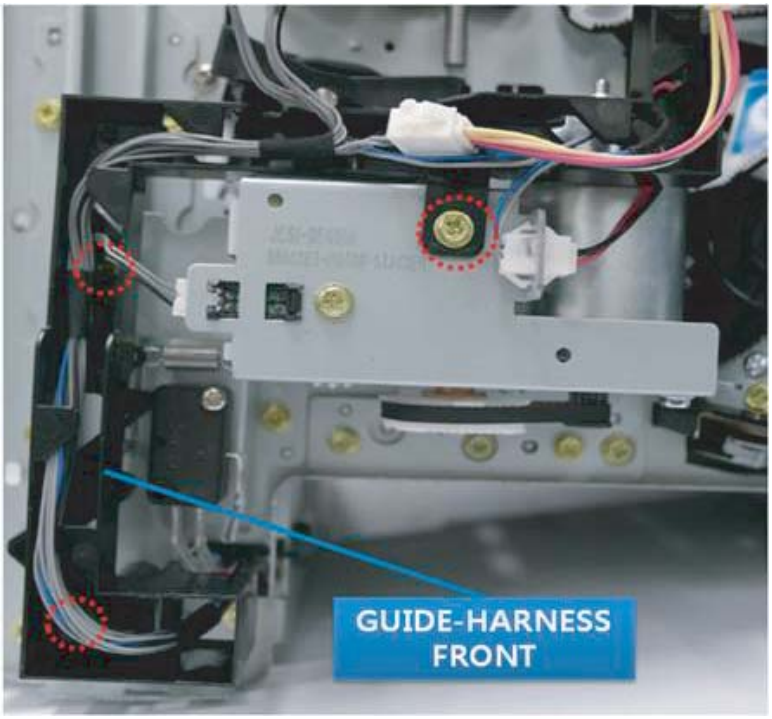
NOTE: Move the wire harness out of the guide to access one screw.

Figure 8-247 Release the motor paddle sub assembly



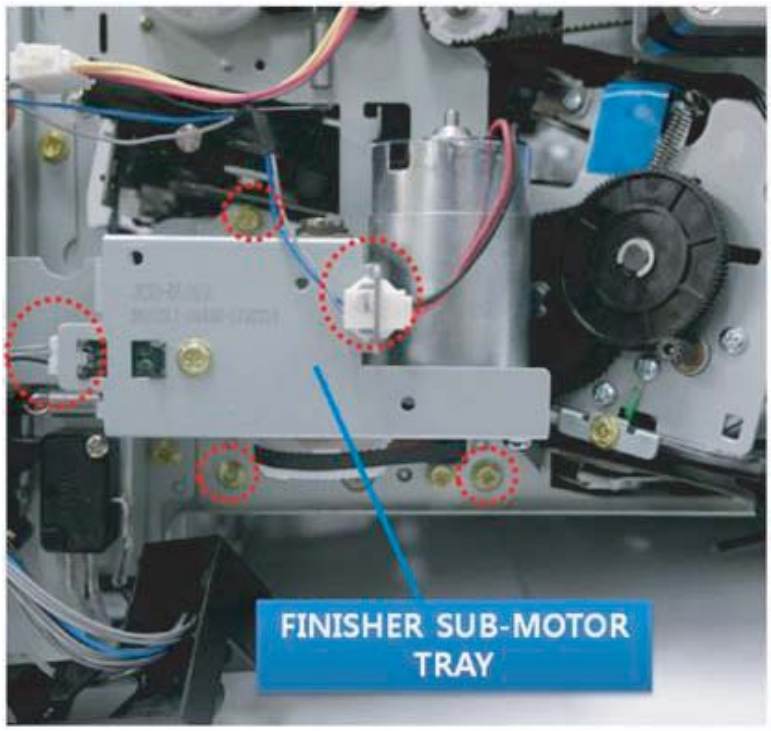
8. Remove three screws, release the wire harness from the guide, and then remove the guide harness front.

Figure 8-248 Remove the guide harness front



9. Remove three screws, disconnect two connectors, and then release the finisher sub-motor tray.

Figure 8-249 Release the finisher sub-motor tray

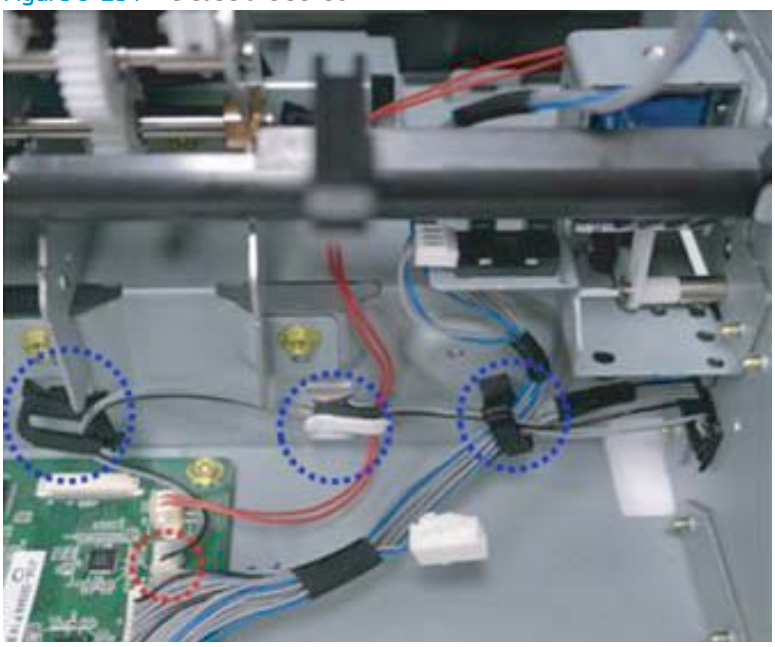


10. Remove one screw.

Figure 8-250 Remove one screw

11. Open three clamps, disconnect the connector, and then release the switch.

Figure 8-251 Release the sensor



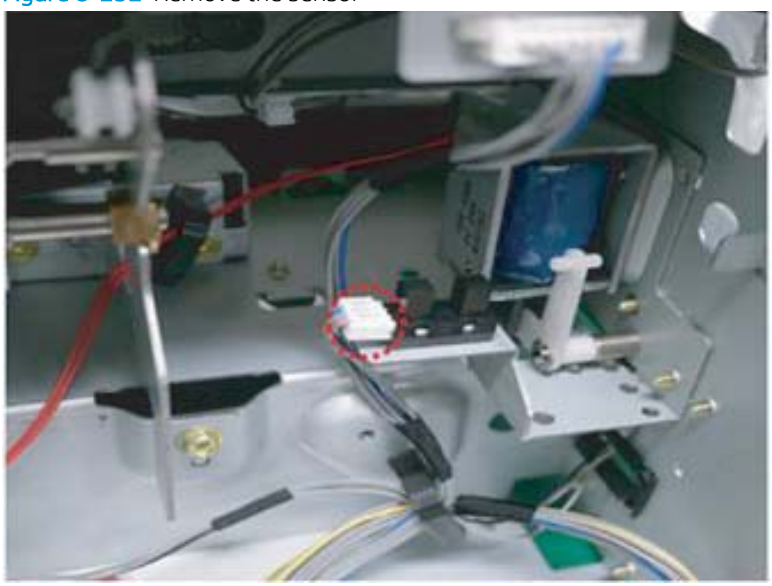
12. Do the following:

    a. Disconnect the sensor.

    b. Remove the adhesive strip from below the sensor.

    c. Remove the stack position sensor.

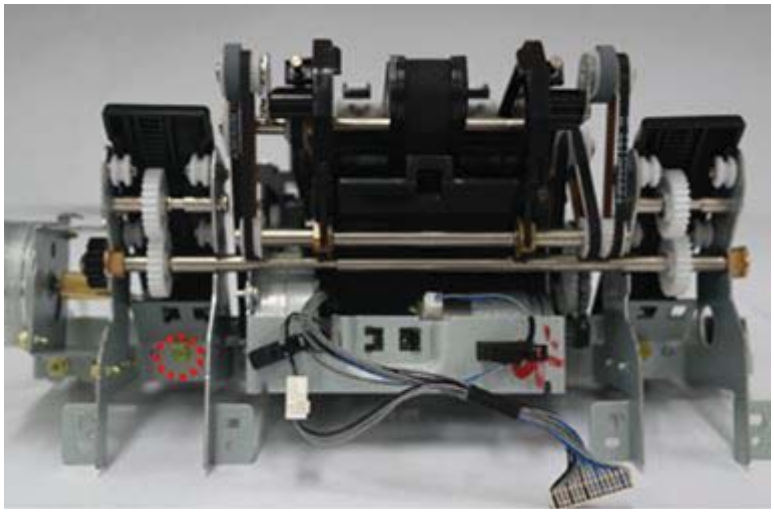
Figure 8-252 Remove the sensor



Step 3: Remove the paper ejector motor assembly

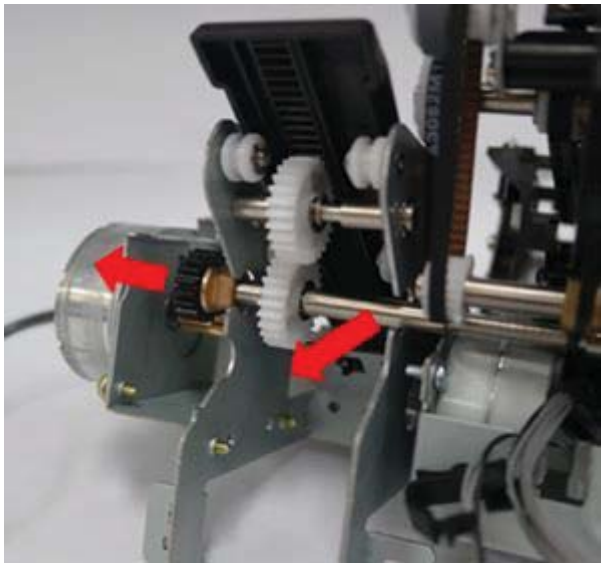
1. Disconnect one connector on the paper support motor.
2. Remove one screw on the paper support home sensor.

Figure 8-253 Remove the paper support home sensor (1 of 4)



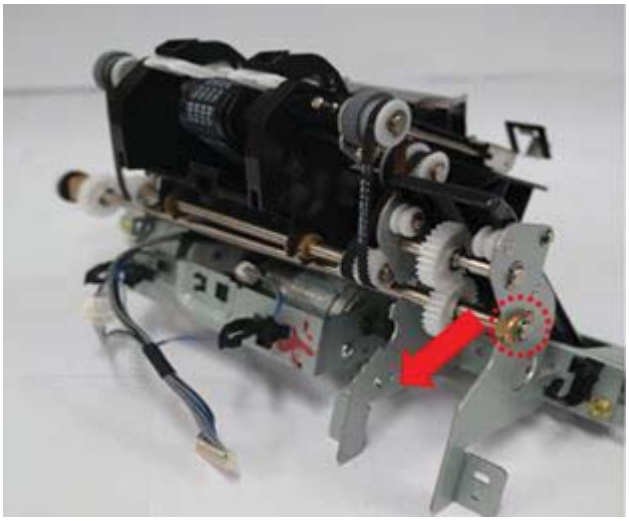
3. Remove the shaft while pulling the bushing in the direction of the arrow.

Figure 8-254 Remove the paper support home sensor (2 of 4)



4. Remove the e-clip and the bushing, and then pull and remove the drive shaft.

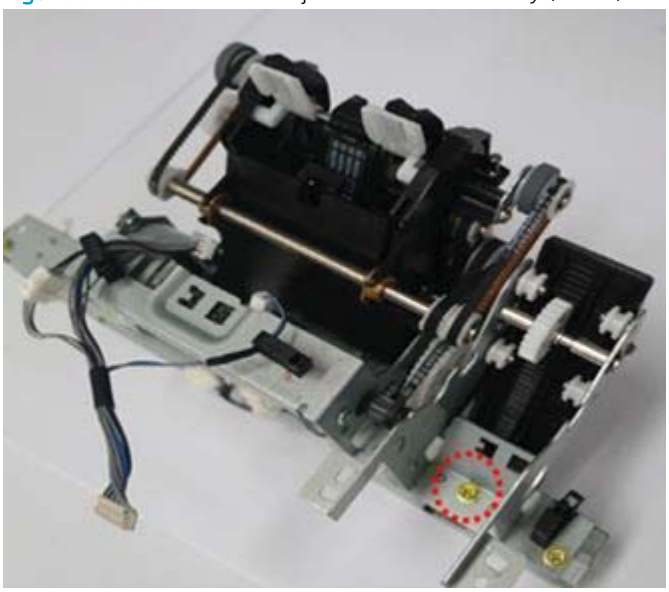
Figure 8-255 Remove the ejector motor assembly (1 of 6)



Reinstallation tip: When reassembling the drive shaft, ensure the paper supports are in the full down position (against the stops).

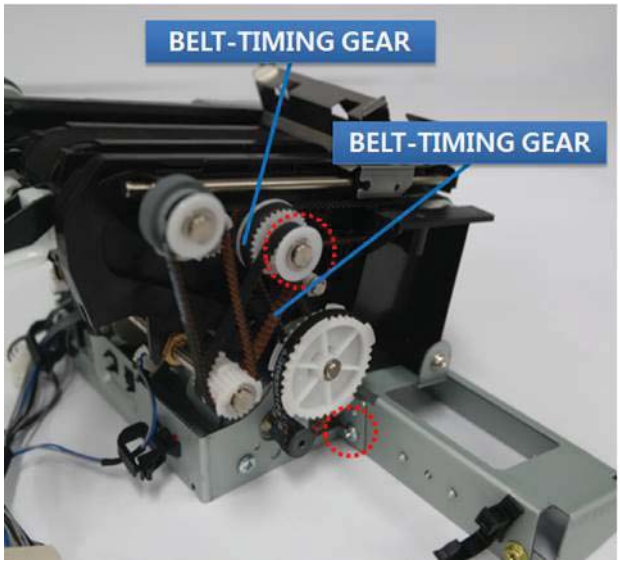
5. Remove one screw.

Figure 8-256 Remove the ejector motor assembly (2 of 6)



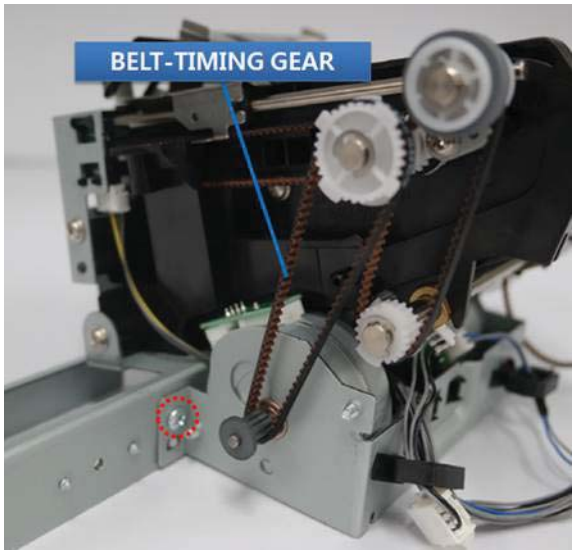
6. Remove the e-ring and washer. Remove two belt-timing gears, and then remove one screw.

Figure 8-257 Remove two belt-timing gears



7. Remove the clip, remove the belt-timing gear, and then remove one screw.

Figure 8-258 Remove the belt-timing gear and one screw



8. Remove the cable from restraint, and then disconnect two motor connectors and the sensor connector. Remove the motor assembly.

Figure 8-259 Disconnect connectors

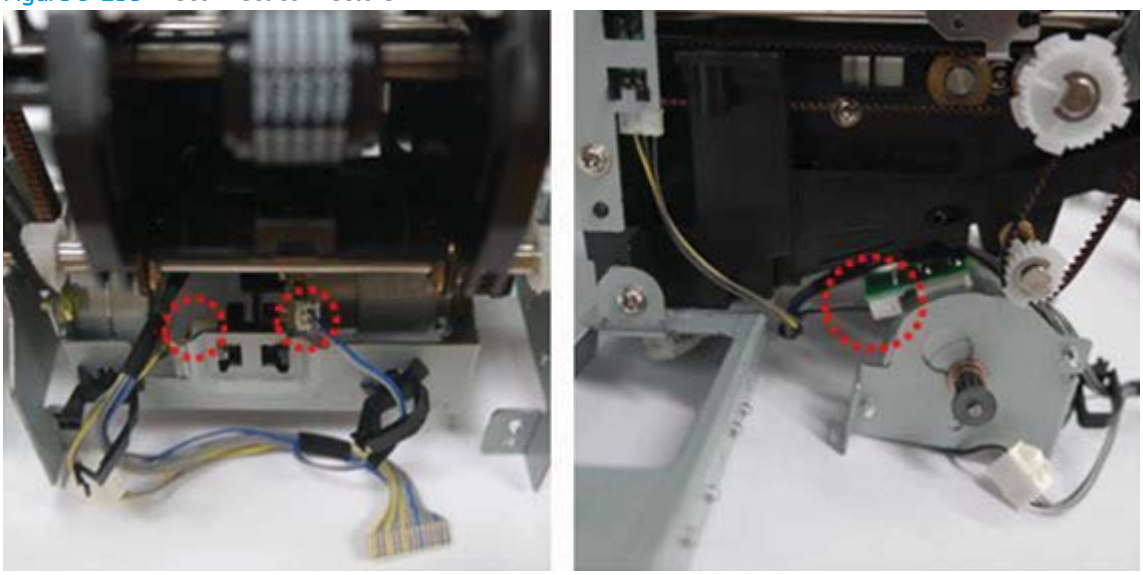


Figure 8-260 Remove the motor assembly

Main Paddle Motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the main paddle motor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Main Paddle Motor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Main Paddle Motor assembly part number
Main Paddle Motor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

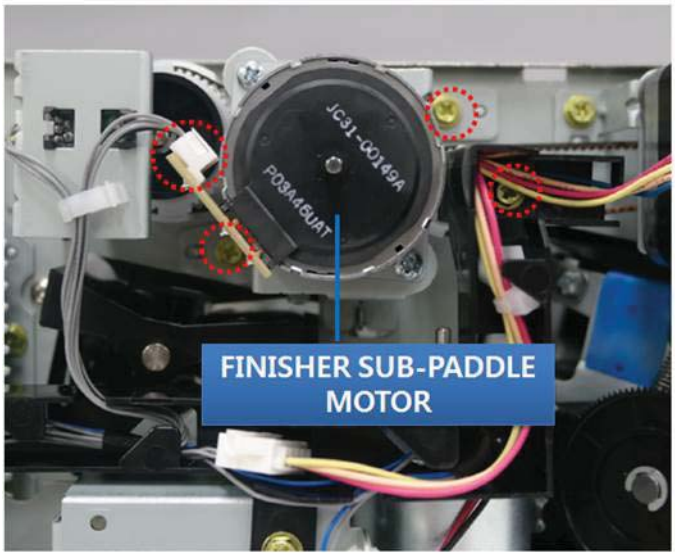
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the main paddle motor

1. Remove the front cover.
2. Remove three screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the motor assembly.

   Figure 8-261 Remove the motor assembly

3. Remove two screws, and then remove the motor.

   Figure 8-262 Remove the main paddle motor

Main Paddle Home Sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the main paddle home sensor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Main Paddle Home Sensor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Main Paddle Home Sensor assembly part number
Main Paddle Home Sensor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

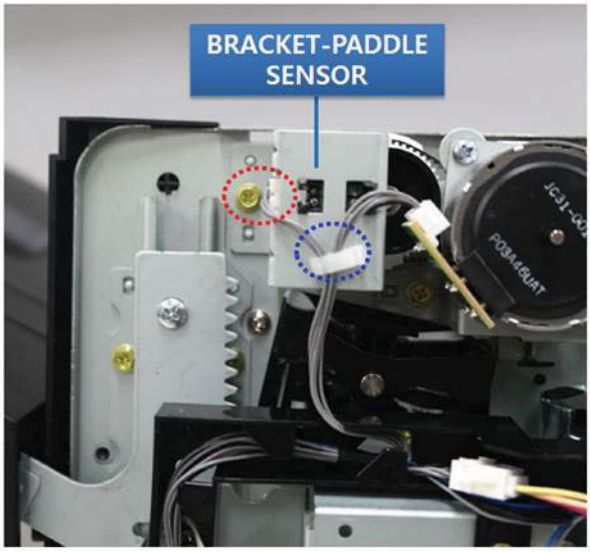
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the main paddle home sensor

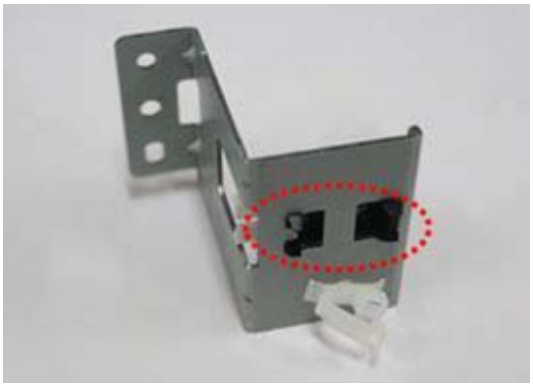
1. Remove the front cover.
2. Remove one screw. Open the clamp, and then remove the bracket-paddle sensor.

Figure 8-263 Remove the bracket-paddle sensor



3. Remove the main paddle home sensor from the bracket.

Figure 8-264 Remove the main paddle home sensor



Main Paddle

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the main paddle

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Main Paddle assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Main Paddle assembly part number
Main Paddle assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

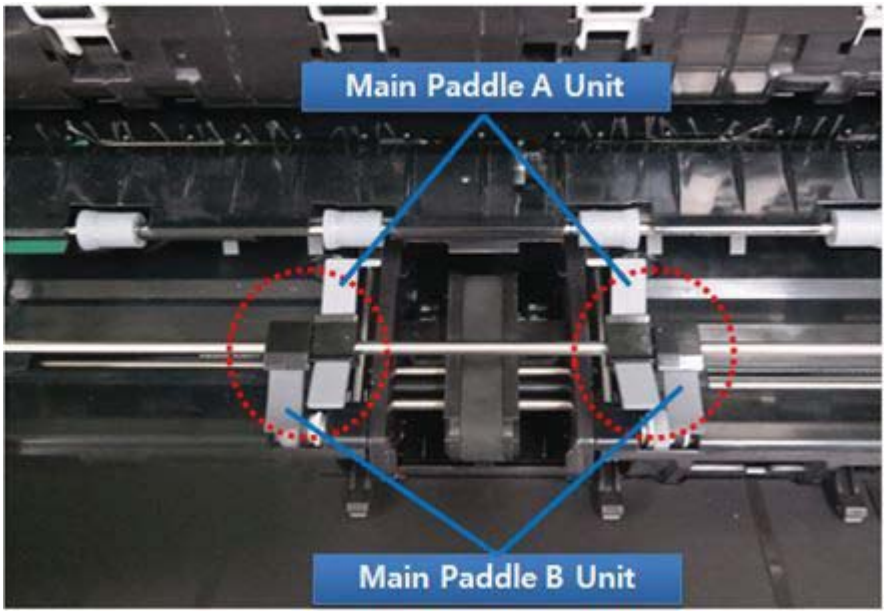
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the main paddle

▲ Open the cover top tray sub assembly, and then remove the main paddle A unit and main paddle B unit.

Figure 8-265 Remove the main paddle



Ejector assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the stack position sensor
- Step 2: Remove the paper ejector motor assembly
- Step 3: Remove the paper ejector assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Ejector assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Ejector assembly part number
Ejector assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

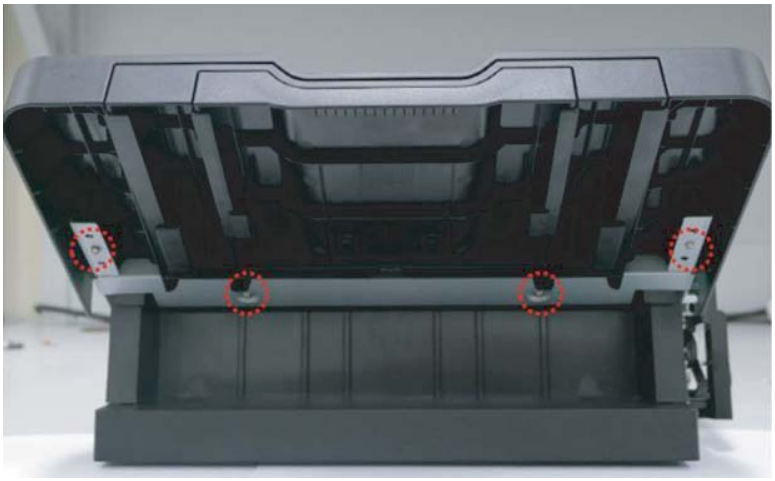
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the stack position sensor

1. Remove four screws, and then, remove the tray.

Figure 8-266 Remove the tray

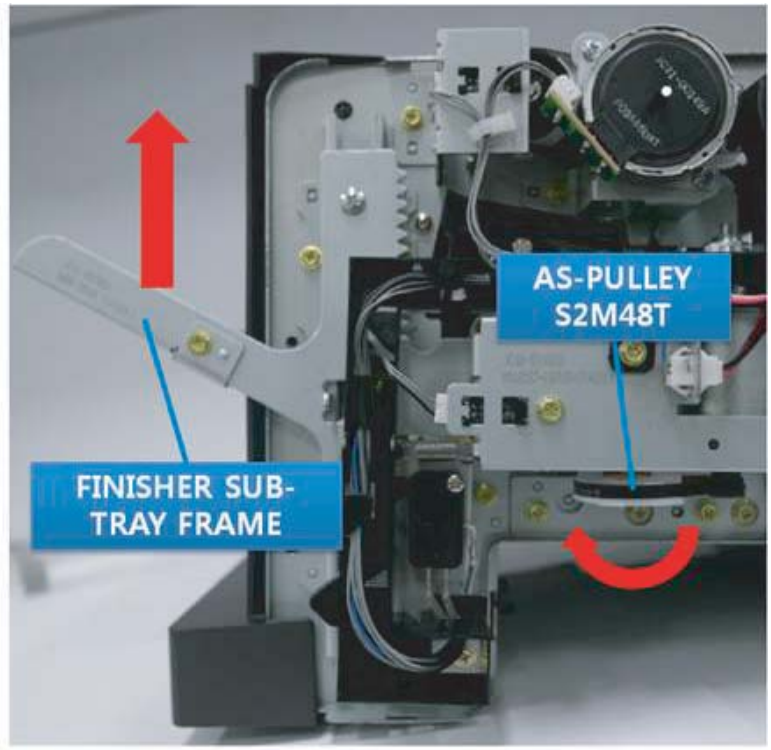


2. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the device while assembling.

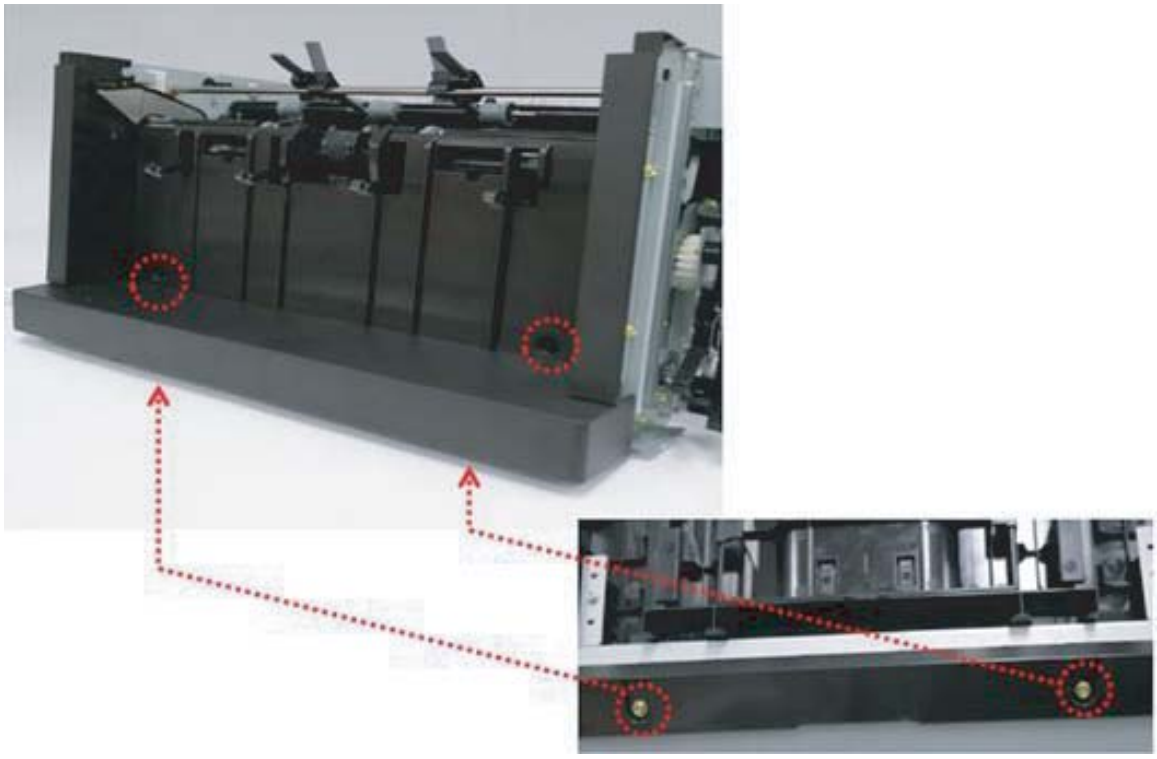
Hold the arms, and then drop the first wheel into the channel (on both sides). Simultaneously let the second wheel rest on the channel (on both sides). Gently squeeze wheels into the channel. The rack and pinion might need to be engaged several times to achieve a level assembly.

Figure 8-267 Remove the sub-tray



3. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

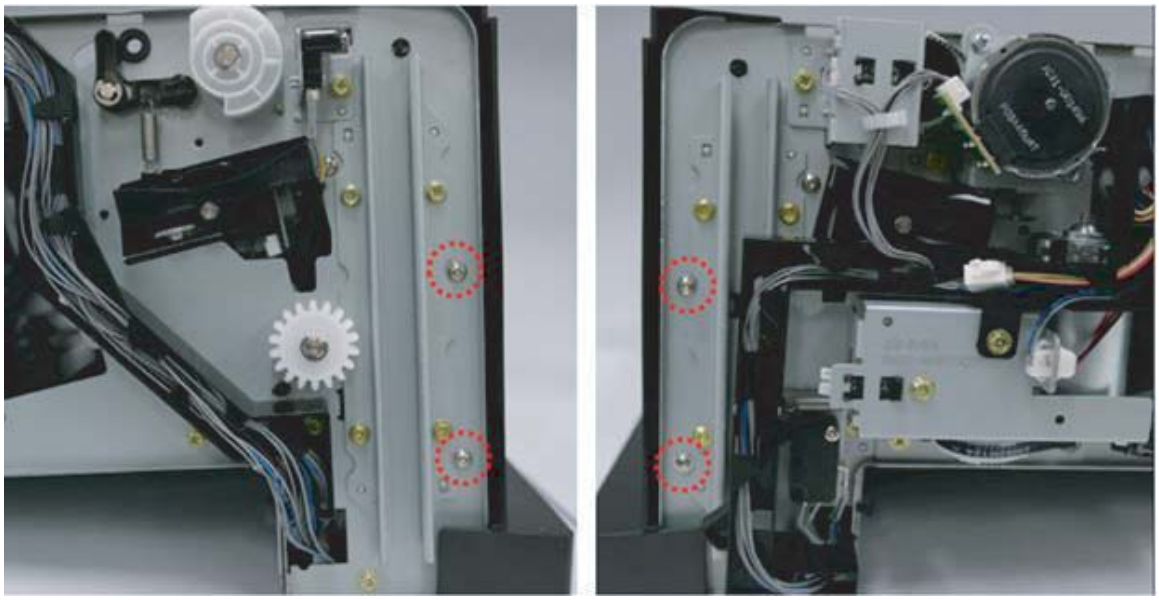
Figure 8-268 Remove the PBA



4. Remove four screws.

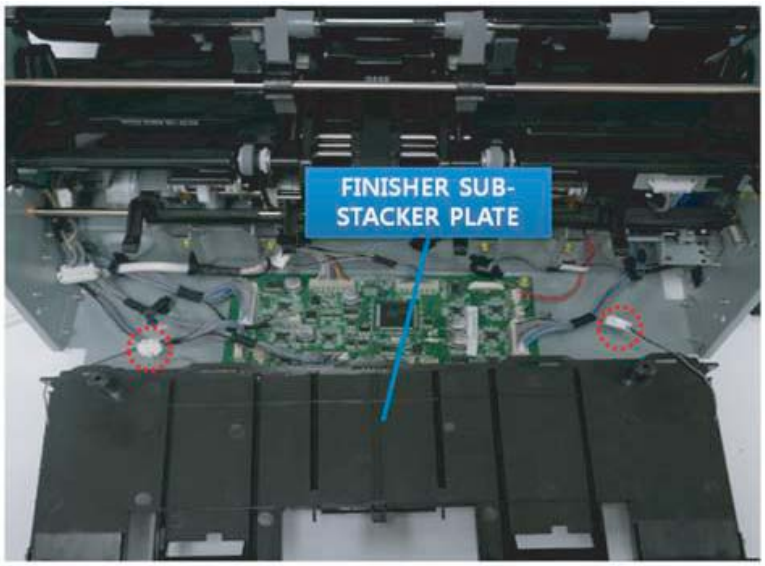
NOTE: Also, remove two screws, and then remove the lower PBA cover (not shown).

Figure 8-269 Remove the PBA



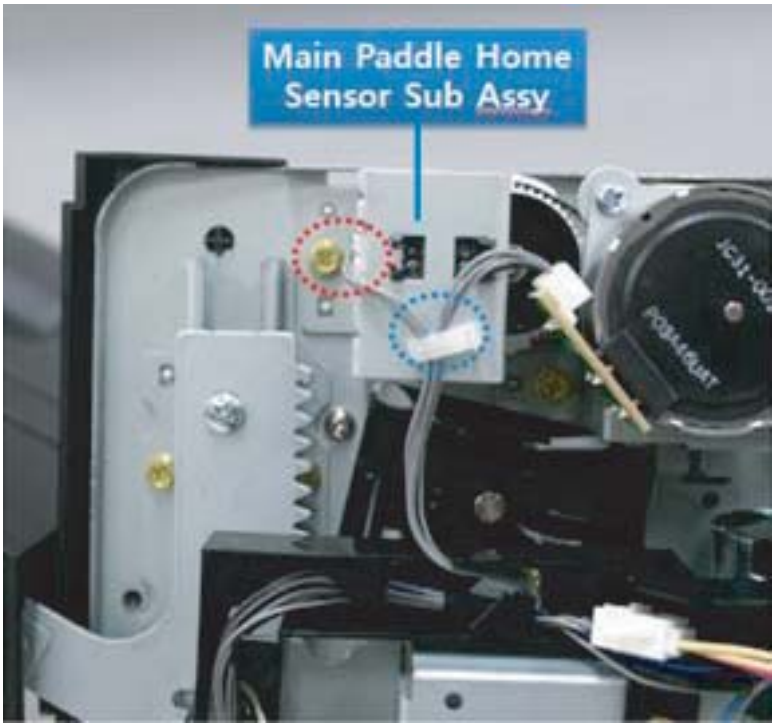
5. Disconnect two in-line connectors, and then, remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 8-270 Remove the sub-stacker plate



6. Remove one screw, disconnect the connector, release the cable guide, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

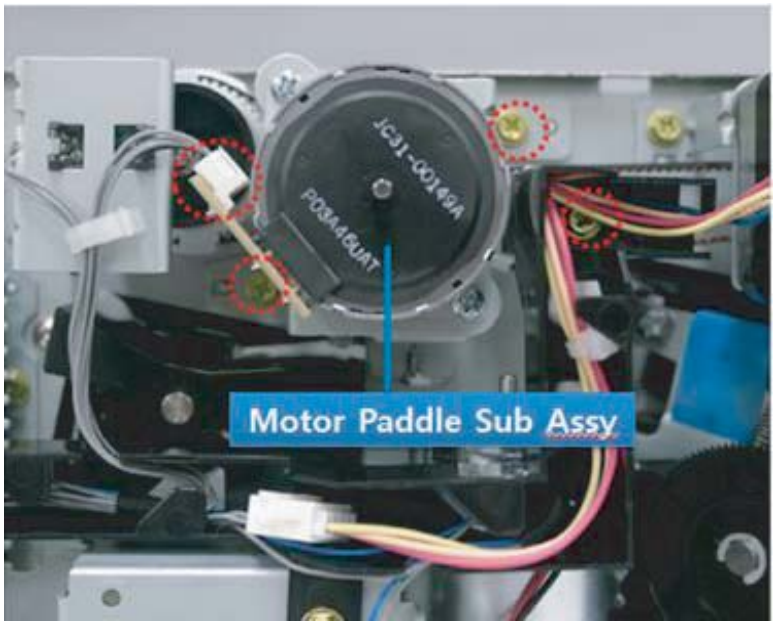
Figure 8-271 Remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly



7. Remove three screws, disconnect the connector, and then release the motor paddle sub assembly.

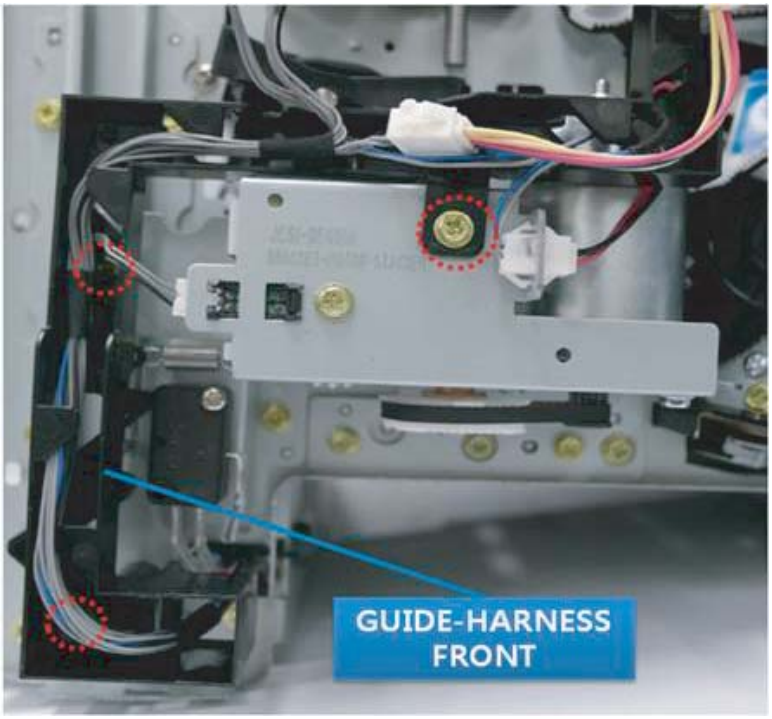
NOTE: Move the wire harness out of the guide to access one screw.

Figure 8-272 Release the motor paddle sub assembly



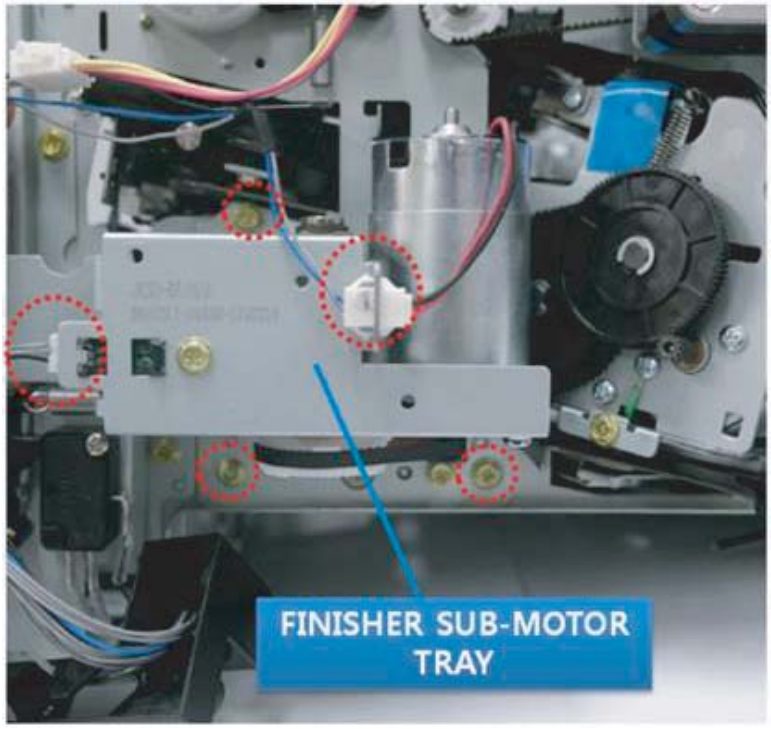
8. Remove three screws, release the wire harness from the guide, and then remove the guide harness front.

Figure 8-273 Remove the guide harness front



9. Remove three screws, disconnect two connectors, and then release the finisher sub-motor tray.

Figure 8-274 Release the finisher sub-motor tray

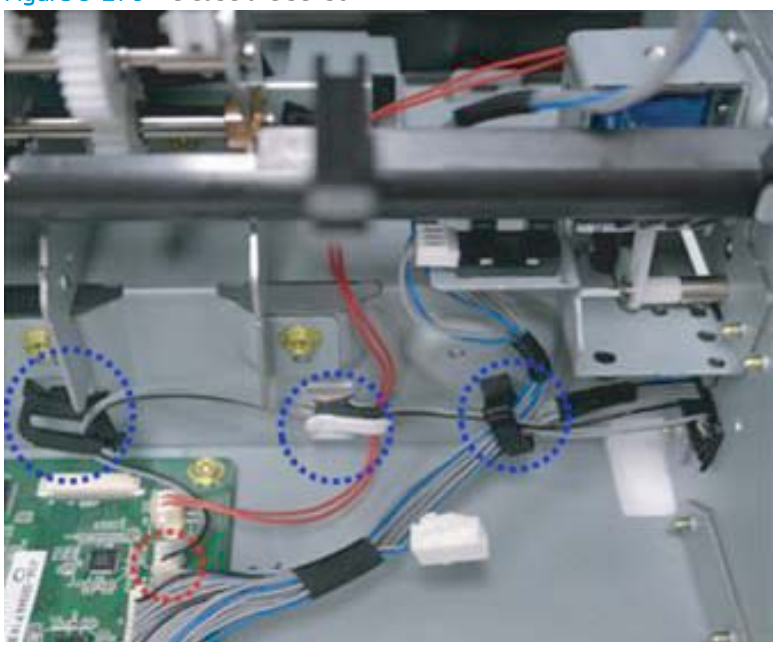


10. Remove one screw.

Figure 8-275 Remove one screw

11. Open three clamps, disconnect the connector, and then release the switch.

Figure 8-276 Release the sensor



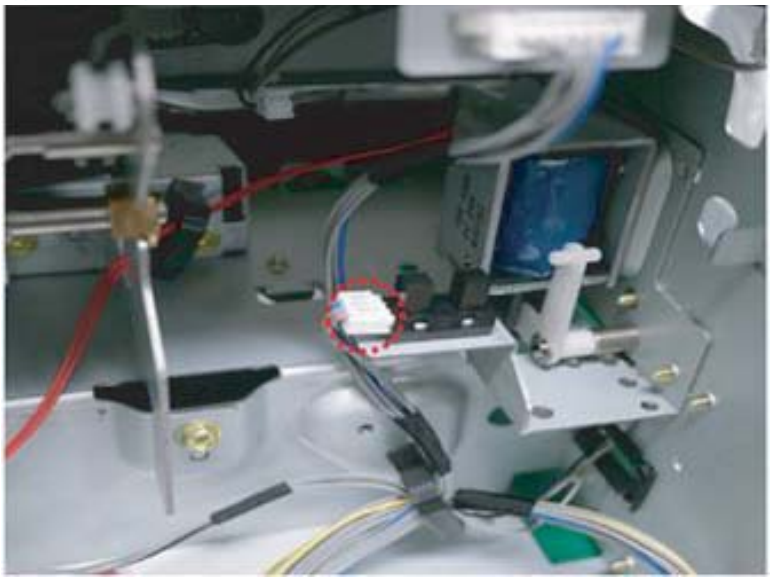
12. Do the following:

    a. Disconnect the sensor.

    b. Remove the adhesive strip from below the sensor.

    c. Remove the stack position sensor.

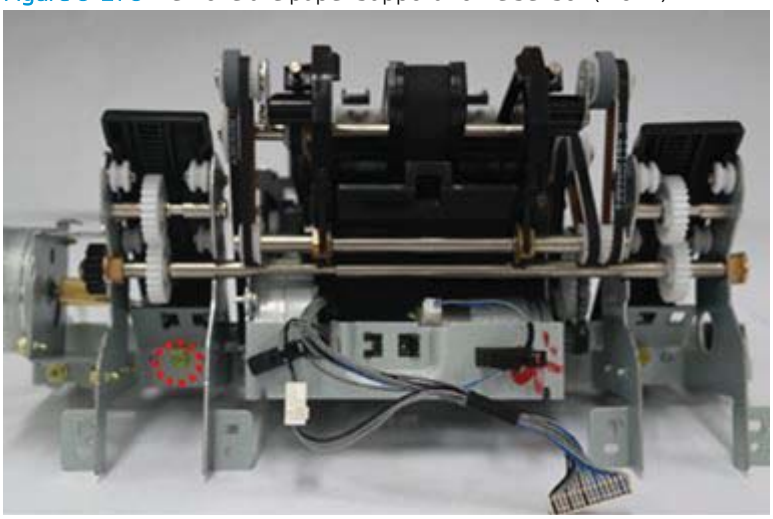
Figure 8-277 Remove the sensor



Step 2: Remove the paper ejector motor assembly

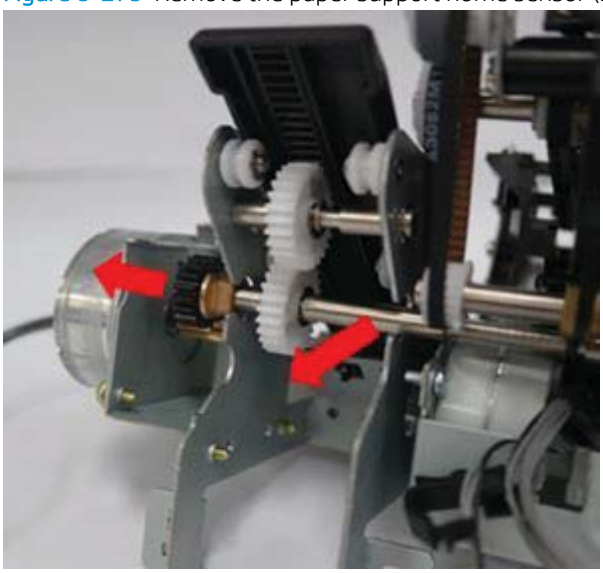
1. Disconnect one connector on the paper support motor.
2. Remove one screw on the paper support home sensor.

Figure 8-278 Remove the paper support home sensor (1 of 4)



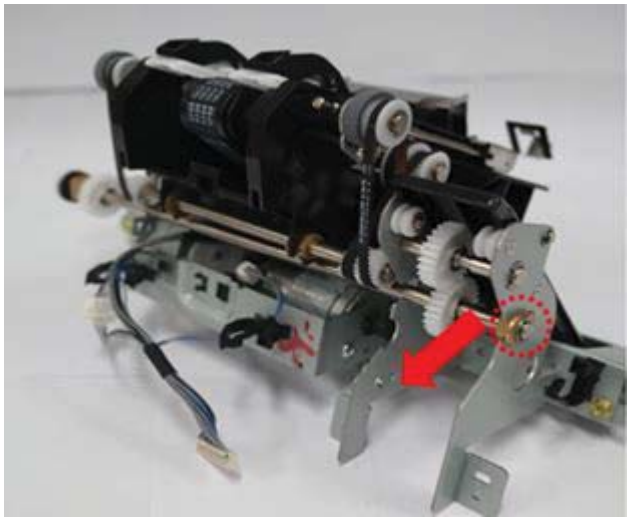
3. Remove the shaft while pulling the bushing in the direction of the arrow.

Figure 8-279 Remove the paper support home sensor (2 of 4)



4. Remove the e-clip and the bushing, and then pull and remove the drive shaft.

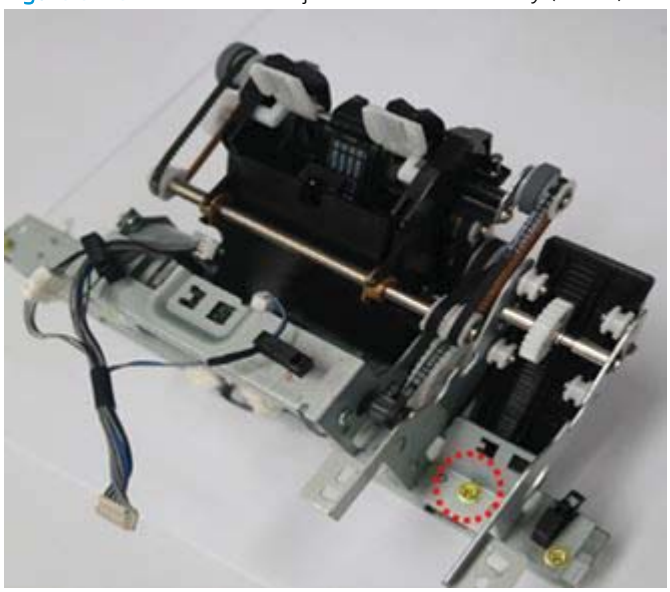
Figure 8-280 Remove the ejector motor assembly (1 of 6)



Reinstallation tip: When reassembling the drive shaft, ensure the paper supports are in the full down position (against the stops).

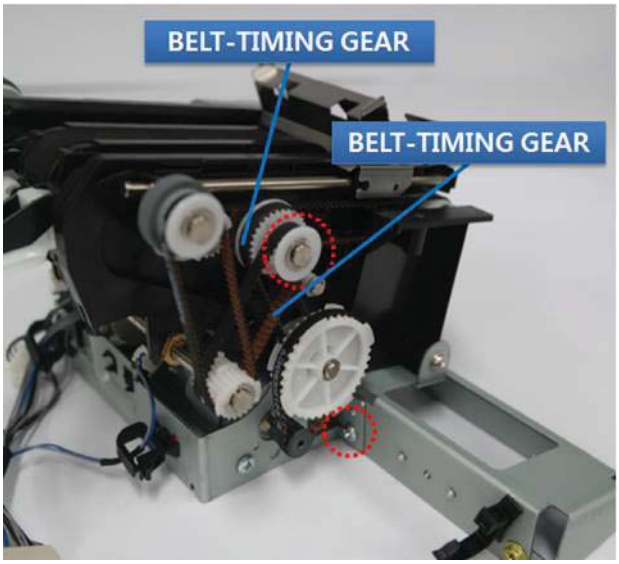
5. Remove one screw.

Figure 8-281 Remove the ejector motor assembly (2 of 6)



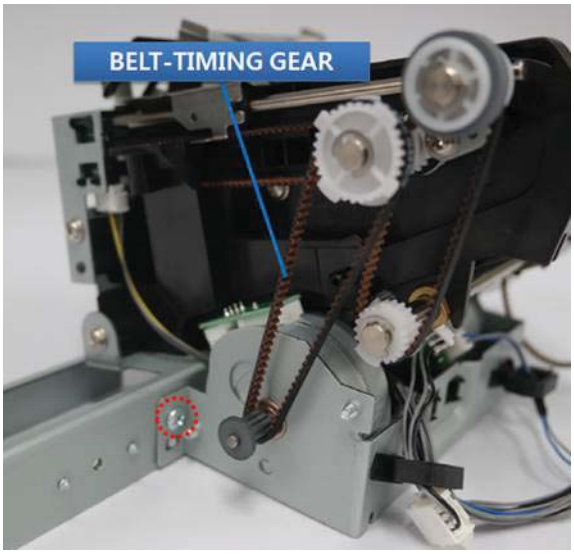
6. Remove the e-ring and washer. Remove two belt-timing gears, and then remove one screw.

Figure 8-282 Remove two belt-timing gears



7. Remove the clip, remove the belt-timing gear, and then remove one screw.

Figure 8-283 Remove the belt-timing gear and one screw



8. Remove the cable from restraint, and then disconnect two motor connectors and the sensor connector. Remove the motor assembly.

Figure 8-284 Disconnect connectors

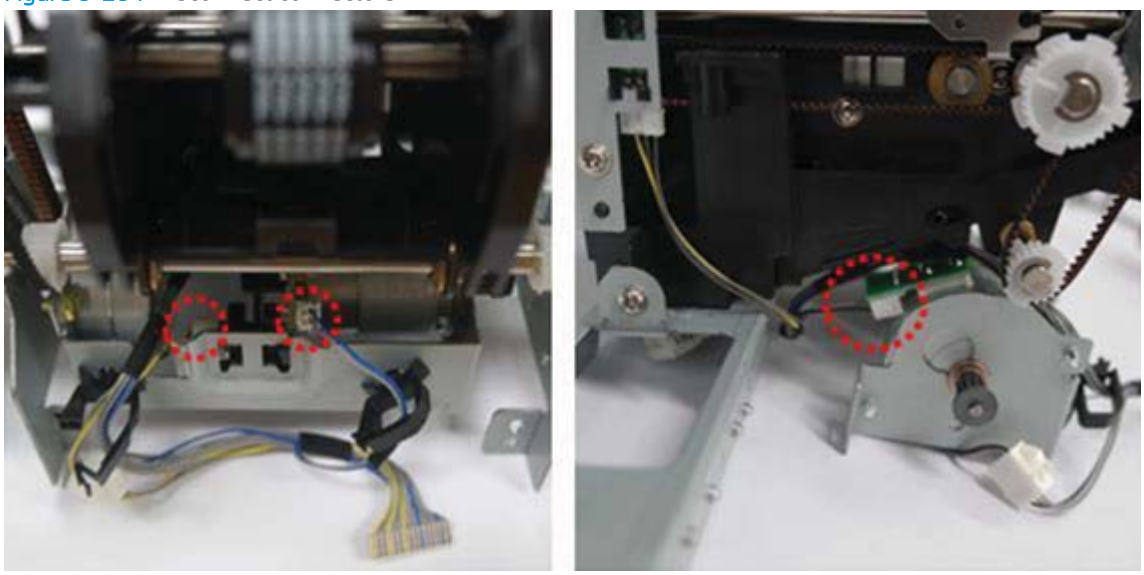
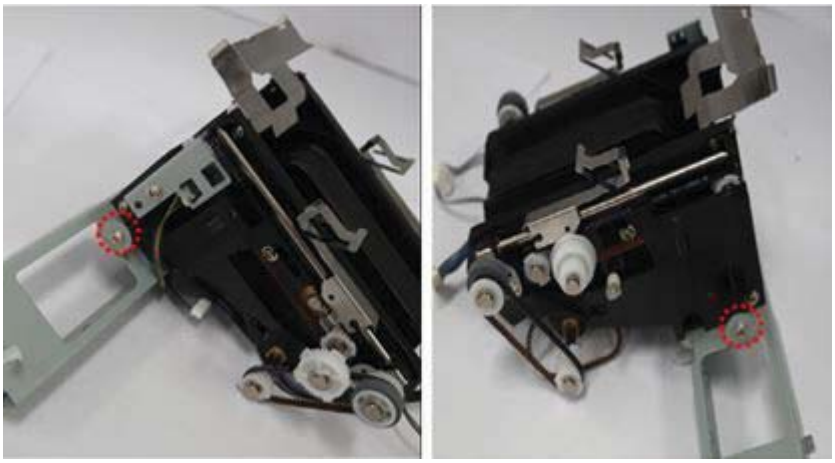


Figure 8-285 Remove the motor assembly

Step 3: Remove the paper ejector assembly

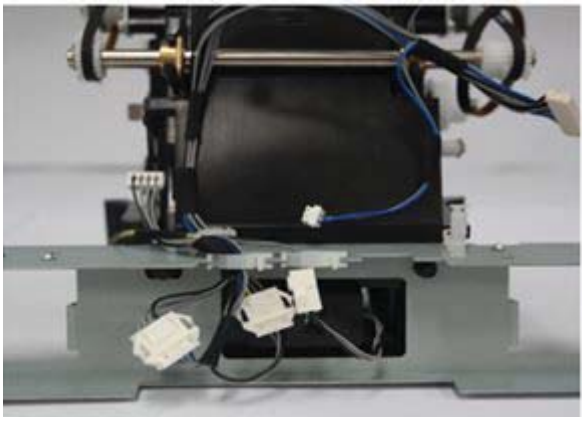
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 8-286 Remove two screws



2. Unplug the harness, and then remove the ejector assembly.

Figure 8-287 Remove the ejector assembly



Punch Dust Full Sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers
- Step 2: Remove the punch dust full sensor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Punch Dust Full Sensor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Punch Dust Full Sensor assembly part number
Punch Dust Full Sensor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

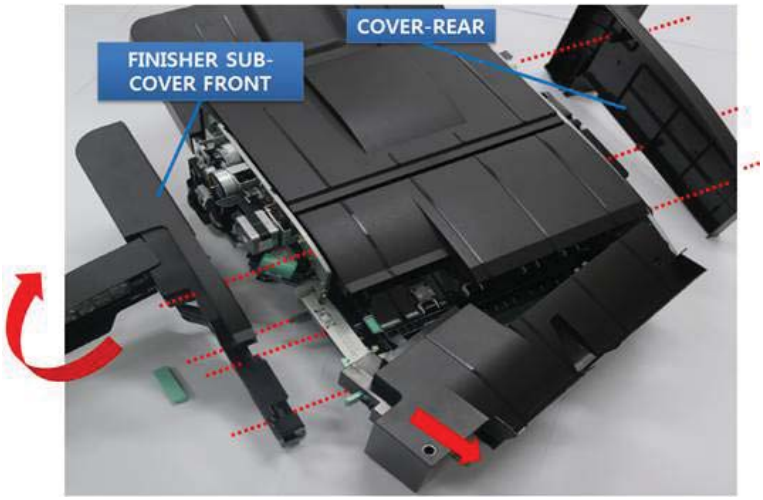
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub-cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub-cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub-cover front.

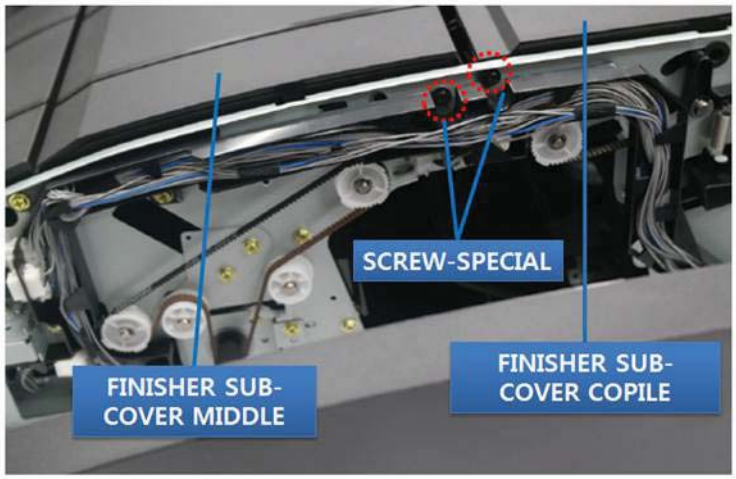
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-288 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 8-289 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)



3. On the front of the printer remove the e-ring and bushing. On the rear of the printer remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, spring (slightly hidden from view), and then remove the guide reverse and roller feed.

Figure 8-290 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7)

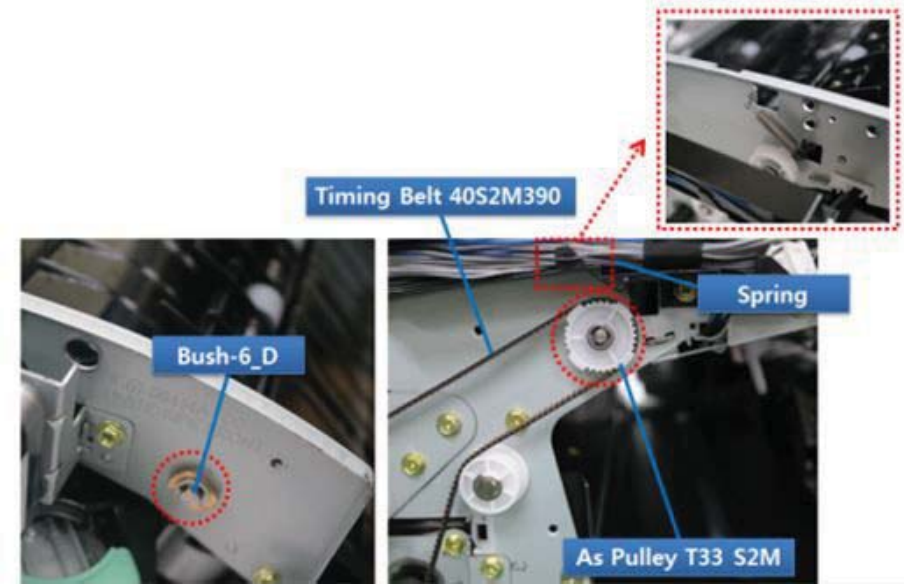
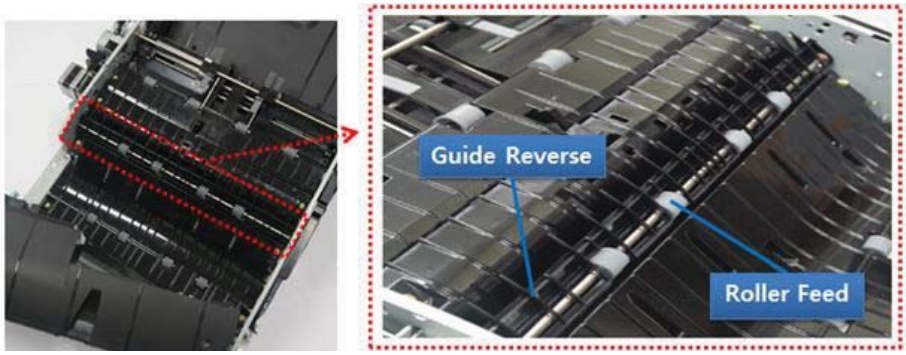


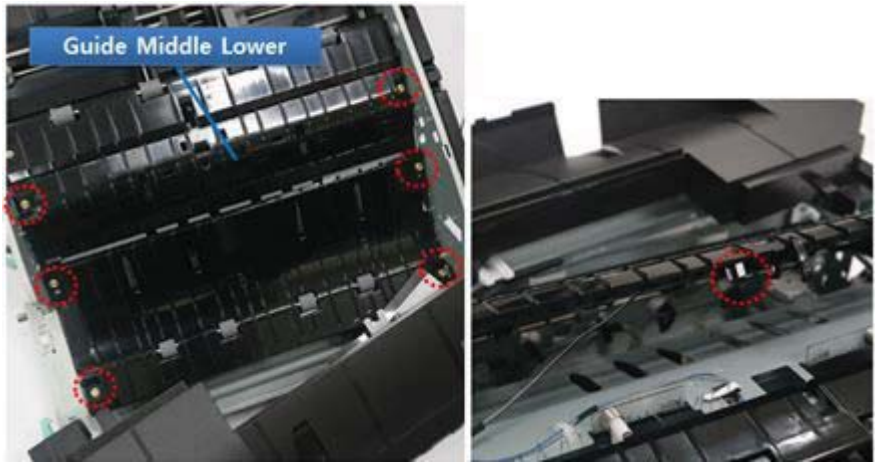
Figure 8-291 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7)



4. Remove six screws.

NOTE: Be careful not to damage the sensor.

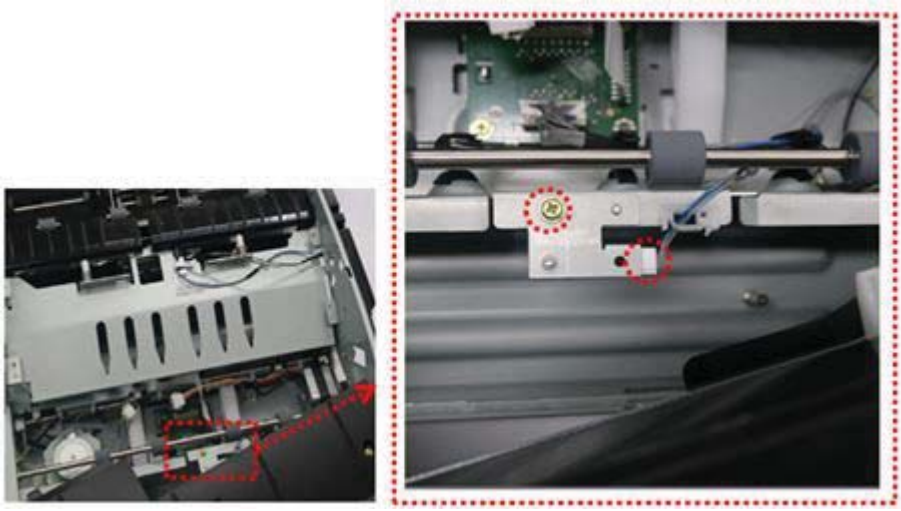
Figure 8-292 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7)



Step 2: Remove the punch dust full sensor

1. Remove one screw, unplug the connector, and then remove the punch dust full sensor sub-assembly.

Figure 8-293 Remove the punch dust full sensor sub-assembly



2. Remove one screw, and then remove the punch dust full sensor.

Figure 8-294 Remove the punch dust full sensor

Door Switch

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the door switch

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Door Switch assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Door Switch assembly part number	
???	Door Switch assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

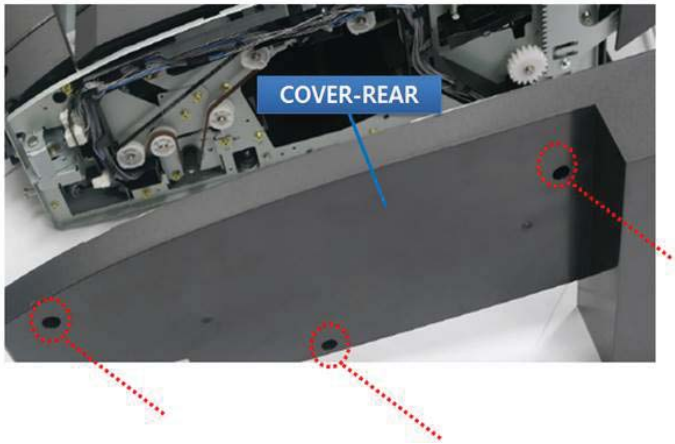
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the door switch

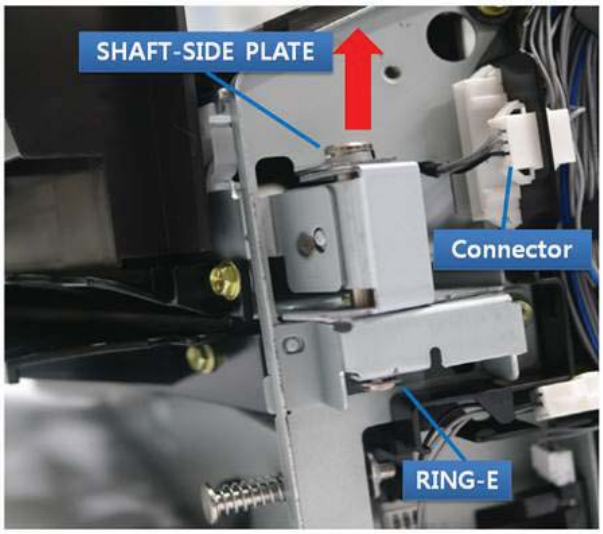
1. On the right-side of the printer remove three screws, and then remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-295 Remove three screws

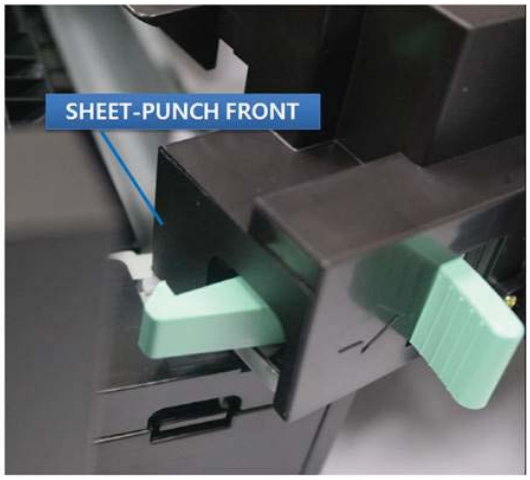
2. On the right, back-side of the printer remove the e-ring, and then remove the shaft-side plate and unplug the connector.

   Figure 8-296 Remove the e-ring

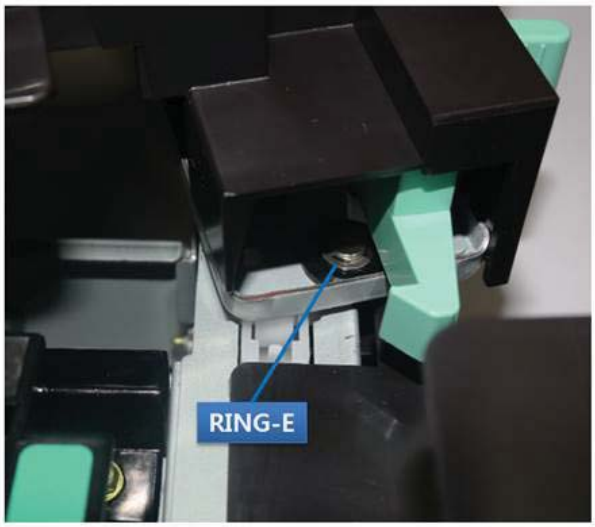
3. On the right, front-side of the printer, remove the sheet-punch front.

Figure 8-297 Remove the sheet-punch front



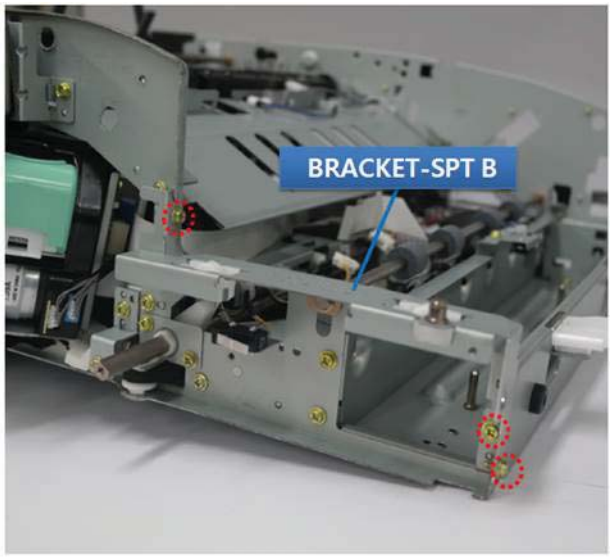
4. Remove the e-ring and washer, and then remove the punch dummy.

Figure 8-298 Remove the punch dummy



5. Remove three screws, and then remove the bracket-SPT B.

Figure 8-299 Remove the bracket-SPT B



6. Remove two screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the door switch.

Figure 8-300 Remove the door switch

Top Door Switch

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the top door switch

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Top Door Switch assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Top Door Switch assembly part number
Top Door Switch assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the top door switch

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

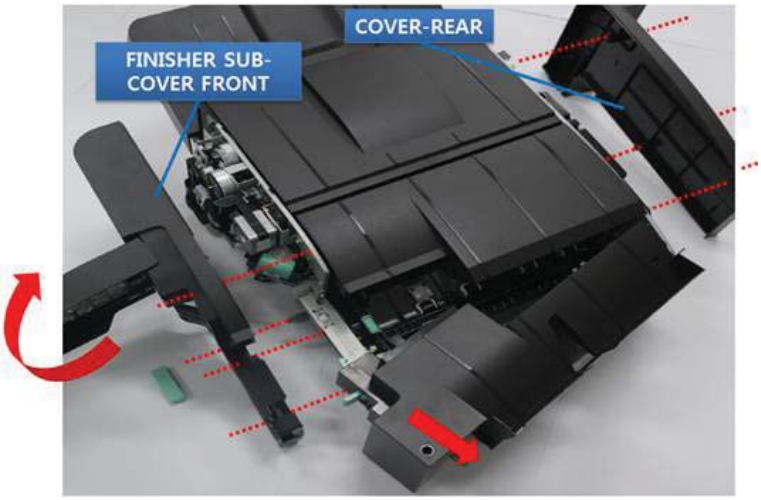
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub cover front.

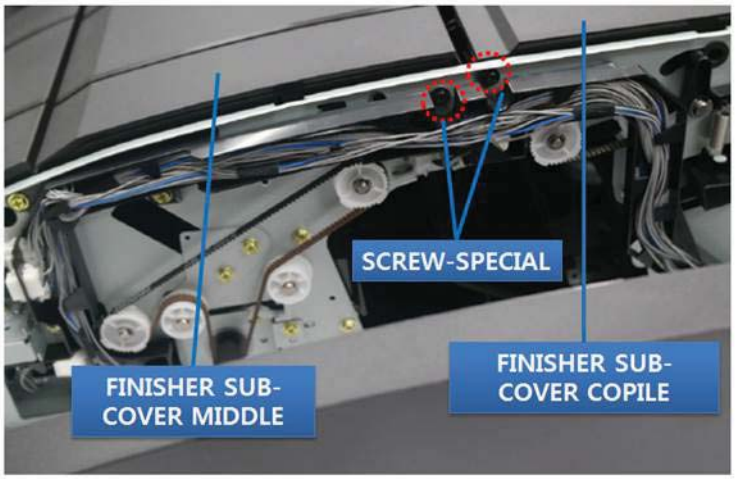
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-301 Remove the cover-rear



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 8-302 Remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile



3. Remove four screws, and then remove the tray.

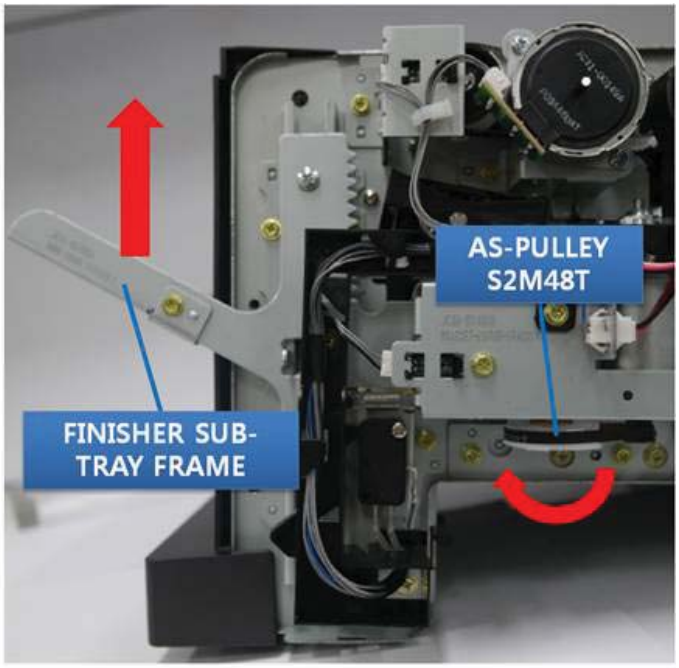
Figure 8-303 Remove the tray

4. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.

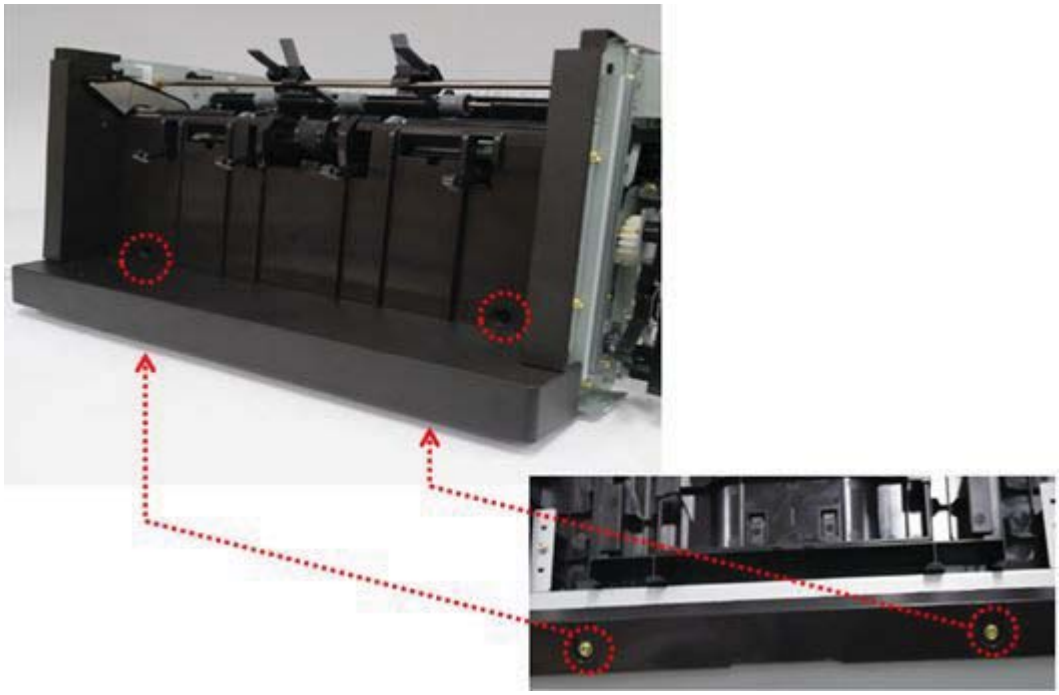
NOTE: Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.

Figure 8-304 Remove the finisher sub-tray frame



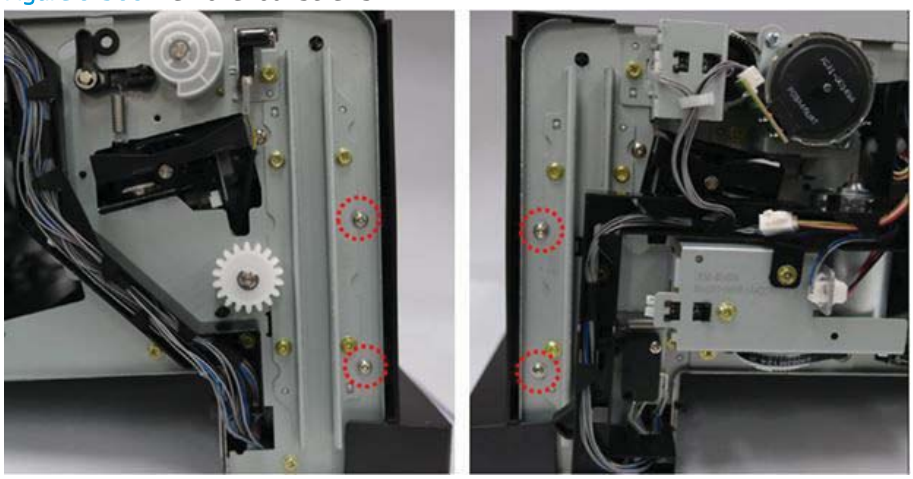
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 8-305 Remove the PBA cover



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

Figure 8-306 Remove four screws



7. Remove two screws and then remove lower PBA cover.

8. Remove one screw.

Figure 8-307 Remove one screw

9. Unplug the connector, and then remove the switch assembly.

Figure 8-308 Remove the switch assembly

10. Remove two screws, and then remove the sensor.

Figure 8-309 Remove the sensor

End Fence Home Sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the end fence home position sensor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the End Fence Home Sensor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

End Fence Home Sensor assembly part number
End Fence Home Sensor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

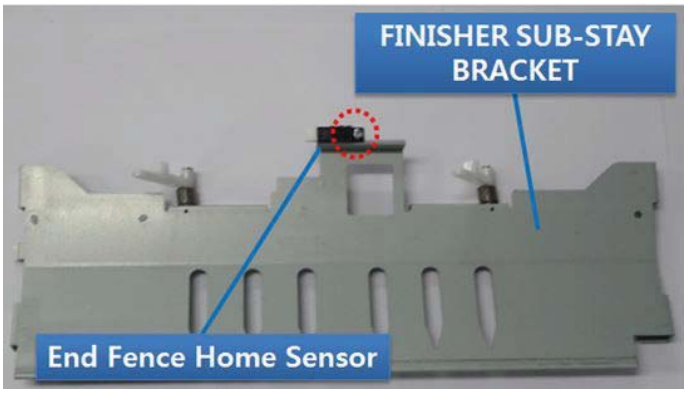
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the end fence home position sensor

1. Follow steps 1-5 in the traverse front home sensor disassembly procedure.
2. Remove one screw, and then remove the sensor.

Figure 8-310 Remove the end fence home sensor



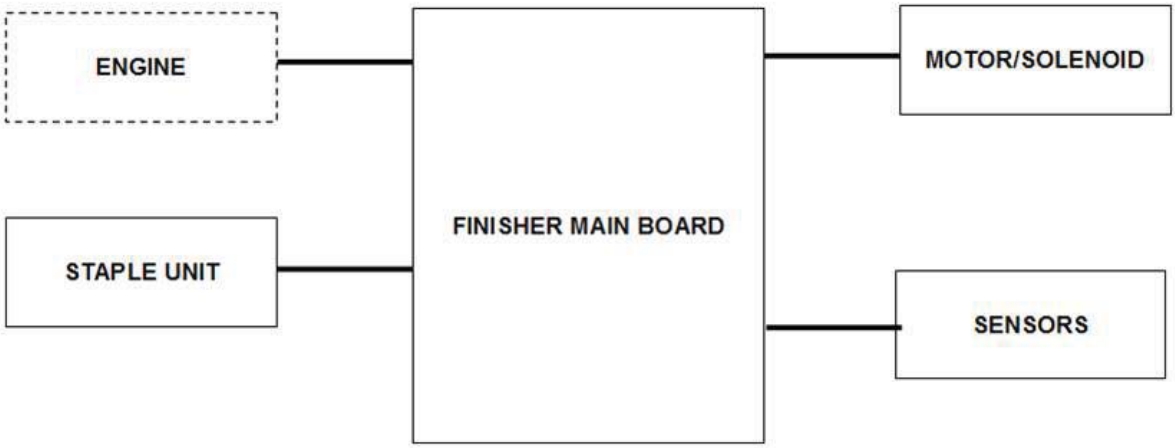
Problem solving

Control panel message document (CPMD)

Control-panel messages and event log entries

The CPMD is not provided in this service manual. The CPMD for this printer is available on the HP Service Access Workbench (SAW) Web site. Go to h41302.www4.hp.com/km/saw/home.do.

Block Diagram



A Appendix: Printer specifications

- Printer dimensions
- Printer space requirements
- Power consumption, electrical specifications, and acoustic emissions
- Certificate of Volatility

Printer dimensions

Printer space requirements

HP recommends that 30 mm (1.81 in) be added to the printer dimensions provided in this chapter to make sure there is sufficient space to open doors and covers, and to provide proper ventilation. See {Xref Error! Target does not exist.} .

Power consumption, electrical specifications, and acoustic emissions

See www.hp.com/support/colorlje87600mfpwww.hp.com/support/colorlje82500mfp for current information.

⚠ **CAUTION:** Power requirements are based on the country/region where the printer is sold. Do not convert operating voltages. This will damage the printer and void the printer warranty.

Certificate of Volatility

Glossary

802.11
802.11 is a set of standards for wireless local area network (WLAN) communication, developed by the IEEE LAN/MAN Standards Committee (IEEE 802).

802.11b/g/n
802.11b/g/n can share same hardware and use the 2.4 GHz band. 802.11b supports bandwidth up to 11 Mbps, 802.11n supports bandwidth up to 150 Mbps. 802.11b/g/n devices may occasionally suffer interference from microwave ovens, cordless telephones, and Bluetooth devices.

Access point
Access Point or Wireless Access Point (AP or WAP) is a device that connects wireless communication devices together on wireless local area networks (WLAN), and acts as a central transmitter and receiver of WLAN radio signals.

ADF
An document feeder is a scanning unit that will automatically feed an original sheet of paper so that the printer can scan some amount of the paper at once.

BIT Depth
A computer graphics term describing the number of bits used to represent the color of a single pixel in a bitmapped image. Higher color depth gives a broader range of distinct colors. As the number of bits increases, the number of possible colors becomes impractically large for a color map. 1-bit color is commonly called as monochrome or black and white.

BMP
A bitmapped graphics format used internally by the Microsoft Windows graphics subsystem (GDI), and used commonly as a simple graphics file format on that platform.

BOOTP
Bootstrap Protocol. A network protocol used by a network client to obtain its IP address automatically. This is usually done in the bootstrap process of computers or operating systems running on them. The BOOTP servers assign the IP address from a pool of addresses to each client. BOOTP enables 'diskless workstation' computers to obtain an IP address prior to loading any advanced operating system.

CCD
Charge Coupled Device (CCD) is a hardware which enables the scan job. CCD Locking mechanism is also used to hold the CCD module to prevent any damage when you move the printer.

Collation
Collation is a process of printing a multiple-copy job in sets. When collation is selected, the device prints an entire set before printing additional copies.

Control Panel
A control panel is a flat, typically vertical, area where control or monitoring instruments are displayed. They are typically found in front of the printer.

Coverage
It is the printing term used for a toner usage measurement on printing. For example, 5% coverage means that an A4 sided paper has about 5% image or text on it. So, if the paper or original has complicated images or lots of text on it, the coverage will be higher and at the same time, a toner usage will be as much as the coverage.

CSV
Comma Separated Values (CSV). A type of file format, CSV is used to exchange data between disparate applications. The file format, as it is used in Microsoft Excel, has become a de facto standard throughout the industry, even among non-Microsoft platforms.

Default
The value or setting that is in effect when taking a printer out of its box state, reset, or initialized.

DHCP
A Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) is a client-server networking protocol. A DHCP server provides configuration parameters specific to the DHCP client host requesting, generally, information required by the client host to participate on an IP network. DHCP also provides a mechanism for allocation of IP addresses to client hosts.

DIMM
Dual Inline Memory Module (DIMM), a small circuit board that holds memory. DIMM stores all the data within the printer like printing data, received fax data.

DLNA
The Digital Living Network Alliance (DLNA) is a standard that allows devices on a home network to share information with each other across the network.

DNS
The Domain Name Server (DNS) is a system that stores information associated with domain names in a distributed database on networks, such as the Internet.

Dot Matrix Printer
A dot matrix printer refers to a type of computer printer with a print head that runs back and forth on the page and prints by impact, striking an ink-soaked cloth ribbon against the paper, much like a typewriter.

DPI
Dots Per Inch (DPI) is a measurement of resolution that is used for scanning and printing. Generally, higher DPI results in a higher resolution, more visible detail in the image, and a larger file size.

DRPD
Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection. Distinctive Ring is a telephone company service which enables a user to use a single telephone line to answer several different telephone numbers.

Duplex
A mechanism that will automatically turn over a sheet of paper so that the printer can print (or scan) on both sides of the paper. A printer equipped with a Duplex unit can print on both sides of paper during one print cycle.

Duty Cycle
Duty cycle is the page quantity which does not affect printer performance for a month. Generally the printer has the lifespan limitation such as pages per year. The lifespan means the average capacity of print-outs, usually within the warranty period. For example, if the duty cycle is 48,000 pages per month assuming 20 working days, a printer limits 2,400 pages a day.

ECM
Error Correction Mode (ECM) is an optional transmission mode built into Class 1 fax machines or fax modems. It automatically detects and corrects errors in the fax transmission process that are sometimes caused by telephone line noise.

Emulation
An emulator duplicates the functions of one system with a different system, so that the second system behaves like the first system. Emulation focuses on exact reproduction of external behavior, which is in contrast to simulation, which concerns an abstract model of the system being simulated, often considering its internal state.

Ethernet
Ethernet is a frame-based computer networking technology for local area networks (LANs). It defines wiring and signaling for the physical layer, and frame formats and protocols for the media access control (MAC)/data link layer of the OSI model. Ethernet is mostly standardized as IEEE 802.3. It has become the most widespread LAN technology in use during the 1990s to the present.

EtherTalk
A suite of protocols developed by Apple Computer for computer networking. It was included in the original Mac (1984) and is now deprecated by Apple in favor of TCP/IP networking.

FDI
Foreign Device Interface (FDI) is a card installed inside the printer to allow a third party device such as a coin operated device or a card reader. Those devices allow the pay-for-print service on your printer.

FTP
A File Transfer Protocol (FTP) is a commonly used protocol for exchanging files over any network that supports the TCP/IP protocol (such as the Internet or an intranet).

Fuser Unit
The part of a laser printer that fuses the toner onto the print media. It consists of a heat roller and a pressure roller. After toner is transferred onto the paper, the fuser unit applies heat and pressure to ensure that the toner stays on the paper permanently, which is why paper is warm when it comes out of a laser printer.

Gateway
A connection between computer networks, or between a computer network and a telephone line. It is very popular, as it is a computer or a network that allows access to another computer or network.

Grayscal
A shade of gray that represents light and dark portions of an image when color images are converted to grayscale; colors are represented by various shades of gray.

Halftone
An image type that simulates grayscale by varying the number of dots. Highly colored areas consist of a large number of dots, while lighter areas consist of a smaller number of dots.

IEEE
The Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE) is an international non-profit, professional organization for the advancement of technology related to electricity.

IEEE 1284
The 1284 parallel port standard was developed by the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE). The term "1284-B" refers to a specific connector type on the end of the parallel cable that attaches to the peripheral (for example, a printer).

Intranet
A private network that uses Internet Protocols, network connectivity, and possibly the public telecommunication system to securely share part of an organization's information or operations with its employees. Sometimes the term refers only to the most visible service, the internal website.

IP address
An Internet Protocol (IP) address is a unique number that devices use in order to identify and communicate with each other on a network utilizing the Internet Protocol standard.

IPM
The Images Per Minute (IPM) is a way of measuring the speed of a printer. An IPM rate indicates the number of single-sided sheets a printer can complete within one minute.

IPP
The Internet Printing Protocol (IPP) defines a standard protocol for printing as well as managing print jobs, media size, resolution, and so forth. IPP can be used locally or over the Internet to hundreds of printers, and also supports access control, authentication, and encryption, making it a much more capable and secure printing solution than older ones.

IPX/SPX
IPX/SPX stands for Internet Packet Exchange/Sequenced Packet Exchange. It is a networking protocol used by the Novell NetWare operating systems. IPX and SPX both provide connection services similar to TCP/IP, with the IPX protocol having similarities to IP, and SPX having similarities to TCP. IPX/SPX was primarily designed for local area networks (LANs), and is a very efficient protocol for this purpose (typically its performance exceeds that of TCP/IP on a LAN).

ISO
The International Organization for Standardization (ISO) is an international standard-setting body composed of representatives from national standards bodies. It produces world-wide industrial and commercial standards.

ITU-T
The International Telecommunication Union is an international organization established to standardize and regulate international radio and telecommunications. Its main tasks include standardization, allocation of the radio spectrum, and organizing interconnection arrangements between different countries to allow international phone calls. A -T out of ITU-T indicates telecommunication.

ITU-T No. 1 chart
Standardized test chart published by ITU-T for document facsimile transmissions.

JBIG
Joint Bi-level Image Experts Group (JBIG) is an image compression standard with no loss of accuracy or quality, which was designed for compression of binary images, particularly for faxes, but can also be used on other images.

JPEG
Joint Photographic Experts Group (JPEG) is a most commonly used standard method of lossy compression for photographic images. It is the format used for storing and transmitting photographs on the World Wide Web.

LDAP
The Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) is a networking protocol for querying and modifying directory services running over TCP/IP.

LED
A Light-Emitting Diode (LED) is a semiconductor device that indicates the status of a printer.

MAC address
Media Access Control (MAC) address is a unique identifier associated with a network adapter. MAC address is a unique 48-bit identifier usually written as 12 hexadecimal characters grouped in pairs (e. g., 00-00-0c-34-11-4e). This address is usually hard-coded into a Network Interface Card (NIC) by its manufacturer, and used as an aid for routers trying to locate machines on large networks.

Mass storage device
Mass storage device, commonly referred to as a hard drive or hard disk, is a nonvolatile storage device which stores digitally-encoded data on rapidly rotating platters with magnetic surfaces.

MFP
Multi Function Peripheral (MFP) is an office printer that includes the following functionality in one physical body, so as to have a printer, a copier, a fax, a scanner and etc.

MH
Modified Huffman (MH) is a compression method for decreasing the amount of data that needs to be transmitted between the fax machines to transfer the image recommended by ITU-T T.4. MH is a codebook-based run-length encoding scheme optimized to efficiently compress white space. As most faxes consist mostly of white space, this minimizes the transmission time of most faxes.

MMR
Modified Modified READ (MMR) is a compression method recommended by ITUT T.6.

Modem
A device that modulates a carrier signal to encode digital information, and also demodulates such a carrier signal to decode transmitted information.

MR
Modified Read (MR) is a compression method recommended by ITU-T T.4. MR encodes the first scanned line using MH. The next line is compared to the first, the differences determined, and then the differences are encoded and transmitted.

NetWare
A network operating system developed by Novell, Inc. It initially used cooperative multitasking to run various services on a PC, and the network protocols were based on the archetypal Xerox XNS stack. Today NetWare supports TCP/IP as well as IPX/SPX.

OPC
Organic Photo Conductor (OPC) is a mechanism that makes a virtual image for print using a laser beam emitted from a laser printer, and it is usually green or rust colored and has a cylinder shape.

An imaging unit containing a drum slowly wears the drum surface by its usage in the printer, and it should be replaced appropriately since it gets worn from contact with the cartridge development brush, cleaning mechanism, and paper.

OPE unit

Originals
The first example of something, such as a document, photograph or text, etc, which is copied, reproduced or translated to produce others, but which is not itself copied or derived from something else.

OSI
Open Systems Interconnection (OSI) is a model developed by the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) for communications. OSI offers a standard, modular approach to network design that divides the required set of complex functions into manageable, self-contained, functional layers. The layers are, from top to bottom, Application, Presentation, Session, Transport, Network, Data Link and Physical.

PABX
A private automatic branch exchange (PABX) is an automatic telephone switching system within a private enterprise.

PCL
Printer Command Language (PCL) is a Page Description Language (PDL) developed by HP as a printer protocol and has become an industry standard. Originally developed for early inkjet printers, PCL has been released in varying levels for thermal, dot matrix printer, and laser printers.

PDF
Portable Document Format (PDF) is a proprietary file format developed by Adobe Systems for representing two dimensional documents in a device independent and resolution independent format.

PostScript
PostScript (PS) is a page description language and programming language used primarily in the electronic and desktop publishing areas. - that is run in an interpreter to generate an image.

PPM
Pages Per Minute (PPM) is a method of measurement for determining how fast a printer works, meaning the number of pages a printer can produce in one minute.

Print Media
The media like paper, labels, and transparencies which can be used in a printer, a scanner, a fax or, a copier.

Printer Driver
A program used to send commands and transfer data from the computer to the printer.

PRN file
An interface for a device driver, this allows software to interact with the device driver using standard input/output system calls, which simplifies many tasks.

Protocol
A convention or standard that controls or enables the connection, communication, and data transfer between two computing endpoints.

PS
See PostScript.

PSTN
The Public-Switched Telephone Network (PSTN) is the network of the world's public circuit-switched telephone networks which, on industrial premises, is usually routed through the switchboard.

RADIUS
Remote Authentication Dial In User Service (RADIUS) is a protocol for remote user authentication and accounting. RADIUS enables centralized management of authentication data such as usernames and passwords using an AAA (authentication, authorization, and accounting) concept to manage network access.

Resolution
The sharpness of an image, measured in Dots Per Inch (DPI). The higher the dpi, the greater the resolution.

SMB
Server Message Block (SMB) is a network protocol mainly applied to share files, printers, serial ports, and miscellaneous communications between nodes on a network. It also provides an authenticated Inter-process communication mechanism.

SMTP
Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) is the standard for e-mail transmissions across the Internet. SMTP is a relatively simple, text-based protocol, where one or more recipients of a message are specified, and then the message text is transferred. It is a client-server protocol, where the client transmits an email message to the server.

SSID
Service Set Identifier (SSID) is a name of a wireless local area network (WLAN). All wireless devices in a WLAN use the same SSID in order to communicate with each other. The SSIDs are case-sensitive and have a maximum length of 32 characters.

Subnet Mask
The subnet mask is used in conjunction with the network address to determine which part of the address is the network address and which part is the host address.

TCP/IP
The Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) and the Internet Protocol (IP); the set of communications protocols that implement the protocol stack on which the Internet and most commercial networks run.

TCR
The Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) and the Internet Protocol (IP); the set of communications protocols that implement the protocol stack on which the Internet and most commercial networks run.

TIFF
Tagged Image File Format (TIFF) is a variable-resolution bitmapped image format. TIFF describes image data that typically come from scanners. TIFF images make use of tags, keywords defining the characteristics of the image that is included in the file. This flexible and platform-independent format can be used for pictures that have been made by various image processing applications.

Toner Cartridge
A kind of bottle or container used in a printer like a printer which contains toner. Toner is a powder used in laser printers and photocopiers, which forms the text and images on the printed paper. Toner can be fused by a combination of heat/pressure from the fuser, causing it to bind to the fibers in the paper.

TWAIN
An industry standard for scanners and software. By using a TWAIN-compliant scanner with a TWAIN-compliant program, a scan can be initiated from within the program. It is an image capture API for Microsoft Windows and Apple Mac operating systems.

UNC Path
Uniform Naming Convention (UNC) is a standard way to access network shares in Window NT and other Microsoft products. The format of a UNC path is: `\\<servername>\<sharename>\<Additional directory>`

URL
>: Uniform Resource Locator (URL) is the global address of documents and resources on the Internet. The first part of the address indicates what protocol to use, the second part specifies the IP address or the domain name where the resource is located.

USB
Universal Serial Bus (USB) is a standard that was developed by the USB Implementers Forum, Inc., to connect computers and peripherals. Unlike the parallel port, USB is designed to concurrently connect a single computer USB port to multiple peripherals.

Watermark
A watermark is a recognizable image or pattern in paper that appears lighter when viewed by transmitted light. Watermarks were first introduced in Bologna, Italy in 1282; they have been used by papermakers to identify their product, and also on postage stamps, currency, and other government documents to discourage counterfeiting.

WEP
Wired Equivalent Privacy (WEP) is a security protocol specified in IEEE 802.11 to provide the same level of security as that of a wired LAN. WEP provides security by encrypting data over radio so that it is protected as it is transmitted from one end point to another.

WIA
Windows Imaging Architecture (WIA) is an imaging architecture that is originally introduced in Windows Me and Windows XP. A scan can be initiated from within these operating systems by using a WIA-compliant scanner.

WPA
Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA) is a class of systems to secure wireless (Wi-Fi) computer networks, which was created to improve upon the security features of WEP.

WPA-PSK
WPA-PSK (WPA Pre-Shared Key) is special mode of WPA for small business or home users. A shared key, or password, is configured in the wireless access point (WAP) and any wireless laptop or desktop devices. WPA-PSK generates a unique key for each session between a wireless client and the associated WAP for more advanced security.

WPS
The Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS) is a standard for establishing a wireless home network. If your wireless access point supports WPS, you can configure the wireless network connection easily without a computer.

XPS

XML Paper Specification (XPS) is a specification for a Page Description Language (PDL) and a new document format, which has benefits for portable document and electronic document, developed by Microsoft. It is an XML-based specification, based on a new print path and a vector-based device-independent document format.

Index

A

accelerator board 195
  after performing services 195
  before performing service 195
  introduction 195
  post service test 196
  remove the accelerator board 196
  remove the formatter cover 196
  required tools 195
  unpack the replacement assembly 197
ADF pickup roller 183
ADF reverse roller 188
after-service checklist 135, 1197, 1587
APS sensor 730
auto closing unit 369
auto size sensor 440

B

blade motor (M19)
  removing and replacing 1555
booklet feed entrance motor (M13)
  removing and replacing 1535
booklet finisher
  removing and replacing 1500
booklet finisher fold stopper unit
  removing and replacing 1523
booklet finisher front cover
  removing and replacing 1497
booklet finisher PCA
  removing and replacing 1511
booklet tray
  removing and replacing 1238
bottom high-capacity input tray (HCI) unit
  bottom high-capacity input tray feed motor 762
  bottom high-capacity input tray lift-up motor 771
  bottom high-capacity input tray PCA 768
  bottom high-capacity input tray pickup motor 765
  bottom high-capacity input tray shaft motor 773
bottom high-capacity input tray feed motor 762
bottom high-capacity input tray lift-up motor 771
bottom high-capacity input tray PCA 768
bottom high-capacity input tray pickup motor 765
bottom high-capacity input tray shaft motor 773
buffer motor, gear, and sensor (M3)
  removing and replacing 1409
BYOD table
  card reader 151
  NFC kit 151

C

C fold motor (M20)
  removing and replacing 1560
Calibrate/Cleaning menu, control panel 1080
card reader 149
  install 151
cassette 45
cassette lift drive 64
caster cover (finisher)
  removing and replacing 1241
caution for moving the scanner 79
cautions iii
CCDM PCA 112
checklists
  after-service 135, 1197, 1587
  preservice 135, 1196, 1587
cleaning page 1081
cleaning the flow ADF white bar and CIS 140
cleaning the flow document feeder white bar and CIS 140
cleaning the paper dust stick 137
cleaning the scan glass 139
clear paper jams 1083
  clearing original document jams 1083
  clearing paper jams 1087
component test
  special mode test 987
components
  diagnostic tests 987
  scanning system 73
connection diagrams 1169
control panel 208
  after performing service 208
  Backup/Restore menu 1080
  before performing service 208
  Calibrate/Cleaning menu 1080
  Copy menu (MFP only) 1057
  Fax menu (fax models only) 1071
  introduction 208
  messages, types of 1568, 1784
  post service test 209
  Print menu 1075
  remove the control panel 209
  remove the control panel bezel 209
  Reports menu 1010
  required tools 208
  Scan menu (MFP only) 1062
  Settings menu 1013

Supplies menu 1076
Trays menu 1077
troubleshooting menu 1078
unpack the replacement assembly 210
USB Firmware Upgrade menu 1082
control panel diagnostic flowcharts 978
control panel menus 1010
controller PCA (finisher)
removing and replacing 1274
conventions, document iii
Copy menu (MFP only), control panel 1057
copy specifications 17
CRUM connector 319
CST lock diagram 1174
current settings pages 991

D

DCF 114
defeating
interlocks 985
determine problem source 974
developer fan 287
developer unit 55, 162
diagnostics
adjustment 1122
component 987
engine 985, 1103
fax 1113
image management 1128
LED 983
print test patterns 1128
scanner 1118
diagram
fuser 1170
HVPS/LVPS/FDB 1175
laser scanner assembly 1172
OPC 1174
scanner 1171
side/MP/feed/registration/pickup 1173
diagrams 1169
finisher system 1569
document conventions iii
document feeder pickup 183
drive system 64
cassette lift drive 64
drive motors 67
feed drive 65
fuser release drive 67
main drive unit motor 69
output drive 67
pickup drive 64
registration drive 66
toner reservoir drive 70
toner supply drive 70
dual cassette feeder 114
dual cassette feeder (DCF) motor 744
dual cassette feeder (DCF) PCA 750
dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup motor 748
dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup units 753
dual cassette feeder (DCF) right door 738
dual cassette feeder (DCF) unit 737
dual cassette feeder (DCF) motor 744, 748
dual cassette feeder (DCF) PCA 750
dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup units 753
dual cassette feeder (DCF) right door 738
dummy feed guide
removing and replacing 1292
duplex 1 sensor 522

E

each unit functions
finisher system 1192
ejector unit
removing and replacing 1322
electrical parts layout
finisher system layout 1187
electrostatic discharge (ESD) 7, 1181, 1575
engine
diagnostics 985
eraser PCA 108
error messages
types of 1568, 1784
ESD electrostatic discharge (ESD) 7, 1181, 1575
event log 991
clear using touchscreen control panel 992

F

Fax menu (fax models only), control panel 1071
feed 2 sensor 448
feed drive 65
feed drive unit 408
feed entrance motor (M1)
removing and replacing 1397
feed exit motor (M2)
removing and replacing 1403
feed roller
MP 178
multipurpose 178
feeding system 40
cassette 45
main components and functions 41
MP feeder assembly 47
overview 40
pickup unit 46
registration unit 46
rollers 41
sensor, motor, and solenoid 43
feeding system information 40
FIH
HP Foreign interface harness (FIH) solution, install 147
finisher sectional view 1182
finisher system 1182
diagrams 1569
each unit functions 1192
electrical parts layout 1187
finisher sectional view 1182
paper path 1186
PCA connection information 1193
flatbed scanner system
overview 71
flow ADF 643
contact image sensor (CIS) 660
contact image sensor (CIS) fan 684
document feeder PCA fan 681
front motor 667
input tray 653
jam access cover 647

rear motors 671
ultrasonic sensor with PCA 687
white backing 693
whole unit 643
flow ADF PCA 110
folding roller motor (M18)
removing and replacing 1549
formatter 204
after performing service 204
before performing service 204
introduction 204
post service test 205
remove the accelerator board 205
remove the formatter PCA 206
remove the hard-disk drive 206
required tools 204
unpack the replacement assembly 207
formatter cover 192
after performing service 192
before performing service 192
introduction 192
post service test 193
remove the formatter cover 193
required tools 192
unpack the replacement assembly 193
formatter hard disk drive 201
after performing service 201
before performing service 201
introduction 201
post service test 202
remove the formatter cover 202
remove the hard disk drive 202
required tools 201
unpack the replacement assembly 203
formatter lights 983
front cover 262
open sensor 272
front cover (finisher)
removing and replacing 1221
front cover open sensor 272
front door (finisher)
removing and replacing 1209
front lower cover (finisher)
removing and replacing 1229
front power cover 223
front power switch 226
front tamper motor (M6)
removing and replacing 1417
front tamper unit
removing and replacing 1347
front top inner cover 221
fuser diagram 1170
fuser drive assembly 105
fuser drive board 345
fuser drive unit 374
fuser fan 349
fuser out sensor 442
fuser PCA 109
fuser release drive 67
fuser unit 49, 166
fuser unit drive 50
overview 49
temperature control 50
fuser unit drive 50
fuser unit temperature control 50

G

General Settings menu, control panel 1013
general specifications 11

H

hard disk drive (HDD) 607
hardware configuration 89
CCDM PCA 112
eraser PCA 108
flow ADF PCA 110
fuser drive assembly 105
fuser PCA 109
high voltage power supply PCA 106
low voltage power supply PCA (Type 3) 102
low voltage power supply PCA (Type 4) 104
low voltage power supply PCA (Type 5) 100
LVPS PCA (Type 3) 102
LVPS PCA (Type 4) 104
LVPS PCA (Type 5) 100
main controller 92
master system operation key 99
scan joint PCA 111
WLED IF PCA 113
WLED PCA 113
hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning 983
HCI 118
high capacity input tray 118
high voltage power supply (HVPS) board 299
high voltage power supply PCA 106
high voltage terminal 631
high-capacity input tray (HCI) unit 761
home button is unresponsive 982
HP Foreign interface harness (FIH), install 147
HP Jetdirect print server lights 983
HVPS PCA 106
HVPS/LVPS/FDB diagram 1175

I

image creation 53
imaging unit 53
overview 53
paper transfer belt unit 57
toner cartridge 56
image quality
black lines, vertical 1135
blurred image 1139
foggy image 1140
jitter image 1141
light image 1141
light lines, vertical 1136
periodic black dots, horizontal 1137
periodic black lines, horizontal 1137
periodic light/dark dots, horizontal 1138
periodic light/dark lines, horizontal 1138
poor fusing 1143
skewed image 1143
stain on back side 1144
standard tone, setting 1145
uneven pitch 1141
white lines, vertical 1136
image scanner unit 696
imaging drum unit 159
imaging unit 53
developer unit 55
overview 53

individual component diagnostics 983
inductor unit 364
information
general 1101
print reports 1102
software version 1101
supply status 1101
inner finisher
block diagram 1785
door switch 1772
ejector assembly 1755
ejector motor assembly 1735
end fence home sensor 1781
entrance motor 1594
entrance sensor 1590
exit motor 1605
exit sensor 1600
front jogger home sensor 1624
front jogger motor 1612
main paddle 1753
main paddle home sensor 1751
main paddle motor 1749
paper holding lever solenoid 1706
paper support home sensor 1723
paper support motor 1714
punch dust full sensor 1767
rear jogger home sensor 1645
rear jogger motor 1636
remove and replace 1589
stack beam sensor 1691
stack position sensor 1696
stacker encoder sensor 1677
stacker lower limit switch 1684
stacker motor 1670
stapler 1651
stapler position sensor assembly 1654
sub paddle shaft sub assembly 1608
top door switch 1776
traverse motor 1665
inner front cover 265
install
HP Foreign interface harness (FIH) solution 147
interlocks
defeating 985
intermediate paper transport unit 217
after performing service 217
before performing service 217
introduction 217
post service test 218
remove the IPTU 218
required tools 217
unpack the replacement asembly 218
interpret control-panel messages and event log entries 1568, 1784
IOD 198
IPTU 217
island of data 198
after performing service 198
before performing service 198
introduction 198
post service test 199
remove the formatter cover 199
remove the island of data 199
required tools 198
unpack the replacement assembly 200

J

Jetdirect print server
lights 983

K

keyboard (z bundles) 212
after performing service 212
before performing service 212
introduction 212
post service test 213
remove the control-panel 213
remove the control-panel bezel 213
remove the keyboard 214
required tools 212
unpack the replacement assembly 215

L

laser scanner assembly 61, 283
laser scanning optical path 62
overview 61
laser scanner assembly diagram 1172
LED lamp module 710
LEDs. *See* lights
left cover 238
left rear corner cover 248
lights
formatter 983
troubleshooting with 983
low voltage power supply (LVPS) board 1
LVPS board 1 332
low voltage power supply (LVPS) board 2
LVPS board 2 336
low voltage power supply (LVPS) board 3
LVPS board 3 340
low voltage power supply (LVPS) cover 279
low voltage power supply (LVPS) fans 328
low voltage power supply PCA (Type 3) 102
low voltage power supply PCA (Type 4) 104
low voltage power supply PCA (Type 5) 100
lower rear cover 241
lower shield assembly
removing and replacing 1245
LVPS board 1 332
LVPS board 2 336
LVPS board 3 340
LVPS PCA (Type 3) 102
LVPS PCA (Type 4) 104
LVPS PCA (Type 5) 100

M

machine cleaning for maintenance 137
cleaning the flow ADF white bar and CIS 140
cleaning the flow document feeder white bar and CIS 140
cleaning the paper dust stick 137
cleaning the scan glass 139
machine external view 37
front view 37
inner view 39
rear view 38
main board 303
main controller
hardware configuration 92

new model (IR/UI) 96
previous model 92
main drive unit 356
main tray moving motor (M11)
removing and replacing 1487
maintenance 137
machine cleaning for maintenance 137
maintenance counts
part replacement count 1102
maintenance parts 20
master system operation key 99
menu map 991
menus, control panel
Calibrate/Cleaning 1080
Copy (MFP only) 1057
Fax (fax models only) 1071
General Settings 1013
Manage Trays 1077
Print 1075
Reports 1010
Scan (MFP only) 1062
Supplies 1076
messages
types of 1568, 1784
MP drive unit 408
MP empty sensor 466
MP paper length sensor 478
MP solenoid 490
MP unit 455
MSOK 99
multipurpose feeder assembly 47

N

network and software specifications 28
network interface 28
NFC kit 149
install 151
no control panel sound 981
notes iii

O

OPC diagram 1174
OPE diagram 1172
option specifications 33
optional configurations 31
options list 32
ordering 1197, 1588
other errors
drive unit 1156
electrical circuit 1158
feeding system 1156
flow ADF 1153
fuser 1151
image system 1148
laser scanner assembly 1158
scanner 1153
output 1 bin full sensor 532
output bin 231
output drive 67
output drive unit 374
output gate solenoid 544
output unit 503
duplex 1 sensor 522
output 1 bin full sensor 532
output gate solenoid 544
return sensor 512

P

paper dust brush 259
paper handling specifications 22
paper path
finisher system 1186
paper transfer belt 169
paper transfer belt unit 57
cleaning blade 59
overview 57
transfer belt drive 58
parts and accessories 1197, 1588
parts and diagrams 791
alignment (finisher) 894
BKT main blade (finisher) 898
booklet finisher 874
cover 814
cover f bm (finisher) 916
curl pawl (finisher) 888
curl pawl motor (finisher) 888
DCF frame 844
DCF main 842
DCF rear frame 846
DCF second pickup 850
div cam (finisher) 908
door (finisher) 904
drive buffer (finisher) 896
drive system 808
Dual cassette feeder (DCF) 842
entrance guide (finisher) 892, 906
entrance motor (finisher) 894
FD stopper unit (finisher) 898
finisher sub 1 924
finisher sub 7 926
finisher sub 8 928
finisher sub booklet 918
first cassette 800
Flow ADF 826
Flow ADF image scanner 836
Flow ADF main 834
Flow ADF open cover 828
flow ADF pickup roller assembly 830
Flow ADF stacker 832
fold roller (finisher) 900
front alignment (tamper) (finisher) 910
hb motor (finisher) 890, 908
HCI cassette 856
HCI drive 854
HCI frame 858
HCI main 852
HCI main pickup 860
High capacity input tray (HCI) 852
High capacity input tray side unit (sHCI) 862
idle fold (finisher) 916
idle fold paddle(finisher) 916
inner finisher 922
IPTU (bridge) 920
jam clear (finisher) 898
low ADF image scanner, lower 838
low output (finisher) 890
low paddle (finisher) 894
main assembly 1 794
main assembly 2 796
main blade (finisher) 900
main frame assembly 804
main frame pickup 812
main frame pickup 1 810
main frame pickup 2 810
main frame registration 806
main output (finisher) 906
main parts 794
mainline finisher 1 876
mainline finisher 2 878
mainline finisher 3 880
mainline finisher 4 882
mainline finisher 5 884

mainline finisher 6 886
mid jam (finisher) 906
MP tray 818
Opt feed drive (DCF) 848
output 798
paddle motor (finisher) 894, 908
PCB bm (finisher) 916
pickup cover unit (sHCI) 870
PTB transfer 824
rear alignment (tamper) (finisher) 912
registration guide (finisher) 904
reservoir 840
right door 816
right door guide 820
right door output 822
right door takeaway 822
right jam (finisher) 908
SCU motor (finisher) 892
second cassette 802
sHCI frame 872
sHCI main 1 862
sHCI main 3 864
sHCI main 5 866
sHCI main 6 868
shield (finisher) 914
STK motor (finisher) 892
sub-inner finisher 922
three fold blade (finisher) 902
three fold motor (finisher) 888
three fold output (finisher) 888
top cover (finisher) 904
top door (finisher) 904
top frame (finisher) 900
top guide (finisher) 890
top jam (finisher) 896
top lower (finisher) 896
transfer buffer (finisher) 908
PCA connection information
finisher system 1193
PCA precautions 134, 1195, 1586
pick/feed separation roller 174
pickup drive 64
pickup drive unit 1 399
pickup drive unit 2 404
pickup lifting and empty sensor 561, 586
pickup roller
ADF 183
MP 178
multipurpose 178
pickup unit 46
pickup unit 1 577
pickup lifting and empty sensor 586
prefeed sensor 1 596
pickup unit 2 554
pickup lifting and empty sensor 561
prefeed sensor 2 569
plastic latches information 134, 1196, 1587
post-service tests 135, 1197, 1587
power subsystem 974
power supply
troubleshooting 974
power-on troubleshooting overview 974
pre-boot menu options 993
precations
information 133, 1195, 1586
prefeed sensor 1 596
prefeed sensor 2 569
preservice checklist 135, 1196, 1587
Print menu, control panel 1075
print quality
test 135, 1197, 1587
print quality troubleshooting 1132
flow ADF skew adjust 1164
image quality 1132
other errors 1148
print specifications 13
Print Test Page 1027
problem-solving
messages, types of 1568, 1784
Process Cleaning Page 1081
product overview 10

R

rear cover (finisher)
removing and replacing 1216
rear tamper motor (M7)
removing and replacing 1443
rear tamper unit
removing and replacing 1372
registration assembly 611
registration drive 66
registration drive assembly 416
registration pickup diagram 1173
registration sensor assembly 620
registration unit 46
removal and replacement
bottom high-capacity input (HCI) tray 761
dual cassette feeder (DCF) unit 737
replacing the main SVC part 220
right top cover (finisher) 1202
side high capacity input (sHCI) 775
removal and replacement precautions 133, 1195, 1586
removal and replacement procedures 142
replacement of maintenance parts 156
removal order
removing order 136
remove and replace
inner finisher 1589
removing and replacing
blade motor (M19) 1555
booklet feed entrance motor (M13) 1535
booklet finisher 1500
booklet finisher fold stopper unit 1523
booklet finisher front cover 1497
booklet finisher PCA 1511
booklet tray 1238
buffer motor, gear, and sensor (M3) 1409
C fold motor (M20) 1560
caster cover (finisher) 1241
controller PCA (finisher) 1274
dummy feed guide 1292
ejector unit 1322
feed entrance motor (M1) 1397
feed exit motor (M2) 1403
folding roller motor (M18) 1549
front cover (finisher) 1221
front door (finisher 1209
front lowercover (finisher) 1229
front tamper motor (M6) 1417
front tamper unit 1347
lower shield assembly 1245
main tray moving motor (M11) 1487

rear cover (finisher) 1216
rear tamper motor (M7) 1443
rear tamper unit 1372
SCU motor (M10) 1469
separate pawl motor (M17) 1546
stapler unit 1280
stopper moving motor (M16) 1541
TE presser motor (M14) 1538
top cover (finisher) 1205
top jam access cover 1298
top lower feed assembly 1309
top output bin 1200
upper shield assembly 1258
removing parts
checklists 135, 1196, 1587
replacement of maintenance parts 156
developer unit 162
flow ADF pickup roller assembly 183
flow ADF separation roller assembly 188
fuser unit 166
imaging drum unit 159
multipurpose (MP) tray pickup/reverse/feed roller 178
paper transfer belt 169
pick/feed separation roller 174
toner collection unit 157
replacing the main SVC part 220
auto closing unit 369
CRUM connector 319
developer fan 287
feed 2 sensor 448
feed drive unit 408
front cover 262
front power cover 223
front power switch 226
front top inner cover 221
fuser drive board 345
fuser drive unit 374
fuser fan 349
hard disk drive (HDD) 607
high voltage power supply (HVPS) board 299
high voltage terminal 631
inductor unit 364
inner front cover 265
intermediate paper transport unit 217
laser scanner assembly 283
left cover 238
left rear corner cover 248
low voltage power supply (LVPS) cover 279
low voltage power supply (LVPS) fans 328
lower rear cover 241
main board 303
main drive unit 356
MP drive unit 408
output bin 231
output drive unit 374
output unit 503
paper dust brush 259
pickup drive unit 1 399
pickup drive unit 2 404
pickup unit 1 577
pickup unit 2 554
registration assembly 611
registration drive assembly 416
registration sensor assembly 620
reservoir unit 428
right door 254
right door open sensor 382
right rear cover 251
toner collection unit (TCU) sensors 420
toner supply drive unit 311
top right cover 234
upper rear cover 244
Reports menu, control panel 1010
reservoir unit 428
return sensor 512
reverse roller
ADF 188
MP 178
multipurpose 178
right door 254
fuser out sensor 442
MP empty sensor 466
MP paper length sensor 478
MP solenoid 490
MP unit 455
open switch 390
right door open sensor 382
right door open switch 390
right rear cover 251
right top cover (finisher)
removal and replacement 1202

S

scan glass 708
scan joint board 722
scan joint PCA 111
Scan menu (MFP only), control panel 1062
scan specifications 16
scanner
caution for moving 79
imaging unit 718
scan glass 708
scan joint board 722
scanner diagram 1171
scanner imaging unit 718
scanner unit
image scanner 696
scanning system
components 73
scanning system components 73
SCU motor (M10)
removing and replacing 1469
separate pawl motor (M17)
removing and replacing 1546
service and support information 133, 792, 793
service approach 133, 1195, 1586
service functions
capture log 1129
debug log 1129
envelope rotate 1130
main memory clear 1129
transfer assembly control 1130
service mode 1096
diagnostics 1103
entering service mode 1096
information 1101
maintenance counts 1102
mode menu tree 1097
service functions 1129
sHCI 122, 775
side high capacity input (sHCI) 775
feed motor 778
lift-up motor 788
pickup motor 782
rear cover 776
sHCI PCA 785

side high capacity input tray 122
size sensor 440
software and solutions 29
specifications 11
copy specifications 17
general specifications 11
maintenance parts 20
network interface 28
network specifications 28
options 31
options list 32
paper handling specifications 22
print specifications 13
scan specifications 16
software and solutions 29
software specifications 28
supplies 19
stapler unit
removing and replacing 1280
static, precautions for 7, 1181, 1575
status
messages, types of 1568, 1784
stopper moving motor (M16)
removing and replacing 1541
supplies 1197, 1588
Supplies menu, control panel 1076

T

TE presser motor (M14)
removing and replacing 1538
tests
post-service 135, 1197, 1587
print-quality 135, 1197, 1587
tips iii
toner cartridge 56
toner collection unit 157
toner collection unit (TCU) sensors 420
toner supply drive unit 311
top cover (finisher)
removing and replacing 1205
top jam access cover
removing and replacing 1298
top lower feed assembly
removing and replacing 1309
top output bin
removing and replacing 1200
top right cover 234
touchscreen blank, white, or dim (no image) 979
touchscreen has an unresponsive zone 980
tray selection - use requested tray 1028
Trays menu, control panel 1077
troubleshooting
checklist 988
control panel checks 978
lights, using 983
power 974
process 974
trusted platform module
removing and replacing 143
trusted platform module, removing and replacing 143

U

understand lights on the formatter
formatter lights 983
understand the lights on the formatter
HP Jetdirect LEDs 984
upper rear cover 244
upper shield assembly
removing and replacing 1258
USB diagram 1172
Use Requested Tray 1028

W

warnings iii
WLED IF PCA 113
WLED PCA 113
working table
card reader 151
NFC kit 151
WTB diagram 1174